



ENCYCLOPEDIA OF  
**BUDDHISM**



Robert E. Buswell, Jr., Editor in Chief

ENCYCLOPEDIA OF  
**BUDDHISM**

# EDITORIAL BOARD



## EDITOR IN CHIEF

Robert E. Buswell, Jr.

*Professor of Buddhist Studies and Chair, Department of Asian Languages and Cultures  
Director, Center for Buddhist Studies  
University of California, Los Angeles*

## BOARD MEMBERS

William M. Bodiford

*Associate Professor of Buddhist Studies  
University of California, Los Angeles*

Donald S. Lopez, Jr.

*Carl W. Belsler Professor of Buddhist and Tibetan Studies  
University of Michigan*

John S. Strong

*Professor of Religion and Chair, Department of Philosophy and Religion  
Bates College*

Eugene Y. Wang

*Gardner Cowles Associate Professor of History of Art and Architecture  
Harvard University*



ENCYCLOPEDIA OF  
**BUDDHISM**

Volume One

A-L

Robert E. Buswell, Jr., Editor in Chief

**MACMILLAN  
REFERENCE  
USA™**

**THOMSON**  
—★—™  
**GALE**



## Encyclopedia of Buddhism

Robert E. Buswell, Jr., Editor in Chief

©2004 by Macmillan Reference USA.  
Macmillan Reference USA is an imprint of  
The Gale Group, Inc., a division of  
Thomson Learning, Inc.

Macmillan Reference USA™ and  
Thomson Learning™ are trademarks used  
herein under license.

For more information, contact  
Macmillan Reference USA  
300 Park Avenue South, 9th Floor  
New York, NY 10010  
Or you can visit our Internet site at  
<http://www.gale.com>

### ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

No part of this work covered by the copy-  
right hereon may be reproduced or used  
in any form or by any means—graphic,  
electronic, or mechanical, including photo-  
copying, recording, taping, Web distribu-  
tion, or information storage retrieval  
systems—without the written permission  
of the publisher.

For permission to use material from this  
product, submit your request via Web at  
<http://www.gale-edit.com/permissions>, or  
you may download our Permissions Request  
form and submit your request by fax or  
mail to:

*Permissions Department*  
The Gale Group, Inc.  
27500 Drake Road  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535  
Permissions Hotline:  
248-699-8006 or 800-877-4253 ext. 8006  
Fax: 248-699-8074 or 800-762-4058

While every effort has been made to en-  
sure the reliability of the information pre-  
sented in this publication, The Gale Group,  
Inc. does not guarantee the accuracy of the  
data contained herein. The Gale Group, Inc.  
accepts no payment for listing; and inclusion  
in the publication of any organization,  
agency, institution, publication, service, or  
individual does not imply endorsement of  
the editors or publisher. Errors brought to  
the attention of the publisher and verified  
to the satisfaction of the publisher will be  
corrected in future editions.

Cover photograph of the Jo khang  
Temple in Lhasa, Tibet reproduced by  
permission. © Chris Lisle/Corbis.

The publisher wishes to thank the  
Vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft (Institute  
of Comparative Linguistics) of the University  
of Frankfurt, and particularly Dr. Jost  
Gippert, for their kind permission to use  
the TITUS Cyberbit font in preparing the  
manuscript for the *Encyclopedia of Bud-  
dhism*. This font was specially developed  
by the institute for use by scholars working  
on materials in Asian languages and enables  
the accurate transliteration with diacriticals  
of texts from those languages. Further  
information may be found at  
<http://titus.fkidg1.uni-frankfurt.de>.

Encyclopedia of Buddhism / edited by Robert E. Buswell, Jr.  
p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-02-865718-7(set hardcover : alk. paper) — ISBN 0-02-865719-5  
(Volume 1) — ISBN 0-02-865720-9 (Volume 2)

1. Buddhism—Encyclopedias. I. Buswell, Robert E.

BQ128.E62 2003

294.3'03—dc21

2003009965

This title is also available as an e-book.  
ISBN 0-02-865910-4 (set)

Contact your Gale sales representative for ordering information.

Printed in the United States of America  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# CONTENTS



Preface.....	vii
List of Articles.....	xi
List of Contributors.....	xix
Synoptic Outline of Entries.....	xxvii
Maps: The Diffusion of Buddhism.....	xxxv

## ENCYCLOPEDIA OF BUDDHISM

Appendix: Timelines of Buddhist History.....	931
Index.....	945

# EDITORIAL AND PRODUCTION STAFF



Linda S. Hubbard  
*Editorial Director*

Judith Culligan, Anjanelle Klisz, Oona Schmid, and Drew Silver  
*Project Editors*

Shawn Beall, Mark Mikula, Kate Millson, and Ken Wachsberger  
*Editorial Support*

Judith Culligan  
*Copy Editor*

Amy Unterburger  
*Proofreader*

Lys Ann Shore  
*Indexer*

Barbara Yarrow  
*Manager, Imaging and Multimedia Content*

Robyn Young  
*Project Manager, Imaging and Multimedia Content*

Lezlie Light  
*Imaging Coordinator*

Tracey Rowens  
*Product Design Manager*

Jennifer Wahi  
*Art Director*

GGs, Inc.  
*Typesetter*

Mary Beth Trimper  
*Manager, Composition*

Evi Seoud  
*Assistant Manager, Composition*

Wendy Blurton  
*Manufacturing Specialist*

## MACMILLAN REFERENCE USA

Frank Menchaca  
*Vice President*

Hélène Potter  
*Director, New Product Development*

# PREFACE



Buddhism is one of the three major world religions, along with Christianity and Islam, and has a history that is several centuries longer than either of its counterparts. Starting in India some twenty-five hundred years ago, Buddhist monks and nuns almost immediately from the inception of the dispensation began to “to wander forth for the welfare and weal of the many, out of compassion for the world,” commencing one of the greatest missionary movements in world religious history. Over the next millennium, Buddhism spread from India throughout the Asian continent, from the shores of the Caspian Sea in the west, to the Inner Asian steppes in the north, the Japanese isles in the east, and the Indonesian archipelago in the south. In the modern era, Buddhism has even begun to build a significant presence in the Americas and Europe among both immigrant and local populations, transforming it into a religion with truly global reach. Buddhist terms such as karma, nirvāṇa, saṃsāra, and kōan have entered common parlance and Buddhist ideas have begun to seep deeply into both Western thought and popular culture.

The *Encyclopedia of Buddhism* is one of the first major reference tools to appear in any Western language that seeks to document the range and depth of the Buddhist tradition in its many manifestations. In addition to feature entries on the history and impact of Buddhism in different cultural regions and national traditions, the work also covers major doctrines, texts, people, and schools of the religion, as well as practical aspects of Buddhist meditation, liturgy, and lay training. Although the target audience is the nonspecialist reader, even serious students of the tradition should find much of benefit in the more than four hundred entries.

Even with over 500,000 words at our disposal, the editorial board realized early on that we had nowhere nearly enough space to do justice to the full panoply of Buddhist thought, practice, and culture within each major Asian tradition. In order to accommodate as broad a range of research as possible, we decided at the beginning of the project to abandon our attempt at a comprehensive survey of major topics in each principal Asian tradition and instead build our coverage around broader thematic entries that would cut across cultural boundaries. Thus, rather than separate entries on the Huichang persecution of Buddhism in China or the Chosŏn suppression in Korea, for example, we have instead a single thematic entry on persecutions; we follow a similar approach with such entries as conversion, festivals and calendrical rituals, millenarianism and millenarian movements, languages, and stūpas. We make no pretense to comprehensiveness in every one of these entries; when there are only a handful of



entries in the *Encyclopedia* longer than four thousand words, this would have been a pipe dream, at best. Instead, we encouraged our contributors to examine their topics comparatively, presenting representative case studies on the topic, with examples drawn from two or more traditions of Buddhism.

The *Encyclopedia* also aspires to represent the emphasis in the contemporary field of Buddhist studies on the broader cultural, social, institutional, and political contexts of Buddhist thought and practice. There are substantial entries on topics as diverse as economics, education, the family, law, literature, kingship, and politics, to name but a few, all of which trace the role Buddhism has played as one of Asia's most important cultural influences. Buddhist folk religion, in particular, receives among the most extensive coverage of any topic in the encyclopedia. Many entries also explore the continuing relevance of Buddhism in contemporary life in Asia and, indeed, throughout the world.

Moreover, we have sought to cross the intellectual divide that separates texts and images by offering extensive coverage of Buddhist art history and material culture. Although we had no intention of creating an encyclopedia of Buddhist art, we felt it was important to offer our readers some insight into the major artistic traditions of Buddhism. We also include brief entries on a couple of representative sites in each tradition; space did not allow us even to make a pretense of being comprehensive, so we focused on places or images that a student might be most likely to come across in reading about a specific tradition. We have also sought to provide some coverage of Buddhist material culture in such entries as amulets and talismans, medicine, monastic architecture, printing technologies, ritual objects, and robes and clothing.

One of the major goals of the *Encyclopedia* is to better integrate Buddhist studies into research on religion and culture more broadly. When the editorial board was planning the entries, we sought to provide readers with Buddhist viewpoints on such defining issues in religious studies as conversion, evil, hermeneutics, pilgrimage, ritual, sacred space, and worship. We also explore Buddhist perspectives on topics of great currency in the contemporary humanities, such as the body, colonialism, gender, modernity, nationalism, and so on. These entries are intended to help ensure that Buddhist perspectives become mainstreamed in Western humanistic research.

We obviously could not hope to cover the entirety of Buddhism in a two-volume reference. The editorial board selected a few representative monks, texts, and sites for each of the major cultural traditions of the religion, but there are inevitably many desultory lacunae. Much of the specific coverage of people, texts, places, and practices is embedded in the larger survey pieces on Buddhism in India, China, Tibet, and so forth, as well as in relevant thematic articles, and those entries should be the first place a reader looks for information. We also use a comprehensive set of internal cross-references, which are typeset as small caps, to help guide the reader to other relevant entries in the *Encyclopedia*. Listings for monks proved unexpectedly complicated. Monks, especially in East Asia, often have a variety of different names by which they are known to the tradition (ordained name, toponym, cognomen, style, honorific, funerary name, etc.) and Chinese monks, for example, may often be better known in Western literature by the Japanese pronunciation of their names. As a general, but by no means in-violate, rule, we refer to monks by the language of their national origin and their name at ordination. So the entry on the Chinese Chan (Zen) monk often known in Western writings as Rinzai, using the Japanese pronunciation of his Chinese toponym Linji, will be listed here by his ordained name of Yixuan. Some widely known alternate names will be given as blind entries, but please consult the index if someone is difficult to locate. We also follow the transliteration systems most widely employed today

for rendering Asian languages: for example, pinyin for Chinese, Wylie for Tibetan, Revised Hepburn for Japanese, McCune-Reischauer for Korean.

For the many buddhas, bodhisattvas, and divinities known to the Buddhist tradition, the reader once again should first consult the major thematic entry on buddhas, etc., for a survey of important figures within each category. We will also have a few independent entries for some, but by no means all, of the most important individual figures. We will typically refer to a buddha like Amitābha, who is known across traditions, according to the Buddhist lingua franca of Sanskrit, not by the Chinese pronunciation Amīto or Japanese Amida; similarly, we have a brief entry on the bodhisattva Maitreya, which we use instead of the Korean Mirūk or Japanese Miroku.

For pan-Buddhist terms common to most Buddhist traditions, we again use the Sanskrit as a lingua franca: thus, dhyāna (trance state), duḥkha (suffering), skandha (aggregate), and śūnyatā (emptiness). But again, many terms are treated primarily in relevant thematic entries, such as samādhi in the entry on meditation. Buddhist terminology that appears in *Webster's Third International Dictionary* we regard as English and leave unitalicized: this includes such technical terms as dhāraṇī, kōan, and tathāgatagarbha. For a convenient listing of a hundred such terms, see Roger Jackson, "Terms of Sanskrit and Pali Origin Acceptable as English Words," *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 5 (1982), pp. 141–142.

Buddhist texts are typically cited by their language of provenance, so the reader will find texts of Indian provenance listed via their Sanskrit titles (e.g., *Sukhāvativyūhasūtra*, *Samdhinirmocana-sūtra*), indigenous Chinese sūtras by their Chinese titles (e.g., *Fanwang jing*, *Renwang jing*), and so forth. Certain scriptures that have widely recognized English titles are however listed under that title, as with *Awakening of Faith*, *Lotus Sūtra*, *Nirvāṇa Sūtra*, and *Tibetan Book of the Dead*.

Major Buddhist schools, similarly, are listed according to the language of their origin. In East Asia, for example, different pronunciations of the same Sinitic logograph obscure the fact that Chan, Sōn, Zen, and Thiēn are transliterations of respectively the Chinese, Korean, Japanese, and Vietnamese pronunciations for the school we generally know in the West as Zen. We have therefore given our contributors the daunting task of cutting across national boundaries and treating in single, comprehensive entries such pan-Asian traditions as Madhyamaka, Tantra, and Yogācāra, or such pan-East Asian schools as Huayan, Tiantai, and Chan. These entries are among the most complex in the encyclopedia, since they must not only touch upon the major highlights of different national traditions, but also lay out in broad swathe an overarching account of a school's distinctive approach and contribution to Buddhist thought and practice.

Compiling an *Encyclopedia of Buddhism* may seem a quixotic quest, given the past track records of similar Western-language projects. I was fortunate to have had the help of an outstanding editorial board, which was determined to ensure that this encyclopedia would stand as a definitive reference tool on Buddhism for the next generation—and that it would be finished in our lifetimes. Don Lopez and John Strong both brought their own substantial expertise with editing multi-author references to the project, which proved immensely valuable in planning this encyclopedia and keeping the project moving along according to schedule. My UCLA colleague William Bodiford surveyed Japanese-language Buddhist encyclopedias for the board and constantly pushed us to consider how we could convey in our entries the ways in which Buddhist beliefs were lived out in practice. The board benefited immensely in the initial planning stages from the guidance art historian Maribeth Graybill offered in trying to

conceive how to provide a significant place in our coverage for Buddhist art. Eugene Wang did yeoman's service in stepping in later as our art-history specialist on the board. Words cannot do justice to the gratitude I feel for the trenchant advice, ready good humor, and consistently hard work offered by all the board members.

I also benefited immensely from the generous assistance, advice, and support of the faculty, staff, and graduate students affiliated with UCLA's Center for Buddhist Studies, which has spearheaded this project since its inception. I am especially grateful to my faculty colleagues in Buddhist Studies at UCLA, whose presence here gave me both the courage even to consider undertaking such a daunting task and the manpower to finish it: Gregory Schopen, William Bodiford, Jonathan Silk, Robert Brown, and Don McCallum.

The *Encyclopedia* was fortunate to have behind it the support of the capable staff at Macmillan. Publisher Elly Dickason and our first editor Judy Culligan helped guide the editorial board through our initial framing of the encyclopedia and structuring of the entries; we were fortunate to have Judy return as our copyeditor later in the project. Oona Schmid, who joined the project just as we were finalizing our list of entries and sending out invitations to contributors, was an absolutely superlative editor, cheerleader, and colleague. Her implacable enthusiasm for the project was infectious and helped keep both the board and our contributors moving forward even during the most difficult stages of the project. Our next publisher, H el ene Potter, was a stabilizing force during the most severe moments of impermanence. Our last editor, Drew Silver, joined us later in the project, but his assistance was indispensable in taking care of the myriad details involved in bringing the project to completion. Jan Klisz was absolutely superb at moving the volumes through production. All of us on the board looked askance when Macmillan assured us at our first editorial meeting that we would finish this project in three years, but the professionalism of its staff made it happen.

Finally, I would like to express my deepest thanks to the more than 250 colleagues around the world who willingly gave of their time, energy, and knowledge in order to bring the *Encyclopedia of Buddhism* to fruition. I am certain that current and future generations of students will benefit from our contributors' insightful treatments of various aspects of the Buddhist religious tradition. As important as encyclopedia articles are for building a field, they inevitably take a back seat to one's "real" research and writing, and rarely receive the recognition they deserve for tenure or promotion. At very least, our many contributors can be sure that they have accrued much merit—at least in my eyes—through their selfless acts of disseminating the dharma.

ROBERT E. BUSWELL, JR.

# LIST OF ARTICLES



- Abhidharma  
*Collett Cox*
- Abhidharmakośabhāṣya  
*Collett Cox*
- Abhiññā (Higher Knowledges)  
*Patrick A. Pranke*
- Abortion  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Āgama/Nikāya  
*Jens-Uwe Hartmann*
- Ajaṅṭā  
*Leela Aditi Wood*
- Akṣobhya  
*Jan Nattier*
- Ālayavijñāna  
*John S. Strong*
- Alchi  
*Roger Goeppe*
- Ambedkar, B. R.  
*Christopher S. Queen*
- Amitābha  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Amulets and Talismans  
*Michael R. Rhum*
- Anagārika Dharmapāla  
*George D. Bond*
- Ānanda  
*Bhikkhu Pasādika*
- Ananda Temple  
*Paul Strachan*
- Anāthapiṇḍada  
*Joel Tatelman*
- Anātman/Ātman (No-self/Self)  
*K. T. S. Sarao*
- Ancestors  
*Mariko Namba Walter*
- Anitya (Impermanence)  
*Carol S. Anderson*
- An Shigao  
*Paul Harrison*
- Anuttarasamyaksaṃbodhi  
(Complete, Perfect Awakening)  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Apocrypha  
*Kyoko Tokuno*
- Arhat  
*George D. Bond*
- Arhat Images  
*Richard K. Kent*
- Āryadeva  
*Karen Lang*
- Āryaśūra  
*Peter Khoroch*
- Asaṅga  
*John P. Keenan*
- Ascetic Practices  
*Liz Wilson*
- Aśoka  
*John S. Strong*
- Aśvagoṣa  
*Peter Khoroch*
- Atisha  
*Gareth Sparham*
- Avadāna  
*Joel Tatelman*
- Avadānaśataka  
*Joel Tatelman*
- Awakening of Faith (Dasheng  
qixin lun)  
*Ding-hwa Hsieh*
- Ayutthaya  
*Pattaratorn Chirapravati*
- Bāmiyān  
*Karil J. Kucera*
- Bayon  
*Eleanor Mannikka*
- Bhāvaviveka  
*Paul Williams*
- Bianwen  
*Victor H. Mair*
- Bianxiang (Transformation  
Tableaux)  
*Victor H. Mair*
- Biographies of Eminent Monks  
(Gaoseng zhuan)  
*John Kieschnick*
- Biography  
*Juliane Schober*
- Bka' brgyud (Kagyū)  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Bodh Gayā  
*Leela Aditi Wood*

- Bodhi (Awakening)  
*Robert M. Gimello*
- Bodhicaryāvatāra  
*Paul Williams*
- Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Bodhidharma  
*Jeffrey Broughton*
- Bodhisattva(s)  
*Leslie S. Kawamura*
- Bodhisattva Images  
*Charles Lachman*
- Body, Perspectives on the  
*Liz Wilson*
- Bon  
*Christian K. Wedemeyer*
- Borobudur  
*John N. Miksic*
- Bsam yas (Samye)  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Bsam yas Debate  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Buddha(s)  
*Jan Nattier*
- Buddhacarita  
*John S. Strong*
- Buddhadāsa  
*Christopher S. Queen*
- Buddhaghosa  
*John S. Strong*
- Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies  
*John J. Makransky*
- Buddha Images  
*Robert L. Brown*
- Buddha, Life of the  
*Heinz Bechert*
- Buddha, Life of the, in Art  
*Gail Maxwell*
- Buddhānumṛti (Recollection of the Buddha)  
*Paul Harrison*
- Buddhavacana (Word of the Buddha)  
*George D. Bond*
- Buddhist Studies  
*Jonathan A. Silk*
- Burmese, Buddhist Literature in  
*Jason A. Carbine*
- Bu ston (Bu tön)  
*Gareth Sparham*
- Cambodia  
*Anne Hansen*
- Candrakīrti  
*Roger R. Jackson*
- Canon  
*Paul Harrison*
- Catalogues of Scriptures  
*Kyoko Tokuno*
- Cave Sanctuaries  
*Denise Patry Leidy*
- Central Asia  
*Jan Nattier*
- Central Asia, Buddhist Art in  
*Roderick Whitfield*
- Chan Art  
*Charles Lachman*
- Chan School  
*John Jorgensen*
- Chanting and Liturgy  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Chengguan  
*Mario Poceski*
- China  
*Mario Poceski*
- China, Buddhist Art in  
*Marilyn Martin Rhie*
- Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in  
*Victor H. Mair*
- Chinul  
*Sung Bae Park*
- Chogye School  
*Jongmyung Kim*
- Christianity and Buddhism  
*James W. Heisig*
- Clerical Marriage in Japan  
*Richard M. Jaffe*
- Colonialism and Buddhism  
*Richard King*
- Commentarial Literature  
*Alexander L. Mayer*
- Communism and Buddhism  
*Jin Y. Park*
- Confucianism and Buddhism  
*George A. Keyworth*
- Consciousness, Theories of  
*Nobuyoshi Yamabe*
- Consecration  
*Donald K. Swearer*
- Conversion  
*Jan Nattier*
- Cosmology  
*Rupert Gethin*
- Councils, Buddhist  
*Charles S. Prebish*
- Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō)  
*Jamie Hubbard*
- Daimoku  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Daitokuji  
*Karen L. Brock*
- Dākinī  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Dalai Lama  
*Gareth Sparham*
- Dāna (Giving)  
*Maria Heim*
- Dao'an  
*Tanya Storch*
- Daoism and Buddhism  
*Stephen R. Bokenkamp*
- Daosheng  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Daoxuan  
*John Kieschnick*
- Daoyi (Mazu)  
*Mario Poceski*
- Death  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Decline of the Dharma  
*Jan Nattier*
- Deqing  
*William Chu*
- Desire  
*Luis O. Gómez*

- Devadatta  
*Max Deeg*
- Dge lugs (Geluk)  
*Georges B. J. Dreyfus*
- Dhammapada  
*Oskar von Hinüber*
- Dhāraṇī  
*Richard D. McBride II*
- Dharma and Dharmas  
*Charles Willemen*
- Dharmadhātu  
*Chi-chiang Huang*
- Dharmaguptaka  
*Collett Cox*
- Dharmakīrti  
*John Dunne*
- Dharmarakṣa  
*Daniel Boucher*
- Dhyāna (Trance State)  
*Karen Derris*
- Diamond Sūtra  
*Gregory Schopen*
- Diet  
*James A. Benn*
- Dignāga  
*John Dunne*
- Dīpaṃkara  
*Jan Nattier*
- Disciples of the Buddha  
*Andrew Skilton*
- Divinities  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Divyāvadāna  
*Joel Tatelman*
- Dōgen  
*Carl Bielefeldt*
- Dōkyō  
*Allan G. Grapard*
- Doubt  
*Robert E. Buswell, Jr.*
- Dreams  
*Alexander L. Mayer*
- Duḥkha (Suffering)  
*Carol S. Anderson*
- Dunhuang  
*Roderick Whitfield*
- Economics  
*Gustavo Benavides*
- Education  
*Mahinda Deegalle*
- Engaged Buddhism  
*Christopher S. Queen*
- Ennin  
*David L. Gardiner*
- Entertainment and Performance  
*Victor H. Mair*
- Esoteric Art, East Asia  
*Cynthia J. Bogel*
- Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
*Gail Maxwell*
- Ethics  
*Barbara E. Reed*
- Etiquette  
*Eric Reinders*
- Europe  
*Martin Baumann*
- Evil  
*Maria Heim*
- Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Faith  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Famensi  
*Roderick Whitfield*
- Family, Buddhism and the  
*Alan Cole*
- Fanwang jing (Brahmā's Net Sūtra)  
*Eunsu Cho*
- Faxian  
*Alexander L. Mayer*
- Faxiang School  
*Dan Lusthaus*
- Fazang  
*Jeffrey Broughton*
- Festivals and Calendrical Rituals  
*Jonathan S. Walters*
- Folk Religion: An Overview  
*Stephen F. Teiser*
- Folk Religion, China  
*Philip Clart*
- Folk Religion, Japan  
*Ian Reader*
- Folk Religion, Southeast Asia  
*Michael R. Rhum*
- Four Noble Truths  
*Carol S. Anderson*
- Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in  
*Richard Salomon*
- Ganjin  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Gavāṃpati  
*François Lagirarde*
- Gender  
*Reiko Ohnuma*
- Genshin  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Ghost Festival  
*Stephen F. Teiser*
- Ghosts and Spirits  
*Peter Masefield*
- Gyōnen  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Hachiman  
*Fabio Rambelli*
- Hair  
*Patrick Olivelle*
- Hakuin Ekaku  
*John Jorgensen*
- Han Yongun  
*Pori Park*
- Heart Sūtra  
*John R. McRae*
- Heavens  
*Rupert Gethin*
- Hells  
*Stephen F. Teiser*
- Hells, Images of  
*Karil J. Kucera*
- Hermeneutics  
*John Powers*
- Himalayas, Buddhist Art in  
*Roger Goeppe*

- Hīnayāna  
*John S. Strong*
- Hinduism and Buddhism  
*Johannes Bronkhorst*
- History  
*John C. Maraldo*
- Hōnen  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Honji Suijaku  
*Fabio Rambelli*
- Hōryūji and Tōdaiji  
*Karen L. Brock*
- Huayan Art  
*Henrik H. Sørensen*
- Huayan jing  
*Mario Poceski*
- Huayan School  
*Mario Poceski*
- Huineng  
*John R. McRae*
- Huiyuan  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Hyesim  
*A. Charles Muller*
- Hyujōng  
*Sungtaek Cho*
- Icchantika  
*Robert E. Buswell, Jr.*
- Ikkyū  
*Sarah Fremerman*
- India  
*Richard S. Cohen*
- India, Buddhist Art in  
*Gail Maxwell*
- India, Northwest  
*Jason Neelis*
- India, South  
*Anne E. Monius*
- Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula  
*Robert L. Brown*
- Indonesia, Buddhist Art in  
*John N. Miksic*
- Indra  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Ingen Ryūki  
*A. W. Barber*
- Initiation  
*Ronald M. Davidson*
- Inoue Enryō  
*Richard M. Jaffe*
- Intermediate States  
*Bryan J. Cuevas*
- Ippen Chishin  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Islam and Buddhism  
*Johan Elverskog*
- Jainism and Buddhism  
*Paul Dundas*
- Japan  
*Carl Bielefeldt*
- Japan, Buddhist Art in  
*Karen L. Brock*
- Japanese, Buddhist Influences on  
Vernacular Literature in  
*Robert E. Morrell*
- Japanese Royal Family and  
Buddhism  
*Brian O. Ruppert*
- Jātaka  
*Reiko Ohnuma*
- Jātaka, Illustrations of  
*Leela Aditi Wood*
- Jātakamālā  
*Peter Khoroché*
- Jewels  
*Brian O. Ruppert*
- Jiun Onkō  
*Paul B. Watt*
- Jo khang  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Juefan (Huihong)  
*George A. Keyworth*
- Kailāśa (Kailash)  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Kālacakra  
*John Newman*
- Kamakura Buddhism, Japan  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Karma (Action)  
*Johannes Bronkhorst*
- Karma pa  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Karuṇā (Compassion)  
*Roger R. Jackson*
- Khmer, Buddhist Literature in  
*Anne Hansen*
- Kihwa  
*A. Charles Muller*
- Kingship  
*Pankaj N. Mohan*
- Klong chen pa (Longchenpa)  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Kōan  
*Morten Schlütter*
- Kōben  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Konjaku Monogatari  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Korea  
*Hee-Sung Keel*
- Korea, Buddhist Art in  
*Youngsook Pak*
- Korean, Buddhist Influences on  
Vernacular Literature in  
*Jongmyung Kim*
- Kuji  
*Alan Sponberg*
- Kūkai  
*Ryūichi Abé*
- Kumārajīva  
*John R. McRae*
- Kyōnghō  
*Henrik H. Sørensen*
- Laity  
*Helen Hardacre*
- Lalitavistara  
*John S. Strong*
- Lama  
*Alexander Gardner*
- Language, Buddhist Philosophy of  
*Richard P. Hayes*
- Languages  
*Jens-Uwe Hartmann*
- Lañkāvatāra-sūtra  
*John Powers*

- Laos  
*Justin McDaniel*
- Law and Buddhism  
*Rebecca French*
- Lineage  
*Albert Welter*
- Local Divinities and Buddhism  
*Fabio Rambelli*
- Logic  
*John Dunne*
- Longmen  
*Dorothy Wong*
- Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Madhyamaka School  
*Karen Lang*
- Ma gcig lab sgron (Machig Lapdön)  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Mahābodhi Temple  
*Leela Aditi Wood*
- Mahākāśyapa  
*Max Deeg*
- Mahāmaudgalyāyana  
*Susanne Mrozik*
- Mahāmudrā  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra  
*John S. Strong*
- Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī  
*Karma Lekshe Tsomo*
- Mahāsāṃghika School  
*Paul Harrison*
- Mahāsiddha  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Mahāvastu  
*John S. Strong*
- Mahāyāna  
*Gregory Schopen*
- Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan  
*Paul Groner*
- Mahīśāsaka  
*Collett Cox*
- Mainstream Buddhist Schools  
*Collett Cox*
- Maitreya  
*Alan Sponberg*
- Maṇḍala  
*Denise Patry Leidy*
- Mantra  
*Richard D. McBride II*
- Māra  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Mar pa (Marpa)  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Martial Arts  
*William Powell*
- Mātr̥ceṭa  
*Peter Khoroché*
- Medicine  
*Kenneth G. Zysk*
- Meditation  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Meiji Buddhist Reform  
*Richard M. Jaffe*
- Merit and Merit-Making  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Mijiao (Esoteric) School  
*Henrik H. Sørensen*
- Mi la ras pa (Milarepa)  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Milindapañha  
*Peter Masefield*
- Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements  
*Thomas DuBois*
- Mindfulness  
*Johannes Bronkhorst*
- Miracles  
*John Kieschnick*
- Mizuko Kuyō  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Modernity and Buddhism  
*Gustavo Benavides*
- Mohe Zhiguan  
*Brook Ziporyn*
- Monastic Architecture  
*Nancy Shatzman Steinhardt*
- Monasticism  
*Jeffrey Samuels*
- Monastic Militias  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Mongolia  
*Patricia Berger*
- Monks  
*John Kieschnick*
- Mozhao Chan (Silent Illumination Chan)  
*Morten Schlütter*
- Mudrā and Visual Imagery  
*Denise Patry Leidy*
- Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya  
*Gregory Schopen*
- Murakami Senshō  
*Richard M. Jaffe*
- Myanmar  
*Patrick A. Pranke*
- Myanmar, Buddhist Art in  
*Paul Strachan*
- Nāgārjuna  
*Paul Williams*
- Nara Buddhism  
*George J. Tanabe, Jr.*
- Nāropa  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Nationalism and Buddhism  
*Pori Park*
- Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul)  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Nepal  
*Todd T. Lewis*
- Newari, Buddhist Literature in  
*Todd T. Lewis*
- Nichiren  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Nichiren School  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Nine Mountains School of Sōn  
*Sungtaek Cho*
- Nirvāṇa  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Nirvāṇa Sūtra  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Nuns  
*Karma Lekshe Tsomo*



- Oṃ maṇi padme hūṃ  
*Alexander Gardner*
- Ordination  
*John R. McRae*
- Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Oxherding Pictures  
*Steven Heine*
- Padmasambhava  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Pāli, Buddhist Literature in  
*Oskar von Hinüber*
- Panchen Lama  
*Gareth Sparham*
- Paramārtha  
*Daniel Boucher*
- Pāramitā (Perfection)  
*Leslie S. Kawamura*
- Parish (Danka, Terauke) System in Japan  
*Duncan Williams*
- Paritta and Rakṣā Texts  
*Justin McDaniel*
- Path  
*William Chu*
- Persecutions  
*Kate Crosby*
- Philosophy  
*Dale S. Wright*
- Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin)  
*Karen L. Brock*
- Pilgrimage  
*Kevin Trainor*
- Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch (Liuzu tan jing)  
*John R. McRae*
- Poetry and Buddhism  
*George A. Keyworth*
- Politics and Buddhism  
*Eric Reinders*
- Portraiture  
*Karen L. Brock*
- Potala  
*Andrew Quintman*
- Prajñā (Wisdom)  
*Roger R. Jackson*
- Prajñāpāramitā Literature  
*Lewis Lancaster*
- Prātimokṣa  
*Karma Lekshe Tsomo*
- Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)  
*Mathieu Boisvert*
- Pratyekabuddha  
*Ria Kloppenborg*
- Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra  
*Paul Harrison*
- Prayer  
*José Ignacio Cabezón*
- Precepts  
*Daniel A. Getz*
- Printing Technologies  
*Richard D. McBride II*
- Provincial Temple System (Kokubunji, Rishōtō)  
*Suzanne Gay*
- Psychology  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Pudgalavāda  
*Leonard C. D. C. Priestley*
- Pure Land Art  
*Eugene Y. Wang*
- Pure Land Buddhism  
*Daniel A. Getz*
- Pure Lands  
*Luis O. Gómez*
- Pure Land Schools  
*A. W. Barber*
- Rāhula  
*Bhikkhu Pasadika*
- Realms of Existence  
*Rupert Gethin*
- Rebirth  
*Bryan J. Cuevas*
- Refuges  
*John Clifford Holt*
- Relics And Relics Cults  
*Brian O. Ruppert*
- Reliquary  
*Roderick Whitfield*
- Rennyō  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Renwang jing (Humane Kings Sūtra)  
*A. Charles Muller*
- Repentance and Confession  
*David W. Chappell*
- Ritual  
*Richard K. Payne*
- Ritual Objects  
*Anne Nishimura Morse*
- Rnying ma (Nyingma)  
*Jacob P. Dalton*
- Robes and Clothing  
*Willa Jane Tanabe*
- Ryōkan  
*David E. Riggs*
- Saichō  
*David L. Gardiner*
- Samdhinirmocana-sūtra  
*John Powers*
- Samguk yusa (Memorabilia of the Three Kingdoms)  
*Richard D. McBride II*
- Samsāra  
*Bryan J. Cuevas*
- Sāñcī  
*Leela Aditi Wood*
- Śaṅgha  
*Gareth Sparham*
- Sanjie Jiao (Three Stages School)  
*Jamie Hubbard*
- Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in  
*Andrew Skilton*
- Śāntideva  
*Paul Williams*
- Śāriputra  
*Susanne Mrozik*
- Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda  
*Collett Cox*
- Sa skya (Sakya)  
*Cyrus Stearns*
- Sa skya Paṇḍita (Sakya Paṇḍita)  
*Ronald M. Davidson*
- Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta  
*Patrick A. Pranke*
- Satori (Awakening)  
*Robert M. Gimello*

- Sautrāntika  
*Collett Cox*
- Scripture  
*José Ignacio Cabezón*
- Self-Immolation  
*James A. Benn*
- Sengzhao  
*Tanya Storch*
- Sentient Beings  
*Daniel A. Getz*
- Sexuality  
*Hank Glassman*
- Shingon Buddhism, Japan  
*Ryūichi Abé*
- Shinran  
*James C. Dobbins*
- Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism  
*Fabio Rambelli*
- Shōbōgenzō  
*Carl Bielefeldt*
- Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi)  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Shugendō  
*Paul L. Swanson*
- Shwedagon  
*Paul Strachan*
- Śikṣānanda  
*Chi-chiang Huang*
- Silk Road  
*Jason Neelis*
- Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in  
*Ranjini Obeyesekere*
- Skandha (Aggregate)  
*Mathieu Boisvert*
- Slavery  
*Jonathan A. Silk*
- Sōka Gakkai  
*Jacqueline I. Stone*
- Sōkkuram  
*Junghee Lee*
- Soteriology  
*Dan Cozort*
- Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in  
*Robert L. Brown*
- Space, Sacred  
*Allan G. Grapard*
- Sri Lanka  
*John Clifford Holt*
- Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in  
*Benille Priyanka*
- Stūpa  
*A. L. Dallapiccola*
- Sukhāvativyūha-sūtra  
*Mark L. Blum*
- Sukhothai  
*Pattaratorn Chirapravati*
- Śūnyatā (Emptiness)  
*Roger R. Jackson*
- Sūtra  
*John S. Strong*
- Sūtra Illustrations  
*Willa Jane Tanabe*
- Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra  
*Natalie D. Gummer*
- Suzuki, D. T.  
*Richard M. Jaffe*
- Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings  
*Philip Clart*
- Tachikawaryū  
*Nobumi Iyanaga*
- Taiwan  
*Charles B. Jones*
- Taixu  
*Ding-hwa Hsieh*
- Takuan Sōhō  
*William M. Bodiford*
- Tantra  
*Ronald M. Davidson*  
*Charles D. Orzech*
- Tathāgata  
*John S. Strong*
- Tathāgatagarbha  
*William H. Grosnick*
- Temple System in Japan  
*Duncan Williams*
- Thai, Buddhist Literature in  
*Grant A. Olson*
- Thailand  
*Donald K. Swearer*
- Theravāda  
*Kate Crosby*
- Theravāda Art and Architecture  
*Bonnie Brereton*
- Thich Nhat Hanh  
*Christopher S. Queen*
- Tiantai School  
*Brook Ziporyn*
- Tibet  
*Ronald M. Davidson*
- Tibetan Book of the Dead  
*Bryan J. Cuevas*
- Tominaga Nakamoto  
*Paul B. Watt*
- Tsong kha pa  
*Georges B. J. Dreyfus*
- Üich'ōn  
*Chi-chiang Huang*
- Üisang  
*Patrick R. Uhlmann*
- United States  
*Thomas A. Tweed*
- Upagupta  
*John S. Strong*
- Upāli  
*Susanne Mrozik*
- Upāya  
*Roger R. Jackson*
- Usury  
*Jamie Hubbard*
- Vajrayāna  
*Ronald M. Davidson*
- Vaṃsa  
*Stephen C. Berkwitz*
- Vasubandhu  
*Dan Lusthaus*
- Vidyādhara  
*Patrick A. Pranke*
- Vietnam  
*Cuong Tu Nguyen*
- Vietnamese, Buddhist Influences on Literature in  
*Cuong Tu Nguyen*
- Vijñānavāda  
*Dan Lusthaus*

LIST OF ARTICLES

- Vimalakīrti  
*Andrew Skilton*
- Vinaya  
*Gregory Schopen*
- Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)  
*Patrick A. Pranke*
- Vipāśyin  
*Jan Nattier*
- Viṣṇu  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Viśvantara  
*Reiko Ohnuma*
- War  
*Michael Zimmermann*
- Wilderness Monks  
*Thanissaro Bhikkhu (Geoffrey DeGraff)*
- Women  
*Natalie D. Gummer*
- Wōnbulgyo  
*Bongkil Chung*
- Wōnch'ūk  
*Eunsu Cho*
- Wōnhyo  
*Eunsu Cho*
- Worship  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Xuanzang  
*Alexander L. Mayer*
- Yakṣa  
*Jacob N. Kinnard*
- Yanshou  
*Albert Welter*
- Yijing  
*Alexander L. Mayer*
- Yinshun  
*William Chu*
- Yixuan  
*Urs App*
- Yogācāra School  
*Dan Lusthaus*
- Yujōng  
*Sungtaek Cho*
- Yun'gang  
*Dorothy Wong*
- Zanning  
*Albert Welter*
- Zen, Popular Conceptions of  
*Juhn Ahn*
- Zhanran  
*Linda Penkower*
- Zhao lun  
*Tanya Storch*
- Zhili  
*Brook Ziporyn*
- Zhiyi  
*Brook Ziporyn*
- Zhuhong  
*William Chu*
- Zonggao  
*Ding-hwa Hsieh*
- Zongmi  
*Jeffrey Broughton*

# LIST OF CONTRIBUTORS



- Ryūichi Abé  
Columbia University  
*Kūkai*  
*Shingon Buddhism, Japan*
- Juhn Ahn  
University of Michigan  
*Zen, Popular Conceptions of*
- Carol S. Anderson  
Kalamazoo College  
*Anitya (Impermanence)*  
*Duḥkha (Suffering)*  
*Four Noble Truths*
- Urs App  
University Media Research, Kyoto,  
Japan  
*Yixuan*
- A. W. Barber  
University of Calgary  
*Ingen Ryūki*  
*Pure Land Schools*
- Martin Baumann  
University of Lucerne, Switzerland  
*Europe*
- Heinz Bechert  
University of Göttingen  
*Buddha, Life of the*
- Gustavo Benavides  
Villanova University  
*Economics*  
*Modernity and Buddhism*
- James A. Benn  
Arizona State University  
*Diet*  
*Self-Immolation*
- Patricia Berger  
University of California, Berkeley  
*Mongolia*
- Stephen C. Berkwitz  
Southwest Missouri State University  
*Vaṃsa*
- Carl Bielefeldt  
Stanford University  
*Dōgen*  
*Japan*  
*Shōbōgenzō*
- Mark L. Blum  
State University of New York, Albany  
*Daosheng*  
*Death*  
*Gyōnen*  
*Huiyuan*  
*Nirvāṇa Sūtra*  
*Sukhāvātīvyūha-sūtra*
- William M. Bodiford  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Anuttarasamyaksaṃbodhi*  
*(Complete, Perfect Awakening)*  
*Ganjin*  
*Ippen Chishin*  
*Konjaku monogatari*  
*Monastic Militias*  
*Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi)*  
*Takuan Sōhō*
- Cynthia J. Bogel  
University of Washington  
*Esoteric Art, East Asia*
- Mathieu Boisvert  
University of Quebec at Montreal  
*Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent*  
*Origination)*  
*Skandha (Aggregate)*
- Stephen R. Bokenkamp  
Indiana University  
*Daoism and Buddhism*
- George D. Bond  
Northwestern University  
*Anagārika Dharmapāla*  
*Arhat*  
*Buddhāvacaṇa (Word of the*  
*Buddha)*
- Daniel Boucher  
Cornell University  
*Dharmarakṣa*  
*Paramārtha*
- Bonnie Brereton  
University of Michigan  
*Theravāda Art and Architecture*
- Karen L. Brock  
Albuquerque, New Mexico  
*Daitokuji*  
*Hōryūji and Tōdaiji*  
*Japan, Buddhist Art in*  
*Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin)*  
*Portraiture*
- Johannes Bronkhorst  
University of Lausanne, Switzerland  
*Hinduism and Buddhism*  
*Karma (Action)*  
*Mindfulness*
- Jeffrey Broughton  
California State University, Long  
Beach  
*Bodhidharma*  
*Fazang*  
*Zongmi*

- Robert L. Brown  
University of California, Los Angeles  
Los Angeles County Museum of Art  
*Buddha Images*  
*Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula*  
*Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in*
- Robert E. Buswell, Jr.  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Doubt*  
*Ichchantika*
- José Ignacio Cabezón  
University of California, Santa  
Barbara  
*Prayer*  
*Scripture*
- Jason A. Carbine  
University of Chicago  
*Burmese, Buddhist Literature in*
- David W. Chappell  
Soka University of America  
*Repentance and Confession*
- Pattaratorn Chirapravati  
California State University,  
Sacramento  
*Ayutthaya*  
*Sukhothai*
- Eunsu Cho  
University of Michigan  
*Fanwang jing (Brahmā's Net*  
*Sātra)*  
*Wōnch'ūk*  
*Wōnhyo*
- Sungtaek Cho  
Korea University  
*Huyōng*  
*Nine Mountains School of Sōn*  
*Yujōng*
- William Chu  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Deqing*  
*Path*  
*Yinshun*  
*Zhuhong*
- Bongkil Chung  
Florida International University  
*Wōnbulgyo*
- Philip Clart  
University of Missouri–Columbia  
*Folk Religion, China*  
*Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings*
- Richard S. Cohen  
University of California, San Diego  
*India*
- Alan Cole  
Lewis and Clark College  
*Family, Buddhism and the*
- Collett Cox  
University of Washington  
*Abhidharma*  
*Abhidharmakośabhāṣya*  
*Dharmaguptaka*  
*Mahīśāsaka*  
*Mainstream Buddhist Schools*  
*Sarvāstivāda and*  
*Mūlasarvāstivāda*  
*Sautrāntika*
- Dan Cozort  
Dickinson College  
*Soteriology*
- Kate Crosby  
University of London, United  
Kingdom  
*Persecutions*  
*Theravāda*
- Bryan J. Cuevas  
Florida State University  
*Intermediate States*  
*Rebirth*  
*Śaṃsāra*  
*Tibetan Book of the Dead*
- A. L. Dallapiccola  
University of Edinburgh, United  
Kingdom  
*Stūpa*
- Jacob P. Dalton  
International Dunhuang Project,  
British Library  
*Bsam yas (Samye)*  
*Bsam yas Debate*  
*Ḍākinī*  
*Klong chen pa (Longchenpa)*  
*Padmasambhava*  
*Rnying ma (Nyingma)*
- Ronald M. Davidson  
Fairfield University  
*Initiation*  
*Sa skya Paṇḍita (Sakya Paṇḍita)*  
*Tantra*  
*Tibet*  
*Vajrayāna*
- Max Deeg  
University of Vienna, Austria
- Devadatta*  
*Mahākāśyapa*
- Mahinda Deegalle  
Bath Spa University College, United  
Kingdom  
*Education*
- Karen Derris  
Harvard University  
*Dhyāna (Trance State)*
- James C. Dobbins  
Oberlin College  
*Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu)*  
*Buddhism in Japan*  
*Genshin*  
*Hōnen*  
*Kamakura Buddhism, Japan*  
*Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo;*  
*Korean, Yōmbul)*  
*Rennyō*  
*Shinran*
- Georges B. J. Dreyfus  
Williams College  
*Dge lugs (Geluk)*  
*Tsong kha pa*
- Thomas DuBois  
National University of Singapore  
*Millenarianism and Millenarian*  
*Movements*
- Paul Dundas  
University of Edinburgh, United  
Kingdom  
*Jainism and Buddhism*
- John Dunne  
University of Wisconsin, Madison  
*Dharmakīrti*  
*Dignāga*  
*Logic*
- Johan Elverskog  
Southern Methodist University  
*Islam and Buddhism*
- Sarah Fremerman  
Stanford University  
*Ikkyū*
- Rebecca French  
State University of New York, Buffalo  
*Law and Buddhism*
- David L. Gardiner  
Colorado College  
*Ennin*  
*Saichō*

- Alexander Gardner  
University of Michigan  
*Lama*  
*Oṃ maṇi padme hūṃ*
- Suzanne Gay  
Oberlin College  
*Provincial Temple System*  
*(Kokubunji, Rishōtō)*
- Rupert Gethin  
University of Bristol, United Kingdom  
*Cosmology*  
*Heavens*  
*Realms of Existence*
- Daniel A. Getz  
Bradley University  
*Precepts*  
*Pure Land Buddhism*  
*Sentient Beings*
- Robert M. Gimello  
Harvard University  
*Bodhi (Awakening)*  
*Satori (Awakening)*
- Hank Glassman  
Haverford College  
*Sexuality*
- Roger Goeppe  
Cologne Museum, Germany  
*Alchi*  
*Himalayas, Buddhist Art in*
- Luis O. Gómez  
University of Michigan  
*Amitābha*  
*Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)*  
*Desire*  
*Faith*  
*Meditation*  
*Nirvāṇa*  
*Psychology*  
*Pure Lands*
- Allan G. Grapard  
University of California, Santa Barbara  
*Dōkyō*  
*Space, Sacred*
- Paul Groner  
University of Virginia  
*Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan*
- William H. Grosnick  
La Salle University  
*Tathāgatagarbha*
- Natalie D. Gummer  
Beloit College  
*Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra*  
*Women*
- Anne Hansen  
University of Wisconsin, Milwaukee  
*Cambodia*  
*Khmer, Buddhist Literature in*
- Helen Hardacre  
Harvard University  
*Laity*
- Paul Harrison  
University of Canterbury, New Zealand  
*An Shigao*  
*Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha)*  
*Canon*  
*Mahāsāṃghika School*  
*Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*
- Jens-Uwe Hartmann  
University of Munich, Germany  
*Āgama/Nikāya*  
*Languages*
- Richard P. Hayes  
University of New Mexico  
*Language, Buddhist Philosophy of*
- Maria Heim  
California State University, Long Beach  
*Dāna (Giving)*  
*Evil*
- Steven Heine  
Florida International University  
*Oxherding Pictures*
- James W. Heisig  
Nanzan Institute for Religion and Culture, Nanzan University, Japan  
*Christianity and Buddhism*
- John Clifford Holt  
Bowdoin College  
*Refuges*  
*Sri Lanka*
- Ding-hwa Hsieh  
Truman State University  
*Awakening of Faith (Dasheng qixin lun)*  
*Taixu*  
*Zonggao*
- Chi-chiang Huang  
Hobart and William Smith Colleges  
*Dharmadhātu*  
*Śikṣānanda*  
*Ūch'ōn*
- Jamie Hubbard  
Smith College  
*Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō)*  
*Sanjie Jiao (Three Stages School)*  
*Usury*
- Nobumi Iyanaga  
Tokyo, Japan  
*Tachikawaryū*
- Roger R. Jackson  
Carleton College  
*Candrakīrti*  
*Karuṇā (Compassion)*  
*Prajñā (Wisdom)*  
*Śūnyatā (Emptiness)*  
*Upāya*
- Richard M. Jaffe  
Duke University  
*Clerical Marriage in Japan*  
*Inoue Enryō*  
*Meiji Buddhist Reform*  
*Murakami Senshō*  
*Suzuki, D. T.*
- Charles B. Jones  
The Catholic University of America  
*Taiwan*
- John Jorgensen  
Griffith University, Australia  
*Chan School*  
*Hakuin Ekaku*
- Leslie S. Kawamura  
University of Calgary  
*Bodhisattva(s)*  
*Pāramitā (Perfection)*
- Hee-Sung Keel  
Sogang University, South Korea  
*Korea*
- John P. Keenan  
Middlebury College  
*Asaṅga*
- Richard K. Kent  
Franklin and Marshall College  
*Arhat Images*
- George A. Keyworth  
University of Colorado  
*Confucianism and Buddhism*  
*Juefan (Huihong)*  
*Poetry and Buddhism*

- Peter Khoroché  
Cambridge, United Kingdom  
*Āryasūtra*  
*Aśvaghōṣa*  
*Jātakamālā*  
*Mātr̥ceṭa*
- John Kieschnick  
Institute of History and Philology,  
Academia Sinica, Taiwan  
*Biographies of Eminent Monks*  
(*Gaoseng zhuan*)  
*Daoxuan*  
*Miracles*  
*Monks*
- Jongmyung Kim  
Yongsan University, South Korea  
*Chogyé School*  
*Korean, Buddhist Influences on*  
*Vernacular Literature in*
- Richard King  
Liverpool Hope University College,  
United Kingdom  
*Colonialism and Buddhism*
- Jacob N. Kinnard  
College of William and Mary  
*Divinities*  
*Indra*  
*Māra*  
*Viṣṇu*  
*Worship*  
*Yakṣa*
- Ria Kloppenborg  
Utrecht University, Netherlands  
*Pratyekabuddha*
- Karil J. Kucera  
St. Olaf College  
*Bāmiyān*  
*Hells, Images of*
- Charles Lachman  
University of Oregon  
*Bodhisattva Images*  
*Chan Art*
- François Lagirarde  
Ecole Française d'Extrême-Orient,  
Bangkok, Thailand  
*Gavāmpati*
- Lewis Lancaster  
University of California, Berkeley  
*Prajñāpāramitā Literature*
- Karen Lang  
University of Virginia
- Āryadeva  
*Madhyamaka School*
- Junghee Lee  
Portland State University  
*Sōkkuram*
- Denise Patry Leidy  
Metropolitan Museum of Art, New  
York  
*Cave Sanctuaries*  
*Maṇḍala*  
*Mudrā and Visual Imagery*
- Todd T. Lewis  
College of the Holy Cross  
*Nepal*  
*Newari, Buddhist Literature in*
- Dan Lusthaus  
University of Missouri–Columbia  
*Faxiang School*  
*Vasubandhu*  
*Vijñānavāda*  
*Yogācāra School*
- Victor H. Mair  
University of Pennsylvania  
*Bianwen*  
*Bianxiang (Transformation*  
*Tableaux)*  
*Chinese, Buddhist Influences on*  
*Vernacular Literature in*  
*Entertainment and Performance*
- John J. Makransky  
Boston College  
*Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies*
- Eleanor Mannikka  
Indiana University of Pennsylvania  
*Bayon*
- John C. Maraldo  
University of North Florida  
*History*
- Peter Masefield  
University of Sydney, Australia  
*Ghosts and Spirits*  
*Milindapañha*
- Gail Maxwell  
Los Angeles County Museum of Art  
*Buddha, Life of the, in Art*  
*Esoteric Art, South and Southeast*  
*Asia*  
*India, Buddhist Art in*
- Alexander L. Mayer  
University of Illinois at Urbana-  
Champaign
- Commentarial Literature*  
*Dreams*  
*Faxian*  
*Xuanzang*  
*Yijing*
- Richard D. McBride II  
The University of Iowa  
*Dhāraṇī*  
*Mantra*  
*Printing Technologies*  
*Samguk yusa (Memorabilia of the*  
*Three Kingdoms)*
- Justin McDaniel  
Harvard University  
*Laos*  
*Paritta and Rakṣā Texts*
- John R. McRae  
Indiana University  
*Heart Sūtra*  
*Huineng*  
*Kumārajīva*  
*Ordination*  
*Platform Sūtra of the Sixth*  
*Patriarch (Liuzu tan jing)*
- John N. Miksic  
National University of Singapore  
*Borobudur*  
*Indonesia, Buddhist Art in*
- Pankaj N. Mohan  
University of Sydney, Australia  
*Kingship*
- Anne E. Monius  
Harvard University  
*India, South*
- Robert E. Morrell  
Washington University in St. Louis  
*Japanese, Buddhist Influences on*  
*Vernacular Literature in*
- Anne Nishimura Morse  
Museum of Fine Arts, Boston  
*Ritual Objects*
- Susanne Mrozik  
Western Michigan University  
*Mahāmaudgalyāyana*  
*Śāriputra*  
*Upāli*
- A. Charles Muller  
Toyo Gakuen University, Japan  
*Hyesim*  
*Kihwa*  
*Renwang jing (Humane Kings*  
*Sātra)*

- Jan Nattier  
Indiana University  
*Akṣobhya*  
*Buddha(s)*  
*Central Asia*  
*Conversion*  
*Decline of the Dharma*  
*Dīpaṅkara*  
*Vipaśyin*
- Jason Neelis  
University of Washington  
*India, Northwest*  
*Silk Road*
- John Newman  
New College of Florida  
*Kālacakra*
- Cuong Tu Nguyen  
George Mason University  
*Vietnam*  
*Vietnamese, Buddhist Influences on Literature in*
- Ranjini Obeyesekere  
Princeton University  
*Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in*
- Reiko Ohnuma  
Dartmouth College  
*Gender*  
*Jātaka*  
*Viśvantara*
- Patrick Olivelle  
University of Texas at Austin  
*Hair*
- Grant A. Olson  
Northern Illinois University  
*Thai, Buddhist Literature in*
- Charles D. Orzech  
University of North Carolina,  
Greensboro  
*Tantra*
- Youngsook Pak  
University of London, United  
Kingdom  
*Korea, Buddhist Art in*
- Jin Y. Park  
American University  
*Communism and Buddhism*
- Pori Park  
Arizona State University  
*Han Yongun*  
*Nationalism and Buddhism*
- Sung Bae Park  
State University of New York at  
Stony Brook  
*Chinul*
- Bhikkhu Pasadika  
Philipps University, Marburg,  
Germany  
*Ānanda*  
*Rāhula*
- Richard K. Payne  
Institute of Buddhist Studies,  
Graduate Theological Union,  
Berkeley, California  
*Ritual*
- Linda Penkower  
University of Pittsburgh  
*Zhanran*
- Mario Poceski  
University of Florida  
*Chengguan*  
*China*  
*Daoyi (Mazu)*  
*Huayan jing*  
*Huayan School*
- William Powell  
University of California, Santa  
Barbara  
*Martial Arts*
- John Powers  
Australian National University,  
Australia  
*Hermeneutics*  
*Lañkāvatāra-sūtra*  
*Samdhinirmocana-sūtra*
- Patrick A. Pranke  
University of Michigan  
*Abhiññā (Higher Knowledges)*  
*Myanmar*  
*Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta*  
*Vidyādhara*  
*Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)*
- Charles S. Prebish  
The Pennsylvania State University  
*Councils, Buddhist*
- Leonard C. D. C. Priestley  
University of Toronto  
*Pudgalavāda*
- Benille Priyanka  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in*
- Christopher S. Queen  
Harvard University  
*Ambedkar, B. R.*  
*Buddhadāsa*  
*Engaged Buddhism*  
*Thich Nhat Hanh*
- Andrew Quintman  
University of Michigan  
*Bka' brgyud (Kagyū)*  
*Jo khang*  
*Kailāśa (Kailash)*  
*Karma pa*  
*Ma gcig lab sgron (Machig Lapdön)*  
*Mahāmudrā*  
*Mahāsiddha*  
*Mar pa (Marpa)*  
*Mi la ras pa (Milarepa)*  
*Nāropa*  
*Potala*
- Fabio Rambelli  
Sapporo University, Japan  
*Hachiman*  
*Honji Suijaku*  
*Local Divinities and Buddhism*  
*Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism*
- Ian Reader  
Lancaster University, United Kingdom  
*Folk Religion, Japan*
- Barbara E. Reed  
St. Olaf College  
*Ethics*
- Eric Reinders  
Emory University  
*Etiquette*  
*Politics and Buddhism*
- Marylin Martin Rhie  
Smith College  
*China, Buddhist Art in*
- Michael R. Rhum  
Chicago, Illinois  
*Amulets and Talismans*  
*Folk Religion, Southeast Asia*
- David E. Riggs  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Ryōkan*
- Brian O. Ruppert  
University of Illinois at Urbana-  
Champaign  
*Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism*



- Jewels*  
*Relics And Relics Cults*
- Richard Salomon  
University of Washington  
*Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in*
- Jeffrey Samuels  
Western Kentucky University  
*Monasticism*
- K. T. S. Sarao  
Chung-Hwa Institute of Buddhist  
Studies, Taiwan  
*Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self)*
- Morten Schlütter  
Yale University  
*Kōan*  
*Mozhao Chan (Silent Illumination*  
*Chan)*
- Juliane Schober  
Arizona State University  
*Biography*
- Gregory Schopen  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Diamond Sūtra*  
*Mahāyāna*  
*Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya*  
*Vinaya*
- Jonathan A. Silk  
University of California, Los Angeles  
*Buddhist Studies*  
*Slavery*
- Andrew Skilton  
Cardiff University, United Kingdom  
*Disciples of the Buddha*  
*Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in*  
*Vimalakīrti*
- Henrik H. Sørensen  
Seminar for Buddhist Studies,  
Copenhagen, Denmark  
*Huayan Art*  
*Kyōnghō*  
*Mijiao (Esoteric) School*
- Gareth Sparham  
University of Michigan  
*Atisha*  
*Bu ston (Bu tön)*  
*Dalai Lama*  
*Panchen Lama*  
*Saṅgha*
- Alan Sponberg  
University of Montana  
*Kuiji*  
*Maitreya*
- Cyrus Stearns  
Clinton, Washington  
*Sa skya (Sakya)*
- Nancy Shatzman Steinhardt  
University of Pennsylvania  
*Monastic Architecture*
- Jacqueline I. Stone  
Princeton University  
*Daimoku*  
*Lotus Sūtra*  
*(Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)*  
*Nichiren*  
*Nichiren School*  
*Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)*  
*Sōka Gakkai*
- Tanya Storch  
University of the Pacific  
*Dao'an*  
*Sengzhao*  
*Zhao lun*
- Paul Strachan  
Gerona, Spain  
*Ananda Temple*  
*Myanmar, Buddhist Art in*  
*Shwedagon*
- John S. Strong  
Bates College  
*Ālayavijñāna*  
*Aśoka*  
*Buddhacarita*  
*Buddhaghosa*  
*Hīnayāna*  
*Lalitavistara*  
*Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra*  
*Mahāvastu*  
*Sūtra*  
*Tathāgata*  
*Upagupta*
- Paul L. Swanson  
Nanzan Institute for Religion and  
Culture, Nanzan University, Japan  
*Shugendō*
- Donald K. Swearer  
Swarthmore College  
*Consecration*  
*Thailand*
- George J. Tanabe, Jr.  
University of Hawaii  
*Abortion*  
*Chanting and Liturgy*  
*Kōben*
- Merit and Merit-Making*  
*Mizuko Kuyō*  
*Nara Buddhism*
- Willa Jane Tanabe  
University of Hawaii  
*Robes and Clothing*  
*Sūtra Illustrations*
- Joel Tatelman  
Social Sciences and Humanities  
Research Council of Canada  
*Anāthapiṇḍada*  
*Avadāna*  
*Avadānaśataka*  
*Divyāvadāna*
- Stephen F. Teiser  
Princeton University  
*Folk Religion: An Overview*  
*Ghost Festival*  
*Hells*
- Thanissaro Bhikkhu (Geoffrey  
DeGraff)  
Metta Forest Monastery, Valley  
Center, California  
*Wilderness Monks*
- Kyoko Tokuno  
University of Washington  
*Apocrypha*  
*Catalogues of Scriptures*
- Kevin Trainor  
University of Vermont  
*Pilgrimage*
- Karma Lekshe Tsomo  
University of San Diego  
*Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī*  
*Nuns*  
*Prātimokṣa*
- Thomas A. Tweed  
University of North Carolina  
*United States*
- Patrick R. Uhlmann  
University of California,  
Los Angeles  
*Ūsang*
- Oskar von Hinüber  
University of Freiburg,  
Germany  
*Dhammapada*  
*Pāli, Buddhist Literature in*
- Mariko Namba Walter  
Harvard University  
*Ancestors*

Jonathan S. Walters  
Whitman College  
*Festivals and Calendrical Rituals*

Eugene Y. Wang  
Harvard University  
*Pure Land Art*

Paul B. Watt  
DePauw University  
*Jiun Onkō*  
*Tominaga Nakamoto*

Christian K. Wedemeyer  
University of Copenhagen, Denmark  
*Bon*

Albert Welter  
University of Winnipeg  
*Lineage*  
*Yanshou*  
*Zanning*

Roderick Whitfield  
University of London, United Kingdom  
*Central Asia, Buddhist Art in Dunhuang*  
*Famensi*  
*Reliquary*

Charles Willemen  
Academy of Sciences, Belgium  
*Dharma and Dharmas*

Duncan Williams  
University of California, Irvine  
*Parish (Danka, Terauke) System in Japan*  
*Temple System in Japan*

Paul Williams  
University of Bristol, United Kingdom  
*Bhāvaviveka*  
*Bodhicaryāvatāra*  
*Nāgārjuna*  
*Śāntideva*

Liz Wilson  
Miami University of Ohio  
*Ascetic Practices*  
*Body, Perspectives on the*

Dorothy Wong  
University of Virginia  
*Longmen*  
*Yun'gang*

Leela Aditi Wood  
University of Michigan

*Ajaṅṭā*  
*Bodh Gayā*  
*Jātaka, Illustrations of Mahabodhi Temple*  
*Sāñcī*

Dale S. Wright  
Occidental College  
*Philosophy*

Nobuyoshi Yamabe  
Kyushu Ryukoku Junior College, Japan  
*Consciousness, Theories of*

Michael Zimmermann  
University of Hamburg, Germany  
*War*

Brook Ziporyn  
Northwestern University  
*Mohe Zhiguan*  
*Tiantai School*  
*Zhili*  
*Zhiyi*

Kenneth G. Zysk  
University of Copenhagen, Denmark  
*Medicine*

*This page intentionally left blank*

# SYNOPTIC OUTLINE OF ENTRIES



This outline provides a general overview of the conceptual structure of the *Encyclopedia of Buddhism*. The outline is organized under twenty-four major categories, a few of which are subcategorized. The entries are listed alphabetically within each category or subcategory. For ease of reference, one entry may be listed under several categories.

## Art History

Ajaṅṭā  
Arhat Images  
Bāmiyān  
Bayon  
Bianxiang (Transformation Tableaux)  
Bodh Gayā  
Bodhisattva Images  
Borobudur  
Buddha Images  
Buddha, Life of the, in Art  
Cave Sanctuaries  
Central Asia, Buddhist Art in  
Chan Art  
China, Buddhist Art in  
Daitokuji  
Dunhuang  
Esoteric Art, East Asia  
Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
Famensi  
Hells, Images of  
Himalayas, Buddhist Art in  
Hōryūji and Tōdaiji  
Huayan Art  
India, Buddhist Art in  
Indonesia, Buddhist Art in  
Japan, Buddhist Art in  
Jātaka, Illustrations of  
Jewels  
Jo khang  
Kailāśa (Kailash)  
Korea, Buddhist Art in  
Longmen  
Mahābodhi Temple  
Maṅḍala  
Monastic Architecture  
Mudrā and Visual Imagery

Myanmar, Buddhist Art in  
Oxherding Pictures  
Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin)  
Portraiture  
Potala  
Pure Land Art  
Reliquary  
Sāñcī  
Shwedagon  
Sōkkuram  
Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in  
Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in  
Stūpa  
Sūtra Illustrations  
Theravāda Art and Architecture  
Yun'gang

## Biographies

Ambedkar, B. R.  
Anagārika Dharmapāla  
Ānanda  
Anāthapiṇḍada  
An Shigao  
Arhat  
Āryadeva  
Āryaśūra  
Asaṅga  
Aśoka  
Āsvaghoṣa  
Atisha  
Bhāvaviveka  
Biographies of Eminent Monks  
(Gaoseng zhuan)  
Biography  
Bodhidharma  
Buddhadāsa  
Buddhaghosa

Buddha, Life of the  
Bu ston (Bu tön)  
Candrakīrti  
Chengguan  
Chinul  
Dalai Lama  
Dao'an  
Daosheng  
Daoxuan  
Daoyi (Mazu)  
Deqing  
Devadatta  
Dharmakīrti  
Dharmarakṣa  
Dignāga  
Disciples of the Buddha  
Dōgen  
Dōkyō  
Ennin  
Faxian  
Fazang  
Ganjin  
Gavāmpati  
Genshin  
Gyōnen  
Hakuin Ekaku  
Han Yongun  
Hōnen  
Huineng  
Huiyuan  
Hyesim  
Hyujōng  
Ikkyū  
Ingen Ryūki  
Inoue Enryō  
Ippen Chishin  
Jiun Onkō

Juefan (Huihong)  
 Karma pa  
 Kihwa  
 Klong chen pa (Longchenpa)  
 Kōben  
 Kuiji  
 Kūkai  
 Kumārajīva  
 Kyōnghō  
 Ma gcig lab sgron (Machig Labdrön)  
 Mahākāśyapa  
 Mahāmaudgalyāyana  
 Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī  
 Mar pa (Marpa)  
 Mātṛceṭa  
 Mī la ras pa (Milarepa)  
 Murakami Senshō  
 Nāgārjuna  
 Nāropa  
 Nichiren  
 Padmasambhava  
 Panchen Lama  
 Paramārtha  
 Rāhula  
 Rennyō  
 Ryōkan  
 Saichō  
 Śāntideva  
 Śāriputra  
 Sa skya Paṇḍita (Sakya Paṇḍita)  
 Sengzhao  
 Shinran  
 Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi)  
 Śikṣānanda  
 Suzuki, D. T.  
 Taixu  
 Takuan Sōhō  
 Tominaga Nakamoto  
 Tsong kha pa  
 Ūich'ōn  
 Ūisang  
 Upagupta  
 Upāli  
 Vasubandhu  
 Vimalakīrti  
 Wōnch'ūk  
 Wōnhyo  
 Xuanzang  
 Yanshou  
 Yijing  
 Yinshun  
 Yixuan  
 Yujōng  
 Zanning  
 Zhanran  
 Zhili  
 Zhiyi  
 Zhuhong  
 Zonggao  
 Zongmi

### **Bodhisattvas**

Bodhicaryāvatāra  
 Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)  
 Bodhisattva(s)  
 Bodhisattva Images  
 Karuṇā (Compassion)  
 Maitreya  
 Pāramitā (Perfection)  
 Prajñā (Wisdom)  
 Upāya  
 Vimalakīrti  
 Viśvantara

### **Buddhas and Buddhology**

Akṣobhya  
 Amitābha  
 Anuttarasamyakṣambodhi (Complete, Perfect Awakening)  
 Biography  
 Bodh Gayā  
 Bodhi (Awakening)  
 Bodhicaryāvatāra  
 Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)  
 Buddha(s)  
 Buddhacarita  
 Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies  
 Buddha Images  
 Buddha, Life of the  
 Buddha, Life of the, in Art  
 Buddha-nature  
 Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha)  
 Buddhavacana (Word of the Buddha)  
 Dīpaṃkara  
 Divyāvadāna  
 Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra  
 Māra  
 Nirvāṇa  
 Pāramitā (Perfection)  
 Prajñā (Wisdom)  
 Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)  
 Pratyekabuddha  
 Tathāgata  
 Tathāgatagarbha  
 Vipasyin

### **Cosmology**

Buddha(s)  
 Cosmology  
 Death  
 Heavens  
 Hells  
 Hells, Images of  
 Indra  
 Intermediate States  
 Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)  
 Pratyekabuddha  
 Pure Lands  
 Realms of Existence

Rebirth  
 Saṃsāra  
 Sentient Beings  
 Tibetan Book of the Dead

### **Countries and Regions**

#### **Central Asia**

An Shigao  
 Bāmiyān  
 Central Asia  
 Central Asia, Buddhist Art in  
 Dunhuang  
 Gāndhāri, Buddhist Literature in  
 Huayan jing  
 India, Northwest  
 Islam and Buddhism  
 Kumārajīva  
 Silk Road

#### **China**

Ancestors  
 An Shigao  
 Apocrypha  
 Awakening of Faith (Dasheng qixin lun)  
 Bianwen  
 Bianxiang (Transformation Tableaux)  
 Biographies of Eminent Monks (Gaoseng zhuan)  
 Bodhidharma  
 Bsam yas Debate  
 Catalogues of Scriptures  
 Cave Sanctuaries  
 Chan Art  
 Chan School  
 Chengguan  
 China  
 China, Buddhist Art in  
 Communism and Buddhism  
 Confucianism and Buddhism  
 Dao'an  
 Daoism and Buddhism  
 Daosheng  
 Daoxuan  
 Daoyi (Mazu)  
 Deqing  
 Dharmarakṣa  
 Dunhuang  
 Ennin  
 Esoteric Art, East Asia  
 Famensi  
 Fanwang jing (Brahmā's Net Sūtra)  
 Faxian  
 Fazang  
 Folk Religion, China  
 Ganjin  
 Heart Sūtra  
 Huayan Art  
 Huayan jing  
 Huayan School  
 Huineng  
 Huiyuan

- Juefan (Huihong)  
 Kōan  
 Kuiji  
 Kumārajīva  
 Lineage  
 Longmen  
 Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)  
 Maitreya  
 Martial Arts  
 Mijiao (Esoteric) School  
 Mohe Zhiguan  
 Mozhao Chan (Silent Illumination Chan)  
 Nirvāṇa Sūtra  
 Oxherding Pictures  
 Paramārtha  
 Persecutions  
 Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch  
 (Liuzu tan jing)  
 Poetry and Buddhism  
 Pure Land Buddhism  
 Pure Land Schools  
 Renwang jing (Humane Kings Sūtra)  
 Sanjie Jiao (Three Stages School)  
 Sengzhao  
 Śikṣānanda  
 Silk Road  
 Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings  
 Taiwan  
 Taixu  
 Tiantai School  
 Xuanzang  
 Yanshou  
 Yijing  
 Yinshun  
 Yixuan  
 Yun'gang  
 Zanning  
 Zhanran  
 Zhao lun  
 Zhili  
 Zhiyi  
 Zhuhong  
 Zonggao  
 Zongmi
- Europe and the United States**  
 Buddhist Studies  
 Christianity and Buddhism  
 Dalai Lama  
 Engaged Buddhism  
 Europe  
 Suzuki, D. T.  
 Thich Nhat Hanh  
 United States  
 Zen, Popular Conceptions of
- India, the Himalayas, and Nepal**  
 Ajaṅṭā  
 Alchi  
 Ambedkar, B. R.  
 Anagārika Dharmapāla  
 Āryadeva
- Āryasūtra  
 Asaṅga  
 Aśoka  
 Āsvaghoṣa  
 Atisha  
 Bhāvaviveka  
 Bodh Gayā  
 Buddhacarita  
 Candrakīrti  
 Cave Sanctuaries  
 Councils, Buddhist  
 Devadatta  
 Dhammapada  
 Dharmaguptaka  
 Dharmakīrti  
 Diamond Sūtra  
 Dignāga  
 Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
 Faxian  
 Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in  
 Gavāṃpati  
 Heart Sūtra  
 Himalayas, Buddhist Art in  
 Hīnayāna  
 Hinduism and Buddhism  
 India  
 India, Buddhist Art in  
 India, Northwest  
 India, South  
 Islam and Buddhism  
 Jainism and Buddhism  
 Jātaka  
 Jātaka, Illustrations of  
 Jātakamālā  
 Kailāśa (Kailash)  
 Kālacakra  
 Kingship  
 Lalitavistara  
 Language, Buddhist Philosophy of  
 Languages  
 Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra  
 Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)  
 Madhyamaka School  
 Mahākāśyapa  
 Mahāmaudgalyāyana  
 Mahāmudrā  
 Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī  
 Mahāsāṃghika School  
 Mahāsiddha  
 Mahāvastu  
 Mahāyāna  
 Mahīśāsaka  
 Mainstream Buddhist Schools  
 Mātṛceṭa  
 Milindapañha  
 Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya  
 Nāgārjuna  
 Nāropa  
 Newari, Buddhist Literature in  
 Nirvāṇa Sūtra  
 Padmasambhava
- Pāli, Buddhist Literature in  
 Paritta and Rakṣā Texts  
 Persecutions  
 Prajñāpāramitā Literature  
 Prātimokṣa  
 Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra  
 Puḍgalavāda  
 Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra  
 Sāncī  
 Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in  
 Śāntideva  
 Śāriputra  
 Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda  
 Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta  
 Sautrāntika  
 Sukhāvativyūha-sūtra  
 Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra  
 Tantra  
 Upagupta  
 Upāli  
 Vajrayāna  
 Vaṃsa  
 Vasubandhu  
 Vidyādhara  
 Vijñānavāda  
 Vimalakīrti  
 Vinaya  
 Viṣṇu  
 Yijing  
 Yogācāra School
- Japan**  
 Buddhist Studies  
 Chan Art  
 Chan School  
 Clerical Marriage in Japan  
 Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō)  
 Daimoku  
 Daitokuji  
 Dōgen  
 Dōkyō  
 Ennin  
 Esoteric Art, East Asia  
 Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism  
 in Japan  
 Folk Religion, Japan  
 Ganjin  
 Genshin  
 Gyōnen  
 Hachiman  
 Hakuin Ekaku  
 Hōnen  
 Honji Suijaku  
 Hōryūji and Tōdaiji  
 Huayan Art  
 Huayan School  
 Ikkyū  
 Ingen Ryūki  
 Inoue Enryō  
 Ippen Chishin  
 Japan

Japan, Buddhist Art in  
 Japanese, Buddhist Influences on  
   Vernacular Literature in  
 Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism  
 Jiun Onkō  
 Kamakura Buddhism, Japan  
 Kōan  
 Kōben  
 Konjaku Monogatari  
 Kūkai  
 Laity  
 Local Divinities and Buddhism  
 Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)  
 Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan  
 Meiji Buddhist Reform  
 Mizuko Kuyō  
 Murakami Senshō  
 Nara Buddhism  
 Nichiren  
 Nichiren School  
 Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)  
 Parish (Danka, Terauke) System in Japan  
 Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin)  
 Provincial Temple System (Kokubunji,  
   Rishōtō)  
 Pure Land Buddhism  
 Pure Land Schools  
 Rennyō  
 Ryōkan  
 Saichō  
 Satori (Awakening)  
 Shingon Buddhism, Japan  
 Shinran  
 Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism  
 Shōbōgenzō  
 Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi)  
 Shugendō  
 Sōka Gakkai  
 Suzuki, D. T.  
 Tachikawaryū  
 Takuan Sōhō  
 Tantra  
 Tiantai School  
 Tominaga Nakamoto  
 Vajrayāna  
 Zen, Popular Conceptions of

**Korea**

Chan Art  
 Chan School  
 Chinul  
 Chogye School  
 Confucianism and Buddhism  
 Esoteric Art, East Asia  
 Han Yongun  
 Huayan Art  
 Huayan School  
 Hyesim  
 Hyujōng  
 Kihwa  
 Kōan

Korea  
 Korea, Buddhist Art in  
 Korean, Buddhist Influences on  
   Vernacular Literature in  
 Kyōngghō  
 Nine Mountains School of Sōn  
 Samguk Yusa (Memorabilia of the Three  
   Kingdoms)  
 Sōkkuram  
 Tiantai School  
 Ūich'ōn  
 Ūisang  
 Wōnbulgyo  
 Wōnch'ūk  
 Wōnhyo  
 Yujōng

**Southeast Asia**

Amulets and Talismans  
 Ananda Temple  
 Ancestors  
 Ayutthaya  
 Bayon  
 Borobudur  
 Buddhādāsa  
 Burmese, Buddhist Literature in  
 Cambodia  
 Communism and Buddhism  
 Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
 Folk Religion, Southeast Asia  
 Hinduism and Buddhism  
 Indonesia and the Malay peninsula  
 Islam and Buddhism  
 Khmer, Buddhist Literature in  
 Laos  
 Local Divinities and Buddhism  
 Myanmar  
 Myanmar, Buddhist Art in  
 Pāli, Buddhist Literature in  
 Paritta and Rakṣā Texts  
 Shwedagon  
 Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in  
 Sukhothai  
 Thai, Buddhist Literature in  
 Thailand  
 Theravāda  
 Theravāda Art and Architecture  
 Thich Nhat Hanh  
 Upagupta  
 Vietnam  
 Vietnamese, Buddhist Influences on  
   Literature in

**Sri Lanka**

Anagārika Dharmapāla  
 Buddhaghosa  
 Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
 Hinduism and Buddhism  
 Pāli, Buddhist Literature in  
 Paritta and Rakṣā Texts  
 Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in

Sri Lanka  
 Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in  
 Theravāda  
 Theravāda Art and Architecture  
 Vamsa

**Tibet and Mongolia**

Atisha  
 Bka' brgyud (Kagyū)  
 Bon  
 Bsam yas (Samye)  
 Bsam yas Debate  
 Bu ston (Bu tōn)  
 Communism and Buddhism  
 Ḍākinī  
 Dalai Lama  
 Dge lugs (Gelug)  
 Engaged Buddhism  
 Islam and Buddhism  
 Jo khang  
 Kailāśa (Kailash)  
 Karma pa  
 Klong chen pa (Longchenpa)  
 Lama  
 Ma gcig lab sgron (Machig Labdrön)  
 Mahāmudrā  
 Mahāsiddha  
 Maṇḍala  
 Mar pa (Marpa)  
 Mi la ras pa (Milarepa)  
 Mongolia  
 Nāropa  
 Oṃ Maṇi Padme Hūṃ  
 Padmasambhava  
 Panchen Lama  
 Potala  
 Rnying ma (Nyingma)  
 Sa skya (Sakya)  
 Sa skya Paṇḍita (Sakya Paṇḍita)  
 Tantra  
 Tibet  
 Tibetan Book of the Dead  
 Tsong kha pa  
 Vajrayāna  
 Vidyādhara

**Disciples of the Buddha**

Ānanda  
 Anāthapiṇḍada  
 Arhat  
 Disciples of the Buddha  
 Gavāṃpati  
 Mahākāśyapa  
 Mahāmaudgalyāyana  
 Mahāprajāpati Gautamī  
 Ordination  
 Rāhula  
 Saṅgha  
 Śāriputra  
 Upagupta  
 Upāli

**Divinities, Ghosts, and Spirits**

Ancestors  
 Ḍākinī  
 Death  
 Divinities  
 Ghost Festival  
 Ghosts and Spirits  
 Hachiman  
 Heavens  
 Hells  
 Hells, Images of  
 Honji Suijaku  
 Indra  
 Intermediate States  
 Local Divinities and Buddhism  
 Māra  
 Viṣṇu  
 Yakṣa

**Doctrines and Doctrinal Study**

Abhidharma  
 Ālayavijñāna  
 Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self)  
 Anitya (Impermanence)  
 Anuttarasamyaksambodhi (Complete, Perfect Awakening)  
 Ascetic Practices  
 Bodhi (Awakening)  
 Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)  
 Body, Perspectives on the  
 Bsam yas Debate  
 Buddha-nature  
 Buddhavaçana (Word of the Buddha)  
 Buddhist Studies  
 Consciousness, Theories of  
 Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō)  
 Dāna (Giving)  
 Death  
 Decline of the Dharma  
 Desire  
 Dhāraṇī  
 Dharma and Dharmas  
 Dharmadhātu  
 Dhyāna (Trance State)  
 Doubt  
 Duḥkha (Suffering)  
 Ethics  
 Evil  
 Faith  
 Four Noble Truths  
 Hermeneutics  
 Hīnayāna  
 Icchantika  
 Initiation  
 Intermediate States  
 Karma (Action)  
 Karuṇā (Compassion)  
 Language, Buddhist Philosophy of  
 Logic  
 Mindfulness  
 Nirvāna

Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)  
 Pāramitā (Perfection)  
 Path  
 Philosophy  
 Prajñā (Wisdom)  
 Praṭītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)  
 Psychology  
 Rebirth  
 Saṃsāra  
 Skandha (Aggregate)  
 Śūnyatā (Emptiness)  
 Tathāgatagarbha  
 Upāya  
 Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)

**Folk Religions and Popular Practices**

Amulets and Talismans  
 Ancestors  
 Arhat  
 Arhat Images  
 Ascetic Practices  
 Bianwen  
 Bianxiang (Transformation Tableaux)  
 Chanting and Liturgy  
 Cosmology  
 Ḍākinī  
 Daoism and Buddhism  
 Dāna (Giving)  
 Death  
 Dhāraṇī  
 Diet  
 Entertainment and Performance  
 Evil  
 Faith  
 Family, Buddhism and the  
 Festivals and Calendrical Rituals  
 Folk Religion: An Overview  
 Folk Religion, China  
 Folk Religion, Japan  
 Folk Religion, Southeast Asia  
 Gavāmpati  
 Ghost Festival  
 Ghosts and Spirits  
 Hachiman  
 Heart Sūtra  
 Heavens  
 Hells  
 Hells, Images of  
 Hinduism and Buddhism  
 Honji Suijaku  
 Indra  
 Initiation  
 Intermediate States  
 Karma (Action)  
 Laity  
 Local Divinities and Buddhism  
 Martial Arts  
 Merit and Merit-Making  
 Pilgrimage

Rebirth  
 Self-Immolation  
 Sentient Beings  
 Tibetan Book of the Dead  
 Upagupta  
 Vimalakīrti  
 Viṣṇu  
 Viśvantara

**Humanities, Thematic Entries**

Abortion  
 Body, Perspectives on the  
 Colonialism and Buddhism  
 Death  
 Desire  
 Education  
 Entertainment and Performance  
 Ethics  
 Evil  
 Family, Buddhism and the  
 Gender  
 Hermeneutics  
 Languages  
 Lineage  
 Mizuko Kuyō  
 Modernity and Buddhism  
 Nationalism and Buddhism  
 Persecutions  
 Philosophy  
 Psychology  
 Ritual  
 Sexuality  
 Slavery  
 Space, Sacred  
 War  
 Women

**Literary Genres and Collections**

Abhidharma  
 Āgama/Nikāya  
 Apocrypha  
 Avadāna  
 Bianwen  
 Biographies of Eminent Monks (Gaoseng zhuàn)  
 Biography  
 Canon  
 Catalogues of Scriptures  
 Commentarial Literature  
 Hermeneutics  
 Konjaku Monogatari  
 Languages  
 Poetry and Buddhism  
 Prajñāpāramitā Literature  
 Samguk Yusa (Memorabilia of the Three Kingdoms)  
 Scripture

**Literature, Indigenous; Buddhist Influences on**

Bianwen  
 Burmese, Buddhist Literature in



Chinese, Buddhist Influences on  
Vernacular Literature in  
Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in  
Japanese, Buddhist Influences on  
Vernacular Literature in  
Khmer, Buddhist Literature in  
Korean, Buddhist Influences on  
Vernacular Literature in  
Languages  
Newari, Buddhist Literature in  
Pāli, Buddhist Literature in  
Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in  
Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in  
Thai, Buddhist Literature in  
Vietnamese, Buddhist Influences on  
Literature in

### Material Culture

Printing Technologies  
Ritual Objects  
Robes and Clothing  
Silk Road

### Meditation and Practice

Abhijñā (Higher Knowledges)  
Ālayavijñāna  
Ascetic Practices  
Bodhi (Awakening)  
Bodhicaryāvatāra  
Buddhānumṣṭi (Recollection of the  
Buddha)  
Chan School  
Consciousness, Theories of  
Cosmology  
Daimoku  
Dāna (Giving)  
Death  
Dhyāna (Trance State)  
Doubt  
Duḥkha (Suffering)  
Ethics  
Faith  
Four Noble Truths  
Icchantika  
Intermediate States  
Kōan  
Lineage  
Logic  
Mahāmudrā  
Maṅḍala  
Mantra  
Martial Arts  
Meditation  
Mindfulness  
Miracles  
Mudrā and Visual Imagery  
Nirvāṇa  
Om Maṇi Padme Hūṃ  
Pāramitā (Perfection)  
Path  
Pilgrimage

Poetry and Buddhism  
Prajñā (Wisdom)  
Psychology  
Saṃsāra  
Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta  
Satori (Awakening)  
Self-Immolation  
Soteriology  
Śūnyatā (Emptiness)  
Tantra  
Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)  
Yogācāra School

### Religious Encounters with Buddhism

Christianity and Buddhism  
Communism and Buddhism  
Confucianism and Buddhism  
Daoism and Buddhism  
Folk Religion: An Overview  
Folk Religion, China  
Folk Religion, Japan  
Folk Religion, Southeast Asia  
Hinduism and Buddhism  
Islam and Buddhism  
Jainism and Buddhism  
Local Divinities and Buddhism  
Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism  
Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

### Religious Studies, Thematic Entries

Body, Perspectives on the  
Commentarial Literature  
Conversion  
Cosmology  
Dāna (Giving)  
Death  
Decline of the Dharma  
Diet  
Doubt  
Dreams  
Duḥkha (Suffering)  
Education  
Ethics  
Evil  
Faith  
Gender  
Heavens  
Hells  
Hermeneutics  
History  
Icchantika  
Initiation  
Intermediate States  
Karma (Action)  
Laity  
Lineage  
Millenarianism and Millenarian  
Movements  
Miracles

Monastic Architecture  
Monasticism  
Monks  
Nirvāṇa  
Nuns  
Ordination  
Path  
Persecutions  
Pilgrimage  
Prayer  
Precepts  
Rebirth  
Refuges  
Relics and Relics Cults  
Repentance and Confession  
Ritual  
Saṅgha  
Scripture  
Self-Immolation  
Soteriology  
Space, Sacred  
Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings  
Wilderness Monks  
Worship

### Ritual Practices

Consecration  
Conversion  
Dhāraṇī  
Diet  
Etiquette  
Initiation  
Intermediate States  
Kālacakra  
Lineage  
Maṅḍala  
Mantra  
Mizuko Kuyō  
Mudrā and Visual Imagery  
Om Maṇi Padme Hūṃ  
Ordination  
Portraiture  
Prātimokṣa  
Precepts  
Refuges  
Relics and Relics Cults  
Repentance and Confession  
Ritual  
Ritual Objects  
Self-Immolation  
Stūpa  
Tantra  
Tibetan Book of the Dead

### Sacred Sites

Ajaṅṭā  
Bāmiyān  
Bayan  
Bodh Gayā  
Borobudur  
Cave Sanctuaries

Central Asia, Buddhist Art in  
 China, Buddhist Art in  
 Daitokuji  
 Dunhuang  
 Esoteric Art, East Asia  
 Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia  
 Fameni  
 Himalayas, Buddhist Art in  
 Hōryūji and Tōdaiji  
 India, Buddhist Art in  
 Indonesia, Buddhist Art in  
 Japan, Buddhist Art in  
 Jo khang  
 Kailāśa (Kailash)  
 Korea, Buddhist Art in  
 Longmen  
 Mahābodhi Temple  
 Maṇḍala  
 Myanmar, Buddhist Art in  
 Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin)  
 Pilgrimage  
 Potala  
 Pure Land Art  
 Relics and Relics Cults  
 Reliquary  
 Space, Sacred  
 Sāñcī  
 Shwedagon  
 Sōkkuram  
 Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in  
 Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in  
 Stūpa  
 Theravāda Art and Architecture  
 Yun'gang

### **Saṅga, General Themes**

Abhijñā (Higher Knowledges)  
 Chanting and Liturgy  
 Clerical Marriage in Japan  
 Consecration  
 Conversion  
 Councils, Buddhist  
 Dāna (Giving)  
 Death  
 Decline of the Dharma  
 Devadatta  
 Economics  
 Education  
 Entertainment and Performance  
 Etiquette  
 Faith  
 Festivals and Calendrical Rituals  
 Hair  
 Initiation  
 Jewels  
 Karma (Action)  
 Laity  
 Lama  
 Law and Buddhism  
 Lineage  
 Mahāsiddha

Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan  
 Martial Arts  
 Medicine  
 Meiji Buddhist Reform  
 Merit and Merit-Making  
 Mindfulness  
 Monastic Architecture  
 Monasticism  
 Monastic Militias  
 Monks  
 Nuns  
 Ordination  
 Parish (Danka, Terauke) System in Japan  
 Persecutions  
 Pilgrimage  
 Poetry and Buddhism  
 Politics and Buddhism  
 Prātimokṣa  
 Prayer  
 Precepts  
 Refuges  
 Repentance and Confession  
 Ritual Objects  
 Robes and Clothing  
 Saṅgha  
 Self-Immolation  
 Sexuality  
 Slavery  
 Usury  
 Vaṃśa  
 Vidyādhara  
 Vinaya  
 Wilderness Monks  
 Women  
 Worship

### **Schools and Traditions**

Bka' brgyud (Kagyū)  
 Bon  
 Bsam yas (Samye)  
 Chan School  
 Chogye School  
 Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō)  
 Dge lugs (Geluk)  
 Dharmaguptaka  
 Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism  
 in Japan  
 Faxiang School  
 Hīnayāna  
 Huayan School  
 Kamakura Buddhism, Japan  
 Madhyamaka School  
 Mahāsāṃghika School  
 Mahāyāna  
 Mahīśāsaka  
 Mainstream Buddhist Schools  
 Mijiao (Esoteric) School  
 Mozhao Chan (Silent Illumination Chan)  
 Nara Buddhism  
 Nichiren School  
 Nine Mountains School of Sōn

Pudgalavāda  
 Pure Land Buddhism  
 Pure Land Schools  
 Rnying ma (Nyingma)  
 Sanjie Jiao (Three Stages School)  
 Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda  
 Sa skya (Sakya)  
 Sautrāntika  
 Shingon Buddhism, Japan  
 Shugendō  
 Sōka Gakkai  
 Tachikawaryū  
 Tantra  
 Tathāgatagarbha  
 Theravāda  
 Tiantai School  
 Vajrayāna  
 Vijñānavāda  
 Vinaya  
 Wōnbulgyo  
 Yogācāra School  
 Zen, Popular Conceptions of

### **Scriptures and Texts**

#### **Abhidharma**

Abhidharma  
 Abhidharmakośabhāṣya

#### **Apocrypha**

Apocrypha  
 Awakening of Faith (Dasheng qixin lun)  
 Fanwang jing (Brahmā's Net Sūtra)  
 Heart Sūtra  
 Renwang jing (Humane Kings Sūtra)

#### **Commentaries and Treatises**

Awakening of Faith (Dasheng qixin lun)  
 Commentarial Literature  
 Dhammapada  
 Milindapañha  
 Mohe Zhiguan  
 Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch  
 (Liuzu tan jing)  
 Shōbōgenzō  
 Tibetan Book of the Dead  
 Zhao lun

#### **Genres**

Āgama/Nikāya  
 Abhidharma  
 Apocrypha  
 Avadāna  
 Canon  
 Catalogues of Scriptures  
 Commentarial Literature  
 Hermeneutics  
 Jātaka  
 Mahāyāna  
 Paritta and Rakṣā Texts  
 Prajñāpāramitā Literature  
 Scripture

Sūtra  
Tantra  
Vinaya  
Vaṃsa

***Jātaka, Avadāna and Story Literature***

Avadāna  
Avadānaśataka  
Bodhicaryāvatāra  
Buddhacarita  
Divyāvadāna  
Lalitavistara  
Jātaka  
Jātakamālā  
Konjaku Monogatari  
Mahāvastu  
Samguk Yusa (Memorabilia of the Three Kingdoms)  
Vaṃsa

***Sūtra***

Āgama/Nikāya  
Diamond Sūtra  
Fanwang jing (Brahmā's Net Sūtra)  
Heart Sūtra  
Huayan jing  
Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra  
Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)  
Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra  
Nirvāṇa Sūtra  
Prajñāpāramitā Literature  
Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra  
Renwang jing (Humane Kings Sūtra)  
Saṃdhinirmocana-sūtra  
Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta  
Scripture  
Sukhāvatīvyūha-sūtra  
Sūtra  
Sūtra Illustrations

Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra

***Tantra***

Kālacakra  
Tantra

***Vinaya***

Law and Buddhism  
Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya  
Prātimokṣa  
Vinaya

***Sexuality and Gender Issues***

Abortion  
Dākinī  
Gender  
Hair  
Laity  
Mizuko Kuyō  
Monks  
Nuns  
Saṅgha  
Sexuality  
Women

***Social, Economic, and Political Issues***

Colonialism and Buddhism  
Communism and Buddhism  
Conversion  
Councils, Buddhist  
Dalai Lama  
Death  
Decline of the Dharma  
Diet  
Economics  
Education  
Engaged Buddhism  
Entertainment and Performance  
Ethics

Etiquette  
Family, Buddhism and the  
Festivals and Calendrical Rituals  
Folk Religion: An Overview  
Folk Religion, China  
Folk Religion, Japan  
Folk Religion, Southeast Asia  
Gender  
Ghost Festival  
Ghosts and Spirits  
Hair  
History  
Honji Suijaku  
Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism  
Jewels  
Kingship  
Laity  
Law and Buddhism  
Martial Arts  
Medicine  
Merit and Merit-Making  
Millenarianism and Millenarian  
Movements  
Mizuko Kuyō  
Modernity and Buddhism  
Monastic Militias  
Nationalism and Buddhism  
Persecutions  
Politics and Buddhism  
Provincial Temple System (Kokubunji, Rishōtō)  
Self-Immolation  
Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism  
Silk Road  
Slavery  
Usury  
Vinaya  
War

# MAPS

THE DIFFUSION OF BUDDHISM

Major Buddhist Sites in Asia

The Spread of Buddhism in the Indian Subcontinent

Routes of Trade and Religious Dissemination in Asia

*This page intentionally left blank*

Map of the Indian subcontinent and East and Southeast Asia, with major Buddhist sites identified. XNR Productions, Inc. Reproduced by permission of the Gde Group.





Map of the Indian subcontinent, with arrows showing the spread of Buddhism. XNR Productions, Inc. Reproduced by permission of the Gale Group.





*This page intentionally left blank*

# A



## ABHIDHARMA

In the centuries after the death of the Buddha, with the advent of settled monastic communities, there emerged new forms of religious praxis and modes of transmitting and interpreting the teaching. In this more organized setting, Buddhist practitioners began to reexamine received traditions and to develop new methods of organization that would make explicit their underlying significance and facilitate their faithful transmission. Although begun as a pragmatic method of elaborating the received teachings, this scholastic enterprise soon led to new doctrinal and textual developments and became the focus of a new form of scholarly monastic life. The products of this scholarship became revered tradition in their own right, eventually eclipsing the dialogues of the Buddha and of his disciples as the arbiter of the true teaching and determining both the exegetical method and the salient issues that became the focus of later Indian Buddhist doctrinal investigations.

### **Abhidharma, its meaning and origins**

This scholastic enterprise was called *abhidharma* (Pāli: *abhidhamma*), a multivalent term used to refer to the new techniques of doctrinal interpretation, to the body of texts that this interpretation yielded, and finally to the crucial discriminating insight that was honed through doctrinal interpretation and employed in religious praxis. Traditional sources offer two explanations for the term *abhidharma*: “with regard to (*abhi*) the teaching (dharma)” or the “highest or further (*abhi*) teaching (dharma).” The subject of *abhidharma* analysis was, of course, the teaching (dharma) as embodied in the dialogues of the Buddha and his disci-

ples. However, *abhidharma* did not merely restate or recapitulate the teaching of the sūtras, but reorganized their content and explicated their implicit meaning through commentary. In *abhidharma*, the specific content of the various individual sūtras was abstracted and reconstituted in accordance with new analytical criteria, thereby allowing one to discern their true message. This true message, as set down in *abhidharma* texts, consists of the discrimination of the various events and components (*dharma*) that combine to form all of experience. This discrimination in turn enables one to distinguish those defiling factors that ensnare one in the process of REBIRTH from those liberating factors that lead to enlightenment. And finally, when the defiling and liberating factors are clearly distinguished, the proper PATH of practice becomes clear. Hence, *abhidharma* was no mere scholastic commentary, but rather soteriological exegesis that was essential for the effective practice of the path.

Traditional sources do not offer a uniform account of the origins of the *abhidharma* method or of the *abhidharma* corpus of texts. Several traditional accounts attribute the composition of *abhidharma* texts to a first council supposedly held immediately after the death of the Buddha, at which his teachings were arranged and orally recited in three sections: the dialogues (sūtra); the disciplinary monastic codes (VINAYA); and the taxonomic lists of factors (*māṭṛkā* or *abhidharma*). Implicitly, therefore, these traditional sources attribute authorship of the *abhidharma* to the Buddha himself. This question of the authorship and, by implication, the authenticity and authority of the *abhidharma* continued to be a controversial issue within subsequent, independent *abhidharma* treatises. Although many MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS accepted the

authority of *abhidharma* texts and included them within their canons as the word of the Buddha, several schools rejected the authority of *abhidharma* and claimed that *abhidharma* treatises were composed by fallible, human teachers.

Independent *abhidharma* treatises were composed over a period of at least seven hundred years (ca. third or second centuries B.C.E. to fifth century C.E.). The appearance and eventual proliferation of these independent *abhidharma* treatises coincides with the emergence of separate schools within the early Buddhist community. Doctrinal differences among various groups, which were, in part, the natural result of differing lineages of textual transmission, were refined in scholastic debates and amplified by the composition of independent *abhidharma* exegetical works. Scholarly opinion on the sources for the genre of independent *abhidharma* treatises is divided between two hypotheses, each of which finds support in structural characteristics of *abhidharma* texts. The first hypothesis emphasizes the practice of formulating matrices or taxonomic lists (*mātrkā*) of all topics found in the traditional teaching, which are then arranged according to both numeric and qualitative criteria. The second hypothesis stresses the doctrinal discussions (*dharma-kathā*) in catechetical style that attempt to clarify complex or obscure points of doctrine. These two structural characteristics suggest a typical process by which independent *abhidharma* treatises were composed: A matrix outline served to record or possibly direct discussions in which points of doctrine were then elaborated through a pedagogical question and answer technique.

Regardless of which hypothesis more accurately represents the origin of independent *abhidharma* treatises, this dual exegetical method reflects a persistent tendency in the Buddhist tradition, from the earliest period onward, toward analytical presentation through taxonomic categories and toward discursive elaboration through catechesis. The need to memorize the teaching obviously promoted the use of categorizing lists as a mnemonic device, and certain sūtras describe this taxonomic method as a way of encapsulating the essentials of the teaching and averting dissension. Other sūtras proceed much like oral commentaries, in which a brief doctrinal statement by the Buddha is analyzed in full through a process of interrogation and exposition. Both of these methods, amply attested in the sūtra collection, were successively expanded in subsequent independent scholastic treatises, some of which were not included within the sectarian, canon-

ical *abhidharma* collections. For example, the collection of miscellaneous texts (*khuddakapīṭaka*) of the canon of the THERAVĀDA school includes two texts utilizing these methods that were not recognized to be canonical “*abhidharma*” texts. The *Paṭisambhidāmagga* (*Path of Discrimination*) contains brief discussions of doctrinal points structured according to a topical list (*mātikā*), and the *Niddesa* (*Exposition*) consists of commentary on the early verse collection, the *Suttanipāta*. In fact, a clear-cut point of origin for the *abhidharma* as an independent section of the textual canon only reflects the perspective of the later tradition that designates, after a long forgotten evolution, certain texts as “*abhidharma*” in contrast to sūtras or other possibly earlier expository works that share similar characteristics.

### **Abhidharma texts**

Traditional accounts of early Indian Buddhist schools suggest that while certain schools may have shared some textual collections, many transmitted their own independent *abhidharma* treatises. XUANZANG (ca. 600–664 C.E.), the Chinese Buddhist pilgrim who visited India in the seventh century C.E., is reported to have collected numerous texts of as many as seven mainstream Buddhist schools. These almost certainly included canonical *abhidharma* texts representing various schools. However, only two complete canonical collections, representing the Theravāda and Sarvāstivāda schools, and several texts of undetermined sectarian affiliation are preserved. Even though each of the Theravāda and Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma* collections contains seven texts, the individual texts of the two collections cannot be neatly identified with one another. However, a close examination of certain texts from each collection and a comparison with other extant *abhidharma* materials reveals similarities in the underlying taxonomic lists, in exegetical structure, and in the topics discussed. These similarities suggest either contact among the groups who composed and transmitted these texts, or a common ground of doctrinal exegesis and even textual material predating the emergence of the separate schools.

The Theravāda canonical *abhidharma* collection, the only one extant in an Indian language (Pāli), contains seven texts:

1. *Vibhaṅga* (*Analysis*);
2. *Puggalapaññatti* (*Designation of Persons*);
3. *Dhātukathā* (*Discussion of Elements*);
4. *Dhammasaṅgaṇi* (*Enumeration of Factors*);

5. *Yamaka (Pairs)*;
6. *Paṭṭhāna (Foundational Conditions)*; and
7. *Kathāvatthu (Points of Discussion)*.

The Sarvāstivāda canonical *abhidharma* collection, also including seven texts, is extant only in Chinese translation:

1. *Saṅgītiparyāya (Discourse on the Saṅgīti)*;
2. *Dharmaskandha (Aggregation of Factors)*;
3. *Prajñaptiśāstra (Treatise on Designations)*;
4. *Dhātukāya (Collection on the Elements)*;
5. *Vijñānakāya (Collection on Perceptual Consciousness)*;
6. *Prakaraṇapāda (Exposition)*; and
7. *Jñānaprasthāna (Foundations of Knowledge)*.

Certain other early *abhidharma* texts extant in Chinese translation probably represent the *abhidharma* canonical texts of yet other schools: for example, the \**Śāriputrābhidharmaśāstra* (T. 1548), which may have been affiliated with a Vibhajyavāda school, or the \**Sammatīyaśāstra* (T. 1649) affiliated by its title with the Sammatīya school, associated with the Vātsīputrīyas.

In the absence of historical evidence for the accurate dating of the extant *abhidharma* treatises, scholars have tentatively proposed relative chronologies based primarily upon internal formal criteria that presuppose a growing complexity of structural organization and of exegetical method. It is assumed that *abhidharma* texts of the earliest period bear the closest similarities to the sūtras, and are often structured as commentaries on entire sūtras or on sūtra sections arranged according to taxonomic lists. The *Vibhaṅga* and *Puggalapaññatti* of the Theravādins and the *Saṅgītiparyāya* and *Dharmaskandha* of the Sarvāstivādins exemplify these characteristics. The next set of *abhidharma* texts exhibits emancipation from the confines of commentary upon individual sūtras, by adopting a more abstract stance that subsumes doctrinal material from a variety of sources under an abstract analytical framework of often newly created categories. This middle period would include the five remaining canonical texts within the Theravāda and the Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma* canonical collections. The catechetical style of commentarial exegesis, evident even in the earliest *abhidharma* texts, be-

comes more structured and formulaic in texts of the middle period. The final products in this process of abstraction are the truly independent treatises that display marked creativity in technical terminology and doctrinal elaboration. Some of the texts, in particular the *Kathāvatthu* of the Theravādins and the *Vijñānakāya* of the Sarvāstivādins, display an awareness of differences in doctrinal interpretation and factional alignments, although they do not adopt the developed polemical stance typical of many subsequent *abhidharma* works.

The composition of *abhidharma* treatises did not end with the canonical collections, but continued with commentaries on previous *abhidharma* works and with independent summary digests or exegetical manuals. Within the Theravāda tradition, several fifth-century C.E. commentators compiled new works based upon earlier commentaries dating from the first several centuries C.E. They also composed independent summaries of *abhidharma* analysis, prominent among which are the *Visuddhimagga (Path of Purification)* by BUDDHAGHOSA and the *Abhidhammāvatāra (Introduction to Abhidhamma)* by Buddhaddatta. The *Abhidhammatthasaṅgaha (Collection of Abhidhamma Matters)* composed by Anuruddha in the twelfth century C.E. became thereafter the most frequently used summary of *abhidhamma* teaching within the Theravāda tradition.

The first five centuries C.E. were also a creative period of efflorescence for the *abhidharma* of the Sarvāstivādins. In texts of this period, summary exposition combines with exhaustive doctrinal analysis and polemical debate. The teaching is reorganized in accordance with an abstract and more logical structure, which is then interwoven with the earlier taxonomic lists. Preeminent among these texts for both their breadth and their influence upon later scholastic compositions are the voluminous, doctrinal compendia, called *vibhāṣā*, which are represented by three different recensions extant in Chinese translation, the last and best known of which is called the *Mahāvibhāṣā (Great Exegesis)*. Composed over several centuries from the second century C.E. onward, these ostensibly simple commentaries on an earlier canonical *abhidharma* text, the *Jñānaprasthāna*, exhaustively enumerate the positions of contending groups on each doctrinal point, often explicitly attributing these views to specific schools or masters. Instead of arguing for a single, orthodox viewpoint, the *vibhāṣā* compendia display an encyclopedic intention that is often content with comprehensiveness in cataloguing the full spectrum of differing sectarian positions. The *vibhāṣā* compendia are

repositories of several centuries of scholastic activity representing multiple branches of the Sarvāstivāda school, which was spread throughout greater north-western India. However, they came to be particularly associated by tradition with the Sarvāstivādins of Kashmir who, thereby, acquired the appellation, Sarvāstivāda-Vaibhāṣika.

Three other texts composed during the same period that are associated with the northwestern region of Gandhāra display a markedly different structure and purpose: the \**Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra* (*Heart of Abhidharma*) by Dharmasreṣṭhin; the \**Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra* (*Heart of Abhidharma*) by Upāśānta; and the \**Miśrakābhidharmahṛdayaśāstra* (*Heart of Abhidharma with Miscellaneous Additions*) by Dharmatrāta. Composed in verse with an accompanying prose auto-commentary, these texts function as summary digests of all aspects of the teaching presented according to a logical and non-repetitive structure. In contrast to the earlier numerically guided taxonomic lists well-suited as mnemonic aids, these texts adopt a new method of organization, attempting to subsume the prior taxonomic lists and all discussion of specific doctrinal points under general topical sections. This new organizational structure was to become paradigmatic for the texts of the final period of Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma*.

This final period in the development of Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma* treatises includes texts that are the products of single authors and that adopt a polemical style of exposition displaying a fully developed sectarian self-consciousness. They also employ increasingly sophisticated methods of argumentation in order to establish the position of their own school and to refute at length the views of others. Despite this polemical approach, they nonetheless purport to serve as well-organized expository treatises or pedagogical digests for the entirety of Buddhist teaching. The *Abhidharmakośa* (*Treasury of Abhidharma*), including both verses (*kārikā*) and an auto-commentary (*bhāṣya*), by VASUBANDHU became the most important text from this period, central to the subsequent traditions of *abhidharma* studies in Tibet and East Asia. Adopting both the verse-commentary structure and the topical organization of the \**Abhidharmahṛdaya*, the *Abhidharmakośa* presents a detailed account of Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma* teaching with frequent criticism of Sarvāstivāda positions in its auto-commentary. The *Abhidharmakośa* provoked a response from certain Kashmiri Sarvāstivāda masters who attempted to refute non-Sarvāstivāda views presented in Vasubandhu's work and to reestablish their own interpretation of or-

thodox Kashmiri Sarvāstivāda positions. These works, the \**Nyāyānusārasāstra* (*Conformance to Correct Principle*) and \**Abhidharmasamayapradīpikā* (*Illumination of the Collection of Abhidharma*) by Saṅghabhadra and the *Abhidharmadīpa* (*Illumination of Abhidharma*) by an unknown author who refers to himself as the Dīpākāra (author of the *Dīpa*) were the final works of the Sarvāstivāda *abhidharma* tradition that have survived.

### **Abhidharma exegesis**

*Abhidharma* exegesis evolved over a long period as both the agent and the product of a nascent and then increasingly disparate Buddhist sectarian self-consciousness. Given the voluminous nature of even the surviving literature that provides a record of this long doctrinal history, any outline of *abhidharma* method must be content with sketching the most general contours and touching on a few representative examples. Nonetheless, scanning the history of *abhidharma*, one discerns a general course of development that in the end resulted in a complex interpretative edifice radically different from the sūtras upon which it was believed to be based.

In its earliest stage, that is, as elaborative commentary, *abhidharma* was guided by the intention simply to clarify the content of the sūtras. Taxonomic lists were used as a mnemonic device facilitating oral preservation and transmission; catechetical investigation was employed in a teaching environment of oral commentary guided by the pedagogical technique of question and answer. Over time, the taxonomic lists grew in complexity as the simpler lists presented in the sūtra teachings were combined in new ways, and additional categories of qualitative analysis were created to specify modes of interaction among discrete aspects of the sūtra teaching. The initially terse catechetical investigation was expanded with discursive exposition and new methods of interpretation and argumentation, which were demanded by an increasingly polemical environment. These developments coincided with a move from oral to written methods of textual transmission and with the challenge presented by other Buddhist and non-Buddhist groups. In its final stage, *abhidharma* texts became complex philosophical treatises employing sophisticated methods of argumentation, whose purpose was the analysis and elaboration of doctrinal issues for their own sake. The very sūtras from which *abhidharma* arose were now subordinated as mere statements in need of analysis that only the *abhidharma* could provide. No longer serving as the starting point for *abhidharma* exegesis, the sūtras were

invoked only as a supplemental authority to buttress independent reasoned investigations or to corroborate doctrinal points actually far removed from their scriptural antecedents.

Abstract analysis, which is the guiding principle of *abhidharma* exegesis, also became the salient characteristic of its doctrinal interpretation. The analytical tendency, evident in lists present even in the sūtras, expanded in *abhidharma* to encompass all of experience. In very simple terms, *abhidharma* attempts an exhaustive and systematic accounting of every possible type of experience in terms of its ultimate constituents. *Abhidharma* views experience with a critical analytical eye, breaking down the gross objects of ordinary perception into their constituent factors or dharmas and clarifying the causal interaction among these discrete factors. This analysis was not, however, motivated by simple abstract interest, but rather by a soteriological purpose at the very core of Buddhist religious praxis. Analysis determines the requisite factors of which each event consists, distinguishing those factors that lead to suffering and rebirth from those that contribute to their termination. This very process of analysis was identified with the insight that functions in religious praxis to cut off ensnaring factors and to cultivate those leading to liberation.

*Abhidharma* analysis focused on refining these lists of factors and on investigating the problems that arise in using them to explain experience. Simple enumerations of factors found in the earlier sūtras include the lists of five aggregates (skandha), twelve sense-spheres (*āyatana*), and eighteen elements (*dhātu*) that were used to describe animate beings, or the lists of practices and qualities that were to be incorporated into the set of thirty-seven limbs of enlightenment, whose cultivation results in the attainment of enlightenment. These earlier analytical lists were preserved in *abhidharma* treatises and integrated into comprehensive and complex intersecting classifications that aimed to clarify both the unique identity of each factor and all possible modes of conditioning interaction among them. The *abhidharma* treatises of various schools proposed differing lists of factors containing as many as seventy-five, eighty-one, or one hundred discrete categories. For example, the Sarvāstivādins adopted a system of seventy-five basic categories of factors distinguished according to their intrinsic nature (*svabhāva*), which were then grouped in five distinct classes. The first four classes (material form [*rūpa*]*—*eleven; mind [*citta*]*—*one; mental factors [*caitta*]*—*forty-six; and factors dissociated from material form and mind [*cit-*

*taviprayuktasaṃskāra*]*—*fourteen) comprise all conditioned factors (*saṃskṛta*), that is, factors that participate in causal interaction and are subject to arising and passing away. The fifth class comprises three unconditioned factors (*asaṃskṛta*), which neither arise nor pass away.

Through *abhidharma* analysis, all experiential events were explained as arising from the interaction of a certain number of these factors. Particular occurrences of individual factors were further characterized in accordance with additional specific criteria or sets of qualities including their moral quality as virtuous, unvirtuous, or indeterminate, their locus of occurrence as connected to the realm of desire, the realm of form, the formless realm, or not connected to any realm, their connection to animate experience as characteristic of SENTIENT BEINGS or not, and their conditioning efficacy as resulting from certain types of causes or leading to certain types of effects. To give an example, a particular instance of a mental factor, such as conception (*saṃjñā*), can be virtuous in moral quality, characteristic of sentient beings, connected to the realm of desire, and so on. In other circumstance, another occurrence of the same factor of conception, while still characteristic of sentient beings, can be unvirtuous and connected to the realm of form. Although the specific character of each instance of conception differs as virtuous, or unvirtuous, and so on, all such instances, regardless of their particular qualities, share the same intrinsic nature as conception and can, therefore, be placed within the same fundamental category. Thus, the taxonomic schema of seventy-five factors represents seventy-five categories of intrinsic nature, each of which occurs phenomenally or experientially in innumerable instances. Through this disciplined exercise of exhaustive analysis in terms of constituent factors, experience can be seen as it actually is, the factors causing further suffering can be discarded, and those contributing toward liberation can be isolated and cultivated.

This exhaustive *abhidharma* analysis of experience occasioned a number of doctrinal controversies that served to demarcate different schools. Many of these controversies were directed by fundamental disagreements that could be termed ontological, specifically concerning the way in which the different factors constituting experience exist and the dynamics of their interaction or conditioning. Such ontological concerns motivated the early lists of factors in the sūtras, which were used to support the fundamental Buddhist teaching of no-self (anātman) by demonstrating that no

perduring, unchanging, independent self (*ātman*) could be found. In *abhidharma* treatises the focus of ontological concern shifted from gross objects, such as the self, to the factors or dharmas of which these objects were understood to consist.

Perhaps the most distinctive ontology was proposed by the Sarvāstivādins, “those who claim *sarvam asti*,” or “everything exists.” Beginning from the fundamental Buddhist teaching of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), they suggested that the constituent factors of experience exist as discrete and real entities, arising and passing away within the span of a single moment. But such a view of experience as an array of strictly momentary factors would seem to make continuity and indeed any conditioning interaction among the discrete factors impossible. Factors of one moment, whose existence is limited to that moment, could never condition the arising of subsequent factors that do not yet exist; and factors of the subsequent moment must then arise without a cause since their prior causes no longer exist. To safeguard both the Buddhist teaching of impermanence and the conditioning process that is essential to account for ordinary experience, the Sarvāstivādins suggested a novel reinterpretation of existence. Each factor, they claimed, is characterized by both an intrinsic nature, which exists unchanged in the past, present, and future, and an activity or causal efficacy, which arises and passes away due to the influence of conditions within the span of the present moment. Only those factors that are defined by both intrinsic nature and the possibility of activity exist as real entities (*dravya*); the composite objects of ordinary experience that lack intrinsic nature exist only as mental constructs or provisional designations (*prajñapti*). This model, the Sarvāstivādins claimed, preserves the Buddhist doctrine of impermanence, since each factor’s activity arises and passes away, and yet also explains continuity and the process of conditioning, since factors exist as intrinsic nature in the past, present, and future. Such past (or future) existent factors can then, through various special types of causal efficacy, serve as conditions in the arising of subsequent factors. The Sarvāstivāda ontological model became the subject of heated debate and was rejected by other schools (e.g., the Theravāda and the Dārṣṭāntika) who claimed that factors exist only in the present, and not in the past and future. According to the Dārṣṭāntikas, intrinsic nature cannot be distinguished from a factor’s activity. Instead, a factor’s very existence is its activity, and experience is nothing other than an uninterrupted conditioning process. The fragmentation

of this conditioning process into discrete factors possessed of individual intrinsic nature and unique efficacy is nothing but a mental fabrication.

These ontological investigations generated complex theories of conditioning and intricate typologies of causes and conditions. There is evidence for several rival classifications of individual causes and conditions, each of which accounts for a specific mode of conditioning interaction among specific categories of factors: For example, the Theravādins proposed a set of twenty-four conditions; the Sarvāstivādins, two separate sets of four conditions and six causes. Besides establishing different typologies of causes and conditions, the schools also disagreed on the causal modality exercised by these specific types. The Sarvāstivādins acknowledged that certain of these causes and conditions arise prior to their effects, while others, which exert a supportive conditioning efficacy, arise simultaneously with their effects. The Dārṣṭāntikas, however, allowed only successive causation; a cause must always precede its effect. In these debates about causality, the nature of animate or personal conditioning—that is, efficacious action, or KARMA—and the theory of dependent origination intended to account for animate conditioning were, naturally, central issues because of their fundamental role in all Buddhist teaching and practice.

The investigation of these doctrinal controversies, which came to occupy an ever greater position in later *abhidharma* treatises, required the development of more formal methods of argumentation that employed both supporting scriptural citations and reasoned investigations. In the earliest examples of such arguments, reasoned investigations did not yet possess the power of independent proof and were considered valid only in conjunction with supportive scriptural citations. This reliance upon scriptural citations spurred the development of a systematic HERMENEUTICS that would mediate conflicting positions by judging the authenticity and authority of corroborating scriptural passages and determining the correct mode of their interpretation. In general, the interpretative principles applied were inclusive and harmonizing; any statement deemed in conformity with the teaching of the Buddha or with his enlightenment experience was accepted as genuine. Hierarchies were created that incorporated divergent scriptural passages by valuing them differently. And finally, contradictory passages in the sūtras or within *abhidharma* texts were said to represent the variant perspectives from which the Buddhist teaching could be presented. Notable for its parallel with later Buddhist ontology and epistemology was the hermeneu-

tic technique whereby certain passages or texts were judged to have explicit meaning (*nītārtha*) expressing absolute truth or reality, while others were judged to have implicit meaning (*neyārtha*) expressing mere conventional truth. And for the *abhidharma* texts, the *sūtras* were merely implicit and in need of further interpretation that could be provided only by the explicit *abhidharma* treatises. In *abhidharma* texts of the later period, reasoned investigations were deemed sufficient, and the supporting scriptural references became decontextualized commonplaces, cited simply to validate the use of key terms in an *abhidharma* context. Reasoned investigations began to be appraised by independent non-scriptural criteria, such as internal consistency, and the absence of logical faults, such as fallacious causal justification. The doctrinal analysis and methods of argumentation developed within *abhidharma* treatises defined the course for later Indian Buddhist scholasticism, which refined and expanded its *abhidharma* heritage through the addition of new doctrinal perspectives, increasingly sophisticated techniques of argument, and a wider context of both intra- and extra-Buddhist debate.

*See also:* **Abhidharmakośabhāṣya; Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Canon; Commentarial Literature; Councils, Buddhist; Dharma and Dharmas; Psychology; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda**

### Bibliography

- Bureau, André. “Les Sectes bouddhiques du Petit Véhicule et leurs Abhidharmapiṭaka.” *Bulletin de l’École Française d’Extrême-Orient* 50 (1952): 1–11.
- Cox, Collett. “The Unbroken Treatise: Scripture and Argument in Early Buddhist Scholasticism.” In *Innovation in Religious Traditions: Essays in the Interpretation of Religious Change*, ed. Michael A. Williams, Collett Cox, and Martin S. Jaffee. Berlin and New York: de Gruyter, 1992.
- Cox, Collett. *Disputed Dharmas: Early Buddhist Theories on Existence*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1995.
- Cox, Collett. “Kaśmīra: Vaibhāṣika Orthodoxy (Chapter 3).” In *Sarvāstivāda Buddhist Scholasticism*, by Charles Willemen, Bart Dessein, and Collett Cox. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1997.
- Frauwallner, Erich. *Studies in Abhidharma Literature and the Origins of Buddhist Philosophical Systems*, tr. Sophie Francis Kidd. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.
- Gethin, Rupert. “The Mātikās: Memorization, Mindfulness, and the List.” In *In the Mirror of Memory: Reflections on Mindfulness and Remembrance in Indian and Tibetan Buddhism*,

ed. Janet Gyatso. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.

Hirakawa Akira. *A History of Indian Buddhism: From Śākyamuni to Early Mahāyāna*, tr. Paul Groner. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

Nyanatiloka Mahāthera. *Guide through the Abhidhamma Piṭaka* (1938). Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1971.

Potter, Karl; with Buswell, Robert E.; Jaini, Padmanabh S.; and Reat, Noble Ross; eds. *Abhidharma Buddhism to 150 A.D.*, Vol. 7: *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1996.

Watanabe Fumimaro. *Philosophy and Its Development in the Nikāyas and Abhidhamma*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983.

COLLETT COX

## ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA

The *Abhidharmakośa* (*Treasury of Abhidharma*) was composed by the fourth- or fifth-century Indian Buddhist master, VASUBANDHU. No scholarly consensus exists concerning whether or not Vasubandhu, the author of the *Abhidharmakośa*, should be identified with Vasubandhu, the author of numerous MAHĀYĀNA and YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL treatises. According to traditional biographical accounts, Vasubandhu composed the verses of the *Abhidharmakośa*, or *kārikā*, as a digest of orthodox Kashmiri Sarvāstivāda-Vaibhāṣika *abhidharma* doctrine. However, in his prose auto-commentary, the *bhāṣya*, Vasubandhu frequently criticized Sarvāstivāda doctrinal positions and presented his own divergent interpretations.

Typical of the later *abhidharma* genre of polemical, summary digests, the *Abhidharmakośa* attempts to present the entirety of *abhidharma* doctrinal teaching according to a logical format, while also recording variant, sectarian interpretations and often lengthy arguments on specific points. For his organizational structure and much of his content, Vasubandhu relied upon earlier *abhidharma* treatises: notably, for content, upon the massive scholastic compendia (*vibhāṣā*) of Kashmir, and for structure and tenor of interpretation, upon the *Abhidharmahṛdaya* (*Heart of Abhidharma*) texts of Gandhāra. The *Abhidharmakośa* is divided into nine chapters (*nirdeśa*):

1. Elements (*dhātu*)
2. Faculties (*indriya*)



3. Worlds (*loka*)
4. Action (*karma*)
5. Contaminants (*anuśaya*)
6. Path of Religious Praxis and Religious Persons (*mārgapudgala*)
7. Knowledge (*jñāna*)
8. Meditative States (*samāpatti*)
9. Person (*pudgala*)

The ninth chapter contains a refutation of the theory of the existence of the person and may represent a separate treatise by Vasubandhu, appended to the remainder of the *Abhidharmakośa*. The *Abhidharmakośa* became the most influential early Indian Buddhist *Abhidharma* text within the later scholastic traditions of Tibet and East Asia, where it served as a textbook within monastic curricula and generated numerous commentaries.

See also: **Abhidharma; Dharma and Dharmas; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda**

### Bibliography

La Vallée Poussin, Louis de, trans. *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*, 6 vols. Paris: Paul Geuthner, 1923–1931. English trans. Leo M. Pruden, *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*, Vols. 1–4. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1988–1990.

COLLETT COX

## ABHIJÑĀ (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES)

*Abhiññā* (Pāli, *abhiññā*; higher knowledge) refers to a stereotyped set of typically six spiritual powers ascribed to buddhas and their chief disciples. The first five are mundane and attainable through the perfection of concentration (*samādhi*) in meditative trance (*dhyāna*; Pāli, *jhāna*). As earthly attainments, they are deemed available to non-Buddhist sages. In contrast, the sixth higher knowledge is supramundane and exclusively Buddhist, and attainable only through insight (*vipāśyanā*; Pāli, *vipassanā*) into the Buddhist truths.

The five mundane *abhiññās* include:

- The divine eye (*divyacakṣus*; Pāli, *dibbacakkhu*), or the ability to see the demise and rebirth of beings according to their good and evil deeds;
- The divine ear (*divyaśrota*; Pāli, *dibbasota*), the ability to hear heavenly and earthly sounds far and near;
- Knowledge of other minds (*cetaḥpariyāyāññāna*; Pāli, *cetopariyaññāna*), the ability to know the thoughts and mental states of others;
- Recollection of previous habitations (*pūrvanivāsānusmṛti*; Pāli *pubbenivāsānusati*), the ability to remember one's former existences from one to thousands of rebirths, through the evolution and destruction of many world systems;
- Various supernatural powers (*ṛddhi*; Pāli, *iddhi*), such as the ability to create mind-made bodies, project replicas of oneself, become invisible, pass through solid objects, move through the earth, walk on water, fly through the air, touch the sun and moon, and ascend to the highest heaven.

In the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA (Pāli, *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*; *Great Discourse on the Parinirvāṇa*), the Buddha tells his disciple ĀNANDA that one who perfects the four bases of supernatural power (*ṛddhipāda*; Pāli, *iddhipāda*) can live for an entire eon, or for the remaining portion of an eon should he so desire.

The sixth and only supramundane *abhiññā* is the most important. Called “knowledge of the extinction of the passions” (*āśravakṣaya*; Pāli, *āsavakkhaya*), it is equivalent to arhatship. The passions extinguished through this knowledge are sensuality (*kāma*), becoming (*bhava*), ignorance (*avidyā*; Pāli, *avijjā*), and views (*dṛṣṭi*; Pāli, *diṭṭhi*).

Historically, the six *abhiññās* can be seen as an elaboration of an earlier Buddhist paradigm of human perfection called the “three knowledges” (*traividya*; Pāli, *tevijjā*). Comprised of the recollection of former habitations, the divine eye, and knowledge of the extinction of the passions, the three knowledges form the content of the Buddha's awakening in early canonical depictions of his enlightenment experience.

Although mastery of the six *abhiññās* is an attribute of all perfect buddhas, the early Buddhist tradition was ambivalent toward the display of supernatural powers by members of the monastic order. In the *Kevaddha-sutta* (*Discourse to Kevaddha*), the Buddha disparages as vulgar those monks who would reveal such powers to the laity, and in the VINAYA or monastic code, he makes it an offense for them to do so. Despite these strictures, wonder-working saints were lionized in the literatures of all Buddhist schools, and they became

the focus of numerous ARHAT cults, such as those devoted to the worship of the disciples UPAGUPTA and MAHĀKĀŚYAPA. The MAHĀYĀNA tradition elaborated upon the *abhijñās* and *ṛddhis* of early Buddhism in its depictions of the attainments of celestial bodhisattvas and cosmic buddhas. In Buddhist TANTRA, these same powers became the model for a host of magical abilities called *siddhis* possessed by tantric masters and displayed as signs of their spiritual perfection.

See also: Dhyāna (Trance State); Meditation; Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)

### Bibliography

- Buddhaghosa. *The Path of Purification (Visuddhimagga)*, tr. Bhikkhu Nyanamoli. Berkeley, CA: Shambhala, 1964.
- Katz, Nathan. *Buddhist Images of Human Perfection: The Arhant of the Sutta Pitaka Compared with the Bodhisattva and the Mahasiddha*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.

PATRICK A. PRANKE

## ABORTION

Abortion is the deliberate termination of pregnancy by mechanical or pharmaceutical means that result in the death of an unborn fetus. Since the death of the fetus is willfully caused, abortion is the subject of heated controversy. Just as Christians are divided in their opinions about abortion, Buddhists likewise present a range of views from unequivocal condemnation to active support. Between the extremes are various attempts to justify abortion without completely affirming it, or to question it without totally rejecting it. There are also those who remain silent on the issue.

### Early Buddhist teachings and practices

Early Buddhist texts describe the formation of the fetus in great detail. At conception the fetus is in a liquid state and takes on flesh at the end of two weeks. Hands, feet, and a head appear by the fifth week, and the embryo is mature after three months. In physical terms, life begins with conception, but since the new fetus takes shape around a state of being that has already had previous lives, it represents a continuation of life and not just the beginning of new life. Most texts

deny that the transmigrating state of being is a permanent soul, but they also define different kinds of INTERMEDIATE STATES that provides the karmic transition from one bodily life to the next. The exact nature of this intermediate state is the subject of debate, but the belief that there is some kind of vital continuity between one incarnation and the next means that the beginning of life does not take place at conception but precedes it. Each conception, however, is not taken lightly and the termination of bodily life at any stage is generally regarded as killing.

Abortion is therefore not supported in early Buddhist teachings. It violates the first precept against the taking of life and goes against other teachings that condemn acts causing harm to others. Rituals performed for the fetus affirm its life and request protection for it and its mother. Monks who performed an abortion or helped a woman obtain abortion drugs were subject to punishment, including expulsion from the order. A monk could also be punished for reciting magical spells to prevent birth, or even for advising a woman to get an abortion.

Traditional methods of performing abortions were crude and often not very effective. Medicines were used, but they could harm the mother or fail to produce the desired result. Abortionists used heating and scorching, as well as heavy manipulation, including trampling, of the womb, to terminate a pregnancy. Since intention is an important consideration in determining the seriousness of an offense, early texts discuss the different levels of infraction involved in cases in which death occurs to the mother or the fetus or both. The most serious crime is committed when the fetus alone dies as the intended victim.

### Modern views and practices

With the development of safer and more effective means of abortion through modern medical practices, the abortion rate in Buddhist countries has risen. According to a survey done in 1981, it was estimated that there were thirty-seven abortions for every one thousand women of childbearing age in Thailand, a country in which over 90 percent of the population is Buddhist. The same survey estimated that there were sixty-five to ninety abortions among Japanese women of childbearing age. The United States rate was 22.6, according to this survey.

These statistics show that early Buddhist proscriptions against abortion have not prevented its practice. Aware of Buddhist teachings against abortion, modern

Buddhists have adopted a variety of strategies for relating theory with practice. In Thailand, for example, one approach makes the distinction between the ordained clergy, who are forbidden to be involved with abortion, and lay followers, who are allowed to have abortions without any religious or moral sanction. Some monks argue that while abortion is morally wrong in terms of Buddhist teachings, the decision for or against it is a matter of individual judgment. Other Thai Buddhists invoke the teaching on UPĀYA (SKILLFUL MEANS) by which an act can be justified if the intent behind it is pure. If pregnancy threatens the health or life of the mother, then its termination through abortion can be justified because the intention is to save the mother.

Modern Japanese Buddhists likewise have developed means for dealing with the problem of carrying out abortions in the face of the precept against killing. Using the modern term *mizuko*, literally “water child,” for the fetus, William R. LaFleur in his influential book, *Liquid Life* (1992), explains the strategy of obscuring the point at which life begins and seeing fetal development as a continuum of liquid slowing becoming solid. This watery ambiguity disallows a fixed definition of the precise point at which life begins, and termination of the process through abortion likewise obscures any judgment that killing has taken place. LaFleur argues that fetal life is not so much terminated as returned to its origins, where it is put on hold and can await another occasion for its birth. While there is as yet little evidence to indicate the extent to which ordinary Japanese share this liquid life theory, it is not without its influence.

Another modern development among Japanese Buddhists for dealing with abortion is *MIZUKO KUYŌ*, or rite for aborted fetuses. Popular in the 1970s and 1980s, the rite has been criticized by Jōdo Shinshū (True Pure Land School) and other Buddhists as being a moneymaking scheme that takes advantage of people’s superstitious fears that the souls of the aborted fetuses will curse them. Others defend *mizuko kuyō* as a legitimate Buddhist ritual that can help people deal with their feelings of sadness and guilt. That some people feel guilt over abortion indicates that they feel that in some way a wrong has been committed.

Abortion is widely practiced in Buddhist countries, and the Buddhist responses vary from condemnation to justification. As indicated by studies showing that the majority of Japanese women having abortions do not feel guilt, the most popular response is toleration

and acceptance of the act despite teachings that reject it, and many Buddhists remain silent, voicing no moral judgment one way or the other.

*See also:* Precepts

### Bibliography

- Hardacre, Helen. *Marketing the Menacing Fetus in Japan*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997.
- Keown, Damien, ed. *Buddhism and Abortion*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- LaFleur, William R. *Liquid Life: Abortion and Buddhism in Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

---

## ĀGAMA/NIKĀYA

The terms *Āgama* and *Nikāya* denote the subdivisions of the Sūtraṭīka (Pāli, Suttapiṭaka; Basket of Discourses) within the CANON. *Āgama* has the basic meaning of (received) tradition, canonical text, and (scriptural) authority, while *Nikāya* means both collection and group. *Nikāya* also denotes an ordination lineage that allows the joint performance of legal acts of the Buddhist order (SAṄGHA), a meaning that will not be explored in this entry.

It is not known when monks started to gather individual discourses of the Buddha into structured collections. According to tradition, the Buddha’s discourses were already collected by the time of the first council, held shortly after the Buddha’s death in order to establish and confirm the discourses as “authentic” words of the Buddha (*buddhavacana*). Scholars, however, see the texts as continuously growing in number and size from an unknown nucleus, thereby undergoing various changes in language and content. For at least the first century, and probably for two or three centuries, after the Buddha’s death, the texts were passed down solely by word of mouth, and the preservation and intact transmission of steadily growing collections necessitated the introduction of ordering principles. The preserved collections reveal traces of an earlier structure that classified the texts into three, four, nine, or even twelve sections (*aṅga*), but this organizing structure was superseded by the Tripiṭaka scheme of arranging texts into the three (*tri*) baskets (*piṭaka*) of discipline (VINAYA), discourses (sūtras), and systematized teachings (ABHIDHARMA). All Buddhist

schools whose literature has been preserved divided the Sūtrapiṭaka further into sections called Āgama or Nikāya. Neither term is school-specific; the notion that the THERAVĀDA school used the term *Nikāya* while other schools used *Āgama* is justified neither by Pāli nor by Sanskrit sources.

There are either four or five Āgamas and Nikāyas considered canonical by the various MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS: the Dīrghāgama (Pāli, Dīghanikāya; Collection of Long Discourses); the Madhyamāgama (Pāli, Majjhimanikāya; Collection of Discourses of Middle Length); the Saṃyuktāgama (Pāli, Saṃyuttanikāya; Connected Discourses); the Ekottar(ik)āgama (Pāli, Aṅguttaranikāya; Discourses Increasing by One); and the Kṣudrakāgama (Pāli, Khuddhakanikāya; Collection of Small Texts). Some schools do not accept a Kṣudraka section as part of the Sūtrapiṭaka; others classify it as a separate piṭaka. The sequence of the five (or four) sections varies, but if included, the Kṣudraka always comes last. The names refer to the ordering principle of each section: the Dīrgha (long) contains the longest discourses; the Madhyama (middle) contains those of medium-length; and the Saṃyukta (connected) contains shorter sūtras connected by their themes. The Ekottarika (Growing by one) or Aṅgutara (Increasing number of items) comprise discourses arranged in ascending order according to numbered sets of terms, from sūtras treating one term up to those dealing with groups of ten or more. The contents of the Kṣudraka (small texts) vary significantly from version to version: Most of the works that seem to form its nucleus are composed in verse and apparently belong to the oldest strata of the canon. Some of them, such as the DHAMMAPADA, rank among the best known Buddhist texts.

It is not known how many versions of the Sūtrapiṭaka were once transmitted by the various schools in India. Equally unknown is the number of languages and dialects used for this purpose. At present, only the Pāli Suttapiṭaka of the Theravāda school is completely preserved. Four Āgamas are available in Chinese translation: the Dīrgha, the Madhyama, the Saṃyukta, with three translations, two of them incomplete, and the Ekottarika. These were translated from the collections of different schools: The Dīrghāgama probably belongs to the DHARMAGUPTAKA, the Madhyamāgama and Saṃyuktāgama to the (Mūla)Sārvāstivādins, and the Ekottarikāgama to the MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA SCHOOL.

In the early twentieth century, numerous fragments of Sanskrit sūtra manuscripts were found in Central

Asia, enabling scholars to recover at least a small part of the Sūtrapiṭaka of the (Mūla)Sārvāstivādins. Later, fragments of the Ekottarikāgama of the same school came to light among the Gilgit finds. Recent manuscript finds from Afghanistan and Pakistan also contain many sūtra fragments from the scriptures of at least two schools, the (Mūla)Sārvāstivādins and probably the Mahāsāṃghikas. Most notable among them is a manuscript of the Dīrghāgama of the (Mūla)Sārvāstivādins. Unlike colophons of vinaya texts, those of single sūtras or sūtra collections never mention schools, and this often renders a definite school ascription difficult. School affiliation of Āgama texts may have been less important than modern scholars tend to believe.

The different versions of the Sūtrapiṭaka are by no means unanimous with regard to the number and type of sūtras included in each section. To give one example: The Dīghanikāya of the Theravāda school contains thirty-four texts, while the Dīrghāgama in Chinese translation contains only thirty. In the incompletely preserved Dīrghāgama of the (Mūla)Sārvāstivādins, however, forty-seven texts are so far attested. Only twenty of them have a corresponding text in the Chinese Dīrghāgama, and only twenty-four correspond to texts in the Pāli version. For eight of them, a parallel text is found in the Majjhimanikāya of the Pāli; at least four have no parallel at all. The agreement between the different versions of a sūtra varies significantly. Versions may be close in some passages and loose in others. Often a considerable part of a sūtra consists of formulaic passages, and the wording of these formulas is version specific. Further differences may be found in the sequence of passages, in the names of places and persons, and also in doctrine. All this indicates a common origin, followed by a long period of separate transmissions with independent redactional changes.

There are many examples of text duplicates in two sections of the same Sūtrapiṭaka. For example, the *Sati-ṭaṭṭhāna-sutta* (*Foundation of Mindfulness*) of the Pāli canon is contained in both the Dīgha- and the Majjhimanikāya. This may be an indication of a separate transmission for each Āgama/Nikāya in earlier times, another indication being terms like Dīghabhāṇaka (reciter of the Dīgha section) to refer to the respective specialist during the phase of oral transmission in the Pāli tradition. At least in the case of the Mūlasārvāstivādins, many sūtras are also duplicated in their Vinaya.

When growth and redactional changes of the various collections came to an end, they began to form what can best be described as part of a canon of the respective

schools. However, very little is known about the use or ritual and educational functions of the collections during early times. Because of their status as scriptural authority, quotations from the sūtras are numerous in the COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE of the various schools. Certain sūtras also continued to be transmitted individually or in fixed selections designed for specific religious purposes, and it appears that such texts played a much more important role in the life of Buddhists than the complete collections. Not all the sūtras were collected as Āgamas/Nikāyas; the MAHĀYĀNA sūtras, for instance, never came to be included in such a classification scheme.

See also: **Buddhavacana (Word of the Buddha); Pāli, Buddhist Literature in; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in; Scripture**

### Bibliography

- Hinüber, Oskar von. *A Handbook of Pāli Literature*. Berlin and New York: de Gruyter, 1996.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era* (1958), tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut orientaliste, 1988.
- Mayeda, Egaku. "Japanese Studies on the School of the Chinese Āgamas." In *Zur Schulzugehörigkeit von Werken der Hīnayāna-Literatur*, 2 vols., ed. Heinz Bechert. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1985–1987.
- Mizuno, Kōgen. *Buddhist Sūtras: Origin, Development, Transmission*. Tokyo: Kōsei, 1982.

JENS-UWE HARTMANN

## AJAṆṬĀ

Carved into a precipitous gorge in northern Maharashtra, Ajaṇṭā's thirty Buddhist cave monasteries were excavated in two phases. The three finished Śātavāhana caves (ca. first century C.E.) typify contemporaneous and earlier Western Indic cave monasteries. Ajaṇṭā's other caves all date to the Vākāṭaka emperor Hariṣena's reign (ca. 460–480 C.E.). The Śātavāhana and Vākāṭaka excavations reveal differences in donorship, layout, and design.

Containing numerous and generally terse Prakrit inscriptions, the earlier caves evidence a collective and socially eclectic pattern of patronage. Most of the Sanskrit Vākāṭaka donative inscriptions are later intru-

sions into abandoned caves. Of the four *programmatically* inscriptions, three are lengthy eulogies in verse. They record that individual members of the ruling elites donated one or more caves in their entirety, giving them to the Buddha as his residence rather than to the three jewels or the SAṄGHA as theretofore.

Differences in site layout and cave design reflect these changes. Both phases manifest two architectural types based on structural wooden prototypes. Ajaṇṭā's worship halls share apsidal plans, caitya windows, barrel-vaulted roofs, and monumental STŪPAS, while differing in the nature and amount of their painting and sculpture. Repeated buddha figures and joyous worshipers throng the Vākāṭaka stūpa halls. Most significant is the hieratically scaled buddha who, as it were, emerges from each central stūpa. Framed within an architectural structure, these active buddhas transform the later stūpa halls into *gandhakuṭīs*, the Buddha's personal residences.

Early vihāras (residential caves) typically take the form of large flat-roofed quadrangular rooms without pillars. Doorways leading to cells punctuate their sparsely decorated interior walls. The Vākāṭaka donors added internal pillars, a colonnaded porch, and rich decorations in relief and paint onto this basic plan. A rear cell located immediately opposite the main doorway was expanded into an ornate pillared antechamber with a large internal cell. Tenanted by a monolithic statue of the Buddha preaching from a cosmic throne, this cell is (1) the *gandhakuṭī* where the Buddha resides as the spiritual and administrative head of his monks, and (2) the shrine where he is worshiped.

These innovations speak to differences in Buddhist practice and belief. Vihāras with shrines signal a departure from the earlier centralization of public worship, when the only shrines were stūpa halls. In the early phase, the most potent manifestation of the Buddha's living presence was the central stūpa that embodied his body relics (*śarīra*); at Vākāṭaka Ajaṇṭā, the most potent manifestation was the monumental Buddha image dwelling in his *gandhakuṭī*. Profuse ornamentation transformed relatively austere monasteries into richly jeweled cave palaces atop a cosmic mountain, appropriate residences for the Vākāṭaka Buddha, who, as the Emperor of Ascetics, was the prime cosmic being. The belief in and practice of the bodhisattva PATH evidenced in caves 17 and 26 simultaneously reveal his imitable and human aspects. Vākāṭaka Ajaṇṭā's fabled narratives participated in these changes. Characterized by an idealized naturalism that represents

beings in action, the Ajaṅṭā style “cosmologizes” landscapes and beings. It thus expresses the simultaneously transcendental and imitable nature of the Buddha performing his wondrous deeds.

See also: **Jātaka, Illustrations of; Relics and Relics Cults**

### Bibliography

- Dehejia, Vidya. *Discourse in Early Buddhist Art: Visual Narratives of India*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1997.
- Kramrisch, Stella. “Ajaṅṭā.” In *Exploring India’s Sacred Art: Selected Writings of Stella Kramrisch*, ed. Barbara Stoler Miller. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1983.
- Parimoo, Ratan, et al., eds. *The Art of Ajaṅṭā: New Perspectives*. New Delhi: Books and Books, 1991.
- Schlingloff, Dieter. *Studies in the Ajaṅṭā Paintings: Identifications and Interpretations*. Delhi: Ajaṅṭā Publications, 1987.
- Schlingloff, Dieter. *Guide to the Ajaṅṭā Paintings: Narrative Wall Paintings*. New Delhi: Munsiram Manoharlal, 1999.
- Spink, Walter. “Ajaṅṭā’s Chronology: Cave 1’s Patronage.” In *Chhavi II: Rai Krishnadasa Felicitation Volume*. Benares, India: Bharat Kala Bhavan, 1981.
- Spink, Walter. “The Achievement of Ajaṅṭā.” In *The Age of the Vākāṭakas*, ed. A. M. Shastri. New Delhi: Harman, 1992.
- Spink, Walter. “The Archaeology of Ajaṅṭā.” *Ars Orientalis* 21 (1992): 67–94.
- Spink, Walter. “Before the Fall: Pride and Piety at Ajaṅṭā.” In *The Powers of Art: Patronage in Indian Culture*, ed. Barbara Stoler Miller. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Yazdani, Ghulam. *Ajaṅṭā: The Color and Monochrome Reproductions of the Ajaṅṭā Frescoes Based on Photography*, 4 vols. London: Oxford University Press, 1930.

LEELA ADITI WOOD

## AKṢOBHYA

One of a large number of so-called celestial buddhas known to MAHĀYĀNA Buddhists in India during the first millennium, Akṣobhya was believed to inhabit a paradise-like world system far to the east, known as Abhirati (extreme delight). Bodhisattvas reborn there could make rapid progress toward buddhahood, while śrāvakas could achieve arhatship within a single life. Belief in Akṣobhya appears to have emerged in India around the beginning of the first millennium C.E. and spread widely in Buddhist communities before being eclipsed by the growing popularity of AMITĀBHA. To-

day Akṣobhya is known mainly as one of the five directional buddhas who appear in tantric ritual texts.

### Bibliography

- Chang, Garma C. C., ed. *The Dharma-Door of Praising Tathāgata Akṣobhya’s Merits* (partial translation of the *Akṣobhyavyūha*). In *A Treasury of Mahāyāna Sūtras: Selections from the Mahāratnakūṭa Sūtra*, tr. Buddhist Association of the United States. University Park and London: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1983.
- Dantinne, Jean, trans. *La splendeur de l’inébranlable (Akṣobhyavyūha)*. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste, 1983.
- Nattier, Jan. “The Realm of Akṣobhya: A Missing Piece in the History of Pure Land Buddhism.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 23, no. 1 (2000): 71–102.

JAN NATTIER

## ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA

The *ālayavijñāna* (storehouse consciousness) is the most fundamental of the eight consciousnesses recognized in the VIJÑĀNAVĀDA school of thought. It is said to contain all the “seeds” for the “consciousness-moments” or “consciousness-events” that people generally call reality.

See also: **Consciousness, Theories of; Psychology**

JOHN S. STRONG

## ALCHI

The small village of Alchi (A lci), located about seventy kilometers west of Leh in Ladakh on an alluvial terrace on the left bank of the river Indus, has as its center an ancient religious area (*chos ’khor*). Alchi’s religious area is composed of a large STŪPA, a three-storied temple (*Gsum brtsegs*), a congregation hall (*’dus khang*), two small chapels, and a later building, the so-called New Temple (*Lha khang gsar ma*). The site’s thick white-washed walls of mud and stone follow the Tibetan tradition of architecture; the wooden facades and the beams and pillars of the interior structures are clearly Kashmiri in style.

The congregation hall, which dates to the late eleventh or early twelfth century, is the oldest building in the complex; the hall includes a Sarvavid-Vairocana

sculpture at its back end and rich wall paintings that are mainly variants of the Vajradhātu-maṇḍala based on the Tibetan translation of the *Sarvatathāgata-Tattvasaṃgraha* (*Symposium of Truth of All Buddhas*). The three-storied temple, with three colossal clay sculptures of bodhisattvas in the niches, has similar maṇḍalas in its murals. The temple also houses representations of Tārā and Avalokiteśvara, along with many tathāgatas and secular figures. A series of images of priests in the second upper story ends with 'Bri-gung-pa (1143–1217), which leads to a date of around 1200 C.E. The stylistic elegance and sophistication of the murals has its roots in Kashmir. The so-called Great Stūpa is in fact a chapel in *pañcāyatana* form housing a stūpa and decorated with “thousands” of buddhas and a group of priests. Tibetan inscriptions in all three buildings give the names, though no dates, of the founders, who apparently belonged to the ruling families of the Ladakhi kingdom. The murals in the smaller New Temple show a different iconographic tradition and clearly belong to a slightly later Tibetan style.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Himalayas, Buddhist Art in; India, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture

#### Bibliography

- Goepper, Roger. *Alchi: Ladakh's Hidden Buddhist Sanctuary: The Sumtsek*. London: Serindia, 1996.
- Pal, Pratapaditya (text), and Fournier, Lionel (photographs). *A Buddhist Paradise: The Murals of Alchi, Western Himalayas*. Vaduz, Liechtenstein: Ravi Kumar, 1982.

ROGER GOEPPER

## AMBEDKAR, B. R.

Bhimrao Ramji Ambedkar (1891–1956), leader of India's Dalits (untouchables) and principal draftsman of India's constitution, led millions of his followers to Buddhist conversion. After earning doctoral degrees from Columbia University in New York and the London School of Economics, Ambedkar passed the English bar and launched a campaign of legal and moral challenges to the Hindu caste system. In *The Buddha and His Dhamma* (1957) and other writings, Ambedkar combined elements of Buddhist ethics, American pragmatism, and Protestant “social gospel” theology to formulate a socially and politically engaged Buddhism that he called “New Vehicle” (*Navayāna*) Buddhism.

*See also:* Engaged Buddhism

#### Bibliography

- Ambedkar, Bhimrao Ramji. *The Buddha and His Dhamma*. Bombay: R. R. Bhole, 1957.
- Queen, Christopher S. “Dr. Ambedkar and the Hermeneutics of Buddhist Liberation.” In *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*, ed. Christopher S. Queen and Sallie B. King. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Sangharakshita. *Ambedkar and Buddhism*. Glasgow, UK: Windhorse, 1986.

CHRISTOPHER S. QUEEN

## AMITĀBHA

Amitābha (Sanskrit, limitless light) is one of the so-called celestial or mythic buddhas who inhabit their own buddha-field and intervene as a saving force in our world. According to the *Larger* SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHASŪTRA, in a previous life Amitābha was the monk Dharmākara, who vowed that as part of his mission as a BODHISATTVA he would purify and adorn a world, transforming it into the most pure and beautiful buddha-field. Once he attained full awakening and accomplished the goals of his vows, Dharmākara became the Buddha Amitābha. He now resides in the world he purified, known as Sukhāvātī (blissful). From this world he will come to ours, surrounded by many bodhisattvas, to welcome the dead and to lead them to REBIRTH in his pure buddha-field.

The figure of Amitābha is not known in the earliest strata of Indian Buddhist literature, but around the beginning of the common era he appears as the Buddha of the West in descriptions of the buddhas of the five directions. The cult of Amitābha most likely developed as part of the early MAHĀYĀNA practice of invoking and worshipping “all the buddhas” and imagining some of these as inhabiting distant, “purified” worlds, usually associated with one of the cardinal directions. The myth of his vows and pure land may have developed in close proximity to, or in competition with, similar beliefs associated with other buddhas like AKṢOBHYA (another one of the early buddhas of the five directions, whose eastern pure land is known as Abhirati).

Although Amitābha shares many of the qualities associated with other buddhas of the Mahāyāna, he is

generally linked to the soft radiance of the setting sun, which suffuses, without burning or blinding, all corners of the universe (in East Asia he is also linked to moonlight). The emphasis on his luminous qualities (or those of his halo), which occupies an important role in East Asian iconography, does not displace or contradict the association of Amitābha with a religion of voice and sound; his grace is secured or confirmed by calling out his name, or, rather, invoking his name with the ritual expression of surrender: “I pay homage to Amitābha Buddha.” Even in texts that emphasize imagery of light, such as the *Dazhīdu lun* (*Treatise on the Great Perfection of Wisdom*), he is still the epitome of the power of the vow and the holy name.

Amitābha is represented in *dhyānamudrā*, perhaps suggesting the five hundred kalpas of meditation that led Dharmākara to his own enlightenment. An equally characteristic posture is *abhayamudrā* (MUDRĀ of protection from fear and danger), which normally shows the buddha standing.

In its more generalized forms, however, FAITH in Amitābha continues to this day to include a variety of practices and objects of devotion. A common belief, for instance, is the belief that his pure land, Sukhāvātī, is blessed by the presence of the two bodhisattvas Avalokiteśvara and Mahāsthāmaprāpta. Faith in the saving power of these bodhisattvas, especially Avalokiteśvara, was often linked with the invocation of the sacred name of Amitābha, the recitation of which could bring the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara to the believer’s rescue. The overlapping of various beliefs and practices, like the crisscrossing of saviors and sacred images, is perhaps the most common context for the appearance of Amitābha—it is the case in China, Korea, and Vietnam, and in Japanese Buddhism outside the exclusive Buddhism of the Kamakura reformers.

The perception of Amitābha as one among many saviors, or the association between faith in him and the wonder-working powers of Avalokiteśvara, are common themes throughout Buddhist Asia. It is no accident that the PANCHEN LAMA of Tibet is seen as an incarnation of Amitābha, whereas his more powerful counterpart in Lhasa, the DALAI LAMA, is regarded as the reincarnation of the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara.

See also: Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yŏmbul); Pure Lands

### Bibliography

- Foard, James; Michael Solomon; and Richard K. Payne, eds. *The Pure Land Tradition: History and Development*. Berkeley: Regents of the University of California, 1996.
- Gómez, Luis O. “Buddhism as a Religion of Hope: Observations on the ‘Logic’ of a Doctrine and Its Foundational Myth.” *Eastern Buddhist* New Series 32, no. 1 (Spring 1999/2000): 1–21.
- Gómez, Luis O., trans. and ed. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light: Sanskrit and Chinese Versions of the Sukhāvativyūha Sūtras* (1996), 3rd printing, corrected edition. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Tsukinowa, Kenryū; Ikemoto, Jūshin; and Tsumoto, Ryōgaku. “Amita.” In *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*, Vol. 1, Fasc. 3., ed. G. P. Malalasekera. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Government Press of Ceylon, 1964.
- Zürcher, E. “Amitābha.” In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 1., ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

## AMULETS AND TALISMANS

Amulets are small, mystically charged objects carried upon the person that provide the bearer with good fortune or protection from harm. Amulets are carried by members of many Buddhist cultures, most prominently in the THERAVĀDA countries of mainland Southeast Asia (Burma [Myanmar], Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia). These amulets are almost always explicitly Buddhist in form. They often take the form of small Buddha images or representations of holy people. They can also be representations of sacred objects, such as *cetiyas*. *Cetiyas* (Sanskrit, *caitya*) are reliquary monuments, such as STŪPAS. The sale of Buddhist amulets can be an effective means of raising funds.

Amulets are usually either stamped medallions or molded clay statuettes—similar to votive tablets—that are small enough to be worn on a chain around the neck. Stamped medallions, usually of bronze, are a relatively modern but very popular type. They are often issued in honor of a particularly holy monk and bear the monk’s portrait on the obverse. The reverse can bear representations of renowned stūpas or apotropaic texts and designs, such as magical number squares. Amulets can also be short sacred passages (usually *gāthā*) written on paper, cloth, or metal. In Southeast Asia, texts on base or precious metal are wound into tight little tubes. Texts on paper are similarly rolled up and put into a small container. Texts on cloth can be



carried folded up and put into a breast pocket; it would be sacrilegious to carry them in a lower pocket. These amulets are especially popular in Cambodia. Texts or magical diagrams can also be written on larger pieces of cloth or paper and carried folded up in other types of containers, such as cloth pouches or lockets made of wood, brass, or silver. This type of amulet is used in Tibet and China.

Amulets derive their power from the blessings of monks with reputations for being exceptionally holy and mystically powerful. The amulets can be seen as small objects in which the power of the sacred is crystallized, as with holy relics. Once crystallized, this power can be used by ordinary people who are not themselves holy or powerful. This power comes from both the words—Pāli or Sanskrit blessings—and the personal power of the monks who chant them. The right words must be spoken by the right person for the transfer of power to be effective. Individual monks acquire this power after years of meditation; it is demonstrated by their ability to perform miracles. The ideal monk is an ascetic hermit who spends his days in meditation and who has been ordained since he was a boy.

While amulets are most commonly worn for generalized protection, they often have very specific protective properties. A given amulet, for instance, may protect against puncture wounds (such as those from bullets or knives), but not against crushing wounds (such as those from truncheons). It is not unusual to see men, and to a lesser extent women, wearing several amulets. Special metal neck chains are made for this purpose. Thriving amulet markets can be found near some large urban Buddhist monasteries. The value of an amulet is a function of the power of its initial blessing (which derives from the holiness of the monk who blessed it), its age and rarity, and any history of demonstrated efficacy that is attached to it. An amulet is more valuable if it is known, for example, to have saved someone from a terrible car wreck.

*See also:* Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relic Cults

### Bibliography

Tambiah, Stanley Jeyaraja. *The Buddhist Saints of the Forest and the Cult of Amulets: A Study in Charisma, Hagiography, Sectarianism, and Millennial Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1984.

MICHAEL R. RHUM

## ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA

Anagārika Dharmapāla (1864–1933) was the leading figure in the Sri Lankan Buddhist renaissance that sought to restore Buddhism during the late colonial period. Born Don David Hēvāvitarana into an elite Sinhala Buddhist family, he met Colonel Henry Olcott and Madame Elena Petrovna Blavatsky and joined their newly formed Buddhist Theosophical Society in 1884 in Sri Lanka (then Ceylon). Seeing the depressed condition of Buddhism in both Sri Lanka and India, Dharmapāla took it as his mission to revive Buddhism. In his work he sought to enable Buddhists to address the twofold task of recovering their identity and finding ways to respond to modernity. Creating a new role for himself in Buddhism, he became an *anagārika* (homeless one), who was neither a monk nor a layperson, and he took the name Dharmapāla (protector of the dharma).

A tireless activist, Dharmapāla worked in India, where he founded the Maha Bodhi Society and sought to restore the Buddhist shrine of the sacred bodhi tree at the site of the Buddha's enlightenment in BODH GAYĀ. Through his writings and his brilliant oratory, he critiqued the colonial and Christian suppression of Buddhism and Buddhists. Relying on Buddhist texts such as the *Mahāvamsa*, he linked Buddhism and Sinhala nationalism and challenged Sinhala Buddhists to reclaim their true identity and abandon their attachment to colonial values. Dharmapāla popularized a reformed Buddhism that was characterized by a lay orientation, a this-worldly asceticism, an activist and moralist focus, and a strong social consciousness. Dharmapāla traveled widely in Asia preaching these ideas, and he introduced the West to his reformist vision when he represented Buddhism at the World Parliament of Religions in Chicago in 1893.

### Bibliography

Bond, George D. *The Buddhist Revival in Sri Lanka: Religious Tradition, Reinterpretation, and Response*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1988.

Gombrich, Richard, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.

GEORGE D. BOND

## ĀNANDA

Ānanda was a close relative of the Buddha. The Buddha ordained Ānanda, and as the Buddha grew old, he

chose Ānanda to serve as his attendant. Thus, Ānanda became the Buddha's constant companion for the twenty-five years preceding the Buddha's death. The canonical texts are replete with examples of Ānanda's dedicated care for the Buddha's comfort, health, and safety. In an extreme situation, Ānanda was even prepared to risk his life to save that of his master. Ānanda is depicted in the scriptures as extremely amicable toward both ordained or laypersons. He was known as a brilliant organizer who essentially served as the Buddha's personal secretary, as he would be called in present terms. Ānanda was instrumental in the creation of the Buddhist order of NUNS, a move that the Buddha did not initially favor. Ānanda, however, asked the Buddha if women were capable of realizing supreme enlightenment like men, whereupon the Buddha answered in the affirmative.

Ānanda was the key figure in the transmission of the BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA). He served as an indispensable authority at the First Council, which was held to codify the Buddha's legacy soon after his death. Ānanda is reported to have recited the texts of the discourses (sūtras); in the line that opens all sūtras—"Thus have I heard"—the *I* refers to Ānanda. The Buddha's declaration that Ānanda was foremost among the erudite and upright is a monument to his talents, moral strength, and determination. Ānanda was said to have lived an extraordinarily long life. He later came to be revered as the second Indian patriarch of the CHAN SCHOOL.

*See also:* Councils, Buddhist; Disciples of the Buddha

### Bibliography

Malalasekera, G. P. "1. Ānanda." *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names*, Vol. 1. London: Indian Text Series, 1937–1938.

Wang, Bangwei. "The Indian Origin of the Chinese Chan School's Patriarch Tradition." In *Dharmadūta: Mélanges offerts au Vénérable Thich Huyên-Vi*, ed. Bhikkhu Tampilawela Dhammaratana and Bhikkhu Pāsādika. Paris: Éditions You-Feng, 1997.

BHIKKHU PĀSĀDIKA

## ANANDA TEMPLE

The most uplifting of Pagan temples, the Ananda was built by King Kyanzittha in the mid-eleventh century. The Ananda Temple represents the maturity of the early

period style at Pagan. Based on a single story elevation, it is a balanced and harmonious design with its central spire rising from a square base and terraces. The true effect is best seen from the west side, where nineteenth-century donors did not add covered walkways. The plan is a Greek cross: a two hundred-foot central square with four prayer halls that project out at the cardinal points. Facing these prayer halls, the four cardinal shrines are set in giant arched niches cut into the block. These contain colossal standing buddhas. Only the south image is original early period; the others are Konbaung replacements from the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, as are the splendid carved wood doors at the entrance to the outer ambulatory. These images are dramatically lit by concealed shafts that connect to skylights contained in the external pediments. Fragments of the original paintings have been recovered in the halls; the remainder, which would have covered all the walls and vaults, were whitewashed by misguided do-gooders during an earlier period. There is a double ambulatory running around the main block over which the exterior terraces climb. These terraces contain glazed plaque scenes of the JĀTAKAS. Around the base are more glazed plaques depicting the attack and defeat of the army of MĀRA (the personification of evil who tried to tempt the Buddha just before his enlightenment). Inside, the outer ambulatory contains ninety relief scenes from the life of the Buddha. This was a time when people were converting to the new faith and these scenes were intended to teach the story of the Buddha's life. The stone carving is vigorous and at times dynamic. As with the entire building there is an energy and excitement to these scenes. The Ananda is a monument to the establishment of THERAVĀDA as the state religion of Myanmar (Burma). There is none of the grand complacency of the colossal late temples; the place vibrates with the force of a newfound faith.

*See also:* Monastic Architecture; Myanmar; Myanmar, Buddhist Art in; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

### Bibliography

Duroiselle, Charles. *The Ananda Temple at Pagan*. Delhi: Manager of Publications, Archaeological Survey of India, 1937.

Luce, G. H. *Old Burma—Early Pagan*. 3 vols. Locust Valley, NY: J. J. Augustin, 1969–1970.

Strachan, Paul. *Pagan: Art and Architecture of Old Burma*. Whiting Bay, Arran, Scotland: Kiscadale Publications, 1989.

PAUL STRACHAN

## ANĀTHAPIṆḌADA

Sudatta, usually called Anāthapiṇḍada (Pāli, Anāthapiṇḍika; Giver of Alms to the Destitute), the wealthy merchant of Śrāvastī and donor of the famous Jetavana Monastery in India, was perhaps the Buddhist order's most important patron. An ardent and learned lay disciple (*upāsaka*), he was particularly devoted to the Buddha and to his disciple ŚĀRIPUTRA. Anāthapiṇḍada died listening to the dharma.

See also: **Disciples of the Buddha**

### Bibliography

- Dennis, Mark, and Dennis, Joseph, trans. "Anāthapiṇḍada, Pūrṇa, and Kotikarna in the *Mahāsaṃghika Vinaya*." In *The Glorious Deeds of Pūrṇa*, ed. Joel Tatelman. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 2000.
- Johnston, E. H., trans. *The Buddhacarita, or, Acts of the Buddha*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1935–1937.
- Malalasekera, G. P. "Anāthapindika." In *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names*. London: J. Murray, 1937–1938. Reprint, London: Pāli Text Society, 1974.
- Nyanaponika, Thera, and Hecker, Hellmuth. *Great Disciples of the Buddha: Their Lives, Their Works, Their Legacy*, ed. Bhikkhu Bodhi. Boston: Wisdom, 1997.

JOEL TATELMAN

## ANĀTMAN/ĀTMAN (NO-SELF/SELF)

The Vedic Sanskrit term *ātman* (Pāli, *attā*), literally meaning breath or spirit, is often translated into English as self, soul, or ego. Etymologically, *anātman* (Pāli, *anattā*) consists of the negative prefix *an* plus *ātman* (i.e., without *ātman*) and is translated as no-self, no-soul, or no-ego. These two terms have been employed in the religious and philosophical writing of India to refer to an essential substratum within human beings. The idea of *ātman* was fully developed by the Upaniṣadic and Vedāntic thinkers who suggested that there does exist in one's personality, a permanent, unchanging, immutable, omnipotent, and intelligent *ātman*, which is free from sorrow and leaves the body at death. The *Chāndogya Upaniṣad*, for instance, states that the *ātman* is "without decay, death, grief." Similarly, the *Bhagavadgītā* calls the *ātman* "eternal . . . unborn . . . undying . . . immutable, primordial . . . all-pervading." Some Upaniṣads hold that the *ātman* can be separated from the body like the sword from

its scabbard and can travel at will away from the body, especially in sleep. But Buddhism maintains that since everything is conditioned, and thus subject to ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), the question of *ātman* as a self-subsisting entity does not arise. The religion points out that anything that is impermanent is inevitably DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) and out of our control (*anātman*), and thus cannot constitute an ultimate self.

According to Buddhism, beings and inanimate objects of the world are constructed (*saṃskṛta*), as distinguished from NIRVĀṆA, which is unconstituted (*asaṃskṛta*). The constituted elements are made up of the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATE) or building blocks of existence: the physical body (*rūpa*), physical sensation (*vedanā*), sensory perception (*saṃjñā, saññā*), habitual tendencies (*saṃskāra, saṃkhāra*), and consciousness (*viññāna, viññāna*). The last four of these skandhas are also collectively known as *nāma* (name), which denotes the nonmaterial or mental constituents of a being. *Rūpa* represents materiality alone, and inanimate objects therefore are included in the term *rūpa*. A living being composed of five skandhas is in a continuous state of flux, each preceding group of skandhas giving rise to a subsequent group of skandhas. This process is going on momentarily and unceasingly in the present existence as it will go on also in the future until the eradication of avidyā (ignorance) and the attainment of nirvāṇa. Thus, Buddhist analysis of the nature of the person centers on the realization that what appears to be an individual is, in fact, an ever-changing combination of the five skandhas. These aggregates combine in various configurations to form what is experienced as a person, just as a chariot is built of various parts. But just as the chariot as an entity disappears when its constituent elements are pulled apart, so does the person disappear with the dissolution of the skandhas. Thus, what we experience to be a person is not a thing but a process; there is no human being, there is only becoming. When asked who it is, in the absence of a self, that has feeling or other sensations, the Buddha's answer was that this question is wrongly framed: The question is not "who feels," but "with what as condition does feeling occur?" The answer is contact, demonstrating again the conditioned nature of all experience and the absence of any permanent substratum of being.

Just as the human being is analyzed into its component parts, so too is the external world with which one interacts. This interaction is one of consciousness (*viññāna*) established through cognitive faculties (*indriya*) and their objects. These faculties and their

objects, called spheres (*āyatana*), include both sense and sense-object, the meeting of which two is necessary for consciousness. These three factors that together comprise cognition—the sense-faculty, the sense-object, and the resultant consciousness—are classified under the name *dhātu* (element). The human personality, including the external world with which it interacts, is thus divided into *skandha*, *āyatana*, and *dhātu*. The generic name for all three of them is *dharma*, which in this context is translated as “elements of existence.” The universe is made up of a bundle of elements or forces (*saṃskāras*) and is in a continuous flux or flow (*santāna*). Every *dharma*, though appearing only for a single instant (*kṣaṇa*), is a “dependently originating element,” that is, it depends for its origin on what had gone before it. Thus, existence becomes “dependent existence,” where there is no destruction of one thing and no creation of another. Falling within this scheme, the individual is entirely phenomenal, governed by the laws of causality and lacking any extraphenomenal self within him or her.

In the absence of an *ātman*, one may ask how Buddhism accounts for the existence of human beings, their identity, continuity, and ultimately their religious goals. At the level of “conventional truth” (*saṃvṛtisatya*), Buddhism accepts that in the daily transactional world, humans can be named and recognized as more or less stable persons. However, at the level of the “ultimate truth” (*paramārthasatya*), this unity and stability of personhood is only a sense-based construction of our productive imagination. What the Buddha encouraged is not the annihilation of the feeling of self, but the elimination of the belief in a permanent and eternal “ghost in the machine.” Thus, the human being in Buddhism is a concrete, living, striving creature, and his or her personality is something that changes, evolves, and grows. It is the concrete human, not the transcendental self, that ultimately achieves perfection by constant effort and creative will.

The Buddhist doctrine of REBIRTH is different from the theory of reincarnation, which implies the transmigration of an *ātman* and its invariable material rebirth. As the process of one life span is possible without a permanent entity passing from one thought-moment to another, so too is a series of life-processes possible without anything transmigrating from one existence to another. An individual during the course of his or her existence is always accumulating fresh KARMA (ACTION) affecting every moment of the individual’s life. At DEATH, the change is only comparatively deeper. The corporeal bond, which held the individual together,

falls away and his or her new body, determined by karma, becomes one fitted to that new sphere in which the individual is reborn. The last thought-moment of this life perishes, conditioning another thought-moment in a subsequent life. The new being is neither absolutely the same, since it has changed, nor totally different, being the same stream (*santāna*) of karmic energy. There is merely a continuity of a particular life-flux; just that and nothing more. Buddhists employ various similes to explain this idea that nothing transmigrates from one life to another. For example, rebirth is said to be like the transmission of a flame from one thing to another: The first flame is not identical to the last flame, but they are clearly related. The flame of life is continuous, although there is an apparent break at so-called death. As pointed out in the MILINDAPAÑHA (*Milinda’s Questions*), “It is not the same mind and body that is born into the next existence, but with this mind and body . . . one does a deed . . . and by reason of this deed another mind and body is born into the next existence.” The first moment of the new life is called consciousness (*vijñāna*); its antecedents are the *saṃskāras*, the prenatal forces. There is a “descent” of the consciousness into the womb of the mother preparatory to rebirth, but this descent is only an expression to denote the simultaneity of death and rebirth. In this way, the elements that constitute the empirical individual are constantly changing but they will never totally disappear till the causes and conditions that hold them together and impel them to rebirth, the craving (*trṣṇā*; Pāli, *taṇhā*), strong attachment (*upādāna*) and the desire for reexistence (*bhava*), are finally extinguished.

*See also: Consciousness, Theories of; Dharma and Dharmas; Intermediate States*

### **Bibliography**

- Collins, Steven. *Selfless Persons: Imagery and Thought in Theravāda Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1982.
- Conze, Edward. *Buddhist Thought in India: Three Phases of Buddhist Philosophy*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.
- de Silva, Lynn A. *The Problem of the Self in Buddhism and Christianity*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Study Centre for Religion and Society, 1975.
- Hick, John. *Death and Eternal Life*. London: Macmillan, 1976.
- Kalupahana, D. J. *The Principles of Buddhist Psychology*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1987.

Murti, T. R. V. *The Central Philosophy of Buddhism: A Study of the Mādhyamika System*, 2nd edition. London: Allen and Unwin, 1960.

Pérez-Remón, Joaquín. *Self and Non-Self in Early Buddhism*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1980.

Rahula, Walpola. *What the Buddha Taught*, revised edition. Bedford, UK: Fraser Gallery, 1967.

K. T. S. SARAO

## ANCESTORS

The meaning of *ancestor* differs among different cultures, depending on their kinship system and their beliefs regarding the deceased. *Ancestor* could refer to the originator of an ancestral lineage or the soul of a dead person who is memorialized in a family shrine. The Sanskrit word for ancestor, *preta*, is related to the Vedic term *pitarah* (fathers). According to an ABHIDHARMA commentary, *Mahāvibhāṣā* (Chinese, *Dapiposha lun; Great Exegesis*), Yama, the first mortal who died and became the king of the netherworld, is called *preta-rāja* (king of the dead) or *pitṛ-rāja* (king of fathers). Thus, in ancient India, the words *preta* and *pitarah* were almost interchangeable in their use. This reflects the patrilineal kinship system of ancient India and the ancestral rites that were performed and maintained through the male line.

In Asia, various forms of ancestor worship were incorporated into Buddhist rites. Ancestral rites and ceremonies are particularly prominent in East Asia, where MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism and Confucianism predominated and interacted. Southeast Asian societies, where THERAVĀDA Buddhism flourished, observe similar Buddhist rites for ancestors, but the continuity of a family lineage is not the main motive of their rites. In general, ancestor worship entails belief in the protective power of the deceased members of a particular family, lineage, or a tribal group. It is also based on the desire to overcome fear of the corpse and elevate the newly deceased to the level of respected ancestors, which continue to interact with the living.

### Buddhist ideas of soul and afterlife

According to Buddhist scriptures, questions regarding existence in the afterlife constitute one of the fourteen issues on which the Buddha did not elaborate because such matters cannot be proven by experience or logic. Buddhist teachings denied any unchangeable or permanent entity, such as a soul, since all phenomena are

seen as subject to ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE). The Buddha is said to have instructed his disciples not to deal with funerals, unless they were for family members. The Buddha's funeral is said to have been performed according to the ancient Indian customs for the funeral of a cakravartin (wheel-turning emperor or king, who rules the world), and no Buddhist funerals for the dead were established at that time. Buddhist ideas of no-self (anātman) were the opposite of Brahmanical beliefs concerning the continuity of the self. Later, however, some Buddhist schools modified the idea of no-self by, for example, positing the ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA (storehouse consciousness) as that which undergoes rebirth. One widely accepted theory is the Sarvāstivāda school's stance on KARMA (ACTION) as the continuing force that sets in motion a new existence after death. Whatever philosophical terms the Buddhist scholars used, continuity of the individual after death was more or less assumed. These ideas, such as karma, provided the theoretical background for ancestral rites for the Buddhists.

Buddhist ancestral rites developed and incorporated non-Buddhist beliefs and practices from Hinduism, Confucianism, Daoism, and Shintō, as well as from the popular folk beliefs of the people in Asia. In almost all Asian cultures, indigenous spirit cults play a major role in ancestor worship and veneration: for example, the *phi* spirit of Thai people, the *nat* of the Burmese, the *tama* of the Japanese, and the *po* and *gui* of the Chinese. These potentially dangerous spirits can become ancestors through Buddhist pacification rituals and memorial rites.

### The Ghost Festival and merit transfer

The most widespread Buddhist ancestral festival is the GHOST FESTIVAL, or *yulanpen* (Japanese, Obon), which was recorded in Chinese Buddhist sources as early as the fifth century. During the Ghost Festival, ancestors are invited back to this world for a feast, which is prepared by the family members. This festival is based on the Buddhist legend of MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, one of the ten leading disciples of the Buddha. Mahāmaudgalyāyana is well known for liberating his mother from hell. His mother was unable to eat since all the food she tried to eat changed into fire before she put it into her mouth. Mahāmaudgalyāyana's offerings to the community of monks saved her from hell, and she was reborn in an upper heaven. This *yulanpen* festival unites the Buddhist components of hungry ghosts and salvation with Chinese indigenous belief in pacifying dead spirits. In China, imitation paper money and

miniature furniture and houses are burned to enrich the dead in the netherworld. With proper family offerings, these spirits can be transformed into protective ancestors.

This legend of *yulanpen* is based on Chinese Buddhist scriptures, but the idea of food offerings for ancestors also existed in pre-Buddhist India. An example of this is the main feature of the śrāddha feast, where sacred rice balls, or *piṇḍa*, were offered to ancestors. In these Indian rites, a feast is provided for the Brahmins, and the merit of this act is transferred to the ancestors. This kind of direct and indirect ritual feeding of ancestors has been incorporated into Buddhist ancestral rites such as *yulanpen* and other rites to feed hungry ghosts.

In *yulanpen* and related rites, an altar outside the main chapel was set up with food for the hungry ghosts, and various sūtras were recited in order to feed them and provide prayers for the pretas' possible future enlightenment. This kind of ritual act of *pūjanā* or, as Lynn deSilva calls it, "spiritual nourishment" (p. 155) was made for various revered objects such as the "three jewels" of the Buddha, dharma, and saṅgha, as well as for parents, teachers, elders, and the souls of the dead. The objects of offering were primarily food but also included incense (fragrance), clothes, bedding for monks, flowers, lights (candles and other bright lights), music, and right actions. In these offering ceremonies, the Buddha is symbolically invited into the ceremonial place and given praise and offerings. Confessional prayers are recited and certain MANTRA (e.g., *nenbutsu*, DHĀRAṆĪ, or DAIMOKU, depending on which Buddhist school one belongs to) are chanted in front of the Buddha. The merit accrued from these offerings and sūtra recitations is transferred to the dead.

In Sri Lanka, the deceased who did not reach the proper afterworld are feared by the living. Various sicknesses and disasters are alleged to be caused by these floating spirits of the dead. In order to pacify such ghosts, Buddhist monks are called upon to perform the *pirit* rites and to distribute magic threads and water to those afflicted. These floating spirits are eventually transformed into benevolent ancestors by the power of the *pirit* rites. Thai and Burmese Buddhists observe the same rite, but it is called the *paritta* ritual (Spiro, pp. 247–250). In Thailand, *bun khaw saak* (merit-making with puffed rice) and *org phansa* (end of Lent) are held annually in *wats* (monasteries), and offerings are made to the ancestors collectively (Tambiah, p. 190). The merit of such acts is transferred to the deceased, yet

Stanley Tambiah is reluctant to call these ceremonies ancestral worship since they do not involve systematized or formalized interaction between the deceased and the living. Nevertheless, he notes that the Buddhist monks act as mediators between death and rebirth, and they eliminate the dangers and pollution of death. In Korea, Buddhist monks do not widely deal with death rituals or rites of feeding deceased spirits and ancestors, unlike Thai or Japanese monks, even though Koreans have similar beliefs in spirits as those of other East Asian people. Shamans (Korean, *mudang*) largely deal with these ancestral rites.

### Intermediate states and memorial rites

The timing interval of memorial rites for the dead varies. In Sri Lanka, the rites (*pūjanās*) are to be held on the seventh day, three months, and one year after the death day. These memorial rites are called *mataka dānēs*, and monks are invited for the memorial feasts. The ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA and other Buddhist texts describe the judgments said to be undergone by the dead in the INTERMEDIATE STATES (Sanskrit, *antarābhava*; Chinese, *zhongyou*) every seven days after death, up to the forty-ninth day. The forty-ninth day is the final date when the realm of REBIRTH—whether in the hells, the heavens, or other realms—will be decided. Thus it marks the end of first mourning period for the living. In China, memorial rites for the deceased assume the form of Ten Buddha Rites (Chinese, *shifoshi*), which include seven weekly rites held every seven days up to the forty-ninth day, and on the hundredth day, one year, and the third year anniversaries—in total, ten memorial rites.

In Japan, three to five more rites were added, including rites held on the seventh, thirteenth, and thirty-third anniversaries. Observing ancestral rites is a major part of Japanese Buddhist practice, and death related rituals and services, such as funerals and memorial rites, have become the major source of monastic financing. According to folklorist Yanagida Kunio, the deceased souls, which are called *hotoke* (buddha) or spirits (Japanese, *shōrei*) are purified through these memorial rites. Once pacified, they become *kami* (deities) after the thirty-third anniversary memorial rite. These deified ancestors eventually lose their individual personalities as time passes and converge into the collective group of divine ancestors, which resides in the ancestral tablets (Japanese, *ihai*) and in ancestral family tombs. In Japan, *ihai* tablets are the most significant object in a Buddhist altar. They are enshrined in Japanese homes, with the exception



A Zen (Chan school) priest paying respect at his parents' gravesite in the cemetery of the Kōtokoji in Tokyo, 1992. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

of those of Jōdo Shinshū, one of the major lineages of Pure Land adherents. The ancestral tablet is Chinese Confucian in origin but was popularized by Buddhist monks during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries (Fujii, 1988, p. 20).

Family tombs are also important objects of ancestral worship in Japan. Early tombs are modeled on the STŪPAS in India, where relics of the Buddha are enshrined. Japanese ancestral tombs are visited by family members to commemorate their ancestors during the Obon ancestral festival. Unlike the Chinese and Japanese, Thai and Burmese Buddhists do not show much interest in building and maintaining elaborate graves because tombs are not regarded as ancestral residences.

### Founder worship in Japan

Another characteristic of Japanese Buddhism in relation to ancestor worship is worship of the founders of various Buddhist schools and sects, many of which were established during the Kamakura period (1185–1333). Those most frequently worshipped include KŪKAI (774–835) of the Shingon Tantric school; Eisai (1141–1215) of Rinzai Zen; DŌGEN (1200–1253) of Sōtō Zen; HŌNEN (1133–1212) of the Pure Land sect

or Jōdoshū; SHINRAN (1173–1263) of Jōdo Shinshū; and NICHIREN (1222–1282) of the Nichiren school. These founders are worshipped and revered as divine “fathers” of their respective lineages. The followers of these founders are considered the “children” of the father-founders, using a family analogy. The blood lineage (Japanese, *kechimyaku*) is interpreted in a spiritual sense as the bond connecting the founder and the followers through various rites. This founder worship is the basis of salvific and devotional Japanese Buddhism, since schools and lineages were formed and developed upon the basis of the revelatory experience of these founders. Several annual rites are performed to commemorate the birth, death, and other major life events of the founders or prominent monks who contributed to the different schools of Buddhism in Japan. The stūpas, which contain the remains of founders and prominent monks, are usually constructed within a monastery complex of the headquarters of a particular lineage or sect. Furthermore, statues of the founders and prominent monks are made and placed near the central objects of worship, usually Buddha figures or MAṄDALAS.

### Conclusion

Although Śākyamuni Buddha did not affirm the existence of an unchanging soul, Buddhism, in its development over many centuries in different parts of Asia, provides a rich theoretical and ritual basis for ancestral rites. One aspect of this basis is the idea of repeated birth in the lower six realms of existence: the realms of the hells, hungry ghosts, animals, humans, demigods (asura), or heavenly deities, depending upon one's karma from past lives. This idea of karma, of ancient Indian origin, was inherited by Buddhists and is understood as the continuing individual process that undergoes the cycle of rebirth. The concept of PRA-TĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) also contributed to ancestor worship, as the theory was understood, especially by the laypeople, to mean that past, present, and future lives are connected. Moreover, the idea of NIRVĀṄA, which is often explained with the analogy of extinguishing a candle, evolved into the idea of dharmakāya or dharma body, which is not affected by the death of the physical body of the Buddha (Sanskrit, *nirmāṇakāya*). The Buddha's funeral and the subsequent development of relic worship gave further impetus to the worship of ancestors.

The main concept underlying Buddhist ancestral rituals is the transfer of merit, which is practiced in almost all Buddhist countries. In the rituals of merit

transfer, giving offerings to the Buddha is regarded as the same thing as offering to ancestors. The unity of the living and the dead or the bond between descendants and ancestors is assured and affirmed by participating in and observing the Buddhist ancestral rites. In Southeast Asia, ancestor worship is not as evident as in East Asia, but the continual transfer of merit through offerings to monks and the saṅgha provides the opportunity to commemorate and nourish ancestral spirits.

**See also:** Cosmology; Death; Lineage; Merit and Merit-Making

### Bibliography

- Ahern, Emily M. *The Cult of the Dead in a Chinese Village*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1973.
- deSilva, Lynn A. *Buddhism: Beliefs and Practices in Sri Lanka*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: de Silva, 1974.
- Freedman, Maurice. *Lineage Organization in Southeastern China*. London: University of London, Athlone Press, 1958.
- Fujii Masao. "Soshi shinkō no keisei to tenkai" (The formation and development of founder worship in Japan). *Taishō daigaku daigaku-in kenkyū ronshū* 6 (1982): 23–39.
- Fujii Masao. *Sosen saiki* (Ancestral rites). Bukkyō minzogu-gaku taikai, Vol. 4. Tokyo: Meicho shuppan, 1988.
- Gombrich, Richard Francis, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Holt, John C. "Assisting the Dead by Venerating the Living: Merit Transfer in the Early Buddhist Tradition." *Numen* 28, no. 1 (1981): 1–28.
- Jordan, David K. *Gods, Ghosts, and Ancestors: The Folk Religion of a Taiwanese Village*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1972.
- Lee, Kwang Kyu. "The Concept of Ancestors and Ancestor Worship in Korea." *Asian Folklore Studies* 43 (1984): 199–214.
- Smith, Robert J. *Ancestor Worship in Contemporary Japan*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1974.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. New York: Harper, 1970.
- Takeda Chōshū. *Sosen sūhai* (Ancestor worship). Kyoto: Heirakuji Shoten, 1971.
- Tamamura Taijō. *Sōshiki Bukkyō* (Funeral Buddhism). Tokyo: Daihorinkaku, 1964.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Teiser, Stephen. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Yanagida Kunio. *Senzo no hanashi*. Tokyo: Tsukuma shobō, 1946. English translation by Fanny Hagin Mayer and Ishiwara Yasuyo. *About Our Ancestors: The Japanese Family System*. Tokyo: Bunshōdō, 1970.

MARIKO NAMBA WALTER

## ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE)

Impermanence, as the Sanskrit word *anitya* or Pāli word *anicca* are generally translated, is one of the three characteristics of the phenomenal world, or the world in which human beings live. The other two characteristics are DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) and no-self (anātman). The concept of impermanence is fundamental to all Buddhist schools: Everything that exists in this world is impermanent. No element of physical matter or any concept remains unchanged, including the SKANDHA (AGGREGATE) that make up individual persons. Things in the world change in two ways. First, they change throughout time. Second, everything in this world is influenced by other elements of the world, and thus all existence is contingent upon something else. Because of this state of interdependence, everything that exists in this world is subject to change and is thus impermanent. Impermanence is the cause of suffering, because humans attempt to hold on to things that are constantly changing, on the mistaken assumption that those things are permanent.

NIRVĀṆA is the only thing that lies beyond the reach of change, because it exists beyond the conceptual dualism of existence or nonexistence. Traditionally, Buddhist texts explain that because nirvāṇa is not dependent upon other elements in the world, it is described as "uncreated" and "transcendent." In short, nirvāṇa is not subject to change and is therefore not impermanent. For one who pursues the path toward enlightenment, the goal is to recognize the truth of impermanence by learning how not to depend upon the notion that things exist permanently in the world. According to the THERAVĀDA school of Buddhism, the first step in knowing the nature of reality is recognizing that neither the self nor the world exist permanently. Impermanence is woven throughout all of Buddhism, from its texts to artistic representations of Buddhist concepts.

**See also:** Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Bodhi (Awakening); Four Noble Truths; Path; Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)



**Bibliography**

Conze, Edward. *Buddhist Thought in India: Three Phases of Buddhist Philosophy*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1962.

Karunadasa, Y. “The Buddhist Critique of Sassatāvada and Ucchedavāda: The Key to a Proper Understanding of the Origin and Doctrines of Early Buddhism.” *Middle Way* 74, no. 2 (1999): 69–79.

CAROL S. ANDERSON

**AN SHIGAO**

An Shigao is the Chinese name of a Parthian Buddhist translator active in the Chinese capital Luoyang circa 148 to 180 C.E. Tradition represents him as a prince who renounced his throne to propagate the dharma in distant lands, becoming a hostage at the Han court, but little is known about his life. Scholars disagree over whether he was a layman or a monk, a follower of the MAHĀYĀNA or not. What is certain is that he was the first significant translator of Buddhist texts into Chinese. Fewer than twenty genuine works of his are thought to have survived. They include sūtras on such important topics as the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS, PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), the SKANDHA (AGGREGATE), and MINDFULNESS of breathing and other techniques of self-cultivation, as well as several treatises on similar subjects (one of them an early version of Saṅgharakṣa’s *Yogācārabhūmi*). Two works are in fact anthologies of short sūtras, while two other longer sūtras (*Daśottara*, *Arthavistara*) are compendia of terms, thus providing Chinese Buddhists with a comprehensive treatment of their new religion’s ideas and vocabulary. All the translations are of mainstream (Śrāvakayāna) literature, most apparently affiliated with the Sarvāstivāda school. The first propagator of ABHIDHARMA and meditation texts in China, An Shigao also pioneered the field of Chinese Buddhist translations, and may have established the translation committee as the standard approach. While his archaic renditions were soon superseded by his successors, some of the terms he used (like the transcriptions *fo* for Buddha or *pusa* for bodhisattva) have stood the test of time and are still current in East Asia today.

*See also:* **Mainstream Buddhist Schools**

**Bibliography**

Forte, Antonino. *The Hostage An Shigao and His Offspring*. Kyoto, Japan: Italian School of East Asian Studies, 1995.

Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

Zürcher, Erik. “A New Look at the Earliest Chinese Buddhist Texts.” In *From Benares to Beijing: Essays on Buddhism and Chinese Religion in Honour of Prof. Jan Yün-hua*, ed. Koichi Shinohara and Gregory Schopen. Oakville, ON: Mosaic, 1991.

PAUL HARRISON

**ANUTTARASAMYAKSAMBOODHI  
(COMPLETE, PERFECT AWAKENING)**

*Anuttarasamyaksambodhi* is a Sanskrit term for unsurpassed (*anuttara*), complete and perfect (*samyak*) awakening (*sambodhi*). Buddhist texts frequently use this term to describe the awakened wisdom acquired by buddhas and tathāgatas and to indicate that the content of that awakening transcends all conceptions and cannot be compared to the knowledge or wisdom of any other being, whether human or divine.

*See also:* **Bodhi (Awakening)**

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

**APOCRYPHA**

The term *apocrypha* has been used in Western scholarship to refer to Buddhist literature that developed in various parts of Asia in imitation of received texts from the Buddhist homeland of India. Texts included under the rubric of apocrypha share some common characteristics, but they are by no means uniform in their literary style or content. Apocrypha may be characterized collectively as a genre of indigenous religious literature that claimed to be of Indian Buddhist pedigree or affiliation and that came to acquire varying degrees of legitimacy and credence with reference to the corpus of shared scripture. Some apocrypha, especially in East Asian Buddhism, purported to be the BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA) (that is, sūtra) or the word of other notable and anonymous exegetes of Indian Buddhism (śāstra). Others claimed to convey the insights of enlightened beings from India or of those who received such insights through a proper line of transmission, as in the case of Tibetan “treasure texts” (*gter ma*) that were hidden and discovered by qualified persons. Still others were mod-

eled after canonical narrative literature, as in the case of apocryphal JĀTAKA (birth stories of the Buddha) from Southeast Asia. Thus, what separates apocrypha from other types of indigenous Buddhist literature was their claimed or implied Indian attribution and authorship. The production of apocryphal texts is related to the nature of the Buddhist CANON within each tradition. The Chinese and Tibetan canons remained open in order to allow the introduction of new scriptures that continued to be brought from India over several centuries, a circumstance that no doubt inspired religious innovation and encouraged the creation of new religious texts, such as apocrypha. The Pāli canon of South and Southeast Asia, on the other hand, was fixed at a relatively early stage in its history, making it more difficult to add new materials.

The above general characterization offers a clue as to the function and purpose of apocrypha: They adapted Indian material to the existing local contexts—be they religious, sociocultural, or even political—thereby bridging the conceptual gulf that otherwise might have rendered the assimilation of Buddhism more difficult, if not impossible. The perceived authority inherent in the received texts of the tradition was tacitly recognized and adopted to make the foreign religion more comprehensible to contemporary people in the new lands into which Buddhism was being introduced. Indeed history shows that some apocryphal texts played seminal roles in the development of local Buddhist cultures as they became an integral part of the textual tradition both inside and outside the normative canon. But not all apocrypha were purely or even primarily aimed at promoting Buddhist causes. Some Chinese apocrypha, for example, were all about legitimating local religious customs and practices by presenting them in the guise of the teaching of the Buddha. These examples illustrate that the authority of SCRIPTURE spurred literary production beyond the confines of Buddhism proper and provided a form in which a region's popular religious dimensions could be expressed in texts.

Of the known corpus of apocrypha, the most “egregious” case may be East Asian Buddhist apocrypha that assumed the highest order of Indian pedigree, by claiming to be the genuine word of the Buddha himself. Naturally their claims to authenticity did not go unnoticed among either conservative or liberal factions within the Buddhist community. During the medieval period these texts became objects of contempt as well as, contrarily, materials of significant utility and force in the ongoing sinification of Buddhism.

Thus Chinese Buddhist apocrypha epitomize the complexity of issues surrounding the history, identity, and function of Buddhist apocrypha as a broader genre of Buddhist literature.

### Chinese Buddhist apocrypha

Chinese Buddhist apocrypha began to be written almost contemporaneously with the inception of Buddhist translation activities in the mid-second century C.E. According to records in Buddhist CATALOGUES OF SCRIPTURES, the number of apocrypha grew steadily every generation, through at least the eighth century. Most cataloguers were vehement critics of apocrypha, as can be gauged from their description of them as either “spurious” or “suspected” scriptures, or from statements that condemned these scriptures as eroding the integrity of the Buddhist textual transmission in China. Despite the concerted, collective efforts of the cataloguers and, at times, the imperial court to root out these indigenous scriptures, it was not until the compilation of the first printed Buddhist canon, the Northern Song edition (971–983), that new textual creation waned and eventually all but ceased. The production of apocrypha in China was thus a phenomenon of the manuscript period, when handwritten texts of local origin could gain acceptance as scripture and even be included in the canon, the result being an enigmatic category of scripture that is at once inauthentic and yet canonical.

Modern scholarship's discovery of such “canonical apocrypha” testifies to the complexity and difficulty of textual adjudication as well as to the authors' sophisticated level of comprehension and assimilation of Buddhist materials. It was never easy for traditional bibliographical cataloguers to determine scriptural authenticity. Success in ferreting out apocryphal texts—especially when the texts in question were composed by authors with extensive knowledge of Buddhist doctrines and practice and with substantial literary skill—required extensive exposure to a wide range of Buddhist literature. In addition, the task was at times deliberately compromised—as in the case of the *Lidai sanbaoji* (*Record of the Three Treasures throughout Successive Dynasties*; 597)—for no other reason than the polemical need to purge from the canon any elements that might subject Buddhism to criticism from religious and ideological rivals, such as Daoists and Confucians. The *Lidai sanbaoji* added many false author and translator attributions to apocrypha in order to authenticate those texts as genuine scripture; and once its arbitrary attributions were

accepted in a state-commissioned catalogue, the *Da-Zhou kanding zhongjing mulu* (*Catalogue of Scriptures, Authorized by the Great Zhou Dynasty*; 695), the Chinese tradition accepted the vast majority of those texts as canonical. The *Kaiyuan shijiao lu* (*Record of Śākya-muni's Teachings, Compiled during the Kaiyuan Era*; 730)—recognized as the best of all traditional catalogues—was critical of both these predecessors, but even it was unable to eliminate all these past inaccuracies due in part to the weight of tradition. Canonical apocrypha are therefore ideal examples of the clash of motivations and compromises reached in the process of creating a religious tradition. These apocrypha thus added new dimensions to the evolving Buddhist religion in China due in part to their privileged canonical status, but also, more importantly, because of their responsiveness to Chinese religious and cultural needs.

There are some 450 titles of Chinese apocryphal texts listed in the traditional bibliographical catalogues. In actuality, however, the cumulative number of apocrypha composed in China is closer to 550 when we take into account both other literary evidence, as well as texts not listed in the catalogues but subsequently discovered among Buddhist text and manuscript collections in China and Japan. Approximately one-third of this total output is extant today—a figure that is surprisingly large, given the persistent censorship to which apocrypha were subjected throughout the medieval period. This survival rate is testimony to their effectiveness as *indigenous* Buddhist scripture and attests to the continued reception given to these texts by the Chinese, even such knowledgeable exegetes as ZHIYI (538–597), the systematizer of the Tiantai School of Chinese Buddhism. The vitality of the phenomenon of apocrypha in China also catalyzed the creation of new scriptures in other parts of East Asia, though to nowhere near the same extent as in China proper.

The extant corpus of apocrypha includes both canonical apocrypha as well as texts preserved as citations in Chinese exegetical works. Apocrypha were also found in the two substantial medieval manuscript collections discovered in modern times. The first is the Dunhuang cache of Central Asia discovered at the turn of the twentieth century, which included manuscripts dating from the fifth to eleventh centuries. The second is the Nanatsu-dera manuscript canon in Nagoya, Japan, which was compiled during the twelfth century based on earlier manuscript editions of the Buddhist canon. It was discovered in 1990 to have included apocrypha of both Chinese and Japanese ori-

gin. The most astonishing historical finding in this canon was the *Piluo sanmei jing* (*The Scripture on the Absorption of Piluo*), an apocryphon attested in the bibliographical catalogue compiled by the renowned monk-scholar DAO'AN (312–385), but previously unknown. The Japanese manuscript is the only extant copy of this extremely early Chinese apocryphon. Other findings are no less valuable in ascertaining the overall history of apocrypha: Both the Dunhuang and Nanatsu-dera manuscripts included many titles with no known record in the catalogues, evidence indicating that indigenous scriptural creation was even more prolific than had previously been recognized. Moreover, scholars have suggested or identified convincingly some of the Nanatsu-dera apocrypha as Japanese compilations based on Indian texts or Chinese apocryphal materials. Thus the apocrypha extant in Japan serve as witness to the currency and impact of this contested, but obviously useful, material.

### Texts and contents

The extant corpus of apocryphal literature defies simple description, as each text has its own unique doctrinal or practical orientation, motive, and literary style and technique. Some of the canonical apocrypha skillfully synthesized orthodox Buddhist material from India without any apparent indication of their native pedigree; others, however, propagated popular beliefs and practices typical of local culture while including negligible Buddhist elements, save for the inclusion of the word *sūtra* (*jing*) in the title. The majority falls somewhere between the two extremes, by promoting Buddhist beliefs and practices as the means of accruing worldly and spiritual merit. A few scholars have attempted to make typological classifications of all extant apocrypha, but these remain problematic until the corpus is thoroughly studied and understood in its religious and sociocultural contexts. What follows therefore is a selected review of some of the *raison d'être* of apocrypha, which are reflected in the ways in which Buddhist teachings are framed and presented.

We will begin with two examples of apocrypha that assembled MAHĀYĀNA doctrine in ways that would support a theory or practice that had no exact counterpart in Indian Buddhism. First, the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN) reconstructed Buddhist orthodoxy by synthesizing three major strands of Indian doctrine—ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA (storehouse consciousness), and TATHĀGATAGARBHA (womb/embryo of buddhas)—in order to posit an ontology of mind in which the mind could simultane-

ously be inherently enlightened and yet subject to ignorance. After its appearance in the sixth century, the *Awakening of Faith* became perhaps the most prominent example of the impact apocrypha had on the development of Chinese Buddhist ideology, as it became the catalyst for the development of the sectarian doctrines of such indigenous schools as Tiantai, Huayan, and Chan. The text is also a prime example of the ways in which an indigenous author selectively appropriated and ingeniously synthesized Indian materials in order better to suit a Chinese religious context. Second, the *Jin'gang sanmei jing* (*The Scripture of Adamantine Absorption*, or *Vajrasamādhi-sūtra*) is an eclectic amalgam of a wide range of Mahāyāna doctrine, which sought to provide a foundation for a comprehensive system of meditative practice and to assert the soteriological efficacy of that system. The scripture is also one of the oldest works associated with the CHAN SCHOOL in China and Korea, and is thus historically significant. Unlike other apocrypha discussed elsewhere in this entry, one study suggests that this sūtra is actually a Korean composition from the seventh century (Buswell 1989). This scripture, along with Japanese apocrypha mentioned earlier, is thus a barometer of the organic relationship that pertained between Buddhism in China and the rest of East Asia and demonstrates the pervasive impetus for indigenous scriptural creation throughout the region.

Other apocrypha incorporated local references and inferences in order to better relate certain Buddhist values and stances to the surrounding milieu. PRECEPTS are the bedrock of Buddhist soteriology and figure prominently as a theme among apocrypha, as, for example, in the *FANWANG JING* (BRAHMA'S NET SŪTRA). This scripture reformulated the Mahāyāna bodhisattva precepts in part by correlating them with the Confucian notion of filial piety (*xiao*), a conspicuous maneuver that betrays both the Chinese pedigree of the text as well as its motive to reconcile two vastly different value systems. It also addressed problems arising from secular control over Buddhist institutions and membership—a blending of religious instruction and secular concerns that was not atypical of apocrypha, as we will see again below.

Other apocrypha that have precepts as a prominent theme specifically targeted the LAITY; such texts include the *Piluo sanmei jing* (*The Scripture of the Absorption of Piluo*), *Tiwei jing* (*The Scripture of Tiwei*), and *Chingjing faxing jing* (*The Scripture of Pure Religious Cultivation*). These apocrypha taught basic lay moral guidelines, such as the five precepts, the ten wholesome

actions, and the importance of DĀNA (GIVING), all set within a doctrinal framework of KARMA (ACTION) and REBIRTH. These lay precepts are at times presented as the sufficient cause for attaining buddhahood, a radically simplified PATH that is no doubt intended to encourage the participation of the laity in Buddhist practice. These precepts are also often presented as being superior to the five constant virtues (*wuchang*) of Confucianism, or to any of the tangible and invisible elements of the ancient Chinese worldview, including the cosmological network of yin and yang, the five material elements, and the five viscera of Daoist internal medicine. The idea of filial piety is most conspicuous in the *Fumu enzhong jing* (*The Scripture on Profound Gratitude toward Parents*), which is based on the Confucian teaching of “twenty-four [exemplary types of] filial piety” (*ershihsixiao*). The text highlights the deeds of an unfilial son and exhorts him to requite his parents' love and sacrifice by making offerings to the three JEWELS (the Buddha, the dharma, and the SAṄGHA). The scripture has been one of the most popular apocrypha since the medieval period.

The law of karma and rebirth mentioned above is a ubiquitous theme or backdrop of apocrypha. The text commonly known as the *Shiwang jing* (*The Scripture on the Ten Kings*) illustrated the alien Buddhist law to a Chinese audience by depicting the afterlife in purgatory. After death, a person must pass sequentially through ten hell halls, each presided over by a judge; the individual's postmortem fate depended on the judges' review of his or her deeds while on earth. This bureaucratization of hell was an innovation that mirrored the Chinese sociopolitical structure. This scripture's pervasive influence can be gauged from the many paintings, stone carvings, and sculptures of the ten kings—typically garbed in the traditional attire and headgear of Chinese officials—that were found in medieval East Asian Buddhist sites.

Given that apocryphal scriptures were products of specific times and places, it is no surprise that they also criticized not only the contemporary state of religion but also society as a whole, and even the state and its policies toward Buddhism. Such criticisms were often framed within the eschatological notion of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA, which was adapted from Indian sources. The *RENWANG JING* (HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA) described corruption in all segments of society, natural calamities and epidemics, state control and persecution of Buddhism, and the neglect of precepts by Buddhist adherents. The suggested solution to this crisis was the perfection of wisdom (*prajñāpāramitā*), whose

efficacy would restore order in religion and society and even protect the state from extinction. The scripture was popular in medieval East Asia, especially among the ruling class, not least because of its assertion of state protection. The *Shouluo biqiu jing* (*The Scripture of Bhikṣu Shouluo*) offered a different solution to eschatological crisis: It prophesized the advent of a savior, Lunar-Radiant Youth, during a time of utter disorder and corruption. Such a messianic message is of course not without precedent in Indian Buddhism—the cult of the future buddha MAITREYA is the ubiquitous example—but the suggestion of a savior in the present world might easily be construed as politically subversive, and as a direct challenge to the authority of the secular regime. This scripture is one of those lost apocrypha that was discovered among the Dunhuang manuscript cache some fourteen hundred years after the first recorded evidence of its composition.

The preceding coverage has touched upon only a small part of the story of Buddhist apocrypha. Even this brief treatment should make clear, however, that apocrypha occupy a crucial place in the history of Buddhism as a vehicle of innovation and adaptation, which bridged the differences between the imported texts of the received Buddhist tradition and indigenous religion, society and culture. As such, they also offer substantial material for cross-cultural and comparative studies of scripture and canon in different religious traditions.

*See also:* Daoism and Buddhism; Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch'an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-Sūtra, a Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., ed. *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Jaini, Padmanabh S., and Horner, I. B. *Apocryphal Birth Stories (Paññāsa-Jātaka)*, 2 vols. London: Pali Text Society, 1985.
- Kapstein, Matthew T. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Makita, Tairyō. *Gikyō kenkyū* (Studies on Suspect Scriptures). Kyoto: Kyoto Daigaku Jinmon Kagaku Kenkyūsho, 1976.
- Makita, Tairyō, and Ochiai, Toshinori, eds. *Chūgoku senjutsu kyōten* (Scriptures Composed in China); *Chūgoku Nihon senjutsu kyōten: kanyaku kyōten* (Scriptures Composed in China and Japan, Scriptures Translated into Chinese [Extrac-

tions]); and *Chūgoku Nihon senjutsu kyōten: senjutsusho* (Scriptures and Commentaries Composed in China and Japan). Nanatsu-dera koitsu kyōten kenkyū sōsho (The Long Hidden Scriptures of Nanatsu-dera, Research Series), Vols. 1–5. Tokyo: Daitō Shuppansha, 1994–2000.

- Mochizuki, Shinkō. *Bukkyo kyōten seiritsushi ron* (Study on the Development of Buddhist Scriptures). Kyoto: Hōzō-kan, 1946.
- Orzech, Charles D. *Politics and Transcendent Wisdom: The Scripture for Humane Kings in the Creation of Chinese Buddhism*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1998.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Tsukamoto, Zenryū. *Tsukamoto Zenryū chosakushū*, Vol. 2: *Hokuchō bukkyōshi kenkyū* (Collected Works of Tsukamoto Zenryū, Vol. 2: Studies on the Buddhist History of Northern Dynasties). Tokyo: Daitō Shuppansha, 1974.
- Yabuki, Keiki. *Meisha yoin: kaisetsu* (Echoes of the Singing Sands: Explanations). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1933.
- Zürcher, Erik. "Prince Moonlight: Messianism and Eschatology in Early Medieval Chinese Buddhism." *T'oung-pao* 68 (1982), 1–59.

KYOKO TOKUNO

## ARHAT

The arhat (Sanskrit) or *arahant* (Pāli) is a being who has attained the state of enlightenment that is the goal of THERAVĀDA and other MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS. The arhat is fully human yet has reached a transcendent state of wisdom and liberation that the texts describe as being almost identical with that of the Buddha. In this way, the arhat fulfills a dual role as both an ideal for imitation and an object of veneration.

As an ideal of imitation, the arhat represents the completion of the gradual PATH that leads from the stage of an ordinary person, characterized by ignorance, to that of an enlightened person endowed with wisdom. Theravāda texts describe this path as having two levels: the mundane or worldly, and the supra-mundane. Theravāda held that the path was open to all beings who could master the attainments required, and it subdivided the path into four stages that must be completed over many lifetimes. These four stages are termed the four paths (*mārga*) or the four noble persons (*ārya-pudgala*), and comprise (1) the path of stream-attainment (*srotāpanna mārga*), (2) the path of once-returning (*sakrdāgāmi mārga*), (3) the path of

nonreturning (*anāgāmi mārga*), and (4) the path of the arhat. The division of the path into these stages extending over many lifetimes served to make the ideal of arhatship more viable for ordinary people.

The Buddhist CANON contains many sūtras that spell out in detail the nature of the perfections that must be accomplished at each of the stages of the path in order to progress toward arhatship. The perfection of moral conduct (*śīla*) constitutes the first requirement of the path. In the *Visuddhimagga* (*Path to Purification*), BUDDHAGHOSA (fifth century C.E.) explains that a person on the path must fulfill the PRECEPTS, living by compassion and nonviolence, living without stealing and depending on the charity of others, practicing chastity, speaking truth, and following all of the major and minor precepts. Having made progress in *śīla*, the aspiring arhat moves to perfect the restraint of sense faculties. Controlling the senses rather than allowing the senses to control him or her, the aspirant experiences a state of peace. The next stage involves the development of samādhi, or concentration, and here the chief obstacles to be overcome are the five hindrances (*nīvaraṇa*), which include sensual desire, ill will, sloth and torpor, excitement and flurry, and DOUBT.

Closely related to this formulation of the states to be conquered is the list of mental fetters (*saṃyojana*) that must be abandoned in order to progress from the stage of stream-enterer to that of arhat. A person attains the fruit of stream-entry by eliminating the first three fetters: mistaken belief in a self, doubt, and trust in mere rites and RITUALS. To progress to the stage of the once-returner, a person must reduce lust, ill will, and delusion. The third noble person, the nonreturner, completes the destruction of the first five fetters by completely destroying sensual desire and ill will. To become an arhat one must proceed to eliminate the five remaining fetters, called higher fetters: desire for material existence, desire for immaterial existence, conceit, restlessness, and ignorance.

Having eliminated these negative states, the arhat-to-be enters the successive *jhānas* (Sanskrit, *dhyāna*) or trance states of samādhi, and attains the mental factors ending in pure MINDFULNESS and equanimity. The *Dīghanikāya* contrasts persons who have reached this stage with ordinary persons by stating that those who attain this level are as happy as prisoners who have been set free or as people who have found their way out of the wilderness to safety (D.1.72f.). To move beyond this stage, the potential arhat perfects the six ABHIJÑĀ (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES). The first three of

these comprise what can be called miraculous powers: the ability to do the miraculous deeds traditionally attributed to Indian holy persons, such as becoming invisible, flying through the air, walking on water, and other physical and psychic powers. The three remaining *abhijñā* comprise the three knowledges: knowledge of one's previous lives, the "divine eye" (*divyacakṣu*) that allows one to see others' past lives, and knowledge of the destruction of the cankers. Having reached this stage, the arhat is described throughout the Pāli canon as "one who has destroyed the cankers, who has done what was to be done, who has laid down the burden . . . and is liberated."

The detailed and somewhat formulaic canonical descriptions of the arhat's path serve both to present the path as an imitable goal and to emphasize how distant this goal is from the ordinary person. Theravāda supplemented these normative descriptions of the path to arhatship with hagiographical accounts of the great arhats who had completed this path. The difficulty of the path implied that the figures who had completed it were greatly to be venerated. The canonical and commentarial stories of the great arhats describe them as performing meritorious deeds in their previous lives, which led to their having opportunities to hear and follow the dharma. Through hearing the dharma and practicing the path, these arhats reached the perfection of wisdom and compassion. Theravādin accounts praise these arhats for attaining various forms of perfection in relation to the world. Free from the snares of desire, the arhats were not attached to the material world. For example, the female arhat, Subhā, who had overcome all attachments and was living as a nun in the forest, plucked out her eye and gave it to a pursuer who said that he was attracted to her because of her deerlike eyes. The stories of other arhats stress their perfection of qualities such as equanimity, nonattachment, and peace. Great arhats like Mahākassapa (Sanskrit, MAHĀKĀŚYAPA) and Aññā-Koṇḍoñña were revered for their ability to teach the dharma, and other arhats were remembered for serving as advisers and counselors to the people. Veneration of these great arhats by ordinary persons at the lower levels of the path both leads to and is in itself imitation of the arhats' path to development.

Although the arhat plays a primary role in Theravāda Buddhism, the ideal is also found in some MAHĀYĀNA texts that mention a group of sixteen (or sometimes eighteen) great arhats. Mahāyāna sūtras teach that the Buddha requested these sixteen arhats to remain in the world to teach the dharma until the next Buddha, MAITREYA, appears.

See also: Arhat Images; Bodhi (Awakening); Disciples of the Buddha

### Bibliography

- Bond, George D. "The Arahant: Sainthood in Theravada Buddhism." In *Sainthood: Its Manifestations in World Religions*, ed. Richard Kieckhefer and George D. Bond. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1988.
- Horner, I. B. *The Early Buddhist Theory of Man Perfected*. London: Williams and Norgate, 1936.
- Tambiah, S. J. "The Buddhist Arahant: Classical Paradigm and Modern Thai Manifestations." In *Saints and Virtues*, ed. John S. Hawley. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1987.

GEORGE D. BOND

## ARHAT IMAGES

The depiction of arhats (Chinese, *luohan*; Japanese, *rakan*; Korean, *nahan*) in painting and sculpture is a time-honored one in East Asian Buddhist art. Literally meaning "one worthy of honor," arhats are senior disciples of the Buddha who attained awakening through his teaching. After the sūtra about sixteen "great" arhats, *Da aluohan Nandimiduoluo suo shuo fazhujī* (*Record of the Abiding Law as Spoken by the Great Arhat Nandimitra*, T.2030), was translated into Chinese in the mid-seventh century, worship centered on this select group, which eventually expanded from sixteen to eighteen and then to five hundred in number. These select arhats, said to reside in remote mountain fastnesses and believed to possess miraculous powers, had been given the charge to protect the buddhadharma until the buddha of the future, MAITREYA, makes his appearance, and this kalpa (or cycle) of existence comes to an end. From the late ninth century onward, arhats inspired a fervent cultic worship in Central Asia and throughout East Asia.

One clue that suggests why such worship was so enduring may be found in the *Record of the Abiding Law*. There the believer is instructed to show devotion to the arhats by supporting the monastic order. The sūtra states that such devotional actions call forth the arhats, although they disguise their "transcendent natures," to mingle amidst human beings, bestowing upon pious donors "the reward of that fruit that surpasses all others" (i.e., the attainment of buddhahood). Another factor that contributed to the flourishing of arhat worship in China was the probable



An arhat, or enlightened disciple, with a fly whisk. (Chinese painting by Guanxiu, 832–912.) The Art Archive/Private Collection Paris/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

association of the miracle-working arhats named in the sūtra and subsequently depicted in paintings and sculpture with the fabled but indigenous Daoist immortals, who were also thought to reside in remote realms and possess supernatural powers; indeed, the Sanskrit term *arhat* was first translated into Chinese by borrowing terms from the Daoist lexicon that refer to such immortals.

The beginnings of the depiction of the sixteen arhats named in the *Record of the Abiding Law* are obscure; the available visual evidence consists of mere fragments or later copies of paintings. Textual sources, however, indicate that by the latter half of the ninth century, as the arhats' cultic worship became well-established, painters of note, such as Guanxiu (832–912) and Zhang Xuan (tenth century), depicted the theme, apparently in the form of iconic portraits. By this time there appear to have been two approaches to depicting arhats: either as monks with Chinese facial features

or as distinctly exotic, even grotesque beings. Guanxiu, a Chan priest and accomplished poet who was said to have derived inspiration for his painting from prayer-induced visions, was heralded by later historians as having been the first to portray the arhats, in the words of Huang Xiufu (late tenth/early eleventh century), as foreign in appearance, “having bushy eyebrows and huge eyes, slack-jawed and big-nosed,” and in a landscape setting, “leaning against a pine or a boulder.” Such characteristics can be seen in a set of sixteen hanging scrolls in the Imperial Household Agency, Tokyo, that is generally thought to best preserve Guanxiu’s powerful conception. Guanxiu’s radical vision was perpetuated in sets of arhat paintings produced throughout the medieval period in China and Japan.

By the latter half of the twelfth century the mode of representing arhats in the guise of more familiar, sinicized monks, albeit sometimes performing miraculous feats, included their placement in much more elaborate landscape settings and the suggestion of narrative implications far beyond the content of the *Record of the Abiding Law*. Skilled at conjuring up such dramatic renditions in ink and color on silk, professional Buddhist painters in cities like Ningbo in Zhejiang province created large sets of hanging scrolls that depicted what had now become the five hundred arhats. One of the most significant sets to survive from a Ningbo workshop is that produced in 1178 by Lin Tinggui and Zhou Jichang.

Arhats, because of their ascetic devotion to the dharma, became a favored subject of adherents to the CHAN SCHOOL. Whereas resplendent sets of paintings, like the one mentioned above, were hung in temple halls for public worship, renderings in ink monochrome and often with exceptionally delicate lineation, known as *baimiao* or plain line drawing, were enjoyed by monks and lay worshippers in more intimate and scholarly exchanges. From the twelfth century onward in China, but especially at times when the Chan school was revitalized by the presence and activity of prominent clerics, depictions of arhats in this more scholarly mode of painting reappeared with new vigor and subtle invention.

As a complement to painted images, sculpted representations of arhats occupied temple halls as well. Few early examples survive, however. Offering a glimpse of what must have been a vibrant tradition are five magnificent ceramic sculptures of arhats, slightly larger than lifesize and featuring a three-color glaze, that were found in a cave in Hebei province early in

the twentieth century. From a presumed set of sixteen, they are thought to date to the late eleventh or early twelfth century. Sinicized portrayals, they reflect the characterization of the arhats as familiar monks; nevertheless, because of the talent of the nameless artisans who created them, they are imbued with a meditative authority befitting the arhats’ mission to remain ever steadfast in protecting the dharma.

*See also:* Arhat; Chan Art; Daoism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- De Visser, Marinus W. *The Arhats in China and Japan*. Berlin: Oesterheld, 1923.
- Fong, Wen. *The Lohans and a Bridge to Heaven*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, Freer Gallery of Art, 1958.
- Kent, Richard K. “Depictions of the Guardians of the Law: Lohan Painting in China.” In *Latter Days of the Law: Images of Chinese Buddhism 850–1850*, ed. Marsha Weidner. Lawrence: Spenser Museum of Art, University of Kansas; Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Smithies, Richard, “The Search for the Lohans of I-chou (Yixian).” *Oriental Art* 30, no. 3 (1984): 260–274.
- Watanabe, Masako. “Guanxiu and Exotic Imagery in Rakan Paintings.” *Oriental Art* 31, no. 4 (2000): 34–42.

RICHARD K. KENT

---

## ĀRYADEVA

Āryadeva (ca. 170–270 C.E.) in his major work, *Catuḥśataka* (*Four Hundred Verses*), defends the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL against Buddhist and Brāhmanical opponents. The commentary of CANDRAKĪRTI (ca. 600–650 C.E.) on this text identifies Āryadeva as a Sinhala king’s son who renounced the throne, traveled to South India, and became NĀGĀRJUNA’s main disciple.

### Bibliography

- Lang, Karen. *Āryadeva’s Catuḥśataka: On the Bodhisattva’s Cultivation of Merit and Knowledge*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Akademisk Forlag, 1986.
- Sonam, Ruth. *Yogic Deeds of Bodhisattvas: Gyel-tsap on Āryadeva’s Four Hundred*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1994.
- Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Materials for the Study of Āryadeva, Dharmāpala, and Candrakīrti*, 2 vols. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 1990.

KAREN LANG



## ĀRYAŚŪRA

Āryaśūra was a fourth-century C.E. Sanskrit poet. His famous work, the JĀTAKAMĀLĀ (*Garland of Jātakas*), contains thirty-four stories about the noble deeds of the Buddha in previous incarnations, exemplifying in particular the PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) of generosity, morality, and patience. Written in prose interspersed with verse, it is one of the Buddhist masterpieces of classical Sanskrit literature.

See also: **Jātaka; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

Khoroché, Peter, trans. *Once the Buddha Was a Monkey: Ārya Śūra's Jātakamālā*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1989.

PETER KHOROCHE

## ASAṄGA

Asaṅga (ca. 320–ca. 390) is regarded as the founder of the Yogācāra tradition of MAHĀYĀNA philosophy. His biography reports that he was born in Puruṣapura, India, and converted to Mahāyāna from the HĪNAYĀNA, later convincing his brother VASUBANDHU to make the same move. Together they systematized the teachings of Yogācāra, authoring the main Yogācāra commentaries and treatises. Asaṅga's many works include *Abhidharmasamuccaya* (*A Compendium of Abhidharma*), which presents and defines technical terms and usages, and the *Xīanyang shengjiao lun*, extant only in Chinese translation, a text that summarizes the truly compendious *Yogācārabhūmi* (*Stages of Yogic Practice*), with which he is also connected as author/editor. Other commentaries are attributed to him on important Yogācāra and some Prajñāpāramitā and Madhyamaka works as well. By far his principal work is the *Mahāyānasamgraha* (*Summary of the Great Vehicle*), in which he presents the tenets of Yogācāra in clear and systematic fashion, moving step by step, first explaining the basic notion of the storehouse consciousness and its functional relationship to the mental activities of sensing, perceiving, and thinking, then outlining the structure of consciousness in its three patterns of the other-dependent (dependent arising applied to the very structure of consciousness), the imagined, and the perfected, which is the other-dependent emptied of clinging to the imagined. He then sketches how the

mind constructs its world; he develops a critical philosophy of mind that, in place of ABHIDHARMA's naive realism, can understand understanding, reject its imagined pattern, and—having attained the perfected state of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS)—engage in other-dependent thinking and action. Asaṅga thereby reaffirms the conventional value of theory, which had appeared to be disallowed by earlier Madhyamaka dialectic. He treats the practices conducive to awakening (perfections, stages, discipline, concentration, and nonimaginative wisdom) and finally turns to the abandonment of delusion and the realization of buddhahood as the three bodies of awakening. Asaṅga's work is a compendium of critical Yogācāra understanding of the mind.

See also: **Consciousness, Theories of; Madhyamaka School; Yogācāra School**

### Bibliography

Keenan, John P., trans. *The Summary of the Great Vehicle by Bodhisattva Asaṅga (Translated from the Chinese of Paramārtha)*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1992.

Lamotte, Étienne, ed. and trans. *La Somme du Grand Véhicule d'Asaṅga (Mahāyānasamgraha)*, Vol. 1: *Version tibétaine et chinoise (Hiuan-tsang)*; Vol. 2: *Traduction et commentaire*. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium, 1938–39. Reprint, 1973.

Rahula, Walpola, ed. and trans. *Le compendium de la superdoctrine (Abhidharmasamuccaya) d'Asaṅga*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1971. Reprint, 1980.

JOHN P. KEENAN

## ASCETIC PRACTICES

Buddhism arose in India at a time when a number of non-Vedic ascetic movements were gaining adherents. These Śramaṇic traditions offered a variety of psychosomatic disciplines by which practitioners could experience states transcending those of conditioned existence. Accounts of the Buddha's quest for awakening depict the BODHISATTVA engaging in ascetic disciplines common to many Śramaṇic groups of his time. The bodhisattva reportedly lived in the wilderness, practiced breath-control, gave little care to his manner of dress, and fasted for long periods, strictly controlling his intake of food. But these accounts are not entirely consistent. Most indicate that the bodhisattva practiced asceticism for a period of six years; others (namely the *Sutta Nipāta* 446, and the *Āṅguttara Nik-*

*āya* 4:88) state that the period of ascetic practice was seven years in duration. All accounts depict the bodhisattva practicing a regimen characterized by abstemious self-control, but details differ. Some say that he went unclothed in the manner of some Śramaṇic groups, that he wore only animal skins or bark clothing, and that he subsisted on fruits and roots. Some indicate that his meals consisted only of a single grain of rice, or a single jujube fruit.

The most critical discrepancy in these accounts of the bodhisattva's experiments in asceticism is the fact that where early sources such as the *Sutta Nipāta* praise asceticism, later accounts describe the bodhisattva reaching a point where he rejects asceticism and discovers the Middle Way. Later accounts link this discovery of a PATH between the extremes of self-indulgence and self-mortification to the achievement of BODHI (AWAKENING). The bodhisattva, according to these accounts, had reached such a point of emaciation that he could feel his spinal cord by touching his abdomen (e.g., *Majjhima Nikāya* 1:80, 1: 246). Fainting from hunger and near to death, the bodhisattva had to rethink his methodology. A critical juncture in his ascetic regimen occurred when he accepted an offering of rice boiled in milk and was rejected by his ascetic companions as a hedonist.

To understand why later accounts repudiate asceticism as a path to awakening and link the practice of the Middle Way to the achievement of awakening, it is necessary to consider the history of Buddhist engagement with rival religious groups and how polemics shaped the development of Buddhism in India. As Buddhism spread from its initial heartland, it became important that Buddhists take a stand on asceticism so as to clearly differentiate themselves from other non-Vedic Śramaṇic groups. Rivalry with Jains was particularly intense, as Buddhists competed for support from more or less the same segment of the lay population that Jain monastics relied upon for their financial support. Hajime Nakamura (*Gōtama Buddha*, pp. 63ff.) suggests that anti-ascetic sentiments began to be expressed as Buddhists responded to critical remarks made by Jains to the effect that Buddhist monastics were lazy and self-indulgent. Nakamura argues that the biographical tradition of the Buddha's discovery of the Middle Way after practicing extreme asceticism was developed in this polemical context. Other scholars have focused on internal developments within Buddhism and seen evidence of a historical shift away from early asceticism. Reginald Ray, for example, argues in *Buddhist Saints in India* (pp. 295–317) that ascetic

practices were the central focus of Buddhism in early days, but later were marginalized with the growth of settled MONASTICISM.

Historical issues aside, there are other reasons for ambivalence within Buddhist traditions with regard to asceticism. On the one hand, ascetic practices are central to developing an attitude of being content with little, an important aspect of the salutary detachment that Buddhists seek to inculcate. But on the other hand, asceticism can be practiced for a variety of unwholesome, self-aggrandizing reasons. Because of concerns about possible misuse, ascetic practices have been regarded as optional rather than mandatory aspects of the path.

Lists of ascetic practices differ. In THERAVĀDA contexts, the classical list of ascetic practices (*dhutaṅga*) includes thirteen items: wearing patchwork robes recycled from cast-off cloth, wearing no more than three robes, going for alms, not omitting any house while going for alms, eating at one sitting, eating only from the alms bowl, refusing all further food, living in the forest, living under a tree, living in the open air, living in a cemetery, being satisfied with any humble dwelling, and sleeping in the sitting position (without ever lying down). MAHĀYĀNA texts mention twelve ascetic practices (called *dhūtaguṇa*). They are the same as the Theravāda list except they omit two rules about eating and add a rule about wearing garments of felt or wool.

Several of the thirteen *dhutaṅga* are virtual emblems of the SAṄGHA in Theravāda countries. For example, at the end of Theravāda ordination ceremonies, members of the saṅgha are instructed in the four ascetic customs known as the four resorts (Pāli, *nissaya*): begging for alms, wearing robes made from cast-off rags, dwelling at the foot of a tree, and using fermented cow urine as medicine (as opposed to more palatable medicines like molasses and honey). These four practices, often mentioned in canonical texts, undoubtedly go back to the beginnings of Buddhism in India.

Studies of contemporary saints in Buddhist Asia (such as those by Carrithers, Tambiah, and Tiyanich) suggest that those who follow ascetic practices enjoy tremendous prestige. Bank presidents residing in Bangkok travel hundreds of miles and endure all kinds of hardships to visit and make offerings to WILDERNESS MONKS of the Thai forest traditions. There is no denying that the Buddhist emphasis on moderation militates against extreme asceticism. But it is equally clear from ethnographic and textual studies that ascetic practices are deeply woven into the fabric of Buddhism.

See also: **Diet; Robes and Clothing; Self-Immolation**

### Bibliography

- Cakraborti, Haripada. *Asceticism in Ancient India*. Calcutta: Punthi Pustak, 1973.
- Carrithers, Michael. *The Forest Monks of Sri Lanka: An Anthropological and Historical Study*. Delhi: Oxford Press, 1983.
- Dantinne, Jean. *Les qualities de l'ascete (Dhutagaṇa)*. Brussels: Thanh-Long, 1991.
- Gombrich, Richard. *Theravāda Buddhism: A Social History from Ancient Benares to Modern Colombo*. New York: Routledge, 1988.
- Nakamura, Hajime. *Gōtama Buddha*. Tokyo: Buddhist Books International, 1977.
- Ray, Reginald. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Tambiah, Stanley. *The Buddhist Saints of the Forest and the Cult of Amulets: A Study in Charisma, Hagiography, Sectarianism, and Millennial Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1984.
- Tiyavanich, Kamala. *Forest Recollections: Wandering Monks in Twentieth-Century Thailand*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

LIZ WILSON

## AŚOKA

Aśoka (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.; r. 268–232 B.C.E.), the third ruler of the Indian Mauryan empire, became a model of KINGSHIP for Buddhists everywhere. He is known today for the edicts he had inscribed on pillars and rock faces throughout his kingdom, and through the legends told about him in various Buddhist sources.

In one of his edicts, Aśoka expresses regret for the suffering that was inflicted on the people of Kāliṅga (present-day Orissa) during his conquest of that territory. Henceforth, he proclaims, he will renounce war and dedicate himself to the propagation of dharma. Just what he meant by this statement has been a subject of debate. Some have understood the word *dharma* here to mean the Buddha's teaching, and so have read Aśoka's change of heart in Kāliṅga as a conversion experience. In a few subsequent inscriptions, it is true, Aśoka does refer specifically to Buddhist sites (such as the Buddha's birthplace, which he visited in person) and to Buddhist texts, but, in general, for him, the propagation of dharma seems to have implied an ac-

tive moral polity of social concern, religious tolerance, and the observance of common ethical precepts. In one edict, for instance, he orders fruit and shade trees to be planted and wells to be dug along the roads for the benefit of travelers. In others, he establishes medical facilities for humans and animals; he commissions officers to help the poor and the elderly; and he enjoins obedience to parents, respect for elders, and generosity toward and tolerance of priests and ascetics of all sects.

Throughout the ages, however, Aśoka was best known to Buddhists not through his edicts but through the legends that were told about him. These give no doubt about his conversion to Buddhism and his specific support of the monastic community. In Sanskrit and Pāli sources, Aśoka's kingship is said to be the karmic result of an offering he made to the Buddha in a past life. In this life, it is his encounter with an enlightened Buddhist novice that changes him from being a cruel and ruthless monarch into an exemplary righteous king (*dharmarāja*), a universal monarch (*cakravartin*). As such, he undertakes a series of great acts of merit: He redistributes the relics of the Buddha into eighty-four thousand stūpas built all over his kingdom; he establishes various Buddhist sites of PILGRIMAGE; he becomes a supporter of charismatic saints such as UPAGUPTA and Piṇḍola; he fervently worships the bodhi tree at BODH GAYĀ; and he gives away (and then redeems) his kingship and all of his possessions to the SAṄGHA. In addition, in the Sri Lankan *vaṃsas* (chronicles), he is said to purify the teaching by convening the Third Buddhist Council, following which he sends missionary-monks, including his own son Mahinda, to various lands within his empire and beyond (e.g., Sri Lanka).

These stories helped define notions of Buddhist kingship throughout Asia, and gave specificity to the mythic model of the wheel-turning, dharmaphilic *cakravartin*. From Sri Lanka to Japan, monarchs were inspired by the image of Aśoka as a propagator of the religion, distributor of wealth, sponsor of great festivals, builder of monasteries, and guarantor of peace and prosperity. In particular, the legend of his construction of eighty-four thousand stūpas motivated several Chinese and Japanese emperors to imitate it with their own schemes of relic and wealth distribution, which served to unify their countries and ritually reassert their sovereignty.

See also: **Councils, Buddhist; India; Sri Lanka**

### Bibliography

- Barua, B. M. *Asoka and His Inscriptions*, 2 vols. Calcutta: New Age, 1946.
- Li Rongxi, trans. *The Biographical Scripture of King Asoka*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1993.
- Nikam, N. A., and McKeon, Richard, eds. and trans. *The Edicts of Asoka*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1966.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend of King Aśoka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Thapar, Romila. *Aśoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1961.

JOHN S. STRONG

## AŚVAGHOṢA

Aśvaghōṣa (ca. 100 C.E.) was a Sanskrit poet and dramatist. As is the case with nearly all the writers of ancient India, legend and fictional anecdote take the place of biographical fact, but the association of Aśvaghōṣa with the Kushan king Kaniṣka is at least chronologically possible.

Aśvaghōṣa is the author of two long poems, among the earliest extant in Sanskrit: *BUDDHACARITA* (*Acts of the Buddha*) and *Saundarananda*, about the conversion of the Buddha's half-brother Nanda. Fewer than half of the twenty-eight cantos of the *Buddhacarita* survive complete in the original Sanskrit, bringing the story only as far as the Buddha's enlightenment, but Tibetan and Chinese translations preserve the entire work. Only fragments survive of Aśvaghōṣa's nine-act play, *Śāriputraprakaraṇa* (*The Matter [or Drama] of Śāriputra*), about the conversion of ŚĀRIPUTRA and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, later to become two of the Buddha's main disciples. Of the other works attributed to Aśvaghōṣa, only the fragments of another drama are likely to be his.

The profound knowledge of brahmanical lore displayed in his writing supports the Chinese tradition that he was born a brahman and only later converted to Buddhism. Conversion is the main theme of two of his works and also figures prominently in the third. His avowed purpose in writing was to win converts to the Buddha's teaching by the charm of his art and the intensity of his conviction. Aśvaghōṣa's fame as a writer and the legend of his life contributed to his renown in East Asia and resulted in a number of works, such as the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN

LUN), being falsely attributed to him.

*See also: Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in*

### Bibliography

- Johnston, E. H., ed. and trans. *The Saundarananda of Aśvaghōṣa*, 2 vols. London: Oxford University Press, 1928 and 1932.
- Johnston, E. H., ed. and trans. *The Buddhacarita or, Acts of the Buddha*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993.
- Lüders, Heinrich. "Das Śāriputraprakaraṇa, ein Drama des Aśvaghōṣa." In *Philologica Indica*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1940.

PETER KHOROCHE

## ATISHA

Atisha (982–1054) was born to the ruler of a minor kingdom in Northeast India. He studied under the best Buddhist teachers of his time, including Jetāri (whose name is also written Jitāri) and Bodhibhadra. After some years of married life he entered the Buddhist order, where he was given the name Dīpaṃkaraśrījñāna (Light of Wisdom). Atisha, the name by which he is better known, is an *apabhraṃśa* (proto-Bengali) form of the common Buddhist Sanskrit term *atiśaya*, which means "surpassing intention or kindness." In Tibet, Atisha is more commonly known as Jo bo rje (pronounced Jowojoy), which conveys the idea of holiness and leadership.

According to later hagiographical accounts, after becoming a monk, Atisha studied in the four great monastic universities of the Pāla dynasty (eighth to twelfth centuries): Nālandā, Otantapūri, Vikramaśīla, and Somapūri. He then traveled to Suvarṇadvīpa (perhaps Sumatra in present-day Indonesia), where he met his most important teacher, Dharmakīrtiśrī, a Cittamātra (Mind Only) philosopher who taught Atisha MAHĀYĀNA altruism (*bodhicitta*). Atisha returned to India when he was middle-aged, and the Pāla king Nayapāla appointed him abbot of Vikramaśīla, where he launched a program of monastic renewal.

At the end of the tenth century, the king of Mnga' ris (Ngari) in far western Tibet, Ye shes 'od (Yeshay ö), sent a group of twenty-one Tibetans to India, among them the great translator Rin chen bzang po (958–1055). Ye shes 'od was a descendant of the original Tibetan royal line that had ended in central Tibet in about 840, a date that marks the end of the first spread

of Buddhism (*snga dar*) in Tibet. Rin chen bzang po's return to Mnga' ris after his travels in India is the traditional date for the beginning of the second spread (*sphyi dar*) of Buddhism.

According to hagiographical accounts, late in his life Ye shes 'od told his son Byang chub 'od (Changchub ö, 984–1078) to invite Atisha, then the foremost Indian Buddhist scholar, to help further the spread of Buddhism in Tibet. Atisha accepted the invitation and arrived in Mnga' ris in 1042. He never returned to India, traveling and teaching extensively before his death in central Tibet in 1054.

In western Tibet Atisha collaborated with Rin chen bzang po on Tibetan translations of PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE. Atisha later collaborated in central Tibet with Nag mtsho tshul khriims rgyal ba (Nagtsö Tsultrim gyalwa) on Tibetan translations of many fundamental texts of the Madhayamaka (Middle Way). Of his many Tibetan disciples the most important is 'Brom ston rgyal ba'i byung gnas (Dromtön Chökyi jungnay, 1008–1064), who founded Rva sgren (Reting), the first monastery of the Bka' gdams (Kadam) sect. The Bka' gdams, which evolved into the DGE LUG (GELUK) or Yellow Hat sect, is the Tibetan sect with which the name of Atisha is most closely associated.

Among Atisha's best known works is his *Byang chub sgron me* (*Lamp for the Path*), taught soon after arriving in Tibet. In it he classifies practitioners of Buddhism into three types (those of lesser, middling, and superior capacities), and he stresses the importance of a qualified guru, the need for a solid foundation of morality, the central place of Mahāyāna altruism, and an understanding of ultimate reality. He also sets forth the practice of TANTRA as a powerful technique for quickly reaching enlightenment. Atisha's works influenced all the later Tibetan Buddhist sects (BKA' BRGYUD, SA SKYA, and Dge lugs). Some later Dge lugs writers, influenced by TSONG KHA PA's *Lam rim chen mo* (*Stages of the Path to Enlightenment*, written in 1403) projected onto the historical Atisha a mythical perfect guru who became for them the symbol of their exclusive form of monasticism and scholastic learning.

See also: Tibet

### Bibliography

Chattopadhyaya, Alaka. *Atiśa and Tibet*. Calcutta: Indian Studies Past and Present, 1967.

Eimer, Helmut. *Rnam thar rgyas pa: Materialien zu eine Biographie der Atiśa (Dīpaṅkaraśrījñāna)*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1979.

Sherburne, Richard, trans. *The Complete Works of Atiśa Śrī Dīpaṅkara Jñāna*. New Delhi: Aditya Prakashan, 2000.

GARETH SPARHAM

## AVADĀNA

As a genre of Buddhist literature, the Sanskrit term *avadāna* (Pāli, *apadāna*; Chinese, *piyu*; Tibetan, *rtogs par brjod pa's sde*) denotes a narrative of an individual's religiously significant deeds. Often these narratives constitute full-fledged religious biographies, sometimes of eminent monastics, sometimes of ordinary lay disciples. The *avadānas* portray, frequently with thematic and narrative complexity, concrete human actions that embody the truths propounded in the doctrine (dharma) and the discipline (VINAYA).

*Avadānas* range from formulaic tales that simply dramatize the workings of KARMA (ACTION) and the efficacy of FAITH and devotion, to fantastical adventure stories, to the sophisticated art of virtuosi poets. Like modern novels and short stories, *avadānas* offer something for every taste. The *avadāna* literature draws on diverse sources: actual lives, the biography of the Buddha and tales of his former births (JĀTAKA), biographical accounts in the canonical literature, and the vast, pan-Indian store of secular story-literature. Indian Buddhists composed *avadānas* from about the second century B.C.E. to the thirteenth century C.E. Thereafter, Buddhists elsewhere in Asia continued the tradition. In India and beyond, *avadāna* stories also inspired narrative painting.

Structurally, *avadānas*, like *jātakas* (which came to be considered a subcategory of *avadāna*), consist of a story of the present (*pratyutpannavastu*), a story of the past (*atītavastu*), and a juncture (*samavadhāna*) in which the narrator, always the Buddha or another enlightened saint, identifies characters in the past as former births of characters in the present. For the story of the past, some *avadānas* substitute a prediction (*vyākaraṇa*) of the protagonist's spiritual destiny.

The earliest *avadānas*, like the *Apadāna* and the *Sthavīrāvadāna* (ca. second century B.C.E.), are autobiographical narratives in verse attributed to the Buddha's immediate disciples. In contrast, biographical anthologies from the first to the fourth centuries C.E., such as the AVADĀNAŚATAKA (*A Hundred Glorious Deeds*), *Karmaśataka* (*A Hundred Karma Tales*), and DIVYĀVADĀNA (*Heavenly Exploits*), are in mixed prose and verse and feature a much wider range of charac-

ters. The *Avadānaśataka* stories are brief and formulaic, those of the *Karmaśataka* less so, and those of the *Divyāvadāna* the most complex and diverse. The sixth- to eighth-century Pāli commentaries (*aṭṭhakathā*) and several collections preserved only in Chinese contain many *avadāna* and *avadāna*-type stories.

Just as Hindu poets retold stories of heroes from the epics and Purāṇas, Buddhist poets retold the lives of their own heroes. The second-century Kumāralāta, in his *Kalpanāmaṇḍitikā Dṛṣṭāntapaṅkti* (*A Collection of Parables Ornamented by the Imagination*), first adapted the prose-and-verse format to the demands of belles lettres. His successors from the fourth to the eighth centuries, ĀRYAŚŪRA, Haribhaṭṭa, and Gopadatta, composed ornate poetry (*kāvya*) in the form of *bodhisattvāvadānamālās* (garlands of *avadānas* concerning the Buddha's previous births). Similarly, the eleventh-century Hindu poet Kṣemendra drew on the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA VINAYA to compose the *Bodhisattvāvadāna-kalpalatā*, which became important in Nepal and Tibet.

The mostly unpublished verse *avadānamālās* (garlands of *avadānas*), which constitute a later subgenre, are anonymous works, composed in the style of Hindu Purāṇas, that display MAHĀYĀNA influences. Several of these retell stories from earlier sources, some in a distinctively Nepalese idiom.

As scholars increasingly recognize narrative as a mode of knowing distinct from, but in no way inferior to, philosophical discourse, they can look forward to learning much from a literary genre that has played an essential role in Buddhist self-understanding for more than two thousand years.

See also: Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Burlingame, Eugene Watson, trans. *Buddhist Legends*, 3 vols. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1921; London: Pāli Text Society, 1979.
- Chavannes, Edouard, trans. *Cinq cents contes et apologues extraits du Tripitaka chinois*, 4 vols. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1910–1935.
- Cutler, Sally Mellick. “The Pāli *Avadāna* Collection.” *Journal of the Pāli Text Society* 20 (1994): 1–42.
- Feer, Léon, trans. *Avadāna-śataka: Cent légendes bouddhiques*. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1891.
- Handurukande, Ratna, ed. and trans. *Five Buddhist Legends in the Campū Style*. Bonn, Germany: Indica et Tibetica Verlag, 1984.

- Hofinger, Marcel, ed. and trans. *Le Congrès du Lac Anavatapta: Vies de Saints Bouddhiques, Extrait du Vinaya des Mūlasarvāstivādīn Bhaiṣajyavastu*. Vol. 1: *Légendes des Anciens (Sthavirāvādāna)*. Vol. 2: *Légendes du Bouddha (Buddhāvādāna)*. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste and Peeters Press, 1982–1990.
- Iwamoto, Yutaka. *Bukkyō setsuwa kenkyū josetsu* (An Introduction to the Study of Buddhist Legends). Tokyo: Kaimei Shoin, 1978.
- Jones, J. J., trans. *The Mahāvastu*, 3 vols. London: Pāli Text Society, 1949–1956.
- Jones, John Garrett. *Tales and Teachings of the Buddha: The Jātaka Stories in Relation to the Pāli Canon*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1979.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste and Peeters Press, 1988.
- Nakamura, Hajime. *Indian Buddhism: A Survey with Bibliographical Notes*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1987.
- Pruitt, William, trans. *The Commentary on the Verses of the Therīs*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1998.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Strong, John S. “The Buddhist Avadānists and the Elder Upagupta.” *Mélanges chinois et bouddhiques* 22 (1985): 862–881.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend and Cult of Upagupta: Sanskrit Buddhism in North India and Southeast Asia*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Takahata, Kanga, ed. *Ratnamālāvādāna: A Garland of Precious Gems or, a Collection of Edifying Tales, Belonging to the Mahāyāna*. Tokyo: Toyo Bunko Oriental Library, 1954.
- Tatelman, Joel. “The Trials of Yaśodharā and the Birth of Rāhula: A Synopsis of *Bhadrakalpāvādāna* II–IX.” *Buddhist Studies Review* 15, no. 2 (1998): 1–42.
- Tatelman, Joel, trans. “The Trials of Yaśodharā: The Legend of the Buddha's Wife in the *Bhadrakalpāvādāna*.” *Buddhist Literature* 1 (1999): 176–261.
- Tatelman, Joel, trans. *The Glorious Deeds of Pārṇa*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 2000.
- Willemen, Charles, trans. *The Storehouse of Sundry Valuables*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1994.
- Winternitz, Maurice. *A History of Indian Literature*, 2 vols., tr. S. Ketkar and H. Kohn. Calcutta: University of Calcutta Press, 1927; New Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, 1977.

JOEL TATELMAN

## AVADĀNAŚATAKA

The *Avadānaśataka* (*A Hundred Glorious Deeds*) is an anthology of one hundred biographical stories in Sanskrit from the first to second centuries C.E. The stories are thematically organized into ten “books” that portray the truth of the doctrine of KARMA (ACTION) and the power of religious DĀNA (GIVING), FAITH, and devotion. An earlier version is preserved in Chinese (*Taishō* no. 200).

See also: Avadāna; Divyāvadāna; Jātaka

### Bibliography

- Bagchi, P. C. “A Note on the Avadānaśataka and Its Chinese Translation.” *Visvabharati Annals* 1 (1945): 56–61.
- Fa Chow, trans. “Chuan Tsi Pai Yuan King and the Avadānaśataka.” *Visvabharati Annals* 1 (1945): 35–55.
- Feer, Léon, trans. *Avadana-çataka: Cent légendes bouddhiques*. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1891. Reprint, Amsterdam: APA-Oriental Press, 1979.
- Strong, John S. “The Transforming Gift: An Analysis of Devotional Acts of Offering in Buddhist Avadāna Literature.” *History of Religions* 18 (1979): 221–237.

JOEL TATELMAN

AVALOKITEŚVARA. See Bodhisattva(s)

AVATAṂSAKA-SŪTRA. See Huayan Jing

## AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN)

The *Dasheng qixin lun* (*Treatise on the Awakening of Faith According to the Mahāyāna*) is a Chinese apocryphal composition believed to have been written during the sixth century. The text is important for its appropriation of the TATHĀGATAGARBHA, the doctrine of Buddha-nature, into the central teaching of Chinese Buddhist schools such as Huayan and Chan. The *Dasheng qixin lun* explains how ordinary, deluded beings can attain enlightenment without renouncing this worldly life. The text was reputed to have been written in Sanskrit by AŚVAGHOṢA (Chinese, Maming; first

century C.E.) and then translated into Chinese in 550 by the Indian dharma master PARAMĀRTHA (Chinese, Zhendi; 499–569). However, no Sanskrit version of this text exists, and most scholars accept its indigenous Chinese provenance.

The *Dasheng qixin lun* is divided into five parts. In part one, the author explains his motives for writing the treatise. In part two, he outlines the significance of his discussion. In part three, he focuses on two aspects of mind to explicate the relationship between enlightenment and ignorance, nirvāṇa and saṃsāra, or the absolute and the phenomenal. In part four, he enumerates five practices that aid the believer in the awakening and growth of faith, with an emphasis on calmness and insight meditation. In part five, he describes the benefits that result from cultivating the five practices. The content of the *Dasheng qixin lun* is often summarized as “One Mind, Two Aspects, Three Greatnesses, Four Faiths, and Five Practices.”

The composition of the *Dasheng qixin lun* represents a process of Sinicization of Indian Buddhism. The text seeks to synthesize tathāgatagarbha and *yogācāra* philosophies of mind by positing that one mind has two aspects: the absolute aspect, which is the equivalent of the tathāgatagarbha, and the phenomenal aspect, which refers to the ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA (storehouse consciousness). Since the tathāgatagarbha is the underlying ontological matrix upon which the phenomenal aspect of mind is grounded, the latter always has the potential to be transformed into the absolute mind. Ignorance is simply the manifestation of one’s defiled modes of consciousness, which do not have distinct characteristics of their own and are not separate from the mind’s true essence. To attain enlightenment, one needs only to free oneself from deluded thoughts and cultivate faith in one’s inherently pure mind. Enlightenment is accordingly conceptualized as a process in which one fully actualizes one’s initial awakening into one’s true nature through religious cultivation and meditative practice.

The *Dasheng qixin lun* has exerted a profound impact on the development of East Asian Buddhism; numerous Buddhist exegetes in China, Korea, and Japan have written commentaries on it and have incorporated its thesis into their systems of thought. The terminology and hermeneutic of the *Dasheng qixin lun* represent a Chinese shift away from the apophysis of the Madhyamaka teaching of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) to the kataphysis of the doctrine of immanent Buddha-nature. Its use of the paradigm of *ti* (essence) and *yong*

(function) in analyzing the relationship between the abstract and the phenomenal realms also plays an influential role in the Huayan teachings of *lishi wuai* (unimpeded interpenetration between principle and phenomena) and *shishi wuai* (unimpeded interpenetration of all phenomena). Most importantly, through its explicit linkage of tathāgatagarbha and *ālayavijñāna*, the *Dasheng qixin lun* succeeds in adapting the tathāgatagarbha doctrine to the indigenous Chinese milieu. It assures the Mahāyāna ideal of universal salvation and affirms the sanctity of life in this world. Its assumption of the inherent purity and enlightenment in the minds of all sentient beings also provides an ontological basis for the Chan school's doctrine of "seeing one's nature and attaining Buddhahood" (*jianxing chengfo*).

See also: Apocrypha; Chan School; China; Huayan School

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch'an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-sūtra, a Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., ed. *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Gregory, Peter N. *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Hakeda, Yoshito S., trans. and ed. *The Awakening of Faith, Attributed to Aśvaghōṣa*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1967.

DING-HWA HSIEH

## AYUTTHAYA

Ayutthaya was a kingdom in what is now Thailand. It was ruled by thirty-six kings between 1350 and 1767. The art of Ayutthaya is typically divided into four phases associated with its major political eras: 1350 to 1488, 1488 to 1628, 1629 to 1733, and 1733 to 1767. The city was destroyed by the Burmese in 1767.

The two most important monasteries of the early periods were Mahathat (erected in 1384 by King Boromaraja I) and Ratchaburana (erected in 1424 by Boro-

maraja II). Like monasteries in the earlier kingdom of SUKHOTHAI, the alignment of the *wihan* (assembly hall), *prang* (tower shaped in Khmer fashion), and *ubosot* or *bot* (congregation and ordination hall) followed a single east-west axis. Smaller *prangs* and *wihans* were enclosed around the central tower within a rectangular gallery, where a row of buddha images was placed. The main *prangs* were generally marked halfway up by niches facing each cardinal direction, in each of which was placed a buddha image; each *prang* was crowned by a metal finial in the shape of a *vajra* (pronged ritual instrument). Relics, buddha images, and votive tablets were deposited in the *prangs'* relic chambers. For instance, exquisite gold royal regalia and vessels were found in the deposit of Wat Ratchaburana. Wat Chai Wattabaram, built by King Prasat Thong in 1630, is an example of the later phase of *prang* structure.

The Sri Lankan bell-shaped *chedi* popular in Sukhothai was used extensively in Ayutthaya. Notable Ayutthayan features are a higher base, rows of small columns around the railing on the top, and an elongated finial. A good example of this type is Wat Phra Sisanphet, erected in 1491 by King Ramathibodi II.

The only surviving complete late Ayutthayan monastery is Wat Naphramen, built in the middle of the sixteenth century. Its *ubosot* is rectangular, with thick walls, slit windows, and tall octagonal pillars crowned by lotus capitals. The ceiling is decorated with gold star clusters. The main image placed at the end of the hall is the only remaining large-scale seated and bejeweled bronze Buddha. The base of the *ubosot*, curved into a boat shape in early Ayutthaya, became straighter in the later phases.

See also: Monastic Architecture; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Thailand

### Bibliography

- Boisselier, Jean, and Beurdeley, Jean-Michel. *The Heritage of Thai Sculpture*. Bangkok, Thailand: Asia Books, 1987.
- Woodward, Hiram W., Jr. *The Sacred Sculpture of Thailand: The Alexander B. Griswold Collection, The Walters Art Gallery*. Bangkok, Thailand: River Books, 1997.

PATTARATORN CHIRAPRAVATI



*This page intentionally left blank*

# B



## BĀMIYĀN

Located 240 miles northwest of Kabul in present-day Afghanistan, Bāmiyān was a point of intersection on the major thoroughfares of antiquity. References to Bāmiyān as a religious center can be found in the writings of the Chinese pilgrim to India XUANZANG (ca. 600–664 C.E.). The site ultimately fell into disuse after its annihilation by Genghis Khan in 1222, an act of revenge for his son's death during the siege of the citadel Shahr-i-Zohak, which sits high above the Bāmiyān valley. In the eighteenth century, Buddhist images at the site were used for artillery practice by the Mogul emperor Aurangzeb, and in the nineteenth century Bāmiyān was explored by British archaeologists. The most extensive research done at Bāmiyān was under the auspices of the French.

The trading post of Bāmiyān sits in a lush valley beneath the mountains of the Hindu Kush, with a precipitous mountain at its back and an escarpment suitable for carving at its face. This escarpment came to be covered with innumerable grottos carved from the living rock, comprising Buddhist assembly halls, meditation caves, and icon niches. All told they cover at least one mile. Until 2001, there stood within carved niches a monumental fifty-three-meter buddha image at the western end, and a smaller thirty-five-meter buddha at the eastern end. Originally covered with brilliant pigments and gold, these buddha figures left a lasting impression on Xuanzang, as well as on the thirteenth-century Arab geographer Yakut. Both remarked upon the great buddha images of Bāmiyān as being without compare elsewhere in the world.

There is debate as to the iconographic identity of the two images. It is generally argued that the smaller

buddha figure represented the historical Buddha, Śākyamuni, largely because that is how the image is referenced in most of the chronicles of the times. The larger buddha is thought to have represented the universal buddha Vairocana. Written accounts of this statue as wearing a crown support this possible iconographic identification. This statue, like its smaller counterpart, displayed the drapery patterning that originated in Gandhāra. Constructed no later than the sixth century C.E., both images were first carved out of the living rock, then completed using an additive technique employing wooden dowels to attach additional pieces, covered by clay and stucco, and lastly painted. The interior of the image niches were also covered with painted depictions reflecting the syncretic beliefs of the rulers of Bāmiyān at the time. Both statues were missing their faces as early as the eighteenth century, with at least one scholar arguing that the faces were once covered by metal plates, which were easily removed.

The colossal buddhas of Bāmiyān survived the vicissitudes of the various political changes in the region until March 2001. After issuing an edict against images and idolatry, the reigning Islamic fundamentalist Taliban regime in Afghanistan—after spurning attempts by international organizations to buy or preserve the statues—proceeded to destroy them. Two days of artillery barrages were required to successfully destroy what Aurangzeb had left behind. The niches that protected the buddha images still remain, their outlines forever an echo of what were once the most awe-inspiring BUDDHA IMAGES in all of Asia.

*See also:* **Huayan Art; Persecutions**

**Bibliography**

- Baker, P. H. B., and Allchin, F. R. *Shahr-i Zohak and the History of the Bāmiyān Valley, Afghanistan*. Oxford: B.A.R., 1991.
- Beal, Samuel, trans. *Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World, Chinese Accounts of India*, Vol. 1. Calcutta: Susil Gupta, 1957.
- Flood, Finbarr Barry. "Between Cult and Culture: Bāmiyān, Islamic Iconoclasm, and the Museum." *Art Bulletin* 84, no. 4 (2002): 641–659.
- Godard, André, et al. *Les antiquités bouddhiques de Bāmiyān: Memoires de la délégation archéologique Française en Afghanistan*, Vol. 2. Paris: Éditions Van Oest, 1928.
- Klimburg-Salter, Deborah E. *The Kingdom of Bāmiyān: Buddhist Art and Culture of the Hindu Kush*. Naples and Rome: Istituto universitario orientale, Dipartimento di studi asiatici, 1989.
- Rowland, Benjamin. *The Art of Central Asia*. New York: Crown, 1974.

KARIL J. KUCERA

**BAYON**

The Bayon is a twelfth-century royal Khmer (Cambodian) temple. One of Southeast Asia's most famous monuments, the Bayon is a densely crowded sandstone temple constructed under King Jayavarman VII (r. 1181–ca. 1220) at Angkor Thom in northwest Cambodia. This pyramid temple, a MAHĀYĀNA site, marked the end of an ancient royal Khmer tradition dominated by Hindu gods.

Axial entrances on all four sides cross through a rectangular outer and inner gallery carved with bas-reliefs that glorify the king's history. On the upper elevation a series of connected structures leads to the massive, round central tower. Its dark interior once housed a large, nāga-protected buddha. At its consecration, Jayavarman was symbolically joined to this buddha and imbued with a divine cast in the process. And at his death, the king's ashes would have been placed underneath this image, creating a certain conceptual kinship between the Bayon and a STŪPA with its internal relics.

The well-known guardian faces on the Bayon's fifty-two towers wear characteristic choker necklaces and originally stared straight ahead. But when many had their eyes recut to gaze downward, Avalokiteśvara became their most likely new identity. These recut eyes were one of several changes during construction that

drastically altered the temple's configuration and meaning.

Although Buddhist, the Bayon followed tradition in its merging of regional or ancestral gods with Buddhist and Hindu deities. VIṢṢU is found almost exclusively on the western side of the temple, Śiva more often on the south, and Buddhist imagery on the north and east. The Bayon was the last major Khmer monument to embrace the tradition that gave it birth, destined to wither and die in less than one hundred years.

*See also:* Cambodia; Hinduism and Buddhism; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

**Bibliography**

- Dufour, Henri. *Le Bayon d'Angkor Thom*, 2 vols. Paris: Commission archeologique de l'Indochine, 1910–1914.
- Dumarçay, Jacques, and Groslier, Bernard-Philippe. *Le Bayon*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1967 and 1973.

ELEANOR MANNIKA

**BHĀVAVIVEKA**

Bhāvaviveka was a MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL philosopher who lived from perhaps 500 to 570 C.E. His name may have been Bhavya or Bhāviveka, and he may have come from South India. Bhāvaviveka's attack on the interpretation of Madhyamaka by Buddhapālita (c. 500 C.E.) led later Tibetans to refer to him as the founder of the Svātantrika-Madhyamaka. Bhāvaviveka's works include the *Prajñāpradīpa* (*Lamp of Wisdom*) on NĀGĀRJUNA, and the *Madhyamakahrdayakārikā* (*Verses on the essence of Madhyamaka*) with *Tarkajvālā* (*Blaze of Reasoning*, an autocommentary), an early encyclopedia of Indian philosophy.

**Bibliography**

- Eckel, Malcolm D. *To See the Buddha: A Philosopher's Quest for the Meaning of Emptiness*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Iida, S. *Reason and Emptiness: A Study of Logic and Mysticism*. Tokyo: Hokuseido Press, 1980.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *A Study of Svātantrika*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1987.
- Ruegg, David S. *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1981.

PAUL WILLIAMS

## BIANWEN

Until the early twentieth century, with the discovery of a cache of important manuscripts at DUNHUANG, Gansu Province, in the far northwest of China, *bianwen* (transformation texts) were completely unknown to scholars. Once literary historians became aware of them, however, they soon realized that these texts, which date to the Tang (618–907) and Five Dynasties (907–960) periods, filled a crucial gap in scholarly understanding of the development of Chinese popular literature. They are the earliest substantial specimens of vernacular writing in China, and they represent the earliest examples of prosimetric narratives in Chinese. That is to say, they are the first Chinese texts that alternate sung, declaimed, or intoned verse and spoken prose to advance a narrative. As such, they had an enormous impact upon virtually all later performing arts (including full-scale operatic drama) and vernacular fiction in China. They also provide vital evidence for the sources of many popular tales of later times, and they embody firsthand data about storytelling in medieval China. Although the *bianwen* are not, as was once thought, promptbooks used in performance, they bear the marks of derivation from oral literature.

The *wen* in *bianwen* means text; the *bian* component, however, caused tremendous confusion during the first half-century of research on the genre. After intensive investigation involving comparisons with texts written in Sanskrit, Tibetan, and other languages, it has become clear that *bian* in *bianwen* refers to transformational manifestations evoked by spiritually powerful individuals (comparable to the Sanskrit terms *nirmāṇa* and *ṛddhi*.) The oral precedents of *bianwen* utilized picture scrolls as illustrative devices to enhance the performance, and *bianwen* are closely connected to the artistic genre known as BIANXIANG (TRANSFORMATION TABLEAUX). The earliest *bianwen* describe Buddhist subjects, but wholly secular themes, both historical and contemporary in nature, were soon added.

*See also:* Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Entertainment and Performance

### Bibliography

Mair, Victor H. *T'ang Transformation Texts: A Study of the Buddhist Contribution to the Rise of Vernacular Fiction and Drama in China*. Cambridge, MA: Council of East Asian Studies, Harvard University, 1989.

Pai, Hua-wen. "What Is 'pien-wen'?" tr. Victor H. Mair. *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 44, no. 2 (1984): 493–514.

VICTOR H. MAIR

## BIANXIANG (TRANSFORMATION TABLEAUX)

It is commonly assumed that *bianxiang* (transformation tableaux) are the matching illustrations for BIANWEN (transformation texts), a genre of popular Buddhist narratives that was discovered at DUNHUANG. There are, indeed, many similarities. For example, *bianxiang* are also associated with the cave temples of Dunhuang, both genres flourished during the medieval period, both were intended for the portrayal of Buddhist themes, and, above all, the *bian* of both genre names means "transformation" or "transformational manifestation." There are, however, significant differences. Whereas *bianwen* sometimes dealt with secular subjects, *bianxiang* are exclusively religious in nature. Furthermore, while *bianwen* are folkish in nature, *bianxiang* are often the products of high culture. Finally, whereas evidence for *bianwen* is restricted almost exclusively to the manuscripts from Dunhuang, evidence (largely textual) for *bianxiang* is related to localities spread over the length and breadth of China.

*Bianxiang* are also frequently confused with MAṆḌALA. Here, too, there are similarities and differences, but the situation is more complex than with *bianwen*, despite the fact that *bianxiang* and maṇḍala are both artistic genres, since *bianxiang* may share features of maṇḍala and vice versa. Basically, whereas *bianxiang* connotes a narrative moment, event, place, or sequence of moments, events, or places pictorially or sculpturally represented, a maṇḍala is an object or icon, usually having a circular arrangement, intended to serve as the focus of worship or meditation.

The chief subjects of *bianxiang* are paradise scenes (especially the Western Pure Land), depictions of the contents of famous sūtras (particularly the LOTUS SŪTRA), incidents from the life of the Buddha (especially his NIRVĀṆA), deeds of various BODHISATTVAS (particularly Avalokiteśvara) and ARHATS (e.g., ŚĀRIPUTRA), and so forth. *Bianxiang* were favored by the adherents of the CHAN SCHOOL, and the tradition of painting *bianxiang* was transmitted to Japan, where it became an integral part of Buddhist popular culture. Vivid records of the commissioning and actual painting of

*bianxiang* have been preserved, and they afford valuable insights into the motivation and organization of Buddhist devotees in medieval China.

*See also:* Hells, Images of; Pure Land Art; Sūtra Illustrations

### Bibliography

Mair, Victor H. "Records of Transformation Tableaux (*pianhsiang*)." *T'oung Pao* 72, no. 3 (1986): 3–43.

Wu Hung. "What Is *Bianxiang*?—On the Relationship between Dunhuang Art and Dunhuang Literature." *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 52, no. 1 (1992): 111–192.

VICTOR H. MAIR

## BIOGRAPHIES OF EMINENT MONKS (GAOSEN ZHUAN)

"Biographies of Eminent Monks" is a genre of Chinese Buddhist writing consisting primarily of four biographical collections, all compiled by monks: (1) *Biographies of Eminent Monks (Gaoseng zhuan)*, completed around 530 by Huijiao (497–554); (2) *Further Biographies of Eminent Monks (Xu gaoseng zhuan)*, first draft completed in approximately 650 by DAOXUAN (596–667) with later additions in the 660s; (3) *Biographies of Eminent Monks [Compiled] during the Song Dynasty (Song gaoseng zhuan)*, completed in 982 by ZANNING (919–1001); and (4) *Biographies of Eminent Monks [Compiled] during the Ming Dynasty (Ming gaoseng zhuan)*, completed in 1617 by Ruxing (d.u.). Although there is some overlap in time between collections, in general each picks up where the last left off. Daoxuan, for example, wrote mostly on monks who lived after Huijiao's collection was completed.

Of the four books, Huijiao's has been the most influential and the most admired for its style. It has been one of the most widely read historical works by any Chinese monk.

Huijiao's *Biographies of Eminent Monks* established the format for the later versions. He divided the 275 biographies contained in his collection into ten categories: (1) "Translators"; (2) "Exegetes"; (3) "Divine Wonders," devoted to wonder-workers; (4) "Practitioners of Meditation"; (5) "Elucidators of the Regulations," devoted to scholars of the VINAYA or monastic rules; (6) "Those who Sacrificed Themselves," for monks who sacrificed their bodies in acts

of charity or devotion; (7) "Chanters of Scriptures"; (8) "Benefactors," for monks who solicited funds for Buddhist construction and other enterprises; (9) "Hymnodists," devoted to monks skilled in intoning liturgy; and (10) "Proselytizers." At the end of each section, Huijiao appended a treatise in which he discusses the theme of the section. In his treatise on translators, Huijiao gives a brief history of the transmission of Buddhist scriptures and discusses the difficulties of translating Indian texts into Chinese. An introduction to the book lists previous collections of monastic biographies, and explains how Huijiao distinguished his work from them.

Subsequent works followed Huijiao's format with some changes. Most notably, Daoxuan combined the sections for hymnodists and proselytizers, and then added a section for "Protectors of the Dharma," devoted to monks who defended Buddhism from its enemies at court and elsewhere.

The compilers of the collections followed Chinese historiographical custom in the composition of their biographies. In general, they relied on previous sources, directly quoting them without attribution. Major sources included the texts of stele inscriptions, usually composed soon after a monk's death by a local literatus at the request of the monk's followers. The compilers also drew on other literary accounts, including prefaces to works written by the monk in question, and collections of miracle stories; they occasionally based biographies on oral traditions concerning particular monks. In most cases, the original sources for the biographies are lost, but occasionally it is possible to reconstruct the sources for biographies in the later collections. As the title suggests, criterion for inclusion was based on a monk's "eminence," or rank. With a few exceptions, only monks regarded by the compilers as admirable are accorded biographies.

*See also:* Biography; History

### Bibliography

Kieschnick, John. *The Eminent Monk: Buddhist Ideals in Medieval Chinese Hagiography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

Wright, Arthur F. "Biography and Hagiography: Hui-chiao's *Lives of Eminent Monks*." In *Studies in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Robert M. Somers. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1990.

JOHN KIESCHNICK

## BIOGRAPHY

Many religious traditions develop elaborate narratives about the life of the founding figure. Such sacred biographies often include accounts of mythic events and miracles that underscore the virtues and attainments of the founder. These narratives give shape to the history and legitimate the social institutions of emergent religious traditions. Buddhism has elaborated and embellished its biographical emphasis to create a sacred biography not only of the Buddha's final life but also of his earlier lives, the lives of his disciples, the lives of other enlightened beings, and ultimately the lives of all SENTIENT BEINGS who witness the Buddha's teaching. Biography may be understood as a core concept of the Buddhist tradition; it is a cultural idiom that continues to engender religious meaning in practice, doctrine, and belief. The importance of the Buddha's biography lies in the ways in which it has shaped the tradition in the centuries following his death (Reynolds). Indeed, Buddhist concern with life stories has generated biographical genres and modes of religious behavior that are articulated in oral narratives, classical and vernacular texts, visual art, and ritual, as well as in the cultural histories of Buddhist polities in much of Asia. The remainder of this entry describes some of the ways in which sacred biography has shaped the development of Buddhism in diverse cultural contexts.

Each of the major branches of Buddhism offers a different version of the life of the Buddha; these biographies are informed by doctrines specific to each school or lineage. Themes in the biographies of Gautama may illustrate not only his unique spiritual achievements, but also characteristics attributed to buddhas in general. In addition, biographical themes in the life or lives of the Buddha are often incorporated into the biographical narratives of other remarkable individuals, such as ARHATS, BODHISATTVAS, or eminent monks.

There are differing versions of the Buddha's biography, and scholars cannot identify a single or "original" source in Buddhist literature. After his death, accounts of the Buddha's life and teaching were transmitted orally for several centuries. Gradually, the Buddha's message became codified and committed to written texts that eventually came to be known as the Buddhist CANON. Numerous passages in the Buddhist sūtras and VINAYA refer to events and episodes of the Buddha's life, and there are many texts throughout the Buddhist tradition that describe mythic events and sa-

cred qualities of the Buddha. The biographies that eventually emerged were initially not systematized or even organized in temporal sequence. It took some five centuries for the Buddha's biographical accounts to become standardized and formalized.

### The Buddha's final life

Certain mythic episodes are salient in many accounts of the Buddha's life, despite the diversity in the stories that make up the Buddha's biography. According to these accounts, Siddhārtha's conception was immaculate, as a white elephant entered his mother's womb. His birth was painless, and, taking his first strides, he announced that this was his final and culminating life. Brahmin astrologers whom his father had consulted prophesied that the child would become either a world conqueror (*cakravartin*) who rules over a social and political universe, or a buddha who transcends ordinary reality through spiritual enlightenment. Raised in luxury and tutored in the seclusion of the palace, Siddhārtha eventually married Yaśodharā and fathered a son, RĀHULA. Curious about life outside the palace, Siddhārtha encountered the inescapable human condition of old age, sickness, and death. This insight led him to discover that human existence is conditioned by suffering. Having fulfilled his obligations as a householder, he resolved to leave his indulgent life and renounce society. He became a wandering mendicant and apprenticed himself to several gurus. Eventually, he realized that extreme asceticism does not lead to enlightenment, and he determined to follow a middle path between indulgence and asceticism. Like other buddhas before him, he resolved to meditate under a bodhi tree until he achieved NIRVĀṆA. While he was seated in meditation, MĀRA, the Evil One, challenged him in vain with the promise of unlimited power, with attacks by his mighty army, and, finally, with his sensuous daughters. Rebuffing each offer, Gautama gained three knowledges (*trāividya*; Pāli, *tevijjā*) on his path to enlightenment: He remembered all his past lives, he came to understand that the nature of one's existence is the result of past action, and finally, he gained complete knowledge of his liberation. The Buddha hesitated to preach, however, until the intervention of a god (*deva*) persuaded him to teach the dharma and to reveal his model for practice and the path to nirvāṇa for others to follow.

In the course of a ministry that lasted more than forty years, the Buddha established the monastic order (SAṄGHA) and preached to a growing early Buddhist community. A prominent lay supporter, King Bimbi-

sāra, donated land to establish the first permanent residence for monks. When the Buddha passed away and left the cycle of REBIRTH (SAṂSĀRA), he was given the funerary rites of a world conqueror, and his relics were enshrined throughout the Buddhist world. His disciples convened the first Buddhist Council shortly after his death to compile his teachings, and the Buddhist tradition began to take shape in the transition from the founder's charismatic life to the emerging institutional history and doctrinal developments. For instance, AŚOKA's cult of relics helped promote the institutionalization of the Theravāda monastic lineage. Doctrinal interpretations of the bodies of the Buddha that are specific to the major branches of the tradition also correspond to their respective interpretations of the Buddha's sacred biography.

The story of the Buddha's culminating life in saṁsāra illustrates central beliefs and doctrines of Buddhism, including Gautama's model for and path to enlightenment, his message, and the establishment of Buddhist institutions. The story also legitimates the veneration of the Buddha's relics and the STŪPAS that enshrine them, as well as the veneration of icons and images that embody his biography. These sacred objects are closely associated with the Buddha's biography and establish his presence in rituals. They remind Buddhists of the Buddha's enlightenment and of his absence from the cycle of rebirth.

### The *jātaka* tradition

Central motifs of the sacred biography, especially the Buddha's remembrance of past lives in visions that culminated in his enlightenment, eventually developed into an elaborate genre of tales called JĀTAKA, which are stories of the Buddha's former lives. In the Pāli tradition, *jātaka* attained semicanonical status in compilations containing up to 550 such stories that recount the perfection of virtues by the buddha-to-be. These tales about the Buddha's past lives as a king, ascetic, monkey, or elephant do not follow a systematized sequence, but they do share a similar narrative structure. Generally, each story opens with a frame in the narrative present, namely the final life of Gautama Buddha, and identifies the place and occasion for the story about a past rebirth about to be recounted. The account then unfolds events in a former rebirth of the Buddha and concludes by explaining the outcome according to universal laws of Buddhist causality. The story of the former life becomes the dramatic stage upon which the consequences of moral action are illustrated. *Jātaka* stories generally conclude by return-

ing to the time of the Buddha's final life and identifying companions of the Buddha with dramatis personae in the story just recounted.

Perhaps the best-known *jātaka* in the THERAVĀDA world is the *Vessantara Jātaka*, in which the buddha-to-be, in his life as Prince Vessantara (Sanskrit, VIŚVANTARA), perfects the virtue of generosity (*dāna*). Vessantara gives away everything a king or householder might value: his prosperity, power, home, and even his family, only to have it all restored at the conclusion of the tale.

*Jātaka* tales figure prominently in a variety of ways in Buddhist cultures; they appear in temple paintings, children's stories, movie billboards and, most recently, comic books. They offer abundant material for religious education. Central motifs in the biographies of the Buddha elucidate moral principles, values, and ethics, and certain well-known *jātaka* tales serve a didactic purpose in teaching younger generations about the tradition. *Jātakas* are salient across Buddhist communities and the themes they recount readily resonate with other aspects of religious knowledge and practice. As such, recounting certain *jātaka* stories in public sermons or even representing them in paintings can serve as commentary on current social and political issues. Stories about the Buddha's former lives are also a form of entertainment. In Burma, for example, these stories have traditionally been the subject of popular theatrical performances that continue through the night.

### Cultural contexts of the biographical genre

In visual art, biographical references can be found in Buddhist architecture, in sculptures and icons of the Buddha, and in the visual narratives of paintings and stone carvings. Paintings of *jātaka* stories can be seen along walkways in monastery grounds and along the staircases leading to pilgrimage sites. *Jātaka* paintings also often decorate the inner spaces of Buddhist temples. Certain hand gestures (MUDRĀ) or poses displayed in BUDDHA IMAGES refer to particular moments in his life, such as when he touched the earth as witness to his meritorious deeds at the time of his enlightenment or when he reclined at the moment of his departure from the cycle of rebirth. At BOROBUDUR in Java, a magnificent MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist stūpa from the seventh to the ninth century C.E., carved stone plates along the meditation path depict *jātaka* scenes that have been "read" by scholars in much the same way one would read a textual narrative. Whatever the initial motivation for the creation of visual portrayals of events from

the Buddha's biographies, such images serve as objects of meditation, contemplation, and ritual reminders of the Buddha.

Many Buddhist rituals invoke salient idioms from the Buddha's biography. For example, Burmese Buddhists, especially the Shan people, celebrate a boy's temporary initiation as a novice with a ritual reenactment of Siddhārtha's splendid life and departure from the palace. In Thailand, stories of the Buddha's life as Vessantara are chanted on ritual occasions and at the behest of devout lay patrons. Images of the Buddha are consecrated through an eye-opening ceremony, and a deferential protocol of behavior is required in front of consecrated images; one behaves as if one were in the Buddha's presence. Lastly, pilgrimages are undertaken to sites that commemorate episodes of the Buddha's life, as well as places that contain relics of the Buddha, such as BODH GAYĀ in north-east India, the site of the Buddha's enlightenment.

Biographies of the Buddha also give voice to local interpretations, and the Buddhist biographical genre includes numerous apocryphal *jātaka* stories. Countless stories about the Buddha's many lives enrich the biographical idiom in local Buddhist traditions, chronicles, myths, and religious sites, thereby linking persons and places with the Buddha's pristine early community. One way this occurs is through relating universal biographical themes to particular local features. For example, the colossal Burmese Mahāmuni was constructed, according to local myth, in the Buddha's likeness, and it is said to have been enlivened by him during a visit to the region now known as Arakan. Stories like this serve to legitimate not only the particular image, but, more significantly, all of its royal patrons and protectors through Burmese dynastic history. The Mahāmuni complex further links the geographical and cultural periphery of lower Burma to central Buddhist concepts in the Buddha's biography (Schober). In the Theravāda tradition, apocryphal stories, local traditions, and peripheral locations are thus brought together to construct and perpetuate biographical extensions of the Buddha's lives.

In the traditions of Mahāyāna and VAJRAYĀNA Buddhism, we find many life stories of other buddhas, bodhisattvas, and embodiments of enlightenment from the past, present, and even future. Such an expansion of the biographical genre made it possible to integrate preexisting religious and cultural values into Buddhist belief systems. In China, for example, Buddhist BIOGRAPHIES OF EMINENT MONKS (GAOSEN ZHUAN) are

informed by biographical conventions borrowed from the indigenous Confucian tradition. Like their counterparts in other branches of Buddhism, biographies of eminent Chinese monks take up familiar themes (Kieschnick). Asceticism, miracle working, healing, and scholarship commonly figure in biographies of eminent monks to underscore how their lives emulate and perpetuate extraordinary events in the biography of the Buddha. Such stories emphasize links between teachers and their disciples in order to construct a lineage that, at least in principle, is believed to establish a historical connection to the idealized time of the Buddha. Biographies of famous monks also commonly recount miracles associated with relics or they describe extraordinary practices with which charismatic monks have been credited.

In this way, Buddhist sacred biography is a genre that seeks to demonstrate that the accomplishments that eminent monks achieve in later periods share features in common with the words and acts of the founder of Buddhism. Buddhist sacred biography thus locates the Buddha's life story with specific Buddhist communities. By linking the universal with geographic peripheries and particular cultures, Buddhist biography engages the religious imagination of Buddhists and contributes to the continuing vitality of the tradition.

*See also:* **Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Jātaka, Illustrations of**

### **Bibliography**

- Kieschnick, John. *The Eminent Monk: Buddhist Ideals in Medieval Chinese Hagiography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Reynolds, Frank E. "The Many Lives of the Buddha." In *The Biographical Process: Studies in the History and Psychology of Religion*, ed. Frank E. Reynolds and Donald Capps. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1976.
- Schober, Juliane, ed. *Sacred Biography in the Buddhist Traditions of South and Southeast Asia*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

JULIANE SCHOBER

---

## BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU)

Bka' brgyud (pronounced Kagyu) may be translated as "oral lineage" or "lineage of the Buddha's word." Many traditions of Tibetan Buddhism use the term *bka'*



*brgyud* to describe the successive oral transmission, and therefore authenticity, of their teachings. The name *Bka' brgyud*, however, most commonly refers to the Mar pa Bka' brgyud (the oral lineage of Mar pa), a stream of tantric Buddhist instructions and meditation practices initially brought to Tibet from India by the Tibetan translator MAR PA (MARPA) in the eleventh century. Although the Bka' brgyud subsequently developed into a complex structure of autonomous subsects and branch schools, later Western writings tended to describe it as one of four sects of Tibetan Buddhism, to be distinguished from the RNYING MA (NYINGMA), SA SKYA (SAKYA), and DGE LUGS (GELUK). Another Tibetan typology of tantric traditions enumerates the Mar pa Bka' brgyud as one of eight streams of tantric instruction, the so-called *sgrub brgyud shing rta chen po brgyad* (eight great chariot-like lineages of achievement), which includes traditions such as the Rnying ma, the Bka' gdams of Atisha, and the Gcod instructions of MA GCIG LAB SGRON (MACIG LAPDON). Some Tibetan historians have referred to the lineage stemming from Mar pa with the near homonym Dkar brgyud (pronounced Kargyu), which means "white lineage," describing the white cotton robes worn by mendicant yogins of this tradition, and stressing their commitment to intensive meditation practice.

Each of the various Bka' brgyud subsects trace their lineage back to the primordial tantric buddha Vajradhara, who is considered an incontrovertible source of authentic Buddhist instruction. According to traditional accounts, the Indian MAHĀSIDDHA (great adept) Tilopa (988–1069) received visionary instructions from Vajradhara, later passing them on to his principal disciple, the Bengali scholar and adept NĀROPA (1016–1100). The latter transmitted his chief instructions (codified as the *Nā ro chos drug*, or the *Six Doctrines of Nāropa*) to Mar pa. Mar pa returned to Tibet, where he translated, arranged, and disseminated these practices, together with those of the meditational system of MAHĀMUDRĀ, most famously to his yogin disciple MI LA RAS PA (Milarepa; 1028/40–1111/23). These early figures—the buddha Vajradhara, the Indians Tilopa and Nāropa, and their Tibetan successors Mar pa and Mi la ras pa—form the earliest common segment of the Bka' brgyud lineage, a line of individuals largely removed from an institutionalized monastic setting. One of Mi la ras pa's foremost disciples, the physician-monk Sgam po pa Bsod nams rin chen (1079–1153), merged the instructions he received from this lineage with the monasticism and systematic exegetical approach he learned during his earlier train-

ing under masters of the Bka' gdams sect. Sgam po pa, therefore, appears to have spearheaded the true institutionalization of the Bka' brgyud, founding an important monastery and retreat center near his homeland in the southern Tibetan region of Dwags po. For this reason, the many subsequent branches of the Bka' brgyud are also collectively known as the Dwags po Bka' brgyud.

The Bka' brgyud later split into numerous divisions, known in Tibetan as the *four major* and *eight minor* Bka' brgyud subsects (*Bka' brgyud che bzhi chung brgyad*), where the terms *major* and *minor* carry neither quantitative nor qualitative overtones, but rather indicate a relative proximity to the master Sgam po pa and his nephew Dwags po Sgom tshul (1116–1169). The four major Bka' brgyud subsects follow from the direct disciples of these two masters. These include:

1. The Karma Bka' brgyud, also known as the Karma Kam tshang, which is directed by the Karma pa hierarchs and originated with the first Karma pa Dus gsum mkhyen pa (1110–1193). This sect held great political power in Tibet from the late fifteenth to early seventeenth centuries and continues to be one of the most active among the four, especially in Eastern Tibet and in exile.
2. The Tshal pa Bka' brgyud, which originated with Zhang tshal pa Brtson grus grags pa (1123–1193).
3. The 'Ba' rom Bka' brgyud, which originated with 'Ba' rom Dar ma dbang phyug (1127–1199) and forged early ties with the Tangut and Mongol Courts.
4. The Phag gru Bka' brgyud, which originated with the great master Phag mo gru pa Rdo rje rgyal po (1110–1170), who established a seat at Gdan sa thil Monastery in Central Tibet. This monastery, together with an ancestral home in nearby Rtse thang, became the center of the powerful ruling Phag mo gru family during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

The incipience of the eight lesser Bka' brgyud subsects is traced back to the disciples of Phag mo gru pa Rdo rje rgyal po. These include:

1. The 'Bri gung Bka' brgyud, which originated with 'Bri gung 'Jigs rten mgon po (1143–1217) and held great political influence during the thirteenth century.

2. The Stag lung Bka' brgyud, which originated with Stag lung thang pa Bkra shis dpal (1142–1210).
3. The Gling ras Bka' brgyud, which originated with Gling rje ras pa Padma rdo rje (1128–1288) and later became the 'Brug pa Bka' brgyud under his disciple Gtsang pa rgya ras Ye shes rdo rje (1161–1211). The latter subject rose to prominence under royal patronage in Bhutan.
4. The G.ya' bzang Bka' brgyud, which originated with Zwa ra ba Skal ldan ye shes seng ge (d. 1207).
5. The Khro phu Bka' brgyud, which originated with Rgya tsha (1118–1195), Kun ldan ras pa (1148–1217), and their nephew Khro phu lotsāva Byams pa dpal (1173–1228).
6. The Shug gseb Bka' brgyud, which originated with Gyer sgom Tshul khriims seng ge (1144–1204).
7. The Yel pa Bka' brgyud, which originated with Ye shes brtsegs pa (d.u.).
8. The Smar tshang Bka' brgyud, which originated with Smar pa grub thob Shes rab seng ge (d.u.).

Many of these subjects have since died out as independent institutional systems. A few, such as the Karma Bka' brgyud, 'Bri gung Bka' brgyud, and 'Brug pa Bka' brgyud, continue to play an important role in the religious lives of Tibetan Buddhists inside Tibet, across the Himalayan regions, and in Europe and the Americas since the Tibetan exile during the latter half of the twentieth century.

See also: Tibet

### Bibliography

- Guenther, Herbert V., trans. *The Life and Teaching of Nāropa*. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1986.
- Gyaltzen, Khenpo Könchok, trans. *The Great Kagyu Masters: The Golden Lineage Treasury*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1990.
- Lhalungpa, Lobsang P., trans. *The Life of Milarepa*. New York: Dutton, 1977. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1984.
- Richardson, Hugh. "The Karma-pa Sect: A Historical Note." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1958): 139–164 and (1959): 1–18. Reprinted in *High Peaks, Pure Earth: Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*, ed. Michael Aris. London: Serindia, 1998.
- Smith, E. Gene. "Golden Rosaries of the Bka' brgyud Schools." In *Dkar brgyud gser 'phreng: A Golden Rosary of Lives of Em-*

*inent Gurus*, compiled by Mon-rtse-pa Kun-dga'-dpal-ldan and ed. Kun-dga'-brug-dpal. Leh, India: Sonam W. Tashigang, 1970. Reprinted in *Among Tibetan Texts*, ed. Kurtis R. Schaefer. Boston: Wisdom, 2001.

Torricelli, Fabrizio, and Naga, Sangye T., trans. *The Life of the Mahasiddha Tilopa*. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1995.

Trungpa, Chögyam, and the Nalanda Translation Committee, trans. *The Rain of Wisdom*. Boston: Shambhala, 1980.

Trungpa, Chögyam, and the Nalanda Translation Committee, trans. *The Life of Marpa the Translator*. Boston: Shambhala, 1986.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## BODH GAYĀ

The Buddha attained complete and perfect enlightenment while seated on the diamond throne (*vajrāsana*) under the bodhi tree at Bodh Gayā. Also called the seat of enlightenment (*bodhimaṇḍa*), this throne is said to be located at the earth's navel, the only place on earth that rests directly on the primordial layer of golden earth supporting the cosmos. Only there can the earth support a buddha undergoing full enlightenment without breaking apart. The *bodhimaṇḍa* numbers among the numerous invariables in all buddhas' biographies, which have only three distinguishing features. These are the genus of their bodhi trees, and the places of their births and deaths. Hence, individual buddhas are identified with and by their particular bodhi trees, Śākyamuni's being the pipal tree (*ficus religiosa*).

The enlightenment is further ritualized and solemnized by its being embedded in an elaborate sequence of actions, beginning with Siddhārtha's decision to abandon physical austerities and to follow the middle way. Despite the site's extent, the ground is thick with sacred traces of the Buddha performing these actions. According to the Chinese pilgrims FAXIAN (ca. 337–418 C.E.) and XUANZANG (ca. 600–664 C.E.), individuals hailing from different places and eras erected STŪPAS, pillars, railings, temples, and monasteries to memorialize deeds and places. An example is the jewel-walk, one of the seven spots where the Buddha spent one week of his seven-week experience of enlightenment.

Though the emperor AŚOKA probably established Bodh Gayā and the bodhi tree as Buddhism's most sacred Buddhist PILGRIMAGE site and object, the earliest

extant remains and inscriptions are Śuṅgan (second to first century B.C.E.). Recording three Śuṅgan noblewomen's donations to the King's Temple, its railing and the jewel-walk posts, these inscriptions inaugurate an ongoing domestic and foreign tradition of donations and repairs. Early inscriptions also record Sri Lankan, Burmese, and Chinese pilgrimage. For example, Sri Lankan donative activity began with King Meghavarmā's building of the Mahābodhi Monastery (ca. fourth century C.E.) to house Sinhalese monks. Beginning in the eleventh century, the kings of Burma sent several expeditions to repair the temple.

Muslim invaders vandalized Bodh Gayā, probably before the last Burmese repair in 1295. The site remained desolate until the seventeenth century, when a Mahant settled there. Gaining ownership of the site, he salvaged its archaeological remains to build a Śaivite monastery near the MAHĀBODHI TEMPLE. The nineteenth century saw the resurgence of foreign Buddhist pilgrimage and Burmese reparative expeditions. The latter inspired British interest, resulting in colonial excavation and rebuilding in the 1880s. In 1891 ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA founded the Mahābodhi Society in Sri Lanka to reestablish Buddhist ownership of the site. A lengthy legal battle ended victoriously in 1949. Today, Bodh Gayā is a thriving center of international Buddhism, attracting millions of Buddhist pilgrims every year from all over the world. Continuing a long-standing tradition, Buddhist sects throughout Asia (Sri Lanka, Burma [Myanmar], Thailand, Vietnam, China, Japan, Tibet, Nepal, and Bhutan) have established flourishing missions and built and repaired monasteries and temples there.

See also: **Bodhi (Awakening)**

### Bibliography

- Ahir, D. C. *Buddha Gayā through the Ages*. Delhi: Sri Satguru, 1994.
- Barua, Benimadhab. *Gayā and Buddha-Gayā*, Vol. 1: *Early History of the Holy Land* (1931). Varanasi, India: Bhartiya, 1975.
- Barua, Dipak Kumar. *Buddha Gayā Temple: Its History*. Buddha Gaya, India: Buddha Gaya Temple Management Committee, 1975. Second revised edition, 1981.
- Beal, Samuel, trans. *Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World, Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629)*. London: Trubner, 1884. Reprint, Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corp., 1969.
- Bhattacharyya, Tarapada. *The Bodhgayā Temple*. Calcutta: Firma K. L. Mukhopadhyah, 1966.

Legge, James, trans. *A Record of Buddhistic Kingdoms, Being an Account by the Chinese Monk Fa-Hsien of His Travels in India and Ceylon (A.D. 399–414) in Search of the Buddhist Books of Discipline*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1886. Reprint, New York: Paragon, 1965.

Leoshko, Janice, ed. *Bodhgayā: The Site of Enlightenment*. Bombay: Marg, 1988.

LEELA ADITI WOOD

## BODHI (AWAKENING)

The Sanskrit and Pāli word *bodhi* derives from the Indic root  $\sqrt{budh}$  (to awaken, to know). It was rendered into Chinese either by way of transliteration, as *puti* (Japanese, *bodai*; Korean, *pori*), or by way of translation. The most common among the many Chinese translations are *jue* (Japanese, *kaku*; Korean, *kak*; “to be aware”) and *dao* (Japanese, *dō*; Korean, *to*; “the way”). The standard Tibetan translation is *byang chub* (purified and perfected). Those who are attentive to the more literal meaning of the Indic original tend to translate *bodhi* into English as “awakening,” and this is to be recommended. However, it has long been conventional to translate it as “enlightenment,” despite the risks of multiple misrepresentation attendant upon the use of so heavily freighted an English word.

### General characterizations of bodhi

In the most general terms, *bodhi* designates the attainment of that ultimate knowledge by virtue of which a being achieves full liberation (*vimokṣa*, *vimukti*) or NIRVĀṆA. Sometimes the term is understood to refer to the manifold process of awakening by which one comes variously and eventually to know the truth of things “as they truly are” (*yathābhūtaṃ*), thereby enabling liberation from DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) and REBIRTH for both self and others. At other times *bodhi* is taken to refer to the all-at-once culmination of that process. In the latter sense, the term *bodhi* may be said to belong to the large category of names for things or events so ultimate as to be essentially ineffable, even inconceivable. However, in the former more processive sense, either as a single term standing alone or as an element in any number of compounds (*bodhicitta*, *bodhisattva*, *abhisambodhi*, *bodhicaryā*, etc.), *bodhi* is a subject of extensive exposition throughout which it is made clear that the term belongs more to the traditional categories of PATH (*mārga*), practice (*caryā*, *pratipatti*), or cause (*hetu*) than to the category of fruition or transcendent effect (*phala*). Thus, despite a common tendency in

scholarship to regard *bodhi* as a synonym for *nirvāṇa*, *vimokṣa*, and so on, it is best to treat *bodhi* as analytically distinct in meaning from the various terms for the result or consequence of practice.

Although the term *bodhi* often refers to the liberating knowledge specifically of BUDDHAS (awakened ones), it is not reserved for that use alone; *bodhi* is also ascribed to other and lesser kinds of liberated beings, like the ARHAT. When the full awakening of a buddha is particularly or exclusively intended, it is common to use the superlative form, ANUTTARASAMYAKSAMBODHI (COMPLETE, PERFECT AWAKENING). In East Asian Buddhist discourse, particularly in the CHAN SCHOOL (Japanese, Zen), one encounters other terms (e.g., Chinese, *wu*; Japanese, *satori*) that are also translated as “awakening” or “enlightenment.” These other terms are perhaps related in meaning to *bodhi*, but they were very seldom used actually to translate the Indic word, are not admitted to be precisely synonymous with it, and in their common usages notably lack its sense of ultimacy or finality. They refer rather to certain moments or transient phases of the processes of realization arising in the course of contemplative practice. As such they are the focus of much dispute over their purportedly “sudden” or “gradual” occurrence.

Traditional accounts of *bodhi* found in or derived from South Asian sources are often connected to accounts of Śākyamuni’s own liberating knowledge, attained in his thirty-fifth year, in the final watch of his first night “beneath the *bodhi* tree.” He is said then to have achieved, in a climax to eons of cultivation extending through innumerable past lives, the ultimate knowledge (*vidyā*) or ABHIJÑĀ (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES)—that is, knowledge of the extinction of the residual impurities (*āsravaḥṣaya**jñāna*; literally, “oozings” or “cankers”) of sensual desire (*kāma*), becoming (*bhava*), views (*dṛṣṭi*), and ignorance (*avidyā*). This extinguishing or purgative knowledge arises precisely in the immediate verification of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS—that is, in the intuitive confirmation (*abhisamaya*) of the truth of *duḥkha* (suffering), the truth of the origin (*samudaya*) of suffering in craving (*tṛṣṇā*) and ignorance (*avidyā*), the truth of the cessation (*nirodha*) of suffering, and the truth of the path (*mārga*) leading to the cessation of suffering. To the limited and questionable extent that one can conceive of *bodhi* as an experience, these knowings or extinctions are, so to speak, the content or object of Śākyamuni’s experience of awakening, and the four noble truths are what it was that he awakened to. We may note in this classical account of *bodhi* the convergence

of two modes of soteriological discourse—a discourse of purgation or purification signaled by the use of terms like eradication (*kṣaya*) and canker (*āsrava*), and a discourse of veridical cognition, exemplified by such terms as knowledge (*vidyā*) and *abhiññā*. *Bodhi* is thus shown to be, at once, a cleansing and a gnosis, an understanding that purifies and a purification that illuminates.

The more systematic or scholastic traditions of Buddhism commonly expound *bodhi* in terms of its constituent factors (*bodhipakṣa*, *bodhipakṣikadharmā*). These, of course, are components of awakening in the sense of an extended process or path rather than in the sense of a single, unitary culmination of a path. There are thirty-seven such factors, grouped in seven somewhat overlapping categories. The four “foundations of MINDFULNESS” (*smṛtyupasthāna*) are mindfulness or analytical meditative awareness of the body (*kāya*), of feelings (*vedanā*), of consciousness (*vijñāna*), and of mind-objects (*dharma*). The four “correct eliminations” (*samyakprahāṇa*) or “correct exertions” (*samyakpradhāṇa*) are the striving to eliminate evil that has already arisen, to prevent future evil, to produce future good, and to increase good that has already arisen. The four “bases of meditative power” (*ṛddhipāda*) are aspiration (*chanda*), strength (*vīrya*), composure of mind (*citta*), and scrutiny (*mīmāṃsā*). The five “faculties” (*indriya*) are FAITH (*śraddhā*), energy (*vīrya*), mindfulness (*smṛti*), concentration (*samādhi*), and PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM). The five “powers” (*bala*) are five different degrees of the five faculties ranging from the lowest degree sufficient to be simply a follower of the Buddha, through the higher degrees necessary to achieve the higher degrees of sainthood: status as a stream winner (*śrotāpanna*), a once-returner (*sakṛdāgāmin*), a nonreturner (*anāgāmin*), and an arhat. The seven “limbs of awakening” (*bodhyaṅga*) are memory (*smṛti*), investigation of teaching (*dharmapracaya*), energy (*vīrya*), rapture (*prīti*), serenity (*praśrabdhi*), concentration (*samādhi*), and equanimity (*upekṣā*). The final eight factors are the components of the noble eightfold path.

So manifold and complex a characterization of *bodhi*, as a process comprising multiple parts, serves to underscore the fact that awakening is clearly not an end divorced from its means, nor a realization separate from practice; rather it is the sum and the perfection of practice. This fact is often explicitly acknowledged in Buddhism—in assertions of the unity of realization and practice or in the variously formulated insistence that practice is essential to realization. Such claims

must be kept in mind as cautions against the temptation to conceive of bodhi as a wholly autonomous, self-generated, and entirely transcendent “experience.” Indeed, it could serve even as warrant for banning the very use of modern, largely Western notions of “experience” (pure experience, religious experience, mystical experience, etc.) from all discussions of bodhi or analogous terms. To speak of “the experience of awakening,” rather than of, say, the performance or the cultivation of awakening, is to risk reifying the process and, worse still, isolating it from the rest of Buddhism.

### Bodhi in the Mahāyāna

The characterizations of awakening sketched above are common to the whole of Buddhism. Among notions of bodhi that are especially emphasized in MAHĀYĀNA one must note its conception as an object of noble aspiration. The ideal Mahāyāna practitioner, the BODHISATTVA, is essentially defined as one who aspires to bodhi, one who dedicates himself to the enactment of bodhi for himself but also and especially for all beings. This is the sense of the word operative in the term *bodhicittotpada*, the arousal of BODHICITTA (THOUGHT OF AWAKENING), a locution rich in conative significance that conveys the affective dimension, the emotive power, of liberating knowledge, as well as its necessary association with the virtue of KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION).

Also characteristic of Mahāyāna is a recurrent concern with identifying the source of the capacity for awakening. Is it natural or inculcated? In sixth-century China there appeared a text entitled the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN) that was attributed to AŚVAGHOṢA but was probably a Chinese contribution to the evolving tradition of TATHĀGATAGARBHA (matrix or embryo of buddhahood) thought. This text coined the term “original awakening” (*benjue*), contrasting that with “incipient awakening” (*shijue*). The former refers to an innate potential awakening, a natural purity of mind (*cittaprakṛtviśuddhi*) or underlying radiance of mind (*prabhāsvaratvaṃ cittasya*), which enables practice and so engenders the actualization of awakening. The latter refers to the process of actualization itself, by which one advances from the nonawakened state, through seeming and partial awakening, to final awakening. Drawing upon a usage of linguistics, we might speak of the pair as awakening in the mode of competence and awakening in the mode of performance. The notion of a natural enlightenment that abides as a potency in the very sentience of SENTIENT BEINGS (later called buddha-nature) and issues in the gradual enactment of actual awakening stood in

contrast to alternative views found in certain traditions of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL of Buddhism, according to which awakening is the outcome of the radical transformation of a mind (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*) that is naturally or inveterately defiled. This notion proved very fruitful throughout East Asian Buddhism but fostered in the Japanese Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) school an especially powerful and enduring doctrine of ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) that left its mark on nearly all of medieval and early modern Japanese Buddhism. It also had profound ethical implications insofar as the notion of original or natural awakening was commonly invoked, or was said to be invoked, for antinomian or laxist purposes on the grounds that one’s originally awakened condition rendered effortful practice otiose.

Comparable to the idea of original awakening, but even stronger and bolder, is the startling claim resonant in much of Chinese, Korean, and Japanese Buddhism that awakening is not merely potentially present in the mundane sentient condition but actually identical with the worst of that condition. This seemingly paradoxical assertion is classically conveyed in the aphorism, “the afflictions (*kleśa*) are identical with awakening.” In conventional theory, bodhi is the eradication of the *kleśa* (affective hindrances like anger, lust, greed, etc.); the assertion that the *kleśa* and bodhi are one and the same would therefore seem, at least at first glance, to be not only heterodox but also perverse and self-contradictory. It appears to stand the conventional view of awakening on its head. However, justification for so seemingly outrageous a claim is to be found in the doctrine of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), according to which any sentient event or condition, being necessarily empty (*śūnya*) of self-nature or own being (*svabhāva*), mysteriously incorporates all other sentient events or conditions. Hell entails buddhahood; evil entails good; and vice versa. Thus, even an impulse of lust or hatred harbors the aspiration for awakening, and awakening is not a condition or process that depends upon or consists in the complete extinction of imperfection.

### The sudden/gradual issue

The concept of original awakening was also central to Chan discourse about “sudden” (Chinese, *dun*; Japanese, *ton*) and “gradual” (Chinese, *jian*; Japanese, *zen*) awakening. Here the term for awakening is the Chinese word *wu* (read in Japanese as *satori* or *go*), and, as noted above, *wu* is to be distinguished from *bodhi*, although it is not wholly unrelated. The terms sudden

awakening (*dunwu*) and gradual awakening (*jianwu*) were, of course, instruments of polemic. Certain Chan traditions criticized others for being gradualist in their understanding and practice of awakening while claiming themselves to be subitist. The former, of course, is a term of disparagement, the latter a term of strong approbation. No school ever itself claimed to be gradualist; all laid claim to sudden awakening. In the eighth century the so-called Southern Chan school, derived from the teachings of the sixth patriarch HUINENG (ca. 638–713), claimed to offer sudden or all-at-once awakening while alleging that the so-called Northern School, derived from the teachings of Shenxiu (ca. 606–706), espoused a gradual or step-by-step, and thus ultimately bogus, awakening. The Northern School, which was actually as subitist as any, died out as a distinct Chan lineage, whereas the Southern School flourished to the point that all post-eighth-century Chan derives from the Southern School and so adheres *de rigueur* to the position that true awakening comes suddenly or all at once. In effect this is simply a variation on the theme of original awakening, for the asserted suddenness or all-at-once character of awakening is really just a function of its being, as it were, always and already present in one's very nature as a sentient being. It need not be formed but only acknowledged, and acknowledgement is always all at once. It must be noted, however, that only in the most extreme and eccentric traditions of Chan did the claim of "sudden awakening" ever imply the actual rejection of effortful practice. Instead, such gradual practice was typically held to be necessary, but necessary chiefly as the sequel to a quickening moment of sudden awakening, functioning to extend what was glimpsed in sudden awakening so as to make it permanent, habitual, and mature.

### **Bodhi as "enlightenment"**

It was noted above that the most common English rendering of *bodhi* (or *wu* or *satori*) is "enlightenment." There are grounds for such a translation. Some of the earliest usages of the word *enlightenment* show it to have meant something like spiritual illumination, and spiritual illumination is not so far from "awakening." However, the term *enlightenment* is also commonly employed in the West to designate an age in European intellectual and cultural history, roughly the eighteenth century, the dominant voices of which were those of philosophers like Voltaire, Condorcet, and Diderot, who all declared the supremacy of reason over faith, and the triumph of science and rational

ethics over religion. Such thinkers were harshly dismissive of the kinds of piety, faith, asceticism, and mystical insight that we saw above to be among the components or factors of bodhi. To be sure, the awakening of the Buddha was not a suspension or an abrogation of reason, but neither was it simply an exercise of what Voltaire would have meant by *reason*. Better then to use the more literal rendering of "awakening," which also has the advantage of conveying the concrete imagery of calm alertness and clear vision that the Buddhist traditions have always had in mind when speaking of bodhi.

### **Bibliography**

- Gethin, Rupert M. L. *The Buddhist Path to Awakening: A Study of the Bodhi-Pakkhiyā Dhammā*, 2nd edition. Oxford: Oneworld, 2001.
- Gregory, Peter N., ed. *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Thought*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Ruegg, David S. *Buddha-nature, Mind, and the Problem of Gradualism in Comparative Perspective: On the Transmission and Reception of Buddhism in India and Tibet*. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1989.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

ROBERT M. GIMELLO

## BODHICARYĀVATĀRA

*Bodhicaryāvatāra* (*Introduction to the Conduct That Leads to Enlightenment*; *Byang chub sems dpa'i spyod pa la 'jug pa*) is, with CANDRAKĪRTI's seventh-century *Madhyamakāvatāra* (*Introduction to Madhyamaka*), the most important text integrating Madhyamaka philosophy into the bodhisattva path. The text is structured around meditation on the altruistic "awakening mind" or BODHICITTA (THOUGHT OF AWAKENING) and its development through PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION). The longest chapter is on PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM) and treats philosophical analysis. Written by ŚĀNTIDEVA (ca. 685–763), the poem was popular in late Indian Buddhism and has been enormously important in Tibet.

See also: **Bodhisattva(s); Madhyamaka School**

### **Bibliography**

- Brassard, Francis. *The Concept of Bodhicitta in Śāntideva's Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2000.

Crosby, Kate, and Skilton, Andrew, trans. *Śāntideva: The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1995.

Gyatso, Geshe Kelsang. *Meaningful to Behold*, tr. Tenzin Norbu. London: Wisdom, 1986.

Wallace, Visva A., and Wallace, B. Allan, trans. *A Guide to the Bodhisattva Way of Life (Bodhicaryāvatāra)*. New York: Snow Lion, 1997.

Williams, Paul. *Altruism and Reality: Studies in the Philosophy of the Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1998.

PAUL WILLIAMS

## BODHICITTA (THOUGHT OF AWAKENING)

The English phrase “thought of awakening” is a mechanical rendering of the Indic term *bodhicitta*. The original term is a compound noun signifying “thought directed at or focused on awakening,” “a resolution to seek and/or attain awakening,” or “the mind that is (virtually or intrinsically) awakening (itself).” The concept is known in non-Mahāyāna sources (e.g., *Abhidharmadīpa*, pp. 185–186, 192) and occurs in transitional texts such as the MAHĀVASTU, but gains its doctrinal and ritual importance in MAHĀYĀNA and tantric traditions.

### Technical definitions

In its most common denotation the term *bodhicitta* refers to the resolution to attain BODHI (AWAKENING) in order to liberate all living beings, which defines and motivates the BODHISATTVA’s vow. However, even this simple definition entails several layers of meaning and practice. The resolution to attain awakening can be seen as a state of mind or a mental process, but it is also the solemn promise (the vow as verbal act) embodied or expressed in particular ritual utterances, acts, and gestures (recitation of the vows, dedication of merit, etc.). *Bodhicitta* is also the motivating thought and sentiment behind the spiritual practice or career (*caryā*) of the bodhisattva; as such, it is the defining moment and the moving force behind the course of action that follows and enacts the initial resolution (the first appearance of the thought, known as *bodhicittotpāda*). As moving force and motivation it is also the mental representation of the goal (awakening) and the essential spirit of the practice (a usage sometimes rendered in English as “an awakened attitude”). Finally, the culmination of the intention of the vow and of the subsequent effort in the PATH—that is, awakening

itself—may also be regarded as technically *bodhicitta*. As a further extension of this usage, the term *bodhicitta* may also refer to the fundamental source or ground for the resolution, namely, innate enlightenment.

In a narrow psychological sense, *bodhicitta* is the first conscious formulation of an aspiration: to seek full awakening (buddhahood) in order to lead all SENTIENT BEINGS to liberation from DUḤKHA (SUFFERING). Conceived as a wish, as an intention that arises or occurs in the mind, the *bodhicitta* is a sort of decision; but in the traditional Buddhist view of mental culture, feelings and wishes can be fostered or cultivated. Accordingly, the *bodhicitta* is generally believed to require mental culture and self-cultivation, perhaps as an integral part of the purpose it embodies. The continued cultivation of the intention, the practice or exercise of the thought of awakening, helps develop a series of mental states and behavioral changes that gradually approximate the object of the wish: full awakening as a compassionate buddha or bodhisattva.

### Ritual uses and meanings

This practice of the thought of awakening begins with a RITUAL enactment, usually as part of the so-called sevenfold supreme worship (*saptavidhā-anuttarapūjā*), which includes, among other things, the rituals of taking the bodhisattva vows and the dedication of merit. Some Indian authors (e.g., ĀRYAŚŪRA and Candragomin) composed their own ritual for the production and adoption of the *bodhicitta*. In these liturgical settings the *bodhicitta* appears prominently as the focus of the ritual of the bodhisattva vow, which in many Mahāyāna liturgies replaced or incorporated earlier rituals for the adoption of the PRECEPTS or rituals preparatory for meditation sessions. Such rituals proliferated in East Asia and Tibet.

Although the model for many Tibetan liturgies was arguably a reworking of ritual elements in the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* and the BODHICARYĀVATĀRA of ŚĀNTIDEVA (ca. seventh century C.E.), the tradition combined a variety of sources in developing a theology and a liturgy of the thought of awakening. The *Thar pa rin po che'i rgyan* of Sgam po pa (1079–1153 C.E.) distinguishes the ritual based on Śāntideva’s teachings from the rituals from the lineage of Dharmakīrti Suvarṇadvīpin of Vijayanagara (fl. ca. 1000 C.E.)—presumably received through ATISHA (982–1054 C.E.).

Most Mahāyāna traditions consecrate the initial thought as the impetus and hence the most important moment in the bodhisattva’s career: the breaking forth

of an idea, the aspiration to the good, and a rare and valuable event. This event, in both its internal, psychological form and its ritual, public form is called “giving rise to the thought of awakening,” or, “causing the (first) appearance of a thought directed at awakening” ([*prathama*]-*bodhicittotpāda*). In its most literal and concrete sense, this is the moment when a bodhisattva encounters, or creates the conditions for, the appearance of the earnest wish to attain awakening for the benefit of all sentient beings. In Śāntideva’s explanation, the vow as expression of *bodhicitta* is closely associated with the adoption of the precepts of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvasaṃvara*), which are seen as the means for preserving and cultivating the initial resolution. This close link is recognized in many other ritual plans; for instance, the repentance rites (*wuhui*, “five ways to repent”) of the Tiantai School follow an ascending hierarchy that is somehow parallel to the sevenfold act of worship but begins with confession (*canhui*) and culminates with the resolution (*fayuan*) to seek awakening for the sake of all living beings.

Indian Mahāyāna scholastic accounts assume for the most part that a concerted and conscious effort to cultivate the *bodhicitta* by setting out on the path (called *prasthānacitta*) is necessary for awakening. Nonetheless, the ritual expression of the vow (called “the thought of the vow,” *prañidhicitta*), and the adoption of the bodhisattva precepts (*saṃvara*) in the presence of a spiritual mentor (*kalyāṇamitra*), or before all the buddhas of the universe, is sometimes seen as a guarantee of eventual awakening. Some authors (notably Śāntideva in his *Bodhicaryāvatāra*) conceive of *bodhicitta* as a force so potent that it appears to be external to the person’s own will, effort, or attention. In this conception, once a person has given rise to the resolution, the *bodhicitta* is, as it were, awakening itself, present, in manifest or latent form, in that person’s mental processes.

### Thought of awakening as awakened thought

We may speak of a historical process whereby the abstract notion or the psychological reality of a resolution became an autonomous spiritual force. The process is already suggested in Mahāyāna sūtras that glorify the *bodhicitta* as both the sine qua non of Mahāyāna practice and the essence or substance of awakening: It is a hidden treasure, like a panacea or powerful medicinal herb (see, for example, the “Maitreyavimokṣa” chapter of the *Gaṇḍavyūha-sūtra*). What may have been a hyperbolic celebration of the *bodhicitta*, however, soon took the form of a reifica-

tion or deification of this mental state or sequence of mental states. The thought of awakening is present even if one lacks all virtue, like a jewel hidden in a dung heap; one who gives rise to the thought will be venerated by gods and humans (*Bodhicaryāvatāra*). And, in a metaphor chosen as the title for one of the fourteenth Dalai Lama’s commentaries, the thought of awakening is like a flash of lightning in the dark night of human delusion. What is more, sūtras and śāstras alike agree that the thought of awakening protects from all dangers the person who conceives of it.

Insofar as the *bodhicitta* is also the starting point for Mahāyāna practice proper, it is a precondition and a basis for the virtues of a buddha (the *buddhadharmas*), and hence, impels, as it were, all the positive faculties and states generated in the path. The thought of awakening hence manifests itself throughout the path, in all stages of the bodhisattva’s development (*Mahāyāna-sūtrālaṃkāra*, chap. 4, following the *Akṣayamatīnirdeśa*). The *First Bhāvanākrama* of Kamalaśīla states that the foundation (*mūla*) for these virtues, and for the omniscience of a full buddha, is KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION), but, referring to the *Vairocanaḥhisambodhi*, adds that *bodhicitta* is the generating and impelling cause (*hetu*) of buddhahood.

Furthermore, insofar as *bodhicitta* is the mind of awakening, it is a beginning that is an end in itself. To paraphrase Kamalaśīla’s *Second Bhāvanākrama*, there are two types of *bodhicitta*, the conventional one of ritual and process, and the absolute one that is both the innate potency to become awakened and the mind that has attained the ultimate goal, awakening itself. The distinction between these two aspects or levels of *bodhicitta* is perhaps an attempt to account for the difference between the ritual and conventional enactment of a resolution, the spirit of commitment, the magnetic force of an ideal representation, and a sacred presence (awakening itself). Psychologically the idea may reflect a desire to understand how conviction and good intent can exist next to lack of conviction and a desire for what is not virtuous—in short how an ideal can be both a clear and heartfelt conviction and a distant goal.

The distinction between a provisional or conventional thought of awakening (*saṃvṛtibodhicitta*) and one that is or embodies the ultimate goal (*paramārthabodhicitta*) plays a central role in tantric conceptions of the “physiology” and “psychology” of ritual and meditation, in India and beyond. For it serves as a link between ritual convention and timeless truth, and between disparate branches of the tradition—



linking, for instance, the sūtra or pāramitā aspects of the path with the tantric stages, on the ground that all stages manifest some aspect of *bodhicitta*. This is arguably the most important function of *bodhicitta* as an explanatory or apologetic category in path theory and is highlighted in classic *lam rim* literature (for a contemporary presentation, see Gyatso).

### The thought as icon

The thought of awakening is also a pivotal concept in Mahāyāna ethical speculation: In some ways *bodhicitta* is shorthand for the instinct of empathy and the cultivation of compassion as foundations for Buddhist involvement with SAṂSĀRA. It epitomizes important dimensions of intentionality, as attitude toward others and attitudes toward self, as well as intention as the direction in which transformative behavior moves.

A term so laden with meanings almost fits naturally as the core around which one could build further ritual tropes, as one can see in relatively early tantras like the *Mahāvairocana-sūtra*. The *Guhyasamāja-tantra* devotes its second chapter to *bodhicitta*, describing it as the solid core (*sāra, vajra*) of the body, speech, and mind of all the buddhas. Since this ultimate reality is, not surprisingly, the emptiness of all things, the text implicitly builds a bridge between the ethical and ritual life of the practitioner's body, speech, and mind, and both the reality and its sacred embodiment in all buddhas.

*Bodhicitta* is also a force that empowers the practitioner, and therefore plays an important role in some tantric rites of initiation or CONSECRATION (*abhiṣeka*). A common homology imagines *bodhicitta* as masculine potency—UPĀYA and the seed of awakening—and *prajñā* as the feminine “lotus-vessel” that receives the *bodhicitta*. Thus, *bodhicitta* becomes *bindu* (the “drop-lets” of awakening) and hence the semen that stands for the generative power of awakening. Because *bodhicitta* as *bindu* or semen represents the male potency of awakened saints, it is not uncommon for a female participant (a *yoginī* present symbolically or in person) to be seen as *vidyā* or *prajñā*, whereas *bodhicitta* stands for *upāya*. Classical Indian physiology assumed that females also have semen, hence the disciple receiving initiation ingested, symbolically or literally, the sexual fluids of both the guru (male) and the *yoginī* (female) as a way to give rise to the thought of awakening—thus generated, as it were, from the union of mother and father.

### Summary interpretations

The above tapestry shows how the concept of *bodhicitta* ties together liturgy, systematic theories of awakening and the path, and the foundations of Buddhist ethics. It is a concept as important for the history of Mahāyāna ritual as those of the vow (*prañidhāna*) and the dedication of merit (*puṇyapariṇāmanā*). A social history of the concept would include its function as a secure solid ground outside social and sectarian differences: It is, as it were, a thin, but steely thread that links the specifics of ritual and theology with the idea of a timeless and ineffable liberating reality. As a source of authority, *bodhicitta* is both an inner drive and an untainted reality beyond individual differences.

Theologically, *bodhicitta* is, in part, a functional equivalent to the family of concepts encompassed by Hindu notions of *prasāda* and Western concepts of grace: *Bodhicitta* stands for the mystery of the presence of the holy in an imperfect human being who is in need of liberation and imagines it, despite the unlikelihood of the presence of even the mere idea of perfection in such an imperfect being.

See also: **Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)**

### Bibliography

- Brassard, Francis. *The Concept of Bodhicitta in Śāntideva's Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2000.
- Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *A Flash of Lightning in the Dark of Night: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*, tr. the Padmakara Translation Group. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1994.
- Gyatso, Geshe Kelsang. *Essence of Vajrayāna: The Highest Yoga Tantra Practice of Heruka Body Maṇḍala*. London: Tharpa, 1997.
- Khunu Rinpoche. *Vast as the Heavens, Deep as the Sea: Verses in Praise of Bodhicitta*, tr. G. Sparham. Somerville, MA: Wisdom, 1999.
- Kong sprul Blo gros mtha' yas (Lodro Thaye Kongtrul, Jamgon Kongtrul). *The Light of Wisdom: The Root Text, Lamrim yeshe nyingpo by Padmasambhava . . . Commentary on the Light of Wisdom by Jamgon Kongtrul the Great*. Boston: Shambhala, 1999.
- Nanayakkara, S. K. “Bodhicitta.” In *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*, Vol. 3, Fasc. 2, ed. G. P. Malalasekera, 1972.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

## BODHIDHARMA

Within the CHAN SCHOOL or tradition, Bodhidharma (ca. early fifth century) is considered the first patriarch of China, who brought Chan teachings from India to China, and the twenty-eighth patriarch in the transmission of the torch of enlightenment down from Śākyamuni Buddha. Bodhidharma is the subject of countless portraits, where he is represented as an Indian wearing a full beard with rings in his ears and a monk's robe, frequently engaged in the nine years of cross-legged sitting which he was loath to interrupt, even when a prospective disciple cut off his own arm to prove his sincerity. Modern scholars have come to doubt many of the elements in this legendary picture.

Of the ten texts attributed to Bodhidharma, the most authentic is probably an unnamed compilation one can provisionally call the *Bodhidharma Anthology*. This anthology opens with a biography and an exposition of his teaching, both composed by Tanlin, a sixth-century specialist in the *Śrīmālādevīsīṃhanāda-sūtra* (Chinese, *Shengman shizi hou jing; Sūtra of Queen Śrīmālā*). Tanlin's biography presents Bodhidharma as the third son of a South Indian king. Of Bodhidharma's route to China, Tanlin says, "He subsequently crossed distant mountains and seas, traveling about propagating the teaching in North China." This more historically feasible Bodhidharma came to North China via Central Asia.

Tanlin explains Bodhidharma's teaching as "entrance by principle and entrance by practice" (*liru* and *xingru*). "Entrance by principle" involves awakening to the realization that all SENTIENT BEINGS are identical to the true nature (*dharmatā*)—if one abides in "wall examining" (*biguan*) without dabbling in the scriptures, one will "tally with principle." "Wall examining" has been the subject of countless exegeses, from the most imaginative and metaphorical (be like a wall painting of a bodhisattva gazing down upon the suffering of saṃsāra) to the suggestion that it refers to the physical posture of cross-legged sitting in front of a wall. Later Tibetan translations gloss it as "abiding in brightness" (*lham mer gnas*), a tantric interpretation that also invites scrutiny.

"Entrance by practice" is fourfold: having patience in the face of suffering; being aware that the conditions for good things will eventually run out; seeking for nothing; and being in accord with intrinsic purity. The anthology also includes three *Records* (again the title is provisional) consisting of lecture materials, dialogues,



Bodhidharma (ca. early fifth century), the first Chan patriarch of China. (Japanese wood sculpture, Edo period, 1600–1868). © Reunion des Musées Nationaux/Art Resource, NY. Reproduced by permission.

and sayings. *Record I* has a saying attributed to Bodhidharma: "When one does not understand, the person pursues dharmas; when one understands, dharmas pursue the person." Later Chan did not appropriate this saying for its Bodhidharma story.

Two other early sources of information on Bodhidharma deserve mention. The first is a sixth-century non-Buddhist source, the *Luoyang qielan ji (Record of the Buddhist Edifices of Luoyang)*, which twice mentions an Iranian-speaking Bodhidharma from Central Asia. The second is the seventh-century *Xu gaoseng zhuan (Further Biographies of Eminent Monks)* by DAOXUAN (596–667). It contains a Bodhidharma entry (a slightly reworked version of Tanlin's piece), an entry on Bodhidharma's successor, Huike, and a critique of Bodhidharma's style of meditation. Here, Bodhidharma is said to have (1) come to China by the southern sea route, and (2) handed down a powerful mystery text, the LAŃKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA (*Discourse of the Descent into Lanka*), to Huike. Holders of this sūtra were thought to be capable of uncanny feats, such as sitting cross-legged all night in a snowbank. The later Chan picture of Bodhidharma incorporates both Daoxuan's southern sea route and his sacramental transmission of the *Laṅkāvatāra*. By the early eighth century, the first Chan histories had assembled these key elements

as the Bodhidharma story, drawing principally upon Daoxuan's work.

See also: **China**

### Bibliography

- Broughton, Jeffrey L. *The Bodhidharma Anthology: The Earliest Records of Zen*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999.
- Faure, Bernard. "Bodhidharma as Textual and Religious Paradigm." *History of Religions* 25, no. 3 (1986): 187–198.
- Faure, Bernard. *Le traité de Bodhidharma: Première anthologie du bouddhisme Chan*. Paris: Le Mail, 1986.
- Yanagida Seizan, ed. and trans. *Daruma no goroku*. Zen no goroku 1. Tokyo: Chikuma shobō, 1969.

JEFFREY BROUGHTON

## BODHISATTVA(S)

The term *bodhisattva* (Pāli, *bodhisatta*; Tibetan, *byang chub sems pa*; Chinese, *pusa*; Korean, *posal*; Japanese, *bosatsu*) refers to a *sattva* (person) on a Buddhist mārga (PATH) in pursuit of BODHI (AWAKENING) or one whose nature is awakening. In the Mahāyāna tradition, a bodhisattva is a practitioner who, by habituating himself in the practice of the PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION), aspires to become a buddha in the future by seeking ANUTTARASAMYAKSAMBOBODHI (COMPLETE, PERFECT AWAKENING) through PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM) and by benefiting all sentient beings through KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION). A bodhisattva is one who courageously seeks enlightenment through totally and fully benefiting others (*parārtha*), as well as himself (*svārtha*). A bodhisattva is also termed a *mahāsattva* or "Great Being" because he is a Mahāyāna practitioner who seeks *anuttarasamyaksambodhi* and who is equipped with the necessities for enlightenment—*puṇyasambhāra* (accumulation of merits) and *jñānasambhāra* (accumulation of wisdom)—and the quality of *upāya-kauśalya* (skillful means); that is, he knows how to act appropriately in any situation.

According to the *Bodhisattvabhūmi*, the *bodhisattvayāna* (spiritual path of a bodhisattva) is considered to be superior to both the *śrāvakayāna* (spiritual path of the disciples) and the *pratyekabuddhayāna* (spiritual path of a self-awakened buddha) because a bodhisattva is destined to attain enlightenment by removing the *kleśajñeyāvaraṇa* (emotional and intellectual afflictions), whereas those on the other two spiritual paths

aspire for NIRVĀṆA, that is, extinction of emotional afflictions only.

The bodhisattva is known by different appellations; for example, in *Mahāyāna-sūtrālaṅkāra* XIX: 73–74, the following fifteen names are given as synonyms for *bodhisattva*:

1. *mahāsattva* (great being)
2. *dhīmat* (wise)
3. *uttamadyuti* (most splendid)
4. *jinaputra* (Buddha's son)
5. *jinādhāra* (holding to the Buddha)
6. *vijetṛ* (conqueror)
7. *jinānkura* (Buddha's offspring)
8. *vikrānta* (bold)
9. *paramāścarya* (most marvelous)
10. *sārvavāha* (caravan leader)
11. *mahāyaśas* (of great glory)
12. *kṛpālu* (compassionate)
13. *mahāpuṇya* (greatly meritorious)
14. *īśvara* (lord)
15. *dhārmika* (righteous).

Bodhisattvas are of ten classes:

1. *gotrastha* (one who has not reached purity yet)
2. *avatīrṇa* (one who investigates the arising of the enlightenment mind)
3. *asuddhāsaya* (one who has not reached a pure intention)
4. *śuddhāsaya* (one who has reached a pure intention)
5. *aparipakva* (one who has not matured in the highest state)
6. *paripakva* (one who has matured in the highest state)
7. *aniyatipatita* (one who although matured has not yet entered contemplation)
8. *niyatipatita* (one who has entered contemplation)
9. *ekajātipratibaddha* (one who is about to enter the supreme enlightenment)

10. *caramabhavika* (one who has entered supreme enlightenment in this life).

Regarding the bodhisattva's practice, different texts use different categories to discuss the process. For example, the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra* refers to the *daśabhūmi* (ten spiritual stages) of a bodhisattva, while the *Bodhisattvabhūmi* makes reference to twelve vihāra (abodes), adding two vihāra to the list of ten *bhūmis*: *gotravihāra* (abode of the bodhisattva family) and *adhimukticaryāvihāra* (abode of firm resolution), the latter of which continues throughout the next ten abodes. The last ten of the vihāras essentially correspond to the ten bodhisattva stages of the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*, although each has a name different from the names of the stages. In each of the ten stages of the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*, a distinct pāramitā is practiced so that the bodhisattva gradually elevates himself to the final goal of enlightenment. The stages of practice according to the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*, with their corresponding pāramitās, are as follows:

1. *pramudita-bhūmi* (joyful stage): *dānapāramitā* (perfection of charity)
2. *vimala-bhūmi* (free of defilements stage): *śīlapāramitā* (perfection of ethical behavior)
3. *prabhākari-bhūmi* (light-giving stage): *dhyānapāramitā* (perfection of contemplation)
4. *arcīṣmatī-bhūmi* (glowing wisdom stage): *kṣāntipāramitā* (perfection of patience)
5. *sudurjayā-bhūmi* (mastery of utmost difficulty stage): *vīryapāramitā* (perfection of energy)
6. *abhimukhī-bhūmi* (wisdom beyond definition of impure or pure stage): *prajñāpāramitā* (perfection of wisdom)
7. *dūrāṅgamā-bhūmi* (proceeding afar stage [in which a bodhisattva gets beyond self to help others]): *upāyakaūśalyapāramitā* (perfection of utilizing one's expertise)
8. *acala-bhūmi* (calm and unperturbed stage): *prañidhānapāramitā* (perfection of making vows to save all sentient beings)
9. *sadhumati-bhūmi* (good thought stage): *balapāramitā* (perfection of power to guide sentient beings)
10. *dharmamaḡha-bhūmi* (rain cloud of dharma stage): *jñānapāramitā* (perfection of all-inclusive wisdom)

However, the numbers of stages of a bodhisattva are inconsistent from sūtra to sūtra and from commentary to commentary. One finds fifty-two stages in the *Pusa yingluo benye jing* (Taishō no. 1485), fifty-one in the RENWANG JING (HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA, Taishō no. 245), forty in both the FANWANG JING (BRAHMA'S NET SŪTRA, Taishō no. 1484) and the *Avataṃsakasūtra* (HUAYAN JING, Taishō no. 278), fifty-seven in the *Śūrangama[samādhi]-sutra* (Taishō no. 642), fifty-four in the *Cheng weishi lun* (Taishō no. 1591), four in the *Mahāyānasamgraha* (*She dasheng lun*, Taishō no. 1594), and both thirteen and seven stages in the *Bodhisattvabhūmi* (*Pusa dīchi jing*, Taishō no. 1581).

There are other classifications of bodhisattvas, such as those who enter enlightenment quickly and those who enter gradually; those who are householders and those who are not, each divided into nine classes; those who are extremely compassionate, such as Avalokiteśvara; and those who are extremely wise, such as Mañjuśrī. MAITREYA bodhisattva is considered to be the future buddha who is prophesized to appear in this world. Śākyamuni himself is understood to have been a bodhisattva in his past lives and is so called in the accounts of his previous births (JĀTAKA).

In order to distinguish him from the śrāvakas and PRATYEKABUDDHAS, who benefit only themselves, a Mahāyāna bodhisattva is characterized as one who makes vows to benefit all sentient beings, as well as himself. In the Pure Land tradition, for example, according to the *Larger SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA*, the Bodhisattva Mahāsattva Dharmākara makes forty-eight vows and becomes the Buddha of Infinite Light and Life (AMITĀBHA or Amitāyus), who resides in the Western Quarter and functions as a salvific buddha.

Among the well-known bodhisattvas, Avalokiteśvara and Maitreya are probably the most popular in East Asia. In the East Asian Buddhist tradition, Avalokiteśvara, better known by the Chinese name Guanyin (Korean, Kwansēum; Japanese, Kannon), is worshiped by both clergy and laity as a mother figure, a savior, and a mentor, who responds to the pain and suffering of sentient beings. In Tibet, Tenzin Gyatso, the fourteenth DALAI LAMA, is considered to be a reincarnation of Avalokiteśvara.

Maitreya (Pāli, Metteyya) bodhisattva, who is said to dwell in Tuṣita heaven, is known as the "future buddha" because he will appear in this world to re-establish Buddhism after all vestiges of the current dispensation of Śākyamuni Buddha have vanished. Tradition holds that ASAṄGA went to Tuṣita to study



An image of the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara being worshiped by the donor of the painting. (Chinese painting from the caves of Dunhuang, tenth century.) The Art Archive/Musée Guimet Paris/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

under Maitreya, where he received five treatises from him that became the basis for establishing the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL. Worship of Maitreya as the future buddha has also contributed to MILLENARIANISM AND MILLENARIAN MOVEMENTS in several Buddhist traditions.

Mañjuśrī and Samantabhadra are bodhisattvas who are often depicted in a triad together with the primordial Buddha Vairocana. Samantabhadra stands on Vairocana's right side and Mañjuśrī on his left. Samantabhadra is also often shown seated on the back of a white elephant, holding a wish-fulfilling jewel, a lotus flower, or a scripture, exemplifying his role as the guardian of the teaching and practice of the Buddha. Mañjuśrī, by contrast, represents wisdom, and is depicted wielding a flaming sword that cuts through the veil of ignorance.

Buddhist scholars and savants of India, such as NĀGĀRJUNA and VASUBANDHU, have been referred to as bodhisattvas; in China, DAO'AN, for example, is known

as Yinshou *pusa*. In more modern times, founders of new Buddhist movements in China, Taiwan, Japan, and the United States are considered by followers to be bodhisattvas and, in some cases, even buddhas.

*See also:* Bodhisattva Images; Mudrā and Visual Imagery

### Bibliography

- Dayal, Har. *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhist Sanskrit Literature*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1932.
- Dutt, Nalinaksha, ed. *Bodhisattva-bhūmiḥ*. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1978.
- Hardacre, Helen, and Sponberg, Alan, eds. *Maitreya, the Future Buddha*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Kawamura, Leslie S., ed. *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhism*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press, 1981.
- Ogihara Unrai, ed. *Bodhisattva-bhūmi: A Statement of Whole Course of the Bodhisattva*. Tokyo: Sankibo Buddhist Book Store, 1971.
- Yü Chün-fang. *Kuan-yin: The Chinese Transformation of Avalokiteśvara*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

LESLIE S. KAWAMURA

## BODHISATTVA IMAGES

Although they play a fairly limited role in early Buddhism, BODHISATTVAS came to occupy a position of preeminence in later Buddhist literature. Moreover, visual representations of bodhisattvas comprise one of the largest and most important categories of imagery in Buddhist art. Despite this popularity, however, depictions of bodhisattvas, as with anthropomorphic depictions of BUDDHAS, apparently did not first appear until at least several centuries after the lifetime of the historical Buddha, Śākyamuni. Various explanations have been proposed to account for the relatively late emergence of the cult of images in Buddhism, but the textual and archaeological record remains inconclusive on several important fronts, such as the contentious question of when—and why—the earliest images of buddhas and bodhisattvas were created. While many aspects of the origin of the bodhisattva in the context of Buddhist art thus remain unresolved, the subsequent evolution and transmission of images of bodhisattvas are easier to chart.

## Early representations

Judged on the basis of surviving stone sculpture from India, which constitutes the largest block of early evidence, the iconography of buddhas and of bodhisattvas differs in several key respects. A second-century triad from Gandhāra illustrates the typical characteristics of the two figural types. The central Buddha is depicted as an ascetic, with a simple coiffure, the plain robes customarily worn by a monk, and no other sort of adornment; the flanking bodhisattvas, by contrast, are depicted as very much of this world, with elaborate hairstyles and headdresses, rich robes, and the sorts of jeweled necklaces, bracelets, and earrings typically reserved for royalty. More than merely a reflection of stylistic preferences, these differences have long been interpreted as carrying deeper meaning. The simplicity of the Buddha's presentation, for example, can be seen as indicative of his status as one who has renounced the material world, while the ornamentation of the bodhisattva invokes analogies between earthly and spiritual power, and between material and spiritual abundance.

It should be noted that there are several other images, such as a red sandstone sculpture from Mathurā, that seem to contradict this general categorization: Although the standing figure exhibits the lack of adornment associated with images of the Buddha, the inscription labels it very clearly as a bodhisattva. In fact, such representations are reflections of a popular early motif that emphasized Śākyamuni's status as a bodhisattva, both in previous lives and just prior to becoming a buddha. This tradition, however, was certainly overshadowed by more typical imagery of the so-called *mahāsattvas*, or "Great Beings," as the well-known bodhisattvas generally associated with MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism were often called. It is this later ideal of powerful, transcendent figures dedicated to alleviating suffering in the human realm that underlies the development of the complex and multifaceted iconography of bodhisattvas that permeates the Buddhist world.

While there are, then, certain general characteristics shared by almost all bodhisattvas, there are also many specific individual traits that serve to distinguish one from another. Often these take the forms of particular attributes, such as the vase carried by MAITREYA, the thunderbolt (Sanskrit, *vajra*) held by Vajrapāṇi, or the sword and book frequently given to Mañjuśrī, while in other instances a bodhisattva might be paired with a specific animal mount, as are Samantabhadra and his

elephant. In practice, however, this kind of straightforward iconographical identification is often made more difficult by the fact that many traits evolve over time, of course, or are transformed in different geographical regions; furthermore, some bodhisattvas can assume multiple physical forms, each with its own distinguishing characteristics. A closer look at some of the traditions of representation of Avalokiteśvara, undoubtedly the single most popular bodhisattva in the pantheon, will help to illustrate the nature and scope of these complexities.

## The Bodhisattva of Compassion

The Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara (Perceiver of the Sounds of the World) appears frequently in Indian Buddhist literature and art, and in both arenas assumes a multiplicity of forms and plays a variety of roles. In some sūtras, the Avalokiteśvara is merely a background figure, so to speak, and pictorially and sculpturally he is often portrayed as a subordinate attendant to the Buddha; over time, however, he was increasingly represented in both mediums as the focus of attention. What remains constant, and thus serves as a unifying element in the majority of literary and artistic depictions, is an emphasis on Avalokiteśvara as the embodiment of infinite KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION). One concrete expression of this emphasis can be seen in the many literary accounts detailing how the bodhisattva can save someone from the perils of the world. Iconographically, this theme is reflected by such features as the multiple limbs and heads with which Avalokiteśvara is often endowed (underscoring this special ability to help those in distress), and by the image of AMITĀBHA Buddha usually found in his head-dress (alluding to the Western Paradise where Avalokiteśvara may help one be reborn).

The popularity of Avalokiteśvara spread to China (where he is known as Guanyin) and other parts of East Asia (Japan, Kannon; Korea, Kwansēum), and grew to such an extent that it essentially overshadowed that of all other bodhisattvas. Initially this was brought about in part by the widespread appeal of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), several early translations of which were made into Chinese, in which Guanyin figures prominently; in fact, chapter 25, which details some thirty-three different manifestations of Guanyin, was often published and circulated as an independent text. Many well-known depictions of Guanyin are based on imagery from the *Lotus Sūtra*, and it is perhaps the elasticity of form described



The Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara—the Bodhisattva of Compassion—shown with a thousand arms, symbolizing his ability to help those in distress. (Chinese wood sculpture.) © Reunion des Musées Nationaux/Art Resource, NY. Reproduced by permission.

in the sūtra that made it possible for different branches of Buddhism to be associated with different characteristic representations of the bodhisattva. Thus, to give just two examples: While PURE LAND BUDDHISM favored images of Guanyin leading souls to paradise, the CHAN SCHOOL preferred the so-called Water-Moon Guanyin and its allusions to the illusory nature of the phenomenal world.

Of all the developments associated with representations of Avalokiteśvara, none has received as much scholarly attention as the gender transformation that Guanyin underwent in China. While it is true that bodhisattvas are theoretically beyond such dualities as male and female, early depictions of Guanyin often exhibit decidedly male characteristics (such as the mustache common in both Indian and Chinese portrayals), while the *Lotus Sūtra* also lists various specifically female forms that Guanyin is capable of assuming. Whether influenced by these literary descriptions, or because compassion was perceived as a more feminine emotional trait, or in response to the cosmological tendency in traditional China to create yin/yang pairings of complementary forces such as wisdom and compassion, whatever complex combination of factors was at play, the outcome was that Guanyin emerged in

China as the goddess of mercy and compassion, and retained that status throughout later East Asian artistic traditions.

### Meanings beyond the text

Images of Avalokiteśvara, despite their great variety and multiplicity, share a common emphasis on the virtue of *karuṇā*, and exhibit remarkable continuity over time and location. To a great extent, this is due to a close correlation between text and image; indeed, the primary meanings for most representations of bodhisattvas derive from sūtras and other literary sources. There are, however, many instances where bodhisattva imagery exhibits different patterns of development, and derives meaning from other arenas. The Bodhisattva Kṣitigarbha, for example, who may have evolved from pre-Buddhist Indian earth gods, rarely appears in either art or literature in India. In China, by contrast, as the Bodhisattva Dizang, Kṣitigarbha is frequently depicted in illustrations of scenes of hell (though his popularity drops off remarkably after the thirteenth century), while in Japan, where he is known as Jizō, he has long been popularized as the protector of children. Lastly, as Chijang *posal*, he was one of the most important bodhisattvas in Korean Buddhism during the Chosŏn period (1392–1910), and most traditional Korean monastic complexes had a special Kṣitigarbha Hall where paintings of Chijang and the Kings of Hell were the focus of ritual offerings on behalf of the deceased during the mourning period for the dead. Each of these instances demonstrates the frequently localized meanings of a given theme that can evolve apart from canonical textual sources.

On an even more particularized level, bodhisattva imagery has often been linked to historical individuals, a phenomenon that certainly can alter visual meaning in a number of ways. For example, BODHIDHARMA, the reputed transmitter of Chan Buddhism from India to China, is claimed in Chan tradition as an incarnation of Avalokiteśvara. This may account for both the somewhat surprising frequency with which Avalokiteśvara is depicted in images connected with Chan, as well as the structural similarities between such images as “Bodhidharma on a Reed” and the “White-robed Guanyin” or “Guanyin with Willows”—similarities that are clearly intended to appropriate the aura of the bodhisattva for the Chan patriarch. (In a similar vein, the DALAI LAMA of Tibetan Buddhism is also viewed as an incarnation of Avalokiteśvara, and here, too, the identification certainly

serves to reinforce claims of spiritual authority.) There are also well-attested examples that link secular, rather than religious, leaders with bodhisattvas. In China, the infamous Empress Wu Zetian (d. 706) of the Tang dynasty, for example, went to great lengths to encourage belief in the idea that she was an incarnation of the Bodhisattva Maitreya, and it has been claimed that various Buddhist images that she sponsored actually bear her own likeness. In the Qing dynasty, the Qianlong emperor (r. 1736–1795) had himself portrayed on multiple occasions as the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī, enshrined at the center of a complex MAṆḌALA, while in the late nineteenth century the empress dowager Zixi cast herself as Guanyin in elaborate living tableaux that were preserved in photographs. Whatever religious motivations may lie behind such acts, the ends they served can justifiably be described as more political than religious.

In short, if many images of bodhisattvas, whether painted or sculpted, are informed by sincere attempts to convey the spiritual powers associated with these Great Beings whose superhuman exploits were made famous by Mahāyāna sūtras, there are other images that attempt to borrow these connotations for different purposes. At the same time, there are also cases in which representations of bodhisattvas are so far removed from the context of Buddhism that they are essentially depleted of religious meaning altogether. For example, while it is difficult to determine whether the elegant *blanc-de-chine* ceramic images of Guanyin first popularized in the seventeenth century were originally admired and sought out primarily for their formal and aesthetic qualities, that certainly became the case for the avid collectors, mainly foreign, who started to amass them in the early twentieth century. In the end, even a bodhisattva is powerless in the face of commodification.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Hells, Images of; Mudrā and Visual Imagery; Sūtra Illustrations**

### Bibliography

- Czuma, Stanislaw J. *Kushan Sculpture: Images from Early India*. Cleveland, OH: Cleveland Museum of Art, 1985.
- Huntington, Susan L. *The Art of Ancient India: Buddhist, Hindu, Jain*. New York: Weatherhill, 1985.
- Hurvitz, Leon, trans. *Scripture of the Lotus Blossom of the Fine Dharma*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1976.
- Murase, Miyeko. “Kuan-yin as Savior of Men: Illustration of the Twenty-fifth Chapter of the *Lotus Sūtra* in Chinese Painting.” *Artibus Asiae* 37, nos. 1–2 (1971): 39–74.
- Schopen, Gregory. “Monks and the Relic Cult in the *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*.” In *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Seckel, Dietrich. *Buddhist Art of East Asia*, tr. Ulrich Mammitzsch. Bellingham: Center for East Asian Studies, Western Washington University, 1989.
- Whitfield, Roderick, and Farrer, Anne. *Caves of the Thousand Buddhas: Chinese Art from the Silk Route*. London: British Museum, 1990.
- Yü, Chün-fang. *Kuan-yin: The Chinese Transformation of Avalokiteśvara*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

CHARLES LACHMAN

## BODY, PERSPECTIVES ON THE

The path to NIRVĀṆA or awakening, for Buddhists, involves the entire human being as a psychophysical complex. Although known to distinguish physical processes from psychic processes for the purpose of analysis, Buddhists do not ascribe to the notion (articulated by other religious traditions originating in India) that within every person there exists an eternal nonphysical self that may be said to “have” or “occupy” a body. For Buddhists, physical processes are dependent upon mental processes and vice versa. Thus, Buddhist traditions utilize the body as an object of contemplation and as a locus of transformation.

Buddhist scriptures and meditation manuals present a wide variety of meditations that focus on the body. Many involve mindful awareness of everyday activity: MINDFULNESS of breathing; mindfulness of modes of deportment, such as standing and sitting; and mindfulness of routine activities, such as walking, eating, and resting. Others meditations are analytic in nature. The body may be broken down into its four material elements: earth or solidity, water or fluidity, fire or heat, and air or movement. Such analytic exercises are particularly helpful for overcoming the illusion of an enduring “self” (ātman; Pāli, *attan*). In the *Majjhimanikāya* (*Group Discourses of Middle Length*; III. 90–1), the analysis of the body into its four material elements is compared to the quartering of an ox; once the ox is so divided, the generic concept of “flesh” diminishes recognition of the individuality of the ox.

Although members of other religious communities in ancient India also practiced such meditations on the physical elements of earth, water, fire, and air in the



body, Indian Buddhists developed a uniquely Buddhist form of meditation on the body, which is praised in Buddhist scripture as the *sine qua non* of salvation. Called “mindfulness of the body,” this contemplative technique entails breaking the body down into its thirty-two constituent parts, including internal organs such as the heart, the liver, the spleen, and the kidneys. The anatomical analysis in this cultivation of mindfulness of the body is so detailed that some scholars credit members of the early Buddhist monastic order (SAṄGHA) with a decisive role in the development of ancient Indian anatomical theory. Kenneth Zysk has argued that concern with ritual impurity limited the extent to which other (namely Brahmanical or proto-Hindu) religious specialists could serve as healers and carry out empirical studies based on dissection. Restrictions concerning the handling of bodily wastes from persons of different social classes and the disposal of dead bodies limited what Brahmanical caregivers could offer in the way of medical care and empirical research. With their relative, but certainly not absolute, indifference to Brahmanical purity strictures, members of the Buddhist saṅgha acquired a great deal of empirical knowledge of bodily processes and led the way in medical advances.

### The ambiguity of the body

If Zysk is correct in asserting that Buddhist monastic communities in India were less hindered by constraints concerning the handling of bodily wastes and dead bodies, this is not to say that members of the Buddhist saṅgha regarded the body as intrinsically valuable, nor that their conceptions of the body were untouched by concerns about bodily purity and pollution. Cultivating distaste for the body by noting with disgust the discharges from various apertures of the body constitutes an initial stage of psychophysical training practiced by monastics of virtually all Buddhist denominations. With its orifices producing mucus, earwax, sweat, excrement, and the like, the body is conventionally imagined as a rot-filled pustule, a boil with many openings leaking pus. For MONKS and NUNS who are afflicted by sensual desire and who view bodily pleasures like eating, bathing, self-adornment, and sexual activity as inherently pleasing, developing a sense of aversion toward the body by visualizing it as a foul pustule or by contemplating corpses in various stages of putrefaction is recommended as an antidote to sensuality.

And if the generic human body is comparable to a leaky bag of filth, the female body is regarded as even more disgusting. This perception is perhaps due to the

fact that it has an additional aperture lacking in males, an aperture prone to emitting periodic quantities of blood (Faure, p. 57). In any case, literary representations of meditations of the loathsomeness of the body tend to be overwhelmingly androcentric. Such narratives, embedded in hagiographies of various denominations, are filled with scenes of dying and diseased women observed by male spectators. Female spectators who appear in such narratives are depicted in ways that conform to the androcentric orientation of the genre. Male bodies almost never function as objects of contemplation for women in these narratives. Instead, women contemplating the foulness of the body observe their own aging bodies or those of other women. While Buddhist discourse holds all bodies to be impermanent and subject to disease, such hagiographies suggest there is nothing so effective as a female body to make this basic truth concrete.

As unsettling as many of these accounts may be, one should not assume that Buddhists are phobic about the body. The aversion such accounts induce is not an end in itself but a remedy for pleasure-seeking. Ultimately the outlook meditators seek is neither attraction nor revulsion but indifference. Contemplation of the foulness of the body is sometimes described as a “bitter medicine” that may be terminated once greed for bodily pleasures has been overcome. After having served its purpose as a counteractive practice, disgust for the body should ideally give way to a more neutral attitude. Moreover, in comparison with the bodies of non-humans, the human body is a blessing. Buddhists across Asia recognize that human birth is rare, and many Buddhists regard human embodiment as an essential prerequisite for achieving awakening. Although human bodies may be of a gross material nature compared to those of divine beings dwelling in heavenly realms, humans enjoy occasions for awakening that gods and goddesses lack by virtue of the very sublime material conditions in which they live. Rebirth as a god or goddess is a worthy goal for LAITY, who may not be in immediate pursuit of awakening, but it holds little charm for those monks and nuns who do not wish to defer their awakening by hundreds of years. For them, embodiment as a human being is a valuable opportunity not to be wasted.

Thus, much depends on the perspective when evaluating the status of the human body for Buddhists. If treated as an intrinsically valuable thing, the body can obstruct the experience of awakening, preventing one from seeing things as they really are. But when used instrumentally as a locus of meditation and insight, the

body has immense value, more precious than a wish-fulfilling jewel. Hence the Buddha is reported to have affirmed in the *Samyuttanikāya* (*Connected Discourses*; 1.62) that the body, with its attendant psychic processes, is the locus of salvation, the path to a transcendent, deathless condition.

### Subtle bodies, salvific bodies

Thus the body may present the face of a friend or a foe, depending on what goals one wishes to achieve in life and how well one invests the body's resources in achieving those goals. Monastic training, like a regimen of physical training, develops capacities unknown to those without self-discipline. If one dedicates oneself to the disciplined cultivation of Buddhist virtues (i.e., salutary physical, moral, and cognitive states), those virtues will be instantiated in the form and appearance of one's body. Buddhist texts promote the goal of bodily transformation, promising sweet-smelling, beautiful, and healthy bodies to those who cultivate virtue, even while teaching that in their natural condition all bodies are smelly, impermanent havens of disease and death. Given this emphasis on bodily transformation through the cultivation of virtue, it should come as no surprise that Buddhists advocate contact with and contemplation of the bodies of buddhas and saints such as ARHATS and BODHISATTVAS. Contact with such beings is salutary not just because such beings are virtuous and helpful, but because their discipline has transformed them to the point where their bodies exude medicinal effects. Like walking apothecaries, Buddhist saints are said to heal disease upon contact with the afflicted just as their words heal the disease (*duḥkha*) that according to Buddhists afflicts all unawakened beings.

Accounts of the salutary effects of seeing buddhas, arhats, and bodhisattvas—or even formulating the aspiration to have such experiences—are commonplace in many genres of Buddhist literature. Seeing their radiant skin, bright eyes, and decorous deportment engenders serenity and joy; the sight is said to be at once tranquilizing and stimulating. This Buddhist emphasis on the benefits of seeing the body of the Buddha or other religious virtuosi can in part be explained by the South Asian milieu in which Buddhism arose. Many South Asian religious traditions promote the practice of participatory seeing (*darśana*) whereby the observer participates in the sacrality of the observed by visual contact. If one cannot gaze upon the bodies of Buddhist saints, one can nevertheless recollect the features of the body of the Buddha. The contemplative prac-

tice of recollecting the extraordinary features of the body of the Buddha, with its thirty-two major and eighty minor distinguishing marks, is common to all Buddhist traditions. The Buddha is also embodied in his teachings (dharma). While some Buddhists insist that this body of teaching is the only proper object of reverence and that adoration of the physical form is misguided, Kevin Trainor notes that textual passages warning against attachment to the Buddha's physical form are outnumbered by passages advocating such devotion.

### The gift of the body

In accordance with the principle that the body has no intrinsic value, but gains value through the manner in which it is used, Buddhists extol the practice of offering one's body to others out of compassion. Tales of the former lives of the Buddha narrate many occasions in which the Buddha-to-be offered his flesh to starving animals at the expense of his life. Whereas THERAVĀDA Buddhists regard such altruistic practices as praiseworthy but not necessarily to be imitated, MAHĀYĀNA Buddhists regard self-sacrifice as an essential component of the Buddhist path.

In addition to offering their bodies as food for starving beings, followers of the bodhisattva path also gain merit by burning the body as an act of religious devotion. The locus classicus for the practice of SELF-IMMOLATION is an incident narrated in the LOTUS SŪTRA (*SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA*). In a previous life, the bodhisattva Bhaiṣajyarāja ingested copious amounts of flammable substances and then set fire to his body as an offering to the buddhas. The burning of the entire body or parts of the body, such as an arm or a finger, is highly celebrated in Chinese Buddhist texts composed from the fifth through the tenth centuries. The practice continues today in symbolic form in Chinese Buddhist monastic ordinations: The ordinand's eagerness to make such an offering is signaled by the burning of several places on the head with cones of incense. In preparing the body for immolation, Chinese Buddhists reportedly followed special grain-free diets that drew on Daoist traditions associated with the pursuit of immortality. James Benn has demonstrated that these grain-free diets were also used by Buddhist adepts in preparation for self-mummification, whereby the deceased adept's body would serve an iconic function as an object of worship.

Self-immolation has also been developed in interesting ways in Southeast Asia. During the Vietnam War, Vietnamese monks and nuns used self-immolation as

a means of political protest. They attracted considerable attention to their cause by performing public self-immolations in protest against the Diem regime, which had imposed restrictive measures on the practice of Buddhism and the activities of Buddhist monks and nuns.

When its sacrifice for the sake of others is advocated, the body is clearly an essential element of religious practice. However, even putting such heroic measures aside, one cannot embark on the bodhisattva path without regarding the body as an essential means of fulfilling one's bodhisattva vows. One of the central vows of the bodhisattva is a statement that one is eager to undergo billions of repeated embodiments in the cycle of REBIRTH (*saṃsāra*) in order to help others achieve awakening.

In contrast to the Mahāyānist emphasis on postponing final awakening for eons and eons, Buddhist tantra (VAJRAYĀNA) stresses speed of attainment, promising the achievement of buddhahood in one lifetime. The body is said to contain the seeds of buddhahood, the prerequisites for achieving full awakening in this lifetime. Hence the human body as a focus of practice is central to Vajrayāna Buddhism. Practitioners regard the body as a microcosm of the universe, with all its gods, goddesses, and other powerful beings. Such beings are invoked and their powers harnessed for the goal of full awakening by touching various parts of the body using special hand gestures and by chanting MANTRAS or sacred utterances.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies; Gender; Sexuality

### Bibliography

- Collins, Steven. "The Body in Theravāda Buddhist Monasticism." In *Religion and the Body*, ed. Sara Coakley. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1997.
- Das, Veena. "Paradigms of Body Symbolism: An Analysis of Selected Themes in Hindu Culture." In *Indian Religion*, ed. Richard Burghart and Audrey Canthe. London: Curzon, 1985.
- Dissanayake, Wimal. "Self and Body in Theravāda Buddhism." In *Self as Body in Asian Theory and Practice*, ed. Thomas P. Kasulis with Roger T. Ames and Wimal Dissanayake. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1993.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Red Thread: Buddhist Approaches to Sexuality*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Pye, Michael. "Perceptions of the Body in Japanese Religion." In *Religion and the Body*, ed. Sara Coakley. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1997.

Trainor, Kevin. *Relics, Ritual, and Representation in Buddhism: Rematerializing the Sri Lankan Theravāda Tradition*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1997.

Wijayaratna, Mohan. *Buddhist Monastic Life According to the Texts of the Theravāda Tradition*, tr. Claude Grangier and Steven Collins. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

Williams, Paul. "Some Mahāyāna Buddhist Perspectives on the Body." In *Religion and the Body*, ed. Sara Coakley. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1997.

Zysk, Kenneth. *Asceticism and Healing in Ancient India: Medicine in the Buddhist Monastery*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1991.

LIZ WILSON

## BON

Bon (pronounced *pön*) is often characterized as the indigenous, pre-Buddhist religion of Tibet. While not entirely untrue, such a description is misleading. There are clearly indigenous Tibetan elements in historical Bon, and some of these elements likely predate the arrival of Buddhism in Tibet. But because there was no effective Tibetan literary language before the introduction of Buddhism, there is scant evidence from which to reconstruct pre-Buddhist Bon. Moreover, because the Bon that is known from later sources (and exists to this day alongside Tibetan Buddhism) is a highly syncretic religious complex, deeply conditioned by its encounter with Indian (and probably other) forms of Buddhism, it cannot rightly be considered either indigenous or pre-Buddhist.

Historical Bon itself claims to be a direct descendant of—indeed identical with—a religion known as *Bon* that existed during the centuries before the introduction of Buddhism to Tibet in the eighth century. The few extant sources from the royal dynastic period in Tibet do suggest the existence during this period of a religious formation that may have been known as Bon, whose priests were called *bon po*, and perhaps also *gshen*. As reconstructed from these sources, this early- or proto-Bon seems to have included a strong belief in an afterlife and to have involved a system of funerary rites, animal sacrifices, and royal consecration ceremonies as primary foci. It thus bears little resemblance to later Bon.

There seems to have been some friction between proto-Bon and Buddhism in the dynastic period. Later sources from both traditions tell of Buddhist PERSECUTIONS of Bon, which the Buddhist king Khri strong

lde btsan (pronounced Trisong Detsen; r. 755–797 C.E.) is said to have formally proscribed around 785. Buddhists tell of a subsequent Bon persecution of Buddhism. Both accounts share many similar features (banishing of priests, hiding of books for later recovery, etc.), so the historicity of many of the details is open to doubt, although nearly contemporaneous documents preserved in DUNHUANG do indicate some tension between the traditions.

Later Bon considers its “founder” to have been the teacher Gshen rab mi bo (pronounced Shenrap Miwo), from the semimythical land of ’Ol mo lung ring. As in the MAHĀYĀNA account of Śākyamuni Buddha, Gshen rab is said to have been an enlightened being who emanated in this world as the preordained teacher of the present world-age. Yet, unlike Śākyamuni, accounts of whom emphasize early renunciation of his kingdom and married life, Gshen rab is said to have remained a layman until late in life, working to propagate Bon as a prince, together with his many wives and offspring.

The documented historical period of Bon begins with the “rediscovery” of many allegedly ancient Bon scriptures by Gshen chen klu dga’ (pronounced Shenchen Lugah, 996–1035) around 1017; these texts make up a substantial part of the current Bon CANON. Gshen chen klu dga’ was a native of west-central Gtsang province, and the majority of early Bon institutions were centered in that area. He and his disciples created the scriptural and institutional base for Bon during the next four centuries. In 1405 Shes rab rgyal mtshan (pronounced Shayrap Gyeltsen, 1356–1415) founded the monastery of Sman ri (pronounced Menree), which was to become the most important Bon center until the twentieth century. The eminent scholar of Bon, Per Kværne, has suggested that the Bon canon was fixed in this period, likely no later than 1450.

Bon was reputedly persecuted again under the rule of the fifth DALAI LAMA (1617–1682) and during the succeeding two centuries, during which time Bon monasteries were closed, destroyed, or converted, though some scholars downplay the extent of this persecution. The canon was subjected to further revision in the mid-eighteenth century by Kun grol grags pa (pronounced Kundrol Takpa, 1700–?), who prepared a detailed catalogue of its scriptures. Subsequently, in the nineteenth century, Bon experienced something of a resurgence. The primarily Buddhist Non-sectarian (*ris med*) Movement, in which the Bon teacher Shar rdza bkra shis rgyal mtshan (pronounced Shardza

Tashi Gyeltsen, 1858–1935) collaborated, expressed collegial respect for Bon and vice versa. The importance of the great perfection (*rdzogs chen*) and rediscovered treasure (*gter ma*) teachings in both the Non-sectarian Movement and Bon provided the foundation for mutual recognition and cross-fertilization. From this time until the present, there have been some who speak of Bon as the “fifth school” of Tibetan Buddhism, in addition to the RNYING MA (NYINGMA), SA SKYA (SAKYA), BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU), and DGE LUGS (GELUK).

There are in fact many similarities between Bon and the Tibetan Buddhist traditions, which make such an identification—while ultimately untenable—not entirely unreasonable. In fact, the basic teachings of Bon are virtually identical to those found in Tibetan Buddhism. Both traditions commonly refer to the ideal, enlightened being by the term *sangs rgyas* (Sanskrit, buddha) and to enlightenment itself by the term *byang chub* (Sanskrit, BODHI [AWAKENING]). In addition to these exact correspondences, one also sometimes finds the use of alternative, but functionally equivalent, terms. For instance, the term *bon* is contrasted with *chos* (dharma), a key word in Buddhist thought. Yet, *bon* occurs in Bon literature in exactly the same contexts as *chos* does in Buddhism; Bon texts speak, for example, of a “bon body” (*bon sku*), which is essentially the same as the Buddhist “dharma body” (*chos sku*), both serving as the first of a triad that includes the beatific body (*longs sku*) and the emanation body (*sprul sku*). The structure of their canons is also similar. Like the Buddhists, the Bonpos divide their sacred scriptures into two classes—one containing scriptures of revealed word (in the case of Bon, those attributed to Gshen rab), the other the writings of later saints. In both traditions, the collection of revealed scriptures is known as the *Bka’ ’gyur* (pronounced *kanjur*). The Buddhists refer to their collection of commentaries as the *Bstan ’gyur* (pronounced *tanjur*), while the Bonpos call theirs the *Brten ’gyur* (a homonym).

Although Bon appears in many respects to be a completely “buddhicized” tradition in its forms, doctrines, and practices, many old indigenous traditions remain in the core of Bon, especially with regard to COSMOLOGY, sacred narratives, and pantheon. Thus, though the Bon revealed in the sources available to scholars cannot be considered the indigenous, pre-Buddhist religion of Tibet, these distinctively Bon elements do provide a glimpse of what may have been some of the ancient religious forms of pre-Buddhist Tibet.

See also: **Tibet**

### Bibliography

- Karmay, Samten Gyaltzen, ed. and trans. *The Treasury of Good Sayings: A Tibetan History of Bon*. London: Oxford University Press, 1972.
- Karmay, Samten Gyaltzen. *The Arrow and the Spindle: Studies in History, Myths, Rituals, and Beliefs in Tibet*. Kathmandu, Nepal: Mandala Book Point, 1998.
- Kværne, Per. "The Canon of the Tibetan Bonpos." *Indo-Iranian Journal* 16 (1974): nr. 1, 18–56; nr. 2, 96–144.
- Kværne, Per. "Śākyamuni in the Bon Religion." *Temenos* 25 (1989): 33–40.
- Kværne, Per. "The Bon Religion of Tibet: A Survey of Research." In *The Buddhist Forum*, Vol. 3, ed. Tadeusz Skorupski and Ulrich Pagel. New Delhi: Heritage, 1995.
- Kværne, Per. *The Bon Religion of Tibet: The Iconography of a Living Tradition*. London: Serindia, 1995. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 2001.
- Martin, Dan. *Unearthing Bon Treasures: Life and Contested Legacy of a Tibetan Scripture Revealer, with a General Bibliography of Bon*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2001.
- Snellgrove, David, ed. and trans. *The Nine Ways of Bon: Excerpts from the gZi-brjid*. London: Oxford University Press, 1967. Reprint, Boulder, CO: Prajñā Press, 1980.

CHRISTIAN K. WEDEMEYER

---

## BOROBUDUR

Borobudur is a monumental structure that was erected in the Kedu plain in south central Java, on the foundation of an older shrine of unknown form. Construction began about 790 C.E., and alterations continued to be made until approximately 850 C.E. From above, Borobudur resembles a MAṄḌALA, in that it consists of a large STŪPA (burial mound) surrounded by three round terraces, on each of which are more stūpas (108 in all); farther from the central stūpa are four square terraces. In profile, the monument resembles a mountain, since the transition from each terrace is marked by a staircase rising to the next.

Reliefs (1,350 panels) illustrate texts, such as JĀTAKA and AVADĀNA tales, the *Mahākarmavibhaṅga*, the LALITAVISTARA, the *Gaṇḍavyūha*, and the *Bhadracari*. Niches atop the walls of the galleries contain BUDDHA IMAGES. These images exhibit different hand positions according to their location on the monument. These hand positions, or mudrā, symbolize the conquest of

illusion, charity, meditation, dispelling of fear, and teaching. The seventy-two stūpas on the round terraces, which are hollow, contain images whose hand positions symbolize the Buddha's first sermon in Deer Park at Benares.

This combination of stūpa, mountain, and maṇḍala was never replicated elsewhere, but its influence is visible in Cambodia and through that intermediary in Thailand and Burma (Myanmar). No inscriptions survive to tell us what the monument signified to the Javanese, but the ten relief series suggest that it may have functioned to enable selected individuals to pass symbolically through the ten stages on the PATH to becoming a BODHISATTVA. The form of Buddhism followed by the builders of Borobudur emphasized the role of bodhisattvas, but was less esoteric than later expressions in Java and Sumatra wherein such deities as Vajrasattva and Trailokyavijaya were emphasized. The bodhisattvas Mañjuśrī and Samantabhadra play key roles in the texts narrated on Borobudur. These deities were also popular in East Asia at this time.

The monument's construction coincides with a period during which a dynasty known as the Śailendra (mountain lord) dominated central Java politically. Around 830 C.E. a Buddhist queen married a Hindu king of the Sañjaya line. The great Hindu monument of Loro Jonggrang at Prambanam was constructed between about 830 and 856. Narrative reliefs depicting the *Ramāyana* and Kṛṣṇa texts on Loro Jonggrang may have been motivated by the desire to present a Hindu response to Borobudur.

See also: **Huayan Art; Indonesia, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Gómez, Luis, and Woodward, Hiram W., Jr., eds. *Barabudur: History and Significance of a Buddhist Monument*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1981.
- Miksic, John N. *Borobudur: Golden Tales of the Buddhas*. Berkeley, CA: Periplus Editions, 1990.

JOHN N. MIKSIC

---

## BSAM YAS (SAMYE)

Founded around 779 C.E., Bsam yas (Samye) was Tibet's first monastery. Although a few temples of worship had been built earlier in Tibet, Bsam yas was the first fully functioning monastery. Upon its completion,

the first seven Tibetan Buddhist monks were ordained by Śāntarakṣita, the famous abbot of the Indian monastery Vikramaśīla. Soon after, the famous BSAM YAS DEBATE was held, ostensibly to decide which form of Buddhism Tibetans would follow, that of India or that of China.

Bsam yas was built during the reign of King Khri srong lde btsan (r. 755–797), the second of the three great Buddhist kings of Tibet's early imperial period. This king had invited Śāntarakṣita to Tibet to assist him in establishing Buddhism as the state religion. According to traditional accounts, when the king began work on his new monastery, local spirits who were opposed to the foreign religion created obstacles so numerous that not even the building's foundation could be laid. Śāntarakṣita, whose strengths lay in monastic learning and not in battling demonic forces, could not help. The king was forced to find someone trained in the arts of Buddhist tantra. Śāntarakṣita recommended the renowned master, PADMASAMBHAVA, from the kingdom of Uḍḍiyāna in northwestern India. Upon Padmasambhava's arrival, the great *tāntrika* quickly subdued the troublesome spirits, forcing them to take vows to forever protect Buddhism in Tibet.

Bsam yas played a central role in Khri srong lde btsan's lifelong project to make Buddhism the state religion of Tibet. At the time of its construction, the Tibetan empire was at the height of its power. In 763, Tibetans even occupied the Chinese capital of Chang'an, where they installed a puppet emperor for a brief time. Bsam yas was built as a symbol of Tibet's newfound international prestige, and the central cathedral's three stories were designed in the traditional architectural styles of India, China, and Tibet, respectively.

Bsam yas's universalism was further reflected in the layout of the whole monastic complex—a cosmogram of the Indian world system. According to this system, the central axis of Mount Sumeru is surrounded by four continents, one in each of the cardinal directions. Similarly at Bsam yas, around the central cathedral were built four buildings, their shapes corresponding to those of the continents.

The monastery was also built to represent a three-dimensional MAṆḌALA in a design modeled on the great Indian Buddhist monastery of Otantapūri, located in today's Bihar. The particular maṇḍala represented by Bsam yas seems to have been that of the Buddha Vairocana. Recent scholarship has suggested that the Tibetan imperial cult may have given special prominence to this deity, and that this close associa-

tion was also reflected in the arrangement of Bsam yas. According to early sources, a statue of Vairocana was originally positioned on the second floor as the central image; another Vairocana statue, this in his four-faced Sarvavid form, was installed on the top floor.

The same layout can still be observed. Bsam yas was severely damaged a number of times by fires (seventeenth century), earthquakes and more fires (nineteenth century), and Chinese invaders (twentieth century), but the restorations seem to have remained largely faithful to its original plan. The central cathedral was rebuilt in 1989 following the most recent desecrations, and renovations continued throughout the 1990s on other parts of the complex.

*See also:* Tibet

### Bibliography

- Chan, Victor. *Tibet Handbook: A Pilgrimage Guide*. Chico, CA: Moon, 1994.
- Kapstein, Matthew. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Snellgrove, David, and Richardson, Hugh. *A Cultural History of Tibet* (1968). Boston: Shambala, 1995.

JACOB P. DALTON

---

## BSAM YAS DEBATE

Among Western scholars, the Bsam yas Debate has generated more speculation than any other single event in Tibetan history. Around 797 C.E., a philosophical debate is said to have taken place at BSAM YAS (SAMYE), the first Buddhist monastery in Tibet. The debate was held in order to decide, in effect, which form of Buddhism would be adopted by the Tibetan royal court—that of the Chinese CHAN SCHOOL or Indian Buddhism. The debate was presided over by the Tibetan king, Khri srong lde btsan (r. 755–797), and the two sides were represented by the Chinese master *Huashang* Moheyan (Sanskrit, Mahāyāna) and the Indian scholar Kamalaśīla, respectively. According to Tibetan sources, the Indian side was declared the winner; Moheyan and his disciples were banished from the country, and Indian Buddhism was established as the state religion. The alleged victory for the Indian side has strongly shaped Tibetans' understanding of their own religious heritage.

The philosophical issue at stake was how enlightenment should be attained—immediately or after a period of extensive training. Thus, according to the famous history (*Chos 'byung*) composed by BU STON (BU TÖN) rin chen grub (1290–1364), Moheyan opened the debate by explaining that just as clouds, be they white or black, obscure the sky, so do all activities, be they virtuous or nonvirtuous, perpetuate REBIRTH in SAṂSĀRA. Therefore, he concluded, the cessation of all mental activity leads immediately to the highest liberation. Kamalaśīla responded to this philosophical quietism by explaining the stages of analytic meditation. He stressed that even nonconceptual wisdom results from a specific process of gradual analysis. Moheyan was soundly defeated, and some of his disciples were so humiliated that they committed suicide.

Bu ston's account, which is largely representative of the normative Tibetan historical tradition, is clearly a biased one. He frames his narrative with a prophecy made by Śāntarakṣita, the Indian master who helped to establish Bsam yas and ordained the first nine Buddhist monks in Tibet. Here, shortly before his death, Śāntarakṣita predicts a controversy between two Buddhist groups and instructs that his disciple, Kamalaśīla of Nālandā, should be summoned to resolve the dispute. Bu ston's account then closes with a story vilifying Moheyan, in which the Chinese master sends some “Chinese butchers” to murder Kamalaśīla by squeezing his kidneys.

This Tibetan version of events has been complicated by the discovery of a Chinese work titled the *Dunwu dasheng zhengli jue* (*Verification of the Greater Vehicle of Sudden Awakening*). The text was unearthed from the caves at DUNHUANG, a region once frequented by Moheyan. A translation was first published by Paul Demiéville in his 1952 article, *Le concile de Lhasa*. The Chinese work purports to be a word-for-word record of the debate written by Wangxi, a direct disciple of Moheyan. Its version of events differs radically from those of the various Tibetan sources; in this version, Moheyan wins the debate. This discovery has led some scholars to doubt the very existence of the debate, suggesting that instead it should be viewed as indicative of an ongoing controversy through a series of only indirect encounters between Chinese and Indian factions at the Tibetan royal court. That said, it remains that all available sources agree that a debate of some kind did take place.

It is unclear whether Kamalaśīla knew about the Chinese text when, apparently at the Tibetan king's re-

quest, he composed his three famous treatises summarizing the debate's central themes, each called a *Bhāvanākrama* (*Stages of Meditation*). The Indian and Chinese works address many of the same topics, but part ways on a number of important points. The Chinese work, for example, gives considerable attention to the doctrine of TATHAGATAGARBHA (buddha-nature), while Kamalaśīla does not even mention it. Similarly, the Chinese work remains silent on a number of issues that are crucial to Kamalaśīla's argument—the need to develop compassion and the stages of meditation are two examples. Both texts, it seems, reflect their authors' concerns with developments in their own countries more than with each other. It is unclear whether all three of Kamalaśīla's works were composed in Tibet.

Indeed, the teachings of Moheyan should be understood within the context of eighth-century Chinese Chan, itself a milieu of highly charged polemics. According to other Dunhuang documents, Moheyan belonged to the lineage of the Northern school of Chan. This school had already come under attack earlier in the eighth century by Shenhui (684–758) of the so-called Southern school, and its lineage continued to be contested from many sides throughout Moheyan's lifetime. Such a polarizing environment certainly would have influenced Moheyan, and the fragments of his teachings found at Dunhuang support the common view of him as extreme in his advocacy of immediate enlightenment.

In addition to its doctrinal ramifications, the Bsam yas Debate certainly had a strong political component. The nature of these more political concerns can be detected in yet another work that discusses the debate. The *Sba bzhed* (*Testimony of Ba*) is an early Tibetan account of the relevant period, purportedly written by a minister to Khri srong lde btsan. Several editions of the work exist, and all agree that the Indian side won. A close reading of the various *Sba bzhed* editions suggests that a central issue driving the debate may have been the Tibetan court's adoption of the Indian Buddhist cosmological framework. This framework, with its “lawlike operation of karma,” may have offered eighth-century Tibetans an attractive foundation for political governance. According to this reading, it was the antinomian aspect of the popular Chinese teachings that threatened the new political order.

All such interpretations of the Bsam yas Debate remain, however, just that—interpretations. All we can

say for certain is that the debate has served a number of different ends. In the later Tibetan tradition, the debate was used as evidence for India's importance as the only authentic source for Buddhist teachings. The debate also served as a weapon in polemical disputes between opposing Tibetan Buddhist groups. Perhaps the most well-known example of this trend appears in the writings of SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA, 1182–1251). There, the author equates the Moheyan side with the Tibetan tradition of *Rdzogs chen* by criticizing the “Self-Sufficient White Remedy” (*dkar po chig thub*) doctrine of the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) pa for being like the “*Rdzogs chen* of the Chinese tradition” (*rgya nag lugs kyi rdzogs chen*). Possible links between Chinese Chan and early Tibetan *Rdzogs chen* remain unclear, but the two teachings appear to bear some similarities, and these were certainly what caught the attention of later Tibetan polemicists.

See also: **Bodhi (Awakening); Tibet**

### Bibliography

- Demiéville, Paul. *Le concile de Lhasa: une controverse sur le quietisme entre bouddhistes de l'Inde et de la Chine au VIII<sup>e</sup> siècle de l'ère chrétienne*. Paris: Imprimerie Nationale de France, 1952.
- Gómez, Luis O. “Indian Materials on the Doctrine of Sudden Enlightenment.” In *Early Ch'an in China and Tibet*, ed. Whalen Lai and Lewis Lancaster. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1983.
- Gómez, Luis O. “The Direct and Gradual Approaches of Zen Master Mahāyāna: Fragments of the Teachings of Mo-ho-yen.” In *Studies in Ch'an and Hua-Yen*, ed. Robert M. Grimello and Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Jackson, David. “Sa skya pandita the ‘Polemicist’: Ancient Debates and Modern Interpretations.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 13, no. 2 (1990): 17–116.
- Kapstein, Matthew. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Obermiller, Eugène. *History of Buddhism (Chos-hbyung) by Bus-ton*, 2 vols. Heidelberg, Germany: Harrassowitz, Leipzig, 1931, 1932.
- Wangdu, Pasang, and Diemberger, Hildegard. *Dbā' bzhed: The Royal Narrative Concerning the Bringing of the Buddha's Doctrine to Tibet*. Vienna: Verlag der osterreichischen akademie der wissenschaften, 2000.

JACOB P. DALTON

## BUDDHA(S)

The term *buddha*, literally “awakened one,” is one of many Indian epithets applied to the founder of the Buddhist religion. A buddha is defined, first and foremost, as one who has undergone the profoundly transformative experience known as NIRVĀṆA and who, as a result, will never be subject to the cycle of birth and death again. Women and men who experienced this same awakening by following in the footsteps of the Buddha were referred to as ARHATS or “worthy ones,” an epithet also applied to the Buddha himself. These disciples, however, were not themselves referred to as buddhas, for that term was reserved for those rare individuals who experienced BODHI (AWAKENING) on their own in a world with no knowledge of Buddhism. Moreover, to attain awakening without the help of a teacher was not in itself sufficient to be classified as a buddha, for those who did so but did not teach others how to replicate that experience were known instead as PRATYEKABUDDHAS, a term variously explained as “individually enlightened” or “enlightened through (an understanding of) causation.” In addition to attaining nirvāṇa without assistance from others, the classical definition of a buddha includes teaching others what one has found. A buddha is, in sum, not only the discoverer of a timeless truth, but the founder of a religious community.

It is possible—though far from certain—that the earliest Buddhist tradition knew of only one such figure, the so-called historical Buddha, Siddhārtha Gautama, also known as Śākyamuni (sage of the Śākya clan). But the notion that other buddhas had preceded him appeared at an early date, and may well have been assumed by Śākyamuni himself. Over the next four to five centuries Buddhists came to believe that other such buddhas would also appear in the distant future; some even claimed that buddhas were living at the present time, though in worlds unimaginably distant from our own. While the belief in past and future buddhas came to be accepted by all Buddhist schools, the idea of the simultaneous existence of multiple buddhas appears to have gained general currency only in MAHĀYĀNA circles.

### Buddhas of the past

The earliest datable evidence for a belief in the existence of buddhas prior to Śākyamuni comes from the time of King AŚOKA (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.), who claimed in one of his inscriptions to have enlarged the memorial mound (STŪPA) of a previous buddha named



Konākamana (Pāli, Konāgamana; Sanskrit, Konākamuni or Kanakamuni). No names of other buddhas are mentioned, and there is no way to determine whether Aśoka viewed Konākamana as belonging to a larger lineage scheme. Within a century or so after Aśoka's time, however—and possibly much earlier, depending on what dates are assigned to materials in the Pāli canon—other names had been added to the list as well.

**Seven buddhas.** A wide range of literary, artistic, and epigraphical sources refers to “seven buddhas of the past,” a list including Śākyamuni and six prior buddhas: Vipāsyin, Śikhin, Viśvabhū, Krakucchanda, Kanakamuni, and Kāśyapa. A *terminus ante quem* for the emergence of this tradition is again supplied by an inscription, in this case on a stūpa railing at Bhārhut in north-central India (ca. second century B.C.E.), where Śākyamuni's predecessors (with the exception of Śikhin, where the railing has been damaged) are mentioned by name. The same six buddhas, together with Śākyamuni, are prominently featured on the gateways to the great stūpa at SĀNCĪ (ca. first century B.C.E.). Subsequently, they appear, both in artistic works and in inscriptions, at a host of other Buddhist sites.

The widespread agreement on both the number and sequence of these previous buddhas in surviving sources—including canonical scriptures preserved in Pāli and Chinese that can be attributed to several distinct ordination lineages (*nikāyas*)—suggests that the list of seven was formulated at an early date. More specifically, it points to the likelihood that this list had been standardized prior to the first major schism in Buddhist history, the split between the self-proclaimed “Elders” (Sthaviras) and “Majorityists” (Mahāsāṃghikas, or Great Assembly), which took place between a century and a century and a half after the Buddha's death.

The most detailed discussion of Śākyamuni's predecessors in early (i.e., non-Mahāyāna) canonical literature is found in the Pāli *Mahāpadāna-suttanta* (*Dīghanikāya*, *sutta* no. 14) and in other recensions of the same text preserved in Chinese translation (*Taishō* 1[1], 2, 3, 4, and 125[48.45]). Here the lives of the seven buddhas, from Vipāsyin (Pāli, Vipassī) to Śākyamuni himself, are related in virtually identical terms, from a penultimate existence in the Tuṣita heaven, to a miraculous birth, to the experience of nirvāṇa and a subsequent preaching career. Only in minor details—such as the names of their parents, their life spans, and the caste into which they were born—can these biographies be distinguished.

Implicit in this replication of a single paradigmatic pattern is the assumption that all buddhas-to-be (Sanskrit, BODHISATTVA) must carry out an identical series of practices, after which they will teach a dharma identical to that of their predecessors. In subsequent centuries this would lead to the idea that by replicating the deeds of Śākyamuni and his predecessors in every detail, other Buddhists, too, could strive to become buddhas rather than arhats.

Not all the members of this list of seven, despite their parallel life stories, appear to have played equally significant roles in cultic practice. If we divide the list into subgroups of “archaic” buddhas said to have lived many eons ago (Vipāsyin, Śikhin, and Viśvabhū), and “ancient” buddhas described as preceding Śākyamuni in the present eon (Krakucchanda, Kanakamuni, and Kāśyapa), a clear pattern can be discerned. While the ancient buddhas are all associated with known geographical locations, the towns where the archaic buddhas are said to have lived have no clear historical referent. When the Chinese monk FAXIAN (ca. 337–ca. 418) visited India at the beginning of the fifth century C.E., for example, he was taken to three towns in north-east India (all within range of the city of Śrāvastī), where the ancient buddhas were said to have lived, and he was shown stūpas said to contain their remains. No comparable pilgrimage sites connected with the three archaic buddhas are mentioned, either in Faxian's report or in those of subsequent Chinese visitors. Based on surviving images and inscriptions, as well as on further data found in the travel accounts of Faxian and later Chinese pilgrims, J. Ph. Vogel has suggested that the buddha Kāśyapa may have been an especially popular object of veneration.

**Twenty-five buddhas.** An expanded version of the list of seven, totaling twenty-five buddhas in all, is attested in the Pāli *Buddhavaṃsa*, though it appears to be little known outside the THERAVĀDA tradition. This list extends still further into the past to begin with the buddha DĪPAṆKARA, in whose presence the future Śākyamuni made his initial vow to attain buddhahood. Although the story of Dīpaṅkara is not included in the Pāli collection of JĀTAKA tales recounting Śākyamuni's former lives, it does appear in the *Nidānakathā*, an introduction to that collection that is generally assigned to the fifth century C.E. and quotes directly from earlier sources such as the *Buddhavaṃsa* and the *Cariyāpiṭaka*. The story is frequently depicted in art from the Gandhāra region, though it is virtually absent from other Buddhist sites, suggesting that it may

have originated at the northwestern fringes of the Indian cultural sphere.

Though no occurrence of the list of twenty-five buddhas of the past has yet been identified in Mahāyāna scriptures, the first buddha in this series, Dīpaṃkara, plays a significant role in these texts. Since Śākyamuni Buddha was portrayed as having made his initial vow to become a buddha in the presence of Dīpaṃkara, this motif became quite common in the writings of advocates of the bodhisattva path in subsequent centuries.

### Buddhas of the future

The earliest lists of multiple buddhas referred only to Śākyamuni and his predecessors. Around the turn of the millennium, however, a shorter list of five—consisting of four buddhas of the past (the ancient buddhas Krakucchanda, Kanakamuni, Kāśyapa, together with Śākyamuni) along with one buddha of the future (MAITREYA; Pāli, Metteyya)—was compiled. The weight of this tradition is still anchored firmly in the past, but the door was now open to speculation on other buddhas who might also appear in the future. Besides introducing a buddha-of-the-future for the first time, this list was also innovative in its optimism about the nature of the present age, for these five figures were labeled buddhas of the *bhadraḥkalpa* (fortunate eon).

The list of five buddhas remained standard in the Theravāda tradition, but a longer list of one thousand buddhas of the *bhadraḥkalpa* frequently appears in Mahāyāna scriptures. An intermediary list, consisting of five hundred buddhas of the *bhadraḥkalpa*, appears to have circulated mainly in Central Asia. In all of these systems Maitreya holds pride of place as the next buddha to appear in our world. Like all buddhas-to-be, he is said to be spending his penultimate life in the Tuṣita heaven, from which he surveys our world to determine the right time and place to be born.

Estimates varied as to the amount of time that would elapse between our own age and the coming of Maitreya. One of the most common figures was 5.6 billion years; other traditions offered a figure of 560 million. While many Buddhists worked to acquire merit in order to be born here on earth in that distant era when Maitreya would at last attain buddhahood, others strove to be reborn more immediately in his presence in the Tuṣita heaven. Still others strove for visionary encounters with Maitreya, through which they could see him in his heavenly realm even before departing from this life.

### Buddhas of the present

All of the traditions discussed above share the assumption that only one buddha can appear in the world at any given time. Each buddha is portrayed as having discovered a truth about reality (i.e., an understanding of the dharma) that had, prior to his time, been utterly lost. Since a buddha can appear, therefore, only in a world without any knowledge of Buddhism, only one such figure can exist at a time.

This restriction applies, however, only if one posits the existence of just one world system, and around the turn of the millennium some Buddhists began to articulate a new view of the universe that consisted not of one, but of hundreds or thousands of such worlds. This made possible, for the first time, the idea that other buddhas might currently be living and teaching, albeit in worlds unimaginably distant from our own. Scriptures reflecting this perspective speak of other world systems located “throughout the ten directions”—that is, in the four cardinal directions, the four intermediate directions, the zenith, and the nadir.

Many Indian texts refer simply to these buddhas of the ten directions in the aggregate, but occasionally particular figures are named, some of whom appear to have gained a strong following in India. By far the most prominent are the buddha AKṢOBHYA, said to dwell in a world known as Abhirati (extreme delight) far to the east, and the buddha AMITĀBHA (also known as Amitāyus), dwelling in the land of Sukhāvātī (blissful) in the distant west. These two figures, together with others currently presiding over comparably glorious realms, have come to be known in English-language studies as *celestial buddhas*.

The term *celestial buddha* has no precise equivalent in Sanskrit (nor for that matter in Chinese or Tibetan), yet it can serve as a convenient label for those buddhas who are presently living and teaching in worlds other than our own and into whose lands believers may aspire to be reborn. Conditions in these lands are portrayed as idyllic, comparable in many respects to Buddhist heavens; indeed, this comparison is made explicit in scriptures describing the worlds of celestial buddhas, such as the *Akṣobhyavyūha* and the larger SUKHĀVĀTĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA. Yet these realms are not heavens in the strict sense, but “amputated” world systems, shorn only of the lower realms (*durgati*) of hell-beings, animals, and ghosts.

In addition to inhabiting such glorious places—said to be the by-product of their activities as bodhisattvas, and in some cases (most notably in the



The buddha Amitābha, a celestial buddha who resides in the Western paradise of Sukhāvātī. (Vietnamese sculpture, eighteenth or nineteenth century.) © Reunion des Musées Nationaux/Art Resource, NY. Reproduced by permission.

*Sukhāvātīvyūha*) described as resulting from specific “world-designing” vows—celestial buddhas, like the archaic buddhas of our own world, are described as having immensely long life spans. Yet the factors that elicited these seemingly parallel circumstances are not the same. In the case of the archaic buddhas, their long life spans are the corollary of their being placed at a point in the cycle of evolution-and-devolution where human life spans in general stretch to between sixty thousand and eighty thousand years; the same is true of the future buddha Maitreya, who is scheduled to appear in our world when the maximum life span of eighty thousand years has again arrived (Nattier 1991). In the case of celestial buddhas, on the other hand, their long life spans are necessitated by their role as the presiding buddhas in other realms to which believers from other worlds might aspire to be reborn. Such an aspiration for rebirth makes sense, of course, only if the believer is confident that the buddha in question will still be alive when he or she arrives.

Celestial buddhas are not, however, described as immortal; the *Akṣobhyavyūha* makes much of Akṣob-

hya’s eventual *parinirvāṇa* and autocremation, while early translations of the *Sukhāvātīvyūha* make it clear that Avalokiteśvara will succeed to the position of reigning buddha of Sukhāvātī after Amitābha has passed away. Thus the lives of these buddhas—while far more glorious in circumstances and far longer in duration—still echo the pattern set by Śākyamuni.

Other developments would subsequently take place, such as the claim that Śākyamuni Buddha had already attained nirvāṇa prior to his appearance in this world and the concomitant assumption that his life span was immeasurably, though not infinitely, long, and the even grander claim that all buddhas who appear in this or any other world are merely manifestations of an eternal dharma-body. Throughout most of the history of Buddhism in India, however, buddhas continued to be viewed as human beings who had achieved awakening as Śākyamuni did, even as the list of their qualities and their attainments grew ever more glorious.

See also: **Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies**; **Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)**; **Pure Lands**

### Bibliography

- Gómez, Luis O. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1996.
- Harrison, Paul M. *The Samādhi of Direct Encounter with the Buddhas of the Present: An Annotated English Translation of the Tibetan Version of the Pratyutpanna-Buddha-Saṃmukhāvasthita-Samādhi-Sūtra*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1990.
- Nattier, Jan. *Once upon a Future Time: Studies in a Buddhist Prophecy of Decline*. Fremont, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.
- Nattier, Jan. “The Realm of Akṣobhya: A Missing Piece in the History of Pure Land Buddhism.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 23, no. 1 (2000): 71–102.
- Norman, K. R. “The Pratyeka-Buddha in Buddhism and Jainism.” In *Buddhist Studies Ancient and Modern: Collected Papers on South Asia*, no. 4, ed. Philip Denwood and Alexander Piatigorsky. London: Centre of South Asian Studies, University of London, 1983.
- Sponberg, Alan, and Hardacre, Helen, eds. *Maitreya: The Future Buddha*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Vogel, J. Ph. “The Past Buddhas and Kāśyapa in Indian Art and Epigraphy.” In *Asiatica: Festschrift Friedrich Weller*, ed. Johannes Schubert and Ulrich Schneider. Leipzig, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1954.

JAN NATTIER

## BUDDHACARITA

The *Buddhacarita* (*Acts of the Buddha*) by AŚVAGHOṢA is a second-century C.E. biography recounting in ornate verse the life of the Buddha from his birth to the distribution of his relics. The epic poem comprises twenty-eight chapters, only fourteen of which are extant in the original Sanskrit. The remainder are preserved in Tibetan and Chinese translations.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Beal, Samuel, trans. *The Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king: A Life of Buddha*, by Aśvaghosha Bodhisattva. Reprint edition, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1964.
- Johnston, E. H., trans. "The Buddha's Mission and Last Journey (*Buddhacarita*, xv to xxviii)." *Acta Orientalia* 15 (1937): 26–32, 85–111, 231–292.
- Johnston, E. H., trans. *The Buddhacarita, or, Acts of the Buddha*. Reprint edition, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1972.

JOHN S. STRONG

## BUDDHADĀSA

Buddhadāsa (Ngeaum Panich, 1906–1993), a Thai Buddhist monk and scholar, was a prolific commentator on the Pāli literature of the THERAVĀDA school and an influential preceptor of ENGAGED BUDDHISM. Ordained at the age of twenty-one, Buddhadāsa became widely known for his critical intellect, his interest in meditation, and his gifts as a teacher. He founded Suan Mōkh (Garden of Liberation), an important monastery and international center for engaged Buddhist thought and training in Thailand. In his voluminous writings, Buddhadāsa developed the ideas of dhammic socialism, spiritual politics, fellowship of restraint (*saṅgamanīyama*), and interfaith dialogue based on Buddhist principles of selflessness, interdependence, and nonattachment.

### Bibliography

- Jackson, Peter A. *Buddhadāsa: A Buddhist Thinker for the Modern World*. Bangkok, Thailand: Siam Society, 1988.
- Santikaro, Bhikkhu. "Buddhadāsa Bhikkhu: Life and Society through the Natural Eyes of Voidness." In *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*, ed. Christo-

pher S. Queen and Sallie B. King. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

Swearer, Donald K., ed. *Me and Mine: Selected Essays of Bhikkhu Buddhādāsa*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1989.

CHRISTOPHER S. QUEEN

## BUDDHAGHOSA

The most famous and prolific of the Pāli commentators and exegetes, Buddhaghosa was active at the beginning of the fifth century C.E. According to the *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*), he was an Indian brahmin of considerable scholarly genius who hailed from the kingdom of Magadha. He was converted to Buddhism by a monk named Revata and went to Sri Lanka at his teacher's instigation to study the Sinhalese commentaries at the Mahāvihāra Monastery. The monks there tested him by asking him to explicate two dharma verses. The result was the *Visuddhimagga* (*Path of Purity*), a work that remains the greatest compendium of THERAVĀDA thought ever written and that has had a lasting impact on the tradition. In three parts, the *Visuddhimagga* thoroughly and systematically treats all aspects of the topics of morality, meditation, and wisdom.

Buddhaghosa subsequently went on to write commentaries on many works of the Pāli CANON. Chief among them are separate commentaries on the *Vinaya-piṭaka* (*Book of the Discipline*); on the *Dīgha*, *Majjhima*, *Saṃyutta*, and *Aṅguttara nikāyas* (the books of long, middle, kindred, and gradual sayings); and on the books of the ABHIDHARMA. In these works, which contain both exegeses of words and contextual excursi, Buddhaghosa succeeded in more or less defining the ways scholars have read the Theravāda canonical texts ever since. Buddhaghosa's life story may also be found, greatly embellished, in a late Pāli chronicle known as the *Buddhaghosuppatti* (*The Development of the Career of Buddhaghosa*).

### Bibliography

- Gray, James, ed. and trans. *Buddhaghosuppatti or the Historical Romance of the Rise and Career of Buddhaghosa*. London: Luzac, 1892. Reprinted, 1999.
- Law, Bimala Churn. *Buddhaghosa*. Bombay: Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, 1946.

JOHN S. STRONG

## BUDDHAHOOD AND BUDDHA BODIES

The term *buddhahood* (*buddhatva*) refers to the unique attainment of buddhas that distinguishes them from all other kinds of holy being. Buddhahood constitutes the fullest possible realization of ultimate reality and total freedom from all that obscures it, together with all qualities that flow from such a realization. Buddhahood is described in two closely related ways: in terms of its distinctive characteristics, and in terms of buddha “bodies.”

### Characteristics of buddhahood

Early Buddhist texts ascribe qualities to Śākyamuni Buddha that distinguish him from other ARHATS (those who have realized NIRVĀṆA) and that render him the supreme teacher of the world. He was said to possess ten unmatched powers of penetrating awareness, four peerless forms of fearlessness, and supreme compassion for all beings. His body was endowed with thirty-two marks of a great person (*mahāpuruṣa*), the fruit of immeasurable virtue from previous lives (*Dīghanikāya* 3.142–179). As the outflow of his enlightenment he also possessed supernormal powers (*ṛddhis*) superior to those of others; these included the power to project multiple physical forms of diverse kinds (*nirmāṇas*), to control physical phenomena, to know others’ minds and capacities, to perceive directly over great distances and time, and to know and skillfully communicate the freedom of nirvāṇa (*Majjhimanikāya* 1.69–73; Makransky, pp. 26–27). Śākyamuni’s enlightened qualities exemplify those possessed by all prior buddhas and by all buddhas to come, qualities that enable each buddha to reintroduce the dharma to the world in each age.

### Buddha bodies (*kāyas*)

The Indic term *kāya* refers to the physical body of a living being. It therefore carries the secondary meaning of a collection or aggregate of parts. In Buddhist texts over time, *kāya* came to include a third meaning—base or substratum, since one’s body is the base of many qualities. The term also came to connote the embodiment of ultimate truth in enlightened knowledge and activity.

**Buddha embodied in dharma and in forms.** For early Buddhist traditions, Śākyamuni’s body with thirty-two special marks constituted his primary physical expression of enlightenment. But his power to manifest himself to others extended beyond the confines of his physical body, since he created a “mind-

made” body (*manomayakāya*) to teach his deceased mother in a heaven, and occasionally projected copies of his body, or created diverse forms, to carry out enlightened activities (*nirmāṇa*). All such manifest forms were referred to as *rūpakāya*, the embodiment (*kāya*) of the Buddha in forms (*rūpa*).

Of special importance was the dharma, the truths that the Buddha had realized and taught, encapsulated in the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS, the very source of the charismatic power expressed through his physical body and teaching. Metaphorically, the dharma itself was understood as his essential being, his very body. So the *Dīghanikāya* (*Group of Long Discourses*) says that the Buddha instructed his disciples, when asked their family lineage, to reply, “I am a true son of the Buddha, born of his mouth, born of dharma, created by the dharma, an heir of the dharma. Why? Because buddhas are those whose body is dharma (*dharmakāya*), (3.84).

After the Buddha’s physical death, the distinction between his dharma body (*dharmakāya*) and his form body (*rūpakāya*) grounded two legacies of communal practice (Reynolds 1977, p. 376). “Body of dharma” (*dharmakāya*) referred especially to the corpus of teachings the Buddha bequeathed to his monastic SAṄGHA, whose institutional life centered on the recitation, study, and practice of them. On the other hand, the relics from the cremation of the Buddha’s physical body (*rūpakāya*) were placed in reliquary mounds (STŪPAS) at which laity (and monks and nuns as well) practiced ritual forms of reverence for the Buddha modeled on forms of devotion shown to him during his lifetime.

In THERAVĀDA and Sarvāstivāda traditions, *dharmakāya* also referred to the Buddha’s supramundane realizations, his powers of awareness, fearlessness, compassion, and skillful means, as noted above. Here *dharmakāya* refers to the Buddha’s “body of dharma(s),” where *dharmas* are pure qualities of enlightened mind (Makransky, p. 27).

### The power of Buddha’s nirvāṇa in the world.

Scholastics of those schools maintained that the Buddha’s final nirvāṇa at his physical death was an unconditioned attainment, a total passing away from the conditioned world of beings. Yet many practices of Buddhist communities seem to have functioned to mediate the power of the Buddha’s nirvāṇa to the world long after he was physically gone. Stūpas containing relics of the Buddha, when ritually consecrated, “came alive” for devotees with the presence of the Buddha,

representing the Buddha not only as the field of merit for offerings, but as a continuing source of salvific power for the world. Thus, many stories tell of Buddhist devotees who witnessed miraculous events or had spontaneous visions of the Buddha at stūpas. The distribution of the Buddha's relics among many stūpas over time cosmologized the Buddha, ritually rendering the power of his dharmakāya (his attainment of nirvāṇa) pervasively present to the world through his *rūpakāya* (physical embodiment) in many stūpas (Strong, p. 119). Statues and paintings of the Buddha had similar ritual functions, while also serving as support for meditative practices that vividly brought to mind the qualities of the Buddha while visualizing his physical form (*buddhānusmṛti*). Accomplished meditators were said to have visions and dreams of the Buddha, and to experience the Buddha's qualities and powers as vividly present in their world. All such ritual and yogic practices functioned to render the salvific power of his nirvāṇa, even after he was physically gone, a continuing presence in the saṃsāric world.

Several schools deriving from Mahāsāṃghika tradition appear to have given doctrinal expression to these patterns of understanding. They asserted that the Buddha was wholly supramundane, that his salvific power was all-pervasive, and that his body that had perished at the age of eighty was just a mind-made (*manomaya*) or illusory creation (*nirmāṇa*), not his real body. Rather, his real body was pure and limitless, its life endless. Theravāda and Sarvāstivāda scholastics had claimed that the Buddha's final nirvāṇa had destroyed the sole creative cause of his saṃsāric experience (defiled karma), resulting in a final nirvāṇa beyond creation or conditionality. But the Mahāsāṃghikas, by asserting that the Buddha's *rūpakāya* was pure and limitless, seemed to be saying that his long BODHISATTVA practice of prior lives had not only destroyed the impure causes of his SAṂSĀRA, but functioned as pure creative cause for his nirvāṇic attainment to embody itself limitlessly for beings. Along similar lines, the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), an early MAHĀYĀNA scripture, declared the Buddha's life and salvific activity to span innumerable eons, beyond his apparent physical death.

**Pure buddha fields and celestial buddhas.** This understanding of a buddha's nirvāṇa as not just the cessation of defilement but also the manifestation of vast salvific power was developed in a wide range of Mahāyāna scriptures of early centuries C.E. The centrality of bodhisattvas in Mahāyāna sūtras, each of

whom vows to become a buddha, supported a new Buddhist cosmology of multiple buddhas simultaneously active throughout the universe. Each such buddha wields enlightened power within his own field of salvific activity for the beings karmically connected to him. On the path to buddhahood, therefore, bodhisattvas vow to “purify” their fields, by collecting immeasurable amounts of merit and wisdom (as pure creative causes for their buddha fields), by training other bodhisattvas in similar practices, and by transferring their merit to other beings so they may be reborn in such fields (Williams, pp. 224–227). The purest such fields are heavenly domains of buddhas of infinite radiance, power, and incalculable life span, such as AMITĀBHA or AKṢOBHYA, buddhas whose pure fields (or PURE LANDS) consist of jeweled palaces and radiant natural scenes, where all conditions are perfect for communicating and realizing enlightenment. Those born near such a celestial buddha, either by the power of their own practice or by faith in the power of such a buddha, make quick progress to enlightenment. Late fourth-century C.E. Mahāyāna treatises, such as the *Mahāyānasūtrālaṃkāra* (*Ornament of Mahāyāna Scriptures*) and *Abhisamayālaṃkāra* (*Ornament of Realization*), created a new vocabulary for such celestial buddhas, referring to them as sambhogakāya, the perfect embodiment (*kāya*) of buddhahood for supreme communal enjoyment (*sambhoga*) of dharma (Nagao, pp. 107–112).

**The unrestricted nirvāṇa of the buddhas and the three buddha kāyas.** These Mahāyāna understandings developed within a nexus of other developing doctrines. *Prajñāpāramitā* (Perfection of Wisdom) sūtras and early Madhyamaka treatises declared all phenomena to be empty of substantial independent existence (*svabhāvasūnya*), hence illusory. When bodhisattvas attain direct knowledge of that truth, they realize that all things in their intrinsic emptiness have always been in nirvāṇic peace, that saṃsāra is undivided from nirvāṇa. Through such wisdom, the bodhisattva learns to embody the freedom and power of nirvāṇa while continuing to act skillfully within saṃsāra for the sake of others. When this bodhisattva path of wisdom and skillful means is fully accomplished, its simultaneous participation in saṃsāra and nirvāṇa becomes the essential realization of buddhahood. This is referred to in Yogācāra and later Madhyamaka treatises as a buddha's “unrestricted nirvāṇa” (*apraṭiṣṭhita* nirvāṇa); it is unrestricted because it is bound neither to saṃsāra nor to a merely quiescent nirvāṇa, but possessed of limitless and spontaneous activity, all-pervasive and

eternal, radiating its power to beings throughout all existence, drawing them toward enlightenment (Makransky, pp. 85–87).

In the Perfection of Wisdom sūtras, the term *dharmatā* (literally “thinghood”) refers to the real nature of things, undivided in their emptiness yet diverse in their appearance. In treatises that formalized the concept of the buddhas’ unrestricted nirvāṇa, the *dharmatā* of all things as the limitless field of the buddhas’ enlightened knowledge and power came to be referred to as dharmakāya, now meaning the buddhas’ “embodiment of *dharmatā*” (of ultimate reality; Makransky, pp. 34–37, 199–201). Dharmakāya, as the nondual awareness of the emptiness of all things, is undifferentiated among buddhas, yet serves as the basis for diverse manifestations. It is therefore also etymologized as the undivided basis (*kāya*) of all the buddha qualities (dharma). A synonym for it in such treatises was *svabhāvikakāya*, meaning the buddhas’ embodiment (*kāya*) of the intrinsic nature (*svabhāva*) of things.

The celestial sambhogakāya buddhas, then, represent the primary manifestation of dharmakāya, perfectly embodying the nonduality of appearance (*rūpa*) and emptiness (dharma). For this reason, the sensory phenomena of sambhogakāya pure fields—gentle breezes, flowing rivers, even the birds—continually disclose the nirvāṇic nature of things to the bodhisattva assemblies arrayed there.

But formulators of the buddhas’ unrestricted nirvāṇa, as noted above, understood the dharmakāya’s salvific activity to radiate to beings of all realms, not just to those in pure buddha fields. Such all-pervasive buddha activity is carried out by innumerable manifestations within the empty, illusory worlds of beings. In Yogācāra and later Madhyamaka treatises, the limitlessly diverse ways that buddhahood was said to manifest in Mahāyāna scriptures came to be classified under the term *nirmāṇakāya*, meaning buddhahood embodied in diverse, illusory manifestations (*nirmāṇa*). As such, *nirmāṇakāya* encompasses three broad categories. First, since the world itself in its empty, illusory nature is undivided from nirvāṇa, any aspect of the world has the potential to disclose the essence of buddhahood (to function as *nirmāṇakāya*) when a person’s mind becomes pure enough to notice. Second, buddhas and advanced bodhisattvas have great power to project illusory replicas and visionary forms to beings (*nirmāṇas*) to help guide them toward enlightenment. Such illusory projections further support the disclosure of all things as illusory appearances of empty

reality. Third, all sorts of beings who serve to communicate the buddhas’ truths function as agents of buddha activity, hence as *nirmāṇakāya*, from supreme human paradigms like Śākyamuni to the innumerable bodhisattvas of Mahāyāna scriptures who carry out much of the Buddha’s teaching and salvific activity, and who appear in all walks of life and as all types of beings.

Thus developed the basic Mahāyāna doctrine of three buddha *kāyas*—dharmakāya, sambhogakāya, and *nirmāṇakāya*—which informed the buddhalogies that developed throughout Asia, contributing to the Huayan, Tiantai, Zhenyan, Chan, and Jingtū traditions of China, thence Korea and Japan, and to all Tibetan Buddhist traditions. Some scholars, seeking to analyze the relationship between transcendental and phenomenal aspects of buddhahood, divided the three *kāyas* into four. So XUANZANG in seventh-century China distinguished two aspects of sambhogakāya, while Haribhadra in eighth-century India divided dharmakāya in two by reference to conditioned and unconditioned aspects (Makransky, pp. 216–218).

In Indian Yogācāra and later Madhyamaka treatises, the three *kāya* doctrine was associated with a developmental model of path: Buddhahood is to be attained by the radical transformation of all aspects of a person’s defiled consciousness into buddha *kāyas* and wisdoms. Mahāyāna texts whose central teaching was buddha nature (TATHĀGATAGARBHA), on the other hand, emphasized a discovery model of path: Buddha *kāyas* manifest automatically as the mind is purified, for the very essence of mind (buddha nature) is already replete with their qualities (Nagao, pp. 115–117).

Tantric Buddhist traditions of India, East Asia, and Tibet drew upon both such models. The teaching of buddha nature undergirds the “three mysteries” uncovered by tantric praxis, through which the practitioner discovers that his or her body, speech, and mind are undivided from those of the buddhas, which are one with the three *kāyas*. Tantric traditions have also drawn upon Yogācāra and Madhyamaka models of transformation to construct homologies expressed in MAṄḌALAS. Indian and Tibetan praxis of highest yoga tantras engages four energy centers in the body, which frame correspondences between the fourfold aspects of the unenlightened person, the fourfold aspects of path that ultimately transforms them, and four resultant buddha *kāyas*, all of which take visual expression in the four directions of the maṅḍala. Within such a system, a fourth *kāya* representing highest tantric attainment is added to the prior three *kāyas*, and is designated by

terms such as *sahajakāya*, “embodiment of co-presence (of nirvāṇa and saṃsāra),” or *mahāsukhakāya*, “embodiment of great bliss” (the tantrically embodied bliss of nondual wisdom and means; Snellgrove, p. 251).

Japanese PURE LAND BUDDHISM (Jōdoshū, Jōdo Shinshū) has emphasized the transcendental power of buddhahood embodied in the sambhogakāya Amitābha. Because this is the period of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA (*mappō*), it is argued, people are no longer able to accomplish the path through their own power but must rely upon the buddha Amitābha, whose power to take the devotee into his pure field at death is received in faith through recitation of his name (NENBUTSU [CHINESE, NIANFO; KOREAN, YŎMBUL]). Zen traditions, on the other hand, based upon the doctrine of buddha nature, have emphasized the immanence and immediacy of enlightenment. Through Zen practice, it is said, buddhahood complete with all *kāyas* is to be discovered intimately within one’s present mind, body, and world. So the Japanese eighteenth-century Zen teacher HAKUIN EKAKU wrote, “This very place, the pure lotus land; this very body, the buddha body.”

See also: **Buddhānumṛti (Recollection of the Buddha); Relics and Relics Cults**

### Bibliography

- Griffiths, Paul J. *On Being Buddha: The Classical Doctrine of Buddhahood*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1994.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de, trans. and ed. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi: La Siddhi de Hiuan-tsang*. Paris: Geuthner, 1928–1948.
- Makransky, John J. *Buddhahood Embodied: Sources of Controversy in India and Tibet*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1997.
- Nagao, Gadjin. “On the Theory of Buddha-Body (*Buddhakāya*).” In *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, tr. and ed. Leslie S. Kawamura. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.
- Reynolds, Frank. “The Several Bodies of Buddha: Reflections on a Neglected Aspect of Theravāda Tradition.” *History of Religions* 16, no. 4 (1977): 374–389.
- Reynolds, Frank E., and Hallisey, Charles. “The Buddha.” In *Buddhism and Asian History*, ed. Joseph M. Kitagawa and Mark D. Cummings. New York: Macmillan, 1989.
- Sharf, Robert H. *Coming to Terms with Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Snellgrove, David. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism*. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.

Strong, John S. *The Legend of King Aśoka: A Study and Translation of the Aśokavadāna*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.

Williams, Paul M. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. New York: Routledge, 1989.

JOHN J. MAKRANSKY

## BUDDHA IMAGES

Buddha images—whether they are Indian, Thai, Chinese, or Japanese—are usually readily recognizable. The date an image was created rarely confuses its identification as Buddhist because the iconography of the Buddha image has remained constant almost from the earliest invention of the image type, even though the style of the figure has varied depending on date and geographical location. The term *iconography* refers to the forms or characteristics of an image, whereas *style* refers to the ways in which these forms or characteristics are crafted or made.

The iconography of the Buddha image includes representing the Buddha as a MONK, wearing a monk’s robe, and with his hair shaved. A monk wears two or three simple items of clothing, including an untailed and unsewn undercloth (*antaravāsaka*), a rectangular cloth worn like a skirt that reaches to the ankles and is folded under at the waist or belted with a piece of cloth. An upper garment (*uttarāsaṅga*), a second rectangular cloth held behind the back and thrown over the shoulders like a shawl, is worn over the undercloth. There are two ways to wear it, either covering both shoulders or under the right armpit. A third cloth, which is rarely worn, except in cold climates, is sometimes folded and placed over the left shoulder during special ceremonial occasions. The actual monk’s robes are dyed in shades of yellow. This simple attire can usually be discerned on Buddha images, although artists tended to arrange the cloth in various decorative ways, such as producing a perfectly symmetrical fall of the robe on both sides of the body, or fashioning the folds in rhythmic patterns.

Monks shave the HAIR on their heads and faces, and the Buddha performed the tonsure on himself when he left his palace and courtly life for that of a wandering mendicant. With a stroke of his sword he removed his long topknot, and some texts note that the remaining hair formed small curls that turned toward the right. Indian artists by the second century C.E. depicted the Buddha’s hair as small ringlets over the



head, which came to be called snail-shell curls. In some artistic traditions, these curls developed into rows of small bumps.

The Buddha, however, was not simply a monk; he was born a great man (*mahāpuruṣa*) and was identified as such by certain bodily signs (*lakṣaṇa*). Some of these, such as his sweet voice, could not be produced in art, but others, such as his cranial protuberance, could be depicted. The extent to which the artists attempted to reproduce the *lakṣaṇa* varied according to place and time, but the cranial bump became standard for most images.

There are, of course, many different buddhas, but the Buddha of our historic period, Śākyamuni, was a human being, and it is overwhelmingly Śākyamuni who is represented in the earliest images in India. Thus, he consistently has two arms, unlike images of Hindu deities from the same period, who often have multiple arms. Also associated with Śākyamuni Buddha are certain hand positions (*mudrā*) and postures. One popular early type depicted the Buddha seated with his legs crossed and his right hand held up with the palm out. Although artistic depictions of these gestures and postures developed over time and came to be associated with certain narrative events, they are highly restricted in number and reappear again and again.

Thus, the shared iconography—the monk's robe, shaved hair, certain bodily marks, and limited hand positions and body postures—have made it possible for the Buddha image, no matter the style, to be identifiable across time and geography.

Two of the most intriguing, yet controversial, questions regarding Buddha images are when they were first made and why. The earliest images were produced in two locations in South Asia: Mathurā, a city sixty miles south of Delhi, and Gandhāra, a region centered on Taxila in present-day Pakistan. The first Buddha image is usually believed to have been created around the first century C.E. The Buddha image types produced in these two regions were radically different in style. Although the iconographic parameters outlined above were generally followed in both places, the Gandhāra images are related to Western classical (Roman and Hellenistic) art, whereas the Mathurā images are related to the north Indian style seen in earlier anthropomorphic sculptures of various local or pan-Indian deities, such as YAKṢAS.

The early Mathurā type, such as the nine-foot-tall Buddha dedicated by the monk Bala, is a monumental image that stands with knees locked, staring straight

ahead, his left arm akimbo with a fist on his hip. The robe is thin and transparent, revealing the body. The Gandhāra type, on the other hand, wears all three garments, completely masking the body underneath, the emphasis being on the pattern of the heavy, deep folds of fabric.

It is clear to scholars today, however, that the earliest images were probably not as sophisticated and well-defined as those described above, and some scholars have begun to identify groups and individual images that suggest an earlier development. While these images vary considerably, they share a modest size and nascent iconography that includes the *uttarāsaṅga* worn not as a covering robe but, like a layman, as a bunched shawl.

Also at issue is the interplay of the development of the Buddha image with that of images of other anthropomorphic deities of the same period—both Hindu and Jain. All three religions were practiced in Mathurā, and some of the earliest images developed there. Of the three religious groups, the Jains probably produced the first anthropomorphic icons at Mathurā; these are tiny figures of their naked Jinās on stone reliefs dated to as early as the second century B.C.E. It seems reasonable to expect that the three religions interacted and competed at Mathurā, with their anthropomorphic images developing together. Indeed, images from Mathurā shared the same style, whether Jain, Buddhist, or Hindu.

Given such evidence, it is likely that the first small, rather indifferent, Buddha figures were created around the first century B.C.E. It is unlikely that such figures were the focus initially of worship or an icon cult, although by around 100 C.E., when the Bala and Gandhāra Buddha images were created, such cults were certainly in place.

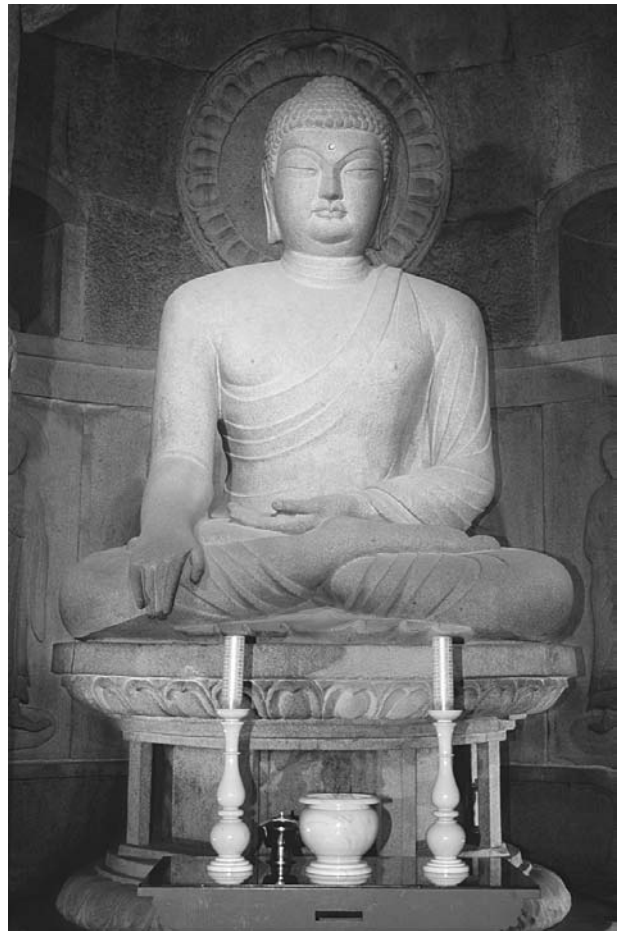
Still, assuming the Buddha lived in the fifth century B.C.E., it is of interest that no anthropomorphic images of the Buddha existed until some four hundred years after his death. This early period was not without Buddhist art, however. Although the famous King AŚOKA of the third century B.C.E. was predisposed to Buddhism, the only artwork from his reign that might be labeled *Buddhist* is the single lion capital with a wheel (*cakra*) from Sārnāth. But from the mid-second and first centuries B.C.E., there is an explosion of Buddhist art associated with stūpas, including those at Bhārhut and SĀÑCĪ. At these and other sites, extensive narrative reliefs depicting the Buddha's life stories and past lives (JĀTAKA) were carved in stone. However, even though

the Buddha as a human being could be shown in such *jātaka* scenes, he is not represented in any reliefs of this period. The absence of the Buddha in anthropomorphic form is called *aniconic* in art historical literature. How to interpret this absence is at the center of extensive scholarly debate, but the initial absence accentuates the importance of Buddha images created later.

The early Buddhist sites in India clearly show that the STŪPA (and thus the relic enshrined therein) was the focus of worship. Other symbolic forms, such as the tree or the wheel, were also worshiped. There were extensive narrative reliefs associated with these sites, particularly with stūpas. Eventually, anthropomorphic images began to be used in depictions of the Buddha's life stories. It appears that interest in the anthropomorphic images lay more in their narrative function, and not in their function as icons. The popularization of an icon cult may have been an innovation of a few clerics, most particularly the monk Bala and his associates, who placed enormous Mathurā Buddha images at several sites in northern India. Very quickly, however, the Buddha image became widespread in South Asia.

A single image, without any narrative context, is difficult to "read." Certain places and periods had favorite image types, and the different Buddhist schools, such as THERAVĀDA and MAHĀYĀNA, used and interpreted Buddha images in different ways. Nevertheless, the actual images themselves remain iconographically consistent.

For example, the favorite form that the Buddha image takes, whether standing or seated, what arm positions are shown, and how the robe is worn, have been shown to be determined not so much by religious concerns but by artistic traditions. Various regions and periods favor certain dominant types of Buddha images, with a limited number of secondary forms. Theravāda Buddha images are extremely limited in their iconography. Almost all seated images in Sri Lanka, for example, are in meditation. Mahāyāna Buddhism uses the different hand gestures of seated Buddha images to construct systems of five, six, and seven image MAṄḌALA. However, the fact that an image might be in earth-touching gesture, for example, is not itself sufficient to tell us whether it is Śākyamuni at the moment of calling the earth to witness or rather the Mahāyāna Buddha AKṢOBHYA. There is no difference artistically. This issue calls into question whether we can even speak of Mahāyāna art, at least in terms of Buddha images. Rather it is context, not iconography,



Statue of the Buddha at the eighth-century grotto shrine of Sökkrum near Pulguksa, South Korea. © Carmen Redondo/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

that defines the image. Likewise, the Buddha images reflect no difference in the way the different bodies of the Buddha (the trikāya) are represented. It is only when we move to the VAJRAYĀNA Buddhist systems, such as those of Nepal and Tibet, with new definitions of the Buddha and his body, that the art becomes clearly differentiated.

*See also:* Bodhisattva Images; Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Jainism and Buddhism; Mudrā and Visual Imagery; Robes and Clothing

#### **Bibliography**

- Coomaraswamy, Ananda Kentish. *The Origin of the Buddha Image*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1972.
- Dehejia, Vidya. "Aniconism and the Multivalence of Emblems." *Ars Orientalis* 21 (1991): 45–66.
- Ghose, Rajeshwari, with Puay-peng Ho and Yeung Chun-tong. *In the Footsteps of the Buddha: An Iconic Journey from India*

- to China. Hong Kong: University Museum and Art Gallery, University of Hong Kong, 1998.
- Griswold, A. B. "Prolegomena to the Study of the Buddha's Dress in Chinese Sculpture, Part I." *Artibus Asiae* 26 (1963): 85–131.
- Huntington, Susan L. "Aniconism and the Multivalence of Emblems: Another Look." *Ars Orientalis* 22 (1992): 111–156.
- Huntington, Susan L., and Huntington, John C. *Leaves from the Bodhi Tree: The Art of Pala India (8th–12th Centuries) and Its International Legacy*. Seattle, WA: Dayton Art Institute, 1989.
- Lohuizen-de Leeuw, Johanna Engelberta van. "New Evidence with Regard to the Origin of the Buddha Image." In *South Asian Archaeology 1979: Papers from the Fifth International Conference of the Association of South Asian Archaeologists in Western Europe Held in the Museum für Indische Kunst der Staatlichen Museen Preussischer Kulturbesitz Berlin*, ed. Herbert Härtel. Berlin: D. Reimer, 1981.
- Lyons, Islay, and Ingholt, Harald. *Gandharan Art in Pakistan*. New York: Pantheon Books, 1957.
- Menzies, Jackie, ed. *Buddha: Radiant Awakening*. Sydney, Australia: Art Gallery of New South Wales, 2001.
- Pal, Pratapaditya, ed. *Light of Asia: Buddha Śākyamuni in Asian Art*. Los Angeles: Los Angeles County Museum of Art, 1984.
- Quintanilla, Sonya. "Ayagapatas: Characteristics, Symbolism, and Chronology." *Artibus Asiae* 60 (1990): 79–137.
- Schopen, Gregory. "On Monks, Nuns, and 'Vulgar' Practices: The Introduction of the Image Cult into Indian Buddhism." *Artibus Asiae* 49 1/2 (1988–1989): 153–168.
- Snellgrove, David L., ed. *The Image of the Buddha*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1978.
- Zwalf, W., ed. *Buddhism: Art and Faith*. London: British Museum, 1985.

ROBERT L. BROWN

## BUDDHA, LIFE OF THE

The term *buddha* (literally, "awakened") refers to a fully enlightened being who has attained perfect knowledge and full liberation from REBIRTH. *Buddha* is not a proper name but a general term that may be applied to all enlightened beings. Therefore, the historical Buddha may be designated using this term from the time of his enlightenment (bodhi) only. Before that moment, he was a BODHISATTVA, one who was on the way of obtaining full enlightenment. At the same time, the term *buddha* is used as an honorary title for the founder of the Buddhist religion, the only buddha living in the current historical period.

## The dates of the historical Buddha

There is no reliable information concerning the dates of the historical Buddha's life that has been unanimously accepted by Buddhist tradition and by scholars. Traditional dates of the *parinirvāṇa* (the decease of the Buddha) range widely from 2420 B.C.E. to 290 B.C.E. The dates proposed by scholars who contributed to a 1988 symposium in Göttingen, Germany, on *The Dating of the Historical Buddha*, vary from 486 B.C.E. (the so-called corrected long chronology) to 261 B.C.E. The THERAVĀDA tradition calculates the death of the Buddha to have occurred in 544 or 543 B.C.E., 218 years before the consecration of King AŚOKA (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.) as calculated by this tradition. Taking into account the obvious error in this chronology, which was discovered when exact dates for King Aśoka became known, most Western and Indian scholars calculate 487 or 486 B.C.E. as the date of the Buddha's death. However, early Buddhist texts from mainland India belonging to the *Mūlasarvāstivāda* tradition, as well as two references in the earliest historiographic work of the Theravāda tradition (the *Dīpavaṃsa* or *The Chronicle of the Island* [of Sri Lanka]) date this event to one hundred years before the rule of King Aśoka, or 368 B.C.E. (the so-called short chronology). In addition, later Tibetan and East Asian Buddhist texts provide a considerable variety of earlier dates.

The lists of the so-called patriarchs are of great importance for a reliable calculation of the dates of the historical Buddha. All early Buddhist traditions list only five patriarchs, not enough for an interval of 218 years between the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa* and King Aśoka. In Indian tradition, information about the succession of teachers was much more reliably handed down than any dates. For this and many other reasons, including the state of development of Indian society at the time of the Buddha, we may conclude that the Buddha passed away at a later date than that handed down by Theravāda tradition, including its variant, the corrected long chronology. Although the available information does not allow scholars to arrive at an exact dating, it is safe to suppose that the Buddha passed away some time between 420 B.C.E. and 350 B.C.E. at the age of approximately eighty years.

## Sources for the biography of the historical Buddha

On the basis of the available sources it is possible to reconstruct a fairly reliable biography of the man who was to become the Buddha. The sources are the canonical texts of the Theravāda, the SARVĀSTIVĀDA AND

MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA, and the DHARMAGUPTAKA traditions. Only the Theravāda texts are fully extant in the original Indian version in Pāli; the texts of the other traditions are fully extant only from Chinese or Tibetan translations and partially from incomplete Sanskrit texts. These texts do not provide coherent biographies of the historical Buddha, but they do offer considerable autobiographical and biographical information that was handed down during the first three to five centuries after the death of the Buddha. Oral tradition of the Buddha's teaching in various local dialects was responsible for minor differences in these traditions and for the insertion of mythic lore, which shall not be considered in the following summary of the Buddha's biography.

### The life of the future Buddha

**Before his departure from home.** The historical Buddha was born into the Śākya family, which belonged to the kṣatriya (noble) caste, considered by Buddhists to be the highest caste. He was later known by the honorary title Śākyamuni, which means "sage of the Śākya clan." The Śākyas were not kings, but they formed a class of nobles within a republican system of government that held regular meetings of the members of the leading families. The future Buddha belonged to the Gautama clan, so he was later on known as Gautama Buddha. His individual name was Siddhārtha (Pāli, Siddhattha), his father's name was Śuddhodana (Pāli, Suddhodana), and his mother's name was Māyā. Detailed information on Māyā is mainly derived from later literature. The family resided in Kapilavastu (Pāli, Kapilavatthu) at the foot of the Himalayas near the present-day Indian-Nepalese border. The future Buddha is said to have been born in Lumbinī, also near the Indian-Nepalese border. In 248 B.C.E., Aśoka placed a pillar with an inscription commemorating the birth of Śākyamuni Buddha (the so-called Rummindē inscription) in Lumbinī. Therefore, it is certain that during the time of Aśoka this place was identified as the birthplace of the Buddha. Lumbinī is considered to be one of the four main Buddhist pilgrimage sites on the Indian subcontinent.

Because Māyā died shortly after Siddhārtha was born, the future Buddha was raised by MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ (Pāli, Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī), the younger sister of his mother and second wife of Śuddhodana. The autobiographical passages of the early texts describe in much detail the luxurious conditions of the bodhisattva's life in his home. Siddhārtha was mar-

ried to Yaśodharā (Pāli, Yasodharā), who is also called Rāhulamātā (mother of Rāhula) in the early texts. RĀHULA was their only son. The bodhisattva Siddhārtha was not satisfied with his sumptuous life because he realized that, like all beings, he was subject to old age, disease, and death. This perception caused him, at the age of twenty-nine, to abandon his home, don monk's robes, shave his head, and go forth to live as a homeless ascetic. Early texts explicitly state that he did this "though his parents did not consent and wept full of affliction." The legend that Gautama left his home in secret is of later origin.

A noteworthy account of an early contemplative experience of the bodhisattva before he left his home is reported in the *Mahāsaccaka-sutta* of the *Majjhimanikāya* in the Pāli scriptures. Here, the Buddha is said to have reported that he had already experienced the first DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE) as a youth when he sat under a rose apple tree while his father conducted a ceremony.

**Ascetic life and austerities.** After he left home, Gautama visited the leading yoga masters of the period: Ārāḍa Kālāma (Pāli, Ālāra Kālāma) and Udraka Rāmaputra (Pāli, Uddaka Rāmaputta). When Gautama did not attain salvation under their direction, he went to a site near the river Nairāñjanā (Pāli, Nerañjarā) and engaged in extreme ASCETIC PRACTICES (Sanskrit, *duṣkaracaryā*; Pāli, *dukkarakārikā*) for six years, hoping to reach his goal in this way. Five other ascetics joined him as followers. However, when he finally understood that this extreme austerity would not lead to salvation, that it was fruitless, he ended these efforts, ate a substantial meal, took a bath in the river, and sat down under a tree of the botanical species *figus religiosa*, which Buddhists thereafter called the *bodhi tree*. It was here, seven years after he had left home, that he obtained BODHI (AWAKENING), perfect enlightenment, and thereby became a *samyaksambuddha*, or "fully enlightened one."

**The period of teaching and dissemination.** After enlightenment, the Buddha remained in meditation for several days. In the beginning he was hesitant to preach the way to liberation that he had discovered (his dharma) because he doubted that others would understand it. However, he finally decided to preach, and he set out toward the city of Benares (Vārāṇasī). On the way, he met Upaka, a follower of the Ājīvika group of ascetics, but Upaka did not take the Buddha's words seriously and went his own way. The Buddha then

reached R̥ṣipatana (in other texts called R̥ṣivadana; Pāli, Isipatana) near Benares, and here he delivered his first sermon, the famous *Dharmacakrapravartana-sūtra* (Pāli, *Dhammacakkappavattana-sutta*), the discourse at Benares by which the wheel of the dharma was “Set into Motion.” In this sermon, the Buddha explained the middle way between the extremes of luxury and asceticism, the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS (the truth of suffering, the truth of the origin of suffering, the truth of the extinction of suffering, and the truth of the eightfold PATH leading to the extinction of suffering), as well as the impersonality of all beings. The site where the Buddha delivered this sermon is now known as Sārṇāth, and it is one of the most important Buddhist places of PILGRIMAGE.

The Buddha accepted his first disciples on this occasion and thereby established the SAṄGHA, the Buddhist monastic community. He continued teaching his doctrine for the next forty-five years. The Buddha’s itinerary extended from his hometown Kapilavastu and Śrāvastī in the north, to Vārāṇasī (Benares), Rājagṛha (Rājgir), Vaiśālī (Besarh), Kauśāmbī (Kosam), Nālandā, and several other places in the Ganges basin. Later commentarial texts provide exact information about the places where the Buddha took up residence during the rainy season of each particular year of his teaching period, but it is doubtful that the dates provided in these texts are reliable.

A number of important events occurred during this period, including the conversion of ŚĀRIPUTRA (Pāli, Sāriputta) and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA (Pāli, Mahāmoggallāna), who became the Buddha’s two chief disciples; the ordination of MAHĀKĀŚYAPA (Pāli, Mahākassapa), who was to become the convener of the First Buddhist Council (*saṅgīti* or *saṅgāyanā*) in Rājagṛha after the Buddha’s demise; and the visit of the Buddha to his home town, where he met his father Śuddhodana and his foster mother Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī, and where his son Rāhula and several other members of the Śākya family joined the saṅgha. Among them was UPĀLI, who was considered the most proficient monk in questions of monastic discipline and who acted as expert in this capacity during the First Buddhist Council. ĀNANDA, a member of the Śākya clan and a cousin of the Buddha, accompanied the Buddha during the last decades of his life. He was instrumental in persuading the Buddha to admit women into the saṅgha, thus establishing the *Bhikkhūṇī Saṅgha*.

Among the important lay followers of the Buddha was Bimbisāra, the king of Magadha. The Buddha was

five years older than Bimbisāra, and Bimbisāra is reported to have become a follower of the Buddha fifteen years after his accession to the throne. Bimbisāra dedicated the Veṇuvana (Pāli, Veḷuvana) grove near his residence at Rājagṛha to the Buddhist saṅgha; it became the first *ārāma* (place of permanent residence for monks). Until he was imprisoned by his son, Bimbisāra did whatever he could to promote the Buddhist community.

The Buddha’s adversary was his cousin DEVADATTA, who was ordained when the Buddha visited Kapilavastu. However, Devadatta later attempted to take the Buddha’s place and provoked a schism in the saṅgha. Devadatta was supported by Ajātaśatru, King Bimbisāra’s son. Devadatta and Ajātaśatru even tried to kill the Buddha, but they failed. Ajātaśatru then dethroned his father and imprisoned him with the order that he should be starved to death. Traditional Buddhist chronology dates the beginning of Ajātaśatru’s reign to the eighth year before the Buddha’s death. It seems that Ajātaśatru, most probably for political reasons, supported the Buddha during his last years; the Buddha’s public support was too great to oppose.

**The last days of the Buddha.** Although the chronological order of the events described in the preceding paragraphs remains uncertain, there is reliable information about the last days in the life of the historical Buddha. This information is handed down in the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA (Pāli, *Mahāparinibbān-sutta*), which is available in several versions that differ only on minor points. The account begins with the visit of King Ajātaśatru’s minister, Varṣākāra (Pāli, Vassakāra), on the mountain Gṛdhraḥkūṭa (Pāli, Gijjhakūṭa). Varṣākāra had been sent by the king in order to ask the Buddha if a campaign against the Vṛjji (Pāli, Vajjī) confederation would be successful. The Buddha responded by explaining the seven conditions necessary for the prosperity of a state, which he had earlier taught to the Vṛjjians. After Varṣākāra’s departure, the Buddha explained to the monks the analogous conditions of prosperity of the saṅgha.

After he delivered a sermon in Pāṭaliputra (modern Patna) and crossed the river Ganges, the Buddha traveled toward Vaiśālī, where he converted the courtesan Āmrapālī (Pāli, Ambapālī). At that time, the Buddha also met leading members of the Licchavi confederation, but different texts vary in their versions of this event. Afterwards, the Buddha visited Veṇugrāmaka (Pāli, Belugāma or Beluvagāmaka), where he spent the rainy season with Ānanda. There the Buddha fell ill

and was near death, but he recovered. At that time Ānanda asked the Buddha if there were additional instructions that the Buddha had not yet revealed to his disciples. The Buddha declared that he had completely and openly explained his dharma.

From Vaiśālī the Buddha traveled in the direction of Kuśinagara (Pāli, Kusiṇāra). In Pāvā he accepted a meal from the smith Cunda, which caused a diarrhea that led to his death. The Buddha reached Kuśinagara (Pāli, Kusiṇāra), where he admonished his disciples to continue their endeavor toward the final goal without cessation, and he passed away.

### Early legendary expansions

The preceding paragraphs reduce the record of the Buddha's life to its historical essence. This account relies on comparative studies of the ancient texts; these include studies of the various early traditions of the *Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra*, the *Mahāvadāna-sūtra*, and other texts by Ernst Waldschmidt and André Bareau, as well as similar investigations made by other scholars. The existing texts include a multitude of legendary stories that crept in and, step by step, changed the original character of the biography of the Buddha. These compilations were written down in their final form centuries after the Buddha's death and only after a long period of oral transmission.

Although there is no coherent biographical text of the life of the Buddha in the early canonical works, later texts provide full biographies, and such works are available from various Buddhist traditions. In these works, the Buddha's biography is extended by a multitude of myths and legendary accounts. All these accounts begin by describing former existences of the Buddha; most begin with the story of the former buddha DĪPAṆKARA, who existed many kalpas (world periods) ago. When the ascetic Sumedha met Dīpaṅkara, Sumedha took the vow to become a buddha himself in a future age and he received Dīpaṅkara's confirmation by a prophecy (*vyākaraṇa*). He thereby became a bodhisattva who was eventually to be reborn as the historical Gautama Buddha. During the subsequent kalpas, Dīpaṅkara confirmed the bodhisattva's vow and received confirmation from the buddhas of these kalpas. Finally, he was reborn in the Tuṣita heaven, where he decided to descend to the human world.

In the human world, the bodhisattva was reincarnated as the son of Māyā, the wife of King Śuddhodana. Several miracles are associated with the bodhisattva's conception and birth. For example, the

conception took place even though Māyā had not had sexual relations with Śuddhodana. This myth parallels the Christian belief in the supernatural conception of Jesus. There was an earthquake on the day of the conception because a *mahāsattva* (great being) was to come into human existence. The brahmins at the court of Śuddhodana predicted that Māyā's son would become either a buddha or a universal monarch (*cakravartin*), and several other miracles were observed at that time. The bodhisattva is said to have entered into the womb of Māyā through the right side of her chest in the shape of a white elephant.

Māyā decided to visit her parents in the village of Devaḍaha. Before arriving there, she gave birth to the bodhisattva in the grove of Lumbinī. On the same day, the bodhisattva's future wife and his horse Kanthaka were also born. The king named the prince Siddhārtha, which means "he whose aims are fulfilled." The traditional biographies report that the bodhisattva lived in great luxury, and his palaces and other aspects of his life are described in detail. The bodhisattva made Yaśodharā his first wife, but he is said to have had a number of other wives as well.

Knowing the prophecy that the prince Siddhārtha would become either a buddha or a cakravartin, his father did everything he could to keep the prince from seeing signs of old age, sickness, or death. However, during visits to the park Siddhārtha witnessed a very old man, a sick man, a corpse, and finally an ascetic. After this he received news of the birth of his son Rāhula.

Then one night he witnessed his consorts splayed in disgusting array, and he decided to leave the worldly life. He ordered his charioteer Channa to saddle his horse Kanthaka, he entered his wife's room for a last look at her and at their son, and then he took his leave from the world (*pravrajyā*). This story of the four sights definitely does not belong to the earliest traditions of the life of the historical Buddha, but it became a constituent of all biographies of the Buddha at an early date. Originally it was derived from the legendary biography of a former buddha that is narrated in the *Mahāvadāna-sūtra* in the form of a sermon of the Buddha.

At the time of his departure from his home, the bodhisattva was twenty-nine years old. After following the instructions of several teachers mentioned earlier, and after undergoing extreme ascetic practices, the bodhisattva obtained full enlightenment (*samyak-sambodhi*) under the bodhi tree at BODH GAYĀ.

MĀRA, the evil one, is said to have tried to prevent the Buddha from teaching his doctrine to humankind. But the Buddha had become invincible by the power of his perfections, and he successfully repelled Māra. From the moment the Buddha decided to teach the dharma, he was the *Samyaksambuddha*, the “Fully Enlightened Buddha” of the current world period.

The records of the Buddha’s first sermon at Benares are certainly based on historical reminiscences. Some of the many events that are narrated in the various biographies of the Buddha do, in fact, have a historical background, especially those events that occurred during his period of teaching. However, all these stories were greatly exaggerated and many stories were invented in the later period. Among them, the JĀTAKA and AVADĀNA stories are important. These stories claim to be narratives of the Buddha’s former existences, before he was reborn in his last existence. Such stories are already found in later parts of the canonical collections of Buddhist scriptures, but many new stories of this kind were invented up till the medieval period. Similarly, the Buddha’s supernatural powers are also described in early canonical texts, but many additional supernatural faculties are described in later texts.

While some features are more or less common to all biographies of the Buddha, there are many differences in the details. Complete biographies of the Buddha seem to have been compiled no earlier than the second century C.E., as Étienne Lamotte points out in *Histoire du bouddhisme indien: Des origines à l'ère śaka* (pp. 725–736). The most famous biography of the Buddha is the BUDDHACARITA, which was composed by the poet AŚVAGHOṢA, a brahmin who was converted to Buddhism. This work was widely read in Buddhist countries and transcended sectarian doctrinal differences. A Buddha biography from the *Mūlasarvāstivāda* tradition, probably the most widespread of the so-called schools (*nikāya*) of Buddhism in medieval India, has come down to us in a Tibetan translation. This text was translated into English by W. W. Rockhill in 1884. Another famous biography of the Buddha composed in mainland India is the LALITAVISTARA. It professes to be a work of the Sarvāstivāda school of HĪNAYĀNA Buddhism, but in fact shows strong influence of early MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism. This is also true of the MAHĀVASTU which, though a work of the MAHĀSĀṂGHĪKA SCHOOL of mainstream Buddhism, shows many characteristics of “Mahāyāna-in-the-making” or “semi-Mahāyāna.” Several other Indian texts of this genre have survived in Chinese translations only.

The Theravāda tradition of Buddhism includes short biographies of the Buddha in late canonical texts that may have been composed in India and brought to the Island of Sri Lanka in the first or second century C.E., at the latest. The earliest available comprehensive biography of the Buddha in this tradition, however, is the *Jātakanidāna* (ca. fifth or sixth century C.E.). It forms the introduction of the commentary on the *jātaka* stories. Descriptions of the life of the Buddha in East Asian and in Central Asian traditions are greatly influenced by the legendary accounts as handed down in the later Indian tradition because they are largely based on translations of Sanskrit texts composed in mainland India.

### Buddhas of earlier ages

As mentioned earlier, a buddha is not a unique being; there were and will be buddhas in the past and in the future. However, there is only one buddha in the world at any time. The texts describe the biographies of many buddhas who lived in earlier periods. The mythical biographies of six buddhas of antiquity are described in a sermon preached by the historical Buddha. This sermon is found in all parallel versions of the early *Mahāvādāna-sūtra* (Pāli, *Mahāpadāna-suttanta*). Later Mahāyāna texts and Theravāda literature have increased the number of buddhas of antiquity more and more.

### The cult of the relics of the Buddha

When the historical Buddha passed away, his funeral rites were performed in accordance with traditional practice. The cremation was carried out by the Mallas, who lived in Kuśinagara. The bones left after the cremation were divided because King Ajātaśatru and other influential personalities claimed a share of the relics. The relics were enshrined in several STŪPAS, and soon the cult of stūpas developed into an important feature of Buddhism. It is believed that relics of the Buddha were later further divided and distributed to many sacred places. Besides the corporeal relics, material objects used by the Buddha, including his alms bowl, were venerated as relics and deposited in stūpas.

### Buddhas of the future

Though the dharma as taught by the Buddha is eternal and immutable, the tradition of the dharma and the process by which it was handed down in the world is subject to the universal law of impermanence. After a certain period, the dharma will disappear from this world, and it will not be known until it is rediscovered

by the next buddha. Thus, to be a buddha is not only a personal quality of a particular being, but rather a task to be fulfilled by any bodhisattva in one of the innumerable kalpas. As with the buddhas of the past, there are similarities in the various biographies of the buddhas who are expected to appear in future ages. These biographies are largely modeled on the main features of the life and legend of the historical Buddha. The next Buddha to appear in the world is MAITREYA. Throughout the centuries, many texts dealing with prophecies concerning the coming of Maitreya were composed.

### Types of Buddhas

The historical Buddha, the founder of the Buddhist religious tradition, was a *samyaksambuddha* (Pāli, *sammāsambuddha*); that is, he has reached NIRVĀṆA by his own efforts without receiving instruction from anyone else. The Buddha was fully enlightened and thus was able to preach the dharma to others. There is another type of buddha: the PRATYĒKABUDDHA (Pāli, *paccekabuddha*), who obtains nirvāṇa by his own efforts but is not able to teach the way to salvation to other beings.

In the Mahāyāna tradition, buddhas are supernatural beings who have descended to the human world out of compassion. There are several classes of transcendental buddhas and transcendental bodhisattvas. They are brought into relation with particular buddha fields (*buddhakṣetra*), which they are supposed to rule. These buddhas and bodhisattvas (e.g., AKṢOBHYA, AMITĀBHA or Amitāyus, Avalokiteśvara, Bhaiṣajyaguru, Mañjuśrī, etc.) became the main object of veneration in Mahāyāna Buddhism. In the later development of Mahāyāna, the concept of *Ādi-buddha*, representing ultimate reality, was developed. It is to be found particularly in the texts of the KĀLACAKRA system.

### Epithets of the Buddha

Buddhist literature offers several synonyms for the term *buddha*, as well as epithets mainly or exclusively used to refer to buddhas. An ancient term for a buddha is TATHĀGATA (thus come/gone one). As R. O. Franke pointed out, this term refers to an old messianic expectation that an enlightened being would appear in this world (pp. xiv–xxix). Some epithets relate to particular qualities of buddhas, such as *samyaksambuddha* (a perfect enlightened one); other terms relate to the buddhas' intellectual or moral qualities, for example *sarvajña* (omniscient). The most famous list of epithets

for the Buddha is found in the ancient sūtras announcing the coming of a *tathāgata*. The epithets listed there are *bhagavat* (elevated), arhat (holy), *samyaksambuddha* (fully enlightened), *vidyācaraṇasaṃpanna* (endowed with knowledge and good moral conduct), *sugata* (who has gone the right way), *lokavid* (who knows the world), *anuttara* (who cannot be surpassed), *puruṣadamyasārathi* (the charioteer of men that need to be tamed), and *śāstā devamanuṣyānām* (the teacher of gods and men). The *Mahāvīyutpatti*, a classical Buddhist lexicographical work, lists as many as eighty epithets for the Buddha.

*See also:* Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Pāramitā (Perfection)

### Bibliography

- Bareau, André. *Recherches sur la biographie du Buddha*, 3 vols. Paris: Presses de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1971–1995.
- Bechert, Heinz, ed. *Die Sprache der ältesten buddhistischen Überlieferung: The Language of the Earliest Buddhist Tradition*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1980.
- Bechert, Heinz, ed. *The Dating of the Historical Buddha*. Vols. 1–3. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1991–1997.
- Carrithers, Michael. *The Buddha*, 12th edition. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Dutoit, Julius. *Die duṣkaracaryā des Bodhisattva in der buddhistischen Tradition*. Strassburg, Germany: Trübner, 1905.
- Ebert, Jorinda. *Parinirvāṇa: Untersuchungen zur ikonographischen Entwicklung von den Anfängen bis nach China*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Steiner, 1985.
- Edwardes, Michael. *A Life of the Buddha, from a Burmese Manuscript*. London: Folio Society, 1959.
- Foucaux, P. E., trans. *Le Lalitavistara*, 2 vols. Paris: Musée Guimet, 1884–1892.
- Foucher, A. *La vie du Bouddha d'après les textes et les monuments de l'Inde*. Paris: Maisonneuve, 1949. Available in English as *The Life of the Buddha According to the Ancient Texts and Monuments of India*, tr. Simone Brangier Boas. Middletown, CT: Wesleyan University Press, 1963.
- Franke, R. O. *Dīghanikāya: Das Buch der langen Texte des buddhistischen Kanons*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1913.
- Frauwallner, Erich. "The Historical Data We Possess on the Person and Doctrine of the Buddha." *East and West* 7 (1956): 309–312. Reprinted in Frauwallner, Erich. *Kleine Schriften*, ed. G. Oberhammer and E. Steinkellner. Wiesbaden, Germany: Steiner, 1982.



- Hirakawa, Akira. *A History of Indian Buddhism*, tr. Paul Groner. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Johnston, E. H., ed. and trans. [Aśvaghoṣa]. *The Buddhacarita or Acts of the Buddha*, 2 vols. Lahore: University of the Punjab, 1935–1936. Reprint in 1 vol., Delhi: Motilal Barnassidass, 1972.
- Jones, J. J., trans. *The Mahāvastu*, 3 vols. London: Luzac, 1949–1956.
- Klimkeit, Hans-Joachim. *Der Buddha: Leben und Lehre*. Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 1990.
- Krom, Nicolaas Johannes, ed. *The Life of Buddha on the Stūpa of Barabudur According to the Lalitavistara Text*. The Hague, Netherlands: Nijhoff, 1926.
- Lamotte, Étienne. “The Buddha, His Teachings, and His Sangha.” In *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*, ed. Heinz Bechert and Richard Gombrich. London: Thames and Hudson, 1984.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *Histoire du bouddhisme indien: Des origines à l'ère śaka*. Louvain, Belgium: Publications Universitaires, 1958. Available in English as *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste, 1988.
- Mukherjee, Biswadeb. *Die Überlieferung von Devadatta, dem Widersacher des Buddha in den kanonischen Schriften*. München: Kitzinger, 1966.
- Nakamura, Hajime. *Gotama Buddha*. Los Angeles and Tokyo: Buddhist Books International, 1977.
- Nakamura, Hajime. *Indian Buddhism: A Survey with Bibliographical Notes*. Tokyo: Kansai University, 1980.
- Ñānamoli, Bhikkhu, ed. and trans. *The Life of the Buddha, as It Appears in the Pali Canon*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1972.
- Narada Maha Thera. *The Buddha and His Teachings*, 2nd edition. Singapore: Stamford Press, n.d.
- Oldenberg, Hermann. *Buddha: Sein Leben, Seine Lehre, Seine Gemeinde*, 13th edition. Stuttgart: Cotta, 1959. Available in English as *Buddha: His Life, His Doctrine, His Order*, tr. William Hoey. Delhi: Indological Book House, 1971.
- Rockhill, William Woodville. *The Life of the Buddha and the Early History of His Order, Derived from Tibetan Works*. London: Kegan Paul, 1884.
- Saddhatissa, Hammalawa. *The Life of the Buddha*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1976.
- Schumann, Hans Wolfgang. *Der historische Buddha*. Köln, Germany: Diederichs, 1982.
- Silva-Vigier, Anil de. *The Life of the Buddha Retold from Ancient Sources: Illustrated with 160 Works of Asian Art*. London: Phaidon, 1955.
- Snellgrove, David L. *The Image of the Buddha*. New Delhi: Vikas/UNESCO, 1978.
- Thomas, Edward J. *The Life of Buddha as Legend and History*, 6th edition. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1960.
- Waldschmidt, Ernst. *Die Überlieferung vom Lebensende des Buddha: Eine vergleichende Analyse des Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra und seiner Textentsprechungen*, 2 vols. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1944–1948.
- Waldschmidt, Ernst. *Die Legende vom Leben des Buddha*. Berlin: Wegweiser, 1929. Reprint, Graz, Austria: Verlag für Sammler, 1982.
- Wieger, Léon. *Bouddhisme chinois*. Vol. 2: *Les vies chinoises du Buddha*. Paris: Cathasia, 1913.
- Windisch, Ernst. *Māra und Buddha*. Leipzig, Germany: Hirzel, 1895.
- Zafropulo, Ghiorgo. *L'illumination du Buddha: Essais de chronologie relative et de stratigraphie textuelle*. Innsbruck, Austria: Institut für Sprachwissenschaft, 1993.

HEINZ BECHERT

## BUDDHA, LIFE OF THE, IN ART

Because no single account of the Buddha's life survives, many Indian texts, most notably the LALITAVISTARA and the BUDDHACARITA, have been used to inspire artists seeking to represent important events from the Buddha's biography. Narrations were also composed in China and ancient Tibet. The number of events that are codified as important varies from four to 108. Events that could be associated with particular sites in northeast India usually formed the core of the lists; for example, the Buddha's birth in Lumbinī, his enlightenment in BODH GAYĀ, his first sermon in Sārnāth, and his death in Kuśinagara. The Buddha's previous lives are extensively presented as instructive examples or parables, so the JĀTAKAS (birth stories) also inspired countless artworks portraying the “life” of the Buddha. Different Buddhist traditions and different countries chose from among these stories the ones that spoke to their particular needs. The life of the Buddha as narrated in art also became a model for characterizing the lives of other Buddhist teachers and deities. The transcendent buddhas of the MAHĀYĀNA and VAJRĀYANA traditions, for example, are characterized as concrete manifestations of Śākyamuni by depicting them with attributes and gestures linked to particular events in the Buddha's life.

It can be argued that since texts refer to the Buddha's life to teach particular doctrines, they put their own spin on the events. The same could be said about the visual arts because choices must be made about



A representation of the birth of the Buddha. (From a painting at Yongjusa in Suwŏn, South Korea.) © Leonard de Selva/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

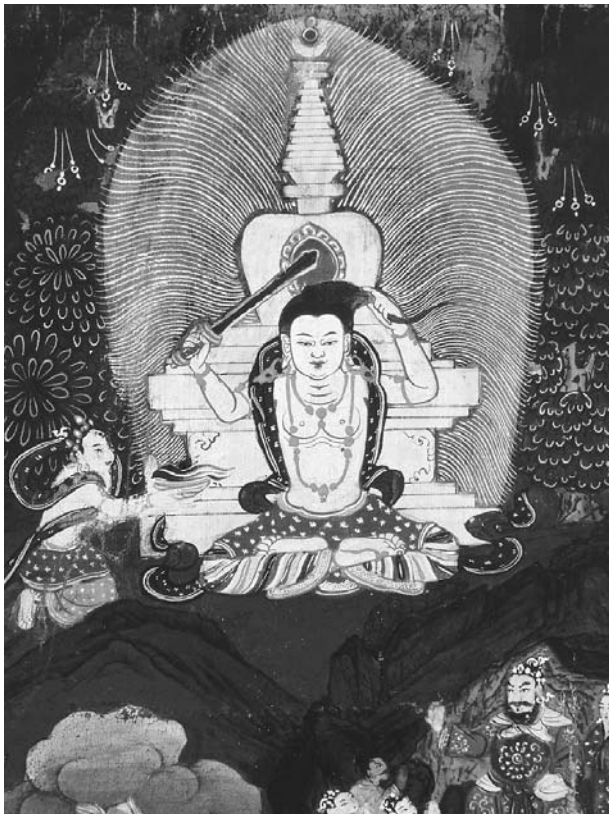
which events to emphasize and how to interpret their meaning. However, the visual images that are used by all schools and regions to narrate the Buddha's life seem to provide a more resonant level of clarity to the Buddha's teachings than could be achieved with texts alone.

### From the dream of Queen Māyā to the great renunciation

The Buddha's mother, Queen Māyā (sometimes Ma-hāmāyā, "Great Illusion"), dreamt that a silvery-white elephant, holding a white lotus flower in its trunk, entered her right side. Brahmanic priests asked to interpret the dream foretold the birth of a son who would become either a great monarch or a sage. This miracle is portrayed only on early Indian STŪPA reliefs in which Māyā reclines with a small elephant floating above her.

The symbolism of the elephant probably resonated with early patrons as the pan-Indian symbol of supreme royalty and of the life-giving rain from thunderclouds.

Māyā gave birth to the future Buddha at Lumbinī, a village in southern Nepal. She entered a grove of trees, reached up to grasp a branch, and the prince emerged from her right side. This miraculous birth is often depicted on aniconic reliefs that include no image of the baby. Māyā is shown as a nearly nude Indian fertility spirit called a *śālabhañjikā*, a *yakṣī* who stands in a dance posture holding the branch of a tree. Beginning in the second century C.E. in the Gandhāra region in present-day Pakistan, a tiny child is shown emerging from her side. In artworks from China and Japan, Māyā is shown as a fully clothed dancer with a baby diving out of her long right sleeve.



The Buddha cuts his hair as he renounces the world. (Tibetan painting, eighteenth century.) The Art Archive/Musée Guimet Paris/Dagli Orti (A). Reproduced by permission.

After the child is born, he is bathed by two streams of water. In Indian depictions, the water comes either from jars held by gods or from the trunks of elephants. In Southeast Asia, the water flows from the mouths of mythical serpents called *nāgas*. In the Himalayas and East Asia, dragons take over this role. The art of each region uses whichever local creature represents the power of water to confer royal status (the *abhiṣeka* ritual) and to purify. In Japan there is an annual lustration ceremony of the baby Buddha called *Kanbutsu*.

The Buddha's life as the prince Siddhārtha Gautama is depicted as one of sheltered dalliance and a time of training in the skills needed to rule a kingdom. When he was about twenty-nine years old, after he has had a son appropriately named Rāhula (fetter), Siddhārtha is motivated to leave the palace to seek an understanding of the suffering he sees in the world. This event, which is frequently depicted in the art of South and Southeast Asia, is called the "great renunciation" because it represents the enormous sacrifice of his princely lifestyle. Siddhārtha rides out on a horse whose hooves are supported by demigods (*YAKṢAS*) so that the horse makes no noise to wake Siddhārtha's

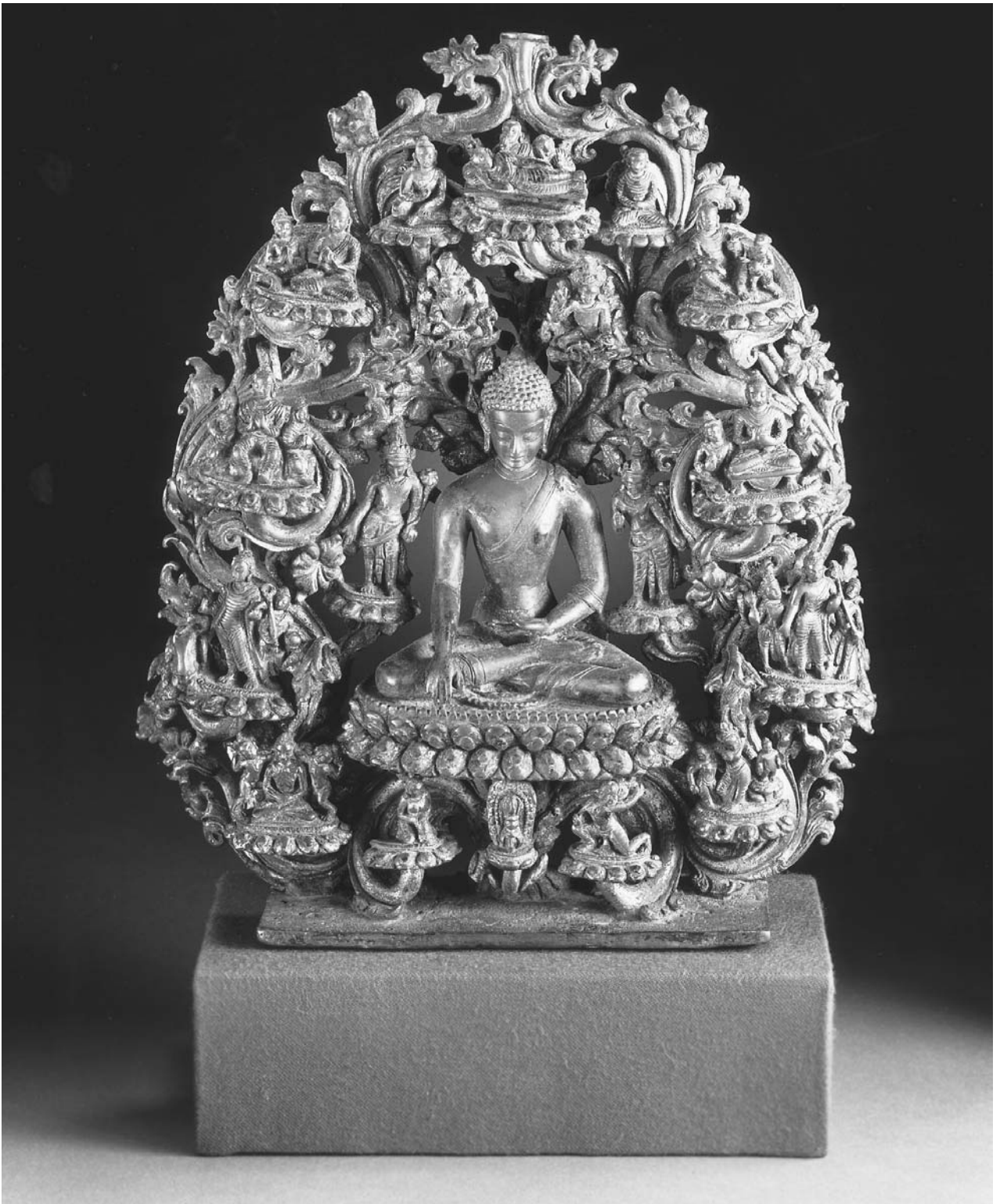
family. In aniconic representations the horse has no rider, but a parasol above the horse indicates Siddhārtha's presence. In South and Southeast Asia the fact that the Buddha was born to be a prince and renounced this privileged life is of great importance because by this act he denied both caste and royal obligations, and affirmed the value of seeking enlightenment.

### From the search for truth to enlightenment

Siddhārtha practiced yogic austerities almost to the point of death in his supreme effort to gain higher states of consciousness. Artists in the Gandhāra region sculpted an image of this emaciated figure in what would be called today a superrealistic style. Every bone, vein, and hollowed surface of his body is shown in glaring detail. The CHAN SCHOOL of East Asia also celebrates this stage of the Buddha's life in paintings of a scruffy figure emerging from the mountains and in sculptures of an emaciated, bearded figure in deep thought, although not in a traditional meditation posture. The THERAVĀDA and Chan view of the Buddha's life honors the extremes in his search for truth as he pushed his body and mind to their farthest limits.

When starvation did not reveal the truth to Siddhārtha, he took nourishment offered by a girl named Sujātā—an event sometimes shown in Indian reliefs and Southeast Asian paintings, and he vowed to sit beneath a fig tree in meditation until he became enlightened. Images of the Buddha Śākyamuni seated in a meditation posture, which appear throughout Buddhist Asia, refer to this vow.

While meditating beneath the bodhi tree, the name it acquired after his enlightenment, Siddhārtha was assaulted by MĀRA, the Buddhist god of death and desire. Called the *Māravijaya*, or conquest of Māra, this event is a common subject of sculptures and paintings in all parts of Buddhist Asia. Māra, often riding an elephant, leads both his armies of demons and his beautiful daughters in an effort to distract Siddhārtha from his vow. The Buddha is often shown seated in meditation in the midst of these figures with his right hand reaching down to touch the earth (*bhūmisparśa-mudrā*) as he asks the earth to bear witness to his perfection and utter commitment to becoming a buddha, an awakened or enlightened one immune to death or desire. Māra is thus defeated. The earth-touching gesture alone also refers to the defeat of Māra and signifies the moment when Siddhārtha Gautama becomes the Buddha. On aniconic monuments, the Buddha's



*Buddha Śākyamuni and Scenes from the Life of Buddha*, copper sculpture with traces of gilding, Nepal, twelfth century. Los Angeles County Museum of Art, Gift of Mr. and Mrs. Michael Phillips. Reproduced by permission. The center of this image shows the Buddha in the *bhūmiśparśa-mudrā* at the moment of his enlightenment beneath the bodhi tree. Beginning below the Buddha's left knee, counterclockwise, the events represented are: birth and first seven steps at Lumbini; miracle at Sankisya; first sermon at Sārṇāth; monkey offering honey; the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa* surrounded by disciples; Buddha preaching to his mother; miracle at Śrāvastī; taming the mad elephant; and the emaciated Buddha during his search for truth.

enlightenment is represented by an empty seat beneath a tree.

After the Buddha was enlightened, he remained in meditation for seven weeks. During this time a torrential rain occurred and the serpent king (*nāgarāja*) named Mucalinda protected the Buddha from the storm by lifting him above the waters and spreading his seven hoods out over the Buddha's head. Images of this event are common in Cambodia where the *nāga* is especially revered and seen to be the protector of the Cambodian king. During the Khmer empire in the early thirteenth century, a cult was introduced around this image, possibly to honor King Jayavarman VII (r. ca. 1181–1219) as both a living buddha and as the protector of his kingdom. After this king's reign ended, there was an iconoclastic reaction in Cambodia to Jayavarman's use of the images to have himself worshiped as a god.

### From the first sermon to the *parinirvāṇa*

The Buddha delivered his first sermon at the Deer Park in Sārnāth. Images showing him with the “turning the Wheel of the Dharma” gesture (*dharmacakra-mudrā*) refer to this event. The importance of this gesture is that the Buddha is setting in motion the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS and revealing the middle path by which anyone can transcend the sufferings of living in the world. This image further represents all of the Buddha's teachings as expounded by the various miracles and doctrines, and is therefore used in art throughout Asia. A wheel alone can also symbolize the *dharmacakra* and the first sermon, especially if it is surrounded by two deer to indicate the context of the teaching. This symbol is commonly sculpted on Mahāyāna and Vajrayāna monasteries or temples, as well as on early aniconic monuments.

The Buddha taught and performed miracles for more than forty years after his enlightenment. Any standing Buddha image, often displaying the protection (*abhaya*) and giving (*varada*) gestures, can be viewed as representing this stage in Śākyamuni's life. The walking Buddha image in Thailand represents the impact of this part of the Buddha's life especially well. The aniconic version of the Buddha's ministry is equally eloquent: footprints to represent the Buddha's continued presence in this world. The great miracle at Śrāvastī, when the Buddha multiplied himself before a congregation to demonstrate that his potential exists everywhere, is a frequent subject in South Asian and Chinese arts, especially in painting, where it may simply be shown as a whole mural of identical buddhas.

When he was approaching nearly eighty years old, the Buddha Śākyamuni traveled to a city called Kuśinagara and died. In the texts this event is called his *parinirvāṇa*, the Buddha's complete or final achievement of NIRVĀṆA. The primary symbol of the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa* is the STŪPA, the commemorative monument to his death; as the stūpa form evolved into the *mchod rten* (*chorten*), *dagoba*, and the pagoda, it retained this symbolism. Images of the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa* show him reclining on his right side with his head resting on his right hand. Depictions of this “posture” vary in size, from tiny to colossal: Huge sculptures of the *parinirvāṇa* can be found in India, Sri Lanka, and many sites in East and Southeast Asia. A colossal image was erected at the archaeological site of ancient Kuśinagara in the twentieth century. The meaning of the stūpa and the reclining Buddha encompasses the promise that any human being can achieve nirvāṇa like the Buddha if they follow his last teaching: “work toward enlightenment with diligence.”

*See also:* Buddha, Life of the; Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; China, Buddhist Art in; Dunhuang; India, Buddhist Art in; Indonesia, Buddhist Art in; Jātaka, Illustrations of; Mudrā and Visual Imagery; Sāñci; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in; Theravāda Art and Architecture

### Bibliography

- Cummings, Mary. *The Lives of the Buddha in the Art and Literature of Asia*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1982.
- Dehejia, Vidya. “On Modes of Visual Narration in Early Buddhist Art.” *Art Bulletin* 71 (1990): 374–392.
- Dehejia, Vidya. “Aniconism and the Multivalence of Emblems.” *Ars Orientalis* 21 (1991): 45–66.
- Dehejia, Vidya. *Discourse in Early Buddhist Art: Visual Narratives of India*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1997.
- Ghose, Rajeshwari, ed. *In the Footsteps of the Buddha: An Iconic Journey from India to China* (exhibition catalogue). Hong Kong: University Museum and Art Gallery, University of Hong Kong, 1998.
- Huntington, Susan L. “Early Buddhist Art and the Theory of Aniconism.” *Art Journal* 49, no. 4 (1990): 401–408.
- Huntington, Susan L. “Aniconism and the Multivalence of Emblems.” *Ars Orientalis* 22 (1992): 111–156.
- Karetzky, Patricia E. *Early Buddhist Narrative Art: Illustrations of the Life of the Buddha from Central Asia to China, Korea and Japan*. Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 2000.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *Light of Asia: Buddha Śākyamuni in Asian Art*. Seattle and London: University of Washington Press, 1984.

GAIL MAXWELL

BUDDHA-NATURE. See *Tathāgatagarbha*

## BUDDHĀNUMŚṚTI (RECOLLECTION OF THE BUDDHA)

*Buddhānumśṛti* (recollection of the Buddha) is the first of a set of up to ten *anusmṛtis* (acts of recollection or calling to mind) that are used for both meditative and liturgical purposes. The full set of ten *anusmṛtis* comprises Buddha, dharma, saṅgha, morality, liberality, deities, respiration, death, parts of the body, and peace. Buddhist practitioners focus their minds on these subjects by reciting a set text or formula listing their salient qualities. The recollection of the Buddha was the most important *anusmṛti*, eventually becoming an independent practice.

Initially the relevant formula comprised the so-called ten epithets or titles of the Buddha, in that practitioners were instructed to recall that the Buddha was indeed worthy, correctly and fully awakened, perfected in knowledge and conduct, blessed, knower of the world, supreme, trainer of humans amenable to training, teacher of gods and humankind, Buddha, and lord. This credal rehearsal of the Buddha's qualities was held by authorities like BUDDHAGHOSA (fifth century C.E.) to purify the mind of defilements and prepare it for advanced meditation. However, other benefits were also ascribed to the practice, so that *buddhānumśṛti* was, for example, thought useful for apotropaic purposes, for warding off fear and danger, as well as for generating merit.

At some stage *buddhānumśṛti* was augmented to include the calling to mind not only of the Buddha's virtues but also his physical appearance. Iconography probably influenced this process, which by the second century C.E. had given rise to the Mahāyānist *pratyutpannasamādhi*, a full-fledged visualization of the spiritual and physical qualities of any buddha of the present age, not just Gautama. This meditation incorporated the earlier form of *buddhānumśṛti*, whose text remained the nucleus of the mental operations required, even though its recitation was eventually shortened to the invocation of the buddha's name. In Chinese Buddhism, consequently, *buddhānumśṛti* is known as *nianfo*, in which the element *nian* refers both to thinking about the buddha (*fo*) and reciting him, or rather his name. *Nianfo* came primarily to refer to invocation of the name of AMITĀBHA, on account of the

importance of that buddha's cult in East Asia. The words *Namu amituo fo* (hail to the Buddha Amitābha) have accordingly become a prime liturgical and ritual formula for Chinese Buddhists, who have used them in communal worship, in personal devotions, even as a Buddhist greeting when answering the telephone. Similar developments have occurred in Korea and Japan. Even Buddhists who are not devotees of Amitābha have been deeply influenced by this practice, one example of this being the invocation of the DAIMOKU, or the sacred title of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SAD-DHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), by followers of the NICHIREN SCHOOL.

The persistence of *buddhānumśṛti* and its derivatives testifies to the central importance in Buddhism of the relationship between those who seek salvation and the awakened teacher who shows them the PATH, and it reflects the belief that focusing the mind on the qualities of the awakened one helps aspirants to liberation move closer toward realizing those qualities themselves. The latter notion is explicitly developed in MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism, and even more so in VAJRAYĀNA, where it informs the tantric practice of "deity yoga."

See also: **Buddha(s); Chanting and Liturgy; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul)**

### Bibliography

- Conze, Edward. *Buddhist Meditation*. Allen and Unwin: London, 1956.
- Harrison, Paul. "Commemoration and Identification in Buddhānumśṛti." In *In the Mirror of Memory: Reflections on Mindfulness and Remembrance in Indian and Tibetan Buddhism*, ed. Janet Gyatso. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.

PAUL HARRISON

## BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA)

The term *buddhavacana* (word of the Buddha) is the designation used by Buddhists to describe the contents of the Buddhist CANON, the Tripiṭaka. By designating the Tripiṭaka the "word of the Buddha," Buddhism identifies its scriptures with the dharma of the Buddha and thereby makes an important claim about the authority and authenticity of the canon. While employing this term to support the authority of the scriptures, however, Buddhists have explained the meaning of

*buddhavacana* in two different ways. One explanation holds that the Tripiṭaka is literally the word of the Buddha, spoken by him and committed to memory by his immediate disciples at the First Council just after his death. This literal interpretation maintains that the Tripiṭaka contains all the teachings that the Buddha gave from his first words after his enlightenment to his last teachings before his *parinirvāṇa*.

Another explanation, however, suggests a more liberal interpretation of the meaning of the “word of the Buddha.” The roots of this interpretation go back to the *Mahāpadesa-sutta* of the Pāli canon (*Dīghanikāya*, 123f.), which sets out a procedure and criteria for determining which teachings should be accepted as the “word of the Buddha.” This sūtra explains that if one receives a teaching from a variety of sources, including the Buddha, a SAṄGHA gathering, or a wise teacher, then one should test it by comparing it with an established core of teachings (*sutta* and *vinaya*). If the teaching in question proves consistent with the authoritative core of teachings then it can be declared to be the “word of the Buddha.” This second explanation makes the wisdom of the Buddha, rather than the historical career of the Buddha, the basis for the authority of the canon.

See also: Councils, Buddhist; Hermeneutics; Scripture

### Bibliography

Bond, George D. *The Word of the Buddha: The Tipiṭaka and Its Interpretation in Theravada Buddhism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Gunasena, 1982.

Lamotte, Étienne. “La critique d’authenticité dans le bouddhisme.” *India Antique* (1947): 216–232. Leyden, Netherlands: Brill, 1947. English translation by Sara Boin-Webb, “The Assessment of Textual Authenticity in Buddhism.” *Buddhist Studies Review* 1, no. 1 (1983): 4–15.

GEORGE D. BOND

## BUDDHIST STUDIES

*Buddhist studies* as an umbrella term for the disinterested or nonapologetic inquiry into any aspect of Buddhism or Buddhist traditions generally refers to the modern, academic study of Buddhism in all forms. This approach became possible only with the development in post-Enlightenment Europe of the notion of a comparative study of religions; as a product of this tradition, Buddhist studies has always assumed an outsider’s perspective, even when the scholars carrying out

such studies are themselves Buddhists. The field is therefore an inherently etic, rather than emic, enterprise. This is what separates Buddhist studies, also sometimes referred to as *Buddhology*, from the practice of Buddhism, or from what some today call *Buddhist theology*.

### Major trends

Several major trends may be noticed in the modern study of Buddhism, among which is a tendency to emphasize scriptures, doctrine, and history, with relatively less attention devoted to areas such as RITUAL and material culture. These trends may be attributed to a combination of individual and social-historical factors. Until recently most Westerners who studied Buddhism were first trained in the Western classics, and many were Christian missionaries, or at least deeply familiar with Christian history and thought. Thus, their attempts to locate in Buddhism features parallel to those they recognized in Christianity led them to concentrate their attentions in particular directions. The geographical regions of Buddhism that have received scholarly attention may also be closely mapped against political history: Colonialism and other aspects of Western expansion into Asia, including missionary activity, account for English scholarly interest in India and Ceylon, French interest in Southeast Asia, and German and Russian interest in Central Asia, and therefore for the comparative emphasis placed on those regions by scholars from those countries. Likewise, Japanese interest in Chinese Buddhism may be correlated not only to geographic proximity and to the fact that Japanese Buddhism traces its roots directly to China, but also to the period of Japanese military occupation of China before and during World War II, although these same factors apply in the case of Korea, which has nevertheless received considerably less Japanese scholarly attention.

In this light, it is no surprise that, for example, serious studies of Japanese Buddhism by Western scholars were a rarity until the post-World War II era, since the country itself was for most intents and purposes inaccessible to outsiders. Likewise, the tremendous flowering of studies of Tibetan Buddhism since the early 1960s is a direct result of the Chinese invasion of Tibet in 1950, and the subsequent escape to India and beyond of the DALAI LAMA and tens of thousands of other refugees in 1959, thus bringing the literary and living resources of the Tibetan Buddhist tradition into significant contact with outsiders for the first time. Among the most pronounced recent trends in con-

temporary Buddhist studies is a reduced emphasis on philological or textual studies and a greater stress directed toward cultural or theory-oriented work.

### Traditional approaches

Of course, Buddhists and non-Buddhists alike have examined and reflected upon the tradition from a variety of perspectives from a very early period. Traditional Buddhist histories attest to a long-standing and keen interest by Buddhists in their own history: Such histories include the Ceylonese *Dīpavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Island*) and *Mahāvāṃsa* (*Great Chronicle*) and other histories in Pāli; similar Southeast Asian works, often in vernacular languages; Tibetan works, including the famous histories (*Chos 'byung*) of BU STON and Tāra-nātha, as well as many other, often local, histories; and numerous Chinese, Korean, and Japanese works. While such histories tend to concern themselves with such matters as the relations between the Buddhist monastic communities and political rulers, a different although sometimes related genre of literature, the doxography or classification of tenets, attempts instead to provide a “history” of Buddhist doctrine. Perhaps the oldest clear example of such a text is Bhāvaviveka’s *Tarkajvālā* (*Blaze of Reasoning*), but the genre reaches its full glory in the Tibetan *grub mtha’* and Chinese *panjiao* doxographical literatures. Such texts, however useful, are not histories as such, since their views on the developments of thought or what we would call intellectual history are polemical and not chronological; nor are they disinterested catalogues of doctrines or teachings, since they invariably seek to establish the ultimate primacy of the positions held by their authors. From the non-Buddhist perspective, texts such as Arabic “universal histories” and the accounts of early Christian missionaries have also noticed and described Buddhism since medieval times.

Most scholars of Buddhism concentrate on the study of Buddhism in one particular cultural area, be it India, China, Tibet, or the like. There are good reasons why this is so. Since Buddhism is so fully integrated into the cultural matrix of every land in which it is found, to study the Buddhism of a certain region requires not only a command of the relevant language or languages of a culture area, but also a knowledge of its history, literature, and so on. Although less common today, when many Buddhist scholars consider themselves first and foremost students of Buddhism, in earlier generations those who studied Indian Buddhism were primarily Indologists, as those who studied Chinese Buddhism were Sinologists. While fa-

miliarity with the wide range of cultural facts about India and China, respectively, allowed such scholars to approach Buddhism within its cultural context, there is also much to be learned by examining Buddhism across cultural boundaries, laying emphasis upon its translocal unity rather than on, or in addition to, its local particularity. The latter approach tends to locate the study of Buddhism nearer to religious studies, the history of religions, or comparative religion than it does to area studies.

To a great extent, modern Buddhist studies has emphasized the investigation of ancient texts and their doctrinal contents, with significantly less effort having been put into tracing the place of Buddhism within its broader social context, or into observation of the activities of contemporary Buddhists. The latter lack of emphasis may be seen even in the case of scholars who reside for long periods in Buddhist environments. Thus the great Hungarian scholar Alexander Csoma de Kőrös (1784–1842), who spent several years of intense study in Tibet, produced a number of extremely valuable studies concerning the mountain of Buddhist literature that he read there, but he recorded virtually nothing of what he must have observed of Buddhist monastic or lay life. This is an imbalance that still remains to be redressed sufficiently.

### Focus on India

Until recently, India, the land of Buddhism’s birth, was the prime focus of the majority of scholarly attention paid to Buddhism. This tendency may be attributed directly to the widespread idea that the essence of a tradition is to be discovered in its origins, with subsequent developments demonstrating little more than the decay of a once pristine core. This idea in turn is fundamentally based on the evangelical Protestant anti-Catholicism of the nineteenth century, as can be seen clearly, for instance, in the case of the great pioneer of Indian and Buddhist studies, F. Max Müller (1823–1900). This Protestant view may also be seen in the priority given to studies of the earliest Buddhist scriptures. It can hardly be a coincidence that so many of those European scholars who first began to pay attention to the later, especially philosophical, literature of Buddhism were Belgian and French Catholics, rather than English or German Protestants. Japanese scholars, for different historical reasons, were traditionally more concerned with aspects of the later phases of Buddhism, until influenced by Protestant agendas beginning in the late 1800s. In particular, the significant attention they and other scholars from traditionally Buddhist cultures



have given to doctrine may be explained at least in part as a result of their research having evolved from a fusion of traditional sectarian scholarship with modern Western-influenced methodologies.

The rigorous study of Indian Buddhism began with the investigation of its literature in Pāli and Sanskrit. Among the most important early publications on Pāli were Viggo Fausbøll's 1855 edition of the DHAMMAPADA (*Words of the Doctrine*) and from 1877 the JĀTAKA (*Birth Stories of the Buddha*), and Robert Caesar Childer's 1875 *A Dictionary of the Pāli Language*. The accessibility of these texts tended to significantly influence the ways in which the most ancient Buddhist tradition was imaginatively reconstructed, and still does even today. In 1881 T. W. Rhys Davids (1843–1922) founded the Pāli Text Society in London, and it is to this society that we owe almost all publications of Pāli literature in the West, and most of the published translations of that literature. Recognition must also be given to the philological contributions of Danish scholars, chief among them the massive project of the *Critical Pāli Dictionary* begun in 1924 and ongoing.

Given its historically heavy bias toward textuality, among the most significant landmarks in the history of Buddhist studies must be counted the editions and translations of Buddhist scriptures and related materials. The publication in Japan between 1924 and 1935 of the Taishō edition of the Chinese Buddhist CANON marks a watershed. For the first time, scholars attempted to apply notions of textual criticism to the vast corpus of Chinese Buddhist canonical literature, and to organize its presentation in a scientific fashion; this edition is the standard one in use today. Likewise, the Japanese photo-reprint edition of a complete Tibetan Buddhist canon (the Peking Bka' 'gyur [Kanjur] and Bstan 'gyur [Tanjur]) in the early 1960s for the first time made these treasures widely available to scholars.

Owing to the disappearance of Buddhism from India in roughly the thirteenth century, none of what may have been the Sanskrit canonical collections of Buddhist literature has survived in its entirety, and its treatment has correspondingly been less systematic and comprehensive. The study of this literature began in 1837, when the British government resident in Nepal, Brian Houghton Hodgson (1800–1894), sent eighty-eight Buddhist Sanskrit manuscripts to Paris. These immediately came under the scrutiny of Eugène Burnouf (1801–1852), who in the fifty-one years of his life produced an astonishing body of work, the value of which persists to the present day. He was one of the

first Europeans to study the Pāli language carefully, which prepared him well for his work on the Sanskrit materials. Burnouf's *Introduction à l'histoire du Bouddhisme Indien* (1844) made extensive use of these texts, as did his copiously annotated translation of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), published in 1852. These works, along with Hendrik Kern's history of Indian Buddhism (1882–1884) and Émile Senart's (1847–1928) study of the life of the Buddha (1873–1875), were among the first careful scientific investigations of Buddhism carried out on the basis of a good knowledge of relevant sources.

Burnouf, who was perhaps not incidentally Müller's teacher, may be seen as the father of a Franco-Belgian school of Buddhist scholarship, for just as the regions that were studied may be roughly mapped against a political background, so too may we notice national or regional traditions of scholarship on Buddhism. To this Franco-Belgian school belong, among others, the Indologists Léon Feer (1830–1902), Senart, Sylvain Lévi (1863–1935), Louis de la Vallée Poussin (1869–1938), Alfred Foucher (1865–1952), and Étienne Lamotte (1904–1983), as well as the Sinologists Edouard Chavannes (1865–1918), Paul Pelliot (1878–1945), and Paul Demiéville (1894–1979). Most of these individuals in fact contributed significantly to more than one field, while nevertheless standing firmly in the philological rather than the more recent cultural studies camp. Feer, for example, edited, translated, and studied texts in Pāli, Sanskrit, and Tibetan, as well as other languages, while Lévi contributed to Indian, Chinese, Tibetan, and Central Asian studies.

At almost the same time that Davids and Burnouf were engaged in their textual studies, archaeological investigations of Buddhist sites by Alexander Cunningham (1814–1893), James Burgess (1832–1917), and James Fergusson (1808–1886), among others, were being carried out across India. In the north in particular, efforts to trace the locations central to the Buddha's life were guided by the archaeologists' reading of the recently translated travel account of XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), a Chinese monk who visited India in the seventh century. This way of using non-Indian materials is typical: Until comparatively recently, texts in Chinese and Tibetan were studied much less for their own sake than for the light they might shine on India, and in fact the majority of texts in Chinese and Tibetan to which attention was been paid by scholars were translations into those languages of texts of Indian origin, rather than native works. It is only since the 1980s that significant interest has been directed

both at indigenous works and at the ways in which translations work not as calques of foreign texts but as localized adaptations of those works.

Despite this archaeological research, strictly historical studies of Indian Buddhism have been significantly less common than doctrinal investigations, one exception being studies devoted to AŚOKA. From the time of James Prinsep's initial decipherment in 1834, the inscriptions of the emperor Aśoka have fascinated researchers. Subsequently, scholars such as Georg Bühler (1837–1898), J. F. Fleet (1847–1917), Sten Konow (1867–1948), and Heinrich Lüders (1869–1943) paid careful attention to these and other more strictly Buddhist Indian inscriptions, although it was not until quite recently that attempts have been made to comprehensively collect these materials. In a number of innovative studies since about 1975, Gregory Schopen has revived interest in these vital sources. Inscriptional studies of Southeast Asian sources were carried out mostly by French scholars, while it is to Japanese scholars that we owed most of our materials on Chinese Buddhist inscriptions until very recently, when Chinese scholars themselves have taken up the task of their collection and study.

In significant respects, the directions taken by Buddhist studies have been steered by chance factors. Early interest in Pāli scriptures was not due only to the idea that they reflect the oldest, and thus the most original and pure, state of Buddhism, or to the fact that by virtue of being written in an Indo-European language they seemed linguistically less foreign to Europeans than texts in Chinese or Tibetan. It was also essential that the texts themselves be physically accessible, something that was possible primarily due to the European colonial presence in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia. Correspondingly, it was Hodgson's gifts to Burnouf, and the existence of other manuscript collections in European libraries, along with the fact that Müller was encouraged in this direction by his Japanese students, especially Takakusu Junjirō (1866–1945), that facilitated and inspired early studies of MAHĀYĀNA scriptures. The influences on research priorities, particularly of Japanese ways of understanding Buddhist traditions, deserve to be further investigated. Great assistance was rendered to the investigation of Indian Mahāyāna literature by Franklin Edgerton's publication in 1953 of a dictionary and grammar of Buddhist Sanskrit; its importance can be judged by the fact that the dictionary is used even by scholars of Japanese and Chinese Buddhism.

Occasional chance discoveries of manuscript materials have also had an important impact on research agendas. The so-called Gilgit manuscripts, discovered from a stūpa in what is now Pakistan and published by Nalinaksha Dutt between 1939 and 1959, the Sanskrit materials discovered largely by German expeditions in Central Asia (and published primarily in the series *Sanskrihandschriften aus den Tufanfunden*), and the DUNHUANG manuscripts, mostly in Chinese and Tibetan, kept centrally in London, Paris, and Beijing, along with more recent finds in Afghanistan and in Japanese monasteries, have permitted scholars to uncover aspects of Buddhist thought and practice that had remained entirely unknown, had become obscured in later traditions, or had even been intentionally suppressed. The Dunhuang collections in particular, along with the wall paintings adorning the caves at the site, have proven so important that an entire field of Dunhuang studies has sprung up around their investigation. In addition to the *Lotus Sūtra*, so important in East Asian Buddhism and the recipient of much scholarly attention since the days of Burnouf, the PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE has also been much studied, most notably by Edward Conze (1904–1979).

Although Western philosophers and historians of philosophy have rarely shown interest in Buddhist thought, this is one of the most active areas in Buddhist studies. The foremost scholar of Indian Buddhist thought was without a doubt la Vallée Poussin, who, in addition to producing significant editions of Pāli texts, edited, translated, and studied Madhyamaka texts such as CANDRAKĪRTI's *Prasannapadā* (*Clear-Worded Commentary*) and *Madhyamakāvātāra* (*Introduction to the Madhyamaka*) and Prajñākaramati's *Bodhicaryāvatārapañjikā* (*Commentary on Śāntideva's Introduction to the Practice of the Bodhisattva*), and texts of the logicians such as DHARMAKĪRTI's *Nyāyabindu* (*Drop of Logic*). La Vallée Poussin also translated with copious annotation VASUBANDHU's *Abhidharmaakośabhāṣya* (*Treasury of Abhidharma*) and Xuanzang's *Yogācāra compendium*, the *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi* (*Establishment of the Doctrine of Mere Cognition*). In this way he almost single-handedly provided the basis for much of the subsequent study of Buddhist thought. Others who contributed importantly to this project include Lévi, who published a number of important Sanskrit texts, including some central to the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL, his Japanese student Susumu Yamaguchi (1895–1976), Gadjin Nagao, and Lamotte. Philosophical investigations of the Yogācāra and Madhyamaka traditions continue to occupy many scholars, among whom D. S.

Ruegg and Lambert Schmidhausen have produced outstanding work. Considerable attention has also been given to the later Indian logical tradition since the days of Theodore Stcherbatsky (1866–1942) in the pre–World War II period. Thanks to the efforts of Erich Frauwallner (1898–1974), especially in the decade after the war, Vienna became the center of such studies, carried on now by Ernst Steinkellner and his students and colleagues, including many young Japanese researchers.

Tantric Buddhism, whether that of India, Tibet, China, or Japan, has received comparatively little attention from scholars, no doubt due, in part, to the extreme difficulty of the subject. Its potentially titillating aspects have, predictably, attracted many who are more concerned with seeing in these traditions either esoteric truths or licentiousness, rather than properly understanding them as highly developed forms of the practical application of the complex philosophical systems developed out of the Madhyamaka and Yogācāra systems. Numerous publications purport to address the topic of TANTRA, particularly in Tibetan Buddhism, but the utility of most of these works is open to serious doubt.

### **Tibetan Buddhism**

For a long time, Tibetan Buddhist studies concentrated almost exclusively on making available Indian literature that had been translated and transmitted in Tibetan, despite the fact that among the very earliest scholars in the field were Isaak Jakob Schmidt (1779–1847), Anton von Schiefner (1817–1879), and W. P. Wassiljew (1818–1900), Russians familiar with the living monastic traditions of Mongolia in which were preserved the tradition of Tibetan Buddhist scholarship. Studies such as those of Stcherbatsky and his pupil Eugène Obermiller (1901–1935) on Madhyamaka philosophy and logic as well as historiography, while deeply indebted to Tibetan scholarship, nevertheless kept their prime focus on India, and the same may be said to some extent of the work of the Japanese pioneers of Tibetan studies, although Teramoto Enga (1872–1940), Kawaguchi Ekai (1866–1945), Aoki Bunkyō (1886–1956), and Tada Tōkan (1890–1967) all also spent time studying in Tibet itself. Especially since the massive Russian collections have never been widely accessible, the Japanese collections of Tibetan literature accumulated by these travelers, including both Tibetan translations of canonical materials and native works, were the most important resources available until the last quarter of the twentieth century.

Although some scholars, such as Giuseppe Tucci (1894–1984), had indeed studied Tibetan Buddhism itself, rather than merely seeing in Tibetan translations an otherwise unavailable source of Indian materials, it was the flow of Tibetans fleeing Tibet in 1959 that was decisive for the development of the study of indigenous Tibetan traditions, especially since many of the refugees were highly educated native scholars who were eager to share their knowledge with researchers in England, the United States, and Japan. When the Tibetans fled, moreover, they brought with them libraries of theretofore inaccessible textual materials that, thanks almost single-handedly to the efforts of E. Gene Smith of the U.S. Library of Congress, were reprinted and distributed around the world, making possible for the first time widespread access to the treasures of the Tibetan Buddhist literary tradition. A secondary factor in the development of Tibetan Buddhist studies has been the tremendous religious growth of Tibetan Buddhism itself in the West, made possible primarily by the presence of these refugee Tibetans, and the high profile of the DALAI LAMA on the world stage. Since this has contributed to a general interest in Tibet, one side effect has been an increasing interest in the academic study of Tibetan Buddhism. The same may be said for Zen Buddhism, in which the popularity of the religious practices has had the additional result of inspiring further scholarship on the tradition.

### **Chinese Buddhism**

What was true for Tibetan Buddhist studies also applies to many studies of Chinese Buddhist materials, namely that they were often engaged in with the goal of supplementing the study of Indian Buddhism, rather than for their own sake. This was the case with such works as the comparative catalogues correlating Chinese translations with their Pāli counterparts, or catalogues of Chinese translations of Indian texts. Yet significant investigations of Chinese Buddhism also have a long history. The combined efforts of scholars such as Tang Yongtong (1894–1964), Tsukamoto Zenryū (1898–1980), Demiéville, and Erik Zürcher have allowed us to begin to understand the overall trends of Buddhism in China, and the development of a true Chinese Buddhism, while recent studies by Antonino Forte, Michel Strickmann (1942–1994), and Victor Mair, among others, have opened up new avenues of inquiry into topics such as relations between the Buddhist monastic establishment and the state, esoteric traditions, and the role of Buddhism in the evolution of Chinese vernacular literature.

The CHAN SCHOOL of Buddhism, usually known in the West by the Japanese pronunciation *Zen*, has elicited much attention, although relatively little of this interest has translated into critical scholarship. Japanese scholars belonging to both the Rinzai and Sōtō schools have, of course, always been keenly interested in their own traditions, but it was the discovery early in the twentieth century in the Dunhuang manuscript collections of theretofore completely unknown Chan texts that shattered traditional mythologies, motivating a series of studies by scholars such as Hu Shih (1891–1962), Yabuki Keiki (1879–1939), and the famous D. T. SUZUKI (1870–1966), as a result of which it became more and more difficult to accept as fact the Zen tradition's own stories about itself. A more recent generation of scholars, prominent among them young Americans, was inspired and taught by Yanagida Seizan, Iriya Yoshitaka (1910–1998), and others, and continues to contribute to a radical rethinking of all aspects of the Chan school.

### Japanese Buddhist studies

Most research on Japanese Buddhism until quite recently has been limited to sectarian histories and doctrinal studies, although historians have also taken note of Buddhism as a social force in Japanese history. Traditional Japanese scholarship produced superb works of synthesis, including those concerning works of Indian origin in Chinese translation. Many of these have been of tremendous assistance to modern scholarship, as is the case with Saeki Kyokuga's 1887 annotated edition of the encyclopedic *Abhidharmakośa*; La Vallée Poussin's debt to this work can be seen on every page of his outstanding multivolume French translation (*L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*, 1923–1931).

The bulk of Japanese scholarly attention, however, has been devoted to the background of contemporary Japanese schools, both proximately within Japan and more remotely in their Chinese antecedents. Thus scholars of Kegon, the Japanese branch of the HUAYAN SCHOOL, have studied the HUAYAN JING in Chinese translation, works of the Huayan patriarchs, and the works of Japanese Kegon scholars, while Tendai scholars have studied the *Lotus Sūtra*, and works of ZHIYI (538–597) and later Tiantai School masters, and of SAICHŌ (767–822) and his successors. In the course of such studies, generally little attention is given to other schools or to contextual data. While the value of such works, including for the study of Chinese Buddhism, should not be underestimated, by the same token its limitations must be recognized. Despite excellent

Japanese scholarship on Indian and Tibetan Buddhism beginning in the late nineteenth century, it was only well into the twentieth century that Japanese scholars began to apply anything like the same approaches to their own traditions, and even today most Japanese scholarship on Japanese Buddhism would be better classified as theology (*shūgaku*) than Buddhist studies.

Among the most important research materials resulting from this modern traditional scholarship are the editions of canonical works of the various sects; some of these works, such as the *Dainippon Bukkyō Zensho* (1912–1922), cross over lineage boundaries, while others, such as the collected works of great founders such as DŌGEN (1200–1253), KŪKAI (774–835), SHINRAN (1173–1263), and so forth, do not. This said, it is hard for those not familiar with the Japanese language to appreciate how truly vast and comprehensive is Japanese scholarship on Buddhism, much of which is not limited at all to the Buddhism of Japan. Momentous projects, such as Ono Genmyō's multivolume annotated bibliography of almost all Buddhist literature then known (*Bussho kaisetsu daijiten*, 1932–1935), or Mochizuki Shinkō's almost simultaneous publication of a massive encyclopedia of Buddhism (*Bukkyō daijiten*, 1932–1936), remain basic and essential research tools for the study of Buddhism, despite the advances the intervening years of study have brought. Japanese dictionaries of Buddhist technical vocabulary too, beginning with that of Oda Tokunō (*Bukkyō daijiten*, 1917) and including notably the more recent work of Nakamura Hajime (*Bukkyōgo daijiten*, 1981), have no good parallels in works in other languages.

Buddhist studies in other traditionally Buddhist countries has been less active. Certainly Sri Lankan scholars have devoted considerable attention to multiple aspects of THERAVĀDA Buddhism, particularly in Sri Lanka itself. The same might be said to some extent of scholars in other Southeast Asian countries, not to mention the studies of Korean Buddhism undertaken by Korean scholars, and very recently of Tibetan Buddhism by Tibetans. That much of this work is published in little-known languages, however, limits its broader influence.

### Anthropological studies

Somewhat unexpectedly, perhaps, the area of the Buddhist world that has received the most attention from anthropologists has been Southeast Asia, including Sri Lanka. These studies consider not only MONASTICISM, but the status of Buddhist institutions in lay society, Buddhism and politics, and other issues. The living

traditions of Chinese Buddhism received some attention from Japanese scholars, especially during the period of Japanese occupation, while the meticulous studies of Johannes Prip-Møller (*Chinese Buddhist Monasteries*, 1937) and the later investigations of Holmes Welch (especially *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*, 1967) have recorded a world that has now almost entirely disappeared. Surprisingly little work has been done on the contemporary Buddhism of Japan, despite the ease of access to monasteries and lay Buddhist centers, or on Tibet, although attention paid to the latter has increased recently. Despite considerable interest in the Buddhist monastic codes (VINAYA) from the earliest days of Buddhist studies through the recent work of Hirakawa Akira (1915–2002) and Schopen, little has been done to compare these classical prescriptive codes with actual Buddhist monastic practices.

### Buddhist art

The study of Buddhist art deserves its own treatment, in part because, unfortunately, it has yet to find its rightful place in the mostly text-based field of Buddhist studies. It remains true that most art historians are not sufficiently familiar with Buddhist literature or thought, and that most Buddhist scholars have, at best, only a passing familiarity with the tools and methods of art historians, although some pioneering art historians, such as Foucher, were thoroughly familiar with literary sources as well, and some textualists, such as Dieter Schlingloff, work comfortably with art historical materials. Nevertheless, it is impossible to understand Buddhism in any cultural context without an appreciation of its varieties of artistic expression. Beginning with the first modern encounters with Buddhist arts, however, scholars have attempted to understand their meaning and role. A great deal of attention has been given to the sculpture of the Gandharan region, most notably because of its obvious strong Greek influence, to Chinese monumental sculpture, Southeast Asian sculpture, Japanese sculpture and painting, and to Tibetan painting and bronze images. Studies remarkable for their depth and breadth include the Japanese multivolume examinations of the YUN'GANG and LONGMEN cave complexes, Tucci's monumental study of Tibetan art (*Tibetan Painted Scrolls*, 1949), and Dutch studies of the BOROBUDUR monument in Java.

Fields such as the study of Buddhist music and dance have been almost entirely ignored, despite their obvious centrality in Buddhist WORSHIP and the daily

life of both monastic and lay Buddhism in all cultural contexts. Likewise, it is only recently that Buddhist ritual has drawn the attention of investigators.

Thematic studies have occupied an important place in Buddhist studies. Chief among the topics of discussion for many years were the character of the Buddha, the date at which he lived, and the meaning of NIRVĀNA. More recently, issues such as the meaning of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) in the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL, the status of experience and enlightenment in Chan, and, self-reflexively, how Buddhist studies itself should be carried out, have attracted considerable attention. It is likely that in the years to come, such more conceptual and theoretical studies, as well as comparative investigations, will become more common.

*See also:* Languages

### Bibliography

- Beal, Samuel. *The Romantic Legend of Śākya Buddha*. London: Trübner, 1875.
- Beal, Samuel. *Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner, 1906.
- Burgess, James. *Report on the Buddhist Cave Temples and Their Inscriptions: Archaeological Survey of Western India 4*. London: Trübner, 1883.
- Burnouf, Eugène. *Introduction à l'histoire du Bouddhisme Indien*. Paris: Imprimerie Royale, 1844.
- Burnouf, Eugène. *Le Lotus de la Bonne Loi*. Paris: Imprimerie Nationale, 1852.
- Cunningham, Alexander. *The Bhilsa Topes: Or, Buddhist Monuments of Central India: Comprising a Brief Historical Sketch of the Rise, Progress, and Decline of Buddhism; with an Account of the Opening and Examination of the Various Groups of Topes around Bhilsa*. Bombay: Smith, Taylor; London: Smith, Elder, 1852.
- Edgerton, Franklin. *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1953.
- Griffiths, Paul J. "Recent Work on Classical Indian Buddhism." *Critical Review of Books in Religion* 6 (1993): 41–75.
- Jong, J. W. de. *A Brief History of Buddhist Studies in Europe and America*. Tokyo: Kosei, 1997.
- Kern, Hendrik. *Geschiedenis van het Bouddhisme in Indie*. Haarlem: H. D. Theenk Willink, 1882–1884.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *Bouddhisme: Opinions sur l'histoire de la dogmatique*. Paris: Gabriel Beauchesne, 1909.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*. Paris: Geuthner, 1923–1931. Reprint, Brussels: Institut Belge des hautes Études Chinoises, 1971.

- Lamotte, Étienne Paul Marie. *Histoire du bouddhisme Indien, des origines à l'ère śāka* (1958). Reprint, Louvain, Belgium: Université de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1976. English translation, *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śāka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Université de Louvain, 1988.
- Lamotte, Étienne Paul Marie. *Le Traité de la grande Vertu de Sagesse*. Louvain, Belgium: Université de Louvain, 1944–1980.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.
- McRae, John R. “Chinese Religions: The State of the Field.” Part 2: “Living Religious Traditions: Buddhism.” *Journal of Asian Studies* 54, no. 2 (1995): 354–371.
- Müller, F. Max. *Buddhist Texts from Japan. Anecdota Oxoniensia, Texts, Documents, and Extracts, Chiefly from Manuscripts in the Bodleian and Other Oxford Libraries*. Aryan series, Vol. 1, Part 1. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1881.
- Nagao, Gadjin. “Reflections on Tibetan Studies in Japan.” *Acta Asiatica* 29 (1975): 107–128.
- Obermiller, Eugène (Evgenni Eugen'evich). *History of Buddhism. (Chos 'byung) by Bu-ston: Part 1: The Jewelry of Scripture. Part 1: The History of Buddhism in India and Tibet*. Heidelberg, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1931–1932.
- Prip-Møller, Johannes. *Chinese Buddhist Monasteries: Their Plan and Its Function as a Setting for Buddhist Monastic Life*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Gads Forlag; London: Oxford University Press, 1937.
- Strickmann, Michel. “A Survey of Tibetan Buddhist Studies.” *Eastern Buddhist* 10, no. 1 (1977): 128–149.
- Sueki, Yasuhiro. *Bibliographical Sources for Buddhist Studies: From the Viewpoint of Buddhist Philology*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1998–2001.
- Takakusu Junjirō. *A Record of the Buddhist Religion as Practised in India and the Malay Archipelago (A.D. 671–695) by I-Tsing*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1896.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.

JONATHAN A. SILK

**BURMA.** See Myanmar

## BURMESE, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Belonging to the Sino-Tibetan family of languages, Burmese constitutes the primary language of the largest ethnic group in Myanmar (Burma). Burmese

comprises two distinct styles, each with its own set of linguistic particles to mark the syntactical relations between words. Generally speaking, colloquial Burmese is used when people meet and talk; literary Burmese is used for published materials. And yet, colloquial Burmese sometimes appears in printed form, as in books that contain dialogue. Likewise, literary Burmese may be used in some spoken contexts, such as when news is read on the radio.

For purposes of this survey, the discussion of Burmese Buddhist literature will be divided into two parts: The first part distills developments in Burmese Buddhist literature from the twelfth century up to and extending into the nineteenth century; the second part focuses on relevant developments from the nineteenth century onwards.

### Twelfth to nineteenth centuries

Inscriptions or *kyok<sup>c</sup> cā* (stone-writings) make up the only form of extant Burmese writing prior to the mid-fifteenth century, and they continue to be an important form of writing throughout Myanmar's pre-British colonial period (the British completed their military conquest of Myanmar in 1885; Myanmar gained independence in 1948). The earliest Burmese inscriptions come from Pagan, a major city-state in central Myanmar that reached the zenith of its political and cultural development in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The inscriptions, primarily in prose, often record the meritorious deeds of kings and other laypeople, in particular the construction and donation of monastic and other religious buildings. The inscriptions also sometimes record Buddhist laws set down by kings. The earliest Buddhist law inscription, an edict on theft, dates to 1249.

The sixteenth through the nineteenth centuries witnessed the development of a large body of legal materials composed in manuscript form in Burmese, Pāli, and other languages (e.g., Mon). These legal materials attempt to encode, legislate, and offer precedents for Buddhist practice. Common to the legal literature were *rājasat<sup>c</sup>*, which were laws set down by kings, and *dhammasat<sup>c</sup>*, which were law texts written, for example, by monks.

Historical and biographical materials, such as *rāja-van<sup>c</sup>* (historical accounts of the lineages of kings), are yet another type of Burmese literature with Buddhist elements in pre-nineteenth-century Myanmar. These materials recount the exploits and intrigues of rulers and others, their lines of descent, and their acts of

Buddhist patronage. *Rājavan̄* have been written since the fifteenth century. However, the first *rājavan̄* to attempt to offer a continuous history of Myanmar was Ū" Kalā"s *Mahārājavan̄* *kr̄*" (*Great Chronicle*), which appeared around 1724 (Herbert and Milner, p. 13).

Burmese Buddhist poetic literature appears in the historical record from about 1450 onwards. Among the poetic forms are *pyui*, lengthy and embellished translations of Pāli texts that deal with an event or series of events in the Buddha's life or previous lives (*jātakas*). A famous example of *pyui*-type poetry is the *Kui*" *khan*" *pyui*" (the *pyui* in nine sections), which was authored by a monk in 1523 and based on a *jātaka* tale about a king who wanted an heir.

Finally, Burmese commentaries such as *nissayas* have been composed since the mid-fifteenth century. *Nissayas* were used to communicate in Burmese the inflections, syntax, and meanings of Pāli texts and passages. *Nissayas* and other commentaries continue to play a prominent role in the teaching and transmitting of Pāli texts and ideas up through and extending beyond the nineteenth century.

### Nineteenth to twenty-first centuries

Despite, and partly due to, the political and economic challenges that have confronted Myanmar since the nineteenth century (e.g., colonial conquest, military rule, prolonged economic stagnation), the country has witnessed an efflorescence of Burmese Buddhist literature. As with the various types of Buddhist literature mentioned above, contemporary literature exhibits strong continuities with the conceptual and textual world of the THERAVĀDA Pāli canon, as well as with the Buddhist literary traditions of South and Southeast Asia.

In the contemporary period, there are four types of Burmese Buddhist literature that overlap with and extend several of the pre-nineteenth-century types. By no means exhaustive of available contemporary Burmese literature, the four highlight the range of literature readily accessible to those wishing to investigate Buddhist culture and practice in Myanmar. They are: (1) historical and biographical literature, (2) commentarial literature, (3) legal literature, and (4) devotional and meditational literature. Each type of material has been and continues to be used pedagogically, ritually, ethically, and politically.

Contemporary historical and biographical literature addresses the development and spread of Buddhism. Topics include the building of pagodas and other re-

ligious monuments, the activities of Buddhist-minded leaders, and the lives of various monks and laypeople. Overall, contemporary Burmese Buddhist histories and biographies participate in a predominant tradition of South and Southeast Asian religio-historical writing, which includes the *vaṃsa* literature of Sri Lanka and the *tamnān* literature of Thailand, as well as components of the *kyok* *cā* and *rājavan̄* literatures of Myanmar. An example of contemporary Burmese historical writing is Mahādhamma Saṅkraṃ's *Sāsan-ālaṅkāra cā tam*" (*Ornaments of the Dispensation*), written in 1831 and considered by many Burmese to be an authoritative discussion of the history of Buddhism in Myanmar. Phui" Kyā"s *Kyon*" *to* *rā Rvhe kyan*" *Cha rā to* *bhu rā*" *kr̄*" *theruppatti* (*Life of the Kyauntawya Shwegyin Sayadaw*, 1925) offers a short but informative biography of a monk who became abbot at the Kyauntawya Monastery in Yangon (Rangoon), the capital of Myanmar.

Commentarial materials fall into at least two broad categories. One category consists of materials written in the *nissaya* style of word-by-word translation. Such writings appear in a large number of contexts, including, for example, monastic cremation volumes like *Bhaddanta Indācāra* 'Antimakhari'" (*Reverend Indacara's Final Journey*, 1993), which includes *nissaya* passages that explain the Pāli notion of *saṃvega* (religious emotion).

A second category of commentary consists of treatises on portions of the Pāli canon and other Buddhist texts. An example of a commentarial treatise is Arhaṅ' Janakābhivaṃsa's *Kuiy* *kyan* *'* *'* *abhidammā*, which typifies the exposition of *abhidhamma* (metaphysics) prevalent in contemporary Myanmar. Since its first publication in 1933, Janakābhivaṃsa's text has seen several editions and an English translation by U Ko Lay, *Abhidhamma in Daily Life* (1999).

Contemporary legal materials include *vinicchaya* literature, which concerns rulings given by learned monks. These rulings are promulgated within different monasteries and monastic courts. Whether a given *vinicchaya* is accepted by civil authorities, monks, and laypeople as legally valid is by no means a certainty; however, when a monastic court has been appointed by the state, and the civil and monastic authorities in question agree upon a decision, the chances for general acceptance increase.

A representative example of *vinicchaya* literature hails from 1981, when a body of monks made a ruling on rebirth theory, which was published as a massive tome, complete with documentary photographs, titled

*Lū se lū phrac' vādānuvāda vinicchaya* (*Court Decision on Transmigration*). *Vinicchaya* literature, as well as the contexts in which it is produced and deployed, could be profitably studied in light of Burmese Buddhist legal sources (e.g., *rājasat's*, *dhammasat's*) and culture dating to precolonial Myanmar.

Devotional and meditative literature includes handbooks focused on different aspects of daily practice associated with the Buddha and his teachings. Such handbooks help explain the meaning and dynamics of devotional and meditative activity. Examples include Ū" Tañ' Cui"'s *Pu tī" cip' naññ'"* (*Method of Reciting Stanzas*, 1999) and Muigh'" Nñhañ'" Cha rā to'°s *Vipassanā 'a lup pe" cañ' tarā" krī"* (*Way of Vipassanā Practice*, 1958). The latter volume discusses the intricacies of VIPASSANĀ (SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ; insight) MEDITATION, which has become popular in South and Southeast Asia, as well as in the West.

In closing, it should be emphasized that there are several kinds of material that fall outside the types discussed here. These materials include novels, such as Gurunanda's *Samavati e\* tac' bhava saṃsarā* (*The Life of Samavati*, 1991), which draws its story about a queen from the fifth-century philosopher BUDDHAGHOSA's commentary on the DHAMMAPADA (a work of verse in the Pāli canon). Clearly, a vast literature awaits those willing to engage the complexities of Burmese and the Burmese Buddhist world.

See also: Myanmar; Myanmar, Buddhist Art in; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Bhe Moñ' Tañ', Ū". *Mran'mā cā pe samuiñ'"* (*History of Burmese Literature*). Yangon, Myanmar: Sudhammavati, 1955.
- Chulalongkonmahawithayalai, et al. *Comparative Studies on Literature and History of Thailand and Myanmar*. Bangkok, Thailand: Institute of Asian Studies, Chulalongkorn University, 1997.
- Herbert, Patricia, and Milner, Anthony, eds. *South-East Asia: Languages and Literatures, a Select Guide*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.
- Hla Pe. *Burma: Literature, Historiography, Scholarship, Language, Life, and Buddhism*. Pasir Panjang, Singapore: Institute of Southeast Asian Studies, 1985.
- Houtman, Gustaaf. "The Biography of Modern Burmese Buddhist Meditation Master U Ba Khin: Life before the Cradle and past the Grave." In *Sacred Biography in the Buddhist Traditions of South and Southeast Asia*, ed. Juliane Schober. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

Huxley, Andrew. "Studying Theravāda Legal Literature." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 20, no. 1 (1997): 63–91.

Janakābhivamsa, Arhañ'. *Abhidhamma in Daily Life*, tr. and ed. U Ko Lay. Yangon, Myanmar: Aung Thein Nyunt, 1999.

Khin Maung Nyunt. *An Outline History of Myanmar Literature: Pagan Period to Kon-baung Period*. Revised edition. Yangon, Myanmar: Cā pe Biman', 1999.

Kratz, E. Ulrich, ed. *Southeast Asian Languages and Literatures: A Bibliographical Guide to Burmese, Cambodian, Indonesian, Javanese, Malay, Minangkabau, Thai, and Vietnamese*. London and New York: I. B. Tauris, 1996.

Smyth, David, ed. *The Canon in Southeast Asian Literatures: Literatures of Burma, Cambodia, Laos, Malaysia, the Philippines, Thailand, and Vietnam*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 2000.

JASON A. CARBINE

## BU STON (BU TÖN)

Bu ston rin chen grub (pronounced Bu tön rinchen-drub, 1290–1364) was the most illustrious member of Zhwa lu Monastery in Gtsang (Tsang), located in west central Tibet. He was also the Tibetan scholar most active in collating and editing the Tibetan Buddhist CANON, the *Bka' 'gyur* and *Bstan 'gyur*. The *Bka' 'gyur* (*Kanjur*) is the collection of Tibetan translations of works attributed to the Buddha. The *Bstan 'gyur* (*Tanjur*) is the collection of Tibetan translations of important Buddhist commentaries and other related materials. The formation of the *Bka' 'gyur* and *Bstan 'gyur* began with the collecting of manuscripts and translations of Buddhist texts into Tibetan in the early ninth century. The process culminated in the early fourteenth century when, according to the *Blue Annals* (a translation of Gzhon nu dpal's *Deb ther sngon po*), manuscripts scattered over many monasteries and temples in Tibet were gathered together in Snar thang (Narthatang) Monastery.

Bu ston then took the Snar thang version of the canon to Zhwa lu, where he checked the translations against Indian originals, added other works, and produced a *Bka' 'gyur* and an authoritative version of the *Bstan 'gyur*. The *Bka' 'gyur* and *Bstan 'gyur* that Bu ston edited is the origin of the majority of the extant Tibetan canons. The categories under which he grouped the various texts are the most widely used and admired. He gives a detailed description of his work in his *Chos 'byung* (*History of Buddhism*), partially translated into English by the Russian scholar Eugène Obermiller in the 1930s.



Bu ston was a conservative editor. As D. S. Ruegg says in *The Life of Bu ston Rinpoche* (1966), “Bu ston . . . follows an objective criterion of authenticity which can be accepted by any editor” (p. 28). In practice this led Bu ston to exclude some tantras accepted as authentic by the RNYING MA (NYINGMA), or Old School, of Tibetan Buddhism on the grounds that no original Indian version could be located.

Bu ston’s collected works (*gsung ’bum*) include more than two hundred titles in seventeen volumes. Besides his work on the canon, Bu ston composed important commentaries on the yoga set of tantras and on the KĀLACAKRA *Tantra*. He also wrote a well-known commentary on the Perfection of Wisdom sūtras called *Lung gi nye ma*, as well as a commentary on the *Abhidharmasamuccaya* of ASAṄGA. Even before Bu ston, Zhwa lu Monastery was known for its expertise in these two areas, and a Zhwa lu school of Tibetan Buddhism is mentioned in earlier histories. After Bu ston, the Zhwa lu school went into decline and was largely eclipsed by the SA SKYA (SAKYA), BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU), and DGE LUGS (GELUK) sects, but the tradition of studying Bu ston’s works continued. It became

so widespread that the study of Bu ston’s works (*bu lugs*) became a minor tradition in itself.

Bu ston’s views were highly influential in his day (for example, TSONG KHA PA’s *Sngags rim chen mo*—partially translated into English by Jeffrey Hopkins as *Tantra in Tibet*—draws heavily on Bu ston’s work on the yoga tantras) and remain so today. Bu ston’s works are still the central texts for study in a number of Tibetan monasteries.

*See also:* Tibet

### **Bibliography**

- Eimer, Helmut, ed. *Transmission of the Tibetan Canon: Papers Presented at a Panel of the 7th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Graz 1995*. Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1997.
- Obermiller, Eugène, trans. *History of Buddhism*. Heidelberg, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1931–1932.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort, trans. *The Life of Bu ston Rinpoche*. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1966.

GARETH SPARHAM



## CAMBODIA

Cambodia in the twenty-first century understands itself as a THERAVĀDA Buddhist nation. While this self-conscious identification as a Theravāda nation is fairly recent, the history and development of Buddhism in the region that constitutes present-day Cambodia extend back nearly two millennia. During this time numerous transformations occurred that led scholars to suppose that the Khmer Buddhism of today is markedly different from Khmer Buddhism even two centuries ago, before the rise of modern Buddhist institutions in Cambodia. Certain major continuities are also evident in the past two millennia: the intertwining of Buddhist, brahmanist, and spirit practices and understandings; the close ties between religion and political power; and the important role of Buddhist ideas in the articulation of social and ethical values.

The region known today as Cambodia was inhabited two thousand years ago by Khmer-speaking peoples who appear to have congregated in small chiefdoms referred to as Funan by the Chinese. Archeological evidence suggests that Indian merchants, explorers, and monks imported Buddhism into this region at least as early as the second century C.E. The exact manner of the importation of Buddhism, along with other Indian ideas, into Southeast Asia, a process called Indianization, is not fully understood. A consensus has emerged among many historians, however, that Indians probably never established a political and economic process akin to modern colonization by Europeans in Southeast Asia; nor is there thought to have been a large-scale movement of Indian emigrants to Southeast Asia. Rather, many aspects of the language, arts, and literature, as well as philosophical, religious, and political

thought of Indians, were adopted, assimilated, and transformed by Southeast Asians during the first centuries C.E., possibly through a combination of economic, diplomatic, and religious contacts both with India and Indians directly, and also through the cultural medium of other Southeast Asian courts and traders.

Buddhist and brahmanic practices coexisted and became intertwined with local animist traditions and spirit beliefs in the Khmer regions from the second century onward. Buddhist missionaries and pilgrims were active during this period, which may have contributed to the introduction of Buddhism into Southeast Asian courts. Chinese histories indicate that at least one Buddhist from Funan, a monk named Nāgasena, traveled to China in the sixth century. Chinese monks traveling to India by sea stopped en route to visit many sites in present-day Southeast Asia. While no indigenous Buddhist texts from this early period remain, items discovered by archeologists at the site of Oc-Eo (a port city during the Funan era) include Buddha images associated with the MAHĀYĀNA tradition. Chinese records from the period describe Buddhist, Śaivite, and spirit cults and practices among the Khmer, with the central court rituals seemingly concerned with devotion to Śiva, especially through the worship of Śiva-lingam.

Epigraphic evidence for the Buddhist presence begins to appear in the seventh century, during the period referred to as pre-Angkor, when the Khmer regions were apparently dominated by a group of chiefdoms or kingdoms referred to in Chinese records as Chenla. It is difficult to characterize the nature of religious life during this period. Recent historiography on the pre-Angkor period resists the tendency of older scholarship to overinterpret limited epigraphic evidence or conflate European or Indian models of

KINGSHIP and society onto the Khmer context. Inscriptions from the period, predominantly in Khmer and Sanskrit, suggest that the pre-Angkorian rulers were for the most part devotees of Śiva or Viṣṇu, but this does not mean that an Indian-like “Hinduism” was in existence. Drawing on persuasive linguistic evidence, the historian Michael Vickery has pointed to the practice among pre-Angkor Khmer of attributing Indian names to their own indigenous deities. Most pre-Angkor rulers appear to have tolerated and to varying degrees supported Buddhism in their courts, but to what extent Buddhism was known beyond the courts is difficult to gauge. Iconography and historical records from the period suggest that Buddhist influences were being felt from India, China, Sri Lanka, and other parts of Southeast Asia, such as Dvāravatī and Champa, with more than one form of Buddhism in evidence. Numerous Avalokiteśvara figures, as well as a reference to “Lokeśvara” (Avalokiteśvara) appearing in an inscription dated 791 from the Siemreap area of present-day Cambodia, indicate the presence of Mahāyāna ideas. Yet some early Pāli inscriptions have also been found along with Sri Lankan and Dvāravatī style Buddha images showing Theravāda influence.

By the end of the pre-Angkor period, kings were expanding their territories and centralizing political and economic authority, while at the same time seeking to align themselves with deities perceived to hold universal power. The Khmer political concept of a close association between king and deity, known in Sanskrit inscriptions as the *devarāja* cult, must have grown out of indigenous traditions linking rulers and local deities of the earth. It developed more fully during the Angkor period, from the ninth through thirteenth centuries, starting with the kingship of Jayavarman II (r. 802–854). Inscriptions speak of Jayavarman’s patronage of a *devarāja* cult that associated him with Śiva, either as “god-king” or as a devotee of Śiva, “king of the gods.” While the exact relationship between king and deity denoted by this phrase remains controversial among scholars, there is no doubt that the power of kings and deities were closely interwoven in a cult that became a model for the later Angkorian kings. From readings of inscriptions, Angkorian art, and other historical accounts, scholars have surmised that the considerable political and economic influence wielded by Angkorian kings was inseparable from their associations with fertility and agriculture, their superior moral status, and their roles as protectors and propagators of religious devotion, associations that were carried into

the later Buddhist kingships. This range of powers was embodied in their building projects, typically of reservoirs, images, and mountain temples, such as Angkor Wat, the fabulous temple built by Sūryavarman II (r. 1113–ca. 1150) and dedicated to Viṣṇu.

During the Angkorian period, a fuller picture of Buddhism emerges. While most of the earlier Angkorian kings were Śaivite or devotees of the combined Śiva-Viṣṇu deity Harihara, Mahāyāna Buddhism was also becoming increasingly intertwined with kingship. Yaśovarman, regarded as the founder of Angkor (889–900), built three hermitages outside of his capital dedicated to Śiva, Viṣṇu, and the Buddha. Rājendravarman II (r. ca. 944–ca. 968), Jayavarman V (r. ca. 968–ca. 1001), Sūryavarman I (r. 1001–1050), and Jayavarman VI (r. 1080–1107) were all patrons of Mahāyāna Buddhism, though their reigns too remained syncretic. Mahāyāna Buddhism came to the forefront, however, during the reign of Jayavarman VII (r. 1181–ca. 1218), considered to be the “last great Angkorian king.” The complex reasons for Jayavarman VII’s promotion of Buddhism over other Angkorian cults, historian David Chandler suggests, may have stemmed from an apparent estrangement from the Angkor court as well as a period spent in Champa, where Mahāyāna Buddhism was influential. After repelling several bloody Cham invasions, Jayavarman VII responded to the suffering in the aftermath of war with public works intended to embody his compassion: roads, rest houses, hospitals, and reservoirs. His temples Ta Prohm and Preah Kan, built to honor his parents in combination with the goddess of wisdom, Prajñāpāramitā, and the bodhisattva Lokeśvara (symbolizing compassion), contained inscriptions enumerating the thousands of people connected with each temple complex. The BAYON temple in the center of his capital contained a central image of the Buddha, with four-faced images of the bodhisattva Lokeśvara on its towers and exteriors. This image has sometimes been interpreted as a likeness of the king as well, possibly representing a Buddhist extension of the *devarāja* concept to linking of king and BODHISATVA. Following Jayavarman, Buddhism and kingship have remained closely intertwined in Cambodia.

During the eleventh through thirteenth centuries, the same period that Islamization was occurring in maritime Southeast Asia, Theravāda Buddhism rose to prominence throughout mainland Southeast Asia. Scholars are unable to wholly account for the spread of Theravāda Buddhist ideologies and practices during



A view of Angkor Wat, the great twelfth-century Buddhist–Hindu temple complex in Cambodia. © Chris Lisle/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

this period, but historiography in general is moving away from a clear-cut demarcation between Mahāyāna and Theravāda Buddhism in Southeast Asia, as well as the idea that one form of Buddhism simply and rapidly supplanted the other. More likely, given the syncretic traditions in Southeast Asia, different Buddhist ideas and practices became intermingled, just as Buddhism itself became interwoven with spirit worship. Theravāda Buddhism had coexisted with other forms of Buddhism for centuries but became gradually more influential as the Theravāda kingdoms of Pagan and SUKHOTHAI (in present-day Myanmar and Thailand) developed into larger regional powers. As the dominant influence of Angkor waned, increasing contact with these kingdoms may have contributed to the spread and authority of Theravāda ideas in the Khmer regions. A Khmer prince, possibly a son of Jayavarman VII, is supposed to have been among a group of Southeast Asian monks who traveled to Sri Lanka for study at the end of the twelfth century; he was ordained in the Mahāvihāra (also known in Southeast Asia as “Sinhalese”) order, a lineage they carried back to Pagan. In post-Angkorian Cambodia, it has been suggested, a

backlash against the extravagant Mahāyāna expressions of Jayavarman VII led to a “Hindu revival,” and Theravādins may have used this as an opportunity to assert their own interpretations and practices. During the course of the next two centuries, Theravāda Buddhism became assimilated into all levels of Khmer society and synthesized in court and villages with older brahmanic and spirit practices, such as agricultural fertility rites and the worship of *neak ta* (local spirits).

The post-Angkorian or “middle period,” dated by Ashley Thompson from the end of Angkorian influence (the thirteenth through fourteenth centuries) until the mid-nineteenth century, was until recently perceived as one of decline by scholars fixated on the disappearance of the great civilization of Angkor. Recent scholarship tends to view the middle period in terms of multiple shifts: The population and agricultural centers of the kingdom shifted geographically south; cultural influences moved from, as well as to, the Thais; religious devotion continued to be syncretistic but with an emphasis on Theravāda forms and ideas, as reflected in the wooden Theravāda vihāras built adjacent to Angkorian brahmanic stone temples

and the shift in iconography from images of Indian deities to images of the Buddha; Pāli replaced Sanskrit as the language of inscriptions and literature; Khmer also came increasingly to be used, and much of the classical Khmer literature was composed during this time. Theravāda ideas of kingship, MERIT AND MERIT-MAKING, and KARMA (ACTION); a growing emphasis on the biography of the Buddha; and a COSMOLOGY and ethical orientation expressed in ideas about birth, REBIRTH, and moral development in the three-tiered world of the Trai Bhūm are reflected in the art, epigraphy, and literature of the period. At Nōgor Vatt, for instance, a sixteenth-century inscription translated by Thompson refers to the merit produced by a royal couple, the king's subsequent rebirth in Tuṣita heaven, and his resolve to become an ARHAT at the time of the Buddha MAITREYA. Buddhist iconography from the period focused on the depiction of the Buddha, and vernacular literary compositions such as the Rāmkerti transformed its hero into a Buddhist bodhisattva.

The eighteenth and much of the nineteenth centuries in Cambodia were a period of almost continual warfare and unrest, with the Khmer trying to repel invasions from both their Siamese and Vietnamese neighbors. Historical sources from the period suggest that the Buddhist material culture that had been developed during the middle period was widely damaged or destroyed as a result of warfare and social chaos. Beginning in 1848, when Ang Duong (r. 1848–1860) was installed on the Khmer throne by the Siamese, a renovation of Khmer Buddhism was initiated that would last for at least a century. During the rest of the nineteenth century, Khmer Buddhists rebuilt damaged monasteries and monk-scholars traveled to Bangkok to copy lost manuscripts and study Pāli.

The two most prominent Khmer monks of the nineteenth century were Samtec Sangharāj Dīen (1823–1913), who became the saṅgha head in 1857, and Samtec Sugandhādhipatī Pān (1824–1894), the monk who is attributed with the importation of the Thammayutnikāi to Cambodia. Both were educated and ordained in Bangkok, which served as the regional center for Buddhist education during this period. Dīen was captured as a prisoner of war by the Siamese army as a young boy and sent to Bangkok as a slave, where he served in the entourage of Prince Ang Duong. He was ordained as a novice at the age of eleven and by the time he ordained as a monk in 1844, had already won attention for his intellectual pursuits. In 1849 Ang Duong requested that Dīen be sent to Cambodia to head up the restoration of Buddhism in the kingdom,

which he undertook until his death in 1913. He resided at Vatt Uṅṅalom in Phnom Penh, the chief Mahānikāi temple. Pān was born in 1824 in Battambang (a Khmer province under Siamese control until 1907) and was ordained as a novice there. In 1837 he went to Bangkok to study Pāli, and eventually ended up as a student at Wat Bovoranives under Mongkut. The date of his return to Cambodia and the founding of the Thammayut sect in Cambodia has been attributed both to the reigns of Ang Duong and Norodom (r. 1860–1904), either in 1854 or 1864. Under Norodom, Pān constructed the seat of the Thammayut order at Vatt Bodum Vaddey in Phnom Penh. In the 1880s he sent a delegation of Khmer monks to Ceylon to obtain relics and a Bo tree to plant in the new monastery. He died in 1894, with the title of “Samtec Sugandhādhipatī,” the chief of the Thammayut order and the second highest monastic rank in the kingdom.

The new Khmer Buddhism that began to emerge in this period was probably unlike the older Buddhism it replaced. François Bizot has argued that in spite of the presence of Pāli inscriptions and literature, Theravāda Pāli scholarship was in fact not well established in Cambodia before the nineteenth century, that canonical Tipiṭaka texts were not widely used, and that tantric teachings were more prominent in Cambodia than in other Theravāda areas of Southeast Asia. If this theory is correct, traces of this older Khmer Buddhism were increasingly destroyed after the mid-nineteenth century, and new ideas of Theravāda orthodoxy took its place. This newly emerging Buddhism had Siamese, Khmer, and French sources and influences.

Although the Thammayutnikāi imported from Siam and patronized by the royal family never took wide hold outside of urban areas, its reformist ideas influenced young Khmer monks in the more traditional Mahānikāi order in Cambodia. These young monks, led in particular by Chuon Nath (1883–1969) and Huot Tath (1891–1975), pushed for a series of innovations in the Khmer saṅgha beginning in the early twentieth century: the use of print for sacred texts (rather than traditional methods of inscribing manuscripts); a higher degree of competence in Pāli and Sanskrit studies among monks; a vision of orthodoxy based on understanding of VINAYA texts for both bhikkhu and laypersons; and modernization in pedagogical methods for Buddhist studies. These reforms were not uniformly accepted within the Khmer saṅgha. Early attempts by Nath to introduce print were met with resistance from established saṅgha officials and led to increasing factionalism between modernists and

traditionalists within the Mahānikāi that continued into the 1970s. The reformist efforts led by modernist monks did, however, coincide with both the pedagogical ideologies and political interests of French colonial administrators who backed Nath and Tath in an effort to reinvigorate Buddhist education within the protectorate. The French administration took on the role of saṅgha patron in part to foster European models of scientific education but also, fearing Siamese influence, to stem the flow of Khmer Buddhist literati to Bangkok. The modernist agenda also countered the influence of cosmologically oriented Buddhism in the provinces, where French rule in the late nineteenth century was plagued by peasant insurrections connected with predictions of a Buddhist *dhammik* (righteous ruler) who would usher in the epoch of the Buddha Maitreya.

By 1930, when the Buddhist Institute was established under the directorship of French curator Suzanne Karpelès, most of the modern Buddhist institutions in Cambodia were in place. For the next forty-five years, the Buddhist Institute led the development of modern Buddhism in Cambodia, issuing frequent publications of critical editions of texts in Khmer and Pāli, as well as scholarly and popular studies related to Buddhism and Khmer literature and history, many of which appeared in its important publication, *Kambujasuriyā*. Besides its prominent role in articulating a modern Khmer expression of Buddhism, the Buddhist Institute became a site for imagining Khmer nationalism, and monks were among the most prominent dissidents against the French colonial regime. The institute also helped give rise to the development of the Communist Party in Cambodia. Mean (Son Ngoc Minh) and Sok (Tou Samouth), later leaders of Khmer communism, were both recruited by Karpelès for Buddhist education. In spite of this early connection between Buddhism and the Communist Party, once the Khmer Rouge took power in April 1975, they quickly sought to eradicate Buddhism in Democratic Kampuchea. Many monks were executed or forced to disrobe, Buddhist monasteries were destroyed or appropriated for other purposes, and Buddhist text collections were discarded. Nearly two million people died as a result of Khmer Rouge policies enacted between 1975 and 1979.

Since the Vietnamese invasion of 1979 that brought an end to the Khmer Rouge regime, Buddhism has slowly reemerged in Cambodia, in some ways resembling pre-1970 Buddhism and in other ways quite altered. The subsequent governments of Cambodia since



The promenade at Angkor Wat, 1997. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

1979 have gradually lifted initial restrictions on Buddhist participation and expression, pre-1970 saṅgha organization has been restored and many temples (*vatt*) have been rebuilt, often from contributions from Khmer living in other countries. New research by anthropologist John Marston suggests that older strains of Khmer Buddhist thought, such as millenarianism and tensions between modernists (*smāy*) and traditionalists (*purān*), have reemerged in this new period. Political leaders continue to situate themselves as patrons of the saṅgha in order to gain legitimacy. On the other hand, the loss of so many monks, intellectuals, and texts, as well as an entire generation of young laypeople raised without any religious education at all, is seen by contemporary Buddhist leaders as a major obstacle to the rebuilding process and an irreparable break with the past. In addition, the traumatic experience of so much of the population has in some cases ushered in new kinds of cynicism and questioning of basic Buddhist truths, such as the efficacy of the law of karma (action). At the same time, other Khmer

identify even more strongly with Buddhism. Many seek to remember the dead through merit-making ceremonies or to ease traumatic memories through meditation practice. New global Buddhist ideas in the form of ENGAGED BUDDHISM (such as Buddhist-led care for AIDS patients), human rights education, and conflict mediation techniques, taught through the medium of Buddhist concepts, are also reaching contemporary Khmer Buddhists. One of the best-known monks of the post-Khmer Rouge period, Mahā Ghosananda, a student of Gandhian ideas, began leading peace marches across Cambodia in 1989. These marches, known as *dhammayātrā* (dharma pilgrimages), have crossed war zones and called attention to injustices in contemporary society.

See also: **Communism and Buddhism; Khmer, Buddhist Literature in; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Ang Choulean. *Les êtres surnaturels dans la religion populaire khmère*. Paris: Cedoreck, 1986.
- Bhattacharya, Kamaleswar. "The Religions of Ancient Cambodia." In *Sculpture of Angkor and Ancient Cambodia: Millennium of Glory*, ed. Helen Ibbitson Jessup and Thierry Zephir. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art, 1997.
- Bizot, François. *Le Figuier à cinq branches*. Paris: École française de l'Extrême-Orient, 1981.
- Buddhist Institute. *Biography of Samdech Preah Sanghareach Chuon-Nath, the Chief of Mahanikaya Order*. Phnom Penh, Cambodia: Buddhist Institute, 1970.
- Bunchan Mul. "The Umbrella War of 1942." In *Peasants and Politics in Kampuchea, 1942–1981*, ed. Ben Kiernan and Chanthou Boua. London: Zed Press; Armonk, NY: Sharpe, 1982.
- Chandler, David. *A History of Cambodia*, 3rd edition. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, 2000.
- Chau-Seng. *L'Organisation Buddhique au Cambodge*. Phnom Penh, Cambodia: Université Buddhique Preah Sihanouk Raj, 1961.
- Coedès, George. *The Indianized States of Southeast Asia*, ed. Walter F. Vella and tr. Susan Brown Cowing. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1968.
- Forest, Alain. *Le culte des genies protecteurs au Cambodge: analyse et traduction d'un corpus de textes sur les neak ta*. Paris: Editions L'Harmattan, 1992.
- Harris, Ian. "Buddhism in Extremis: The Case of Cambodia." In *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*, ed. Ian Harris. London: Pinter, 1999.
- Keyes, Charles F. "Communist Revolution and the Buddhist Past in Cambodia." In *Asian Visions of Authority: Religion and the Modern States of East and Southeast Asia*, ed. Charles F. Keyes, Laurel Kendall, and Helen Hardacre. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Khin Sok. *Le Cambodge entre le Siam et le Viêt Nam (de 1775 à 1860)*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1991.
- Kiernan, Ben. *How Pol Pot Came to Power*. London: Verso, 1985.
- Leclère, Adhémar. *Le bouddhisme au Cambodge*. Paris: E. Leroux, 1899.
- Mabbett, Ian. "A Survey of the Background to the Variety of Political Traditions in South-east Asia." In *Patterns of Kingship and Authority in Traditional Asia*, ed. Ian Mabbett. London: Croom Helm, 1985.
- Mabbett, Ian, and Chandler, David. *The Khmers*. Oxford: Blackwell Press, 1995.
- Osborne, Milton E. *The French Presence in Cochinchina and Cambodia: Rule and Response (1859–1905)*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1969.
- Porée-Maspero, Eveline. *Étude sur les rites agraires des Cambodgiens*, Vols. 1–3. Paris: Mouton, 1962.
- Reid, Anthony, ed. *Southeast Asia in the Early Modern Era: Trade, Power, and Belief*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1993.
- Tarling, Nicholas. *The Cambridge History of Southeast Asia*, Vol. 1: From Early Times to ca. 1800. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1992.
- Thompson, Ashley. "Changing Perspectives: Cambodia after Angkor." In *Sculpture of Angkor and Ancient Cambodia: Millennium of Glory*, ed. Helen Ibbitson Jessup and Thierry Zephir. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art, 1997.
- Thompson, Ashley. "Introductory Remarks between the Lines: Writing Histories of Middle Cambodia." In *Other Pasts: Women, Gender, and History in Early Modern Southeast Asia*, ed. Barbara Watson Andaya. Manoa: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Vickery, Michael. *Society, Economics, and Politics in Pre-Angkor Cambodia: The 7th–8th Centuries*. Tokyo: Centre for East Asian Cultural Studies for Unesco, Toyo Bunko, 1998.
- Yang Sam. *Khmer Buddhism and Politics 1954–1984*. Newington, CT: Khmer Studies Institute, 1987.

ANNE HANSEN

---

CAMBODIA, BUDDHIST ART IN. See **Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

## CANDRAKĪRTI

Candrakīrti (ca. 600–650 C.E.) is best known as a Madhyamaka-school Indian philosopher and commentator. Little is known of his life, though later Tibetan biographies associate him with the north Indian monastic university of Nālandā. His two major works are the *Madhyamakāvatāra* (*Introduction to Madhyamaka*) and *Prasannapadā* (*Clear Words*).

The *Madhyamakāvatāra* is a versified introduction to Madhyamaka thought, organized into ten chapters that correspond to the ten perfections (pāramitā) mastered by Mahāyāna BODHISATTVAS. The sixth chapter, corresponding to the perfection of wisdom, is the longest and most important. In it, Candrakīrti refutes a variety of Buddhist and non-Buddhist views, and explores the meaning of such basic Buddhist ontological categories as the two truths, no-self, and emptiness.

The *Prasannapadā* is a prose commentary on the *Madhyamakakārikā* (*Verses on the Middle Way*; second century C.E.), Nāgārjuna's foundational MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL text. In his commentary, Candrakīrti brilliantly adumbrates Nāgārjuna's critique of philosophical categories, and insists, contrary to his predecessor Bhāvaviveka (ca. 490–570 C.E.) that the Mādhyamika philosopher must avoid syllogistic reasoning, and must defeat opponents solely through drawing out the absurd consequences of their own statements. This methodological approach was later known as Prāsaṅgika (consequentialist) Madhyamaka, in contradistinction to the approach that favored using formal inference to establish Madhyamaka views independently, the Svātantrika.

Candrakīrti was influential among later Indian Mādhyamikas, but achieved his greatest fame in Tibet, where he came to be regarded by many as the Madhyamaka commentator par excellence. He was particularly important for the founder of the DGE LUGS (GELUK) tradition, TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), who placed his work at the center of monastic education on Madhyamaka, and made him a thinker whose views are discussed and debated by Tibetan scholars to this day.

### Bibliography

- Huntington, C. W., and Wangchen, Geshé Namgyal. *The Emptiness of Emptiness: An Introduction to Early Indian Mādhyamika*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.
- Sprung, Mervyn; Murti, T. R. V.; and Vyas, U. S., trans. *Lucid Exposition of the Middle Way: The Essential Chapters from the*

*Prasannapadā of Candrakīrti*. Boulder, CO: Prajñā Press, 1979.

ROGER R. JACKSON

## CANON

There is no such thing as *the* Buddhist canon. In fact, the concepts of canon and canonicity are especially problematic in Buddhism, given the wide geographical spread and great historical variety of the religion, together with the absence of any central authority. If the term *canon* is defined loosely as a more or less bounded set of texts accorded preeminent authority and sanctity, then each Buddhist school or tradition to evolve developed its own canon in the process. While agreeing on the centrality of the notion of BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA) as capable of leading others to awakening, Buddhists may and do differ over what actually constitutes this *buddhavacana*.

In view of the perennial possibility of disagreement and misunderstanding, Buddhists formulated explicit guidelines for authenticating religious teachings as true *buddhavacana* and interpreting them correctly. These guidelines include the four great authorities (*mahāpadeśa*), which directed that teachings were to be accepted as authentic if they were heard from (1) the Buddha himself; (2) a SAṄGHA of elders; (3) a group of elder monks specializing in the transmission of dharma (i.e., sūtra), VINAYA or *māṭṛkās* (the matrices or mnemonic lists that became the ABHIDHARMA); or (4) a single elder specializing therein. But teachings heard from any of these authorities could only be accepted if they conformed with existing scriptural tradition (i.e., with the sūtra and vinaya), and also, according to a variant formulation, if they did not contradict the nature of things (*dharmatā*). Another set of principles, not subscribed to by all Buddhist groups, held that in receiving and interpreting teachings one should follow the four refuges or reliances (*pratiśaraṇa*), relying on the dharma taught in preference to the person teaching it, the meaning (or spirit) of it rather than the letter, sūtras of definitive or explicit meaning (*nītārtha*) rather than implicit meaning requiring interpretation (*neyārtha*), and direct understanding (*jñāna*) rather than discursive knowledge (*viññāna*).

Even while emphasizing seniority and tradition, these interpretative principles place a higher premium



on content and its realization than they do on form and obedience to it. Truth (dharma) emerges as the primary value, ever the same whether buddhas arise to preach it or not, independent of particular formulations by particular people, so that eventually the statement “All that the Buddha has said is well said” is turned around: Whatever is well said (i.e., true) is the word of the Buddha. Canonicity is therefore defined in functional terms: If a teaching is meaningful, if it is in line with the dharma, and if it tends to eliminate the defilements and lead to liberation, then any product of inspiration (*pratibhāna*) may be accepted as the word of the Buddha. Under such conditions, innovations inevitably crept in, some of them rejected as not being the true word of the Buddha, but some of them finding acceptance, especially if they accorded in spirit with existing belief. It was in this way that the Mahāyāna sūtras eventually came to be accepted by some Buddhists as *buddhavacana*, as did the Buddhist tantras after them. Thus Buddhism functioned from early on with what is almost a contradiction in terms, an “open canon,” in which commonly accepted principles of authenticity take the place of a rigidly defined and bounded set of texts in a given linguistic form. The latter would have been well-nigh impossible in any case because Buddhism functioned in a situation of regional and linguistic diversity, with Buddhists living in autonomous self-governing communities.

### Form, content, and transmission

Agreement in such circumstances was by consensus, despite occasional attempts by kings and emperors to enforce orthodoxy. Several so-called councils (*saṃgīti*, group recitations) are supposed to have been held as the fledgling saṅgha tried to maintain unity on what was to be accepted as the true word of the Buddha or the correct interpretation of the rules of discipline. The first council at Rājagṛha took place after the death of the Buddha. At this council, the disciple ĀNANDA recited the sūtras (discourses delivered by the Buddha, or others accorded equivalent authority), and UPĀLI recited the vinaya (rules of discipline for renunciants). The community accepted their recounting of these two bodies of texts, with only some monks dissenting.

Yet even this account of a saṅgha relatively united as to what the Buddha had taught may oversimplify history. Later councils (at Vaiśālī, Pāṭaliputra, etc.) were occasions for more serious disagreements, which led to the formation of the different *nikāyas* by sects or schools each recognizing the validity of its own ordination lin-

eage only. In India it appears that each *nikāya* came to transmit its own set of sacred texts, initially dividing them into sūtra and vinaya. In some schools, the sūtra and vinaya were supplemented from about the second century B.C.E. onwards by the *abhidharma*, an even more variable set of texts (seven for the Sarvāstivādins, a different seven for the Theravādins, and so on), which systematized the teachings in terms of the particular categories they fell under. Some schools rejected this third category, but for most the notion of the canon as consisting of the three baskets (*tripiṭaka*) of sūtra, vinaya, and *abhidharma* became standard. The *tripiṭaka* of one school, as far as scholars know, was never the same as that of the next, although the loss of the literature of most schools makes it difficult to be certain about the extent of difference. Nevertheless, there are certain commonalities. For example, the *sūtra-piṭakas* were divided into sections (*nikāyas*, *āgamas*) according to such criteria as length, subject, or numerical category (there was also a miscellaneous category, for texts that did not fit any of these). The vinayas were divided into rules for men and rules for women, these being ordered according to the seriousness of the offense, with other sections devoted to particular aspects of community life (ordination, official acts, property, etc.). The resulting collections of texts, which are referred to as *canons*, were therefore quite varied, extensive, and structurally complex.

One of the primary functions of the Buddhist order was to preserve and transmit all this literature, at first orally, then in writing, from generation to generation, even though Buddhists have always had a keen sense of the fragility of this enterprise. They believe that this effort is bound to fail in the end, due to human weakness, so that the work of a buddha will need to be done over and over again. Different groups of renunciants took responsibility for the transmission of different sections of their school's canon, committing them to memory, although occasionally people with prodigious mental powers mastered the whole canon. One consequence of this “division of labor” is that the same text can occur in two or more different places in a given canon. Oral transmission also led to extreme redundancy and repetition, the same formulas and blocks of text recurring in many different contexts.

From about the first century B.C.E. onward the texts began to be committed to writing, on palm leaf, birch bark, and other materials. This was only partially successful in preserving the texts for posterity, and most have been lost. The only canon to survive in its en-

tirety is that of the Theravādins, written in the Pāli language. It shows that some schools kept their scriptures in ancient tongues, but in the extant fragments of other schools' canons it is apparent that a continuous process of Sanskritization was under way. The use of various Indian languages is another sign of the absence of any central authority. In one sense all Buddhist scriptures, even those in Pāli, are translations; it is not known what language(s) the Buddha himself spoke, but he is supposed to have sanctioned his followers' use of their own dialects for transmitting his teachings. The Buddhist canon is thus thoroughly multilingual. Parts of the canons of many Indian schools are extant in Chinese or Tibetan translation, as well as in Sanskrit fragments displaying different degrees of regularization from earlier Prakritic or Middle Indic dialect forms to classical Sanskrit. Thus the vinayas of six schools have survived, as well as parts of the *sūtra-piṭakas* of the Sarvāstivādins, the DHARMAGUPTAKAS, and the MAHĀSĀMĀGHIKAS. *Abhidharma* texts from various schools, in particular the Theravādins and the Sarvāstivādins, also survive. But while manuscripts continue to be found, the greater part of the Indian Buddhist canons has no doubt vanished forever. Buddhist teachings, which emphasize the inevitability of transformation and loss, have themselves succumbed to it.

Even when it was fully extant, it is unlikely that many Buddhists ever knew their canon in its entirety, as a Muslim might know the Qur'an or a Christian the Bible. The Buddhist scriptures are simply too extensive, so that most members of the order would have been familiar with and used only a small number of them, a functional partial canon as opposed to an ideal complete one. Scholars also believe that Buddhists belonging to different mainstream or Śrāvākayāna schools would have accepted much of what the other groups transmitted as canonical, agreeing on the broad principles, and differing only on particular points of doctrine, and, more importantly, on points of monastic discipline. Some of the most heated disputes in the history of the order were over the vinaya. With the advent of the MAHĀYĀNA, with its prodigious outpouring of new scriptures, the scope for disagreement increased, and the bounds of the Buddhist canon became less distinct. The Mahāyāna canon was even more open than the mainstream one, and followers of that path are in most cases unlikely to have known more than a tiny fraction of the literature it generated. The same is true of tantric Buddhism, with its many



A stone tablet carved with a sacred text in Pāli, one of 729, each housed in its own miniature pagoda at a site in Mandalay, Myanmar (Burma). © Christine Kolisch/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

classes of tantras, ritual and soteriological texts, which outnumbered even the Mahāyāna sūtras.

### **Buddhist canons outside India**

The complexity of this picture increased still further when Buddhism spread beyond the greater Indian cultural area. Although the Pāli canon of the Theravādins eventually established itself as the standard in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia, in Central Asia and China different schools coexisted, and the Mahāyāna orientation was dominant. The Chinese translated scriptures belonging to these different schools and to this new movement with great zeal, the result being that the Chinese Buddhist canon took on a rather different shape. At first the work of bibliographers and cataloguers, later the product of imperial decree, authorized and funded by the court, the Chinese Buddhist canon (Dazangjing, literally "Great Storehouse Scripture") was a far more comprehensive collection. It

eventually included Chinese translations of texts from the *tripiṭakas* of different Indian schools and of huge quantities of the Mahāyāna sūtras and Buddhist tantras produced in India from approximately the first century C.E. onward, as well as commentaries and treatises, texts written in China, biographies of monks and nuns, lexicographical works, and even the catalogues of Buddhist scriptures themselves. The sheer number and diversity of texts made the use of the tripartite structure of the *tripiṭaka* unfeasible. What is more, the Chinese retained different translations of the same text, often produced many centuries apart, affording modern scholars an excellent view of how texts and translation techniques developed over time.

Thus the Chinese Buddhist canon, which became the standard in Korea and Japan as well, is vast. It has appeared in numerous editions, many of them made with imperial patronage, although the one most often consulted by scholars today is the *Taishō shinshū daizōkyō* (*New Edition of the Buddhist Canon Made during the Taishō Reign*), published in Japan from 1924 to 1934 in one hundred volumes, each of which runs to about a thousand pages (eighty-five volumes of texts containing 2,920 works, twelve volumes of iconography, and three of catalogues). Yet, immense as it is, the *Taishō* is not the only edition; many others have survived as well, and thus “the Chinese Buddhist canon” is itself an abstraction of many highly variable collections. This proliferation of editions was in part due to state involvement, as each successive set of rulers sought to legitimate themselves politically as patrons of religion, or aspired for reasons of piety to the merit that the propagation of the *buddhadharma* generates.

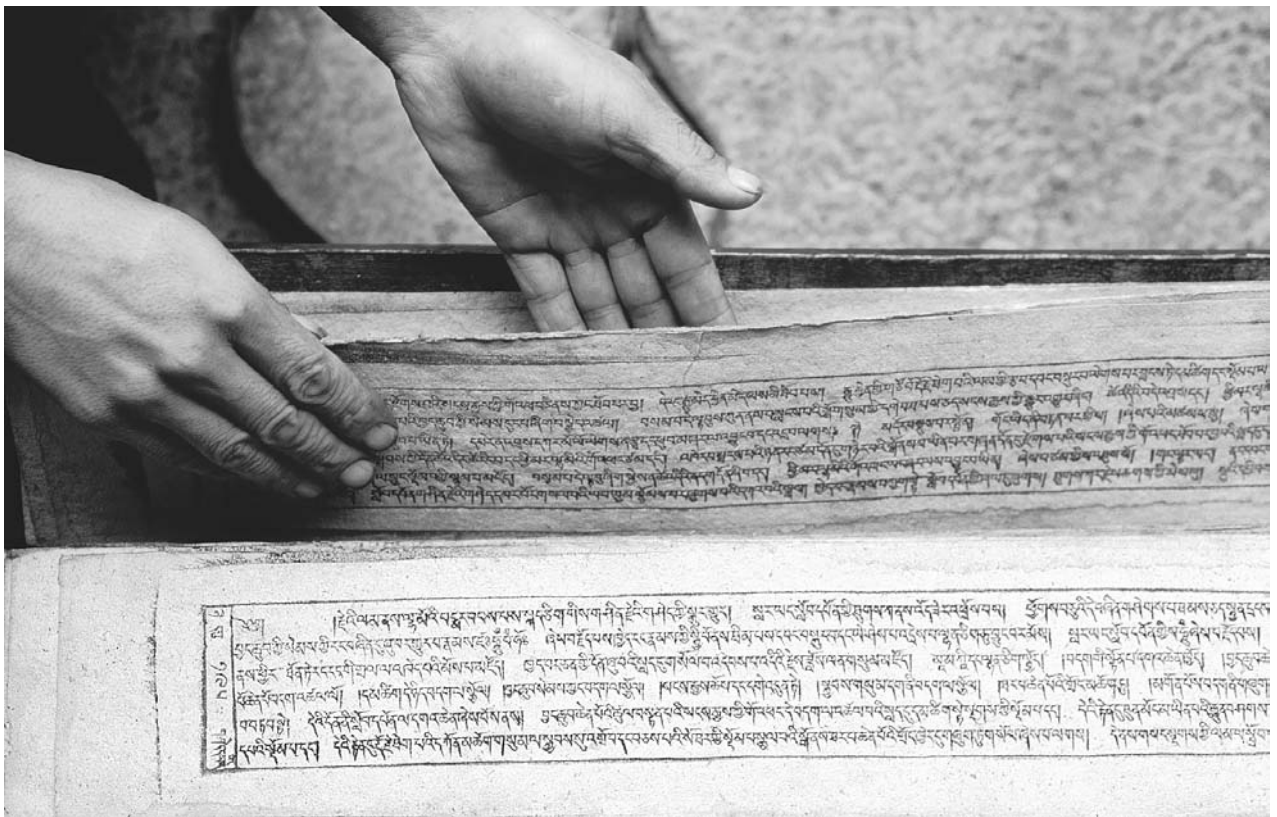
These ideological considerations were instrumental in stimulating the invention and spread of PRINTING TECHNOLOGIES in East Asia, long before they were known in the West. Thus the world’s oldest printed works are Buddhist texts, and from the tenth century onward the earlier manuscript copies of the Chinese Buddhist canon were replaced by printed editions, first using carved wooden blocks, then movable metal type. The production of these editions required resources that in those days only states could muster, although in recent times wealthy religious and commercial organizations have also become involved.

The same is true of Tibet, where in the fourteenth century the efforts of cataloguers trying to make sense of the sheer diversity of Buddhist texts combined with the interests of political authorities, intent on their own kind of order, to produce the first of many editions of

the Tibetan canon, the Old Snar thang. Unlike the Chinese, the Tibetans were generally disinclined to preserve multiple translations of the same text, but their canon (upon which the Mongolian canon is also based) is equally vast. It has two major divisions, the *Bka’ gyur* (the Word Translated; i.e., *buddhavacana*) and the *Bstan gyur* (the Teachings Translated; i.e., commentaries and other treatises). The *Bka’ gyur* includes the three subdivisions of vinaya (that of the Mūlasarvāstivāda school), sūtra (predominantly Mahāyāna sūtras, in their various categories), and TANTRA (also arranged in various classes). The *Bstan gyur* also reflects these categories. The arrangement of all these texts differs according to edition, and sometimes one edition carries works not found in another.

As is the case with the Chinese canon, the Tibetan translations preserve much that is lost in Sanskrit. Some of the most prestigious editions (Peking, Sde dge, Snar thang, etc.) have been mass-produced woodblock prints; others have been manuscript productions, written by hand on expensive papers with ink made of precious metals and enclosed between ornate covers studded with jewels. The resources expended on this activity have been enormous, and the results are objects of great beauty. For Tibetans, as for other Buddhists, the sanctity of the canon derives from the sanctity of the liberating truth it contains and of the person who uttered it, and therefore the scriptures too are the focus of worship and veneration. They are not like any other books, but embody a special power, and must therefore be treated with reverence and respect, in a way similar, but not identical, to the way in which Jews approach the Torah, Christians the Bible, and Muslims the Qur’an.

Canon and canonicity are therefore never the same from one religion to the next, even if common themes can be found. Furthermore, the Buddhist canon turns out to be a large family of collections of texts in different languages and from different places, all sharing descent from a common set of forebears—the divergent oral reports of what the Buddha had taught, which were circulating among his disciples at his death some time in the fifth century B.C.E. Not unitary in content or linguistic expression even at the beginning, it is unimaginably diverse in both respects two and a half millennia later, as it continues to grow with editions and translations into English and other modern languages. At the same time, the Buddhist canon is unified by a common concern with setting out the path to salvation. Just as the waters of the ocean, however vast, have the same taste of salt at any point, so too all



A Tibetan book, printed from hand-carved woodblocks. © Tiziana and Gianni Baldizzone/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

the many teachings of the Buddha have a single taste everywhere, that of liberation. And as to the path by which liberation is attained, Buddhists are fond of quoting the verse (*Udānavarga* 28.1):

Not doing any evil, accomplishing what is good,

Purifying one’s own mind: this is the teaching of the Buddha.

See also: *Āgama/Nikāya*; *Apocrypha*; *Catalogues of Scriptures*; *Councils*, *Buddhist*; *Languages*; *Scripture*

**Bibliography**

Davidson, Ronald M. “An Introduction to the Standards of Scriptural Authenticity in Indian Buddhism.” In *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

Grönbold, Günter. *Der buddhistische Kanon: Eine Bibliographie*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1984.

Harrison, Paul. “A Brief History of the Tibetan Bka’ gyur.” In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. Roger Jackson and José Cabezón. New York: Snow Lion, 1996.

Lamotte, Étienne. “La critique d’authenticité dans le bouddhisme.” In *India Antiqua* (1947): 213–222. Leiden, Nether-

lands: Brill, 1947. English translation by Sara Boin-Webb, “The Assessment of Textual Authenticity in Buddhism.” *Buddhist Studies Review* 1, no. 1 (1983): 4–15.

Lamotte, Étienne. “La critique d’interprétation dans le bouddhisme.” *Annuaire de l’Institut de Philologie et d’Histoire Orientales et Slaves* 9 (1949): 341–361. English translation by Sara Boin-Webb, “The Assessment of Textual Interpretation in Buddhism.” In *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.

Lancaster, Lewis. “Buddhist Literature: Canonization.” In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, ed. Mircea Eliade, Vol. 2. New York: Macmillan, 1986.

Norman, K. R. *Pāli Literature: Including the Canonical Literature in Prakrit and Sanskrit of All the Hīnayāna Schools of Buddhism*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1983.

Pagel, Ulrich. “Buddhism.” In *Sacred Writings*, ed. Jean Holm. London and New York: Pinter, 1994.

Ray, Reginald. “Buddhism: Sacred Text Written and Realized.” In *The Holy Book in Comparative Perspective*, ed. Frederick M. Denny and Rodney L. Taylor. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1985.

von Hinüber, Oskar. *A Handbook of Pāli Literature*. Berlin: de Gruyter, 1996.

PAUL HARRISON

## CATALOGUES OF SCRIPTURES

Catalogues of scriptures (*jinglu*) are bibliographical records of Chinese Buddhist literature of Indian, Central Asian, and indigenous provenance. Their beginnings can be traced with reasonable certainty to the mid-third century C.E., a century after the translation of Buddhist literature began in China. Compilation of catalogues in China continued throughout subsequent centuries, generating a total of approximately eighty catalogues by the end of the eighteenth century, though only one-third of them are extant today. Catalogues were also compiled in Korea and Japan whenever recensions of the Sinitic Buddhist CANON were introduced and domestic editions compiled. Most Chinese catalogues were private undertakings by a single individual, usually a monk, although a few are official, state-sponsored compilations made by a group of learned monks appointed for the task. Buddhist catalogues were a natural outgrowth of the Chinese secular bibliographical tradition that was in place by the first century C.E., and their compilation is a quintessentially East Asian phenomenon, there being nothing equivalent to them in Indian Buddhist literature. The catalogues offer indispensable source material for reconstructions of Buddhist history in not only East Asia but India as well.

Some 80 percent of the catalogues date from the Tang dynasty (618–907) or earlier, from the period when the substantial part of the translations of Buddhist scriptures into Chinese was accomplished. The primary goal of this group of catalogues was the verification of textual history and authenticity, and the determination of canonicity—a function of the conditions of the time when new translations were continually being added to a still-fluid Buddhist canon, and texts of indeterminate history or questionable identity proliferated. The fact that texts were disseminated at this time through hand-copying was a factor in this proliferation, for anyone with the means and inclination could, and often did, write new manuscripts and portray them as authentic Buddhist SCRIPTURE. Thus the catalogues of this period were both prescriptive and proscriptive in function, in that they classified texts to be either included in or excluded from the canon. In a real sense, they held the key to the fate of texts and, by extension, the formation of the Buddhist canon in China. By contrast, post-Tang catalogues were essentially descriptive and were indexes to the printed canons, merely listing their established and fixed entries.

The *Chu sanzang jiji* (*A Compilation of Notices on the Translation of the Tripitaka*, ca. 515) by Sengyou (445–518) is not only the earliest extant catalogue, but also preserves part of an even earlier catalogue by the renowned monk-scholar DAO'AN (312–385). The value of this catalogue also derives from the fact that it set the standard for cataloguing methods by employing a minute typological classification based on textual and doctrinal characteristics. Most of the cumulative list of divisions and categories of Buddhist literature that appear in medieval catalogues originated in the work of Sengyou: new or old translations; anonymous and variant translations; spurious scriptures; abridged scriptures; extant and nonextant translations; MAHĀYĀNA and HĪNAYĀNA literature in the three divisions of scripture, discipline, and treatise; translator known or unknown. Indigenous compilations, such as prefaces to scriptures, histories of Buddhism, biographies of monks and translators, and Buddhist catalogues themselves were also included to illustrate the proper transmission of Buddhism and its literature.

The *Lidai sanbao ji* (*Record of the Three Treasures throughout Successive Dynasties*, 597) by Fei Changfang (d.u.) introduced a chronological catalogue of translations arranged according to the dates and dynasties of translators, an innovation that was adopted in subsequent catalogues. Unfortunately, Fei also altered or fabricated numerous translator and author attributions to minimize the number of scriptures of questionable pedigree, as a way of ensuring the credibility of the Buddhist textual transmission. This catalogue was a case where criteria for textual authenticity were compromised for polemical reasons. A state-commissioned catalogue, the *Da-Zhou kanding zhongjing mulu* (*Catalogue of Scriptures, Authorized by the Great Zhou*, 695), kept many of Fei's arbitrary attributions and helped create an enigmatic category of scriptures that were both inauthentic and yet canonical.

The *Kaiyuan shijiao lu* (*Record of Śākyamuni's Teachings, Compiled during the Kaiyuan Era*, 730) by Zhisheng (d.u.) was the most critical and thorough catalogue in its evaluation of textual histories and represented the culmination of the art of Buddhist cataloguing that had begun nearly half a millennium earlier. Its influence is evident in the contents and organization of East Asian printed canons, all the way up to the modern standard edition, the *Taishō shinshū daizōkyō* (1924–1934). However, even this catalogue, with all its critical apparatus, accepted some of the problematic attributions that originated in the *Lidai*

*sanbao ji*. Thus, despite the wealth of invaluable historical material they contain, not all catalogues, or the attributions included therein, are uniformly dependable. Their data must be used cautiously, by thoroughly cross-referencing information found in the different extant catalogues.

See also: **Apocrypha; Printing Technologies**

### Bibliography

- Hayashiya Tomojirō. *Kyōroku kenkyū (Studies on Buddhist Catalogues)*. Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1941.
- Kawaguchi Gishō. *Chūgoku Bukkyō ni okeru kyōroku kenkyū (Studies on Buddhist Catalogues in Chinese Buddhism)*. Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 2000.
- Tokuno, Kyoko. "The Evaluation of Indigenous Scriptures in Chinese Buddhist Bibliographical Catalogues." In *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

KYOKO TOKUNO

## CAVE SANCTUARIES

Cave sanctuaries are manmade structures built into natural or excavated caves in the side of a mountain, canyon wall or cliff. Found in India and Afghanistan, at various sites along the SILK ROAD in CENTRAL ASIA, and in China, cave sanctuaries range from single chambers to enormous monastic compounds that include halls for worship and teaching, living quarters for monks and travelers, and spaces such as kitchens and libraries. As way stations for travelers, these sites played an important role in the development and dissemination of Buddhism.

The genesis of cave sanctuaries is unclear. They may have their roots in the ancient Indic tradition of asceticism, whose adherents had long made use of such natural structures in pursuit of their renunciatory lifestyles. The earliest rock-cut caves in India were excavated in the third century B.C.E. during the rule of AŚOKA at sites such as Lomas Rishi and Sudama in Bihar province. It should be noted that an inscription on the entrance to the Lomas Rishi cave states that it was dedicated for the use of the Ājīvākas, a prominent ascetic group. Both Lomas Rishi and Sudama were simple structures consisting of an inner circular chamber housing a STŪPA, and a rectangular outer hall, presumably a place where devotees could congregate for lectures and other forms of teaching.

Located about 105 miles south of Bombay, the caitya or worship hall at Bhājā is more complicated. Extending about sixty feet into the mountainside and approximately twenty-nine feet high, it consists of an apsidal chamber bracketed by tall columns on both sides. The wooden ribs appended to the ceilings of the central and side aisles have no structural purpose but reflect the use of prototypes of wood, bamboo, and thatch in the construction of the earliest cave sanctuaries. The columns help to define the path for traditional circumambulation (*pradakṣiṇa*) of the stūpa placed at the rear of the chamber. Vihāra 19 at the same site consists of two large inner chambers that were used communally and smaller individual quarters. Each cell contains a raised rock-cut bed with a pillow and a small niche in the wall used for holding a lantern.

The caitya hall at Karli was built between 50 and 75 C.E. It is 124 feet long, 46.5 feet wide, and 45 feet high, and contains thirty-six columns capped with couples seated on kneeling elephants. The façade was elaborately carved with a large horseshoe-shaped arch that defined the primary window.

Twenty major sites and numerous minor sites patronized by individual travelers and wealthy artistic and commercial guilds were constructed in western India from 100 B.C.E. to 200 C.E. However, the region is best known for AJAṆṬĀ, a group of twenty-six caves built by the ruling elite on both sides of the Waghora River in the late fifth century C.E. Ajaṇṭā is renowned for its delicate but powerful sculptures, such as those seen on the façade of cave 19, and its extraordinarily beautiful wall paintings, many of which record events from the past lives (JĀTAKA) of the historical Buddha, Śākyamuni. Representations of bodhisattvas, worship images in the residential halls, and the addition of seated buddhas at the front of the stūpas in the caitya halls illustrate contemporaneous changes in Buddhist thought. Other important centers in western India are found at Aurangabad and in some structures at Ellora. MAṆḌALA-like compositions, female deities, and the depiction of bodhisattvas with multiple heads in the sixth- and seventh-century caves at Aurangabad reflect further changes in the religion.

Noted for its (now destroyed) colossi, BĀMIYĀN (mid-sixth to seventh century C.E.) in Afghanistan is the most extensive Buddhist site in that country. One of the enormous standing buddhas was about 183 feet high, while the other measured about 127 feet. The famous seventh-century Chinese pilgrim XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) records a third colossus, representing a



The interior of cave 19, one of the twenty-six caves of Ajanṭā, constructed in the late fifth century, at Maharashtra, India. The pillars and the stūpa with the figure of the Buddha in relief were carved from the living rock. © Lindsay Hebbard/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

buddha in final transcendence, or *parinirvāṇa*, as part of the original construction. Bāmiyān and the neighboring sites of Kakrak and Foladi are also noted for a distinctive school of painting that combined Indian, Sassanian Persian, and other elements.

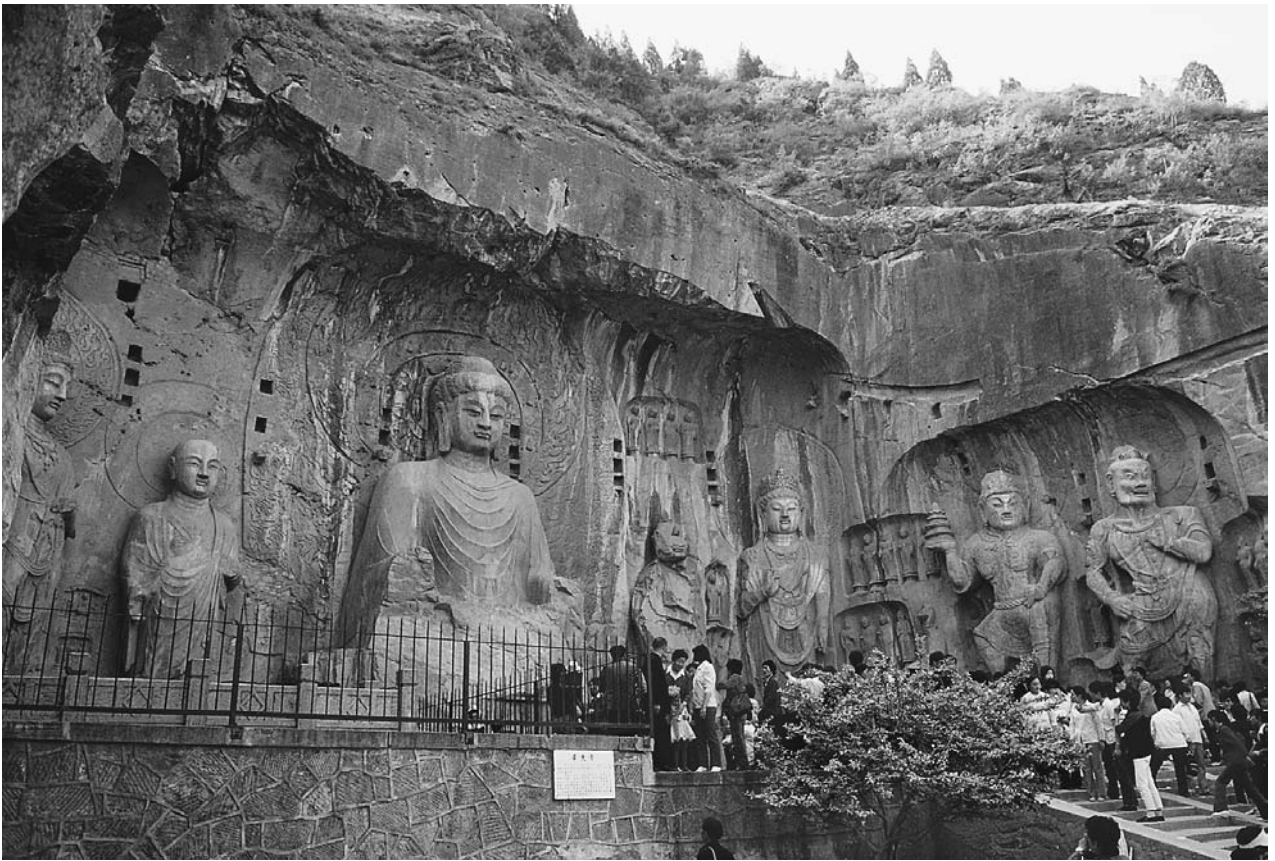
From the fourth to the eighth century, over two hundred caves were constructed at the Central Asian site of Kizil near the city of Kucha in what is now the Xinjiang Uighur autonomous region of China. Kizil and related sites such as Kumtura (about a hundred caves) and Kizilgara (forty-six caves) were patronized by the rulers of Kucha, a prominent oasis kingdom on the northern branch of the Silk Road. Many of the caves have a unique structure consisting of a front chamber linked to a back chamber by two small arcades. Sculptures and paintings in shades of gold, blue, and green cover the wall. Preaching scenes or encapsulated representations of *jātaka* stories are standard.

Some of the earliest representations of the transcendent Buddha Vairocana are also found at these sites. Caves found farther east in the Turfan area include those at Toyok and Bezeklik. Both have suffered substantial depredations.

China has the largest numbers of cave sanctuaries in Asia, and several of the most famous are found in Gansu, a province in the northwest with links to the Silk Road that played a seminal role in the introduction of Buddhism to China. Dating from the fourth to the fourteenth century, the nearly five-hundred decorated caves at Mogao and those at related sites near the city of DUNHUANG provide invaluable information for the development of Chinese Buddhist art. Some of the earliest caves have a pillar in the center thought to derive from the stūpas in early Indian construction. Later chambers are open or have low-lying platforms at the back. Early imagery includes sculptures of buddhas and bodhisattvas and paintings of past-lives stories. Representations of paradises and illustrations based on prominent texts are found in caves dating from the sixth to the eighth century, while those excavated in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries contain seminal imagery for later Tibetan art. Comparable developments are found in the Yulin grottoes, the Western Thousand Buddha Caves (*Xiqianfodong*), and the Eastern Thousand Buddha Caves (*Dongqianfodong*) in the same region. The Binglinsi caves near Lanzhou and the Maijishan caves near Tianshui, which also contain both paintings and sculptures, are among the larger sites in Gansu.

The fifty-three caves at YUN'GANG in Shansi province are renowned for the five colossal sculptures that dominate caves 16 through 20. Built in the late fifth century under the patronage of the Northern Wei (386–534) rulers, the Yun'gang caves share the iconography found in contemporaneous structures at Dunhuang, but they contain no paintings, only sculptures.

LONGMEN near Luoyang in Hebei province was begun in the early sixth century. Longmen houses over two thousand caves, some large, some small, as well as thirty-six hundred inscriptions. About one-third of the caves were constructed during the Northern Wei and the rest during the Tang dynasty (618–907). The Fengxiansi, which was begun under the rule of the Tang emperor Gaozong (r. 649–683) and finished around 675, is the most famous at the site. Four guardians, two bodhisattvas, and two monks attend a fifty-foot-high seated buddha. The figures are noted for elegant and



The late-seventh-century Fengxiansi at Longmen, Henan Province, China. The seated Buddha is fifty-five feet high. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.

careful carving. Other centers, many of which were begun after the dissolution of the Northern Wei empire in the mid-sixth century, include Gongxian and Xi-angtangshan in Hebei, Tianlongshan in Shansi, and other sites in Shandong. Numerous smaller excavations, often consisting of a single cave, are also known at many sites in northern China. A few sites are also found in the south.

Although not common after the tenth century, cave sanctuary construction flourished in the southwestern province of Sichuan during the Tang and Song (960–1279) dynasties. Several centers are found near Dazu. The Sichuan caves contain distinctive imagery including scenes of daily life, Chan OXHERDING PICTURES, and icons common in later esoteric traditions.

Carefully assembled with cut-stone panels, SÖKKURAM, located on top of Mount T'oham on the eastern outskirts of Kyōngju, is a Korean response to Indian cave sanctuaries. In contrast to India and China, there were no natural caves in Korea, or at least none suitable, and Sökkuram was entirely manmade. Constructed between 751 and 774, Sökkuram has a

round main hall that opens to a rectangular anteroom. A large free-standing buddha seated in the center of the main hall is attended by bodhisattvas, guardians, and other figures carved on the walls in high relief.

*See also:* Monastic Architecture

#### **Bibliography**

Caswell, James, O. *Written and Unwritten: A New History of the Buddhist Caves at Yungang*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 1988.

*Chūgoku Sekkutsu (The Grotto Art of China)*. A series in Japanese and Chinese on major Chinese sites. Beijing: Wenwu Chubansha; Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1980–.

Dehejia, Vidya. *Early Buddhist Rock Temples: A Chronology*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1972.

Howard, Angela Falco. *Summit of Treasures: Buddhist Cave Art of Dazu, China*. Trumbull, CT: Weatherhill, 2001.

Mitra, Debala. *Buddhist Monuments*. Calcutta: Sahitay Samsad, 1971.

DENISE PATRY LEIDY



**CELIBACY.** *See* Sexuality

## CENTRAL ASIA

Unlike most regions of the world, there is no universally accepted definition of what constitutes “Central Asia.” The region will be defined in this entry as constituting the network of oasis towns comprising the ancient SILK ROAD, stretching from Afghanistan to DUNHUANG. The grasslands inhabited by nomadic peoples to the north, and the Tibetan highlands to the south—together commonly referred to as *Inner Asia*—have separate histories and will be treated elsewhere in entries on TIBET and MONGOLIA.

A natural dividing point between western and eastern Central Asia is Kashgar, the westernmost city in the Tarim basin. Located at the western edge of what is today the People’s Republic of China, this city serves as a logical boundary for discussions of this region in both ancient and modern times.

### Western Central Asia

The earliest evidence of a Buddhist presence in this region dates from the time of King AŚOKA (mid-third century B.C.E.), who left inscriptions in Greek and Aramaic at Qandahar and Laghman (both in modern Afghanistan). Though not specifically Buddhist in content—Aśoka’s explicit discussions of Buddhism are restricted to a relatively small area in and around the territory of ancient Magadha—they do provide concrete evidence that Afghanistan had come under the control of a Buddhist ruler.

In the territory of Gandhāra (northern Pakistan and eastern Afghanistan) and Bactria (northern Afghanistan and southern Uzbekistan), Buddhist temple complexes excavated at Airtam, Kara-tepe, Fayaz-tepe, and Dalverzīn-tepe (in some cases accompanied by inscriptions by their donors) offer testimony to the importance of Buddhism in the region during the Kushan period (ca. late first to third centuries C.E.) and possibly before (Rhie). Even farther to the west, excavations in the Merv oasis (the easternmost part of ancient Parthia in modern Turkmenistan) have yielded archaeological remains of Buddhist temples, as well as Buddhist scriptures in Sanskrit dating from the fourth to the sixth centuries, including a VINAYA text belonging to the Sarvāstivāda school (Utz). Monasteries excavated at Adzhina-tepe and other sites in southern

Tadjikistan provide evidence of the survival of Buddhism in the region down to at least the eighth century (Stavisky).

Afghanistan has also been the site of two spectacular manuscript finds in recent years (though the precise spots of the discoveries are not known): the British Library collection, dating from the first century C.E. (Salomon 1999 and 2000), and the Schøyen Collection, containing texts from the second to seventh centuries C.E. (Braarvig et al. 2000 and 2002). The British Library manuscripts include both canonical scriptures (possibly associated with the DHARMAGUPTAKA school) and local compositions; the Schøyen collection includes a number of well-known MAHĀYĀNA scriptures. The fact that all of these texts are written in Prakrit or Sanskrit rather than translated into local vernaculars (with the exception of a fragmentary text in Bactrian, whose precise nature is uncertain) is typical of those few Buddhist texts found throughout the region, where Buddhists seem to have been content to read and transmit their scriptures in the “church languages” of India (Nattier).

In contrast to the territories of Gandhāra, Bactria, and eastern Parthia, where Buddhism flourished for many centuries, in the territory of ancient Sogdiana (northern Uzbekistan) Buddhist motifs appear only as minor elements in non-Buddhist artistic productions, confirming the reports of Chinese travelers that attest to almost no Buddhist presence in the region. Though several figures of Sogdian ancestry played key roles as missionaries and translators during the formative period of Chinese Buddhism (if the Chinese ethnicon *Kang* does indeed correspond to *Sogdian*, about which there is some controversy), and though one Buddhist site may now have been identified in Sogdiana (Stavisky), at present it appears that Sogdian Buddhism was essentially an expatriate phenomenon. Other parts of western Central Asia, such as Ferghana and Khwarezm, seem to have had little or no Buddhist population at all.

Buddhists in Gandhāra appear to have flourished during the first century C.E. under the patronage of the Sakas (referred to in Indian sources as Śakas), an Iranian-speaking people whose sponsorship of Buddhist donations is well attested in inscriptions, and who are mentioned in the British Library fragments by name. Under the Kushan (Sanskrit, Kuṣāṇa) dynasty (ca. late first to third centuries C.E.) Buddhism continued to receive significant support as well. Legends of the conversion of the Kushan ruler Kanishka (Sanskrit,

Kaniṣka) to Buddhism, however, are probably no more than that, for no inscription describes him as a Buddhist (or even as making a donation to a Buddhist community) and the justly famous images of the Buddha on his coins comprise a distinct minority in a vast sea of Iranian, Greek, and Indian deities. Recent archaeological findings, which point to a drop in trade between Bactria and Sogdiana during the Kushan period, suggest that, rather than providing a conduit for the transmission of Buddhism to East Asia, the Kushans may instead have erected a barrier on their eastern frontier (Naymark). If this is the case, it would explain the silence of Chinese sources concerning Kanishka and his successors, and it would suggest that it may have been their Saka predecessors rather than the Kushans themselves who facilitated the initial diffusion of Buddhism to eastern Central Asia and China.

It has sometimes been suggested that the invasion of the Hephthalite Huns (late fifth to early sixth centuries C.E.) dealt a serious blow to Buddhism in western Central Asia, but accounts by Chinese travelers, such as Songyun (early sixth century) and XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), report that Buddhism continued to prosper despite the damage done during the Hephthalite conquest. Xuanzang singles out the Lokottaravāda branch of the MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA SCHOOL as being particularly influential at BĀMIYĀN, where two colossal Buddha statues (fifty-three and thirty-five meters in height), destroyed by the Taliban in 2001, may have expressed the distinct buddhological views of this school.

A more significant threat to the fate of Buddhism in the region was the long-term expansion of Islam. Beginning in the seventh century, western Central Asia began to experience significant Arab incursions, and by the end of the tenth century, Buddhism had largely disappeared even in Gandhāra itself (Stavisky).

### Eastern Central Asia

A Buddhist presence in northern China is documented in historical and literary sources beginning in the middle of the first century C.E., and on this basis scholars have inferred that Buddhists must have passed through eastern Central Asia—that is, the territory of the Tarim basin (modern Xinjiang in the People's Republic of China)—no later than the beginning of the first millennium C.E. Despite the proximity of this area, which would later host several flourishing Buddhist city-states, records of the initial phase of Buddhist teaching and translation activity in China do not mention the presence of missionaries from eastern Central Asia (nor for that matter from India itself), but instead from

western Central Asian territories such as Parthia, Sogdiana, and the Kushan realm (Zürcher).

The earliest evidence of a Buddhist presence in the Tarim basin—aside from a manuscript of the *Dharma-pada* (in Gāndhārī language and Kharoṣṭhī script) found near Khotan, which has been assigned to the second century C.E. but may have been imported from elsewhere—dates from approximately two centuries later. A cache of civil documents written in the Gāndhārī language and the Kharoṣṭhī script from the kingdom known to the Chinese as Shanshan (centered at Miran, in the southeastern part of this region) has been dated to the early third century C.E., and it attests to the existence of an incipient Buddhist SAṄGHA, though apparently without any full-time and celibate clergy.

By the fourth century C.E. a significant Buddhist presence had been established in the Tokharian-speaking city-states of Kucha and Agni on the northeastern route, where the Sarvāstivāda school was especially prominent. Buddhism flourished under royal patronage and numerous monasteries and convents were founded. A substantial number of texts in Sanskrit were imported and subsequently copied locally, most of them of Sarvāstivāda affiliation. In contrast to the standard practice in western Central Asia, however, Buddhists in the Tarim basin began to translate scriptures into their own vernacular languages around the beginning of the sixth century C.E. The Tokharians appear to have been the first to make this move, and texts in both Agnean (Tokharian A) and Kuchean (Tokharian B) dating to around 500 to 700 C.E. have been discovered. This local literature continues to be mainly Sarvāstivāda in content; among cultic figures, the future Buddha MAITREYA appears to have been an object of special interest.

Despite the conversion to the Mahāyāna of KUMĀRĀJĪVA (350–409/413 C.E., a native of Kucha and later a famous translator of Buddhist texts into Chinese), few followed his lead, and non-Mahāyāna teachings remained the norm in Kucha and Agni until at least the seventh century. In the kingdom of Khotan (in the southwestern Tarim basin), by contrast, Mahāyāna traditions found an early and fervent following. The ascendancy of the Mahāyāna is reported already in FAXIAN's travel report (early fifth century) and *The Book of Zambasta*, an anthology of Buddhist texts recast in Khotanese poetry (early eighth century), which makes it clear that Mahāyāna Buddhism was preferred.

With the fall of the Uygur kingdom in Mongolia in 842 C.E., Turkic-speaking peoples began to pour into

the Tokharian territories of the northeast (though some non-Uyghur Turks had preceded them). Initially they adopted local Sarvāstivāda traditions, sometimes in combination with Manichaean traditions brought with them from Mongolia. With the growth of Chinese influence, however, the Uyghurs increasingly drew on Chinese Mahāyāna scriptures and practices. Most of later Uyghur literature—including such famous works as the *SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA*, the *LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA)*, and the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*—is translated from the Chinese (Elverskog).

Buddhism continued to flourish in eastern Central Asia down to the beginning of the eleventh century, when the Muslim conquest of Khotan in 1004 signaled the beginning of the end of Buddhist dominance in the region. These territories are today populated almost entirely by Turkic-speaking Muslims, who have little knowledge of the flourishing Buddhist cultures that preceded them.

*See also:* Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in; Islam and Buddhism; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Persecutions; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

- Braarvig, Jens; Hartmann, Jens-Uwe; Kazunobu Matsuda; and Sander, Lore; eds. *Buddhist Manuscripts in the Schøyen Collection*, Vol. 1. Oslo, Norway: Hermes, 2000.
- Braarvig, Jens; Harrison, Paul; Hartmann, Jens-Uwe; Kazunobu Matsuda; and Sander, Lore; eds. *Buddhist Manuscripts in the Schøyen Collection*, Vol. 2. Oslo, Norway: Hermes, 2002.
- Elverskog, Johan. *Uyghur Buddhist Literature*. Turnhout, Belgium: Brepols, 1997.
- McRae, John R., and Nattier, Jan, eds. *Buddhism across Boundaries: Chinese Buddhism and the Western Regions*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2004.
- Mémoires de la Delegation Archeologique Française en Afghanistan*. Paris: De Boccard, 1928 (and subsequent volumes in the series).
- Nattier, Jan. “Church Language and Vernacular Language in Central Asian Buddhism.” *Numen* 37, no. 2 (1990): 195–219.
- Naymark, Aleksandr. “Sogdiana, Its Christians and Byzantium: A Study of Artistic and Cultural Connections in Late Antiquity and Early Middle Ages.” Ph.D. diss. Indiana University, 2001.
- Rhie, Marylin Martin. *Early Buddhist Art of China and Central Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1999.
- Rosenfield, John. *Dynastic Arts of the Kushans*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1967.
- Salomon, Richard. *Ancient Buddhist Scrolls from Gandhāra: The British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragments*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1999.
- Salomon, Richard. *A Gāndhārī Version of the Rhinoceros Sūtra: British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragment 5B*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2000.
- Sims-Williams, Nicholas. *New Light on Ancient Afghanistan: The Decipherment of Bactrian*. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1997.
- Stavisky, Boris. “The Fate of Buddhism in Middle Asia.” *Silk Road Art and Archaeology* 3 (1993–1994): 113–142.
- Utz, David. “Arsak, Parthian Buddhists, and ‘Iranian’ Buddhism.” In *Buddhism across Boundaries: Chinese Buddhism and the Western Regions*, ed. John R. McRae and Jan Nattier. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2004.
- Zürcher, Erik. “Han Buddhism and the Western Region.” In *Thought and Law in Qin and Han China: Studies Dedicated to Anthony Hulsewé on the Occasion of His Eightieth Birthday*, ed. W. L. Idema and E. Zürcher. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1990.

JAN NATTIER

## CENTRAL ASIA, BUDDHIST ART IN

More than half a million years ago, plate movements of the earth’s crust, by thrusting up the Himalayas and the Tibetan plateau, prevented monsoons from reaching the interior and desertified the area to the north; yet glacial melt streams from the Kunlun mountains and the Tianshan range created extensive fertile oases along the edges of the Taklamakan desert. In *De la Grèce à la Chine* (1948), René Grousset memorably described the SILK ROAD as a chaplet or rosary of oasis towns strung around this great desert. Even today, the Keriya river supports well-spaced pastoral households over 250 kilometers into the desert, but at one time, the ease of growing fruit and grains led to the existence of settled and prosperous kingdoms, where Buddhism flourished from the third century C.E. onward. Side-by-side with translations of the scriptures, the arts of architecture, sculpture, and painting had their own contribution to make to this exchange of ideas.

### Architecture

The practice of Buddhism by communities of monks required places remote enough for undisturbed meditation, yet close enough to centers of population whose devotional activities could support them. Cells for the monks, undecorated save perhaps for a single image of the Buddha in meditation, and larger shrines

for images of the Buddha and narratives of his life and teachings, could easily be hollowed out of the soft rocks and gravel or sand conglomerates of the region: At some sites hundreds of caves survive, often with a great deal of their painted imagery (Kizil and other sites near Kucha, Toyuq, Bezeklik, and DUNHUANG). The architecture ultimately derives from India, but at Dunhuang, the early caves and individual niches show features typical of Chinese wooden architecture, such as the transverse front chamber with simulated gable ceiling.

Architectural monuments include great stūpas (Rawak, Endere) and monastic buildings (Keriya, Tumshuk, Miran, Gaochang, Beiting). Architectural style, particularly of CAVE SANCTUARIES, depends on the topography and characteristics of the natural materials at each site. The basic plan consisted of an anterior cell with the main image centrally placed opposite the entrance, and a smaller rear chamber, lower in height, with entrances on either side of the main image, allowing circumambulation (*pradakṣiṇa*) around it.

### Wall paintings

Both cave sanctuaries and constructed buildings were decorated with wall paintings, a great many of which have survived, although many have been removed from their original sites to museums in London, Paris, New Delhi, Saint Petersburg, and Seoul. Mineral pigments were used.

Two Buddhist sanctuaries along the Keriya River were excavated in the mid-1990s. The two buildings were constructed of wooden pillars with reed and clay walls, with a central chamber two meters square, surrounded by a 1.5-meter wide corridor. Although the walls had collapsed to a height of some twenty to ninety centimeters, the scattering of painted fragments and of fallen timbers enabled one sanctuary to be reconstructed almost in its entirety. In the lower register were mural paintings of life-size standing buddhas in Indian style, three on each side (except on the entrance wall), each buddha with two small buddhas in the upper corners, while in the upper part of each wall was a series of smaller panels, each with two smaller seated buddhas in gray or orange robes, one above the other.

### Sculptures

Except at Dunhuang, few sculptures remain in situ; archaeological explorers removed many of them early in the twentieth century. Throughout the region, the stucco images are intimately related to the mural dec-

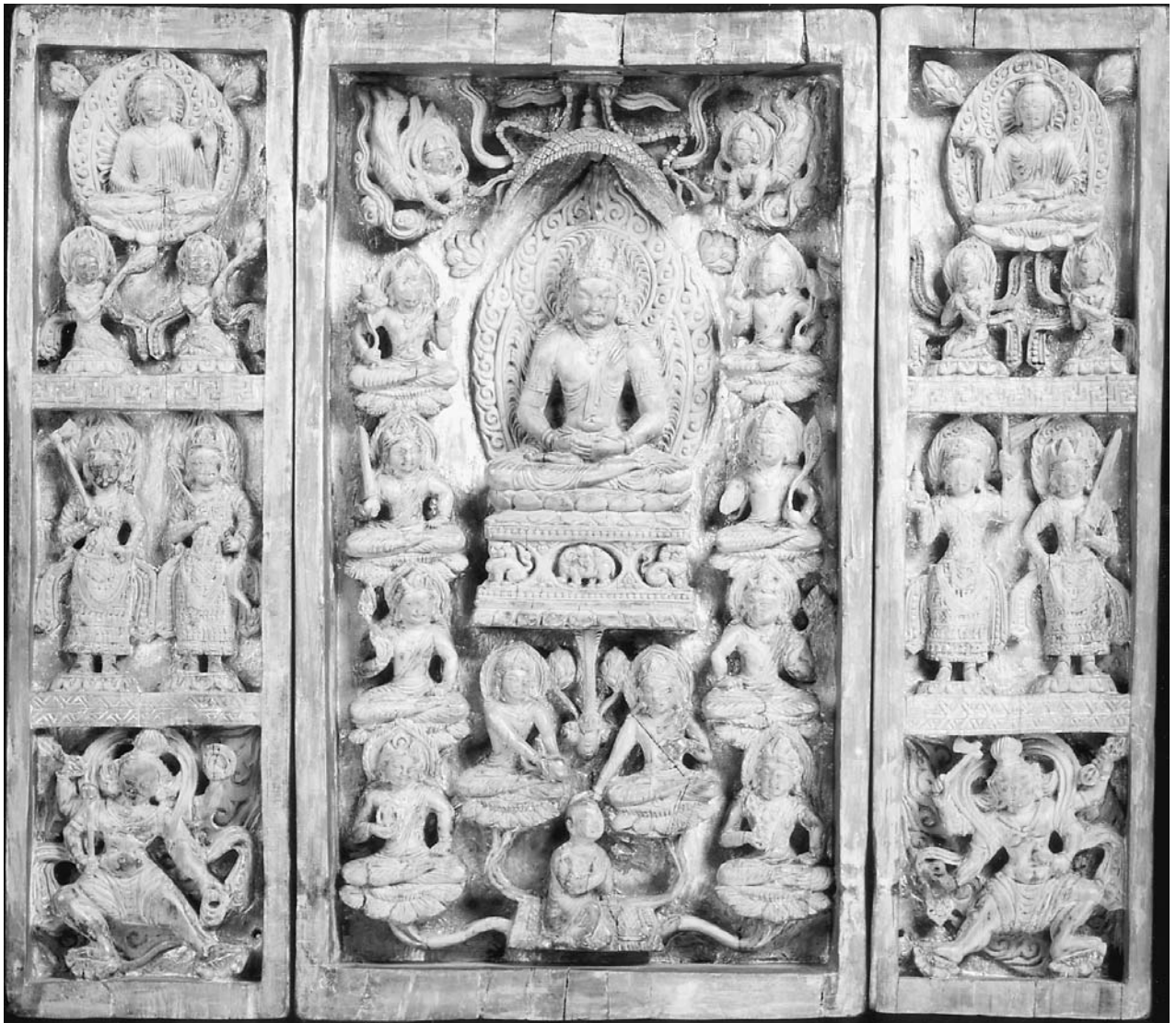


*Two Adoring Bodhisattvas.* A wall painting at Kizil, China. (Central Asian/Chinese, seventh century.) Freer Gallery of Art Library. Reproduced by permission.

oration: Aureoles and nimbi are regularly painted on the walls behind them, and share the same style. Often, it is these painted features alone that survive, clearly indicating whether the lost image was seated or standing.

Rawak stūpa, some sixty kilometers north of Khotan, still stands in a rectangular enclosure whose corners are oriented to the cardinal directions and whose walls were lined with large and small clay sculptures attached to a wooden armature. Once the form had been built up in clay, the surface was smoothed and coated with a final thin layer of gypsum plaster, and painted, using the same pigments employed for the mural paintings. Aurel Stein in 1900 and 1901 and Emil Trinkler in 1930 both made partial excavations of the site, but because of the fragility of the unbaked clay sculptures, some remain buried beneath the sands.

In the whole region of the Taklamakan, clay stucco was the most common form of sculpture. Major elements of the imagery were often produced with the aid of molds, some of which have survived: They range from decorative details and miniature BUDDHA IMAGES to heads and individual body parts, such as hands and feet, and even whole figures of up to about a quarter or a third life-size, such as a complete seated buddha excavated near Khotan. From Tumshuk, near Kucha, come three almost complete tableaux, each about eighty centimeters in height and sixty centimeters wide, illustrating crucial episodes in individual JĀTAKA stories, evidently composed using a number of such molds.



A folding carved wooden shrine depicting Amitābha Buddha with the eight great bodhisattvas. (Central Asian, ca. 850–950.) The Nelson-Atkins Museum of Art, Kansas City, Missouri. Reproduced by permission.

Small wooden images dating from the fifth century C.E. onward have been found at sites such as Toyuq and Gaochang. These images furnished a means for the dissemination of iconography and style, and include both single images and narrative scenes. Several examples exist in triptych form, in which hinged panels with smaller narrative scenes flank the central image; when closed, they are fastened by means of a clasp, protecting the images within and presenting a tall smooth exterior.

### Kucha

Kucha, on the northern route, is surrounded by Buddhist monuments. The cave temples of Kizil, some sixty kilometers to the west, are lavishly decorated with

wall paintings. The sixth-century C.E. dating proposed by Albert von Le Coq and Ernst Waldschmidt is slow to be discarded in favor of Su Bai's dating, supported by carbon-14 tests at the site, which suggest a third-century C.E. start.

Shrines at Kizil have an entrance leading directly into a barrel-vaulted longitudinal chamber, with the main image in a niche directly opposite. Large preaching scenes appear on the lateral walls below a balcony of heavenly figures, while the vault, springing from a corbel, depicts individual preaching scenes or *jātaka* stories in a diamond lattice. For purposes of *pradakṣiṇa* or ritual circumambulation of the main image, a lower vaulted passage leads to a narrow rear chamber in which the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa* is depicted in mural

paintings or in sculptured form. The final element in the iconographical program is a half-circular lunette over the entrance, often portraying MAITREYA, the buddha of the future, sometimes with twin niches beneath for smaller stucco or clay sculptures. The largest caves at Kizil, with a colossal central image, had up to five successive balconies with sculptures instead of paintings on the lateral walls.

Sites along the southern route include Niya, Miran, Endere, and Loulan; those along the north include Karashahr, Gaochang, Bezeklik, and Toyuq. The two routes rejoined near the Chinese border west of Dunhuang, where at least one of the fifth-century Northern Wei caves (cave 257) displays a narrative depicted with iconography and style similar to the same narrative at Kizil (cave 224), the only major difference being the placing of the story on the crown of the vault in Kizil, and at waist level on the side walls in Dunhuang. On this occasion at least, the same craftsmen must have worked at both sites, changing the placement to suit the local architectural schema.

At the Chinese end of the Silk Road, the huge natural cave (no. 169) at Binglingsi, on the Yellow River near Lanzhou, bears a date of 420 C.E. The larger than life-size clay sculptures modeled on wooden armatures are closely related in style to contemporary stone sculptures at Mathurā, showing how rapid was the transmission of both iconography and style, with the necessary adaptation to local materials.

*See also:* **Bāmiyān; Central Asia; China; China, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture**

### **Bibliography**

- Baumer, Christoph. *Southern Silk Road: In the Footsteps of Sir Aurel Stein and Sven Hedin*. Bangkok, Thailand: Orchid Press, 2000.
- Debaine-Francfort, Corinne; Idriss, Abduressul; et al. *Keriya, mémoires d'un fleuve: archéologie et civilisation des oasis du Taklamakan*. Suilly-la-Tour: Editions Findakly; Paris: Électricité de France, 2001.
- Giès, Jacques, and Cohen, Monique. *Sérinde, terre de Bouddha: dix siècles d'art sur la route de la soie*. Paris: Réunion des Musées Nationaux, 1995.
- Gropp, Gerd. *Archäologische Funde aus Khotan Chinesisch-Ostturkestan: die Trinkler-Sammlung im Übersee-Museum*. Bremen, Germany: Röver, 1974.
- Härtel, Herbert, and Yaldiz, Marianne. *Along the Ancient Silk Routes: Central Asian Art from the West Berlin State Museums*. New York: Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1982.

Howard, Angela Falco. "In Support of a New Chronology for the Kizil Mural Paintings." *Archives of Asian Art* 44 (1991): 68–83.

Maillard, Monique; Jera Bezar, Robert; and Gaulier, Simone. *Buddhism in Afghanistan and Central Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1976.

Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle de Paris. *La route de la soie*. Paris: Arthaud, 1985.

Nara Prefectural Museum of Art. *The Silk Road and the World of Xuanzang*. Tokyo: Asahi Shimbun, 1999.

Whitfield, Roderick; Agnew, Neville; and Whitfield, Susan. *Cave Temples of Mogao: Art and History on the Silk Road*. Los Angeles: Getty Conservation Trust, 2000.

RODERICK WHITFIELD

---

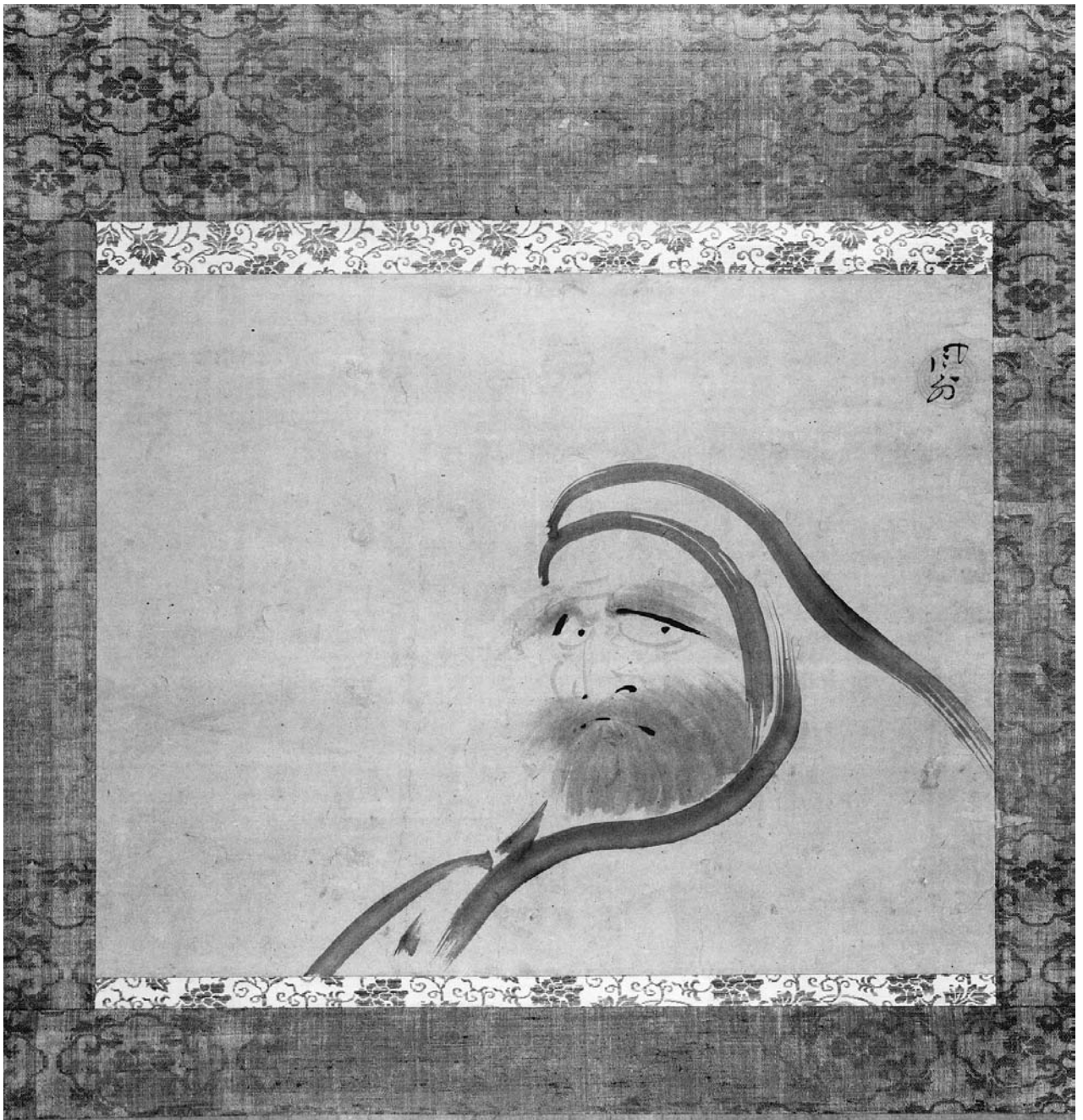
CEYLON. *See* **Sri Lanka**

---

## CHAN ART

From the point of view of art history, the CHAN SCHOOL (Japanese, Zen; Korean, Sŏn), more than any other form of Buddhism, has long been associated with distinctive modes of visual representation. Looking at Japan, for instance, such disparate forms as architecture, ceramics, tea ceremony, gardens, sculpture, and painting have been viewed as elements of a broad and unified Zen aesthetic that cuts across traditional boundaries. Since there is no category or concept of "Chan art" in surviving texts from the Tang (618–907) or Song (960–1279) dynasties, however, when the Chan school achieved its peak popularity, the historical origins of this aesthetic in China remain murky, at best. Indeed, in light of this lack of sources, scholars have had to develop their own criteria and definitions. A closer look at how these conceptions have evolved, particularly with regard to painting, may help illuminate the larger question (and problem) of how to define Chan art.

Western interest in art forms connected with Chan Buddhism was a natural outgrowth of the broader interest in Chan and Zen that began in the early 1900s and blossomed over the course of the century. One of the first scholars to identify Chan art (especially Chan painting) as a specific subcategory of Buddhist art was the eminent British Asianist Arthur Waley, whose *Introduction to the Study of Chinese Painting* (1923) contained a chapter titled "Zen Buddhism and Its Relation



Bodhidharma, putative fifth-century founder of Chan Buddhism, depicted during a legendary meditation in a cave, painted by a Japanese Zen monk Fugai Ekun (1568–1654) who himself lived in caves. (Japanese, seventeenth century.) Freer Gallery of Art Library. Reproduced by permission.

to Art” that proved to be enormously influential. (Waley, as was typical at the time, uses the Japanese term *Zen* rather than *Chan*, even when he is writing about China.) In particular, Waley’s focus on the notion of painting as a vehicle for the expression of religious ideals provided a model approach that continues to be employed in many discussions of Chan art, even if some historians of art and religion have challenged some of its underlying assumptions.

Following Waley’s example, it became common to define Chan art primarily in terms of subject matter, focusing on images (such as representations of **BODHIDHARMA**, the putative founder of Chan in China) that derive from Chan history and literature. Such works often carry additional meanings relating to Chan doctrine or ideology, as well. For example, the great many surviving paintings that depict the early Chan patriarchs might be interpreted as a pic-

torial counterpart to the concern with issues of lineage and transmission that figures so prominently in early Chan textual sources. In a similar vein, images of monks carrying hoes or chopping bamboo have frequently been related to the premium that Chan is said to place on the value of manual labor. While these kinds of explanatory strategies are relatively straightforward, most attempts to define Chan art also introduce other important issues concerning Chan ideals that merit further scrutiny—in particular, iconoclasm and self-expression.

### Art and iconoclasm

One of the most distinctive attributes of Chan, as characterized in popular accounts, is its emphasis on eccentric and iconoclastic behavior, and images that celebrate these qualities are among the most commonly cited examples of Chan art. This repertoire would include portraits of such Tang dynasty figures as Hanshan and Shide—the wild poet of Cold Mountain and his impish sidekick—and the monk Bird's Nest, who took up residence in a tree, as well as other subjects equally noted for their unconventional appearance and frequently outlandish conduct.

In several well-known instances, the notion of iconoclastic behavior is not merely figurative. One painting, attributed to the thirteenth-century painter Liang Kai and executed in monochrome ink in an abbreviated manner, purportedly shows the sixth Chan patriarch HUINENG (638–713) tearing up sūtras with apparent gusto and evident glee. Another work, by the early fourteenth-century painter Yintuoluo, depicts “The Monk from Danxia Burning a Wooden Image of the Buddha.” In most situations, one would expect such acts of desecration to be met with shock and disapproval, but what is noteworthy in this context is that ripping up a sacred text and burning a religious statue are presented not as acts of blasphemy but rather as manifestations of spiritual nonattachment. The philosophical basis for this view is cleverly demonstrated by the literary accounts of the incident depicted in Yintuoluo's painting.

Once, the monk from Danxia was staying at the Huilin Monastery. The weather was very cold, so the Master took a wooden statue of the Buddha and made a fire with it. When someone criticized him for doing so, the Master said: “I burned it in order to extract the sacred relics it contained.” The man said: “But how can you extract the sacred relics from an ordinary piece of wood?” The Master replied: “Well, if it is nothing more than a piece of wood, then why scold me for burning it?” (Fontein and Hickman, pp. 36–37)



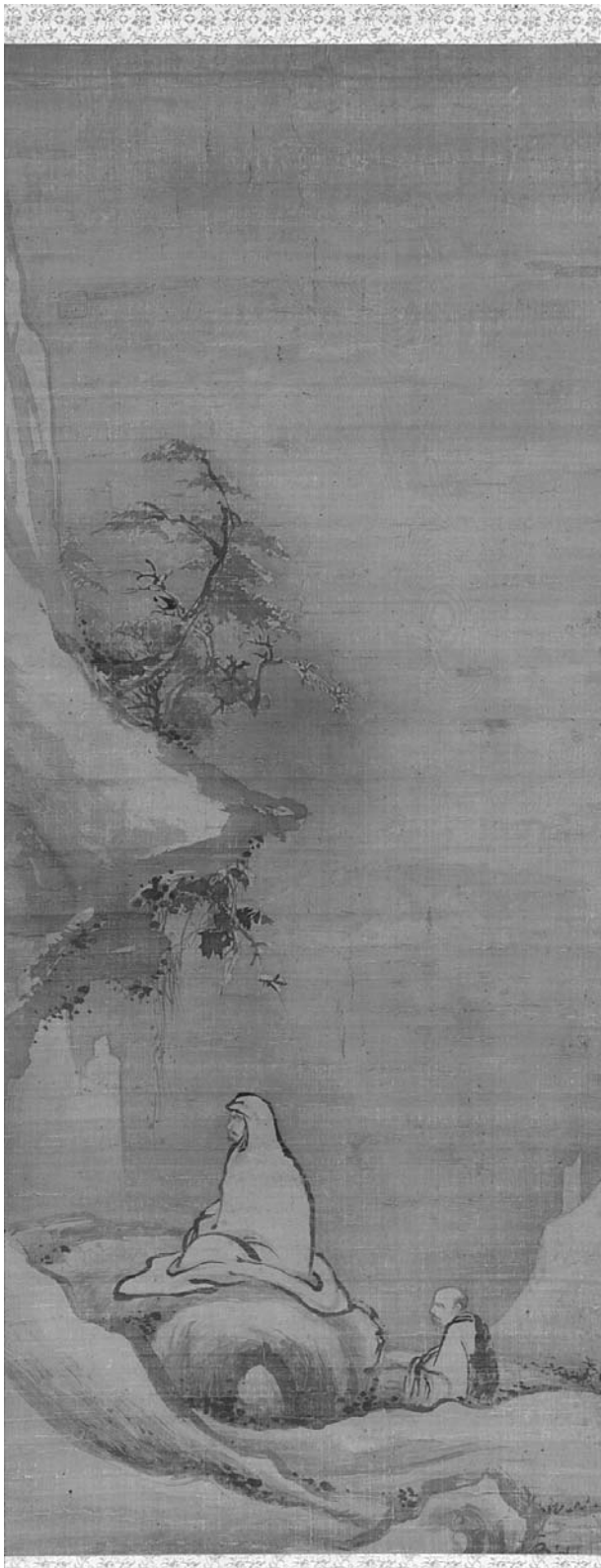
Another Japanese depiction of Bodhidharma. (Japanese scroll painting, late sixteenth century.) © Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.

Quite apart from the obviously intentional humor of the anecdote (and of its pictorial representation), this inversion of sacred and profane is clearly meant to demonstrate in a graphic way the Chan school's avowed independence from words and images.

### Art and expression

In the examples cited thus far, Chan art is essentially defined as a function of representation: Subject matter (or, more precisely, the correlation between pictorial content and Chan doctrine) is given precedence over style and authorship. A somewhat different, though complementary, approach, postulates that there are levels of meaning that can be generated by





*Bodhidharma Meditating Facing a Cliff*, China, late Song dynasty (960–1270). Hanging scroll, ink on silk, 116.2 x 46.35 cm. © The Cleveland Museum of Art, 2003. John L. Severance Fund, 1972.41. Reproduced by permission.

artistic practice as well as by artistic product—levels of meaning, that is, that are a function of the creative act itself. From this perspective, an explicit connection would be drawn between the so-called splashed ink (*pomo*) mode of painting, characterized by rough and seemingly improvisational brushwork, and the emphasis on intuition, immediacy, and sudden enlightenment commonly associated with orthodox Chan teachings. In other words, the meaning of such works is located in the manner of execution, and does not depend on nor arise from any particular subject matter or iconography.

Some writers go even further, suggesting that there are artworks that embody Chan content (or essence) in a way that transcends issues of subject matter, style, and function altogether. According to this account, a new kind of painting developed in China during the twelfth and thirteenth centuries in the Chan monasteries clustered around the West Lake in Hangzhou. Executed by monk-painters, such works came to be seen both as a form of religious practice and as a record of the painter's spiritual achievement. As the well-known art historian Michael Sullivan describes it, "In seeking a technique with which to express the intensity of his intuition, the Chan painter turned to the brush and . . . proceeded to record his own moments of truth" (p. 148). From this point of view, in short, the unique and ineffable quality of Chan painting is nothing less than the embodiment of the enlightened mind of the painter.

The artist who is most often used to exemplify this ideal is the thirteenth-century Chinese monk Fachang, better known as Muqi, whose *Six Persimmons* is undoubtedly the most frequently reproduced and best-known example of Chan painting. Although this small, sketchy, monochrome painting might not seem like much at first glance, it has been repeatedly hailed as the greatest Chan painting of all time. Appropriately enough, it was Waley who first rhapsodized about the work, declaring *Six Persimmons* to be endowed with "a stupendous calm" (p. 231). For Waley, as for later commentators, this quality stands as a manifestation of the painter's spiritual achievement, as a living expression of the painter's original mind (Pallis, p. 44). Put bluntly: *Six Persimmons* is a great Chan painting, the argument goes, because Muqi was profoundly awakened.

Ultimately, this idea of the work of art as the physical embodiment of the spiritual realization of its maker lies behind the claims that a somewhat unlikely

activity such as archery, say, can be a form of Chan art. That is, if the absence or presence of Chan essence in a painting depends upon the painter's own achievement, it then follows that virtually any activity or product, so to speak, will be similarly endowed. From there it is only a small step to the countless books and web sites that make Zen art forms (in some cases facetiously, to be sure) of everything from photography, writing, and psychoanalysis, to smoking, ice resurfacing, and procrastination.

### Chan art as anti-art?

If Chan art from Waley onward has been characterized as diverging from other forms of Buddhist art both in terms of what it represents and how it represents it, it has also been portrayed as functioning differently from the norm. In comparison to traditional Buddhist art, which emphasizes the replication of set iconographical subjects and styles that conform to a canonical ideal, the Chan emphasis on iconoclasm—both figurative and literal—constitutes a kind of anti-Buddhist art. As one scholar puts it, “In (Chan/) Zen Buddhism, cult images in the traditional sense play as little a part as classic Mahāyāna sūtras. After all, (Chan/) Zen is looking for ‘independence from holy scriptures’ and ‘a special transmission outside traditional doctrines.’” Thus, while cult images and icons are worshiped by other Buddhists, the Chan practitioner “ridicules the popular worship of relics” (Brinker 1996, pp. 38–39). Like claims about the Chan school itself, in short, Chan painting is presented here as unfettered by orthodox tradition.

A serious challenge to the basic assumptions of such interpretations has been offered by T. Griffith Foulk and Robert H. Sharf (1993/1994) in a detailed study of portraits of Chan abbots (a large and important subset of Chan-associated images). As they show quite convincingly, such portraits played an important role in Chan funerary and memorial rituals, and they conclude that “the portrait of the abbot, like the living abbot on his high seat, is thus properly viewed as a religious icon—it is a manifestation of buddhahood and a focus for ritual worship. As such, the portrait is functionally equivalent to the mummified remains of the abbot, to the relics of the Buddha, or to a stupa, in that it denotes the Buddha's presence in his very absence” (p. 210).

Their assertion—that Chan painting here functions very much like orthodox Buddhist painting does elsewhere—parallels several studies of Chan institu-

tional history, which similarly conclude that Chan monasticism, contrary to popular perception, did not radically differ from supposed mainstream practices. That is, regardless of lineage or school affiliation, all Buddhist monks in the Song period took part in similar practices and rituals (e.g., studying and chanting sūtras, engaging in seated meditation) that were essentially part of the very structure of the monastic institution as a whole, and thus did not vary much between designated Chan monasteries and other establishments (Foulk, pp. 220–221).

From the perspective of art history, the relative lack of differentiation in terms of day-to-day activities and procedures between Chan monks and non-Chan monks suggests the likelihood of comparable continuity with regard to the images employed in support of those same activities. It suggests, that is, that Chan painting and Buddhist art, far from constituting inverse categories, should instead be understood as largely coextensive. If the popular conception of Chan and Zen doctrine as irrational and free from orthodox strictures is essentially a modern misreading (Sharf), so, too, must the prevailing definitions of Chan art as unfettered embodiments of the enlightened mind be seen as the result of the same false premises. There is little question that Chan visual culture served particular rhetorical and ideological claims, but we must also recognize that Chan art served the same sorts of iconic, ritual, and social functions as orthodox Buddhist art traditions.

*See also:* China, Buddhist Art in; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

### Bibliography

- Brinker, Helmut. *Zen in the Art of Painting*, tr. George Campbell. New York: Arkana, 1987.
- Brinker, Helmut. *Zen: Masters of Meditation in Images and Writings*, tr. Andreas Leisinger. Zurich, Switzerland: Artibus Asiae, 1996.
- Fontein, Jan, and Hickman, Money. *Zen Painting and Calligraphy: An Exhibition of Works of Art Lent by Temples, Private Collectors, and Public and Private Museums in Japan, Organized in Collaboration with the Agency for Cultural Affairs of the Japanese Government*. Boston: Museum of Fine Arts, 1970.
- Foulk, T. Griffith. “Sung Controversies Concerning the ‘Separate Transmission’ of Ch’an.” In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

- Foulk, T. Griffith, and Sharf, Robert H. "On the Ritual Use of Ch'an Portraiture in Medieval China." *Cahiers d'Extreme-Asie* 7 (1993/1994): 149–219.
- Hisamatsu Shin'ichi. "On Zen Art." *Eastern Buddhist* new series 1, no. 2 (1966): 21–33.
- Munsterberg, Hugo. *Zen and Oriental Art*. Rutland, VT: Tuttle, 1965.
- Pallis, Tim. "Nanrei Sohaku Kabori and His Teaching of Shikan One: A Remembrance." *FAS Society Journal* (Summer 1992): 37–45.
- Seckel, Dietrich. *Buddhist Art of East Asia*, tr. Ulrich Mammitzsch. Bellingham: Center for East Asian Studies, Western Washington University, 1989.
- Sharf, Robert H. "The Zen of Japanese Nationalism." In *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.
- Sullivan, Michael. *The Arts of China*, 3rd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1984.
- Waley, Arthur. *An Introduction to the Study of Chinese Painting*. London: Ernest Benn, 1923.
- Weidner, Marsha, ed. *Latter Days of the Law: Images of Chinese Buddhism 850–1850*. Lawrence, KS: Spencer Museum of Art, 1994.

CHARLES LACHMAN

## CHAN SCHOOL

The doctrinal assumptions of the Chan school are that all beings possess a potential to become a buddha, and that potential can be realized through MEDITATION or through the removal of obstructing preconceptions and attachments. Dissatisfied with existing meditation practices and complex philosophies, Chan proposed a direct "seeing" of one's inherent buddhahood, accomplished through such means as challenging repartee, intensive meditation, and puzzling *gong'an* (Japanese *KŌAN*; Korean, *kongan*). Such techniques made the role of the teacher paramount. To symbolize that the Chan teacher was the true, legitimate heir to the Buddha, Chan claimed for its teachers an unbroken lineal succession to the enlightened mind of the Buddha via the Indian monk BODHIDHARMA (ca. early fifth century C.E.).

Meditators and ascetics from the late sixth century, hoping to replicate the enlightenment of Śākyamuni Buddha, sought a distinctive MAHĀYĀNA meditation practice and list of precepts appropriate for BODHISATTVAS. They coalesced into several lineages of monks united in attempts to create genealogies from

Bodhidharma. The pupils of Hongren (601–674) obtained a following among the metropolitan elite of Tang China, which resulted in contests for lineage legitimacy. These were ignited around 730 by Shenhui (684–758), who accused his rivals of teaching gradual enlightenment, not suitable for Mahāyāna adherents. His propaganda prompted a redefinition of Chan. Shenhui's own lineage, which he claimed derived from Hongren via HUINENG (638–713), whom he titled the Sixth Patriarch, became known as the Southern Lineage (*nanzong*). Shenhui combined Buddhist genealogies with a Chinese imperial mourning lineage (*zong*) to forge a link between himself, Huineng, and the Buddha via Bodhidharma. This linkage was refined later into a unilinear genealogy of twenty-eight Indian and six Chinese patriarchs (*zu*). The term *Chan* (*zong*), in the sense of a Chan lineage, was first used in the 780s and soon became the main identifier for the traditions called *Chan* (Korean, *Sŏn*; Japanese, *Zen*; Vietnamese, *Thiền*).

The word *chan* was originally part of the term *channa*, a Chinese transcription of the Sanskrit term DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE), but even the earliest Chan texts devalued the four dhyānas, samādhi, and other meditative states as mere elimination of sensation, a tranquility easily disturbed after withdrawing from those states. Shenhui redefined *chan* as *prajñāpāramitā* (the perfection of wisdom). The PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING), a text from the 780s attributed to Huineng, defined *chan* as the buddha-nature or the ability to "internally see the fundamental nature and not be confused." Eventually *chan* was equated with the essence of Buddhism. Huineng, who had his own sūtra, was seen as a buddha-incarnate, implying thereby that only the Chan lineage transmitted the true, verifiable understanding of the Buddha himself.

### Doctrinal and behavioral bases

The doctrinal foundation of Chan was a mixture of TATHĀGATAGARBHA (buddha-nature) ideas and *prajñāpāramitā* analysis. The earliest texts mention a pure, original buddha-nature (*foxing*) inherent in everyone, which becomes obscured by mental pollutants or ignorance. As a result of ambiguities in Chinese translations concerning the *tathāgatagarbha*, disputes arose over whether meditation was needed to "see the (buddha-)nature" (*jianxing*) by removing the pollution, or whether detachment from habitual conceptualization allowed this buddha-identity to emerge naturally. This issue was related to whether the realization was a gradual buildup to a breakthrough of "becoming buddha" (*chengfo*) or an instantaneous

all-at-once enlightenment (*wu*) or “being buddha” (*jifo*). After Shenhui, Chan lineages favored the latter, although some accused Shenhui of intellectualizing the process. It was agreed, as in the *Platform Sūtra*, that *samādhi* (*ting*) and *prajñā* (*hui*) are indivisible, an idea reinforced by the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, which stated that “because the *samādhi* and *prajñā* of the buddhas are equal, they clearly see the buddha-nature.”

The search for ethical conduct or precepts suitable to Mahāyāna in sixth- and seventh-century China was not meant to replace the VINAYA precepts of mainstream Buddhism, but to supplement them. Some thought bodhisattva precepts to be the true spirit of Buddhism. The *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* attracted Chan’s interest by stating that only recipients of the bodhisattva precepts could see the buddha-nature. The bodhisattva precepts advocated intention rather than formal observance, such that KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION) could override a basic Vinaya precept like that against lying. They therefore inspired Chan. The *Platform Sūtra* preached the “formless precepts” and the nonexistence of transgression in the (pure) mind. One’s own (buddha-) nature is thus the nature of the precepts.

Chan tradition claims that the first monastic code of conduct for Chan was issued by Huaihai (749–814) on Mount Baizhang. His reputed saying, “A day without work is a day without food,” encapsulated three themes: the antiformalism derived from the bodhisattva precepts; the preexisting Chinese monastic custom of monks doing physical labor despite Vinaya prohibitions; and agrarian self-sufficiency. Although a distinctive Chan canon or “pure rules” (Chinese, *qing-gui*) may have only appeared in the eleventh century, general procedures for the operation of the monastery on Mount Baizhang probably took form over hundreds of years, giving Chan a sense of institutional independence as an order within the SAṄGHA. This development did not make Chan a separate sect or denomination, for its clergy still obeyed the Vinaya and precepts, and their practices overlapped with those of other schools. They often inhabited the same monastery with non-Chan clergy. Yet as early as the 850s, the visiting Japanese Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) monk, Enchin, characterized them as maintaining “this mind is the buddha as their theme, the mind with no attachments as their practice, and the dharmas are empty as their meaning. They transmit the robe and bowl from the time of the Buddha, which things are passed from master to disciple” as symbols of the confirmation of enlightenment.

## Developments in China

As Chan gained a larger following, it developed a specialized literature and branch lineages that tended to use differing techniques and contrasting styles. The subtlety, ambiguity, and lack of set forms in Chan teachings required an audience with a sophisticated grasp of Buddhism for it to be understood. Despite their rhetoric, Chan monks were well educated in Buddhist scriptures, as required for the state certification of monks that was commonly imposed in East Asia. They encouraged a liberal or meditative interpretation of the scriptures, despising scholastic literalism.

The earliest Chan texts were mostly treatises (*lun*) on topics such as expedient means and the mind, commentaries on popular sūtras, hagiographical collections, hymns, and apocryphal sūtras. These forms all merged in the *Platform Sūtra* of the 780s, which incorporated a pseudo-hagiography of Huineng, sermons, a genealogy, dialogues, and verses of transmission. Initially controversial, it became the principal Chan scripture during the Song dynasty (960–1279).

The figure of Huineng became a crux, for two lineages from him, via DAOYI (MAZU; 709–788) and Shitou Xiqian (700–791), led to two branches that subsumed or superseded all other lineages. Daoyi taught the immanence of “this mind is the buddha,” in which enlightenment could occur amid everyday happenings, and so “the ordinary mind is the Way.” Daoyi’s heirs spread across China and even into Korea. The Mazu style, later dubbed patriarchal Chan (*zushi Chan*) to contrast with the intellectual TATHĀGATA Chan (*rulai Chan*) of Shenhui, was distinguished by shouts and blows, sharp repartee, and the use of everyday events as opportunities for enlightenment. This was epitomized by Linji YIXUAN (d. 866), an heir to the style, who demanded a critical attitude, even toward Buddhism and his own teachings, and self-confidence to act upon that attitude: “If you meet the Buddha, kill him.” For Yixuan, enlightenment was an urgent necessity of the current moment.

Xiqian’s branch tended to eremitic austerity and poetic expression of sophisticated doctrine. This branch, including the Caodong house of Dongshan Liangjie (807–869) and Caoshan Benji (840–901), expressed stages of understanding and enlightenment in diagrams, often circles, to illustrate the dialectical progress toward complete enlightenment in a return to the source, the untrammelled mind. These evolved into the popular OXHERDING PICTURES. An intellectual codification of Chan practice was even introduced into the

radical, iconoclastic Linji house, with formulations such as the four selections of the person and environment or the three phrases.

### Systematization

As Chan grew from a small, minority movement in the seventh century into a popular and major part of the Buddhist establishment by the twelfth century, it took on more Chinese features, and had to accommodate itself more to the state and the needs of a broad and diverse audience. Chan consequently developed a characteristically Chinese Buddhist literature and it coalesced into several distinct branches with their own techniques, styles, and literatures.

Chan teachers' words were written down as early as the seventh and eighth centuries. Shenhui's dialogues used colloquial language, which may have influenced the forerunners of the "recorded sayings" texts attributed to Daoyi, Huangbo Xiyun (d. 850), and Zhaozhou Congshen (778–987). Covertly recorded by pupils and recompiled to include verses and brief biographies, these sermons and dialogues in colloquial Chinese depict mundane happenings. They differ from Buddhist commentaries and treatises in literary Chinese, and were less structured. These discourse records (Chinese, *yulu*) constitute the bulk of Chan literature, especially from the Song dynasty onward.

The intellectualization of Chan dates back to Guifeng ZONGMI (780–841) of the Shenhui lineage, which systematically characterized and ranked the Chan lineages, and correlated them with doctrinal formulations. Zongmi wrote many sūtra commentaries and incorporated Huayan philosophy into Chan.

In reaction to the increasing popularity and immense wealth of the Buddhist order, which included Chan, Emperor Wu (r. 841–846) launched the xenophobic Huichang persecution of Buddhism on economic and rationalist grounds. Clergy were laicized and monasteries confiscated. The differing reactions to the persecution, and the geographic dispersion of some Chan groups, induced self-reflection; concerns about succession within specific monasteries reinvigorated interest in genealogy. As membership had grown, the lineages (*zong*) subdivided into houses (*jia*) descended from Huineng. From the late ninth century, masters issued certificates of inheritance, occupation of a monastery by a lineage gained significance, styles of teaching diverged, and the split of China into ten states in the early tenth century promoted regional differences. Monks began to ask teachers about their "house

style" (*jiafeng*) around this time. Fayan Wenyi (885–958) identified five houses—Caodong, Linji, Yunmen, Guiyang, and Fayan—and described them in terms of the verbal jousts or *wenda* (questions and answers) between masters and pupils. He attacked their sectarianism and lack of doctrine as all style and no substance.

The Fayan house, versed in Huayan philosophy, led Chan in the tenth and eleventh centuries, producing some of the most important Chan scholars. Yongming YANSHOU (904–975) harmonized Chan and doctrine (*jiao*), and melded Chan with *nianfo* (recollection of a buddha's name). Daoyuan (n.d.) compiled the *Jingde chuandeng lu* (*Records of the Transmission of the Lamp-light [of enlightenment compiled during the] Jingde Reign*, 1104), a genealogically arranged set of brief hagiographies primarily concerned with recording the words of enlightenment occasions (*jiyu*).

The Fayan house was not alone in its influence, however. The momentarily popular Yunmen house also contributed to the *gong'an* evolution through the sayings of its founder, Yunmen Wenyan (864–949), as it picked out earlier enlightenment exchanges (*nian'gu*), commented on them (*zhuyi*; Japanese, *jakugo*), and provided substitute answers to questions and dialogues (*daiyu*, *bieyu*). Eventually the Fayan, Yunmen, and Linji houses combined to create the *gong'an*, originally meaning legal precedents. From the enlightenment dialogues in *chuandeng lu*, Yunmen and Linji monks selected cases, to which they appended verses. These juxtapositions of colloquial dialogues and literary poems morphed into collections like the *Biyuan lu* (*Blue Cliff Record*) by Keqin (1063–1135). He and Wuzu Fayan (1024–1104), who made famous the Zhaozhou *wu* (Japanese, *mu*; English, no) *gong'an*, promoted each *gong'an* as a singular aid to an instantaneous enlightenment. Fayan advised practitioners to concentrate on the *wu* word only, and not think of the entire dialogue on the buddha-nature. ZONGGAO (1089–1163), who took up the *wu* topic, supposedly burnt his master's *Biyuan lu* anthology because students were infatuated with its literary qualities. This was a period when "lettered Chan" (*wenzi Chan*), and indulgence in Chan literature, was popular. Led by Huihong (1071–1128), a poet of the Huanglong faction of the Linji house, this type of Chan was denigrated by Zonggao as mere bookishness. He said Huihong's *gong'an* ignored daily life and were only random poetical cases. Zonggao, in contrast, directed attention to one word only, *wu*, or Wenyan's "dried shit-stick," in order to assist the many lay followers by simplifying contemplation practice.

Concentration on *wu* would lead to a breakthrough. This single word was called a *huatou* (key word or critical phrase) and “examining the key word” (*kanhua*) was touted as a shortcut method. It had to be experienced, like the sword of the barbarian enemy, as an immediate problem of life and death. This contemplation became mainstream Chan practice in China, Japan, Korea, and Vietnam, for it could be used even during everyday activities.

Zonggao attacked MOZHAO CHAN (SILENT ILLUMINATION CHAN) as the heresy of quietism, which lacks self-doubt. The barb was aimed at Hongzhi Chengjue (1091–1157) of the Caodong house, and at meeting the demands for a patriotic Buddhism after the loss of North China to the Jurchens in 1126. Asserting that the mundane law is the same as the Buddha Law, Zonggao maintained that one had to be active, not pacifist and quietist. This patriotic Chan resulted in the building of the “Five Mountain and Ten Monasteries” network, wherein the state appointed Chan abbots, whose sermons and rituals were for the salvation of the state and sentient beings.

### Modern Chan

Having long been part of the Buddhist establishment, Chan became less distinguishable from Buddhism in general after the Song dynasty. While it maintained the distinctively Chan technique of *kanhua*, it also adopted elements of the Pure Land devotions, and fought the rising tide of syncretism.

The state Chan and *gong'an* practice extended into the Yuan dynasty (1279–1368), which codified the *qinggui* (pure rules) in 1336. The *qinggui* and the preceding Song-dynasty codes evidence increasing monastic bureaucracy, hierarchy, and prayers for emperors. The 1336 code essentially remained the rule book for Chan thereafter, and the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) mandated it as the code for all monks, Chan or not. Gaofeng Yuanmiao (1238–1295) clarified the technique of DOUBT in *kanhua*, stating that one first needed a basis in FAITH, then furious determination, and finally intense doubt. His pupil Zhongfeng Mingben (1263–1323) combined *kanhua* and Yanshou's *nianfo Chan*, and ZHUHONG (1532–1612) developed it. By the late Ming, disputes between the Caodong and Linji houses discredited Chan monks, so lay Chan adherents rose to prominence in the succeeding Manchu Qing dynasty (1644–1912). While many followed the ways of Zhuhong and DEQING (1546–1623), laymen like Qian Qianyi (1582–1684) claimed that Chan had been so formalized that “today's Chan is not Chan, but

simply *gong'an* . . . blows and shouts . . . theories of expedient means.”

In the twentieth century, monastic Chan was revived by Xuyun (ca. 1840–1959) and other reformers, but was largely confined to the large monasteries of Jiangsu and Zhejiang. Linji Chan membership was generally nominal, lineage outranked doctrine. Since the 1980s, there has been a resurgence of interest in Chan, mostly an intellectual curiosity about this most Chinese form of Buddhism.

**Monastic routine.** Descriptions of monastic routine in the first half of the twentieth century show that sitting in meditation and concentration on *huatou* were the norm. Although prayers for rain, funeral ceremonies, and anniversaries of Chan and monastic founders played a part, meditation was still the prime practice in major Chan monasteries. With the exception of administrators and service-providers, the other monks lived, meditated, and slept in the *chantang* (Japanese, *zendō*; meditation hall), also called *sengtang* (monks' hall). Contemplatives sat on meditation benches lining the walls, and exercised between meditation sessions by circumambulating in the vacant center, which contained only an image of Bodhidharma or MAHĀKĀŚYAPA. During intensive meditation periods, monks typically meditated nine hours per day, slept five hours, rising at 3:00 A.M. and retiring at 10:00 P.M. The monks could consult the abbot or instructor regarding their meditation practice. Summer was for pilgrimage, consultations with other teachers, or relaxation. Similar routines are maintained in Korea, Japan, and Vietnam.

### Internationalization

The use of Chinese script, the firm establishment of Buddhism for several centuries, and a desire to reform Buddhism were preconditions for the acceptance of Chan Buddhism. Consequently, importation was made with the assistance of elites. All traditions later attempted to antedate the earliest transmission to create an aura of antiquity and further national pride.

**Korea (Sōn).** After scholastic and devotional Buddhism were firmly established in Korea, monks traveling to China from the Korean state of Silla began to encounter Chan in the early to mid-eighth century. Chan attracted Korean attention once the exploits of Musang (684–762), a scion of the royal house of Silla, who became a famous Chan master in Sichuan, were reported in Korea. Musang had been an early teacher

of Mazu Daoyi, and a considerable number of Silla monks, including Toŭi (d. 825), came to study with Daoyi and his pupils. However, once they returned to Korea, their teachings met strong resistance from the established forms of Buddhism.

Therefore, after earlier abortive attempts to introduce Chan, when Toŭi returned in 821 with Mazu Chan, he experienced much opposition, and took Chan into the mountains and away from the court. Eight lineage founders studied under Daoyi's heirs; only one under Caodong. Most had studied teachings of the HUAYAN SCHOOL (Korean, Hwaŏm), the dominant doctrinal tradition in Silla Korea, but were dissatisfied with its abstruse and impractical scholasticism. These lineages were collectively called *kusan* (the NINE MOUNTAINS SCHOOL OF SŌN) from 1084.

The Five Houses were imported early in the Koryŏ dynasty (918–1392), and King Kwangjong (r. 950–975) introduced the Fayan house (Korean, Pŏban) by sending thirty-six monks to study with the Chan monk Yanshou in China. The monk ŬICH'ŎN (1055–1101) founded the Tiantai (Korean, Ch'ŏnt'ae) school to overcome the rivalry of Sŏn and Hwaŏm deeming that iconoclastic Sŏn needed doctrinal foundations. Many Pŏban monks joined Ŭich'ŏn, and this, plus corruption in the saṅgha, weakened Sŏn.

Consequently, CHINUL (1158–1210) was moved to revitalize Sŏn by combining it with Hwaŏm philosophy to provide a doctrinal base, inspired by the ideas of Zongmi. Unable to make a pilgrimage to the mainland to study with Chinese masters, Chinul was successively enlightened by his own reading of the *Platform Sūtra*, a commentary on the *Huayan jing* by Li Tongxuan (635–730), and by reading the works of Zonggao on *hwadu* (Chinese, *huatou*). *Hwadu* was for able students; lesser lights could adopt Zongmi's sudden enlightenment followed by gradual cultivation to remove residual habits. Subsequently, *hwadu* practice predominated, and the Linji style prevailed among the sixteen generations of successors at Chinul's monastery on Chogyesan, something reinforced once the Mongols forcibly reopened communications with China. Koryŏ monks, particularly T'aego Pou (1301–1382) and Naong Hyegŭn (1320–1376), who wanted to improve *hwadu* practice, sought confirmation of their enlightenment within the lineage of Wuzu Fayan (1024–1104). They attempted to unite the *kusan* under the name of the Chogye order. They also tried to enforce monastic discipline through the state, but the saṅgha's corruption and the weakness of Koryŏ allowed the rise

of the anti-Buddhist Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910) and a fundamentalist neo-Confucianism.

Initially the new Chosŏn rulers did not persecute Buddhism, which had several able Sŏn monk defenders. Restrictions increased, and King Sejong (r. 1419–1450) forcibly combined the Chogye, Ch'ŏnt'ae, and another school into the Sŏnjong. Under later kings the repression was so severe that the Sŏn lineage may have been severed. All current lineages allegedly revert to Pyŏkkye Chŏngsim (late fifteenth century), who had been compulsorily laicized. His master is unknown. The result was controversy over whether later Sŏn was descended from Pou via Chŏngsim, or went back to Chinul. The main descendant of Chŏngsim, HYUJŎNG (1520–1604), revived Sŏn's fortunes by leading a monk army against the invading Japanese in 1592.

The revival was temporary, for soon the state herded the monks into the mountains or conscripted them into labor service. Zonggao's ideas provided the best defense against intolerant neo-Confucianism, allowing Sŏn practice to dominate elite Chosŏn dynasty Buddhism, but at the cost of infiltration by Confucian values. Sŏn practice retreated increasingly into "lettered Chan" and ritual, or Pure Land devotions. However, Chinul's ideas continued to have support, and several important teachers tried to revive Sŏn.

The Japanese annexation of Korea (1910–1945) brought clashes between a pro-Japanese Sŏtō Zen clique and a traditionalist Korean Linji (Imje) faction, and between modernizers like HAN YONGUN (1879–1944), who advocated married clergy, and conservative celibate monks who founded the Sŏn Academy in 1921. The Chogye order, founded in 1941, included pro-Japanese married clergy, as well as nationalistic celibates, which led the non-celibates to form the breakaway T'aego order in 1970. This also invoked the old dispute over the founding patriarch of Sŏn, Chinul or Pou, a controversy raised even later by the former head of the Chogye order, T'oe'ong Sŏngch'ŏl (1912–1993), who championed Pou and rejected Chinul's emblematic soteriology of sudden enlightenment followed by gradual cultivation. For Sŏngch'ŏl, once one has seen the nature and become buddha, gradual cultivation is superfluous. In North Korea, all Sŏn clerics are married and retired from the regular workforce, being subservient to the state.

**Japan (Zen).** The Japanese Hossō (Yogācāra) and Tendai (Tiantai) schools, without understanding the new meaning of *chan*, imported Chan cultivation as a

subordinate component of their practice from the 660s. In the mid-twelfth century, communication was reopened with Song dynasty China, and Chan's importation was justified in terms of the powers of ascetic meditation and "natural wisdom." Myōan Eisai (1141–1215) introduced Linji (Japanese, Rinzai) as part of Tendai, while Dainichi Nōnin (ca. 1189) attempted to establish an independent Zen assembly without sanction of a Chinese master, based on "natural wisdom" or ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU). For this Nōnin was attacked by Eisai and Dōgen Kigen (1200–1253). But Eisai was attacked in turn by Tendai prelates, and he retaliated by asserting that Zen was the essence of Buddhism, and his pupils founded independent Zen monasteries. The Japanese saying, "Rinzai (for) shoguns, Sōtō (for) peasants," reflects the social classes each school aimed at.

**Sōtō.** The Sōtō (Chinese, Caodong) school believed that as one is already buddha, anybody can allow that status to emerge by a "quietist" sitting in meditation, without striving to become buddha. Dōgen, venerated as the founder of Sōtō, introduced the Caodong Chan of Ruqing (1163–1228), but the practice soon became more complex and added *kōan* to its repertoire.

Dōgen emphasized independence by ascetic meditation in the mountains away from the capitals, bodhisattva-precepts ordinations apart from the Tendai monopoly, and thorough Chan monastic routines. Receiving transmission in a Caodong lineage from China, he advocated sitting in meditation only (*shikantaza*) as the sole way to enlightenment, and he misread the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* to say "all being is enlightenment." He attacked Zonggao, despised the memorization of *kōan* and dialectical formulae, and even disparaged the notion of a Zen school (*Zenshū*). He claimed that the only transmission of the "Storehouse of the Eye of the True Dharma" (*shōbōgenzō*) came via Shitou Xiqian, so he, Dōgen, had brought the only true Buddhism to Japan. Yet his own magnum opus, the *Shōbōgenzō*, a masterpiece in Japanese and Chinese, was ignored and not rehabilitated until the 1700s. The Sōtō lineages derived from Dōgen, however, spread rapidly throughout rural Japan, the powers of meditation and the precepts converting warriors and villagers alike. Catering to their clients' needs, Sōtō created country-wide networks of over ten thousand monasteries. In doing so, much of Dōgen's "pure Zen" was shed for the joint practice of Zen and esoteric Buddhism. The arrival of the Chinese Ōbaku monks in the 1650s stimulated the revival of monastic rules and

Dōgen's teachings. Scholarship on Dōgen Zen and disputes over its interpretation continue today, with a CRITICAL BUDDHISM scholarship even denying that Zen and tathāgatagarbha thought are Buddhist.

**Rinzai.** Rinzai (Chinese, Linji) used the *kōan* as the primary means to attain enlightenment. Being more active in the use of blows, shouts, and witty exchanges, this "opportunist" Zen targeted the warrior class. Rinzai was restricted to the capitals and mixed with Tendai and Shingon until Song-dynasty Chan was implanted by Chinese monks fleeing the Mongols in the thirteenth century. Attracted by their Chinese culture and their disciplined Zen, the warrior rulers invited them to Kamakura. These monks brought the Chan of Zonggao and the Song as a whole package: language, *kōan*, discipline, and architecture. They also introduced neo-Confucianism and the arts, and inspired the imitation of the Five Mountains network (*gozan*) of Song China. The Gozan network, which was ranked in three tiers, was state-controlled and located in Kamakura and then Kyoto, with provincial branches later. The warrior elite and emperors patronized Rinzai, especially the Nanzen Monastery, making Yishan Yining (1247–1317) and Musō Sōseki (1275–1351) abbots there. The main role of the Gozan was cultural, as centers for the arts. These centers were gradually secularized, weakening Zen practice; wars in the 1460s ended their influence, although a Nanzenji monk introduced Zen to the Ryūkyū Kingdom in the 1450s.

The Gozan were superseded by the Daitokuji and Myōshinji lineages, which gained merchant supporters. These monasteries had been built with the aid of Shūhō Myōchō (Daitō kokushi, 1282–1337). Rinzai assisted the Tokugawa state control of Buddhism and the spread of neo-Confucianism, actions that weakened it. But monks like Takuan Sōhō (1573–1645), the last prominent member of the Daitokuji lineage, explained neo-Confucianism in terms of Zen and sword-fighting as the removal of ego, ideas suitable to the samurai. The Ōbaku influx stimulated a revival of the Myōshinji lineage, with Bankei Yōtaku (1622–1693) teaching that *kōan* are too artificial. However, Mujaku Dōchū (1653–1744) saw the Ōbaku as rivals, railed against them, and pioneered Rinzai scholarship. HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768), the restorer of Rinzai, reacted against Yōtaku and championed *kanna* (Chinese, *kanhua*) Zen. Modern Rinzai largely derives from him.

**Ōbaku.** This Ming-dynasty form of Chan was introduced by Chinese monks fleeing Mount Huangbo in Fujian before the Manchu invasion in 1647. Although



a Linji lineage, Rinzai and China's Linji had diverged over the centuries, so when the monks arrived in the 1650s, the Japanese objected to the Ōbaku (Chinese, Huangbo) use of *nianfo* (Japanese, *nenbutsu*; recollection of the Buddha's name) in Chan. Many Japanese were, however, fascinated by the new import, and Ōbaku long retained its Chinese style in food, language, architecture, ritual, and dress. Abbots of Manpukuji, Ōbaku's monastic headquarters, were always to be Chinese, but the last Chinese abbot died in 1784, and was succeeded by a Japanese abbot. Ōbaku took over some monasteries in the Myōshinji lineage, so there was intense rivalry between them. Ōbaku directed more attention to study of the sūtras and discourse records (*goroku*), and away from decontextualized *kōan* as in the *Hekigan roku* (Chinese, *Biyan lu*; *Blue Cliff Record*). They invented their own *kōan*, thinking the Japanese use of *kōan* courses that encouraged rote memorization a form of "lettered Zen" of set poetic replies and textbook manuals.

In 1872 the government permitted monks to marry, and so the majority of Zen priests after World War II were married, resulting in the inheritance by sons of small temples from their Zen priest fathers. To maintain the temple, they spend most of their time at funeral services or chanting sūtras.

**Vietnam (Thiền).** Chan probably gained a minor following among the ethnic Vietnamese elites beginning in the ninth century, although tradition asserts it arrived in 580 C.E. with Vinītaruci (d. 594), an Indian monk who allegedly studied under Sengcan (d. 606). Another tradition maintains that Chan arrived in 820 with Wuyan Tong (d. 826), a supposed pupil of Huaihai. During the Lý dynasty (1009–1225), Confucianism came to dominate, so court elites, such as the monk Thông Biện (d. 1134), fabricated lineages back to China. The Mongol invasions inspired the Trần dynasty (1225–1407) emperor Nhân-Tông (r. 1279–1293), who defeated the invaders, to become a monk and found the short-lived Trúc Lâm lineage. The Ming conquest (1413–1428) and Lê dynasty (1414–1788) imposed a Confucian anti-Buddhist policy, and so Chinese Linji monks who fled the Manchu conquest in the 1660s, headed for the mid-coast of Vietnam, where the Nguyễn warlords held sway. This Linji (Vietnamese, Lâm Tế), combined Chan and Pure Land practice. The stronghold of Thiền Buddhism, as the Chan tradition became known, remained in the cities of central Vietnam, and the saṅgha was nominally Lâm Tế. Thiền had a following only among the intellectual, urban elites,

and since the unification of Buddhism in 1963, Thiền has been subsumed into a syncretic Buddhism.

## Conclusion

Chan is the most Confucian form of Buddhism, and it has been in constant rivalry with neo-Confucianism. It is also elitist, given the strict requirements for practice and the requirements to read literary Chinese, even though some popularizers, writing in the colloquial vernacular, contributed to the development of national languages. However, there was often a gap between ideal and practice, for the tradition also had to meet the needs of clients, who wanted easier practices, funeral rites, and the transfer of merit. This was a constant tension, as was the need for the confirmation of enlightenment, which led to many genealogical disputes and inventions.

*See also:* China; Confucianism and Buddhism; Japan; Korea; Lineage; Poetry and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings; Vietnam; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

## Bibliography

- Baroni, Helen J. *Ōbaku Zen: The Emergence of the Third Sect of Zen in Tokugawa Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Bodiford, William M. *Sōtō Zen in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., trans. *The Korean Approach to Zen: The Collected Works of Chinul*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983. Reprinted as *Tracing Back the Radiance: Chinul's Korean Way of Zen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practices in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Chang, Chung-Yuan, trans. *Original Teachings of Ch'an Buddhism: Selected from the Transmission of the Lamp*. New York: Vintage, 1971.
- Collcutt, Martin. *Five Mountains: The Rinzaï Zen Monastic Institution in Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1981.
- Dumoulin, Heinrich. *Zen Buddhism: A History, Vol. 1: India and China*, tr. James W. Heisig and Paul Knitter. New York: Macmillan, 1988.
- Dumoulin, Heinrich. *Zen Buddhism: A History, Vol. 2: Japan*, tr. James W. Heisig and Paul Knitter. New York: Macmillan, 1990.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Rhetoric of Immediacy: A Cultural Critique of Chan/Zen Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.

- Faure, Bernard. *Chan Insights and Oversights: An Epistemological Critique of the Chan Tradition*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1993.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Will to Orthodoxy: A Critical Genealogy of Northern Chan Buddhism*, tr. Phyllis Brooks. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1997.
- Gimello, Robert M., and Gregory, Peter N., eds. *Studies in Ch'an and Hua-yen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Gregory, Peter N., ed. *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Hsu, Sung-peng. *A Buddhist Leader in Ming China: The Life and Thought of Han-shan Te-ch'ing, 1546–1623*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1979.
- Hubbard, Jamie, and Swanson, Paul L., eds. *Pruning the Bodhi Tree: The Storm over Critical Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Keel, Hee-Sung. *Chinul: The Founder of the Korean Sŏn Tradition*. Berkeley, CA: Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, 1984.
- Korean Buddhist Research Institute, comp. *Sŏn Thought in Korean Buddhism*. Seoul: Dongguk University Press, 1998.
- LaFleur, William R., ed. *Dōgen Studies*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1985.
- Lai, Whalen, and Lancaster, Lewis R., eds. *Early Ch'an in China and Tibet*. Berkeley, CA: Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, 1983.
- McRae, John R. *The Northern School and the Formation of Early Ch'an Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Nguyen Cuong Tu. *Zen in Medieval Vietnam: A Study and Translation of the Thiệu Uyển Tập*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Unsui: A Diary of Zen Monastic Life*, text by Eshin Nishimura, drawings by Giei Sato. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1973.
- Thich Thien-An. *Buddhism and Zen in Vietnam*, ed. Carol Smith. Los Angeles: College of Oriental Studies, 1975.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.
- Yampolsky, Philip B., trans. and ed. *The Platform Sutra of the Sixth Patriarch*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1967.
- Yampolsky, Philip B., trans. *The Zen Master Hakuin: Selected Writings*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1971.
- Yu, Chun-fang. *The Renewal of Buddhism in China: Chu-hung and the Late Ming Synthesis*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1981.

JOHN JORGENSEN

## CHANTING AND LITURGY

Chanting and RITUAL are the liturgical means of transforming doctrinal and moral ideals into experience. The types, uses, and meanings of chants and rituals are vast, ranging from those performed by individuals as everyday custom, to elaborate temple ceremonies for large groups. There are appropriate rituals for serious ascetics seeking enlightenment, as well as for casual believers seeking worldly benefits such as health, wealth, and a good spouse. Defined by scriptures and sectarian traditions, chanting and ritual are carried out as prescribed actions, but they are also the means by which practitioners express their own concerns. The repeated performances of certain chants and rituals are part of the everyday fabric of Buddhist cultures, and give members their religious identities.

Repetition also invites people to lose or forget the doctrinal meanings of chants and rituals. Chanting produces liturgical rhythms valued for their audible or musical effects rather than their textual messages. Since chants consist of words, they have linguistic meaning, but chanting often produces sounds that cannot be recognized as a regular spoken language. The HEART SŪTRA (*Prajñāpāramitāhṛdaya-sūtra*), for example, is popular in East Asia as a Chinese text about emptiness, a fundamental MAHĀYĀNA teaching, but when it is chanted in Japan, each Chinese character is given a Japanese pronunciation without any change in the Chinese grammatical word order of the text. The audible result is neither Japanese nor Chinese, but a ritual language unto itself. Many Japanese laypersons who have memorized the *Heart Sūtra* as a chant do not know what it means, but they are untroubled by the question of meaning since the value of the chant lies in its phonetics rather than its philosophy. This is the case for other Chinese Buddhist texts chanted with Japanese pronunciations.

Chanting in this sense supersedes reading. Chanting only the first Chinese character on each page of an entire scripture is believed to be equal to reading every character. Understood as a consummation rather than a subversion of reading, chanting first characters is based on the idea that single words or phrases can evoke the virtue and power that all of the words combined are trying to explain. Reading for meaning is a useful step for grasping the truth of a text, but it is a means, not the final objective. All Buddhist traditions emphasize the supreme value of experiencing the truth of a text, and chanting aims at that objective. Chanting the *Heart Sūtra* without



A monk beats a drum as other monks pray at the Ivolginski Datsan Temple in Buryatiya, Siberia, 2002. © Oleg Nikishin/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

understanding its discursive meaning is not a violation of the text, but the fulfillment of it.

Just as single words can epitomize entire pages, so can the title of a scripture embrace its totality. Chanting sūtra titles is a common practice, and in Japan, for example, the basic practice of NICHIREN SCHOOL Buddhism is chanting the phrase *Namu Myōhō-rence-kyō* (Homage to the *Lotus Sūtra*). While Nichiren Buddhists chant the text of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) as well, chanting the Japanese title, *Myōhō-rence-kyō*, is a necessary and sufficient means for relating the truth of the sūtra to the individual believer and his or her concerns. Chanted repeatedly, the title itself bears the power of the entire scripture, and is regarded by some Nichiren traditions as the main object of worship. The popular Sanskrit mantra, OM MAṆI PADME HŪM (Praise be the jewel lotus) and its Tibetan version, not only evokes the bodhisattva of compassion, Avalokiteśvara, but also epitomizes all of the Buddhist teachings.

In a similar manner, chanting the name of a deity evokes all of its power. One of the most popular practices in East Asia is chanting the name of the Buddha

of the Western Paradise (Sanskrit, AMITĀBHA; Japanese, Amida; Chinese, Amituo). Pure Land Buddhist traditions are built on recitations of Amitābha's name, and countless Japanese Buddhists over the centuries have chanted the phrase *Namu Amida Butsu* (Homage to Amitābha Buddha) in hopes that they will be reborn into Amitābha's pure land. This practice is known as the *nenbutsu* in Japan, *nianfo* in China, and *yōmbul* in Korea.

All of these terms conflate recitation with MINDFULNESS. *Nenbutsu*, for instance, means to be mindful of a buddha, and does not signify chanting. The term, however, is used synonymously with chanting because a proper state of mindfulness is essential to it. In addition to the formulaic words or phrases, which are also known as MANTRA, it is the quality of mind that distinguishes chanting from other oral functions such as speaking and singing. The effectiveness of mantras in bringing about intended effects depends on the chanter's state of mind, as well as the power of the words and the format of articulation.

Chanting is a form of sacred music, and its ritual format often includes instrumental accompaniment.

Bells, gongs, drums, horns, and other instruments are used to provide rhythm and emphasis. In East Asia a common accoutrement is a hollowed-out piece of wood that is hit with a padded stick to produce resonant thumps setting the pace. Round in shape, it is covered with fish scales and is called the “wooden fish” because fish do not close their eyes even when they sleep. In shape and sound, the instrument makes a point about mindfulness.

Chanting and ritual give shape to abstract doctrines, moral values, individual concerns, and communal identity. They provide structures through which important transactions take place. Clerical and lay participants sing praises, submit petitions, make confessions, request absolutions, present dedications, give offerings, receive blessings, and transfer the merit of the ritual to others, often the deceased. Nearly all Buddhists seek their highest spiritual—and often worldly—aspirations through ritual means. A few traditions, such as Jōdo Shinshū in Japan, deny that chanting and ritual are mechanisms for salvation, but even in this case, believers fervently chant the *nen-butsu* not as a ritual means for gaining REBIRTH in the pure land but as an expression of gratitude for having already been saved by the grace of Amitābha.

*See also:* **Buddhānumṛti** (Recollection of the Buddha); **Entertainment and Performance**; **Etiquette**; **Language, Buddhist Philosophy of**; **Meditation**; **Merit and Merit-Making**; **Mudrā and Visual Imagery**; **Nen-butsu** (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul)

### Bibliography

- Kalupahana, David, ed. *Buddhist Thought and Ritual*. St. Paul, MN: Paragon House, 1991.
- Lopez, Donald S., ed. *Buddhism in Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Nhat Hahn, Thich, comp. *Plum Village Chanting and Recitation Book*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax, 2000.
- Wong, Deborah Anne. *Sounding the Center: History and Aesthetics in Thai Buddhist Performance*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2001.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

## CHENGGUAN

Chengguan (738–839) is the reputed fourth patriarch of the HUAYAN SCHOOL of Chinese Buddhism. Revered

for his erudite and prolific scholarship, he was among the most influential monks of his time. Although not a direct student of the third Huayan patriarch FAZANG (643–712), Chengguan was recognized as Fazang’s spiritual successor on the basis of his exceptional learning and prominence, which made him the Huayan tradition’s leading figure among his contemporaries. During his formative years, Chengguan became proficient in the scriptures of Buddhism and the doctrines of other Chinese schools, including the CHAN SCHOOL (especially the Niutou and Northern schools), the Tiantai School, and Sanlun. His writings also reveal mastery of the Confucian classics and the works of early Daoist philosophers, especially Laozi and Zhuangzi.

During his long and highly successful monastic career, Chengguan was associated with seven Tang Chinese emperors, and his supporters and admirers included numerous influential officials and literati. The imperial court recognized his achievements by granting him the honorific titles of national teacher and grand recorder of the clergy. Chengguan’s magnum opus is the massive *Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao* (in ninety fascicles), which contains his commentary and subcommentary to the eighty-fascicle translation of the HUAYAN JING (*Flower Garland Scripture*). He also wrote other exegetical works, including a commentary on Prajñā’s forty-fascicle translation of the *Huayan jing*, and a few shorter tracts. Chengguan’s key contribution to the development of Huayan doctrine is the theory of four realms of reality (DHARMADHĀTU)—the realms of: (1) individual phenomena (*shi fajie*); (2) principle (*li fajie*); (3) nonobstruction between principle and phenomena (*lishi wuai fajie*); and (4) non-obstruction among phenomena (*shishi wuai fajie*).

### Bibliography

- Gregory, Peter N. “Ch’eng-kuan and Hua-yen.” In *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.

MARIO POCESKI

## CHINA

During its long history in China, which spans nearly twenty centuries, Buddhism developed flourishing traditions, exerted far-reaching influence on intellectual and religious life, and left its mark on virtually all aspects of Chinese society and culture. The transmission of Buddhism into China involved the wholesale

introduction of (at first) alien complexes of ideas and institutions that opened new horizons of intellectual inquiry and spiritual exploration, thereby enlarging the contours of Chinese civilization and enriching its contents. Through their mutual encounter, both Buddhism and Chinese traditions were profoundly transformed, with Buddhism adding new elements to Chinese civilization while at the same time undergoing dramatic changes in the process of its adaptation to China's social ethos and cultural milieu.

### **Historical overview: First century to tenth century**

Buddhism first entered China around the beginning of the common era, during the Eastern Han dynasty (25–220 C.E.). The first Buddhist missionaries arrived through the empire's northwestern frontier, accompanying merchant caravans that traversed the network of trade routes known as the SILK ROAD, which linked China with CENTRAL ASIA and Persia, with additional links to West and South Asia. By that time Buddhism had already established a strong presence within the Central Asian kingdoms that controlled most of the trade along the Silk Road. Early literary evidence of Buddhism's entry into China links the foreign religion with the Han monarchy and its ruling elites. Such connection is explicit in the well-known story about Emperor Ming's (r. 58–75 C.E.) dream about a golden deity, identified by his advisers as the Buddha. That supposedly precipitated the emperor's sending of a western-bound expedition that brought back to China the first Buddhist text (and two missionaries, according to a later version of the story). Taking into consideration the court-oriented outlook of traditional Chinese historiography, such focus on the emperor's role in the arrival of Buddhism should not come as a surprise. However, in light of the prevalent patterns of economic and cultural interaction between China and the outside world during this period, it seems probable that Buddhism had already entered China prior to Emperor Ming's reign.

Most of the early Buddhist monks who entered China were associated with the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, which was increasing in popularity even while it was still undergoing creative doctrinal development. The foreign missionaries—most of whom were Kushans, Khotanese, Sogdians, and other Central Asians—entered a powerful country with evolved social and political institutions, long-established intellectual and religious traditions, and a profound sense of cultural superiority. In the course of the initial contacts, some mem-

bers of the Chinese elites found the new religion to be inimical to the prevalent social ethos. The institution of MONASTICISM, with its stress on ascetic renunciation, which included celibacy and mendicancy, was alien to the Chinese and went against the Confucian-inspired mores adopted by the state and the ruling aristocracy.

In response to the initial spread of the alien religion, some Chinese officials articulated a set of critiques that highlighted perceived areas of conflict between Buddhism and the prevalent Confucian ideology. The principal object of the criticisms was the monastic order (SAṄGHA). Buddhist monks were accused of not being filial because their adoption of a celibate lifestyle meant they were unable to produce heirs and thereby secure the continuation of their families' lineages. Additional criticisms were leveled on economic and political grounds. Monks and monasteries were accused of being unproductive and placing an unwarranted economic burden on the state and the people, while the traditional Buddhist emphasis on independence from the secular authorities was perceived as undermining the traditional authority of the emperor and subverting the established sociopolitical system. From a doctrinal point of view, Buddhism was perceived as being overtly concerned with individual salvation and transcendence of the mundane realm, which went counter to the pragmatic Confucian emphasis on human affairs and sociopolitical efficacy. Finally, Buddhism met disapproval on account of its foreign origin, which in the eyes of its detractors made it unsuitable for the Chinese.

Despite these misgivings, by the fall of the Han dynasty in 220 Buddhism had managed to gain a foothold in China. Its growth sharply accelerated during the period of disunion (311–589), the so-called Six Dynasties period, which constitutes the second phase of Buddhist history in China. It was an age of political fragmentation as non-Chinese tribes established empires that ruled the north, while the south was governed by a series of native dynasties. Ironically, the unstable situation encouraged the spread of Buddhism. In the eyes of many educated Chinese the collapse of the old imperial order brought discredit to the prevailing Confucian ideology, which created an intellectual vacuum and a renewed sense of openness to new ideas. Buddhism was also attractive to the non-Chinese rulers in the north, who were eager to use its universalistic teachings in their search for political legitimacy. Another contributing factor was the growing interest in religious and philosophical Daoism. Many upper-class Chinese who were familiar with Daoist texts and

teachings were drawn to Buddhism's sophisticated doctrines, colorful rituals, and vast array of practices, including MEDITATION. Buddhist teachings and practices bore reassuring (if often superficial) resemblance to those of Daoism, while they also provided original avenues for spiritual growth and inspiring answers to questions about ultimate values. The growth of Buddhism was further enhanced by the adaptability of the Mahāyāna traditions that were imported into China. The favorable reception of Buddhism was greatly aided by its capacity to be responsive to native cultural norms, sociopolitical demands, and spiritual predilections, while at the same time retaining fidelity to basic religious principles.

During the period of division, Buddhism in the north was characterized by close connections between the clergy and the state, and by interest in thaumaturgy, asceticism, devotional practice, and meditation. In contrast, the south saw the emergence of so-called gentry Buddhism. Some southern elites (a group that included refugees from the north) who were interested in metaphysical speculation were especially attracted to the Buddhist doctrine of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), which was often conflated with Daoist ideas about the nature of reality. The southern socio-religious milieu was characterized by close connections between literati-officials and Buddhist monks, many of whom shared the same cultured aristocratic background. Despite two anti-Buddhist PERSECUTIONS during the 452–466 and 547–578 periods, by the sixth century Buddhism had established strong roots throughout the whole territory of China, and had permeated the societies and cultures of both the northern and the southern dynasties. Moreover, Chinese Buddhism was exported to other parts of East Asia that were coming under China's cultural influence, above all Korea and Japan.

The reunification of the empire under the Sui dynasty (589–618) is often designated as the starting point for the next phase in the evolution of Chinese Buddhism. Under the pro-Buddhist Sui regime, and especially during the succeeding Tang dynasty (618–907), Chinese Buddhism reached great heights of intellectual creativity, religious vitality, institutional vigor, and monastic prosperity. Throughout the Sui-Tang period, Buddhism was widely accepted and practiced by members of all social classes, from poor peasants to aristocrats and the royal family. A number of Tang emperors offered lavish patronage to Buddhism, although such support was usually accompanied by efforts to control the religion and harness its

power and prestige for political ends. By this time, the early rapprochements between Buddhism and the Chinese state evolved into a close relationship between the two. Despite the earlier efforts on the part of monastic leaders to secure a semblance of independence for the monastic community, Buddhism became firmly integrated into the sociopolitical establishment. With their prayers and rituals the clergy accrued merit and provided supernatural protection for the dynasty and the state. Buddhism also provided the rulers with an additional source of legitimacy, which was used in an especially skillful manner by Empress Wu Zetian (r. 684–705), the only female monarch in Chinese history and one of the greatest patrons of Buddhism. In exchange, the state offered political patronage and financial support to the Buddhist church, and bestowed on the clergy various benefits such as exemption from taxation, corvée labor, and military service. The state also asserted its right to control key aspects of religious life, including bestowal of monastic ordinations, building of monasteries, and entry of new texts into the Buddhist canon.

During the Sui-Tang period Buddhism was by far the most powerful and creative religious and intellectual tradition in the empire, eclipsing both Confucianism and Daoism (even though the other two traditions also flourished during this period). The main schools of Chinese Buddhism, such as Tiantai, Huayan, and Chan, were also formed during this era, thereby giving rise to uniquely Sinitic systems of Buddhist philosophy and methods of praxis. The strength of Buddhism and the durability of its institutions were severely tested during the Huichang era of Emperor Wuzong (r. 841/842–845), who initiated the most devastating anti-Buddhist persecution. The emperor ordered destruction of virtually all monasteries in the empire and mass return to lay life of the clergy. The onset of the persecutions was influenced by a number of complex factors, including the influence of the emperor's Daoist advisers, economic considerations, dismay over monastic corruption, and latent anti-Buddhist sentiments among pro-Confucian officials. Even though the persecution was short-lived and Buddhism quickly rebounded, many scholars see the persecution as a turning point and the beginning of the extremely protracted decline of Buddhism in China.

### **Historical overview: Eleventh century to present**

Late imperial China—covering the period from the Song (960–1279) until the end of the Qing dynasty

(1644–1911)—can be taken to correspond to a fourth phase in the history of Chinese Buddhism. The history of Buddhism during this era is usually told as a narrative of decline, punctuated with occasional efforts to revive the great tradition's ancient glories. Some historians have argued that such a negative characterization of post-Tang Buddhism does not do justice to the religious vitality and institutional strength of Song Buddhism. It is undeniable that under the Song, Buddhism exerted strong influence and attracted a large following among members of all social classes. The religion continued to enjoy state patronage and the monastic vocation attracted many individuals. Buddhist influence on Chinese culture was also pervasive, as can be observed in the literature and visual arts of the period. At the same time, there were signs of creeping decline, especially in terms of intellectual creativity, notwithstanding new developments in Tiantai scholasticism and Chan literature and praxis. The intellectual decline is evident in the lack of compelling Buddhist responses to the serious challenge posed by the Song Confucian revival. The shift of the Chinese elite's interest away from Buddhism and toward Confucianism was further boosted by the acceptance of neo-Confucianism, as formulated by its great systematizer Zhu Xi (1130–1200), as official state orthodoxy during the fourteenth century. For the rest of the imperial period Buddhism managed to survive, albeit in diminished capacity and often on the margins. For the most part Buddhism after this point assumed a conservative stance, as there was no emergence of major new traditions or significant paradigm shifts.

The beginning of the last phase in the history of Chinese Buddhism coincides with China's entry into the modern period. During the final decades of the imperial era, China's inability to adequately respond to the challenges of modernity—rudely brought to its doorstep by the increasing encroachment of the colonial powers on Chinese territory in the nineteenth century—led to erosion and eventually disintegration of its age-old social and political institutions. After the republican revolution of 1912, efforts at creating a strong and stable modern state ended in failure. The bleak situation was exacerbated by China's moribund economy and rampant corruption. During this tumultuous period, the adverse sociopolitical circumstances affected Buddhist institutions, and traditional beliefs and practices were rejected by many educated Chinese as outdated superstitions. In the face of the new predicament, Buddhism still managed to stage a minor revival. In some quarters, the revitalization

took the form of renewed interest in traditional intellectual and religious activities, such as philosophical reflection on Buddhist doctrines and the practice of Chan meditation. Others, however, tried to reconstitute the Buddhist tradition along modern lines. The progressive agenda of the reformers included establishment of educational institutions where the clergy received modern education. In addition, efforts were made to internationalize Chinese Buddhism by establishing connections with Buddhist traditions in other countries.

With the communist victory in the civil war and the establishment of the People's Republic in 1949, Buddhism had to contend with a governing ideology that had little sympathy for traditional religious beliefs and practices. During the 1950s the new regime was mainly concerned with controlling Buddhism by instituting policies that restricted the activities of the clergy and imposed state supervision over Buddhist organizations. The situation rapidly deteriorated during the 1960s and reached its lowest point with the violent suppression of Buddhism (along with other religions) during the worst excesses of the Cultural Revolution. At the time it seemed that the twenty centuries of Buddhist history in China might be coming to an end. With the institution of more liberal policies during the late 1970s, however, Buddhism began to stage a slow comeback. The modest resurgence of Buddhism in China involves restoration of temples and monasteries, ordination of clergy, revival of traditional beliefs and practices, and increased interest in academic study of Buddhism as a part of traditional Chinese culture. Chinese Buddhism is also thriving in TAIWAN, as well as among immigrant Chinese communities throughout Asia and in the West.

### **Texts and literary activities**

During the early phases of Buddhism in China, one of the primary concerns for both the foreign missionaries and the native followers was to produce reliable translations of Buddhist sacred texts. The task of translating the scriptures and other canonical texts was daunting because of the sheer size of the Buddhist canon (which was constantly expanding as new texts were introduced) and because of the lack of bilingual expertise among the foreign missionaries and the native clergy, which was exacerbated by the Chinese aversion to learning foreign languages. During the early period many of the translations were small private undertakings, typically led by a foreign monk who was aided by Chinese assistants. The early translations of-

ten display a tendency to render Buddhist ideas by recourse to concepts from native Chinese thought. A case in point is the putative method of “matching the meaning” (*geyi*), which involved pairing of key Buddhist terms with Chinese expressions primarily derived from Daoist sources. While this hermeneutical strategy facilitated the wider diffusion of Buddhist texts and ideas among educated Chinese, it was criticized by eminent monks such as DAO’AN (312–385) as an obstacle to the proper understanding of Buddhism.

The situation changed during the fifth century, in large part because of the translation activities of KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413), arguably the most famous and influential translator in the history of Chinese Buddhism. Born in Kucha, Kumārajīva arrived in the capital of Chang’an in 401. With the generous support of the court, which facilitated the formation of a translation bureau, Kumārajīva and his assistants produced a large number of readable translations of key Mahāyāna scriptures and other exegetical works. As a testimony to the success of Kumārajīva’s efforts, most of his translations remained the standard versions throughout the history of Buddhism in East Asia. Kumārajīva also taught a number of talented disciples about the fine points of Mahāyāna doctrines, especially the Madhyamaka philosophy of NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.).

A number of influential translators followed in Kumārajīva’s footsteps, including PARAMĀRTHA (499–569), whose translations of Yogācāra texts served as a catalyst for the huge Chinese interest in the doctrines of this Indian school of Mahāyāna philosophy. One of the last great translators was the famous Tang monk XUANZANG (ca. 600–664). After returning from his celebrated PILGRIMAGE to India, where for many years he studied at the main centers of Buddhist learning, Xuanzang spent the last two decades of his life translating the numerous manuscripts he brought back to China. His work was undertaken under imperial auspices, and his numerous assistants included leading Buddhist scholars. Despite their superior styling and greater philological accuracy, Xuanzang’s translations did not achieve the same widespread acceptance as Kumārajīva’s translations.

In addition to the translations of canonical texts from Sanskrit and other Indic languages, there was also a large body of apocryphal texts composed in China whose origins were concealed by presenting them as translations of Indian texts. The Chinese APOCRYPHA included both popular religious tracts as well as texts

that contained sophisticated explorations of doctrinal themes. Works that belong to the first category included apocryphal scriptures that dealt with popular religious topics, such as moral principles, eschatological and messianic beliefs, cultic practices, and preternatural powers. They often crossed the porous lines separating Buddhism from popular beliefs, and because of that they were sometimes criticized by members of the monastic elite. On the other end of the spectrum, there were apocryphal texts dealing with doctrinal issues, which exemplified Chinese appropriations of Mahāyāna teachings that resonated with native intellectual concerns and ways of thinking. Even though the problematic provenance of these texts was frequently noted by medieval Buddhist cataloguers, a good number of them achieved wide acclaim and became part of the CANON.

Besides texts translated from foreign languages, the Chinese Buddhist canon also came to include a large number of texts composed by Chinese authors. These texts are written in a number of genres and cover a wide range of perspectives on diverse aspects of Buddhist beliefs, doctrines, practices, and institutions. They include exegetical works (especially commentaries on important scriptures), encyclopedias, collections of biographies of eminent monks, texts dealing with monastic regulations and practices, meditation and ritual manuals, historical works, and systematic expositions of Sinitic doctrinal systems (such as Huayan and Tiantai). A large part of the canon includes texts produced by the main schools of Chinese Buddhism. An example of that type are the Chan school’s records of sayings (*yulu*) and *gong’an* (Japanese, *KŌAN*) collections. In addition, there are a large number of extracanonical works—such as collections of miracle tales—that deal with popular Buddhist beliefs and practices. Buddhist themes and ideas can also be found in secular literary works, such as the poems of major Chinese poets, including Wang Wei (701–761) and Bo Juyi (772–846) during the Tang, and Su Shi (1037–1101) during the Song period.

### Schools and traditions

The study of Chinese Buddhism in terms of specific “schools” (*zong*), an approach that has commonly been adopted by scholars working in the field, is complicated by the multivalent connotations of the Chinese term *zong*. In the Buddhist context the term *zong* can mean a specific doctrine (or an interpretation of it), an essential purport or teaching of a canonical text, an exegetical tradition, or a religious group bound



together by shared ideals and adherence to a common set of principles. When the term is used in the last sense, it does not denote separate sects, as defined in typologies formulated by sociologists of religion. The distinct schools of Chinese Buddhism lacked institutional independence. They primarily represented distinct doctrinal or exegetical orientations, or loosely-organized religious groups that were subsumed within the mainstream monastic order. It is also important to note that as a rule these schools involved only a small segment of the monastic elite, and local manifestations of Buddhist religiosity among ordinary people mostly had little direct connection with them.

During the early period, the intellectual and religious agendas of Chinese Buddhism were largely shaped by texts and teachings that originated in India. During the fourth and fifth centuries the most influential school of Mahāyāna was the Madhyamaka (Middle Way), whose teachings of śūnyatā attracted the attention of Chinese scholiasts. The interest in Madhyamaka philosophy was stimulated by the arrival of Kumārajīva, and it culminated with the formation of the Sanlun (Three Treatises) school by Jizang (549–623), which is usually described as a Chinese version of Madhyamaka. Notwithstanding these developments, the sixth century was the beginning of a general move within Chinese Buddhism away from the relentless apophysis of Madhyamaka doctrine toward increased interest in teachings that presented more positive depictions of the nature of reality and the quest for salvation, especially as articulated by the Yogācāra and TATHĀGATAGARBHA traditions. The strong interest in YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL teachings about the nature of consciousness and the stages of spiritual practice eventually led to the development of the Shelun school (based on the *Mahāyānasamgraha* of ASAṄGA) and the Dilun school (based on VASUBANDHU's commentary on the *Daśabhūmikasūtrapadśa*). Both of them were primarily exegetical traditions, centered around small groups of elite scholarly monks who were bound by shared religious and intellectual interests.

The tathāgatagarbha, together with the closely related Buddha-nature doctrine, originally occupied a marginal position in Indian Buddhism. Although these theories did not give rise to any new Chinese schools, they became key doctrinal tenets and articles of belief for the new Buddhist traditions that emerged during the Sui-Tang period. This new Buddhism is principally associated with the teachings of the Tiantai, Huayan, Chan, and Pure Land schools. Each of them was a unique Sinitic tradition that had no direct counterpart

in Indian Buddhism, and their emergence is viewed as the culmination of the Sinification of Buddhist doctrines and practices. Tiantai and Huayan were especially renowned for their scriptural exegesis and creation of sophisticated systems of Buddhist doctrine that represent the highest intellectual achievements of Chinese Buddhism. On the other hand, Chan and Pure Land offered compelling soteriological frameworks and methods of spiritual practice. In the case of Chan the main practice was meditation, while the Pure Land tradition emphasized faith and devotional practices. Chan and Pure Land came to dominate the religious landscape of Chinese Buddhism from the late Tang onward, with Chan being more popular among the monastic elites and their educated followers, and Pure Land enjoying a greater following among the masses.

### Interactions with other religious traditions

The history of Chinese religions is usually discussed in terms of the “three teachings”: Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism. China's religious history during the last two millennia was to a large extent shaped by the complex patterns of interaction among these three main traditions and popular religion. The history of Buddhism in China was significantly influenced by its contacts with the indigenous traditions, which were also profoundly transformed through their encounter with Buddhism.

The initial arrival of Buddhism into China during the Han dynasty coincided with the emergence of religious Daoism. During the early period the acceptance of Buddhism was helped by the putative similarities between its beliefs and practices and those of Daoism. With the increased popularity and influence of Buddhism, from the late fourth century onward Daoism absorbed various elements from Buddhism. In the literary arena, that included large-scale adoption of Buddhist terminology and style of writing. The Daoist canon itself was modeled on the Buddhist canon, following the same threefold division. In addition, numerous Buddhist ideas—about merit, ethical conduct, salvation, compassion, rebirth, retribution, and the like—were absorbed into Daoism. The Buddhist influence also extended into the institutions of the Daoist church, and Daoist monasteries and temples were to a large extent modeled on their Buddhist counterparts.

During the medieval period, intellectual and religious life in China was characterized by an ecumenical spirit and broad acceptance of a pluralistic outlook. The prevalent view was that the three traditions were complimentary rather than antithetical. Buddhism and

Daoism were primarily concerned with the spiritual world and centered on the private sphere, whereas Confucianism was responsible for the social realm and focused on managing the affairs of the state. Even though open-mindedness and acceptance of religious pluralism remained the norm throughout most of Chinese history, such accommodating attitudes did not go uncontested. In addition to the Confucian criticisms of Buddhism, which repeatedly entered public discourse throughout Chinese history, there were occasional debates with Daoists that were in part motivated by the ongoing competition for official patronage waged by the two religions.

More conspicuous expressions of exclusivist sentiments came with the emergence of neo-Confucianism during the Song period. The stance of leading Confucian thinkers toward Buddhism was often marked by open hostility. Notwithstanding their criticism of Buddhist doctrines and institutions, neo-Confucian thinkers drew heavily on Buddhist concepts and ideas. As they were trying to recapture intellectual space that for centuries had been dominated by the Buddhists, the leaders of the Song Confucian revival remade their tradition in large part by their creative responses to the encounter with Buddhism.

Throughout its history Chinese Buddhism also interacted with the plethora of religious beliefs and practices usually assigned to the category of popular religion. Buddhist teachings about KARMA (ACTION) and REBIRTH, beliefs about other realms of existence, and basic ethical principles became part and parcel of popular religion. In addition, Buddhist deities—such as Guanyin, the bodhisattva of compassion—were appropriated by popular religion as objects of cultic worship. The influence went both ways, as popular deities were worshiped in Buddhist monasteries and Buddhist monks performed rituals that catered to common beliefs and customs, such as worship of ANCESTORS.

**See also:** Chan School; China, Buddhist Art in; Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Huayan School; Pure Land Schools; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings; Taiwan; Tiantai School

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., ed. *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Ch'en, Kenneth. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- Ch'en, Kenneth. *The Chinese Transformation of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1973.
- Gernet, Jacques. *Buddhism in Chinese Society: An Economic History from the Fifth to the Tenth Centuries*, tr. Franciscus Verellen. New York: Columbia University Press, 1995.
- Gimello, Robert. "Apophatic and Kataphatic Discourse in Mahāyāna: A Chinese view." *Philosophy East and West* 26, no. 2 (1976): 117–136.
- Gregory, Peter N. *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Gregory, Peter N., and Getz, Daniel A., Jr., eds. *Buddhism in the Sung*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture of the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Weinstein, Stanley. *Buddhism under the T'ang*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1987.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1975.
- Wright, Arthur F. *Buddhism in Chinese History*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1959.
- Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*, 2 vols. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

MARIO POCESKI

---

## CHINA, BUDDHIST ART IN

In the Asian Buddhist world, China is second only to India for its importance in the development and preservation of Buddhism and Buddhist art. China became the great reservoir and innovator of East Asian Buddhism and its art, and inspired important schools of Buddhism and Buddhist art in Korea and Japan, as well as other regions. The range of Chinese Buddhist art is vast, stretching for nearly two thousand years from the Later Han dynasty (25 B.C.E.–220 C.E.) well into the Qing dynasty (1644–1911). Often its sources reach directly to India and its contiguous regions, to Central Asia, and even Tibet in the later centuries; there is also a complex interrelationship with the latter two regions. New interpretations and styles formed quickly in China, offering an evolving and stimulating development frequently reflecting the schools of Buddhist thought that emerged in China, as well as imagery with popular connotations. Behind the brief survey presented in this entry, one must keep in mind the incredible richness of the repertoire and of the innumerable innovative interpretations offered by China in all the arts of painting, sculpture, architecture, cave

temple art, and decorative and ritual arts throughout this long period of growth, fluorescence, and development that created one of the world's truly magnificent Buddhist art cycles.

**Later Han (25 B.C.E.–220 C.E.), Three Kingdoms (220–265/280 C.E.), and Western Jin (265/280–317 C.E.)**

Reliable written documents indicate the presence in China of Buddhist temples as early as the mid-first century C.E., during the Later Han dynasty. By the end of the second century, records concerning the military officer Zerong describe his construction in Pengcheng (northern Jiangsu) of a large storied pavilion “with piled up metal plates on top” and a gilded buddha image inside. Such a multistoried structure topped by plates (*chattrā*) also appears in a rare Later Han tomb tile from Sichuan. These examples point to the existence of the Chinese-style pagoda or *STŪPA* and the presence of gilded buddha imagery by the late Later Han period in China. Though the first major Buddhist translation activity occurred in Luoyang during the second half of the second century with the foreign monks AN SHIGAO and Lokakṣema, we have yet to see any Buddhist art from that center for this period, with the exception of the stone fragments of a curb encircling a well that bear an inscription mentioning “the saṅgha of the four quarters” in Kharoṣṭhī script, another indication of the undoubtedly potent foreign influences in this early phase of Buddhist activity in China.

However, within the last several decades a few remains have been presented as probable late Later Han Buddhist imagery, most notably the splendid gilt-bronze seated Buddha with flame shoulders in Harvard University's Sackler Museum and a selection of stone reliefs at the site of Kongwangshan in eastern Jiangsu. The Harvard Buddha, of quite large size, has long been cited as a major early sculpture of Gandhāran form, but has been shown to stylistically relate to Chinese tomb art dating to the second half of the second century and to sculpture from the site of Khalchayan (ca. first century B.C.E. to first century C.E.) excavated in southern Uzbekistan in ancient northern Bactria. This image, probably the earliest known Buddha image from China, appears to have its stylistic sources more decisively in the Bactrian rather than the Gandhāran region. The Kongwangshan site consists of a hill with its boulders carved with a variety of sculptures in the late Later Han style. Among the images are Xiwangmu (Queen Mother of the West), dancing figures in foreign dress (Kushan style), a seated and

standing buddha, a *parinirvāṇa* scene, and a scene from a *JĀTAKA* of the sacrifice of the bodhisattva to the starving tigress. Though simple, the images are iconographically accurate and testify to Buddhist activity that was somehow integrated with images of other popular beliefs—a typical phenomenon in Late Han.

From the Three Kingdoms and Western Jin periods, a clear distinction emerged between images that strictly follow orthodox Buddhist iconography and those of popular, mostly funerary, art that incorporate Buddhist elements, often with unorthodox changes. The latter are various and found in a wide area of distribution. They include, for example, small seated buddhas on ceramic vessels (some the elaborate *hunping* funerary urns) and bronze mirrors (possibly as auspicious talismans) in the south; buddhas on money trees and clay tomb bricks in Sichuan; a standing bodhisattva on a belt buckle from a tomb dated 262 from Wuchang in Hebei; and reliefs in tombs such as at Yinan in Shandong. On the other hand, the famous gilt-bronze standing bodhisattva in the Fujii Yūrinkan, probably a *MAITREYA*, is of mainstream, orthodox imagery, stylistically related to contemporary sculptures from Swat, Toprak Kala, and Miran. This bodhisattva is said to have come from near Chang'an (present-day Xi'an), where the great monk *DHARMARAKṢA* was active with translating and teaching in the last half of the third century.

By the end of the Western Jin Buddhism was reaching a point of viability in China, albeit with the major support of foreign monks and the foreign communities engaged in trade along the *SILK ROAD*. Unfortunately, just as the fall of the Han dynasty in the early third century occasioned turmoil and mass migration within China, so too, at the end of the Western Jin, northern China collapsed into chaos from famines and a series of disastrous invasions and warfare by northern minorities. These events threw the country into hardship for several decades and virtually transformed the demographics of China as the aristocratic families of the north fled south or to the Gansu region to escape the devastation.

**Eastern Jin (317–420) in the south and the Sixteen Kingdoms (317–439) in the north**

The Eastern Jin provided some continuity to this volatile, fluid, disruptive period. Most of our knowledge of Buddhist art from the Eastern Jin comes from written records, which speak of miraculous images, King *AŚOKA* images, colossal buddhas (the oldest, ca. 370s, being that in *DAO'AN*'s (312–385) monastery at

Xiangyang in Henan), wondrous sculptures made by Daikui, the famous VIMALAKĪRTI wall painting by Gu Kaizhi, and so on. We can speculate on the appearance of some of these recorded masterpieces of Eastern Jin Buddhist art from later replicas. One of the most interesting is the case of the inscribed King Aśoka buddhas found in Chengdu that date from the mid-sixth century but clearly replicate an older, probably fourth century, model. Also, the Vimalakīrti relief in cave 3 at LONGMEN, from the early sixth century, may follow the fourth-century Gu Kaizhi prototype. Other clues come from the invaluable sources of the Korean Koguryō tomb paintings, such as those at tomb 3 at Anak, dated to around 357, and the tomb at Tōkhūngri, dated to 408 or 409, and others that have early examples of Buddhist subjects.

Most extant remains, however, probably come from the North and from Gansu, both areas dominated by a series of successive small kingdoms, known as the Sixteen Kingdoms, of the five minority nationalities. This period in North China is one of the most difficult to access, but it is becoming evident that it is prolific in Buddhist art remains, generally confirming and complementing the important strides made in Buddhism under the Chinese masters Dao'an and HUIYUAN (334–416) and the overwhelming achievement of the translations of KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413 C.E.) in the early fifth century. Most images are from small bronze buddha altars, which, in the few surviving complete examples consist of a *dhyānāsana* buddha on a lion throne, a *mandorla*, a canopy, and a four-footed stand. The identity of these small buddhas, most in meditation, is not certain, but at least one (datable to 426, now in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York) names the buddha as Maitreya. The earliest identifiable Guanyin appears around 400 (Asian Art Museum of San Francisco) and there are early bronze reliefs of such LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) themes as Śākyamuni and Prabhūtaratna that appear as early as the early fifth century. The Buddhist-Daoist stele of Wei Wenlang from Yaoxian (north of Chang'an), though not without controversy, probably dates to 424 and may be the oldest known stone stele with Buddhist imagery. A gilt-bronze pendant-legged seated buddha, dated (Liu) Song 423, confirms this iconographic form as a Maitreya by an inscription on the back of its *mandorla*, which itself is the earliest known version in bronze of the elaborate flame-bordered *mandorlas* seen in fully developed form in numerous bronze sculptures under the Tuoba (Northern) Wei later in the century. It is becoming clear that

many iconographic types and stylistic features that were previously thought to be Northern Wei were actually formulated earlier, in the late fourth and early fifth centuries in the south, around Chang'an and in Gansu.

The Gansu Buddhist materials are probably the most significant discoveries of the last forty years in Chinese Buddhist art. Though there is currently no consensus on the precise dating of all of the early sculptures, paintings, cave temples, and stone stūpas from Gansu, the Amitāyus niche in cave 169 at Binglingsi is dated with certainty to 420 during the time of the Eastern Qin in southern Gansu. Most of the superb painted clay sculptures positioned randomly around this large natural cave, as well as the surviving wall paintings, which stylistically relate to paintings in cave GK20 at Kumtura in Kucha, date to this time or earlier. Similarly, the earliest caves at Maijishan (caves 78 and 74, each with three magnificent large, seated clay buddhas), where the famous monk Gaoxuan stayed for a number of years in about 415, are probably early fifth century.

From the central area of Gansu, then known as Liangzhou, the cave temples at Tiantishan, southeast of Wuwei, and Jintasi near Zhangye, have spectacularly rare remains, the former mainly paintings and the latter mainly sculpture, both from the period of Northern Liang under Juqu Mengxun (r. 401–433). Juqu Mengxun is known from literary records to have opened caves now believed to be those at Tiantishan, and to have made a colossal buddha on behalf of his mother, the earliest colossal stone (probably cave) image in China. The early caves at both sites contain the earliest use of the central pillar cave temple form in China.

From the western end of Gansu, there are early caves at Wenshushan near Jiuchuan and three early caves at DUNHUANG (caves 268, 272, 275). Cave 272 includes a Maitreya Buddha, and cave 275 has a colossal cross-ankled Maitreya Bodhisattva. Wall paintings in cave 272 show celestial listeners and the thousand buddhas. In cave 275 *jātakas* and scenes from the Buddha's life are portrayed along the side walls of the long chamber. A rare group of stone stūpas was discovered from Jiuchuan and Dunhuang, most dating from the early decades of the fifth century under the Northern Liang. The stūpas are carved with sūtra texts, trigrams with trigram figures from the *Yijing* (*Book of Changes*), and the seven buddhas of the past along with Maitreya Bodhisattva. Two other stone stūpas have been found in Gaochang (Turfan), where the Northern Liang fled after the Northern Wei onslaught in 439 and where

Northern Liang survived as the last of the Sixteen Kingdoms up to the 460s.

**Northern Wei (386–534), Eastern Wei (534–550), Western Wei (535–557), Northern Qi (550–577), and Northern Zhou (557–581) in the north; (Liu) Song (420–479), Southern Qi (479–502), Liang (502–557) and Chen (557–589) in the south; unified China under the Sui (581/589–618)**

After 439, emphasis shifted to the Northern Wei, which developed its Buddhist art rapidly after the harsh Buddhist persecution of 444 to 452. Besides numerous stone relief images (steles) and magnificent gilt-bronze sculptures, the most stupendous achievements occurred at the cave site of YUN'GANG near the capital of Pingcheng (Datong) from the 460s through the 480s. The so-called five Tanyao caves, with their five colossal images carved from living rock, in some sense surpass in concept even the colossi of BĀMIYĀN and Kucha, both of which probably had several grand colossal buddha images by this time. Yun'gang presents a single coherent group of five colossi, the identity of which, however, is still being debated by scholars. Work continued at Yun'gang with the fully embellished twin caves 7 and 8, datable to around the 470s, and the twin caves 5 and 6, dating from around the 480s, the latter with a huge central pillar and fully assimilated new style of loose, flared "Chinese" robe design for the buddha images. This stylistic change, distinct from Liangzhou or Central Asian inspired styles, probably came to the north from South China. Caves 7 and 8 appear to be related to the sculptural traditions of the northern Silk Road, especially that of Tumshuk.

Though work continued at Yun'gang into the fifth century, after the Northern Wei moved its capital to Luoyang in 494, attention turned to the new imperial cave temple site at Longmen, which became the pièce de résistance from the latter years of the Northern Wei. It is by way of the groundbreaking studies of both Yun'gang and Longmen by Seiichi Mizuno and Toshio Nagahiro and the ongoing studies of the Dunhuang Research Institute for the Dunhuang caves that we have access to and understanding of these enormous cave temple sites that represent the truly glorious heritage of Chinese Buddhist art.

The multiple tiers and niches of the oldest cave at Longmen, the Guyangtong, have many individual dedications and show primary focus on Maitreya. Cave 3, on the other hand, which dates to around 515, is an imperial cave with a single plan completely executed

to produce a coherent and spectacular scheme, probably centered around the buddhas of the three times (past, present, and future) as the main icons. The large impressive sculptures are massive heavy shapes beneath spreading robes of shallow parallel step pleats and elaborately curving hems that flare to the sides or cascade over the pedestal as seen in the Śākyamuni Buddha on the rear wall. The abstract carving of the faces lends a strongly iconic air to the powerful imagery. Other caves followed at Longmen and also at Gongxian near Luoyang, but the Northern Wei collapsed around 534 or 535 and its territory was divided between east and west for a short time before changing hands again to the Northern Qi in the northeast and Northern Zhou in the northwest. For Buddhist art, however, this period remains one of continued fluorescence.

Luoyang was a city of magnificent temples and pagodas under the Northern Wei, and, as far as we can tell from literary records, the same was true of the capital (Nanking) of the Liang under Emperor Wu (r. 502–549) in the south. We can surmise some of the Liang achievements because they are probably reflected in the Buddhist art of important finds from Chengdu in Sichuan. The hoard of sculptures from the Wanfosi contained many complete steles, some of which have reliefs of Pure Land imagery that are invaluable for documenting the developments of this form of Buddhist art, which appears to have begun as early as the early fifth century.

The Xiangtangshan caves in Henan and Hebei testify to major cave temple activity under the Northern Qi. Besides the magnificent central pillar caves at North Xiangtangshan, a large relief of AMITĀBHA'S Western Pure Land from the southern site shows a simple setting of pavilions, a lotus pond with reborn figures, and images of the Buddha and his attendant bodhisattvas portrayed in the smooth, abstract, minimalist style of the Northern Qi. The stone sculptures from the Xiudesi in Hebei, some with dated inscriptions, the popular *siwei* (contemplative) bodhisattva, and the spectacular hoard unearthed in Qingzhou in Shandong, many still possessing gilding and original paint, amplify the corpus of Northern Qi Buddhist art and reveal the wide range and subtle stylistic variations in the sculptural repertoire.

Stone stelae, which rose to prominence during the first half of the sixth century and which were frequently donated by special groups or religious societies, gave way in mid-century to new innovations, such as perforating elements of the stele, and to the independent

stone image, some of great size. Images from the Northern Zhou tended to be laden with jewelry in bodhisattva figures and to have a sense of natural mass and movement, contrary to the Northern Qi's hermetic, aloof, and pristinely pure abstract imagery, which was possibly inspired by the styles of the Gupta Sārnāth school of India. Regional distinctions in imagery were particularly pronounced during this period and they continued into the Sui dynasty.

Dunhuang, with its semiautonomous status at the far reaches of northwest China, saw continued activity throughout the Northern Wei and into the Northern Zhou, and the site generally developed its own traditions in the second half of the fifth century to around the end of the Northern Wei. By the time of cave 285 in the Western Wei, however, artists at Dunhuang had adopted Chinese style drapery and also incorporated some Central Asian iconographic features. Maijishan was also active throughout this period, with caves of painted clay imagery, wall paintings, and some important stone steles, including a rare example that depicts the Buddha's life in narrative scenes. The Tianlongshan caves in Shanxi, opened in the Eastern Wei, continued with the production of remarkably beautiful sculptures in the Northern Qi and Sui.

Following the Buddhist persecution by the Northern Zhou in the late 570s and the unification of China under the Sui, Buddhist art gained momentum under imperially sponsored restorations and construction projects. New cave sites in Shandong at Tuoshan and Yunmenshan emerged, and Dunhuang entered one of its most flourishing periods, beginning a wave of production that carried on into the Tang period and beyond. The Tiantai School was strong in China and the *Lotus Sūtra* is reflected in the paintings of caves 419 and 420 at Dunhuang. The regional variations encountered in the mid-sixth century continued into the Sui with certain developments: Early Sui images became more grandiose and monumentalized; during the late Sui images began to loosen toward a slightly more naturalistic impression, as seen in the painting of Mañjuśrī Bodhisattva, depicted with superbly confident line drawing, in cave 276 at Dunhuang. The great period of the abstract icon came to an end in the Sui. Very few large pagodas or stūpas survive from this period, the most striking being the monumental twelve-sided, fifteen-story, parabolically-shaped brick pagoda at Songshan in Henan, dated to around 520, and a stone square-image pagoda with four entrances (*simenta*), dated 611, at the ancient Shentongsi in Shandong.



Avalokiteśvara as the guide of beings to the halls of paradise. (Chinese painting from cave 17 at Dunhuang, tenth century.) © Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.

### Tang dynasty (618–907) and the Five Dynasties (907–960)

Although the collapse of the Sui in 617 and the formative decades of the Tang brought an initial hiatus in the production of Buddhist art, the eventual long-lasting cohesion helped to engender unprecedented developments in Buddhism and its arts in China. Except for Dunhuang, where the opening of new cave chapels continued at a more or less constant rate, it was not until around the 640s that Buddhist art began to appear with prominence in central China, mostly in the capital at Chang'an and at Longmen near Luoyang.

With the return of the monk-pilgrim XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) from his astonishing travels to India from 628 to 645, the emperor sponsored the building of the Great Wild Goose Pagoda in the capital to house the manuscripts he brought back. Austere, grand, and monumental, this Tang brick pagoda still remains a

beloved landmark overlooking the city. Activity at the Longmen caves dominated the latter part of the seventh century with the most spectacular work being cave 19 (672–675) with its colossal image of Vairocana, the mystical/cosmic buddha of the HUAYAN SCHOOL, the branch of Buddhism in China founded on the study of the HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra*) and brilliantly expounded by Huayan masters, such as Zhiyan (602–668) and FAZANG (643–712), in the seventh century. Cave 19 may have been a conscious reflection of the grandeur of the Tang empire, which reached a new dimension with its conquests throughout the century into Central Asia.

PURE LAND BUDDHISM flowered in the seventh century under Shandao and found expression in depictions of AMITĀBHA's Pure Land, Sukhāvātī, many of which survive in wall paintings at Dunhuang, beginning with the earliest complete representation in cave 220, dated 642, and evolving throughout the Tang into masterworks of huge scale and detailed imagery. These paintings particularly followed the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* (*Sūtra on the Meditation of Amitāyus*) that incorporates the sixteen meditations of Queen Vaidehī, as seen in the early eighth-century wall painting in cave 217 at Dunhuang. By the time of cave 148, dated to around 775, a vast panoramic vision is presented in the *boneless* technique of using planes of color without line. These color washes create a fluid, shimmering, ethereal effect on the broad, tilted plane that conjures vast space, reflecting developments in Chinese landscape painting that evolved during the Tang period.

During the mid-seventh to early eighth centuries, elements of esoteric Buddhism appeared in, for example, figures of the eleven-headed Guanyin, but it would not be until the second half of the eighth century, with the teaching of the Indian monk Amoghavajra, that the full panoply of tantric MAṆḌALA imagery would become well established. A group of marble images dating from around 775 from the site of the Anguosi in Chang'an offers the best surviving early examples of these esoteric teachings, which became especially influential at Wutaishan and later in Shingon Buddhism (of the yoga tantra type), which was introduced by KŪKAI (774–835) to Japan following his study in China from 804 to 806.

Sculpture from the first half of the eighth century reached a high degree of naturalism, tempered by abstract patterning. The Tang caves at Tianlongshan, such as caves 21, 14, 6, 18, and 17 (in chronological sequence), have the most splendid array of stone sculp-

tures from the first half of the eighth century. The seated buddha from cave 21 (possibly the cave of the 707 stele describing the donation made by General Xun [of Korean descent] and his wife) is a marvel of powerful muscular body, with subtly defined limbs and torso. The body is draped with a robe whose rib folds form patterns of lines that help to clarify the articulate parts of the body in an independent yet complementary manner. The moon-shaped face is tense and the features carved into strongly modeled eyes and a dramatically curled mouth. The styles of the Tianlongshan imagery of this time derive from artistic modes of contemporary art of Kashmir, Afghanistan, and Central Asia, probably stimulated by renewed contact over the Silk Road during the seventh century and first half of the eighth century.

By the late eighth to ninth centuries the style of sculpture became more mannered and consciously antinatural while still retaining naturalistic elements that had evolved since the early Tang. Images became otherworldly in defiance of weight and normality of proportioning. At Dunhuang this development appears in the images of cave 159 and in central China in the stucco sculptures of the main shrine hall of the Foguangsi Monastery at Wutaishan, where the images reach a height of manneristic naturalism, combining naturalistic qualities with mannered distortions. The Foguangsi shrine hall was built in 857 after the third and most devastating of the Buddhist persecutions in China from around 845 to 847. It remains today as the oldest large wooden temple structure in China. The main hall of the nearby Nanchansi was built earlier, before 782, but it is only a three-bay hall, whereas the Foguangsi hall is a seven-bay structure. Foguangsi's monumental Tang style timber construction has strong simple bracketing, bold powerful lines in the façade, and a rare early method of construction. In the words of Liang Sicheng, an early pioneer of architectural studies in China, the structural parts "give the building an overwhelming dignity that is not found in later structures."

As the Tang empire declined during the late ninth century, Buddhist art diminished in general, except for areas such as Sichuan and Dunhuang, both of which saw major productions at this time. Dunhuang, which had been under Tibetan occupation from the 780s to 840s, flourished under the local control of the Zhang and then the Cao family well into the tenth century. Many of the silk paintings found by Aurel Stein in the "library" room of cave 17 and taken to the British Museum date to this period. The earliest Chan paintings

appeared during the late ninth to early tenth centuries. The CHAN SCHOOL had become one of the major movements of Buddhism in China from the seventh century. The Luohan paintings by Guanxiu are the earliest works related to what came to be known as a Chan interpretation. In some paintings Guanxiu used a broken-ink technique that, along with the individualistic styles of Shike of the tenth century, was destined to make a lasting impact on Chinese painting.

During the Five Dynasties, a formality appeared in the sculptures at Dunhuang, and wall paintings tend to repeat in minute detail the depictions of various sūtras, a development that had become popular during the later years of the Tang. In the numerous large caves of this time the effect is astounding for its detail. In cave 61, for example, there are large female donor figures of the Cao family, and the entire back wall is occupied by a mythical “map” of Wutaishan as a sacred place. At this point, a real geographic place in China was treated as an icon itself, thus merging the concept of Pure Land with sacred spaces on earth. In general, the art of the Five Dynasties period prolonged the styles of Tang into its final, more formalized stage.

**Northern Song (960–1127), Liao (907–1125), Xixia (late tenth–1223), Jin (1115–1234), Southern Song (1127–1279), and Dali in Yunnan (937–1253)**

Though a culturally high period in China, the eleventh to the thirteenth centuries were not without fragmentation. In the South, at the Yanxiadong during the mid-tenth century in Hangzhou there is an early example of the group of sixteen (or eighteen) Luohans with Guanyin, a theme that came to pervade this period. Guanyin is sometimes shown garbed in a robe covering the head and body, a depiction that came to be known as the “white-robed” Guanyin. Various forms of Guanyin had been growing in popularity since the sixth century, but the blossoming and expanding of these forms became a major factor in Chinese Buddhist art of this period. For example, the independent kingdom of Wuyue in the South produced a distinctive bodhisattva portrayal with prominent jewel-encrusted ornamentation and a stiff and quiet body with a gentle face. Throughout the Song period Dazu in Sichuan developed into a major site of impressive reliefs that connote a great maṇḍala for PILGRIMAGE based in large part on the plans of the founding monk, who consciously incorporated local popular, as well as esoteric, themes into the Buddhist tableaux. In addition, Maijishan in Gansu produced numerous stucco images at this time.



Avalokiteśvara, the bodhisattva of compassion, seated in a posture of royal ease. (Chinese wood sculpture, Liao dynasty, 907–1125.) The Nelson-Atkins Museum of Art, Kansas City, Missouri. Reproduced by permission.

The Xixia kingdom in the northwest emerged as a major state from the late tenth century until its defeat by Genghis Khan’s troops in 1223. In addition to Buddhist art in a variant of the Song mode, from the late twelfth century the Xixia produced a major body of art in Tibetan style, especially paintings, probably introduced by the BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU) and possibly also by SA SKYA (SAKYA) lamas who came to the Xixia court from central Tibet. Many of these remains, which are also recognized as a major branch of early central Tibetan style painting, now reside in the Khara Khoto collection in the Hermitage Museum in Saint Petersburg, Russia. Dunhuang is dominated by the Xixia, which not only did extensive renovation of the site, but also opened important new caves, as it also did at Yulin, where esoteric Tibetan style imagery exists side by side with Song style imagery.

Much of the Buddhist art during the Northern Song period survives in the Shanxi, Hebei, and Manchuria regions; most of it was produced under the Khitan Liao. Great temples such as the Duluosi of 984 in northern Hebei, the Fengguosi in Manchuria, and the





The bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara. (Chinese hanging scroll painting, Song or Yuan dynasty, thirteenth–fourteenth century.) The Nelson-Atkins Museum of Art, Kansas City, Missouri. Reproduced by permission.

Upper and Lower Huayansi in Datong (northern Shanxi), as well as numerous brick pagodas throughout the area, express the activity of the Liao. Ensembles tended to center on Guanyin and on esoteric imagery of the Five Tathāgathas. The tallest and oldest wooden pagoda survives in Yingxian in Shanxi; built during the mid-eleventh century, it is a marvel of timber construction, with each story containing a central altar with large stucco statues. Dozens of magnificent remains of statues of Guanyin, mostly in polychrome and gilded wood and portraying the bodhisattva as seated in a rocky grotto in a pose of royal ease, testify

to the continuing and dominant focus on Guanyin. The Luohans also rose to great prominence in this period, an early set being the famous ceramic statues from Yizhou in Hebei, datable to the early eleventh century. These sculptures all exemplify the naturalistic trends of the Song period, expressed in the realism of the face and hands and the heavy, naturally folded drapery, without recourse to abstract patterns. The Song image represents a truly humanistic interpretation of the most popular Buddhist images, those indicative of compassion (Guanyin) and exemplary teachers (Luohans), in large part spurred by the active Chan and Huayan thought of this time.

These trends continued into the Southern Song period. Cycles of Luohans, many portrayed in paintings following the Li Gonglin model, using rich color and a landscape setting, as well as refined depictions of Amitābha and his bodhisattvas, are masterful works by academic painters or by the ateliers of professional Buddhist painters in the South, especially centered in Ningpo. The Dali kingdom in Yunnan saw a flourishing Buddhist culture at this time that also produced exquisite art. However, the most innovative Buddhist art comes from the contributions of Chan painters, especially the paintings of Liangkai and Muqi during the first half of the thirteenth century. Both of these masters had the ability to not only offer a fresh interpretation of Chan themes, many of which were new to the Buddhist art repertoire, but also to express these themes in such a way that the very manner of execution becomes a Buddhist statement. The depth of understanding raised Buddhist art to its highest level, where the way in which the subject is painted is as much an expression of Buddhist thought as is the Chan content of the painting. The work of Liangkai and Muqi established a Chan painting tradition that was carried on by others into the late thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, though never with such resounding success as by these two masters.

### **Yuan (1234–1368), Ming (1368–1644), and Qing (1644–1911) dynasties**

Buddhist art in the Yuan dynasty followed several streams. Besides Chan painting, which includes Chan legendary characters, portraits of Chan masters, Guanyin, nature themes, calligraphy, and so on, there was the academic style of colorful paintings, especially on the subject of Luohans, of which there are many wonderful sets. In sculpture, powerful, heavy images of Guanyin seated on craggy rocks—a theme popular from the eleventh century and probably representing

Guanyin from the *Gaṇḍavyūha* of the *Huayan jing*—continues as a major icon in the Yuan and early Ming dynasties, which produced especially powerful examples with robes full of movement. Other trends evolved in sculpture, especially those with a Nepalese-Tibetan cast, such as the styles brought to China by Anige, the Nepalese artist introduced to Kublai Khan by Phags pha, the influential Sa skya hierarch at the Yuan court. The impact of Tibetan Buddhist art on China was strong during the Yuan (Mongol ruled) period and can be seen in the sculptures of the Feilafeng in Hangzhou, in the magnificent cycle of esoteric paintings of Śākya lineage in cave 465 at Dunhuang, and at the Buddhist sanctuary at Wutaishan, where the enormous Indo-Tibetan style pagoda at the Tayuansi dominates the valley.

The Ming dynasty produced some impressive sculptures, such as the colossal one thousand-armed Guanyin, and the one thousand-armed Wenshu and Puxian bodhisattvas at the Zhongshansi in Taiyuan (Shanxi). Many gorgeous paintings and wall paintings, often of extraordinarily intense color and skillful drawing, such as those at the Fahaisi near Beijing and still surviving in many temples of Qinghai province, document the flourishing painting schools and active temple building and decorating, especially during the early Ming. Paintings, sculptures, and superb huge *kesi* woven tapestries made during the Yongle era (1403–1425) were often sent to Tibet as gifts, where they influenced Tibetan Buddhist art forms during the fifteenth century. From this time on, China and Tibet have a particularly close interrelation in Buddhist art. This is notable during the reign of the Qing dynasty Qianlong emperor in the eighteenth century. With the building of the Yonghegong in Beijing, a center for the DGE LUGS (GELUK), the order of the DALAI LAMAS, the influences of Tibetan Buddhism were further solidified. Many of the monasteries around Beijing, the Chinese capital since the Yuan, have imagery that is strongly Tibetan in character and iconography, including the many forms of Buddhist icons common to Tibetan tantric Buddhist practice, such as those similar to the splendid seventeenth-century sculpture of Paramaśukha Cakrasaṃvara. This final productive phase of Buddhist art in China was wedded to Tibetan Buddhist traditions, but there were also occasional masterworks of Buddhist art produced by the leading painters of the time and some sculptural styles following older traditions, especially in the south.

Since the 1960s the Chinese continue to discover, document, and study major segments of their Bud-

dhist art, and specialized studies by Western scholars probe new directions, such as the role of patron-donors; the interaction with popular art and with Daoist art; the beginnings of specific imagery, such as Pure Land imagery; the incorporation of data from local records; iconographic, religious, and interpretive issues; sources of the art; regional distinctions; problems of chronologies and dating; the relationships with Central Asian art; and the impact of Chinese Buddhist art on that of surrounding areas, particularly Korea and Japan. All of these diverse and complex studies are ongoing and will surely open up new understandings of the vast and deep subject of Chinese Buddhist art.

*See also:* Arhat Images; Bodhisattva Images; Buddha Images; Cave Sanctuaries; Chan Art; Huayan Art; Monastic Architecture; Pure Land Art

### Bibliography

- Bunker, Emma C. "Early Chinese Representations of Vimalakīrti." *Artibus Asiae* 30 (1968): 28–52.
- Chūgoku sekkutsu* (Chinese Stone Caves), 9 vols. Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1980–1990.
- Gridley, Marilyn L. *Chinese Buddhist Sculpture under the Liao*. New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture and Aditya Prakashan, 1993.
- Howard, Angela Falco. "Royal Patronage of Buddhist Art in Tenth Century Wu Yüeh." *Bulletin of the Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities, Stockholm* 57 (1985): 1–60.
- Howard, Angela Falco. *The Imagery of the Cosmological Buddha*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1986.
- Howard, Angela Falco. *Summit of Treasures: Buddhist Cave Art of Dazu, China*. Trumbull, CT: Weatherhill, 2001.
- Matsubara, Saburō. *Chūgoku Bukkyō chōkoku shiron* (A History of Chinese Buddhist Sculpture), 4 vols. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1995.
- Mizuno, Seiichi, and Nagahiro, Toshio. *Ryūmon Sekkutsu no Kenkyū* (Study of the Buddhist Cave Temples at Lung-men). Tokyo: Zauho Press, 1941.
- Mizuno, Seiichi, and Nagahiro, Toshio. *Yün-kang*, 16 vols. Kyoto: Jimbunkagaku kenkyusho, 1952–1956.
- Piotrovski, Mikhail, ed. *Lost Empire of the Silk Road: Buddhist Art from Khara Khotō (X–XIII Century)*. Milan, Italy: Thyssen-Bornemisza Foundation, 1993.
- Rhie, Marylin M. "A T'ang Period Stele Inscription and Cave XXI at T'ien-lung shan." *Archives of Asian Art* 28 (1974–1975): 6–33.
- Rhie, Marylin M. *Interrelationships between the Buddhist Art of China and the Art of India and Central Asia from 618–755 A.D.* Naples, Italy: Istituto Universitario Orientale (Supplementum to *Annali* 48), 1988.

- Rhie, Marylin M. *Early Buddhist Art of China and Central Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, Vol. 1: 1999; Vol. 2: 2002.
- Sekino, Tei. *Ryōkin jidai no kenchiku to sono butsuzō (Architecture of the Liao and Jin Dynasties and Their Buddhist Images)*, 3 vols. Tokyo: Tōhō bunka gakuin Tōkyō kenkyūjo, 1934–1944.
- Siren, Osvald. *Chinese Sculpture from the Fifth to the Fourteenth Century*, 4 vols. London: Ernest Benn, 1925.
- Soper, Alexander C. *Literary Evidence for Early Buddhist Art in China*. Ascona, Italy: Artibus Asiae, 1959.
- Soper, Alexander C. “South Chinese Influence on the Buddhist Art of the Six Dynasties Period.” *Bulletin of the Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities, Stockholm* 32 (1960): 47–112.
- Soper, Alexander C. “Imperial Cave-Chapels of the Northern Dynasties: Donors, Beneficiaries, Dates.” *Artibus Asiae* 208 (1966): 241–270.
- Steinhardt, Nancy Shatzman. *Liao Architecture*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Su Bai. *Zhongguo shiku si yanjiu (Research on Chinese Stone Cave Temples)*. Beijing: Wenwu chubanshe, 1996.
- Tokiwa, Daij, and Sekino, Tadashi. *Shina bunka shiseki*, 12 vols. Tokyo: Hōzōkan, 1940.
- Wang, Eugene. “What Do Trigrams Have to Do with Buddhas? The Northern Liang Stūpas as a Hybrid Spatial Model.” *Journal of Anthropology and Aesthetics* 35 (Spring 1999): 70–91.
- Weidner, Marsha, ed. *Latter Days of the Law: Images of Chinese Buddhism, 850–1850*. Lawrence, KS: Spencer Museum of Art, 1994.
- Whitfield, Roderick. *Dunhuang, Caves of the Singing Sands: Buddhist Art from the Silk Road*, 2 vols. London: Textile and Art Publications, 1995.
- Wong, Dorothy C. “Four Sichuan Buddhist Steles and the Beginnings of Pure Land Imagery in China.” *Archives of Asian Art* 51 (1998–1999): 56–79.
- Wu Hung. “Buddhist Elements in Early Chinese Art (2nd and 3rd centuries A.D.).” *Artibus Asiae* 47, nos. 3–4 (1986): 263–352.
- Zhongguo meishu juanji (Collection of Chinese Art)*, 60 vols. Shanghai, China: Renmin meishu chubanshe and Shanghai renmin meishu chubanshe, 1987–1989.

MARYLIN MARTIN RHIE

## CHINESE, BUDDHIST INFLUENCES ON VERNACULAR LITERATURE IN

Until the progressive May Fourth Movement of 1919, the preferred medium for writing in China for the previous three millennia had always been one or another

form of Literary Sinitic, also called Classical Chinese. From at least the Han period (206 B.C.E.–220 C.E.), and perhaps from its very inception, Literary Sinitic was an artificial language separated from everyday speech by an enormous gulf. Consequently, command of the highly allusive literary language was possible only for a small proportion of the population, roughly 2 percent, who could afford to devote years of study to it.

With the advent of Buddhism in China during the last century of the Han dynasty, a demotic style of writing that was closer to speech—here referred to as Vernacular Sinitic—gradually began to emerge. The same characters were used to write both Literary and Vernacular Sinitic, but the morphemes, and especially the words, grammar, and syntax differed radically between these two kinds of Sinitic writing.

### Buddhism and language

The question of exactly how a foreign religion like Buddhism could have had such an enormous impact on linguistic usage in China is extraordinarily complex. Some of the factors involved are: (1) a conscious desire on the part of Buddhist teachers and missionaries (starting with the Buddha himself) to speak directly to the common people in their own language; (2) the maintenance of relatively egalitarian social values among Buddhists in contrast to a strongly hierarchal Confucian order; (3) an emphasis on hymnody, storytelling, drama, lecture, and other types of oral presentation; and (4) the perpetuation of sophisticated Indian scholarship on linguistics, which highlighted the importance of grammar and phonology as reflected in actual speech, in contrast to Chinese language studies, which focused almost exclusively on the characters as the perfect vehicle for the essentially mute book language. Probably of overriding importance, however, was the nature of the process of translating texts written in Sanskrit and other Indian and Central Asian languages into Chinese. This usually involved teams of Chinese and foreign monks who knew each other’s language only imperfectly. Their discussions on various renderings, conducted orally, resulted in bits of vernacular seeping into what was otherwise a basically Literary Sinitic medium. This vernacular coloration, coupled with the massive borrowing of Indic words (it is estimated that approximately thirty-five thousand new names and terms entered Chinese through the agency of Buddhism) and even grammatical usages and syntactic structures, led to the creation of a peculiar written style that may be referred to as Buddhist Hybrid Sinitic or Buddhist Hybrid Chinese.

As people from various walks of life, both inside and outside of the Buddhist establishment, became familiar with the notion that it was possible to write down elements of spoken language, the length of the written vernacular grew from occasional words to a stray sentence or two, and then to a few sentences or even a whole paragraph. Eventually, entire texts written in heavily vernacularized Literary Sinitic came to be composed. In this manner, Vernacular Sinitic was born in China.

### Dunhuang manuscripts

The first sizable collection of texts consisting of more than a few words or lines that are conspicuously vernacular were recovered in the early twentieth century from the famous cave library of manuscripts at DUNHUANG, located at the far western end of the northwestern province of Gansu. Sealed up during the early part of the eleventh century, the cave yielded more than forty thousand manuscripts that are currently preserved mainly in Paris, London, and Beijing, although there are smaller collections in St. Petersburg (Russia), Japan, Finland, and elsewhere. Most of the manuscripts are sūtras that were already well known, but there are also several hundred uniquely important documents and texts that provide detailed information about daily monastic and lay life. In particular, the Dunhuang manuscripts include about 150 texts dating to the eighth through tenth centuries (primarily from the later part of that period) that represent the earliest group of vernacular narratives in China.

For the first half century of research on the Dunhuang manuscripts, the entire corpus of vernacular narratives was referred to as BIANWEN (transformation texts), and this loose usage still continues to find acceptance in many quarters, largely out of sheer habit. Technically speaking, *bianwen* are characterized by, among other features, the prosimetric form (alternating between spoken and sung portions), vernacular language, the special verse-introductory formula “*X chu, ruowei chen shuo?*” ([This is the] place [where X happens], how does it go?), and a close relationship to pictures. *Bianwen* were originally restricted to religious themes, but they were later also used to describe secular subjects, such as heroes from the past and the present. Another significant aspect of *bianwen* is that they were copied by lay students and derive from a tradition of oral storytelling with pictures, whose most outstanding practitioners were women from secular society.

To be distinguished from *bianwen* are other Dunhuang vernacular genres called *jiangjing wen* (sūtra lecture texts, elaborate exegeses of specific scriptures), *yazuo wen* (seat-settling texts, prologues for the sūtra lecture texts), *yinyuan* (circumstances, stories illustrating karmic consequences), and *yuanyi* (causal origins, tales illustrating the effects of karma). These vernacular prosimetric genres, which were strictly religious in nature, were used for particular services and were characterized by specific pre-verse formulas. Unlike *bianwen*, with its lay background, *jiangjing wen*, *yazuo wen*, *yinyuan*, and *yuanyi* seem to have been produced and used by monks of varying status.

Like *bianwen*, these vernacular genres were preserved only at Dunhuang. Although intensive research has demonstrated that such types of literature must have been current elsewhere in China, no printed or manuscript evidence survives to document them. How did it happen that material proof for such popular genres survived only in a remote, peripheral region? The answer is simple. No one was interested in preserving anything written in the vernacular. In other words, vernacular manuscripts were not considered worth preserving and should, by all rights, have been left to disintegrate, which, outside of Dunhuang, is precisely what happened. In addition, Dunhuang's remoteness from the mainstream traditions of central China probably contributed to the chances for preservation of the written vernacular. Until recently, it was considered by proper Confucian literati to be almost immoral to write in the vernacular, and they certainly would not have taken pains to preserve vernacular texts for future generations. However, since the Dunhuang cave monasteries were so thoroughly Buddhist and located on the frontier, the keepers of the libraries there deemed even *bianwen*, *jiangjing wen*, *yazuo wen*, *yinyuan*, and *yuanyi* to be worthy of protection. The dry climate of the desert region also played a key role in the preservation of the Dunhuang manuscripts. Finally, by sheer chance, the Dunhuang manuscripts were placed in a side cave in the early years of the eleventh century, where they were sealed up, plastered over with wall-paintings, and forgotten for ten centuries. When they were rediscovered at the beginning of the twentieth century, it was as though a time capsule had been opened, preserving unchanged a marvelous slice of life, thought, and art from Tang (618–907) and Five Dynasties (907–960) China.

### Manifestations in Chan, fiction, and drama

Not long after Tang lay Buddhists and the monks who preached to them decided there was nothing wrong in

trying to write down their stories and sermons more or less as they had spoken them, adherents of the CHAN SCHOOL of Buddhism began to use the vernacular when recording the *yulu* (dialogues) of their masters. Around the same time, a few eccentric lay Buddhists who went by such names as Han Shan (Cold Mountain) and Wang Fanzhi (Brahmacārin [Devotee] Wang) also liberally sprinkled their verse with vernacularisms.

Once Buddhists had shown the way and it became obvious that writing more or less the way one spoke was possible, then secular vernacular writing similarly became feasible. Imperceptibly, there arose what modern scholars have come to call the *koine*, a sort of proto-Mandarin that served as a lingua franca to bridge the gap of unintelligibility among the numerous Sinitic *fangyan* (topolects or so-called dialects). The consequences of this phenomena for the development of subsequent Chinese popular literature were profound. This was particularly true of fiction and drama, where many of the same linguistic and stylistic conventions that had been employed by Buddhists for their vernacular stories and lectures persisted in popular literature.

Thus, with the Buddhist sanctioning of the written vernacular, a sequence of revolutionary developments occurred that radically transformed Chinese literature for all time. Moreover, hand in hand with vernacularization came other Buddhist-inspired developments in Chinese literature. Aside from Buddhist topics, such as the Tang monk XUANZANG's (ca. 600–664) pilgrimage to India that was immortalized in the Ming-dynasty (1368–1655) novel *Xiyou ji* (*Journey to the West*), the very notion that fiction was something fabricated out of whole cloth, something created by the mind of the author, can be traced to Buddhist sources. Prior to the advent of Buddhism, there was no full-blown fiction (in the sense that it was something “made up”) in China. Instead, there were only short anecdotes, tales based on historical events, and what were known in the Six Dynasties (222–589) period as *zhiguai* (accounts of abnormalities). Even the latter were thought to be based squarely on events that had really happened. Hence the role of the author was merely to record some extraordinary incident. During the Tang dynasty, there arose a genre called *chuanqi* (chronicles of the strange). Like *zhiguai*, *chuanqi* were written in Literary Sinitic and maintained the pretense that they were relating an incident or series of incidents that had actually transpired. However, *chuanqi* are much more inventive and elaborate than *zhiguai*. This sort of fertile fictionalizing was fostered by ontological pre-

suppositions, such as *māyā* (illusion) and *SŪNYATĀ* (EMPTINESS), brought to China with Buddhism.

Similar developments occurred in drama, where, along with increasing vernacularization, came Indian practices that were transmitted via Buddhism. Among these are the introduction of himself directly to the audience by a character upon entry to the stage, face painting, fixed puppetlike gestures and postures, and so forth. Such resemblances to Indian theater are particularly pronounced in southern Chinese drama.

Another type of Indian fiction and drama that can be found in China is dramatic narrative or narrational drama. In India, there was a seamless continuum of oral and performing arts that ranged from storytelling to puppet plays and the human theater. The vast majority of genres in this tradition subscribed to the notion that a succession of narrative moments or loci was being related by the bard or portrayed by actors. Furthermore, most Indian oral and performance genres that have dramatic narrative as their organizing principle consist of a combination of singing and speaking. All of these attributes, in fact, apply to the Chinese vernacular tradition of oral performance. Thus vernacularization is by no means an isolated instance of Buddhism's impact upon Chinese fiction and drama, although it may well be the single most distinctive characteristic.

While the Buddhist tradition of vernacular, prosimetric narrative became secularized in fiction and drama, the religious expression of this literary form also continued in such genres as *baojuan* (precious scrolls). Late Ming and Qing accounts reveal that “precious scrolls” were very popular as a form of entertainment and instruction.

### Ultimate impact

Despite the enthusiastic favor the written vernacular found with the bulk of the populace, who through it were increasingly empowered with literacy, to the end of the empire in 1911, the mainstream Confucian literati never accepted anything other than Literary Sinitic as a legitimate medium for writing. To them the vernacular was crude and vulgar, beneath the dignity of a gentleman to contemplate. But merchants, storytellers, craftsmen, physicians, and individuals from many other walks of life paid no heed to this opinion and proceeded to forge a fully functional written vernacular on the foundations that had been laid by the Buddhists of medieval China. In the end, they created a national language called *guoyu*, a term that can ulti-

mately be traced back to the Sanskrit expression *deśa-bhāṣā* (language of a country).

Although there are a few examples of vernacular elements in non-Buddhist texts from before the Tang period, they are extremely rare. A careful examination of the trajectory of the early written vernacular in China reveals that it is unmistakably and overwhelmingly related to Buddhist contexts. In other words, it is safe to say that Buddhism legitimized the writing of the vernacular language in China.

**See also: Apocrypha; Buddhavacana (Word of the Buddha); Entertainment and Performance; Languages; Poetry and Buddhism**

### Bibliography

- Chavannes, Édouard, trans. *Cinq cents contes et apologues: Extraits du Tripitaka Chinois*. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1910–1911.
- Idema, Wilt, and Haft, Lloyd. “Popular Literature: *Ci* and *Bianwen*.” In *A Guide to Chinese Literature*. Ann Arbor: Center for Chinese Studies, University of Michigan, 1997.
- Jan, Yün-hua. “Buddhist Literature.” In *The Indiana Companion to Traditional Chinese Literature*, ed. William H. Nienhauser, Jr. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1986.
- Liu, Ts’un-yan. *Buddhist and Taoist Influences on Chinese Novels*. Vol. 1: *The Authorship of the Feng Shen Yen I*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1962.
- Mair, Victor H., trans. and ed. *Tun-huang Popular Narratives*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Mair, Victor H. “The Narrative Revolution in Chinese Literature: Ontological Presuppositions.” *CLEAR (Chinese Language: Essays, Articles, Reviews)* 5, no. 1 (1983): 1–27.
- Mair, Victor H., ed. *A Partial Bibliography for the Study of Indian Influence on Chinese Popular Literature. Sino-Platonic Papers* 3. Philadelphia: Department of Oriental Studies, University of Pennsylvania, 1987.
- Mair, Victor H. “Buddhism and the Rise of the Written Vernacular in East Asia: The Making of National Languages.” *Journal of Asian Studies* 53, no. 3 (1994): 707–751.
- Mair, Victor H., ed. *The Columbia Anthology of Traditional Chinese Literature*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1994.
- Mair, Victor H., ed. *The Shorter Columbia Anthology to Traditional Chinese Literature*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2000.
- Mair, Victor H. “Buddhism in *The Literary Mind and Ornate Rhetoric*.” In *A Chinese Literary Mind: Culture, Creativity, and Rhetoric in Wenxin Diaolong*, ed. Zong-qi Cai. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2001.
- Mair, Victor H., and Wagner, Marsha. “Tun-huang wen-hsüeh [Literature].” In *The Indiana Companion to Traditional Chinese Literature*, ed. William H. Nienhauser, Jr. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1986.
- Overmyer, Daniel L. *Precious Volumes: An Introduction to Chinese Sectarian Scriptures from the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 1999.
- Schmid, Neil. “Tun-huang Literature.” In *The Columbia History of Chinese Literature*, ed. Victor H. Mair. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.
- Schmidt-Glintzer, Helwig, and Mair, Victor H. “Buddhist Literature.” In *The Columbia History of Chinese Literature*, ed. Victor H. Mair. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.
- Waley, Arthur, trans. *Ballads and Stories from Tun-huang: An Anthology*. New York: Macmillan, 1960.
- Zürcher, E. “Late Han Vernacular Elements in the Earliest Buddhist Translations.” *Journal of the Chinese Language Teachers Association* 12, no. 3 (1977): 177–203.

VICTOR H. MAIR

## CHINUL

Chinul (“Puril Pojo *kuksa*”; 1158–1210), founder of the CHOGYE SCHOOL of the Sŏn (Chinese, Chan; Japanese, Zen) school, is one of the preeminent figures in the history of Korean Buddhism. His work contains three related but distinct accomplishments. First, he helped initiate the practice of *kongan* (Chinese, *gong’an*; Japanese, *kōan*) meditation within the Korean Sŏn tradition. Second, he attempted to reconcile the longstanding conflict between the Sŏn schools, which focused on meditation practice, and the doctrinal or Kyo schools, which focused on scriptural study. Third, he formulated a theory of enlightenment that sought to bridge the sudden-gradual debate that had long troubled the Korean Buddhist world. Often termed “sudden enlightenment and gradual cultivation,” Chinul’s theory posited an initial sudden enlightenment experience that ongoing practice would deepen and enrich.

Three separate enlightenment experiences define Chinul’s spiritual journey. He became a monk at the age of eight, and at twenty-five passed an examination meant to select clergy for high administrative service. Instead of taking a post, he left the capital and went south, eventually settling at the monastery of Ch’ōng-wōnsa. There, he read the PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING), which triggered the first of his enlightenment experiences. In 1185, at the age of twenty-eight, he moved to the monastery of Pomunsa and read the *Huayan lun* (*Treatise on the*

*Huayan Jing*), by Li Tongxuan (635–730), an eighth-century Huayan theorist. It spurred him to intensify his meditation practice until he achieved his second enlightenment experience. In 1198, at the age of forty, he moved to Sangmuju Hermitage on Mount Chiri, where he read the *Dahui shuzhuang* (*Recorded Sayings of Dahui*), the words of Dahui ZONGGAO (1089–1163), an influential Chinese Chan thinker of the twelfth century. This triggered his third and most important enlightenment experience, which led to his descent from Mount Chiri. He moved to the monastery of Songgwangsa, where he meditated, lectured, and wrote for an audience of monks and laypeople until his death in 1210.

Chinul's written work shows the influence of the three texts mentioned above, and exhibits his original contributions. *Wōndon sōngbullon* (*The Complete and Sudden Attainment of Buddhahood*) formulates what Chinul called the “perfect and sudden approach by means of faith and understanding.” The clearest single statement of his theory of sudden enlightenment and gradual cultivation, however, is found in his treatise *Pōpchip pyōrhaengnok chōryo pyōngip sagi* (*Excerpts from the Dharma Collection and Special Practice Record*), published in 1209, just before his death, which draws heavily on the thought of ZONGMI (780–841).

Arguably, Chinul's most influential work is a posthumously published text called *Kanhwa kyōrūiron* (*Resolving Doubts about Observing the Hwadu*), which advocates Dahui's so-called shortcut approach of *kongan* or *hwadu* (“critical phrase”) meditation. It contains a discussion contrasting what Chinul called “live” and “dead” words in the “investigation” of *hwadu*. Chinul warns against dead words, meaning the intellectual investigation of the meaning of the *hwadu*, in favor of live words, by which he means full participation in the word on a nonintellectual and nondualistic basis.

The book's legacy has been controversial because its theory of the live word and exclusive advocacy of the “shortcut” or *hwadu* method seem to contradict Chinul's own earlier attempts at synthesizing doctrinal and meditative practice. This apparent reversal had a profound impact on the subsequent history of Korean Sōn. Chinul's immediate successor, HYESIM (1178–1234), abandoned attempts to reconcile Sōn practice with scriptural study in favor of an exclusive focus on *hwadu* meditation—a focus that continues in Korean Sōn to this day.

See also: Chan School; Nine Mountains School of Sōn

## Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., trans. *The Korean Approach to Zen: The Collected Works of Chinul*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983. Reprinted as *Tracing Back the Radiance: Chinul's Korean Way of Zen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Han'guk Pulgyo chōnsō (*Collected Works of Korean Buddhism*), Vol. 4. Seoul: Dongguk University Press, 1982.
- Kang, Kun Ki. *Moguja Chinul Yōn'gu* (*A Study of Chinul*). Seoul: Puch'onim Sesang, 2001.
- Keel, Hee-Sung. *Moguja Chinul: Founder of the Korean Sōn Tradition*. Berkeley, CA: Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, 1984.
- Shim, Jae Ryong. *Korean Buddhism: Tradition and Transformation*. Seoul: Jimoondang, 1999.
- Yi, Chongik. *Kangoku Bukkyō no kenkyū* (*A Study of Korean Buddhism*). Tokyo: Kokusho Kankōkai, 1980.

SUNG BAE PARK

## CHOGYE SCHOOL

The Chogye school, which is unique to Korea, constitutes the mainstream of Buddhism in contemporary Korea. There have been two distinct Chogye schools known in Korean history. One school traces its origins to the NINE MOUNTAINS SCHOOL OF SŌN (*Kusan Sōnmun*) that was active until the mid-Koryō period (918–1392). These Sōn schools united into one main school after the twelfth century, thus establishing the Chogye school. However, this institution came to a close in 1424 as a result of the anti-Buddhist policies of the Chosōn government, which favored Confucianism. The second Chogye school emerged during the Japanese colonial period (1910–1945). The Korean ecclesiastical order began to use the name *Chogye* in 1941, but it was not until 1962 that the Chogye School of Korean Buddhism (*Taehan Pulgyo Chogyejong*) was officially established.

Both continuity and discontinuity are apparent in the history and ideology of the two Chogye schools. Contemporary scholarship does not distinguish between the two, however, and scholars have developed a variety of ideas concerning the origins and the lineage of the Chogye school. It is certain that the first Chogye school was directly related to the CHAN SCHOOL. *Chogye* is the Korean pronunciation for the Chinese word *Caoqi*, the name of the mountain of residence of HUINENG (638–713), the sixth patriarch of Chinese Chan school; thus, the name Chogye reflects the fundamental Chan

influence on Korean Buddhism. However, the Chogye school in contemporary Korea is not exclusively a Sŏn school. Although it professes to be a Sŏn school, it embraces various schools of Buddhist doctrine (*kyo*) as well as Pure Land beliefs into its system of thought, making the Korean approach to Chan quite different from its counterparts in China and Japan.

One of the lingering issues surrounding the Chogye school in contemporary Korea is its dharma lineage. The constitution of the school stipulates that Toŭi (d. 825) was the founder of the school, CHINUL (1158–1210) its reviver, and T'aego Pou (1301–1382) its harmonizer. In addition, Korean Buddhist scholars have developed many different theories regarding Chogye lineage. These theories, however, are not always based on historical fact, but are a product of ideologically motivated attempts to connect Korean Buddhism to the “orthodox” lineage of the Chinese Linji Chan tradition. Although most Korean Buddhist specialists believe that Chinul was not the founder of the Chogye school, it is evident that during the Koryŏ period the movement was led by his dharma successors, and the Chogye school of contemporary Korea adopted the thought of Chinul as its theoretical support.

The origins of the Chogye school, its founder, historical development, and dharma lineage need to be further clarified with the understanding that there were two distinct Chogye schools throughout Korean history. This is an extremely important issue because the search to understand the exact identity of the school itself will, by extension, describe that of Korean Buddhism and history.

*See also:* Colonialism and Buddhism; Korea

### **Bibliography**

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practice in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Keel, Hee-Sung. “Han’guk Pulgyo ūi chŏngch’esŏng t’amgu: Chogyejong ūi yŏksa wa sasang ūl chungsim ūro hayŏ” (The Chogye School and the Search for Identity of Korean Buddhism). *Han’guk chonggyo yŏn’gu (Journal of Korean Religions)* 2 (2000): 159–193.
- Lee, Peter H., ed. *Sourcebook of Korean Civilization*, Vol. 1. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993.
- Pak, Hae-Dang. “Chogyejong ūi pŏpt’ong sŏl e taehan kŏmt’o” (A Critical Research on the Dharma Lineages of the Chogye School). *Ch’orhak SaSang (A Journal of Philosophical Ideas)* 11 (2000): 43–62.

JONGMYUNG KIM

## CH’ŎNT’AE SCHOOL. *See* Tiantai School

## CHRISTIANITY AND BUDDHISM

From their beginnings Buddhism and Christianity reached out beyond the region of their birth. It was inevitable that their paths would cross, but for the first fifteen hundred years these encounters were of little significance to either faith. A brief period of enthusiasm by Christian missionaries for Buddhist teachings followed, only to be extinguished by a posture of confrontation that lasted for nearly four hundred years. It was not until the twentieth century that full and meaningful contact between the two religions developed.

### **Antiquity**

The greatest missionary effort of Buddhism was concentrated between the third century B.C.E. and the eighth century C.E., by the end of which it had reached virtually all of Asia. Buddhist history records no Constantine or Holy Roman Empire to elevate the religion to the stature of a multinational force; Buddhism participated in no colonial exploits such as those that transported Christianity around the globe from the sixteenth to the nineteenth centuries. Emblematic figures, such as the Greek king Menander who converted to Buddhism in the second century B.C.E., Emperor AŚOKA who established a Buddhist kingdom in third-century B.C.E. India, and Prince SHŌTOKU who proclaimed a Buddhist-inspired constitution in seventh-century Japan, were able to secure ascendancy for Buddhism at a local level, but had no imperial designs on neighboring countries, let alone on the West.

The Christian mission was a different story. Already from its earliest years it turned east to establish communities in predominantly Zoroastrian Persia and in India. The Gnostic Christian Mani is said to have traveled from Persia to India in the third century, declaring the Buddha a special messenger of God alongside Moses and Jesus. Despite certain doctrinal coincidences—especially in the case of Gnosticism—speculation concerning the influence of Buddhism on the Essenes, the early Christians, and the gospels is without historical foundation. Indeed, aside from a brief report in the writings of Clement of Alexandria (200 C.E.), based largely on Greek historians, there is no extended record of Buddhist beliefs in Christian literature until the Middle Ages.



During the third and fourth centuries Christianity spread to the major urban centers of Asia, and in the fifth century to China. These small Christian communities barely brushed shoulders with the Buddhist faith, but even this contact came to an end with the outbreak of PERSECUTIONS in the late Tang dynasty against all foreign religions. From the tenth to the sixteenth centuries, barbarian invasions in Europe and the advance of Islam would erect more formidable barriers between the West and Asia, further limiting the possibility of Buddhist–Christian interaction.

### Late Middle Ages and Renaissance

Travelers from Europe in the thirteenth century, such as Giovanni de Piano Carpini and William of Ruysbroeck, were the first to send back to Europe reports of Buddhism as a religion whose scriptures, doctrine, saints, monastic life, meditation practices, and rituals were comparable to those of Christianity. Records of the voyages of Marco Polo from 1274 to 1295 include expressions of admiration for the religion and mention Buddha as a saintly figure lacking only the grace of baptism. During the next fifty years Christian monks like Giovanni de Montecorino (in 1289), Odorico da Pordenone (from 1318 to 1330), and Giovanni Marignolli (from 1338 to 1353) traveled more widely and confirmed the unity of the Buddhist faith around Asia.

Mention should also be made of the legend of Barlaam and Josaphat, a story of uncertain authorship but popularized through an eleventh-century Greek translation. It tells of Josaphat, an Indian prince, converting to Christianity under the guidance of the monk Barlaam. So beloved did the story become that the two saints were eventually accepted into the Roman martyrology. Only around the middle of the nineteenth century was the hoax uncovered: Josaphat was a recasting of the Prince Siddhārtha based on the first-century biography of the Buddha. The saints were not removed from the liturgical calendar, however, until the middle of the twentieth century.

Many of the first Catholic missionaries to arrive in Asia in the sixteenth century sent home idyllic accounts of Buddhism. Among them was Francis Xavier, whose direct contact with Buddhist monks and scholars in Japan from 1549 to 1551 opened the way for successors to study Buddhism in greater depth. Relying on their reports, the French orientalist Guillaume Postel in 1552 ventured to call Buddhism “the greatest religion in the world.” Reading his words, missionaries in Goa on the coast of India concluded that the Gospel

must have been preached in these lands already, though its truth dimmed over the centuries by the darkness of sin.

This was one side of the picture. When Vasco da Gama and the Portuguese colonizers came to Ceylon, now Sri Lanka, in 1505, they confiscated Buddhist properties across the land, with the full cooperation of the Christian missionaries. During the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the Dutch continued the suppression. Elsewhere, when Matteo Ricci entered China in 1583 he quickly forsook his interest in Buddhism for Confucianism, rejecting the former as an inferior religion and its monks as the dregs of Chinese society. His contemporaries Michele Ruggeri and Alessandro Valignano—as indeed did the majority of missionaries in China for centuries to come—concurred.

In THERAVĀDA lands, the missionaries were often more positive. In seventeenth-century Thailand a number of French priests actually lived in Buddhist monasteries. The century before, in Burma, several missionaries had written tracts favorable to Buddhism. In Cambodia there are records of a similarly positive approach, though it is Giovanni Maria Leria who is better remembered for his bitter hatred of the religion, rejecting Buddhism as a deliberate wile of the devil to transform all that is beautiful in Christianity. His views were to become the norm that held throughout most of the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. An exception is Paul Ambrose Bigandet, bishop of Rangoon from 1854 to 1856, who mediated an exchange of letters between the DALAI LAMA and Pope Clement XII in which the latter recognized Buddhism as “leading to the happiness of eternal life.”

### The modern age

It is only with the arrival of Sanskrit studies in Europe in the late eighteenth century and the subsequent availability of Buddhist texts that one can speak of a proper encounter in the West with Buddhism. Esteem for its tenets and practices grew apace, and the end of the century saw the first examples of Westerners converting to Buddhism and even entering the monastic life. Buddhist associations were formed in Germany, England, and later in the United States. Monks accompanying emigrants from several Asian lands to the Americas gave additional strength to the presence of Buddhism in the West.

The World Parliament of Religions held in Chicago in 1893 symbolized the change in attitude that had taken place in the Christian world, though not with-

out opposition from the established churches. These initiatives prompted favorable responses from several quarters of the Buddhist world of Asia.

While all of this was taking place, the continued role of Christianity in the colonizing of Asia was provoking a backlash from Buddhists. In Sri Lanka, now under British rule, Methodist missionaries had begun to study Buddhism in the 1840s as a tool for conversion. In the following decades the Buddhists fought back, supported by European Theosophists who helped them to organize along Western lines. The outbreak of riots, followed by a nationalistic fervor that spilled over into the twentieth century, exacerbated tensions. It was not until the 1960s that steps toward dialogue and cooperation could be made.

Similar confrontations were taking place in Japan. When the country opened its doors to the outside world in 1854 after two hundred years of seclusion, Japan's Buddhist establishment began to fear its own demise and took steps to oppress the Christian missions during the 1890s. Subsequent generations abandoned this approach and began the long journey to a more creative coexistence and dialogue with Christianity.

The world missionary conference at Edinburgh in 1910 was the first public forum in the Christian world to recommend a constructive approach to the religions of Asia. Formal declarations at the Second Vatican Council in Rome (1965) and at the Uppsala assembly of the World Council of Churches (1968) paved the way for more direct rapprochement. Concerted efforts to organize Buddhist-Christian dialogue through worldwide associations and journals began in earnest and reached a groundswell in the 1980s. The Society for Buddhist-Christian Studies, based in the United States and with active membership both in Asia and throughout Europe, lent academic respectability to the dialogue. Christian institutes devoted to dialogue at the scholarly level already existed in several lands of East Asia and in 1981 organized themselves into a network based in Japan and known as Inter-Religio. An exchange of Buddhist and Christian monastics, initiated in 1979, continues in the twenty-first century. Christian theological centers throughout the West, and increasingly in Asia, are deepening their commitment to the encounter with Buddhism, and there are clear signs that the Buddhist world has begun to respond in kind.

*See also:* Entries on specific countries; **Colonialism and Buddhism**

### **Bibliography**

- de Lubac, Henri. *Recontre du bouddhisme et de l'occident*. Paris: Éditions Montaigne, 1952.
- Thelle, Notto R. *Buddhism and Christianity in Japan: From Conflict to Dialogue, 1854–1899*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- von Brück, Michael, and Lai, Whalen. *Christianity and Buddhism: A Multicultural History of Their Dialogue*, tr. Phyllis Jestice. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books, 2001.
- Zago, Marcello. *Buddhismo e cristianesimo in dialogo: Situazione, rapporti, convergenze*. Rome: Città Nuova, 1985.

JAMES W. HEISIG

---

## CLERICAL MARRIAGE IN JAPAN

Temple wives and families have existed covertly for much of Japanese Buddhist history. Since at least the time of SHINRAN (1173–1262), the founder of the True Pure Land denomination (Jōdo Shinshū), clerical followers of Shinran have openly married and, frequently, passed on their temples from father to son. Shin temple wives, known as *bōmori* (temple caretakers), traditionally have played an important role in ministering to parishioners, caring for the temple, and raising the temple children. The ambiguous term *jizoku*, referring to both the wife and the children of a temple abbot, was officially coined in a 1919 Pure Land (Jōdo) denomination regulation guaranteeing the right of succession to the registered child of the abbot (*jūshoku*) in the case of his death.

Clerical marriage became open and temple families general among all denominations of Japanese Buddhism following the state's decriminalization of clerical marriage in 1872. Although bitterly resisted for decades by the leaders of many non-Shin denominations, proponents of the practice advocated allowing clerical marriage and temple families as the best way to create a vigorous Buddhism capable of competing with the family-centered Protestantism, with its married ministers, that was making headway in Japan in the late nineteenth century. Despite opposition from many Buddhist leaders, clerical marriage proved popular, spreading to the majority of clerics in most denominations of monastic Buddhism by the late 1930s.

Today, all denominations of Japanese Buddhism have granted de facto legitimacy to clerical marriage and temple families. Most temples are inherited by either the biological or adoptive son of the abbot, and

temple wives play a vital—although still frequently unacknowledged—part in managing the temple, serving parishioners, raising the temple family, and participating in the religious activities of the temple.

See also: **Meiji Buddhist Reform**

### **Bibliography**

- Jaffe, Richard M. *Neither Monk nor Layman: Clerical Marriage in Modern Japanese Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2001.
- Kawahashi, Noriko. “Jizoku (Priests’ Wives) in Sōtō Zen Buddhism: An Ambiguous Category.” *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22/1–2 (1995): 161–183.
- Uan Dōnin. “A Refutation of Clerical Marriage,” tr. Richard M. Jaffe. In *Religions of Asia in Practice: An Anthology*, ed. Donald Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.

RICHARD M. JAFFE

---

## COLONIALISM AND BUDDHISM

If colonialism is defined specifically as the enforced occupation of a region or control of a population, subsequently maintained through either direct coercion or cultural and ideological hegemony, then Buddhist societies and cultures have been both subject to, and agents of, colonialism throughout the centuries. A good example of the association of Buddhism with colonial expansionism can be found, for instance, in the development of certain forms of Buddhist nationalism in Japan in the modern era. During the period of the Meiji Restoration in Japan (1868–1912), Japan became an increasingly powerful presence in East Asia as a result of its victories in the Sino-Japanese (1895) and Russo-Japanese (1904–1905) wars and its emergence on the world stage as a modern nation-state. As an imperial power Japan also annexed Korea (1910) and invaded Manchuria (1931), eventually losing control of these regions after its defeat in World War II.

### **Buddhism as a justification for colonialism**

During the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries a number of Buddhist figures, such as Kimura Shigeyuki and Mitsui Koshi, upheld the Japanese nation not only as the culmination of Buddhist cultural development, but also as a legitimating factor in Japanese imperial policies. In this context Buddhist nationalist movements and key figures such as the Zen

teacher Sōen Shaku (1859–1919) often justified Japanese military expansionism in terms of the missionary spread of Buddhist teachings and the “upholding of humanity and civilization” (Sōen; see Sharf). According to Tanaka Chigaku (1861–1939), a lay Buddhist follower inspired by NICHIREN, the Buddhist teaching reached its fulfillment in the particular form of the Japanese nation. This, he argued, created a duty on the part of Japan to spread its own (MAHĀYĀNA) form of the Buddha’s teachings to the rest of the world, with the explicit aim of transforming the world into a “vast Buddhist country.” In 1914 Chigaku founded the “National Pillar Society,” a nationalist movement concerned with a spiritual and moral regeneration of Japan, and attracted a number of followers, including Ishihara Kanji (1893–1981), the military mastermind behind the invasion of Manchuria in 1931.

Modern Japanese examples of the commingling of Buddhist tradition and culture with ultranationalist and colonialist motivations are striking but not unique in Buddhist history, especially when the line between national or ethnic allegiance and Buddhist affiliation becomes blurred. In the *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*), a Sinhalese Buddhist chronicle emerging from the Mahāvihāra Buddhist sect of Anurādhapura, the story of King Duṭṭhagāmaṇī’s conquests in Sri Lanka, the slaughter of his opponents, and the colonization of the entire island are all justified on the grounds that the non-Buddhists are in fact “not human.” This justification and account of the island’s history is, of course, all but impossible to reconcile with the Buddha’s own emphasis upon compassion and nonviolence. The *Mahāvamsa*, however, has played a significant role in underpinning the modern historical consciousness of the Sinhalese people and the rise of some of the more aggressive forms of Sinhalese Buddhist nationalism (Sinhalaṭva) in the twentieth century.

### **The colonization of Buddhist societies**

On a broader historical scale, however, Buddhist societies have generally been subject to, rather than an explicit motivating force behind, colonial expansionism. The Chinese invasion of Tibet in 1950, for instance, has resulted in an aggressively pursued policy designed to suppress Tibetan Buddhist culture and institutions in line with the antireligious stance of the Chinese Communist regime. One consequence of this, of course, has been the Tibetan Buddhist diaspora to India and the West in the late twentieth century, most notably that of the DALAI LAMA, often referred to as “the spiritual leader of the Tibetan people,” and cur-

rently living in exile in Dharamsala in northern India. From the point of view of the ruling Communist Party of China the colonization of Tibet is little more than a reoccupation of Chinese lands that has afforded the liberation of the Tibetan people “from serfdom.” It is clear, however, that the history of Tibet, partly for reasons of geographical isolation, but also because of its long Buddhist history, represents a highly distinctive culture and polity and has many affinities with South Asian culture and traditions.

The sixteenth to twentieth centuries witnessed the colonization of large parts of the globe by Europeans on a scale that was historically unprecedented. European colonialism has left an indelible mark upon the ways in which Asian Buddhists experience “modernity” and their own sense of cultural, national, and religious identity.

On May 27, 1498, the Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama arrived on the southwest coast of India. This was a turning point in the history of Asia and Europe. There had, of course, been interaction between Asia and Europe since long before the common era (e.g., along the SILK ROAD), but not to the extent that was precipitated by da Gama’s arrival. Portugal, sanctioned by the Vatican to expand the Christian empire to the East, established an early monopoly in the exploration of Asian territories and the plundering of Asian resources. Gradually, however, there was wider European involvement in the exploration and colonization of the Asian world. The spread of the Protestant Reformation throughout Europe allowed for a challenge to the Portuguese monopoly, based as it was upon papal sanction. In the 1590s, for instance, the Dutch took control of much of Ceylon (now Sri Lanka) and Indonesia. The British were excluded from Indonesia and so concentrated on consolidating their interests on the Indian mainland and in Ceylon and Burma. The French established a few bases on the subcontinent (such as in Pondicherry on the southeast coast of India) but turned the main focus of their attention to Indochina (mainly Cambodia, Laos, and Vietnam).

In broad terms, there were two main waves of Western influence upon Asian Buddhism during the colonial period. First, the effect of widespread Christian missionary activity by Europeans, and then later the impact of Western secular models of nationalism and scientific rationalist philosophies. Both waves precipitated a complex series of responses, leading to the rise of Buddhist nationalism and what some scholars have called “Protestant Buddhism” (Gombrich and Obeyesekere)

or “Buddhist modernism” (Bechert) and the development of a variety of syntheses between traditional Buddhist values and contemporary ideologies such as Marxism, free-market capitalism, and scientific empiricism.

In the latter half of the twentieth century, the independence gained by many former colonies in South and Southeast Asia left a political vacuum into which stepped a variety of indigenous interest groups and political movements. Some of these movements involve implicit (and sometimes explicit) appeal to Buddhist traditions and values in the formulation of their stances. One feature of this has been the rise of Buddhist forms of nationalist politics of varying ideological shades. “Buddhist socialism,” for instance, developed as a political force in states such as Cambodia and Burma. Despite some misgivings by the sizable ethnic minority groups, Burma, under the leadership of U Nu, recognized Buddhism as the country’s official state religion in 1961. A military coup under General Ne Win quickly ensued in 1962, however, leading to the establishment of a more radical left-wing military regime and the disestablishment of Buddhism. Burma (renamed Myanmar) remains under military rule, although this has not prevented the development of pro-democracy movements, focused mainly upon the inspirational figure of Aung San Suu Kyi, winner of the 1991 Nobel Prize for peace and herself inspired by Buddhist principles in her campaign for democratic elections. Similarly, in Sri Lanka (Ceylon), Buddhist nationalist movements have played a significant role in postindependence politics. The Sri Lankan example serves as an illustration of the impact of European colonialism upon indigenous Buddhist traditions and institutions.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries the Dutch controlled much of Ceylon and Indonesia. Economic inducements were offered to local “heathens” to convert to Christianity, and this effort was combined with vigorous missionary polemics against the “idolatrous” and superstitious practices of the Buddhists. In 1711 the Dutch issued a proclamation in Ceylon that explicitly forbade Christian involvement in “the ceremonies of heathenism,” with the penalty of a public flogging and a year’s imprisonment for those found engaging in such practices. In 1795 the British first appeared on the coast and by 1815 they had annexed the whole island.

Three factors have been crucial in the colonial transformation of indigenous Asian subjectivities: the

reconfiguration of politics and civil society under colonial rule, the transformation of modes of educating the population, and the role of the printing press in the dissemination of ideas among the indigenous population. In the case of Ceylon, the key factor was the introduction of the Colebrooke-Cameron Reforms of the 1830s, which sought to unify the political economy of the island, promote *laissez-faire* capitalism, and establish a national educational framework to be delivered through the medium of the English language. These changes led to the development of a new middle class within Sinhalese society that was educated in English and empowered by the new social, economic, and political reforms. This was to have a profound effect upon the Sinhalese population's appreciation of its Buddhist heritage (Scott; Gombrich and Obeyesekere). Similar processes were underway throughout the colonized regions of southeast Asia at this time.

The first printing press was introduced to Ceylon by the Dutch in 1736 and was immediately put to use in the printing of local vernacular translations of Christian texts and, later, classical European literature. In a speech to the Methodist Missionary Society Committee, on October 3, 1831, D. J. Gogerly outlined the importance of the printing press as a vehicle for undermining the authority of indigenous Buddhist traditions. Gogerly stated that "at present, it is by means of the Press [that] our principal attacks must be made upon this wretched system. . . . We must direct our efforts to pull down the stronghold of Satan." Gogerly was a missionary in Ceylon for forty-four years and also worked as a translator of the Pāli Buddhist scriptures into English. It was not until 1862, however, that, as a result of a gift from the king of Siam (now Thailand), Sinhalese Buddhists themselves gained access to a printing press and were thus able to disseminate their own materials and literature to the native population.

The establishment of a uniform educational system by the European colonizers tended to promote European Christian forms of education and literacy, either through the direct medium of European languages or by the study of European and Christian literature in vernacular translations. The curriculum and agenda in this context usually involved the teaching of Euro-Christian values alongside mathematics, science, and a Eurocentric version of history. The overall effect of taking the burden of educating the population away from the Buddhist monastic communities, where it constituted one of the traditional roles of the *bhikkhus*, was

to undermine the status of the *SAṄGHA* within society. Later the number of Christian missionary schools declined and secular government schools increased in number. Beginning in the mid-nineteenth century, however, a reformist spirit developed within Buddhist circles, partly in response to the criticisms of Christian missionary groups, which sought to reform the *saṅgha*. In Ceylon, with the help of the American Colonel Henry Steel Olcott and his Buddhist Theosophical Society (founded in 1880), three higher education institutes and some two hundred Buddhist high schools were set up to protect and preserve the study of the Buddhist tradition.

### **Orientalism and the rise of "Protestant Buddhism"**

Many of the westernized middle-class groups that emerged in Southeast Asia as a result of European colonial reforms first encountered their own Buddhist traditions through the mediating lenses of European textbooks, literature, and translations of Buddhist sacred texts. This reflects an important factor in understanding the way in which Buddhism develops and is presented in the modern era, namely the role of "BUDDHIST STUDIES" as a Western academic enterprise and the enormous authority accorded to Western scholars and texts in representing Buddhism during the colonial era (King; Lopez). Western interest in understanding Asian civilizations precipitated a "discovery" and translation of Buddhist sacred texts into modern European languages. Western scholars, however, generally replicated a series of basic Christian assumptions in their approach to Buddhism (Almond; King). There was a strong tendency to emphasize Buddhist sacred texts as the key feature in determining the nature of Buddhism as a religious tradition. This approach tended to ignore Buddhist traditions as changing historical phenomena and also underplayed the role of ritual practices and local networks and beliefs in the preservation and renewal of Buddhist forms of life. Buddhist sacred literature has traditionally been revered in Asian societies, but this reverence rarely led to a depreciation of local practices and beliefs that were not found in the ancient canonical literature. Buddhism as a living tradition tended to be either ignored or denigrated by Orientalist scholars as a corruption of the original teachings.

This attitude had a profound effect upon the emerging middle-class elites of Asian societies in the nineteenth century. This was the case even for nations that were not subject to European colonization such as

Japan (Sharf) and Thailand, illustrating perhaps that modernist reformism is not simply a by-product of European colonialism. In a Southeast Asian context, “Protestant” influence can be seen most clearly in the views of reformist leaders such as ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (born David Hewavitarane, 1864–1933) in Sri Lanka and Sayadaw U Ottama (d. 1921) in Burma. Both emphasized the need for a “Buddhist Reformation” in order to overcome what they saw as the decadence of the “superstitious ritualism” of folk or “village” Buddhism. This also involved a call for the saṅgha to become more socially reformist and service-oriented with regard to the needs of lay society. The trends can be seen to involve a number of “Protestant” elements. First, there is the desire to return to the purity of the Buddha’s original teachings, bereft of popular superstitions. Second, there is an emphasis on bringing an understanding of Buddhist sacred literature directly to the people as the basis for understanding the Buddha’s message. Finally, there is also an emphasis upon “this-worldly asceticism” to be manifested through acts of social service and in some cases political activism by the monks.

Although Western influence is evident in all of these trends one should be careful not to read such reformist projects merely as mirrored responses to a European Christian agenda. This would be to erase the indigenous aspects of such responses. “Protestant Buddhism,” if one can call it that, not only reflected the impact of European ideas upon Asian Buddhists, but also represented indigenous protestations against European colonialism and the claim that Western civilization was morally and spiritually superior to Buddhism. The promotion of a socially oriented ethic, while clearly a response to centuries of Christian missionary criticism of Buddhism as a world-denying tradition, was firmly grounded in Buddhist notions of compassionate service to all. A key shift that began during this period (and which provided the intellectual foundation for what has since become known as “ENGAGED BUDDHISM”) was the rearticulation of traditional Buddhist goals, such as NIRVĀṆA, in socio-political and often explicitly anticolonial terms. In Burma, for instance, the monk and political activist U Ottama explicitly linked the attainment of liberation to freedom from social, economic, and colonial oppression. In the 1940s this link was rearticulated by Aung San (father of Aung San Suu Kyi) in the notion of a “mundane liberation” (*lokanibbāṇa*) of the Burmese people from British colonial rule (Houtman). The latter half of the twentieth century saw the end of

European imperialism and the establishment of independent states in the former Asian colonies. In this context the process of understanding the effects that centuries of European colonial influence had upon Buddhist civilization and its significance has only just begun.

*See also:* Christianity and Buddhism; Communism and Buddhism; Modernity and Buddhism; Nationalism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Almond, Philip. *The British Discovery of Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Bechert, Heinz. “The Buddhist Revival in East and West.” In *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*, ed. Heinz Bechert and Richard Gombrich. London: Thames and Hudson, 1984.
- Gombrich, Richard, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Houtman, Gustaaf. *Mental Culture in Burmese Crisis Politics: Aung San Suu Kyi and the National League of Democracy*. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa, 1999.
- King, Richard. *Orientalism and Religion: Postcolonial Theory, India, and “the Mystic East.”* London and New York: Routledge, 1999.
- Ling, Trevor. *Buddhism, Imperialism, and War: Burma and Thailand in Modern History*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1979.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*. Chicago: Chicago University Press, 1995.
- Scott, David. *Refashioning Futures: Criticism after Postcoloniality*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Sharf, Robert. “The Zen of Japanese Nationalism.” In *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Chicago: Chicago University Press, 1995.
- Sōen (Soyen), Shaku. *Sermons of a Buddhist Abbot: Addresses on Religious Subjects*, tr. D. T. Suzuki. New York: Weiser, 1971 (originally published 1906).
- Tambiah, Stanley. *World Conqueror and World Renouncer: A Study of Buddhism and Polity in Thailand against a Historical Background*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.

RICHARD KING

## COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE

Buddhist commentarial writing spans a period of more than two thousand years. Its rich production, of which only a fragment has survived the vicissitudes of history, closely mirrors all facets of the doctrinal and many aspects of the cultural and social development of the religion.

One may, in the widest possible sense, conceive of all Buddhist scriptures as commentarial: The sūtra discourses comment on the Buddha's insights and the PATH, the ABHIDHARMA literature comments on the teachings given in the discourses, and the MAHĀYĀNA literature comments on the meaning of ŚŪNYATA (EMPTINESS) underlying the teachings. Commentaries elaborate on meaning (*artha*), meaning that demands special attention. The writing of commentaries belongs, alongside other modes of practice, among the ways of preserving and spreading the dharma. In terms of cultural history, the significance of commentarial literature consists in its capacity to reflect general cultural and religious trends and to serve as a venue for developing interpretative skills and working out fundamental intellectual issues.

ZANNING (919–1001), a representative of the Chinese tradition, explains the significance of Buddhist commentaries in his *Song gaoseng zhuan* (*Song Biographies of Eminent Monks*): “perfecting the way—this is dharma; carrying the dharma—this is sūtra; explaining sūtra—this is commentary” (T.2061:50.735b). Commentaries by definition are situated downstream of the flow of tradition and thus are never able to supersede scripture. Yet given the priority of meaning (*artha*) before wording (*vacana*), commentaries are expected to reiterate and bring to light the meaning that is hidden within scripture.

### Indian commentaries

The teachings of the dharma, from the very beginning, called for commentary. Thus one not only learns that the Buddha was frequently called upon to elaborate on teachings he had given, but equally that the Buddha considered some of his disciples, such as ŚĀRIPUTRA, to be equally capable of stating the teachings clearly. But this stage is still one of oral exegesis. Only with the establishment of the Buddhist CANON (tripiṭaka) did monks begin to write commentaries. In the course of interpreting the teachings, schools of interpretation arose. The two major extant strains of South Asian commentarial writing are the THERAVĀDA commentaries, written in Pāli, and the SARVĀSTIVĀDA AND MŪ-

LASARVĀSTIVĀDA commentaries in Sanskrit. The latter have been translated into Chinese. In addition, a few commentaries from other schools are extant.

At the beginning of the fifth century, BUDHAGHOSA—on the basis of earlier Sinhala commentaries—composed a series of commentarial works on the Pāli canon. Among them were two commentaries on the VINAYA: *Samantapāsādikā* (*The All-Pleasing*) and *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* (*Overcoming Doubt*). The *Samantapāsādikā* was translated into Chinese by Saṅghabhadra in 489 as the *Shanjianlü pibosha* (T.1462). The *Kaṅkhāvitarāṇī* is a commentary on the *Paṭimokkha* (Sanskrit, PRĀTIMOKṢA). As was the case with the vinaya, once the *Suttapiṭaka* had been established, a number of commentaries on its texts came to be written. Of particular importance are Buddhaghosa's commentaries on the *nikāyas* (*Sumaṅgalavilāsinī*, *Papañcasūdanī*, *Sāratthappakāsinī*, *Manorathapūranī*, *Paramāṭṭhajotikā*), and on the *abhidhamma* (*Aṭṭhasālinī*, *Samṃohavinodanī*, *Pañcappakaraṇāṭṭhakathā*).

In the case of the Sarvāstivāda, its writings are for the most part preserved only in Chinese. Its single most important treatise is Katyāyanīputra's *Jñānaprasthāna* (*Foundations of Knowledge*, composed around 50 B.C.E.), to which are related the six treatises (*pādaśāstra*): *Dharmaskandha*, *Samgītiparyāya*, *Dhātukāya*, *Prakaraṇa*, *Vijñānakāya*, and *Prajñapti*. The major exegetical collection, the *Mahāvibhāṣā* (*Great Exegesis*), compiled at a council held by Kaṇiṣka, is also related to the *Jñānaprasthāna*. Six of the seven treatises of this abhidharma *piṭaka* were translated by XUANZANG (ca. 600–664).

### Chinese commentaries

Though it is difficult to define beginnings, scholars know that Zhi Qian (fl. 223–253) and Kang Senghui (?–280) were already composing commentaries during the third century C.E. But commentaries probably gained importance only around the time of DAO'AN (312–385). From the biographical literature, one can glean indications of a thriving early commentarial literature, but it is almost completely lost. Examples of this earliest phase are Chen Hui's (ca. 200 C.E.) *Yin chi ru jing*; Dao'an's *Ren ben yu sheng jing zhu*; SENGZHAO's (374–414) *Zhu Weimo jing*; and FAXIAN's (ca. 337–418) *Fanwang jing pusa jie shu*.

Around the beginning of the fifth century, a new type of commentary emerged. Dao'an and DAOSHENG (ca. 360–434) played major roles in this transition. Fayao's (ca. 420–477) NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA and Zhu Fa-

chong's (ca. 268) LOTUS SŪTRA commentaries (both lost), and Zhu Daosheng's extant *Lotus* commentary are the earliest examples of this new type of commentary. Two extensive commentaries from the first half of the sixth century are also extant: one (in seventy-one fascicles) on the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* (*Da ban niepan jing ji jie*, 509) collected by Baoliang, the other (in eight fascicles) on the *Lotus* (*Fahua jing yiji*, 529) collected by Fayun (467–529). Both of these commentaries played important roles in the formation of the Sinitic Buddhist schools, and both reveal an important feature of this type of literature, namely, their explicit or implicit referencing of earlier exegesis.

The third phase of Chinese Buddhist commentarial writing began with the masters of the Sui dynasty (589–618) and was followed by a long series of extremely prolific masters of the Tang dynasty (618–907), who developed their doctrinal positions in the context of systematic exegetic efforts, eventually setting the stage for the emergence of schools of exegesis such as Tiantai, Huayan, and Faxiang. Noteworthy representatives of that phase are the Dilun master Jingying Huiyuan (523–596); the Sanlun master Jizang (549–623); the Tiantai masters ZHIYI (538–597), Guanding (561–632), and ZHANRAN (711–782); the Faxiang masters WŌNCH'ŪK (613–696, from Korea), KUIJI (632–682), Huizhao (?–714), and Zhizhou (679–723); the Huayan masters Zhiyan (628–668), WŌNHYO (617–686, from Korea), FAZANG (643–712), CHENGGUAN (738–840), and the lay Li Tongxuan (?–730); and the esoteric master Yixing (683–727).

The major exegetes commonly wrote commentaries on a broad set of scriptures. Thus one and the same scripture is marked by a long series of commentarial treatments. The *Lotus Sūtra*, the DIAMOND SŪTRA, and the HEART SŪTRA, respectively, are the scriptures most often commented on in China. There are about eighty extant Chinese commentaries on each of these sūtras. Besides these, the HUAYAN JING, *Vimalakīrti*, *Wuliangshou*, *Amituo*, *Yuanjue*, *Nirvāṇa*, *Laṅkāvatāra*, and *Fanwang jing* also drew much exegetic attention. Among the treatises, the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN) was most often commented on. The extant commentaries serve as the most important sources for information on the formation and development of Chinese Buddhist thought.

### Exegesis, the plurality of transmissions, and the commentarial context

The development of Chinese Buddhist commentarial literature was influenced by the fact that the transmis-

sion of scriptures was far from systematic. At almost any period a broad set of scriptures of diverse provenance was available that reflected various stages of the development of Buddhist doctrine. This plurality was born from translations in the third and fourth centuries of dhyāna, *prajñāpāramitā*, and tathāgatagarbha scriptures, in the early fifth century by a series of Madhyamaka and Sarvāstivāda abhidharma works, and in the sixth and seventh centuries by the systematic Yogācāra and abhidharma transmission of Xuanzang. This situation necessitated the creation of a method that allowed the systematic integration of all available teachings under a common roof (*panjiao*). The premises of this method were that all scriptures could be assigned to different stages in the Buddha's teaching career, that they all address different audiences according to their respective maturity, and that they make the ultimate meaning explicit to varying degrees. In terms of commentarial practice this translated into a set of rules of interpretation. Foremost among these rules was the fourfold prop (*catuḥpratisaraṇa*) of Buddhist HERMENEUTICS, which emphasized meaning (*artha*) before wording (*vacana*), complete meaning (*nīta*) before incomplete meaning (*neya*), and true insight (*prajñā*) before cognition and reasoning (*viññāna*).

Some Chinese commentators indicate that their commentaries were based on lectures, and written commentaries were often composed by disciples on the basis of lecture notes, so that one can assume that the two major contexts of commentary writing are lecturing and translating. There is evidence from DUNHUANG showing the homiletic context of scriptural interpretation, and this background does not seem to have ever been completely lost. In the context of translating from Indian or Central Asian languages into Chinese, translation and interpretation could not be separated because translators usually offered explanations of the scripture being translated, and the explanations often crept into the text itself. Thus, for example, the writings of Sengzhao on PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE were based on his cooperation with KUMĀRAJĪVA (344–409/413), or the commentaries of Kuiji were created in the context of the translation academy of Xuanzang.

### Types of commentaries

The oldest type of Chinese commentary, the *zhu* (only three of which are extant), may derive from an oral context. The *zhu* is a straightforward line-by-line exegesis that weaves glosses into the main text. These commentaries are prefaced by introductions that interpret the title and explain the setting of the discourse and the



reasons for the commentary. This simple type of commentary was superseded by the *shu* commentary, which flourished between the sixth and mid-ninth centuries. The *shu* embodies the best of the monastic and scholastic tradition, exhibiting all signs of a flourishing exegetic culture and displaying a level of sophistication probably unsuited for the nonexpert laity.

Two major features characterize *shu* commentary, namely, its method of segmenting the scripture (*kepan*) and its topical introductions. The topical introductions discuss the scope of the commentary and the issues at stake for the Buddhist commentator. The introductions comprise two major groups of topics: dogmatic (the aim of the teaching, the meaning of the title, the work's basic thought, the intended audience of the teaching, its relationship to other teachings) and historical (the transmissions of the work and the history of its promulgation, including places and conventions, history of its translation, and its miraculous power).

This type of commentarial introduction reflects not only on Chinese exegesis, but on major issues of Buddhist exegesis. Accordingly, VASUBANDHU (fourth century C.E.), a major representative of Indian exegesis, summarized in his *Vyākhyāyukti* (*Practice of Exegesis*; extant only in Tibetan) the commentarial task: state the aim of the teaching (*prayojana*), state its overall meaning (*piṇḍa*) and its detailed meaning (*padārtha*), state its internal consequence (*anusamdhika*), refute objections (*codyaparihāra*) with regard to wording (*śabda*) and meaning (*artha*), in order to show its perfection (*yukti*). Chinese commentators classify Vasubandhu's first two tasks as independent introductory topics; the other three are incorporated into the main body of exegesis.

Vasubandhu presumes that the word of the Buddha is perfect, that all scriptures are the Buddha's word, that only perfect words need and deserve commentary, and that a person cannot understand scripture unless he or she understands the purpose of a certain teaching. In particular, one must understand a scripture in terms of the audience it is meant to address, especially if the audience is not deemed to be mature enough to comprehend the scripture's deeper meanings. This latter assumption was a fundamental element in determining the liberty a commentator might take in interpreting scripture.

### Segmental analysis

Chinese scholastic commentary is also characterized by segmental analysis (*kepan*), by which the author as-

signs to scripture a chain of exegetic terms. The most obvious aspect of this approach, which gained importance after the fifth century, consists in the segmenting of scripture into (1) introduction (*xu*), which gives the setting of the discourse (location, participants, occasion); (2) main body (*zhengzong*), which consists in the discourse proper, and (3) eulogy (*liutong*), which describes the joy of the listeners and the promise of the spread of the dharma. This triple partition of sūtra may have derived from the *Fodi jing lun* (T.1530.26:291c). Although segmental analysis is related by tradition to Dao'an, the oldest extant example of its application can be found in Fayun's *Lotus Sūtra* commentary (*Fahua jing yiji*, T.1715.33:574c).

Beneath this first tripartite level, scholastic commentaries have further layers of segmentation, which consist of a sequence of exegetic terms (often several hundred) assigned to designated passages of scripture. One group of exegetic terms specifically marks off parts of scripture as phases of dialogue between the speaker and the interlocutor. Since most sūtras are in the form of dialogues between the Buddha and his disciples, it is possible that the first step a commentator might have taken was to segment the sequence of speech acts. Indeed, in some of the older commentaries of the early Tang period, the exegetic chain is built around a dialogic baseline. Knowing that an exegetic chain may include several hundred terms, the modern reader may wonder how any reader could be expected to keep track of the commentary's expository structure. In order to remedy this situation, graphic charts displaying the exegetic structure were developed. Although it may seem otherwise, most *kepan* and their accompanying charts are probably rooted in the homiletic situation, and are not a product of a culture dominated by writing. In fact, the *kepan* structures point back to the earliest stage of Buddhist exegesis, where they may have served as mnemonic aids for oral interpretation.

After the Tang period, *kepan*-style exegesis yielded to other methods, and scholastic introduction in general was replaced by newer, simpler forms. The genre of commentarial literature as a whole from the Song dynasty (960–1279) onward shows a process of simplification, a transformation that probably resulted, in part, from the advent of new PRINTING TECHNOLOGIES.

This simplification process was also part of a major transformation of the social context of exegesis. Whereas before the Song, commentators were mainly monks, from the Song onward a substantial body of commentaries were written by lay Buddhists. In addi-

tion, the CHAN SCHOOL and its rhetoric of immediate insight without reliance on words found support in the fundamental notion of the ineffability of the ultimate meaning of the dharma, which may have substantially impeded the further development of formal scriptural exegesis. Despite these factors, and though many assume that the genre of Buddhist exegesis passed its zenith centuries ago, commentaries on Buddhist teachings are still being written.

See also: **Canon; China; India; Scripture**

### **Bibliography**

- Gómez, Luis O. "Exegesis and Hermeneutics." In "Buddhist Literature," in *Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 2, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Kim Young-ho. *Tao-sheng's Commentary on the Lotus Sūtra: A Study and Translation*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1990.
- Lamotte, Étienne. "Assessment of Textual Interpretation in Buddhism." In *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.
- Maraldo, John C. "Hermeneutics and Historicity in the Study of Buddhism." *Eastern Buddhist* 19, no. 1 (1986): 17–43.

ALEXANDER L. MAYER

## COMMUNISM AND BUDDHISM

Buddhism faced one of its greatest challenges during the twentieth century when the majority of Asian nations, which were traditionally Buddhist, became involved with communism. Mongolia was the first Asian country to become communist (1924), followed by North Korea (1948), China (1949), Tibet (1951), Vietnam (1975), Cambodia (1975), and Laos (1975).

### **Initial encounter**

At the early stages of the Buddhist–communist encounter, coexistence did not seem impossible. Those who hoped for peaceful coexistence speculated on the similarities between communism and Buddhism: Neither Buddhists nor communists believe in a creator deity, and both Buddhism and communism are based on a vision of universal egalitarianism. In fact, the Buddhist community (SAṄGHA) was even compared with a communist society.

The seeming compatibility, however, was overshadowed by a number of conflicting ideologies. Communism is based on materialism, whereas in Buddhism

primacy of the material world is rejected in favor of NIRVĀṆA. To communists, environments determine a human being's consciousness, whereas Buddhism emphasizes the individual practitioner's capacity to overcome human limitations through spiritual cultivation. In addition, Buddhism holds nonviolence and compassion as the core of its teaching, whereas communism foregrounds conflict between different social classes and endorses the use of violence in support of the proletarian revolution and the communist agenda.

Despite these differences, communism and Buddhism managed a coexistence for a brief period. In its early stages, communism gained support because it was recognized as the antithesis of foreign dominance in Asian nations at the final stage of imperialist history. People in Mongolia supported communists in their efforts to free the nation from Chinese dominance. North Korean communism gained power as a buffer against Japanese colonialists and American capitalist imperialism. Chinese communism set itself up as a defense against the threat created by the invasion of the Western powers at the beginning of the twentieth century. Vietnamese communists claimed to be nationalists fighting for the independence of Vietnam from the imperialist French and capitalist Americans. Because the Buddhist tradition had existed in Asia for more than fifteen hundred years, it could be seen by communists as a confirmation of national identity, while communism was seen as a means of defending a nation against foreign invasion. Thus, a coalition between Buddhism and communism seemed possible.

### **Conflict**

Buddhists soon faced reality. Once communist groups won the wars and communist nation-states began to take shape, Buddhists were forced to realize that the basic antagonism of Marxism toward all religion could not be challenged. Religion in Marxist philosophy is "the opium of the people." Communists view religion as a fantasy and superstition that deludes people about their social condition. According to communism, religion is a tool used by the bourgeoisie to exploit the proletariat and thus delay the proletarian revolution.

Only a few years after Asian nations fell to communism, the initial tolerance toward Buddhism was replaced by extreme antagonism. Communist parties launched severe PERSECUTIONS of Buddhists and instigated an irreparable dismantling of Buddhist traditions. By the late 1930s more than fifteen thousand monks in the Mongolian People's Republic were declared enemies of the state and deported to Siberian



Chinese vice-premier Chen Yi enters Lhasa in 1956 to attend ceremonies marking the incorporation of Tibet into the Chinese state. He is accompanied by the Dalai Lama and the Panchen Lama. The Dalai Lama went into exile in 1959. © Bettmann/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

labor camps, where they soon perished from starvation and overwork. During the late 1940s communists in North Korea conducted a systematic removal of religion from society, followed by the complete eradication of all religious practice during the 1960s and 1970s. Immediately after the establishment of the communist government in China, opportunities for religious practice were reduced and ordination was restricted. At the outset of the Cultural Revolution in the mid-1960s, Buddhist practice all but disappeared from China. In Vietnam, repression of religion began with the victory of the communists in April 1975, after which communists destroyed or confiscated Buddhist pagodas and Buddhist office buildings. By 1982 there were only about twenty-three hundred monks left in Cambodia, a drastic decrease from the sixty thousand monks in Cambodia in 1975 when the nation first became communist. The situation in Tibet is unique in that the communists were not Tibetans but Chinese who claimed Tibet as their territory. Before

the Chinese invasion, there were more than six thousand monasteries in Tibet; fewer than twenty monasteries survived persecution by Chinese communists. The spiritual and political leader of Tibet, the fourteenth DALAI LAMA, was exiled to India in 1959.

Since the communist persecutions began, Buddhists have generally held fast to the Buddhist teaching against injuring others. Vietnamese monks performed SELF-IMMOLATION as a protest against communist persecution, and for half a century the Dalai Lama has appealed to the world to stop the suffering of the Tibetan people and the destruction of Tibetan Buddhism, but Buddhists have refused to resort to violence to settle the tragedy brought upon Buddhism and Buddhist followers. The Buddhist message of nonviolent protest has brought awareness to the world of the importance of the peaceful resolution of conflicts and the urgency of human rights issues. Through their faithfulness to Buddhist teachings and their belief in human values in



A Chinese police officer watches as Buddhist monks celebrate the Tibetan New Year at a Tibetan Buddhist temple in Beijing, 1999. © AFP/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

a time of suffering, Buddhist monks and nuns in persecuted nations were able to demonstrate the value of religion in human societies.

In the 1990s communist governments began to show relative tolerance toward Buddhism, and religious practices began to resurface as Buddhist monasteries were renovated and Buddhist objects were recognized as national treasures. In Tibet, despite increasing tolerance toward Buddhism, the Chinese continue to refuse to allow the Dalai Lama to be repatriated. In countries where Buddhism faces a revival it still has obstacles to overcome. After decades of persecution and restrictions on ordination, a new generation of Buddhist young people has not emerged to succeed aging monks and nuns. How the Buddhist revival will fill the gap and make up for the lost decades remains unclear.

**See also:** **Modernity and Buddhism; Nationalism and Buddhism**

### ***Bibliography***

- Benz, Ernst. *Buddhism or Communism: Which Holds the Future of Asia?*, tr. Richard Winston and Clara Winston. Garden City, NY: Doubleday, 1965.
- Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Dalai Lama XIV). *Freedom in Exile: The Autobiography of the Dalai Lama*. New York and San Francisco: Harper, 1990.
- Harris, Ian. "Buddhism in Extremis: The Case of Cambodia." In *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*, ed. Ian Harris. London and New York: Pinter, 1999.
- Ling, Trevor. *Buddha, Marx, and God: Some Aspects of Religion in the Modern World*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1979.
- Nhat Hanh, Thich. *Vietnam: Lotus in a Sea of Fire*. New York: Hill and Wang, 1967.
- Queen, Christopher S., and King, Sallie B., eds. *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Schechter, Jerrold L. *The New Face of Buddhism: Buddhism and Political Power in Southeast Asia*. New York: Coward-McCann, 1967.

Schwartz, Ronald D. "Renewal and Resistance: Tibetan Buddhism in the Modern Era." In *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*, ed. Ian Harris. London and New York: Pinter, 1999.

Sin Pöpt'a. *Pukhan Pulgyö yon'gu. A Study of Buddhism in North Korea in the Late Twentieth Century*. Seoul: Minjoksa, 2000.

Stuart-Fox, Martin. "Lao: From Buddhist Kingdom to Marxist State." In *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*, ed. Ian Harris. London and New York: Pinter, 1999.

Welch, Holmes. *Buddhism under Mao*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1972.

JIN Y. PARK

---

COMPASSION. See *Karuṇā (Compassion)*

---

CONCENTRATION. See *Meditation*

---

CONFESSION. See *Repentance and Confession*

---

## CONFUCIANISM AND BUDDHISM

Chinese religions are traditionally divided into the three teachings of Confucianism (*Rujiao*), Daoism (*Daojiao*), and Buddhism (*Fojiao*). Because Chinese cultural patterns (*wen*) were disseminated, primarily in the form of writing, throughout East Asia, these three teachings spread to Korea, Japan, and parts of Southeast Asia. Confucians (*ru*) were scholars who took as their principal task the administration and maintenance of an ordered society, which they hoped to achieve by remaining active participants in it (*zaijia*). Buddhists lived as monks and nuns in monastic communities (*saṅgha*), renouncing the world (*chujia*) behind walls and gates to free themselves and others from the bondage of the cycle of life and death (*saṃsāra*). Over the course of two millennia of close interaction in China, Confucians and Buddhists clashed on issues ranging from bowing to the emperor and one's parents to the foreign ancestry and routines of the Buddhist faith. Even so, indigenous Chinese Buddhist doctrines and practices stimulated developments within the late-imperial Confucian renaissance known in Western scholarship as neo-Confucianism.

## Historical and cultural considerations

The history of interaction between Confucianism and Buddhism in China is the history of Chinese Buddhism in the public and social sphere. Because Confucian teachings were initially transmitted to Korea and Japan principally by Buddhist monks, successful, separate, and local Confucian traditions did not develop in Japan or Korea until the neo-Confucian era; the relationship between Buddhism and Confucianism that developed in China is representative of wider trends throughout the East Asian region.

Confucianism became a religious and philosophical tradition (*ruxue*) with the establishment of the five classics (*wujing*) as the basis for official education in 136 B.C.E. The five classics include the *Shijing* (*Classic of Poetry*), the *Shujing* (*Classic of History*), the *Yijing* (*Classic of Changes*), the *Liji* (*Record of Rites*), and the *Chunqiu zuozhuan* (*Zuo Commentary to the Annals of the Spring and Autumn Period*). In addition to these books, the sayings of Confucius (Kong Qiu, 551–479 B.C.E.), called the *Lunyu* (*Analects*), and the teachings of Mencius (Mengzi, Meng Ke, ca. 371–289 B.C.E.) and Xunzi (Xun Qing, d. 215 B.C.E.), among other classical commentaries, as well as state-promoting ritual manuals and cosmological treatises, were sponsored by early Confucians (*rujia*).

## Scholars and the clergy: The question of Buddhist patronage

During the Han dynasty (206 B.C.E.–220 C.E.), Buddhism remained essentially an elusive, foreign creed, practiced primarily among the many Central Asian merchant communities that grew in Chinese trade centers. Buddhism did not pose an institutional threat to the burgeoning Confucian orthodox tradition of statecraft or to the emergent Huang-Lao proto-Daoist religious groups. During the interval between the fall of the Han and establishment of the Sui dynasty (581–618), however, piecemeal Buddhist doctrines and practices—especially teachings about *DHYĀNA* (TRANCE STATE) and *SŪNYATĀ* (EMPTINESS) as explained in the *PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ* LITERATURE—were of great interest to both non-Chinese rulers in the north and southern aristocrats. Serindian monks and their Chinese counterparts in the north and south after 310 C.E. began to trade verses of poetry with aristocrats to communicate Buddhist theories in a Chinese context. The outcome of these exchanges between Confucian-trained aristocrats, Buddhist monks, and Daoist adepts is known as “dark learning” (*xuanxue*). “Pure talk” (*qingtan*) exchanges that included discussions about

poetry and comparisons between MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist thought and the *Laozi* and *Zhuangzi*—two Chinese classical texts that later became associated with Daoism—resulted from this interaction.

Because Confucianism at this time comprised a diffuse category of aristocratic pursuits and interests (at least in part because the failings of Confucian statecraft were considered responsible for the downfall of the Han) rather than an exclusive set of doctrines and precepts, Buddhism began to surface as a formidable religious institution. During the early decades of the fifth century, full translations of Indian Buddhist monastic codes (VINAYA) were completed; the vinaya regulated the lives of monks and nuns in Chinese monasteries in ways that were more consistent with Indian societal norms. This development prompted Emperor Wudi (r. 424–451) of the Northern Wei dynasty (386–534) to initiate the first anti-Buddhist PERSECUTIONS at the request of both his Daoist and Confucian ministers Kou Qianzhi (d. 448) and Cui Hao (381–450). Both advisers wished to transform the state into a more sinified society, and saw members of the recently disciplined saṅgha as world-renouncing and discourteous to the emperor and secular worthies. Emperor Wudi of the Northern Zhou (557–581) also accepted this rationale and instigated anti-Buddhist persecutions that resulted in the widespread defrocking of monks and nuns and the confiscation of monastic property. These policies indicate that by 446 the institutional footprint of the Buddhist church was broad enough to challenge indigenous Chinese power blocks.

With the establishment of Sui hegemony over north and south China by 589, the Buddhist church became both an instrument of state promotion through its Buddhist relic (*śarīra*) distribution campaigns, and the object of censure by Confucians and Daoists critical of Buddhist economic and social influence throughout China. During the early decades of the Tang dynasty (618–907), Confucian and Daoist advisors submitted memorials to the throne condemning the Buddhist church for myriads of reasons, including claims of illegal ordinations, religious arrogance, commercial activities, and tax evasion, which led emperor Gaozu (r. 618–627) in 626 to proclaim Confucianism and Daoism the two pillars of the state. Prior to Empress Wu Zhao's (r. 690–705) foundation of the short-lived Zhou dynasty and the An Lushan rebellion (755–763), the Tang court and its Confucian administrators adopted a policy of tepid tolerance toward Buddhism and allowed it to expand. Emperor Taizong (r. 627–650) famously sponsored XUANZANG's (ca. 600–664)

translation projects after his return from India with hundreds of Sanskrit manuscripts.

Empress Wu Zhao forever changed the world of Confucians and Buddhists in China. Her rise to power conflicted with traditional Confucian ideology favoring male rulers, which prompted her to institute sweeping reforms in the Confucian official examination system. Wu Zhao employed an open examination system for officials in order to counter the power of the ingrained aristocratic families who were hostile to her. Thus, the examination system originally set up during the Han, and institutionalized during the Sui, became a vehicle to promote scholars who did not necessarily hail from aristocratic or influential families. When the Tang ruling house was reestablished under emperor Xuanzong (r. 713–755), the cultivation of belles lettres—defined as refined knowledge of the classics and the composition of poetry (*shih*)—remained the basis for receiving the highest honors in the palace examinations as “presented scholars” (*jinshi*). Confucian learning during Xuanzong's reign was memorialized in the writings of Wang Wei (701–761), Li Bai (701–762), and Du Fu (712–770)—three of China's greatest poets—while bureaucrats implemented imperial decrees designed to restrain the institutional power of Buddhist monasteries, which had been extravagantly patronized by Wu Zhao. In 725 Xuanzong traveled to sacred Mount Tai to perform the Confucian state rites of *feng* and *shan*, and during his reign he received Indian esoteric Buddhists at court and helped to establish a small esoteric Buddhist institution in China.

The most significant anti-Buddhist persecution in China occurred during the Huichang era (841–845). Emperor Wuzong took note of memorials to the throne by Confucian stalwarts like Han Yu (768–824)—who, after witnessing a procession of a finger-joint relic of the Buddha in 819, wrote the polemical *Lun fogu biao* (*Memorial on the Buddha's Bone*)—and adopted policies to suppress the influence of Buddhism throughout Chinese society. Wuzong ordered the seizure of monastic properties, expelled monks and nuns from monasteries, and prohibited youths from taking tonsure. By 845 Wuzong's policies had led to the defrocking of 260,000 nuns and monks and the destruction of more than 4,600 monasteries and 40,000 shrines. Wuzong's antforeign decrees also effectively eradicated Zoroastrianism, Nestorian Christianity, and Manichaeism from China in an attempt to address the threat that the Uighurs and Tibetans posed from the northwest and west.

Han Yu's memorial, however, epitomized the anti-foreign sentiment from a Confucian standpoint by suggesting that Buddhism was a barbarian cult, and that the Buddha himself was a barbarian—meaning someone who does not know the proper relationship between ruler and minister, father and son, or who does not wear ancient Chinese garb. Hence, if the Buddha were to arrive in China the emperor would merely give him an audience, a banquet, and award him a suit of clothes, after which he would be escorted under guard to the border. Han Yu thought that Buddhism threatened the Confucian administration of Chinese society by inciting people to publicly worship the Buddha bone.

### Confucian and Chinese patriarchs

During the Song dynasty (960–1279) Confucian scholars and Buddhist monks were both bitter enemies and close allies. The early Song court supported new Buddhist translation projects, awarded exceptional patronage to followers of the CHAN SCHOOL, and facilitated debates between Confucian officials about fiscal, educational, and social policies. After the An Lushan rebellion, patronage for Buddhism and its institutions fell to a new southern gentry class, formed through the massive population shift southward as people fled the war-torn north. Between 742 and 1200, the population of north China grew by 58 percent, while it doubled or tripled in the south. Most of the new southern gentry were not connected to the elite families that provided the pool of civil-service applicants between the Han and Tang dynasties. Therefore, the Song imperial examinations provided the basis for a much more loyal and dynamic Confucian-educated bureaucracy than ever before. On the borders of Song territory, non-Chinese states threatened the Confucian world order, and the gentry literati (*wenren*) produced by the examination system responded in two ways: the “learning of culture” and neo-Confucianism.

Adherents of the learning of culture approach, including the poet and scholar Su Shi (1036–1101), argued that Chinese (Confucian) culture endured through literature, including the cultivation of poetry and prose. To Su Shi, Buddhist doctrines did not clash with Confucian principles, and Buddhist monks, especially from the Chan lineage, could appreciate the value of cultural patterns and transmit them too. Those who supported neo-Confucianism, however, vehemently condemned the renunciant lifestyle and popular appeal of Buddhism. Initially, Zhou Dunyi

(1017–1073) and the Cheng brothers—Cheng Yi (1033–1107) and Cheng Hao (1032–1085)—and later Zhu Xi (1130–1200) advocated studying the path of ancient Confucian sages, in particular Mencius, in order to rectify one's character, become a moral leader of society, and follow the principle, rather than the manifested phenomena (*ji*), of the ancients. Zhu Xi, in particular, encouraged followers to study the “four books” in addition to the traditional five classics: the *Analects*, the teachings of Mencius, *Daoxue* (*Great Learning*), and *Zhongyong* (*Doctrine of the Mean*). Later followers sometimes included the *Xiaojing* (*Classic of Filial Piety*) instead of Mencius. Neo-Confucians contended that they transmitted the knowledge and foundation for dynastic and social legitimacy (*zhengtong*), which had been ignored since the time of Mencius. Even though neo-Confucian notions of transmission and self-cultivation were directly borrowed from the Chan school, Chan Buddhists became the principal focus of neo-Confucian indignation.

### Gentry and popular Buddhism

It was not until 1313 that the neo-Confucian approach to official education outlined in the Cheng-Zhu school was adopted as the state orthodoxy. During subsequent dynasties, tensions grew between Cheng-Zhu trained officials and Buddhist monks and nuns. Without learning of culture supporters, the Chinese saṅgha, which was now dominated by members of the Chan lineage, became more focused on obtaining patronage from local gentry than from the state. During the Ming dynasty (1368–1644), the Confucian official Wang Yangming (1472–1529) turned to Chan Buddhist practices and teachings to create a Confucian meditation practice known as quiet sitting (*jingzuo*). Monasteries received largesse from local gentry and became centers of learning and culture at a time when the state could no longer support local Confucian academies. Buddhism during the Ming and Qing (1644–1911) dynasties became an integral part of the three teachings triad of institutionalized Chinese religions. This occurred despite the increasing divide between Confucian officials and Buddhists, and Buddhist rhetoric to the contrary, which was influenced by foreign imperial houses importing Tibetan and Mongolian Buddhist traditions into the Chinese capital of Beijing.

*See also:* China; Daoism and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

## Bibliography

- Bol, Peter K. *"This Culture of Ours": Intellectual Transitions in T'ang and Sung China*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1992.
- Brook, Timothy. *Praying for Power: Buddhism and the Formation of Gentry Society in Late-Ming China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1993.
- Gernet, Jacques. *Buddhism in Chinese Society: An Economic History from the Fifth to the Tenth Centuries*, tr. Franciscus Verellen. New York: Columbia University Press, 1995.
- Zürcher, E. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959. Reprint, 1972.

GEORGE A. KEYWORDH

## CONSCIOUSNESS, THEORIES OF

The English word *consciousness* usually translates the Sanskrit word *viññāna* (Pāli, *viññāna*), although in some contexts *viññāna* comes closer to the concept of *subconsciousness*. In Buddhism in general (except in the Yogācāra tradition), *viññāna* is considered to be synonymous with two other Sanskrit words—*citta* and *manas*—that roughly correspond to the English word *mind*. Buddhism denies the existence of a substantial and everlasting soul (*ātman*), but unlike materialistic traditions, Buddhism never negates the existence of consciousness (or mind). From a Buddhist point of view, consciousness is differentiated from the soul in that the former is an ever-changing, momentary, and impermanent element. Consciousness, however, is considered to continue like a stream and is thought to be somehow transmitted from one life to the next, thus enabling karmic causality over lifetimes. This continuity of consciousness represents, in a sense, the personal identity. Consciousness also keeps the body alive and distinguishes animate beings from inanimate elements. Therefore, consciousness is one of the key factors of Buddhism.

When the word *consciousness* is used, it appears to refer mainly to the cognitive function directed to its object. Thus, this word is defined in the *Samyutta-nikāya* (*Kindred Sayings*) III:87 as: "Because it recognizes [something], it is called *consciousness*."

More specifically, six types of consciousness are enumerated in Buddhist texts: visual consciousness, auditory consciousness, olfactory consciousness, gustatory consciousness, tactile consciousness, and men-

tal consciousness. These six consciousnesses must be supported by the corresponding, unimpaired sense faculties (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind) in order to recognize their respective objects (color/form, sound, smell, taste, tactile sensation, and concepts). When these three elements (sense faculty, object, and consciousness) come together ("contact," *sparśa*), cognition comes about.

The word *consciousness*, however, often appears without specification regarding sense faculty or object, as, for example in the list of the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATE): body/matter (*rūpa*), sensation (*vedanā*), ideation (*saṃjñā*), volition (*saṃskāra*), and consciousness (*viññāna*). This type of bare "consciousness" is also found in several other important contexts.

### Rebirth and the theory of dependent origination

The notion of consciousness plays a cardinal role in the context of REBIRTH, within the large framework of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION). In those early scriptures that propound very simple forms of Buddhist causation there are two basic patterns: one centering on consciousness and psycho-physical existence (*nāmarūpa*), and the other centering on desire (*tṛṣṇā*) and appropriation (*upādhi*, *upādāna*). According to the scriptures that put forth the first pattern, as long as the consciousness has objects (*ālambana*) to be conceived and to be attached to, it stays in the realm of SAṂSĀRA, and the psycho-physical existence will enter the womb (i.e., one will be reborn in the next life without being liberated from saṃsāra). Scriptural admonitions to guard the "doors" of one's sense faculties so that one does not grasp at cognitive objects would be closely related to this idea of consciousness.

Since several expressions meaning *desire* also appear in the context of consciousness attached to its objects, these two patterns are in fact closely related. Eventually these two patterns were combined into more developed systems of dependent origination, consisting of ten or twelve items. Even the full-fledged system of the twelve causal links basically consists of two portions: the first (one through seven; ignorance through sensation) centering on consciousness, and the second (eight through twelve; desire through old age and death) centering on desire. (Later Sarvāstivāda and Yogācāra interpretations of dependent origination, though differing greatly from each other, also support this division.) Therefore, the full-fledged theory of dependent origination is in a way an elaboration of the simpler causation theories described above. In this



system also, the third item, consciousness, is usually understood as the consciousness at the moment of conception, and thus it retains its nature as described in the very early texts.

According to Yogācāra tradition, at the time of one's death, a powerful attachment to one's own existence arises and makes one's consciousness grasp the next life. Furthermore, according to both the Sarvāstivāda and Yogācāra schools, the consciousness in the INTERMEDIATE STATE sees the parents making love. If the being is about to be reborn as a boy, he is attached to the mother and hates the father. If the being is about to be reborn as a girl, she is attached to the father and hates the mother. Driven by this perverted thought, the being enters the womb, and the consciousness merges with the united semen and "blood," after which the semen-blood combination becomes a sentient embryo. Even when a being is about to be reborn in a hell, it misconceives the hell as something desirable, and driven by its attachment to the "desirable place," it hastens to the hell. Thus, in these cases also, the basic structure of consciousness attached to some object and bound to the realm of saṃsāra resembles the structure of consciousness found in the less developed stage of Buddhist causation theory.

### **The ālayavijñāna theory and the theory of the eight consciousnesses**

In the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL, consciousness that merges with the semen-blood combination is understood as the *storehouse consciousness* (ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA). According to this school, the storehouse consciousness, the deepest layer of one's subconsciousness, maintains all the residue of past KARMA (ACTION) as "seeds," which will give rise to their fruits in the future. This theory enabled the Yogācāra school to explain the problems of reincarnation and karmic retribution without resorting to the concept of substantial soul.

The storehouse consciousness is also linked to the idealistic theory propounded by Yogācāra. Buddhism had an idealistic tendency from the early stages of its history, and the state of the external world was linked to the collective karma/desire of SENTIENT BEINGS. An interesting example is found in a Buddhist cosmogonical legend, which states that as the desire of sentient beings became more gross, the surrounding world became less and less attractive. On the basis of meditative experiences, the Yogācāra tradition elaborated this tendency into a sophisticated philosophical system in which the world that people experience is actually a projection of their own consciousness. The seeds kept

in the storehouse consciousness are considered to be the source of this projected world.

Another important function of the storehouse consciousness is the physiological maintenance of the body. Since the early stages of Buddhism, consciousness was considered to be the element that distinguishes animate beings from inanimate matter. Unless consciousness appropriates (i.e., maintains) the body, the body becomes a senseless corpse. Since, however, the stream of consciousnesses on the surface level is sometimes interrupted (as in the states of dreamless sleep, fainting, or deep absorption), it was difficult to explain how the body is maintained during those unconscious periods. Because the storehouse consciousness continues to operate even when the surface consciousnesses do not arise, the introduction of the storehouse consciousness solves the problem of physiological maintenance of the body.

In addition to the storehouse consciousness, the Yogācāra school introduced another subconscious layer of mind, namely the *defiled mind* (*kliṣṭamanas*). This is a subconscious ego-consciousness that is always operative in the depths of the mind. According to the Yogācāra system, the defiled mind is always directed to the storehouse consciousness and mistakes the latter for a substantial self. By introducing the concept of defiled mind, the Yogācāra school pointed out that the subconscious ego-mind is hiding behind the scene even when one is trying to do good things on the conscious level. Thus, from this point of view, the minds of deluded, ordinary sentient beings are always defiled, regardless of the moral nature of the surface consciousnesses. Thus, in addition to the conventional six types of consciousness, the Yogācāra school introduced two subconscious layers of mind—defiled mind and storehouse consciousness—and constructed a system of eight types of consciousness. These eight consciousnesses are linked to *citta*, *manas*, and *vijñāna* in the following way: The storehouse consciousness corresponds to *citta*, the defiled mind to *manas*, and the conventional six consciousnesses to *vijñāna*.

### **Simultaneous versus successive operations of plural consciousnesses**

Since the Yogācāra model of eight consciousnesses means that two layers of unconscious mind are always operating behind the conventional six consciousnesses, it naturally presupposes the simultaneous operations of different types of consciousness. This position, however, was not uncontroversial among Buddhist traditions. Since the stream of consciousness represents a

personal identity in Buddhism, there was a strong opinion that more than one stream of consciousness could not exist simultaneously in any sentient being at a given moment. According to this position, strongly advocated by the Sarvāstivāda school, when one feels, for example, that one is seeing something and listening to something at the same time, the visual consciousness and the auditory consciousness are in fact operating in rapid succession and not simultaneously.

It is recorded that some schools belonging to the Mahāsāṃghika lineage did not share this opinion, but it seems to have been widely accepted by other schools. The SAUTRĀNTIKA (Those Who Follow Sūtras) tradition, which, according to the common view, was an offshoot of the Sarvāstivāda school, was considered to have shared the Sarvāstivāda opinion on this matter, but this has been questioned recently by some scholars.

### Sautrāntika theories of consciousness

The exact identity of the tradition called “Sautrāntika” is one of the biggest problems in current Buddhist scholarship. Sautrāntika is commonly believed to have been preceded by a tradition called Dārṣṭāntika (Those Who Resort to Similes). However, the exact relationship between these two traditions is a matter of dispute.

Generally speaking, both Dārṣṭāntika and Sautrāntika seem to have had nominalistic tendencies; thus they challenged the realistic system of Sarvāstivāda on many points. For example, in both the Sarvāstivāda and Yogācāra schools, consciousness(es) are considered to be associated with various psychological factors (*caitta*), such as lust and hatred, which are themselves distinct elements. The Dārṣṭāntika tradition, on the other hand, treats psychological factors as something not distinct from the consciousness itself. The Dārṣṭāntika and Sautrāntika traditions also tend not to admit a causal relationship between two simultaneous elements. In order for a cause to bring about a result, the cause must be at least one moment prior to the result. Thus, the cognitive object, which is considered to be a cause of consciousness, must precede the cognition of that object. In addition, what one perceives is the cognitive image of an object within one’s consciousness; one cannot directly perceive the object itself. The existence of the external object, however, is inferred from its cognitive image.

### Theory of consciousness in Buddhist epistemology

The Dārṣṭāntika and Sautrāntika traditions are considered to have exerted a strong influence over Bud-

dhist epistemologists such as DIGNĀGA (ca. 480–540) and DHARMAKĪRTI (ca. 600–660). At the same time, Dignāga also clearly inherited the idealistic system of Yogācāra, as is shown in the theory of *cognition cognizing itself* (*svasaṃvitti*) in the *Pramāṇasamuccaya* (verses 1.8cd–12).

Further, one of Dignāga’s important contributions (*Pramāṇasamuccaya* [*Collected Writings on the Means of Cognition*], verses 1.2–8ab) was the redefinition of *perception* (*pratyakṣa*) and its strict differentiation from *inference* (*anumāna*). He maintained that the cognition of the five sense consciousnesses (from visual through tactile) are always perception, and that the mental consciousness operates in both perception and inference. This distinction between the five sense consciousnesses and the mental consciousness is in line with the theories of Sarvāstivāda and Yogācāra.

### Relationship with the tathāgatagarbha theory

Another development in the theory of consciousness is the association of the storehouse consciousness with the TATHĀGATAGARBHA (embryo of tathāgata, or buddha-nature) theory. The storehouse consciousness was originally conceived as the root of the deluded mind and the defiled world, and thus is itself defiled. It was to be transformed into pure wisdom when one attains awakening, but the storehouse consciousness before the transformation was not considered to be a pure element in the original Yogācāra system. However, some lines of the Yogācāra tradition, most notably the position presented in the LAṆKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA (*Discourse on the Occasion of the [Buddha’s] Entry into Laṅka*) came to associate, and even identify, the storehouse consciousness with the tathāgatagarbha, the pure element latent in deluded, ordinary beings. Since some Indian masters who transmitted the Yogācāra doctrine to China, most notably PARAMĀRTHA (499–569), were heavily influenced by these lines of thought, the exact relationship between the storehouse consciousness and the tathāgatagarbha became an important issue in Chinese Buddhism.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Philosophy; Psychology; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

Aramaki, Noritoshi. “On the Formation of a Short Prose Pratyāsamutpāda Sūtra.” In *Buddhism and Its Relation to Other Religions: Essays in Honour of Dr. Shoen Kumoi on His Seventieth Birthday*, ed. Kumoi Shoen Hakushi Koki Kinenkai. Kyoto: Heirakuji Shoten, 1985.

Hattori, Masaaki, ed. and trans. *Dignāga, on Perception, Being the Pratyakṣapariccheda of Dignāga's Pramāṇasamuccaya from the Sanskrit Fragments and the Tibetan Versions*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1968.

Kritzler, Robert. *Rebirth and Causation in the Yogācāra Abhidharma*. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien, Universität Wien, 1999.

Schmithausen, Lambert. *Ālayavijñāna: On the Origin and the Early Development of a Central Concept of Yogācāra Philosophy*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1987.

NOBUYOSHI YAMABE

## CONSECRATION

Consecration has been broadly defined as “an act or ritual that invests objects, places, or people with religious significance, often by way of power and holiness” (Bowker, p. 234). In terms of Buddhism, consecration has been characterized as a ritual that transmutes an image or a STŪPA from a mundane object into the nature of a Buddha (Bentor 1997). Consecrated objects include not only images and stūpas, but representational paintings, books, and other objects. *Abhiṣeka*, the Sanskrit term ordinarily translated as “consecration,” expands this signification to include KINGSHIP (*rājābhiṣeka*) and designates the act or ritual specifically as one of sprinkling or anointing with sacred water. This entry deals with the ritual techniques for sanctifying objects that figure specifically in Buddhist devotional practice, in particular images and stūpa-enshrined relics, to the exclusion of sacred places such as monasteries and revered personages such as monks and kings. Furthermore, even though water lustration features prominently in consecration rituals, this essay broadens the meaning of *abhiṣeka* beyond the act of anointing to include various techniques and devices by which these objects are sacralized, making them powerful and auspicious both for what they symbolize or represent and what they become via the act of consecration. For example, a consecrated BUDDHA IMAGE simultaneously both *represents* and *is* the living presence of the Buddha, while an unconsecrated image merely symbolizes the Blessed One.

An image of the Buddha or a Buddhist saint becomes an *icon* in the sense that it partakes of the substance of that which it represents by means of a consecration ritual. By contrast, a bodily relic of the Buddha (*śarīradhātu*) by its inherent nature partakes

of the Buddha's very substance. Consequently, a stūpa becomes an icon when it enshrines a relic, and a relic may be placed inside a Buddha image for the same purpose. A bodily relic so employed serves as one of the means by which Buddha images and stūpas are consecrated. The Chinese practice of venerating the mummified body of an eminent monk can be seen as the ultimate expression of such iconization, the complete fusion of an image of a saint and relic-body.

As different signs or material artifacts of use and association—footprint, bodhi tree, alms bowl, image, and even book—came to signify the presence of the absent (“*parinirvāṇized*”) Buddha, so various ritual techniques evolved for instilling them with the presence and power of the Buddha. Not surprisingly, the primary signs were associated with the most important venues of devotional practice, namely, stūpa enshrined relics and Buddha images. Throughout Buddhist Asia from India to Japan, stūpas, pagodas, and image halls became major features of that part of the monastic complex referred to as the “Buddha's dwelling place” (*buddhavāsa*), complementing the “monk's dwelling place” (*saṅghāvāsa*). As these terms suggest, the monastery served and continues to serve not only as a place where monks pursue the paths of meditation and study but participate in devotional practices as ritual functionaries. One of the ritual acts performed by monks that is central to venerating the Buddha (*buddhapūja*) includes consecrating icons.

### Making the Buddha present

Not surprisingly, all consecration rituals throughout Asia are not the same. They reflect different Buddhist traditions as well as the particular cultures in which they flourished. Although no one ritual fits all cases, there are commonalities. Preeminently, Buddha images and relics as well as other material artifacts associated with the Buddha make the Buddha available to a particular time and place. In doing so they serve as the Buddha's functional equivalent or double, especially in ritual contexts.

The *Kosalabimbavaṇṇanā* (*The Laudatory Account of the Kosala Image*), a thirteenth-century Pāli Sinhalese text, describes how the image functions as the Buddha's double. Like the better known Mahāyāna version of the story associated with King Udayāna, the Buddha's absence becomes the occasion for the construction of an image of the Blessed One. In the Pāli rendition, King Pasenadi of Kosala pays the Buddha a visit only to find him away on a journey. When the Buddha returns the following day, the king laments

how disappointed he was not to see the Buddha and requests that an image in the likeness of the tathāgata be made for the benefit of the whole world. The Blessed One acquiesces, adding that whoever builds an image of whatever size and material accrues an immeasurable, incalculable benefit. Returning to his residence, King Pasenadi (Sanskrit, Prasenajit) orders a Buddha image made of sandalwood displaying the thirty-two marks of a Great Person (Sanskrit, *mahāpuruṣa*; Pāli, *mahāpurisa*) inlaid with gold and clothed in yellow robes. After its completion he invites the Buddha to see the image housed in a bejeweled shrine. As the Buddha enters the shrine, the statue behaves as if it were animated, rising to greet the Fully Enlightened One who states that after his *parinirvāṇa* the image will perpetuate his teaching (dharma) for five thousand years. The story stipulates that presencing the Buddha through material relics, in this case an image, provides the locus for the expression of religious sentiment and the opportunity to make merit through ritual offerings. Furthermore, in materializing the Buddha and the dharma—a key feature of consecration ritual—such representations ensure the perpetuation of the religion (*sāsana*).

### Consecration as transformation

Phenomenologically, consecration rituals transform images, caitya, and other material signs of the Buddha into Buddha surrogates. As recounted in the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA, at the Buddha's cremation his body is transmuted into corporeal relics, not by water as in an abhiṣeka rite, but via fire. The *parinirvāṇed* body assumes a new, dispersed form in bodily relics, objectified artifacts of the Buddha's charisma. Regarding Buddha images, the *Kosalabimbavaṇṇanā* and other textual accounts ascribe qualities of the living Buddha to the icon, including animation. "Opening the eyes of the Buddha," the pan-Buddhist term for image consecration rituals, conveys a similar meaning. A mere object, in this case an anthropomorphic representation rather than a crystalline relic, becomes a buddha. In East Asia eye-opening rituals were also believed to enliven portraits of charismatic monks as well as empower ancestral tablets (Japanese, *ihai*) enshrined in monasteries and home altars.

In Southeast Asia such transformation involves a mimetic ritual process informed, as Bernard Faure suggests in his study of the flesh icons of mummified Chan monks, by the "logic of metonymy and synecdoche in which the shadow or trace becomes as real as the body" (p. 170). The northern Thai consecration ritual begins

at sunset and concludes at sunrise, mirroring the three watches of the night of the bodhisattva's achievement of buddhahood. During the course of the evening, monks recite the story of the future Buddha's renunciation of worldly goals, his years as a wandering ascetic, MĀRA's temptations, and his final awakening. In Cambodia and northern Thailand reenactments of episodes from the Buddha's biography, in particular Sujātā's offering of milk and honey rice gruel, highlight the performative nature of the ritual. At sunrise monks chant the auspicious verses attributed to the Buddha upon his awakening: "Through many a birth I wandered in saṃsāra, seeing, but not finding the builder of the house. Sorrowful is birth again and again. O house-builder! You are seen. You shall build no house again. All your rafters are broken; your ridge-pole is shattered. My mind has attained the unconditioned; the end of craving is achieved."

The physical space in which the consecration ritual is conducted also mimetically replicates the Buddha's biography. Throughout the ceremony the main image being consecrated is placed on a bed of grass under a bodhi tree sapling in a monastery's image hall. The area is designated as the *bodhimaṇḍa*, the throne of enlightenment that miraculously grew from a grass mat, the *dāna* gift provided the future Buddha by Sottiya, the forester. An auspicious cord extends from the previously consecrated temple image around the *bodhimaṇḍa*, thereby forging a conduit to the first Buddha image authenticated by the Buddha himself. Other ritual paraphernalia symbolize specific episodes in the story of the bodhisattva's enlightenment quest, as well as the tathāgata Buddhas of the current age.

During the ceremony the heads of the images placed within the *bodhimaṇḍa* are shrouded by a white cloth and their eyes covered with beeswax. They have been sequestered, much as the future Buddha left his palace and sought the solitude of the forest. At sunrise, monks chant the *gāthā* (verse) of awakening and the head and eye coverings of the images are removed, symbolizing that with the opening of the eyes, the images have been infused with the qualities of buddhahood: "The Buddha filled with boundless compassion practiced the thirty perfections for many eons, finally reaching enlightenment. I pay homage to that Buddha. May all these qualities be invested in this image. May the Buddha's boundless omniscience be invested in this image until the *sāsana* ceases to exist." In different Buddhist cultures the act of opening the eyes of the image takes different forms. Eyes may be symbolically or literally

painted on the image or the eye lightly scratched with a needle; regardless of its form, however, it is by opening an image's eyes that it becomes a living cult icon.

The ritual process that transforms mere image to iconic Buddha substitute imprints the Buddha's story on the image. Narratives play an equally important role in the transformation of other material artifacts into representations of the Buddha and Buddhist saints. Stūpa enshrined relics dot the map of the Buddha's itinerary throughout greater Asia: The generous distribution of HAIR relics, predictions of the future discovery of bone relics by righteous monarchs, and footprints embedded in stone and earth witness to the continuing presence of the Buddha. Stories associated with these events figure prominently not only in the creation of sacred sites but in annual reconsecration and renewal ceremonies.

That a corporeal relic may be inserted into a Buddha image and images may be enshrined in a stūpa together with relics points to the belief that both serve as living Buddha icons. As further evidence of this belief, image consecration rituals in northern Thailand may include the insertion of a set of internal organs made from silver into the image. When a cavity in the back of the sandalwood image brought to Japan by the Japanese Buddhist pilgrim Chōnen (938–1016) and enshrined at Seiryōji in Kyoto was opened up in 1954, it was found to contain a similar set of internal organs made from silk.

Buddhahood requires extraordinary mental and physical attainments. Consequently, instilling these miraculous qualities into the image figures prominently in consecration rituals. In northern Thailand, the Buddha image consecration *sutta* infusing mental and spiritual perfections (*pārami*) into the image is recited, monks reputed to have achieved higher states of mental awareness and power are said to “pour” (*phae*) them into the consecrated images while seated in meditation around the *bodhimaṇḍa*. In the Tibetan tradition *sādhana* meditation techniques are at the core of the consecration (*rab gnas*) of images and stūpas. Elaborate visualization procedures involve several stages: dissolving the object to be consecrated into emptiness; visualizing the chosen Buddha (*yi dam*) out of emptiness; inviting this Buddha and its visualized form into the image; transforming them into nonduality; and finally transforming nondual emptiness into the original appearance of the image. (Bentor 1997).

### Consecration as dharmicization

On the night of his enlightenment, the Buddha perceived the cause of suffering and the path to its cessation. This awakening resulted in penetrating the illusions that obscure understanding the nature of things (dharma) as ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE) and causally co-arising and interdependent (PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA). In short, the terms *buddha* and *dharma* are mutually inclusive; buddhahood necessitates dharmicization. Consequently, stūpas, images, and other signs of the Buddha, such as the bodhi tree, represent the dharma as well, recalling the statement attributed to the Buddha, “Whoever sees me, sees the dharma.” Consecration rituals, therefore, not only Buddhacize objects, they also dharmicize them.

Dharmicization as a function of consecration rituals takes several different forms. Copies of sūtras and other texts may be placed in larger than life-size images or stūpas during consecration rituals. This practice contributed to the “cult of the book” as a material relic of the Buddha, especially in the Mahāyāna tradition. Evidence for the practice of magically infusing the formula of dependent origination (“Those dharmas which arise from a cause/the tathāgata has declared their cause/and that which is their cessation/thus the great renunciant has taught”) into images and stūpas exists from the second century C.E. and continues to the present as a pan-Buddhist practice. In the Tibetan tradition, ATISHA (982–1054) refers to the mantric use of this formula in consecration rituals, and it is currently employed in conjunction with mirror divination in Chinese and Korean Buddha image consecrations. Other Buddhist traditions employ signature sūtras as a central feature of image consecration. In the Japanese NICHIREN SCHOOL it is believed that placing the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) before an image during its consecration guarantees that it will become a Buddha of pure and perfect teaching (Stone).

In Southeast Asia elaborate techniques developed for dharmicizing Buddha images and stūpas. In northern Thailand the construction of a Buddha image or a stūpa included attaching dharmic *yantras* (diagrams) to it, and in Cambodia implanting dharmic marks (Sanskrit, *lakṣaṇa*; Pāli, *lakkhaṇa*) plays a central role in the consecration of a Buddha image. The officiating monk touches various parts of the body of the image while chanting Pāli phrases (DHĀRAṆĪ), thereby creating a dharmic body of doctrinal concepts corresponding to the bodily parts of the image. This transmutation

enables a representation made from wood or bronze, already rendered living by the opening of the eyes, to become a cult icon worthy of veneration (Bizot).

### Consecration as empowerment

The cult of relics, images, portraits, mummified remains, and other representations of the Buddha and Buddhist saints reflect a thaumaturgical belief that the miraculous powers associated with extraordinary spiritual attainment can be objectified in material form. Thus, consecration rituals incarnate the Buddha and ARHATS not primarily as idealized spiritual mentors and personifications of the dharma but as wonder-workers, protectors, and grantors of boons. Consecration rituals, therefore, infuse into these icons a variety of powers associated especially with the mental and physical attributes acquired through ascetic practices, especially meditation.

Since from the outset the Buddha was venerated not only as a teacher but as a miracle worker, representations of the Blessed One can be seen in similar terms. The cult of the power of relics and images should not be understood as a later, degenerate form of Buddhist piety but as one of the ingredients of Buddhist belief and practice from its earliest days. Consecration rituals, in this regard, can be seen as a practical means by which this aspect of Buddhism spread and flourished throughout Buddhist Asia.

In Cambodia the consecration ritual infuses not only the Buddha's supernal qualities associated with his awakening into the image but various protective powers, including the power of gods and spirits, the souls of ancestors, and tutelary deities. During the 1989 consecration of the repaired stūpa atop Doi Suthep mountain overlooking the northern Thai city of Chiang Mai, the powers of the protective spirits of the mountain, the spirits of wonder-working ascetics who dwell on the mountain, and Chiang Mai's renowned kings were invoked, as well as the power of the Buddha relics enshrined there.

Annual rituals reconsecrating images and relic-enshrined stūpas are often accompanied by stories bearing witness to their miraculous powers. Relics radiating brilliant rays appear before awed onlookers, or valued images reputed to have previously disappeared or been stolen may suddenly reappear in order to be lustrated and otherwise venerated by the faithful. Moreover, consecration rituals are not only occasions to enliven and empower new or repaired

images. Devotees may bring previously consecrated home shrine images, AMULETS AND TALISMANS, and other representations of the Buddha and Buddhist saints to be reconsecrated time and again, thereby increasing their perceived protective power and their real economic value.

Buddhist consecration rituals embody the complexity of the religion's rich cultural tapestry. In particular, they open a window to a more nuanced understanding of Buddhist devotionism where images, relics, and other material representations of the Buddha and Buddhist saints occupy a central place.

*See also:* **Initiation; Relics and Relics Cults; Reliquary; Space, Sacred**

### Bibliography

- Bentor, Yael. *Consecration of Images and Stūpas in Indo-Tibetan Tantric Buddhism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1996.
- Bentor, Yael. "The Horseback Consecration Ritual." In *Religions of Tibet in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1997.
- Bizot, François. "La consecration des statues et le culte des morts." In *Recherches nouvelles sur le Cambodge*, ed. François Bizot. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1994.
- Bowker, John, ed. *Oxford Dictionary of World Religions*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Rhetoric of Immediacy: A Cultural Critique of Chan/Zen Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Gombrich, Richard. "The Consecration of a Buddha Image." *Journal of Asian Studies* 26, no. 1 (1966): 23–36.
- Ruelius, Hans. "Netrapratisthapana-eine Singhalesische Zeremonie zur Weihe von Kultbildern." In *Buddhism in Ceylon and Studies in Religious Syncretism in Buddhist Countries*, ed. Heinz Bechert. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck und Ruprecht, 1978.
- Stone, Jacqueline. "Opening the Eyes of Wooden and Painted Images." In *The Writings of Nichiren Daishonin*. Tokyo: Sōka Gakkai, 1999.
- Swearer, Donald K. "Hypostasizing the Buddha: Buddha Image Consecration in Northern Thailand." *History of Religions* 34, no. 3 (1995): 263–280.
- Swearer, Donald K. *Becoming the Buddha*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2004.
- Thompson, Laurence G. "Consecration Magic in Chinese Religion." *Journal of Chinese Religions* 19 (1991): 1–12.

DONALD K. SWEARER

## CONVERSION

In most times and places allegiance to Buddhism has not been an exclusive affair. Buddhist devotees have felt comfortable worshipping various local deities, as well as earning merit by making offerings to non-Buddhist mendicants (in India), embracing Confucian as well as Buddhist values (in China), or visiting Shintō shrines as well as Buddhist temples (in Japan). The inscriptions of the Indian king AŚOKA (ca. mid-third century B.C.E.)—the earliest surviving written Buddhist records—portray him both as affirming his own Buddhist identity and as supporting other religious groups. The English word *conversion*, usually understood to mean the complete abandonment of one religion and exclusive adherence to another, has little relevance in such a setting.

The closest analogue to the Western notion of individual conversion is the act of becoming a lay brother (*upāsaka*) or lay sister (*upāsikā*), portrayed in early scriptures as a formal act of affiliation involving “taking refuge” in the three jewels (buddha, dharma, and SAṄGHA) and vowing to uphold the five lay PRECEPTS. Similar rituals are still performed today in many Buddhist societies, ranging from Sri Lanka to Taiwan. An alternative analogue might be found in the experience of becoming a stream-enterer (Pāli, *sotāpanna*), at which point one is said to attain a firsthand conviction of the truth of the Buddha’s teachings. This generally takes place, however, only after a prolonged period of practice, demonstrating once again the lack of fit between the idea of conversion and Buddhist maps of the PATH.

Most commonly, adherence to Buddhism has not been the result of individual acts of faith but of a choice made by a ruler (e.g., in Sri Lanka in the third century B.C.E. or in Japan and Tibet in the seventh century C.E.) in the course of political consolidation and imposed upon the population at large. Such top-down or societal conversion (Horton) has been the standard mode of transmission of Buddhism outside India, with the notable exceptions of China and the West. Such exclusive state sponsorship has often been temporary, with a return to the norm of accommodating other local religious practices once a new political equilibrium has been achieved.

Examples of conversion in the exclusivist sense are easiest to find in Buddhist societies that have been significantly affected by a Western colonial or missionary presence, such as Sri Lanka (where the public conver-

sion to Buddhism by Colonel Henry Steel Olcott under British colonial rule in the late nineteenth century has left a lasting legacy) or South Korea (where the growth of Protestant Christianity in recent decades has led to a strong polarization between Buddhists and Christians). Some Buddhist-based “new religions” in Japan, above all the SŌKA GAKKAI, also require their followers to renounce all other religious beliefs and practices.

Ironically, the Western notion of conversion appears to be falling out of favor among new adherents of Buddhism in the West, who often describe themselves as “taking up the practice of Buddhism” rather than “converting to the Buddhist religion.” This reluctance to use the term *conversion* reflects not only the traditional absence of a sharp boundary between Buddhist and non-Buddhist practices in Asian societies, but also the profound changes currently taking place in the very notion of what constitutes “religion” in the modern West.

*See also:* Colonialism and Buddhism; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Ordination

### Bibliography

- Adikaram, E. W. *Early History of Buddhism in Ceylon*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: M. D. Gunasena, 1953.
- Beltz, Johannes. *Mahar, Bouddhiste, et Dalit: conversion religieuse et emancipation sociopolitique dans l'Inde des castes*. Bern, Switzerland: Lang, 2001.
- Gregory, Peter N. “Describing the Elephant: Buddhism in America.” *Religion in American Culture* 11, no. 2 (2001): 233–263.
- Hammond, Phillip E., and Machacek, David W. *Sōka Gakkai in America: Accommodation and Conversion*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Horton, Robin. “African Conversion.” *Africa* 41, no. 2 (1971): 85–108.
- Kapstein, Matthew. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Nattier, Jan. “Who Is a Buddhist? Charting the Landscape of Buddhist America.” In *The Faces of Buddhism in America*, ed. Charles S. Prebish and Kenneth K. Tanaka. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Prothero, Stephen. *The White Buddhist: The Asian Odyssey of Henry Steel Olcott*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1996.
- Thapar, Romila. *Asoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*, 2nd edition. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1973.

Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

JAN NATTIER

## COSMOLOGY

Although the earliest Buddhist texts of the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS—the *nikāyas* or *āgamas* (fourth to third century B.C.E.)—do not set out a systematic cosmology, many of the ideas and details of the developed cosmology of the later traditions are, in fact, present in these texts. Some of these have been borrowed and adapted from the common pool of early Indian cosmological notions indicated in, for example, the Vedic texts (1500 to 500 B.C.E.). The early ideas and details are elaborated in the later texts of systematic Buddhist thought, the ABHIDHARMA (third to second century B.C.E.), and presented as a coherent and consistent whole, with some variation, in the exegetical *abhidharma* commentaries and manuals that date from the early centuries C.E. Three principal *abhidharma* traditions are known to contemporary Buddhism and scholarship, those of the THERAVĀDA, the Sarvāstivāda, and the Yogācāra. The Theravāda or “southern” tradition has shaped the outlook of Buddhism in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia. The Sarvāstivāda or “northern” tradition fed into the *abhidharma* system of the MAHĀYĀNA school of thought known as “yoga practice” (*yogācāra*) or “ideas only” (*viññaptimātra*), and their perspective on many points has passed into the traditions of East Asian and Tibetan Buddhism. The elaborate cosmology presented by these *abhidharma* systems is substantially the same, differing only on points of detail. This traditional cosmology remains of relevance to the worldview of ordinary Buddhists in traditional Buddhist societies.

Along with many of the details, the four basic principles of the developed *abhidharma* Buddhist cosmology are assumed by the *nikāya* and *āgama* texts:

1. The universe has no specific creator; the sufficient cause for its existence is to be found in the Buddhist cycle of causal conditioning known as PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION).
2. There is no definite limit to the universe, either spatially or temporally.
3. The universe comprises various realms of existence that constitute a hierarchy.

4. All beings are continually reborn in the various realms in accordance with their past KARMA (ACTION); the only escape from this endless round of REBIRTH, known as SAṂSĀRA, is the knowledge that constitutes the attainment of NIRVĀṆA.

### Levels of existence

The *abhidharma* systems agree that saṃsāra embraces thirty-one principal levels of existence, although they record slight variations in the lists of these levels. Any being may be born into any one of these levels. In fact, during the course of their wandering through saṃsāra it is perhaps likely that all beings have at some time or another been born in most of these levels of existence. The most basic division of the thirty-one levels is three-fold: the realm of sensuality (*kāmadhātu*, *-loka*) at the bottom of the hierarchy; the realm of pure form or subtle materiality (*rūpadhātu*, *-loka*) in the middle; and the formless realm (*arūpadhātu*, *-loka*) at the top.

The realm of sensuality is inhabited by beings endowed with the five physical senses and with minds that are in one way or another generally occupied with the objects of the senses. The sensual realm is further divided into unhappy destinies and happy destinies. Unhappy destinies comprise various unpleasant forms of existence consisting of a number of HELLS, hungry ghosts (*preta*), animals, and jealous gods (*asura*, which are, according to some, a separate level, but to others, a class of being subsumed under the category of either hungry ghosts or gods). Rebirth in these realms is as a result of unwholesome (*akuśala*) actions of body, speech, and thought (e.g., killing, taking what is not given, sexual misconduct, idle chatter, covetousness, ill will, wrong view, and untrue, harsh, or divisive speech). The happy destinies of the sensual realm comprise various increasingly pleasant forms of existence consisting of human existence and existence as a divinity or god (*deva*) in one of the six heavens of the sense world. Rebirth in these realms is a result of wholesome (*kuśala*) actions of body, speech, and thought, which are opposed to unwholesome kinds of action.

Above the relatively gross world of the senses is the subtler world of “pure form.” This consists of further heavenly realms (reckoned as sixteen, seventeen, or eighteen in number) occupied by higher gods called *brahmās*, who have consciousness but only two senses—sight and hearing. Beings are reborn in these realms as a result of mastering increasingly subtle meditative states known as the four DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE). These are attained by stilling the mind until it becomes



completely concentrated and absorbed in an object of meditation, temporarily recovering its natural brightness and purity. The five highest realms of the form world are known as the *pure abodes*, and these are occupied by divinities who are all either *nonreturners* (spiritually advanced beings of great wisdom who are in their last birth and who will reach enlightenment before they die) or beings who have already gained enlightenment. All the beings of the pure abodes are thus in their last life before their final liberation from the round of rebirth through the attainment of NIRVĀṆA.

The subtlest and most refined levels of the universe are the four that comprise “the formless realm.” At this level of the universe the body with its senses is completely absent, and existence is characterized by pure and rarified forms of consciousness, once again corresponding to higher meditative attainments.

### World systems

The lower levels of the universe, that is, the realms of sensuality, arrange themselves into various distinct world discs (*cakravāḍa*). At the center of a *cakravāḍa* is the great world mountain, Sumeru or Meru. This is surrounded by seven concentric rings of mountains and seas. Beyond these mountains and seas, in the four cardinal directions, are four great continents lying in the great ocean. The southern continent, Jambudvīpa (the continent of the rose-apple tree), is inhabited by ordinary human beings; the southern part, below the towering range of mountains called the abode of snows (*himālaya*), is effectively India, the known world and the land where buddhas arise. At the outer rim of this world disc is a ring of iron mountains holding in the ocean. In the spaces between world discs and below are various hells; in some sources these are given as eight hot hells and eight cold hells. An early text describes how in the hell of Hot Embers, for example, beings are made to climb up and down trees bristling with long, red hot thorns, never dying until at last their bad karma is exhausted (*Majjhimanikāya* iii, 185).

On the slopes of Mount Sumeru itself and rising above its peak are the six HEAVENS inhabited by the gods of the sense world. The lowest of these is that of the Gods of the Four Kings of Heaven, who guard the four directions. On the peak of Mount Sumeru is the heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods, which is ruled by its king, INDRA or Śakra (Pāli, Sakka), while in the shadow of Mount Sumeru dwell the jealous gods called asuras, who were expelled from the heaven of the Thirty-Three by Indra. Above the peak is the Heaven of the Contented Gods or Tuṣita, where buddhas-to-be, like the

future MAITREYA, are reborn and await the time to take birth. The highest of the six heavens of the sense world is that of the Gods who have Power over the Creations of Others, and it is in a remote part of this heaven that MĀRA, the Evil One, lives, wielding his considerable resources in order to prevent the sensual world from losing its hold on its beings. The six heavens of the sense world are inhabited by gods and goddesses who, like human beings, reproduce through sexual union, though some say that in the higher heavens this union takes the form of an embrace, the holding of hands, a smile, or a mere look. The young gods and goddesses are not born from the womb, but arise instantly in the form of a five-year-old child in the lap of the gods (*Abhidharmakośa* iii, 69–70).

Above these sense-world heavens is the Brahmā World, a world of subtle and refined mind and body. Strictly, *brahmās* are neither male nor female, although it seems that in appearance they resemble men. The fourteenth-century Thai Buddhist cosmology, the *Three Worlds According to King Ruang*, describes how their faces are smooth and very beautiful, a thousand times brighter than the moon and sun, and with only one hand they can illuminate ten thousand world systems (Reynolds and Reynolds, p. 251). A Great Brahmā of even the lower *brahmā* heavens may rule over a thousand world systems, while *brahmās* of the higher levels are said to rule over a hundred thousand. Yet it would be wrong to conclude that there is any one or final overarching Great Brahmā—God the Creator. It may be that beings come to take a particular Great Brahmā as creator of the world, and a Great Brahmā may himself even form the idea that he is creator, but this is just the result of delusion on the part of both parties. In fact the universe recedes upwards with one class of Great Brahmā being surpassed by a further, higher class of Great Brahmā. Thus the world comprises “its gods, its Māra and Brahmā, this generation with its ascetics and brahmins, with its princes and peoples” (*Dīghanikāya* i, 62).

The overall number of world systems that constitute the universe in its entirety cannot be specified. The *nikāya/āgama* texts sometimes talk in terms of the thousandfold world system, the twice-thousandfold world system, and the thrice-thousandfold world system or *trichilicosm*. According to north Indian traditions, the last of these embraces a total of one billion world systems, while the southern traditions say a trillion. But even such a vast number cannot define the full extent of the universe; there is no spatial limit to the extent of world systems.

### Cycles of time

The temporal limits of the universe are equally elusive. World systems as a whole are not static; they themselves go through vast cycles of expansion and contraction across vast eons of time. World systems contract in great clusters of a billion at a time. Most frequently this contraction is brought about by the destructive force of fire, but periodically it is brought about by water and wind. This fire starts in the lower realms of the sense-sphere and, having burnt up these, it invades the form realms; but having burnt up the realms corresponding to the first dhyāna, it stops. The realms corresponding to the second, third, and fourth dhyānas and the four formless realms are thus spared destruction. But when the destruction is wreaked by water, the three realms corresponding to the second dhyāna are included in the general destruction. The destruction by wind invades and destroys even the realms corresponding to the third dhyāna. Only the subtle realms corresponding to the fourth dhyāna and the four formless meditations are never subject to this universal destruction.

The length of time it takes for the universe to complete one full cycle of expansion and contraction is known as a *mahākalpa* (great eon). A *mahākalpa* is made up of four intermediate eons consisting of the period of contraction, the period when the world remains contracted, the period of expansion, and the period when the world remains expanded. The length of a great eon is not specified in human years but only by reference to similes:

Suppose there was a great mountain of rock, seven miles across and seven miles high, a solid mass without any cracks. At the end of every hundred years a man might brush it just once with a fine Benares cloth. That great mountain of rock would decay and come to an end sooner than even the eon. So long is an eon. And of eons of this length not just one has passed, not just a hundred, not just a thousand, not just a hundred thousand. (*Samyuttanikāya* ii, 181–182)

The Buddha is said to have declared that *saṃsāra*'s—that is, our—beginning was inconceivable and that its starting point could not be indicated; the mother's milk drunk by each of us in the course of our long journey through *saṃsāra* is greater by far than the water in the four great oceans (*Samyuttanikāya* ii, 180–181).

Within this shifting and unstable world of time and space that is *saṃsāra*, beings try to make themselves at ease. The life spans of beings vary. In general, beings who inhabit the lower realms of existence live shorter, more



A Tibetan *thang ka* (scroll painting) depicting the Wheel of Life. © Earl and Nazima Kowall/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

precarious, lives, while the gods live longer; at the highest realms, gods live vast expanses of time—up to eighty-four thousand eons. Yet the happiness that beings find or achieve cannot be true happiness, not permanently lasting, but merely a relatively longer or shorter temporary respite. Beings in the lowest hell realms experience virtually continuous pain and suffering until the results of the actions that brought them there are exhausted. In contrast, beings in the higher *brahmā* worlds experience an existence entirely free of all overt suffering; but while their lives may endure for inconceivable lengths of time in human terms, they must eventually come to an end once again when the results of the actions that brought them there are exhausted.

### Cosmology and psychology

An important principle of the Buddhist cosmological vision lies in the equivalence of cosmology and PSYCHOLOGY, the way in which the various realms of existence relate rather closely to certain commonly

(and not so commonly) experienced states of mind. Buddhist cosmology is at once a map of different realms of existence and a description of all possible experiences. This can be appreciated by considering more fully the Buddhist understanding of the nature of karma. Essentially the world we live in is our own creation: We have created it by our own karma, by our deeds, words, and thoughts motivated either by greed, hatred, and delusion or by nonattachment, friendliness, and wisdom. The cosmos is thus a reflection of our actions, which are in turn the products of our hearts and minds. For in this fathom-long body with its mind and consciousness, said the Buddha, lies the world, its arising, its ceasing, and the way leading to its ceasing (*Samyuttanikāya* i, 62).

Essentially the states of mind that give rise to unwholesome actions—strong greed, hatred, and delusion—lead to rebirth in the unhappy destinies or realms of misfortune. A life dominated by the mean spiritedness of greed leads to rebirth as a hungry ghost, a class of being tormented by unsatisfied hunger; a life dominated by the mental hell of hatred and anger leads to rebirth in one of the hell realms where one suffers terrible pain; while a life dominated by willful ignorance of the consequences of one’s behavior leads to rebirth as an animal, a brute existence ruled by the need to eat and reproduce. On the other hand, the generous, friendly, and wise impulses that give rise to wholesome actions lead to rebirth in the happy realms as a human being or in one of the six realms of the gods immediately above the human realm, where beings enjoy increasingly happy and carefree lives. By developing states of deep peace and contentment through the practice of calm meditation, and by developing profound wisdom through insight meditation, one is reborn as a *brahmā* in a realm of pure form or formlessness, which is a reflection of those meditations.

In short, if one lives like an animal, one is liable to reborn as an animal; if one lives like a human being, one will be reborn as a human being; if one lives like a god, one will be reborn as a god. But just as in day-to-day experience one fails to find any physical or mental condition that is reliable and unchangeable, that can give permanent satisfaction and happiness, so, even if one is reborn in the condition of a *brahmā* living eighty-four thousand eons, the calm and peaceful condition of one’s existence is not ultimately lasting or secure. Just as ordinary happiness is in this sense DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) or unsatisfactory, so too are the lives of the *brahmās*, even though they experience no physical or mental pain.

### Nirvāṇa and buddhas

The only escape from this endless round is the direct understanding of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS—suffering, its cause, its cessation, and the PATH leading to its cessation—and the attainment of nirvāṇa. Significantly nirvāṇa is not included in the thirty-one realms of rebirth, since these define the conditioned world of space and time, and nirvāṇa is precisely not a place where one can be reborn and where one can exist for a period of time. Nirvāṇa is the unconditioned, the deathless, beyond space and time, known directly at the moment of enlightenment. Some beings may find the path to nirvāṇa by their own efforts and become a PRATYĒKABUDDHA (solitary buddha), but most must await the appearance in the world of a *samyaksambuddha* (perfectly and fully awakened one), like Gautama, the buddha of the current age. Such buddhas tread the ancient path of all buddhas, and can show others the way to release. Yet they appear in the world only rarely, though views on precisely how rarely vary. According to the Theravāda, some eons like our present are auspicious (*bhadda*) with a total of five buddhas, of whom Gautama (Pāli, Gotama) was the fourth and Maitreya (Pāli, Metteyya) will be the fifth. Other eons may have no buddhas at all.

A buddha’s sphere of influence is known as his *buddha-field* (*buddhakṣetra*) and is not confined to the particular world system into which he is born. The Theravāda sources (e.g., *Visuddhimagga* xiii, 31) distinguish his (1) *field of birth*, which extends to the ten thousand world systems that tremble when he is conceived, born, gains enlightenment, teaches, and attains final nirvāṇa; (2) *field of authority*, which extends to the hundred billion world systems throughout which the utterance of the great protective discourses (*mahāparitta*) is efficacious; and (3) *field of experience*, which potentially extends to infinite numbers of world systems.

### Mahāyāna perspectives

The basic cosmology outlined above with some variation is assumed by the Mahāyāna sūtras, as well as the authors of the systematic treatises of Indian Mahāyāna Buddhist thought. However, the Mahāyāna cosmological vision increasingly expands its attention beyond “our” world system and our buddha to include other buddhas and their spheres of influence. Early Buddhist writings and the non-Mahāyāna schools such as the Theravāda and Sarvāstivāda emphasize the impossibility of the appearance in the world of two buddhas at the same time (for how could there be two “bests”?).

But this raises the question of what precisely constitutes the world. Mahāyāna writings tend to respond by suggesting that while it is true that there can be only one buddha at a time in a single trichilocosm (set of a billion world systems), since there are innumerable trichilocosms, there can in fact be innumerable buddhas at the same time in these different trichilocosms. Thus Mahāyāna writings tend to focus on the universe as made up of innumerable clusters of world systems, and each of these sets of world systems has its own series of buddhas. Since these sets of world systems are not absolutely closed off from each other, we even now in our part of the universe—called the Saha world—have access to the living buddhas of other parts. A cluster of vast numbers of world systems constitutes in effect the buddha-field or potential sphere of influence of a buddha. It is this buddha-field that a bodhisattva seeks to purify through his wisdom and compassion on the long road to buddhahood. The notion of a purified buddha-field is related in the development of Mahāyāna thought to the notion of a buddha's pure land, such as Sukhāvātī—the Realm of Bliss of the buddha AMITĀBHA/Amitāyus, where the conditions for attaining enlightenment are particularly propitious if one can but be reborn there. But the question persists whether such PURE LANDS are to be found in some far flung part of the cosmos or are here now, if we had but the heart to know it.

The Mahāyāna notion of buddha-fields with their buddhas and bodhisattvas finds expression in the HUAYAN JING in a wondrous cosmic vision of a universe constituted by innumerable world systems, each with its buddha, floating in the countless oceans of a cosmic lotus, of which again the numbers are countless. This vision ends in the conception of a multiverse of worlds within worlds where the buddha, or buddhas, are immanent.

*See also:* Divinities; Realms of Existence

### **Bibliography**

- Boyd, James W. *Satan and Māra: Christian and Buddhist Symbols of Evil*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1975.
- Cleary, T., trans. *The Flower Ornament Scripture: A Translation of the Avatamsaka Sutra*, 3 vols. Boston: Shambala, 1984–1987.
- Gethin, Rupert. "Meditation and Cosmology: From the Aggañña Sutta to the Mahāyāna." *History of Religions* 36 (1997): 183–219.
- Gombrich, Richard F. "Ancient Indian Cosmology." In *Ancient Cosmologies*, ed. Carmen Blacker and Michael Loewe. London: Allen and Unwin, 1975.
- Gombrich, Richard F. *Precept and Practice: Traditional Buddhism in the Rural Highlands of Ceylon*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1971. Second edition: *Buddhist Precept and Practice: Traditional Buddhism in the Rural Highlands of Ceylon*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1991.
- Kirfel, Willibald. *Die Kosmographie der Inder*. Bonn and Leipzig, Germany: Schroeder, 1920.
- Kloetzli, Randy. *Buddhist Cosmology: From Single World System to Pure Land*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983.
- Kongtrul, Jamgön Lodrö Tayé. *Myriad Worlds: Buddhist Cosmology in Abhidharma, Kalacakra, and Dzog-chen*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1995.
- Ling, Trevor O. *Buddhism and the Mythology of Evil: A Study in Theravāda Buddhism*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962. Reprint, Oxford: Oneworld, 1997.
- Mārasinghe, M. M. J. *Gods in Early Buddhism: A Study in Their Social and Mythological Milieu as Depicted in the Nikāyas of the Pāli Canon*. Vidyānkara: University of Sri Lanka, 1974.
- Masson, Joseph. *La Religion populaire dans le canon bouddhique pali*. Louvain, Belgium: Bureaux du Muséon, 1942.
- Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B., trans. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Buddhist Cosmology*. Berkeley: University of California, 1982.
- Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origin*. Tokyo: Kosei, 1997.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.

RUPERT GETHIN

---

## COUNCILS, BUDDHIST

Before the Buddha died, his statements to the monks that they might abolish all the lesser and minor disciplinary precepts and work out their own salvation with diligence provided ample bewilderment to the members of the early SAṄGHA. Because these statements were open to ecclesiastic interpretation, the early community decided to hold periodic councils designed to encourage tacit agreement with regard to matters of doctrine and discipline. In so doing, it was hoped that uniformity would be affirmed and sectarianism discouraged.

Whether the early councils were truly historical events has long been a matter of contention in Buddhist communities. While most Asian Buddhists believe that the first council was a historical event, its historicity is questioned by virtually all Buddhist scholars. They argue that while it was not unlikely that

a small group of Buddha's intimate disciples gathered after his death, a council held in the grand style described in the scriptures is almost certainly a fiction. On the other hand, almost all scholars agree that the second and following councils were historical events. Of special importance is the Vaiśālī or second council, which paved the way for the first great schism in early Buddhism.

The first council was said to have been held in Rājagṛha, India, in the year of the Buddha's death, generally thought to have occurred in the fourth or fifth century B.C.E. Fearful that the community would dissolve through uncertainty over the founder's teachings, the saṅgha held a council to preclude that possibility. MAHĀKĀŚYAPA, one of the Buddha's chief disciples, was appointed president of the council and selected five hundred ARHAT monks as participants. Another disciple, UPĀLI, recited the disciplinary rules known as the *Vinaya-piṭaka* (*Basket of Discipline*), while ĀNANDA recited the Buddha's discourses, establishing the *Sūtra-piṭaka*. Functionally, this important event established authority for the group in the absence of its leader.

The Vaiśālī council, deemed the second Indian Buddhist council in all accounts, occurred about one hundred years after the Buddha's death. It was convened to resolve a dispute over supposedly illicit monastic behavior, such as accepting gold and silver. To resolve the conflict, a council of seven hundred monks met in Vaiśālī. Revata was appointed president of the council, and Sarvagāmin was questioned on ten points of possibly inappropriate monastic behavior. Each point was rejected by Sarvagāmin, the offending practices outlawed, and concord reestablished, although significant disagreements had obviously begun to appear in the still-unified Buddhist community. It has been postulated that Buddhist sectarianism began shortly after the Vaiśālī council, with the Mahāsāṃghika school and Sthavīras emerging as individual sects following a non-canonical council held shortly after the Vaiśālī event.

Another council was held in Pāṭaliputra around 250 B.C.E. during the reign of King AŚOKA. Aśoka convened the council under Moggaliputta Tissa with the intention of establishing the orthodoxy of the dharma. A thousand monks were assembled, and, under Tissa's guidance, various viewpoints were considered and either sanctioned or rejected, with the proponents of rejected views being expelled from the city. This council is mentioned only in the Pāli records, and for this reason it is often referred to as the third THERAVĀDA council.

A Theravāda council was held under King Vaṭṭagāmaṇī of Sri Lanka in 25 B.C.E., following a famine and in the midst of schismatic unrest in the Buddhist community. Vaṭṭagāmaṇī convened the conference in the capital city of Anurādhapura at the monastery known as Mahāvihāra. The meeting committed the Pāli Buddhist scriptures to writing, thus "closing" the three baskets of scriptures in the Theravāda tradition.

Around 100 C.E. another council was held under the Kushan king Kanishka, probably in Gandhāra. A great scholar named Vasumitra presided, assisted by the learned AŚVAGHOṢA. In addition to compiling a new Vinaya, they prepared a commentary called the *Mahāvibhāṣā* (*Great Exegesis*) on the ABHIDHARMA text *Jñānaprasthāna* (*Foundation of Knowledge*), which became the standard reference work for all Sarvāstivāda abhidharma issues.

Almost seven centuries later, around 792, a council was held in Lhasa, Tibet, under King Khri srong lde btsan. It was convened at the recently completed monastery BSAM YAS (SAMYE) in order to resolve differences between Chinese and Indian notions of practice and enlightenment. Tibetan sources claim that the Chinese position was defeated, continuing an Indian basis for the development of Tibetan Buddhism.

In modern times, a council was held in Rangoon, Burma (Myanmar), in 1871; this council is sometimes referred to as the fifth Theravāda council. Convened during the reign of King Mindon Min, this council was charged with revising the Pāli texts. The revised texts were inscribed on 729 marble tablets, and enshrined in stūpas to ensure their survival.

Finally, a council considered to be the sixth Theravāda council was held in Rangoon in 1954 to recite and confirm the whole Pāli canon. This council was scheduled to coincide with the celebration of the 2,500th anniversary of the Buddha's death. The prime minister of Burma, U Nu, delivered the opening address to the approximately twenty-five hundred monks in attendance. The council was a national festival in Burma, and helped established solidarity for Theravāda Buddhists throughout the world.

*See also:* Bsam yas Debate; India; Mahāsāṃghika School; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Pudgalavāda; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### *Bibliography*

Bareau, André. *Les premiers conciles bouddhiques*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France, 1955.

Bareau, André. *Les sectes Bouddhiques du Petit Véhicule*. Saigon, Vietnam: École Française d'Extrême Orient, 1955.

Prebish, Charles. "A Review of Scholarship on the Buddhist Councils." *Journal of Asian Studies* 33, no. 2 (1974): 239–254.

CHARLES S. PREBISH

## CRITICAL BUDDHISM (HIHAN BUKKYŌ)

The term *critical Buddhism* (*hihan Bukkyō*) refers to Hakamaya Noriaki (1943– ) and Matsumoto Shirō's (1950– ) critique of Buddha-nature (TATHĀGATAGARBHA) and ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) as not Buddhist. Theological and apologetic in nature, yet using the traditional textual and philological methods of academic scholarship (both scholars are specialists in Indian and Tibetan Buddhist studies), critical Buddhism asserts that Buddha-nature and similar doctrines are examples of Hindu-like thinking of a substantial self (*ātman*), which Buddhism opposes with the doctrines of no-self and causality (*pratītyasamutpāda*). Critical Buddhism further asserts that these monistic doctrines deny language and thinking in favor of an ineffable and nonconceptual mysticism contrary to the discriminating awareness (*prajñā*) and selfless compassion that constitutes Buddhist awakening.

Critical Buddhism is therefore critical in at least two senses: It is critical of certain widely held Buddhist doctrines, and it asserts that the critical discrimination of reality and the judicious use of reason and language to teach that reality are the hallmarks of buddhahood.

A third aspect of critical Buddhism is a fierce critique of Buddhist schools, thinkers, and social programs that, based on the triumphalism inherent in a doctrine of ineffable truth, support the status quo and perpetuate social injustice. Hakamaya and Matsumoto are especially concerned with the role of Buddhist doctrine in various forms of Japanese nationalism and, as ordained Zen monks teaching at Zen universities, single out their own Sōtō Zen teachings for particular criticism, raising questions about how the founder DŌGEN (1200–1253) has been interpreted within the Sōtō school and about the proper role of theology within academic as well as sectarian practice. They have also written about HŌNEN (1133–1212), SHINRAN (1173–1263), Myōe (1173–1232), the Kyoto School, and others, as well as critiquing the ideal of objective academic scholarship in the study of Buddhism.

*See also:* **Chan School; Hinduism and Buddhism; Modernity and Buddhism**

### *Bibliography*

- Bodiford, William. "Zen and the Art of Religious Prejudice: Efforts to Reform a Tradition of Social Discrimination." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 23 (1996): 1–28.
- Heine, Steven. "After the Storm: Matsumoto Shirō's Transition from 'Critical Buddhism' to 'Critical Theology.'" *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 28 (2001): 133–146.
- Hubbard, Jamie, and Swanson, Paul, eds. *Pruning the Bodhi Tree: The Storm over Critical Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

JAMIE HUBBARD

*This page intentionally left blank*

# D



## DAIMOKU

The term *daimoku*, literally “title,” refers specifically to the title of the *Lotus Sūtra* (*Myōhō-rengē-kyō* in Japanese pronunciation) or to its invocation, usually in the form “Namu Myōhō-rengē-kyō.” The *daimoku* was chanted in various liturgical and devotional settings in Japan’s Heian period (794–1185) and was later given a doctrinal foundation by Nichiren (1222–1282). It is the central practice of the NICHIREN SCHOOL.

*See also:* Chanting and Liturgy; Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra)

### *Bibliography*

Dolce, Lucia Dora. “Esoteric Patterns in Nichiren’s Interpretation of the Lotus Sutra.” Ph.D. diss. University of Leiden, 2002.

Stone, Jacqueline I. “Chanting the August Title of the *Lotus Sūtra*: *Daimoku* Practices in Classical and Medieval Japan.” In *Re-Visioning “Kamakura” Buddhism*, ed. Richard K. Payne. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

## DAITOKUJI

Daitokuji, founded in 1326 as a Rinzai Zen monastery by Shūhō Myōchō (Daitō Kokushi, 1282–1338), occupies a vast forested precinct at Murasakino in north-west Kyoto. Built initially with imperial patronage, Daitokuji rose to the head of the Gozan (Five Mountains) system. After its destruction by fire and war in the 1450s to the 1460s, patrons from the warrior and

merchant classes funded Daitokuji’s renewal under the leadership of IKKYŪ Sōjun (1394–1481). After demotion from the Gozan ranks in 1486, Daitokuji became independent.

Daitokuji consists of the main complex (*garan*) of gates and communal structures aligned on a north-south axis, surrounded by semi-independent subtemples (*tatchū*) spreading out in all directions. Each subtemple includes an abbot’s quarters, which served as a mortuary site (*bodaisho*) for both patrons and abbots who are jointly commemorated on the central altars and in mortuary precincts. Many of these abbots’ quarters are surrounded by dry landscape gardens, with interior spaces graced by paintings produced by the finest painting workshops of the sixteenth and later centuries. Subtemple storehouses contain an extraordinary inventory of paintings, calligraphies, books, documents, and other objects, many of them imported from China and Korea. Today most of the twenty-three remaining subtemples are closed to the general public except during designated openings.

Perhaps even more than Zen, Daitokuji owes its continuing reputation and patronage to the world of tea (*chanoyu*) in the lineage of Sen no Rikyū (1522–1591). In 1589 Rikyū rebuilt Daitokuji’s Sanmon Gate, and designated the Jūkōin subtemple as his family mortuary site.

*See also:* Japan, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture

### *Bibliography*

Covell, Jon Carter, and Yamada Sōbin. *Zen at Daitokuji*. Tokyo: Kodansha, 1974.



Kraft, Kenneth L. *Eloquent Zen: Daitō and Early Japanese Zen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.

Levine, Gregory P. "Switching Sites and Identities: The Founder's Statue at the Zen Buddhist Temple Kōrin'in." *Art Bulletin* 83, no. 1 (2000): 72–104.

KAREN L. BROCK

## ḌĀKINĪ

The term *ḍākinī* is already seen in the fourth to fifth centuries B.C.E. in the works of the Sanskrit grammarian, Pāṇini. There, the term refers to a type of flesh-eating female deity that appears in the retinue of the goddess, Kālī. Over the following centuries, *ḍākinīs* continued to be a part of the Indian pantheon, though only as relatively minor figures. In the eighth century C.E., however, as Buddhist TANTRA was taking shape, *ḍākinīs* began to acquire a greater importance. Initially it seems that the term was used to refer to human women who gathered around sacred sites and rituals. Portrayed as typically low caste—prostitutes, washerwomen, and the like—these women would serve as consorts for the male tantric practitioners. These socially liminal women were held to have a mysterious and dangerous power, and before long *ḍākinīs* were cast as enlightened beings in their own right, Vajrayoginī, Vajravārāhī, and Ekajāti being some better known examples.

The *Yogaratanmālā* (*Garland of Jewel-like Yogas*), an Indian commentary on the *Hevajra Tantra*, derives the term *ḍākinī* from the Sanskrit root, *dai*, meaning "to fly." The accuracy of this derivation has been debated by Western scholars, but it was clearly accepted by Tibetans when they chose to translate the term as *mkha' 'gro* (sky dancer). The *ḍākinī* thus described is often understood as able to move freely through the space of reality, the DHARMADHĀTU.

In Tibet, *ḍākinī* can refer either to a living woman Buddhist teacher or to a spirit of ambivalent nature. Regarding the latter type, the idea has persisted that *ḍākinīs* are attracted by Buddhist practitioners, drawn in swarms to powerful meditators like mosquitoes to blood. Tibetans further distinguish two kinds of *ḍākinīs*: gnostic (*ye shes*) and flesh-eating (*sha za*), also called "otherworldly" and "worldly"—the former being helpful for one's progress along the Buddhist PATH, and the latter harmful. Telling one type from the other is famously difficult, so that, just as was the case in

eighth-century India, *ḍākinīs* in Tibet continued to hold a dangerous power. The Buddhist practitioner's difficulty in judging them is made worse by a tendency for each type to blur into the other, so that a gnostic *ḍākinī* can suddenly become dangerous, and a flesh-eating *ḍākinī* can provide assistance. Ultimately, the meditator is advised not to fall victim to either dualistic conceptualization of these gossamer beings.

The *ḍākinī*'s enigmatic nature has helped it to serve a mercurial role in Tibetan Buddhism, slipping easily between the human realm and those of the buddhas. For followers of the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school, this role has placed *ḍākinīs* at the center of the "treasure" (*gter ma*) revelation process. A *ḍākinī* often guides the treasure revealer to the discovery site, and then the treasure teachings themselves are typically received in the condensed language of the *ḍākinīs* (*mkha' 'gro skad*). Like the *ḍākinī* herself, the symbolic syllables (*mkha' 'gro brda yig*) of her language are polyvalent, their significance difficult to determine. The process for decoding these encrypted teachings is a mysterious one, involving the revealer opening his body's cakras to allow the treasury of the Buddhist teachings to flow forth unimpeded. Thus the *ḍākinī*'s language suggests a shimmering field of possibilities rather than a single determinate meaning.

*See also:* Women

### Bibliography

- Dowman, Keith. *Sky Dancer: The Secret Life and Songs of the Lady Yeshe Tshogyé*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1984.
- Gyatso, Janet. *Apparitions of the Self: The Secret Autobiographies of a Tibetan Visionary*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Klein, Anne. *Meeting the Great Bliss Queen: Buddhists, Feminists, and the Art of the Self*. Boston: Beacon, 1995.
- Snellgrove, David. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Shambala, 1987.

JACOB P. DALTON

## DALAI LAMA

The position of Dalai Lama, dating in its present form from the mid-seventeenth century, is a uniquely Tibetan institution, embodying the most important secular and religious presence in Tibet. *Dalai* is the

Mongolian translation of the Tibetan name *Rgya mtsho* (pronounced “Gyatso”), which means “ocean,” and *bla ma* (pronounced “LAMA”), a general Tibetan name for a respected religious teacher.

The name *Dalai Lama* was first used by Altan Khan, a Tumed Mongolian chieftain, for his teacher Bsod nams (Sonam) *rgya mtsho* (1543–1588). Bsod nams *rgya mtsho* and his followers then gave the name posthumously to Dge ’dun (Gendun) *rgya mtsho* (1476–1542) and Dge ’dun grub (Gendun Drup, 1391–1474), a student of the great scholar TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), saying that each later Dalai Lama was the reincarnation of the earlier. The followers of Tsong kha pa, later called the DGE LUGS (GELUK) or Yellow Hat sect, probably saw the prestige that was gained through the system of reincarnation by older sects like the Karma BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU), and borrowed the idea of reincarnation from them.

The fourth Dalai Lama was the grandson of Altan Khan. He was soon followed by the “Great Fifth” Dalai Lama, Ngag dbang (Ngawang) *rgya mtsho* (1617–1682). The Great Fifth Dalai Lama and his teacher, Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan (Lobsang Chökyi Gyaltzen, 1567–1662), forged a coalition between the Dge lug, the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) sect, parts of the Tibetan aristocracy, and the most powerful of the competing Mongolian factions to overcome the Karma Bka’ brgyud and their Gtsang (Tsang) patrons of west central Tibet.

### Fifth and sixth Dalai Lamas

The coalition created a new government called the Tuṣita Palace (Dga’ ldan pho brang) based in Lhasa. The Dalai Lamas headed this government and lived, after its completion, in the colossal POTALA palace started by the Great Fifth Dalai Lama in 1645 on the ruins of a palace built by the early Tibetan emperor Srong btsan sgam po (Songtsen Gampo). After his death, the Great Fifth’s prime minister (some say natural son) Sangs rgyas (Sangyay) *rgya mtsho* finished the palace that came to symbolize and dominate Tibet in 1695. After the founding of the Dga’ ldan pho brang government and the building of the Potala, the Dalai Lamas were not just head lamas of ’Bras spung (Drepung), the largest of the Dge lugs pa monasteries; they were heads of the government of Tibet as well.

For his help in spiritual and political matters, the fifth Dalai Lama gave the name Pan chen bla ma (PANCHEN LAMA) to his teacher Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan, abbot of Bkra shis lhun po (Tashi

Lunpo), the largest Dge lugs pa monastery in Gtsang. From this period comes the theory of the Dalai Lamas as emanations of Avalokiteśvara, here conceived as the BODHISATTVA of compassion, and Panchen Lamas as emanations of AMITĀBHA. In tantric Buddhism there are five buddha families, each headed by a buddha. The head of Avalokiteśvara’s buddha family is Amitābha, reflecting the esteem the Dalai Lama had for his teacher. The association of Dalai Lamas with Avalokiteśvara reflects the great importance the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara has throughout Tibet and the ubiquitous presence of his mantra, OM MANI PADME HÜM.

The sixth Dalai Lama (1683–1706) was in many respects a tragic figure. Sangs rgyas *rgya mtsho* concealed the death of the Great Fifth Dalai Lama until completing the construction of the Potala in order to forestall the difficulties inherent in an interregnum period. Sangs rgyas *rgya mtsho* prevented the new incarnation, Tshe dbyangs (Tseyang) *rgya mtsho*, from contact with the outside world, and he set up an elaborate subterfuge to make the people think the fifth Dalai Lama was in a long retreat. As he grew up, Tshe dbyangs *rgya mtsho* rebelled against the life of the celibate monk expected of a Dalai Lama, and he took to frequenting Lhasa taverns disguised as an ordinary layman. He had affairs with young women whom he met there, and expressed his longing to be with them obliquely in his poems, which are widely known and sung even today throughout Tibet.

Though beloved by ordinary Tibetans, Tshe dbyangs *rgya mtsho* offended the Quoshot Mongol leader Lhasang Khan, who was shocked by what he saw as Tshe dbyangs *rgya mtsho*’s immoral behavior. Lhasang Khan killed the prime minister, captured Tshe dbyangs *rgya mtsho*, and took him to the ’A mdo region of eastern Tibet, where he died at the age of twenty-four in 1706. Lhasang Khan set up his own relative as an alternative sixth Dalai Lama, a move that alienated Tibetans.

After the death of Tshe dbyangs *rgya mtsho*, Tibetans opposed to Lhasang Khan’s candidate turned to the Dzungars, a powerful western Mongolian tribe with deep devotion to the Dalai Lamas. This alarmed the Manchu-Chinese emperor Kangxi, who saw the Dzungars as a threat to Manchu interests. Manchu troops invaded Tibet and the seventh Dalai Lama, Skal bzang (Kelsang) *rgya mtsho* (1708–1757), was finally installed in Lhasa, after much negotiation, as Dalai Lama in 1720, with Manchu backing. Apart from

replacing the post of prime minister with a council of ministers call the Bka' shag (Kashag), Skäl bzang rgya mtsho devoted himself to Buddhist studies and gained some fame as a writer of religious books. The Bka' shag met in Lhasa and was answerable only to the Dalai Lamas or, when the Chinese presence was powerful, to the Chinese representatives (*ambans*).

For nearly 150 years from the death of Skäl bzang rgya mtsho until the twelfth Dalai Lama 'Phrin las (Trinlay) rgya mtsho, effective political power was in the hands of regents appointed from among the powerful Dge lugs pa lamas, monks, and nobility. The eighth Dalai Lama, 'Jam dpal (Jampel) rgya mtsho (1758–1804), remained detached from political affairs. The ninth through the twelfth Dalai Lamas all died young: the ninth—Lung rtogs (Lungtok) rgya mtsho (1805–1815); the tenth—Tshul khriims (Tsultrim) rgya mtsho (1816–1837); the eleventh—Mkhas grub (Khedrub) rgya mtsho (born 1855 and died within a year of birth); and the twelfth—'Phrin las rgya mtsho (1856–1875).

The procedure for choosing Dalai Lamas evolved over time. Dreams of respected religious figures and visions of oracles have always been important. Since the time of the third Dalai Lama, Bsod nams rgya mtsho, in the sixteenth century, visions appearing on the surface of a sacred lake near Chos 'khas rgyal (Chökhar Gyal) in south central Tibet have been considered significant. In the case of the seventh Dalai Lama, lines from Tshe dbyangs rgya mtsho's poem—"I will not fly far. I will come back from Li thang"—were considered an important clue by those charged with locating the place of rebirth. Such seemingly innocuous statements, or in some cases actual letters detailing a birthplace, remain an important part of the selection process, as does the ability of the child candidate to differentiate items belonging to the earlier Dalai Lama when they are placed alongside similar items.

The influence of China on the selection of Dalai Lamas stems from the turbulent years after the death of the sixth Dalai Lama and the Manchu intervention in the early eighteenth century. The Manchu general Fu Kang'an delivered a golden urn from the Manchu emperor to be used for the selections of high lamas. The Manchu representatives (*ambans*), who remained in Tibet after the Chinese army returned to Tibet, witnessed the procedure of choosing a name from the golden urn. From this period also comes the schism between the Dalai and Panchen Lamas, as the Manchus exploited the traditional rivalry between central Tibet

and western Gtsang to counterbalance the power of the Dge lugs pa sect. The Manchus backed the Gtsang-based Panchen Lamas strongly.

### Thirteenth and fourteenth Dalai Lamas

The thirteenth Dalai Lama, Thub bstan (Tubten) rgya mtsho (1876–1933), who, like the fifth, is called the "Great," overcame entrenched Dge lugs pa monastic power and reasserted the authority of the Dalai Lama as a political institution. After surviving an attempted assassination, Thub bstan rgya mtsho introduced reforms, first in the large Dge lugs pa monasteries and then in the government ministries led by members of the Bka' shag. According to Melvyn Goldstein in *A History of Modern Tibet* (1989), the thirteenth Dalai Lama attempted two reforms of Tibetan society in particular that would have better prepared Tibet for the difficulties of the modern world: modernization of the army and introduction of a democratically elected assembly. He failed in both reform efforts because of entrenched conservatism and vested interests.

The thirteenth Dalai Lama skillfully governed Tibet during the time of the "Great Game," the rivalry for control of the Central Asian regions that lay between the empires of czarist Russia and British India. Fearful of Russian influence, the viceroy of British India, Lord Minto, sent out an army under Colonel Francis Edward Younghusband that invaded Tibet in 1904. The Dalai Lama fled to Mongolia and then to China. When the Chinese invaded Tibet five years later the Dalai Lama in turn fled to British India, making his way to Darjeeling. He was hosted there by Sir Charles Bell, a British political officer, whose book *A Portrait of the Dalai Lama: The Life and Times of the Great Thirteenth* (1946) introduced the Dalai Lama to the English-speaking world.

Before his death in 1933 the Great Thirteenth Dalai Lama wrote a letter, now viewed as his political testament, in which he foresaw great change and suffering for the Tibetan people if they did not adapt quickly to the modern world. Unfortunately the leaders of Tibet during the regency period were unable to rise to this difficult task, and the fourteenth Dalai Lama, Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso), was destined to perform the nearly impossible task of leading a people clinging to a country disintegrating before their eyes into an uncertain future.

Born Hla mo don grub (Lhamo Dhundup) to an ordinary farming family in 1935, the fourteenth Dalai

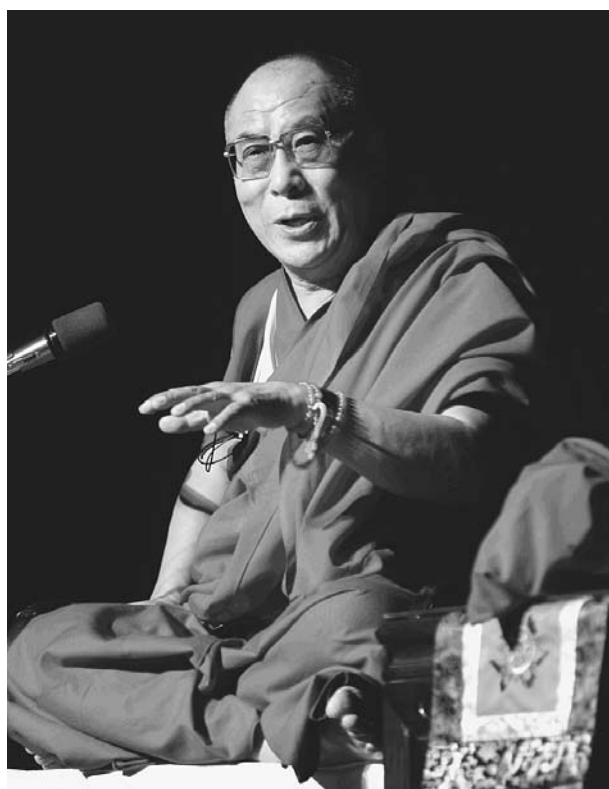
Lama was given the name Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho when he became a monk. *Bstan 'dzin* means “holder of the Buddha’s doctrine.” Out of respect, Tibetans call him Sku 'dun (pronounced “Kundun”), which means literally “the presence before us.” The regent, Rva streng (Reting) rin po che, guided a search party to the northeastern region of Tibet after a sign given after death by the thirteenth Dalai Lama, whose body had miraculously turned to face in that direction. A house like the future fourteenth Dalai Lama’s had also appeared on the surface of the sacred lake. When special marks were observed on Hla mo don grub’s body and he was able to distinguish items belonging to the thirteenth Dalai Lama from among similar items, Rva streng rin po che declared him the reincarnation. After payment of a large ransom to the local Chinese warlord, Rva streng had the young boy brought to Lhasa, where he was enthroned in 1940 at the age of five.

The fourteenth Dalai Lama divided his early years between the Potala and the Nor bu gling kha summer palace, studying Buddhism under the supervision of learned Dge lugs pa monks. This changed abruptly in 1950 when, at the age of fifteen, a political crisis forced the Tibetan government to ask him to assume both political and spiritual authority.

In China, decades of civil war and instability ended with the dominance of the Chinese Communist Party led by Mao Zedong. Mao immediately declared Tibet an integral part of the Chinese motherland and China’s Red Army marched in, easily defeating the badly equipped Tibetans in 1950 at Chamdo, on the traditional border between central and eastern Tibet. In desperation, Tibet’s political leaders invested the young Dalai Lama with full political authority. In 1951 China forced a totally defeated Tibet to sign the Seventeen Point Agreement in which it was declared that Tibet had always been a part of China.

The fourteenth Dalai Lama finished his traditional studies in 1959. Soon after, when the Chinese army suppressed a Tibetan uprising in Lhasa protesting tightening Chinese control, the Dalai Lama fled as a refugee to India. He was eventually followed by about 100,000 of his people.

In India, as Thubten Samphel says in *The Dalai Lamas of Tibet* (2000), “the Fourteenth Dalai Lama has managed to transform a medieval Central Asian institution into a positive force recognized globally” (p. 68). He reorganized the Tibetan government in exile along more democratic lines and spearheaded attempts to introduce modern education to Tibetan children. In his



The fourteenth Dalai Lama, Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso), travels widely to promote his ideas for peace and reconciliation in Tibet and the world. Here he is seen speaking in California in 2001. © David McNew/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

campaign against the Chinese presence in Tibet, the fourteenth Dalai Lama has preached accommodation and nonviolence. In 1987, in an address to the U.S. Congress, he unveiled a five-point peace plan that envisions Tibet as a neutral zone of peace. The next year, in Strasbourg, France, he announced his willingness to accept that Tibet is a part of China if there were a strong devolution of power that would allow Tibet to be self-governing and to retain its distinctive identity. For these efforts he received the Nobel Prize for peace in 1989.

The religious beliefs of the fourteenth Dalai Lama are summed up in a verse of the eighth-century Indian saint ŚĀNTIDEVA that he often quotes: “As long as space endures, as long as suffering remains, may I too remain, to dispel the misery of the world.” The fourteenth Dalai Lama travels widely, giving explanations of Buddhist teaching and exchanging ideas with scientists and leaders of other faiths.

*See also:* Communism and Buddhism; Tibet

**Bibliography**

- Bell, Charles. *A Portrait of the Dalai Lama: The Life and Times of the Great Thirteenth*. London: Collins, 1946.
- Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Dalai Lama XIV). *My Land and My People*. New York: McGraw Hill, 1962.
- Goldstein, Melvyn. *A History of Modern Tibet, 1913–1951: Demise of the Lamaist State*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989.
- Samphel, Thubten, and Tendar. *The Dalai Lamas of Tibet*. New Delhi: Lustre Press, 2000.

GARETH SPARHAM

**DĀNA (GIVING)**

It is difficult to overstate the centrality of generosity and gift giving (*dāna*) in Buddhism. *Dāna* is a supreme virtue perfected by BODHISATTVAS, a key practice of providing economic support to monks and nuns and the Buddhist establishment, and a means of generating religious merit.

*Dāna* is first in the lists of the PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) that a bodhisattva cultivates through the many eons of lives that culminate in buddhahood. Giving in this context is not only an instance of renunciation of material possessions, it also illustrates the bodhisattva's infinite compassion and regard for others in need. One of the best-known stories in the Buddhist world is the tale of Siddhārtha Gautama's penultimate life in which he completes the final perfection of generosity as the bodhisattva Vessantara (Sanskrit, VIŚVANTARA). Vessantara's extraordinary perfection is the gift of his children and wife to a greedy brahman, a gift so magnificent that it causes the earth to quake. Other celebrated acts of the bodhisattva's generosity include occasions described in the JĀTAKA literature in which he offers up his limbs, his eyes, and even his life to those in hunger or in need.

In addition to being a moral ideal of a bodhisattva, *dāna* is also a practice with considerable social and economic significance in Buddhist cultures. Basic to the Indian traditions in which Buddhism first developed is the distinction between householder and renouncer. *Dāna*, a term broadly employed in South Asian religions, should be understood within the context of the relationship of complete economic dependency of monks and nuns on royal gifts and the alms of lay householders. The LAITY give food and other requisites

to monks and nuns through daily ritualized alms rounds or through the making of offerings at monasteries. Although monks and nuns are not expected to reciprocate these gifts, they can offer the gift of the Teaching (*dharmadāna*), which is often exalted as the highest gift.

Laypeople are motivated to give *dāna* in part because it provides them with religious merit. *Dāna*, when given joyfully and graciously, generates karmic merit that results in worldly benefits in this life, as well as a fortunate rebirth in the next life. Important factors determining the merit one earns by making a gift are the motivations of the donor, the propriety and suitability of the gift, and the worthiness of the recipient. The logic of this last variable ensures that laypeople will want to give to the worthiest "field of merit," ideally a learned and pious monk, to earn the most merit from the gift. While some traditions within Buddhism, particularly within the MAHĀYĀNA, extol giving without discrimination to the poor and needy, there is in *dāna* ideology a general preference for ensuring support for esteemed monks and nuns.

While texts on lay morality stress the generosity of the laity, donative inscriptions across the Buddhist world record gifts given by pious monks and nuns, as well laypeople, to building and supporting Buddhist institutions. Gifts of kings, such as those of King AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.), of almshouses and monasteries to Buddhist communities, record the importance of royal patronage in the establishment, development, and preservation of Buddhism.

*See also:* Ethics; Merit and Merit-Making

**Bibliography**

- Cone, Margaret, and Gombrich, Richard F., trans. *The Perfect Generosity of Prince Vessantara: A Buddhist Epic*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1977.
- Endo, Toshiichi. *Dāna: The Development of Its Concept and Practice*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Gunasena, 1987.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Sizemore, Russell, F., and Swearer, Donald K., eds. *Ethics, Wealth, and Salvation: A Study in Buddhist Social Ethics*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1990.

MARIA HEIM

## DAO'AN

Dao'an (312–385 C.E.) is a pivotal figure in all main developments within Chinese Buddhism during its period of adaptation within early medieval Chinese society. His life coincided with the brutal political situation in the country following the collapse of the Han dynasty in 220. Until age fifty-three, he migrated through many parts of northern China, where he built up several Buddhist communities that were later forced to disperse due to calamities of the time. Around 365, he settled in Xiangyang (Hubei), where he headed a distinguished Buddhist community of more than three hundred members for about fifteen years. In 379, Fu Jian (357–387) of the Former Qin dynasty destroyed Xiangyang, forcing Dao'an to move to Chang'an, where he died six years later while serving as the main leader of the local SAṄGHA and adviser to the emperor.

Dao'an's rich contributions can be divided into several categories. First, he changed the rules for translating Buddhist texts into Chinese when he demanded that the *geyi* (matching the meaning) system of translation be abolished and proper Chinese Buddhist terminology be developed. Second, his influential commentaries explained the DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE) techniques, specifically in translations attributed to AN SHIGAO (late second or early third century C.E.). Third, Dao'an systematized the Chinese tripiṭaka. In 374 he published *Zongli zhongjing mulu* (*Comprehensive Systematic Catalogue of Scriptures*), in which he divided translations made by known translators from the anonyms, successfully establishing new criteria of authenticity for the Chinese Buddhist CANON. The criteria were applied to Buddhist texts in Chinese by later scholars including Sengyou (445–518), Fajing (fl. late sixth century), DAOXUAN (596–667), and Zhisheng (fl. early eighth century). Fourth, Dao'an developed the VINAYA literature and monastic practice within China. In the absence of complete translations of the *Vinaya-piṭaka*, he designed his own strict rules for monks, including the practice of changing their surnames to Shi (from the Chinese transliteration Shijiamouni for the Sanskrit Śākyamuni). Due to Dao'an's untiring advocacy, the *Sarvāstivāda-vinaya* was finally translated into Chinese by KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413). Fifth, he developed a form of *prajñāpāramitā* philosophy, specifically the doctrine of the *wuben* (essential non-beingness), which served as a precursor to the Chinese reception of ŚŪNYATA (EMPTINESS) expounded during the second century C.E. by NĀGĀRJUNA.

In addition to these scholarly achievements, Dao'an established good communications between the saṅgha and secular governments. Despite the political hardships he endured, he was able to organize sponsorship from several political leaders; his friendship with Fu Jian and Emperor Xiaowu (r. 373–397) of the Jin dynasty are particularly notable. Dao'an's advocacy built the worship of the future Buddha MAITREYA into one of the most important East Asian Buddhist cults. His outstanding disciples, who influenced development of Chinese Buddhism in the next generation, included HUIYUAN (334–416), the vaunt-courier in the PURE LAND SCHOOLS, and Zhu Fatai, the leader of Buddhism in Yangzhou.

*See also:* Catalogues of Scriptures; China; Commentarial Literature

### Bibliography

- Ch'en, Kenneth. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- Link, Arthur. "Biography of Tao-an." *T'oung Pao* 46 (1958): 1–48.
- T'ang, Yung-t'ung. *Han Wei liang Jin Nanbeichao fojiaoshi* (*History of Buddhism during Han, Wei, two Jin, and Southern and Northern Dynasties*). Shanghai: Shang Wushuguan, 1938.
- Ui Hakuju. *Shaku Dōan Kenkyū* (*Research on Shi Dao'an*). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1956.
- Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

TANYA STORCH

## DAOISM AND BUDDHISM

Modern scholars use the term *Daoism* to denote a wide variety of Chinese social groups and attitudes. Almost any activity engaged in by the elite that was not associated with governance has been labeled *Daoist*. In this entry, the term will be restricted to the Daoist religion, here defined as the collection of cognate and loosely organized Chinese religious organizations, first attested during the first century C.E., that "practiced the Dao" (Way) and traced their understandings to revelations emanating from the Dao at various times in human history. The most important among these revelations was that of the deified Laozi, who brought

new understandings of the text historically ascribed to him, the *Daode jing* (*The Way and Its Power*), to Zhang Daoling, the first Celestial Master and founder of Zhengyi (Correct Unity) Daoism, in 142 C.E. Likewise, the term *Daoist* will refer to those—generally priests, but also a few lay practitioners—who devoted their lives to Daoist practice.

These are necessarily vague definitions, for Daoism was never a single *ism*, since its organization, doctrines, practices, and even history were constantly being reimagined; nor did it require, except in its earliest stages, strict adherence to a creed. In the process of its unstructured development, Daoist practice came to incorporate a wide spectrum of beliefs, attitudes, and goals, all allegedly finding their source in the Dao. In fact, the endurance of the religion in Chinese society stemmed from its permeable belief system and relative lack of organizational structure. These features softened the religion's outlines and allowed for strategies of eclecticism and co-option that assured the spread of Daoism, though Daoists were few, throughout two millennia of Chinese history.

As the Chinese struggled to understand the Buddhist religion, they naturally did so on their own terms, most often through recourse to indigenous traditions of practice and worship. Buddhist sūtras had to be translated into Chinese, and Buddhist doctrine had to be explained in native terms. Daoism either informed or recorded native understandings by adapting Buddhist doctrine and practice to its own uses. As a result, literally everywhere one looks in the record of Chinese Buddhism—RITUAL, iconography, monastic economy, PHILOSOPHY, and even translation and the creation of sūtras—one finds elements that might be elucidated by reference to Daoist parallels. While successive dynasties, and some Buddhists as well, sought to clarify the boundaries between the two religions, beyond the walls of the monastery this attempt proved less than successful.

Proponents of the Daoist religion brought further political pressures on Buddhism. Often, Daoist organizations defined themselves with respect to devotees of popular sects and Buddhists, whose practices did not accord with theirs. By redefining the doctrines and practices of other religions in their own terms, such Daoist groups would attempt to supplant them. In the case of Buddhism, the goal was to replace the foreign religion with a “more authentic” Chinese version. Several imperial moves to repress the Buddhist religion are directly traceable to this attempted co-option.

The interplay of Buddhism and Daoism can thus be characterized as a complex dance of appropriation and accommodation, interspersed with periods of suspicion and antipathy. This entry will present in diachronic perspective a few of the highlights of this diverse history.

### First to sixth centuries C.E.

The earliest interactions between the two religious complexes reveal Chinese attempts to naturalize the foreign religion. The putative use of “Daoist” terms to translate early Buddhist scriptures has perhaps been overemphasized, since the Daoism of the first to the third centuries could claim little unique religious terminology beyond that found in the *Daode jing*, the *Zhuangzi*, and other widely used texts. It is nonetheless significant that both religions drew upon a common fund of Chinese terms, with their established connotations, to express their central concepts. For example, Buddhist *vihāra*, or monasteries, and Daoist meditation chambers were both called *jingshe*, a term that originally designated a pure chamber used in preparation for ancestral sacrifice and that later referred to a Confucian study hall.

Several of the earliest mentions of Buddhism in Chinese historical texts record that the Han emperor Huan (r. 147–167) performed joint sacrifices to the deified Laozi, the Yellow Emperor, and the Buddha. Around the same time, the notion arose that Laozi, who was reputed to have disappeared in the west after composing his *Daode jing*, had become the Buddha. This legend was repeated, and greatly expanded, in Daoist sources, including a circular distributed among Zhengyi groups in northern China in 255, to show the superiority of Daoist practices over those crafted specifically for unruly barbarians. Around 300, a scripture was produced, the *Huahu jing* (*Scripture of [Laozi's] Conversion of the Barbarians*). This text, with later accretions, continued to play a role in religious controversy into the fourteenth century. Versions of the legend were also taken up in early Buddhist apologetic treatises and indigenously composed sūtras, where it was argued that Laozi and other venerated figures of Chinese history were in fact disciples of the Buddha.

By the latter half of the fourth century, Daoist scriptural traditions originating in the south reveal the extent to which Buddhism had come to transform Chinese worldviews. The Shangqing (Upper Purity) scriptures revealed to Yang Xi (ca. 330–386) show vague traces of Buddhist concepts, such as REBIRTH.

Several hagiographies granted to Yang mention the practice of Buddhism, though these are clearly regarded as only one way to approach the proper study of transcendence found in Daoist scriptures. In addition, Yang's transcripts include a series of oral instructions from celestial beings that borrow heavily from the early Chinese Buddhist *Sishier zhang jing* (*Scripture in Forty-two Sections*). Descriptive flourishes in Shangqing depictions of deities and heavenly locales also betray new emphases introduced with Buddhism.

The Lingbao (Numinous Treasure) scriptures, compiled during the late fourth and early fifth centuries, represent an attempt at religious synthesis that encompassed both Buddhism and early forms of Daoism. Lingbao cosmology, soteriology, attitudes toward scripture, ecclesiastical organization, and ritual practice all were adapted from the Buddhism that is attested to in the works of such early translators as Zhi Qian (fl. 220–250) and Kang Senghui (d. 280). Most strikingly, the Lingbao scriptures contain reworked passages from the works of these translators, as well as passages drawn from earlier Daoist texts, all purportedly revealed in their original form, in earlier world-systems. In this way, the Lingbao scriptures were portrayed as replacing all earlier sources of religious knowledge, and they were so represented to the emperors of the Liu-Song dynasty (420–479).

Scholars have yet to fully explore what this remarkable synthesis can reveal of the Buddhist practice of this period. What is clear is that the idea of SAṂSĀRA, with its various postmortem destinies and salvation through transfer of merit, was already widely accepted among the Chinese populace. The Lingbao scriptures did not, however, hold NIRVĀṆA as a goal. Rather, salvific practice was aimed at securing either REBIRTH into the heavens or into a favorable earthly destination, such as the family of a “prince or marquis.” This acceptance of nearly all aspects of Buddhist soteriology except nirvāṇa was to characterize Daoism from this time forward. In the competition for ritual patronage, Daoists would claim that Buddhism was the “religion of death,” while their practices were dedicated to “life.” Insofar as the ritual practice of Daoism took its initial form in these early Lingbao texts, such attitudes toward Buddhism became a feature of future interactions between the two religions.

### Sixth to tenth centuries

One might construct a history of the vicissitudes of the two religions on the basis of imperial patronage, beginning with Liang Wudi's (r. 502–549) suppression of

Daoism, through Zhou Wudi's (r. 560–578) attempt to ban Buddhism, the Sui emperors' support of Buddhism, and the favoritism toward Daoism shown by the early Tang emperors, who held that they were descended from Laozi. This account, however, would misrepresent the intense interactions between Buddhism and Daoism during this period. While Buddhists composed new sūtras that foretold the apocalyptic DECLINE OF THE DHARMA, provided charms for personal protection, accommodated Chinese filial practice or announced the potential utility of Buddhism as a support for the state, Daoists produced a number of lengthy scriptures, such as the *Yebao yinyuan jing* (*Scripture on Karmic Retribution and Conditions*) and the *Benji jing* (*Scripture on the Origin Point*), that exposed similar Daoist concerns while also elaborating Daoist versions of key Buddhist concepts. These doctrinal developments were catalogued in *Daojiao yishu* (*Pivot of the Dao*), which contains sections on “the three vehicles,” the *fashen* (dharmakāya), and Dao-nature, which can be compared to Buddha-nature.

In terms of both doctrine and practice, the Tang dynasty saw further efforts to harmonize the “Three Religions”—Buddhism, Daoism, and Confucianism. Imperial patronage and efforts at control resulted in doctrinal and organizational systematization for both Buddhism and Daoism. Daoists created initiation grades based on the canonical organization of their scriptural traditions and constructed monasteries throughout the kingdom, leading to the emergence of a fully-formed monastic Daoism. Monasteries were the sites of large-scale ritual performances, such as the Buddhist Ullambana ritual and the Daoist Retreat of the Yellow Registers, based on a procedure found in the early Lingbao scriptures. Both of these rites were designed to secure the release of the dead from the HELLS and guide them into more fortunate paths of rebirth or ascension into the heavens. In this and other respects, one begins to see, at least among the elite classes for whom there is a written record, the beginnings of competition between Buddhist and Daoist priests to provide ritual services that were often quite similar in aim and content.

### Eleventh to fourteenth centuries

With the better documentation provided by the widespread use of printing and the spread of literacy, an extremely lively religious scene becomes apparent. Daoism's shift from court to local centers, noticed by modern scholars, is perhaps merely the result of increased documentation revealing what had been



occurring beneath the surface all along. While elite practitioners continued to be enamored of distinctive practices leading to personal transcendence, as found in Chan or Daoist Inner Alchemy, it now becomes apparent how thoroughly Buddhism and Daoism had blended at the local level. In both Buddhist and Daoist contexts, there are examples of minor Buddhist deities cast in the role of protector deities in local cults; rites of “universal salvation” whereby the dead were rescued from the hells and brought into the ritual space for transfer; and ritual masters who embodied deities and caused child-mediums to become possessed by disease-demons, so that these might be interrogated and expelled. This latter practice derives from Tantric rituals, with their warrior deities and therapeutic aims.

Just as local gods were added to the Daoist pantheon, new modes of scriptural production and lay association were incorporated into Daoism and began to play a central role in the development of Chinese religious life. An example is the cult of the god Wenchang, a local deity from Sichuan later recognized officially as the god of literature. A book detailing his epiphanies and support of the “Three Religions” of Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism was revealed by spirit-writing in 1181.

One of the several influential schools of Daoism begun during this period was Quanzhen (Way of Complete Perfection), founded by Wang Zhe (1112–1170). Quanzhen, which is the dominant form of officially-recognized Daoism in modern China, teaches celibacy, asceticism, strict monasticism, moral instruction, and self-perfection through inner alchemy. In many ways, Quanzhen self-consciously modeled itself on Chan Buddhism. Quanzhen masters gained the patronage of the Mongol Yuan rulers and, during the mid-thirteenth century, were accused by Buddhists of occupying monasteries, running them as Daoist institutions, and spreading a version of the *Huahu jing*. The literary legacy of Quanzhen Daoism is vast and includes volumes of didactic verse and dialogic records similar to Chan *yulu*.

Another influential school was the Qingwei (Pure Tenuity) school of ritual practice, which incorporated Tantric rites, MUDRĀ, and MAṆḌALA practice into traditional Daoist cosmogenic transformation rituals. These ritual innovations have been preserved by Zhengyi practitioners into the twenty-first century.

### **Fifteenth century to the present**

The ethnically Han emperors of the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) tended to favor Daoism, but strove to

bring all public religious expression under strict regulation. They gave official approval to the Zhengyi school over Quanzhen, which had dominated the previous period, and they patronized the printing of the Daoist canon in 1445 and a supplement in 1598. These remain major resources upon which scholars and practicing Daoists alike rely. Nonetheless, such official oversight tends to purge from the official records much that is vital to understanding the growth of the religion.

Elite neo-Confucians of this period adapted both Buddhist and Daoist thought to their own ends. In some cases, such as that of Lin Zhao'en (1517–1598), a self-styled “Master of the Three Teachings,” attempts were made to popularize these beliefs. Lin’s “Three in One Teaching,” influential throughout southeastern China for about 150 years, was meant to eliminate all other denominations under a Confucianism supported by the subsidiary doctrines of Buddhism and Daoism.

More problematic from the state’s point of view was the proliferation of lay, scripturally-based, sectarian groups such as the White Lotus Society. Such groups, unlike the Wenchang cult, cannot be categorized as other than eclectic. These societies based their practice of scriptural recitation and meditation on scriptures that innovated freely with beliefs and practices extracted from the canonical writings of both Buddhism and Daoism, overlain with “Confucian” moral concerns that by this time had become the property of both religions. Sectarian scriptures and personalized fortunes in verse form were often produced through spirit-writing sessions conducted in Daoist and, to a lesser extent, Buddhist temples. Such new religious groups, patronized even by officials and their wives, provided an alternative to institutionalized religion.

Qing dynasty (1644–1911) efforts at control were no more successful than those of preceding dynasties. While Tibetan Buddhism was the religion of the Qing emperors, recognition was given, as it is in China today, to the two Daoist schools Zhengyi and Quanzhen. But the tendencies toward simplification and syncretism of the preceding centuries precluded categorical taming of the vibrant religious scene. For instance, while modern Quanzhen venerates Wang Changyue (d. 1680), the officially-recognized first abbot of the Baiyun guan in Beijing, another influential patriarch of the school, Min Yide (1758–1836), is perhaps better representative of the times, and certainly better remembered today. While fulfilling his father’s wishes and serving as an official in Yunnan, Min supposedly

met the mysterious Man of the Way of Chicken-foot Mountain, who bestowed upon him the inner alchemical practices of the Heart School of West India through two scriptures. One of these concerns the methods of salvation propounded by the three sages—Confucius, Laozi, and Śākyamuni—while the other was a DHĀRAṆĪ text spoken by the Buddha. In addition, Min received a Northern Dipper meditation text containing mantras to be pronounced in imitation of Sanskrit.

In contemporary China, Taiwan, and other Chinese communities, there are continued official attempts to distinguish Daoism from Buddhism through the creation of governing organizations, the registration of priests, and local oversight—all familiar in the history of Chinese religion. Nonetheless, the most prominent characteristic of Chinese religion as it is practiced and imagined remains its eclectic, all-embracing character.

*See also:* Apocrypha; Confucianism and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

### Bibliography

- Andersen, Poul. "Taoist Talismans and the History of the Tianxin Tradition." *Acta Orientalia* 57 (1996): 141–152.
- Berling, Judith A. *The Syncretic Religion of Lin Chao-en*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1980.
- Bokenkamp, Stephen R. "The Yao Boduo Stele as Evidence for the Dao-Buddhism of the Early Lingbao Scriptures." *Cahiers d'Extrême-Asie* 9 (1996–1997): 54–67.
- Bokenkamp, Stephen R. *Early Daoist Scriptures*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997.
- Bokenkamp, Stephen R. "Lu Xiuqing, Buddhism, and the First Daoist Canon." In *Culture and Power in the Reconstitution of the Chinese Realm, 200–600*, ed. Scott Pearce, Audrey Spiro, and Patricia Ebrey. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2001.
- Boltz, Judith M. *A Survey of Taoist Literature: Tenth to Seventeenth Centuries*. Berkeley, CA: Institute of East Asian Studies, 1987.
- Davis, Edward L. *Society and the Supernatural in Song China*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.
- Dean, Kenneth. *Taoist Ritual and Popular Cults of Southeast China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1993.
- Kohn, Livia. *Laughing at the Tao: Debates among Buddhists and Taoists in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Kohn, Livia, ed. *Daoism Handbook*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2000.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Religions of China in Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.

- Robinet, Isabelle. *Taoism: Growth of a Religion*, tr. Phyllis Brooks. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1997.
- Schipper, Kristofer M. "Purity and Strangers: Shifting Boundaries in Medieval Taoism." *T'oung Pao* 80 (1984): 61–81.
- Schipper, Kristofer M. *The Taoist Body*, tr. Karen C. Duval. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994.
- Yoshioka Yoshitoyo. *Dōkyō to bukkyō (Daoism and Buddhism)*, 3 vols. Tokyo: Kokusho Kankōkai, 1959, 1970, 1976.
- Zürcher, Erik. "Buddhist Influence on Early Taoism." *T'oung Pao* 66 (1980): 84–147.
- Zürcher, Erik. "Prince Moonlight." *T'oung Pao* 68 (1982): 1–75.

STEPHEN R. BOKENKAMP

## DAOSHENG

Daosheng (355–434) was an influential Chinese scholar-monk. He was popular as a lecturer with the educated classes and famous for advancing the theory of a "sudden" experience of enlightenment. Ordained at a young age, Daosheng gave his first Buddhist lecture at fifteen. In 397 he traveled to Lushan where he studied for seven years under HUIYUAN (334–416) and Saṅghadeva. Daosheng then journeyed to Chang'an with three other disciples of Huiyuan to learn and assist KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413), probably helping in Kumārajīva's translations of the *Vimalakīrti-sūtra* and the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). Of his many monographs only his commentary on the *Lotus Sūtra* is extant; but Daosheng's opinions are often quoted in other works, allowing scholars to reconstruct his core ideas.

Daosheng was severely criticized for his stubborn refusal to accept the accuracy of the first translation of the Mahāyāna NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA because of its claim that all sentient beings possess the buddha-nature except for the evil ICCHANTIKA. After returning to Lushan in 430, he was exonerated and praised for his insight when a new, expanded translation of this sūtra that had removed the *icchantika* exclusion was brought to him.

Daosheng was perhaps the first person in China to see the mārga (PATH) implications of the buddha-nature doctrine famously extolled in the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra*. This sūtra preaches the positive aspects of NIRVĀṆA as pure, eternal, personal, and so on, and Daosheng linked this with the buddha-nature concept to affirm a pure, blissful "true self" that can only be realized suddenly. If the buddha-nature is indivisible, he argued, then it is realized completely or not at all. He

advocated a gradual path of training to prepare one for this sudden flash of insight, thereby completing the path in that moment of epiphany. This led to heightened interest in the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* and serious debate in China and Tibet over sudden versus gradual conceptions of the path.

See also: **Bodhi (Awakening); Tathāgatagarbha**

**Bibliography**

Kim, Young-ho. *Tao-sheng's Commentary on the Lotus Sūtra: A Study and Translation*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1990.

Liu, Ming-Wood. "The Early Development of the Buddha-Nature Doctrine in China." *Journal of Chinese Philosophy* 16 (1989): 1–36.

MARK L. BLUM

---

DAOXUAN

Daoxuan (596–667) was one of the most versatile and prolific Chinese monks of the medieval period. Son of a prominent official, he became a monk at an early age and soon earned a reputation for erudition and industry. Although sources disagree on Daoxuan's place of origin, he lived for most of his adult life in or near the Tang capital at Chang'an, where he worked for a brief period at the translation center of the great translator XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) and served as abbot of Ximing Monastery. Daoxuan's writings include a catalog of Buddhist texts, various historical works, numerous works on the monastic regulations, and records of his visionary encounters with divine beings.

Daoxuan's most influential historical works are a large compilation of accounts of monks titled *Xu gaoseng zhuan* (*Further Biographies of Eminent Monks*) and *Guang hongming ji* (*Expanded Collection of the Propagation of Light*), a collection of documents by more than 130 authors relating for the most part to debates between Buddhists and their detractors at court. Daoxuan's most important work on the monastic regulations, *Sifenlü shanfan buque xingshichao* (*Notes on Conduct: Abridgements and Emendations to the Four-Part Regulations*), attempts to provide a handbook for monastic practice based on the *Dharmaguptakavinaya* (Chinese, *Sifen lü*).

Various legends circulated about Daoxuan's life, the most famous of which were that a spirit placed a tooth

of the Buddha in his protection and that he was the reincarnation of the sixth-century monk Sengyou.

See also: **Biographies of Eminent Monks (Gaoseng zhuan); History; Vinaya**

**Bibliography**

Shinohara, Koichi. "Changing Roles of Miraculous Images in Medieval Chinese Buddhism: A Study of the Miraculous Images Section of Daoxuan's *Ji-shenzhou Sanbao Gantonglu*." In *Images, Miracles, and Authority in Asian Religious Traditions*, ed. Richard Davis. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, 1998.

Shinohara, Koichi. "The Kaśāya Robe of the Past Buddha Kāśyapa in the Miraculous Instruction Given to the Vinaya Master Daoxuan (596–667)." *Chung-hwa Buddhist Journal* 13 (2000): 299–367.

JOHN KIESCHNICK

---

DAOYI (MAZU)

Mazu Daoyi (709–788) is one of the main figures in the history of the CHAN SCHOOL. The appearance of Mazu and his disciples represented a key point in the historical development of Chan, as the fragmented schools of early Chan were replaced by a new orthodoxy identified with his Hongzhou school. Because of his great influence on the subsequent growth of Chan, Mazu is widely recognized as the leading Chan teacher during the tradition's putative "golden age" during the eighth and ninth centuries.

Born in the western province of Sichuan in a local gentry family, Mazu entered religious life as a teenager. His early teachers were noted Chan monks in his native province. During the mid-730s he traveled to Hunan, where he studied with Huairang (677–744), an obscure disciple of the "Sixth Patriarch" HUINENG (638–713). Mazu then went on to establish monastic communities in southeast China. After his move to Hongzhou (the provincial capital of Jiangsi), during the final two decades of his life, Mazu emerged as a highly popular religious teacher who attracted a large number of eminent monastic and lay disciples.

Mazu did not leave any written records. His *Mazu yulu* (*Mazu's Discourse Record*), which was compiled during the eleventh century and contains diverse materials with varied provenances, is still widely read and recognized as a principal text of the Chan canon. Among his best-known teachings, succinctly expressed

as popular Chan adages, are “Mind is Buddha” and “Ordinary mind is the Way.”

### Bibliography

Cheng-chien Bhikshu, trans. *Sun-Face Buddha: The Teachings of Ma-tsu and the Hung-chou School of Ch'an*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1993.

MARIO POCESKI

## DEATH

As in all religions, death is an event of monumental importance for Buddhism. From one point of view death may appear as a nonissue in Buddhism because the assumption of transmigration guarantees that death is not final. Death nevertheless reminds the Buddhist that human life is the best existence from which to pursue liberation, but it is relatively short; moreover, as an unusual reward of meritorious KARMA (ACTION), human life cannot be taken for granted as one's next REBIRTH and may not come again for a long time. Death also reminds the Buddhist that repeated rebirths do not guarantee progress toward realizing NIRVĀṆA; in fact each existence in SAṂSĀRA is difficult to control and so permeated by DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) in one form or another that it is exceedingly difficult to cease producing karma and escape. Belief in transmigration thus does not remove the sense of insecurity that accompanies death, and for that reason the goal of nirvāṇa is often described as “deathless” (*amṛta*) because it eliminates all such anxieties. The journey of the prince Siddhārtha outside the palace walls in the biographies of the Buddha similarly show the centrality of death as a religious problem: It is after seeing a corpse that Siddhārtha grows morose and troubled, setting up the next and final encounter with a mendicant who not only shows him the possibility of pursuing a spiritual life, but explains his own motivation as seeking “that most blessed state in which extinction is unknown.”

Considering the complexity of the impact death has on Buddhism, it may be helpful to approach the matter in four thematic ways: (1) in doctrine, (2) in praxis, (3) in memorializing the death of the Buddha, and (4) in funerary culture.

### Doctrinal death and mythical roots

Philosophical associations with death abound in the various credos that Buddhism has produced over the

centuries. In the early tradition, the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS define humankind's central problem as *duḥkha* and indicate how it can be overcome. But the tradition also analyzes *duḥkha* itself as fourfold: birth, aging, disease, and death. Similarly, the last of the twelve “limbs” in the PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) formula is “aging and death,” indicating the inevitable dissolution of all sentient life. Even the “three characteristics” of all conditioned existence—ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), *duḥkha*, and anātman (nonsubstantiality)—imply the centrality of death because the deepest resonance of this truth is not the desire for permanent sources of happiness, but a permanent source of our own existence.

Death itself is described in various ways throughout the canon. The DHAMMAPADA and *Suttanipāta* frame it poetically (“just as ripe fruit falls quickly from the tree” or “like a cow being led to slaughter”), but the later *nikāyas* and ABHIDHARMA literature are more analytical. Here death is explained as the cessation of the continuity of the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES), the crumbling of the body, and the ending of the *āyus* (life span) or *jīvitendriya* (faculty of living). Generally the *jīvitendriya* is the force that sustains human life through the continuous changes to the five aggregates, and is held to be of predetermined length. This is death in “due time,” and it is contrasted with “untimely” death caused by encountering unexpected circumstances, such as being murdered, being eaten by a wild animal, succumbing to illness, and so on. In the THERAVĀDA commentarial tradition, final moments of consciousness are described in some detail, when past karmic deeds or signs of such “settle” on the individual, and then a vision of one's future destiny occurs, such as the appearance of fire signifying hell, a mother's womb indicating rebirth in the human realm, or pleasure groves and divine palaces for a future in a heavenly realm. Then comes a momentary “death awareness” (*cuticitta*) followed immediately by “rebirth linking consciousness” (*paṭisandhivīññāṇa*) signifying the next life. The relationship between these two is said to be one of neither identity nor otherness; likened to an echo it is caused by previous events but not identical to them.

As the skandhas are formed from a collectivity of causes and conditions that are temporary in nature, the skandhas themselves are impermanent, constantly arising and ceasing. Death from the point of view of this “momentariness” doctrine is in fact something that recurs moment after moment. In this and the “end of a lifetime” notions of death, how the karmic

identity continues is a key question. The dissolution of the self never means the dissolution of karma.

Some schools speak of four stages of life: birth, the period between birth and death, death, and the period between death and rebirth. According to the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA and Yogācāra literature, one explanation of this process is that in the presence of a life span the *jīvitendriya* holds onto bodily warmth and consciousness symbiotically and unceasingly until the “due time.” At that point all three—life, warmth, and consciousness—abandon the body and death ensues, described as akin to throwing off a piece of wood, whereupon karma forces the three to seek another body. Here it would seem that the physical body is something other than these three animating functions and that only in combination is a finite lifetime produced. Another doctrine posits the *antarābhava*, an INTERMEDIATE STATE between death and the next life wherein one is transformed into an entity called a *gandharva*, originally a semidivine being associated with fertility and the god Soma in pre-Buddhist Indian myths. Possessing subtle versions of all five aggregates reflective of one’s next birth, for most people in this state some perception is possible but willpower is limited to finding an appropriate womb to descend into, and the common view gives the *gandharva* forty-nine days to accomplish this task. Advanced practitioners known as *nonreturners*, however, can attain nirvāṇa from this state. This conception was readily accepted into the MAHĀYĀNA, where it gave rise to a variety of beliefs and practices designed to help the recently deceased alter their destined rebirth.

The gods Yama and MĀRA reflect another mythical aspect of the Buddhist concept of death. Son of a *gandharva*, Yama is depicted in the *R̥g Veda* as the first mortal; deciding to remain among the dead, Yama becomes the lord of that realm. In the *Atharva Veda* he acquires a messenger, Mṛtyu, who later appears in the KĀLACAKRA as death lurking within the body of sentient beings. Otherwise, King Yama’s role is generally restricted to the unseen world of the dead, where he becomes the judge before whom the deceased must stand to receive karmic sentencing to determine their status in the next birth. Yama is thus a negative symbol of saṃsāra itself, and he can be seen holding the six-realm wheel of life in the VAJRAYĀNA, which also includes a deity, Yamāntaka, who represents his defeat. If Buddhists fear Yama in the next world, they fear Māra, also called the “king of death” (*Suttanipāta*), in this one. From his attempts to dissuade the bodhisattva from attaining enlightenment via the enticement of

lust and the fear of attack, Māra symbolizes personal death, the death of Buddhism as a religion, and the evils of destruction and uncontrolled desire. Derived from a verb meaning to die or kill (*mṛ*), there are various forms of Māra, residing within the aggregates, in the *kleśas* (defilements), in one of the heavens of the desire-realm (*kāmaloka*), and so on. Although in one sense Māra is death itself, he is most commonly depicted as a deity who is resentful of the dharma and devoted to hindering the spiritual progress of the practitioner.

### Death as a theme of praxis

Meditations on death run throughout the Buddhist tradition. This comes from the fact that the Buddha identified death as the ultimate and therefore most potentially instructive form of *duḥkha*. Death as a theme in focused RITUAL or MEDITATION is similarly called the key to the “gate of deathlessness.” From very early there have been two famous forms of death-praxis, known as *death-mindfulness* (*maraṇasmṛti*) and *meditation on pollution* (*aśubhabhāvanā*). These are mentioned in various places in the Pāli canon, but their fullest descriptions are found in the *Visuddhimagga* by BUDDHAGHOSA.

Mindfulness of death is aimed at fostering existential acceptance of the reality of death and allowing that realization to influence one’s life fully. The Buddha was appalled at how common it was for people to go through life as if they were not going to die, and this form of meditation uses eight topics for the practitioner to contemplate:

1. death as executioner,
2. death as ruinous of all forms of happiness and success,
3. death as inevitable for everyone regardless of their power,
4. death as coming about by an infinite number of causes,
5. death as close at hand,
6. death as signless, or coming without warning signs,
7. death as the end of a life span that is in fact short,
8. death as a constant in life.

This practice aims at liberating individuals from natural attachments to their own existence, and thus leads

to mindfulness of the three marks of existence: *anitya*, *duḥkha*, and *anātman*.

Meditation on pollution is similarly aimed at deepening one's acceptance of the reality of death, but in this practice the point is driven home by actually going to look at decaying human corpses. As described in the *Suttanipāta* (202–203), when the practitioner sees the corpse, he “sees the body as it (really) is” and thinks, “As is this (body of mine), so is that (corpse); as is that, so is this.” Statements like this express one strain in Buddhist thought that regards the body as essentially foul and not the locale of one's identity. But despite one's proximity to corpses in various degrees of decay—a remarkably bold concept considering the contagious nature of pollution in Hinduism—Buddhaghosa tells us that ultimately the meditator comes away from this exercise feeling not angst but joy because now that he has accepted the reality of death, he knows he is on the path to defeat it. In Thailand this meditation is often performed at morgues.

Belief that one's state of mind at the moment of death not only passively reflects but can actively influence what happens after death led to the corresponding belief that the true purpose of all praxis is preparation for that final moment. For example, the *Dantabhūmi-sutta* points to this final “act of time” (*kālakriyā*) as something “tamed” or “untamed.”

In East Asia, a variation of death-mindfulness is the use of death as an existential *KŌAN* in the CHAN SCHOOL. This is apparent in the charismatic Chinese teacher YANSHOU (904–975), who believed that suicide “reciprocated the kindness of the dharma” if done with the proper state of mind. He saw this as a way to actualize the perfection of giving (*dānapāramitā*) and thereby attain enlightenment. Yanshou reflects Buddhist ambivalence about suicide, manifesting the principle that one's life is only a tool that can be manipulated or even given away when necessary. Death also shows up prominently in the rhetoric of Japanese Zen during the Tokugawa period (1603–1868). Suzuki Shōsan (1579–1655), for example, was motivated to pursue Zen practice by an obsession with death, and he felt grateful to death for having deepened his practice. The great Rinzai teacher HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768) is famous for teaching the imperative of an explosive spiritual breakthrough he called the “great death.” In a similar vein, Shidō Bunan (1603–1676) wrote:

Die while alive, and be completely dead,  
Then do whatever you will, all is good.

About which the modern Zen master Shibayama Zenkei (1894–1974) comments, “The aim of Zen training is to die while alive, that is, to actually become the self of no-mind, and no-form, and then to revive as the True Self of no-mind and no-form” (p. 46). In this form of spiritual death, one's known identity is dissolved, rather abruptly according to Hakuin, yielding a new, more genuine self untainted by discursive, judgmental thinking and totally free to think and act as one pleases.

### Memorializing the death of the Buddha

The *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta* (DN 2:140–142) describes in some detail the circumstances of the Buddha's passing, how he viewed his upcoming death, and how his body was treated afterward. Despite his admonition against attaching value to his corpse—“What is there in seeing this wretched body? Whoever sees dharma, sees me.”—the Buddha instructed his attendant ĀNANDA to give him a funeral like a “king of kings,” explained as wrapping the body in five hundred layers of cloth, placing it inside an iron vessel, and then burning it on a funeral pyre. He also authorized the building of one STŪPA at a crossroads to house his remains, extolling the welfare it would bring believers who visited and paid their respects. But even this bow to relic worship was not enough: There was such a clamoring for his *śarīra* (relics) by the eight kings of the region that all were given portions after the cremation, leading initially to the construction of eight stūpas containing them, with two more later erected that enshrined the bowl used to collect the relics and the ashes from the pyre. The sūtra also promises rebirth in heaven for anyone who makes PILGRIMAGE “with hearts of reverence” to four sites memorializing the Buddha's historical presence—where he was born, achieved enlightenment, delivered his first sermon, and passed away.

The sūtra is probably only canonizing pilgrimage routes that began immediately after the Buddha's death. Stūpa worship increased during the third century B.C.E. under King AŚOKA, who is said to have opened up the original ten stūpas and distributed the relics therein among eighty-four thousand new stūpas built throughout the land. Images of the Buddha also served as public memorials to the founder after his death, though they appear in mass quantities somewhat later. Their similarity to stūpas in this regard can be seen in the fact that both often contain relics, symbols of their animation. Stūpas and images thus became symbols of the corporeal presence of the Buddha

and his enlightened followers; at times they evolved into mausoleums of architectural sophistication, as at the great stūpa complex at SĀNCĪ in central India where the relics of ŚĀRIPUTRA and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA are said to be enshrined and where BUDDHA IMAGES from Mathurā were brought in. Relics for the consecrations of stūpas and images were exported to other Buddhist nations such as Sri Lanka and China, allowing a physical “presence” of the Buddha in death over an expanded area that could not have taken place while he was alive.

One oddity within the *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta* is how the narrative deals with the paradox of a buddha dying when he himself professed his ability to continue living until the end of the kalpa. The Tathāgata relates to ĀNANDA how Māra has repeatedly appeared before him and requested that he relent and die on the spot, but he has consistently found excuses to put him off. This time, however, he has decided to go ahead and let his time run out. Almost akin to a pronouncement of suicide, the sūtra reads, “And now, Ānanda, the Tathāgata has today at Chāpāla’s shrine consciously and deliberately rejected the rest of his allotted time” (5:37). Ānanda swiftly responds by beseeching the Buddha three times to remain in the world, living until the end of the kalpa, but each time the Buddha refuses. He then describes no less than sixteen previous occasions when he remarked to Ānanda how much he liked a particular place and could remain there for the duration of the kalpa, hinting that Ānanda should ask him to do so. But each time Ānanda did not understand, and the Buddha now explains that without such an outside request, he is powerless to alter his historical fate. To beseech the Buddha now as he approaches death is too late: “The time for making such a request is past.” Ānanda’s dim-wittedness is thus made the scapegoat for humankind having to suffer century upon century without a buddha.

### Funerary culture

Putting aside the death of the founder, which has unique historical significance, it may be useful in considering the various ways in which the living relate to the dead in Buddhist cultures throughout Asia to divide such expression into the care and treatment of the *uncommon dead*, the *common dead*, and the *unknown dead*. Under the rubric of uncommon dead, would be saints, kings, and lesser religious and political leaders who are typically memorialized in ways that manifest their power and influence. Relations between the common dead and the living is typically dominated by

familial concerns regarding how kinfolk can assist the recently deceased in their postmortem “journey,” and the flip side of this relationship, which is how the dead can either enhance or disrupt the lives of the living depending on how appropriately such assistance is rendered. The unknown dead appear most commonly in pious efforts to help all beings born in the lower realms of hell and what are usually referred to as *hungry ghosts*. In all cases, the care and treatment of corpses naturally reflect different attitudes about the expected relationship between the deceased and those left behind.

Two universal principles are often evident in all three categories of funerary culture. First is that in every society in Asia that may be considered traditionally Buddhist, indigenous belief structures regarding the dead that were operative before the assimilation of Buddhism persist and form an integral part of that assimilation. This has resulted in a hybridization of funerary practices under the guise of Buddhist rituals and rhetoric. Within each nation there is considerable diversity in how the dead are treated, and these differences in local culture expose any notion of ethnic homogeneity as political myth. This is particularly true in the care and treatment of the common dead, where the Buddhist input into that amalgam varies widely. There has been easy acceptance of the doctrine of transmigration in Tibet, for example. By contrast, in China deep traditions of family obligations beyond the grave have meant less than full acceptance of the presumption that each rebirth places the individual into a new family wherein the previous family is completely forgotten. It was thus normative in China to use the surname of the Buddha upon taking the tonsure, signifying a public shift of filial affiliation to the SAṄGHA.

Monks are intimately connected with funerary culture in all Buddhist countries, usually in ways that combine Buddhist and non-Buddhist beliefs about death, and it has been common for monasteries to derive significant revenue from related activities such as cremation, burial, and services for the family. While cremation has been the norm in India since before the birth of Buddhism, this was not so for the rest of Asia, and although there is no scriptural demand for cremation in Buddhism, its adoption on the continent came with the dissemination of Buddhist culture. Thus did the arrival of Buddhism bring cremation as a common approach to the care and treatment of the dead in much of the Buddhist world. But burial has remained the norm in Mongolia, and in Tibet the body is brought to a mountaintop, broken up, and fed to birds. In China cremation appears to have been wide-



The funeral and cremation of a revered Korean monk. © Nathan Benn/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

spread only during the Song and Yuan dynasties and the period since the Communist revolution in 1949; here resistance stems from the ancient belief that the dead emerge in the afterlife with a kind of ethereal body that needs to be fully intact to function properly.

The second principle is that when we speak of how the dead are viewed by the living, we should recognize that they are merely one part of another reality wherein are also found a host of supernatural entities such as celestial beings, spirits, fairies, gods of one sort or another, Māra, Yama, future and past buddhas, bodhisattvas, and so forth. This other world is not separate from ours but for the most part is hidden to us. We can glimpse traces of it, however, through unorthodox states of mind experienced in meditative trance, dreams, portents, miraculous manifestations, and occasional encounters with individuals from that realm.

The *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta* defines four types of uncommon dead by identifying who deserves to be memorialized by means of building sacred stūpas over their graves: buddhas, PRATYEKABUDDHAS, śrāvakas, and righteous wheel-turning kings (cakravartin). The

sūtra states that these four groups are worthy of memorial stūpas because when a believer looks upon their grave-mound and thinks “This is the stūpa of . . .,” the heart of that person will be made calm and happy, and when that believer dies this personal experience will result in rebirth in a heavenly realm. The sūtra thus canonizes the belief that stūpas built to mark the graves of sacred historical persons will be embodied with the power to transform believing pilgrims who make contact with those stūpas such that their karmic status will be so purified that rebirth in heaven is assured. This is just one example of the fact that belief in the religious power of material expressions of the uncommon dead begins very early in Buddhism. In Mahāyāna countries, cremated remains of eminent monks were often inspected to find relics in the form of jewels or shining bone nuggets, confirming their status as bodhisattvas and prompting burial under stūpas. In China there are numerous stories of the cremated bones of saints found linked in a chain.

Many have pointed to the presence of relics in stūpas and other funerary paraphernalia as the basis of their power, and indeed relics have played a



prominent role in sanctifying not only stūpas, but monasteries, shrines, statues, and so forth. The extreme form of sanctifying the corporeal remains of a saint is to display the mummified body on an altar. This tradition was not uncommon in Mahāyāna countries, reflecting the belief that an “attained” individual leaves behind a “diamond-like” body that remains erect. This view is of a piece with the early belief that buddhas were inevitably marked with thirty-two major and eighty minor physical abnormalities, such as long ears and tongues or webbed hands and feet, stemming from the principle that spiritual achievement brought corporeal manifestations, much like the stigmata in Europe. Numerous mummified monks can still be viewed in China and Japan today, and in 2002 a deceased *rin po che* (teacher) in Mongolia was discovered in this form. We know that the drinking of lacquer, a poison that ended the saint’s life but also stiffened his joints, preceded some of these mummified deaths.

But a tomb does not need a relic to be considered sacred. In Japan, where the relics of famous monks are frequently kept on the altars of monasteries, the uncommon dead typically have multiple tombs with or without something material of the individual interred therein. For example, the fact that the body of Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582), the general who reunited the country after a hundred years of war, was never recovered did not impede the establishment of at least sixteen “empty” burial sites to honor him. While such gravesite mimes are not universal, the stūpa or pagoda, its architectural variant, did become a universal burial marker for the uncommon dead throughout Buddhist Asia. Typically these house relics of the deceased in the form of *śarīra*, bone fragments remaining after cremation. As with the Buddha, such burial edifices frequently have become both the objects of pilgrimage and centers for monastic communities.

The burial sites of the uncommon dead may also serve as focal points of sectarian identity. When this occurs, other expressions of collective identity, such as larger mausoleums and the pilgrimage routes, typically accompany it. In Japan, this pattern is particularly striking, having led to the custom of interring the common dead at the burial sites of saints, such as KŪKAI and SHINRAN, both founders of their major denominations. The recent dead are thereby thought to be purified by their proximity to the sacred dead, improving their karmic status for achieving rebirth in Tuṣita Heaven or AMITĀBHA’S Pure Land. Since family members in Japan often want the remains of their loved

ones to be kept nearby yet also desire to help them after death, what is left of the body (ashes and bits of bone after cremation, whole bones when the flesh has disappeared after an earth burial) may be divided and two graves created—one at a local cemetery, and another at the site of the saint. The Honganji branch of Shinran’s denomination has been selling spots for interment at the grave of Shinran since at least the sixteenth century, a policy that has created both revenue and a deep sense of fealty among the branch’s non-clergy members.

It should also be noted that rebirth in the Pure Land of Amitābha has slowly grown into a kind of normative objective of postmortem ritual for most of the Mahāyāna world, from Tibet to Japan, since the seventh century, cutting across a range of schools, beliefs, and sectarian identities. The rhetoric of attaining the Pure Land promises nonbacksliding status and swift progress to buddhahood, yet it also includes the imperative to postpone buddhahood in order to return to saṃsāra to help others attain a similar postmortem peace.

One of the important principles guiding relations between the dead and their deceased kin or intimates is that of merit transfer (*parivaṭṭa*, *pariṇāma*), a fundamental theme in funerary rituals devoted to raising the recently deceased to the Pure Land, for example. Adopted from earlier Brahmanic rites for the dead called *śrāddha* that elevated the status of the recently deceased from unstable ghost (preta) to divinity (deva), Buddhism similarly began with tales of ghosts who are incapable of initiating action to improve their situation. In the Theravāda text *Petavatthu*, the ghost of a deceased person may appear to someone in his or her family requesting that offerings be made to the saṅgha with the merit ritually transferred to the ghost. If the ghost is morally capable of appreciating the goodness of the act, he or she can be transformed into a deity, just as in Brahmanism.

In the Mahāyāna, the practice of merit transfer is greatly expanded, but it shares with Theravāda a presumption that the efficacy depends upon the ability of the deceased to perceive religious messages ritually sent to him or her and to appreciate their meaning. It is widely believed in Mahāyāna countries that in the intermediate state one has the potential to refuse the saṃsāric body offered and, if one can steer clear of distractions, awaken to the truth and proceed directly to nirvāṇa. The so-called TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD is meant to guide the dead when confronted with different choices as to what path to follow in that realm. Kinfolk and close friends gather repeatedly to



The funeral procession of a Tibetan monk in Darjeeling, India, 1989. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

chant sūtras and make donations to the saṅgha, producing a store of merit that is ritually transferred to the deceased.

Care of the unknown or nonkin dead typically occurs on an individual basis, such as when a pilgrim dies on the road, but there is also a famous institutional example in the Chinese GHOST FESTIVAL. Here Chinese notions of ravenous ghosts and Indian concepts of preta fused into the hungry ghost image—beings in the preta realm that are obsessed with hunger as they try to fill a large belly with a tiny mouth; the hungry ghost can never get enough to feel satisfied. Based on the indigenous *Yulanpen jing*, a ritual tradition began in the medieval period for a yearly festival to transfer merit to all beings in the preta realm by making donations to the saṅgha. This festival is still practiced throughout East Asia, and is particularly vibrant in Japan.

*See also:* Abortion; Ancestors; Buddha, Life of the; Cosmology; Ghosts and Spirits; Hells; Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra; Merit and Merit-Making; Rebirth; Relics and Relics Cults

### **Bibliography**

- Ashikaga, Ensho. "The Festival for the Spirits of the Dead in Japan." *Western Folklore* 9, no. 3 (1950): 217–228.
- Benard, Elisabeth. "The Tibetan Tantric View of Death and Afterlife." In *Death and Afterlife: Perspectives of World Religions*, ed. Hiroshi Obayashi. New York and London: Greenwood Press, 1992.
- Blum, Mark. "Stand by Your Founder: Honganji's Struggle with Funereal Orthodoxy." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 27, nos. 3–4 (2000): 180–212.
- Bond, George. "Theravāda Buddhism's Meditations on Death and the Symbolism of Initiatory Death." *History of Religions* 19 (1980): 237–258.
- Bowker, John. "Buddhism." In *The Meanings of Death*. New York and Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1991.
- Cuevas, Brian. "Predecessors and Prototypes: Towards a Conceptual History of the Buddhist Antarābhava." *Numen* 43 (1996): 263–302.
- Ebrey, Patricia. "Cremation in Sung China." *American Historical Review* 95, no. 2 (1990): 406–428.
- Gielen, Uwe P. "A Death on the Roof of the World: The Perspective of Tibetan Buddhism." In *Death and Bereavement*

- across Cultures, ed. Colin M. Parkes, Pittu Laungani, and Bill Young. London and New York: Routledge, 1997.
- Holck, Frederick, ed. *Death and Eastern Thought: Understanding Death in Eastern Religions and Philosophies*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press, 1974.
- Holt, John C. "Assisting the Dead by Venerating the Living: Merit Transfer in the Early Buddhist Tradition." *Numen* 28, no. 1 (1981): 1–28.
- Keyes, Charles. "From Death to Birth: Ritual Process and Buddhist Meanings in Northern Thailand." *Folk* (Copenhagen) 29 (1987): 181–190.
- King, Winston. "Practicing Dying: The Samurai-Zen Death Techniques of Suzuki Shosan." In *Religious Encounters with Death: Insights from the History and Anthropology of Religions*, ed. Frank Reynolds and Earl Waugh. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1976.
- Klein, Anne C. "Buddhism." In *How Different Religions View Death and Afterlife*, 2nd edition, ed. Christopher Jay Johnson and Marsha McGee. Philadelphia: Charles Press, 1991.
- Nāṇamoki Bhikkhu, trans. *The Path of Purification by Bhaddantācariya Buddhaghosa*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1975.
- Reynolds, Frank E. "Death as Threat, Death as Achievement: Buddhist Perspectives with Particular Reference to the Theravāda Tradition." In *Death and Afterlife: Perspectives of World Religions*, ed. Hiroshi Obayashi. New York and London: Greenwood Press, 1992.
- Shibayama Zenkei. *A Flower Does Not Talk*, tr. Sumiko Kudo. Rutland, VT: Charles E. Tuttle, 1970.
- Tambiah, S. J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in Northeast Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Teiser, Stephen. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1987.
- Thurman, Robert, trans. *The Tibetan Book of the Dead*. New York: Bantam, 1994.
- Wayman, Alex. "Studies in Yama and Māra." *Indo-Iranian Journal* 3, nos. 1–2 (1959): 44–131.
- Wayman, Alex. "The Religious Meaning of Concrete Death in Buddhism." In *Sens de la mort dans le Christianisme et les autres religions*, ed. Mariasusai Dhavamony. Rome: Gregorian University Press, 1982.
- Welter, Albert. "Life, Death and Enlightenment: Buddhist Ethics in a Chinese Context." In *Life Ethics in World Religions*, ed. Dawne C. McCance. Atlanta, GA: Scholars Press, 1998.
- Wijesekera, N. D. "Beliefs and Ceremonial Associated with Death in Ceylon." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (Ceylon Branch) New Series 8, no. 2 (1963): 225–244.
- Yetts, W. Perceval, "Notes on the Disposal of Buddhist Dead in China." *Journal, Royal Asiatic Society* (1911): 699–725.

MARK L. BLUM

## DECLINE OF THE DHARMA

The first of the "three marks of existence"—ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), anātman (no-self), and DUḤKHA (SUFFERING)—holds that all conditioned (that is, causally produced) phenomena are transitory. With striking consistency, most Buddhists over the centuries have believed this to imply that Buddhism itself—as a historically constructed religious tradition flowing from the life and teachings of a particular individual—must also have a finite duration. While the truth about the nature of reality (dharma) propounded by Śākyamuni and other buddhas before him is considered to be unchanging, particular expressions of that truth, and the human communities that embody them, are viewed as conditioned, and thus impermanent, phenomena. According to this widely held understanding, each buddha discovers the same truth about reality as that realized by his predecessors, and then he teaches it to a community of followers. After a certain period of time, however (commonly ranging from five hundred to five thousand years), this truth will be forgotten, thus necessitating its rediscovery by another buddha in the future.

In addition to this general assumption of transitoriness, Indian Buddhists have shared with their Jain and Hindu counterparts the idea that the present age is part of a cycle of decline. The entire cosmos, and with it the moral and spiritual capacity of human beings, is viewed as being on a downward cycle, with each succeeding generation being less spiritually adept than the last. In this context it is not surprising that Buddhists have anticipated a gradual erosion both in the quality and quantity of the transmitted teachings and in the karmic character of their practitioners. Such expectations have been recorded in a wide range of prophecies of the decline and eventual disappearance of Buddhism found in Buddhist canonical texts.

### Timetables of decline

The earliest tradition offering a specific figure for the duration of the dharma predicts that Buddhism will endure for only five hundred years. This prophecy, found in the VINAYA texts of several different ordination lineages (*nikāya*) and dating from perhaps a century or so after the Buddha's death, is generally intertwined with the claim that Buddhism would have survived for a full one thousand years were it not for the fateful decision made by Śākyamuni to ordain women as well as men. As a direct result of the pres-

ence of NUNS within the monastic community, the life span of the Buddhist teachings will be cut in half.

Early in the first millennium C.E., however, as the Buddhist community became aware that this initial figure of five hundred years had already passed, new traditions extending the life span of the dharma beyond this limit began to emerge. A 1,000-year timetable seems to have been especially popular in Sarvāstivāda circles, appearing in a wide variety of literary genres (including sūtras, VINAYA texts, and AVADĀNA tales, as well as in scholastic works) associated with this lineage. The figure of 1,000 years also appears in several MAHĀYĀNA texts, including the *Bhadrakalpika-sūtra* and a commentary on the larger *Prajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*) preserved only in Chinese (*Da zhidu lun*).

With the passage of time even this extended number proved insufficient, however, and still longer timetables were proposed. Later Mahāyāna scriptures offer figures of 1,500 years, 2,000 years, and 2,500 years, of which the latter became especially influential in East Asia. In THERAVĀDA circles a still longer timetable of 5,000 years was adopted; this timetable has been known since at least the fifth century C.E., when it appeared in BUDDHAGHOSA's commentary on the *Āṅguttaranikāya*. The figure of 5,000 years has also become standard in Tibetan Buddhism, drawn perhaps from the *Byams pa'i mdo* (\**Maitreya-sūtra*), which survives in two Tibetan translations. A slightly different figure of 5,104 years is also used by Tibetan Buddhists, calculated on the basis of an apocalyptic prophecy found in the *Kālacakra Tantra*.

According to all of these traditions, after the requisite time has elapsed Buddhism will completely disappear from this world. Only at the time of the next buddha, MAITREYA (commonly calculated at 5.6 billion, or sometimes 560 million, years from now), will the truth discovered by Śākyamuni and prior buddhas be made available again. In East Asia, however, calculations of the life span of the Buddhist religion took a different turn, based on the development of a system of three periods in the history of the dharma. According to this system, the third period in the life span of the dharma was generally described as lasting for 10,000 years—a number that implies “infinity” in East Asia. As a result, for East Asian Buddhists the life span of the dharma has been radically extended, even as this final period is described as one of decadence and decline.

### The periodization of decline

Texts predicting that the Buddhist religion will last only five hundred years do not subdivide this figure into smaller periods. With the advent of longer timetables, however, Buddhists began to identify discrete stages or periods within the overall process of decline. A wide range of periodization systems can be found in Indian Buddhist texts, ranging from two 500-year periods (in the *Mahāvibhāṣā*) to a 1,000-year period followed by a 500-year period (in the *Karuṇāpūṇḍarīka-sūtra*) to five 500-year periods (in the Chinese translation of the *Candragarbha-sūtra*). Clearly there was no consensus among Indian Buddhists on the total duration of the dharma or its periodization once the initial agreement on a 500-year life span had been left behind.

Amid this great variety, however, a twofold periodization scheme came to be widely influential in Indian Mahāyāna circles. According to this system (which seems to have been formulated early in the first millennium C.E.), after the Buddha's death there would first be a period of the true dharma (*saddharma*), followed by a period of the “semblance” or “reflection” of the true dharma (*saddharma-pratirūpaka*). During the first period, the Buddhist teachings are still available in their full form, and liberation can still be attained; during the second, at least some elements of the Buddhist repertoire remain available, but conditions for spiritual practice are far less propitious. The term *saddharma-pratirūpaka* has sometimes been wrongly translated into English as “counterfeit dharma,” a concept that does appear elsewhere in Buddhist literature, though not in the context of this two-period scheme. It is quite clear, however, that Buddhist writers viewed the period of the “reflected dharma” as a time when access to genuine Buddhist teachings was still available, albeit in a diluted and rapidly disappearing form.

The distinction between *saddharma* and *saddharma-pratirūpaka* appears to have been most useful as a conceptual bridge between the older system of five hundred years and longer systems, and as the expected duration of the dharma moved beyond 1,500 years to still longer figures, this twofold periodization system seems to have gone out of use. Though references to the *saddharma* and the *saddharma-pratirūpaka* continued to appear occasionally in other Mahāyāna texts (for example, in the LOTUS SŪTRA, where they play a prominent role), longer periodization schemes for the duration of the dharma that were formulated in India, including the 5,000-year system now used in the Theravāda world and the comparable 5,000-year system

employed in Tibet, generally proceed without reference to these terms.

In East Asia, however, these expressions played a central role in calculations of the duration of the dharma. The concepts of *saddharma* and *saddharma-pratirūpaka* appeared in China by the third century C.E., where they were translated as *zhengfa* (correct dharma) and *xiangfa* (image [or semblance] dharma), respectively, by DHARMARAKṢA (Zhu Fahu, fl. 265–309 C.E.). Combining these neatly parallel Chinese terms with a third expression, *moshi* (final age; used to translate the Sanskrit *paścimakāla*, “latter time”), subsequent generations of Chinese thinkers constructed a three-part periodization scheme consisting of the “correct dharma” (*zhengfa*), “semblance dharma” (*xiangfa*), and “final dharma” (*mofa*). This third and final period, which is unknown in Indian sources, was understood as a period when Buddhism is still known, but human spiritual capacity is at an all-time low. In China this third and final period was commonly calculated as having begun in 552 C.E.; in Japanese sources (drawing on different translated scriptures) the more common date for the onset of *mofa* (Japanese, *mappō*) is 1052. In both cases, however, it was expected to endure for the foreseeable future, a period regularly described as lasting “10,000 years and more.”

### Causes of decline

On one level, the decline and eventual disappearance of the dharma is viewed in Buddhist sources as automatic, simply resulting from the principle of the transitoriness of all conditioned things. On another level, however, Buddhists have sought to identify specific factors that may contribute to—or conversely, that may inhibit—the ongoing process of decline.

As noted above, the earliest tradition points to the presence of women in the monastic order as the critical factor in Buddhism’s early demise. Other explanations soon appeared, however, many of which point to internal causes—that is, the conduct of members of the Buddhist community themselves—as bringing about the disappearance of Buddhism. These include lack of respect toward various elements of the Buddhist tradition, lack of diligence in meditation practice, and carelessness in the transmission of the teachings. Other accounts point to sectarian divisions or the appearance of false teachings as the cause of decline. Finally, excessive monastic association with secular society also regularly appears as a contributing cause.

Other accounts, however, link the decline of the dharma to forces impinging on the Buddhist community from without. Modern secondary sources have often blamed declining Buddhist fortunes on PERSECUTIONS or foreign invasions, but when Buddhist scriptures point to external causes it is generally not persecution or conquest but excessive patronage of the Buddhist community that is blamed for its decadence and decline.

### Responses to the idea of decline

Though most Buddhists before the modern period have shared the idea that Buddhism is in the process of decline, responses to this idea have varied widely. In Sri Lanka, for example, the steady decline of the dharma spelled out in the writings of Buddhaghosa is associated with an emphasis on the importance of preserving the written teachings, and it also harmonizes well with the widespread assumption that it is no longer possible to attain arhatship in this day and age. In Tibet, by contrast, where the dharma is also expected to last for 5,000 years, there is far greater optimism about the possibilities for practice and attainment in the present age, due in part to the assumption that tantric practice offers a short-cut to enlightenment.

In East Asia the concept of *mofa* effectively overshadowed worries about the eventual disappearance of Buddhism, leading instead to a focus on the challenge of practicing Buddhism during this prolonged and decadent final age. In China concern with *mofa* appears to have peaked in the sixth and seventh centuries C.E., when it inspired such figures as Daochuo (562–645) and Shandao (613–681) to emphasize the necessity of relying on the Buddha AMITĀBHA in this difficult time. Xinxing (540–594), founder of the SANJIE JIAO (THREE STAGES SCHOOL), by contrast, held that even greater efforts were needed in order to make progress in such a decadent age. After the seventh century, attention to *mofa* appears to have receded in China, and it is of relatively little importance (except as a rhetorical flourish used in critiques of the monastic saṅgha) in most of East Asia today.

In Japan, however, *mappō* has remained a central and governing concept, above all for members of PURE LAND SCHOOLS and the NICHIREN SCHOOL. Zen Buddhists, by contrast, have often dismissed the relevance of the idea, claiming that what could be accomplished in Śākyamuni Buddha’s time is equally accessible today. Though agreeing on little else, Pure Land and Nichiren Buddhists share the idea that the age of *map-*

*pō* constitutes a new dispensation requiring an easier and more universal religious practice.

See also: **Dharma and Dharmas**

### **Bibliography**

- Chappell, David W. "Early Forebodings of the Death of Buddhism." *Numen* 27 (1980): 122–153.
- Durt, Hubert. *Problems of Chronology and Eschatology: Four Lectures on the Essay on Buddhism by Tominaga Nakamoto (1715–1746)*. Kyoto: Scuola di Studi sull'Asia Orientale, 1994.
- Hubbard, Jamie. *Absolute Delusion, Perfect Buddhahood: The Rise and Fall of a Chinese Heresy*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.
- Nattier, Jan. *Once upon a Future Time: Studies in a Buddhist Prophecy of Decline*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. "Seeking Enlightenment in the Last Age: Mappō Thought in Kamakura Buddhism." *Eastern Buddhist* 18, no. 1 (1985): 28–56 and 18, no. 2 (1985): 35–64.

JAN NATTIER

## DEQING

Hanshan Deqing, or Deqing Chengyin (1546–1623), is one of the so-called Four Eminent Monks of the Ming Dynasty, whose prolific works influenced and reflected the syncretistic trends of his days in Chinese Buddhism. Of patriarchal stature later in both the Chan and PURE LAND SCHOOLS, he advocated the combined practice of "recitation of the Buddha's name" and the "investigation of the critical phrase" (*kan huatou*) for the greater part of his missionary career. Later in his life, he grew singularly devout to Pure Land, noticeably after he founded the Fayun Chan Monastery in 1617 with the intent of re-creating the paradigmatic Pure Land community of the first patriarch HUIYUAN (334–416).

Deqing's extensive learning in Confucianism and Daoism made him a vocal and celebrated figure among literati and officials. Though the imperial favor long granted to him was interrupted when he was (possibly falsely) charged with illicitly establishing monasteries, and as a result was removed from the government-appointed abbotship of the Haiyin Monastery in 1596, his monastic status was returned to him by 1615, earning him a heightened reputation. During exile, he was

invited to serve as abbot at the fabled Caoxi site of the Sixth Patriarch of the Chan school, HUINENG, where he revitalized many of its purportedly "original" institutional traditions.

Deqing was well known in both his lectures and written works for his simultaneously harmonizing and polemical treatment of the Three Religions (Buddhism, Confucianism, and Daoism). His syncretistic agenda extended to the doctrinal reconciliation of most of the viable Buddhist schools of his days. An anthology of his works was compiled under the title *Han-shan dashi mengyou ji* (*Complete Works of the Great Master Hanshan [Written] while Roaming in a Dream*).

See also: **Chan School; Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings**

### **Bibliography**

- Hsu, Sung-peng. *A Buddhist Leader in Ming China: The Life and Thought of Han-shan Te-ch'ing*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1979.
- Wu, Pei-yi. "Spiritual Autobiography of Te-ch'ing." In *The Unfolding of Neo-Confucianism*, ed. William de Bary and the Conference on Seventeenth-Century Chinese Thought. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1975.

WILLIAM CHU

## DESIRE

In contemporary Western discourse, the complex and culture-bound term *desire* is sometimes used as an approximate equivalent for Buddhist concepts that denote different aspects of appetite, in preference to older, and more common, renderings of Asian concepts such as the passions, lust, sensual pleasure, and craving. Terms in the latter family of words have been preferred perhaps because of their association with Western notions of asceticism and abstinence.

In religious traditions with ascetic leanings the disappointments of love are seen as signs that attachment is inherently painful. But even the trite aphorism that "love always brings pain" may be seen as only a vague reference to the set of complex problems one faces when considering the psychological and philosophical relationship between satisfaction and dissatisfaction, longing and disappointment, attachment and love soured or lost.

Attempts to understand and control the longing that leads to disappointment and pain form an important dimension of ascetic and philosophical ideals in the West among the Stoics and their Christian heirs, and in several strands of Indian religious thought. Among these strands, the principle of the primacy of desire takes a particularly important place among Buddhist traditions, where it assumes the position of a canonical creed: Desire is the root of REBIRTH and suffering. In its strongest form the doctrine may state that “the world is lead by thirst (*taṇhā*), the world is dragged around by thirst; everything is under the power of this single factor, thirst” (*Suttanipāta* 1. 7. 3 *Taṇhāsutta*, vol. 1, p. 39).

The “burden” of the SKANDHAS (AGGREGATES) is defined as craving, an unquenchable “thirst that leads to repeated birth, is tied to delight and passion, desires now this now that. This is the thirst of sense desire, the thirst for existence, the thirst for cessation” (*Suttanipāta*, 3. 1. 3 *Bhārasutta*, vol. 1, p. 26).

The juxtaposition of formulas of this kind suggests that the central concept is not “desire” in its normal, restricted sense, but “desire” in the broad sense of the drive or impulse that makes us want to achieve or possess, including the drive to live on and the wish to stop the pain of living. Although the dominant theme in Buddhist traditions has been desire as sense desire, it is often presented in complementary contraposition to displeasure (hatred, animosity, disgust), and indifferent ignorance (cognitive stupor or blindness). These three modes of thinking, feeling, and acting may be summarized in the three terms: desire, disgust, and unawareness—a triad known as the “three poisons” or the fundamental *kleśas* (defiling afflictions). These three summarize or epitomize the factors that lead to suffering and REBIRTH.

*Thirst* is therefore a superordinate term that includes and signifies primarily passionate desire, but that also includes the drive to hate or repel, and the wish not to know (the drive to remain unaware). It is willful desire and passionate desire and delight, but it is also the mental act of holding on to that which is wanted (*upayūpādānā cetaso*) and the complex process of claiming possession, dwelling on something, and being inclined or predisposed to something (*adhīṭṭhānābhīnivesānusayā*; *Suttanipāta*, 3.1. 3.1 *Bhārasutta*, vol. 1, p. 26).

As the tradition shifts emphasis to either one of the fundamental *kleśas*, its understanding of desire changes in important ways. Desire as concupiscence is associ-

ated with the ascetic leanings of the monastic tradition; an emphasis on the noxious effects of disgust and displeasure is associated with the bodhisattva’s compassion and toleration for the vicissitudes of SAṂSĀRA; and, more consciously in the development of the tradition, an understanding of desire as unawareness is associated with the idea that insight liberates from craving and suffering. Thus, the famous lines from the MAHĀVASTU, “desire I know your root, you arise from conceptual representation,” is quoted by the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL as proof that the royal road to vanquishing suffering and craving is seeing through the emptiness of the constructions that underlie the objects of desire.

This particular turn in the Buddhist understanding of desire is characteristic of MAHĀYĀNA and is also expressed in more radical and paradoxical statements, such as the idea that awakening is nothing but the *kleśas* themselves. Such notions may be seen as leading naturally into the doctrinal rethinking of the body and desire in the tantric tradition, where earlier ascetic concerns with the body and the passions are transformed into new ways of turning the profane human being into the sacred body of a buddha.

*See also:* Path; Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination); Psychology

### Bibliography

Olson, Carl. *Indian Philosophers and Postmodern Thinkers: Dialogues on the Margins of Culture*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

---

## DEVADATTA

Devadatta is the paradigmatically wicked and evil personality in Buddhist tradition and literature. One scholar, Reginald Ray, calls him a “condemned saint,” pointing out the somewhat contradictory description of his personality in the canonical literature. There are various major and minor legends about Devadatta’s actions against the Buddha and the Buddhist community. He seems to fill the role of the scapegoat in Buddhist literature; all bad action condemned by Buddhist moral and monastic rules is heaped upon him. The three most serious acts leading to Devadatta’s fall into hell, described by the Buddhist commentary

*Mahāprajñāpāramitā-sāstra* (Chinese, *Dazhidu lun*; English, *The Great Perfection of Wisdom Treatise*) attributed to NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), are causing the first schism of the Buddhist order, wounding the Buddha, and killing a Buddhist nun named Utpalavarṇā.

Devadatta is the cousin of the Buddha and is said to have been his rival before the Buddha's enlightenment. Devadatta kills an elephant presented to the buddha-to-be and is beaten by the Buddha in an archery contest. Devadatta is also reported to have entered the Buddhist order with other members of the Śākya clan, where he soon achieved magical power that he used to gain the support of Ajātaśatru, the crown prince of Magadha, who finally, as a parallel crime to Devadatta's attacks on the Buddha, killed his father, Bimbisāra, and put himself on the throne of Magadha. Devadatta tried several times to assassinate the Buddha by releasing a drunken elephant to attack him, by throwing a rock at him from atop Vultures' Peak (Gṛdhrakūṭa), and by trying to scratch him with his poisoned fingernails.

The historical core of the legends surrounding Devadatta is his attempt to split the Buddhist order (*saṅghabheda*). He first tried to persuade the Buddha to transfer the leadership of the order to him under the pretext of introducing five stricter, more ascetic, rules for monks (*dhūtaguṇa*; ASCETIC PRACTICES), but the Buddha refused. Devadatta succeeded in attracting a group of followers, but they were eventually led back to the Buddha's order by the Buddha's main disciples, MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA and ŚĀRIPUTRA.

In Mahāyāna texts such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SAD-DHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), however, Devadatta is rehabilitated insofar as the Buddha prophesies that Devadatta will become a Buddha in the far future, despite his misdeeds, because he has accumulated good KARMA (ACTION) in a past existence. In their descriptions of Buddhist India, the Chinese pilgrims FAXIAN (ca. 337–418), XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), and YIJING (635–713) refer to a monastic order of Devadatta's that may have existed from the lifetime of the Buddha to the early seventh century. A careful comparison of the traditions and their contradictions, however, seems to indicate that this saṅgha of Devadatta was a recent religious group in India during the first centuries C.E. As such it refers to the earlier schismatic order ascribed to Devadatta that attempted to gain legitimation as a religious group connected to, but still separated from, the Buddhist tradition.

See also: **Disciples of the Buddha**

### Bibliography

- Deeg, Max. "The Saṅgha of Devadatta: Fiction and History of a Heresy in the Buddhist Tradition." *Journal of the International College for Advanced Buddhist Studies* 2 (1999): 183–218.
- Mukherjee, Biswadeb. *Die Überlieferung von Devadatta, dem Widersacher des Buddha, in den kanonischen Schriften*. Munich: J. Kitzinger, 1966.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.

MAX DEEG

## DGE LUGS (GELUK)

Although the place of the scholar TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419) in the formulation of the main ideas and practices of the Dge lugs (pronounced *Geluk*) tradition is clear, his role in the creation of a separate tradition is less obvious. What is clear is that Tsong kha pa, who had received his training mostly from SA SKYA (SAKYA) scholars, stressed the importance of separate monastic institutions. It is also known that he was exceptionally charismatic and made an enormous impression on his contemporaries in Tibet, where he had a large following of powerful families and highly gifted students, including Rgyal tshab (1364–1432) and Mkhas grub (1385–1438). These institutional facts, along with the power of Tsong kha pa's ideas, explain the development of the Dge lugs as a tradition claiming to represent the apex of Tibetan Buddhism. This claim is reflected in the highly loaded name (*Dge lugs pa* means "the virtuous ones") that adherents later chose to call themselves.

The beginnings were, however, quite different. During the first decades of the fifteenth century, Tsong kha pa's followers were known as *Dga' ldan pa* (the ones from the monastery of Dga' ldan) and seem to have been just one group within a tradition in which sectarian affiliations were fluid. This situation changed during the later decades of the fifteenth century. The details of this process cannot be described here, but a few relevant events must be kept in mind: the rapid increase in the size of the three monasteries around Lhasa; the creation of other large monasteries, such as Bkra shis lhun po, founded in 1445 by Dge 'dun grub (1391–1474); the move to Lhasa by Dge 'dun grub's



reincarnation, Dge 'dun rgya mtsho (1475–1542), who was recognized posthumously as the Second DALAI LAMA; and Dge 'dun rgya mtsho's construction of a large estate at 'Bras pung, the Dga' ldan pho brang, which became the seat of the Dalai Lamas. Equally relevant is the development of sectarian differences, as reflected in the acerbic critiques of Tsong kha pa by other Sa skya thinkers such as Rong ston (1367–1449) and Stag tshang (1405–d.u.).

This process was further strengthened by the political climate of the times, particularly the rise of political tensions between the groups vying for power in Tibet: the Ring pung family supported by the bka' brgyud and the Sa skya, and forces from Central Tibet supported by the Dge lugs. The next century and a half saw a veritable civil war between these two groups, which ended only in 1642 with the victory of the forces of Central Tibet supported by a Mongolian tribe, the Gushri Khan's Qoshot, and the installation of the Fifth Dalai Lama (1617–1682) as the ruler of Tibet.

The rise of the Dalai Lamas as the leaders of the Dge lugs school cannot be explored here. It is important, however, to note that originally the Dga' ldan tradition was not directed by reincarnated lamas. Its head, the Holder of the Throne of Dga' ldan, was chosen from among senior scholars, the first being Rgyal tshab and the second Mkhas grub. Gradually, however, the power of the head of the tradition was eclipsed by reincarnated lamas, who became the de facto leaders of the Dge lugs. The victory of the Fifth Dalai Lama also seems to have involved a power struggle among reincarnated lamas whose dark reflections can be seen in the myths surrounding the controversial deity, Rdo rje shugs ldan. There, the Fifth Dalai Lama's government is depicted as being responsible for the death of Gragspa Rgyal mtsham, one of the main Dge lugs lamas of that time.

The victory of the Dalai Lamas marked a decisive turn for the Dge lugs, which henceforth became the dominant tradition. Its great monasteries, particularly the three monastic seats around Lhasa, became the undisputed centers of learning in Tibet, drawing scholars from all parts of the Tibetan religious world. Even non-Dge lugs scholars would go there to receive training. The rule of the Dalai Lamas' government also ensured that the Dge lugs school could avail itself of the resources of the state. In this way, it maintained its hegemony more or less unchallenged until the invasion of Tibet by the People's Republic of China in 1950. The consequences of this tragic situation have yet

to emerge, but it is likely that the Dge lugs tradition will not find it easy to maintain its dominant position.

*See also:* **Panchen Lama; Tibet**

### **Bibliography**

- Cabezón, José Ignacio. "The Regulations of a Monastery." In *Religions of Tibet in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1997.
- Dreyfus, Georges B. J. "The Shuk-den Affair: The History and Nature of a Quarrel." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 21, no. 2 (1998): 227–270.
- Dreyfus, Georges B. J. *The Sound of Two Hands Clapping: The Education of a Tibetan Buddhist Monk*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.
- Ellingson, T. "Tibetan Monastic Constitutions: The bCa Yig." In *Reflections on Tibetan Culture: Essays in Memory of Turrell V. Wylie*, ed. Lawrence Epstein and Richard F. Sherburne. Lewiston, NY: Edwin Mellen Press, 1990.
- Gyatso, Lobsang. *Memoirs of a Tibetan Lama*, tr. Gareth Sparham. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1998.
- Tarab Tulku. *A Brief History of Tibetan Academic Degrees in Buddhist Philosophy*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Nordic Institute of Asian Studies, 2000.

GEORGES B. J. DREYFUS

## DHAMMAPADA

The *Dhammapada* (*Words of the Doctrine*) is one of the most popular texts of the THERAVĀDA canon. It is embedded in the fifth part of the Suttapiṭaka as the second text of the *Khuddakanikāya* (*Group of Small Texts*). The content of the 423 mostly gnomic verses is often only very loosely connected to Buddhism. The verses are divided into twenty-six *vaggas* (sections), such as "on the world," "on the Buddha," or "on thirst." Consequently, many parallels are also found in non-Buddhist texts, such as the *Mahābhārata*. Moreover, numerous parallel collections exist in Buddhist literature, including the *Dharmapada* in Gāndhārī of the DHARMAGUPTAKA school from Central Asia, the "Patna" *Dharmapada* of the Sāmmatīya school, and the *Udānavarga* of the (Mūla)Sarvāstivāda school.

The history of these collections and their interrelation is obscured by constant contamination and mutual borrowing of verses. The linguistic features of some verses indicate that the beginnings might reach back to a very early period. Most likely material has

been added over a long span of time. There is a voluminous commentary on the *Dhammapada* explaining the wording of individual verses and adding stories on the supposed occasion on which the Buddha is thought to have uttered a verse. The *Dhammapada* was the first Pāli text ever critically edited in Europe, by the Danish scholar Viggo Fausbøll (1821–1908) in 1855.

*See also:* **Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Burlingame, Eugene Watson, trans. *Buddhist Legends*, 3 vols. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1921.
- Carter, John Ross, and Paliwadana, Mahinda, trans. and eds. *The Dhammapada: A New English Translation*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Hinüber, Oskar von, and Norman, K. R., eds. *Dhammapada*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1994.
- Norman, K. R., trans. *The Word of the Doctrine*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 2000.
- Osier, Jean-Pierre. *Les stances de la loi*. Paris: Garnier-Flammarion, 1997.

OSKAR VON HINÜBER

## DHĀRAṆĪ

The term *dhāraṇī* refers to spells, incantations, or mnemonic codes, and literally means “to hold,” “to support,” or “to maintain.” Originating in Vedic religion, *dhāraṇī* often consist of incomprehensible combinations of syllables in Sanskrit. Buddhist *dhāraṇī* may be long or short and are usually untranslatable. *Dhāraṇī* comprise a large portion of the Buddhist CANON of scripture and most of the important Mahāyāna sūtras conclude with or include sections on *dhāraṇī*, for example the HEART SŪTRA and the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). Various types of *dhāraṇī* are mentioned in Buddhist literature, for example, mantra-*dhāraṇī*, by which a BODHISATTVA acquires charms to allay plagues, and mnemonic *dhāraṇī*, by which a bodhisattva’s memory and perception are enhanced to remember sūtras or salient points of doctrine. In some texts the word *dhāraṇī* also appears in compounds with the word *mantra*.

During the twentieth century Western scholars tried to assert a precise distinction between *dhāraṇī* and *mantra* by following the strict denotations of the terms.

Strictly speaking, *dhāraṇī* should refer to memory aids to hold, support, or protect something in the mind, while *mantra* refer to syllabic formula, spells, and incantations. However, in Buddhist hagiography monk-thaumaturges do not make these distinctions, and in Buddhist commentarial literature, monk-scholars classify *dhāraṇī* into various types but always make provision for spell-type *dhāraṇī*. Also, *dhāraṇī* collections contain many spells and procedures for their intended use by laypersons.

The sounds of *dhāraṇī* are powerful of themselves and generate merit by merely reciting them. They also function by means of the doctrine of the “transference of merit.” By chanting *dhāraṇī* one obtains merit for oneself by drawing upon the inexhaustible stores of merit possessed by buddhas, bodhisattvas, and gods for use in this world, usually for protection and to counteract problems understood to be the fruits of one’s own karma, but this power may also be used to work other kinds of miracles. Since *dhāraṇī* were later popular among tantric masters, *dhāraṇī* texts are often, perhaps misleadingly, classified as proto-tantric.

*See also:* **Language, Buddhist Philosophy of; Mantra; Merit and Merit-Making**

### Bibliography

- Chou Yi-liang. “Tantrism in China.” *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 8 (March 1945): 241–332.
- Lamotte, Étienne. “Obtenir les portes de Souvenance et de Concentration.” In *Le traité de la grande vertu de sagesse de Nāgārjuna (Mahāprajñāpāramitāśāstra)*, Vol. 4, pp. 1854–1869. Louvain, Belgium: Institut orientaliste, Université de Louvain, 1966–1976.

RICHARD D. MCBRIDE II

## DHARMA AND DHARMAS

Sanskrit uses the term *dharma* in a variety of contexts requiring a variety of translations. *Dharma* derives from the root  $\sqrt{dhr}$ ° (to hold, to maintain) and is related to the Latin *forma*. From its root meaning as “that which is established” comes such translations as law, duty, justice, religion, nature, and essential quality. Its oldest form, *dharman*, is found in the pre-Buddhist *Rgveda*, which dates to at least three thousand years ago. Thus, the Buddha must have known and used the term even before his enlightenment. At present, *dharma* is used generically for “religion,” indicating

religious beliefs and practices. THERAVĀDA Buddhism uses the Pāli variant *dhamma*; Gāndhārī Prakrit, as attested in the *Dharmapada* from Khotan (second century C.E., probably of DHARMAGUPTAKA affiliation) uses either *dhama* or *dharma*. Gāndhārī, the language(s) of the Gandhāran cultural area, including Gandhāra, Bactria, and Khotan, was the language used by the Buddhist schools in that area, such as Sarvāstivāda, Mahāsāṃghika, Dharmaguptaka, and so on. It is also the language from which most Chinese translations before the time of KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413) derive. It is the Buddhist literature of the Gandhāra region that was introduced to China during the first century B.C.E. through at least the fourth century C.E. The Chinese phonetic transliteration attests to the word *dhama*, but in canonical literature the term is almost always translated as *fa* (Japanese *hō*; Korean *pōp*). The common Chinese meaning of *fa* is law, plan, or method, but it is now vested with the full range of Buddhist meanings as well.

### The Buddhist interpretation of dharma

The traditional meaning of *dharma* can be understood as uniform norm, universal and moral order, or natural law; it also includes one's social duty and proper conduct. The Buddha understood this universal order in terms of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), an eternal law governing all elements in this conditioned world. This dharma, which was rediscovered by the Buddha, was the subject matter of his teaching; hence, *dharma* also means teaching or doctrine.

The twelve links in the chain of dependent origination are explained in the sūtras of both the Pāli *nikāyas* (divisions of the scriptural texts) and the Chinese *āgamas* ("transmission" of Buddha's word), as well as in many scholastic texts. Two links are said to be in the past: ignorance (*avidyā*), which produces formations (*saṃskāra*). The meaning of *formations* comes close to KARMA (ACTION). Eight links are in the present: consciousness (*viññāna*), producing name-and-form (*nāmarūpa*), a quasi-person, which leads to the six sensory faculties (*ṣaḍāyatana*), which lead to contact (*sparśa*) between the six sensory faculties, their objects, and the resulting six consciousnesses. This leads to feeling or experiencing (*vedanā*), which leads to craving (*tṛṣṇā*), which brings grasping (*upādāna*), which leads to becoming or existence (*bhava*). Two links are in the future: birth (*jāti*) and old age and death (*jarāmaraṇa*). This process explains the natural law that is the dharma. The PATH toward deliverance from

this process governing birth, death, and rebirth can be found in the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS.

The word *dharma* is also used for the corpus of discourses, the scriptural texts, that expound the Buddha's teaching. The practice of dharma is found in the VINAYA, the monastic instructions. The practical application of dharma, involving the rules and regulations and their sanctions, is contained in the PRĀTIMOKṢA. Each of these rules is also called *dharma*. Dharma and vinaya together constitute the teachings of the Buddha; what in the West is called *Buddhism*, the Buddhists themselves call the *Dharmavinaya*.

The Buddha, who had realized enlightenment not far from the capital of Magadha, preached his first sermon, the *Dharmacakrapravartana-sūtra* (*Turning the Wheel of Dharma*), in Sārṇāth in the Deer Park, some distance from the banks of the Ganges in Vārāṇasī or Benares. This sermon explains the path to salvation via the four noble truths. The Buddha's diagnosis sees everything as DUḤKHA (SUFFERING), which has a cause (*samudaya*), namely craving, which can be extinguished (*nirodha*) through the noble eightfold path (*mārga*):

1. Right view
2. Right intention
3. Right speech
4. Right action
5. Right livelihood
6. Right effort
7. Right mindfulness
8. Right concentration

In the sequence of the eightfold path one distinguishes the monastic practice of cultivating PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM), morality (*śīla*), and concentration (*samādhi*). Steps one and two of the path correspond to wisdom. *Prajñā* is commonly translated as wisdom, even though this is the meaning that it received in a Mahāsāṃghika milieu in northwestern India as a reaction against the Sarvāstivāda. The Sarvāstivāda sees *prajñā* as an analytical knowledge of factors, or dharmas. Steps three to five of the path correspond to morality, which purifies one's conduct. Concentration corresponds to steps seven and eight. All three practices are associated with step six. Dharma, the doctrine, may also be understood as the truth about the phenomenal world, and how to



A golden dharma wheel between two deer, representing the Buddha preaching the first sermon at the Deer Park, Sārṇāth. Sculpture at the Jo khang temple, Lhasa, Tibet. © Brian Vikander/CORBIS. Reproduced by permission.

do away with its defilements. Thus, dharma also means knowledge, freeing one from phenomenal existence. The whole process of dependent origination begins with ignorance or nescience (*avidyā*). Dharma also means morality because it contains a code of moral conduct, and it means duty because one has a duty to comply with it while striving for *NIRVĀṆA*. These interpretations of dharma join the age-old understanding of the term as natural law and social duty, but this time given a Buddhist interpretation.

Dharma is also the second of the three *JEWELS* or *REFUGES* (*triratna*)—Buddha, dharma, *SAṄGHA*. Taking this triple refuge is nowadays an essential criterion for being considered a Buddhist. The dharma is the truth and protector. The Buddha is the teacher of the dharma and becomes its personification. The disciples were advised to take the dharma as their guide after the Buddha's death. The dharma is the essence of the Buddha. Upon discovering the dharma, Śākyamuni attained buddhahood. The *saṅgha*, the monastic order, puts dharma into practice in daily life.

*MAHĀYĀNA* Buddhism explains buddhahood by distinguishing two, three, or four aspects or bodies (*kāya*).

The two bodies are the law-body (*dharmakāya*), which is the dharma, the essence of a buddha, and the material body (*rūpakāya*), the physical aspect. The law-body is a personification of the truth of the universal law. Better known is the three-body breakdown, which includes the body of enjoyment (*sambhogakāya*) or the reward-body, the body that enjoys the reward for previous meritorious conduct. It is the ideal buddha-body in the realm of the real (*DHARMADHĀTU*). An example would be *AMITĀBHA*, who made forty-eight vows while he was the bodhisattva *Dharmākara*, and he gained buddhahood in the Western Paradise of *Sukhāvātī* after a long period of practice. The transformation-body (*nirmāṇakāya*) appears as a person during his or her earthly existence, and belongs to a specific time and place; Śākyamuni, the historical Buddha, is an example of transformation-body.

The *Tripitaka*, the “three baskets” of the canon that contain the teaching, are also regarded as the teaching, the dharma. The first basket, the *sūtras*, is traditionally divided into either nine or twelve parts, based on literary form. The *Sūtrapiṭaka* is now divided into *nikāyas* or *āgamas*. The second of the three baskets

contains the vinaya. With the phase of scholastic or ABHIDHARMA Buddhism during the last centuries B.C.E. and the first centuries C.E., *abhidharma* was added as a third basket, but not all schools agreed with this classification. Even within the Sarvāstivāda there was a difference of opinion. One branch, the Vaibhāṣikas, who were active in Kashmir from the third till the middle of the seventh century C.E. and were long considered to be the orthodoxy, said that the *Abhidharmapiṭaka* was the Buddha's word. The earlier and very diverse western Sarvāstivāda groups in the Gandhāra area did not agree and considered only the sūtras to be definitive truth. These groups were called SAUTRĀNTIKA, as opposed to Vaibhāṣika, and they did not have an *Abhidharmapiṭaka*, only *abhidharma* works.

### Dharmas, or factors

The factors or constituents of the dharma, the teachings, are also called dharma(s). Such dharmas are psychophysical factors, which flow according to the natural process of dependent origination. Dharma theory explains how the human being is a flux or continuum (*santāna*), without any permanent factor or soul (*ātman*). Existing reality is called the "realm of the real" (*dharmadhātu*). Buddhism concerns itself with the phenomenal, by which existence is recognized. This phenomenal world is in constant change. Buddhism sees all phenomena as formations (*saṃskāra*), formative forces or volitions that are formed (*saṃskṛta*) by causes and conditions. Formation has an active and a passive meaning. Factors (dharmas) are formed, but sometimes at least one unformed or uncompounded factor, NIRVĀṆA, is recognized. The Sarvāstivāda, which had a tremendous influence in northwestern India and in East Asia, distinguish three unformed or uncompounded (*asaṃskṛta*) factors. Everything that is an obvious object of consciousness is a factor. A person, just like the whole of existence, is a flux, a series of impermanent factors, but sentient life has a sentient element: mind (*manas*) or consciousness. A human being is a flow of material and immaterial factors set in motion by karma and controlled by the law of dependent origination. Dharma theory explains how existence functions in the context of a human continuum. It explains its ultimate factors and it contains the possibility of stopping this continuum.

Originally Buddhism used a threefold classification of factors: (1) five SKANDHA (AGGREGATE), (2) twelve bases or sense fields (*āyatana*), and (3) eighteen elements (*dhātu*). During the last centuries B.C.E., the dharma theory developed considerably in *abhidharma*

Buddhism. The most influential dharma theory was that of the diverse Sarvāstivāda schools. Other schools either adopted most of the Sarvāstivāda dharma theory (as did the Mahīśāsaka), introduced minor changes (Dharmaguptaka), were influenced by it (Buddhaghosa in fifth-century Theravāda), reacted to it (Mahāsāṃghika, Madhyamaka), or built on it (Vijñānavāda). The Vaibhāṣikas in Kashmir inherited a fivefold classification from their Gandhāran brethren, who, after about 200 C.E., came to be called Sautrāntikas. Even among the western Sarvāstivādins there was no general agreement about the number of factors.

Nevertheless, the Sarvāstivāda branch that was most influential in Central and East Asia, in the Gandhāran part of northwestern India, and in Kashmir after the demise of the Vaibhāṣikas, was the branch that ultimately based its classification on such texts as the *Abhidharmahṛdaya* (*Heart of Scholasticism*) and on the *Aṣṭaśāstra* (*Eight Compositions*), both probably from the first century B.C.E. This branch used a fivefold classification as found in the *Pañcavastuka* (*Five Things*), which was translated in China during the second century C.E. and advocated a Buddhist version of the five elements or modes that were popular at the time. The *Aṣṭaśāstra* was revised and renamed *Jñānaprasthāna* (*Course of Knowledge*) at the end of the second century C.E. and became the central text or corpus (*śarīra*) for the Vaibhāṣikas. The *Abhidharmahṛdaya* was commented on in the *Mīśrakābhīdharmahṛdaya* (*Sundry Heart of Scholasticism*), and this text was the basis of Vasubandhu's ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA (*Storehouse of Abhidharma*), which dates to the early fifth century. The influence of the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣya*, or *Kośa*, was and is considerable. When a Tibetan text was written to instruct Khubilai's Mongol crown prince in Buddhism late in the thirteenth century, the manual was based on the *Kośa*. However, the old classification in five aggregates was never forgotten. When Skandhila, a Gandhāran living in "orthodox" Kashmir during the fifth century, composed his *Abhidharmāvatāra* (*Introduction to Scholasticism*), he classified the factors on the basis of the five aggregates or skandhas, but added the three unformed factors.

### The original threefold classification of dharmas

The earliest division of the factors was into five skandha, twelve bases or sense fields (*āyatana*), and eighteen elements (*dhātu*). The five aggregates (*skandha* means literally "bundles") divide sentient life into five psychophysical elements:

1. Form or matter (*rūpa*)
2. Feeling (*vedanā*)
3. Notions or perceptions (*saṃjñā*)
4. Formations (*saṃskāra*), also called volitions or formative forces
5. Consciousness (*viññāna*)

Aggregates two through five may be called *name* (*nāma*). *Name-and-form* is a synonym for the five aggregates, which are fundamentally impermanent. They have nothing one might consider to be a “self,” and they bring suffering, being inevitably subject to change. The first five DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA became ARHATS (saints) upon understanding the teaching of the egolessness of the aggregates. Matter has mass; it obstructs. It incorporates the four great elements: earth (hardness), water (moisture), fire (heat), air (motion). Feelings may be physical or mental, and are classified as either pleasant, unpleasant, or neutral. Notions are concepts, which are formed; one may have the concepts of color and form, for example, when seeing a green leaf. Formations are the mind in action, in which volition (*cetanā*) is central. Consciousness is the cognitive function.

The twelve bases (*āyatana*) refer to the process of cognition. *Āyatana* means “a place of entry,” namely the six sense organs or faculties (*indriya*), the six internal bases. Alternatively, *āyatana* can refer to that which enters, namely the six objects (*viṣaya*) of cognition, the six external bases. The twelve *āyatana* are: the six bases of eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind; and the six objects of color or form, sound, smell, taste, palpables, and mental or immaterial objects (the factors).

The eighteen elements are distinguished in relation to the flow of life in the three realms of existence: the realm of sensuality (*kāmadhātu*), the realm of subtle matter (*rūpadhātu*), and the immaterial realm (*ārūpadhātu*). The first twelve constitute the above twelve bases (*āyatana*), to which are added the six corresponding consciousnesses: visual consciousness through to mental consciousness.

### Sarvāstivāda dharma theory

Many Sarvāstivāda texts elaborate on dharma theory. Besides the texts already mentioned, one may add the *Dharmaskandha* (*Aggregate of Factors*) and the *Prakaraṇa* (*Treatise*). Existence is described in four categories of formed factors, totaling seventy-two fac-

tors, and one category of three unformed or unconditioned factors, thus giving seventy-five dharmas in all. The five categories are:

1. Matter (*rūpa*)
2. Thought (*citta*)
3. Thought-concomitants or mentals (*caitta*) associated with thought, arising in association with pure consciousness or mind
4. Formations dissociated from thought (*cittaviprayukta*)
5. Unformed factors (*asaṃskṛta*)

Form or matter contains eleven factors: the first five faculties and their objects, plus unmanifested form (*avijñaptirūpa*). When mental action is made manifest in physical or vocal action, it is described by the term *intimation* (*vijñapti*). When it is not externalized or made manifest, the material aspect is nonintimated, and thus unmanifested. One might understand *avijñaptirūpa* as the moral character of a person or a force of habit. It is a potential form, preserved in the physical body. Not all branches of the Sarvāstivāda school distinguished this material factor, but it appears in the *Śāriputrābhidharma*, which is said to be of Dharmaguptaka affiliation.

The second category—thought—is just the one factor of mind, or pure consciousness. In the classification of the eighteen elements, it includes the six consciousnesses, plus the mind element. It is the consciousness aggregate and also the internal mind faculty. The third category is the forty-six thought-concomitants, which are factors associated with thought. Not all adherents of the Sarvāstivāda school agreed with the existence of these factors. For example, Dharmatrāta (second century C.E.), a Dārṣṭāntika (probably a Sautrāntika who followed the long vinaya), says that these factors are only subdivisions of volition, and he denies their separate existence. Buddhadeva (first century C.E.) says that they are none other than thought itself. But the *Kośa* enumerates forty-six thought-concomitants.

Ten mental factors accompany every thought; these are the factors “of large extent” (*mahābhūmika*), that is, basic or general. They are:

1. Feeling (*vedanā*)
2. Notion (*saṃjñā*)

3. Volition (*cetanā*)
4. Contact (*sparsā*)
5. Attention (*manaskāra*)
6. DESIRE (*chanda*)
7. Inclination or aspiration (*adhimokṣa*)
8. MINDFULNESS (*smṛti*)
9. Concentration (*samādhi*)
10. Comprehension (*mati*, *prajñā*)

Ten factors accompany every wholesome thought; these are the wholesome factors of large extent (*kuśalamahābhūmika*). They are:

1. FAITH (*śraddhā*)
2. Diligence (*apramāda*)
3. Repose (*praśrabdhi*)
4. Equanimity (*upekṣa*)
5. Shame, with reference to oneself (*hrī*)
6. Aversion, with reference to other people's bad actions (*apatrāpya*)
7. Noncovetousness (*alobha*)
8. Nonmalevolence (*adveṣa*)
9. Nonviolence (*ahiṃsā*)
10. Strenuousness (*vīrya*)

Six factors accompany every defiled thought; these are the defiled factors of large extent (*kleśamahābhūmika*). They are:

1. Confusion (*moha*)
2. Negligence (*apramāda*)
3. Mental dullness (*kausīdya*)
4. Nonbelief (*āśraddhya*)
5. Sloth (*styāna*)
6. Frivolity (*auddhatya*)

Two factors accompany every unwholesome thought; these are called unwholesome factors of large extent (*akuśalamahābhūmika*). They are:

1. Shamelessness (*āhrīkyā*)
2. Lack of modesty (*anapatrāpya*)

Ten defiled factors of limited extent (*upakleśaparīttabhūmika*), which may occur at various times, are:

1. Anger (*krodha*)
2. Hypocrisy (*mraṁśa*)
3. Stinginess (*mātsarya*)
4. Envy (*īrṣyā*)
5. Ill-motivated rivalry (*pradāsa*)
6. The causing of harm (*vihimsā*)
7. Enmity (*upanāha*)
8. Deceit (*māyā*)
9. Trickery (*śāṭhya*)
10. Arrogance (*mada*)

Eight undetermined (*aniyata*) factors have variant moral implications and may accompany either a wholesome, unwholesome, or indeterminate thought. They are:

1. Initial thought (*vitarka*)
2. Discursive thought (*vicāra*)
3. Drowsiness (*middha*)
4. Remorse (*kaukrītya*)
5. Greed (*rāga*)
6. Hatred (*pratigha*)
7. Pride (*māna*)
8. DOUBT (*vicikitsā*) about the teaching

Fourteen factors are neither material nor mental and are dissociated from thought (*cittaviprayukta*). They are:

1. Acquisition (*prāpti*), a force that controls the collection of elements in an individual life-continuum, which links an acquired object with its owner
2. Dispossession (*aprāpti*), which separates an acquired object from its owner
3. Homogeneity (*sabhāgatā*)
4. Nonperception (*āsaṃjñika*), a force that leads one to the attainment of nonperception
5. Attainment of nonperception (*asaṃjñīsamāpatti*), which is produced by the effort to enter trance after having stopped perceptions

6. Attainment of cessation (of notions and feeling, *nirodhasamāpatti*), the highest state of trance
7. Life force (*jīvitendriya*)
8. Birth or origination (*jāti*)
9. Duration (*sthitī*)
10. Old age or decay (*jarā*)
11. Impermanence or extinction (*anityatā*)

The last three factors are the characteristics of a conditioned factor:

12. Force imparting meaning to letters (*vyāñjanakāya*)
13. Force imparting meaning to words (*nāmakāya*)
14. Force imparting meaning to phrases (*pādakāya*)

Finally, there are three unformed factors. They are:

1. Space (*ākāśa*)
2. Extinction through discernment (*pratisamkhyānirodha*), namely through comprehension of the truths and separation from impure factors
3. Extinction not through discernment (*apratīsamkhyānirodha*), owing to a lack of a productive cause

Some Sautrāntikas asserted that these factors are not real. They count forty-three factors. All factors exist in all three time periods of past, present, future. This belief explains the term *Sarvāstivāda*, which means “the teaching that all exists.” The Mahīśāsakas, who split from the Sarvāstivāda, supported the Sarvāstivāda in this thesis.

A general classification of all factors could be: (1) impure (*sāsrava*) factors, chiefly influenced by ignorance, and (2) pure (*anāsrava*) factors, tending toward appeasement under the influence of wisdom.

### **Theravāda dhamma theory**

The Theravāda *dhamma* theory is outlined in the school’s *Abhidhammapiṭaka*, primarily in the *Dhammasaṅgaṇi* (*Enumeration of Dhammas*) and in the *Dhātukathā* (*Discussion of Elements*). The ethical classification of *dhammas* as wholesome, unwholesome, and neutral (*avyākata*) is central. The last category has four divisions:

1. Resultant consciousness or thinking (*vipākacitta*)
2. Functional consciousness (*kriyācitta*)
3. Matter
4. The unconditioned factor *nibbāna* (nirvāṇa)

Some factors are not found in the traditional three-fold classification. For example, matter contains the faculty “femininity” (*itthindriya*). The final Theravāda *dhamma* theory is found in manuals dating from the fifth century on. Knowing that they belong to the Sthaviravāda group, it is not surprising that there is Sarvāstivāda (Sautrāntika) influence. Buddhādatta, a fifth-century contemporary of Skandhila, makes a fourfold classification in his *Abhidhammāvatāra* (*Introduction to Scholasticism*): form, thought, mentals, *nibbāna*. BUDDHAGHOSA, in the fifth century, defines factors as “those which maintain their own specific nature,” while Buddhādatta says factors possess specific and general characteristics. Theravāda typically uses a classification of 170 factors and four categories, but there are other classifications, such as eighty-one conditioned factors (matter 28, thought 1, mental 52) and one unconditioned factor, *nibbāna*.

### **Analysis of dharmas in the Madhyamaka school**

The MAHĀSĀMĀGHKA SCHOOL, rival of the Sarvāstivāda ever since the first schism, multiplied the number of unconditioned factors, even adding dependent origination itself to the list. One Mahāsāṃghika subschool, the Prajñaptivāda, taught that conditioned factors are only denominations (*prajñapti*) and the twelve bases are the products of the aggregates, the only real entities. Another subschool, the Lokottaravāda, held that only the unconditioned factors are real. The ideas of the Mahāyāna MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL may have started within the Mahāsāṃghika milieu in northwestern India, in opposition to the dominant Sarvāstivāda school. The Madhyamaka school itself was organized in southern India (Āndhra) around 200 C.E., at the same time that the Vaibhāṣikas were organizing in Kashmir to the north. The Madhyamaka school rejected the reality of any factor and claimed that all conceptual thinking was empty (*śūnya*). The real is devoid of thought-construction (*vikalpa*) and can be realized only through nondual wisdom (*prajñā*). NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.) interpreted the law of dependent origination to mean relativity or ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS). According to Nāgārjuna, nothing is real when taken separately. He was not interested in



delineating the number of factors or in constructing any classification schemata, but he was interested in the inherent nature of factors (*dharmatā*). Existence is only valid from a conventional (*saṃvṛti*) point of view, but it is not valid when viewed from the standpoint of absolute (*paramārtha*) truth.

### Vijñānavāda dharma theory

The Vijñānavāda or YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL agrees with Madhyamaka that all is empty, but posits that consciousness is real. Vijñānavāda postulates a kind of subconscious, called the *storehouse consciousness* (ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA). Phenomenal existence is the illusory projection of that storehouse consciousness. Every factor stored in the *ālayavijñāna* is a seed (*bīja*), a Sautrāntika term. One should do away with tainted seeds and develop untainted seeds. The school also distinguishes a consciousness called mind (*manas*), which clings to the idea of self. In East Asia this school is called the FAXIANG SCHOOL (Sanskrit, *dharmākāra*) or “characteristics of dharmas.” *Dharma* here refers to the hundred factors this school distinguishes, elaborating on the Sarvāstivāda classification. What became the East Asian variety of Yogācāra was first taught in Nālandā by Dharmapāla (439–507) and taken to China by XUANZANG in 645. It claims that the specific nature of a factor is distinct from its specific mode. Their one hundred factors are:

1. Eight thought factors, namely the eight consciousnesses
2. Fifty-one associated mental factors (5 universal, 5 limited, 11 wholesome, 6 defiled, 20 secondary defilements, and 4 indeterminate)
3. Eleven matter factors
4. Twenty-four dissociated factors
5. Six unconditioned factors

Most important is the eighth consciousness, the storehouse consciousness, which stores the seeds of all potential manifestations.

See also: Āgama/Nikāya; Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies; Consciousness, Theories of; Cosmology; Psychology; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

Chatterjee, Ashok Kumar. *The Yogācāra Idealism*, 2nd edition, 2nd reprint. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1999.

Frauwallner, Erich. *Studies in Abhidharma Literature and the Origins of Buddhist Philosophical Systems*, tr. Sophie F. Kidd. New York: State University of New York Press, 1995.

Hirakawa, Akira. “The Meaning of ‘Dharma’ and ‘Abhidharma.’” In *Indianisme et Bouddhisme: Mélanges offerts à Mgr. Étienne Lamotte*. Louvain, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste de Louvain, Peeters Press, 1980.

Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śāka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium: Peeters Press, 1988.

La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*, 4 vols., tr. Leo M. Pruden. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.

Masuda, Jiryo. “Origin and Doctrines of Early Indian Buddhist Schools.” *Asia Major* 2 (1925): 1–78.

Mizuno, Kogen. *Essentials of Buddhism: Basic Terminology and Concepts of Buddhist Philosophy and Practice*. Tokyo: Kosei, 1996.

Ñyāṇatiloka Mahathera. *Guide through the Abhidhamma Piṭaka*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1983.

Potter, Karl H., ed. *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, Vol. 7: *Abhidharma Buddhism to 150 A.D.* Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1998.

Potter, Karl H., ed. *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, Vol. 8: *Buddhist Philosophy from 100 to 350 A.D.* Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1999.

Rhys Davids, Caroline A. F. *A Buddhist Manual of Psychological Ethics: Dhammasaṅgaṇi*, 3rd edition. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1997.

Skorupski, Tadeusz. “Buddhist Dharma and Dharmas.” In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

Stcherbatsky, Theodore. *The Central Conception of Buddhism and the Meaning of the Word ‘Dharma,’* 2nd Indian reprint. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1974.

Takakusu Junjiro. *The Essentials of Buddhist Philosophy*, 3rd edition, 3rd reprint. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1998.

CHARLES WILLEMEN

## DHARMADHĀTU

*Dharmadhātu*, composed of dharma (law, principle, or reality) and *dhātu* (realm or element), is translated literally as “realm of reality.” It generally refers to all things that can be perceived with the sense faculties. It also refers to the physical universe, of which time, space, and all living beings are constituent elements. In the HUAYAN SCHOOL of Buddhism, *dharmadhātu* is identified with the “Thusness” (reality) of the Bud-

dha. The fourfold *dharmadhātu* outlined in the Huayan school consists of (1) the world of phenomena, (2) the world of principle, (3) the world of principle and phenomena united in harmony, and (4) the world of all phenomena interwoven or identified in perfect harmony.

See also: **Huayan Jing**

CHI-CHIANG HUANG

## DHARMAGUPTAKA

The term *Dharmaguptaka* means “those affiliated with the teacher Dharmagupta.” The Dharmaguptaka mainstream Indian Buddhist school, a subschool of the Sthavira branch, is attested by inscriptions in the northwestern region of the Indian subcontinent. The Dharmaguptakas possessed their own monastic disciplinary code (VINAYA) and shared many doctrinal views attributed to the Vibhajyavādins.

See also: **Mainstream Buddhist Schools**

COLLETT COX

## DHARMAKĪRTI

The Indian thinker Dharmakīrti (ca. 600–670 C.E.), whose biographical details remain obscure, responded to the works of his predecessor DIGNĀGA (ca. 480–540 C.E.) to establish the basic theories of Buddhist LOGIC. In doing so, Dharmakīrti sought to explain how we can obtain completely certain, indubitable knowledge.

The *Pramāṇavārttika* (*Commentary on Reliable Knowledge*), Dharmakīrti’s best-known work, ostensibly comments on Dignāga’s *Pramāṇasamuccaya* (*Compendium on Reliable Knowledge*), but Dharmakīrti actually revises Dignāga’s theories in order to close gaps that prevent certainty. Concerning perception, Dignāga appeared to allow that a raw sense-datum—the uninterpreted phenomenal content of a perception—could never be erroneous, even in the case of perceptual illusion. Seeing that this renders all perception fallible, Dharmakīrti maintains that a reliable perception must involve a strict and regular causal relation between the perception and its object. This emphasis on causality reflects Dharmakīrti’s innova-

tive application of *telic efficacy* (*arthakriyā*) as the criterion for reality and, by extension, for all reliable knowledge. In brief, only causally efficient entities are real, and if knowledge is reliable, it must direct one to an object that has the causal capacity to accomplish one’s goal. An important corollary is the claim that, to be causally efficient, a real thing can exist for only an instant.

Another crucial innovation comes in response to Dignāga’s theory of inference, according to which the inductive process of determining the relation between evidence (such as smoke) and what it indicates (such as fire) is apparently fallible. Seeking certainty, Dharmakīrti argues for a “relation in essence” between evidence and what it proves. Inference thereby becomes immune to doubt, but at the cost of an inflexible appeal to definitions (smoke, for example, is by definition that which comes from fire).

Dharmakīrti’s epistemic and logical theories were eventually adopted by most Indian Buddhist thinkers, and among Tibetan Buddhists, the *Pramāṇavārttika* is still the subject of extensive study and debate. In particular, the monastic curriculum of the DGE LUGS (GELUK) school places considerable emphasis on Dharmakīrti’s Buddhist logic.

See also: **Yogācāra School**

### Bibliography

- Dreyfus, Georges B. *Recognizing Reality: Dharmakīrti’s Philosophy and Its Tibetan Interpretations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1997.
- Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Scripture, Logic, Language: Essays on Dharmakīrti and His Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.

JOHN DUNNE

## DHARMARAKṢA

Dharmarakṣa (Chinese, Zhu Fahu; ca. 233–310 C.E.) was one of the most prolific translators of Indian Buddhist texts into Chinese. According to traditional biographies, Dharmarakṣa was a descendant of the Yuezhi, a Central Asian people whose precise ethnicity and native language are still debated. He was born at DUNHUANG, a military colony and mercantile hub in the westernmost reach of the Chinese empire. Although his family is said to have lived at Dunhuang for generations, Dharmarakṣa is the first mention of

Buddhism in this region. He became a novice monk at an early age, studying with an Indian teacher while developing his skills in Chinese. His translation career began in 266 and continued for more than forty years, resulting in the translation of over 150 Buddhist texts into Chinese. He was assisted in his endeavors by a considerable number of Indian, Central Asian, and Chinese collaborators—some monks, some laymen—the most prominent of whom was Nie Chengyuan, a Chinese *upāsaka* with whom Dharmarakṣa worked in the northern Chinese city of Chang’an.

Dharmarakṣa translated a number of mainstream Buddhist works, but his most notable contributions are his translations of Mahāyāna texts, including such large and well-known sūtras as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), the *Guangzan jing* (*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra*; *Perfection of Wisdom in 25,000 Lines*), and the *Xianjie jing* (*Bhadrakalpika-sūtra*; *Scripture on the Fortunate Aeon*). Dharmarakṣa died at the age of seventy-eight amidst the social and political chaos that marked northern China at the beginning of the fourth century. His translations laid the foundation for the textual exegesis and doctrinal developments of the fourth century, epitomized in the work of the monk DAO’AN (312–385). In the early fifth century, many of Dharmarakṣa’s translations were superseded by the retranslations of the Kuchean monk KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413).

See also: China; Mahāyāna; Prajñāpāramitā Literature

### Bibliography

Boucher, Daniel. “Gāndhārī and the Early Chinese Buddhist Translations Reconsidered: The Case of the Saddharmapuṇḍarikāsūtra.” *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 118.4 (1998): 471–506.

Tsukamoto Zenryū. *A History of Early Chinese Buddhism. From Its Introduction to the Death of Hui-yüan*, Vol. 1, tr. Leon Hurvitz. Tokyo: Kodansha International Ltd., 1985.

DANIEL BOUCHER

## DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE)

Dhyāna (Pāli, *jhāna*) is a trance state experienced through particular meditative practices. According to traditional Buddhist thought, there are eight trance states. These are divided into two categories: The first four dhyānas are part of the realm of form, and the final four are part of the formless realm. The division

between the form and formless dhyānas is not absolute; the higher formless dhyānas (trance states five through eight) are themselves considered a division of the fourth dhyāna belonging to the realm of form. Thus, the eight dhyānas form a continuous hierarchical structure.

The practice of mental concentration (*śamatha*; Pāli, *samatha*) is the condition for the meditative experience of these trance states. As mental concentration increases, the practitioner gains entry to increasingly higher levels of absorption. This progression is a process of stilling or calming mental states and achieving the joy of tranquility and peace. In the fourth dhyāna all sensations are extinguished, resulting in a state of equanimity. The attainment of the fourth dhyāna gives access to the four formless dhyānas, the states of infinite space, infinite consciousness, nothingness, and neither-perception-nor-nonperception. The fourth dhyāna, characterized by equanimity and one-pointedness, also gives rise to a set of supernatural powers, including the power to know one’s former lifetimes.

The experience of trance states is not viewed as an end in itself, but rather a means to the final goal of NIRVĀṆA. The levels of dhyāna are categorized as conditioned and impermanent and thus ultimately unsatisfactory. The experience of absorptions are temporary; they last only for as long as the mind remains concentrated. When concentration ends, the unwholesome qualities of the mind return and the blissful feelings experienced in the first four dhyānas cease. For these reasons, the experience of trance states is to be joined to the cultivation of PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM; Pāli, *paññā*). The mental transformation accomplished through the experience of the dhyānas prepares the mind for training in wisdom and the specific practices of the cultivation of insight, *vipāśyanā* (Pāli, *vipassanā*). Concentration can also be pursued together with insight as each absorption is experienced and then transcended when it is analyzed as impermanent.

There is a parallel between dhyāna as interiorized meditative states and as cosmological heavenly realms. The first four dhyānas correspond to the seventeen HEAVENS of the realm of form, resting above the lower heavens of the realms of desire. The four higher dhyānas correspond to the four levels of the formless heavens, the uppermost realm of the cosmos. Dhyānas can therefore be experienced for temporary periods through meditative concentration or for longer durations through REBIRTH into one of the form or formless heavenly realms.

Dhyāna is also defined in relation to a ninth realm higher than either the meditative or cosmological levels of absorptions. This state of the cessation of perception and sensation is attained by those who join perfected concentration and insight.

*See also:* Cosmology; Meditation; Psychology; Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)

### Bibliography

Buddhaghosa, Bhadantācariya. *The Path of Purification*, tr. Bhikkhu Nanamoli. Berkeley, CA: Shambhala, 1976.

Nyanaponika, Thera. *The Heart of Buddhist Meditation*. New York: Samuel Weiser, 1975.

Payutto, Phra Prayudh. *Buddhadhamma: Natural Laws and Values for Life*, tr. Grant A. Olson. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.

KAREN DERRIS

## DIAMOND SŪTRA

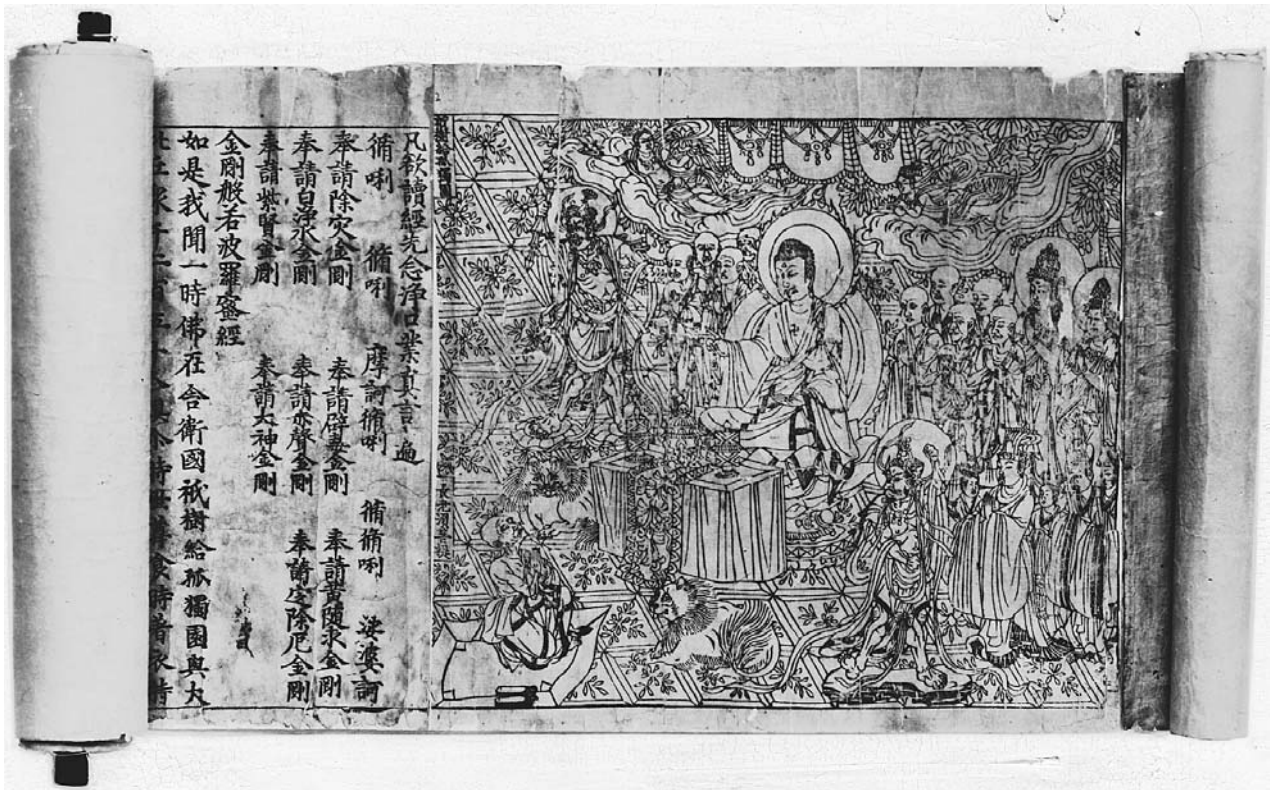
Judged by almost any conventional standard the text known as the *Diamond Sūtra* (Sanskrit, *Vajracchedikā-prajñāpāramitā-sūtra*) was, and remained, an important MAHĀYĀNA sūtra across wide geographic boundaries and over a very long time. The date of its composition in Sanskrit is uncertain. Arguments have been made for the second and fourth centuries of the common era. It was first translated into Chinese at the very beginning of the fifth century, but both VASUBANDHU and ASAṄGA, two learned Indian monks who probably lived in the fourth or fifth centuries, had already written authoritative commentaries on it, and this would seem to require that it was already an important text in their day, and had therefore been in circulation for some time. Whereas for many Mahāyāna sūtras only very recent eighteenth- and nineteenth-century Sanskrit manuscripts survive, for the *Diamond Sūtra* we have at least three much earlier manuscripts that date from the fifth to the seventh centuries and come from widely separated places. The existence of such early manuscript remains may also testify to the text's importance, and certainly reveals, when compared with later versions and translations, how the text developed and changed its shape over time.

Once translated into Chinese in the fifth century, the *Diamond Sūtra* was then translated again at least

five more times by some of the brightest luminaries of Chinese Buddhist scholasticism, and perhaps eighty or more commentaries were written on it in Chinese. The *Diamond Sūtra*, and several Indian commentaries on it, were also translated into Tibetan, and further translations, paraphrases, and developments of it survive, in whole or in part, in a wide range of Central Asian languages—Khotanese, Sogdian, Uigur, and so on. The *Diamond Sūtra* was, obviously, the focus everywhere of an enormous amount of attention in learned Buddhist circles.

The *Diamond Sūtra*, however, was not of interest only to the learned. In the practice oriented and at least rhetorically anti-intellectual schools of Chinese Chan, for example, it was also assigned an important place. In the carefully constructed religious biography of the famous, if largely legendary, sixth patriarch HUINENG, the *Diamond Sūtra* appears as the pivot of his religious life: Huineng was supposed to have been an illiterate woodcutter when he heard it being recited and it transformed his life. In fact, the recitation and copying of the *Diamond Sūtra* was in itself in many places, and at many times, a widespread religious practice undertaken for a variety of less elevated, but no less crucial purposes. Tales of the “miraculous” power of the recitation and copying of the *Diamond Sūtra* are preserved not just in Chinese and Japanese collections of “miracle tales,” but also in Tibetan and Mongolian. This clearly was a text that worked on many levels, and for a variety of different kinds of Buddhists.

The *Diamond Sūtra* is, of course, not its real name, but an abbreviation based largely on early attempts to translate its title into English. In Sanskrit it is called the *Vajracchedikā-prajñāpāramitā*. Bearing in mind that *vajra* is an almost untranslatable Sanskrit term referring to a kind of divine and dreadful weapon, like a discus or thunderbolt, and only by secondary association applied to the hard, cutting properties of a diamond, the title might be translated as “The Perfection of Wisdom [text] that Cuts like a Thunderbolt.” This title would seem to suggest several things. First the *Vajracchedikā* is classified by its title as a perfection of wisdom text, and this claim has, by and large, been accepted by modern scholarship, even though its relationship to this larger group of texts remains problematic. Almost from the beginnings of modern BUDDHIST STUDIES it was described as a succinct summary of the perfection of wisdom, but the *Vajracchedikā* makes no mention of several seemingly definitional perfection of wisdom ideas like ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) and UPĀYA (skill in means).



A scroll printed in 868 C.E., found at Dunhuang, containing the Chinese text of the *Diamond Sūtra*. The Granger Collection, New York. Reproduced by permission.

This is puzzling. Equally puzzling, and hence the enormous number of commentaries written on it, is what the text means. But the second thing the original title might suggest is that any search for meaning in this text may be fundamentally misdirected. According to its original title, the “wisdom” it refers to does not explain or describe. It cuts or shatters. This in turn might suggest that a religious text of this sort was not meant to convey ideas or doctrine, but was rather designed to affect, rearrange, or shatter established ways of seeing oneself, the world, and conventional religious practices. At one point in the text the monk Subhūti is described as bursting into tears of amazement and wonder at what the Buddha was reported to have said. This response, a rather unmonkish reaction, is apparently the anticipated response to the “message” of the text, and it is virtually certain that large numbers of those who have tried to more systematically analyze it have also been reduced to tears.

See also: Chan School; Prajñāpāramitā Literature

#### Bibliography

Conze, Edward, trans. *Buddhist Wisdom Books*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1958.

Müller, F. Max, ed. *The Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. 49: Buddhist Mahāyāna Texts, Part 2: xii–xix; 110–144. London: Oxford University Press, 1894.

Schopen, Gregory. “The Manuscript of the Vajracchedikā Found at Gilgit: An Annotated Transcription and Translation.” In *Studies in the Literature of the Great Vehicle*, ed. Luis O. Gómez and Jonathan A. Silk. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1989.

GREGORY SCHOPEN

## DIET

The correct obtaining, preparation, and consumption of food have been always been important to the SAṄGHA. The Buddha’s own religious career prior to his enlightenment, when at one point he subsisted on a single grain of rice per day, showed that liberation is not possible through extreme fasting. But equally to be avoided is attachment to the sensual pleasure of eating. Thus, food should be seen as necessary to sustain the body but as fundamentally repulsive, somewhat like unpleasant-tasting medicine. There are meditations that focus on the repulsiveness of food, and food

obtained on the begging round is often deliberately mixed together to form an unappetizing paste.

The saṅgha was intended to be dependent on the LAITY for its food, and the VINAYA stresses that monks and nuns were to eat only what was given. They were not to produce their own food, nor even to consume food that they found. The daily begging round ensured that the saṅgha was always made aware of its responsibilities to lay donors, as well as offering ample opportunities for laypeople to make merit from DĀNA (GIVING).

The vinaya and later East Asian monastic regulations also have numerous rules about how food is to be consumed in the monastery. According to the vinaya, monks and nuns should not eat solid food after noon, although in East Asia monks do take supplementary meals.

Despite the first precept against killing, a keen awareness of compassion toward animals and insects, and the consistent denigration of occupations such as butcher, hunter, or fisherman, a vegetarian diet was not required of the early saṅgha in India. In southern Asia and Tibet, meat given to monks is permitted, unless the animal was killed specifically for them. Mahāyāna sūtras such as the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA and the LAṆKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA spoke out strongly against meat eating. These texts, in combination with the precepts of the apocryphal FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA), decisively affected the monastic diet in China and Korea. Monks and nuns in those countries are strictly vegetarian. In Japan monks are extremely unlikely to be vegetarian, although there is still a tradition of Buddhist vegetarian cuisine based on Chinese recipes. In addition to meat, Chinese and Korean Buddhists also avoid the "five pungent herbs" (garlic, onions, ginger, Chinese chives, and leeks), which are thought to overstimulate the emotions and interfere with meditation.

In Chinese and Korean monasteries, everyday meals consist mostly of rice and vegetables. On festive days glutinous rice or noodles may be served in place of white rice, and the monks may receive other treats of cakes or candies. Vegetarian feasts sponsored by lay donors also feature more variety of dishes. In Japan certain temples have become associated with special types of food served on festive days. At Sanpōji in Kyoto, for example, once a year daikon (white radishes) are boiled in large vats and given to parishioners. It is said that they prevent paralysis. Steamed



A young monk prays before his meal in Mandalay, Myanmar (Burma). © Owen Franken/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

rice with citrus peel, a favorite dish of NICHIREN (1222–1282), is also served.

*See also:* Ascetic Practices; Merit and Merit-Making

### **Bibliography**

- Buswell, Robert E. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practice in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Chapple, Christopher Key. *Nonviolence to Animals, Earth, and Self in Asian Traditions*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1993.
- Mather, Richard. "The Bonze's Begging Bowl: Eating Practices in Buddhist Monasteries in Medieval India and China." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 101, no. 4 (1981): 417–424.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. "Ahiṃsā and Vegetarianism in the History of Buddhism." In *Buddhist Studies in Honour of Walpola Rahula*. London: Gordon Fraser, 1980.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.

JAMES A. BENN

## DIGNĀGA

An Indian proponent of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL about whose life little is known, Dignāga (ca. 480–540 C.E.) is renowned as the initial formulator of Buddhist LOGIC. In his most important work, *Pramāṇasamuccaya* (*Compendium on Reliable Knowledge*), Dignāga examines perception, language, and inferential reasoning. Dignāga maintains that perception is a pre-conceptual bare apprehension of real things, and that perception is therefore devoid of all conceptual activity. Language, in contrast, involves concepts, but concepts are actually fictions created through a process of “exclusion” or *apoha*. In other words, the concept *blue* appears to correspond to some real sameness that all blue things share (their *blueness*), but in fact, that sameness is a fiction constructed through excluding everything that is irrelevant. This position allows Dignāga to deny that concepts (such as *self*) correspond directly to real things in the world.

Dignāga’s views on perception and language were highly influential for subsequent Buddhists, but his greatest influence lay in his analysis of inferential reasoning. Unlike previous Indian thinkers, Dignāga keenly distinguished between the reasoning used in debate and the underlying rational structure of all inferences. Focusing on the relation between inferential evidence (such as smoke) and that which it is meant to prove (such as fire), he presented a systematic taxonomy of the cases where that relation holds or fails. This analysis supports his famed formulation of the three aspects of all valid evidence.

Although an important innovator in the history of Buddhist philosophy, Dignāga was soon superseded by DHARMAKĪRTI (ca. 600–670 C.E.), whose presentation of Buddhist logic was adopted by subsequent Buddhist thinkers in India and Tibet.

### Bibliography

- Hattori, Masaaki. *Dignāga, On Perception*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1968.
- Hayes, Richard P. *Dignāga on the Interpretation of Signs*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Kluwer, 1988.

JOHN DUNNE

## DĪPAṆKARA

The earliest lists of past buddhas consist only of six previous buddhas plus Śākyamuni, but in subsequent

centuries the list was expanded to twenty-five, beginning with a buddha known as Dīpaṅkara (Light-maker). According to relatively late Pāli works, such as the *Buddhavaṃsa* and the *Nidānakathā*, it was in the presence of Dīpaṅkara that the future Śākyamuni first made his vow to become a buddha.

Dīpaṅkara’s complete absence from the Pāli sutta literature makes it virtually certain that traditions concerning this buddha did not gain general currency until several centuries after Śākyamuni Buddha’s death. The distribution of artistic images of Dīpaṅkara—which abound in Gandhāra, but are virtually absent from other sites—points to the likelihood that the story of Dīpaṅkara was first formulated on the far fringes of northwest India. It may also be significant that the story of Dīpaṅkara related in the MAHĀVASTU (i.193ff)—a work ascribed to the Lokottaravāda branch of the MAHĀSĀṂGHĪKA SCHOOL, known to have flourished in what is today Afghanistan—is rich in narrative detail, while the account found in such THERAVĀDA sources as the *Buddhavaṃsa* (and based on it, the *Nidānakathā*) is more formulaic. Dīpaṅkara himself eventually became the subject of JĀTAKA tales relating his previous lives, preserved in medieval Theravāda texts (Derris) and in early Chinese translations (Chavannes, story no. 73).

The story of Dīpaṅkara’s prediction of the future Śākyamuni’s eventual attainment of buddhahood came to play an especially important role in MAHĀYĀNA circles, where aspiring BODHISATTVAS interpreted the story as an indication that they too must be reborn during the time of a living buddha and receive a prediction (*vyākaraṇa*) in his presence.

*See also:* Buddha(s); Buddha Images; India, Northwest

### Bibliography

- Chavannes, Edouard, trans. *Cinq cents contes et apologues extraits du tripiṭaka chinois*, 4 vols. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1910.
- Derris, Karen. “Virtue and Relationship in the Theravādin Biographies.” Ph.D. diss. Harvard University, 2000.
- Soper, Alexander. “Dīpaṅkara.” In *Literary Evidence for Early Buddhist Art in China*. Ascona, Switzerland: Artibus Asiae, 1959.

JAN NATTIER

## DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA

The disciples of the Buddha form a diverse category of human, nonhuman, and divine figures. This entry will

restrict its discussion to those presented by the Indian Buddhist tradition as personal disciples of the historical Buddha. Even so, the discussion will be selective.

Traditionally, discipleship is classified in two categories: (1) specialists, who relinquish most of their social privileges and duties and become full-time practitioners of the Buddha's teachings, who observe a number of regulatory rules (VINAYA), and who are usually described as MONKS and NUNS (*bhikṣu* and *bhikṣuṇī*); and (2) people who express faith in the Buddha, offer material support, and receive simplified teachings that emphasize generosity, and who are described as laymen and laywomen (*upāsaka* and *upāsikā*). These two categories of discipleship were open only to human beings (there is a special question in the monastic ordination intended to exclude disguised serpent deities). Nevertheless, the interaction of the Buddha with DIVINITIES is a prominent feature of his biography and an important factor in the development of the community of disciples. Key disciples of all kinds also appear as coprotagonists in stories of former lives of the Buddha (JĀTAKA), thus extending their relationship into previous lives and the distant past.

The Buddha is depicted recruiting followers from all classes of society: brahmins, kṣatriyas (warrior class), and members of the lower classes, including untouchables. He eventually admitted women as personal disciples, and he freely interacted with and taught divine beings, including Śakra (see "The Questions of Sakka" in Davids and Davids, pp. 299–321). The Buddha also interacted with practitioners of other religious traditions, in some cases acquiring them as disciples, in others failing to convert them to his following. The Buddha is also depicted in some accounts of the period after his enlightenment as visiting the heavens of Buddhist COSMOLOGY and teaching there, most famously to his mother (indicating the significance of the child–mother relationship in Buddhist culture). In most of the countries of South and Southeast Asia there are also local traditions that the Buddha magically visited, often leaving an indelible footprint as evidence of his presence, and thus initiating the transmission of Buddhism in each region through a tradition beginning with personal discipleship. Throughout history and into the modern period, many monastic traditions regard themselves as the continuing manifestation of a lineage that springs from one of the personal disciples of the Buddha.

Our knowledge of the Buddha's disciples is primarily derived from scriptural sources, and the

growth of the initial body of disciples is documented in the first part of an important VINAYA text of the THERAVĀDA tradition called the *Mahāvagga*. This text includes a fascinating account of the first of the Buddha's personal disciples. In the early weeks of his post-enlightened life, the Buddha is portrayed passing the time seated beneath various trees in the vicinity of BODH GAYĀ and gradually interacting with other beings, interactions through which his following is initiated and grows. Curiously, these interactions are not always positive or fruitful, and the text indicates that the creation of a community of disciples was not a foregone conclusion.

Significantly, the Buddha is first approached by what is described as an arrogant brahmin. They exchange greetings and in response to a question the Buddha explains the nature of true spiritual excellence. No outcome to the encounter is recorded, perhaps reflecting the ambiguous relationship that existed between the Buddhist community and the highest-ranking class in brahmanical society. The second encounter occurs during a great storm, when the king of the serpent deities, Mucalinda, reverentially winds his body around the Buddha to protect him. When the storm is over the serpent takes the form of a young man and worships the Buddha, but the Buddha does not teach him. The third encounter involves two passing merchants, Tapussa and Bhallika, who offer the Buddha food. The Buddha accepts this offering, and the merchants take refuge in him and are thus recognized as his first disciples. Significantly, they receive no teaching from him and continue with their trade. It is clear from both textual and archaeological sources that the early Buddhist community benefited enormously from recruitment among the merchant class and was spread geographically along the major trade routes of ancient India and beyond.

At this point in the account the Buddha undergoes a crisis of indecision. Reflecting on the difficulty with which he himself had achieved BODHI (AWAKENING), he thinks that it would be impossible to teach other people to do the same. He is, however, importuned by a deity called Sahampati, who convinces him through argument that some people "with little dust in their eyes" would be capable of responding to the advice the Buddha could offer, and thus the Buddha decides to teach. He begins a process of reflection on who might be suited to become a disciple. He considers previous teachers, who turn out to be dead, and finally fixes on his fellow ascetics with whom he had lived immediately before his enlightenment. He sets



out for Benares, where they still reside, and en route meets with an Ājīvaka practitioner called Upaka, who recognizes a spiritual quality in the Buddha, but given the opportunity to follow him merely says “Maybe!” and walks on. The Buddha acquires full-time disciples only after residing for some time with his five former fellow ascetics. Ājñātakaṇḍinya (Pāli, Aññātakaṇḍañña), Vāṣpa (Vappa), Bhadrīka (Bhaddiya), Mahānāman (Mahānāma), and Aśvajit (Assaji) are eventually won over by the Buddha’s presence and by his verbal teachings and, in the order just given, become his first five ordained disciples.

This development is followed by a quick expansion that begins with the conversion of a local playboy called Yaśa (Yasa), who becomes a monk. Soon Yaśa’s parents become lay followers, suggesting a pattern of family discipleship that was doubtless followed in other families where a child entered the order. Subsequently, fifty-four friends and associates of Yaśa became bhikṣus.

At this point the Buddha requires that his full-time disciples, now numbered at sixty, wander at will around the region and share his teachings. The result of this is an expansion of the monastic community that stretches the Buddha’s capacity to function as personal teacher for every recruit. Soon the Buddha allows existing disciples to ordain new recruits, and thus the circle of personal discipleship of the Buddha was understood to have been limited by geographical distance. There is no indication of how long it took to go from zero disciples to the formation of a self-sustaining community, though it must have taken many months or even years.

Although the community expanded outside the immediate control of the Buddha, he nevertheless continued to acquire personal disciples throughout his life, and the records describe the Buddha’s personal interactions with numerous individuals. Foremost among these are ĀNANDA, ŚĀRIPUTRA (Sāriputta), and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA (Moggallāna). Ānanda was a cousin of the Buddha and became his close companion or attendant for around thirty years. Ānanda’s familiarity with the Buddha’s life meant that at the first Buddhist council after the Buddha’s death, Ānanda was asked to recite all the discourses that he had ever heard the Buddha give. Thus, most sūtras, or discourses, begin with the phrase “*evaṃ mayā śrutam*” (Thus have I heard). The monk UPĀLI, a former barber who shaved all the ordinands’ heads, performed a similar role for the vinaya. Ānanda did not become an

ARHAT during the Buddha’s life and is therefore occasionally portrayed as having behaved less than perfectly. He is also depicted as the advocate of female ordination into the monastic order, a development that the Buddha apparently says will reduce the community’s duration, and it is through Ānanda’s encouragement that the Buddha finally ordains his aunt and foster mother MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ (Mahapajāpatī). It was Mahāprajāpatī who raised Siddhārtha, the Buddha-to-be, after the early death of his mother, but she was not content with the role of lay disciple. She therefore became the first *bhikṣunī*, and was recognized by the Buddha as the female disciple of longest standing. Other female disciples also achieved personal renown, including Dhammadinna, whom the Buddha described as foremost in preaching.

The Buddha’s most eminent disciples, however, were Śāriputra and Mahāmaudgalyāyana. These two were childhood friends who left home to pursue the religious life, at first together, but eventually separating on the agreement that the first to find the true way would seek out the other. After meeting Assaji and being converted by him, Śāriputra found Mahāmaudgalyāyana and together they were ordained by the Buddha, who appointed them his chief disciples. Mahāmaudgalyāyana was renowned for his meditative attainments, Śāriputra for his wisdom and analytical abilities.

The Buddha also identified those possessed of greatest meditative attainments and wisdom among his nuns, Kṣemā (Khemā) and Utpalavarṇā (Uppalavarṇā), and his laywomen, Kubjottarā (Khujjuttarā) and Uttarā (Uttarā). Among his male lay followers he identified the foremost in generosity as ANĀTHAPIṆḌADA (Anāthapiṇḍika) and the chief of dharma teachers as Citra (Citta) (Woodward, pp. 79–80). Many other disciples are singled out by the Buddha for other forms of personal excellence (Woodward, pp. 16–25), and moving samples of poetry composed by these and other of his disciples, both male and female, are recorded in two Pāli texts called the *Theragāthā* and *Therīgāthā* (Norman). The monk MAHĀKĀŚYAPA (Mahākassapa) was recognized as the foremost practitioner of asceticism; he later took control of funeral arrangements immediately after the Buddha’s death. Other important disciples include UPAGUPTA, who was especially revered among the Buddhists of Southeast Asia and became the focus of cult and ritual there, and Anāthapiṇḍada (Anāthapiṇḍika), whose name means “feeder of the destitute.” Anāthapiṇḍada, a banker and perhaps the most famous lay disciple,

bought for the Buddha at fabulous expense the famous Jetavana (Jeta's Grove) at Śrāvastī, where he had a monastery built. Texts tell of Anāthapiṇḍada's death-bed grief when he realized that the Buddha had reserved his higher teaching exclusively for his monastic followers (Horner, pp. 309ff.).

Also important was the turncoat monk and disciple, DEVADATTA, first cousin of the Buddha, who is remembered for his conspiracies to murder the Buddha and split the SAṄGHA. These are regarded as the most heinous crimes a monk can commit in relation to the saṅgha. Devadatta also attempted unsuccessfully to introduce extra requirements into the vinaya, including vegetarianism and four of the permitted asceticisms, which included wearing only rag robes and eating only begged food. Bizarrely, the Chinese pilgrim FAXIAN reported in the early fifth century C.E. that in the Buddhist homeland Devadatta still had a significant following who worshiped not Śākyamuni but the three buddhas previous to him.

Also important were the Buddha's royal disciples: Prasenajit (Pasenadi), king of Kośāla, who is credited with commissioning the first Buddha image; Bimbisāra, king of Magadha; and Bimbisāra's son Ajātaśatru (Ajātasattu), who after initially conspiring with Devadatta, became a devout disciple of the Buddha (see *Sāmaññaphala-sutta* in Davids, 1899, pp. 65ff.).

In later layers of Buddhist canonical literature a number of these disciples continue to appear as protagonists. Of particular importance is the promotion to chief interlocutor in the PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE of Subhūti, a monk and disciple noted in the *āgamas* and *nikāyas* as chief of those who dwell in the forest and, presumably thereby, also the one most worthy of offerings. Other MAHĀYĀNA sūtras and VAJRAYĀNA tantras present a host of new and presumably fictive disciples.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Councils, Buddhist**

### Bibliography

- Davids, Thomas W. Rhys, trans. *Dialogues of the Buddha*, Part 1. London: Luzac, 1899.
- Davids, Thomas W. Rhys, and Davids, Caroline A. F. Rhys, trans. *Dialogues of the Buddha*, Part 2. London: Luzac, 1910.
- Davids, Thomas W. Rhys, and Oldenberg, Hermann. *Vinaya Texts*, Part 1. Oxford: Sacred Books of the East, 1885.
- Horner, Isaline B., trans. *The Middle Length Sayings III*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1977.

Norman, Kenneth R., trans. *The Elders' Verses I and II*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1969 and 1971.

Nyānaponika Thera, and Hecker, Hellmuth. *Great Disciples of the Buddha: Their Lives, Their Works, Their Legacy*. Boston: Wisdom, 1997.

Ray, Reginald. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.

Woodward, F. L., trans. *Gradual Sayings*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1932.

ANDREW SKILTON

## DIVINITIES

From its very origins, Buddhism has recognized a wide range of divinities (*devas*, a term frequently translated as “gods”), while taking pains to emphasize that the Buddha himself is not divine, but human (*Āṅgutarānikāya*, 2.37–9). The various divinities are powerful superhuman beings who influence the world in manifold ways. Although many of these divinities have Vedic (Hindu) origins, in the early Buddhist tradition they are not considered immortal, but rather are trapped in SAṂSĀRA and thus, like all SENTIENT BEINGS, are subject to the law of KARMA (ACTION) and therefore DEATH and REBIRTH.

In the early texts of the Pāli canon, divinities inhabit several different realms. In the lower realm of desire (*kāmadhātu*), above the human realm, live the various deities and spirits, who frequently do battle with a group of jealous and mischievous deities, the *asuras* (similar to the Greek Titans). The various divinities include the four divine kings; the thirty-three gods residing in the *trāyastriṃśa* heaven, divinities incorporated from the Vedas and presided over by Śakra (INDRA); MĀRA and Yama, the gods of illusion and death; and BODHISATTVAS in their penultimate lives, including, currently, MAITREYA (Pāli, Metteya). Above the sense realm, in the realm of pure form (*rūpadhātu*), abide the pure divinities, most significantly the Great Brahmā and his ministers, and, at the very top, the *anāgāmins* (nonreturners), who live out their penultimate existence before enlightenment in this realm.

One of the most important divinities is Māra, the god of death, lust, greed, false views, delusion, and illusion. Māra is a common presence in early Buddhist texts, distracting the Buddha and, after his enlightenment, questioning his very status as an enlightened being. Although Māra is “defeated” by the Buddha, he

continues to cause trouble, and he figures prominently in later texts, iconography, and local traditions throughout the Buddhist world.

Especially active in the world are the *nāgas*, *yakṣas*, *piśācas*, and *gandharvas*, divinities generally thought to have been incorporated into Buddhism from non-Vedic, indigenous traditions. *Nāgas* (female, *nāginī*) are snakelike beings who in early texts typically live at the base of trees and are associated with both chaos and fertility. Likewise, *YAKṢAS* (Pāli, *yakkha*) are indigenous Indian tree spirits, wild, demonic, and sexually prolific beings who live in solitary places and are hostile toward people, particularly monks and nuns, whose meditation they disturb by making loud noises. Frequently, both *nāgas* and *yakṣas* are converted to Buddhism and “tamed,” becoming active, positive forces in the world and protectors of Buddhism; for instance, when the Buddha-to-be was meditating just prior to his enlightenment, it was a *nāga* who sheltered him from the elements.

The range of divinities in the Buddhist world is staggering when local traditions are taken into account. In Burma (Myanmar), such divinities are known collectively as *nats*, in Thailand as *phi*, in Sri Lanka as *yakas*; they are extremely important in popular Buddhist practice and frequently associated with kingship, since all serve as guardians of Buddhism. In Burma, for instance, there are thirty-seven official *nats* (although in practice there are many more), regarded as invisible, magical personal forces who inhabit trees, and in most villages there are small shrines in trees thought to be inhabited. These shrines, brightly decorated with colored cloth and tinsel, are tended and worshiped to ensure that the *nats* protect the village and provide prosperity, fertility, and other benefits. In Thailand, the various forms of *phi* include *phi dong*, which are the guardian spirits of the forest, the *phi puya tayai* (ancestral spirits), and the truly horrific *phi mae mai* (widow ghosts), who kill human men in their search for husbands.

In Sri Lanka, Hindu gods are frequently worshiped by Buddhists. Thus the god Kataragama, a local variant of the god Skanda, is typically regarded as a bodhisattva. Kataragama is extremely popular, to the point that the divinity’s main shrine, in the southeastern corner of the island, is probably the most popular religious site in the entire country. Buddhists (as well as Hindus, Muslims, and Christians) go to Kataragama for special requests—protection, fertility, financial success, even vengeance—and repay his favors by per-

forming a variety of penances, including body piercing, walking on hot coals, and hanging from hooks.

As the MAHĀYĀNA schools developed in both India and in East Asia, so did the pantheon of divine figures, and with this expansion the very conception of divinity also expanded. Bodhisattvas such as Mañjuśrī, Avalokiteśvara, and Maitreya become extremely important, using their skillful means actively to spread wisdom and to save beings in peril. Likewise, as the conception of the Buddha and buddhahood became more complex, the so-called celestial Buddhas (*pañcatathāgātas*) emerge, a group of five manifestations of the Buddha’s divine qualities. In the PURE LAND SCHOOLS, the cosmos is imagined as an infinite collection of world systems, each of which is a Buddha field where a fully enlightened being resides; these become divinities, with whom especially accomplished devotees can continuously interact.

Avalokiteśvara in particular becomes extremely popular in East Asia, where he is known as Guanyin in China, Kannon in Japan, and Kwanūm in Korea; in the case of Guanyin, the divinity is manifested as a female figure. The female divinity Tārā—perhaps originally a local divinity herself—also emerges as a divine savior who protects and nurtures her devotees; she is popular throughout the Mahāyāna and VAJRAYĀNA world, particularly in Nepal and Tibet. The perfection of wisdom texts (*prajñāpāramitā* sūtras) become personified in the figure of Prajñāpāramitā, wisdom incarnate, the divine “mother” of all enlightened beings.

With the rise of the Vajrayāna, the divine pantheon expands to a seemingly limitless degree, with a vast range of buddha families, bodhisattvas, goddesses, yogins, and all manner of fierce divinities. MAṄḌALAS frequently depict these buddha families and their associated divinities. Meditations and rituals focused on such divinities are too numerous to mention and are frequently intended to bring the divinity to life. In the practice of deity yoga, for instance, the meditator can bring the divinity to life in him or herself by realizing the inseparability of the self and the divinity.

In sum, the Buddhist understanding of divinities must be seen as fluid and expansive. Divine beings multiply markedly as the tradition develops. New divinities are introduced at both the local and pan-Buddhist level, and the characteristics of the various divinities also shift, with new qualities—both abstract (passive) and concrete (active)—constantly being introduced. The Buddha himself took on increasingly complex divine characteristics as the tradition devel-

oped in India and beyond, which, in turn, frequently became manifest as individual divinities, a process that continues into the present day. Consistent with the early literature that lays out Buddhism's basic cosmological view, though, in a relative sense, such beings are very real and very active in the world; in an absolute sense, however, they are ultimately only creations of our minds, useful as symbols and metaphors for the enlightenment process, but, like everything else, empty.

*See also:* **Cosmology; Folk Religion: An Overview; Ghosts and Spirits; Kūkai; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Viṣṇu**

### **Bibliography**

- Asher, Frederick M. *The Art of Eastern India, 300–800 A.D.* Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1980.
- Bhattacharyya, Benoytosh. *The Indian Buddhist Iconography.* Calcutta: Firm K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1959.
- Getty, Alice. *The Gods of Northern Buddhism: Their History and Iconography.* New York: Dover, 1988.
- Kinnard, Jacob N. *Imaging Wisdom: Seeing and Knowing in the Art of Indian Buddhism.* Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 1999.

JACOB N. KINNARD

---

## DIVYĀVADĀNA

The fourth-century C.E. Sanskrit *Divyāvadāna* (*Heavenly Exploits*) contains thirty-eight biographical narratives that celebrate the lives of paradigmatic figures in Buddhist history, authenticate local dharma traditions, and dramatize the importance of moral discipline, KARMA (ACTION), DĀNA (GIVING), and the power of faith and devotion. Many of the narratives also demonstrate the central role of storytelling, a dimension of Buddhist tradition that has only recently attracted the careful scholarly attention long accorded doctrine, history, and philosophy.

These narratives derive largely from the MŪLASAR-VĀSTIVĀDA VINAYA (twenty-one stories) and the vinayas of other Buddhist monastic schools (nine stories), but also adapt canonical sūtras (chapters 3, 17, 34). Two chapters (36, 38) reproduce the work of classical Sanskrit poets.

Among other subjects, the *Divyāvadāna* portrays the adventures of wealthy merchants who become

Buddhist monks (chapters 1, 2, 8, 35), recounts the family and religious lives of Indian kings (chapters 3, 26–29, 37), and describes the origins of the “Wheel of Life,” well known in the West from Tibetan paintings (chapter 21). Readers also find the conversion of MĀRA, the Buddhist “Satan” (chapter 26), and the love story of Sudhana and Manoharā (chapters 30, 31), and learn both what happens when a man offers his daughter to the Buddha (chapter 36) and when an outcaste woman falls in love with an eminent monk (chapter 33). The *Divyāvadāna* also includes stories about women who studied Buddhist scripture in their own homes and others who, out of love or jealousy, cast spells, blinded their own sons, or committed mass murder.

In the *Divyāvadāna*, as in other *avadānas*, scholars find a meeting of scriptural, literary, doctrinal, and social themes that informed Indian Buddhism—in short, an indispensable window on the ancient tradition.

*See also:* **Avadāna; Avadānaśataka**

### **Bibliography**

- Strong, John S., trans. *The Legend of King Aśoka.* Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Tatelman, Joel, trans. *The Glorious Deeds of Pūrṇa.* Richmond, UK: Curzon, 2000.
- Winternitz, Maurice. *A History of Indian Literature*, 2 vols., tr. S. Ketkar and H. Kohn. Calcutta: University of Calcutta Press, 1927; New Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corporation, 1977.

JOEL TATELMAN

---

**DOCTRINE.** *See* **Abhidharma; Dharma and Dharmas**

---

## DŌGEN

Dōgen (1200–1253), an early Japanese Zen figure, is regarded as the founder of the Japanese Sōtō school of Chan Buddhism (Japanese, Zen). Born to an aristocratic family, Dōgen entered the Buddhist order as a child. After studying Tiantai Buddhism (Japanese, Tendai), he became a follower of Myōzen (1184–1225), who was a disciple of Eisai (1141–1215), a prominent Japanese exponent of Zen. In 1223 Dōgen accompanied Myōzen to China, where he stayed at the Jingde

Monastery on Mount Tiantong. There, he received dharma transmission from the abbot, Tiandong Rujing (1163–1228), in the Caodong (Japanese, Sōtō) LINEAGE. Returning to Japan in 1227, Dōgen established Kōshōji, a monastery near the capital of Heian-kyō (modern Kyoto), making it one of the first Japanese institutions to introduce the Song-dynasty style of Chan monastic practice. Dōgen soon attracted a following, including monks of the so-called Daruma school, who would become the leaders of the early Sōtō community. In 1242 Dōgen left the capital area for Echizen (modern Fukui prefecture), where he founded Eiheiji (originally named Daibutsuji), the monastery that subsequently became the headquarters of one faction of the Sōtō school. Except for a brief trip to the new military capital at Kamakura in 1247, he spent his remaining years at Eiheiji, returning to Heian-kyō only in the last days of his final illness.

Dōgen was a prolific author who composed essays on Zen practice such as the *Fukan zazengi* (*Universal Promotion of the Principles of Seated Meditation*) and *Gakudō yōjinshū* (*Admonitions on the Study of the Way*); treatises on Zen monastic rules, later collected under the title *Eihei shingi* (*Eihei Rules of Purity*); a record of his study with Rujing entitled *Hōkyōki* (*Record of the Hōkyō Era*); and Japanese verse collected as *Sanshō dōei* (*Songs of the Way from Mount Sanshō*). Dōgen's teachings were collected in a ten-volume work entitled *Eihei kōroku* (*The Extended Record of Eihei*).

Among his writings, Dōgen is best known for SHŌBŌGENZŌ (*Treasury of the Eye of the True Dharma*), a collection of vernacular essays composed over many years. Modern editions contain approximately ninety-five texts, but the work has come down in several redactions, and the original form of the collection remains uncertain. Though there is some variation in genre, the majority of the essays develop their themes through comments on passages from the literature recording the teachings of the Chinese Chan masters, from which the collection takes its name. Though seemingly little studied for several centuries after their composition, the texts of the *Shōbōgenzō* became a primary source for the development of Sōtō Zen doctrine during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and the *Shōbōgenzō* has been the object of many commentaries from that time up to the present. In the twentieth century, the work became highly regarded as a classic of Japanese Buddhist thought and was much studied by scholars of philosophy, religion, intellectual history, language, and literature. The texts of the *Shōbōgenzō* have been translated several times

into modern Japanese, as well as into English and other Western languages.

*See also:* Chan School; Japan; Tiantai School

### Bibliography

Bielefeldt, Carl. *Dōgen's Manuals of Zen Meditation*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.

Bodiford, William. *Sōtō Zen in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.

CARL BIELEFELDT

## DŌKYŌ

Dōkyō (Yuge zenji, d. 772) was a powerful monk of the Hossō (Yogācāra) school who attempted to establish a Buddhist theocracy in Japan. Dōkyō is said to have spent several years performing austerities on the Katsuragi mountain range, an early seat of what would later be known as mountain religion (SHUGENDŌ). The earliest record of his presence in Buddhist circles of the Nara capital is dated 749, when he participated in a sūtra copying ceremony.

Royal instability led to a growth in the power of Buddhist institutions and monks through the mid-eighth century. Emperor Shōmu (r. 724–749) and his consort Kōmyō established Tōdaiji, which still stands today as a massive symbol of court patronage of Buddhism. When her father retired, Empress Kōken (Ae no Himemiko, 719–770) ascended the throne in 749 and attended the massive inauguration of Tōdaiji. Buddhist cultural and political power seemed to rule, and it is almost a foregone conclusion that Dōkyō witnessed these events.

Empress Kōken, however, was not married, and the absence of a male heir is probably what caused her to abdicate in 758 in favor of the imperial prince Ōi, who ascended the throne under the name Junnin. Three years later, the retired empress fell ill and Dōkyō performed rites for her recovery, marking the second time Dōkyō's name appears in historical records. He would have engaged in "secret rites of heavenly constellations" (*sukuyō hihō*), about which there are no details, although it is clear that the aristocracy's interest in this aspect of esoteric Buddhism began to rise around that time. His ministrations were deemed successful, and the retired empress came to regard Dōkyō as her personal healer (*zenji*), as well as her spiritual adviser, and

she increasingly relied on him for political direction. Rumors began to spread, however, that her relationship with Dōkyō was inappropriate. When Emperor Junnin remonstrated her, it is said that the retired empress took umbrage and granted ever more support to Dōkyō. At the same time she began to plot to remove Junnin from the throne. In 763 she appointed Dōkyō to the position of monarchical vice-rector (*shōsōzu*), a decision that caused deep resentment on the part of the chancellor at the time, Fujiwara no Nakamaro (706–764). Nakamaro attempted to place a favorite as the next in line to the throne, but he was thwarted by Dōkyō, who had him exiled. Nakamaro was assassinated in 764. Empress Kōken immediately appointed Dōkyō to the new position of Buddhist minister of state (*daijin zenji*), and she deposed Junnin, who was exiled to Awaji Island and assassinated the following year. In late 763 the empress reascended the throne, this time under the name Shōtoku, and she gave Dōkyō ever more power.

In 765 she appointed Dōkyō to the highest office, naming him Buddhist chancellor of state (*dajōdaijin zenji*), and in 766 she appointed him to a new position that must have ruffled many a feather: Buddhist hegemon (*hō-ō*) or dharma king. The following year, offices for this new position were created, and Dōkyō was granted military powers. Soon court members were required to pay respects to him on the first day of the year, when—for the first time in history—the government performed Buddhist rites of penance within the compounds of the imperial palace. In 768 it was revealed that the main deity of the Usa shrine in Kyushu (Yahata, also known as HACHIMAN) had uttered an oracle saying that Dōkyō should be the next emperor. Shocked by this claim, courtiers who were faithful to the imperial lineage sent a trusted member, Wake no Kiyomaro (733–799), to Usa to confirm the oracle. Even though Kiyomaro would have been promised riches by Dōkyō if the outcome was in his favor, Kiyomaro is said to have received there an oracle to the effect that Dōkyō was an impostor.

A few months after the “revelation,” Empress Shōtoku passed away, and, in a series of political moves that are not altogether clear, the Fujiwara house reasserted its dominance in the political world and over the Hossō monks. Dōkyō was exiled to northeastern Japan, where he died in 772 in what some say must have been an ignominious fashion. He was stripped of all titles that had been granted by his paramour, the only woman to have served twice as empress. The Hachiman deity was then given the ti-

tle of Great Bodhisattva, and became the object of a long-lasting cult.

*See also:* Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Yogācāra School

### Bibliography

- Bender, Ross. “The Hachiman Cult and the Dōkyō Incident.” *Monumenta Nipponica* (Tokyo) 34, no. 2 (1979): 125–153.
- Weinstein, Stanley. “Aristocratic Buddhism.” In *The Cambridge History of Japan*, Vol. 2: *Heian Japan*, ed. Donald H. Shively and William H. McCullough. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

ALLAN G. GRAPARD

## DOUBT

Doubt (Sanskrit, *vicikitsā*; Chinese, *yi*) serves in different Buddhist traditions as either a hindrance to spiritual development or a catalyst for contemplative insight. In the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS of South Asia, doubt refers to skepticism about claims made within the tradition regarding such cardinal teachings as conditionality, the constituents of spiritual cultivation, or the Buddha, dharma, and saṅgha. Thus, doubt obstructs confidence in and tacit acceptance of the religion’s teachings, and it hinders the development of PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM).

Doubt was the fifth of the five hindrances (*ni-vāraṇa*) to DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE)—along with sensual desire, ill-will, sloth and torpor, and restlessness and worry—and it had no constructive role to play in Indian Buddhist meditation. Doubt was rather an obstacle to overcome through prajñā, sustained thought (*vicāra*), and the investigation of dharmas (*dharma-pravicaya*). Doubt could be temporarily allayed on the second stage of dhyāna and overcome permanently at the first stage of sanctity (i.e., stream-entry).

By the time East Asian Buddhists fully appraised doubt, this debilitating skepticism had been transformed into a principal force driving the meditator toward enlightenment. In the KŌAN meditation of the CHAN SCHOOL, for example, the “sensation of doubt” (Chinese, *yiqing*) became the principal catalyst to contemplation by provoking a profound existential quandary. Doubt generated through inquiry into the keyword or critical phrase (Chinese, *huatou*) of the kōan grows to take in all perplexities and uncertainties that one confronts in everyday life. Doubt eventually

creates such tremendous pressure in the mind of the meditator that it “explodes” (Chinese, *po*), destroying in the process the conventional point of view that constitutes the ego, and freeing the mind to experience the multivalent levels of selfless interrelationships that characterize enlightenment in the Chan school.

See also: **Meditation; Path; Psychology**

### **Bibliography**

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. “The Short-Cut Approach of *K’an-hua* Meditation: The Evolution of a Practical Subitism in Chinese Ch’an Buddhism.” In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Thought*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. “The Transformation of Doubt (*Yiqing*) in Chinese Buddhist Meditation.” In *Love and Emotions in Traditional Chinese Literature*, ed. Halvor Eifring. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2003.
- Jayatilleke, Kulatissa Nanda. *Early Buddhist Theory of Knowledge*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1963.
- Nyanaponika Thera, trans. and comp. “The Five Mental Hindrances and Their Conquest: Selected Texts from the Pāli Canon and the Commentaries.” *Wheel Series* 26 (1947). Reprint, Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1961.

ROBERT E. BUSWELL, JR.

## DREAMS

In Buddhism, as in most ancient cultures, it was widely assumed that the images seen in dreams conveyed important knowledge. Thus, dreams not only play a major role in descriptions of the life of Buddha and in the biographies of eminent representatives of the Buddhist traditions, but dreams became the basis of cults, of the construction of monasteries, and of the diagnosis of disease.

### **Dreams in Śākyamuni’s biography**

Within the Buddhist tradition, records about Śākyamuni abound with accounts of dreams, and it is also reported that the Buddha was familiar with the interpretation of dreams. The Buddha’s birth is marked by a dream: It is reported that he descended from Tuṣṭita heaven in the form of a white elephant and entered the womb of his sleeping mother, Mahāmāyā, who saw the event in a dream. When Gautama’s wife Yaśodharā became aware that she was pregnant, Gautama’s foster

mother Mahāprajāpatī and his father Śuddhodana experienced dreams. After Gautama had been instructed by the celestial ones to pursue a life of homelessness, he appeared to his father in a dream in which he departed from the palace with his hair shorn. Then, when Gautama’s father tried to bind him to the world, the celestial ones caused Śuddhodana to experience seven dreams about his son’s departure. At the same time, Yaśodharā had twenty dreams concerning the departure of her husband. That same night, Gautama himself dreamed a five-part dream that confirmed his decision to leave. While the prince was readying himself to escape, Yaśodharā dreamed a three-part dream in which the moon fell to the earth, her teeth fell out, and she lost her right arm.

The Buddha’s death is also marked by a series of dreams. Tradition relates that the Buddha’s disciple Subhadra dreamed of the Buddha’s NIRVĀṆA a short time before the event. Both ĀNANDA and the king Ajātaśatru also had important dreams on the night of the Buddha’s nirvāṇa.

### **The dogmatic classification of dreams**

Given the Buddhist concern with questions about the nature of existence and the traditional belief that dreams reveal the nature of the mind, and given the Buddhist proclivity for analysis and classification, it is not surprising that Buddhist literature includes attempts to classify dreams. One such classification can be found in the *Vibhāṣā* (second century C.E.; T1545: 27.193c), where it is said that dreams are: (1) guided from outside and induced by higher beings such as gods, seers, sages, or by spells or drugs; (2) based on past events, so that one sees in a dream what one previously perceived or thought about, or what one did as a habitual action; (3) based on events that will come to pass, so that if something favorable or unfavorable is going to occur, one will see signs of it beforehand in a dream; (4) based on discrimination, so that if one is longing for, striving after, or sorrowing about something, one will see this in a dream; and (5) based on illness, so that if the elements are out of balance, one may see in one’s dream the nature of a certain element that is present in excess.

Although this classification attempts to account for both ordinary and extraordinary dreams, it is the prognostic dream that played the greatest role in narratives like biography and pseudo-biography. But it was in scholastic contexts that the dogmatic implications of the dream state found the most attention. What is it that makes dreams dreams? The *Vibhāṣā* (T1545:27.

193b) asserts that it is the mind and its concomitant dharmas, which during sleep take on the shape of the mind's respective objects, and which, on the basis of remembrance, can be related to others after waking. It is clear that this definition of dreams can easily be extended to nondream states of mind. Accordingly, the *Vibhāṣā* points to the role of volitional activity, and emphasizes that its range of influence is restricted to this realm of desire (*kāmadhātu*).

### Dreams as images of the mind

All beings dream except for the Buddha, the awakened one, who clearly must be liberated from both the seductive and the haunting images of dreaming. This point serves as the focus of the use of the dream image in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, where dreams are no more than phantasmagorical visions, visitations within the confused karmic consciousness. While dreaming, one sees that which does not actually exist, or at least is other than perceived by the dreamer. Accordingly, the Yogācāra treatise *Cheng weishi lun* (*Vijñaptimātratāsiddhiśāstra* [*Establishing the Exclusivity of Vijñāna*]; T1585: 31.46b) states that “all dharmas arise within the mind as if deceptive images, a flurry of sparks, a dream image, a reflection in a mirror, shadows, an echo, the moon in water, magical beings generated through transformation. Though they seem to, they do not actually possess [substantial] existence.” Similar formulations are found in many scriptures, emphasizing that the relationship of the dream to the waking state is like that of the waking state to an awakened state. But it is important to understand, as VASUBANDHU argued in the fourth century C.E., that the thing glimpsed in a dream, while it does not in fact fulfill the function it appears to fulfill in the dream, is nevertheless definite in respect to space and time. The dream thus serves as an emblem of the ordinary waking state of mind.

### Dreams as paths to liberation

But “if it is so that on awaking from a dream one recognizes everything purely as projection, why does one then not also recognize on awaking that the actual material realm is nothing more than cognition?” In answering this question, Vasubandhu emphasizes that only after awaking can one recall the dream as a dream. In analogy, only when one has truly awakened can one recognize, or recall, that whatever one perceived previously as the waking state had been more like a dream than a true state of wakefulness. Although dreams usually represent an obstacle to liberation, dreaming itself can become the site of liberation. Since the dream is

considered to be of the same nature as the waking state's projection of the world, the wakeful dreamer can dream himself or herself into the border between phenomena and emptiness. Thus, the difference between the dream and the waking state is actively erased, and the dream is assigned a privileged status.

*See also:* **Bodhi (Awakening); Kōben; Meditation**

### Bibliography

- Bodiford, William M. “Chidō's Dreams of Buddhism.” In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Brown, Carolyn T., ed. *Psycho-Sinology: The Universe of Dreams in Chinese Culture*. Washington, DC: Asia Program, Woodrow Wilson International Center for Scholars; Lanham, MD: Distrib. University Press of America, 1988.
- Eggert, Marion. *Rede vom Traum. Traumauffassungen der Literatenschicht im späten kaiserlichen China*. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1993.
- Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Myōe the Dreamkeeper: Fantasy and Knowledge in Early Kamakura Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1993.

ALEXANDER L. MAYER

## DUḤKHA (SUFFERING)

Suffering is a basic characteristic of all life in this world, and is the first of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS taught by the Buddha and recorded in the various Buddhist canons. Along with ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE) and anātman (no-self), suffering is one of three fundamental characteristics of life in this world.

*Duḥkha* (Pāli: *dukkha*) is most often translated as “suffering,” although the word encompasses a wide range of things that cause pain. It is commonly defined in Buddhist texts as birth, old age, disease, and death; as sorrow and grief, mental and physical distress, and unrest; as association with things not liked and separation from desired things; and as not getting what one wants (as in, for example, the *Samyutta-nikāya* [*Book of Kindred Sayings*], volume 5, verse 410 ff.). Buddhist texts summarize what suffering is by referring to a group called the “five aggregates of grasping.” The five aggregates of grasping refer to the five things that people cling to in order to think of themselves as independent and enduring beings: the physical body, feelings, perceptions, impulses, and consciousness.



Holding on to each of these five things produces suffering because there is no permanent existence in the world. If a person clings to things whose nature is impermanence, with the hope that those things will remain stable and unchanging, then that person will continually suffer when faced with the inevitability of change. According to Buddhist teachings, suffering is an inescapable characteristic of all life and cannot be alleviated except through enlightenment.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Path; Prāṭīyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination); Psychology; Skandha (Aggregate)

### Bibliography

Anderson, Carol S. *Pain and Its Ending: The Four Noble Truths in the Theravāda Buddhist Canon*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1999.

Strong, John. *The Experience of Buddhism: Sources and Interpretations*, 2nd edition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Press, 2002.

CAROL S. ANDERSON

## DUNHUANG

Dunhuang, on the far western border of the Han empire, was founded as a garrison commandery in 111 B.C.E. Some twenty-five kilometers southeast of the town, a long range of barren rocky hills meets a group of high sand dunes. A small stream, running from south to north, has cut the gravel conglomerate to form a cliff one and a half kilometers long, and irrigates a grove of trees and a few fields. Here, from the fourth to the fourteenth centuries, there was almost continuous cutting and decoration of CAVE SANCTUARIES, most of which have survived intact. Now a World Heritage site, Dunhuang was thrust into international prominence at the beginning of the twentieth century with the discovery of a sealed library and the removal to several institutions worldwide (British Museum in London, Musée Guimet in Paris, National Museum in New Delhi, State Hermitage Museum in Saint Petersburg, etc.) of thousands of Buddhist manuscripts and hundreds of paintings on silk and hemp cloth.

During the millennium of activity at the site, however, it would seem that the caves at Dunhuang served a number of very different purposes, whether Buddhist or secular, official or private, and that they represent the hopes and fears of many individuals, be they rich

or poor, local residents or passing travelers. Traditionally, the first caves were opened in 366 by the Buddhist monks Yuezun and Faliang for the purpose of meditation. The lonely situation of the site, then known as Miaoyan or the Wonderful Cliff, perhaps implying that it possessed a reputation as a sacred site even in its pre-Buddhist phase, was admirably suited to the scriptural requirement that places of meditation be located well away from centers of population.

The earliest caves extant today, near the middle of the cliff and high above ground level, date from the fifth century. Elements of style and iconography originating somewhat earlier in Kizil, on the northern edge of the Taklamakan desert, blend with typically Chinese architectural features in these early caves. In most there is a square central pillar, with the main image facing the entrance. The walls and ceilings were coated with clay plaster on which were depicted both narrative scenes from the previous lives of Śākyamuni and the legends of his historical life, and the three thousand buddhas of the Bhadrakalpa in serried rows of seated figures.

Dunhuang was not only the gateway to the Western Regions beyond Chinese territory, but it was a site of such magnificence that its fame spread rapidly throughout the region and the Chinese empire, especially after the unification under the Sui dynasty (589–618).

*See also:* Bianwen; Bianxiang (Transformation Tableau); China, Buddhist Art in; Silk Road

### Bibliography

Dunhuang Research Academy, ed. *Chūgoku Sekkutsu: Tonkō Bakkōkutsu (Chinese Cave Temples: The Mogao Caves at Dunhuang)*, 5 vols. Tokyo and Beijing: Heibonsha and Wenwu Press, 1982.

Dunhuang Research Academy, ed. *Dunhuang shiku yishu (The Art of the Dunhuang Caves)*, 20 vols. Nanjing, China: Jiangsu Fine Arts Press, 1994.

Dunhuang Research Academy, ed. *Dunhuang shiku quanji (Complete Collection of the Dunhuang Caves)*, 28 vols. Hong Kong: Commercial Press, 1999.

Giès, Jacques, ed. *The Arts of Central Asia: The Pelliot Collection in the Musée Guimet*, tr. Hero Friesen. London: Serindia, 1996.

Wang, Eugene Y. *Shape of the Visual: Imagining Topography in Medieval Chinese Buddhist Art*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2004.

Whitfield, Roderick. *The Art of Central Asia: The Stein Collection at the British Museum*, 3 vols. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1982–1985.

Whitfield, Roderick. *Dunhuang: Caves of the Singing Sands*. London: Textile and Art Publications, 1996.

Whitfield, Roderick; Whitfield, Susan; and Agnew, Neville. *Cave Temples of Mogao: Art and History on the Silk Road*. Los Angeles: Getty Publications, 2000.

RODERICK WHITFIELD

*This page intentionally left blank*

# E



## ECONOMICS

Before trying to determine whether it is possible to identify a specifically Buddhist approach to the economic realm, one must keep in mind that religions and the economic sphere interact at various levels. At the most elementary level, religions open up a space, both symbolic and physical, within which economic activities can take place. In the Buddhist world this has involved establishing through RITUAL means a space protected by Buddhist DIVINITIES or by the supernatural beings with whom these divinities coexist. Besides creating a space for agriculture, these ritual resources, generally labeled as “magic,” have to be mobilized in order to ensure the fertility of the land. Practices that mobilize the ritual or magical component of religion can be found not just in agricultural societies, but also in industrial societies, such as that of Japan, the “common religion” of Japan being concerned above all with worldly benefits (*genze riyaku*), whose pursuit involves the mobilization of Buddhist doctrines, images, rituals, and sacred scriptures, such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA).

### Need, work, and religion

From the time of the *nikāyas* to the present, Buddhists have been concerned with the reality of the economic sphere, especially with the reality of work. This concern can already be seen in the *Agañña-sutta* of the *Dīghanikāya*, in which the Buddha tells a story about the emergence of social order, political authority, and kingship. According to the *Agañña-sutta*, the greed of the primordial beings causes a process of coarsening and differentiation to take place, a process that results in the appearance of matter, food, unequally endowed

bodies, stratification, sex, work, authority, and priests. As the story unfolds, a peculiar interaction between labor and the avoidance of labor develops. Gathering the primordial rice twice a day constitutes work of sorts, so much so that in order to avoid this labor, a being that is given to laziness engages in the work of storing foodstuffs. However, once rice for two meals is gathered there is no way to stop the process, and so the work of gathering increases. Laziness leads to work, work causes the scarcity of rice, laziness and work beget private property, theft, authority, and religion. We find moreover the recognition that in order to avoid chaos it is necessary to have kings, and in order to have kings and people who, by meditating, “put aside evil and unwholesome things,” it is necessary to produce the surplus that will feed them. Work is therefore both curse and blessing, for without the disturbance brought about by work, it would not have been necessary to have kings and priests; whereas in order to support them, it is necessary to work even more.

Although in the *Agañña-sutta* we encounter a story of greed that causes an increase in materiality, sex, and rice, in stories collected in Laos, Thailand, and Cambodia we find that rice appears as the result of meritorious acts, then grows as long as Buddhism spreads. Despite the differences, the two myths involve a process of degeneration, both in terms of the length of the lives of the buddhas and the size of the grains of rice. In general, the two myths betray unease toward economic transactions; in fact, according to the Southeast Asian myth, storage and above all exchange—in other words, economic activities—lead to the disappearance of the personified rice. Eventually, the rice returns, only this time, instead of one variety of rice, there are many varieties. Desirable as the varieties of rice are, however,

variety is difference, a loss of primordial unity, a unity that will be restored only when MAITREYA, the future buddha, appears. When Maitreya returns, economic transactions will disappear, being replaced by abundance and leisure. Oneness will return as well: The body from which the rice emerged will recover its original form and the varieties of rice will be reunited.

It would be worthwhile to investigate the reasons for the Buddhist concern with explaining the mechanisms that give rise to the economic sphere. The causes may be found in the social changes that took place around the middle of the first millennium B.C.E. These involved the disappearance of the old tribal order, within which the Buddha himself was born, and its replacement by political centralization, taxation, professional armies, and urbanization. The economic and technological counterpart of these developments involved, between 600 and 500 B.C.E., the use of plow agriculture, the widespread cultivation of rice, and the introduction of coins. Cities were important in the spread of Buddhism as well. This is significant for two reasons. First, cities follow the abstract logic of commercial exchange and labor specialization, unlike the countryside, which is regulated by the rhythms of agriculture and thus by the seasons. On the other hand, given the morbidity that accompanies urbanization, a morbidity that would have been exacerbated by the conditions of the eastern Gangetic plain, the urban concentration of wealth and people must have led also to the sense of malaise articulated in the first two of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS (suffering and its origin).

### Money and abstraction

The widespread use of money in north India since around 500 B.C.E. is also significant because of the connections between money and abstraction, as well as the affinities between money and asceticism. Because money dissolves qualitative differences into quantitative differences, it contributes to the flattening of reality, even while opening it up to analysis. Inasmuch as it serves as the common denominator of aspects of reality that otherwise would be seen as having nothing in common with one another, money contributes to a process of abstraction. It is through money that the qualitative differences among tasks and skills can be dissolved into quantity and can be bought and sold as commodities. Therefore, in a society in which certain forms of labor that are considered degrading are assigned to degraded people, this process of commodification can be considered liber-

ating. In this respect, the economy of salvation underlying a community of religious virtuosi that is open in principle to everybody, as the Buddhist SAṄGHA claimed to be, can be regarded as the counterpart of the economy of more tangible goods.

Money, which is normally understood as that which makes possible the satisfaction of desire, is the condensation of deferred satisfaction if the money is not spent. But, generally, satisfaction is deferred for the sake of a greater satisfaction, and this fact makes it possible to understand the connection between money and sacrifice, on the one hand, and among ASCETIC PRACTICES, money, and capital accumulation, on the other. Early Buddhism can be understood, therefore, both as a commentary and critique on the process of deferral and on the new approach to labor. In this context, the behavior of the followers of the Buddha can be seen as the distillation of the new way of life. It is true that monks and nuns explicitly distanced themselves from the economy, but this happened only to a certain extent, and they engaged in elaborate ruses in order to participate in the economy without having to handle coins. In any case, the very existence of the community of mendicants allowed the new economy to show its strength, for it must be remembered that a degree of abundance is a prerequisite for asceticism. Indeed, increased production was required in order to support not just isolated renunciators, but groups that were sedentary for part of the year.

### Money, asceticism, and accumulation

How can one understand, from an economic point of view, the coexistence of this economic growth, however unequal, and the most important prohibitions to which monks were subject, namely the ones against handling money and working? We can assume that these prohibitions rendered visible the autonomy of the economic realm, as well as the relatively new reality of money as the embodiment of labor. Indeed, while isolating the monks from the money economy, the Pāli canon shows a high regard for merchants. It is significant that the first to offer food to the Buddha after the enlightenment were two merchants, both of whom are said to have attained enlightenment without having become monks. The Buddha reciprocated by mentioning a list of constellations and divinities that would protect merchants who undertook long journeys. This exchange seems to suggest the exchanges that were established between monks and their wealthy supporters: While the latter provided the monks the material

goods without which they could not survive, the former reciprocated through their command of supernatural means. Among the early supporters of the saṅgha were the *gahapati*, land-based controllers of property, who straddled the divide between the rural and the urban, and also between the castes. Networks were, in fact, crucial in the spread of Buddhism, and merchant groups can be seen as constituting networks that compensated for the disappearance of the democratic tribal political structures, which were being absorbed by the large political entities then emerging in northeastern India.

In terms of the affinity between asceticism and accumulation mentioned earlier one can say that the Buddha's misgivings about ritual, magical practices, and materiality in general led necessarily to the rejection of the expenditures associated with ritual activities, a rejection that freed capital for investment. An example of this rejection of ritual and its replacement by an internalized religion can be found in the *Sigālaka-sutta* of the *Dīghanikāya*. When the Buddha sees Sigālaka engaging in ritual behavior, he tells him that instead of doing that he should abandon the four defilements, avoid doing evil from the four causes, and avoid following the six ways of wasting one's substance. Avoiding these fourteen evil ways involves essentially having an internalized approach to religion, as well as living a disciplined life, away from material and moral dissipation. We see this approach to religion in nineteenth-century Thailand, where King Mongkut sought to reform the saṅgha by purifying it from superstitious practices and promoting scriptural learning, thus becoming a proponent of a "protestant" approach to Buddhism. We find the same protestant ethos in the Vietnamese Hoa Hao movement's rejection of wasteful ritual and concomitant internalization of religion, as well as in the contemporary Thammakai movement, a Buddhist sect popular among the Thai middle class.

### **Entrepreneurship, worldly and otherworldly**

Both as centers of entrepreneurship and innovation as well as of ritual expenditure Buddhist monasteries have functioned as loci of economic activity. In Tibet and in China, pawnshops, mutual financing associations, auctions, and the sale of lottery tickets originated or had close connections with monasteries. In addition, during the Tang dynasty (618–907) Buddhist monasteries engaged in oil production for cooking and for votive lamps, and in running water-powered stone

rolling-mills. More directly related to economic expansion was the role of monasteries in bringing new land into cultivation, as well as in causing deforestation. Equally significant has been the role of Buddhist monasteries in the emergence of an autonomous economic domain, as well as the domain of the corporation, which were caused by the separation between the wealth of the institution and that of the individual. What the monasteries have had in common is their function as spaces for giving and receiving, *DĀNA* (GIVING), a function that has been held in high regard throughout the history of Buddhism. Ultimately, *dāna* consists in giving oneself, as AŚOKA did during the great quinquennial festival, and as Emperor Wu of the Liang dynasty (502–557) in China did on more than one occasion, having to be rescued at great expense to the imperial treasury. In many cases, however, instead of functioning as the vehicle for the surrender of oneself, *dāna* served as conspicuous waste, a process whereby wealth and position could be both demonstrated and solidified. The consequences of this giving were most damaging in China, as the use of corvée labor to build extravagant monasteries inflicted misery on peasants. Analogous developments took place in Southeast Asia. In Cambodia, beginning around 800 C.E., rulers ordered the building of increasingly larger ceremonial complexes in Angkor; these originally served as centers for the management of irrigation until they reached its saturation point in the thirteenth century. In Myanmar (Burma) the construction of temples was initiated by both rulers and ordinary people, but the effects were similar: Vast amounts of wealth were diverted from productive to sumptuary uses, and the tax-exempt status of ever increasing religious property had negative economic consequences, as ritual expenditures inhibited the accumulation of capital necessary for development.

Even when it did not reach the excesses of medieval China, Cambodia, or Myanmar, the ideology of *dāna* has generally had important economic consequences, as consumption by monks has hampered the process of internal differentiation and of capital accumulation. On the other hand, because of the fact that in a collective celebration merit is shared but prestige is not, the richest families, being able to contribute the most, accumulate the most prestige. This means that even though, from the point of view of MERIT AND MERIT-MAKING, we encounter a nonzero-sum game situation, in the context of prestige the monastery as recipient of *dāna* legitimizes social differences, and renders

them more visible. This can be seen among Thai peasants, among whom the two highest forms of merit-making—financing the construction of a monastery or becoming a monk—are open only to the rich. In fact, among Thai peasants, it was believed that the *dāna* of a rich person generated greater merit. Likewise, we find in Thai-Lao villages the belief that with good acts one moves up in the social hierarchy, either in a future life or in this one. The economic consequences of this belief is that poor Thai peasants spend a relatively larger portion of their income on merit-making.

The main consequence of *dāna* has been the accumulation of monastic wealth, a fact that has led to attempts at purifying the saṅgha. This can be seen in Myanmar, where since the eleventh century donations to the saṅgha have led to periods of monastic wealth and laxity, which have led eventually to reform of the order; the resulting community was deemed worthy of donations, until the wealth and laxness of the monks brought about a new reform. In any case, monks have sought to keep monastic wealth within their families, passing it mainly from uncle to nephew, in some cases through the manipulation of the rule of pupillary succession.

### **Giving and freedom from the degradation of need**

In the context of giving and receiving it has been pointed out that living according to the PRECEPTS is not a possibility open to laypeople. In fact, in order for monks to live in the proper manner, laypeople have to break the precepts—for example, they must kill in order to feed the monks meat, and they must work, an activity forbidden to the monks. Does this mean, as S. J. Tambiah maintains, that the work of laypeople, insofar as it frees the monks for higher pursuits, is virtuous and deserving of merit, even though in principle it is polluting? Or is it rather that by accepting that which they, in theory, have not demanded, the monks allow the donors to live vicariously a life beyond necessity, while at the same time consuming and thus neutralizing the pollution inherent in all work? Going back to what was said about early Buddhism being a meditation on the process of deferral and on the new approach to labor, we can say that it is also in relation to labor that Buddhism seems to function as the means of transcending the degradation of being subject to need.

Another way of transcending that degradation requires functioning in the world in a manner that avoids

engaging in a zero-sum game. This is achieved through the practice of merit transfer, that is, the practice of generating merit for the sake of somebody else. Rather than diminishing the merit, transfer multiplies it; in fact, anyone can partake of this merit without diminishing it in any way; instead, one's desire to partake of the merit generated by somebody else functions as a multiplier.

Having examined a range of Buddhist attitudes toward the economic realm, what seems to be specific to Buddhism in this regard is the extent to which it is concerned with the processes that underlie need and desire, production and work, giving and taking, hierarchy and equality, and coming into being and dissolution.

*See also:* Usury

### **Bibliography**

- Chakravarti, Uma. *The Social Dimensions of Early Buddhism*. Delhi and New York: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Gernet, Jacques. *Buddhism in Chinese Society: An Economic History from the Fifth to the Tenth Centuries* (1956). New York: Columbia University Press, 1995.
- Gunawardana, R. A. L. H. *Robe and Plough: Monasticism and Economic Interest in Early Medieval Sri Lanka*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1978.
- Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values, and Issues*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Reader, Ian, and Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Practically Religious: Worldly Benefits and the Common Religion of Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Sizemore, Russell F., and Swearer, Donald K., eds. *Ethics, Wealth, and Salvation: A Study in Buddhist Social Ethics*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1990.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society. A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. New York: Harper, 1970.
- Tambiah, S. J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in Northeast Thailand*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Tambiah, S. J. *World Conqueror and World Renouncer. A Study of Buddhism in Thailand against a Historical Background*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.

GUSTAVO BENAVIDES

## EDUCATION

For centuries, Buddhist monasteries throughout Asia played a prominent role in disseminating both religious and secular education. In fact, two of the most important contributions Buddhism made to premodern society was the establishment of educational facilities and the improvement of literacy. The high literacy rates of two modern THERAVĀDA Buddhist states—Sri Lanka and Thailand—suggest the efficiency of these nations’ traditional educational infrastructures and the positive attitudes of their societies toward learning, writing, memorizing, and preserving traditional sources of knowledge.

In all the traditions of Buddhism in Asia, Buddhist monasteries have served as educational institutions, disseminating both religious and secular education. This entry, however, examines the educational practices of only one of those traditions—the Theravāda tradition of South and Southeast Asia.

In all Theravāda countries, Buddhist preaching halls have historically functioned as sites for disseminating

education related to religious matters, morality, good conduct, and healthy habits. Within traditional Buddhist education, “preaching the doctrine” (*dhammadesanā*) developed the act of teaching, while “listening to the doctrine” (*dhammasavana*) functioned as a form of learning. In this context, “doctrinal discussion” (*dhammasākacchā*) paved the way for those seeking clarification on what they heard in the sermons. *Dhammasākacchā* led to evaluation and analysis of the Buddha’s teachings in a more intellectual fashion that included monastic debates, scholastic disputes, and exegetical treatises. These Buddhist learning strategies strengthened critical awareness within Buddhist learners.

Monastic education was largely restricted to the male population, and women had limited access. In addition, traditional Buddhist schools were not operated on a regular basis, and until modern times it was rare for a large class to be taught by a single teacher. Traditionally, teachers met with students individually, and helped them complete set tasks. Lecturing was rare; rather, teachers focused on what students had



A Tibetan monk studying at Rnam gyal (Namgyal) Monastery, in Dharamsala, India, 1997. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.



misunderstood or what they had failed to comprehend on their own. In this traditional Buddhist education system, students had ample opportunity for self-learning through the use of COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE, glossaries, and other learning resources.

Not surprisingly, the traditional monastic curriculum focused on Buddhist themes and was heavily religious in nature, but it covered other subjects as well. In Sri Lanka, a twelfth-century royal decree banned the study of “poetry, drama, and such other base subjects.” However, monastic educational institutions—the Pirivenas—continued to provide a well-rounded education. The curriculum of the fifteenth-century Pirivena included a mastery of several languages (Sinhala, Pāli, Sanskrit, Prākṛit, and Tamil), plus the study of the Pāli canon, MAHĀYĀNA philosophical texts, Indian philosophy, mathematics, architecture, astronomy, medicine, and astrology. Language learning was always a significant component of Buddhist education for two reasons: Any South and Southeast Asian Buddhist community needed knowledge of Pāli in order to acquire knowledge of Buddhist scriptures, and for the Buddhist missionary, learning languages other than one’s own was useful in disseminating Buddhism in various countries.

Although the traditional Buddhist curriculum included training on morals and etiquette, it did not provide the knowledge and skills necessary for the more complex lifestyle of modern times. Though certain subjects, such as medicine and astrology, were covered, monastic education ultimately failed to provide students with a broader education in science and technology, which became a requirement of modern secular society.

See also: **Monasticism**

### **Bibliography**

- Education in Ceylon: A Centenary Volume*, 3 vols. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Ministry of Education, 1969.
- Guruge, Ananda W. P. “Education.” In *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*, vol. 5, ed. W. G. Weeraratne. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Department of Buddhist Affairs, 1991.
- Guruge, Ananda W. P. *The Miracle of Instruction: Further Facets of Buddhism*. Singapore: Samadhi Buddhist Society, 1992.
- Jayasekera, U. D. *Early History of Education in Ceylon: From Earliest Times up to Mahāsēna*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Department of Cultural Affairs, 1969.

MAHINDA DEEGALLE

---

EIGHTFOLD PATH. See **Path**

---

EMPTINESS. See **Śūnyatā (Emptiness)**

---

## ENGAGED BUDDHISM

Engaged Buddhism or socially engaged Buddhism is a relatively new Buddhist movement that emphasizes social service and nonviolent activism. Since the mid-twentieth century Buddhist organizations in Asia and the West have drawn upon traditional teachings and practices—such as the PRECEPTS against harming, stealing, and lying; the virtues of kindness and compassion; the principles of selflessness and interdependence; the vow to save all beings; and practices of MEDITATION and skillful means—to protect humans and other beings from injury and suffering. Their concerns include stopping war, promoting human rights, ministering to the victims of disease and disaster, and safeguarding the natural environment.

Two engaged Buddhists have won the Nobel Prize for peace: Bstan ‘dzin rgya mtsho (pronounced Tenzin Gyatso), the fourteenth DALAI LAMA of Tibet, was awarded the prize in 1989, and Aung San Suu Kyi, the opposition leader in Burma (Myanmar), won it in 1991. Other leaders of the movement are the Vietnamese monk and poet, THICH NHAT HANH, who coined the term *engaged Buddhism* in the 1960s; the late Indian untouchable activist and statesman, B. R. AMBEDKAR; the Thai activist and writer, Sulak Sivaraksa; the Taiwanese nun who founded hospitals and international relief missions, Ven. Shih Cheng-yen; and American teachers Robert Aitken, Joanna Macy, Bernard Glassman, John Daido Looi, Joan Halifax, and Paula Green.

Engaged Buddhist organizations have appeared throughout the world. South and Southeast Asia are home to the International Network of Engaged Buddhists, based in Thailand; the Trilokya Bauddha Mahāsaṅgha Sahāyaka Gana, which serves Dalit (low-caste) communities in India; the Dhammayietra peace walk movement in Cambodia, founded by Ven. Mahā Ghosānanda; and the Sarvodaya Shramadana rural development movement, which serves more than eleven thousand villages in Sri Lanka.

East Asia hosts a number of local organizations, such as the Buddhist Coalition for Economic Justice

and the environmentalist Chōngt'o Society in South Korea; international peace organizations, such as the Japan-based, Nichiren-inspired Risshō Kōšekai, Sōka Gakkai International (SGI), and Nipponzan Myōhōji, known for peace walks and “peace pagodas”; and the Buddhist Compassionate Relief Tz'u-chi Association of Taiwan, with its hospitals, rescue teams, and bone-marrow donation program. The West also has its share of engaged Buddhists organizations, including the Buddhist Peace Fellowship and the Zen Peacemaker Community, based in the United States; the Aṅgulimāla Prison Ministry in Britain; the Free Tibet movement, based in New York and Washington, D.C.; and numerous other peace, justice, and service groups in North America, Europe, Australia, and South Africa.

Practitioners and scholars of engaged Buddhism do not agree on its origins. Some argue that social service has appeared in the Buddhist record since the time of the Buddha and King AŚOKA, before the common era, and increasingly since the rise of the BODHISATTVA ethic of MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism in the centuries that followed. Scattered examples of SAṄGHA-based public service and of tension between saṅgha and state have been attested by historians of Asian Buddhism. Others hold that Buddhist activism—particularly collective protest of state corruption, economic injustice, and human rights violations—is unprecedented in Buddhism prior to the twentieth century, and reflects the globalization and hybridization of Asian, European, and American values.

Engaged Buddhism offers new perspectives on traditional teachings. Among these is the belief that human beings can overcome DUḤKHA (SUFFERING). The FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS, an ancient formulation, defines suffering as the psychological discomfort associated with craving for objects or experiences that are impermanent and insubstantial. The cessation of personal suffering is sought by adopting prescribed views, aspirations, actions, speech, vocations, effort, mindfulness, and concentration. The tradition also attributes a person's life circumstances to patterns of motivation and behavior in previous lives, through the universal laws of KARMA (ACTION) and REBIRTH.

Most engaged Buddhists accept these ideas, but stress causes of suffering they believe to be external to the sufferer and collective in nature. The Dalit Buddhists of India believe that caste-group suffering is caused by entrenched social interests that restrict their social mobility, economic opportunity, and political influence. The Buddhists of Southeast Asia, Tibet, and

Sri Lanka know that invading armies and local insurgents cause collective suffering—loss of life, livelihood, and homeland. Those afflicted by epidemics and natural disasters recognize the social and natural conditions that cause their sufferings. Thus, for engaged Buddhism, there are true victims who suffer the effects of others' hatred, greed, and delusion, and of impersonal forces beyond their control.

In response to such external causes of suffering, engaged Buddhists typically adopt practices of social service and nonviolent struggle as “skillful means” on the path to liberation. Ambedkar called this *Navayāna* (New Vehicle) Buddhism, alluding to the traditional *yānas* (vehicles) of Buddhist historiography.

*See also:* Ethics; Karuṇā (Compassion); Modernity and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Chappell, David W., ed. *Buddhist Peacework: Creating Cultures of Peace*. Somerville, MA: Wisdom, 1999.
- Kraft, Kenneth, ed. *Inner Peace, World Peace: Essays on Buddhism and Nonviolence*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Queen, Christopher S., ed. *Engaged Buddhism in the West*. Somerville, MA: Wisdom, 2000.
- Queen, Christopher S., and King, Sallie B., eds. *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Queen, Christopher; Prebish, Charles; and Keown, Damien; eds. *Action Dharma: New Studies in Engaged Buddhism*. London: RoutledgeCurzon, 2003.
- Tucker, Mary Evelyn, and Williams, Duncan Ryuken, eds. *Buddhism and Ecology: The Interconnection of Dharma and Deeds*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1997.

CHRISTOPHER S. QUEEN

---

ENLIGHTENMENT. *See* Bodhi (Awakening); Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)

---

### ENNIN

Ennin (794–864), posthumously known as Jikaku Daishi, was a leading monk and abbot in the early years of the Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) school, who, as a favorite disciple of the founder SAICHŌ (767–822), led

the Tendai monastic establishment at Mount Hiei near Kyoto to become a flourishing center for Buddhist study and practice.

Like Saichō, Ennin traveled to Tang dynasty China to study the dharma and returned with knowledge and texts from various traditions. Unlike Saichō, who stayed only a year, Ennin's journey lasted nine years (838–847), and his travel diary records detailed information about China at the time. Unable to get permission to visit the center of Tiantai studies at Mount Tiantai, Ennin instead devoted himself to learning new forms of tantric and Pure Land Buddhist practice, in addition to Tiantai studies, at Mount Wutai and in the capital of Chang'an. His initiation in the *susiddhi* tantric doctrine stimulated the development of a rich new form of practice that consolidated the Tendai *mikkyō* curriculum (*Taimitsu*) on a par with that of the Shingon school's (*Tōmitsu*).

Ennin became the third abbot of Enryakuji on Mount Hiei. His dedication to expanding the monastic complex and its courses of study assured the Tendai school a unique prominence in Japan. While his chief contribution was to strengthen the Tendai tantric Buddhist tradition, the Pure Land recitation practices (*nenbutsu*) that he introduced also helped to lay a foundation for the independent Pure Land movements of the subsequent Kamakura period (1185–1333).

*See also:* Original Enlightenment (Hongaku); Tantra; Tiantai School

### **Bibliography**

Reischauer, Edwin O. *Ennin's Travels in T'ang China*. New York: Ronald Press, 1955.

Reischauer, Edwin O., trans. *Ennin's Diary: The Record of a Pilgrimage to China in Search of the Law*. New York: Ronald Press, 1955.

Saito, Enshi, trans. *Jikaku Daishi Den: The Biography of Jikaku Daishi Ennin*. Tokyo: Sankibō Busshorin, 1992.

DAVID L. GARDINER

## ENTERTAINMENT AND PERFORMANCE

As an active missionary religion, Buddhism naturally fostered the attractive presentation of its tenets in the form of tales and dramas. It may well be argued that the Buddha himself encouraged the use of storytelling as a way to capture the attention of an audience and

to convince them of whatever principle or precept might be conveyed through a given tale. Such an approach would certainly be sanctioned by the central Buddhist tenet of UPĀYA (skill-in-means or skillful means), whereby a teacher is expected to present his message in a manner that is readily accessible to his auditors, whatever their capacity. Furthermore, the Buddha's own sūtras (ostensibly, as invariably declared in their beginning phrases, all spoken by him) are full of interesting parables and legends. The Buddha also sanctioned the use of the local vernaculars so that the people of various countries and regions would be able to hear his message in their own language. It is clear that the Buddha is represented by the tradition as being intensely concerned about the mode of delivery employed by those who preached his doctrines.

A goodly part of the Buddhist penchant for storytelling and drama may be attributed to the general Indian love of fables and apologues. It is well known that many of the world's best-known tales—including a considerable number of those found in the collections of Aesop and the Grimm brothers—can be traced to Indian sources, such as the *Pañcatantra* (*Five Frameworks*) and the *Kathāsaritsāgara* (*The Ocean of Streams*)



Dge lugs monks dance and play special drums during a celebration of Padmasambhava's birthday in Hemis, Ladakh, India, 2001. © Paula Bronstein/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

of Stories). The early Buddhists, however, were probably even more partial to memorable narratives than adherents of other Indian religious traditions; witness the mammoth assemblage of JĀTAKAS (birth-stories) and the skillfully elaborated tales of causation in the DIVYĀVADĀNA. Through the very telling of such AVADĀNA and *nidāna* (stories about causation), sophisticated Buddhist concepts are not only made apprehensible and palatable, they become enjoyable and memorable.

The exuberant Indian affection for unforgettable tales also traveled with Buddhism to Central Asia and Southeast Asia. A splendid example of Buddhist tales may be found in *Xianyu jing* (*The Sūtra of the Wise and Foolish*), which consists of hundreds of long and short stories recorded by Buddhist monks from China, who heard them in 445 C.E. in the oasis city of Khotan in eastern Central Asia (Xinjiang). While *The Sūtra of the Wise and Foolish* has not been successfully traced to a single Sanskrit source, it is full of delightfully edifying stories and also exists in a Tibetan recension.

Another noteworthy medieval Buddhist text from Central Asia, but of a quite different nature than *The Sūtra of the Wise and Foolish*, is *Maitreyasamitināṭaka* (*Dance-Drama of the Encounter with MAITREYA* [the Buddha of the Future]). It is one of the few manuscripts written in the extinct language known as Tocharian. Among all the extant fragments, the *Maitreyasamitināṭaka* is by far the longest. Linguistically, Tocharian, which was rediscovered only in the early part of the twentieth century, is extremely important because it is the easternmost representative of the Indo-European family. Also discovered in the early years of the twentieth century was a translation of the *Maitreyasamitināṭaka* written in Old Uyghur, an extinct Turkic language. Thus, there is good primary evidence for a once flourishing tradition of Buddhist dance-drama in Central Asia. Judging from the stage directions in the extant texts, it must have been quite a spectacle.

The tradition of Buddhist drama goes back even earlier than the *Maitreyasamitināṭaka*, which dates to around the eighth century. Indeed, the earliest authenticated Sanskrit dramas are three plays written by Buddhists. Fragmentary manuscripts of these plays have been recovered from the sands of the Turfan basin in Eastern Central Asia. Among these plays is the nine-act *Śāriputraprakaraṇa* (*The Matter of Śāriputra*) by the renowned Mahāyāna scholar and poet AŚVAGHOṢA (ca. 100 C.E.). A full exposition of the elaborate dramatur-



A masked Dge lugs monk dances during the Hemis Festival in Hemis, Ladakh, India, 2001. © Paula Bronstein/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

gical theory embodied in these plays may be found in the *Nāṭyaśāstra* of Bharatamuni, which dates to around the beginning of the common era.

So proficient in thaumaturgy were many Indian and Central Asian Buddhist monks who came to China that some of them relied on their wonder-working skills not only to attract enormous groups of disciples but even to gain favor with the ruler. Perhaps the most famous of these was Fotudeng (d. 349), but many others were noted in historical and anecdotal literature. Buddhist monks were so renowned for their spell-binding powers of narration and prestidigitation that, by the Song dynasty (960–1279), there were various categories of professional storytellers and entertainers who masqueraded as monks. Already in the preceding centuries, the power of Buddhist narrators (of both lay and monastic status) to gather crowds was so great that government recruiters who wished to conscript hundreds of new soldiers would intentionally seek out a

storytelling session, rope together those in attendance, and march them off to the front.

The affinity between Buddhism and storytelling also obtained in Japan, where many of the greatest collections of tales (the so-called *setsuwa bungaku* or tale literature), such as *Sangoku denki* (*Stories of Three Kingdoms*; i.e., India, China, and Japan) and *Konjaku monogatari* (*Stories of Yesterday and Today*) were permeated with Buddhist themes and concepts. In certain temples, there were monks (*hōshi*) who specialized in narrating legends with the aid of picture scrolls, and along the roads nuns (*bikuni*), some of whom were nuns in name only, engaged in similar activities. In Tibet, the itinerant *manipa* performer, with her *thang ka* (*thanka*) hanging on a wall beside her, likewise used to be a common sight.

Some of the grandest representations of Buddhist performance are to be found in the paradise scenes on the wall-paintings at DUNHUANG in northwestern China. There one can see full orchestras depicted, often with a virtuoso lute player whirling on a small circular rug in the center. It would seem that to the Buddhist, pageantry and performance were as much a part of the celestial realm as they were of the sublunary world.

*See also:* Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Folk Religion: An Overview; Languages

### Bibliography

- Idema, Wilt I. "Traditional Dramatic Literature." In *The Columbia History of Chinese Literature*, ed. Victor H. Mair. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.
- Mair, Victor H. "The Buddhist Tradition of Prosimetric Oral Narrative in Chinese Literature." *Oral Tradition* 3, nos. 1–2 (1988): 106–121.
- Mair, Victor H. *Painting and Performance: Chinese Picture Recitation and Its Indian Genesis*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.
- Mair, Victor H. "The Contributions of T'ang and Five Dynasties Transformation Texts (*pien-wen*) to Later Chinese Popular Literature." *Sino-Platonic Papers* 12 (August 1989): 1–71.
- Mair, Victor H. "The Prosimetric Form in the Chinese Literary Tradition." In *Prosimetrum: Crosscultural Perspectives on Narrative in Prose and Verse*, ed. Joseph Harris and Karl Reichl. Cambridge, UK: Brewer, 1997.
- McLaren, Anne E. *Chinese Popular Culture and Ming Chantefables*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1998.

McLaren, Anne E. "The Oral-Formulaic Tradition." In *The Columbia History of Chinese Literature*, ed. Victor H. Mair. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

Pellowski, Anne. *The World of Storytelling* (1977). Revised edition, New York: Wilson, 1990.

VICTOR H. MAIR

---

## ESOTERIC ART, EAST ASIA

This entry considers the esoteric art forms of China, Korea, and Japan. The terms *esoteric art* and *esoteric material culture* are modern designations, whereas terms such as *icon*, *image*, MANḌALA, *ritual implement*, *painting*, *symbol*, and *initiation hall*—used in association with esoteric practices—have a long history within the tradition. Esoteric and Tantric Buddhist traditions alike deploy images and objects for efficacious, decorative, and ritual purposes. Esoteric art may refer to painted, sculpted, printed, or textile media representations of esoteric divinities or esoteric symbols, ritual implements and furnishings, and halls or pagodas used for esoteric rites.

The definition of *esoteric art*, like that of *esoteric Buddhism*, may be broad or narrow. Art forms considered here include not only those associated with the systematized Esoteric school of Japanese Shingon and its Chinese inspiration, Zhenyan, but also imagery used in syncretic religious rituals that incorporate esoteric elements. Imagery may be the primary indication of the esoteric content of a rite. Esoteric icons and other types of visual and material representation are recognized as necessary to spiritual and worldly goals, which are understood as interconnected. Esoteric art objects are often crafted of valuable materials and envisaged according to iconographic specifications and stylistic or artistic norms that help render them sacred. In this way, ornamentation, icons, and all types of visual and material goods lend authority and meaning to an esoteric rite. Conversely, esoteric ritual is essential to the perceived efficacy of the image. Esoteric art and ritual are mutually constituting.

### Overview of studies and regional histories

There is scant literature on East Asian esoteric art in English, and most of it concerns Japanese Shingon objects. Copious scholarship exists in Japanese on maṇḍala paintings, statues and paintings of Mahāvairocana (Dainichi Nyorai) and the Radiant Kings

(Vidyārāja, Myōō), and esoteric ritual implements. Such scholarship examines artistic and stylistic attributes, iconographic symbolism, textual sources, and the recorded ritual use of the works. Unfortunate consequences of Japanese scholarship include concentrating interest on the Shingon system and its arts at the expense of Japanese Tendai (TIANTAI SCHOOL) or nonesoteric traditions that incorporate esoteric images and doctrine. Seeking cultural parallels, Shingon-based studies tend to focus on Tang Zhenyan examples. Recent exhibitions and studies of later Chinese Buddhist or Daoist art have enriched our view of esoteric art history as they trace the complex history of esoteric Buddhist assimilation in China, and include Chinese esoteric art in the Indo-Tibetan VAJRAYĀNA tradition made during the Yuan (1279–1368) through Qing (1644–1911) dynasties.

The popularity of ferocious manifestations of Avalokiteśvara found in abundance in the Esoteric tradition is evident in artistic remains throughout East Asia. Ten marble statues excavated at the Tang monastery of Anguosi, ancient Chang'an (modern Xi'an), founded in 701, include the Five (alternative opinions give eight) Vidyārāja kings. The latter were introduced to Japan by KŪKAI (774–835) but soon cults devoted to only the central king, Fudō Myōō, prevailed. The canonical set of eight Brilliant Kings, popular from the late Tang in the modern-day provinces of Yunnan (at Jianchuan under the Nanzhao monarchy) and in Sichuan (at Baodingshan), are virtually unknown in Japan and elsewhere in China, indicating significant regional differences in esoteric imagery. The crypt finds at FAMENSI Monastery provide new insights into the contextual history of esoteric material culture. Used in relic processions to the imperial palace, the finely crafted ritual and devotional objects were adorned with esoteric iconography; moreover, they were arranged in patterns or nested sequences intended as maṇḍala.

Esoteric thought had an impact on early Korean Buddhism and its arts but it is difficult to discern in the model generated by sectarian studies. Dhāraṇī sūtras were widely circulated during the Three Kingdoms and sheets printed with esoteric DHĀRAṆĪ may be classified as esoteric material culture. The earliest printed sūtra in the world is a dhāraṇī text dating to 751 found in the Śākyamuni STŪPA at Pulguksa in 1966. Reliefs on seventh- and eighth-century stone stūpas or on gold and gilt-bronze reliquaries found within them provide evidence of cults dedicated to esoteric forms



A vajra bell in gilt bronze. (Japanese, Kamakura period, 1185–1333.) © The Seattle Art Museum, Eugene Fuller Memorial Collection. Reproduced by permission.

of the Healing Buddha (Bhaiṣajyaguru) and the zodiac, and Ursa Major.

Although Tang Esoteric practices were known in Korea, to date neither Mahāvairocana imagery nor maṇḍala examples have been found. Vairocana (Piroch'ana-pul) imagery abounds but it derives from the HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra*) and Sōn (CHAN SCHOOL) texts and is not esoteric. Guardian figures and deities relating to rites for national protection, among them Marīci, Vidyārāja, and Mahāmāyūrī Vidyārāja, were common during the Koryō dynasty (918–1392), as were esoteric Avalokiteśvara emanations. The modest Esoteric tradition that had taken root was assimilated, and new Mongolian and Tibetan forms of esotericism replaced them. Huge banner paintings (*kwaebul t'aenghwa*) were made for outdoor rites during the Chosōn dynasty (1392–1910); these probably derive from Tibetan *thang kas*. The worship halls at Chosōn monasteries featured paintings and statues of

esoteric divinities used in Water and Land or Ten Kings of Hell rites, among others. In China, Water Land rituals (*shuilu dahui*), plenary masses performed with paintings and ritual altar goods, appear to have developed after the Tang dynasty as substitutes for esoteric food distribution rites (*shishi*).

Tantric forms of Tibetan Buddhism flourished in the kingdoms west of China, along the SILK ROAD. Evidence of Vajrayāna or Tantric belief is evident at DUNHUANG as early as the ninth century. Although relatively few caves are Tantric in the strictest sense, six of them were created under the Mongols. The Central Asian Tangut empire of Xixia (1032–1227), positioned at the narrow Gansu passage where the Chinese Silk Road flows westward, worshiped esoteric forms of the Tantric goddess Tārā. Although it was likely made after the Mongol conquest of Xixia in 1227, the style of a Green Tārā on an early thirteenth-century *kesi* tapestry in the Asian Art Museum of San Francisco that was probably hung in a monastery is strongly Tibetan in style.

In the Mongol Yuan dynasty, the *mchod yon* (*choyon*) relationship of lama and patron developed at the Chinese court. The dynasty fell in 1368 but later dynasties maintained the system. During the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) relations with Tibet were revived, especially under the Yongle emperor Zhu Di (1403–1424). During his reign many painted and tapestry *thangkas*, robes, and gilt-bronze images made in the Ming imperial casting and weaving studios were commissioned by the Yongle emperor as gifts to Tibetan and Mongolian monks. Their Tibetan stylistic traits and symbolism were more than an anticipation of the recipients' tastes: The imperial commissions were modeled after earlier gifts made to the Chinese court by Tibetan lamas, and the Ming artists may have been Nepalese or Tibetan as well as Chinese.

The murals created for the Main Hall of Famensi Monastery, west of Beijing (ca. 1439–1444), show imperial taste and Tibetan influence, with esoteric and nonesoteric Buddhist deities in courtly processions in a variety of syncretic figural styles with diverse attributes, such as an elegant eight-armed Sarasvatī (Chinese, Bicaī tian) with esoteric implements on the north wall. Representations of the magical northern seven-star dipper (Ursa Major), stars, planets, or the sun and moon often symbolize esoteric concepts in Buddhist and Daoist imagery alike; the origins, however, lie in Chinese cosmological beliefs.

During the Qing dynasty (1644–1911), Tibetan and especially Mongolian lamas were influential at court

and were involved in the production of many esoteric works of art. The Qianlong emperor (1736–1795), schooled in Tibetan Buddhism by his parents, had himself depicted as a transformation of various esoteric divinities, such as Mañjuśrī, in paintings that survive today. The State Hermitage Museum in Saint Petersburg, Russia, has many fine Ming and Qing brass statues of esoteric divinities in the Sino-Tibetan style.

From around the ninth century, representations of esoteric divinities are used in a greater range of (non-Esoteric) religious contexts across East Asia. Such syncretism reflects the true nature of Buddhism in practice, where sects or schools are less monolithic than many discussions allow. This admixture is notable in cults that developed around esoteric manifestations of Avalokiteśvara, such as the thousand-armed thousand-eyed Guanyin. At Dunhuang alone there are nearly forty depictions of this deity painted on cave walls and banners, most of which were made during a period of Tibetan occupation beginning around 778 and ending in 848. Many Avalokiteśvara representations are based on the *Nilakaṇṭha-sūtra* (T. 1060, an unattested Sanskrit text) and its variants, which stress the power of the *Great Compassion Dhāraṇī* and generated numerous commentaries and texts on dhāraṇī recitation as an act of repentance. Repentance rites were performed before paintings and statues of the thousand-armed and thousand-eyed Avalokiteśvara. A late fourteenth-century example is a twenty-seven-foot-tall gilded work, the central of three colossal clay statues in the Great Compassion Hall of the vast Ming monastery of Chongshan, Taiyuan, Shanxi. The repentance ritual became part of Chan praxis in China and Korea and to modern times continues to incorporate esoteric imagery.

### Imagery in the Esoteric tradition: Doctrine and practice

The Chinese referred to Buddhism as the “religion of images” (*xiangjiao*). In the Esoteric tradition, the main divinity is understood as both the material form of the divinity (an icon) and as the pure formless divinity (the divinity worshiped). The *Mahāvairocana-sūtra* names three forms by which the main divinity (Japanese, *honzon*; Chinese, *bencun*; Sanskrit, *svayadhīdevatā*) is made manifest: a verbal “seed syllable”; a symbol (*mudrā*, referring not to the hand gesture but to what is usually called the symbol form or *samaya*); or a pictorial representation. Each type is divided into two categories, those with formal qualities and formless main divinity, which are a higher class. These six cross-

divide into two groups: characteristic-possessing and characterless *honzon*.

The Japanese Esoteric master Kūkai wrote:

The dharma is fundamentally unable to be conveyed in words, yet without words it cannot be manifested. The *tathatā* is beyond form but in taking form it is comprehended. . . . Because the Esoteric storehouse is so profound and mysterious it is difficult to manifest with brush and ink. Thus it is revealed to the unenlightened by adopting the form of diagrams and pictures. (*Shōrai mokuroku, Inventory of Imported Items*, 806)

Japanese Esoteric commentaries describe painted and sculpted main icons as formal appearances manifested according to the rules of causation, but without a real body. They are understood as depicting the real buddhas perceived during visualization. In esoteric practice, visuality becomes a definitive feature of the deity. Kūkai's *Hizōki* (*Notes on the Secret Treasury*) discusses the term *honzon* (*KZ*: 2:30) as transmitted to him by his Chinese teacher. It stresses the relationship between the absolute nature of the practitioner's body and that of the main icon. Both the halls for rites and the representational structure of eidetic meditation participate in visual codes and norms. A practitioner will encounter the divinities throughout a highly ordered structure of practices that require him or her to invoke, entertain, and visualize the deity or deity symbols associated with the rite. Non-Esoteric monastery halls are understood as dwelling places of the gods, but Esoteric halls are said to be symbolic embodiments of self-realization: Statues and paintings transform the structure into a localized manifestation of perfection. Yixing's commentary to the *Mahāvairocana-sūtra* explains that a painted or sculpted representation of the main icon is used by novices, and as practice is refined the *honzon* will arise itself entirely from the mind, without "possessing characteristics" (of a form).

### Esoteric art forms and types

Thus, the "main icon" in its characteristic-possessing or material form may be understood as one category of esoteric icon, wherein it is the primary image of a hall or the focus of a ritual, but it is also equivalent to the formless and characterless divinity. A main icon may be a sculpted, cloth, or painted representation of a deity. Even if a hall functions in multiple rites and has many icons, there is often a designated main icon. Most Buddhist traditions feature a single buddha, but the esoteric tradition designates main icons from all classes of Buddhist DIVINITIES.

A second possible categorization of esoteric images includes representations of the divinities that are not the primary icon of a hall. "Secret icons" hidden behind closed doors and revealed infrequently are strongly associated with the esoteric tradition and may be a main icon or secondary icon.

The concept of a generative system of bodies, deities, and energies—at once represented and embodied by a maṇḍala—is central to esoteric praxis. Maṇḍalas are a distinct category of representation that, although at the ritual and philosophical center of Esoteric ordination practices, are not understood as a main icon in the manner discussed above. A maṇḍala may be created in two or three dimensions: polychrome paintings or solid-color ground (usually blue or purple) with gold and silver line-paintings are orthodox, but hundreds of individual-deity maṇḍalas and symbol maṇḍalas are known. In China, sculptural and other three-dimensional maṇḍalas form the largest group of extant remains.

Dhāraṇī maṇḍalas and printed or brushed maṇḍalas used as talismans constitute a distinct category, along with other symbolic or representational charms. Many talismanic printed papers were found at the cave complex of Dunhuang, where travelers paused to invoke protection along their journey. Talismanic seals (Chinese, *fuyin*) protect against calamities and grant wishes; texts on the popular esoteric bodhisattva Cintāmaṇicakra found at Dunhuang are impressed with *fuyin*.

A fifth category of esoteric material culture includes RITUAL OBJECTS and goods, such as bells, wands, vases, and vestments. Among all the implements the *vajra* is of the greatest significance. Translated as either "diamond" or "thunderbolt," the *vajra* is forceful and cuts, but cannot be cut itself. A metaphor for wisdom and the dynamic quality of truth, it is juxtaposed with the matrix or womb world (representing compassion) in the Esoteric dual-maṇḍala system. As an implement it is a one-, three-, or five-pronged metal rod similar to the ancient weapon.

Iconographic drawings, depictions of divinities, mudrā, symbols, or other esoteric components form another category and typically function as ritual supports. Drawings are used as the basis for creating paintings or statues, to record complex maṇḍala components, or as study manuals.

Symbolic representations (*samaya*) are, strictly speaking, a type of main divinity, but as icons they may be considered a distinct category. In East Asian





A small crystal reliquary. (Japanese, Kamakura period, 1185–1333.) © The Seattle Art Museum. Reproduced by permission.

esotericism, sexualized bodies or scatological references are the exception and metaphor the norm. Symbols may take the form of a divinity's attribute (e.g., Acala's sword). Stone memorials, reliquaries, and other objects may symbolically represent the five material elements. Seed syllables are invariably comprised of Siddham letters. Iconography (mudrā, posture, color, attributes) might be included here, for such prescriptions constitute a particular kind of symbolic embellishment and art.

Architecture constitutes another distinct category. Halls or structures have specific ritual functions inherent to their layout and decoration. Esoteric pagodas in Japan developed several characteristic shapes, notably the Tahōtō form. An abhiṣeka hall was essential to esoteric practice. The earliest known example in East Asia is the excavated hall of Qinglongsi in modern-day Xi'an. New types of halls with esoteric functions developed at Japanese esoteric monasteries (e.g., the Five Vidyārāja hall, the Five Wisdom Buddha hall) then

found a place in Pure Land and other schools' monastic plans.

Another category pertains to Esoteric sectarian history, lineage, and transmission. Included here are keepsakes of the esoteric masters and patriarch images. The Japanese Esoteric master Kūkai was given thirteen items by his Chinese teacher Huiguo during his study in Tang Chang'an, of which eight originally belonged to the great Esoteric masters Vajrabodhi and Amoghavajra. Among them is a twenty-four-centimeter-tall sandalwood portable shrine carved in relief with divinities in the collection of Kongōbuji, Mount Kōya, Japan. Its iconography is not esoteric, nor does it figure in esoteric ceremonies. Nonetheless, the shrine is a significant example of esoteric material culture because it constitutes a form of sectarian patriarchal history.

A tenth and final category is both large and amorphous. It includes paintings, statues, or ritual implements that derive from systematized esoteric traditions found in a Buddhist or other religious context that assimilated esoteric practices and imagery but is not of completely esoteric origin. Examples might include the *vajra* or representations of esoteric emanations of Avalokiteśvara. Found only in Japan are shrine *mandara* paintings, topographies of indigenous *kami* (Shintō) sites and associated gods that typically include one or more esoteric Buddhist deities as avatars of the indigenous gods. In China such assimilated imagery would include, among hundreds of possible examples, images of the Dipper (Ursa Major) Mother.

The categories noted above are not absolute but heuristic. In some cases they differ from modern scholarly views. Modern art-history studies favor works deemed aesthetically superior, regardless of function. For example, an icon with great reputed efficacy but seen as aesthetically inferior may be of lesser interest. Iconographic drawings may be lauded for their drafting and artistic expression, but do not occupy the same status in the esoteric tradition because they are not icons but ritual supports. This is not to imply that visual impact and materials were insignificant. To the contrary, artistic styles associated with a workshop or individual Buddhist craftsman; sumptuous materials such as gems, gold, pigments, or jade; superb construction; and embellishment of objects or sacred spaces were understood as means of devotion. At Famenxi the priest who made the silver outer relic container in 871 dedicated it as "a precious box for Śākyamuni Buddha's true body." The innermost con-

tainer was made of jade, the material treasured above all others in Tang China.

**See also: China, Buddhist Art in; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Mijiao (Esoteric) School; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Tantra**

### Bibliography

- Bogel, Cynthia J. "Canonizing Kannon: The Ninth-Century Esoteric Buddhist Altar at Kanshinji." *Art Bulletin* (March 2002): 30–64.
- Daigoji ten* (exhibition catalogue). Tokyo: Daigoji Monastery and Nihon Keizai Shinbun, 2001.
- Fahai si bihua*. Zhongguo luyou chuban she (Fahai monastery wall paintings). Beijing: China Travel and Tourism Press, 1993.
- Fomen mibao da Tang yizhen: Shanxi fufeng Famen si digong* (Buddhist secret treasures . . . from the Famensi pagoda excavation), Vol. 10. Taipei: Guangfu shuju giye gufen youxi'an gongsi, 1994.
- Goepper, Roger. "Some Thoughts on the Icon in Esoteric Buddhism of East Asia." *Studia Sino-Mongolica* (Festschrift H. Frankel), *Münchener Ostasiatische Studien* 25 (1982): 245–254.
- Goepper, Roger. *Aizen-myōō, the Esoteric King of Lust: An Iconological Study*. Zurich: Artibus Asiae and Museum Rietberg, 1993.
- Honolulu Academy of the Arts. *Sacred Treasures of Mount Kōya: The Art of Japanese Shingon Buddhism*. Honolulu: Honolulu Academy of the Arts, 2002.
- Howard, Angela F. "The Eight Brilliant Kings of Wisdom of Southwest China." *RES* 35, *Anthropology and Aesthetics* (Spring 1999): 93–106.
- Ishida Hisatoyo. *Esoteric Buddhist Painting*, tr. E. Dale Saunders. Tokyo, New York, and San Francisco: Kodansha, 1987.
- Karetzky, Patricia. "New Archaeological Evidence of Tang Esoteric Art." *T'ang Studies* 12 (1994): 11–37.
- Karmay, Heather Stoddard. *Early Sino-Tibetan Art*. Warminster, UK: Aris and Philips, 1975.
- Lee Junghee. "A Dated *Avatamsaka-sūtra* Scroll and the Korean Origin of the Vairocana Buddha Image in the Wisdom-Fist *Mudrā*." *Oriental Art* 45, no. 2 (1999): 15–25.
- Linrothe, Robert N. "Peripheral Visions: On Recent Finds of Tangut Buddhist Art." *Monumenta Serica* 43 (1995): 235–262.
- Mizuno Keizaburō; Konno Toshifumi; and Suzuki Kakichi, eds. *Mikkyō jūin to butsuzō* (Esoteric Monasteries and Statues). Tokyo: Kodansha, 1993.
- Morse, Anne Nishimura, and Morse, Samuel Crowell (curators). *Object as Insight: Japanese Buddhist Art and Ritual*. Katonah, NY: Katonah Museum of Art, 1995.
- Nara National Museum. *Mikkyō kogei* (Applied Art of Japanese Esoteric Buddhism, exhibition catalogue). Nara, Japan: Nara National Museum, 1992.
- Orzech, Charles Daniel. "Maṇḍalas on the Move: Reflections from Chinese Esoteric Buddhism, ca. 800 C.E." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 19, no. 2 (1996): 209–243.
- Saso, Michael. *Tantric Art and Meditation: The Tendai Tradition*. Honolulu: Tendai Educational Foundation and University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Sekiguchi Masayuki, ed. *Mikkyō*, Vol. 2: *Zusetsu, Nihon no bukkyō*. Tokyo: Shinchōsha, 1988.
- Sørensen, Henrik H. "Typology and Iconography in the Esoteric Buddhist Art of Dunhuang." *Silk Road Art and Archaeology* (Journal of the Institute of Silk Road Studies, Kamakura) 2 (1991–1992): 285–349.
- Sperling, Elliot. "The 5th Karma-pa and Some Aspects of the Relationship between Tibet and the Early Ming." In *Tibetan Studies in Honour of Hugh Richardson*, ed. Michael Aris and Aung San Suu Kyi. Warminster, UK: Aris and Philips, 1979.
- ten Grotenhuis, Elizabeth. *Japanese Maṇḍalas: Representations of Sacred Geography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Tokyo National Museum and other National Museums. *Kōbō daishi to Mikkyō bijutsu* (Kōbō Daishi and the Art of Esoteric Buddhism, exhibition catalogue). Tokyo: 1983–1984.
- Weidner, Marsha, ed. *Latter Days of the Law: Images of Chinese Buddhism 850–1850*. Lawrence, KS: Spencer Museum of Art, University of Kansas; Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.

CYNTHIA J. BOGEL

## ESOTERIC ART, SOUTH AND SOUTHEAST ASIA

The Buddhist esoteric arts of India, the Himalayan regions, and Southeast Asia are inspired by the VAJRAYĀNA sect that is sometimes called TANTRA, referring to the texts, called *tantras* (literally, "woven threads"), that the sect uses. These arts are an integral part of the visualized meditation rituals (*sādhana*) that Vajrayāna developed to harness the powers needed to achieve enlightenment in a single lifetime. Vajrayāna arts are called *esoteric* because the intensely complex and mystical quality of the visualized meditations make them mysterious and "secret" to all but the initiated. To fully utilize esoteric art the practitioner must be guided at every step by a qualified teacher; merely following a text will not suffice.



*Cakrasaṃvāra and Vajravahārī in Union*, Nepal, about 1450, opaque watercolor on cotton hanging scroll (*thang ka*). Los Angeles County Museum of Art, from the Nasli and Alice Heeramaneck Collection, Museum Associates Purchase. Reproduced by permission. This hanging scroll is a visual support for ritual meditation. The practitioner visualizes the two deities in the *yab-yum* posture that signifies the absolute union of compassion and wisdom, “father and mother.”

Aesthetically, a few generalizations can be offered about esoteric painting. Because the human form is the yogic “vessel” for following the path, the figure is paramount. Images of symbols are also important as the focus for specific meditations. A MAṄḌALA often combines the use of figures and symbols to striking effect. Composition, depth, and volume are only defined through the juxtaposition of pure contrasting colors and solid defining lines; realistic depictions are not valued. Most of the background and details are idealized and stylized into fluid symmetrical patterns.

### Visual supports for ritual meditation

Esoteric Buddhism makes more extensive use of visual imagery and symbols to impart its teachings than any other school of Buddhism. This is because Vajrayāna uses texts so abstruse that their meanings can seemingly be conveyed only through art. Even the name of this path, *vajra*, which literally means “thunderbolt” or “diamond,” is expressed in art by a ritual implement that reveals the esoteric truth of the name. The vajra is a scepter with, usually, five prongs joined together at the end; the prongs symbolize the powerful and quick method of practice focused on the five transcendent buddha families, ultimately joined together in the enlightened state. Sometimes a *vajra* may be attached to a bell, which symbolizes PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM). A bell with a *vajra* handle thus represents the perfect balance and necessity of combining method with wisdom to achieve enlightenment.

A wide range of media are used for esoteric arts. Paintings mounted as hanging scrolls (Tibetan, *thangka*; literally, “something rolled up”), murals on monastery or temple walls, and manuscript illustrations are the most common art forms used as aids for meditation. They are often commissioned as offerings or to commemorate a special event or festival. Sculptures for either altars or niches are cast in metal, carved of wood, or sculpted in clay, usually painted and gilded. Ritual objects and instruments manipulated in meditation rituals or dances (Tibetan, *cham*) are usually cast in metal, but gems and semiprecious stones are also used, along with bones, shells, and rock crystals. More temporary media include woodblock prints, prayer flags, and votive clay images. Offerings, especially initiation maṅḍalas, can be made of almost any material, such as chalk, butter, grains, or sand. The two main forms of sacred architecture in esoteric Buddhism are the STŪPA, called a *mchod rten* (*chorten*) in the Himalayas, and the monastery complex, which includes shrines, dance courtyards, and residences for monks or nuns.



*The Buddhist Goddess Vajravārāhī*, Central Tibet, fourteenth century, gilded bronze with inlaid gems. Los Angeles County Museum of Art, purchased by the Los Angeles County Museum of Art Board of Trustees in honor of Dr. Pratapaditya Pal, Senior Curator of Indian and Southeast Asian Art, 1970–1995. Reproduced by permission. This *yi dam* or personal deity in a whirling dance posture symbolizes the transcendent wisdom needed to become enlightened.

### Transcendent pantheon in esoteric art

The Buddha Śākyamuni is deified, or rather multiplied, as two groups of beings in the esoteric pantheon. His teachings thereby become elaborated in visually concrete systems that are organized by maṅḍalas, mystical diagrams that map out the process of visualized meditations. The first group is comprised of the five transcendent buddhas who parent the five buddha families of deities. The second group encompasses an array of beings, mostly adopted from local traditions, who sponsor specific practices; these are guardians or personal deities called *yi dams* in Tibetan (Sanskrit, *iṣṭadevatā*). Within each sect of Vajrayāna Buddhism, the second group is incorporated into the first group in a way that emphasizes their particular doctrines.

The iconography of this esoteric pantheon is precise. The five transcendent buddhas are identified by color, gesture, and direction in the maṅḍala (east is at the bottom), and each one characterizes a particular aspect of the Buddha Śākyamuni’s life:

1. Akṣobhya: “Imperturbable” (*vajra* family), sapphire blue, earth-touching gesture (*bhūmiśparśa-mudrā*), east (some sects place Akṣobhya in the center); the Buddha’s enlightenment.
2. Ratnasambhava: “Jewel-Born” (jewel family), golden yellow, giving gesture (*varada-mudrā*), south; the Buddha’s generosity as shown in his choice to teach and as demonstrated in his previous lives.
3. Amitābha: “Infinite Light” (lotus family), ruby red, meditation gesture (*dhyāna-mudrā*), west; the Buddha’s path of meditation.
4. Amoghasiddhi: “Infallible Success” (karma family), emerald green, protection gesture (*abhaya-mudrā*), north; the Buddha’s miraculous powers to protect and save.
5. Vairocana: “Illuminator” (buddha family), diamond white, turning the wheel of the dharma gesture (*dharmacakra-mudrā*), center (some sects place Vairocana in the east); the Buddha’s first sermon and all of his teachings.

The colors of *yi dams* are determined by their place within the five families. The talents and weapons they bring to the particular meditation ritual they guide are shown by other attributes. For example, the *yi dam* Vajravārāhī is red because she is related to AMITĀBHA. She carries a ritual chopper with which she cuts through ignorance, because her function is to confer transcendent wisdom. Her consort Cakrasaṃvara is blue because he is related to AKṢOBHYA, and he carries many weapons because he is charged with providing whatever skillful means, all rooted in compassion, are needed to enable the practitioner to become enlightened.

### Regional variations

Indian practitioners and artists of esoteric Buddhism came to the fore after about 500 C.E. They began to make images of many new deities, often displaying ritualized sexual postures (Sanskrit, *yuganaddha* or *māhāmudrā*). They also increased the depiction and variety of ritual gestures and devices, extended the use of maṇḍalas, and recognized that artistic activity itself could be a form of spiritual practice. The earliest image of a deity holding a *vajra* occurs in the northwestern region of ancient Gandhāra.

The advent of Buddhism in Tibet occurred in the seventh century C.E. Tibetan esoteric arts grew around a seeding of Indian tantric forms among the indige-

nous shamanic religion called BON. Particular to Tibet and later Nepal is the extensive use of the posture called *yab-yum*, literally “father-mother” in Tibetan, as a potent visual metaphor for the absolute necessity of joining the goddess’s transcendent wisdom with the god’s skillful means: They are physically joined in a sexual embrace. The whirling dance posture of mostly nude figures is also characteristic of the Himalayas.

Another Tibetan iconographic form is the lineage painting used to legitimize sects, *tulkus* (*sprul sku*; living incarnations of particular bodhisattvas, such as the DALAI LAMA as an incarnation of Avalokiteśvara), and teachers within a genealogy of previous teachers and the transcendent buddha families. Parallel to this development is the wide proliferation of small *mchod rtens* (elongated stūpas) to commemorate, as well as to invoke, the protective powers of teachers, saints, *tulkus*, and sacred scriptures. Huge three-dimensional maṇḍalas, some with interior shrines, are also thought of as *mchod rtens*. Unique to Nepal are the *eye-mchod rtens*, which have an enormous pair of eyes painted on each side of the square base beneath the top spire; these eyes belong either to Vairocana, the Illuminator, or to the primordial buddha principle named Adibuddha.

RITUAL OBJECTS such as the prayer wheel, the *vajra* (Tibetan, *rdo rje*), the bell, and the *phur pa* (Tibetan, used to “nail” down demons) were extensively developed in the Himalayan regions. The highly sophisticated techniques of making and consecrating these necessary implements spread to Southeast and East Asia.

Esoteric Buddhism in Southeast Asia thrived mainly in Bhutan, Myanmar (Burma), Kampuchea (Cambodia), Malaya, and Indonesian Java. The most important esoteric art forms that remain are the complexes of Angkor Thom in Cambodia and BOROBUDUR in Java, as well as many fine examples of ritual implements and sculptures. Borobudur (about 850 C.E.) elaborates the life of the Buddha Śākyamuni as the ideal path to enlightenment. Each stage is represented on a different level of this enormous three-dimensional maṇḍala, with seventy-two pierced stūpas on the top level, each housing Vairocana as he illuminates the world. This site is both a straightforward and an esoteric commemoration of the Buddha’s birth, enlightenment, and death.

See also: Buddha(s); Esoteric Art, East Asia; Himalayas, Buddhist Art in; Huayan Art; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Tibet

## Bibliography

- Fisher, Robert E. *Art of Tibet*. New York: Thames and Hudson, 1997.
- Maxwell, Thomas S. "The Advanced Forms of Buddhism." In *The Gods of Asia: Image, Text, and Meaning*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Mullin, Glenn H., and Weber, Andy. *The Mystical Arts of Tibet*. Atlanta, GA: Longstreet Press, 1996.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *Art of Tibet: A Catalogue of the Los Angeles County Museum of Art Collection*. Los Angeles: Los Angeles County Museum of Art, 1983.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *Art of Nepal: A Catalogue of the Los Angeles County Museum of Art Collection*. Los Angeles: Los Angeles County Museum of Art, 1985.
- Pal, Pratapaditya, ed. *On the Path to the Void: Buddhist Art of the Tibetan Realm*. Bombay: Marg, 1996.
- Rhie, Marilyn M., and Thurman, Robert A. F. *Wisdom and Compassion: The Sacred Art of Tibet*, expanded edition. New York: Abrams, 1996.
- Trungpa, Chögyam. *Visual Dharma: The Buddhist Art of Tibet*. Berkeley, CA, and London: Shambhala, 1975.

GAIL MAXWELL

**ESOTERIC BUDDHISM.** See Mijiao (Esoteric) School; Tantra; Vajrayāna

## ETHICS

Buddhist canonical texts have no term that directly translates into the English word *ethics*; the closest term is *śīla* (moral discipline). *Śīla* is one of the threefold disciplines, along with *PRAJÑĀ* (WISDOM) and mental cultivation (*samādhi*), which constitute the path leading to the end of suffering. *Śīla* is most closely identified with the widely known five moral PRECEPTS (*pañcaśīla*) of lay Buddhists: not to kill, not to steal, not to lie, not to have inappropriate sex, and not to use intoxicants. The Buddhist tradition has a notion of voluntary and gradualist moral expectations: Lay Buddhists may choose to take the five (in some Buddhist areas fewer) precepts or to take temporarily eight or ten precepts; novices take ten precepts and ordained monks and nuns take over two hundred precepts.

### Sources of ethical thinking

In all areas of Buddhism, followers look to the "three treasures" for guidance: the Buddha as teacher, the

dharmā as the teaching, and the SAṄGHA as the community that transmits the dharmā. With these three treasures, Buddhists have rich resources on ethical thinking, especially in the written materials communicating the dharmā. The three major divisions of the Buddhist scriptural CANON all contain ethical materials. The sūtras contain moral teachings and ethical reflection; the VINAYA gives moral and behavioral rules for ordained Buddhists, and the ABHIDHARMA literature explores the psychology of morality. In addition to canonical literature, numerous commentaries and treatises of Buddhist schools contain ethical reflections.

The ethical teachings of scripture can be confirmed by one's own reflection. The sūtra's story of the Kālamas is often cited to show the Buddha's emphasis on personal reflection. In this tale the Buddha tells the Kālamas that they should not blindly accept teachings based on tradition, instruction from a respected teacher, or from any other sources without confirming these teachings through their own experience. He helps them see for themselves that actions motivated by greed, hatred, or delusion are unethical, and those motivated by the opposite of greed, hatred, or delusion are ethical.

### Ethics as part of the path, and the relationship of ethics to suffering, emptiness, karma, and rebirth

Ethics is a major part of the Buddhist PATH that leads to the end of suffering. The path is sometimes conceived of as a threefold training in which *śīla* provides the foundation for *samādhi* and *prajñā*. In the noble eightfold path, *śīla* includes the practices of right action, right speech, and right livelihood. The practice of moral discipline is supportive of the other practices in the path.

THERAVĀDA texts make a distinction between the ordinary path that leads to better REBIRTH and the noble path that leads to NIRVĀṆA. On the ordinary path a person is partly motivated by what is gained through ethical action. On the noble path a person is gradually freed from the false idea of the self and from selfish motivations. An ARHAT who has completed the ordinary path is on the noble path; he or she is beyond ethics and KARMA (ACTION) in the sense that the arhat spontaneously acts morally, and his or her actions no longer have good or bad karmic fruits. The arhat always acts morally without being attached to morality. Many Buddhist scholars (Harvey, Keown, and others) reject the conclusion of anthropological studies in Myanmar (Burma) that there were two

separate distinct paths—an ordinary path leading to better rebirths for laypeople and a noble path leading to nirvaṇā for monks (Spiro, King). Instead, they argue that both lay and ordained Buddhists practice the ordinary path with the understanding that the noble path is the eventual long-term goal.

The Buddhist understanding of the nature of reality underscores the importance of ethics. The view that suffering is the nature of lives lived in ignorance emphasizes the need to alleviate suffering in others, as well as in oneself. The view of no-self (anātman) undercuts any clinging to individualistic gain: Since the idea of a separately existing self is false, then one must give up selfishly motivated actions. In MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism the understanding of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) reinforces the idea that there are no independent, separately existing factors of existence. The realization of no-self, emptiness, and interdependence leads to an ethics of consideration for all beings and all things.

According to the Buddhist understanding of the natural law of karma, wholesome actions result in pleasant karmic results and unwholesome actions lead to unpleasant karmic results. But it is not true that an action is good simply because it has pleasant results. Instead, it has pleasant results because the action itself is good. The degree of goodness of an action is dependent on the motive for the action. There is a hierarchy of motives for good actions. As the Chinese monk-scholar YINSHUN (b. 1906) explains it, “Lower people give for the sake of themselves. / Middle people give for their own liberation. / Those who give all for the benefit of others / Are called great people” (p. 228). The karmic result of an action depends not just on the action, but especially on the motive behind the action and on the manner in which it is performed.

The belief in karma and rebirth is important in initially motivating good behavior, in emphasizing its importance, in giving people more empathy for others to whom they were related in previous lives, and in supplying a longer-term perspective for seeing one’s ethical development over lifetimes. The rarity of human rebirth makes each human life especially precious as an opportunity for moral and spiritual development.

### **Ordained and lay Buddhist ethics**

For ordained monks and nuns, behavior is guided by the canonical texts in the vinaya. The vinaya contains rules, consequences for violating the rules, and explanations of the origin and interpretation of the rules. Some of the rules are what we would consider ethical guidelines; others are aimed at the smooth operation

of the saṅgha and at maintaining the saṅgha’s good reputation with lay Buddhists.

For lay Buddhists the foundation for leading a moral life is twofold: the restraints on behavior called for in the five permanent (or eight or ten temporary) precepts, and the encouragement to selfless giving called for in the primary moral virtue of DĀNA (GIVING). Giving is the first Buddhist PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) and by far the most emphasized for lay Buddhists. Other perfections are *śīla* (moral virtue), *kṣānti* (patience), *vīrya* (vigor), DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE), and *prajñā* (wisdom). These perfections are discussed in philosophical texts and are embodied by the Bodhisattva in JĀTAKA tales, such as the one about VIŚVANTARA (Pāli, Vessantara), the prince who perfects *dāna* to the point of giving away even his wife and children. Buddhists understand that the precepts and the perfections can be followed at different spiritual levels: Giving done with thought for karmic results is not as good as giving that is performed because it is valued in itself. Giving done selflessly further lessens the false concept of self and thus moves the giver closer to wisdom.

Buddhist texts devote more attention to behavioral norms for ordained members of the saṅgha, but social and political ethics for the rest of society are not ignored. One of the best visions for social relationships is found in the *Sigālovāda-sutta* (*Advice to Sigāla*), in which the Buddha explains the value of mutually supportive and respectful relationships between parents and children, students and teachers, husbands and wives, friends and associates, employers and employees, and householders and renunciants. This particular text lays out the foundations for a harmonious lay community just as the vinaya texts do for a harmonious monastic community.

Buddhist texts that depict conversations between the Buddha and kings often impart political values, such as the Ten Duties of a King, in which the Buddha describes a benevolent monarch whose power is limited by the higher power of the dharma. In South and Southeast Asia, Buddhist ideas of benevolent KINGSHIP had great influence, especially as King AŚOKA became the legendary ideal of Buddhist rulers. In East Asia, Buddhist ideas were usually superseded by Confucian political and social ideals.

### **Mahāyāna emphases**

Mahāyāna Buddhism adds to Buddhist ethics a greater emphasis on the BODHISATTVA as the model for ethical behavior. Bodhisattvas embody the virtues, espe-

cially compassion and wisdom, to which all Buddhists should eventually aspire. The bodhisattva masters the perfections through a process of ten stages with the goal of gaining enlightenment for the benefit of all living beings. Bodhisattva vows take several forms, including the vow made by the eighth-century Buddhist saint ŚĀNTIDEVA: “For as long as space endures / And for as long as living beings remain, / Until then may I too abide / To dispel the misery of the world.” In East Asian Mahāyāna, an ideal lay Buddhist is the bodhisattva VIMALAKĪRTI, whose wisdom and compassion is shown to outshine even that of monks.

In Theravāda Buddhism there is a strong emphasis on the vinaya, which governs the behavior of the ordained community. In Mahāyāna Buddhism outside India the unifying power of the vinaya has been less significant. East Asians often collapsed vinaya and *śīla* into a single concept (Chinese, *jīelü*), thus diluting the distinctiveness of vinaya. In addition, many of the rules seemed irrelevant to a non-Indian cultural environment. In East Asia, the vinaya had to accommodate a very different culture and the already dominant social ethics of Confucianism.

In East Asia some Buddhist schools accepted the teachings of Buddhist morality but believed that it was impossible to follow the precepts correctly in the present age of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA. The Nichiren and PURE LAND SCHOOLS of Japan have developed this idea most clearly. In these schools the means to enlightenment comes from outside the unenlightened individual. NICHIREN identified the source of that power as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), which encapsulated the powers of all buddhas and bodhisattvas; the Pure Land leader SHINRAN (1173–1263) identified the source as the compassionate power of AMITĀBHA (Japanese, Amida) Buddha. In these schools, morality has never been seen as a means to an end, but rather as an expression of gratitude, and as empowered by something beyond the individual.

The Chinese CHAN SCHOOL of Buddhism and Tibetan TANTRA sometimes seem to use language that borders on antinomianism. By transcending the dualities of all things, including right and wrong and good and evil, there is the possibility of enlightenment. In fact, the problem is not with the duality of moral precepts, but with the self-centered clinging to moral precepts and the tendency toward self-righteousness.

### Comparisons with Western ethics

Western anthropologists studying Theravāda Buddhism in Burma have argued for differing views of

morality in monks and laypeople. Melford Spiro identified two forms of Buddhism: *kammatic Buddhism* of laypeople who followed morality in order to gain a better rebirth, and *nibbānic Buddhism* of the monks who followed the path to gain nibbāna (Sanskrit, nirvāṇa). In both cases, the moral precepts are viewed as means to a goal, but to different goals. This understanding of Buddhist ethics places it closest to a Western utilitarian ethics where the goal is the reduction of suffering, and ethics is the means to that goal. In the decades after this anthropological work, other Buddhist scholars have argued from the anthropological data and from textual sources that a utilitarian view of ethics is not appropriate to Buddhism. Damien Keown and others have argued that the best way to understand Buddhist ethics is in terms of Aristotelian virtue ethics. The moral precepts are not to be followed just because they reduce suffering (although they do), but because they are good in themselves. That is, *śīla* is not just a means for gaining wisdom and concentration; *śīla* and wisdom are both part of the final goal of enlightenment and are interdependent. In *The Nature of Buddhist Ethics* (1992) Keown argued that Buddhist ethics are teleological ethics similar to Aristotelian ethics because “the virtues are the means to the gradual realization of the end through the incarnation of the end in the present” (p. 194). In Buddhism, of course, this gradual realization takes place over many lifetimes.

Peter Harvey summed up the field of Buddhist ethics in comparison to Western ethics by acknowledging that “the rich field of Buddhist ethics would be narrowed by wholly collapsing it into any single one of the Kantian, Aristotelian or Utilitarian models, though Buddhism agrees with each in respectively acknowledging the importance of (1) a good motivating will, (2) cultivation of character, and (3) the reduction of suffering in others and oneself” (p. 51).

### Contemporary ethical issues

In the contemporary world, Buddhist scholars and leaders have sought to apply Buddhist ethics to moral questions of this age. This is most clearly evident in the ENGAGED BUDDHISM and humanistic Buddhism movements. *Engaged Buddhism* is THICH NHAT HANH’s term for bringing Buddhism out of the monastery to deal with pressing social issues. The ideals of engaged Buddhism have been embraced by a wide range of Asian and Western Buddhist leaders and movements. In Chinese Buddhism, humanistic Buddhism (*rensheng fojiao*) was developed by the reformer TAIXU (1890–1947), the scholar Yinshun, the Chan master



Shengyan, and the Taiwanese nun Zhengyan (Cheng Yen) to refer to a form of modern Buddhism involved with current social issues such as education, poverty, pollution, and sickness.

Many current ethical issues are related to the first Buddhist precept: not to harm other beings. The first precept is central to Buddhist discussions of ABORTION, WAR, euthanasia, animal rights, environmentalism, and economic justice. Buddhist writings against war and military violence are some of the best known. Nhat Hanh, the fourteenth DALAI LAMA, Aung San Suu Kyi, and Mahāghosānanda are some of the Buddhist leaders who have argued against violence as a means to resist the oppression in their countries. The Buddhist tradition has nothing quite like a “just war” tradition, only isolated instances where Buddhists have tried to justify violence by claiming their enemies were not truly human. The dominant tradition is pacifist.

Whether violence to one’s own body is an acceptable means of protest is disputed. Nhat Hanh considered Vietnamese monks who performed SELF-IMMOLATION during the 1960s and 1970s to be bodhisattvas burning brightly for truth. Others, like the Dalai Lama and Shengyan, have rejected self-immolation, fasting, or other suicidal actions as political means. Early Buddhist scriptures specifically forbid suicide, but this question gets to the heart of the issue of whether bodhisattvas can violate the precepts in order to reduce the suffering of others. In this scenario a bodhisattva violates normative Buddhist ethics with the willingness to take on negative karmic effects in order to benefit other living beings. In one *jātaka* tale the bodhisattva offers his body as a meal to a hungry tigress to prevent her from eating her cubs. There is also a more controversial *jātaka* tale where the Buddha in a previous lifetime (as a bodhisattva) kills a bandit in order to save the lives of five hundred merchants that the bandit is about to kill. The understanding is that the action was motivated by compassion for both the merchants and the bandit, who would suffer terribly from the karmic fruits of these murders. The Dalai Lama, among others, has rejected such violations of Buddhist ethics on the basis that only a fully enlightened being could make such judgments.

See also: Nichiren School

### Bibliography

Bstan ’dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *Ethics for a New Millennium*. New York: Riverhead Books, 1999.

Crosby, Kate, and Skilton, Andrew, trans. *Śāntideva: The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Dharmasiri, Gunapala. *Fundamentals of Buddhist Ethics*. Antioch, CA: Golden Leaves, 1989.

Fu, Charles Wei-hsun, and Wawrytko, Sandra A., eds. *Buddhist Ethics and Modern Society: An International Symposium*. New York: Greenwood Press, 1991.

Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values, and Issues*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.

*Journal of Buddhist Ethics*. Internet journal available from: [jbe.gold.ac.uk/](http://jbe.gold.ac.uk/) or [jbe.la.psu.edu/](http://jbe.la.psu.edu/).

Katz, Nathan. *Buddhist Images of Human Perfection: The Arhant of the Sutta Piṭaka Compared with the Bodhisattva and Mahāsiddha*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982.

Keown, Damien. *The Nature of Buddhist Ethics*. London: Macmillan, 1992.

Keown, Damien. *Buddhism and Bioethics*. London: Macmillan; New York: St. Martin’s Press, 1995.

Keown, Damien, ed. *Contemporary Buddhist Ethics*. London: Curzon, 2000.

Keown, Damien; Prebish, Charles S.; and Husted, W. R.; eds. *Buddhism and Human Rights*. London: Curzon, 1998.

King, Winston L. *In the Hope of Nibbāna: An Essay on Theravāda Buddhist Ethics*. LaSalle, IL: Open Court, 1964.

Kraft, Kenneth, ed. *Inner Peace, World Peace: Essays on Buddhism and Nonviolence*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.

Little, David, and Twiss, Sumner B. *Comparative Religious Ethics: A New Method*. New York: Harper, 1978.

Nakasone, Ronald Y. *Ethics of Enlightenment: Essays and Sermons in Search of a Buddhist Ethic*. Fremont, CA: Dharma Cloud, 1990.

Nhat Hanh, Thich, et al. *For a Future to Be Possible: Commentaries on the Five Wonderful Precepts*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax Press, 1993. Revised edition, 1998.

Prebish, Charles S., ed. *Buddhist Ethics: A Cross-Cultural Approach*. Dubuque, IA: Kendall/Hunt, 1992.

Queen, Christopher S., and King, Sallie B., eds. *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

Saddhatissa, Hammalawa. *Buddhist Ethics: Essence of Buddhism*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1970.

Sizemore, Russell F., and Swearer, Donald K., eds. *Ethics, Wealth, and Salvation: A Study in Buddhist Social Ethics*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1990.

Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1971.

Wayman, Alex. *Ethics of Tibet: Bodhisattva Section of Tsong-Kha-Pa's Lam Rim Chen Mo*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.

Yin-shun. *The Way to Buddhahood: Instructions from a Modern Chinese Master*, tr. Wing Yeung. Boston: Wisdom, 1998.

BARBARA E. REED

## ETIQUETTE

Models of polite behavior appear throughout Buddhist literature, as when disciples of the Buddha bow and circumambulate the Buddha, or when preachers of the dharma are treated with respect. While the Vinaya Piṭaka is the scriptural source of guidance on monastic discipline, there is also a much larger written and oral VINAYA tradition, consisting of commentaries, digests, and ad hoc instructions. Whereas Vinaya texts define the fundamental nature of the SAṄGHA, the term *etiquette* tends to apply to less crucial, and yet more pervasive, rule-governed behavior: posture when standing, the direction of the gaze, sequences of seniority in the dining hall, how to hold chopsticks, terms of polite address, how to bow. In daily life, this attention to detail does not always have a scriptural basis, and etiquette varies widely by region, time period, sect, and even from monastery to monastery.

Etiquette is not only a matter of interpersonal relations, but also governs maintenance of the material objects of Buddhism, such as robes, bowls, icons, and monastery boundaries. Changes in behavior serve to demarcate sacred space, for example, when MONKS in Southeast Asia roll down their robes to cover both arms when they exit the monastery, and roll them up to expose one arm when they return. Walking through doors is also an occasion for RITUAL. In China, the act of entering is governed by a ritual code, and behavior is modified according to one's location inside or outside. One is careful to step over the "bridge" or "saddle" of the doorway, which in some cases can be quite a high step. If the front façade has three large doors, one enters through those on the sides, not by the central door. When entering by the left of the three gates, one should put the left foot in first; if through the right gate, the right foot is first. In some cases, shoes are removed or changed. Stepping into the temple space, the first act should be a bow. The *Jiaojie xinxue biqu xinghu liuyi* (*Admonitions for Novice Monks on the Behavioral Norms of the Vinaya*), a guide to monastic etiquette by the Tang dynasty monk DAOXUAN (596–667),

instructs: "When entering the monastery gate, bow, and then kneel, and recite the customary praises to the Buddha. . . . Gather up your sitting-cloth, join palms and bend the body. Then, with a serious expression, walk slowly on one side of the walkway, looking ahead." When leaving, "perform obeisance according to the correct method: three bows before the Buddha, one bow as you reach the gate, one more bow outside the gate. When there are a few monks, bow once to each in order. When there are many monks, bow to the group three times." When circumambulating an image or sacred site, one should move clockwise with palms together, and with one's right shoulder to the object of reverence, possibly with the right shoulder bared.

The most common Buddhist polite gesture is the *añjali*, also known as the *namaskāra* or *namas te*, (Japanese, *Gasshō*; Thai, *wai*). The palms of the hands are pressed together in front of the body and the head or torso leans forward to a greater or lesser degree. In many cases, the height of the hands indicates the actor's perceived or intended social position vis-à-vis the other person: The hands are held higher when gesturing toward people "higher-up" than oneself. In an *añjali* to a fully ordained monk the hands are usually held at the forehead, compared to in front of the chin when offered to most laity. When an adult offers an *añjali* to return the greeting of a child, the hands are held at heart level.

In some parts of Asia, particular devotion may be shown by placing one's hands on the feet of a monk. As with the spatial distinction of height, the timing of this gesture also matters: The subordinate initiates the gesture.

Conversely, the fact that monks do not bow to laity (not even to the king) is a means of asserting monkhood as an ideal social order outside of the world. Conflicts of etiquette have occurred, such as the persistent debates over monks not bowing to their own parents or to the Chinese emperor. These debates brought Buddhist and Confucian models of etiquette into direct conflict. The virulence of these debates indicates the importance of etiquette, as arguments for and against drew upon fundamental pillars of Buddhist or Confucian doctrine.

Members of the ordained community continue to perform obeisance to each other, however, and Buddhist scriptures encode the orthodox hierarchy: All nuns, no matter how senior, bow to all monks, no matter how junior. Novices bow to the fully ordained, and juniors bow to seniors. Seniority is measured in

“dharma years,” that is, the number of Lenten seasons since full ordination.

When the many particular rules have been internalized, the intended result is a dignified demeanor (*īryāpatha*; Chinese, *weiyi*), a kind of self-possession of the body and its robes. Buddhist monastic guides reveal an elaborate regime of bodily control, especially a mindful control of the hands; there are rules against flapping the arms around, standing with arms akimbo, carelessly scratching or blowing one’s nose when in the presence of superiors, tickling people, and so on. Etiquette should also be controlled at meal times; the PRĀTIMOKṢA (the list of monastic precepts, a set of vows assumed as part of the ordination process) includes rules against, for example, licking the fingers, scraping the bowl with fingers, or sticking the tongue out. The activities of seeing, pointing, and touching are also strongly rule-governed. The mastery of etiquette is part of a more encompassing effort to mindfully discipline the entire body, as well as speech and mind.

In some of its modern American versions, Buddhism seems opposed to any emphasis on etiquette, standing instead for spontaneity and an egalitarian rejection of all distinctions. Indeed, CHAN SCHOOL discourse has played with violations of etiquette. However, the non-dualist rejection of distinctions and the suspension of the assumed norms are only meaningful in terms of shared social norms. Buddhist monasteries are the sites of intensified rather than inverted etiquette, and some highly refined forms of social behavior, such as the tea ceremony, have often spread through the medium of Buddhism.

*See also:* Precepts; Robes and Clothing

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Dōgen. *Dōgen’s Pure Standards for the Zen Community: A Translation of the Eihei Shingō*, tr. Taigen Daniel Leighton and Shohaku Okumura. Albany: State University of New York, 1996.
- Hurvitz, Leon. “‘Render Unto Caesar’ in Early Chinese Buddhism.” *Sino-Indian Studies (Liebenthal Festschrift)* 5, no. 3–4 (1957): 81–114.
- Prip-Møller, Johannes. *Chinese Buddhist Monasteries: Their Plan and Its Function as a Setting for Buddhist Monastic Life*. London: Oxford University Press, 1937.

ERIC REINDERS

## EUROPE

At the beginning of the twenty-first century, the presence of Buddhism in Europe is characterized by a diversity of traditions, schools, orders, and lineages. Since the 1970s interest in Buddhism among Europeans has grown steadily, accompanied by the arrival of Buddhist refugees and immigrants from Asian countries. Of Europe’s estimated one million Buddhists, about two-thirds are of Asian ancestry. Nevertheless, Buddhism’s public face in Europe and its representation in the media are dominated by convert Buddhists, leaving migrant Buddhists for the most part unseen and unrecognized.

The beginning of Buddhism in Europe can be dated to the mid-nineteenth century, though fragmentary information about Buddhist customs and concepts had trickled into Europe since the seventeenth century. From the 1850s onward, Europe witnessed a boom of translations of Buddhist works, as well as studies and portraits of Buddhism. European philosophers and scholars such as Arthur Schopenhauer (1788–1860), Thomas W. Rhys Davids (1843–1922), and Hermann Oldenberg (1854–1920) helped spread Buddhist concepts through their treatises and translations. These scholars clearly favored the teachings of the Pāli CANON, which they assumed to be pure and original. The first converted European Buddhists appeared during the 1880s in response to these studies; most converts were educated middle-class men. In accordance with the dominance of Pāli Buddhist ideas, a few young men from England and Germany became THERAVĀDA monks in Burma (Myanmar) and Ceylon (Sri Lanka). Most prominent among these were Bennett McGregor (1872–1923), who was ordained as Ananda Metteyya in 1902, and Anton W. F. Gueth (1878–1957), who was ordained as Nyanatiloka in 1904.

Ethical and intellectual interest in the teachings of Theravāda Buddhism gained organizational momentum in Europe with the founding of new Buddhist societies. The first of these was the Society for the Buddhist Mission in Germany, formed by the Indologist Karl Seidenstücker (1876–1936) in Leipzig in 1903. Through lectures, pamphlets, and books, the first professed Buddhists tried to win members from the educated middle and upper strata of society. During the 1920s further Buddhist societies and parishes evolved, many with the support of the Ceylonese reformer ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933). Leading Buddhists included Georg Grimm (1868–1945) and Paul Dahlke



The Dharmapāla Center, Kandersteg, Switzerland. Courtesy of Dr. Martin Baumann, University of Lucerne. Reproduced by permission.

(1865–1928) in Germany, and Christmas Humphreys (1901–1983) in England. The schools of Grimm and Dahlke continued their work within small private circles during the Nazi period, when Buddhists were regarded with suspicion as pacifists and eccentrics. With the exception of those who had abandoned Judaism and become Buddhists, however, no official or open persecution of Buddhism took place.

After World War II, small numbers of Buddhists reconstructed former THERAVĀDA-oriented groups or founded new ones. Beginning in the 1950s, Japanese Buddhist traditions, such as Zen, Jōdo Shinshū, and SŌKA GAKKAI, were brought to Europe. Zen became especially popular during the 1960s and 1970s; many local groups were established and Zen teachers began touring Europe. The Zen boom was followed by a sharp rise of interest in Tibetan Buddhism. Beginning in the mid-1970s, high ranking Tibetan teachers conducted preaching tours in Europe. Within two decades, converts to Tibetan Buddhism outnumbered converts to all other Buddhist traditions in many countries.

This rapid increase in the numbers of European Buddhists, accompanied by an expansion of already existing institutions, led to a considerable rise in the num-

ber of Buddhist groups and centers. In Britain, for example, the number of Buddhist organizations increased from seventy-four to some four hundred between 1979 and 2000. In Germany, interest in Buddhism resulted in an increase in the number of Buddhist institutions from around forty in 1975 to more than five hundred meditation circles, groups, centers, and societies by 1999. Comparable growth rates occurred in other European countries, such as Italy, Austria, Switzerland, France, the Netherlands, and Denmark. Eastern European countries also witnessed a growing interest in Buddhism following the political changes of 1989. Numerous Buddhist groups, Tibetan and Zen in particular, were founded in Poland, the Czech Republic, Hungary, and western Russia. Visits by European and North American Buddhist teachers, as well as a longing for spiritual alternatives to the established Roman Catholic and Orthodox churches, brought about a steady growth of Buddhism in Eastern Europe.

In addition to Western convert Buddhists, considerable numbers of Asian Buddhists have immigrated to Europe since the 1960s (see Table 1). In France, especially in Paris, large communities of refugees from Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia have emerged. In Great

TABLE 1

Estimated Buddhists in selected European countries in the late 1990s			
Country	Buddhists total	Buddhists from Asia	Percentage of population
France	350,000	300,000	0.6%
Britain	180,000	130,000	0.3%
Germany	170,000	120,000	0.2%
Italy	75,000	25,000	0.1%
Netherlands	33,000	20,000	0.2%
Switzerland	25,000	20,000	0.3%
Austria	17,000	5,000	0.2%
Denmark	10,000	7,000	0.1%
Hungary	7,000	1,000	0.1%
Poland	5,000	500	0.02%
Russia	1,000,000	vast majority	0.7%

SOURCE: Baumann (2002).

Britain, the Netherlands, and other Western European nations, refugees, immigrants, and businesspeople from Asian countries have found work or asylum. In the process of settling down, religious and cultural institutions were established to help immigrants preserve their ethnic identity and build a home away from home.

Still, relative to their absolute numbers, Asian Buddhists in Europe have established few Buddhist institutions. The rapid rise in the number of Buddhist centers and societies is largely due to the work of convert Buddhists, who, in addition to following established forms of Theravāda, MAHĀYĀNA, and Tibetan Buddhism, also founded new Buddhist orders. These include the Arya Maitreya Mandala order, founded by the German lama Govinda (1898–1985) in 1933, and the Friends of the Western Buddhist Order, established by the British Sangharakshita in 1967. In many countries, however, Zen and Tibetan Buddhism remain foremost, superseding the early dominance of Theravāda.

During the 1980s and 1990s, Buddhism in Europe became firmly established in organizational form. In addition to the numerous local Buddhist groups and centers, in many countries national umbrella societies were created to enhance intra-Buddhist dialogue and activity. In Austria, Switzerland, Germany, the Netherlands, and Italy, such national societies have become well respected representatives of Buddhism. The European Buddhist Union was founded in 1975, but this organization has had little impact. Austria officially recognized Buddhism as a religion entitled to special rights, such as school teaching and broadcast time, in 1983. Representatives of the various Buddhist tradi-

tions in Germany adopted what they called a “Buddhist Confession” in 1985, although they failed to win state recognition.

The dynamic growth during the 1970s and 1980s included a professionalization of European Buddhism in terms of leadership, book and journal marketing, and the staging of public conventions. In addition, an increasing number of female and male convert Buddhists took on professional roles by becoming priests, nuns, monks, or full-time lay teachers. A second generation of European Buddhist teachers is maturing, an important development that has not yet caught on among immigrant Buddhist communities. Though Buddhism is likely to remain a minority tradition in Europe during the twenty-first century, secure foundations have been laid, ensuring that Buddhism will become an accepted part of Europe’s landscape of religions.

*See also:* Buddhist Studies; United States; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

### Bibliography

- Almond, Philip C. *The British Discovery of Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: University Press, 1988.
- Batchelor, Stephen. *The Awakening of the West: The Encounter of Buddhism and Western Culture*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax, 1994.
- Baumann, Martin. “Global Buddhism. Developmental Periods, Regional Histories, and a New Analytical Perspective.” *Journal of Global Buddhism* 2 (2001): 1–43.
- Baumann, Martin. *Buddhism in Europe: An Annotated Bibliography*, 3rd revision, March 2001. Available from [www.globalbuddhism.org/bib-bud.html](http://www.globalbuddhism.org/bib-bud.html).
- Baumann, Martin. “Buddhism in Europe: Past, Present, Prospects.” In *Westward Dharma: Buddhism beyond Asia*, ed. Charles S. Prebish and Martin Baumann. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.
- Hecker, Hellmuth. *Lebensbilder deutscher Buddhisten. Ein bibliographisches Handbuch*, 2nd edition, 2 vols. Konstanz, Germany: University of Konstanz, 1996, 1997.
- Obadia, Lionel. *Bouddhisme et Occident: La diffusion du bouddhisme tibétain en France*. Paris: L’Harmattan, 1999.
- Rawlinson, Andrew. *The Book of Enlightened Masters: Western Teachers in Eastern Traditions*. Chicago and La Salle, IL: Open Court, 1997.
- Waterhouse, Helen. *Buddhism in Bath: Adaptation and Authority*. Leeds, UK: Community Religions Project, Leeds University, 1997.

MARTIN BAUMANN

## EVIL

A word that closely approximates the English word *evil* is the Sanskrit and Pāli term *pāpa*, which can be used to describe anything bad, wicked, troublesome, harmful, inauspicious, vile, or wretched. Although Buddhists have formulated various interpretations of the evils and misfortunes that befall human beings, from an ethical perspective they regard evil as the consequence of previous harmful actions that, by the cause-and-effect laws of KARMA (ACTION), return to beleaguer the perpetrator. In its chapter on *pāpa*, the DHAMMAPADA (*Words of the Doctrine*) articulates the moral dimensions of the notion of evil as wrongdoing that brings about further harm and unfortunate consequences in this life and the next: Evil conduct should be avoided just as poison is avoided, for it results only in sorrow.

The MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS do not face the problem of theodicy in its classic form, which arises in monotheistic traditions that accept an all powerful, all knowing, and fully benevolent creator deity who still apparently allows suffering and misfortune to strike the innocent. For one thing, Buddhists do not accept the notion of a creator god who could be held accountable for evil. Instead, evil is simply an inevitable feature of SAṂSĀRA, or the cycle of REBIRTH; those who acknowledge the first noble truth recognize that life in saṁsāra entails DUḤKHA (SUFFERING). That which humans may be inclined to call evil (i.e., suffering) has been from eternity a necessary condition of life in impermanence, which ceases completely only upon the attainment of NIRVĀṆA.

Buddhism also offers a thorough explanatory account for what prompts immoral deeds: The condition of SENTIENT BEINGS in saṁsāra is to be beset by ignorance and craving. Sentient beings are deeply mired in greed, hatred, and delusion, which are the roots of harmful acts. Harmful acts bear consequences for oneself and others, implicating the wicked further into a cycle of evil and suffering.

Yet as Buddhist doctrine developed philosophically, a distinctive form of theodicy emerged in some traditions within the MAHĀYĀNA. As Peter Gregory argues, the Chinese AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN) poses questions about the presence of ignorance in light of the TATHĀGATAGARBHA doctrine, which holds that all beings contain the germ of enlightenment and are, in their true nature, intrinsically enlightened. If the mind is by nature enlightened, how

did it come to be defiled by ignorance and suffering? For Gregory this philosophical problem exposes a fundamental issue that Buddhist karma theory does not satisfactorily resolve. Although karma theory accounts for the apparent injustices in the world, it does not ultimately explain the metaphysical fact of why human beings find themselves in such a world to begin with. Although early Buddhists chose to avoid metaphysical vexations of this sort, later Buddhist philosophers did attempt to tackle such questions.

Moreover, from the soteriological point of view, there is a long tradition in Buddhism of identifying the religious life as poised beyond the dualism of good and evil. The *Dhammapada* asserts: “But one who is above good and evil and follows the religious life, who moves in the world with deliberation, that one is called a mendicant” (267). Indeed the quest for nirvāṇa is the aspiration to transcend the world of karma and morality, and thus good and evil, altogether.

Karma theory notwithstanding, Buddhists have throughout their long history accommodated theistic and animistic accounts of evil in more pedestrian ways, and they have developed technologies (e.g., spells, deity propitiation, astrological advice) to ward off evil. Some scholars, such as Gananath Obeyeskere and Melford Spiro, have suggested that karma theory provides little sense of comfort or control over the day-to-day depredations that are regarded as evil. In this view, while the notion of karma provides an exhaustive and failsafe account of the causes of evil, it is not always psychologically or experientially satisfying. Past immoral deeds that result in present suffering are both remote and unknown since few have memory of previous lives. Moreover, it is the nature of evil to victimize those upon whom it falls, and to exert itself in an immediate way as an imposition from the outside. Such cruelties as accidents, sudden illnesses, and premature death arrive unannounced and unforeseen, often visiting the apparently innocent and striking with powerful and unyielding vengeance. Viewing evil as the result of malevolent influences from meddling deities or inauspicious arrangements of celestial bodies, while not entirely consistent with karma theory, provides an immediate recourse for warding off, or at least containing, misfortune by ritual and apotropaic means.

Finally, Buddhists have also found meaning in evil through mythology. The cosmogonic myth recounted in the *Aggañña-sutta* (*Knowing the Beginning*) provides an account of the origins of evil in the gradual descent



Māra, the Evil One, attacks the Buddha. (Tibet, eighteenth century.) The Art Archive/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

of originally divine beings. These beings are at first celestial, incorporeal, and entirely happy, but they devolve into earth-dwelling, corporeal, and ultimately thieving, deceitful, and violent creatures. As the celestial beings come to crave food and begin to taste the savory crust of the earth, they introduce scarcity to the world, followed by competition, thieving, and the taking up of sticks against one another. In this myth, a world without evil can be imagined, and the “fall” of the world into evil is attributed ultimately to sensual desire. The chain of events that leads to the presence of evil in the world is driven by *DESIRE* and greed.

Another mythic complex, widely depicted in Buddhist art and legend, centers on *MĀRA*, a Satan-like deity of lust and death. *Māra*, accompanied by his legions of demonic forces and his temptress daughters, arrives to menace Gautama as he sits under a pipal tree on the night of his enlightenment. *Māra* is able to assume shapes and disguises and to harness all manner of demonic forces to oppose the Buddha’s enlightenment. Once recognized, however, *Māra* is powerless, suggesting perhaps that evils are illusory and defeated when exposed. *Māra* symbolizes all that the Buddha conquers: ignorance, darkness, craving, lust, and destruction. With the conquest of *Māra*, the round of rebirth ceases, and death is vanquished.

See also: **Death**

### **Bibliography**

- Gregory, Peter. “The Problem of Theodicy in the *Awakening of Faith*.” *Religious Studies* 22, no. 1 (1986): 63–78.
- Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values, and Issues*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Ling, Trevor Oswald. *Buddhism and the Mythology of Evil: A Study in Theravāda Buddhism*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.
- Norman, K. R., trans. *The Word of the Doctrine (Dhammapada)*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1997.
- Obeyesekere, Gananath. “Theodicy, Sin, and Salvation in a Sociology of Buddhism.” In *Dialectic in Practical Religion*, ed. E. R. Leach. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1968.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.

MARIA HEIM

EXISTENCE. See *Cosmology*

## EXOTERIC-ESOTERIC (KENMITSU) BUDDHISM IN JAPAN

Kenmitsu, or exoteric-esoteric, Buddhism is a scholarly term for the dominant system of Buddhist thought and practice in medieval Japan. It encompasses a wide variety of beliefs, doctrines, rituals, deities, traditions, and ecclesiastical structures that were characteristic of the mainstream religious institutions of the period. At their core were esoteric (*mitsu*) teachings and practices that gave cohesion to the entire system. In addition, there were exoteric (*ken*) doctrines, which differed from one institution to another, though each considered its own doctrines to be a rational explanation of the hidden truths found in esoteric practices. This system emerged in Japan around the tenth century, and it functioned as Buddhism’s medieval orthodoxy. Subsumed under it were many beliefs, practices, and sites that are now identified as *Shintō*. As the dominant religious worldview, Kenmitsu Buddhism gave structure to medieval society and provided legitimacy to the ruling authorities. Over time, it became diversified and elaborated in a variety of ways. During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries a number of reformers and dissenting figures began to appear and challenge its claims. But these were inconsequential at the time, and the Kenmitsu system endured for the most part until the fifteenth or sixteenth century.

### **The Kenmitsu theory**

Kenmitsu Buddhism as a scholarly designation was proposed by the Japanese historian Kuroda Toshio (1926–1993). In doing so Kuroda sought to dislodge the prevailing view of Buddhism’s development that dominated scholarship in the late nineteenth and twentieth centuries. This view was built around a threefold historical classification: (1) Buddhism of the Nara period (710–784), comprising six schools based at the major temples of Nara—Kusha, Hossō, Jōjitsu, Sanron, Kegon, and Ritsu; (2) Buddhism of the Heian period (794–1185), consisting of the Tendai school centered on Mount Hiei near Kyoto and the Shingon school at Tōji in Kyoto and on Mount Kōya near Osaka; and (3) Buddhism of the Kamakura period (1185–1333), encompassing three schools of PURE LAND BUDDHISM (*Jōdoshū*, *Jōdo Shinshū*, and *Jishū*),



two schools of Zen (Rinzai and Sōtō), and the NICHIREN SCHOOL. Each new phase of Buddhism's development was portrayed as a reaction to the previous stage and an improvement on it, and the Kamakura schools were perceived as the apex of Japanese Buddhism. Since the Kamakura period was considered the beginning of the medieval era, the Kamakura schools were treated as the prevailing form of Buddhism then, and the Nara and Heian schools as precursors to it. Hence, the primary focus was on Kamakura Buddhism, which indeed evolved into the largest and most pervasive schools of Buddhism at the close of the medieval period.

The Kenmitsu theory offered by Kuroda critiqued this model in several ways. First, it questioned the historical periodization on which it was based. Kuroda claimed that the medieval era began not in the twelfth century with the Kamakura period, but in the tenth century with the emergence of an estate-based economy that supported elite society and religious institutions alike. This social, economic, and political structure persisted until the fifteenth or sixteenth century, and was controlled conjointly by three ruling elites: the imperial court and aristocracy, the warrior government and its functionaries, and the leading religious institutions. In this medieval context the religion that dominated Japan was Kenmitsu Buddhism.

The second critique was that the dominant forms of medieval religion were not the new Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren movements, but rather Tendai, Shingon, and NARA BUDDHISM. These possessed the largest number of clerics, temples, and resources in medieval times, and were the ones most frequently mentioned in medieval documents and texts. With a few exceptions, the new movements developed into influential religious organizations only in the late 1400s or early 1500s. Hence, Nara and Heian Buddhism should be considered the norm for medieval Japan instead of Kamakura Buddhism. And the new Kamakura movements should be regarded as fringe groups rather than as mainstream religion.

The third critique found in the Kenmitsu theory was of the concept of sects or discrete schools of Buddhism. Beginning in the Tokugawa period (1603–1868) Buddhism was structured into individual sectarian organizations, each with an orthodox body of teachings, a centralized religious authority, a defined set of rituals, a liturgical calendar, an apologetic history, and a hierarchy of member temples. Buddhist schools such as Tendai, Sōtō Zen, or Pure Land's Jōdoshū thus became

distinct, independent entities. This sectarian structure, according to Kuroda, has been mistakenly projected onto the medieval setting, thereby producing a distorted view of religion. The Kenmitsu theory presented medieval Buddhism as less rigidly segmented and the boundaries between groups as more permeable. Religious institutions such as monasteries, temples, chapels, wayside shrines, and private meetinghouses all existed, but people could easily cross lines to participate in multiple settings. Priests of the Nara monasteries, for instance, studied the teachings across the various Nara schools as correlative philosophies rather than as rival sectarian dogma. Likewise, Tendai and Shingon clerics frequently looked beyond their own doctrinal circles and sought instruction in other settings or guidance from other masters. The fluidity of religious activity across putative schools contributed to the creation of a systemwide medieval orthodoxy in the form of Kenmitsu Buddhism.

The actual content of Kenmitsu Buddhism varied from one institution to another, but it was predicated on the assumption that esoteric practices (rituals, chants, meditations, prayers, invocations, use of sacred texts, physical austerities, etc.) had the capacity to actualize Buddhahood in this world and to engage the vast and complex spirit world of MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism. Such practices were the stock and trade of most religious institutions and were passed down in master-disciple lineages through secret transmissions and initiation ceremonies. Attached to these practices were a variety of ideas explaining and legitimizing them. This secret lore constituted the esoteric teachings (*mikkyō*) of Kenmitsu Buddhism. Beyond them were the exoteric teachings (*kengyō*), the systems of thought and doctrine, which were likewise a major enterprise of medieval institutions. Those doctrines and philosophies operated alongside esoteric teachings and were considered supportive of them. But exoteric teachings usually differed across institutions, thus distinguishing them from each other. What drew them together, however, was their common recognition of the efficacy of esoteric practices and their perpetuation of them as the core of Buddhism. In every major tradition, esoteric practices were considered primary and exoteric teachings secondary. This shared recognition gave cohesion to Kenmitsu Buddhism as Japan's medieval orthodoxy.

### Japan's medieval Buddhist establishment

One major center of Kenmitsu Buddhism was Enryakuji, the Tendai monastic complex on Mount Hiei, founded by SAICHŌ (767–822). Tendai doctrine revolved around

the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and the teachings of ZHIYI (538–597), founder of the parent Tiantai tradition in China. But Saichō also adopted esoteric teachings, which were introduced into Japan by his contemporary KŪKAI (774–835). Later generations of Tendai leaders such as ENNIN (794–864) and Enchin (814–891) traveled to China, trained extensively in esoteric Buddhism, and brought back what they learned to Mount Hiei. The ideas and doctrines proposed by them, and also by Annen (841–889?), a major systematizer of Tendai thought, yoked esoteric teachings inextricably to Tendai doctrine. With these teachings the conceptual framework of Kenmitsu Buddhism was firmly established on Mount Hiei. In the tenth century, as members of Kyoto's aristocracy entered the Tendai clergy in increasing numbers and occupied positions of ecclesiastical authority, Mount Hiei inculcated its Kenmitsu understanding of Buddhism in them. Under their leadership Mount Hiei rose to eminence and began to exercise considerable social, political, and economic influence in Japan. Throughout the medieval period Mount Hiei remained a force to be reckoned with and, wherever it asserted its influence, it extended its Kenmitsu construction of Buddhism. Kuroda claimed that the crowning formulation of Kenmitsu Buddhism on Mount Hiei was ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) thought, which became prominent around the twelfth century. This strand of teaching was built on the idea of the inherent and immediate enlightenment of all things, and it was preserved through master–disciple lineages and secret transmissions. But other scholars have questioned Kuroda's claim, pointing out that these teachings were not considered esoteric Buddhism proper, but rather a tradition of exoteric doctrine on Mount Hiei.

The Shingon and Nara temples were also included in the framework of Kenmitsu Buddhism. Kūkai, the founder of Shingon in Japan, was largely responsible for introducing the vocabulary of esoteric and exoteric Buddhism and developing the discourse around which the Kenmitsu order could coalesce. In his hierarchy of teachings he placed esoteric Buddhism at the top, above the exoteric teachings of Tendai and various Nara schools of thought—Hossō, Sanron, and Kegon. These views and this vocabulary became the default religious premises of the institutions that Kūkai organized, Tōji and the Shingon monastery on Mount Kōya. The temples of Nara also opened their doors to the wealth of rituals, initiations, and esoteric practices that Kūkai commanded. His establishment in 822 of the Kanjōdō hall at the powerful Tōdaiji temple, where

esoteric initiations were to be performed, marked the beginning of Nara's full-scale appropriation of esoteric Buddhism. Hence, throughout the medieval period the Shingon and Nara institutions constructed their systems of doctrine and exoteric thought on a foundation of esoteric ritual and practice, just as Mount Hiei did. Though Kuroda tended to highlight the role of Mount Hiei more, it is clear that the Nara temples also flourished in this Kenmitsu culture, and built up not only religious authority but also social, political, and economic influence.

Kenmitsu Buddhism, as it pervaded the major religious institutions, emerged as the orthodox worldview of medieval Japan. It also functioned as a legitimizing ideology for the social and political order. The interaction between religious and nonreligious authorities occurred at several levels and in various modes. Society at large recognized Buddhism's capacity to engage the spirit world and to deliver humans from illusion and misfortune. The rituals and practices of esoteric Buddhism were largely aimed at these goals—from actualizing buddhahood in the body itself (*sokushin jōbutsu*) to securing good fortune and averting calamity. Hence, the imperial court, aristocracy, warrior government, and other agents of power relied on the Buddhist clergy to perform these functions in their behalf. They in turn became major adherents, supporters, and patrons of Buddhism—sponsoring rituals, building temples, and sending offspring into the ranks of clergy. But medieval Buddhism did not merely provide religious support to the privileged and powerful; it also served as one of the governing agents of Japan. That is why Kuroda included the large religious institutions among the medieval ruling elites (*kenmon*), alongside the imperial court and the warrior government. Each had its own sphere of influence, claim to authority, network of functionaries, economic base in the estate system, and means of enforcement. The religious sector, unlike the others, also used RITUAL and thaumaturgic powers to assert its influence. But none of the three could gain ascendancy over the other two, and thus had to work in collaboration with them, even while maneuvering for advantage whenever possible. Kenmitsu Buddhism articulated the nature of this relationship as the interdependence and mutual support of Buddhist teachings (*Buppō*) and royal law (*ōbō*). Each flourished only when they worked together, likened by medieval apologists to the two wheels of a cart or the two wings of a bird. This ideology of mutual dependence and benefit was articulated by the Buddhist establishment, but also em-

braced by the other ruling elites, for it confirmed and bolstered their authority too.

### The dominance of Kenmitsu Buddhism

Kenmitsu Buddhism's ritual power was considered efficacious in engaging a vast range of spirits and sacred beings including buddhas, bodhisattvas, deities of heaven and earth, spirits of the dead, demons, ominous spirits, and also local gods (*kami*), the class of deities associated with Shintō. One of the contributions of Kuroda's theory was to refute the idea that Buddhism and Shintō have been separate and distinct religions. This, he argued, is largely a modern conceptualization arising from the forced separation of buddhas and gods and their religious institutions by the government during the Meiji period (1868–1912). This successful partition consolidated the idea of Buddhism and Shintō as independent religions, which was then superimposed on earlier periods of Japanese history. What is now known as Shintō, Kuroda claimed, was actually submerged in Kenmitsu Buddhism during medieval times. Rituals to gods were performed alongside rituals to Buddhist deities, and shrines to gods were integrated with Buddhist temples, as exemplified by the Kasuga Shrine and Kōfukuji temple complex in Nara. Moreover, a variety of explanations and rationalizations of the gods emerged in Kenmitsu doctrine. They ranged from the idea that the gods are protectors of the buddhas and Buddhism to the belief that the gods themselves seek Buddhist liberation and enlightenment, just as humans do. The most important and pervasive interpretation, though, was the *honji suijaku* principle: that the gods are none other than worldly manifestations of the buddhas and bodhisattvas in Japan, and that the buddhas and bodhisattvas are the true essence of gods. Hence, they cannot be separated, and certainly should not be seen as rivals. This view provoked widespread pairings of specific gods with particular buddhas or bodhisattvas in medieval religious institutions, so that the sun goddess Amaterasu was frequently identified with Dainichi (Mahāvairocana) Buddha. Such perceptions held sway as part of Kenmitsu Buddhism throughout the medieval period, and persisted widely until the nineteenth century when Shintō was forcibly extracted from Buddhism.

The dominance of Kenmitsu Buddhism in medieval Japan—in the major religious institutions, in its partnership with other ruling elites, and in the very fabric of popular belief and practice—casts the so-

called new schools of Kamakura Buddhism in a very different light. Previously they were seen as the culmination and highest expression of Buddhism in the medieval period. But the degree to which they diverged from the Kenmitsu standard suggests that they were more an anomaly of the period. Mount Hiei was where most of the founding figures of the new Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren movements received their first inspirations. But in each case they left Mount Hiei because of disenchantment with one aspect or another of the Buddhism there. They criticized the ambitions and self-indulgences of priests in the religious hierarchy, and they championed streamlined religious alternatives—chanting Amida (AMITĀBHA) Buddha's name, practicing Zen meditation, or chanting the title of the *Lotus Sūtra*—which challenged the authority and relevance of esoteric practices and exoteric doctrines. The reaction of Mount Hiei and the Nara centers of Kenmitsu Buddhism was twofold: to suppress these dissenting groups and to initiate reforms of their own. Some mainstream priests actually embraced these alternative practices, but sought to integrate them into the Kenmitsu framework. The dissenting movements in many cases survived suppression, but tended to hover at the margins of medieval Japan's religious world, attracting only meager followings. Those that gained institutional stability and strength in the 1300s and 1400s usually did so by building ties with Kenmitsu institutions or by developing similar religious functions. Zen's Rinzai monasteries, for instance, performed rituals for the benefit of their imperial, aristocratic, and warrior patrons. But the new Buddhist movements were largely peripheral and were frequently regarded as aberrant or even heretical.

Kenmitsu Buddhism finally lost its hold on Japan during the so-called Warring States period (1467–1568). Its decline coincided with the disintegration of medieval Japan's political and economic order. Though Kenmitsu Buddhism dominated religious affairs throughout medieval times, it never completely functioned as a seamless, monolithic system, especially as internal tensions and contradictions arose from it. The dissenting Kamakura movements were one product of these tensions, and they eventually became the successors of Kenmitsu Buddhism itself. With the emergence in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries of powerful new religious organizations such as Pure Land's Jōdo Shinshū, Nichiren's congregational alliances of Kyoto, and Zen's Sōtō school, the ascendancy of Kamakura Buddhism over Kenmitsu was finally realized.

See also: **Huayan School; Japan; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Tiantai School**

### **Bibliography**

- Abé, Ryūichi. *The Weaving of Mantra: Kūkai and the Construction of Esoteric Buddhist Discourse*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Adolphson, Mikael S. *The Gates of Power: Monks, Courtiers, and Warriors in Premodern Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Dobbins, James C., ed. *The Legacy of Kuroda Toshio*. Special issue. *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 23, nos. 3–4 (Fall 1996).
- Dobbins, James C. “Envisioning Kamakura Buddhism.” In *Re-Visioning “Kamakura” Buddhism*, ed. Richard K. Payne. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1992.
- Kuroda Toshio. *Nihon chūsei no kokka to shūkyō* (State and Religion in Medieval Japan). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1975.
- Kuroda Toshio. *Jisha seiryoku—Mō hitotsu no chūsei shakai* (The Power of Temple-Shrine Complexes—Another Medieval Society). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1980.
- Kuroda Toshio. *Nihon chūsei no shakai to shūkyō* (Society and Religion in Medieval Japan). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1990.
- Kuroda Toshio. “Shintō in the History of Japanese Religion.” In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Satō Hirō. *Nihon chūsei no kokka to Bukkyō* (State and Buddhism in Medieval Japan). Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1987.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Taira Masayuki. *Nihon chūsei no shakai to Bukkyō* (Society and Buddhism in Medieval Japan). Tokyo: Hanawa Shobō, 1992.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

*This page intentionally left blank*

# F



## FAITH

Few notions elicit more debate and vague associations than the family of concepts associated with the word *faith* and its various approximate synonyms (e.g., *belief*). Needless to say, the English *faith* has no exact equivalent in the languages of Asia. The word means many things in English and in other Western languages as well, and the proximate Asian equivalents also have many meanings in their Asian contexts. This is not to say that *faith* cannot be used as a descriptive or analytical tool to understand Buddhist ideas and practices, yet one must be aware of the cultural and polemic environments that shaped Buddhist notions of faith.

### Semantic range

The most common English theological meanings are the ones that have the most questionable similarity to historical Buddhist belief and practice: acceptance of and secure belief in the existence of a personal creator deity (“belief in”), acceptance of such deity as a unique person with a distinctive name, the unquestioned acceptance of this deity’s will, and the adoption of the articles of dogma believed to express the deity’s will. Buddhist notions tend to occupy a different center in the semantic field: serene trust, confident belief that the practice of the dharma will bear the promised fruit, and joyful surrender to the presence or vision of one or many “ideal beings” (BUDDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, etc.). The articles of belief and systems of practice that constitute the Buddhist PATH are seldom set up explicitly as direct objects of faith, but confessions of trust and declarations of commitment to various aspects of the path are common ritual practices (taking the REFUGES, taking vows, etc.).

The objects of faith can be all, any, or only one among the multiple buddhas, bodhisattvas, and deities of Buddhism. Nevertheless, Buddhists often confess their total trust in a particular deity or buddha or bodhisattva identified by a unique name and by personal attributes that are considered distinctive and superior to those of any other deity (e.g., the cult of AMITĀBHA or the cult of Shugs Idan).

A sense of the range of Buddhist conceptions of “faith” can be derived from a glance at some of the classical Asian terms that are rendered into English as *faith*. The term *śraddhā* (Pāli, *saddhā*), for instance, may signify belief, but generally refers more to trust and commitment. It is sometimes glossed as “trust or reliance on someone else” (*parapratyaya*, *Abhidharma-kośa* VI. 29), but, etymologically, it derives from an old Indo-European verb meaning “to place one’s heart on (a desire, goal, object, or person),” which appears in Latin in the verb *crēdō*, and subsequently in English as *creed*, *credence*, and so on.

A connection between this mental state and other positive states is suggested in a variety of ways. For instance, in the *abhidharma* literature the word *śraddhā* refers to one of the mental factors that are always present in good thoughts (*kuśalamahābhūmika*, *Abhidharmakośa* II. 23–25). Already in the *sūtra/sutta* literature, *śraddhā* is one of the five mental faculties necessary for a good practice (the five *indriyas* or five *balas*), which include MINDFULNESS and persevering courage.

These meanings are associated also with the idea of conviction, committed and steadfast practice, or commitment as active engagement, a range of concepts expressed with the term *adhimukti* or *adhimokṣa* (Pāli,

*adhimutti* or *adhimokkha*). The attitude or cognitive-affective state expressed by this word is characteristic of the preliminary stage in a bodhisattva's career: the stage of acting (*caryā*) on one's commitment (*adhimukti*), or *adhimukticaryābhūmi*.

Examined from the perspective suggested by the above range of usages, faith would be a sui generis psychological state, an extension of the ability to trust or rely on someone or something. In this aspect of the denotation of *śraddhā*, and *adhimokṣa*, faith is also a virtue necessary for concentrated MEDITATION, and is closely related to, if not synonymous with, the disciple's ardent desire for self-cultivation or the zeal required for such cultivation. In this context, faith is also the opposite of, or an antidote against, the sluggishness, dejection, and discouragement that can arise during long hours of meditation practice.

However, such monastic or contemplative definitions of *faith* do not exhaust the Buddhist repertoire. As noted previously, Buddhist concepts of faith include as well affective states associated with the attachment and trust of devotion. Such states are sometimes subsumed under the category of *prasāda* (the action noun corresponding to *prasannacitta*). This term has a long history in the religious traditions of India; it means etymologically "settling down," and evokes meanings of "serenity, calm, aplomb," as well as conviction and trust. Furthermore, among its many usages, it expresses both the "favor" of the powerful (their serene largess, their grace) and the acceptance or recognition of this favorable disposition on the part of the weaker participant in the relationship (serene trust, confident acceptance). The latter feeling is not only serene trust in the wisdom of a teacher or in the truth of the teachings, but the joyful acceptance of the benevolent power and benediction of sacred objects and holy persons. Thus the proper state of mind when performing a ritual of devotion is a *prasannacitta*: a mind in the state of *prasāda*, that is, calmly secure, trusting, devoted, content, and loyal.

### East Asian usages

These Indian concepts were usually rendered in Chinese with a term denoting trust, *xin*, where the accent is on confidence, rather than on a surrender of one's discursive judgment. Nonetheless, *xin* also could denote surrender and unquestioned acceptance, absolute trust, and a believing mind and will. The later meanings played a major role in both nonliterate practice and the theologies of faith of some of the literate schools.

The first element in this polarity (faith that does not exclude knowledge or direct apprehension of religious truths) is seen, for instance, in the classical CHAN SCHOOL notion of *xinxin*: "trusting the mind." This refers to the conviction that the searching mind is the object of its own search—that is, buddha-nature. Such conviction is understood as a nonmediated, non-reasoned confidence born of the immediate apprehension of a presence. Expressed in terms of a process or a practice, this faith is the experience of the mind when one is not manipulating or organizing its contents with discursive thoughts. The trusting mind itself becomes the object of trust.

This is the theme of the *Xinxinming* (*Stanzas on Trusting the Mind*), a poem attributed to the "Third Patriarch" of Chan Buddhism, Sengcan (d. ca. 606 C.E.), in which "mind" or "thought" is the perfect goal of the religious aspiration that is the act of faith. It is "perfect like vast empty space, lacking nothing, having nothing in excess." What keeps us from experiencing the mind in this way is our penchant for "selecting and rejecting." By contrast, "the trusting mind does not split things into twos"; not splitting things into twos is the meaning of "trusting the mind" (or "the trusting mind" *xinxin*).

The idea of faith (*xin*) also appears in a formulation attributed to Gaofeng Yuanmiao (1238–1295), who describes three essential aspects of meditation practice (*chan yao*). These are: the faculty of faith, persevering commitment, and DOUBT. Faith is "the great faculty of trusting" (*daxingen*), which links the idea to the earlier abhidharmic notions of trust and faith as a natural faculty. It is clear that this trust precedes full knowledge or understanding because the other two aspects of practice are great tenacity of purpose or persevering commitment (*dafen zhi*) and a great feeling of doubt or intensely felt doubt (*dayiqing*).

This use of the term *xin* is ostensibly different from the meanings accepted by other important strands of the East Asian tradition in which we find an opposition between examined trust and the surrender of self-knowledge. The PURE LAND SCHOOLS (Chinese, *jingtu*; Japanese, *jōdo*) in particular understood that the *prasannacitta* of the Indian tradition implied a surrender of the will to pursue a life of holiness or the desire to attain awakening by one's own efforts. However, even among the most radical formulations of the Pure Land traditions, where the trusting practitioners are clearly separated from the object of their faith and are incapable of achieving holiness on their own, the de-

sired state of mind has the distinct marks of Buddhist notions of mind and faith. Thus, in some of the more radical Jōdo shinshū formulations the devotee's surrender is not so much an act of belief as an acceptance of grace: One surrenders one's own capacity to discriminate and believe, and one accepts the Buddha's own believing mind (*shinjin*), so that one's faith is in fact adopting, as it were, the Buddha's own trustworthy mind (*shinjin*)—sharing the merits, wisdom, and compassion of the very object of faith. Affectively, this theological view is linked with the ideal of joyful trust (*shingyō*), the joy and bliss of trusting, which ultimately, or eschatologically, may be said to be synonymous with the joy of seeing the Buddha Amitābha face to face (at the time of death or in the pure land).

### Summary Interpretation

Ideals of nondiscursive apprehension straddle the dividing line between faith and knowledge, humble surrender and recognition of a state of liberation that cannot be acquired by the individual's will. In some ways the tradition seems to assume that one has faith in that which one respects and trusts, but also in that which one wishes to attain, and that which one imagines oneself to be or able to become.

*See also:* Pure Land Buddhism; Pure Lands

### Bibliography

- de Certeau, Michel. "What We Do When We Believe." In *On Signs*, ed. Marshall Blonsky. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1985.
- Gómez, Luis O., trans. and ed. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light: Sanskrit and Chinese Versions of the Sukhāvativyūha Sūtras* (1996), 3rd printing, corrected edition. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Gómez, Luis O. "Prayer: Buddhist Perspectives." In *Encyclopedia of Monasticism*, Vol. 2, ed. William M. Johnston. Chicago: Fitzroy Dearborn, 2000.
- Gómez, Luis O. "Spirituality: Buddhist Perspectives." In *Encyclopedia of Monasticism*, Vol. 2, ed. William M. Johnston. Chicago: Fitzroy Dearborn, 2000.
- Hara, Minoru. "Śraddhā in the Sense of Desire." In *Études bouddhiques offertes a Jacques May*, ed. J. Bronkhorst, K. Mimaki, and T. Tillemans. Special issue. *Asiatische Studien/Études Asiatiques* 161, no. 1 (1992): 180–193.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. "Belief." In *Critical Terms for Religious Studies*, ed. Mark C. Taylor. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.
- Park, Sung-bae. *Buddhist Faith and Sudden Enlightenment*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1983.

Smith, Wilfred Cantwell. *Faith and Belief*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1979.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

## FAMENSI

Famensi, or Monastery of the Gate of the Dharma, was founded in the Northern Wei dynasty (386–534) at Fufeng in Shaanxi province, about 110 kilometers west of modern Xi'an. One of only four Chinese monasteries believed to possess a true body relic of the Buddha, it was closely associated with no fewer than seven emperors of the Tang dynasty (618–907). Originally called Chongzhensi, it was renamed Famensi in 1003.

In 1981 after heavy rainfall, the thirteen-story octagonal brick pagoda of the Famensi, built in 1609, finally collapsed. Excavations in April 1987 revealed not only the circular foundations of the brick pagoda, but also the square foundations of a Tang dynasty wooden pagoda, with steps, a corridor, and three stone chambers, unusually constructed to allow access from the outside. History records that in 631, 660, 704, 760, 790, 819, and 873, the relics were recovered and conveyed to the capital.

Most of the objects found in the excavation date from 874, after which the entire deposit remained untouched. A pair of large stone tablets, engraved with a text written in 874 by monk Juezhi of the Xingshan Monastery and placed at the inner end of the corridor, give precise details of the 122 gold and silver objects presented in 874 by emperors Yizong and Xizong.

The first chamber of the crypt contained a stone STŪPA, painted both outside and inside, enshrining an elaborate model gilt-bronze stūpa, itself containing a tiny silver-gilt RELIQUARY holding one of the four "finger-bone" relics. In the second chamber, a larger shrine, dedicated in 708, contained a second relic. Beyond it, and close to the doors leading to the innermost chamber of the crypt, was a large cylindrical box containing a number of celadon bowls and dishes, the so-called *mi se* or secret color ware, sent as tribute to the court from the Yue kilns in Zhejiang province. A third relic was found in a tiny solid gold stūpa, the innermost of a series of eight nesting caskets, in the third and innermost chamber, which was filled with the majority of the accompanying gold, silver-gilt, glass, and sandalwood offerings. Finally, sealed in a cavity beneath the rear wall of the innermost chamber, a fourth relic was enshrined in a tiny jade coffin,



inside a very small crystal sarcophagus, within a silver-gilt casket bearing forty-five esoteric Buddhist images, protected by a larger iron casket. The other three relics, carved from jade, were all close copies of this fourth relic. About two inches long, it is made of a softer substance resembling bone, hollow and engraved on the inside with the seven stars of the Northern Dipper.

According to the inventory tablet, the iron casket and crystal sarcophagus (with its enclosed jade coffin), were brought from the monastery to the capital in 873. Along with the painted stone stūpa and the gilt-bronze pagoda from the first chamber, they may well be the earliest items in the entire deposit, followed by the larger stone stūpa in the second chamber, and a set of miniature embroidered garments, including a skirt presented by Empress Wu (r. 684–705), which is also mentioned in the inventory tablet.

While a full report of the excavation has yet to be published, this incredible array of sumptuous objects has already provided invaluable evidence for metalworking and textile techniques of the late Tang period, the tributary system, ritual implements (water vessels, staffs, incense burners and stands, containers for incense) and evidence of the practice of esoteric Buddhism at the Tang court.

*See also:* Maṇḍala; Relics and Relics Cults; Ritual Objects

### Bibliography

Wang, Eugene Y. "Of the True Body: The Famen Relics and Corporeal Transformation in Tang Imperial China." In *Body and Face in Chinese Visual Culture*, ed. Wu Hung et al. Cambridge, MA: Harvard Asia Center and Harvard University Press, 2003.

Whitfield, Roderick. "Discoveries from the Famen Monastery at Fufeng and the Qingshan Monastery at Lintong, Shaanxi Province." In *The Golden Age of Chinese Archaeology: Celebrated Discoveries from the People's Republic of China*, ed. Yang Xiaoneng. New Haven, CT, and London: Yale University Press, 1999.

RODERICK WHITFIELD

## FAMILY, BUDDHISM AND THE

Given that Buddhism is regularly understood as a monastic movement dedicated to "leaving the family" (*pravrajyā*), the technical term for becoming a monk or nun, it might seem odd to ask about Buddhism's re-

lationship to the family. Why, after all, would Buddhism as a religion of renunciation have anything to do with family life? However, a closer look at the structure of Buddhist rhetoric, as well as Buddhism's various societal roles, reveals that Buddhism's relationship to the family and family values has several unexpected layers.

Arguably there are at least four basic categories of Buddhist discourse that focus on familial issues: (1) a discourse on the negative aspects of family life, the language of renunciation; (2) a symbolic language in which identity within the monastic setting is understood as a kind of replication of the patriarchal family, a kind of corporate familialism; (3) guidelines for correct conduct at home, pastoral advice from the Buddhist establishment; and (4) specific lineage claims that sought to establish an elite family within the monastic family, a more specialized form of corporate familialism.

As for the first, the language of renunciation, statements regarding the unsatisfactory and even dangerous aspects of family life are typical throughout the Buddhist world. According to this logic, life in the family is fraught with burning desires and gnawing concerns. Consequently, life at home is essentially the environment in which patterns of conduct and thinking develop that will continue to bind one in the cycle of birth and death (*saṃsāra*), and keep one from making progress toward *nirvāṇa*. Among these statements about the generic risks of family life, one can also find more specific statements about the physical dangers that women court as they follow the prescribed life cycle within the family, the risks of childbirth being paramount. In sum, in this sphere of discourse Buddhist authorities encourage reflection on the benefits of leaving the encumbering and dangerous domain of family life in order to pursue higher spiritual goals.

The second sphere of family rhetoric appears when Buddhist renunciants began to settle down into land-owning religious groups, roughly two centuries before the beginning of the common era. At this point, even as the evils of family life were still espoused, monastic relations were explained via a kind of corporate familialism. Apparently, the Buddhists began to construct an ulterior family, actually a purer form of patriarchy, that was to solidify and legitimize Buddhist identity within the perimeter of the monastic walls. Thus, in formally gaining the identity of a monk or nun, one joined the Buddha in a kind of fictive kinship that sealed one's Buddhist identity with a kind of "naturalness" and fa-

cilitated harmony within the monasteries. In fact, the ritual for becoming a monk or nun seems to have been conceived as a kind of rebirth back into one's "original" family, and one was thereafter called "a son of the Buddha." This motif of rebirth is clear, too, in the way that one's "age" and seniority within the monastery is determined not by real age, but by the number of years that have passed since one's ORDINATION.

The third sphere of family discourse in Buddhism appears in the way that Buddhist authorities, likely from the earliest phases of the religion, prescribed proper conduct for those who remained in the family. These moral guidelines define the life to be maintained at home: One is to be obedient to seniors and considerate of others' needs, while also adhering to the generic set of Buddhist precepts—not killing, stealing, lying, and so on. Given these statements, and particularly those that urge filial submission to one's parents and seniors, one can see that Buddhist discourse was, and still is, intent on stabilizing and even bolstering the family. The reasons for Buddhism's advocacy of traditional family practice are complex, but one important reason is that Buddhist monasteries relied on families to support them financially. In fact, to facilitate exchanges between the family and the monastery, Buddhist discourse often emphasized that one is only a good, filial son at home if one patronizes the Buddhist monasteries. These injunctions could also be focused on ancestor care, where it was argued that living descendents ought to patronize Buddhist monastics in order to enlist their spiritual power, which could be directed toward caring for the deceased family members in the afterworld. In short, Buddhist monastics inserted themselves within the sphere of at-home family values by arguing that the family's life cycle needed to involve patronage of Buddhist monasteries.

As for the last category of familial rhetoric, at different times in Buddhist history there appeared mystical genealogies in which a higher Buddhist family was established within the already domestic space of the Buddhist establishment. Thus, in tantric Buddhism in India and Tibet, as well as in the CHAN SCHOOL of Buddhism in East Asia, it was claimed that certain monks were more directly related to the Buddha than other Buddhist monks or nuns. In both cases, the language of fathers and sons was relied upon to explain why certain monks should be taken to be living representatives of the tradition, with truth, authority, and legitimacy flowing directly down the lineage from the Buddha to the present master. In fact, intricate logics emerged wherein these elite "sons of the Buddha" were put in

charge of guiding other less connected Buddhists back to their true familial relationship to the Buddha.

In sum, though Buddhism sought to escape the family, this very effort to leave domesticity was itself domesticized and remade into a Buddhist family. Moreover, this new Buddhist family established a symbiotic relationship with the lay family, encouraging its stability and productivity, along with a pro-Buddhist orientation. Finally, even within the familial space of the monasteries, other hyper-families appeared, suggesting an ongoing need to re-create identity and authority according to patriarchal logics, along with the sense that sameness and difference in social space are best handled via familial rhetorics that are both inclusive and hierarchizing.

*See also:* Laity; Monasticism; Monks; Nuns; Women

### Bibliography

- Cabezón, José Ignacio, ed. *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Cole, Alan. "Upside Down/Right Side Up: A Revisionist History of Buddhist Funerals in China." *History of Religions* 35, no. 4 (1996): 307–338.
- Cole, Alan. *Mothers and Sons in Chinese Buddhism*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1998.
- Cole, Alan. "Homestyle Vinaya and Docile Boys in Chinese Buddhism." *Positions: East Asia Cultures Critique* 7, no. 1 (1999): 5–50.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Red Thread: Buddhist Approaches to Sexuality*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

ALAN COLE

## FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA)

The *Fanwang jing* (*Brahmā's Net Sūtra*) is a highly regarded apocryphal text in East Asian Buddhism that provided a set of uniquely MAHĀYĀNA precepts. According to tradition, the sūtra was spoken by the Buddha, recorded in Sanskrit in India, and then translated by KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413) into Chinese in 406. In fact, however, it is now known that the *Fanwang jing* was composed in China by unknown author(s),

sometime during the middle of the fifth century C.E. The sūtra purports to be the last chapter of a longer Sanskrit text, and its full title is *Chapter on the Mind Ground of the Bodhisattvas of the Fanwang jing*. However, there is no conclusive evidence that this framing text ever existed.

The *Fanwang jing* consists of two fascicles: The first enumerates the stages of practice of the bodhisattva PATH, and the second, which had been circulating as an independent text, contains a list of the ten major and forty-eight minor PRECEPTS. The set of precepts illustrated in the *Fanwang jing* is popularly called the “bodhisattva precepts” or the “*Fanwang* precepts”; thus the second fascicle on its own is often called the *Sūtra of Bodhisattva Precepts* and is used in East Asian countries as a bodhisattva PRĀTIMOKṢA (collection of rules). Traditionally, East Asian Buddhist monks and nuns are ordained using a set of rules drawn from the *Sifen lu* (Four-Part Vinaya) of the Indian DHARMA-GUPTAKA school. The *Fanwang* precepts were rarely used by themselves for ordination in China and Korea but instead were treated as a supplementary set of Mahāyāna precepts.

Composed at a time when mainstream Buddhist and Mahāyāna texts on monastic discipline had just been transmitted into China, the contents of the *Fanwang jing* reflect Chinese Buddhist concerns about the impact a foreign morality would have on the indigenous culture. These concerns are reflected in the emphasis placed in the sūtra on filial piety and obedience, two subjects of vital concern to Confucians. In addition, several minor precepts concern the relationship between the Buddhist order and the state, which claim Buddhism’s autonomy from secular power. Also of particular interest is that whereas VINAYA rules are intended only for monks and nuns, the *Fanwang* precepts are said to apply universally to both the LAITY and monastics, as illustrated by the sūtra’s stated audience of monks, nuns, laypeople, and bodhisattvas. In some instances, the sūtra notes that certain precepts are intended either for laypeople or for members of the Buddhist order. For example, the major precepts against killing, stealing, and illicit sexual activity apply both to members of religious orders and to lay believers, whereas the fifth major precept, a prohibition against selling liquor, was principally directed at the laity.

Numerous commentaries were written on the *Fanwang jing*, representing the significant role its Mahāyāna bodhisattva precepts played in East Asian Buddhism. Many leading scholars in China, including

ZHIYI (538–597) and FAZANG (643–712), wrote commentaries on the text, most focusing on the second fascicle. In Korea, more than fifteen commentaries are known to have been written on the sūtra, including works by the eminent monks WŎNHYO (617–686), Sŭngjang (d.u.), Ŭijŏk (d.u.), and Taehyŏn (fl. 753). Six of these commentaries are extant, coming primarily from the Silla period. In Japan, SAICHŌ (767–822) made the *Fanwang jing* one of the most influential texts in Japanese Buddhism by arguing that its set of precepts should serve as the sole basis for ORDINATION in the Tendai school, the Japanese branch of the TIENTAI SCHOOL.

*See also:* Apocrypha; Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan

### Bibliography

Groner, Paul. “The *Fan-wang ching* and Monastic Discipline in Japanese Tendai: A Study of Annen’s *Futsū jubosatsukai kōshaku*.” In *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

EUNSU CHO

---

FASTING. *See* Ascetic Practices

---

### FAXIAN

Faxian (ca. 337–ca. 418) is the first Chinese monk whose travel to India is documented. Not only did Faxian bring firsthand knowledge of India to China, he also brought back a series of scriptures.

After being ordained at the age of twenty, Faxian recognized that the VINAYA (canon of monastic rules) available in China was incomplete. He therefore vowed to travel to India to search for Vinaya texts. He left Chang’an in 399 and proceeded via DUNHUANG and across the Pamir mountains into Uddiyana in northwestern India. Between 405 and 407, Faxian studied in Pāṭalīputra, then in Tāmralipti in eastern India, and later in Sri Lanka. He set sail for home in 411, and after an odyssey that lasted until 413 he landed at the Shandong Peninsula. During his fifteen-year pilgrimage, Faxian had traveled to approximately thirty kingdoms.

Faxian went to Jiankang (Nanking) and began translating the texts he had collected in India and Sri Lanka. Two of these were of the Vinaya of the MAHĀSĀṂGHIKA SCHOOL (T1425, T1427), two were MAHĀYĀNA scrip-

tures (T376, T745), and one was a HĪNAYĀNA scripture (T7). Faxian continued to work on translations until his death between 418 and 423.

Faxian, like later Chinese monks, conceived of his travel to India as a “search for the dharma,” which involved venerating holy sites, studying with Indian masters, and collecting texts. His trip inspired later generations of pilgrims, including XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) and YIJING (635–713). The major source of information about Faxian’s travels is his *Faxian zhuan* (*Record of Faxian*, T2085), written in 416, which is an important document for South Asian and Buddhist history.

See also: **China**

### Bibliography

Giles, Herbert A., trans. *The Travels of Fa-hsien (399–414 A.D.), or, Record of the Buddhistic Kingdoms* (1923). London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1956.

Shih, Robert, trans. and ed. *Biographies des moines éminents (Kao seng tchouan) de Houei-kiao*. Louvain, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste, 1968.

ALEXANDER L. MAYER

## FAXIANG SCHOOL

Called the *Weishi* (Sanskrit, *Vijñaptimātra*; Consciousness-only) school by its proponents, and the *Faxiang* (dharma characteristics) school by its opponents, this was the third major introduction of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL of Buddhism into China. Competing versions of Yogācāra had dominated Chinese Buddhism since the beginning of the sixth century, first with the Northern and Southern Dilun schools, which followed, respectively, the opposing interpretations by Bodhiruci and Ratnamati of the *Dilun* (Vasubandhu’s commentary on the *Shidi jing*; Sanskrit, *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*). Thereafter, a different brand of Yogācāra was introduced by the translator PARAMĀRTHA (499–569) in the mid-sixth century. Disputes between these three schools, as well as various hybrids of Yogācāra and TATHĀGATAGARBHA, had become so pervasive by the time of XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) that he traveled to India in 629 believing that texts as yet unavailable in China would settle the discrepancies. Instead he found that the Indian understanding of Yogācāra differed in many fundamentals—doctrinally and methodologically—from what had developed in China, and on his

return to China in 645 he attempted to narrow the differences by translating over seventy texts and introducing Buddhist LOGIC.

Because the novel teachings Xuanzang conveyed represented Indian Buddhist orthodoxy and because the Chinese emperor lavished extravagant patronage on him, Xuanzang quickly became the preeminent East Asian Buddhist of his generation, attracting students from Korea and Japan, as well as China. Two of his disciples, the Korean monk WŌNCH’ŪK (613–696) and the Chinese monk KUIJI (632–682) bitterly competed to succeed Xuanzang upon his death, their rivalry largely centering on divergent interpretations of the *Cheng weishi lun* (*Treatise on Establishing Consciousness-Only*), a commentary on Vasubandhu’s *Triṃśikā* (*Thirty Verses*) that, according to tradition, Kuiji helped Xuanzang compile from ten Sanskrit commentaries. Kuiji is considered by tradition to be the first patriarch of the Weishi (or Faxiang) school.

Kuiji wrote many commentaries on such works as the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa-sūtra*, the HEART SŪTRA, the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), the *Madhyāntavibhāga*, and Buddhist logic texts, but his commentaries on the *Cheng weishi lun* and an original treatise on Yogācāra, *Fayuan yilin zhang* (*Essays on the Forest of Meanings in the Mahāyāna Dharma Garden*), became the cornerstones of the Weishi school. Hui Zhao (650–714), the second patriarch, and Zhi Zhou (668–723), the third patriarch, wrote commentaries on the *Fayuan yilin chang*, the *Lotus Sūtra*, and the *Madhyāntavibhāga*; they also wrote treatises on Buddhist logic and commentaries on the *Cheng weishi lun*. After Zhi Zhou, Faxiang’s influence declined in China, though its texts continued to be studied by other schools. In the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries Faxiang enjoyed a revival among Chinese philosophers such as Yang Wenhui (1837–1911), Ouyang Jingwu (1871–1943), TAIXU (1890–1947), and Xiong Shili (1883–1968), who sought a bridge between native philosophy and Western philosophy, especially in the field of epistemology.

Faxiang (Korean, Pōpsang; Japanese, Hossō) was influential in Korea during the unified Silla (668–935) and Koryō dynasties (918–1392), but faded with the decline of Buddhism in the Chosōn dynasty (1392–1910). Similarly, Hossō, initially transmitted to Japan from China and Korea, was prominent during the Nara period (710–784), but withered under attack in the Heian period (794–1185) from rival Tendai and Shingon schools. The Hossō monk Ryōhen (1194–1252)

rebutted those attacks in his *Kanjin Kakumushō* (*Précis on Contemplating the Mind and Awakening from the Dream*), but Hossō, though surviving, declined nonetheless.

Most East Asian Buddhist schools, along with Faxiang, accepted many standard Yogācāra doctrines, such as the eight consciousnesses, three natures, and mind-only, though each school quibbled about specifics. The two doctrines that drew the most attacks were the Faxiang rejection of tathāgatagarbha ideology for being too metaphysically substantialistic and the Faxiang doctrine of five seed-families (Sanskrit, *pañcagotrās*; Chinese, *wu xing*), which held that one's potential for awakening was determined by the good seeds already in one's consciousness stream. Practitioners of the HĪNAYĀNA, PRATYĒKABUDDHA, and MAHĀYĀNA paths, as well as those who were undecided about practice, could fulfill these paths only by bringing the respective seeds of whichever path they contained to fruition. A fifth seed-family, ICCHANTIKA, being devoid of the requisite seeds, can never and would never desire to achieve awakening. Since the other East Asian Buddhist schools held that all beings possess buddha-nature incipiently as tathāgatagarbha, and thus all have the potential for awakening, they found the *icchantika* doctrine unacceptable. However, Faxiang did not treat the *icchantika* as an ontological category or predestination theory; it referred only to someone incorrigible, someone who, in recent lives, remains impervious to the teachings of Buddhism. Anyone desiring enlightenment, by definition, cannot be an *icchantika*.

### Bibliography

- Lusthaus, Dan. *Buddhist Phenomenology: A Philosophical Investigation of Yogācāra Buddhism and the Ch'eng Wei-shih lun*. London and New York: RoutledgeCurzon, 2002.
- Sponberg, Alan. "The Vijñaptimātratā Buddhism of the Chinese Monk K'uei-chi (A.D. 632–682)." Ph.D. diss. University of British Columbia, Vancouver, 1979.
- Weinstein, Stanley. "The Kanjin Kakumushō." Ph.D. diss. Harvard University, 1965.

DAN LUSTHAUS

## FAZANG

Fazang (also known as Xianshou, 643–712) was born into a family of Sogdian origin in the Chinese capital of Chang'an. He was a consummate Buddhist exegete

in the Indian mold and at one point worked with the Khotanese translator ŚIKṢĀNANDA (652–710) on a translation of the HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra*, *Flower Garland Sūtra*). Fazang's works in the standard edition of the Chinese Buddhist canon are: five commentaries on MAHĀYĀNA sūtras, including two on the *Huayan jing*; two commentaries on treatises of NĀGĀRJUNA and Sāramati; two commentaries on the Chinese apocryphon AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN); and thirteen treatises on the *Huayan jing* and related matters. Fazang was a disciple of Zhiyan (602–668), and eventually these two were enshrined as the second and third patriarchs of the HUAYAN SCHOOL.

Fazang's *Huayen wujiao zhang* (*Treatise on the Five Teachings of Huayan*) presents a very technical Huayan system, which he refers to as the "perfect teaching of the one vehicle" (*yicheng yuanjiao*) or "dharmadhātu dependent origination" (*fajie yuanqi*). The system is based on the six characteristics: the universal, the separate, the same, the different, the coming-into-being, and the disintegrating. These six reveal an inexhaustible and perfect fusion, a fusion without obstruction. By means of this teaching, when one defilement, say greed, is cut off, all are cut off, and when one merit is perfected, all are perfected. When the practitioner first produces the thought of awakening (*bodhicitta*), he has simultaneously completed perfect awakening (*samyaksambodhi*). Cause (practice) and effect (awakening) are at the same time. If, as some have suggested, the *Huayan jing* is associated with the Central Asian Buddhist center of Khotan, then this Huayan system is truly a Central Asian/Chinese development. Later, ZONGMI (780–841) declared Huayan identical to the highest of the three theses (*zong*) of Chan.

### Bibliography

- Cook, Francis H. *Hua-yen Buddhism: The Jewel Net of Indra*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1977.
- Fontain, Jan. *The Pilgrimage of Sudhana: A Study of Gaṇḍavyūha Illustrations in China, Japan, and Java*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1967.

JEFFREY BROUGHTON

## FESTIVALS AND CALENDRIAL RITUALS

Buddhists have divided up time according to various calendrical systems. In Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia,

for example, the most lasting and fundamental system has been the ancient Indian lunar calendar, whose twelve months and forty-eight six- to nine-day weeks commence with sabbaths determined by the four phases of the lunar cycle: new moon, waxing moon, waning moon, and, most importantly, the full-moon day (Pāli, *uposatha*; Sanskrit, *upoṣadha* or *poṣadha*). Larger expanses of time have been calculated as numbers of years since the final passing away (Pāli, *parinibbāna*; Sanskrit, *parinirvāṇa*) of the Buddha (*Buddha Varṣa*, abbreviated B.E. or B.V. and commencing in 543 B.C.E.); since the dawn of the imperial Śaka Era (*Śaka-saṃvat*, abbreviated s.s. and commencing in 78 C.E.); and since the emergence of various dynasties in different regions. More recently, as a result of colonialism and international practice, time has been calculated as the number of years before and since the start of the common era. These various eras in turn are but fleeting moments in saṃsāra's vast expanse of ages (*yuga*) and eons (*kappa*; *kalpa*).

Within that expanse, it is considered a rare achievement to be reborn during a *Buddha Varṣa*: a time when a Buddha, his teachings, his corporeal relics, and his community of monks and nuns still exist. According to the late canonical Pāli text the *Buddhavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of Buddhas*, ca. second century B.C.E.), there have been only twenty-four such Buddha eras in “one hundred thousand plus four incalculable numbers of eons.” During such rare periods, including the present one, it is possible to advance along the PATH TO NIRVĀṆA by learning and practicing the Buddha's teachings. Because such directed progress on the path is not possible in the hiatuses between Buddha eras, every moment in this or any other Buddha era is soteriologically charged. While the ideal is certainly to cultivate Buddhist virtues constantly, from an early date Buddhists throughout the region have considered it especially efficacious to perform such activities on the above-mentioned lunar sabbaths.

Long before the time of the Buddha, South Asians already were focusing their religious activities (such as performing sacrifices and other rituals, and preaching their different messages) on these lunar sabbaths. According to the second book of the *Mahāvagga* (*Great Section*) of the Pāli VINAYA (monastic code), early in his career the Buddha was approached by King Seniya Bimbisāra of Magadha, who requested that the Buddha allow his monks to assemble on these days because non-Buddhists used them for public preaching and thereby gained the hearts and adherence of listeners. The Buddha permitted this, and after people com-

plained that the assembled monks just sat in silence, he further permitted them to preach the dharma to laypeople on lunar sabbaths. Moreover, he established for them the ritual of recitation of the Buddhist monastic disciplinary rules embodied in the Pātimokkha (Sanskrit, PRĀTIMOKṢA). Down to the present day, this recitation of the Pātimokkha on each full-moon day by all ordained (*upasampadā*) Buddhist clergy residing inside a particular monastic boundary (*sīma*), complete with ceremonies and judicial practices and penalties, has constituted the primary monastic ritual by which Buddhist monks and nuns have maintained their collective purity and sense of communitas. Even today it proceeds very much as outlined in the ancient vinaya texts, with a leading monk or nun thrice professing his or her purity as regards each of the major categories of the Pātimokkha rules. Those assembled either profess, through silence, their own purity regarding the rules, or they confess transgressions that have occurred, for which punishments and restorative acts are prescribed in the vinaya texts.

The yearly cycle constituted by these monthly monastic rituals is punctuated by the three-month “rains-retreat” (Pāli, *vassa*; Sanskrit, *varṣa*). The retreat is said in the *Mahāvagga* to have been established by the Buddha in response to criticisms that his monks and nuns harmed microscopic creatures by traveling during the rainy season. This period of heightened practice and restrictions on travel away from the monastery begins on the full-moon day that corresponds to July/August (or, in the case of “late *vassa*,” August/September) and ends on the full-moon day that corresponds to October/November (or November/December). Though this period does not exactly correspond with the actual monsoons in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia, the retreat continues to be observed according to the ancient reckoning. Special ceremonies attend the full-moon days that mark the beginning and end of the *vassa* season, whether according to the “early” or the “late” calculation. Gathering for *vassa*, the monks or nuns in a particular monastic boundary recite the Pātimokkha with special intention and additional vows appropriate to the occasion. The full-moon day that marks the end of *vassa* is singled out as especially significant, for here the usual Pātimokkha recitation is replaced with Pavāraṇā (Invitation), in which the assembled monks and nuns are invited to point out the transgressions of others observed during the *vassa* coresidence.

While regular Pātimokkha recitations and the special rituals associated with the rains-retreat are



A woman participating in traditional Cambodian New Year celebrations pours water over a statue of the Buddha at a temple in Phnom Penh, 2001. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

intended primarily to assist monks and nuns in their discipline, they have important implications for the LAITY as well. In a general sense, these rituals produce certainty about the purity of the monks and nuns to whom one offers alms (*dāna*) and from whom one hears sermons or receives PRECEPTS, thereby guaranteeing the efficacy of such activities in a layperson's presumably longer march toward *nirvāṇa*. More specifically, over time lay calendrical rituals and festivals have emerged to correspond with the rituals in the monastery.

Thus, from a very early date, it has been considered appropriate for all Buddhists to make the lunar sabbaths, and especially the full-moon days, occasions for enhanced religious activity. At the very least, ordinary lay Buddhists will try to visit the local temple on such days in order to make offerings (*pūjā*) to a Buddha image, bodhi tree, or STŪPA after reciting praises of the Buddha (*namaskāra*), the three REFUGES (*tisaraṇa*), and the five precepts (*pañcasīla*). The more pious members of a given lay community adopt an especially

rigorous disciplinary regimen for the day, taking on three extra precepts (not to sit on elevated or comfortable seats, not to eat after 12:00 noon, and not to adorn the body with perfumes and jewelry), in addition to the ordinary five; the third precept, chastity (*kamesu micchācāra*), is replaced with celibacy (*brahmacariya*). These "Eight Precept holders" wear special clothes (a white version of the traditional monastic robes) and are honored with special forms of address and provision usually reserved for monks and nuns. They spend the day in the temple listening to sermons, studying and reciting the dharma, performing *pūjā*, and meditating, returning to their homes only in the night or the following morning.

Corresponding to the centrality accorded the *vassa* season in the yearly monastic ritual calendar, lay Buddhists also perform special rites on full-moon days, which mark the beginning and end of the retreat. Employing an ancient Pāli formula, temple patrons inaugurate *vassa* by ceremonially inviting monks within a particular monastic boundary to come to their temple for the retreat, and they mark the end of the season with elaborate festivities, such as processions and almsgivings, that culminate in the presentation of monastic robes (*kaṭhina puññakamma*), either to the monks themselves or to an image of the Buddha or a stūpa.

Certain other full-moon days are also singled out for special festivals. Most important among them is the full-moon day corresponding to April/May (*Vesākha*), on which day the Buddha is believed to have been born, to have achieved enlightenment, and to have reached *parinirvāṇa*. On this day Buddhists throughout the region erect colorful billboard-like displays containing pictures of the life of the Buddha, of JĀTAKA or historical stories, and of scenes in various HEAVENS and HELLS, in addition to decorating their homes with banners, flags, and lanterns. Festive foods are eaten, and in more recent times Buddhists have begun to send cards and sing carols paralleling the Christian celebration of Christmas and Easter. *Vesākha* is also a popular occasion for PILGRIMAGE to sites of religious significance. Similarly, though on a smaller scale, various events in the life of the Buddha and in Buddhist history that are believed to have occurred on particular full-moon days are remembered and celebrated on those days across the Buddhist world. In some countries certain of these days are considered especially significant. Thus, for example, modern Sri Lankan Buddhists place special emphasis on the full-moon day corresponding to June/July (*Sinhala*, *Poson*), when Mahinda is believed to have brought Buddhism

to Sri Lanka for the first time; this season is marked by pilgrimages and processions to the mountain where he first encountered the Sri Lankan king, by the offering of food and drink to pilgrims, and by such modern entertainments as television dramas, concerts of devotional music, and “haunted houses.”

Quite apart from these pan-Buddhist and large-scale rituals and festivals, individual Buddhist families often observe rites on a calendrical cycle, punctuated by the day each month or each year when they take alms (*dāna*) to the monks at a chosen temple, or yearly death anniversaries when they make special offerings of food, robes, and other requisites. Individual temples may also sponsor calendrical rites and festivals to celebrate their founding or the birthday or death anniversary of an incumbent monk, or to raise funds for temple improvement projects.

Throughout the region there are also calendrical rites and festivals associated with indigenous as well as originally Hindu deities, which, though only quasi-Buddhist, have been absorbed into the Buddhist milieu. In Sri Lanka, the month that culminates in the full-moon day corresponding to July/August (Sinhala, *Āśāla*) is the primary period for annual festivals and processions honoring various such deities. The most famous of these is the Kandy Perahera, in which the guardian deities of the island, together with the tooth relic of the Buddha, are paraded through the streets of the last Sri Lankan Buddhist royal capital amidst rites that derive from both Buddhism (e.g., *paritta*-chanting, sermons, almsgiving) and Hinduism (e.g., *pūjā* to images of the deities, mantra-chanting). The celebration of the Lunar New Year, in mid-April, is another example of a calendrical festival that, though not specifically Buddhist, nevertheless entails various Buddhist rituals, such as the presentation of the first rice of the year to a temple and vows to Buddhist deities.

In modern times, Buddhist countries also use the Roman calendar, within which secularized calendrical festivals are observed. Thus, the Western New Year might be celebrated on the night of December 31, even by those who will celebrate the traditional New Year in April; though full-moon days are holidays, with attendant laws (such as prohibitions on the sale of alcohol) to keep them sacred, Saturdays and Sundays enjoy the same status. National festivals tend to be calculated according to the Roman calendar, such as Sri Lanka's National Day on February 4, the Thai King's Birthday on December 5, or May Day, which is celebrated by workers all over the region. These national festivals are

often attended by colorful street displays that parallel the strictly Buddhist festivals described above, Buddhist rites such as almsgivings and processions, and the active participation of Buddhist clergy.

### East Asian festivals

In East Asia, Buddhist celebrations have been incorporated into a greater festival year that includes observances that might be defined as primarily Confucian, Daoist, “folk,” or Shintō, depending on the country. Of particular note are the Buddha's birth, enlightenment, and *parinirvāṇa*, which are commemorated on separate days (unlike the situation in Theravāda countries, where they are all celebrated on the full-moon day of Vesākha, or April/May). The festival of the Buddha's birthday, in modern times, falls on April 8, and features the bathing of images of the infant Gautama, who is represented at the moment of his birth, standing with one hand pointed to the sky declaring his supremacy in the world. The rite has been traced back as early as the fourth century in China, and may have its roots in India. In Japan this event overlaps with the festival of flowers known as Hana matsuri. The Buddha's enlightenment day (Japanese, *jōdō-e*) is celebrated on December 8, and marks not only his attainment of *BODHI* (AWAKENING), but the end of his period of severe austerities. In the *CHAN SCHOOL*, this day is sometimes preceded by a one-week period of intensive meditation, often involving never lying down to sleep. The commemoration of the Buddha's death and *parinirvāṇa* (Japanese, *nehan-e*) falls on February (or March) 15. This celebration has been traced as far back as the sixth century in China, and may also have its origins in India. In Japan, the celebration held in Buddhist temples involves exhibitions of large paintings of the Buddha reclining on his deathbed.

Of greater importance and more generally popular is the celebration of the *GHOST FESTIVAL* (Japanese, *Obon*), which falls on July (or August) 15. This is a time when family graves are cleaned and when the spirits of departed ancestors are received on household altars. Its Buddhist roots are found in the story of the Buddha's disciple *MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA*, who, at the Buddha's recommendation, gave offerings to the monks in order to allay the sufferings of his mother who had been reborn in hell, an act that emphasized the ethic of filial piety.

Perhaps of lesser connection to Buddhism in East Asia is the celebration of the New Year, which is also understood to be a time for welcoming the dead, as well as an occasion for renewal and the reassertion of



relationships. In Japan, it is especially a time to visit Shintō shrines, although on New Year's Eve people may go to temples to help ring the temple bell 108 times, signifying the elimination of the 108 defilements (Sanskrit, *kleśa*). In Tibet, on the other hand, the celebration of the New Year (Lo gsar) serves to reaffirm Buddhist supremacy over indigenous forces, and, since the time of TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), it has segued into the celebration of the Great Prayer Festival (Smon lam chen mo).

### Bibliography

- Ch'en, Kenneth K. S. *Buddhism in China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- DeVisser, Marinus Willem. *Ancient Buddhism in Japan: Sūtras and Ceremonies in Use in the Seventh and Eighth Centuries A.D. and Their History in Later Times*. Paris: Paul Geuthner, 1928.
- Holt, John C. *Discipline: The Canonical Buddhism of the Vinayapīṭaka*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1981.
- Horner, I. B., trans. *The Book of the Discipline (Vinayapīṭaka)*, Vol. 4: *Mahāvagga*. London: Luzac, 1971.
- Horner, I. B., trans. *The Minor Anthologies of the Pāli Canon, Part 3: Chronicle of Buddhas (Buddhavaṃsa) and Basket of Conduct (Cariyāpīṭaka)*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1975.
- Robertson, Alec. *The Triple Gem and the Uposatha: Buddhist Ethics and Culture*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Colombo Apothecaries' Company, 1971.
- Seneviratne, H. L. *Rituals of the Kandyan State*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1978.
- Wijayaratna, Mohan. *Buddhist Monastic Life: According to the Texts of the Theravāda Tradition*, tr. Claude Grangier and Steven Collins. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

JONATHAN S. WALTERS

---

**FILIALITY.** See **Family, Buddhism and the**

---

## FOLK RELIGION: AN OVERVIEW

*Folk religion* refers to beliefs and practices that are not specifically marked as Buddhist. The term covers a broad range of phenomena, including worship of local deities, healing practices, the banishment of demons by priests (exorcism), providing offerings to the ANCESTORS to bring them comfort in the afterlife,

divination, and other ritual activities seeking good fortune, health, or salvation.

Separating Buddhism from its background (folk religion) is neither easy nor objective. *Folk religion* is usually a second-order description, an attempt by debating parties to insulate an imaginary form of pure Buddhism from less desirable activities occurring in the background. The reality, however, is always more complicated: Elements subsumed under the label of folk religion are mixed together, coherently, with what unreflective authors want to isolate as true, authentic Buddhism. Early biographies of the historical Buddha, for instance, describe how before the Buddha was born his father consulted the state oracle, who prophesied that his son was destined for greatness. The soothsayer, Atiśa, stated that the young prince would become either a great ruler or a majestic world-renouncer. Similarly, most accounts of the Buddha's enlightenment note that after six futile years of practicing austerities, the Buddha-to-be accepted a bowlful of rice and milk from a laywoman named Sujātā. Sujātā presented the gift to the buddha because she mistook him for a tree spirit whose succor she had sought in conceiving a son. Although one might be tempted to discriminate between the folk elements and the more orthodox components in these two episodes, the early texts portray all the elements as integral parts within a healthy, sensible, unitary worldview. In the case of Atiśa, divining the future, especially when it involves the well-being of the state, is deemed perfectly consistent with Śākya-muni's path to buddhahood. Religious awakening, politics, and predicting the future (the latter two often considered to be folk corruptions) are not considered separate realms. Similarly, rather than distinguishing between a pure Buddhist intent and a debased folk practice, the early accounts of Sujātā's offering make no negative judgment about her devotions. Offerings to wandering holy men are believed to bring good fortune, to fulfill a laywoman's ethical obligations, and to further the cause of spiritual progress.

The category of folk religion is also murky because, especially in the premodern period, most Buddhists have not attempted to enforce clear distinctions between what is Buddhist and what is not. Definitions of what counts as Buddhist tend to be inclusive rather than exclusive. The earliest Buddhist communities absorbed much from their background, including belief in the power of holy men; a REBIRTH cosmology that placed human beings on a vertical continuum with gods, demigods (asura), animals, hungry ghosts (preta), and beings in HELLS; a universe animated by

spirits of trees, rivers, and mountains; and the ability of talented individuals to perform miracles and see other realms. Even in the Indian context, then, Buddhism possessed what may be considered fuzzy margins. As Buddhism moved out of the Indian sphere and came into contact with other cultures, not only did these original background elements travel as part of Buddhism, but Buddhism also melded easily with the established beliefs and practices in new settings. Ancient deities, famous holy places, and long-standing ritual practices could all be included within the Buddhist sphere.

Modern scholarship focuses on three forms of folk religion: local gods, spirit-mediums, and family religion. Many deities deriving from Brahmanical religion were assimilated into the emerging Buddhist worldview. MĀRA, who appears in the Vedas, came to represent death and evil; he tried to prevent the Buddha from achieving enlightenment and carrying on his ministry. Brahmā and INDRA (Śakra Devānām Indra) were also accepted into the Buddhist pantheon and assigned specific planes in the Buddhist heavens. Other powerful figures in the pre-Buddhist underworld were given roles in later Buddhist mythology, including King Yama (Yama rāja), lord of the underworld, and Hārītī, mother of demons. Native gods in various cultures outside of India were also positioned in relation to Buddhism. As modern ethnographies have shown, monks and laypeople draw on the gods of the region in which they live to achieve a wide range of purposes, ranging from this-worldly to transcendent, all included within Buddhism. Another way to localize Buddhist deities was to place them in recognizable contexts. Thus, Mount Wutai in China was the site where Mañjuśrī Bodhisattva manifested himself as early as the beginning of the Tang dynasty (618–907); in Japan, Buddhist deities in the Kōfuku Temple were correlated with their indigenous counterparts in the Kasuga Shrine in Nara starting in the eighth century; and in Tibet the DALAI LAMA was considered a reincarnation of Avalokiteśvara Bodhisattva beginning in the seventeenth century.

Spirit-mediums (sometimes called shamans) are people who perform various religious rituals (exorcisms, séances, healing rites, divinations) while temporarily incarnating deities. Sometimes the deities are recognizably Buddhist; other times they are considered local ghosts or spirits. Spirit-mediums are drawn from the ranks of the local Buddhist institution, or Buddhist priests attempt to assert their dominance over a class of local spirit-mediums. Some of the best studies of the

problem of folk religion deal with spirit-mediums in Thailand (Tambiah), Burma (Spiro), Tibet and the Himalayas (Mumford), China (Strickmann), and Japan (Blacker).

Most traditional Asian cultures treat the ancestors with veneration and emphasize the importance of providing for their salvation. Hence Buddhist rites are often performed in order to bring relief to the ancestors in the afterlife. Providing offerings to monks, patronizing temples, commissioning statues, making prayers at home—almost any Buddhist ritual action has been harnessed to the interests of the ancestral cult. Using early Indian stone inscriptions, Gregory Schopen has recently shown that the concern with filial piety was not unique to Chinese Buddhism, but had developed in India earlier as well.

*Folk religion* is a contested term. It is sometimes still deployed in an unreflective manner, set up in contrast to a presumably pure or more orthodox form of Buddhism. One should also beware of unacknowledged bias in the use of terms like *popular religion* (rather than monastic doctrine), *little tradition* (as opposed to an intellectual great tradition), or benighted *practice* (versus enlightened beliefs). *Folk religion* in the derogatory sense has been used by both Buddhists and opponents of Buddhism. Yet responsible studies continue to use the term in new ways. Recognizing that it artificially separates Buddhist phenomena from non-Buddhist phenomena, scholars are taking folk religion more seriously and searching for the interrelations between Buddhist and non-Buddhist forms of religion.

**See also:** Confucianism and Buddhism; Cosmology; Daoism and Buddhism; Entertainment and Performance; Ghosts and Spirits; Hinduism and Buddhism; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Merit and Merit-Making; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### **Bibliography**

- Blacker, Carmen. *The Catalpa Bow: A Study of Shamanistic Practices in Japan*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1975. Revised edition, 1986.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1992.
- Ling, Trevor O. *Buddhism and the Mythology of Evil: A Study in Theravada Buddhism*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.
- Mumford, Stan Royal. *Himalayan Dialogue: Tibetan Lamas and Gurnung Shamans in Nepal*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1989.

- Schopen, Gregory. "Filial Piety and the Monk in the Practice of Indian Buddhism: A Question of 'Sinicization' Viewed from the Other Side" (1984). Reprinted in *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*, by Gregory Schopen. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.
- Strickmann, Michel. *Chinese Magical Medicine*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2002.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Yü, Chün-fang. *Kuan-yin: The Chinese Transformation of Avalokiteśvara*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

STEPHEN F. TEISER

---

## FOLK RELIGION, CHINA

Much has been written about Buddhism's conversation with Confucianism and Daoism since its arrival in China by the first century C.E. While the role of these two systems of ideas and values in Chinese culture cannot be denied, it must be kept in mind that the religious attitudes of the vast majority of the Chinese people never were directly derived from Confucianism or Daoism, but rather from folk religion. Folk (or popular) religion negotiates the relationship of the individual, the family, and the local community with the spirit world by means of beliefs and practices that are transmitted outside the canonical scriptural traditions of China. Often this transmission is oral, but there also exists a long tradition of popular written texts recording myths, rituals, and scriptures. Buddhism's success in China can be measured directly by its impact on this religion of the people.

One major area of Buddhist influence on Chinese folk religion concerns conceptions of the afterlife. Pre-Buddhist ideas distinguished between various paradisiacal realms and a vaguely defined underworld called the Yellow Springs, but there seems to have been no clear link between one's posthumous fate and one's conduct while living. The introduction of such a link by means of the concepts of KARMA (ACTION), REBIRTH, and hell (or purgatory) led to a fundamental restructuring of Chinese conceptions of the afterlife, furnish-

ing it with a complete set of HELLS, reigned over by ten kings, in which the soul of the deceased undergoes a series of punishments in accord with its karmic burden before eventually being reborn. By the seventh century, this new view of the afterlife had already gained some acceptance, and in the following centuries new texts and liturgies for its propagation and ritual negotiation emerged.

Karma linked the afterlife with individual effort, which created the terrifying realm of hell, but also opened up new possibilities for salvation. Here, too, Buddhism made a major contribution by offering the saving compassion of its buddhas and bodhisattvas. From the third century onward, PURE LAND BUDDHISM became the most popular school in China, holding out as it did the hope of rebirth into AMITĀBHA Buddha's Western Paradise. The Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, who until the tenth century was mostly portrayed as male, gradually came to be visualized as female. Eventually he became the goddess Guanyin, the quintessential personification of compassion and one of the most widespread deities of folk religion. Other Buddhist figures that played an important role in folk religion include Kṣitigarbha (Dizang Wang Pusa), MAITREYA (Mile Fo), Yama (Yanluo Wang), the Eighteen ARHATS (Lohan), and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA (Mulian).

Buddhist saints—revered masters or miracle workers—sometimes became objects of worship, their mortuary STŪPAS or mummified bodies attracting large numbers of pilgrims praying for blessings and protection. A very popular deity in modern Chinese folk religion, the Living Buddha Jigong (Jigong Huofo), originated in stories surrounding an unconventional Buddhist monk who lived in Hangzhou, Zhejiang province, around the turn of the thirteenth century. While the cult of Jigong spread far beyond its Hangzhou home base, the Patriarch of the Clear Stream (Qingshui Zushi) is an example of a regional deity that developed from the cult of an eleventh-century miracle-working Buddhist monk in Fujian province and remains largely confined to the Anxi area of Fujian and areas settled by Anxi emigrants in Taiwan and Southeast Asia. As bodhisattvas, buddhas, and eminent monks became deities within Chinese folk religion, they were also removed from the doctrinal control of the SAṄGHA and often took on novel features. The cult of Qingshui Zushi, for example, adopted more and more Daoist elements, so that today its Buddhist origins are barely recognizable. The Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, in the guise of the female Guanyin, became a multifunctional deity who, among many other con-

cerns, is believed to grant children to her faithful, thus earning her the name Songzi Guanyin (Child-Giving Guanyin).

While Buddhism contributed new deities to folk religion, it in turn adopted popular deities into its own pantheon, albeit usually only in a subservient position. There exist many stories of Buddhist pioneers converting local deities or demons to Buddhism and making them guardian spirits of their newly founded monasteries, thus symbolically subordinating local religion to Buddhism. The most famous case of such subordination is the adoption of the powerful folk deity Guan Gong as a tutelary spirit of Buddhist shrines.

In spite of such attempts at symbolic hegemony, Buddhism never came to dominate Chinese folk religion, either symbolically or institutionally. The saṅgha's deliberate separation from local communities limited its influence on their religious life, but gave it at the same time opportunities for ritual interaction. The strong association of Chinese Buddhism with concepts of the afterlife combined with the saṅgha's separateness to provide Buddhist monks and nuns with unique qualifications as providers of ritual services for the dead. In many areas of China, mortuary rites and rituals performed for the benefit of ghosts are predominantly supplied by Buddhist practitioners. Such practitioners include not only formally ordained monks and nuns, but also the followers of Buddhist-inclined lay sects, which in some areas had a more immediate impact as carriers of Buddhist ideas than the mainstream saṅgha. An example is the role of the Dragon Flower Sect (Longhua Pai) in nineteenth-century Taiwan, where, in the absence of a well-established monastic community, sectarians fulfilled many of the ritual functions that elsewhere were the domain of the ordained Buddhist clergy. Such sects arose in large numbers from the fourteenth century onward. They drew their inspiration ecumenically from all religious traditions of China, but in many of them the soteriological promise of the Pure Land combined with the eschatological expectation of the buddha Maitreya to infuse them with a distinctly Buddhist flavor. For this reason they have at times been characterized as "folk Buddhist."

In these ways Buddhism helped to shape Chinese folk religion and was in turn shaped by it. In the process, it contributed a significant number of the pieces that make up the rich mosaic of religious life in Chinese communities.

*See also:* Apocrypha; Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Entertainment and Performance; Ghosts and Spirits; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Merit and Merit-Making; Syncretic Sects; Three Teachings

### Bibliography

- Dean, Kenneth. *Taoist Ritual and Popular Cults of Southeast China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1993.
- Overmyer, Daniel L. *Folk Buddhist Religion: Dissenting Sects in Late Traditional China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1976.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Yü, Chün-fang. *Kuan-yin: The Chinese Transformation of Avalokiteśvara*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

PHILIP CLART

---

## FOLK RELIGION, JAPAN

Folk religion (*minkan shinkō* or *minzoku shūkyō*) is the unifying element underlying Japanese religious structure, the "frame of reference," as Miyake Hitoshi has termed it ("Folk Religion," p. 122), through which the religious traditions of Shintō and Buddhism have become rooted in Japan. Folk religion is generally considered to encompass a variety of customs, practices and ideas, including rituals, festivals and events linked to the calendrical cycle and to individual and social life cycles; concepts relating to the spirits of the dead and to other worlds; the use of AMULETS AND TALISMANS and divination; belief in the capacity of various figures of worship to bestow worldly benefits on petitioners; and concepts of spirit possession and shamanism.

The relationship between Buddhism and folk religion in Japan has been, and remains, one of interaction and mutual reinforcement. From its initial entry onward Buddhism has assimilated and adapted to existing folk ideas and practices, simultaneously shaping and influencing their development, while Buddhist ideas and practices have often taken hold through integrating with folk ideas and practices.

This process of mutual influence can be seen from the time Buddhism first entered Japan, bringing with it with Daoist concepts and practices relating to

divination, oracles, and the calendar. These became embedded in Japanese folk religious structure: Cycles of lucky and unlucky days and years became part of folk religious consciousness, commemorated through rituals and practices, including the drawing of oracle lots and rituals for preventing misfortunes, that were carried out at Buddhist temples. Buddhist festivals—such as the summer Obon or Festival for the Sprits of the Dead—also became part of the annual round of observances followed by the Japanese.

### **Buddhism, folk religion, and the dead**

Perhaps the main area of interaction between Japanese folk religion and Buddhism has been in relation to the spirits of the dead, ANCESTORS and concepts of other worlds. Before the advent of Buddhism, folk traditions envisaged the spirit as departing from the body at DEATH but remaining essentially tied to this world and reluctant to depart from its kin. Although the spirits of the dead could become benevolent protective deities, they were also inherently dangerous and fearsome, capable of possessing the living or afflicting them in various ways; the realms of death were dark and perilous. Buddhism offered more sophisticated and ultimately more positive visions of what lay beyond death, and offered means of subduing possessing spirits and pacifying the dead through rituals conducted by priests and, especially in earlier times, by ascetics who claimed exorcistic powers. Such notions and practices were readily assimilated into a folk tradition in which shamanic practitioners (including members of mountain cults who were deeply influenced by Buddhism) played a vital role in the religious life of ordinary people. Such practitioners continue to exist, and the new religions that have emerged in more recent times have drawn extensively from this folk/Buddhist shamanic tradition.

Buddhist funerary rituals offered a means of averting the dangers of pollution by purifying the dead of their sins and leading them safely from this realm to the next, thus transforming their spirits into benevolent ancestors existing in a mutually beneficial relationship with their living kin. Buddhism's concepts of other realms, of HELLS for the wicked and REBIRTH in the Pure Land for the virtuous, offered a moral vision of death and the beyond, while its rituals offering merit transference from the living to the dead enabled the living to aid their departed kin in the afterlife.

While these Japanese concepts of death and the ancestors show an obvious Buddhist influence, it is also

clear that folk concepts have had an impact on Buddhism in Japan. The notion of the spirit of an ancestor being led elsewhere yet remaining in close contact with the living depends upon an implicit belief in an after-death existence that appears to conflict with standard Buddhist notions of transmigration—a dilemma never resolved in Japan, where Buddhist sects may articulate both concepts simultaneously—and represents a folk transformation of Buddhism. The relationship between the living and the dead remains central to Japanese Buddhism, which since early medieval times has been the primary medium through which death rituals and ancestor veneration have been carried out. Most Japanese households continue to use family Buddhist altars to memorialize their ancestors and most Japanese continue to envisage the dead through ideas framed by Buddhist rites and deeply influenced by folk beliefs.

### **Folk religion, Buddhism, and worldly benefits**

Another major area of folk-Buddhist interaction concerns Buddhism's reinforcement and expansion of existing folk beliefs about the role of figures of worship in providing worldly benefits (*genze riyaku*). In pre-Buddhist Japan spiritual entities such as clan tutelary deities were petitioned for protection and aid; adapting to this tradition, Japanese Buddhism portrayed its figures of worship—BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS such as Bhaiṣajyaguru (Japanese, Yakushi; the buddha of healing) and Avalokiteśvara (Kannon; the bodhisattva of compassion)—as powerful agents capable of granting benefits and interceding to heal illness and provide happiness and good fortune to those who worshiped them. Buddhist sūtras, notably the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) provided accounts of miraculous happenings and promises of worldly benefits for those who follow the Buddhist way. Such notions have consistently been emphasized by proselytizing Buddhist itinerants and priests who have composed numerous stories and miracle tales relating to Buddhist figures of worship. Icons and statues of popular figures such as Avalokiteśvara and sacred places such as temples have been portrayed in such stories as sources of spiritual power and benefits that can be accrued by all. Buddhist temples have become primary sites for making petitions for worldly benefits, and primary sources of protective devices such as talismans and amulets, which are widely used in Japan. In the provision of worldly benefits there are few if any distinctions between “elite” monastic centers and “popular” temples; often the two are synony-

mous, with the monastic practitioners of purportedly elite institutions actively promoting the miraculous powers of the statues, icons, and relics at their institutions. Some scholars argue that there exists a “common religion” (Reader and Tanabe) centered on worldly benefits, in which elite and popular, institutional (Buddhist) and folk religion are effectively parts of one dynamic.

### Folk heroes and pilgrimage customs

One of the most striking popular figures of worship who grants worldly benefits is Kōbō Daishi, who can be seen as an exemplar both of the folk transformations of Buddhism and of Buddhist influence on folk religion. Kōbō Daishi is the posthumous name of KŪKAI (774–835), founder of the Shingon Buddhist tradition and of numerous temples in Japan. Shingon Buddhist sources suggest that Kūkai entered into eternal meditation at death, and the sect promoted him, in his posthumous guise as Kōbō Daishi, as a transcendent miracle worker who could bring benefits to the faithful. Cults of worship developed around him, portraying him as an itinerant who dispenses rewards to the worthy and retribution to the venal. PILGRIMAGE routes—most notably an eighty-eight-temple circuit around Shikoku, the island of Kūkai’s birth—also developed around this cultic figure; he has transcended sectarian boundaries and become the focus of an extensive folk faith, still vibrant in modern Japan. A study by Kaneko Satoru (*Shinshū shinkō to minzoku shinkō*, 1991) shows that the pilgrimage and veneration of Kōbō Daishi are deeply embedded in the folk customs of Shikoku, and that such folk practices and attitudes permeate the lives of people who officially belong to orthodox sectarian Buddhism but whose daily lives and localized faith are rooted in Kōbō Daishi and pilgrimage-centered folk religion.

The interactions between Buddhism and folk religion in Japan have been extensive. Folk religion is the underlying stratum upon which Buddhism and other traditions have built their foundations and through which they have responded to the needs and views of Japanese people.

*See also:* Divinities; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Ghost Festival; Ghosts and Spirits; Japan; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Merit and Merit-Making; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Blacker, Carmen. *The Catalpa Bow: A Study of Shamanistic Practices in Japan* (1975). Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1999.
- Hori, Ichirō. *Folk Religion in Japan: Continuity and Change*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1968.
- Kaneko Satoru. *Shinshū shinkō to minzoku shinkō*. Kyoto: Nagata Bunshōdō, 1991.
- Miyake Hitoshi. “Folk Religion.” In *Japanese Religion*, ed. Hori Ichirō et al. Tokyo: Kōdansha, 1981.
- Miyake Hitoshi. *Shugendō: Essays on the Structure of Japanese Folk Religion*. Ann Arbor: Center for Japanese Studies, University of Michigan, 2001.
- Reader, Ian. *Religion in Contemporary Japan*. Basingstoke, UK: Macmillan; Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Reader, Ian, and Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Practically Religious: Worldly Benefits and the Common Religion of Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.

IAN READER

---

## FOLK RELIGION, SOUTHEAST ASIA

The folk religions of THERAVĀDA Southeast Asia combine elements of local spirit religions, local versions of Brahmanism, and Buddhism. The combination of Buddhism, Brahmanism, and spirits is a total ritual system with as much internal tension as consistency. This is because, while Buddhism is doctrinally opposed to spirit religions, it recognizes and respects Brahmanism. Buddhism’s opposition to spirits is not based on the grounds that these religions are false; the problem is that spirits are worldly powers, and people bent on salvation should not concern themselves with them. The Brahmanical DIVINITIES (*devatā*), on the other hand, are seen as supernatural protectors of Buddhism, so interaction with them is considered wholesome. In practice, however, laypersons consider interaction with the spirits to be a practical necessity, and even monks must deal with them on occasion.

### Spirit religion

The spirit religions have their roots in the pre-Buddhist past. There is remarkable consistency among the various versions of these religions across Southeast Asia, among both Buddhist and non-Buddhist groups. Spirits are invisible beings with humanlike wills and emotions that are associated with specific places and objects. The spirits have the power to harm humans, and they will do so if they feel that humans have trespassed on

their territory, or if they have not been properly propitiated. In Burma, spirits are called *nat*. In Thailand and Laos they are known as *phi*, and in Cambodia as *neak taa* or *kmait*.

Spirits are seen as, among other things, guardians of morality, particularly as regards proper community, family, and sexual relationships. This is illustrated by the Northern Thai tale of a prince who was visiting a friend, the ruler of a neighboring principality. While there he had an adulterous liaison with his friend's chief wife, the reigning princess. On his return home, he had to ride across the mountains through the forest, where a powerful spirit caused him to drown in a stream as punishment for his wrongdoing.

As guardians of proper human relations, spirits provide benefits to communities more than to individuals. Spirit rites are important markers and maintainers of social solidarity in villages, families, and lineages. Benefits are believed to come to individuals when they turn to individual spirits for help with personal problems. Spirits can heal and find lost objects, among other things. People first seek the help of local spirits. If that fails they turn to professional spirit mediums who are said to serve particularly effective spirits.

Spirits that have been domesticated—that is, turned from things of the wild into elements of the human community—are powerful sources of protection for the people who honor them. The places they protect range in scale from whole kingdoms to individual rooms of the home. Generally speaking, the larger the place a spirit protects, the more powerful the spirit. On the other side of the coin, the smaller the spirit, the more likely it is to be offended by the wrongdoings of particular individuals. The bedroom spirit is the most dangerous of all if one offends it by committing an improper sexual act in its presence. Great spirits will afflict whole communities that offend them (for instance, by withholding rain), but will only punish individuals of equivalent rank. The tutelary spirit of a kingdom may harm a king, but is unlikely to concern itself with the misdeeds of a peasant.

The Buddhist cultures of Southeast Asia make a strong distinction between wild and civilized spaces, that is, between nature and culture. Wild spaces, such as the forests and mountains, are regarded as dangerous and said to be filled with potentially harmful spirits. Humans encroaching on these spaces—for instance, to clear woodlands for agricultural fields—must take care to address the leading spirit of that place and ask permission to undertake human activi-

ties. The spirit, and its attendant lesser spirits, are then invited to protect that place on behalf of humans. For their part, humans must make regular offerings to the spirits. These offerings can be as simple as small portions of food, often accompanied by tobacco and liquor, which are offered with humble words by the local farmer or householder, or the offerings may be as elaborate as large-scale animal sacrifices lasting one or two days and requiring the participation of specialized priests.

In addition to the spirits of wild places, spirits of the dead are also important. Like the spirits of the wild, they are bound to and protect designated spaces. One dramatic example is the ancient use of ritual homicide (human sacrifice) to create powerful tutelary spirits. It was sometimes the practice when building entrance gates to walled cities to seize an unsuspecting passerby, kill him or her, and bury the body beneath the foundations of the gate. The resulting spirit was considered to be particularly ferocious, having been ripped so wantonly from this life. The spirit was given offerings and beseeched to turn its rage against strangers seeking to enter the city for wrongful purposes. This spirit would receive generous offerings each year as part of the city's elaborate set of sacrifices to its guardian spirits. On a less gruesome note, the spirits of powerful and revered leaders are often enshrined as the protective divinities of the people and places they once ruled. Since these rulers were Buddhists in their own lives, unlike their wild counterparts, they are likely to be moral beings and inherently benign. They, like some converted spirits of the wild, serve as protectors of the faith as well as protectors of the land and people. Burma (Myanmar), in particular, constructed a highly elaborate state cult of tutelary divinities drawn from the spirits of deceased rulers.

### **Brahmanism**

Brahmanism (in its Southeast Asian form) tends to be directly concerned with male spiritual potency. This potency is applied for the benefit of all people, male or female, but the source of the power is closely connected with maleness. This operates at the individual level. Every man has a certain level of spiritual power or effectiveness that derives from a combination of good KARMA (ACTION) and textual knowledge. This spiritual potency can be built and displayed through conspicuous acts of Buddhist piety—especially temporary ordination as a novice or monk—and knowledge of certain ritual texts. Particularly pious and powerful men may come to be known as learned masters (*ācāriyas*) or

Brāhmaṇas. In their capacity as *ācāriyas* they are considered to be half layman and half monk, and they serve as congregation leaders of Buddhist temples (*vihāras* or *āvāsas*), where they mediate between the world of the LAITY (*gharāvāsa*) and the sacred world of the monkhood (SAṄGHA). Although this office is not specified in the Buddhist CANON, it is extremely important to the everyday practice of Buddhism in Southeast Asia. In their capacity as Brāhmaṇas, spiritually powerful men can also serve as healers and as priests to the Vedic gods, particularly INDRA, Brahmā, and the Lords of the Four Quarters. In urban areas this service can be a profession.

Even men who do not take this profession or wear such exalted titles seek to acquire some degree of personal spiritual potency. The male literacy rate was traditionally quite high in Southeast Asia, in part because a knowledge of the Brahmanical religious texts was the best means to such potency. Even illiterate men are likely to have some practical ritual or magical knowledge, for such things are a necessity in daily life. The Brahmanical texts contain varieties of ritual knowledge. They include, for example, knowledge of the direction in which the earth-dragon lies in each season, which is important to consider when building a house or plowing a field. Various kinds of numerical magic squares figure as means of calculating auspicious days and directions for undertaking certain activities, such as setting out on a journey. There are also texts to be recited as spells for healing, love, and protection. In addition, certain texts contain the words required for sacrifices to the Vedic gods. In each case, however, the texts contain only the words for the rite. Knowledge of the proper materials to use and the proper performance of the rites must be learned from a teacher.

*See also:* Ancestors; Death; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Ghosts and Spirits; Hinduism and Buddhism; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Merit and Merit-Making

### **Bibliography**

- Archaimbault, Charles. "Religious Structures in Laos." *Journal of the Siam Society* 52 (1964): 57–74.
- Chouléan, Ang. *Les êtres surnaturels dans la religion populaire Khmère*. Paris: Cedorek, 1986.
- Lemoine, Jacques, and Eisenbruch, M. "The Practice and the Power of Healing by the Hmong Shamans and the Cambodian Traditional Healers of Indochina." *Homme* 37, no. 144 (1997): 69–103.

Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.

Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.

MICHAEL R. RHUM

---

FOREST MONKS. *See* Wilderness Monks

---

## FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS

The four noble truths are known best for their appearance in the classic *Turning of the Wheel of Dharma* (*Dharmacakrapravartana-sūtra*). This address appears in the Pāli, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese canons of various Buddhist schools, with relatively little variation in the actual content and terminology of the speech itself. The larger setting for this speech begins with the enlightenment of Gautama Buddha (566–486 B.C.E. or 470–350 B.C.E.). In the *Basket of Discipline* (*Vinaya-piṭaka*), a lengthy sequence describes how the Buddha left his five companions to pursue his own path toward enlightenment. He ate a bowl of rice porridge, and sat down under a pipal tree, vowing not to move until he was enlightened. Successively, during that night, in a series of three watches (each watch was about three hours long), the Buddha realized the four noble truths. During the first watch, he became aware of each of the four truths; during the second watch, he realized that he had to fully *know* the truth of each of the four truths; and during the third watch, he knew that he had, in fact, realized just how each truth was true. With that, he knew that he had reached BODHI (AWAKENING), that he had escaped the endless cycle of birth and death and had experienced NIRVĀṆA.

The Buddha spent the next seven weeks in a state of bliss, enjoying his newfound experience of enlightenment. A divinity from the heavens came down and asked the Buddha when he would begin to teach what he had just realized. The Buddha refused to teach, saying that what he had realized was far too difficult for other beings to know for themselves. After the divinity convinced him that there were others who could learn what he had to teach, the Buddha agreed to teach. He took time deciding to whom his first teaching should be delivered, and settled on his five companions from whose company he had parted in order to



seek his own enlightenment. After he approached them and convinced them that he had attained the state in which there is no death or suffering (that is, the state of *nirvāṇa*), they settled down to listen to this first talk. The Buddha's first talk on dharma is titled "Turning of the Wheel of the Law" because after he spoke to his five former companions, explaining the four noble truths and the middle way of the eightfold path, one of them, Kauṇḍinya, cultivated the eye of dharma—that is, he became fully enlightened. When he was enlightened, Gautama Buddha had turned the wheel of dharma in this world for the first time, and nothing could stop the teaching of dharma and the enlightenment of other beings.

### The four noble truths

The story of the Buddha's enlightenment and the turning of the wheel of dharma is the setting for the Buddha's first talk on dharma to an audience. He explains that his companions should pursue the middle way, avoiding the extremes of self-indulgence and self-mortification, and then lays out the four noble truths and the eightfold path. The four noble truths present the fact of suffering in this world and the means to end suffering in the following verses:

This, bhikkhus, is the noble truth that is suffering. Birth is suffering; old age is suffering; illness is suffering; death is suffering; sorrow and grief, physical and mental suffering, and disturbance are suffering. Association with things not liked is suffering, separation from desired things is suffering; not getting what one wants is suffering; in short, the five aggregates of grasping are suffering.

This, bhikkhus, is the noble truth that is the arising of suffering. This is craving that leads to rebirth, is connected with pleasure and passion and finds pleasure in this or that; that is, craving for desire, existence, and the fading away of existence.

This, bhikkhus, is the noble truth that is the ending of suffering. This is the complete fading away and ending of that very craving, giving it up, renouncing it, releasing it, and letting go.

This, bhikkhus, is the noble truth that is the way leading to the ending of suffering. This is the eightfold path of the noble ones: right view, right intention, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration. (*Book of Kindred Sayings [Samyutta-nikāya]*, vol. 5, line 410ff)

DUḤKHA (SUFFERING; Pāli, *dukkha*), the first of the four noble truths, is defined in the first verse above. Suffering in the Buddhist sense means far more than suffering is usually understood in a Judeo-Christian context. For Buddhists, anything that one wants and

does not have is suffering. Having something that one does not want is also suffering. Clinging to the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATE) that make up a person is suffering. In other words, if a person holds onto any aspect of his or her being, whether the physical body, feelings, perceptions, formations, or consciousness, in the hope that any of those things exists permanently, that person will experience suffering. BUDDHAGHOSA, a Buddhist commentator who lived during the late fourth and early fifth centuries C.E. in what is now Sri Lanka, explained that there were three kinds of suffering: suffering that is inherent in a thing, suffering that emerges because things change, and suffering that develops because something else influences an experience. An example of the last type of suffering would be the pain from an earache or a toothache that arises because of an infection. In short, all life is suffering, according to the Buddha's first sermon.

The second truth is *samudaya* (arising or origin). To end suffering, the four noble truths tell us, one needs to know how and why suffering arises. The second noble truth explains that suffering arises because of craving, desire, and attachment. Because one wants to avoid things that cause discomfort, and because one wants to have things that bring pleasure, these "desires" are the origin of suffering. If one does not desire things, then one will not experience suffering. If one wants to avoid the suffering that comes from thinking that the self (who "I" am) is permanent and unchanging, then one should not be attached to the idea of a self.

The third truth follows from the second: If the cause of suffering is desire and attachment to various things, then the way to end suffering is to eliminate craving, desire, and attachment. The third truth is called *nirodha*, which means "ending" or "cessation." To stop suffering, one must stop desiring.

The Buddha taught the fourth truth, *mārga* (Pāli, *magga*), the path that has eight parts, as the means to end suffering. Taken together, the four truths present a concise and logical analysis of the cause of human suffering and an equally straightforward solution to the problem of human suffering: the eightfold path.

### The eightfold path

The eightfold path is the middle way that the Buddha described during his first sermon, the way between the two extremes of self-indulgence and self-mortification. The eight limbs of the path consist of: right view, right intention, right speech, right action, right livelihood,

right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration. These are not sequential, because each one depends upon the other: They are meant to be followed and practiced in cooperation with one another. One cannot fully perfect the first step (for example, right view) until the last one, right concentration, is perfected. When all are practiced and perfected, then one attains enlightenment. Each of these components of the path is “right” in the sense that it is an ideal that should be undertaken and practiced seriously. One should follow the path not just because the Buddha taught it but because this is the way to attain the same perfection and enlightenment that Gautama Buddha reached while sitting under the bodhi tree. The word for *right* (Pāli, *sammā*; Sanskrit, *samyāñc*) in each of the compounds that are found in the fourth truth can be translated as right, proper, or good; the meaning becomes clearer when contrasted with its opposite (Pāli and Sanskrit, *pāpa*), which means wrong, bad, or even EVIL.

Buddhaghosa grouped the eightfold path into three different stages, as shown in Table 1. According to Buddhaghosa, *right view* means having nirvāṇa as one’s goal through eliminating ignorance. One should strive to see clearly, always envisioning reaching nirvāṇa in one’s mind. Other commentaries have explained that right view means understanding the four noble truths. *Right intention* (sometimes translated as *right thought*) involves thinking according to the Buddha’s teachings, and always directing one’s intentions and thoughts toward nirvāṇa, with keen attention to the proper ways of understanding the world. If one has abandoned wrong intentions or thoughts, then one knows that one is on the way to developing right intention. Some commentaries also explain that right intention involves the cultivation of *maitrī* (loving-kindness; Pāli, *mettā*) toward all other beings. Taken together, Buddhaghosa wrote that both right view and right intention make up *right wisdom*, for one is then focused on the ultimate goal of the Buddha’s teachings, which is nirvāṇa.

The second group, *right ethical conduct* (sometimes translated as *right morality*), is more readily understood than the first. *Right speech* means not lying, not engaging in gossip, not slandering others, and not speaking harshly. *Right action* involves not killing living things, not stealing, and not engaging in sexual misconduct. When one practices *right livelihood*, one avoids careers or jobs that harm others. Specifically, one should not earn a living by engaging in trading weapons, slaughtering animals, dealing in slavery, sell-

TABLE 1

Buddhaghosa's three stages of the eightfold path	
Right wisdom	right view right intention
Right ethical conduct	right speech right action right livelihood
Right concentration	right effort right mindfulness right concentration

ing alcohol or other intoxicants, or selling poisons. When one practices right speech, right action, and right livelihood, one lays the proper ethical foundation for the other remaining stages of the path.

The third and last group of the eightfold path, *right concentration*, includes right effort, right MINDFULNESS, and right concentration. Each of these limbs of the path requires focus and deliberate cultivation of certain meditative practices. *Right effort* means deliberately preventing undesirable mental attitudes, such as sensual desire, hatred, sluggishness, worry and anxiety, and doubt, as well as deliberately letting go of such attitudes if they have already arisen. Right effort means bringing about and maintaining positive mental attitudes, such as the seven factors of enlightenment: mindfulness, investigation of phenomena, energy, rapture, tranquility, concentration, and equanimity. *Right mindfulness* means cultivating an awareness of one’s body, one’s feelings, one’s mind, and of mental objects. The development of mindfulness is explained in detail in *The Foundations of Mindfulness* (Pāli, *Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta*); it involves simply watching and observing, for example, one’s body or mind. Right mindfulness is then accompanied by meditative practices of *right concentration*, which enable one to develop “one pointedness of mind.” By closing the doors of the senses to the outside world, one focuses on one of a variety of objects that are designed to enable the practitioner to attain specific mental states that lie beyond one’s usual daily consciousness.

Taken as a whole, the four noble truths and the eightfold path are emblematic of all of the Buddha’s teachings. Because the Buddha is said to have taught these in his first sermon, they represent the most fundamental teachings of Buddhism. The four noble truths are woven throughout all of the Buddhist worlds; they appear in countless texts, and the story of the Buddha’s enlightenment has been told even in

fourteenth-century Japanese Nō plays. The eightfold path, too, is representative of the path to enlightenment. The eight stages of the path are broadly designed to take a practitioner from the initial steps of right intention and right view—being properly focused on the attainment of nirvāṇa—to the more strenuous meditation practices that enable one to cultivate awareness and insight and one pointedness of mind.

However, because the four noble truths and the eightfold path are construed so broadly, it is difficult to talk about them as specific and explicit guides to the practices that lead to nirvāṇa. While there are certain practices enumerated in the commentaries on the four noble truths and the eightfold path, the first talk on dharma in which the Buddha lays out the teachings contains no specific instructions on how one should recognize the truth of the four noble truths and the eightfold path. The Buddha himself simply states that he *knew* that he had to know the truth of the four noble truths for himself, and that he came to realize the truth of the four noble truths. The Buddha then instructs his audience to do the same. In short, the four noble truths and the eightfold path are illustrative of the progressive path toward enlightenment, rather than being specific teachings on how one should meditate in order to reach enlightenment.

There are other meditation practices that employ the four noble truths and the eightfold path, such as the practice of the foundations of mindfulness. In that practice, one meditates upon the ways in which mental objects such as the four noble truths or the eightfold path are constructed in the world, how they come to be, and how they pass away. Buddhist texts also offer an extensive set of teachings on how to meditate in order to reach enlightenment that incorporate the four noble truths and the eightfold path as objects of contemplation. At the same time, however, there are countless references to the significance of the four noble truths as a means to fully understand the dharma and to fully comprehend the right view that will lead one to nirvāṇa.

The four noble truths are often employed as an organizing principle to describe the more detailed and

complex set of teachings that are the framework for more specific meditation practices. As a representation of the enlightenment that the Buddha reached, and as an illustration of the path that others might follow to gain enlightenment, the four noble truths are the most significant teaching in all of Buddhism's varied schools and traditions.

*See also:* **Meditation; Prajñā (Wisdom); Pratītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)**

### **Bibliography**

- Anderson, Carol S. *Pain and Its Ending: The Four Noble Truths in the Theravāda Buddhist Canon*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1999.
- Bodhi, Bhikkhu. *The Noble Eightfold Path: The Way to the End of Suffering*, 2nd edition. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1994.
- Bond, George D. *The Word of the Buddha: The Tipiṭaka and Its Interpretation in Theravāda Buddhism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: M. D. Gunasena, 1982.
- Dalai Lama XIV. *The Four Noble Truths: Fundamentals of the Buddhist Teachings, His Holiness the XIV Dalai Lama*, tr. Thupten Jinpa, ed. Dominique Side. London: Thoresons, 1998.
- Griffith, Paul. "Concentration or Insight: The Problematic of Theravāda Buddhist Meditation-Theory." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 44 (1981): 605–624.
- Matthews, Bruce. *Craving and Salvation: A Study in Buddhist Soteriology*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfred Laurier University Press, 1983.
- Norman, K. R. "The Four Noble Truths." In *Collected Papers*, Vol. 2. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1990–2001.
- Norman, K. R. "Why Are the Four Noble Truths Called Noble?" In *Collected Papers*, Vol. 4. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1990–2001.
- Rahula, Walpola. *What the Buddha Taught*, 2nd edition. New York: Grove Press, 1974.
- Sumedho, Bhikkhu. *The Four Noble Truths*. Hertfordshire, UK: Amaravati, 1992.

CAROL S. ANDERSON

# G



GANDHĀRA. *See* India; India, Northwest

## GĀNDHĀRĪ, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Gāndhārī, formerly known as Northwestern Prakrit, is a Middle Indo-Aryan vernacular of the ancient region of Gandhāra in the northwest of the Indian subcontinent around modern Peshawar in northern Pakistan. Gāndhārī is closely related to its parent language, Sanskrit, and to its sister language, Pāli. Gāndhārī was written in the Kharoṣṭhī script, running from right to left, unlike all other Indo-Aryan languages that were written in Brāhmī script and its derivatives, which ran from left to right. In the early centuries of the common era, Gāndhārī was used as a religious and administrative language over a wide area of South and Central Asia.

For many years, Gāndhārī was attested primarily in Buddhist inscriptions, coin legends, and secular documents. Only one manuscript of a Buddhist text, the *Gāndhārī Dharmapada*, discovered near Khotan in Chinese Central Asia in 1892, was known. But in the 1990s, many fragmentary Gāndhārī manuscripts on birch bark and palm leaf came to light. Most of these now belong to three major collections: the British Library scrolls, the Senior scrolls, and the Schøyen fragments. These texts are still being studied and published, so that knowledge of Buddhist literature in Gāndhārī is at a preliminary stage. But the texts clearly show that, as previously suspected, Gāndhārī was one of the major Buddhist languages, with an extensive literature that probably constituted one or more independent canons or proto-canons.

The Gāndhārī manuscripts date from about the first to third centuries C.E. They include the oldest surviving manuscript remains of any Buddhist tradition and present a unique source for the study of the formation of Buddhist literature. Although the circumstances of their discoveries are not well documented, most of the manuscripts apparently came from Buddhist monastic sites in eastern Afghanistan, such as Hadda and BĀMIYĀN, where they were buried in clay pots or other containers.

The twenty-nine British Library scrolls constitute a diverse collection of texts and genres written in various hands and formats. The most prominent genres are legends (AVADĀNA or *pūrvayoga*), sūtras, scholastic and ABHIDHARMA texts, and commentaries on groups of verses. The Senior collection, consisting of twenty-four scrolls, is more unitary in that all of the manuscripts were written by the same scribe and most of them are sūtras. The Schøyen fragments comprise over one hundred small remnants from miscellaneous texts, very few of which had been identified as of 2002.

Gāndhārī sūtras include versions of well-known texts such as the *Rhinoceros Sūtra* (Pāli, *Khaggavisāṇa-sutta*) and the *Saṅgīti-sūtra*, both in the British Library collection. The same collection also includes a fragment of a group of short sūtras arranged on a numerical basis, like the *Aṅguttaranikāya* of the Pāli canon and *Ekottarikāgama* of the Sanskrit canon. Among the many sūtras in the Senior collection are Gāndhārī versions of the *Sāmaññaphala-sutta*, which is part of the *Dīghanikāya* in the Pāli canon, and of the *Cūḷagosiṅga-sutta* of the Pāli *Majjhimanikāya*, as well as several others that correspond to *Samyuttanikāya* suttas, such as the *Veḷudvāreyya-sutta* and *Pariḷāha-sutta*. The Schøyen

collection includes fragments of a Gāndhārī version of the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA.

The Gāndhārī sūtras are broadly similar to the parallel texts in Pāli, Sanskrit, Chinese, and Tibetan, but they differ significantly in structure, contents, and wording. The same is true of Gāndhārī versions of other canonical or paracanonical texts, such as the *Dharmapada* (Pāli, DHAMMAPADA), which is attested both in the Khotan *Dharmapada* scroll and in a small fragment in the British Library collection. The paracanonical *Songs of Lake Anavatapta* (*Anavatapta-gāthā*) is similarly preserved in two fragmentary scrolls in the British Library and Senior collections.

But the majority of the Gāndhārī texts have no known parallels in other Buddhist traditions, and many of them are evidently peculiar to the Gandhāran regional tradition. For example, several of the British Library *avadānas* are marked as local literature by references to historical figures of Gandhāra, such as the Great Satrap Jihonika. Such references provide important clues for the dating of these texts in or around the first century C.E. In general, the Gāndhārī *avadānas* and *pūrvayogas* are characterized by an extremely terse style, indicating that they are summaries of longer stories, designed to serve as mnemonic aids for expanded oral presentations. This makes them difficult to interpret when no parallels are available.

The *abhidharma* and other scholastic texts in the British Library and Schøyen collections also have few, if any, direct parallels, and thus appear to be products of local monastic scholarship that were not preserved in the Buddhist literatures of other regions. Prominent in the British Library collection are commentaries on series of verses of the type that in other Buddhist literatures are found in texts such as the *Sutta-nipāta*, *Dhammapada*, and *Theraḡāthā*. But the selection and ordering of these verses is peculiar to these texts, and as yet is not clearly understood.

The doctrinal content of the Gāndhārī Buddhist literature is consistently representative of mainstream or HĪNAYĀNA Buddhism. With a few possible exceptions among the Schøyen fragments, which represent a slightly later phase of Gāndhārī literature, they contain no reference to MAHĀYĀNA texts or ideas. Although it is difficult to identify specific sectarian affiliations for many of the Gāndhārī texts, at least some of the British Library scrolls probably represent the literature of the DHARMAGUPTAKA school, since they were found inside a pot that bore a dedicatory

inscription to that school. A Dharmaguptaka affiliation is also supported by the British Library *Saṅgīti-sūtra*, which is similar to the version of the same sūtra preserved in the Chinese *Dīrghāgama* (*Chang ahan jing*), which is probably a Dharmaguptaka collection.

The discovery of extensive remains of a Buddhist literature in Gāndhārī, hitherto almost entirely unknown, provides support for the long-standing “Gāndhārī hypothesis,” according to which many of the earliest Chinese Buddhist translations were derived from Gandhāran archetypes. This confirms that Gandhāra was the principal jumping-off point for the spread of Buddhism from its Indian homeland into Central Asia and China.

**See also:** India, Northwest; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Allon, Mark. *Three Gāndhārī Ekottarikāgama-Type Sūtras: British Library Fragments 12 and 14*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2001.
- Allon, Mark, and Salomon, Richard. “Kharoṣṭhī Fragments of a Gāndhārī Version of the Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra.” In *Buddhist Manuscripts*, vol. 1, ed. Jens Braarvig. Oslo, Norway: Hermes, 2000.
- Boucher, Daniel. “Gāndhārī and the Early Chinese Buddhist Translations Reconsidered: The Case of the *Saddharma-puṇḍarīkasūtra*.” *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 118, no. 4 (1998): 471–506.
- Brough, John, ed. *The Gāndhārī Dharmapada*. London: Oxford University Press, 1962.
- Fussman, Gérard. “Gāndhārī écrite, Gāndhārī parlée.” In *Dialectes dans les littératures indo-aryennes*, ed. Colette Caillat. Paris: Collège de France, l’Institut de Civilisation Indienne, 1989.
- Konow, Sten, ed. *Kharoṣṭhī Inscriptions, with the Exception of Those of Aśoka*, Vol. 2, part 1: *Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum*. Calcutta: Government of India, 1929.
- Lenz, Timothy. *A New Version of the Gāndhārī Dharmapada and a Collection of Previous-Birth Stories: British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragments 16 and 25*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2002.
- Salomon, Richard. “Kharoṣṭhī Manuscript Fragments in the Pelliot Collection, Bibliothèque Nationale de France.” *Bulletin d’Études Indiennes* 16 (1998): 123–160.
- Salomon, Richard. *Ancient Buddhist Scrolls from Gandhāra: The British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragments*. London: British Library; Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1999.

Salomon, Richard. *A Gāndhārī Version of the Rhinoceros Sūtra: British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragment 5B*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2000.

RICHARD SALOMON

## GANJIN

Ganjin (Chinese, Jianzhen; 688–763) was a Chinese monk who played a major role in the establishment of Buddhism in Japan. In 742 Ganjin accepted an invitation from two Japanese emissaries to introduce orthodox ORDINATION rituals to Japan. At that time a legitimate order of monks (SAṄGHA) did not yet exist in Japan and proper ceremonies to establish an order could not be conducted since Japan lacked the quorum of ten senior bhikṣu (fully ordained monks) to preside over the ordination ceremony as required by VINAYA regulations.

During a twelve-year ordeal, Ganjin and his followers endured five shipwrecks, which cost Ganjin his eyesight and took the lives of thirty-six of his disciples, before they finally arrived in Japan in 754 on their sixth attempt to cross the sea. Once in Japan, Ganjin constructed an ordination platform at Tōdaiji temple in the capital city of Nara and founded a new monastery, the Tōshōdaiji, to serve as a center for the study of VINAYA doctrines. In 754 alone Ganjin and his Chinese compatriots ordained more than four hundred new Japanese bhikṣu. Today, Ganjin is still revered as the founding patriarch of Japan's Vinaya school (Risshū), which adheres to the commentaries on vinaya by DAOXUAN (596–667). In addition to establishing Japan's first properly constituted saṅgha, Ganjin also introduced Chinese medical knowledge, Chinese calligraphy, and the texts and doctrines of the TIANTAI SCHOOL (Japanese, Tendai) of Buddhism. His biography, the *Tō daiwajō tōsei den (Biography of the Great Master of Tang China Who Journeyed to the East, 779)* by Genkai (Ōmi no Mifune, 722–785), is one of the early classics of Japanese Buddhist literature.

### Bibliography

Tamura, Kwansai. "Ganjin (Chien-Chen): Transmitter of Buddhist Precepts to Japan." *Young East* (Tokyo) 6, no. 4 (1980): 4–6.

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## GAVĀMPATI

Gavāmpati (Pāli, Gavampati) is a disciple of the Buddha, one of the first ten to be ordained and to have known the state of ARHAT. His name means "guardian of the cows" or "bull." Gavāmpati is mentioned first of all in the VINAYA or monastic codes of the various schools. These sources report on Gavāmpati's appearance after the ordination of Yaśa, an early convert, whose example Gavāmpati seeks to emulate. Gavāmpati is introduced as a friend of Yaśa's; like Yaśa, Gavāmpati comes from a rich Vārāṇasī family. The episode, described precisely in the Pāli Vinaya, is also evoked, with few differences, in Sanskrit texts (*Saṅghabhedavastu [Section on the Schism in the Community]*, *Catuṣpariṣat-sūtra [Sūtra on the (Establishment of the) Fourfold Assembly]*) and in their Chinese translations.

The *Theragāthā* (v. 38) mentions Gavāmpati's supranormal powers and calls him a man of great wisdom "who has surpassed all attachments and reached the far shore of existence" (Norman, p. 5). His mythical nature is explained in the text's commentary (*Theragāthā-aṭṭhakathā*): During three prior lives, Gavāmpati accumulated merits that allowed him, in a fourth life, to live in a heavenly realm, where he resides in a sumptuous house, the Serīssakavimāna (Palace of Acacias). In his fifth life, in Gautama's time, Gavāmpati saved a group of monks by stopping a river's flood waters so that the waters remained standing in the air, like a mountain. Echoing this theme, the Vinaya of both the Mahīśāsakas and the Dharmaguptakas shows how Gavāmpati helped the Buddha and his retinue cross the Ganges on their way to Kuśinagara. Finally, both the *Pāyāsi-sūtra* and the *Dhammapada-aṭṭhakathā (Commentary on the Word of the Doctrine)* emphasize that Gavāmpati resides, in a timeless fashion, in the Palace of Acacias.

Gavāmpati's unusual personality is even more obvious in the texts of north Asian schools. Jean Przyluski showed how Tibetan and Chinese texts glorify Gavāmpati at the moment of his *parinirvāṇa*. Gavāmpati was summoned to the Rājagṛha Council after the Buddha's death. A young monk came to his celestial palace to invite him, but Gavāmpati immediately understood that the Buddha had passed away, and decided that he, too, would accomplish his *parinirvāṇa*. Then, he performed a series of wonders: He sprang into space; his body started to radiate water and fire;

his hands touched the sun and the moon; and, finally, his body wasted away while the river of his waters reached the land of men, and Rājagṛha, putting an end to the dry season.

Przyluski considered this story to be the expression of a pre-Buddhist myth that belongs more to the Asia of monsoons than to Indo-European stock. He proposed the hypothesis that Gavāṃpati was the incarnation of dry winds chasing the waters away, and that his *parinirvāṇa* could be interpreted as a bull-sacrifice that brought the drought to an end. Some scholars have criticized this thesis. Nevertheless, there remain textual facts that are disconnected from any known cult in Indian Buddhism or in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition and that feature Gavāṃpati's strange powers over water.

Within the context of Southeastern Asian Buddhism, Gavāṃpati has become a preeminent character because his textual dimension is enhanced by his ritual dimension. The Sanskrit text of the *Mahākarmavibhaṅga* states that "The saint, Gavāṃpati, converted people in . . . the Golden Land [Suvarṇabhūmi]," a region identified with Lower Burma (Myanmar) or with the central plain of Thailand. The *Sāsanavaṃsa*, a late historical chronicle, tells more specifically that Gavāṃpati was the first to preach the Buddha's doctrine in the Mon kingdom of Thaton. Ancient Mon inscriptions confirm this legend, and one of them points out that Gavāṃpati founded Śrī Kṣetra, the ancient capital city of the Pyus. Some Pagan inscriptions add that a cult, which probably disappeared around the fourteenth century, developed around his images. According to Gordon H. Luce, the limited number of statuettes of the "Fat Monk" found at Pagan are indeed those of Gavāṃpati. Such images are today innumerable in Thailand, where they are called Kachai, Mahakachai, or Sangkachai when they represent the fat monk seated in meditative fashion, and Phagawam when they show him covering his eyes or other bodily orifices. These images are venerated for their protective virtues and for the symbol of renunciation of the senses they express.

Therefore, it is mostly in Thailand, but also in Laos, Cambodia, and in the Shan states, that the Mon cult of Gavāṃpati has survived. Several local texts in Pāli, Thai, and Lao (such as *Gavampati-sutta*, *Gavampatinibbāna*, or *Kaccāyananibbāna*) tell the story of a monk who resembled too closely the Buddha and so was often confused with him. He therefore decided to transform himself into a shapeless being and to take

on another name, Gavāṃpati. This tradition was then extended to another disciple, Mahākaccāyana.

*See also:* Disciples of the Buddha; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia

### Bibliography

- Lagiarde, François. "Gavampati et la tradition des quatre-vingts disciples du Bouddha: textes et iconographie du Laos et de Thaïlande." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 87, no. 1 (2000): 57–78.
- Luce, Gordon H. *Old Burma-Early Pagan*. Locust Valley, NY: J. J. Augustin, 1969.
- Norman, K. R., ed. and trans. *The Elders' Verses*, Vol. 1. London: Pāli Text Society, 1969.
- Przyluski, Jean. *Le concile de Rājagṛha: Introduction à l'histoire des canons et des sectes bouddhiques*. Paris: Paul Geuthner, 1928.
- Shorto, H. L. "The Gavampati Tradition in Burma." In *R.C. Majumdar Felicitation Volume*, ed. Himansu Bhushan Sarkar. Calcutta: K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1970.

FRANÇOIS LAGIARDE

---

GELUK. *See* Dge lugs (Geluk)

---

## GENDER

Buddhist perspectives on gender are multiple, diverse, and often contradictory, varying widely over time and space. This entry will first focus on early or mainstream Buddhism in India (especially as represented by the Pāli canon), and then discuss views of gender particular to MAHĀYĀNA and TANTRA. Emphasis throughout will be on the ideology of gender expressed through Buddhist textual discourse rather than the actual status of Buddhist men and women historically.

### Gender in early Buddhism

According to an important Buddhist cosmogonical myth found in the Pāli *Agāṇṇa-sutta* (*Knowing the Beginning*), the ideal "Golden Age" that initiates each cycle of world creation is characterized by ethereal human beings who are identical, sexless, and androgynous. It is only when they become greedy for food that sexual differentiation into male and female genders occurs, quickly leading to further moral decline in the form of passion, lust, and jealousy. Gender dis-

inctions thus constitute a fallen and imperfect condition and are a sign of humanity's moral decline. A necessary corollary of this is that as individual beings perfect themselves by following the Buddhist PATH, they return, to some extent, to this genderless ideal. Since sexual differentiation brought about passion and lust, it follows that those who eradicate passion and lust would reverse the process of differentiation. Symbolically, this is suggested by the androgynous behavior and appearance of Buddhist MONKS and NUNS, with their shaved heads, baggy robes, and identical forms of practice. Doctrinally, it is reinforced by early Buddhism's frequent insistence on the irrelevance of gender in spiritual matters and the equal ability of men and women to attain liberation. Women are repeatedly described as being fully capable of attaining NIRVĀṆA (as well as other spiritual goals), and there are many examples of highly accomplished women throughout the early literature. The Buddha's direct disciples included many *arhatīs* (female ARHATS) who were highly esteemed for their moral discipline, meditation, and learning. The liberation of a woman is identical to the liberation of a man, as are the qualities that lead to it.

This tendency toward androgyny and gender equality in matters of the dharma must be balanced, however, against a range of conflicting views equally well represented in early Buddhist literature. Despite the idealization and symbolic appropriation of the androgyny of the Golden Age, for example, it appears that once gender distinctions have developed, they must be observed and maintained. This is apparent in the way early Buddhist texts describe the Buddhist community as a "fourfold community" consisting of "monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen," with the distinction by gender being considered just as fundamental as the distinction between monastics and LAITY. This sense of the separation and complementarity of the two genders is pervasive throughout early Buddhist literature: There is an order of monks and an order of nuns, the Buddha has two chief male disciples and two chief female disciples, and the lives of men and women are treated separately in complementary texts such as the *Theragāthā* (*Verses of the Elder Monks*) and *Therīgāthā* (*Verses of the Elder Nuns*). Real, rather than symbolic, gender ambiguity is problematic and cannot be tolerated. In fact, proper male or female gender had to be officially confirmed at the time of ORDINATION, and people of ambiguous gender of various types were barred from entering the SAṄGHA.

Distinction between the genders is further reinforced by a consistent hierarchy in which male gender is made superior to female gender. The higher status of men over women is again pervasive throughout early Buddhist literature. Thus, the order of nuns is subordinate to the order of monks, seniority for nuns is calculated separately from and is lower than seniority for monks, and giving alms to a nun results in less merit for the donor than giving alms to a monk (a belief that has adversely affected the order of nuns throughout history). Moreover, this inferiority of women is not merely a matter of social convention, but is, in fact, karmically significant. Male or female gender is determined at the time of conception by one's KARMA (ACTION), with male gender being an indication of better karma than female gender. In cases of spontaneous sex change (several of which are attested in the Pāli Vinaya), the change from male into female is the result of a powerful evil deed, while the change from female into male is the result of a powerful good deed. The same is true of sexual transformations that occur through REBIRTH: In Buddhist stories, women sometimes aspire to be reborn as men (and succeed in doing so by performing good deeds), whereas men never aspire to be reborn as women (but occasionally are as a result of bad deeds).

Early Buddhist views of female gender are further affected by the demands of male celibacy. Because of the threat women pose to this celibacy, there is often a tendency in these male-authored texts to associate female gender with sexuality and lust, and to demonize women as immoral and dangerous temptresses out to divert male renunciants from the path. Women are described as being "wholly the snares of MĀRA," and are said to be driven by uncontrollable lust and "never sated with sexual intercourse and childbirth." The impurity of the female body is also emphasized, and female biological processes such as menstruation are depicted as being filthy and polluting. Alternatively, women (especially virtuous Buddhist laywomen) are sometimes highly idealized as nurturing wives and mothers or celebrated for their feminine beauty and fertility. But whether idealized as madonnas or demonized as whores, such persistent gender stereotypes tend to weaken the tradition's clear statements of gender equality in matters of the dharma.

It is also true that beyond the status of arhatship, early Buddhist texts are more ambivalent about women's spiritual capabilities. In many texts, we find a list of the woman's "five hindrances" or those



positions in the cosmos that are unavailable to her as a woman—including the position of buddhahood. Thus, BUDDHAS in the early tradition are never female, a view most likely due to the well-established notion that a buddha's body is characterized by the thirty-two marks of the "Great Man," including the mark of having the penis encased in a sheath. Even becoming a BODHISATTVA was an impossibility for a woman (at least according to the Pāli sources) because one of the five requirements for making the bodhisattva vow was male gender. Nevertheless, since these sources envision both bodhisattvahood and buddhahood as exceedingly rare anyway and perceive arhatship as the only viable goal, this limitation has perhaps been less significant in practice than the unequivocal endorsement of women's ability to attain nirvāṇa.

Overall, then, early Buddhist attitudes toward women and gender take a variety of different forms, some of which Alan Sponberg (1992) has usefully characterized as "soteriological inclusiveness," "institutional androcentrism," and "ascetic misogyny." In the present-day THERAVĀDA cultures of Southeast Asia, many of these views persist, but are also affected by modern developments, such as the greatly increased role of the laity and the global movement for women's rights.

### Gender in Mahāyāna Buddhism

All of the views on gender described above for early Buddhism, including the most misogynistic, continue to be found in the Mahāyāna traditions. Nevertheless, the advent of Mahāyāna also heralds some new notions of gender and significant adaptations of earlier ideas. In general, it is often said that female gender is revalorized to some degree in Mahāyāna thought. This may (or may not) be true, but one should be careful to draw a distinction between symbolic representation and historical reality. The revalorization of female gender symbolically does not necessarily imply a better status for women in Buddhism historically. There is no evidence, for example, that the position of women within Indian Mahāyāna was any better than in the mainstream tradition.

In the Mahāyāna tradition, the earlier religious goal of becoming an arhat was replaced by the new religious goal of becoming a bodhisattva (and eventually a buddha)—something every Mahāyānist should do. Thus, the bodhisattva path was open to both men and women equally, and Mahāyāna texts are often noted for their use of gender-inclusive language, frequently addressing themselves to those "good sons" and "good

daughters" who adhere to the Mahāyāna teaching. Mahāyāna literature is also full of positive portrayals of women, who function not merely as "good daughters," but even as advanced spiritual teachers to men and full-fledged female bodhisattvas. Mahāyāna texts are not consistent, however, about what level of bodhisattvahood a woman can attain without first becoming a man. Some of the most restrictive texts claim that as soon as a woman becomes a bodhisattva, she will never be reborn as a female again. Other texts, however, claim that bodhisattvas of quite an advanced degree can be female, though they ultimately must become male. Nevertheless, we also find in the Mahāyāna tradition the depiction of female bodhisattvas of the very highest order, such as Tārā in India and Tibet and Guanyin in China, both of whom developed into major objects of worship and cult.

Further complicating this matter is the narrative theme of sexual transformation found in many Mahāyāna texts, such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa-sūtra* (*Discourse on the Teaching of Vimalakīrti*). In episodes that make use of this theme, a woman is depicted as being an advanced bodhisattva who has attained the highest wisdom and understands the true nature of reality. Despite these obvious capabilities, she is challenged in some way by a man, who expresses doubts about the spiritual abilities of women, often asserting the idea that a woman cannot attain buddhahood. The woman then refutes this idea by instantaneously changing her sex and becoming a man (sometimes a fully enlightened buddha). These episodes of sexual transformation have been interpreted in a number of different ways. Most simply, they can be seen as Mahāyāna attempts to refute the traditional idea that a woman could not attain buddhahood or advanced bodhisattvahood within the present life. Such episodes suggest that women can, in fact, attain these states, yet they also depict these women transforming themselves into men, thus ultimately holding to the technical requirement of a male body. Alternatively, however, these episodes can also be interpreted in light of the Mahāyāna philosophical notion of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS). Mahāyāna philosophy maintains that all phenomena are "empty" of any inherent self-existence, and all conceptual distinctions are thus relative in nature and not ultimately real—including distinctions of gender. "Male" and "female" are nothing more than conventional categories, and for one who does not cling to such categories, they are as fluid and malleable as a magical creation. In this interpre-

tation, then, the sexual transformation is not to be perceived as a necessary step or prerequisite for buddhahood, but rather, as a teaching device—a playful performance by means of which the female bodhisattva demonstrates to her male challenger the essencelessness of all dharmas. This interpretation is supported by the fact that the sexual transformation is often accompanied by statements asserting the truth of emptiness and the ultimate irrelevance of all gender distinctions. It is also compromised, however, by the fact that it is always women who transform themselves into men (not vice versa), and that most of these transformations appear to be real and permanent. Episodes involving the theme of sexual transformation thus ultimately remain ambiguous. Nevertheless, they do at least demonstrate that the Mahāyāna's insistence on emptiness and the relative nature of all distinctions was explicitly and frequently applied to gender. Similar ideas are also found in schools that derive from the Mahāyāna; in the CHAN SCHOOL, for example, the irrelevance of gender in light of all beings' possession of buddha-nature is a common theme.

In addition to the positive portrayal of female characters, Mahāyāna thought also revalorizes feminine gender on the symbolic level by identifying *prajñāpāramitā* or the “perfection of wisdom” as a female goddess. The goddess Prajñāpāramitā is worshiped and praised as the “mother of all buddhas” (since it is she who “gives birth” to buddhahood) and she is frequently represented in Pāla-period Buddhist art. Since *prajñā* is a feminine noun, wisdom itself is also seen as a feminine quality and is often paired with a masculine quality equally necessary for the attainment of buddhahood—compassionate skillful means or UPĀYA (a masculine noun). The attainment of buddhahood is then envisioned symbolically as the union of male and female forces, whose complementarity and interdependence are emphasized. This type of gender symbolism becomes significantly more pronounced, however, with the advent of tantra.

### Gender in tantric Buddhism

Tantric or VAJRAYĀNA Buddhism represents a stark departure from both the mainstream and Mahāyāna traditions in its emphasis on the category of gender. Gender, in fact, becomes absolutely central: Whereas other forms of Buddhism may have certain attitudes about gender, tantric thought is inseparable from its gender ideology. This makes it difficult to isolate the discussion of gender from a more thorough consideration of tantric philosophy and practice. Nevertheless,

this discussion will limit itself to a consideration of gender symbolism, female roles, and male attitudes toward women characteristic of the tantric tradition.

The gender symbolism involving the union of male and female qualities to produce the ultimate goal of enlightenment (noted above for Mahāyāna thought) comes to full force and becomes explicitly sexual in tantric Buddhism, especially in the highest and most esoteric class of tantras, the *Anuttarayoga Tantras* (*Highest Yoga Tantras*). These texts are pervaded by a sexual symbolism in which the female (often symbolized as a lotus) stands for *prajñā* or wisdom, the male (often symbolized as a *vajra* or thunderbolt) stands for *upāya* or skillful means, and male-female sexual union stands for the joining of wisdom and means in the great bliss of perfect enlightenment. In tantric art, this is often symbolized by depicting buddhas and bodhisattvas in sexual union with female consorts. In Tibet, where they were to become very popular, these depictions are known as *yab-yum* or “father-mother” images. The same symbolism is also physically enacted through a highly esoteric form of yoga involving ritualized sexual intercourse between male and female lay tantric practitioners, who together strive to produce the great bliss of perfect enlightenment within their own bodies. Even monastic tantric practitioners bound by the vow of celibacy engage in this sexual yoga—although in their case, the union takes place within the meditator's own mind. The symbolism of sexual union is thus basic to tantric ideology and practice.

Within this sexual symbolism, it is the polarity, complementarity, and interdependence of the two genders that is emphasized. Buddhahood is envisioned as a perfect integration of male and female qualities, which join together seamlessly yet retain their distinctive natures. Philosophically, the union of male and female also stands for the overcoming of all dualistic thinking (including distinctions of gender) and the attainment of an enlightened perspective of emptiness. At the same time, however, female gender alone is sometimes explicitly privileged. Thus, for the first time in the Buddhist tradition, we see the depiction of true female buddhas such as Vajrayoginī, sometimes in consort with male partners but often alone, as well as other divine and powerful female figures such as goddesses, *yoginīs*, and DĀKINĪS. Such images were made the object of complex visualization and meditation practices, as well as worship and cult.

The dramatic revalorization of female gender that is characteristic of tantric symbolism also applies to men's and women's roles as depicted in tantric texts.

Perhaps the most striking aspect of higher tantric practice is the prevalence of women's participation, particularly in connection with the sexual yoga mentioned earlier. In tantric literature, women are often depicted as accomplished tantric practitioners and the teachers and founders of specific tantric techniques. Exemplary women such as Princess Lakṣmīnkarā in India or Ye shes mtsho rgyal in Tibet are remembered and eulogized as respected tantric gurus, while the life stories of many of the most important male "founders" of tantric Buddhism mention female teachers and consorts. Male practitioners are repeatedly instructed to serve and worship their female consorts as goddesses and to see all human women as divine. Moreover, women are often depicted as reservoirs of spontaneous and enlightened wisdom, which is contrasted with the stale intellectualism of men. A constant theme in tantric biographies, in fact, is that of the male practitioner who is stuck in habitual patterns of thought and behavior until spurred on to a new realization through his encounter with a wise and enlightened woman (often described as a *ḍākinī* or "sky-going" goddess).

Exactly how this dramatic revalorization of female gender on both the symbolic and literary levels relates to the actual status of women in tantric communities historically is open to considerable debate. While it is clear in the case of India that some historical women, such as Princess Lakṣmīnkarā, must have attained positions of great prominence, the status of ordinary female practitioners is far less certain. Female gender is indeed valorized in tantric literature, but perhaps this valorization is largely for the benefit of men. One could argue, in fact, that the constant attention paid to women merely demonstrates that the vast majority of tantric texts assume the perspective of a male subject. Likewise, though wise and enlightened women often appear in tantric biographies, the biographies themselves are overwhelmingly about men, while many of the women are ethereal *ḍākinīs* encountered in dreams and visions who seem to lack the historical specificity of the men. Finally, it is also important to place the revalorization of female gender within the larger context of tantric Buddhism's use of transgressive sacrality. One of the basic principles of higher tantric practice is to overcome all dualistic thinking through the intentional violation of societal taboos and the breaking of social conventions (such as we see in the practices of sexual intercourse, meat eating, and liquor drinking). From this perspective, the valorization of women (often low-caste women) as pure and goddess-like is effective precisely because it overturns the con-

ventional assumption that women are inferior and impure. Thus, it may be the case that women, no matter how glorified, function more as a symbolic resource for men than as independent agents and subjects.

In any case, it is not at all clear that the tantric valorization of female gender has had any discernible effect on the general status of women in tantric-influenced cultures, such as that of Tibet. Nevertheless, this does not mean that women themselves cannot make use of tantric gender symbolism in new ways, and this is indeed a recent trend among modern female practitioners, particularly in Euro-American Buddhism in the West.

*See also: Body, Perspectives on the; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Sexuality; Women*

### **Bibliography**

- Blackstone, Kathryn R. *Women in the Footsteps of the Buddha: Struggle for Liberation in the Therīgāthā*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1998.
- Cabezón, José Ignacio, ed. *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Harvey, Peter. "Sexual Equality." In *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values, and Issues*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Klein, Anne Carolyn. *Meeting the Great Bliss Queen: Buddhists, Feminists, and the Art of the Self*. Boston: Beacon, 1995.
- Lang, Karen Christina. "Lord Death's Snare: Gender-Related Imagery in the *Theragāthā* and the *Therīgāthā*." *Journal of Feminist Studies in Religion* 11, no. 2 (1986): 63–79.
- Paul, Diana. *Women in Buddhism: Images of the Feminine in the Mahāyāna Tradition*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1985.
- Schuster, Nancy. "Changing the Female Body: Wise Women and the Bodhisattva Career in Some Mahāratnakūṭasūtras." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 4, no. 1 (1981): 24–69.
- Sponberg, Alan. "Attitudes toward Women and the Feminine in Early Buddhism." In *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe, ed. *Buddhist Women across Cultures: Realizations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Wilson, Liz. *Charming Cadavers: Horrific Figurations of the Feminine in Indian Buddhist Hagiographic Literature*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1996.
- Yuichi, Kajiyama. "Women in Buddhism." *Eastern Buddhist* 15, no. 2 (1982): 53–70.

REIKO OHNUMA

## GENSHIN

Genshin (Eshin *Sōzu*, 942–1017) was a Japanese Tendai Buddhist master who is best known for his teachings on PURE LAND BUDDHISM. Genshin helped popularize the deathbed *nenbutsu* ritual, in which the dying believer has a vision of Amida (AMITĀBHA) Buddha and his retinue coming to usher the person into the Pure Land paradise. Genshin's most famous work, *Ōjōyōshū* (*Collection of Essentials on Birth in the Pure Land*), left an indelible mark on the thought and practice of Pure Land Buddhism in Japan, influencing later masters such as HŌNEN (1133–1212) and SHINRAN (1173–1262).

Though Genshin is remembered principally for the *Ōjōyōshū*, he was also a proponent of mainstream Tendai beliefs, particularly in his later years. He compiled an important work on the Tendai doctrine of universal enlightenment found in the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), and he organized the Shakakō, a religious association that constantly tended the icon of Śākyamuni Buddha in Ryōzen'in hall at Yokawa on Mount Hiei. Thus, Genshin's Pure Land teachings, though largely separated nowadays from their original context, were simply part of Mount Hiei's Tendai culture during his period.

The *Ōjōyōshū* is a compendium of quotations from scriptures, commentaries, and treatises on all aspects of Pure Land belief and practice. It may not have had an extensive readership in Genshin's lifetime, but became widely known in subsequent centuries. Thematically, it focuses on the *nenbutsu*, the practice of contemplating Amida Buddha, particularly in meditative visualization, and of invoking his name as a verbal chant. Overall, the *Ōjōyōshū* presents visualization of the Buddha and his resplendent world as the superior practice for birth in the Pure Land. But it also recommends vocal invocation of his name as an important practice for those incapable of meditation.

Among the practices outlined in the *Ōjōyōshū*, and also developed by the Nijūgo zammaie (Twenty-five Member Meditation Society) on Mount Hiei, was the deathbed *nenbutsu* ritual. It was based on passages in the Pure Land scriptures indicating that Amida Buddha and his retinue would come to meet believers (*raigō*) on their deathbed to usher them into the Pure Land. There thus developed the practice of sequestering the dying, surrounding them with spiritual friends, erecting an image of Amida before them, urging them to chant the *nenbutsu*, keeping their mind undistracted

and focused on the next life, and thereby assisting them in a final vision of the Buddha coming to greet them at death. This ritual gradually spread and became especially popular among Kyoto aristocrats, though later PURE LAND SCHOOLS did not all adopt it.

Genshin's lasting influence is reflected in the fact that one of Mount Hiei's two dominant doctrinal lineages, the Eshinryū, traced its beginnings to him.

*See also:* Japan; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul)

### Bibliography

- Andrews, Allan A. *The Teachings Essential for Rebirth: A Study of Genshin's Ōjōyōshū*. Tokyo: Sophia University, 1973.
- Dobbins, James C. "Genshin's Deathbed Nembutsu Ritual in Pure Land Buddhism." In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Horton, Sarah Johanna. "The Role of Genshin and Religious Associations in the Mid-Heian Spread of Pure Land Buddhism." Ph.D. diss. Yale University, 2001.
- Reischauer, August Karl. "Genshin's Ōjōyōshū: Collected Essays on Birth into Paradise." *Transactions of the Asiatic Society of Japan*, second series 7 (1930): 16–97.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

## GHOST FESTIVAL

The Ghost Festival is the Buddhist-inspired festival held throughout China and East Asia on the full moon (fifteenth day) of the seventh lunar month. In modern China it is known as the Ghost Festival (*guijie*) or Rite of Universal Salvation (*pudu*). Older sources describe it as the Yulanpen Festival; various Sanskrit etymologies have been provided for the term *yulanpen*, which refers to "the bowl" (*pen*) in which food offerings are placed for bringing aid to the ancestors suffering the fate of "hanging upside-down" (*yulan*) in purgatory. In Japan the festival is known as *urabon* (the Japanese pronunciation of *yulanpen*) or more colloquially as *Obon*, the Bon festival, while in Korea it is called *manghon il*, "Lost Souls' Day."

Most of the components of the festival were known in early Indian Buddhism, but it was only in China that they coalesced into a single mythological and ritual unit. Indian saṅghas observed a rain retreat that ended with a monastic ritual in the middle of the seventh



Japanese Americans light candles during Obon, the Ghost Festival commemorating the ancestors, at Senshin Buddhist Temple, Los Angeles, 1991. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

month. In India monks and laypeople engaged in a cycle of exchange, laypeople providing food, clothing, and other necessities to the professionally religious, who in turn supplied instruction and the chance of improving one's REBIRTH. ANCESTORS and filial piety were always important parts of Indian religion, and one of the DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA, MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, was well known throughout Buddhism for his abilities to travel to heaven and hell.

Uniting all these elements, the Ghost Festival was celebrated in China as early as the fifth or sixth century. By that time canonical scriptures, probably composed in China, provided a Buddhist rationale for the practice. According to the *Yulanpen jing* (*Yulanpen-sūtra*), Mahāmaudgalyāyana searches the cosmos for his mother. He finds her reborn in hell for her evil deeds, but is unable to release her from torment. He appeals to the Buddha, who founds the Yulanpen Festival and decrees that all children can bring salva-

tion to their parents by making offerings to monks on the full moon of the seventh lunar month. In practice the festival was part of the cycle of holy days, Buddhist and non-Buddhist, linked to the lunar calendar. With laypeople flocking to monasteries on behalf of their ancestors, the ritual was one of the highlights of the religious year, a kind of Buddhist mirror to the New Year, held six months earlier. The story of Mahāmaudgalyāyana proved that one could be both a monk—one who renounces family and leaves home—and a son who fulfills his obligations to his ancestors. Tang-dynasty (618–907) commentaries on the *Yulanpen-sūtra* emphasize the importance of filial piety (*xiao*), the central ideal of the Chinese kinship system. Thus, the festival symbolized the accommodation between monasticism and lay life.

In later centuries the Ghost Festival moved increasingly out of the Buddhist sphere and into other domains of Chinese social life. The legend of

Mahāmaudgalyāyana (Mulian in Chinese) was retold in popular entertainments and enacted in a wide range of operas sung in local dialects. Storytellers and artists were especially interested in his tours of the various compartments of hell and in his mother's misdeeds. Focusing on a boy's devotion to his mother, the myth was part of the emerging Buddhist discourse about GENDER, female pollution, and the special forms of salvation required for women. The Daoist religion developed its own analogue to the festival, celebrated on the same day, in which offerings to the Daoist deity known as "Middle Primordial" (Zhongyuan) brought salvation to the ancestors. The mythology of Mulian became part of the Daoist celebration and worked its way, in both Buddhist and Daoist guises, into funerary rituals performed by local priests all over China.

The *Yulanpen jing* and its associated rituals were carried to Japan by the seventh century, when the state sponsored the chanting of the text by Buddhist monks. Beyond the reaches of government and monastic control, the festival of Obon later became an expression of Japanese local culture. In modern times many communities sponsor local troupes who perform dances. In both urban and rural Japan most people still return to their family home to observe the holiday, visiting gravesites, honoring spirit tablets, and taking part in festivities.

*See also:* Ancestors; Daoism and Buddhism; Death; Ghosts and Spirits; Hells; Intermediate States

### Bibliography

- Cole, Alan. *Mothers and Sons in Chinese Buddhism*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1998.
- Glassman, Hank. "The Tale of Mokuren: A Translation of *Mokuren-no-sōshi*." *Buddhist Literature* 1 (1999): 120.
- Johnson, David, ed. *Ritual Opera, Operatic Ritual: "Mu-lien Rescues His Mother" in Chinese Popular Literature, Papers from the International Workshop on the Mu-lien Operas*. Berkeley, CA: Institute for East Asian Studies, 1989.
- Mair, Victor H., trans. "Maudgalyāyana." In *Tun-huang Popular Narratives*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1983.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Weller, Robert P. *Unities and Diversities in Chinese Religion*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1987.

STEPHEN F. TEISER

## GHOSTS AND SPIRITS

By the time of the Buddha, around the fifth or sixth centuries B.C.E., there already existed the Brahmanic notion of a deceased person spending one year as a troublesome, disembodied spirit, or *preta*, wreaking domestic havoc to coerce still living relatives into performing the *śrāddha* rites that would provide the deceased with a new body suitable for joining ANCESTORS, as a *pitr*, in heaven.

In early Buddhist scriptures, the figure of the *peta* (a Pāli equivalent of both Sanskrit *preta* and *pitr*) is retained, but is transformed from an intermediary, disembodied stage into a fresh rebirth in its own right, though one in which the *peta* is still dependent upon sacrificial assistance from living relatives.

In the *Petavatthu* (*Peta Stories*), the canonical text dealing exclusively with the *peta*, some *petas* are said to endure an existence of total and continual suffering, in which they sustain themselves, if at all, on impurities. They exhibit a wretched appearance, and they are frequently found dwelling in such places as the latrine of a former monastery, at doorposts and crossroads, in moats, in forests, or in cemeteries where they feed off the flesh of corpses.

In the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, the *preta* is frequently depicted as a "hungry ghost," a creature with a huge belly, but with a needle-shaped mouth through which it is impossible to pass sufficient nutriment to assuage the enormous pangs of hunger.

No such description is found in the *Petavatthu*, according to which there are, in addition to those *petas* already mentioned, other *petas* who are said to resemble *devatās* (inhabitants of the various heavenworlds) of great psychic power, save for some deficiency that prevents them from fully enjoying the benefits normally associated with their world. Most notable of these are the *vimānapetas* (*petas* owning celestial mansions), who seem to be little different from other *vimāna*-owning *devatās*, except that their heavenly bliss is interrupted at regular intervals by their being devoured by a huge dog, or by their having to consume the flesh they have already, as "back-biters," gouged from their own backs.

Though they often seem to dwell cospatially with humans, *petas* belong to a different plane, or dimension. This dimension clearly emerges to be the heavenworld associated with the Four Great Kings, who

police that world, which extends from the earth's surface to the summit of Mount Meru, with their troops of YAKṢAS, nāgas, *gandharvas*, and *kumbhaṇḍas*. All manner of other nonhuman creatures, such as *piṣācas*, *bhūtas*, and eclipse-causing asuras, are assigned to that world, as are lesser deities, such as household *devatās*, tree *devatās*, guardian spirits of lakes, and so on. As Buddhism spread further into Asia, the various local deities and the like that Buddhism encountered were also assigned to this world.

Despite the fact that rebirth as a deva and rebirth as a *peta* are deemed discrete types of REBIRTH, the *devatā* and the *peta* seem to represent twin extremes of a whole spectrum of nonhuman beings dwelling in the heavenworld associated with the Four Great Kings. They are differentiated solely by the degree to which each is able to enjoy the pleasures of that world.

Individuals become *petas* due largely to their failure in a former life to show charity to enlightened members of the SAṄGHA, or to demerit stemming from some previously committed evil deed. In order to understand the former, it is necessary to recall the earlier Vedic practice of pouring an oblation into the sacrificial fire to create a sphere of personal well-being embracing not only this life but also the life to come. In the Buddhist period, the saṅgha performs a function similar to the sacrificial fire, in that, through donating alms to the saṅgha, one brings into being a counterpart of those alms on the divine plane for one's use after death. If one neglects to give alms, one naturally finds, in the life to come, no source of sustenance.

Such postmortem deprivation of the Buddhist *peta* echoes the inability of the Brahmanic preta to join the *pitṛs* due to lack of a suitable body. And just as the latter's predicament could be rectified by relatives performing the śrāddha rites, so could the *peta* have its deprivation ameliorated through still living friends and relatives offering a gift to the saṅgha on the *peta's* behalf and then assigning the fruit of that donation to the benefit of the *peta* concerned. Whatever deprivation the *peta* had been experiencing is immediately rectified and the *peta* is, henceforth, able to enjoy the pleasures and comforts associated with the heavenworld. This practice, wrongly referred to as a "transfer of merit," involves no transfer of merit whatsoever; rather, the *peta* is simply assigned the divine counterpart of the alms offered to the saṅgha on the *peta's* behalf.

There is, however, one proviso: If the reason for existence as a *peta* is due to, or complicated by, previous

demerit, assistance cannot take place until that demerit has been exhausted. Moreover, it is said that part of such a *peta's* plight is that living relatives forget that he or she ever existed, and thus fail to offer alms on the *peta's* behalf. For this reason, modern Sinhalese Buddhists, when bestowing alms, do so in the name of any former relatives they may have overlooked.

Although black magicians sometimes commandeer *petas* against their will to do the magician's bidding, they more often enlist the more willing assistance of other nonhuman beings, such as malevolent yakṣas and *bhūtas*, to achieve their ends, just as some of the latter have, on occasion, been transformed by powerful monks into Dharma-protectors.

Although the ORDINATION of nonhumans is not permitted by the Vinaya, it is nonetheless practiced (e.g. in modern Thailand), and it is encouraged by certain Mahayana scriptures, such as the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA). In East Asia (especially in Japan), ordination frees nonhuman beings from *preta* status.

A Buddhist festival known as the Ullambana is still held annually in East and Southeast Asia. The festival is aimed at assuaging the suffering of "hungry ghosts."

*See also:* Cosmology; Death; Ghost Festival; Hells; Merit and Merit-Making

### Bibliography

Kyaw, U Ba, trans. *Peta Stories*, edited and annotated by Peter Masefield. London: Pāli Text Society, 1980.

Masefield, Peter, trans. *Vimāna Stories*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1989.

PETER MASEFIELD

---

GUANYIN. *See* Bodhisattva(s)

---

### GYŌNEN

Gyōnen (1240–1321) was a brilliant Japanese scholar-monk of the Kegon school (Chinese, Huayan) who lived in the great monastic center of Tōdaiji in Nara. Born into the aristocratic Fujiwara clan, Gyōnen entered the priesthood at the age of sixteen and at eighteen moved to the Kaidan'in (Hall of Ordination) at

Tōdaiji, where he later became abbot and remained for the rest of his life.

With an eclectic approach to scholarship and practice, Gyōnen dedicated himself to exhaustive studies of nearly every school of Buddhism, writing monographs on Buddhist thought and history from the age of twenty-eight, beginning with his *Hashū kōyō* (*Essentials of the Eight Doctrines*), a survey of the core doctrines of the eight established schools of Buddhism in Japan in his time. Lucid and extremely informative, this work has served as a textbook for students of Buddhist thought from the thirteenth century into the modern period. Writing in Chinese, Gyōnen went on to compose more than 125 learned works, exploring sūtra exegesis, biography, ritual music, and so on. He also wrote the first detailed histories of individual schools in Japan and survey histories of Buddhism as a whole, carefully tracing the lineage, authoritative scriptures, and doctrinal evolution of all major traditions from their origins in India or China to Japan. Gyōnen has had a profound impact upon Japanese

BUDDHIST STUDIES, not only through the wealth of information his writings contain (modern Buddhist dictionaries in East Asia frequently use Gyōnen's works as source material), but also because his historical view defining Buddhism as a collection of schools identified by a doctrinal and transmission lineage became the normative Japanese approach to the study of religion, an approach that began to be challenged only at the end of the twentieth century.

*See also:* **Huayan School; Japan**

### ***Bibliography***

Blum, Mark. *The Origins and Development of Pure Land Buddhism: A Study and Translation of Gyōnen's Jōdo Hōmon Genrushō*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Ketelaar, James. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.

MARK L. BLUM



*This page intentionally left blank*

# H



## HACHIMAN

Hachiman is one of the most popular Shintō deities. Originally a tutelary deity of a clan in Kyushu (southern Japan), Hachiman gained official recognition in the eighth century within the framework of state Buddhism. Until the anti-Buddhist persecution of 1868, Hachiman was worshiped as a “great bodhisattva” (*daibosatsu*) and functioned as a protector of Buddhism and of Japan.

*See also:* Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

FABIO RAMBELLI

## HAIR

Manipulation of hair carries cultural meanings in most societies. In traditional India, individuals within society kept their hair controlled by some form of grooming. Controlled social hair stands in sharp contrast to ascetic hair, which is either left ungroomed to form a matted mass or completely shaved. The Buddha and Buddhist MONKS share this feature with other world-renouncing ascetics, including Hindu *sannyāsis* and Jain monks: They are all shaven-headed.

Early texts state that the Buddha cut his hair to two-fingers’ breadth in length when he renounced the world. His hair (and beard) remained at that length for the rest of his life, curling to the right. This is the way the Buddha is depicted in art. A stock phrase in Buddhist scriptures states that a monk “cuts his hair and beard and goes from home to the homeless state.” Shaving the head has remained a distinctive feature of

Buddhist monks and NUNS. Hairs of the Buddha, along with his nail parings, also came to be enshrined and venerated as relics.

Shaving symbolized an individual’s separation from society, marked both by the monk’s withdrawal from home and social institutions and by his exclusion from socially sanctioned structures for sexual expression. All ritually shaven individuals, both ascetics and nonascetics, such as criminals and widows, live celibate lives. Scholarship in a variety of disciplines has recognized the sexual symbolism of hair. Removing hair at ascetic initiation symbolically returns the ascetic to a prepubertal state of a sexually undifferentiated infant. Removing hair implies the uprooting of sexual desires.

Hair has remained a focus of attention and anxiety among Buddhist monks. Anthropologists have noted that young monks often express rebellion against authority and left-wing political allegiances by allowing their hair to grow a little longer.

*See also:* Ordination; Relics and Relics Cults; Sexuality

### *Bibliography*

Hiltebeitel, Alf, and Miller, Barbara D., eds. *Hair: Its Power and Meaning in Asian Cultures*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1998.

PATRICK OLIVELLE

## HAKUIN EKAKU

Hakuin Ekaku (1686–1768) was a Japanese Zen monk who worked to reform Rinzai Zen, and from whom

modern Rinzai lineages in Japan are descended. For Zen monks, he is known as an artist, scholar, and systematizer of DOUBT in KŌAN study. He stressed that kōan introspection, especially the cultivation of doubt, was the only means to SATORI (AWAKENING) and that initial sudden awakening had to be followed with more kōan study (*gogo*) to deepen the experience.

See also: Chan School

### Bibliography

Yampolsky, Philip B., trans. *The Zen Master Hakuin: Selected Writings*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1971.

JOHN JORGENSEN

---

## HAN YONGUN

Han Yongun (Manhae, 1879–1944) was a monk, poet, and critic of the Japanese colonial rule of Korea. He was born in present-day Hongsŏng in South Ch'ungch'ŏng province in Korea. He took full ordination in 1905 and devoted his life to Buddhist reformation, exploring ways of Buddhist engagement in society. By aiming to make Buddhism socially engaged, and thus accessible to the public, his *Chosŏn Pulgyo yusin non* (*Treatise on the Reformation of Korean Buddhism*) provided a rationale and blueprint for the modern reform of the Korean order. Areas of reform included: modernization of the monastery education, development of propagation methods, simplicity of rituals, and centralization of the SAṄGHA. Han offered leadership to the Buddhist youth movement that sought further Buddhist reforms and the saṅgha's independence from the Japanese regime.

In 1914 Han published the *Pulgyo taejŏn* (*Great Canon of Buddhism*), a digest of Buddhist scriptures in Korean vernacular intended to provide the gist of Buddhist teachings to laypeople and to help guide their religious lives. As a certified Sŏn master, Han emphasized mind cultivation through Sŏn (Chinese, Chan) meditation, considered the fountainhead of all other activities in life.

In addition, Han's social and literary activities occupied a great part of his life. He was one of the thirty-three leaders of the March First Movement, which proclaimed Korean independence from imperial Japan in 1919, and he assisted in drafting the Korean "Dec-

laration of Independence" for the movement. In 1926 he published a collection of his poems, *Nim ũi chim-muk* (*The Silence of the Beloved*). This collection earned him a name as the first modern nationalist poet. He also left 163 Chinese poems, thirty-two *sijo* poetic compositions, and five novels. In 1944 Manhae died of palsy at the age of sixty-five.

See also: Chan School; Engaged Buddhism; Korea; Nationalism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

An Pyong-jik. "Han Yongun's Liberalism: An Analysis of the Reformation of Korean Buddhism." *Korea Journal* 19, no. 12 (1979): 13–18.

*Han Yongun chŏnjip* (*The Collected Works of Han Yongun*). Seoul: Sin'gu Munhwasa, 1973.

Lee, Peter, trans. *The Silence of Love: Twentieth-Century Korean Poetry*. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1980.

PORI PARK

---

## HEART SŪTRA

A text of fewer than three hundred Chinese characters in its earlier short version, the *Heart Sūtra* (Sanskrit, *Prajñāpāramitāhṛdaya*; Chinese, *Boruo boluomiduo xin jing*) was given to the great translator XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) to recite for protection on his pilgrimage to and from the holy land in India. Through his successful use of the sūtra and its concise eloquence, the text became the single most commonly recited and studied scripture in East Asian Buddhism. The *Heart Sūtra* is thought to embody the most profound teaching of *prajñāpāramitā*, the perfection of PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM), and it is recited in rituals by participants in the CHAN SCHOOL, the Tiantai School, and other traditions.

The longer version of the *Heart Sūtra* has a conventional sūtra opening in which ĀNANDA recites the teaching as given by Śākyamuni Buddha on Vulture Peak, followed by a formal conclusion. The short version lacks these framing elements, consisting solely of Avalokiteśvara's explanation of the identity of form and SŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), as well as a MANTRA. Based on literary evidence, Jan Nattier has argued that the short version was constructed initially in Chinese and then translated into Sanskrit. If correct, this would be an otherwise unknown sequence in Buddhist literary history.

The *Heart Sūtra* opens with the statement that Avalokiteśvara understood the emptiness of all things and was thus liberated from all suffering. Addressing ŚĀRIPUTRA, the stand-in for the ABHIDHARMA understanding of Buddhism in this scriptural genre, Avalokiteśvara then describes the perfect equivalence of emptiness and form; that is, emptiness is not a separate realm underlying or transcending the mundane world, but a different aspect of that same world, or a transcendent realm entirely identical with mundane reality. With concise but systematic thoroughness, the text denies the ultimate reality of virtually all aspects of that mundane world, including such quintessential Buddhist teachings as the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS of DUḤKHA (SUFFERING), its cause, its elimination, and the PATH to that end. With a wordplay on attainment, taken first as sensory apprehension and then as the achievement of spiritual goals, the *Heart Sūtra* describes the perfection of wisdom as the source of the enlightenment of all the buddhas. Finally, it identifies the perfection of wisdom with a mantra: *gate gate pāragate pārasaṃgate bodhi svāhā*. The grammar of this phrase is obscure (as is the case for mantras in general), even more so for East Asian users of the text, but it is usually understood to mean roughly “gone, gone, gone beyond, gone completely beyond; enlightenment; hail!”

See also: **Prajñāpāramitā Literature**

### Bibliography

- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *The Heart Sūtra Explained: Indian and Tibetan Commentaries*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1988.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *Elaborations on Emptiness: Uses of the Heart Sūtra*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.
- McRae, John R. “Ch’an Commentaries on the Heart Sūtra.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 11, no. 2 (1988): 87–115.
- Nattier, Jan. “The Heart Sūtra: A Chinese Apocryphal Text?” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 15, no. 2 (1992): 153–223.

JOHN R. MCRAE

## HEAVENS

Buddhist COSMOLOGY recognizes a hierarchy of heavens (*svarga*) comprising the six heaven realms of the “world of the senses” (*kāmaloka*) inhabited by their re-

spective gods, and the various heavens of the pure form and formless worlds inhabited by the various classes of higher gods known as *brahmās*. These heavens are places where any being can potentially be reborn. Existence in these heavens is essentially the fruit of wholesome (*kuśala*) or meritorious (*puṇya*) KARMA (ACTION), and is exceedingly pleasant. Indeed, in the higher heavens there is a complete absence of physical and mental pain.

REBIRTH in the heaven realms of the world of the senses is a result of the practice of generosity (*dāna*) and good conduct (*śīla*), while rebirth in the higher *brahmā* heavens is a result of the development of sublime peace and wisdom through the practice of calm and insight MEDITATION. While life in these heaven realms is long and happy, it must eventually come to an end with the exhaustion of the good karma of which it is the fruit. Rebirth in a lower and less pleasant realm is then a distinct possibility. To this extent, heavenly existence is not entirely free of DUḤKHA (SUFFERING) and falls short of the ultimate Buddhist goal of NIRVĀṆA, which constitutes a complete and final freedom from the sufferings of the round of rebirth. Nonetheless, to be reborn in one of these heaven realms has often been presented and viewed, even in some of the earliest Buddhist texts (such as the *Sigālovāda-sutta*), as forming a step in the right direction and an intermediate goal on the way to nirvāṇa. The goal of rebirth in heaven has thus been considered an appropriate aspiration of especially the Buddhist LAITY, but also anyone else who finds the demands of the practice that leads to nirvāṇa daunting. The underlying outlook here is connected with the notion of the gradual and inevitable decline of the Buddha’s teaching, which means that the further removed we are in time from the Buddha himself, the harder it becomes to reach the ultimate goal. Thus, even the great fifth-century monastic commentator of the THERAVĀDA tradition, BUDDHAGHOSA, writes at the conclusion of his manual of Buddhist theory and practice, *Visuddhimagga* (*The Path of Purification*), that he hopes not for nirvāṇa in his lifetime but to experience the joys of rebirth in the Heaven of the Thirty Three and subsequently to attain nirvāṇa having seen and been taught by the next buddha, MAITREYA (Pāli, Metteyya).

In certain MAHĀYĀNA sources the PURE LANDS of buddhas, while technically distinct from the heavens described above, perform a religiously analogous function. Rather than struggle for enlightenment here and now, far removed from the Buddha in time and space, and in circumstances that are somewhat unpropitious,

it is better to aspire to be reborn in a pure land such as Sukhāvātī, the Realm of Bliss of the Buddha AMITĀBHA/Amitāyus, where in the presence of a living buddha conditions are more conducive and enlightenment almost a certainty.

See also: **Dāna (Giving); Divinities; Indra**

### Bibliography

Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B., trans. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Buddhist Cosmology*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.

Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origin*. Tokyo: Kosei, 1997.

RUPERT GETHIN

## HELLS

Hells play an important part in virtually all Buddhist traditions, past and present. As the lowest of the six (or sometimes five) paths of REBIRTH, hell is one of the most colorful parts of Buddhist COSMOLOGY, mythological reflection, and practice. The hells are the worst (and therefore the best) example of the fate that greets the unenlightened after DEATH, just as a pleasurable rebirth in heaven serves as a positive incentive. Although one might be tortured for a lifetime in hell, rebirth there is, like all phenomena in Buddhism, temporary, leading either to further misery or escape from rebirth altogether. Various etymologies have been offered for the Sanskrit *naraka* and Pāli *niraya*. The normal Tibetan translation is *dmyal ba*, while Chinese usage is usually *diyu* (Japanese, *jigoku*), literally “subterranean prisons.”

### Number and arrangement of hells

Buddhist ideas of hell grew out of Vedic conceptions and share much with Brahmanical (and later Hindu) views of the underworld. Early Buddhist sources voice different opinions about the names, number, and location of the hells. Some texts discuss one great hell with four doors, each leading to four smaller hells; some claim there are five hells; some refer to seven unnamed hells; some mention ten specific cold hells; some refer to eighteen, thirty, or sixty-four hells. In the most common system, eight hells are located, one on top of another, underneath the continent of Jambudvīpa. Closest to the surface is (1) Saṃjīva, the hell of “reviving,” where winds resuscitate victims after tor-

ture. Beneath it lie: (2) Kālasūtra, named after the “black string” that cuts inhabitants into pieces; (3) Saṃghāta, where inmates are “dashed together” between large objects; (4) Raurava, “weeping,” and (5) Mahāraurava, “great weeping,” which describe how denizens behave; (6) Tapana, “heating,” and (7) Prātāpana, “greatly heating,” which describe the tortures applied to residents; and (8) Avīci, “no release” or “no interval,” where there is no rest between periods of torture. Each hell has sixteen smaller compartments, named after the method of punishment: (1) black sand, (2) boiling excrement, (3) five hundred nails, (4) hunger, (5) thirst, (6) copper pot, (7) many copper pots, (8) stone mill, (9) pus and blood, (10) trial by fire, (11) river of ashes, (12) ball of fire, (13) axe, (14) foxes, (15) forest of swords, and (16) cold.

### Representations of hells in art and literature

Most accounts of the hells include elements of morality, deliverance, and entertainment. When understood properly, the underworld demonstrates the ineluctability of KARMA (ACTION). Every deed has a result, and if on balance one’s life is particularly evil, then one is likely to be reborn in hell. The entire cosmos is ranked; the various scales of measurement reflect an underlying moral hierarchy. The hells are situated below the other five paths, and hell beings lead a longer life than humans or animals. The natural order thus seems to maximize punishment. Some texts name the specific bad deeds that merit rebirth in specific hells: The more evil the deed, the more painful the form of punishment.

Pointing beyond the realm of karma, most accounts of hell contain a soteriology, or theory of salvation. Literary descriptions of the tortures in hell encourage the reader to cultivate roots of goodness (*kuśalamūla*), leading to a better rebirth and eventually release from the pain of sentient existence. Paintings of the wheel of rebirth usually portray a BODHISATTVA or other saint bringing aid to hell beings, emphasizing that suffering can be conquered. And most images of the hell regions are juxtaposed to pictures of life in paradise or to portraits of buddhas who have transcended birth and death.

In whatever genre they occur—folktales, drama, paintings, fictional accounts, or scholastic compendia—representations of the Buddhist hells are usually entertaining. Repetition is a common device in hell narratives: The inmates of the various compartments are tortured not once or twice, but three times. Their pains are described in grisly detail: People are

not simply ground to bits, but every component of the body (skin, bone, marrow, muscle, sinew, pus, blood, etc.) is discussed. Although Buddhist ethics are founded on nonkilling, Buddhist accounts of the underworld dwell on the violence meted out to average sentient beings. Alongside this graphic interest in the use of force, there is an equally strong comic strain. Many stories of Buddhist near-death experience involve mistaken identity, in which the protagonist is erroneously sentenced to someone else's punishment. Even austere philosophical sources list the cold hells, three of which are named onomatopoeically after the sounds of chattering teeth: Atata, Hahava, Huhuva.

### Attitudes toward hells

Buddhists take a wide range of attitudes toward the hells. Like most teachings, the hells can be regarded as an expedient device, an effective way of motivating people to follow the Buddhist PATH. The hells have also been interpreted as psychological metaphors, as summations of the state of mind one engenders by doing EVIL. While certainly authentic, these two interpretations do not exhaust Buddhist views of hell.

Tours of hell are found throughout Buddhist cultures. MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, one of the DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA who was most skilled in supernatural powers, was especially famous for his travels up and down the cosmic ladder. His tours of the underworld are recounted in sources ranging from Mūlasarvāstivāda mythology of the first few centuries C.E., to the MAHĀVASTU (Great Story) in the fifth century, to popular literature in China, Tibet, Japan, Korea, and Thailand. Judging from the narratives of *delok* storytellers in Tibet, the hells are one of the most frequent destinations of modern spirit-mediums as well.

The hells supply a rich fund of mythology for Buddhist preachers. Dharma talks use the tortures of hell to spark reflection on the law of karma and to encourage ethical action. Stories of what happens after death replay the process of warning, reflection, and conversion. Some tales portray the lord of the underworld, King Yama, questioning the dead about the “three messengers” (old age, sickness, and death) they have seen while alive. Most people ignore these signs of impermanence, perpetuating egocentrism and evil deeds. Under Yama's questioning after death, people who awaken to the perils of attachment can be released from suffering.

Many saviors are paired with King Yama's unbending administration of impersonal law. Bodhisattvas like



The Hell of Shrieking Sounds. (Japanese painting, Kamakura period, ca. 1200.) © Seattle Art Museum/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

Ṛṣitigarbha (Chinese, Dizang; Japanese, Jizō) and Avalokiteśvara (Chinese, Guanyin; Japanese, Kannon) specialize in rescuing sentient beings from the torments of hell. Visions of the hell regions are also supposed to motivate believers. NĀGĀRJUNA's *Dazhidu lun* (*Commentary on the Great Perfection of Wisdom*) discusses the hells under the category of “vigor” (*vīrya*), one of the virtues of the bodhisattva. Reflecting on the pain people experience in the hells, the bodhisattva is supposed to develop greater energy. Surveying the underworld makes the bodhisattva think, “The causes of this painful karma are created through ignorance and the passions. I must be vigorous in cultivating the six perfections and amassing virtue. I will eliminate the sufferings of sentient beings in the five paths, give rise to great compassion, and augment my vigor” (*Dazhidu lun, Mahāprajñāpāramitā śāstra*, trans. Kumārajīva (350–413), T1509:25.177c).

See also: **Ichchantika**

### Bibliography

- Feer, Leon. “L'enfer indien.” *Journal Asiatique*, ser. 8, 20 (September–October 1892): 185–232; ser. 9, 1 (January–February 1893): 112–151.
- Kloetzli, Randy. *Buddhist Cosmology, from Single World System to Pure Land: Science and Theology in the Images of Motion and Light*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidas, 1983.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *Abidharmakośabhāṣyam*, Vol. 2., tr. Leo Pruden. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1988.

- Matsunaga, Daigan, and Matsunaga, Alicia. *The Buddhist Concept of Hell*. New York: Philosophical Library, 1972.
- Pommaret, Françoise. *Les revenants d'au-delà dans le monde tibétain: sources littéraires et tradition vivante*. Paris: Éditions du Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1989.
- Reischauer, A. K. "Genshin's Ojo Yoshu: Collected Essays on Rebirth into Paradise." *Transactions of the Asiatic Society of Japan*, second ser., 7 (1930): 16–97.
- Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B., trans. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Buddhist Cosmology*. Berkeley: University of California, Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, 1982.
- Sawada, Mizuhō. (*Shūtei*) *Jigoku hen: chūgoku no meikaisetsu*. Tokyo: Hirakawa shuppansha, 1991.
- Teiser, Stephen F. "*The Scripture on the Ten Kings*" and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.

STEPHEN F. TEISER

## HELLS, IMAGES OF

Images of Buddhist HELLS are found largely in Central and East Asia. Although descriptions of hell exist within early Buddhist literature, hell was not a popular subject for depiction in India. The earliest extant Chinese images date to the fifth century and appear within representations of Buddhist COSMOLOGY. These hell images are components of singular carved statues (often referred to as *cosmological buddhas*), as well as larger painted cave programs. The hells are hierarchically placed at the bottom, with the earthly and heavenly realms above. Although the *Shiji jing* (*Scripture of Cosmology*) is fairly lengthy in the number and description of the various hells, the representations themselves are abbreviated. Numerous hell scenes in various media were produced between the seventh and eleventh centuries and were preserved in the DUNHUANG caves of northwestern China. This hell imagery consists mainly of three distinct iconographic programs: imagery related to Dizang Bodhisattva (Sanskrit, Kṣitigarbha; Japanese, Jizō Bosatsu), to the Ten Kings of Hell, and to Mulian (Sanskrit, MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA).

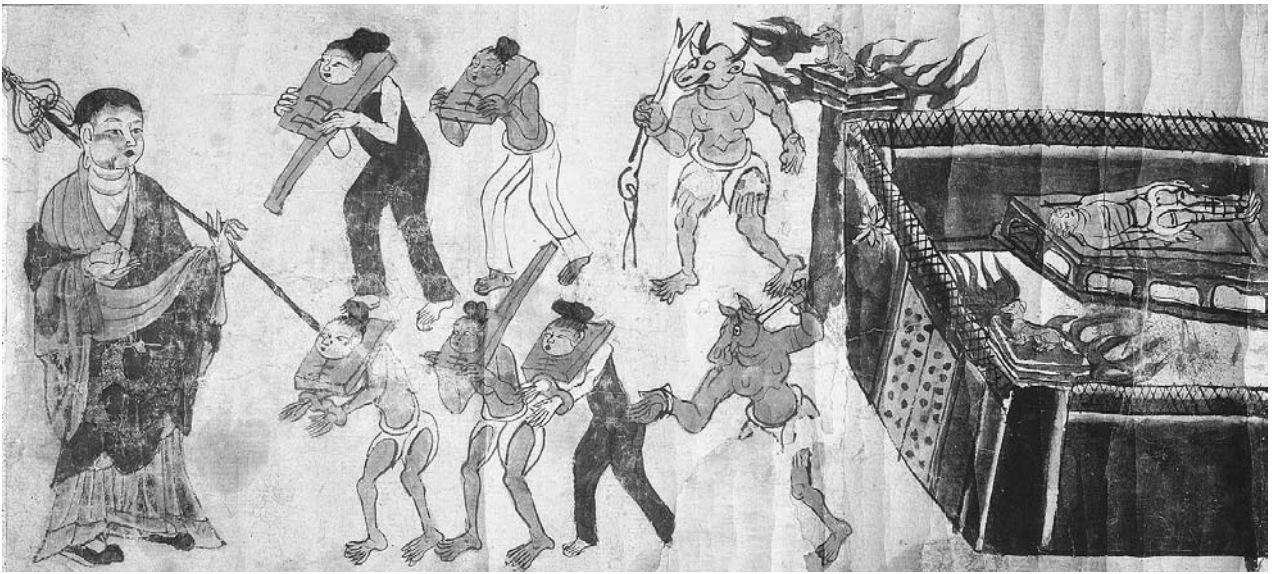
### Dizang and the Ten Kings of Hell

Images of Dizang Bodhisattva were often used in funerary rituals by relatives who viewed him as a savior of souls trapped in the various hells. Dizang is shown dressed either as a monk carrying a staff or as a princely bodhisattva. A number of hanging silk paintings show

Dizang in the company of the Ten Kings of Hell, over whom he presides. Yet it is also common for the Ten Kings to be depicted independent of Dizang, ruling over their respective courts. The Chinese term for hell, *diyu*, translates as "subterranean prison," and the Ten Kings are thus depicted as judges. The exception is King Yama, who is always in regal attire. Yama was the original king of the Indian Buddhist underworld, and it is in his court that the karmic mirror, showing an individual's deeds, is often found. Variations often show all Ten Kings in royal trappings, leading to the common usage of the term *Ten Yamas*. Monkey-faced or military-attired attendants keep track of a soul's crimes and aid in meting out the appropriate punishment. One common representational element found in virtually all hell imagery is that of the naked sinner in a *cangue*, a form of earthly punishment commonly seen in medieval China and Japan. Also critical to hell imagery is a preponderance of flames and blood. Yet unlike hell in a Judeo-Christian sense, Buddhist hells are not permanent, but a means to expiate bad KARMA (ACTION) before moving on to the next REBIRTH.

Several hand scrolls depicting the Ten Kings were found at Dunhuang. These scrolls hint at the usage of hell imagery within a public sphere. Monks would edify the laity with visions of the torments of hell that awaited them, or more importantly, their deceased relatives. The belief in the apocryphal *Shi wang jing* (*Scripture of the Ten Kings*) led to their worship as intercessors who could move the deceased more quickly through the realms of hell to the promised Pure Land. Worship of the Ten Kings centers on the idea that each soul passes in front of each of the kings at predetermined points over a three-year duration. On these days, offerings need to be made to each of the Ten Kings. Besides hand scrolls, Ten Kings imagery also exists in smaller booklet format, indicating mass production as well as a more personal use.

Depictions of hell far exceeded literary descriptions in both variety and detail, a fact most likely due to anxiety for the welfare of the dead. In the *Scripture on the Ten Kings*, no hells are actually described. Works can be found that are consistent in their depiction of the Ten Kings and their courts while greatly varying in the tortures shown. The largest sculpted depiction of hell scenes can be found at Baodingshan in Sichuan province in China. The worshipper at Baodingshan is confronted with an immediate reminder of how his present actions will affect his future fate—a twenty-five-foot-high sculpted depiction of the wheel of life, of which the six destinies of rebirth are one portion.



Kṣitigarbha (Dizang) Bodhisattva rescuing victims from the torments of hell, from a painting at Dunhuang. (Chinese, eighth century.) © The Art Archive/British Museum/The Art Archive. Reproduced by permission.

Hell is one of the six possibilities, the others being hungry ghost, animal, asura, human, or deva. The worshipper then moves around to the other side of the grotto where he first encounters the promise of the Pure Land, then the grim realities of hell. This hell tableau includes Dizang and the Ten Kings set above a chaotic grouping of eighteen hells. Engraved texts aid the worshipper by both identifying the sins committed and providing the necessary ritual hymn to recite in order to gain release. Unique to this hell grouping is a sculpted section devoted specifically to admonitions against alcohol consumption by, or sale to, the clergy. Also unusual is a depiction of a Freezing Hell, which is more common in Tibetan and Mongolian descriptions of hell.

In Japan, the pains of hell, along with the Pure Land's rewards, may have been imported in the seventh century from China, although extant hell imagery dates mainly to after the eleventh century. King Yama takes the form of Emma-Ō, being portrayed as a judge in both painted and sculpted form. There are also several twelfth-century versions of hell, collectively referred to as the *Jigoku zoshi* (*Hand Scrolls of Buddhist Hells*). These painted works are distinctive in the imagery shown. Although they share characteristics with Chinese hell imagery, such as the Hell of Feces and Filth and the Hell of Grinding, the Japanese works also include unique representations, such as the Hell of Cocks, for those cruel to living things; the Hell of Worms, for those who commit adultery or theft; and the Hell of Pus and Blood, in which the damned are

tortured by being repeatedly stung by large wasps. Hungry ghosts are often linked to hell imagery, although technically they are not hell dwellers, but another option on the six destinies of rebirth. The best-known imagery depicting hungry ghosts is the twelfth-century Japanese work entitled *Gaki zoshi* (*Hungry Ghosts Hand Scroll*).

### Mulian

The last iconographic program is that of Mulian, one of the ten chief DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA. Mulian goes in search of his deceased mother only to discover that she is not in a heavenly realm. The *Yulanpen jing*, colloquially referred to as "Scripture of Mulian Rescuing His Mother from the Underworld" was represented in a variety of media, including BIANWEN (transformation texts), which were used to propagate the Buddhist faith among the uneducated, and their accompanying BIANXIANG (TRANSFORMATION TABLEAUX), both of which first appeared in late Tang dynasty China (618–907). Celebrations of the annual GHOST FESTIVAL often included theatrical productions of the Mulian story as well. Murals of the Mulian story in Cave 19 at Yulin, near Dunhuang, depict his travels through the hell regions. These works afforded worshippers explicit glimpses into the horrors of hell as Mulian worked his way down to the Hell of the Iron Bed, where his mother was being tortured for keeping alms meant for the clergy. Hells seen along the way included Knife Mountain Hell, where one was repeatedly sliced open by knives while attempting to scramble out, or



Boiling Cauldron Hell, where Horsehead or Oxhead, minions of the Ten Kings, ensured that the sinner stayed within a vat of boiling oil. Mulian eventually would find and free his mother, but not before reinforcing the Buddhist belief in karmic retribution.

### Bibliography

- Fan Jinshi, and Mei Lin. "An Interpretation of the Maudgalyāyana Murals in Cave 19 at Yulin." *Orientalia* no. 27 (November 1996): 70–75.
- Howard, Angela Falco. *The Imagery of the Cosmological Buddha*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1986.
- Kucera, Karil. "Lessons in Stone: Baodingshan and Its Hell Imagery." *Bulletin of the Museum of Far Eastern Antiquities* no. 67 (1995): 79–157.
- Mair, Victor. *T'ang Transformation Texts: A Study of the Buddhist Contribution to the Rise of Vernacular Fiction and Drama in China*. Cambridge, MA, and London: Council on East Asian Studies, Harvard University Press, 1989.
- Matsunaga, Daigan, and Matsunaga, Alicia. *The Buddhist Concept of Hell*. New York: Philosophical Library, 1972.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Visser, Marinus Willem de. *The Bodhisattva Ti-tsang (Jizo) in China and Japan*. Berlin: Oesterheld, 1914.

KARIL J. KUCERA

## HERMENEUTICS

The term *hermeneutics* derives from the Greek god Hermes, the messenger of the gods, whose task was to communicate between gods and humans. Since both sides had different languages and worldviews, it was necessary to interpret a god's wishes in ways that humans could comprehend. In addition, Hermes had to understand the god's intentions and how to translate them.

In its earliest uses in Western thought, hermeneutics was mainly associated with biblical exegesis, and specifically with the rules and standards that should guide interpretation of scripture. During the twentieth century, its scope was considerably widened, and it is now generally seen as a fundamental aspect of all the humanities and social sciences. It should be noted, however, that the term *hermeneutics* is not generally conceived as applying to all interpretation, but rather to the rules and methods that guide it.

In the Indian Buddhist context, hermeneutical literature is mainly concerned with identifying the intention (*abhiprāya*) behind scriptural statements, particularly those that are viewed as being in conflict with other statements. The Buddhist case presents special difficulties for interpretation because of the vastness of Buddhist scriptural literatures and the plethora of conflicting doctrines and practices. According to Buddhist tradition, the Buddha traveled from place to place teaching those who came to him with questions. He is compared to a skilled physician who provides different medicines specific to particular illnesses. The Buddha taught each person or group what would be most helpful soteriologically; he was not principally concerned with creating an internally consistent doctrinal system. Thus, after his death, his followers were left with a corpus of texts that all claimed canonical status, but that contained often contradictory teachings.

From an early period, Indian Buddhist exegetes strove to differentiate those statements that were of "provisional meaning" (*neyārtha*) from those of "definitive meaning" (*nītārtha*). The former were expedient teachings given to a particular person or group, but they do not represent the Buddha's final thought, while the latter reflect the (often hidden) intention behind his teaching.

Buddhist hermeneutics became even more difficult around the first century C.E. when large numbers of new texts began to appear that purported to have been spoken by the Buddha when he was alive, but that often differed in style, content, and doctrine from the texts contained in earlier canons. These were the sūtras of the MAHĀYĀNA school, which claimed to supersede earlier teachings, most of which were said to be of merely provisional meaning. Within this new literature, however, there were even more conflicting doctrines. Many texts contained statements attributed to the Buddha that claimed that a particular teaching should be viewed as his final thought, but these statements were sometimes contradicted by other sūtras.

Buddhist exegetes generally responded to this situation by privileging certain texts and basing their interpretive schemas on them. Some of the new Mahāyāna texts provided specific guidelines for interpretation. The SAṂDHINIRMOCAṆA-SŪTRA (Tibetan, *Dgongs pa nges par 'grel pa'i mdo; Sūtra on Unfurling the Real Meaning*), for example, states that Buddha's teachings may be divided into three "wheels of doctrine" (*dharmacakra*). The first two wheels—comprising certain HĪNAYĀNA doctrines and teachings

relating to ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) in Perfection of Wisdom sūtras—are said to be of provisional meaning, while the third (the teachings of the *Samdhinirmocana*) is said to be definitive.

In some Mahāyāna sūtras, an alternative strategy is proposed: The level of a particular text is determined by subject matter. The most advanced sūtras are those that directly discuss emptiness, a doctrine only taught to the most advanced disciples. Thus, if a sūtra examines emptiness as its main object of discourse, it should be viewed as representing Buddha's definitive intention.

Tibetan exegetes generally based their interpretive schemas on Indian precedents. Several, for example, used the “three wheels of doctrine” model as a basis for differentiating interpretable from definitive scriptures. In his *Legs bshad snying po* (*Essence of Good Explanations*), TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419) divided his presentation into two sections, one based on the *Samdhinirmocana-sūtra*, the main scriptural source for the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL, and the other on the *Akṣayamatīrdeśa-sūtra* (Tibetan, *Blo gros mi zadpas bstan pa'i mdo*; Chinese, *Achamo pusa jing*; *Discourse Taught by Akṣayamati*), which he considered to be definitive for MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL hermeneutics. Other Tibetan exegetes altered the three wheels schema, and claimed that the first wheel was comprised of Hīnayāna teachings, the second of Mahāyāna teachings, and the third and definitive wheel was declared to be the tantric teachings of VAJRAYĀNA.

East Asian exegetes faced all the same problems as their counterparts in India and Tibet, but they also encountered difficulties related to the haphazard nature of textual transmission to the region. Unlike the relatively ordered transmission of texts to Tibet, Buddhist literature came to China via numerous different routes, and there was little coordination in these efforts. Sometimes a commentary would arrive in China before the root text, and the Chinese were faced with an enormous imported literature containing various competing and incompatible claims to authority. Several Chinese Buddhist exegetes developed classification schemes (*panjiao*), which were generally based on a particular text (or a related group of texts) and which ranked scriptures hierarchically. One of the most important of these was the Tiantai schema, which was based on the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA; Chinese, *Miaofa lianhua jing*) and divided the Buddha's teaching career into five periods and eight teachings (*wushi bajiao*). FAZANG (643–712) and the HUAYAN SCHOOL had an alternative five-teaching schema, which

culminated in the Perfect Teaching (*yuanjiao*) of the HUAYAN JING (Sanskrit, *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*; *Flower Garland Sūtra*).

In Japan, the Kamakura period (1185–1333) saw the development of indigenous Buddhist schools, and most of these also developed their own classification systems. NICHIREN (1222–1282), for example, used the *Lotus Sūtra* as the basis for his teachings, and the Zen, Esoteric, and Pure Land schools also developed ranking systems in which their own doctrines and scriptures were placed at the top of the doctrinal hierarchy, while others were relegated to inferior positions.

Most traditional Buddhist exegetes have been involved in what the German philosopher Hans-Georg Gadamer (1900–2002) dismissed as the “Romantic endeavor,” that is, attempting to discern the intention of the purported author of their scriptures (i.e., the Buddha). Underlying their efforts was a shared conviction that the experience of buddhahood is available to all and that as one approaches it, one's mind more and more closely approximates that of the Buddha. Thus it is assumed that competent exegetes are able to re-create the true intentions underlying apparently contradictory scriptural statements and arrive at interpretations that accurately reflect the Buddha's ultimate intent, which is assumed by traditional Buddhists to be free from contradiction.

*See also:* **Commentarial Literature; Scripture**

### **Bibliography**

- Broido, Michael M. “Some Tibetan Methods of Explaining the Tantras.” In *Contributions on Tibetan Language, History and Culture: Proceedings of the 1981 Csoma de Körös Symposium*, ed. Ernst Steinkellner and H. Tauscher. Vienna: Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie zur Buddhismuskunde, 1983.
- Chegwān. *T'ien-t'ai Buddhism: An Outline of the Fourfold Teachings*, tr. Buddhist Translation Seminar of Hawaii, ed. David W. Chappell. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Gregory, Peter N. *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Buddhist Hermeneutics*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.
- Powers, John. *Hermeneutics and Tradition in the Samdhinirmocana-sūtra*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1993.
- Ruegg, David S. “Purport, Implicature, and Presupposition: Sanskrit *Abhiprāya* and Tibetan *dGoñs pa/dGoñs gzi* as Hermeneutical Concepts.” *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 13 (1985): 309–325.

JOHN POWERS

## HIMALAYAS, BUDDHIST ART IN

The wide geographic area covered by the Himalayan range and reaching from Kashmir in the west to Mongolia in the east includes several civilizations dedicated to Buddhism, often in close symbiosis with other religions. The strength of autochthonous traditions and the different ways in which Buddhism was imported from foreign cultures resulted in different types of Buddhist art in this region.

### Kashmir

Sarvāstivāda Buddhism was the dominant religion in Kashmir until the sixth century; from the eighth to the twelfth centuries MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism was also a strong force. During this period Buddhist art in Kashmir developed a characteristic national style embodying elements from Gupta India and Gandhāra, and even from Syrian-Byzantine styles.

No early Kashmiri Buddhist monastery remains intact, but in structure and style they were probably similar to the still existing brahmanical structures. In Parihāsapura (Paraspor), there are remains of temples and of a STŪPA that date to the first half of the eighth century. The square halls and chapels of these structures were characterized by lantern-ceilings consisting of superimposed intersecting squares and tympana of triangular gables over openings in the facade that enclosed a trefoil arch. The chapels had fluted pillars and stepped pyramidal roofs. A special type of building design was the *pañcāyatana* form, which consisted of a cubic structure with entrances in all four walls and a large central tower and smaller caitya-like elements at all four corners.

The remains of stūpas allow scholars to reconstruct their original appearance. The stūpa in Huvīṣkapura (Uṣkur), located inside a large courtyard, includes terra-cotta and stucco fragments that show Gandhāra influences. Other remains at Sadarhadvāna (Hārvan), datable to between 400 and 500 C.E., can be reconstructed by terra-cotta plaques showing miniature stūpas. The enormous Caṅkuna-stūpa at Parihāsapura, datable to the first half of the eighth century, had a large square double platform with projecting staircases on each side and indented corners, making it somewhat similar to the BOROBUDUR in Java.

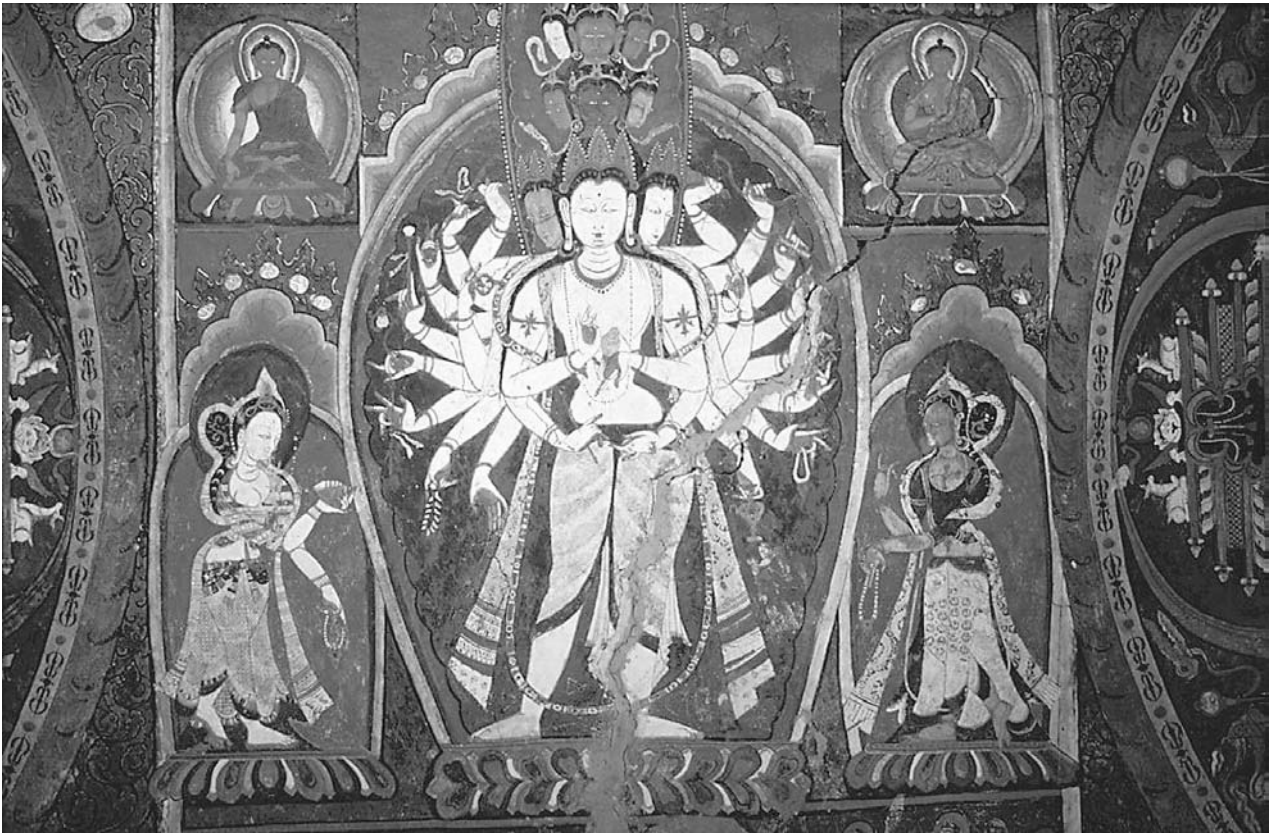
Only a few early Kashmiri Buddhist sculptures in stone have survived, including a life-size standing bodhisattva unearthed at Pāṇḍrēṇṭhan (Purāṇādhīsthāna), datable to the seventh or eighth century. Stucco and

terra-cotta fragments, stylistically comparable to Haḍḍa and Taxila, were found in the ruined stūpa at Uṣkur. Sculptures in bronze are also well documented; their yellowish brass material, often with inlays of copper and silver, is typical. Beginning in the eighth century, standing figures of Buddha Śākyamuni wore garments with stylized folds, sometimes including a capelike “cloud-collar” around the neck. The Buddha was also often represented seated and wearing a crown. The stylistic roots for such representations may be found in Bengal. Kashmiri bodhisattvas were generally ornamental, with a luxuriant surface. Avalokiteśvara is often shown seated in a pensive mood, a form probably derived from Gandhāra models. There are also examples of other bodhisattvas, such as MAITREYA or Vajrapāṇi, as well as goddesses like Tārā clad in tight bodices accentuating their feminine appearance. After the eighth century, fierce deities of the tantric pantheon were also represented.

An impression of what the lost Buddhist murals in Kashmir must have looked like may be gained from the enormously rich twelfth-century wall paintings in Ladakh, especially those at ALCHI, which were probably executed by Kashmiri artists.

### Nepal

Nepal's proximity to Northern India influenced the Buddhist art in Nepal on many levels; these Indian influences were later integrated into existing local traditions. The earliest still existing monuments were stūpas. The four AŚOKA stūpas erected at the cardinal points near the entrances to the city of Pāṭan are related to basic Indian forms of the third century, as exemplified by the Great Stūpa of SĀNĀCĪ. The stūpas at Pāṭan have flat tumulus-like cupolas on low walls, small shrines for reliefs of buddhas, and square *harmikās* (pavilion-like blocks of stone atop the domelike stūpas) that show Pāla influence. The large Svayambhūnāth stūpa to the west of Kathmandu, first erected around 400 C.E., is dedicated to the five tathāgatas. It shows a relationship to a Mauryan tumulus, but pairs of eyes painted onto the four sides of the *harmikā* are a Nepalese characteristic. They symbolize the all-seeing eyes of the supreme *ādi-buddha*. The stūpa is designed as a representation of the axis of the world, and it is thus surrounded by four shrines marking each of the heavenly directions. The plan of the second monumental stūpa of Bodhnāth in Bhatgāon (Bhaktapur) is related to the concepts of a MAṆḌALA. It is also orientated to the four heavenly directions; it has a flat large tumulus on a three-step foundation, as well as eyes on the *harmikā*.



A mural depicting a many-headed, many-armed bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara at the ancient Buddhist center of Alchi, in Ladakh, India. © Hulton/Archive by Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

One hundred and eight niches in the low base of the *aṇḍa* contain statues of AMITĀBHA.

The earliest representations of monastic architecture in Newari style are found in illustrations of *prajñāpāramitā* sūtras that date to 1015. These buildings were characterized by a combination of plain brick walls, with roofs, doors, and windows made of elaborately decorated wood, a style possibly derived from Gupta architecture. Such structures are also characterized by slanting struts supporting the weight of the projecting roofs, which sometimes have Chinese-looking upturned corners.

In Nepal, there is a close technical and structural parallelism between nonreligious and monastic buildings, whether Buddhist or brahmanic. Three or four upper stories were often added to such buildings beginning in about the fourteenth century. Nepalese monasteries and temple complexes consisted of a square courtyard surrounded by buildings, with a main chapel at the end of the central axis. The center of the courtyard was sometimes occupied by a caitya or a maṇḍala structure.

The coexistence of Buddhism and Brahmanism in Nepal resulted in a similarity in iconographical types and forms. The earliest stone and wood sculptures of bodhisattvas in the Licchavi period (300–850) show a relationship to Kushan or Gupta art, but certain influences from Sārnāth may also be observed. During the Thakuri phase (beginning about 1480) some Pāla influences became apparent, and between the fourteenth and seventeenth centuries, there develops a distinctive Newari style that can no longer be labeled as a regional variety of Indian art. In this style, the sculptural surfaces, especially of bronze figures, is smooth and usually gilded. There are no obvious stylistic changes over longer periods, although a predilection for sensual representations of Avalokiteśvara and the female deity Vasudhārā began in the eleventh century. After 1278 Newari artists were frequently employed by Tibetan monasteries, including the famous Aniko.

In part because of differences in architectural structures, murals played a much smaller role in Buddhist painting in Nepal than in Ladakh or Tibet. Instead, narrative scenes and holy figures of the pantheon were painted on cotton and mounted as movable hanging

scrolls (*paṭa* or *paubhā*) to be shown during appropriate ceremonies, a tradition that continued well into the eighteenth century. The earliest dated piece is a maṇḍala of the deity Vasudhārā from the year 1367. These scrolls are characterized by detailed and elegant execution, the use of primary colors (especially red), the hieratic frontality of central figures, and visual order and spatial symmetry.

Another characteristic field of Buddhist painting in Nepal are illustrations in manuscripts on palm leaf or paper, an art practiced since the first half of the eleventh century. The roots for this form may be found in Eastern India, but the Nepalese paintings are more expressive and painterly than Indian Pāla versions. During the first half of the seventeenth century, a new stylistic tradition developed as Nepalese artists came under the influence of Rajput paintings.

### Ladakh and western Tibet

Buddhist art in the regions of Ladakh, Spiti, and Guge in western Himalaya mainly came to life under the influence of the “second spread” (*bstan pa phyi dar*) of Buddhism, which was started by Rin chen bzang po (958–1055) and sponsored by the local royal families. Rin chen bzang po is said to have founded many temples, although only few such reports can be substantiated historically. The new religious trends, with roots in Northern India and Kashmir, were characterized by a cosmic conception centered on the transcendental Buddha Vairocana and the four tathāgatas. This focus is reflected clearly in iconography. Influences from Nepal can also be traced. Later, artists in central Tibet, under the influence of the Bka’ gdams pa (Kadampa order), introduced sexually tinted *yab-yum* figures in sculpture and painting (“yab-yum,” literally “father-mother,” is a couple in an erotic embrace—he a tantric deity, she the embodiment of transcendental wisdom, or *prajñā*). After the sixteenth century, when the DGE LUGS (GELUK) order became the leading power, Tibetan art shows Chinese influence, especially in monastic architecture, and monasteries of this period often look like fortresses.

Nyar ma, near the capital Leh, is the only monastery in Ladakh that can be confirmed as having been founded by Rin chen bzang po, in about 1000 C.E. This monastery was an influential religious center during the eleventh and twelfth centuries, but only ruined foundations of the buildings remain. Another early building is a small temple at Lamayuru Monastery (Gyung drung dgon pa) in the Indus valley. This build-

ing contains murals and a sculpture of Vairocana flanked by the four tathāgatas. The other buildings at Lamayuru were redecorated later.

The temples in the village of Alchi (A lci) on the left bank of the Indus, to the east of Leh, occupy an exceptional position in the Himalayan history of Buddhist architecture and wall painting. While the structures of the walls follow the local Ladakhi-Tibetan tradition, the wooden facade and pillars, elements of the ceilings, and especially the wall paintings, clearly represent Kashmiri traditions, and were probably executed by Kashmiri artists invited to western Tibet by Rin chen bzang po. Whereas the congregation hall (*Du khang*) was erected and decorated early in the twelfth century, the three-storied temple (Gsum brtsegs) dates slightly later to around 1200 C.E. The murals at Alchi are extremely elegant and stylistically quite different from paintings in Tibetan style. The secular scenes depicting male and female donors in royal attire show Indian and Central Asian influence, whereas the Great Stūpa, which is actually a *pañcāyatana* chapel, and its murals belong to the same period as the early Alchi temples. Rich wall paintings of male and female deities united in the *yab-yum* position correspond to a typical Tibetan style. The only known temple complex in a style closely related to that of Alchi are the four chapels and a *pañcāyatana* building in the small village of Mang rgyu, which is located in a valley near Alchi.

Whereas many of the earlier temples in Ladakh were built on flat ground near villages, beginning in the fifteenth century most monastic complexes were constructed on hills. These fortresslike complexes consisted of several courtyards with temples. Painted and sculpted icons used the tantric iconography of Tibetan Buddhism. A typical example is Spituk (Dpe thub) near Leh. The temples at Tiktse (Khrig rtse) and Likir (Klu dkyil) show later repainting and restoration. The wealthy ’Brug pa monastery at Hemis consists of several large buildings, some with murals from the eighteenth century.

Five cave temples above the village of Saspol (Sa spo la) opposite Alchi house rich murals with a wide spectrum of iconography. These show Śākyamuni, the Sukhāvātī Paradise, many bodhisattvas, protective deities, and monks.

The important temple complex at Tabo (Rta bo) in Spiti was founded in 996 by Rin chen bzang po and the religious king Ye shes ’od. The walls (*lcags ri*) surround eight asymmetrically arranged temple buildings.



The temple and other buildings of the religious compound at Alchi in Ladakh, India. © Craig Lovell/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

The entrance hall (*sgo khang*) includes murals from 996 that show influences from Central Asia, especially in the representation of human figures. The main hall (*Gtsug lag khang*), which was renovated in 1042, is divided by rows of pillars into three naves with a circumambulation route at its end. The walls show a Sarvavid-Vairocana maṇḍala; the main figures are affixed as sculptures to the walls and are surrounded by paintings. The wooden portals are framed by panels of sculptures with scenes from Śākyamuni's life, probably executed by Kashmiri artists. There are also remarkable painted portraits of royal patrons, nobles, and monks with their names added. Several other chapels are dedicated to different deities.

The group of temples at Tholing (Mtho lding), the religious center of the kingdom of Gu ge, was founded at the end of the tenth century by Ye shes 'od and Rin chen bzang po, who served as the first abbot. The layout was modeled after the Tibetan monastery BSAM YAS (SAMYE). The rectangular outer walls surround a row of small chapels. The greatest building in the center, dedicated by Ye shes 'od, is accentuated with stūpas over

its four corners, resulting in a pyramidal effect, the arrangement of which, together with the interior decoration, represents a Vajradhātu maṇḍala. The masonry structure is Tibetan; the Chinese-style copper roofs were added during the fifteenth century. There are several other buildings, including a congregation hall (*'Du khang*). The hall for initiations (*Gser khang*) has three stories representing the three bodies of a buddha and a maṇḍala-like plan with chapels; the wooden columns are in Central Asian style and are similar to the wooden portal of the White Temple (Lha khang dkar po).

The surviving murals in the temples at Tsaparang (Rtsa pa brang), only ten kilometers from Tholing, and the later capital of Gu ge, were painted during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries and are related to those of Gyantse (Rgyal rtse). The White Temple had twenty-two stucco statues affixed to its walls; these were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution. Remaining murals show scenes from Śākyamuni's life. The Red Temple (Lha khang dmar po), built during the fifteenth century, has murals with tathāgatas executed about two centuries later.

### Central and eastern Tibet

Whereas Ladakh and western Tibet were strongly influenced by the art of Kashmir, the Buddhist art of central and eastern Tibet was in its formative period stimulated by the introduction of Buddhism from India, via Nepal, and from Central Asia, and in its later phase from China. Characteristic local styles were the result of mingling adaptations with autochthonous traditions, especially in architecture.

The JO KHANG in Lhasa, its founding in the eighth century attributed to King Srong btsan sgam po, is close to Indian Gupta models. There are three stories over a square plan, the third story probably constructed later. The five inner chapels are surrounded by corridors for circumambulation. The wooden chapel doors and heavy columns are decorated with carvings resembling a mid-seventh century Newari style. The projecting Chinese-style roofs were built later. The principal chapel contains a sculpture of the eastern tathāgata, AKṢOBHYA, as its main image, with sculptures of Amitābha and Maitreya in side chapels. The original monumental murals are lost; the existing paintings were executed in the twelfth century and show Tibetan style with some Nepalese and Pāla influences.

The temple complex of Bsam yas (Samye) in the Tsangpo valley was founded in 779 by King Khri srong lde btsan. The layout comprises several buildings and four outer *chörten* (*mchod rtens*), or stūpas, which were based on maṇḍala concepts. The three-storied central temple (*dbu rtse*) symbolizes Mount Sumeru as axis mundi. The circular perimeter wall stood for the chain of mountains surrounding the world (*lchags ri*). The differing architectural structures of the three stories reflect the pluralism of religious and stylistic sources from India, Khotan, and China. Turrets at the four corners of the upper story transform it into a *pañcāyatana* structure. The wall paintings in the chapels symbolize the ascent of the adept through the spiritual layers of the Buddhist religion.

The extremely dilapidated temple of Yemar (Gyedmar) in the Khangmar county, erected early in the eleventh century, holds an important position in art history. Three chapels inside a processional path (*skor lam*) house larger than life-size clay figures of buddhas, bodhisattvas, and guardian deities, which were originally colored and gilded. The figures are characterized by fine molding of the faces and the folds of garments, the latter featuring rich ornamental medallions showing Central Asian influence. The figures represent a Tibetan substyle with Pāla and Central Asian elements. All the murals have disappeared.

A highlight of the later phase of Tibetan art is the temple complex Dpal khor chos sde at Gyantse (Rgyal rtse), formerly the third-largest city in Tibet. Gyantse is crowned by a fortress (*rdzong*), destroyed in 1904 by the Younghusband expedition, but partly reconstructed. The temple complex was founded in 1418 by a Gyantse prince and comprised many buildings and eighteen colleges run by different Buddhist schools, including SA SKYA (SAKYA), KARMA PA, Dge lugs (Gelug), and others. Most of the buildings were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution. Most important is the building of the Sku 'bum, erected and decorated between 1427 and 1442. Its ground plan has the character of a maṇḍala and its four-storied elevation resembles an "auspicious stūpa with many doors," the so-called *Bkra shis sgo mang mchod rten*. The building contains seventy-two temples and chapels that are decorated with sculptures and paintings of more than twenty-seven thousand deities. These images illustrate the esoteric and cosmological speculations of the Sa skya school, which are experienced by adepts during circumambulation. A central figure is that of the transcendental Vajradhara, located in the fourth story. The stucco statues and the paintings represent a typical Tibetan style called "school of Gyantse," into which foreign influences have been fully integrated.

Beginning in the fifteenth century, temple plans in Tibet develop according to different systems, culminating in complex monastic cities like Dga ldan, especially under the influence of the Dge lugs order. An increasing Chinese influence is noticeable, mainly in roof structures. Examples are the Kumbum (Sku 'bum; Chinese, Ta'ersi) at the birthplace of TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419) in Amdo, and Labrang Tashi Khyil (Bla brang bKra shis dkyil), founded in 1710 by the Dge lugs order.

A special position in Tibetan architecture is occupied by the political and religious center of the POTALA on the Red Mountain at Lhasa. Since the fifth DALAI LAMA started construction on the White Palace in 1645, the fortresslike palace and temple complex, rising thirteen stories and covering more than 100,000 square meters, served as a residence for the dalai lamas. The palace comprises halls, chapels, shrines, *chörtens*, and libraries, as well as quarters for administration and living. Its architectural style is a combination of Tibetan and Chinese features, but it has a uniquely Tibetan appearance. It has slightly slanting stone walls and golden roofs for the main buildings, and it is filled with murals, paintings, and sculptures of historical figures from the seventh to the seventeenth century and

of deities of the pantheon, along with many other treasures. The rich interior wooden structures are heavily painted.

In Tibet, sculptures that were not permanently fixed into an architectural context were rarely executed in stone, but rather in stucco, clay, and metal. The center of bronze casting was Kham in western Tibet, especially Sde dge (Derge); the technique was *cire perdue*, often gilded. Foreign influences, especially from Pāla and Sena in eastern India, are obvious during early periods in western Tibet and Ladakh. During the Yuan period (1279–1368) in China, artists from Nepal were also active. Different local stylistic varieties exist over longer periods. Whereas icons used in rituals were subject to formal rules and measurements of iconography, the portraits of historical saints and monks show tendencies toward realism.

Paintings not executed on walls of temples may be grouped into two categories: mobile hanging scrolls (*thang ka*) and book illustrations. *Thang kas*, which show Chinese influences, were painted mainly in gouache on cotton or paper and framed in elaborate mountings, often of brocade. Icons were governed by strict rules of iconometry; illustrations of texts or biographies and views of temples were more freely represented. The different styles were connected to the spread of religious schools, but beginning in the fourteenth century there was a stylistic unification connected with the spread of the Sa skya order over Tibet. Chinese influences are obvious after the fifteenth century in landscape images, even when these images serve only as settings for compositions centered on figures.

### Mongolia

Knowledge about Buddhist art of the Mongolian region is limited, partly because many monuments have been destroyed through the centuries. Only a few lamaistic monasteries remain, their architectural structure and style exhibiting a mingling of autochthonous and Tibetan traditions, with increasing Chinese influence beginning in the eighteenth century. Beginning in the sixteenth century, Buddhist monasteries in Mongolia were established as centers of cities. Buildings in Tibetan style, like the temple in the monastery Erdeni Zuu, erected in 1586, had a square plan with enclosing walls that were crowned by stūpas. Erdeni Zuu has 108 small stūpas on its walls, as well as three temples and a stūpa inside. The temple Wudang-zhao, erected in 1749 in Inner Mongolia, looks purely Tibetan and

contains wall paintings of Śākyamuni, Yamāntaka, and Tsong kha pa in its three stories. The most important temple in Mongolian style was located at Maidari, but it was destroyed in 1938. The Da Kūrij-e of 1651 is crowned by an upper story with a roof in the form of a Mongolian tent. Monastic buildings in Sino-Tibetan style, like the Dalailama Temple of 1675 at Erdeni Zuu, are characterized by Chinese roofs. Stūpas, called *sub-urgan* in Mongolian, resemble Tibetan *chörten* in form and style.

The sculptor Bogdo Gegen Zanabazar (1635–1723), trained at Lhasa as both a religious patriarch and an artist, created in Outer Mongolia a tradition of bronze sculpture with characteristic drum-shaped pedestals that exhibits simplicity and excellent workmanship. Slight influences from Nepal and China are observable. Another school of Dolonnor at Urga in Inner Mongolia is stylistically closer to China.

Buddhist painting in Mongolia is directly related to that of Central Tibet, the paintings mostly being framed with silk brocades from China. Typical are hanging scrolls formed by application of textiles in different colors and showing maṇḍalas or icons.

### Bhutan

Most early monuments and buildings in Bhutan were destroyed during an earthquake in 1896. Monastic complexes have three-story temples at the end of a square court with habitations at the sides. The upper stories contain chapels, with the most important chapel at the top center. The slightly projecting roofs are designed like those in secular mansions. Typical for Bhutan are monastic fortresses (*rdzong*) with inner courts containing religious and secular wings and surrounded by galleries. The main building has five floors with chapels. The court of Tashi chödzung (Bkra shis chos rdzong) at Thimbu is used for religious dance festivals. The compact structure at Paro (Spa gro) was burnt, but reconstructed in 1864; today it is a museum.

*See also:* Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; Huayan Art; India, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture; Mongolia; Nepal; Silk Road; Tibet

### Bibliography

- Aris, Michael. *Bhutan: The Early History of a Himalayan Kingdom*. Warminster, UK: Aris and Phillips, 1979.
- Berger, Patricia, and Bartholomew, Terese Tse. *Mongolia: The Legacy of Chinggis Khan*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1995.



- Bernier, Ronald M. *The Temples of Nepal: An Introductory Survey*. Kathmandu, Nepal: Voice of Nepal, 1970.
- Chayet, Anne. *Art et archéologie du Tibet*. Paris: Picard Editeur, 1994.
- Fontein, Jan. *The Dancing Demons of Mongolia*. London: Lund Humphries, 1999.
- Francke, A. H. *Antiquities of Indian Tibet*, 2 vols. Reprint, New Delhi: S. Chand, 1972.
- Gega Lama. *Principles of Tibetan Art: Illustrations and Explanations of Buddhist Iconography and Iconometry According to the Karma Gadri School*. Antwerp, Belgium: Karma Sonam Gyamtso Ling, 1981.
- Genou, Charles (text), and Inoue, Takao (photographs). *Peinture Bouddhique du Ladakh*. Geneva, Switzerland: Edition Olizane, 1978.
- Goepper, Roger (text), and Poncar, Jaroslav (photographs). *Alchi: Ladakh's Hidden Buddhist Sanctuary: The Sumtsek*. London: Serindia, 1996.
- Goetz, Hermann. *Studies in the History and Art of Kashmir and the Indian Himalaya*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1969.
- Hein, Ewald, and Boelmann, Günther. *Tibet: Der Weisse Tempel von Tholing*. Ratingen, Germany: Melina-Verlag, 1994.
- Heissig, Walter, and Müller, Claudius. *Die Mongolen*, 2 vols. Innsbruck Austria: Pinguin-Verlag, and Frankfurt/Main, Germany: Umschau-Verlag, 1989.
- Kak, Ram Chandra. *Ancient Monuments of Kashmir*. Reprint, New Delhi: Sagar, 1971.
- Khosla, Romi. *Buddhist Monasteries in the Western Himalaya*. Kathmandu, Nepal: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1979.
- Klimburg-Salter, Deborah E., ed. *Tabo: A Lamp for the Kingdom, Early Indo-Tibetan Buddhist Art in the Western Himalaya*. Milan, Italy: Skira Editore, 1997.
- Oriental Magazine Ltd., ed. *Art of Tibet: Selected Articles from Orientations, 1981–1997*. Hong Kong: Orientations, 1998.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *The Art of Tibet*. New York: Asia Society, 1969.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *Bronzes of Kashmir*. New York: Hacker Art Books, 1975.
- Pal, Pratapaditya. *The Arts of Nepal*, Part 2: *Painting*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1978.
- Regmi, D. R. *Ancient and Medieval Nepal*. Kathmandu, Nepal: 1952.
- Ricca, Franco, and Lo Bue, Erberto. *The Great Stūpa of Gyantse: A Complete Tibetan Pantheon of the Fifteenth Century*. London: Serindia, 1993.
- Schroeder, Ulrich von. *Indo-Tibetan Bronzes*. Hong Kong: Visual Dharma, 1981.

- Singer, Jane Casey, and Denwood, Philip, eds. *Tibetan Art: Towards a Definition of Style*. London: Laurence King, 1997.
- Snellgrove, David, and Skorupski, Tadeusz. *The Cultural Heritage of Ladakh*, 2 vols. Warminster, UK: Aris and Phillips, 1977.
- Tucci, Giuseppe. *Indo-Tibetica* (English edition), Vols. 1–4. New Delhi: Aditya Prakashan, 1988–1989.
- Vitali, Roberto. *Early Temples of Central Tibet*. London: Serindia, 1990.
- Wiesner, Ulrich. *Nepalese Temple Architecture: Its Characteristics and Its Relations to Indian Development*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1978.

ROGER GOEPPER

---

## HĪNAYĀNA

*Hīnayāna* is a pejorative term meaning “Lesser Vehicle.” Some adherents of the “Greater Vehicle” (MAHĀYĀNA) applied it to non-Mahāyānist schools such as the THERAVĀDA, the Sarvāstivāda, the MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA, and some fifteen other schools. This encyclopedia uses the term MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS instead of *Hīnayāna*.

JOHN S. STRONG

---

## HINDUISM AND BUDDHISM

The term *Hinduism* as used in this entry (but not usually elsewhere) covers the whole Brahmanical tradition, which initially expresses itself in Vedic and its ancillary literature and is in its later phases characterized by its acceptance of the authority of the Veda. Hinduism understood in this manner is no monolithic whole, and a discussion of the importance of Hinduism in the development of Buddhism is not possible without some understanding of the development of Hinduism itself.

### Vedic religion and Buddhism

Little is known about religion in early India beyond what can be learned from the corpus of texts collectively known by the name *Veda*. Vedic literature is extensive and was produced over a very long period: The earliest parts of the *R̥gveda* were composed many centuries before the Vedic Upaniṣads, which constitute the most recent part of this corpus. Vedic literature is expressive of what is commonly called Vedic religion. Vedic religion did not remain static, yet manifests as a

whole a clear continuity. It is on the other hand becoming increasingly clear that early Indian religions cannot be reduced to Vedic religion alone. There were other, non-Vedic, religions that, unlike Vedic religion, have left no early texts.

Some of those non-Vedic religions will be referred to here collectively as the *Śramaṇa* (mendicant) movement. Buddhism originally belonged to the *Śramaṇa* movement, as did Jainism and other religious currents. The *Śramaṇa* movement also came to exert an important influence on later forms of Vedic religion, more commonly known by the name of Brahmanism. This means that at least some of the ideas and ideals that characterized the *Śramaṇa* movement came to be absorbed into Brahmanism and are not necessarily borrowings from Buddhism and Jainism. At least in part on account of these influences, the Brahmanical tradition underwent profound changes. Many later forms of Hinduism therefore share certain notions with Buddhism that early Hinduism (i.e., Vedic religion) does not contain.

Which were the ideas and ideals that characterized the *Śramaṇa* movement? The single most important idea is the doctrine of KARMA (ACTION): the belief that acts bring about their retribution, usually in a following existence. Connected with this belief is the religious aim of finding liberation from the eternal cycle of rebirths (SAṂSĀRA). Various methods to reach this aim existed. Buddhism primarily distinguished itself from other currents within the *Śramaṇa* movement by its specific method, which consisted of a psychological strategy for destroying desire.

Several features of early Buddhism can be understood in the light of the fact that it arose out of the *Śramaṇa* movement. It shared with this movement the general ideas of karma and REBIRTH, and the ideal of liberation from the eternal cycle of rebirths. It distinguished itself through its specific understanding of karma, and through the method it preached.

Early Buddhism, then, was a special development of, and within, the *Śramaṇa* movement. As such it had little to do with early Hinduism, that is, Vedic religion. It was not a development of, or a reaction against, Hinduism, nor was it conceived of as one. It is not, therefore, necessary to study the Veda in order to understand most aspects of early Buddhism. Nor does it make sense to claim that Buddhism is a branch of Hinduism, unless, of course, one chooses to redefine the term *Hinduism* in a way that suits this purpose, as some thinkers have done.

The fact that the youngest parts of Vedic literature have themselves undergone the influence of ideas belonging to the *Śramaṇa* movement complicates the picture to some extent. One of the ideas current in at least some circles belonging to the *Śramaṇa* movement concerned the true nature of the “self.” It was believed that the self, by its very nature, never acts. Insight into the true nature of the self entailed the realization that one never acts and has never acted. Retribution of acts no longer concerns those who have realized that they have never acted to begin with. This belief about the true nature of the self found its way into certain passages of the Vedic Upaniṣads, in a suitably adjusted form: The self, it is here stated, is really identical with Brahman, the highest principle of the universe. Some Upaniṣadic passages freely admit that this knowledge had not been known to the Vedic Brahmins until it was revealed to them by others. The most orthodox continuation of Vedic religion went on ignoring this “knowledge” for another millennium, most notably in the Mīmāṃsā system of Vedic hermeneutics.

The Buddhist doctrine of no-self (anātman) is to be understood against the background of the *Śramaṇa* belief in the inactive nature of the self. Early Buddhism rejects the idea that knowledge of the true nature of the self leads to liberation (it does not say, but it does suggest, that such an inactive self does not exist at all). In rejecting this idea, the early Buddhist texts do not so much express disagreement with Vedic religion, which had only recently accepted the idea in some of its texts, but with the milieu from which the Vedic text had borrowed this idea, that is, certain circles within the *Śramaṇa* movement. This is not to deny on principle that the Buddha, or the early redactors of the Buddhist CANON, may have been acquainted with the contents of some of the Upaniṣads, as is claimed by some scholars (unfortunately scholarly research has produced few, if any, convincing reasons to believe that this must have been the case). But in this context it is no doubt important that the canonical passages that present the doctrine of no-self do not link the view criticized with Vedic religion or with the Upaniṣads.

There are, to be sure, passages in the early Buddhist canon that do depict encounters between the Buddha and representatives of Vedic religion. The subject matter of these discussions frequently focuses on the position of Brahmins in society, and on the question of who is a true Brahmin (answer: a Buddhist practitioner), what is the right sort of sacrifice (answer: faith, training in the precepts, and other Buddhist virtues), and so on. There may be no canonical passages in



The Hindu deities Brahmā and Indra invite the Buddha to preach. (Gandhāra, first–second century.) © Scala/Art Resource, NY. Reproduced by permission.

which a Brahmin is presented as defending points of view that are associated with the Vedic Upaniṣads. This confirms the conclusion that Buddhism did not arise as a reaction against Vedic religion in any of its forms. However, the preaching Buddha and his early followers did come across Vedic Brahmins and had to take position with regard to their views; traces of these confrontations have been preserved in the Buddhist canon.

### Philosophy

It was pointed out above that Hinduism underwent major developments during which it absorbed several features from the Śramaṇa movement. Once Buddhism had been established as an independent tradition, Hinduism started to absorb certain features directly from Buddhism. An important form of inter-

action between the two was, for a long time, that of intellectual debate. This explains that mutual influence is clearly discernible in the systems of thought (philosophy) that developed within the two religions.

Surviving texts—both Chinese translations and original manuscripts dating from the first centuries of the common era, along with indirect evidence—support the view that systematic philosophy arose in Buddhism before it made its appearance in Hinduism. Perhaps the first to systematize Buddhist teachings into a coherent whole were the Sarvāstivādins, who elaborated a vision of the world in which no composite wholes were believed to exist: Only the ultimate constituents of all there is (called *dharma*s) really exist. In a similar manner no entities extended in time were considered to exist. As a result only momentary dhar-

mas have real existence. The false impression that there are composite things is due to the words of language: A chariot is in the end just a word, or exists merely by virtue of the word.

One of the two major Hindu ontologies that arose in the early centuries of the common era, Vaiśeṣika, can be understood as a reaction against Sarvāstivāda ontology. Vaiśeṣika agreed with Sarvāstivāda that there is a close parallelism between the objects of phenomenal reality and the words of language. Where, however, the latter combined this point of view with the conviction that the objects of phenomenal reality do not really exist, because they are composite, the former did not share this conviction. For Vaiśeṣika, composite objects exist just as much as their constituent parts: They exist beside each other. This implies that a jar and the two halves that constitute it are together three different things. There are other features that Vaiśeṣika shares with Sarvāstivāda, which confirm that the former, while opposing the latter, was created under its influence.

The other major Hindu ontology of that period is Sāṃkhya, which does not appear to have been deeply influenced by Buddhist thought. Sāṃkhya is linked to Yoga, a form of spiritual practice. Yoga, which was originally quite distinct from Buddhism, soon came to undergo its influence. Some early evidence for this influence is already discernible in the *Mahābhārata*, and Buddhist influence has become strong and unmistakable in the classical texts of Yoga, the *Yoga Sūtra* and the *Yoga Bhāṣya*, both attributed to a Patañjali by the early tradition.

Hindu linguistic philosophy, whose classical representative is Bhartṛhari (fifth century C.E.), has been influenced by Buddhist thought in various ways. Let it suffice here to point out that the notion of words and sentences as entities that are different from the physical sound that produces them—often referred to by the term *sphoṭa*—corresponds to several linguistic dharmas that had been postulated in Sarvāstivāda.

Systematic Vedānta philosophy, whose earliest surviving texts date from the middle of the first millennium C.E., owes so much to Buddhist influence that one chapter of the *Āgamaśāstra* of Gauḍapāda—supposedly the teacher of the teacher of the famous Vedāntin Śāṅkara (ca. 700 C.E.)—is to all intents and purposes a Buddhist text. Śāṅkara himself has been accused of being a pseudo-Buddhist, which shows that some of his early Hindu opponents did not fail to see the extent to which Buddhist influence is recognizable in his work.

### Other forms of interaction

There can be no doubt that Hinduism and Buddhism have interacted in many other ways during their long coexistence in South Asia. Unfortunately the surviving literature does not shed light on all of them. The idea, for example, that the great Hindu epic called *Mahābhārata* was composed as a Hindu “riposte” to Buddhism (Biardeau), though interesting, remains for the time being speculative. There is, however, one area in which interaction between Hinduism and Buddhism has left clear traces: the complex of religious practices and beliefs commonly known by the name TANTRA. Both texts belonging to Hinduism and others belonging to Buddhism testify to the strong interest in the forms of ritual, the use of MANTRAS and MAṆḌALAS, the sexual symbolism, and other features that come together under this label. Buddhist and Hindu tantric deities often share the same characteristics: Both are smeared with ashes, drink blood from skulls, have the third eye that is typical of the Hindu god Śiva, wear Śiva’s sickle moon in their matted hair, and so on. Sometimes Buddhist tantric texts refer to major Hindu deities by their Hindu names. Similar ideas about the nature of the mystical body, with its various nerve centers and channels, are found in texts belonging to both religions. The interaction between Buddhist and Hindu tantrism was undeniably intense, and here it seems that it was most often the Buddhists who borrowed from the Hindus. Indeed, it has been observed that it is particularly unlikely that the Buddhist doctrinal tradition could have developed an offshoot so completely foreign to itself as tantra on its own accord (Goudriaan). At the same time the idea of a common “religious substratum” cannot be rejected outright (Ruegg).

It should be clear from this short survey that at no moment of its existence in India was Buddhism completely isolated from its non-Buddhist surroundings. There are no doubt aspects of Buddhism on which those surroundings exerted a less identifiable influence than on others. It is also likely that the interaction with the non-Buddhist world was more intense during some periods than others. It is not at all implausible that Buddhist MONKS and NUNS, who spent most of their time in major monastic centers that were supported by the local ruler, would care little about the thoughts or practices of outsiders. However, not all Buddhists lived in such circumstances. There were monks and nuns who, through choice or necessity, spent much of their time outside monastic communities. And there were, of course, many Buddhists who were neither monk nor

nun. Early and late Buddhism in India would seem to have interacted most intensely with non-Buddhists. But even the most isolated and protected monastic scholars of the middle period had to take heed of the thoughts of others, because they might be obliged to enter into debate with them.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Dharma and Dharmas; India; Jainism and Buddhism; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

- Biardeau, Madeleine. *Le Mahābhārata: Un récit fondateur du brahmanisme et son interprétation*, 2 vols. Paris: Editions du Seuil, 2002.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. *The Two Traditions of Meditation in Ancient India*, 2nd edition. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993. Reprint, 2000.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. *The Two Sources of Indian Asceticism*, 2nd edition. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1998.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. "Die buddhistische Lehre." In Heinz Bechert et al., *Der Buddhismus I: Der indische Buddhismus und seine Verzweigungen*. Stuttgart, Germany: W. Kohlhammer, 2000.
- Gombrich, Richard F. *How Buddhism Began: The Conditioned Genesis of the Early Teachings*. London and Atlantic Highlands, NJ: Athlone, 1994.
- Goudriaan, Teun; Gupta, Sanjukta; and Hoens, Dirk Jan. *Hindu Tantrism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1979.
- Oetke, Claus. "Ich" und das Ich: Analytische Untersuchungen zur buddhistisch-brahmanischen Ātmankontroverse. Stuttgart, Germany: Franz Steiner, 1988.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. "A Note on the Relationship between Buddhist and 'Hindu' Divinities in Buddhist Literature and Iconology: The Laukika/Lokottara Contrast and the Notion of an Indian 'Religious Substratum.'" In *Le Parole e i Marmi: Studi in onore di Raniero Gnoli nel suo 70° compleanno*, a cura di Raffaele Torella. Rome: Istituto Italiano per l'Africa e l'Oriente, 2001.
- Sanderson, Alexis. "Vajrayāna: Origin and Function." *Buddhism into the Year 2000: International Conference Proceedings*. Bangkok and Los Angeles: Dhammakaya Foundation, 1994.
- Snellgrove, David L. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*. London: Serindia, 1987.

JOHANNES BRONKHORST

## HISTORY

The difference between notions of history in Buddhist literature and those typical in contemporary secular

culture is evident when one contrasts certain popular Buddhist narratives with the accounts of modern scholars. One such contrast concerns the very beginning of Buddhism. Historically, scholars say, Buddhism began with the teaching activity of Śākyamuni, the historical Buddha, roughly twenty-five hundred years ago in northern India. Early Buddhist narratives, on the other hand, envision a teaching and indeed a universe with no beginning, say that there were twenty-four BUDDHAS who appeared before Śākyamuni, and recount that Śākyamuni himself remembered his numerous previous lives during the night of his awakening. In the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), Śākyamuni reveals that he is eternal and universal, appearing over and over again in innumerable worlds and communicating the all-inclusive and superlative teaching that is the subject of this sūtra. Scholars tell us that the *Lotus Sūtra* was composed around 200 C.E. as an expression of a sectarian movement that eventually gave rise to distinct schools of Buddhism, such as the Tiantai School in China in the 500s and Tendai in Japan in the 800s, as well as the Japanese Nichiren School in the 1200s. In fact, scholarship shows, there is no evidence that any of the discourses were recorded during the lifetime of the historical Buddha; whatever Śākyamuni may have taught, recorded Buddhist teachings were embellishments and often fabrications of his words. What the scholarly work and traditional narratives have in common seems only to be a desire to connect their accounts with Śākyamuni Buddha.

History in its barest sense is a narrative account that connects the present to the past in anticipation of an open future. The recognition of the world as a meaningful sequence of events, one leading to another, lends the word its common double usage: *History* means both the events themselves and the account of events. Modern scholars also use the word *historiography* for any written accounts of the past, although they sometimes restrict this term to critical accounts that evaluate multiple sources and try to establish "what actually happened." Thus *historicity* refers to historical factuality or reality, of a person like Śākyamuni for example. The naturalistic attitude in modern scholarship differentiates fact from fiction and history from myth or legend. This distinction is not at all obvious in traditional histories and stories, which often bear witness to transcendent spiritual realities at work in the course of time.

A few scholars contend that Buddhism has no use for history at all since its doctrines imply that change over time is inherently meaningless. They see Bud-

dhism as sharing an Indian worldview where time is cyclical and events (like the Buddha's awakening) are repeatable, where true reality transcends time. They find no writing in pre-Muslim India at all that deserves the name of history. Scholars like Robert Frykenberg argue that this view is a simplistic stereotype. A. K. Warder proposes that the story of the Buddha's life, the record of episodes after his death in early VINAYA literature, and the separate accounts of various schools after their schism, all clearly indicate a sense of history in Indian Buddhism. Buddhist literature in all of Asia contains a rich array of historical schemes used to make sense of a changing world.

The seeming lack of historical consciousness in Buddhism has also become a point of intense discussion in interreligious dialogue linking history and ethics. Jewish and Christian theologians often say that Buddhist PHILOSOPHY overlooks the possibility that ultimate reality (be it God or ŚŪNYATĀ [EMPTINESS]) is of consequence to humans only in the vicissitudes of history—that to overcome historical EVIL we need ethical action, not liberation from KARMA (ACTION), or that any ultimate liberation will come only eschatologically, through history. Buddhists, for their part, do not recognize a historical battle between good and evil with only humans on earth at stake. They stress insight into the nature of the cosmos and the self more than ethical imperatives or an understanding of anthropocentric history. MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist answers have emphasized the timeless inseparability of NIRVĀṆA and SAṂSĀRA, the endless activity of the BODHISATTVA, and the perpetual danger of absolutizing the distinction between good and evil. (Another philosophical response is discussed at the end of this entry.) In any case, historical scholarship has found ample evidence that Buddhism has been anything but ahistorical.

### **Patterns of didactic history: National order and eschatological decline**

All scholars recognize the Buddhist chronicles or VAMSA literature of Sri Lanka as historical in some sense. These works, composed by Buddhist monks, began in the sixth century C.E. and were continually supplemented until the British occupation in the early 1800s. In the *Mahāvamsa* (*The Great Chronicle*), Śākyamuni Buddha visits the island and proclaims that it will become the repository of his teachings. A sequence of kings promotes the DHARMA and protects the SAṄGHA, at times against foreign invaders, and Sri Lanka appears as a model for an ideal Buddhist nation. This work organizes past events to demonstrate not only the effects of

karma and the reality of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE) but also the necessity of meritorious works and deeds for a better future. Its concern is to understand the progression of human society within a Buddhist worldview; a sense of right intention (a soteriological practice enjoined by the noble eightfold PATH) rather than factual accuracy guides its author. To modern critical sensibilities, the *Mahāvamsa* mixes myth and history, religious doctrine and political motive. Its genealogies and arrangement of recognizable events make it historical, but it is didactic history with an agenda: to promote the welfare of the saṅgha through the centuries by legitimizing the Buddhist state.

The motif of a perfect order in the Sri Lankan chronicles contrasts with the motif of decline in Indian and East Asian Buddhist literature. According to some early Indian literature, the dharma will vanish after five hundred years, a doctrine that has been called DECLINE OF THE DHARMA. Later texts say that it was the *true dharma* that disappeared. East Asian texts tell of three ages. In the first, the true dharma flourished and awakening was attainable. The following age of the *semblance dharma* meant that practice, but no attainment, was possible. In the third or current era of the *final dharma*, lasting some ten thousand years or virtually all countable time, not even practice is efficacious. Deleterious events, harmful deeds, and political circumstances are the cause of this deterioration; even the Buddhadharmā is impermanent. Some texts place this scheme in a larger cycle where a period of ascent begins after the three ages of decline and culminates in the coming of MAITREYA, the future Buddha. Karmic conditions governing an entire people, indeed all humankind, must be right for Buddhism to thrive.

Modern scholarship finds that a substantial body of Buddhist literature demonstrates a sense of progression (or decline) through time, and of distinct historical period and the causes for their difference. Jan Nattier argues that the variety of schemes and timetables were in part an attempt to resolve discrepancies, evident to the writers, between previous predictions and current historical conditions, and between the differing teachings of Buddhist schools. In this literature, human actions are significant for changing the world; the future is not the repetition of the past, and the era in which one lives matters greatly, especially when the march of time is toward decline. Instead of encouraging an attitude of hopelessness and inevitability, in medieval East Asia the doctrines of decline generated new teachings, interpretations, and even schools that proclaimed themselves necessary to address an age of

crisis where traditional approaches no longer worked. Such doctrines often served to renew rather than weaken Buddhism.

### **History as seamless transmission and as comprehensive vision**

In China, Buddhist texts of various schools often emphasize LINEAGE, the linear succession of patriarch teachers from Śākyamuni to the present. The case of the CHAN SCHOOL is particularly instructive. Although its texts contain divergent lineage charts and a wide variety of stories connecting teachers and disciples, one story line in particular has been popularized: In the sixth century the Indian patriarch BODHIDHARMA brings the correct understanding of the dharma to China—a nonverbal understanding achieved through sitting MEDITATION and enlightenment, with no place for scriptural study. Bodhidharma's robe, symbolizing the direct transmission of mind from Śākyamuni Buddha through the generations, is passed to his successors one at a time when they too realize this ineffable truth. The sixth patriarch HUINENG (ca. 638–713) recognizes several successors, and their lineages eventually form the five houses of Chan and later the seven schools. Teachers in the two extant schools, Linji (Japanese, Rinzai) and Caodong (Sōtō), can therefore trace their lineage to Tang China and back to Śākyamuni himself; what the “true dharma eye” sees is retained in an unbroken history.

The research of modern scholars demonstrates that this story line is largely a fabrication that served to legitimize the teachings and practices of a particular group, or to secure its place in a society of competing interests. Taken together, early DUNHUANG chronicles, Song-period *lamp histories*, and other texts present a far more complicated picture of lineages, schools, rivalries, and projections into the past. One might see the lineage charts as evidence of the lack of historical consciousness, insofar as they flatten time into a “continuous expression of a golden moment of the past” (McRae, p. 353) where the primordial event of enlightenment can be ever repeated. Another interpretation understands the lineage charts as proof-texts that the school has transmitted a thread of truth through history and in the midst of a chaotic world.

Be that as it may, there is ample evidence of Chinese Buddhist historical writing in other records that extend beyond biographies of the Buddha and the patriarchs. Beginning in the fifth century, accounts modeled after dynastic and secular histories tried to demonstrate that Buddhism was truly Chinese and did

in effect help to make it so. In the Song and Yuan eras, *universal histories* recounted developments of Buddhism over long periods, usually culminating in a particular school such as Tiantai that deemed itself superior because it included but surpassed all previous teachings. Occasionally these histories tested the reliability of their sources and their chronologies. Though these texts often mix realistic geography with mythical COSMOLOGY, they show that Buddhists in China also incorporated critical methods in composing history as a comprehensive vision.

### **History as regeneration of a cosmological order**

Buddhist Tibet is distinguished by its layers of historical writing. According to one group of popular stories, Tibet is converted to Buddhism in the eighth century when the great Indian master, PADMASAMBHAVA, wields his magical powers to subdue local spirits and demons and persuades them to take an oath to protect the dharma from then on. He establishes Tibet's first monastery at BSAM YAS (SAMYE). His ability to see the future as well as the past inspires him to hide certain “treasures,” including texts imparting ancient or even timeless wisdom that will be discovered in future times when they are needed and can be understood. Many stories celebrate great lamas through the centuries as treasure discoverers. Chronicles about the Tibetan empire, from 650 to the early 800s C.E., also tell of the introduction of Buddhism from China. The very first emperors marry Chinese princesses who bring the new religion to the land. Then about 760 Khri srong lde btsam (Tri Songdetsen) expands the empire into rival China and patronizes Indian Buddhism; it is he who invites Padmasambhava and establishes the first monastery. About 850 the last emperor persecutes Buddhism and initiates the dark ages lasting a century, until Buddhism is revived. Tibet appears as a field of saṃsāra ripe for the salvific work of numerous bodhisattvas, many appearing as rulers. Their dominion, in some accounts, is like that of the Buddha Vairocana in his own realm.

Modern scholarship reads these accounts as embellished legends recorded centuries later and meant to associate the unification of Tibet with the arrival and flourishing of Buddhism. The later chronicles, along with numerous genealogies and sectarian histories, were composed to ensure political continuity and preservation of a tradition. The “treasure” texts are apocryphal revelations that link a later time to the imperial period. Like the rich tradition of various lamas' autobiographies, they show an awareness of the devel-

opment and differentiation of time periods. Yet the idea of reincarnation and the reappearance of bodhisattvas, such as Avalokiteśvara in the person of the DALAI LAMA, extend the sense of historical time far beyond the scope of merely human activity.

### **Visionary history, critical history, and history as the field of emptiness**

Japanese historical writing includes both works that mix eschatological history with indigenous motifs, and others that criticize the scheme of decline and the sectarian biases of Buddhist comprehensive histories. The monk Jien's *Gukanshō* (*Miscellany of Ignorant Views*) of 1219 attempts to explain the tumultuous present by the karmic influences of previous times, leading to this age of the final dharma. The emperors, who are of divine origin and occasionally are incarnations of the Buddha, can still wield the dharma and gain the gods' blessings to arrest the decline and establish peace and order. This work envisions a single course of events that shape the nation, have human as well as divine causes, and lead to a variable future depending upon the actions of the rulers. It exemplifies visionary history, a supernatural interpretation of why the present is as it is and how the future can be better. A hundred years later the Pure Land monk GYŌNEN (1240–1321) wrote an account titled the *Sangoku buppō denzū engi* (*Circumstances of the Transmission of the Buddha-dharma in the Three Countries of India, China, and Japan*) that disputes the prevailing philosophy of final dharma and explains Japanese Buddhism in terms of Indian and Chinese Buddhism. The transhistorical, unconditioned dharma is mediated by geographical and cultural factors. Gyōnen's work counts as international, if idealized, religious history.

TOMINAGA NAKAMOTO's more realistic work of 1745, *Shutsujō kōgo* (*Emerging from Meditation*) argues that Buddhism develops by reforming what came before and then appealing to the authority of the founder in order to justify the reforms as a return to original teachings—as if no essential change had taken place. His work articulates several criteria of textual criticism to uncover this process, and concludes that Śākyamuni Buddha could not have taught Mahāyāna Buddhism. His writing represents a rare instance of critical history in the service of Buddhism. Yet as late as 1935 the Pure Land thinker Soga Ryōjin, rejecting naturalist as well as nationalist and Marxist explanations, proposed that Buddhist history is the time-transcendent dharma being realized in time by those who experience and practice it.

Twentieth-century Japanese Buddhist philosophers offer some of the very few attempts to formulate a specifically Buddhist interpretation of what makes history possible. Nishitani Keiji argues that *śūnyatā* is what enables history to be free of predetermination and thus to be real. For the future to remain open and historical existence to be meaningful, emptiness must underlie each and every moment thus ensuring its absolute newness. Nishitani's history as the field of emptiness does not consider the discrimination required by historians to select events of primary significance. But it does envision the task, common to the Buddhist senses of history sketched here, that the present must be accounted for not only in terms of the past with an eye to the future, but also as a moment in a cosmos that is beginningless, endless, and conditioned by timeless truth.

### **Bibliography**

- Beasley, W. G., and Pulleyblank, E. G., eds. *Historians of China and Japan*. London: Oxford University Press, 1961.
- Bechert, Heinz. "The Beginnings of Buddhist Historiography: *Mahāvamsa* and Political Thinking." In *Religion and the Legitimation of Power in Sri Lanka*, ed. Bardwell L. Smith. Chambersburg, PA: Anima Books, 1978.
- Blum, Mark L. *The Origin and Development of Pure Land Buddhism: A Study and Translation of Gyōnen's Jōdo Hōmon Genrushō*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Brown, Delmer, and Ishida, Ichiro. *The Future and the Past: A Translation and Study of the Gukanshō*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1979.
- Frank, Herbert. "Some Aspects of Chinese Private Historiography in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries." In *Historians of China and Japan*, ed. W. G. Beasley and E. G. Pulleyblank. London: Oxford University Press, 1961.
- Frykenberg, Robert Eric. *History and Belief: The Foundations of Historical Understanding*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, 1996.
- Gyatso, Janet. *Apparitions of the Self: The Secret Autobiographies of a Tibetan Visionary*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Kapstein, Matthew T. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Maraldo, John. "Is There Historical Consciousness within Ch'an?" *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 12, nos. 2–3 (1985): 141–172.
- Maraldo, John C. "Hermeneutics and Historicity in the Study of Buddhism." *Eastern Buddhist* 19, no. 1 (Spring 1986): 17–43.



- McRae, John. "Encounter Dialogue and the Transformation of the Spiritual Path in Chinese Ch'an." In *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr., and Robert M. Gimello. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Nattier, Jan. *Once upon A Future Time: Studies in a Buddhist Prophecy of Decline*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.
- Nishitani Keiji. *Religion and Nothingness*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.
- Perera, L. S. "The Pali Chronicle of Ceylon." In *Historians of India, Pakistan, and Ceylon*, ed. C. H. Philips. London: Oxford University Press, 1961.
- Schmidt-Glitzner, Helwig. *Die Identität der buddhistischen Schulen und die Kompilation buddhistischer Universalgeschichten in China*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Franz Steiner, 1982.
- Soga Ryōjin. "Shinran's View of Buddhist History," tr. Jan Van Bragt, with an introduction by Yasutomi Shin'ya. *Eastern Buddhist* 32, no. 1 (2000): 106–129.
- Sørensen, Per K. *Tibetan Buddhist Historiography: The Mirror Illuminating the Royal Genealogies*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1994.
- Tominaga Nakamoto. *Emerging from Meditation*, tr. Michael Pye. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Warder, A. K. *An Introduction to Indian Historiography*. Bombay: Popular Prakashan, 1972.

JOHN C. MARALDO

## HÖNEN

Hōnen (Genku, 1133–1212) was a renowned master of PURE LAND BUDDHISM in medieval Japan. He is best known for his advocacy of the verbal *nenbutsu* as the exclusive practice for birth in the Pure Land paradise of the Buddha Amida. Hōnen is recognized as the founder of an independent Pure Land movement in Japan and of the Jōdoshū, or Pure Land school.

Hōnen was born in Mimasaka province (present-day Okayama prefecture) and entered the priesthood as a boy in 1141. In 1145 or 1147 he was sent to train at the Enryakuji, the preeminent Tendai monastic complex on Mount Hiei near Kyoto. There he studied a variety of Tendai traditions, but gravitated to its Pure Land teachings and practices. In 1150 he took up residence at the Kurodani hermitage on Mount Hiei, which was headed by the Tendai master Eikū (d. 1179) and devoted primarily to Pure Land practices. Hōnen

explored widely other forms of Buddhism, and visited major temples in Nara and Kyoto. But the main influence on him came from the writings of the Chinese Pure Land master Shandao (613–681).

In 1175 Hōnen left Mount Hiei in order to spread the Pure Land teachings in Kyoto; he resided for many of his remaining years at Ōtani on the east side of the city. Over time he became a Pure Land teacher of great renown, attracting aristocrats, samurai, and clerics, as well as lowly members of society. His primary message, based largely on his interpretation of Shandao's teachings, was that invoking or chanting AMITĀBHA (Amida) Buddha's name is the one and only practice assuring birth in the Pure Land, where Buddhist enlightenment would be certain. This teaching came to be known as the "exclusive *nenbutsu*" (*senju nenbutsu*). It is the message Hōnen articulated in his foremost doctrinal treatise, *Senchaku hongan nenbutsu shū* (*Passages on the Selection of the Nenbutsu in the Original Vow*), composed in 1198.

The established monasteries, Enryakuji on Mount Hiei and Kōfukuji in Nara, raised objections to Hōnen's movement in 1204 and 1205, and called for its ban. In 1207 the court executed four of his followers, and banished Hōnen and several disciples from the capital. Though Hōnen was revolutionary in his exclusive *nenbutsu* teaching, he was always an upstanding priest, observant of the Buddhist precepts, and he even administered the precepts to others. He also continued to practice Pure Land meditative visualizations throughout his life. Hōnen was allowed to return to Kyoto in 1211, and died at Ōtani in 1212. Many followers considered him a wordly incarnation of Amida's companion bodhisattva Seishi, or even of Amida Buddha himself.

*See also:* **Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Pure Land Schools**

### *Bibliography*

- Andrews, Allan A. "The *Senchakushū* in Japanese Religious History: The Founding of a Pure Land School." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 55, no. 3 (1987): 473–499.
- Coates, Harper Havelock, and Ishizuka, Ryugaku, trans. *Hōnen, the Buddhist Saint: His Life and Teaching* (1925), 5 vols. Reprint, Kyoto: Society for the Publication of Sacred Books of the World, 1949.
- Kleine, Christoph. *Hōnens Buddhismus des Reinen Lande: Reform, Reformation oder Häresie*. Frankfurt, Germany: Peter Lang, 1996.

*Senchakushū* English Translation Project, trans. and ed. *Hōnen's Senchakushū: Passages on the Selection of the Nembutsu in the Original Vow (Senchaku hongan nembutsu shū)*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

## HONJI SUIJAKU

The term *honji suijaku* (literally, “the original ground and its traces”) refers to a particular interpretation of the interaction between Buddhism and Japanese local cults. The term was used in medieval Japan to mean that Indian and Buddhist divinities constituted the “original ground” (*honji*) of their Japanese manifestations as local *kami*, defined as “traces” (*suijaku*).

*See also:* Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### Bibliography

Teeuwen, Mark, and Rambelli, Fabio, eds. *Buddhas and Kami in Japan: Honji Suijaku as a Combinatory Paradigm*. London and New York: Routledge Curzon, 2003.

FABIO RAMBELLI

## HÖRYŪJI AND TŌDAIJI

Hōryūji (Temple of the Exalted Law), located in Ikaruga Village (Nara) and first founded by Prince Shōtoku (574–622), was rebuilt after a 670 fire under royal patronage. Long associated with Hossō (FAXIANG SCHOOL) teachings, the temple owes its survival to its celebration of Shōtoku’s memory. Hōryūji’s west and east precincts contain an extraordinary number of ancient buildings, images, and treasures dating from the seventh, eighth, and later centuries. Several seventh-century images at Hōryūji are associated by inscription or legend with the prince: gilt-bronze representations of Yakushi (Bhaiṣajyaguru) and Shaka (Śākyamuni) on the primary altar, a gilded wood image of Kannon (Avalokiteśvara) in the Dream Hall, and a seated Miroku (MAITREYA) at neighboring Chūgūji. A large eleventh-century hagiographical painting of Prince Shōtoku drew visitors to the Painting Hall (Edono), while memorial rites before his portrait were conducted at the Shōryōin.

Tōdaiji (Great Eastern Temple), located in the former capital Heijō-kyō (Nara), was begun in the mid-

eighth century by the sovereign Shōmu (r. 723–749) as a state-supported centerpiece to a Chinese-style provincial temple system. Tōdaiji served as headquarters of the Kegon school (HUAYAN SCHOOL), but in fact functioned as the central venue for ordination and study of Buddhism more broadly. Shōmu commissioned for its central icon a colossal gilt-bronze Rushana (Vairocana) dedicated in 752. After Shōmu’s death, his consort Kōmyō offered their massive collection of precious and imported objects to the temple, much of which survives. Burned twice in civil wars (1180 and 1567), Tōdaiji has been repeatedly revived. Several precincts and storehouses preserve sculptures from the eighth and thirteenth centuries, as well as temple treasures, documents, and books.

*See also:* Japan, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture; Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi)

### Bibliography

Cunningham, Michael R., ed. *Buddhist Treasures from Nara*. Cleveland, OH: Cleveland Museum of Art, 1998.

Guth, Christine M. E. “The Pensive Prince of Chūgūji: Maitreya Cult and Image in Seventh-Century Japan.” In *Maitreya the Future Buddha*, ed. Helen Hardacre and Alan Sponberg. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.

Kurata Bunsaku, ed. *Hōryūji, Temple of the Exalted Law: Early Buddhist Art from Japan*. New York: Japan Society, 1981.

Mino, Yutaka, ed. *The Great Eastern Temple: Treasures of Japanese Buddhist Art from Tōdaiji*. Chicago: Art Institute of Chicago, 1986.

Sugiyama, Jirō. *Classic Buddhist Sculpture: The Tempyō Period*, tr. Samuel Crowell Morse. New York: Kodansha International and Shibundo, 1982.

KAREN L. BROCK

## HUAYAN ART

The comprehensive and multidimensional vision of reality as expounded in the HUAYAN JING (Sanskrit, *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*; *Flower Garland Sūtra*) has provided a wealth of inspiration to Buddhist artists in all the Asian cultures in which the scripture was received. Not only is the text filled with exalted visions and holy themes, but its elaborate descriptions of “ocean-like assemblies” and the “jewels of Indra’s Net” fired the imagination of the faithful. Hence it is no coincidence that in time an established set of themes associated with the various chapters of the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* was

developed. Most popular of these is the opening scene in which Śākyamuni Buddha, after his enlightenment, attains the transcendental body (dharmakāya) of Vairocana, the Cosmic Buddha. Later a pictorial scheme became popular in which the central scenes were represented together as the “nine assemblies in seven locations.”

Each of these scenes is depicted as a standard buddha assembly with a seated Vairocana surrounded by all the BODHISATTVAS, ARHATS, DIVINITIES, and protectors. Another important *Avataṃsaka*-related theme is provided by the *Gaṇḍavyūha*, a text that is an integral part of the long version of the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*. This embedded scripture describes the youth Sudhana’s spiritual journey in search of enlightenment. Some secular powers used its cosmological and encompassing vision of totality in order to adopt the authority and perceived enlightenment of a Buddhist theocracy. Hence the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* inevitably came to be associated with the divine mandate of various ruling houses in East Asia.

### China

Among the earliest expressions of Huayan-related art in China are the so-called cosmic buddhas, images in stone and bronze that depict the standing Vairocana. What distinguishes these images from other standing buddhas is the fact that their robes are adorned with numerous small images of buddhas and other beings meant to represent the totality of the DHARMADHĀTU (dharma realm). The monumental BUDDHA IMAGES in the YUN’GANG caves outside of Datong in northern Shanxi are the earliest examples of Buddhist art in China relating to Vairocana. Stone sculptures dating from the late Northern Wei (386–534) and Northern Qi (550–577) found at the site of the Longxing Monastery in Shandong feature Vairocana images whose robes are painted with scenes of the *dharmadhātu*.

The HUAYAN SCHOOL of Buddhism reached unprecedented popularity during the late seventh century through the efforts of the third Huayan patriarch FAZANG (643–712). With solid backing from Empress Wu Zedean (r. 684–704) and the imperial court, the creations of various monuments associated with the Huayan school and its cosmology were initiated as part of a new cult of KINGSHIP in which the empress played the role of a cakravartin (wheel-turning ruler). One of the most famous Huayan-related images made around this period is the large Vairocana image carved in the grotto of the Fengxian Monastery in the LONGMEN complex of grottoes. The 13.5-meter-high image is

carved in the style characteristic of Buddhist sculptural art as it flourished in the central provinces during the second half of the seventh century. Iconographically it does not bear any distinctive marks or characteristics that clearly identify it with Vairocana. This indicates that at the time of its making a distinct Huayan iconography had not yet developed. However, this appears to have changed in the following decades. Images of the adorned Vairocana wearing crowns and jewelry, symbols representing the transcendent and cosmic nature of this buddha, are found among the Buddhist carvings of Sichuan in sites such as Wanfo cliff in Guangyuan and at Feixian Pavilion in Pujiang.

The Huayan school remained influential throughout the Tang and left a strong imprint on the future development of Chinese Buddhism. Wall paintings and votive banners thought to date from the eighth century and featuring *dharmadhātu* tableaux—in essence an illustrated guide to the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*’s “nine assemblies in seven locations”—have been found in the Mogao caves in DUNHUANG.

During the late Tang dynasty (618–907), Sichuan province developed a strong Huayan cult that is especially reflected in the expressive narrative stone carvings of Dazu. Some of the sculptural groups here give evidence of a merger between the imagery of Huayan and that of the MIJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL, a development that culminated in the creation of the pilgrimage center on Mount Baoding to the north of Dazu during the middle of the Southern Song dynasty (1127–1279). This important pilgrimage site features monumental sculptural groups in stone depicting central scenes and tableaux of the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* and related scriptures.

During the Northern Song (960–1127), the *Gaṇḍavyūha* reached new heights of popularity through the printing of the illustrated text of Sudhana’s journey by master Foguo (eleventh–twelfth centuries), a monk of the Yunmen branch of the CHAN SCHOOL. The presence of Huayan imagery within the context of Chan Buddhism shows the extent to which the former tradition influenced other schools of Chinese Buddhism during the Song dynasty.

The Khitan rulers of the Liao empire (907–1125) were devout Buddhists and the Huayan school enjoyed special patronage. Numerous monasteries were built, including many belonging to the Huayan school. Among these were the Higher and Lower Huayan monasteries in Datong, where an impressive group of wooden sculptures stand on an altar in the center of

the temple building, creating a MANDALA-like arrangement with a figure of Vairocana in the center surrounded by attending bodhisattvas.

Holy Buddhist mountains such as Mount Emei in Sichuan and Mount Wutai in northern Shanxi province, being the abodes of the bodhisattvas Samantabhadra and Mañjuśrī, respectively, the primary attendants of Vairocana Buddha, have long been associated with the Huayan Buddhist tradition.

### Korea

Huayan (Korean, Hwaŏm) Buddhism reached the Korean peninsula during the late seventh century, where it soon achieved the same importance and popularity as in China. A number of prominent monks, including ŬISANG (625–702) and his contemporary WŎNHYO (617–686), actively propagated the teachings prior to the actual founding of the Hwaŏm school in the early eighth century. During the eighth century a number of monasteries belonging to the Hwaŏm school were built in different parts of the country. Outside the Silla capital of Kyŏngju, King Kyŏngdŏk (r. 742–765) constructed SŎKKURAM, a manmade grottolike sanctuary, as a symbol of the close link between royal power and Buddhism. It would appear that the central buddha image at Sŏkkuram, an impressive sculpture in polished granite, was meant to depict Śākyamuni Buddha at the moment he manifests as Vairocana in accordance with the opening chapter of the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*. The image is iconographically identical to ordinary images of Śākyamuni, but the context of the shrine itself, with its central altar and special rounded ground plan (perhaps a symbolic representation of the *dharmadhātu*), as well as the secondary images carved in relief along the sides, suggest that the Sŏkkuram Buddha is actually a representation of Vairocana.

During the ninth century, Esoteric Buddhism became increasingly popular in Korea, and many of its elements, such as its ritual practices and its art, were adopted by other schools of Korean Buddhism. Among other things this process resulted in the creation of Vairocana images that reflect the dual influence of both Hwaŏm and Esoteric Buddhism (Korean, *milgyo*). Vairocana images in early Korean Buddhism are always unadorned, that is, they are without crowns and bodily ornaments. It is only during the Koryŏ dynasty (918–1392) that adorned images chiefly associated with Esoteric Buddhism become prominent.

With the first printing of the Buddhist CANON during the eleventh century, which established the Buddhist



Vairocana, the Cosmic Buddha. (Chinese bronze sculpture, Sui dynasty, 581–618.) The Art Archive/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

scriptures in their definitive form, the Koreans also fixed the associated iconography. It became common to carve frontispieces on the blocks with an opening chapter of a given scripture, whereby iconographical forms and typologies became standardized. This was also the case with the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*, which enjoyed a special popularity during the Koryŏ. Hence, all the major themes and scenarios of the *sūtra* were illustrated with explanatory cartouches inserted throughout.

During the Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910) the importance of Hwaŏm Buddhism as an intellectual tradition declined. However, its imagery and cosmology still captivated the minds of the Korean Buddhists. This

is especially evident in the tradition associated with the distinctly Korean votive paintings (Korean, *t'aenghwa*) hung above the main altars of temple buildings. Among the many themes depicted is that of the *dharmadhātu* with the “nine assemblies in seven locations.” Interestingly, this follows more or less the same iconographical arrangement as the similar, but much earlier, Chinese Buddhist paintings from Dunhuang.

### Japan

The teachings associated with Huayan (Japanese, Kegon) Buddhism were transmitted to Japan from China and Korea during the late seventh century, and the Kegon school became one of the leading denominations of Japanese Buddhism during the Nara period (710–794). During the eighth century a number of temples were established under imperial patronage for the Kegon school in the capital. Among these, Tōdaiji, located in the center of Nara, is the most important and imposing. In this temple Emperor Shōmu (r. 724–749), imitating Empress Wu Zedean, established the Kegon school as an imperial cult. To this end he had cast in bronze a sixteen-meter-high image of Vairocana Buddha, the largest such image in the world at that time. The lotus petals of its enormous seat are adorned with engraved scenes of the *dharmadhātu* and imagery from the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*. The image was dedicated in a large ceremony in 752.

During the ninth century the Kegon school declined with the transfer of the capital to Heian (Kyoto) in 794 and the rise of Tendai and SHINGON BUDDHISM. However, even after its decline the Kegon school continued to exert considerable influence on Japanese Buddhism. During the late Heian period the charismatic monk Myōe KŌBEN (ca. 1173–1232) continued to transmit Kegon doctrines and practices at Kōzanji outside Kyoto. Due to his influence many pieces of religious art associated with the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* were created, including paintings of the *dharmadhātu* and Sudhana's journey.

### Southeast Asia

The *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* also became popular in Southeast Asia, where we find Sudhana's journey prominently displayed among the reliefs decorating the three-dimensional maṇḍala edifice of BOROBUDUR in Java, which was part of the Śailendra kingdom (ca. 750–860). Images in bronze and stone of Vairocana and other buddhas and bodhisattvas associated with the imagery of the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* have also been found elsewhere in Java, most notably in the vicinity of Prambanam in the central part of the island.

See also: **Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; China, Buddhist Art in; Hōryūji and Tōdaij; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Foguo *chanshi Wenshu zhinan tu zan* (Hymns on Chan Master Foguo's Pictures on Mañjuśrī Pointing the Way to the South). In *Dai-Nihon zōkuzōkyō* 1021.58: 592a–619b.
- Fontein, Jan. *The Pilgrimage of Sudhana: A Study of Gaṇḍavyūha Illustrations in China, Japan, and Java*. Paris and the Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1967.
- Fontein, Jan. *The Sculpture of Indonesia*. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art; New York: Harry N. Abrams, 1990.
- Howard, Angela Falco. *The Imagery of the Cosmological Buddha*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1986.
- Ishida Hichitoyo. “Kegon kyō kai” (Paintings [relating to the] *Avataṃsaka Sūtra*). *Nihon no bijutsu* 11, no. 270 (1988).
- Kobayashi, Takeshi. *Nara Buddhist Art: Todai-ji*. New York: Weatherhill; Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1975.
- Kōsan-ji ten: Treasures of Kōsan-ji Temple*. Kyoto: Kyoto National Museum, Asahi Shimbun, Kyoro, 1981.
- Mun Myōngdae. “Silla hadae Pirosana pulsang chogak ūi yōn'gu” (A Study of Vairocana Buddha Sculptures from the later Silla). *Misul ch'waryo* 21 (1977): 16–40; 22 (1978): 28–37.
- Mun Myōngdae. *Han'guk chogak sa* (The History of Korean Sculpture). Seoul: Yōrhwa Tang, 1984.
- Mun Myōngdae. *Sōkkuram pulsang chogak ūi yōn'gu* (A Study of the Buddhist Sculptures in Sōkkuram). Seoul: Tongguk University, 1987.
- Sørensen, Henrik H. “The Hwaōm Kyōng Pyōnsang to: A Yi Dynasty Buddhist Painting of the Dharma Realm.” *Oriental Art* 34, no. 2 (1988): 91–105.
- Sørensen, Henrik H. “The Tang Buddhist Sculptures at Feixian Pavilion in Pujiang, Sichuan.” *Artibus Asiae* 63, nos. 1–2 (1998): 33–67.
- Su Bai et al., eds. *Masterpieces of Buddhist Statuary from Qingzhou City*. Beijing: Beijing Chinasights Fine Arts, 1999.
- Yukata Mino, ed. *The Great Eastern Temple: Treasures of Japanese Buddhist Art from Tōdai-ji*. Chicago: Art Institute of Chicago, Indiana University Press, 1986.

HENRIK H. SØRENSEN

## HUAYAN JING

The *Huayan jing*, a key MAHĀYĀNA scripture, is among the most influential texts in the history of East Asian

Buddhism. The scripture's cosmic vision of infinite and perfectly interfused worlds and its exalted depictions of an all-encompassing realm of reality inspired the formation of the HUAYAN SCHOOL, which adopted its name. In Chinese its full title is *Dafangguang fo huayan jing*. It is often referred to as the *Avataṃsaka-sūtra* (an abbreviation of *Buddhāvataṃsaka-nāma-mahāvaiṣṭya-sūtra*, a reconstruction of the Sanskrit title), and is also known by the English titles *Flower Garland Scripture* or *Flower Ornament Scripture*. The exact provenance of the text is uncertain. It was probably compiled around the third or fourth century C.E., perhaps in Central Asia. The scripture is of encyclopedic proportions and was composed by bringing together a number of shorter scriptures, some of which are preserved in extant Sanskrit versions or Chinese translations. The two best known of these constituent texts are the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra* (*Ten Stages Scripture*) and the *Gaṇḍavyūha-sūtra*, both of which circulated widely as independent texts.

The first Chinese translation, in sixty fascicles and thirty-four chapters, was completed by Buddhahadra (359–429) from 418 to 421. Another translation, in eighty fascicles and thirty-nine chapters, was finished during the 695 to 704 period by the Khotanese monk ŚIKṢĀNANDA (652–710). A third forty-fascicle translation, consisting of only the final chapter of the other two versions, was done from 795 to 798 by Prajña. There is also a Tibetan translation, which has forty-five chapters and is similar in scope to Śikṣānanda's version. Chinese scholars wrote a number of commentaries on the scripture, the most important of which are those by FAZANG (643–712) and CHENGGUAN (738–840), two patriarchs of the Huayan school.

Traditionally the *Huayan jing* is considered to be the first scripture preached by the Buddha, directed toward an audience of advanced BODHISATTVAS. Its contents were supposedly revealed just after the Buddha's realization of awakening, as he was deeply immersed in a profound samādhi that illuminates the true nature of reality. In accord with the text's arcane purport, its main buddha is Vairocana, the cosmic embodiment of the Buddha's body of truth (dharma-kāya). The contents of the scripture take on monumental proportions, covering a wide range of Mahāyāna beliefs, doctrines, and practices. Drawing heavily on rich traditions of Buddhist COSMOLOGY, the text is replete with mythical elements, including elaborate descriptions of otherworldly realms where limitless buddhas and bodhisattvas manifest sublime spiritual powers and perform the work of universal

salvation. The scripture makes extensive use of visual metaphors, especially images of light and space, in its depictions of an infinite universe in which all things interpenetrate without obstruction.

A central theme that runs throughout the whole text is the cultivation of the bodhisattva PATH, with its distinct stages, practices, and realizations. Chinese exegetical works analyze the scripture's depiction of the bodhisattva path in terms of fifty-two stages, which include ten faiths, ten abodes, ten practices, ten dedications, and ten stages. The path culminates with the attainment of the two levels of equal and sublime enlightenment. The bodhisattva path is retold in a dramatic fashion in the last (and by far longest) chapter, which relates the pilgrimage of the youth Sudhana who, during his search for enlightenment, meets various teachers, each of whom represents one of these specific stages. With respect to its doctrinal orientations, the scripture makes extensive use of the TATHĀGATAGARBHA doctrine and the attendant concept of Buddha nature, which are integrated into a larger theoretical framework that also incorporates the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL's teachings on ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) and the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL's theories of consciousness and reality.

### Bibliography

- Cheng-chien Bhikshu, trans. *Manifestation of the Tathāgata: Buddhahood According to the Avataṃsaka Sūtra*. Boston: Wisdom, 1993.
- Cleary, Thomas, trans. *The Flower Ornament Scripture*, 3 vols. Boston and London: Shambala, 1984–1987. Also published as a one-volume edition.

MARIO POCESKI

---

## HUAYAN SCHOOL

The Huayan school is one of the uniquely Chinese traditions of Buddhism that emerged during the Sui (581–618) and Tang (618–907) dynasties. It is especially known for its comprehensive and rarefied system of religious philosophy, which is widely regarded as a pinnacle of doctrinal development in medieval Chinese Buddhism. Huayan teachings also exerted a significant influence on the doctrinal evolution of other Buddhist traditions throughout East Asia. Huayan's formation was related to and inspired by the HUAYAN JING (Sanskrit, *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*; *Flower Garland Sūtra*), and the school adopted its name from

the scripture's title. Key Huayan concepts and doctrines, such as mutual interpenetration and identity, are based on religious motifs and discussions presented in the *Huayan jing*. Nonetheless, the Huayan school also drew on other texts and traditions, and was predisposed toward imaginative theoretical innovation. Accordingly, the full range of its teachings goes beyond parameters set by the *Huayan jing* and other canonical sources, and involves novel philosophical reflections on the nature of reality.

The mature Huayan system represents an ingenious amalgamation of mythopoetic motifs and doctrinal tenets of Indian provenance, on one hand, with philosophical outlooks and spiritual sentiments representative of indigenous Chinese religious and intellectual traditions, on the other. While they incorporate the main streams of MAHĀYĀNA scholasticism and substantiate their arguments by referring to an array of canonical sources, the writings of the Huayan patriarchs also reveal an unmistakably Chinese concern for harmony and balance, and a tendency to valorize the phenomenal realm. For that reason, the formation of the Huayan school is regarded as one of the culminating chapters in the sinification of Buddhism, especially in the transformation of doctrine.

The establishment of Huayan as a distinctive system of religious philosophy and practice was largely the work of a few brilliant monks active during the Tang dynasty, who were retroactively recognized as the tradition's patriarchs. Although there was relatively little original doctrinal development that occurred after them, Huayan teachings continued to be admired as a theoretical hallmark of Chinese Buddhism. They also left imprints on the evolution of Buddhist SOTERIOLOGY, especially as some of their key elements were absorbed into other traditions, such as the CHAN SCHOOL. Early on, Huayan was also transmitted to Korea and Japan, where it had a significant impact on the evolution of native Buddhist traditions. The Huayan worldview also exerted influence on other religious and philosophical traditions, such as neo-Confucianism, and it continues to provide a compelling vision with contemporary relevance.

### Early history

The gradual formation of a loosely defined and broadly constituted Huayan tradition started soon after the first Chinese translation of the *Huayan jing* was made by Buddhahadra (359–429) between 418 and 421. Before long, the scripture's influence was felt in different

spheres of medieval Chinese Buddhism. In the scholastic arena, the text inspired doctrinal speculations, gave rise to exegetical traditions, and appeared in taxonomies of teachings (*panjiao*), where it was typically treated as a repository of the Buddha's most profound teachings. The *Huayan jing* also had broad popular appeal. It became a focal point of various cultic activities, including religious rites and vegetarian feasts, and it motivated pious acts such as chanting and copying. The text also inspired artistic responses, evident in the production of numerous images and painting of Vairocana, the cosmic buddha who is its central deity.

The history of Huayan as a distinct school of Chinese Buddhism is usually discussed in reference to its famous five patriarchs, all of whom were creative thinkers who left their indelible marks on the history of East Asian Buddhism. Such a view of Huayan history is somewhat problematic, inasmuch as at the time of the early patriarchs there was no awareness of Huayan as an independent tradition and no notion of a patriarchal succession. The first four patriarchs were retroactively recognized as such only after their deaths, as the notion of spiritual LINEAGE became an important organizing principle, marker of religious orthodoxy, and source of legitimacy, largely due to the influence of the Chan school. Even so, there is no gainsaying the fact that the writings of the Huayan patriarchs are the core of Huayan's unique worldview, and that they encompass the main doctrinal and soteriological perspectives identified with the tradition.

**Dushun.** The putative first patriarch, Dushun (557–640), is an enigmatic figure who embodies both the popular and intellectual streams of the nascent Huayan movement. Also known as Fashun, he was revered by his contemporaries as a thaumaturge and meditation master, who was also recognized as a leading figure in local cultic traditions centered on the *Huayan jing*. His historical position in the doctrinal evolution of Huayan is based on his reputed authorship of *Fajie guanmen* (*Discernments of the Realm of Reality*), a seminal text that formulates some of the basic principles and themes of the mature Huayan system, most notably the causal relationship between principle (*li*) and phenomena (*shi*). Although recent scholarship has raised doubts about Dushun's authorship of this text, the evidence is not conclusive.

**Zhiyan.** Dushun was one of the teachers of Zhiyan (602–668), the second patriarch and the architect of the basic structure of Huayan's doctrinal system.

Zhiyan came from a gentry family and was born in the vicinity of the capital. A quiet monk of scholastic bent and keen intelligence, he was steeped in the scholastic traditions of his time. Following his entry into monastic life in his youth, he mastered the doctrines of the Dilun and Shelun schools, which emerged during the sixth century in response to the transmission of TATHĀGATAGARBHA doctrine and the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL into China. Dilun was an exegetical tradition based on VASUBANDHU's commentary to the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra* (*Ten Stages Scripture*), while Shelun was a Chinese version of the Yogācāra tradition that was based on PARAMĀRTHA's (499–569) translation of ASAṄGA's *Mahāyānasamgraha*. Zhiyan was also well versed in the VINAYA and had studied key Mahāyāna scriptures, such as the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, as well as earlier commentaries on the *Huayan jing*, especially the one written by Huiguang (468–537). Zhiyan used his extensive learning and doctrinal mastery in his study and thorough analysis of the *Huayan jing*. He wrote a ten-fascicle commentary on the scripture and a few shorter works. In them, he formulated some of the key doctrines that became hallmarks of Huayan thought, such as nature origination (*xingqi*) and conditioned origination of the realm of reality (*fajie yuanqi*).

**Fazang.** During his most productive years Zhiyan lived a quiet life at Mount Zhongnan, south of Chang'an, and he shunned the public limelight. In contrast, his brilliant disciple FAZANG (643–712) was at the center of the empire's cultural, religious, and political life, and was a recipient of great public recognition and imperial support. An exceptional scholar, creative thinker, and prolific writer, Fazang is regarded as the great systematizer of Huayan philosophy and effectively the founder of the tradition. Born in Chang'an of Sogdian ancestry, Fazang entered the monastic order only after Zhiyan's death. As a young man he participated in XUANZANG's (ca. 600–664) translation project, but left because of doctrinal disagreements. Later he was involved in ŚIKṢĀNANDA's (652–710) new translation of the *Huayan jing*, undertaken under imperial auspices. Fazang had an illustrious career, which was greatly helped by the unflagging patronage of Empress Wu Zetian, or Wu Zhao (r. 684–705). A record of Fazang's teaching presented to the empress is preserved as *Jin shizi zhang* (*Treatise on the Golden Lion*), a popular summary of Huayan doctrine whose title is derived from a statue in the imperial palace that was used by Fazang to illustrate his ideas.

Fazang was greatly successful in popularizing Huayan. His influence was such that the Huayan

school is also often called the Xianshou school, after the honorific name Empress Wu bestowed on Fazang. His major works include a large (twenty-fascicle) commentary on Buddhahadra's translation of the *Huayan jing*, entitled *Huayan jing tanxuan ji* (*Record of Exploration of the Huayan jing's Mysteries*); *Huayan wujiao chang* (*Treatise on the Five Teachings of Huayan*), which elaborates on his fivefold doctrinal taxonomy; and *Wangjin huanyuan guan* (*Contemplation of Ending Falsehood and Returning to the Source*), which deals with the philosophical and applied aspects of Huayan meditation. Fazang also wrote a history of the transmission of Huayan in China, *Huayan jing zhuan ji*, and an authoritative commentary titled *Qixin lun yi ji* on the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN), an important text that had profound influence on the development of Fazang's thought.

**Huiyuan.** After Fazang's death, his student Huiyuan (ca. 673–743) completed *Kanding ji*, an abbreviated commentary on Śikṣānanda's new translation of the *Huayan jing*, which was started by Fazang but left unfinished. Huiyuan also wrote a few additional works, but despite the prominent status he enjoyed during his lifetime he was subsequently ostracized and his teachings were labeled as heterodox. This censure was largely due to Huiyuan's divergence from aspects of Fazang's thought, especially his critique of Fazang's inclusion of the sudden teachings (*dunjiao*) in his fivefold taxonomy of teachings.

**Chengguan.** Huiyuan's strongest critic was CHENGGUAN (738–839), who came to be recognized as the fourth patriarch. Since he studied under a disciple of Huiyuan decades after Fazang's death, Chengguan's recognition as a Huayan patriarch was based on his high stature and his contributions to the evolution of Huayan doctrine, rather than on his direct connection with Fazang.

An exceptional scholar of prodigious learning and deep religious commitment, Chengguan mastered a broad range of canonical literature. In addition, he studied the teachings of other Buddhist traditions, especially Chan, Tiantai, and Sanlun, and he was learned in non-Buddhist literature, including the Confucian and Daoist classics. Chengguan had a highly successful monastic career during which he served under seven Tang emperors and he was a recipient of numerous imperial honors, including the titles of national teacher, grand recorder of monks, and controller of the clergy. Chengguan's magnum opus is his



monumental commentary on Śikṣānanda's translation of the *Huayan jing*, which he supplemented with a sub-commentary. A masterpiece of medieval exegetical literature, Chengguan's work superseded all earlier commentaries and was recognized as an authoritative study of the scripture. The commentary exceeds the scope and length of the scripture and is unrivaled in its comprehensive coverage and subtle analysis. Chengguan's major contribution to Huayan's doctrinal evolution was his theory of the four realms of reality (DHARMA DHĀTU). He was also the first Huayan scholar to take into account the teachings of the Chan school, which he studied during his early years.

**Zongmi.** The connection with Chan was further extended by Chengguan's student ZONGMI (780–841), the fifth and last of the Huayan patriarchs. Born into a gentry family in Sichuan, Zongmi received a classical education in his youth. He became interested in Chan during his twenties, and before long decided to enter the monastic order. Zongmi became a student of Chengguan in 812 after his move to Chang'an. Subsequently he had a successful clerical career and authored a number of works that cover a broad range of topics. Zongmi's position within Huayan is somewhat ambiguous because his writings do not focus directly on the *Huayan jing*, and because he was also recognized as a member of the Chan lineage. He made lasting contribution to the rapprochement between Chan and the doctrinal traditions of Buddhism (*jiao*), represented mainly (but not exclusively) by Huayan. He also introduced changes in his doctrinal taxonomy by including the teachings of Confucianism and Daoism, and by elevating the TATHĀGATAGARBHA theory to a place of preeminence at the expense of the perfect teaching represented by the *Huayan jing*.

**Li Tongxuan.** Another notable figure during the Tang period was Fazang's contemporary Li Tongxuan (635–730), a lay recluse whose whole life is shrouded in mystery. Li's major work was his commentary on the *Huayan jing* (in forty fascicles), and he also wrote a few shorter works. Li studied Fazang's writings, but his exegesis of the scripture often adopts a different approach and puts forward novel ideas and interpretations. Although he was not widely recognized during his lifetime, Li's writings became popular after the Tang period among Chan monks, and they were transmitted to Japan and Korea, where they achieved high acclaim.

### Further spread and influence

With Zongmi, the patriarchal tradition came to an end. Yet, that was not the end of Huayan history in China. Huayan continued to be studied as a major system of Buddhist philosophy. Its key tenets also became diffused as part of a general Chinese Buddhist worldview and they were gradually absorbed into other Buddhist schools. Huayan influences can be found in the records of many Chan teachers, including Dongshan (807–869), Caoshan (840–901), Fayen (885–958), and Dahui ZONGGAO (1089–1163). Huayan concepts and teachings, such as nature origination, were also absorbed into the Tiantai school. Huayan influences are evident in the writings of ZHANRAN (711–782), who revived Tiantai's sagging fortunes during the Tang, even as he tried to demonstrate the superiority of Tiantai over Huayan. The increasing scope of Huayan influences became a point of contention during the Tiantai debates of the Northern Song period (960–1126), as proponents of the Shanwai (Off Mountain) faction of Tiantai were criticized by ZHILI (960–1028) and his Shanjia (Home Mountain) faction for their unwarranted adoption of Huayan metaphysics, mainly derived from the writings of Chengguan and Zongmi. There was also a modest Huayan revival during the Song, spearheaded by the reputed “four masters”—Daoting, Shihui, Xidi, and Guanfu—but their main focus was on commenting on the works of the Tang patriarchs rather than on charting new paths of doctrinal development for the school.

**Korea.** Beyond China, Huayan entered Korea (where it is known as Hwaŏm) at an early stage of the tradition's history. The first transmitter and leading Hwaŏm figure during the Silla period (668–935) was ŪISANG (625–702). Ūisang traveled to China and became a student of Zhiyan at Mount Zhongnan. He was a senior colleague of Fazang and the two formed a lasting friendship. After returning to his native land in 671, Ūisang was successful in establishing Hwaŏm as a major Buddhist tradition on the Korean peninsula. He built a number of monasteries and secured the official patronage of the royal court, which bestowed on him the title of national teacher. Ūisang's major work, the brief *Hwaŏm ilsŭng pŏpkye to (Chart of the Huayan One-Vehicle Realm of Reality)*, was presented to Zhiyan during his stay in China and it remains a classic exposition of Huayan thought.

Because of the great influence of Ūisang and his disciples, Hwaŏm became the primary theoretical system of Korean Buddhism and served as the foundation for

the subsequent doctrinal evolution of the native tradition, even after Chan (or Sōn in Korean) became established as the predominant Buddhist school. Another major figure during the Silla period was Ŭisang's friend WŎNHYO (617–686), arguably the foremost scholar in the history of Korean Buddhism. Although not formally affiliated with the Hwaōm tradition, Wŏnhyo was deeply influenced by Hwaōm ideas and teachings, which shaped his creation of an integrated system of Buddhist philosophy that attempted to harmonize the differences of the various schools. Some of Wŏnhyo's writings were transmitted to China and his commentary on the *Awakening of Faith* exerted considerable influence on Fazang's thought.

Hwaōm continued to be a major tradition of Korean Buddhism into the early part of the Koryŏ dynasty (918–1392). Its predominant position was supplanted by the resurgent Sōn school, but Korean thinkers were able to create an integrated Buddhist tradition that incorporated teachings and practices from both of these schools. Major contributions in that direction were made by CHINUL (1158–1210), the most prominent monk of the period, who created a successful synthesis that incorporated both Hwaōm scholasticism and Sōn meditation practice. Chinul was also fond of Li Tongxuan's commentary on the *Huayan jing*, which became an important text in Korean Buddhism thanks to his advocacy. Chinul's vision of an integrated and ecumenical Buddhist church became normative within Korea and, notwithstanding its past and present detractors, remains a principal model for a distinctive native tradition, in which Hwaōm thought plays a more central role than it does in any other contemporary Buddhist tradition.

**Japan.** Huayan also entered Japan (where it is known as Kegon) at an early date. In 740 the Korean monk Simsang (or Shinjō in Japanese, d. 742), a disciple of Fazang, was invited by Emperor Shōmu (r. 724–749) to lecture on the *Huayan jing* at Konshōji (later renamed Tōdaiji) in Nara, the Japanese capital. The invitation was extended at the urging of Rōben (689–773), a descendant of Korean immigrants and a specialist in the doctrine of the Hossō school (Chinese, FAXIANG SCHOOL). As a leading Buddhist figure with good political connections, Rōben was instrumental in the establishment of Kegon as one of the eight schools of NARA BUDDHISM, which functioned as traditions of Buddhist learning rather than as independent sects. Rōben was also involved in the construction of the great Buddha at Tōdaiji, and subsequently he became

the monastery's chief priest. The great Buddha, representing Vairocana as the principal Buddha of the Huayan universe, was consecrated in 752 under the auspices of Emperor Shōmu. Tōdaiji emerged as a focal institution for Kegon studies (and the study of other scholastic traditions) and a prominent center of Buddhist culture. Despite its turbulent history, including its destruction in 1180, the rebuilt monastery and its great Buddha statue remain potent symbols of Kegon's prominent place in Japanese Buddhism.

While interest in the study of the Nara schools declined during the Heian period (794–1185), there were prominent scholar-monks during the following Kamakura era (1185–1333) who continued the tradition of Kegon learning. Well-known examples include Myōe KŌBEN (1173–1232) and GYŌNEN (1240–1321). Known as a restorer of the Kegon tradition, Myōe was also well versed in the teachings of esoteric Buddhism and Chan, and he was known for his strict observance of the precepts. His supporters included a number of prominent aristocrats, and he was successful in turning Kōzanji, a monastery located in the vicinity of Kyoto, into a center of Kegon studies. Gyōnen, a Kegon monk of extensive learning, was known for his expertise in the vinaya. He moved to Tōdaiji in 1277 and afterwards he lectured on the *Huayan jing*. He also presented lectures on Fazang's *Wujiao zhang* at the imperial court, which later awarded him the title of national teacher. Although Gyōnen is chiefly associated with the Kegon school, he was well versed in the teachings of other schools of Buddhism, as can be seen from one of his principal works, *Hasshū kōyō* (*Outline of the Eight Schools*), which is still read as a popular summary of the history and doctrines of the major schools of Japanese Buddhism.

Beyond the narrowly defined Kegon tradition, evidence of Huayan influences can be found in the writings of other major figures in the history of Japanese Buddhism. One such example is KŪKAI (774–835), the founder of SHINGON BUDDHISM, who drew on Huayan doctrine in his systematization of esoteric Buddhism, and who ranked Huayan just below Shingon in his tenfold taxonomy of the Buddhist teachings. Another example is SAICHŌ (767–822), the founder of Tendai, who studied Huayan texts during his formative years and whose writings reflect the influence of Huayan ideas.

### Taxonomies of teachings

Like other taxonomies of teachings (or “classified teachings”; *panjiao*) created by medieval Chinese scholiasts, Huayan taxonomies involve the ordering of the

major doctrines of Buddhism and exemplify the Chinese penchant for order and hierarchy. Within a given taxonomy each doctrine is recognized as a meaningful part of the totality of Buddhist teachings, while the whole structure performs the hermeneutical function of relating diverse Buddhist traditions to each other and integrating them into a comprehensive conceptual framework. At the same time, within such a rigid hierarchical ordering, all teachings, with the exception of the highest teaching, are judged to convey only partial understanding of the ultimate truth. The best-known Huayan taxonomy is the fivefold classificatory scheme created by Fazang. Within it, the lowest level is represented by the HĪNAYĀNA teaching, which reveals the emptiness of self but not the emptiness of phenomena (dharma). Next comes the elementary teaching of Mahāyāna, which consists of two parts: the Faxiang version of Yogācāra and the Madhyamaka/Sanlun teaching of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS). At the third level there is the advanced teaching of Mahāyāna, which is identified with the tathāgatagarbha doctrine (combined with the earlier type of Yogācāra that was transmitted to China by Paramārtha). That is followed by the sudden teaching, which involves the abandonment of words and concepts and the immediate realization of reality. Finally, at the pinnacle there is the perfect teaching that consummately reveals the whole truth without the slightest deficiency or partiality; Fazang identifies this teaching exclusively with the *Huayan jing*. While Fazang's fivefold nomenclature was based on earlier classificatory schemes developed by Zhiyan, who himself drew on taxonomies formulated by pre-Tang scholars such as Huiguang, his taxonomy represents an important point of departure inasmuch as it is the first one to present Huayan as being absolutely superior to all other traditions.

Fazang was criticized by his disciple Huiyuan for including the sudden teaching in his doctrinal taxonomy. Huiyuan argued that the sudden teaching does not qualify as a separate category because it has no doctrinal content specific to it. Following criteria employed in Tiantai taxonomies, he also noted that the sudden teaching refers to the manner of instruction and thus does not belong to Fazang's classification, given that its basic organizing principle is the content of the teaching rather than the manner in which it is communicated. Fazang's doctrinal taxonomy was defended by Chengguan, who argued (perhaps not entirely convincingly) that Huiyuan's critique was unwarranted, since he failed to realize that the sudden teaching cor-

responded to the newly formed Chan tradition. By identifying Chan with the sudden teaching, Chengguan was able to assign Chan a high position within his taxonomy and integrate it into the Buddhist mainstream, while still subordinating it to Huayan.

### Doctrines

Huayan's system of religious philosophy and practice is a vast conglomeration of abstruse doctrines, expounded by recourse to a highly technical vocabulary. At its core is a holistic vision of the universe as a dynamic web of causal interrelationships, in which each and every thing and event is related to everything else as they interpenetrate without any obstruction. The Huayan depiction of reality is an ingenious reworking of the central Buddhist doctrine of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGATION), which postulates that things are empty of self-nature and thus lack independent existence, and yet they exist provisionally as they are created through the interaction of various causal factors. In Huayan's discussion of causality, the focus shifts away from the correlation between emptiness and form representative of PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE and toward the relationship between individual phenomena or events (*shi*) and the basic principle(s) of reality (*li*). The causal relationship between phenomena and principle is that of mutual inclusion, interpenetration, and identity. That relationship is elaborated in Chengguan's doctrine of the four realms of reality (*dharmadhātu*): (1) the realm of individual phenomena (*shi fajie*); (2) the realm of principle (*li fajie*); (3) the realm of nonobstruction between principle and phenomena (*lishi wuai fajie*); and (4) the realm of non-obstruction between all phenomena (*shishi wuai fajie*).

The last two realms are also explained by the doctrines of nature origination and dependent origination of the realm of reality, respectively. According to Fazang's explanation of nature origination, all phenomena are ultimately created based on the "nature," which stands for the emptiness or suchness of things. Therefore, the nature is the source of all phenomena, and yet it does not exist outside of them. In that sense, the theory does not postulate a dichotomy between the absolute and phenomenal orders, but rather elucidates the interdependent relationship between ultimate reality and phenomenal appearances. The doctrine of dependent origination of the realm of reality goes a step further and shifts the focus to the causal relationship that obtains between individual phenomena. Based on the notions of lack of self-nature and the dependent

origin of all things, it postulates that each phenomenon is determined by the totality of all phenomena of which it is a part, while the totality is determined by each of the phenomena that comprise it. Therefore, each phenomenon is determining every other phenomenon, while it is also in turn being determined by each and every other phenomenon. All phenomena are thus interdependent and interpenetrate without hindrance, and yet each one of them retains its distinct identity.

According to Huayan's viewpoint, any individual thing or phenomenon, being empty of self-nature and thus identical to the principle, can be seen both as a conditioning cause of the whole and as being caused by the whole. In addition, every phenomenon conditions the existence of every other phenomenon and vice versa. Accordingly, nothing exists by itself, but requires everything else to be what it truly is. The Huayan analysis of causality is not concerned with temporal sequencing and does not postulate causal processes that involve a progressive unfolding of events. Instead, its philosophy represents an attempt to elucidate the causal relationships that obtain among all phenomena in the universe at any given time.

A popular metaphor that exemplifies Huayan's notion of mutual interpenetration of all phenomena is that of Indra's net. The image of Indra's net of jewels originally comes from the *Huayan jing*, which describes how in the heaven of the god Indra there is a vast net that extends infinitely in all directions. Each knot of the net holds a gleaming jewel, and because the net is limitless in size it contains an infinite number of jewels. As the multifaceted surface of each jewel reflects all other jewels in the net, each of the reflected jewels also contains the reflections of all other jewels; thus there is an unending process of infinite reflections.

Notwithstanding the complex and recondite character of much of Huayan doctrine, its principles found resonance within large segments of the Buddhist world in East Asia. As they became key influences on religious and intellectual life, they were absorbed as elements of the native cultures. Huayan thinkers constructed a compelling and deeply satisfying worldview that was distinctly Chinese, yet based on essential concepts and teachings presented in the Buddhist canon. Huayan religious philosophy still retains its relevance to vital human concerns and has stimulated a significant cross-fertilization of ideas and viewpoints with modern philosophical and humanistic movements, including ENGAGED BUDDHISM and environmentalism.

### Bibliography

- Chang, Garma C. C. *The Buddhist Teaching of Totality: The Philosophy of Hwa Yen Buddhism*. University Park and London: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1971.
- Cleary, Thomas. *Entry into the Inconceivable: An Introduction to Hua-yen Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Cook, Francis H. *Hua-yen Buddhism: The Jewel Net of Indra*. University Park and London: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1977.
- Gimello, Robert. "Aphatic and Kataphatic Discourse in Mahāyāna: A Chinese View." *Philosophy East and West* 26, no. 2 (1976): 117–136.
- Gimello, Robert. "Li T'ung-hsüan and the Practical Dimensions of Hua-yen." In *Studies in Ch'an and Hua-yen*, ed. Robert M. Gimello and Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Gregory, Peter N. *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Gregory, Peter N., trans. *Inquiry into the Origin of Humanity: An Annotated Translation of Tsung-mi's Yüan jen lun with a Modern Commentary*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1995.

MARIO POCESKI

---

## HUINENG

Huineng (ca. 638–713) is the putative sixth patriarch of the Chinese CHAN SCHOOL. It is best to recognize two Huinengs, historical and legendary. Very little is known of the rather insignificant historical figure, who was an early Chan teacher of regional prominence in the far south, perhaps a member of a local gentry family. Even his most famous student and promoter, Heze Shenhui (684–758), remembered virtually nothing about his master's biography. The dates given for Huineng's life are at least approximately correct, but they derive from a later legendary source.

The far more important legendary image of Huineng is based primarily on the PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING), which appeared around 780. Here Huineng is depicted as an illiterate and impoverished layman whose grandfather had been banished to the far south and who supported his mother by the very humble endeavor of collecting firewood. Hardworking and filial, in spite of his total lack of social advantages this Huineng possessed innate spiritual insight. This gift led him to the monastic training

center of Hongren (601–674), described in the *Platform Sūtra* as the “fifth patriarch” of Chan. After eight months as a menial worker at Hongren’s monastery in central China (Hubei province), Huineng composed a verse in response to one by Shenxiu (ca. 606–706), known historically as the central figure of the so-called Northern school of Chan. Because of the insight supposedly shown in his verse, that very night Hongren taught Huineng the ultimate teachings of Chan (based on the DIAMOND SŪTRA), appointed him the sixth patriarch, gave him the robe and bowl of the founding patriarch BODHIDHARMA (ca. early fifth century), and sent him away to protect him from jealous rivals. After spending sixteen years in hiding, Huineng announced his identity and became ordained as a Buddhist monk, after which he taught at Caoqi (Guangdong province) until his death.

Precisely because of his historical obscurity, Chan lineages from the late eighth century onward were easily able to identify themselves with him. Accounts connecting him with Nanyue Huairang, and through him Mazu DAOYI (709–788) and the later Linji (Japanese, Rinzai) lineage, as well as with Qingyuan Xingsi, and through him Shitou Xiqian (700–790) and the later Caodong (Japanese, Sōtō) lineage, are palpably fictional. However, those accounts are of foundational importance to the Chan tradition, and they draw on the legendary image of Huineng to create a totalistic explanation of Buddhist spiritual training that fits the contemporary Chinese social world.

The thorough fictionality of the legendary image of Huineng only indicates its great literary and mythopoetic power. This image resonates deeply with Buddhist and native Chinese mythic themes: Social standing and family identity were theoretically unimportant in the face of true virtue and insight, which is personified in the most humble of figures. The interaction between Hongren, Shenxiu, and Huineng dramatized and helped define for later readers the generational dynamics of Chan religious training, in which the achievement of enlightenment gives one access to authority within the lineage.

In the Chan tradition, Huineng is associated with the “sudden” teaching, whereby enlightenment occurs in a single instantaneous transformation. This is often contrasted with the “gradual” teaching, whereby one moves toward enlightenment through progressive stages. Members of both the Linji and Caodong lineages generally claim the subitist teaching for themselves and criticize the other as gradualist.

### Bibliography

McRae, John R. *Seeing through Zen: Encounter, Transformation, and Genealogy in Chinese Chan Buddhism*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2003.

JOHN R. MCRAE

## HUIYUAN

Huiyuan (334–416) is an important vaunt-courier of the PURE LAND SCHOOLS of Buddhism. As a young man Huiyuan applied himself to Confucian and Daoist studies until he met DAO’AN (312–385), whereupon he took the tonsure to become Dao’an’s disciple. After their monastery suffered military attack in 378, Huiyuan moved to South China, settling on Lushan (Mount Lu), where he remained until his death. Huiyuan thereafter established an extremely vibrant monastic and lay community that, in its devotion to doctrinal study, practice, and rigorous maintenance of the precepts, became a model for later Buddhist monasteries. His correspondence with KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413), later compiled as the document *Dasheng dayizhang* (*The Chief Ideas of the Māhāyāna*), is an important resource for understanding the difficulties faced by the Chinese Buddhist community in understanding such concepts as ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), *dharmakāya*, and momentariness.

Huiyuan is also known as the first leader in China of organized ritual practice aimed at rebirth in the Pure Land of AMITĀBHA Buddha. Huiyuan’s group of monastic and lay Buddhists, in its devotion to samādhi via *nianfo* (Japanese, *nenbutsu*) practice, may have been the first of its kind. Aside from a preface to a collection of *nianfo* samādhi poems, everything known about Huiyuan’s Pure Land activities comes from sources written in the eighth century or later, when there was great interest in Pure Land thought and history. But Tang and Song period Pure Land scholars regarded Huiyuan and what some called his White Lotus Society as having played a foundational role in establishing Pure Land thought and practice in China, and some recognized Huiyuan as the first Chinese patriarch of this school.

See also: *Nenbutsu* (Chinese, *Nianfo*; Korean, *Yōmbul*)

**Bibliography**

Lieenthal, Walter. "Shih Hui-yuan's Buddhism." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 70 (1950): 243–259.

Zürcher, E. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

MARK L. BLUM

---

**HWAŎM SCHOOL.** *See* **Huayan School**

**HYESIM**

Hyesim (Chin'gak *kuksa*, 1178–1234) was an eminent Sŏn (Chinese, Chan) school master from the mid-Koryŏ dynasty. Like many other Koryŏ- and Chosŏn-era figures, he entered the Buddhist order with a strong Confucian background. Hyesim passed the highest-ranking civil service exam and taught at a Confucian institute. But in 1202, after the death of his mother (who had adamantly opposed his wishes to be ordained), he joined CHINUL's Susŏnsa (Cultivation of Chan) Society and became his disciple. After studying with Chinul for a period of time, Hyesim went off on his own to practice in places such as Osan and Chirisan, learning from a number of different masters. He eventually returned to Chinul, who acknowledged his disciple's attainment of enlightenment. When Chinul passed away in 1210, Hyesim was pressed into taking the mantle of leadership of the society, thus becoming its second patriarch. He spent the rest of his life expanding the society, studying the *kanhwa* meditation technique developed by Chinul, and writing and compiling voluminously.

Most renowned of Hyesim's extensive works are the *Sŏnmun gangyo* (*Essentials of the Sŏn School*) and the *Sŏnmun yŏmsong chip* (*Enlightenment Verses of the Sŏn School*). The latter is a massive collection of edifying ancient precedents from Chan and pre-Chan Buddhist literature, which has been viewed as an important source for adherents of KŎAN (Korean, *kongan*) meditation throughout East Asia down to the present day. Hyesim passed away at the age of fifty-seven and received the posthumous title National Master Chin'gak (True Enlightenment).

*See also:* **Chan School**

**Bibliography**

Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Collected Works of Chinul*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.

A. CHARLES MULLER

**HYUJŎNG**

The Buddhist monk Hyujŏng (1520–1604) lived during the Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910) in Korea, when Buddhism, marginalized by an aggressively neo-Confucian state, eked out survival in the form of so-called Mountain Buddhism. Buddhist monasteries were under the control of the government and Buddhist monks, placed at the bottom of the Chosŏn social spectrum, were prohibited from entering the capital.

Hyujŏng is also known as Ch'ŏnghŏ taesa (Master Ch'ŏnghŏ) or Sŏsan taesa (Master of Western Mountain) because he resided primarily on Mount Myohyang, also known as Sŏsan (Western) Mountain. His secular name was Ch'oe Hyŏnŭng; Hyujŏng is his dharma name. He was orphaned at the age of ten, and raised by Yi Sajŭng, a Confucian scholar who was a local government official. After being educated in the Confucian classics at home, Hyujŏng entered the Sŏnggyun'gwan, an academy for the Confucian elite. He failed the rigorous civil service examination necessary for government office, however, and then embarked on a period of travel, during which time he was introduced to MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist texts at Mount Chiri. This experience set the stage for his decision to become a monk. He later studied Sŏn (Chinese, Chan) under the guidance of Master Puyong Yŏnggwan (1485–1571), who eventually recognized his enlightenment.

During his career as a Sŏn monk, Hyujŏng did not ignore the importance of *kyo* (doctrinal teaching); he acknowledged that doctrine is a companion to practice. In his work *Sŏn'ga kwigam* (*Speculum on the Sŏn School*), he states "Sŏn is the mind of the Buddha and doctrine is his word." However, he never thought doctrine to be the equal of meditation. This is clear in his theory of *sagyo ipsŏn*, which means "abandon doctrine and enter Sŏn." Hyujŏng authored a number of texts on the relation between Sŏn and doctrine, and the importance of Sŏn practice for attaining enlightenment. The most important are *Sŏn'gyo sŏk* (*The Exposition of Sŏn and Doctrine*), *Sŏn'gyo kyŏl* (*The Secret of Sŏn and*

*Doctrine*), and *Simbŏp yoch'o* (*The Essential Excerpts of the Teachings of Mind*). He also wrote books attempting to incorporate the three main traditions in East Asian thought—Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism—into a Sŏn framework, such as *Samga kwigam* (*Speculum on the Three Teachings*).

Hyujŏng also played a role in Korean political history as the organizer of the so-called Monk's Militia that helped repel the Japanese invasion of 1592. Depending on one's point of view, this can be seen as a highly successful manifestation of the Korean tradition of *hoguk pulgyo* (state-protection Buddhism) or as a striking example of the distorting influence of political involvement on Korean Buddhism. Considering the strongly Confucian tenor of the culture at that time, however, and the fact that Hyujŏng was raised in

the home of a Confucian scholar, it might not be surprising that he chose a more actively patriotic course.

*See also:* Chan School; Confucianism and Buddhism; Korea; Yujŏng

### **Bibliography**

Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "Buddhism under Confucian Domination: The Synthetic Vision of Sŏsan Hyujŏng." In *Culture and the State in the Late Chosŏn Korea*, ed. JaHyun Kim Haboush and Martina Deuchler. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 1999.

Kim, Yŏng-t'ae. "Master Hyujŏng: His Thought and Dharma Lineage." In *Buddhism in the Early Chosŏn: Suppression and Transformation*, ed. Lewis R. Lancaster and Chai-shin Yu. Berkeley: Institute of East Asian Studies, 1996.

SUNGTAEK CHO



## ICCHANTIKA

The notion of the *icchantika* (loosely rendered into English as “hedonist” or “dissipated”) is the closest Buddhism comes to a notion of damnation or perdition. *icchantika* refers to a class, or “lineage” (Sanskrit, *gotra*), of beings who are beyond all redemption and lose forever the capacity to achieve NIRVĀNA (Sanskrit, *aparinirvāṇagotraka*). The NIRVĀNA SŪTRA defines the *icchantika* as one who “does not believe in the law of causality, has no feeling of shame, has no faith in the workings of KARMA, is unconcerned with the present or the future, never befriends good people, and does not follow the teachings of the Buddha.” The term is often employed polemically in MAHĀYĀNA texts, as for example the LAṆKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA (*Discourse of the Descent into Laṅka*), to refer to beings who are antagonistic toward the Mahāyāna canon. Their destiny is typically an eternity in the HELLS. Some BODHISATTVA *icchantikas* intentionally choose this spiritual lineage because they “cherish certain vows for all beings since beginningless time” (*sattvānādikālapraṇidhānata*), and they wish to help all beings gain nirvāṇa.

The *icchantika* doctrine has long been controversial in Mahāyāna because it seems to contradict an axiom of many strands of Buddhism: the innate presence of the buddha-nature, or TATHĀGATAGARBHA, in all sentient beings. The Chinese commentator DAOSHENG (ca. 360–434), for example, debunked the theory and even had the audacity to question the accuracy of passages in sūtra translations that mentioned the lamentable destiny of *icchantikas*. With the prominent exception of the FAXIANG SCHOOL, the Chinese branch of Yogācāra, East Asian Buddhists resoundingly rejected the *icchantika* doctrine in favor of the notion

that all beings, even the denizens of hell, retained the capacity to attain enlightenment.

*See also:* Cosmology; Path

### **Bibliography**

Buswell, Robert E., Jr. “The Path to Perdition: The Wholesome Roots and Their Eradication.” In *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. and Robert M. Gimello. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.

Suzuki Daisetz Teitaro. *Studies in the Laṅkāvatāra Sūtra* (1930). London and Boston: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1972.

ROBERT E. BUSWELL, JR.

---

**IGNORANCE.** *See* Praṭītyasamutpāda (Dependent Origination)

---

## IKKYŪ

Born in Kyoto to a court lady-in-waiting and, according to some sources, the young sovereign Gokomatsu (1377–1433), Ikkyū Sōjun (1394–1481) became an acolyte at age five at the Zen temple Ankokuji. He later trained under two harsh, iconoclastic Zen masters, first Ken’ō Sōi (d. 1414) and then Kasō Sōdon (1352–1428). Kasō granted his student the name Ikkyū (One Pause) after he had an awakening experience in 1418. Around 1425 Ikkyū moved to Sakai, where he reveled in an independent, pleasure-loving way of life. At age seventy-seven, he fell in love with the blind minstrel Lady Mori,



and may have fathered a daughter with her. At eighty, he was appointed abbot of the great Zen monastery Daitokuji, which had been mostly destroyed in the Ōnin war (1467); Ikkyū completely rebuilt it in the last years of his life.

Ikkyū is a Zen master beloved as much for his outlandish jokes and erotic affairs as for his ascetic meditation practice. One New Year's Day he appeared in the streets of Kyoto brandishing a human skull on a pole, claiming that this reminder of death should not dampen the day's spirit of celebration. Ikkyū refused to receive or grant official dharma transmission, compared the Zen of his day to a wooden sword—all show and no substance—and flouted convention by frequenting bars and brothels. He is well known for his literary works, including *Skeletons (Gaikotsu)*, *Crazy Cloud Collection (Kyōunshū)*, and many other poems and prose works, as well as calligraphy and paintings.

*See also:* Chan Art; Chan School; Japanese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in

#### Bibliography

- Arntzen, Sonya. *Ikkyū and the Crazy Cloud Anthology: A Zen Poet of Medieval Japan*. Tokyo: University of Tokyo Press, 1987.
- Berg, Stephen, trans. *Crow with No Mouth: Ikkyū, Fifteenth Century Zen Master*. Reprint. Port Townsend, WA: Copper Canyon Press, 2000.
- Sanford, James. *Zen-Man Ikkyū*. Chico, CA: Scholar's Press, 1981.

SARAH FREMERMAN

---

IMPERMANENCE. *See* Anitya (Impermanence)

---

## INDIA

For Buddhists, India is a land of many buddhas. From time immemorial, bodhisattvas have been born within India's borders, have awakened there, and have attained final NIRVĀṆA. As the buddha of our present era, Śākyamuni is crucial but not unique: The dharma he taught has been found and lost countless times over the ages. This myth of buddhahood has profoundly affected traditional biographies of Śākyamuni, a fact that limits their utility as evidence for "what really happened."

Historians accept that Śākyamuni lived, taught, and founded a monastic order. But they cannot easily accept most details included in his biographies. Available sources are twofold—textual and archaeological—and neither is satisfactory. Textual sources cannot be fully trusted, since even the earliest extant texts date to five centuries after Śākyamuni's death; archaeological sources are older, but sparser in their details. For this reason, scholars cannot agree upon the century in which Śākyamuni lived. One chronology places his life circa 566 to 486 B.C.E.; a second, circa 488 to 368 B.C.E., and other dates are proposed as well. Scholars do not know all the doctrines Śākyamuni taught, nor how people regarded him in his own day. Lacking even such basic knowledge, one can consider the social milieu of Buddhism's origins in only the most general terms.

#### The social milieu of early Buddhism (fifth or fourth century B.C.E.)

To understand the rise of Buddhism, one must look to a world in transition. Approximately one millennium before Siddhārtha Gautama—the man who was to become the Buddha Śākyamuni—was born, waves of nomads, the Indo-Āryans, crossed the mountain passes of Afghanistan in approach to South Asia. Little is known about these people. What is known comes from their sacred Vedas, collections of hymns and lore to be used in the performance of ritual. These texts represent the Indo-Āryans as proud warriors, noble masters of the world who by 1000 B.C.E. began replacing their caravans with agrarian settlements. As agricultural production increased, villages developed into towns, and towns into cities.

As the Indo-Āryans settled, Vedic lore increasingly became the dominant ideology of the Gangetic plain in North India. Vedic Brahmin priests performed rituals, told stories of the gods, and explained the working of the universe; they even guaranteed supporters a favorable place in the afterlife. But the Vedas had been composed when the Indo-Āryans were nomad-warriors. Although the Brahmins held that their sacred knowledge was valid in this new urban context, some found that a hollow claim. Men like Siddhārtha Gautama were not satisfied by the ordinary patterns of daily life, or the Vedic legitimations thereof. Such men left their families and wandered out of the cities to become śramaṇas (seekers). Siddhārtha was to become the most successful critic of the Vedic Brahmins, and the most famous representative of India's seeker movement.

The problem, as Siddhārtha saw it, was that the Vedic priests of his day did not merit their high social

status. Those Brahmins claimed to be the offspring of Brahmā (the creator god), and thus to be conduits of supermundane power (Brahman) in the human world. When the seeker Siddhārtha encountered these priests, however, he did not find them upright or learned gods-on-earth. To the contrary, Buddhist texts present them as beguiled by the wealth and tumult of urban India. They come across as greedy, foolish, proud men who hide their fraud behind high-flown claims to supremacy based upon the ancient names of their clans and caste.

By considering the institutional foundation of Buddhism in its sociohistorical context, one finds Śākyamuni to have been a critic and innovator whose institutional genius lay in his ability to legitimate new rituals of social engagement appropriate to the economic situation of his day through claims that he was merely reforming a broken social-spiritual order. For instance, verse 393 in DHAMMAPADA (*Words of the Doctrine*) reads: “One is not a Brahmin because [one wears] dreadlocks, or due to one’s clan or caste. It is due to truth and dharma that one is pure, and is a Brahmin.” This verse promises that Buddhist “Brahmins,” unlike the Vedic, are not frauds, for their brahminhood is guaranteed by the imprimatur of Śākyamuni himself, the teacher of true dharma. Vedic priests, by contrast, were not only frauds, but dangerous frauds. For by denouncing these priests’ brahminhood, Śākyamuni also denied the efficacy of their rituals. In their place he offered his own disciples, who had realized FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS and become worthy “Brahmins.” The multiple connotations of the word *ārya*—the ethnonym for India’s conquerors, the adjective *noble*, a description of Buddhist truths—connect Śākyamuni’s religious innovations with hallowed memories of the past. In sum, rather than sponsor elaborate Vedic rites or pay the fees of Vedic priests, the laity were directed to make offerings of food, clothing, and medicine to Śākyamuni and his SAṄGHA (community of monks). This was presented as a truly efficacious way to earn spiritual merit, ensuring a family member’s favorable afterlife. As receivers of gifts, Buddhist monks were ideally suited to the new urban landscape of northern India.

### **The saṅgha and social norms (fifth or fourth century B.C.E.)**

According to Buddhist lore, the saṅgha was founded when Śākyamuni taught the *Dharmacakrapravartana-sūtra* (*Turning the Wheel of the Law*) to five men who had been his companions when he undertook intense

ascetic rigors before he attained buddhahood. Swiftly, Śākyamuni attracted many more followers, ascetics, and seekers to his community. As the saṅgha’s reputation spread, it earned support from wealthy merchants and kings. Such patronage was necessary, for this community was comprised of bhikṣus (beggars living on alms). Thus, monastic rule books represent Śākyamuni as fervent in his pursuit of a monastic “good neighbor” policy. For as a social institution, Buddhism was woven into a web of parallel institutions—economic, political, familial, medical, cultural—that had no necessary stake in the saṅgha’s perpetuation. Potential donors had definite expectations about how bhikṣus should comport themselves. If monks transgressed those expectations, they stood to lose support. It is thus crucial to recognize that although Buddhist monks took the radical step of leaving their families, the Buddhist saṅgha was neither a radical nor an antisocial institution. It did not strive to undermine fundamental social canons. Indeed its rules often legitimated and conserved those canons.

Tensions between the saṅgha’s identity as a community of beggars, and its need to conform to public norms of behavior, are exemplified by stories about founding the order of NUNS. When asked to admit his foster-mother, MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ, as the first female *bhikṣuṇī*, Śākyamuni refused, even though he admitted that women are as capable as men of becoming arhats. The rationale given for his reluctance was that *bhikṣuṇīs* would be like blight in a field of sugarcane, weakening the saṅgha’s vitality. Śākyamuni prophesied that if he founded an order of nuns the saṅgha would remain true to his teachings for five hundred years only, whereas if he did not admit women, his male brotherhood would survive one thousand years without decay. Ultimately Śākyamuni relented, after pledging Mahāprajāpatī and all future nuns to accept eight extraordinary rules, which thoroughly subordinated the female *bhikṣuṇīs* to the male bhikṣus. In sum, the male institution’s reluctance to grant unreserved legitimacy to its female counterpart reflected a broader cultural ambivalence in India concerning women, one that was misogynist in its value judgments, even while it recognized the inevitability of women’s social presence.

### **The Buddha’s death and the First Council (fifth or fourth century B.C.E.)**

If the saṅgha was founded with Śākyamuni’s first sermon, his death forced it to be reborn. Without a single, universally accepted voice of authority, Buddhist

monks became increasingly divided over wisdom, practice, conduct, and religious goals. The ongoing history of the saṅgha presents a tug-of-war between, on the one hand, individuals or groups seeking to conserve what they considered the core of Śākyamuni's religion, and on the other hand, the continuing need to conform to changing social, cultural, political, and economic structures.

The first example of such a battle comes from the stories of Śākyamuni's own life, when his cousin, DEVADATTA, attempted to supplant him as the saṅgha's leader. The sources suggest that this rebellion was swiftly quashed by ŚĀRIPUTRA and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, Śākyamuni's chief disciples. After Śākyamuni's death, however, a more comprehensive strategy was needed to keep the saṅgha whole. That strategy is contained in the legend of a First Council: a convocation held in the city of Rājagṛha during the first summer after Śākyamuni's death. Buddhist traditions claim that this council was comprised of five hundred monks, all arhats. It was presided over by Mahākāśyapa, an early convert and the most accomplished monk still alive. The purpose of this council was to recollect all Śākyamuni's teachings, and thus to establish the discourses (sūtra), monastic rules (VINAYA), and formal doctrines (ABHIDHARMA) that would sustain the unified saṅgha in Śākyamuni's absence. Scholars do not regard narratives about this council as historically credible. Nevertheless, one can certainly see its rhetorical value. Buddhists could affirm that within one year of Śākyamuni's final nirvāṇa, all of his pronouncements were recited, confirmed as the legitimate BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA) by a congregation of perfect men, and set in their appropriate canonical baskets.

### **Schism after schism (fourth through second century B.C.E.)**

The same institutional memory that lauds this "orthodox" meeting also tells of other, "dissident" monks, who rejected the council's authority. Accordingly, even if scholars knew that a council of elite disciples really did convene in the year after Śākyamuni's death, they still could not reckon how many subgroups existed within the saṅgha that followed a dharma and vinaya owing nothing to Rājagṛha's convocation. The meeting held in Rājagṛha is remembered as only the first of several. As time progressed, the ideally unified saṅgha splintered into numerous disparate sects (*nikāya*), each claiming to faithfully preserve Śākyamuni's dharma and vinaya. It is difficult to give a precise account of these later councils, for each sect relates this history

from its own biased point of view. Nevertheless, the most important of these later councils can be dated to approximately one hundred years after Śākyamuni's death, and placed in the north Indian city of Vaiśālī. At issue were several practices of Vaiśālī's saṅgha, which some from outside the city considered violations of the vinaya. With the exception of Theravāda materials, all other sources agree that the dispute was resolved and that the "lax practices" of the Vaiśālī monks were declared unacceptable, a verdict apparently accepted by the Vaiśālī monks themselves. Thus, for the time being, the unity of the saṅgha was restored.

Some time after the council at Vaiśālī, however, a more far-reaching dispute erupted, which resulted in the first schism in the Buddhist community: a division between one group that styled itself the Sthaviravāda (Pāli, THERAVĀDA; The Teaching of the Elders) and a second group that called itself the MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA SCHOOL (The Great Assembly, or "Majorityists"). Accounts vary as to the cause of the dispute; according to some, the disagreement was occasioned by the so-called five points of a certain Mahādeva, which concerned the fallibility of the ARHAT. It now seems more plausible, however, that these points arose later and occasioned a schism within the Mahāsāmḡhika subgroup itself. More likely is that the original dispute was provoked by the addition of some new vinaya rules by the group that styled themselves the "Elders," which were rejected by the more conservative Mahāsāmḡhikas. In any event, the division between the Mahāsāmḡhika and the Sthaviravāda is universally accepted within the tradition as the first real schism to split the Buddhist community. All the schools that subsequently emerged within Indian Buddhism are offspring of one of these two main groups.

The schism between the Mahāsāmḡhika and the Sthaviravāda was but one example of centrifugal forces that had long been present in the saṅgha. Multiple claims to authority, differences of language, of location, and of monastic rules, as well as burgeoning differences over doctrine and religious practice all contributed to the further division of the saṅgha into numerous *nikāyas*, as the Sthaviravāda and Mahāsāmḡhika sects both ruptured internally. Though the absolute number of *nikāyas* is not known, it is popularly held that several centuries after Śākyamuni's nirvāṇa, the saṅgha had split into eighteen separate *nikāyas*. Some of these *nikāyas* were distinguished by little more than geography, others by unique doctrines, and still others in terms of their ritual practice. Each *nikāya* possessed its own canon, grounding its own profession of

orthodoxy. Unfortunately, with the exception of the Theravāda's canon in Pāli, and scattered fragments from other *nikāyas*, little of this once vast literary corpus survives.

### **Institutionalization and the worship of stūpas (fifth through third century B.C.E.)**

Monastic competition after Śākyamuni's death was not the only agent of institutional change. Traditional tellings of Śākyamuni's biography do not end with his final nirvāṇa in Kuśinagara. These narratives describe the people gathered at Śākyamuni's death as observing a body progressively emptied of personal vitality. The body was cremated. But a dispute soon arose over who owned the funerary remains. The people of Kuśinagara claimed these relics (*śarīra*) for themselves, since Śākyamuni had chosen their territory for his final nirvāṇa. But the people of other territories swiftly demanded relics as well. To stave off war, equal shares of Śākyamuni's remains were given to all. Each of these measures was then housed in a memorial STŪPA.

Why would people have been willing to go to war over the funerary fragments of a dead holy man? Here one finds a window onto early Indian Buddhism. Stūpas associated with Śākyamuni provided sacred sites at which lay and monastic Buddhists alike were able to enter his otherwise inaccessible presence. Once in that presence, they could make offerings and reap merit. Thus, stūpas promised spiritual power to the kings who controlled them, and particularly prestigious sites would also have generated great revenues from pilgrims who traveled from far and near for worship. Similarly, caityas (shrines commemorating places visited, and objects used, by Śākyamuni) also became pilgrimage centers.

PILGRIMAGE was enormously important in Buddhism's development. Laymen, laywomen, monks, and nuns all encountered one another traversing the Ganges basin, from sacred site to sacred site. Such shared ritual, in turn, became the foundation of a shared religious identity, an all-inclusive community called "the fourfold assembly" in Buddhist texts. But even though patterns of worship gave the laity a bona fide position within this assembly, the institutionalization of pilgrimage also granted additional duties and opportunities to the monks. Large monastic communities grew up around major stūpas; these monasteries' inhabitants served as caretakers, priests, and teachers. Acting for the good of the buddha, of their brotherhood, and of their kingdom, monks made Bud-

dhism a fixture of the Indian religious landscape for nearly two millennia.

### **Aśoka Maurya (third century B.C.E.)**

Artifacts dating to the reign of AŚOKA, ruler of the Mauryan dynasty (third century B.C.E.), provide the oldest extant evidence for Buddhism in India. Aśoka was an important early patron of the saṅgha, and his exertions on its behalf are celebrated in traditional Buddhist writings from Sri Lanka to China. Legend holds that Aśoka raided the original group of stūpas in order to redistribute Śākyamuni's relics into eighty-four thousand stūpas, making that presence available throughout his kingdom. Aśoka is said to have held a grand council in order to reestablish a single orthodoxy within the saṅgha; he also supposedly made pilgrimage to all the places important to Śākyamuni's life.

Though hyperbolic, these literary paeans point to Aśoka's prominent role in Buddhism's institutionalization. Archaeological remains provide more precise, through less glorified, evidence of Aśoka's activities. Among the many edicts Aśoka incised on pillars and boulders, several speak to his interest in Buddhism. The Bhābrā edict, for instance, recommends a set of seven texts for Buddhist monks and laity to read and study (all the texts focus on ethics, suggesting that, for Aśoka, good Buddhists were also good citizens). The Kauśāmbī edict denounces disunity within the saṅgha, ordering schismatic monks to return to lay status. The Nigliva inscription tells that Aśoka doubled the size of a stūpa dedicated to a past buddha named Konāka-mana. In short, although sectarian Buddhist writings on the religion's early historical development cannot be trusted in their details, archaeological evidence from Aśoka's reign allows us to accept these texts' broad characterization of this era, when worship focused on stūpas, devoted Buddhists made pilgrimages, and nostalgic tales of Śākyamuni's harmonious saṅgha contrasted with the sharp-edged glare of contemporary circumstances.

### **A time of change and development (second century B.C.E. to fourth century C.E.)**

The Mauryan empire did not long survive Aśoka. It was followed by five centuries of political turmoil, during which indigenous dynasties and foreign invaders vied for supremacy. Although Buddhism established a base identity during Mauryan times, the succeeding era of political competition and social diversification fostered new doctrinal and institutional expressions. During these centuries, monastic spat-

increased the number of *nikāyas* to eighteen, or more. Additionally, monasteries and pilgrimage centers were increasingly founded outside the Gangetic basin: in the South (Amarāvātī, Nāgārjunikoṇḍa), central India (Bārhut, SĀNĀCI), and the Northwest (Takṣaśīla, Haḍḍa, BĀMIYĀN). A tradition of representing the buddha in iconic form developed during this period as well, alongside numerous regional styles.

Religious creativity was not the sole property of Buddhists, however. This era also saw innovations in Hinduism, leading to its increased popularity. The Mauryan dynasty was succeeded in north India by the Śuṅga, whose first ruler, Puṣyamitra (187–151 B.C.E.), showed a strong interest in Vedic ritual, and governed with the support of Vedic Brahmins. Buddhists number Puṣyamitra among the saṅgha's greatest enemies. In central India during this same century, a Greek legate erected a pillar in Kṛṣṇa's honor. Still, such developments do not signal Buddhism's eclipse. One of the Indo-Greek kings, Menander (ca. 150 B.C.E.), is claimed as a Buddhist convert, while the Kushan royal Kaṇiṣka (first or second century C.E.) sought to emulate Aśoka through his largesse and close stewardship of the saṅgha.

### **The *bodhisattvayāna* (second to first century B.C.E.)**

The Buddhist saṅgha was a ritual community pledged simultaneously to the preservation of an ultimate truth and the legitimation of social norms. As social forms, economic systems, and rulers changed, Buddhist monks devised new, locally appropriate expressions of their core principles. The fact that so many *nikāyas* came into being so quickly testifies to the ideological ferment of this time.

A backlash against this turmoil produced the most comprehensive breach in Buddhism's early history. Each *nikāya* claimed orthodoxy, inspiring some partisans to adopt stalwart sectarian identities. But other Buddhists found this strident sectarianism a violation of Śākyamuni's ideals. These latter viewed their brethren as backsliding from the original intent of the renunciant's life. Zealous to recover that origin, they accused those monks of being hypocritical, hedonistic, lazy, and unstudied in the rules of conduct. These reformers singled themselves out by advocating living in forests, an optional practice for all monks. But even more importantly, these monks sought to reform Buddhism by declaring themselves to be bodhisattvas, riding the bodhisattva-vehicle (*bodhisattvayāna*) to perfect buddhahood.

Institutionally, this *bodhisattvayāna* had a diffuse origin. It cannot be traced to a single social group, *nikāya*, locale, or founder. Its members did not claim to be the First Council's heir, and thus to form a new *nikāya*. Rather, these bodhisattvas were united by a common vision, for which *nikāya* membership was beside the point. They held that bodhisattvahood, and ultimately buddhahood, was the only legitimate aspiration for Śākyamuni's followers.

This *bodhisattvayāna* was adopted by monks and laity alike. For the renunciants, monastic vows and bodhisattva's vows were not in conflict. To the contrary, by aspiring to become Śākyamuni's equal, a monk demonstrated just how seriously he took his renouncer's role. For the laity, too, to articulate a bodhisattva's vows was to signal one's serious religious intent. Most *nikāyas* held that only monks can become arhats; individuals who aspired thus were expected to abandon lay life. But the nature of the bodhisattva path made it such that a bodhisattva could marry, work, raise a family, and still be spiritually adept. Thus the same vow that enabled bodhisattva monks to aggrandize themselves as Śākyamuni's legitimate heirs, allowed bodhisattva laity to aggrandize almsgiving and worship as significant accomplishments on the path to buddhahood.

### **From *bodhisattvayāna* to Mahāyāna (first century B.C.E. to second century C.E.)**

The fact that the *bodhisattvayāna* developed simultaneously in many centers makes it difficult to speak of an origin per se, or even a single *bodhisattvayāna*. However, there is one aspect of religious life that these scattered bodhisattvas did share in common: a desire to learn more about how they should live, practice, and think as bodhisattvas. The *nikāyas* had little to say about the bodhisattva figure, and what information their canons did provide was general and retrospective.

In the centuries after Śākyamuni's nirvāṇa, members of the *nikāyas* composed (or edited) sūtras, but they presented their work as the Buddha Śākyamuni's. Bodhisattvas were no exception to this practice. By the first century B.C.E., a new genre of Buddhist literature was being written, focusing upon the path and practices of bodhisattvas. The first works of this literature are lost. The earliest texts that do still exist, from circa first century C.E., reveal this bodhisattva movement to have been diffuse and numerically insignificant. But they also begin to use a distinctive name, MAHĀYĀNA (Great Vehicle). The Mahāyāna began as a minor reform movement within the constraints of *nikāya*-

Buddhism. It soon developed new and distinct forms of the religion.

The wide range of subjects one finds in early Mahāyāna sūtras is suggestive of the diverse origins from which it arose. These sūtras show that Mahāyānists were concerned with reforming Buddhism on a number of fronts: doctrinal, sociological, soteriological, cultic, and mythological. Some severely criticize Buddhists who do not take the bodhisattva vow, while others contain no such polemic; some speak to a monastic milieu, while others champion lay bodhisattvas. This early Mahāyāna was heterogeneous, with bodhisattvas even disputing other bodhisattvas in an open-ended process of decentralized change.

### **Institutionalization of the Mahāyāna (second to twelfth century C.E.)**

Although sūtras provide the first evidence for the Mahāyāna's existence, few contemporaneous material artifacts show their influence. That is to say, archaeological data do not suggest that the Mahāyāna directly affected monastic life, patronage, ritual, or even education during the first, second, or third centuries C.E. Only in the fifth century is there significant public evidence of Mahāyāna Buddhism in India.

The “underground” nature of Mahāyāna at its inception is one factor in this slow transition from spiritual movement to public institution. But an important catalyst toward change came in 320 C.E., when Candragupta I founded a dynasty that united north India as a single state for the first time since Aśoka. The changes initiated by Candragupta's ascension are so numerous that 320 C.E. is often cited as the first in a new era of Indian history. For explaining the Mahāyāna's institutionalization, however, the most profound development was economic.

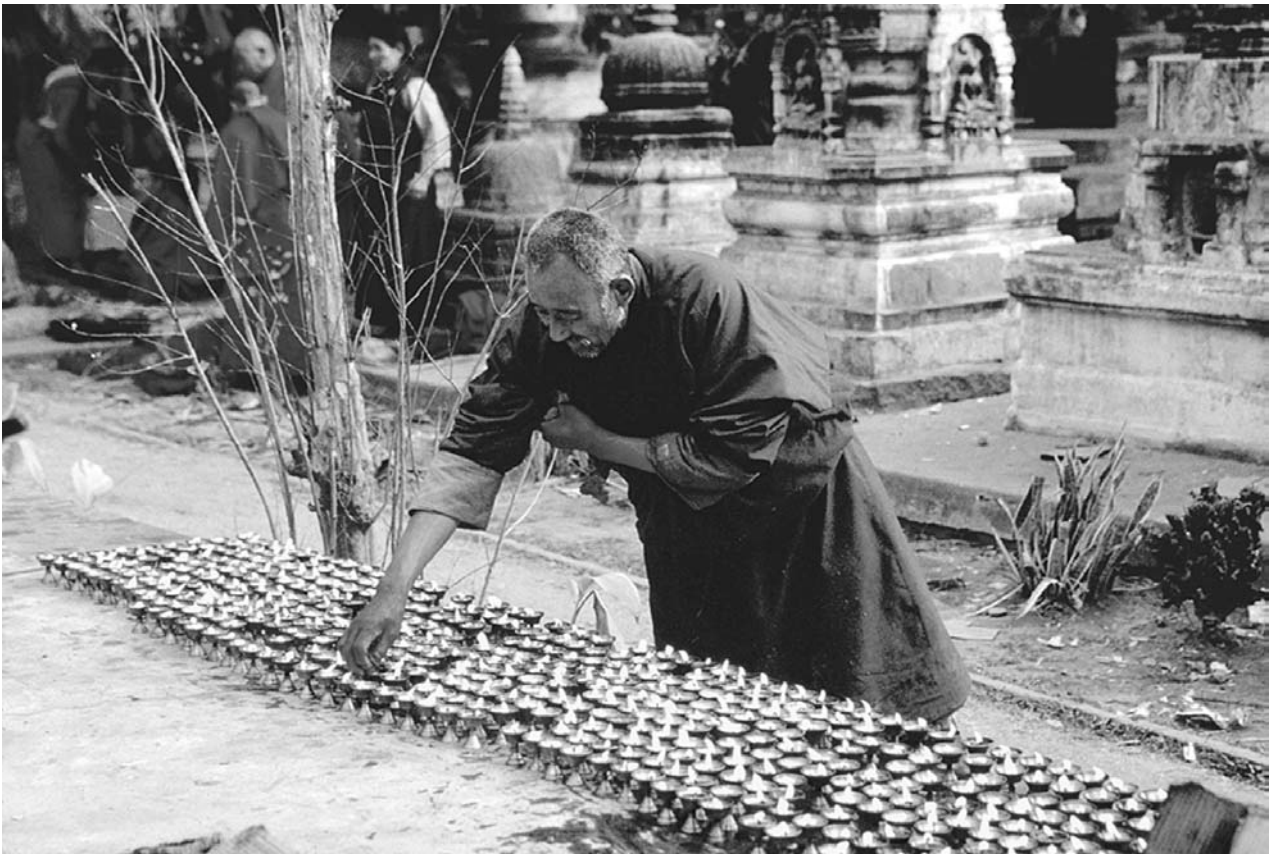
Before the Guptas, monetary exchange formed the basis of the north Indian economy. A money-economy circulates wealth through direct transactions between people. *Nikāya*-Buddhism was well suited to such a system because the *nikāyas* emphasized the worth of the monks (or the stūpas they controlled) as recipients of donation. Indeed, Buddhism gained such prominence in the centuries after Śākyamuni's death in large part because its ideology justified the accumulation of money, and provided a way to benefit from that accumulation even after death. Beginning with the Gupta dynasty, however, this money-economy began to give way to one based upon ownership of land. The Guptas did not attempt to govern their entire territory di-

rectly from their capital city. Rather, as “Lords of the Earth,” the Guptas permitted petty kings to retain residual control over their regions, and gave fields and villages to Brahmins, who then administered those lands. Thus, beginning with the Guptas, wealth became less associated with amassing money than with holding jurisdiction over a quasi-independent territory; one did not have prestige because one could enter into many exchange relationships, but due to one's close alliance with the imperial suzerain.

For Buddhism this meant that the wealth, position, and surplus resources of the merchants who had made up the bulk of the religion's early lay followers were diminished, leaving only members of the royalty and Buddhists themselves as donors. As possession of land became essential for Buddhism's survival, Buddhist institutions were ever more dependent upon direct royal patronage. This required Buddhists to adjust the tenor and focus of their religious productions, and directly address royal concerns in Buddhist media.

The Mahāyāna was particularly well suited to this new economy. Its sūtras had long used royal imagery when speaking of buddhas and bodhisattvas. Thus, the PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE (Perfection of Wisdom texts) describes bodhisattvas as fearless heroes, wearing armor while mounted on the great vehicle. Buddhas, similarly, are presented by the Mahāyāna as lords, each of his own personal buddha-land, surrounded by divine retinues; they engage in demonstrations of mutual admiration and support; they send bodhisattva emissaries to one another. In the fifth century, these literary tropes begin to make their mark on public art and inscriptions, revealing the symbolic maneuvers by means of which Mahāyāna Buddhism became prominent in India.

The institutionalization of Indian Mahāyāna Buddhism reached its apogee in the great monastery at Nālandā, which, as a center for higher education, attracted students to Northern India from throughout Asia. As delineated by the seventh-century pilgrim XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), Nālandā's foundation dated to the imperial Guptas. In the early fifth century, one king built a monastery at a lucky spot in this town. Over the next century, subsequent Gupta rulers added to that establishment. Eventually, devout rulers from other parts of India, and even other countries, made their own donations of buildings and resources. By Xuanzang's day, Nālandā had become the pre-eminent Buddhist university. Its endowment included several hundred villages; its dormitories housed



Tibetans light butter lamps for world peace at Bodhi Gayā, India, 1997. Bodhi Gayā is where the Buddha achieved enlightenment and is Buddhism's most sacred pilgrimage site. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

several thousand students. And although a liberal education was possible—including the Vedas, medicine, and art—every student was required to study Mahāyāna literature as well. In later centuries, Nālandā was supplemented, and then surpassed, by two other Mahāyāna universities, Otantapūri and Vikramaśīla; both were established by the Pāla dynasty that ruled in India's Northeast from about 750 to 1150 C.E. Furnished with ample lands by their Pāla patrons, these great monasteries were eventually depopulated, their books destroyed, during the thirteenth-century Muslim conquest of north India.

#### **The end of Buddhism in India (seventh to thirteenth century C.E.)**

The fact that Mahāyānists came to have a significant public presence does not mean that *nikāya*-Buddhism was eclipsed. A census of monks, made by Xuanzang in the seventh century, reveals that monks who were primarily identified with the *nikāyas* still outnumbered Mahāyānists. Yet, of the original eighteen-plus *nikāyas*, only four remained vital, and almost half of all *nikāya*-Buddhists belonged to the Saṃmitīya sect, whose

tenets were the object of considerable intra-Buddhist polemic.

When Xuanzang's census is compared with an account given by FAXIAN (ca. 337–418) in the fifth century, however, one notices that the Mahāyāna's institutional gains took place in a landscape within which Buddhism as a whole had become less prominent. The same economic developments that supported the Mahāyāna also instigated an efflorescence of sectarian Hinduism devoted to VIṢṆU and ŚIVA. Like the Buddhists, these Hindus sought royal patronage. But unlike the Buddhists, the Hindus were effective allies for kings who needed to socialize indigenous and tribal peoples. Brahmin legal codes, rooted in the Vedas, legitimated a strictly stratified society, and gave every person a fixed place within that society. Such codes eventually gave rise to a "caste system." Though Buddhist texts take the existence of "caste" for granted, they attempt neither to justify this social system, nor to disseminate it. From the point of view of India's rulers, Buddhist monks were less effective ideologues than Brahmins. In turn, as Brahmins held primary re-

sponsibility for transforming villagers and tribals into royal subjects, those peoples came to identify themselves with the Brahmins' own gods. Thus, although Buddhism flourished in the post-Gupta period, the religion became increasingly rarified and disengaged from the immediate interests of the common masses.

This transformation of Buddhism's social base was, ultimately, the cause of its downfall in India. Buddhist monks became increasingly professionalized: intellectuals in "ivory towers," uninvolved in the day-to-day lives of common folk. The destruction of the great monasteries (Nālandā in 1197; Vikramaśīla in 1203) by invading Turks provided the coup de grace. Lacking strong royal support, and long since having lost that of the populace, India's Buddhist monks had nowhere to turn. A travelogue written by Dharmasvāmin, a monk from Tibet, reveals that by the mid-thirteenth century there were almost no self-professed Buddhists remaining in India.

Over the preceding two millennia, Buddhist institutions, ritual practices, ideas, ideals, and ways of life had become a part of the social landscape in almost every Asian land. These regional and national Buddhisms all looked back to Śākyamuni for authority, though the incredible diversity of their forms and expressions might have astounded him. Despite Buddhism's demise in its first home, its traditions continued to thrive.

### **The revival of Buddhism in India (nineteenth to twenty-first century C.E.)**

The nineteenth and twentieth centuries saw a resurgence of Buddhism in India. The first concerted attempt toward reintroducing Buddhism to the land of its origin was made in 1891, when ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933), the son of a wealthy furniture dealer in Sri Lanka, visited BODH GAYĀ, the site of Śākyamuni's awakening. Distressed by the sorry neglect of this site, he founded the Mahā Bodhi Society with the aim of fostering its restoration. Dharmapāla's motives were missionary as well as devotional. Educated in the Christian missionary schools of colonial Sri Lanka, Dharmapāla imagined that a renewed Bodh Gayā would serve as a center for the propagation of Śākyamuni's teachings. The fact that this small town is now filled with monasteries and hostels serving pilgrims from all over the world is the realization of Dharmapāla's dream.

However, in terms of the re-creation of a native Indian Buddhism, no figure has been more important than Dr. Bhimrao Ramji AMBEDKAR (1891–1956). As

a leader of India's Untouchables, Ambedkar renounced Hinduism in favor of Buddhism, believing that this conversion would lead to greater respect for his downtrodden people. Ambedkar himself has now become a central figure of reverence for India's neo-Buddhist movement.

In 1959 Tenzin Gyatso, the fourteenth Dalai Lama, escaped to India, soon followed by many thousands of his countrymen. In exile, the Tibetans have remained vigorous patrons of Buddhism: establishing monastic centers that serve their own people as well as the curious who visit India to learn about Buddhism. Indeed, as Buddhism became a religion with a global reach during the latter half of the twentieth century, all evidence has shown a burgeoning appreciation within India itself for its Buddhist heritage.

*See also:* Ajaṅṭā; Councils, Buddhist; Hinduism and Buddhism; India, Buddhist Art in; India, Northwest; India, South; Mainstream Buddhist Schools

### **Bibliography**

- Ahir, D. C. *The Pioneers of Buddhist Revival in India*. Delhi: Sri Satguru, 1989.
- Allchin, F. R. *The Archaeology of Early Historic South Asia: The Emergence of Cities and States*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1995.
- Almond, Philip C. *The British Discovery of Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Bureau, André. *Les sectes bouddhiques du petit véhicule*. Saigon, South Vietnam: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1955.
- Bechert, Heinz, and Gombrich, Richard, eds. *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1984.
- Chakravarti, Uma. *The Social Dimensions of Early Buddhism*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Dutt, Sukumar. *Buddhist Monks and Monasteries of India: Their History and Their Contribution to Indian Culture*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.
- Hirakawa, Akira. *A History of Indian Buddhism: From Śākyamuni to Early Mahāyāna*, tr. Paul Groner. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Joshi, Lal Mani. *Studies in the Buddhistic Culture of India, during the Seventh and Eighth Centuries A.D.* Delhi: Motilal Barnarsidass, 1967.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śāka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium: Peeters Press, 1988.
- Legge, James, trans. *A Record of Buddhistic Kingdoms: Being an Account by the Chinese Monk Fa-Hien of His Travels in India and Ceylon (A.D. 399–414) in Search of the Buddhist Books of Discipline*. New York: Dover, 1965.



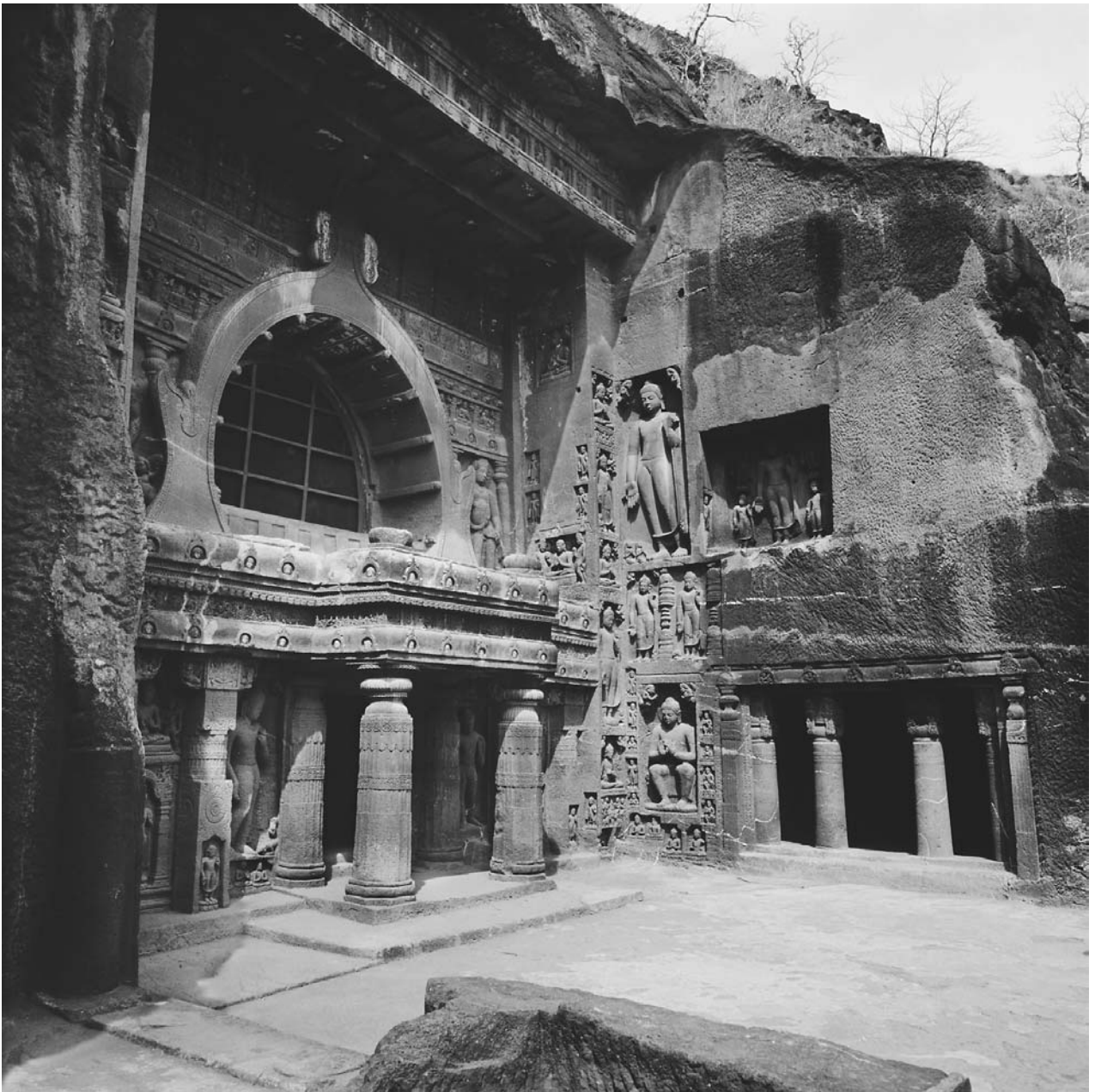
- Masefield, Peter. *Divine Revelation in Pali Buddhism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Sri Lanka Institute of Traditional Studies, 1986.
- Mitra, Debala. *Buddhist Monuments*. Calcutta: Sahitya Samsad, 1971.
- Mus, Paul. *Barabudur: Sketch of a History of Buddhism Based on Archaeological Criticism of the Texts*, tr. Alexander W. MacDonald. New Delhi: Sterling, 1998.
- Nattier, Janice J., and Prebish, Charles S. "Mahāsāṅghika Origins: The Beginnings of Buddhist Sectarianism." *History of Religions* 16 (1977): 237–272.
- Ray, Himanshu P. *The Winds of Change: Buddhism and the Maritime Links of Early South Asia*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Roerich, George, trans. *Biography of Dharmasvamin (Chag lo tsa-ba Chos-rje-dpal), a Tibetan Monk Pilgrim*. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1959.
- Sarkar, H. *Studies in Early Buddhist Architecture of India*. Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1993.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Snellgrove, David L. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Shambala, 1987.
- Stein, Burton. *A History of India*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishers, 1998.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend of King Aśoka: A Study and Translation of the Aśokāvadāna*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Thapar, Romila. *Aśoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1983.
- Walters, Jonathan S. *Finding Buddhists in Global History*. Washington, DC: American Historical Association, 1998.
- Warder, Anthony Kennedy. *Indian Buddhism*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1970.
- Xuanzang. *The Great Tang Dynasty Record of the Western Regions*, tr. Li Rongxi. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1996.
- Yijing. *Buddhist Monastic Traditions of Southern Asia: A Record of the Inner Law Sent Home from the South Seas*, tr. Li Rongxi. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 2000.
- Zelliot, Eleanor. *From Untouchable to Dalit: Essays on the Ambedkar Movement*. New Delhi: Manohar, 1992.

RICHARD S. COHEN

## INDIA, BUDDHIST ART IN

Sometime around the fifth century B.C.E., the historical Buddha Śākyamuni encouraged his disciples to spread his teachings in all directions. Although Buddhism was thus established as a missionary religion, the earliest remaining artworks devoted to the Buddhist tradition date from the mid-third century B.C.E. After that time, however, Buddhist arts and teachings flourished together, propagating outward from their Indian home to the farthest points of Asia, until the advent of Muslim hegemony, when Buddhism virtually ceased on the Indian subcontinent. Today India is mainly of historical interest to scholars and art historians of Buddhism; to Buddhists, however, India is home to the most important PILGRIMAGE sites. India is the land where Buddha Śākyamuni lived, taught, and died, as well as where the familiar and beloved arts and literature of Buddhism first developed. Indeed, much of the history of India's culture is only known through the accounts of travelers and pilgrims and through the arts and literature they brought home with them. Particularly important are the many Buddhist pilgrims from China—especially FAXIAN (ca. 337–418) in the late fourth century C.E. and XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) in the seventh century—and the countless merchants and monks who traveled along the SILK ROAD and to Southeast Asia.

The materials used for Buddhist arts in India range from precious metals to the cliffs that edge the Deccan plateau. Artworks made of more ephemeral materials, such as clay or wood, have not survived but were probably made in abundance starting in the second century B.C.E. The most prominent medium is stone relief sculpture, sometimes carved nearly in the round, along with the context of the sculptures—monumental reliquary mounds (STŪPAS) and architecture in brick or stone. Although today most Indian Buddhist sculptures are found in museums, they once were part of stūpa railings, were arrayed in niches on the exterior walls of temples, or were placed on altars with other images. Free-standing sculptures were also important; bronze-casting achieved a high degree of perfection in south India and in Kashmir, where they inlaid the bronze with silver. Mural painting in dry-fresco was established early in India, culminating in the preserved works at AJAṆṬĀ in the fifth century C.E., but influencing later mural painting throughout Buddhist Asia. Manuscript illuminations and sacred writings on palm leaves were specialties in Pāla northeast India, providing models for the vast corpus of Hi-



The exterior of cave 19 at Ajanṭā, Maharashtra, India. © Archivo Iconografico, S.A./Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

malayan books. RITUAL OBJECTS, usually made of metal alloys, were always in demand for Buddhist ceremonies and initiations.

The themes of the earliest Buddhist arts in India celebrate nature's abundance, ironically in Western eyes, around the stūpas that commemorate the Buddha's death. The flourishing forces of water, plant life, and animals and spirits are all evoked in the reliefs at Bhārhut and SĀNCĪ. The motivation for this "iconography of abundance" has piqued the curiosity of many generations of art historians. When MAHĀYĀNA Bud-

dhism arose in India, with its emphasis not on the humanity of the Buddha Śākyamuni but on his spiritual attainment, another irony was embodied by representing this ethereal spirit in physical form. Images of the Buddha and BODHISATTVAS became the focus of devotion and complicated meditations. The primacy and the very existence of bodhisattvas, beings whose only purpose is to devote their enlightened energies to the benefit of others, may have been the impetus for formulating images of the Great Persons (*Mahapuruṣas*) in the first century C.E.

### **Pillars and edicts of the Mauryan emperor Aśoka (mid-third century B.C.E.)**

An apparent convert to Buddhism, Emperor AŚOKA (r. ca. 268–232 B.C.E.) of the Mauryan period sponsored the first large-scale and most well-known Indian imagery. After witnessing the carnage at an excessively bloody battle in Orissa, it is said that Aśoka took up the Buddhist cause of nonviolence. Throughout his empire, at crossroads and places sacred to Buddhists, Aśoka had monolithic pillars engraved with political edicts and Buddhist precepts. Most of the messages are in the Brāhmī script, the earliest writing used in India. Only about thirty of the Mauryan-period columns remain. The capitals of the pillars are composite, with inverted lotus-petal bells, an abacus, and crowning animals. The pillars are made from one shaft of sandstone (monolithic) from thirty- to forty-feet high, sunk deep into the ground, and polished by the application of heat, which gives them a glassy and durable finish.

The modern flag of India includes the Aśokan lion capital as an emblem of the unification of India under one government during the Mauryan period. Its powerful silhouette of four addorsed lions once supported an enormous wheel that symbolized the Buddha's first sermon, the "turning of the Wheel of the Dharma" (*dharmacakrapravartana*), which took place near Sārnāth. The lions are carved in a highly abstract way reminiscent of the composite lion capitals of Achaemenid Persia, but all other features of these free-standing pillars are purely Indian. The four lions facing in four directions probably signify the sovereignty of both Aśoka, since the pillar was erected near the capital of his kingdom, and of the truths taught by the Buddha, whose clan, the Śākya, used the lion as their emblem. Around the abacus are four small wheels alternating with naturalistically carved animals (lion, elephant, bull, horse), which have great significance to indigenous clan traditions. The lion is especially associated with royalty and power in India. The pillars themselves also signify the pan-Indian idea of the axis of the world (*axis mundi*) that links the cosmic waters below with the sun above. Floral motifs, such as the palmettes and rosettes sometimes found on the Aśokan capitals, are more familiar in distant Mediterranean regions, but their appearance in India can be explained by the trade relations of India with the West and by the incursion of Alexander the Great into the northwest provinces of India.

### **Stūpas and stone reliefs (second century B.C.E. to first century C.E.)**

In addition to free-standing pillars, Aśoka had stūpas, or reliquary mounds, erected in India, Sri Lanka, and Nepal to commemorate the Buddha and to designate worship and teaching centers. According to legend, Aśoka opened up the original eight stūpas containing the Buddha's relics and redistributed them in eighty-four thousand simple burial mounds.

The earliest known monumental stūpa was erected at Bhārhut in Madhya Pradesh in about 100 to 80 B.C.E. Constructed in red sandstone, it consisted of a central burial mound, now lost, surrounded by elaborate railings (*vedikā*) with four gates (*torāṇa*) carved with reliefs. Most of the fragments from Bhārhut are on display at the Indian Museum in Calcutta. The reliefs emphasize the abundance of nature in their depictions of YAKṢAS and *yakṣīs* (male and female fertility spirits), lotuses, elephants, and composite water creatures. Medallions with vignettes of the Buddha's life, as well as stories of his previous births (JĀTAKA), are carved in a low-relief style, often using continuous narration, with the same characters appearing more than once, in a shallow, almost two-dimensional space. The carvings accentuate geometric patterns, including elaborate tattoos on some of the figures.

The Buddha himself does not appear in any of these narratives. His presence is indicated by aniconic symbols, such as his footprints, an empty seat beneath the bodhi tree under which he became enlightened, the *dharmacakra* or Wheel of the Dharma that he set in motion, or a parasol over a horse with no rider to indicate that he left his princely home. Some consider these aniconic images to be representations of shrines or pilgrimage sites, and therefore not merely symbols of the Buddha's person. Images of the Buddha are not used until the Kushan period in the north and the late second century C.E. in south India.

The Great Stūpa at SĀÑCĪ, first erected during Aśoka's reign, was completed and elaborated around the beginning of the first century C.E. with railings, balustrades, and gates covered with narrative relief carvings. Reliefs of city scenes describe the sophisticated urban culture of ancient India. Probably because many of the relief panels were sponsored by a guild of ivory carvers, the scenes emulate the precise density of small-scale reliefs. The natural liveliness of these carvings shows a significant change from the geometric style used at Bhārhut. Impressive scenes abound on the elaborate gateways that narrate the life of the Buddha

and some of the *jātaka* stories. Nature, demons, and mythical creatures are all portrayed with great imagination, utilizing a vast visual vocabulary culled from indigenous sources, as well as adaptations of Western composite creatures and plant life.

On the eastern Deccan, the broad central plateau of India, the Buddhist center at Amarāvātī (Andhra Pradesh, Śātavāhana period, second century C.E.) was the site of a large stūpa that was faced and surrounded by elegantly carved white-green limestone slabs. The stūpas themselves are gone, but many of the railings and facing slabs can be seen in Indian and Western museums. Many of the slabs reproduce in section the whole stūpa with its intricate railings and gateways. The narrative scenes are taken mainly from the life of the Buddha, although the Buddha image is still not shown. The style is naturalistic, as at Sāñcī, but uses more layering of figures to give a greater sense of depth. Figures are rounded, like those at Sāñcī, but the outlines are slightly elongated and nervous in their movements. Remains of temples and monastic dwellings have also been found at Amarāvātī and at the related sites of Ghaṇṭaśālā, Jaggayapeṭa, and later at Nāgārjunakoṇḍa (third century C.E.).

Stūpas and monastic centers were usually patronized by guilds and by individuals, both lay devotees and monks or nuns, not by royalty or wealthy merchants. This public interest aspect of stūpas is reflected in everyday scenes from the Buddha's life, usually depicted in the reliefs, rather than scenes of royal and godly figures in palace halls. This patronage may also have contributed to the prohibition against using BUDDHA IMAGES: Lay Buddhists may have felt that you should not represent in art a person who had entered NIRVĀṆA, a TATHĀGATA (one who has gone), the name most often used to refer to the Buddha in the texts.

### Rock-cut architecture (first century B.C.E. to second century C.E.)

Beginning in the first century B.C.E., rock-cut or CAVE SANCTUARIES and monasteries carefully imitated wooden structures of the day. In the centuries around the beginning of the common era the rock-cut worship hall (caitya) and monastery (vihāra) became established forms in northern and central India. The earliest site known is Bhājā (100 to 70 B.C.E., contemporary with Bhārhut) in Maharashtra, where a large caitya hall and many small monastic dwellings were excavated. Its imitation of wooden constructions includes the use of actual wood beams in the hall's barrel ceil-

ing; wooden architectural sculpture and balconies once adorned the front. Other rock-cut sites, all found along the high escarpment in Maharashtra, are Pitalkhorā (also 100–70 B.C.E.), Bedsā (early first century C.E.), and Nāsik and Kānheri (both about 125–130 C.E.).

The largest caitya hall is at Kārli, Maharashtra, carved out of a stone cliff in about 50 to 75 C.E. near Bombay. It has a navelike form, 125-feet in length including apse and colonnade, and has stone reliefs of a palatial facade; a free-standing lion-topped pillar marks the entrance. An enormous horseshoe-shaped window with a wooden lattice filters light into the hall, illuminating the monolithic stūpa at the apse-end of the hall. This window shape and lattice decoration characterizes Indian facades to this day. An elaborately sculpted veranda has high-relief elephants "supporting" the side walls and voluptuous couples on either side of the main door. Figures ride animals on the interior column capitals and the facade has multiple balconies decorated with reliefs of smiling people. Overall, Kārli shows a sensuous environment equal to that created on Sāñcī's carved gateways in miniature, here on a large scale carved right out of the living rock.

### The Buddha image: Mathurā and Gandhāra (Kushan period, first to third centuries C.E.)

The beginnings of figural sculpture of the Buddha in India is a controversial and intriguing study in the motives for image-making, as well as the development of both indigenous and adapted styles. Two sites—Mathurā, Uttar Pradesh, in northern India, and the Gandhāra region in present-day Pakistan—sponsored parallel versions of Buddha images and narrative reliefs at least as early as the first century C.E. (some fragments may be from the first century B.C.E.). The Kushan rulers, under whom this new trend in Buddhist imagery arose, came from Central Asia and dominated the area from Bactria to the Gangetic plain. Buddhism was spreading actively along the Silk Road through Central Asia at this time, making Gandhāra a fertile site for trade in artworks in service of the faith. Mathurā, the Kushan southern capital, had long been an artistic center, and artists there also made images for the monastic centers that had spread throughout northern India.

The Mathurā images follow indigenous forms with geometric, full volumes and attributes signifying a spiritual being (called *lakṣaṇa*). The solid power of the Mathurā buddhas follow the prototype of the village yakṣas found so frequently around stūpas—nature



*Buddha Preaching the First Sermon, Sārnāth, India, about 465–485, buff sandstone. Archaeological Museum, Sārnāth. Reproduced by permission. This Buddha image embodies the Gupta style that became an international model for Buddhas throughout Asia.*

spirits standing apart from the everyday world. The Gandhāra images resemble Hellenistic figural and relief traditions first imported with Alexander the Great when he conquered the area in 327 B.C.E. The Gandhāra buddha looks like a perfect, sensuous human being—a nobleman wearing heavy monk's robes.

Narrative reliefs of the Buddha's life also flourished at this time, especially in the Gandhāra region, now freely using the figure of the Buddha in the scenes. The Gandhāra scenes are very like those found on Roman sarcophagi—set pieces in niches separated by Western-style columns and pediments. Reliefs from the third and fourth centuries at Amarāvātī in south India also began to include images of the Buddha.

### **Gupta period “classical” style (fourth to sixth centuries C.E.)**

The disparate styles of Kushan Mathurā and Gandhāra blended into an eloquent compromise during the fifth-century C.E. hegemony of the famous Gupta clan. The Gupta “classical” style became the prototype for Buddha images throughout Asia. A sandstone image found at Sārnāth, the site of the Buddha's first sermon, exemplifies this style—sensuous human volumes combined with abstract religious symbolism. The ornamental finesse of this style was to be admired and imitated throughout South and Southeast Asia for centuries. It also provided the visual vocabulary for much of the religious art in Central Asia, China, Korea, and Japan. Although in India the remaining Gupta period images are usually stone, metal-cast images were also commissioned and exported. A larger than life-size copper alloy sculpture weighing about one metric ton was found at Sultāngañj in Bihar.

The Guptas arose as the first major Indian dynasty since the Mauryas, but they maintained missionary and trade relationships with Central, Southeast, and East Asia. Although the rulers were themselves mostly Hindu, they sponsored a rich environment for the flourishing of a variety of art forms and dedications, from Hindu plays to Buddhist monuments. Mathurā continued to be a major artistic center, but Sārnāth arose as the leading innovator of the style. As the Buddha image became firmly established as the primary focus of Buddhist devotions, aniconic expressions of the religion, such as the stūpa, became less important in India in favor of temples to enshrine statues of Buddhist figures. During the fifth century, Gupta-style buddhas were placed at each of the gateways of the Great Stūpa at Sāñcī.

The multi-tiered MAHĀBODHI TEMPLE tower at BODH GAYĀ in Bihar, the site where the Buddha reached enlightenment, was first built during the Gupta hegemony. A descendant of the bodhi tree under which the Buddha sat is enshrined there and the site remains a major pilgrimage destination for Buddhists. The outer facets of the temple have enumerable niches for Gupta-style images of the Buddha and bodhisattvas. Miniature votive temples are placed around the main structure, intermingled with remains of earlier stūpa railings, shrines, and altars, providing important archaeological evidence of the development of pilgrimage site arts. At Bhārhut and Sāñcī there are clear reliefs showing what the earlier Bodh Gayā shrines looked like.

The classic Gupta proportions and spiritually charged detail appealed to patrons of Buddhist arts throughout India. Art and artists from Sārnāth were exported especially to the Deccan and southern India, as well as to Orissa and northeastern India. From there the style spread to Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia. Art and artists from Mathurā, the northernmost center of the Gupta style, were exported north toward Kashmir and the Gandhāra region. From there the style spread through Central Asia along the silk routes into western China, where it ultimately influenced Buddhist arts of the Tang dynasty (618–907).

### Painting and sculpture at Ajañṭā (fifth century c.e.) and related sites

New rock-cut architecture was excavated beginning in the fifth century, serving both Buddhist and Hindu worship needs. The best-known group of Buddhist caitya halls and vihāras is at Ajañṭā on the eastern Deccan (Maharashtra, latter half of the fifth century). Dry-fresco murals on many of the walls portray the previous lives (*jātakas*) of the Buddha, as well as Buddhist saints and divine beings. Figures seem to glow in the dark interior because of the use of brilliant color and white highlights. Although the images use courtly, sophisticated compositions, they evoke a strong spiritual presence. Remarkable for their rich modeling and palatial imagery, these paintings also provided models for designs in Sri Lanka and especially for the murals of rock-cut halls in Central Asia and China for the next three centuries.

Imitations of wooden facades and high-relief sculptures at Ajañṭā cut into the caitya halls and vihāra walls also carried forward the Gupta opulence into ever more elaborate displays. The style and skill of the painting and sculpture at Ajañṭā continued to flourish in India in works dedicated to Hinduism, Jainism, and Buddhism. Auaṅgābād, also in Maharashtra, was an important site for both rock-cut and structural Buddhist architecture, as well as relief sculpture. Buddhist and Hindu rulers excavated the long cliff at Ellorā on the Deccan from the seventh to the ninth centuries.

### Final phase of Buddhist art in India (sixth to twelfth centuries c.e.)

Buddhist structural architecture, sculpture, and manuscript illumination continued in India until the twelfth century. Two major sites were Nāgārjunakoṇḍa on the Deccan plateau and Nālandā in the northeast. Both rock-cut and structural com-



*Buddha Śākyamuni Becoming Enlightened*, Bodhi Gayā, India, about 850, black schist. Los Angeles County Museum of Art. Reproduced by permission. This Pāla style sculpture illustrates the moment when the Buddha became enlightened as he sat beneath the Bodhi tree—notice the leaves arranged at the top of the throne—and touched the earth (*bhūmisparśa-mudrā*) to affirm that through his many lives he had achieved moral perfection. This style influenced the Mahāyāna and Vajrayāna arts throughout South, Southeast, and East Asia.

plexes served as universities for Buddhist scholars from all over Asia and as monasteries for monks and nuns. The Gandhāra region and Kashmir in northwestern India remained strong producers of distinctive arts that combined the humanistic Gandhāra ideal with Gupta spiritual sensibilities.

Buddhist stone and metal-cast sculptures, as well as manuscript illustrations, of the Pāla and Sena dynasties in northeastern India (eighth to twelfth centuries) are well known for their supreme elegance and fine detail. Usually called the Pāla style, this lithe and refined tradition was exported to Burma, Java, Nepal, Tibet, and China, especially in service of the Mahāyāna and VAJRAYĀNA Buddhist traditions. By the beginning of

the thirteenth century the Pāla style was declining in Bihar and Bengal, until this last stronghold of Buddhist art in India finally collapsed under the advent of the Muslims in the northern regions of India.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the, in Art; India; India, Northwest; India, South; Jātaka, Illustrations of; Monastic Architecture**

### Bibliography

- Craven, Roy C. *Indian Art: A Concise History*, revised edition. London and New York: Thames and Hudson, 1997.
- Dallapiccola, Anna L., and Lallemand, Stephanie Zingel-Avé, eds. *The Stūpa: Its Religious, Historical, and Architectural Significance*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Steiner, 1980.
- Dehejia, Vidya. *Indian Art*. London: Phaidon, 1997.
- Dumoulin, Heinrich. "The Mystery of Personhood in Buddhist Art." In *Understanding Buddhism: Key Themes*, tr. Joseph O'Leary. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1993.
- Fisher, Robert E. *Buddhist Art and Architecture*. London and New York: Thames and Hudson, 1993.
- Harle, James C. *The Art and Architecture of the Indian Subcontinent*. Middlesex, UK: Penguin, 1986.
- Huntington, Susan L. *The Art of Ancient India: Buddhist, Hindu, Jain*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1985.
- Huntington, Susan L., and Huntington, John C. *Leaves from the Bodhi Tree: The Art of Pala India (8th–12th centuries) and Its International Legacy* (exhibition catalogue, Dayton Art Institute). Seattle and New York: University of Washington Press, 1990.
- Irwin, John. "Aśokan Pillars: A Reassessment of the Evidence, Parts I–IV." *Burlington Magazine* 115 (1973): 706–720; 116 (1974): 712–727; 117 (1975): 631–643; 118 (1976): 734–753.
- Maxwell, Thomas S. "Cult Art in the Buddhist Systems." In *The Gods of Asia: Image, Text, and Meaning*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- McArthur, Meher. *Reading Buddhist Art: An Illustrated Guide to Buddhist Signs and Symbols*. London: Thames and Hudson, 2002.
- Michell, George. *The Penguin Guide to the Monuments of India*, Vol. 1: *Buddhist, Jain, Hindu*. London: Viking, 1989.
- Rosenfield, John M. *The Dynastic Arts of the Kushans*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1967.
- Schopen, Gregory. "On Monks, Nuns, and Vulgar Practices: The Introduction of the Image Cult into Indian Buddhism." *Artibus Asiae* 49 (1988–1989): 153–168.

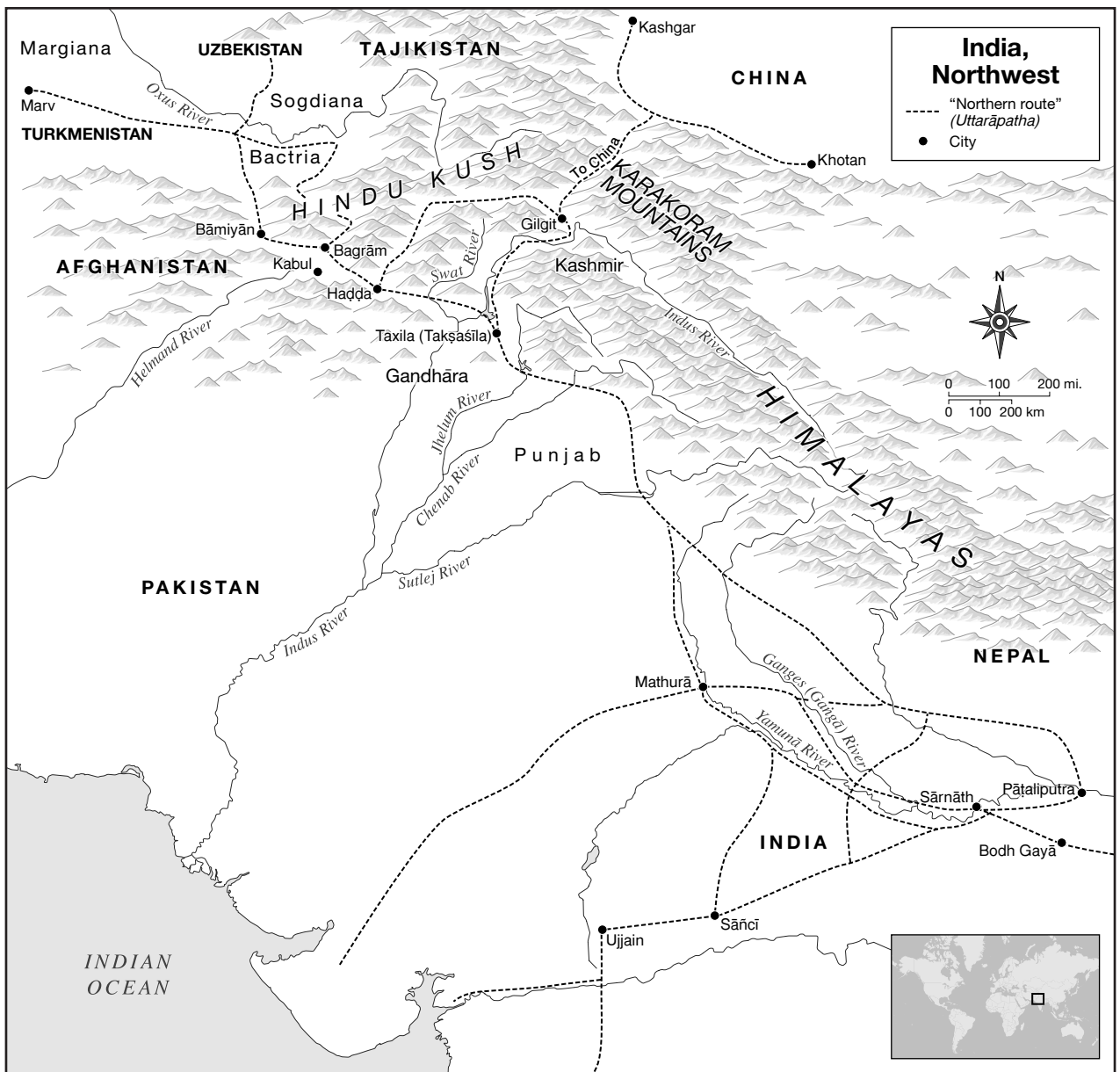
GAIL MAXWELL

## INDIA, NORTHWEST

By the first century C.E., distinct regional styles of Buddhist art, architecture, and literature had emerged on the northwestern Indian subcontinent. Buddhist materials from the borderlands of modern India, Pakistan, and Afghanistan reflect prolonged contact between Indian, Iranian, Central Asian, and Hellenistic cultural traditions. As a pivotal transit zone for the movement of people, practices, and ideas both into and out of South Asia, the northwestern frontier was a dynamic launching pad for the early transmission of Buddhism to Central Asia and China.

Numerous Buddhist centers in the Northwest were located on the "northern route" (*uttarāpatha*), a major artery for trade and travel that connected the northwestern frontiers with the Buddhist homeland in northeastern India. Mathurā, a city located on the northern route south of modern New Delhi, was a significant node for trade and administration and an important center for Buddhist, Hindu, and Jain art and literature. Mathurā had close ties with Kashmir in the western Himalayas, where the Sarvāstivādin tradition of ABHIDHARMA scholasticism developed. The northern route linked Mathurā with Taxila (Takṣaśīla), an ancient metropolis on the northern route near modern Islamabad in Pakistan, where extensive archeological remains of stūpas and monasteries have been excavated. Gandhāran art and the Gāndhārī language (written in the Kharoṣṭhī script) were transmitted together with Buddhism beyond the Gandhāran heartland in northwestern Pakistan to Central Asia. Buddhist art and architecture in Afghanistan at sites such as Haḍḍa (south of Jalalabad), Bagrām (north of Kabul), and BĀMIYĀN led French art historian Alfred Foucher to label paths across the Hindu Kush to Bactria and western Central Asia the *Vieille Route* (Ancient Route). Buddhist petroglyphs and inscriptions in the upper Indus River valley indicate that Buddhist travelers also followed capillary routes across the Karakoram Mountains of northern Pakistan to eastern Central Asia.

Buddhism was established in Northwest India during the late centuries B.C.E. and the early to mid first millennium C.E. Afghanistan, Gandhāra, and the lower Indus River valley were Achaemenid provinces until 327 to 326 B.C.E., when Alexander of Macedon attempted to conquer these areas. The Mauryan emperor AŚOKA (r. ca. 268–232 B.C.E.) provided the impetus for the introduction of Buddhism in the Northwest. A devout lay Buddhist, Aśoka had two sets of major rock edicts in Kharoṣṭhī inscribed in northwestern Pakistan,



Buddhist centers on the "northern route" (*uttarāpatha*). XNR Productions, Inc. Reproduced by permission of the Gale Group.

with shorter versions in Greek and Aramaic in eastern Afghanistan and Taxila. Foundations of large early stūpas at Taxila and at Butkara in the Swat valley probably belong to the Mauryan period, and may be connected with Aśoka's patronage. Menander, one of Alexander's Indo-Greek successors who ruled the Punjab around 150 B.C.E., was a patron of Buddhism, according to Pāli and Chinese literary traditions. Saka (or Indo-Scythian) and Parthian rulers of the Northwest continued to support Buddhist institutions, since the names and titles of these Iranian rulers appear on coins and in Buddhist inscriptions and texts of the first century B.C.E. and first century C.E.

During the Kushan period in the early centuries C.E., Buddhism began to expand beyond the northwestern frontiers of South Asia. The Kushan empire extended from Bactria to Bengal at the beginning of the second century C.E. during the reign of Kanishka, who is portrayed in Chinese and Central Asian Buddhist literature as the greatest Buddhist royal patron after Aśoka. In the post-Kushan period, local rulers and other patrons maintained Buddhist monastic communities where surplus resources for donations were available. Buddhist monastic communities in Bāmiyān in central Afghanistan and Gilgit in northern Pakistan evidently remained connected with Buddhist centers in



Central Asia in the late first millennium C.E. Buddhism in the Northwest gradually declined as lay support diminished and Hinduism and Islam eventually became more prevalent.

Discoveries of inscribed reliquaries and archeological excavations of stūpas and monasteries provide material evidence for a wide spectrum of Buddhist practices in Northwest India. A growing number of Kharoṣṭhī inscriptions record the donation of reliquaries containing physical relics (*śarīra*). Stūpas built to enclose these relics replicated the presence of the Buddha. The primary STŪPA was typically surrounded by smaller stūpas and columns, which often contained secondary relic deposits. Permanent Buddhist monastic structures consisting of cells for monks and nuns around open rectangular courtyards were usually built near stūpas. Such Buddhist sacred complexes were often decorated with stone and stucco sculptures. Art produced by Gandhāran workshops incorporated Indian, Iranian, and Hellenistic elements in distinctive iconographic patterns. Gandhāran Buddhist art of the Northwest continued to have an impact on Buddhist artistic traditions of Central Asia and China, where worship of images played a prominent role in popular practice.

Several narratives associated with the Buddha's previous lives have Northwest India as their setting, although the historical Buddha did not visit this region during his lifetime. The earliest conversion of Kashmir, the Indus valley, and Gandhāra to Buddhism is attributed to a disciple of ĀNANDA named Madhyāntika (Pāli, Majjhantika). MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS in Northwest India included Śrāvakayāna (or HĪNAYĀNA) sects that were active in the transmission of Buddhism to Central Asia and China. Kharoṣṭhī inscriptions record donations of relics, images, water pots, utensils, and other gifts to teachers of the DHARMA-GUPTAKA, Sarvāstivādin, MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA, Mahīśāsaka, and Kāśyapīya schools. For example, a clay pot dedicated to the Dharmaguptakas contained early Buddhist manuscripts from the first century C.E. Another collection of Buddhist manuscripts from the second or third to seventh centuries C.E. may have come from the library of a Mahāsāṃghika monastery in Bāmiyān. Parts of the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA are preserved among Buddhist Sanskrit manuscripts from the sixth to seventh centuries C.E. found near Gilgit in the 1930s. Manuscripts from Bāmiyān and Gilgit include several MAHĀYĀNA texts, which are apparently absent in earlier Kharoṣṭhī manuscript collections. Further research in the relationships between Buddhist

manuscripts from the Northwest and Buddhist texts translated into Chinese and Central Asian languages should clarify patterns of textual transmission.

With new discoveries of Buddhist inscriptions and manuscripts and additional excavations of Buddhist sites in northwestern India, Pakistan, and Afghanistan, it is becoming increasingly clear that the northwestern borderlands of Kashmir, Gandhāra, and Bactria linked older Buddhist communities in the Indian homeland with those developing in Central Asia during the first millennium C.E. Therefore, the Northwest played a critical role in the movement of Buddhist institutions, ideas, and practices beyond the Indian subcontinent to Central Asia and China.

*See also:* **Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in; Hinduism and Buddhism; India; India, Buddhist Art in; India, South; Islam and Buddhism; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda**

### **Bibliography**

- Errington, Elizabeth, and Cribb, Joe, eds. *The Crossroads of Asia: Transformation in Image and Symbol in the Art of Ancient Afghanistan and Pakistan*. Cambridge, UK: Ancient India and Iran Trust, 1992.
- Foucher, Alfred. *La vieille Route de l'Inde de Bactres à Taxila*, 2 vols. Paris: Les éditions d'art et d'histoire, 1942–1947.
- Fussman, Gérard. "Upāya-kauśalya: L'implantation du bouddhisme au Gandhāra." In *Bouddhisme et cultures locales: Quelques cas de réciproques adaptations*, ed. Fukui Fumimasa and Gérard Fussman. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1994.
- Hinüber, Oskar von. "Expansion to the North: Afghanistan and Central Asia." In *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*, ed. Heinz Bechert and Richard Gombrich. London: Thames and Hudson, 1984. Reprint, 1998.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism from the Origins to the Śaka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1988.
- Marshall, John. *Taxila: An Illustrated Account of Archaeological Excavations Carried Out at Taxila under the Orders of the Government of India between the Years 1913 and 1934*, 3 vols. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1951.
- Salomon, Richard. *Ancient Buddhist Scrolls from Gandhāra: The British Library Kharoṣṭhī Fragments*. London: British Library; Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1999.
- Zwalf, Wladimir. *A Catalogue of the Gandhāra Sculpture in the British Museum*, 2 vols. London: British Museum, 1996.

JASON NEELIS

## INDIA, SOUTH

Evidence for the history of Buddhism at the southernmost end of the Indian subcontinent (defined here as the modern states of Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Kerala, and Tamilnadu) is highly fragmented, a scattered collection of inscriptions, archaeological ruins, art-historical remains, and a few texts. Yet Buddhist institutions clearly once flourished in South India. From the edicts of AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.) and the written testimony of Chinese pilgrims to the presence of Buddhist interlocutors in Hindu and Jain texts for more than a millennium, Buddhists obviously played significant roles in the South Indian religious landscape until at least the fourteenth century. Yet what sort of Buddhism flourished there? What did it mean to be a “Buddhist” in early medieval South India? What kinds of interactions took place among Buddhists, Hindus, and Jains? Answers to such questions remain elusive.

With no direct references to Buddhism found in any extant Malayalam or Kannada text, both Kerala and Karnataka harbor Buddhist archaeological records that are difficult to interpret. Only a meager collection of Buddhist images has been unearthed in Kerala, all roughly datable to the sixth through tenth centuries C.E. In Karnataka, the record expands ever so slightly, from the STŪPA at Vanavāsī (third century C.E.) to the fifth-century caitya at Aihole and evidence of tantric worship at Balligāve (eleventh century). STŪPAS and caityas attest to some sort of institutional organization, royal or lay patronage, and active practices of worship, but the inscriptional record provides no further evidence concerning the status or use of such structures.

Two more substantial bodies of evidence can be found in the archaeological ruins of Andhra Pradesh and in the Tamil literary record. While neither presents a complete picture of Buddhist life and practice in the South, each does provide a richer range of material for interpretation.

The impressive ruins of Amarāvātī, Nāgārjunakoṇḍa, and other sites in Andhra Pradesh constitute the earliest evidence for Buddhism in the South (second century B.C.E.). Although no textual production can be located here with any certainty, these grand stūpas or *mahācaityas*, with their rich inscriptional records, narrative friezes, and hundreds of Buddhist sculptures, bespeak flourishing centers of Buddhist practice through at least the twelfth century. Due both to the traditional association of Amarāvātī and

Nāgārjunakoṇḍa with NĀGĀRJUNA (the great Madhyamaka philosopher of the second century C.E.) and to the nature of the images found there, Andhra Buddhism has long been labeled “MAHĀYĀNA” by scholars. The narratives of the Buddha’s lives carved in stone, the belief that each stūpa contained relics of the Buddha’s earthly body, and the inscriptional references to lay donors (many of them women of the Īkṣvāku royal dynasty that ruled from Nāgārjunakoṇḍa) all point to flourishing centers of Buddhist worship, where monastic and lay devotees honored the remains of the Buddha, contemplated the lessons of his many lives, and worshiped in myriad ways the figures of buddhas past and future.

Turning southward to the Tamil-speaking region, the true treasure trove of Buddhist artifacts is Nāka-paṭṭiṇam, a coastal site mentioned in Sri Lankan, Burmese, and Chinese sources from which over three hundred images have been recovered. Buddhist sculptures found in the midst of Hindu places of worship, such as the six-foot standing Buddha from the Kāmākṣīyammaṇ Temple in Kāñcīpuram (fourth century C.E.), attest to a long Buddhist influence in the Tamil region. Yet does the presence of a Buddha image mean that a Hindu temple was once truly “Buddhist”? A seventh-century inscription from Māmallapuram, listing the Buddha as an incarnation of the Hindu deity Viṣṇu, suggests a more complex scenario. Does a Buddha image imply a strong sense of Buddhist sectarian affiliation, or had the Buddha simply been absorbed into the wider South Indian pantheon by the seventh century?

What emerges uniquely in South India from the Tamil-speaking region is a Buddhist literary record in languages other than Sanskrit. The three famed Pāli commentators of the fourth and fifth centuries, for example—BUDDHAGHOSA, Buddhadatta, and Dhammapāla—claim some connection to beautiful monasteries patronized by beneficent Tamil kings. Through the twelfth-century works of Buddhappiya and Kassapa, eminent THERAVĀDA monks associate themselves with southern India, with monasteries from Nāka-paṭṭiṇam to Kāñcīpuram.

Tamil is unique among the regional literary languages of India for its two premodern Buddhist works. The older of the two remaining pieces of Buddhist literature composed in Tamil, the *Mañimēkalai*, attributed to Cāttaṇār and dated to roughly the sixth century, narrates the story of a young courtesan who gradually turns away from that life to embrace Buddhism. The *Mañimēkalai* presents its audience with a

long and stylistically beautiful narrative meditation on the arising of the conditions that propel its heroine to eventual enlightenment, culminating in two densely terse chapters on Buddhist LOGIC and PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION). With the settings of its stories ranging from luxurious Tamil cities to Kapilavastu and the shores of a Southeast Asian island kingdom known as Cāvakam, the *Maṇimēkalai* clearly attests to a vibrant literary culture in Tamil that counted Buddhists, sophisticated in their knowledge of Buddhist tradition and highly technical philosophical language, among its participants.

Further evidence of Buddhist literary culture in the South can be found in the *Vīracōḷiyam*, an eleventh-century treatise on Tamil grammar and poetics attributed to Puttamittiraṅ and accompanied by a commentary thought to have been composed by the author's student, Peruntēvaṅār. As the first Tamil grammar to claim direct appropriation of Sanskrit poetic theory (in its treatment of *alaṅkāra* or "poetic ornamentation"), the *Vīracōḷiyam* explicitly forges a new Tamil-Sanskrit hybrid language in the name of Buddhism. Claiming that the literary language he describes first issued forth from the mouth of Avalōkitaṅ (Avalokiteśvara), Puttamittiraṅ pioneers a new poetic style for his own sectarian community. The commentary then substantiates that project by gathering together examples of Tamil Buddhist poetry in illustration of this new Sanskrit-Tamil hybrid. Such scattered poetic phrases—many alluding to Tamil versions of JĀTAKA stories and to songs in praise of the Buddha and his many wonderful qualities—are, unfortunately, all that remain (apart from the *Maṇimēkalai*, which the commentator never cites) of what must have once been a considerable corpus of Buddhist devotional, philosophical, and narrative poetry in Tamil.

Evidence for the presence of Buddhists in southernmost India thus presents us with a series of disparate snapshots, some more in focus than others. Whether the substantial archaeological finds in southern Andhra Pradesh bear any relevance for understanding the Buddhist literary record in Tamil, or whether the scattered Buddhist images recovered from paddy fields across the region reveal anything of "Buddhism" per se in the South, are questions that await further research.

See also: **India; India, Buddhist Art in; India, Northwest**

## Bibliography

- Alexander, P. C. *Buddhism in Kerala*. Annamalainagar, India: Annamalai University, 1949.
- Hikosaka, Shu. *Buddhism in Tamilnadu: A New Perspective*. Madras, India: Institute of Asian Studies, 1989.
- Hiremath, Rudrayya Chandrayya. *Buddhism in Karnataka*. New Delhi: D. K. Printworld, 1994.
- Monius, Anne. *Imagining a Place for Buddhism: Literary Culture and Religious Community in Tamil-Speaking South India*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Richman, Paula. *Women, Branch Stories, and Religious Rhetoric in a Tamil Buddhist Text*. Syracuse, NY: Maxwell School of Citizenship and Public Affairs, Syracuse University, 1988.
- Schalk, Peter. *Pauttamum Tamilum: Inventory, Investigation and Interpretation of Sources Pertaining to Buddhism among Tamilar in Pre-Colonial Tamilakam and Īlam (Ilaṅkai)*. Uppsala, Sweden: Uppsala University, 2002.
- Sivaramalingam, K. *Archaeological Atlas of the Antique Remains of Buddhism in Tamilnadu*. Madras, India: Institute of Asian Studies, 1997.
- Subramanian, K. R. *Buddhist Remains in Andhra and the History of Andhra between 224 and 610 A.D.* Madras, India: Diocesan Press, 1932.

ANNE E. MONIUS

## INDONESIA AND THE MALAY PENINSULA

The geography of the Malay Peninsula and of Indonesia helps to explain the role the region played in the early spread of Buddhism to Southeast Asia and China. The peninsula includes the modern nation-states of Malaysia and Singapore and the southern portion of Thailand. Malaysia occupies the end of the peninsula, with the small city-state of Singapore at its southern tip on the Sunda Strait. Malaysia shares its northern border, halfway up the peninsula, with Thailand. For purposes of examining the role of ancient Buddhism, the entire peninsula can be seen as a single geographical area. Some twenty-five miles from Singapore, across the Sunda Strait, is the island of Sumatra, one of about three thousand islands that make up the archipelago of modern Indonesia. The peninsula and the islands, surrounded by water, are an environment that produces cultures that rely on boats. Likewise, the peninsula is located about halfway between India and China along the route taken by trading vessels. The area was a crossroads for both local and international trade and communication. It is thus not surprising that

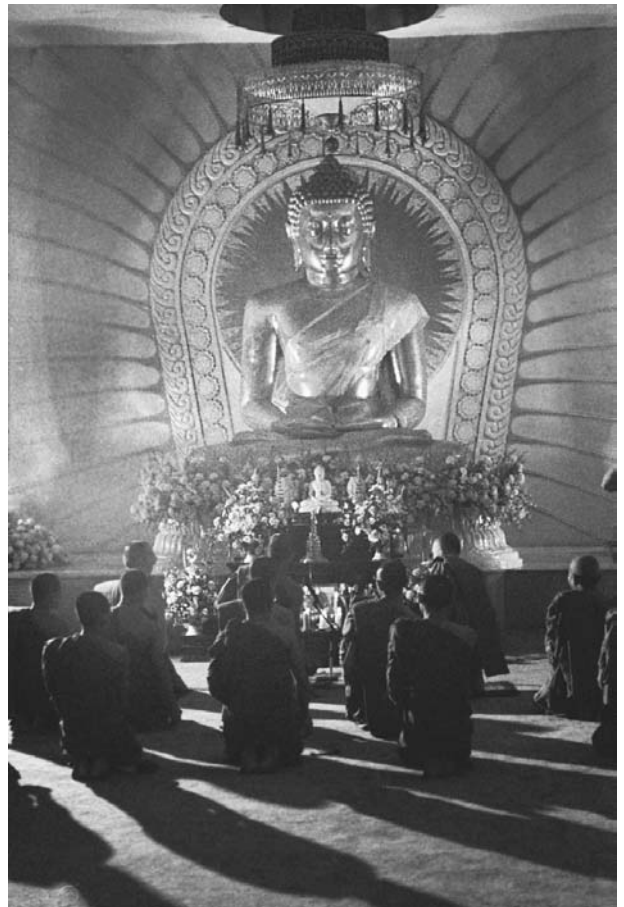
most of the earliest evidence for Buddhism in Southeast Asia comes from the peninsula, and that both the peninsula and the islands reveal in their art, culture, and religion very direct and frequent interchanges with South Asia.

These interchanges, based on trading activities, brought Buddhism and Hinduism to Southeast Asia. There is archeological evidence on the Malay Peninsula for the presence of both Hinduism and Buddhism from about the fifth century C.E. Both these Indic religions are present together for centuries to follow at sites on the Malay Peninsula and in Indonesia, specifically on the islands of Sumatra, Java, and Bali. While one religion may have been favored over the other at certain times and places, they rarely were set in opposition to one another. Indeed, as on Bali today, they tended to blend together.

The evidence for Buddhism comes from three sources: Chinese histories, local inscriptions, and art. The Chinese histories that mention early Southeast Asian polities have been very thoroughly explored by scholars. The Chinese sources present the Indian impact starting in the first century C.E., and at times references to Buddhism can be discerned for this early period. By around the fifth century, there are reports from Chinese monks who traveled by ship to and from India, and who thus passed through Southeast Asia. One monk, YIJING (635–713), stopped in the capital of Śrīvijaya in 671 on his way to India in order to study Sanskrit. The capital is believed to have been Palembang on Sumatra. Yijing returned to Palembang after ten years in India to live again in Śrīvijaya from 685 to 695 (with one visit to China in 689), and it is there that he translated Indian texts into Chinese and wrote his memoirs.

Srivijaya remained a center for Buddhist studies for hundreds of years. The famous Indian monk ATISHA (982–1054) went to Sumatra to study with the Buddhist teacher Dharmakīrti. Atisha later traveled to Tibet in 1042 and founded the Kadam lineage, which became the DGE LUGS (GELUK) school of Tibetan Buddhism.

The second category of evidence for Buddhism on the Malay Peninsula and in Indonesia is inscriptions. The earliest inscriptions, mostly written on stone, date from around the fifth to the eighth centuries C.E. They are written in Indian-related scripts in Sanskrit, and often include phrases from, or similar to those in, Buddhist texts. The dating of these inscriptions, scattered at various sites, is generally based on paleography (that is, the style of the letters), which gives rise



A Buddhist ceremony at Jakarta, Indonesia, 1994. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

to varying opinions by scholars. Most of these inscriptions hold little historical information, but they tell us that Buddhism was practiced by some of the population and sometimes the school of Buddhism can be broadly identified. When the early Buddhist inscriptions are compared to those of similar date that relate to Hinduism, it appears that Hinduism was associated with those in power, the local chiefs or kings. Hinduism in Southeast Asia served the role of building royal power more frequently than did Buddhism during this early period.

When one thinks of Buddhism in Java, it is the Central Javanese period (seventh to tenth centuries) and the truly spectacular monument of BOROBUDUR that come to mind. Borobudur is but one of the many Buddhist monuments built during this time, when hundreds of Buddhist images in stone and bronze were also made. Hinduism was practiced here as well, and the old theory that the two religions represented contending dynasties is today discounted. The coexistence of Buddhism and Hinduism continued when the cultural

center of Java moved to the east. During the Majapahit period (fourteenth and fifteenth centuries), Śiva and the Buddha were worshiped, both with tantric texts and rituals.

Today, most of the population of Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula is Muslim. Islam appeared in Sumatra by the ninth century C.E. and by the sixteenth century had come to dominate most of the Indonesian islands and the Malay Peninsula up to about the border with modern Thailand. Although Thailand is today overwhelmingly Buddhist, its southern peninsular region has a large Muslim minority. Modern Thai Buddhism is not related to the earlier Buddhism of the peninsula, but is connected to that of Burma and Sri Lanka. Buddhism is also practiced in Singapore, but this is Buddhism of the large expatriate Chinese community. It is only on the tiny island of Bali that echoes of the region's early Buddhism remain today, blended with Hinduism in a unique local religion and culture.

*See also:* **Hinduism and Buddhism; Indonesia, Buddhist Art in; Islam and Buddhism; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

### **Bibliography**

- Coèdes, George. *The Indianized States of Southeast Asia*, tr. Susan Brown Cowing. Honolulu: East-West Center Press, 1968.
- Jacq-Hergoualc'h, Michel. *The Malay Peninsula: Crossroads of the Maritime Silk Road (100 B.C.–1300 A.D.)*, tr. Victoria Hobson. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2002.
- Miksic, John N., ed. *The Legacy of Majapahit*. Singapore: National Heritage Board, 1995.
- Soekmono, R. *The Javanese Candi: Function and Meaning*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1995.

ROBERT L. BROWN

---

## INDONESIA, BUDDHIST ART IN

The oldest Buddhist objects in Indonesia date from around the seventh century C.E. The major early focus of Buddhist activity in the archipelago lay in southeast Sumatra, where the kingdom of Śrīvijaya was centered. By the late seventh century this kingdom had attained an important position in conducting trade between the Indian Ocean and the South China Sea. The Chinese Buddhist pilgrim YIJING (635–713), who traveled to India in ships belonging to the ruler of this kingdom in 672 C.E., described Buddhism as flourishing in Śrīvi-

jaya's capital, with a large monastery where he learned Sanskrit.

A large granite standing Buddha image has been found at Seguntang Hill, on the fringe of the city. Such stylistic elements as emphasis on the folds of his robe are reminiscent of art from the Amarāvātī area in India, but it is more likely that the earliest Indonesian Buddhist art was influenced by Sri Lanka, where this style lasted longer than in southern India. Two other important bronze Buddha images found much farther east, at Sikendeng on Sulawesi and Kota Bangun on east Borneo, share these same features. They date from approximately the same period and demonstrate the extent to which Buddhism had already spread. Bronze images from the eighth century indicate that Buddhism made its presence felt as far east as Lombok during this period.

The corpus of art directly associated with Sumatra during this period is scanty, but combined with statuary found in politically and culturally allied areas of the Malay Peninsula around the Isthmus of Kra and Kedah, images of Avalokiteśvara enable us to draw the inference that a generalized cult of this bodhisattva was common in this region. A bronze of the bodhisattva Tārā and an Avalokiteśvara presumably from this period have also been found in Lombok.

By the late eighth century, MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist imagery also began to appear in central Java. Between about 780 and 850 C.E., this region produced unsurpassed works of sculpture and architecture. Some images bear indications of continued connections with centers of Buddhism in Sri Lanka and south India, such as Negapatam, while by the late ninth century connections with the monastery at Nālandā in what is now Bangladesh are also visible.

Among the important complexes of Buddhist architecture constructed in central Java, the best known is the great site of BOROBUDUR. Few free-standing STŪPA were built; instead most Javanese structures consisted of temples with chambers for statuary. The main image at Kalasan, erected around 780 C.E., was a large Tārā (now lost). Around 800 C.E. a major revolution in Javanese Buddhism marked by intense interest in MAṄDALAS resulted in the reconstruction of all major sites. At Sewu, an earlier complex was altered to create a cruciform building with enclosed circumambulation pathway. A group of over two hundred stone structures formed a huge three-dimensional maṅḍala. Major deities worshipped there may have included the bodhisattva Mañjuśrī and the buddha Vairocana.



Relief sculpture depicting the entourage of Māra surrounding the Buddha at the great eighth- and ninth-century Buddhist site of Borobudur in Java, Indonesia. © Charles and Josette Lenars/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

At Plaosan Lor, several types of structures were built in the early ninth century C.E. The two principal remaining buildings consist of approximately identical two-storied edifices with rectangular floor plans, each divided into three rooms. Against the east wall of each edifice, facing west, was a low stone bench upon which nine images were placed, three in each cella. The central images, probably of bronze, have all disappeared. They were flanked by other figures of stone that still remain. Among the bodhisattvas tentatively identified are Mañjuśrī, Avalokiteśvara, MAITREYA, and Kṣitigarbha.

Mañjuśrī was an important figure in the Javanese Buddhist pantheon. Among the most beautiful surviving images is a silver Mañjuśrī from the village of Ngemplak. Another popular subject was Jambhala, god of wealth. Other important artistic expressions from this culture include *vajra* (thunderbolts) and *ghaṇṭā* (bells), sometimes combined into a single object. These may have been associated with the cult of Mahāvairocana Sarvavid, who became important around the second half of the ninth century.

Central Javanese civilization suffered a catastrophic decline in the early tenth century. What caused the decline is not clear, but complex art was no longer produced there. It took more than three hundred years before a new wave of Buddhist art arose in Java, by which time the center of activity had shifted toward the east.

During this gap in the Javanese record, the Sumatran kingdom of Śrīvijaya also came to an end. During the eleventh and twelfth centuries, two other important complexes of Buddhist art arose on that island. One complex, at an isolated hinterland site known as Muara Takus, consists mainly of a stūpa of unusual elongated shape, made of brick, together with several other foundations of now-ruined structures. No statuary has been reported from Muara Takus, but pieces of inscribed gold foil attest to the site's esoteric affiliation.

The other important site, Padang Lawas, in the hinterland of North Sumatra, consists of numerous brick complexes scattered over a wide area. Statuary and inscriptions from Padang Lawas indicate affinities with KĀLACAKRA Buddhism: a shattered Heruka image and

inscriptions describing the ecstasy of the initiates occasioned by the aroma of burning corpses, and the demonic laughter that they are inspired to emit.

Buddhism continued to be practiced in Sumatra into the fourteenth century. A huge Bhairava image over four meters tall, found at Padang Reco in West Sumatra, depicts an initiate with sacrificial skull bowl and knife, standing on a corpse resting on a pile of skulls.

A major Buddhist center named Jago was erected around 1280 C.E. in an east Javanese kingdom named Singasari. The walls of the sanctuary base were embellished with reliefs of mixed Hindu and Buddhist character. Its interior was equipped with an elaborate system for lustrating statues. These include some of the most beautiful images ever created in Java, including a beautiful Sudanakumāra and an impressively ugly Hayagrīva. The main statue was probably an Amoghapāśa, of which several copies were made. One of these copies was found in Sumatra, probably sent there as a token of Singasari's conquest of Malayu, the Sumatran successor to Śrīvijaya.

Another triumph of Javanese Buddhist art was created either in the last years of Singasari, or in the early phase of its successor kingdom, Majapahit. This image, of Prajñāpāramitā, was found at the site of Singasari's capital. Similar statues were also carved around the same time, one of which was also found at Malayu's capital, Muara Jambi. Inscriptions show that a Majapahit queen personally identified with this deity.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula; Monastic Architecture; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

### Bibliography

- Bernet Kempers, August Johan. *Ancient Indonesian Art*. Amsterdam: C. P. J. van der Peet; Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1959.
- Dumarçay, Jacques. *The Temples of Java*, tr. Michael Smithies. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Oxford University Press, 1986.
- Fontein, Jan, ed. *The Sculpture of Indonesia*. New York: Abrams, 1990.
- Lunsingh Scheurleer, Pauline, and Klokke, Marijke J. *Ancient Indonesian Bronzes: A Catalogue of the Exhibition in the Rijksmuseum Amsterdam*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1988.
- Miksic, John N., ed. *Indonesian Heritage*, Vol. 1: *Ancient History*. Singapore: Archipelago Press, 1996.
- Satyawati Suleiman. *The Archaeology and History of West Sumatra*. Jakarta, Indonesia: Berita Pusat Penelitian Arkeologi Nasional Number 12, 1977.

Schnitger, F. M. *Forgotten Kingdoms in Sumatra*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1964.

Subhadradis Diskul, M. C., ed. *The Art of Śrīvijaya*. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, and New York: Oxford University Press, 1980.

JOHN N. MIKSIC

## INDRA

Indra, also known as Sakka (Pāli) and Śakra (Sanskrit), is initially the Vedic lord of the heavens. Indra is incorporated into Buddhism in several ways. He is said to have been converted and to have attained the first stage of realization on the path (stream winner) in the *Group of Long Discourses* (Pāli, *Dīghanikāya*) (II. 288). He is typically portrayed as a guardian of the religion and the chief deity in the heaven of the thirty-three gods. In some versions of the Buddha's life story, Indra receives the infant Buddha as he emerges from his mother's side and then bathes him. Likewise, when the recently enlightened Buddha is reluctant to share his insight with the world, it is Indra (along with Brahmā) who convinces him to teach. Indra also accompanies the Buddha to the heaven of the thirty-three gods to preach to his mother, and it is Indra who provides the ladder on which the Buddha descends. Iconographically, Indra is often depicted as subservient to the Buddha. In Gandhāran sculpture, for instance, he is sometimes depicted, along with Brahmā, worshipping the Buddha, sometimes holding an umbrella to shade him from the sun, or sometimes holding the Buddha's alms bowl.

The image of Indra's net, which stretches infinitely across the heavens, becomes important in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition—particularly in the HUAYAN SCHOOL and its text, the HUAYAN JING (Sanskrit, *Avataṃśaka Sūtra*; *Flower Garland Sūtra*)—as a metaphor for the interconnectedness of all beings. This image has been frequently adopted by modern Buddhist activists. Indra continues to be an important deity in a number of Southeast Asian countries, both as the model ruler and active force. In legend, he frequently appears as a *deus ex machina*, sometimes in disguise to test the BODHISATTVA, more frequently to assist devotees in their merit-making. He is venerated at the end of the year as Thagya Min in Myanmar (Burma). Elsewhere, Indra is invoked to protect those gathered at festivals and important ceremonies.

See also: **Divinities; Hinduism and Buddhism**

JACOB N. KINNARD

## INGEN RYŪKI

Ingen Ryūki (Chinese, Yinyuan Longqi; 1592–1673), although unknown from Chinese sources, was the founder of the Ōbaku sect of Japanese Zen and was the most prominent figure in introducing Ming dynasty-style Buddhism to Japan. After completing the restoration of Wanfu Monastery on Mount Huangbo in China, Ingen arrived in Japan in 1654 at the invitation of the Nagasaki Chinese community. He reinvigorated Zen training in the Nagasaki area and was invited to Kyoto in 1655. In 1658 Ingen traveled to Edo and impressed many important officials, including the shogun, who granted him land in 1665 for the founding of Ōbaku-san Mampukuji in the Uji area. The name and style of the monastery was copied from Ingen's home monastery. By 1745 the Ōbaku sect had 1,043 monasteries in its network; 431 of them are still in operation today.

Wanfu Monastery belonged to one of the many branches of the Linji lineage of the Chinese CHAN SCHOOL and did not form an independent sect in China. Thus, Ingen's teachings were not substantially different from other Japanese Rinzai Zen branches. Major differences can be found, however, in his emphasis on VINAYA and on following the *Ōbaku shingi* (*Pure Rules for the Ōbaku Sect*) and maintaining Ming dynasty-style music, rituals, and robes. The Ōbaku sect's social engagement, differing use of text, and its acceptance of Pure Land practices are also significant. Chinese-style arts also played a role at Mampukuji, where Chinese artists were employed, and Ingen is famous for his calligraphy.

### Bibliography

Baroni, Helen J. *Ōbaku Zen: The Emergence of the Third Sect of Zen in Tokugawa Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.

A. W. BARBER

## INITIATION

Initiation (or “CONSECRATION” in tantric Buddhism) brought a candidate into the MAṆḌALA of buddha families and, most frequently, authorized the individ-

ual to visualize himself or herself as some form of a buddha or BODHISATTVA. Only partly similar to initiation rituals in the Mediterranean mystery religions, Buddhist initiation was initially patterned on political rites of coronation that had been developed in the early medieval period of India (ca. 500–1200 C.E.). As such, the individual was consecrated or anointed with water at a specific moment in the ceremony; the ritual derived its name, *abhiṣeka*, from this process of anointing (*Ābhiṣic* means “to asperse”). The term *abhiṣeka* also denotes rituals employed in the bathing of images, such as pouring fragrant water on a Buddha statue during the Buddha's birthday celebrations, and the cleansing aspect of the consecration ritual was never entirely lost.

Buddhists had consistently relied on formal rites of passage, whether those of taking refuge (*śaraṇagāmana*) for the laity, or lower and higher ORDINATION (*pravrajyā* and *upasampadā*) for MONKS and NUNS. Mahāyānist authors had developed a new ceremony for the assumption of the bodhisattva vow and had eventually termed it “bodhisattva ordination” (*bodhisattva-upasampadā*). The idea of royal consecration, however, was first applied to the bodhisattva MAITREYA, who was said to be the crown prince (*yuvārāja*) of the dharma, as the successor to Śākyamuni Buddha, who was denoted the king of the dharma. Thus, consecration indicated a political metaphor, which assumed a position of increasing importance during the fifth- and sixth-century transition between the classical Gupta and the early medieval period of India. As MAHĀYĀNA developed this metaphor, a mythic rite of consecration became applied to all bodhisattvas who reached the tenth stage of the Mahāyāna path, so that the bodhisattva at the tenth stage became consecrated (*abhiṣikta*) in the heavenly realm of *Akaniṣṭha* by all the buddhas.

With tantric Buddhism, the initiation rite went from a narrative applied to exalted bodhisattvas to a new rite of passage indicating the entrance into a new vehicle, the vehicle of mantras, or the adamantite vehicle (VAJRAYĀNA). Initiation into this vehicle, employing the imperial metaphor, meant that the candidate was consecrated as the head of a ritual family (*kula*) through a Buddhist form of the medieval Indian coronation ritual. While details vary between texts and lineages, by the eighth century the normative initiation ritual involved a day of preparation and a day of consecration. The preparatory day was devoted to the consecration of the site, which included a request for permission from the snake spirits and autochthonous



gods to hold the ceremony. The preparatory day also included the performance of a fire ritual (*homa*) for the sake of purity and auspiciousness. After the maṇḍala was constructed and consecrated by the master, the candidate would be prepared by some teaching. After being presented with a piece of *kusha* or other variety of grass, the candidate would be told to place the consecrated grass under the pillow and to remember whatever dreams might occur in the night. Auspicious dreams (e.g., a sunrise or a view from the pinnacle of a high mountain) would mean that the candidate was appropriate; conversely, inauspicious dreams (e.g., imprisonment or losing one's way in a unknown place) might convince the master that the candidate was inadequate to the task, and cause the consecration to be canceled or postponed.

On the day of the consecration, the candidate would be brought in, sometimes blindfolded, to relate the dreams. The blindfold or screen would then be removed and the maṇḍala revealed. The master would then have the candidate throw a flower into the maṇḍala to determine which of the five families (buddha, *vajra*, *ratna*, *padma*, or karma) the person belonged to, so that the appropriate MANTRA and form of the buddha could be conferred. The candidate was then consecrated by anointing from a pot of water, by conferring a vajra-scepter, by bestowing a ritual bell, by placing a crown on the candidate's head, by entrusting a buddha's mantra to the candidate, and by granting the candidate a new name. Other subsidiary consecrations could be added as well, but the above were standard, although the order in which they were granted would vary with the event or lineage. The candidate was instructed especially in the proper use of the mantra and in the ritual of contemplation on the buddha, and was further granted the authority (in some traditions) to become a teacher. Vows of secrecy were essential to this process, even though the content of the secrets continued to change as the understanding of the ritual and its literature progressed. Other vows would include nonrepudiation of mantras, acquiescence to the authority of the buddhas, and acquiescence to the authority of the candidate's master (who was the buddhas' representative), all allied with the general commitment to cultivate the attitudes associated with the Mahāyāna. Increasingly, the candidate was instructed to visualize himself as the buddha or bodhisattva on whom the flower fell during the maṇḍala rite. Finally, the candidate was granted the authority to perform rituals (especially fire rites) associated with pacification, accumulation, subjugation, and destruction; these

were traditionally exercised on behalf of patrons and so represented the newly consecrated master's potential source of income.

By the late eighth century, the development and institutionalization of the new "perfected" (*siddha*) figures in Indian Buddhism led to a change in some of the initiatory rituals. In *siddha*-inspired literature, the above rites all came to be subsumed into the category of the "jug" or "ewer" consecration, since the candidate's aspersion from a pot was its hallmark. Added to this were three new forms of consecration, derived from *siddha* rituals, for ascension to kingship over celestial sorcerers (VIDYĀDHARA): the secret consecration, the insight/gnosis consecration, and the fourth consecration. The first was secret, for the master was to copulate with a woman (often a prostitute), and the candidate was instructed to consume the ejaculate. In the insight/gnosis consecration, the candidate himself copulated with the consort, experiencing great bliss as a symbol of liberation. The fourth consecration was the revelation of a symbol to the candidate, who was expected to understand its significance.

These new rituals were not introduced without comment, for they represented a dramatic reorientation toward the fundamental values of Buddhist clerical celibacy. Although multiple opinions on their desirability or necessity were voiced throughout the ninth to twelfth centuries, they were eventually enacted almost exclusively in a visualized form, rather than the literal enactment seen earlier. Over time, the new consecrations were combined with new forms of yoga developed from non-Buddhist analogs and a new set of vows and sacraments (*samaya*) were added to provide a framework for the yogin's subsequent behavior.

See also: Mahāsiddha; Tantra

### Bibliography

- Davidson, Ronald M. *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.
- Lessing, Ferdinand D., and Wayman, Alex, trans. *Mkhas Grub Rje's Fundamentals of the Buddhist Tantras*. The Hague, Netherlands, and Paris: Mouton, 1968.
- Snellgrove, David L. "The Notion of Divine Kingship in Tantric Buddhism." In *La Regalità Sacra: Contributi al Tema dell'VIII Congresso Internazionale di Storia delle Religioni*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.
- Snellgrove, David L. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*, 2 vols. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.

Strickmann, Michel. "The Consecration Sūtra: A Buddhist Book of Spells." In *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*, ed. Robert E. Buswell. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et mandarins: Le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Gallimard, 1996.

RONALD M. DAVIDSON

## INOUE ENRYŌ

Inoue Enryō (1858–1919) was an Ōtani-branch Jōdo Shin philosopher and educator. Born into a Jōdo Shin family in Japan's Niigata region, Inoue eventually studied philosophy with Ernest Fenollosa, graduating with a degree in that subject from Tokyo Imperial University in 1885. Inoue was highly critical of the Buddhist clergy of his day and decided that the best way to work for the revitalization of Buddhism in Japan was as a layman. He renounced his status as a Shin cleric in the late 1880s.

Inoue was convinced that philosophy was the key to understanding absolute truth and that Buddhism, properly understood, was consonant with both Western philosophical and modern scientific understandings of the world. To promote the study of philosophy, particularly his Hegelian-tinged, Buddhist philosophical rationalism, Inoue founded the Tetsugakukan (Academy of Philosophy; later Tōyō University) in 1887. An ardent nationalist and opponent to Christianity in Japan, Inoue was a vigorous apologist for Buddhism. Inoue argued that Buddhism provided the best ideological support for modernizing the Japanese nation-state and served as a bulwark against Western missionaries, offering its emotional dimension (the Pure Land traditions) to the masses and its profound intellectual facets (Tendai and Kegon thought) to the elite.

In an effort to uplift those he viewed as the ignorant masses (*gumin*) and combat Christian missionary influence, Inoue promoted various Buddhist social reform activities, including the founding of orphanages, reform schools, and hospitals, as well as more active proselytization efforts by Buddhist organizations. Ever the rationalist, Inoue also embarked on an ambitious project to catalogue and analyze numerous accounts of supernatural phenomena throughout Japan with an eye to debunking empirically the supernatural tales that loomed large in Japanese popular culture.

See also: **Meiji Buddhist Reform; Philosophy**

## Bibliography

Figal, Gerald. *Civilization and Monsters: Spirits of Modernity in Meiji Japan*. Durham, NC, and London: Duke University Press, 1999.

Snodgrass, Judith. "The Deployment of Western Philosophy in the Meiji Buddhist Revival." *Eastern Buddhist* 30/2 (1997): 173–198.

RICHARD M. JAFFE

## INTERMEDIATE STATES

Intermediate state (Sanskrit, *antarābhava*; Chinese, *zhongyou*; Tibetan, *bardo*) is the interim between death and the next birth. The term refers both to the post-mortem state of transition and to the subtle entity that abides in that state. During the early period of Buddhism in India, the status of the intermediate state between lives was a subject of some controversy. The doctrine was not accepted by some early Buddhist schools, including the THERAVĀDA, Vibhajyavāda, MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA, and MAHĪŚĀSAKA. The schools that accepted some version of the theory were the Sarvāstivāda, SAUTRĀNTIKA, Saṃmitiya, Pūrvaśāila, and Dārṣṭāntika.

The doctrinal controversy is described briefly in the *Kathāvatthu* (*Points of Controversy*) of Moggaliputta Tissa (second century B.C.E.). There the problem focuses on how to properly interpret the expression "completed existence within the interval" (*antarābhavūpagaṃ*). Some argued that this phrase referred to the existence of an actual intermediate period between death and rebirth. Others held that such an intermediate period was never taught explicitly by the Buddha and thus does not exist. According to opponents of the intermediate state doctrine, since the Buddha taught that there are only three realms of existence—desire (*kāmadhātu*), form (*rūpadhātu*), and formlessness (*arūpadhātu*)—an intermediary realm cannot be accepted as valid. Even proponents of the doctrine were not always in agreement as to how this intervening realm should best be understood. There were a number of detailed early doctrinal expositions of the intermediate state written in India, such as the second-century compilation *Mahāvibhāṣā* (*Great Exegesis*), a Sarvāstivāda ABHIDHARMA commentary. VASUBANDHU codified the doctrine in his fifth-century ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA, and this became the standard presentation and subsequently the basic model adopted in East Asia and Tibet.

In this monumental work, which represents essentially the position of the Mūlasarvāstivāda school, Vasubandhu compiled all previous arguments in favor of interim existence and offered descriptions of the intermediate state and the liminal entity who abides there. His presentation can be encapsulated in six basic points:

1. The duration of the intermediate state is divided into seven short phases, each lasting no more than a week, for a total of up to seven weeks or forty-nine days;
2. The entity that abides in this interim state is defined as a being that arises between the moment of death and the next state of birth on its way to a new existence;
3. Because this being subsists on fragrance it is called a *gandharva*, meaning literally “that which eats (*arvati*) odors (*gandham*)”;
4. The shape and form of this liminal entity resembles that of the beings in the realm where it is to be reborn;
5. Its senses are intact, though in subtle forms; no one can resist it, it cannot be turned away, and it can only be seen by those of its own class and by those with pure divine eyes;
6. Rebirth occurs when the mind (*mati*) of the *gandharva* is troubled by the sight of its future parents having sexual intercourse and when the emotional quality of that mind propels it into a new existence. Accordingly, when the *gandharva* enters the womb it becomes male if it is attracted to its future mother and repulsed by its father, or female if attracted to its future father and repulsed by its mother. These agitated thoughts of desire and repulsion cause the mind to cohere to the semen and blood mixed in the womb just prior to conception. At the point of conception, the psychophysical SKANDHA (AGGREGATES) gradually become coarse and coagulate, the intermediate-state being dies, and a new life is conceived.

There are three conditions, therefore, necessary for conception: The mother must be healthy, the parents must be engaged in sexual intercourse, and a *gandharva*, an intermediate-state being, must be present. These six basic components of the Buddhist intermediate-state

doctrine had been formalized by at least the fifth century C.E.

The doctrine is expounded also in a number of Buddhist MAHĀYĀNA sūtras influenced by Abhidharma interpretations, most notably the *Garbhāvākṛāntinirdeśa-sūtra* (*Sūtra on Entering the Womb*) and the *Saddharmasmṛtyupasthāna-sūtra* (*Sūtra on Stability in Mindfulness of the True Dharma*). The *Garbhāvākṛāntinirdeśa-sūtra* is extant in four recensions, the earliest being a Chinese translation. The later versions from the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA detail the progression of the intermediate-state being from the final moment of death, to conception in the future mother’s womb, and subsequently through each week of fetal development. This particular version of the *Garbhāvākṛāntinirdeśa* appears to have been the primary source for the descriptions of the intermediate state found in the *Yogācārabhūmi* (*States of Yoga Practice*). The *Saddharmasmṛtyupasthāna-sūtra* is noteworthy in that it includes elaborate discussion of as many as seventeen individual intermediate states. Some features of this exposition accord with earlier Abhidharma formulations, while others resemble later tantric descriptions similar to those found in Tibetan literature.

Over time the doctrine of the intermediate state was reformulated and embellished within the soteriological framework of Tantric Buddhism. A distinctive feature of the tantric reinterpretation of the doctrine was the proliferation of the intermediate state, originally a single period, into a series of distinct and separate phases. Some Buddhist tantric systems enumerated as many as three, four, five, and even six individual intermediate states. This expansion of the concept of interim existence was derived in part by a conflation of the earlier Abhidharma doctrine of the intermediate state with the Mahāyāna idea of a buddha’s three bodies (*trikāya*): truth body (*dharmakāya*), enjoyment body (*saṃbhogakāya*), and emanation body (*nirmāṇakāya*). The combination of these conceptual elements was grafted onto an advanced twofold yogic system, which the Tibetans were later to classify as Supreme Yoga Tantra (Sanskrit, *anuttarayoga-tantra*; Tibetan, *rnal ’byor bla na med pa’i rgyud*), involving the successive stages of generation (Sanskrit, *utpannakrama*; Tibetan, *bskyed rim*) and completion (Sanskrit, *sampannakrama*; Tibetan, *rdzogs rim*). This particular tantric program does not appear to have been introduced into China or Japan, but it did enter Tibet as early as the eleventh century through the efforts of Tibetan disciples of Indian tantric adepts (*siddha*).

One of the most famous and influential of these Indian siddhas was NĀROPA (1016–1100), who codified a diverse system of tantric instruction that would come to be widely known in Tibet as the “Six Doctrines of Nāropa” (Tibetan, *Nā ro chos drug*). In Nāropa’s system the intermediate state was expanded to include three separate states:

1. The long period between birth and death, which was identified as the “intermediate state of birth-to-death”;
2. The interval between sleep and waking consciousness called the “intermediate state of dreams”;
3. The intervening period between death and re-birth identified as the “intermediate state of becoming.”

The tradition argued that all three intermediate states provide particularly fruitful opportunities for tantric practice leading eventually to buddhahood itself. The aim of such practice was to actually become embodied as a buddha using special tantric techniques of yoga and contemplation to mix or blend (Tibetan, *bsres ba*) one’s experience with the three bodies of a buddha during each of the three transitional periods—in meditation during life, in dreams during sleep, and in the interim state after death. In Tibet this practice of blending the intermediate states with the three embodiments of buddhahood is commonly referred to as “bringing the three bodies to the path” (*sku gsum lam ’khyer*).

In Tibet the tantric reinterpretation of the intermediate state inspired even further innovations. In time there emerged several Tibetan religious systems that posited multiple intermediate states beyond the three separate interim periods developed previously by Indian siddhas like Nāropa. The ritual and literary tradition of the famous TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD (*Bar do thos grol chen mo*, pronounced Bardo thödol), for example, enumerates six individual states, including the three described in Nāropa’s scheme and adding:

4. The intermediate state of meditative stabilization;
5. The intermediate state of dying; and
6. The intermediate state of reality-itself, wherein the deceased encounters the true nature of real-

ity manifest as a radiant display of one hundred peaceful and wrathful deities.

In particular, the concept of the intermediate state of reality-itself is derived from the unique doctrines of the Great Perfection tradition that began to emerge in Tibet in the eleventh century and became fully systematized by the late fourteenth century. The Tibetan Great Perfection tradition was promoted largely by the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) and non-Buddhist BON orders.

As for the formal doctrine of the intermediate state in its ritual dimension, Buddhist funeral rites in Tibet and East Asia are timed ideally to coincide with the forty-nine days of postmortem intermediate existence, although it is not uncommon for this prolonged period to be abbreviated depending on the resources and influence of the deceased’s family. In Tibet the fully developed liturgical sequence, inscribed in specialized texts such as those belonging to the *Tibetan Book of the Dead*, consists of a variety of offerings for generating merit, tantric initiation rites for the ripening of virtues, prayers of confession and reconciliation in the purification of nonvirtuous karma, and guidance rites for leading the deceased through the perilous intermediate state into the next life.

In East Asia the doctrine of the intermediate state is linked to bureaucratic notions of the judgment of ten postmortem kings and to rituals performed for the benefit of the deceased presumed to be undergoing a kind of purgatory, a period in which the good and bad deeds of the departed are put under judicial review. The ritual actions performed by the living for the penitent dead include the dedication of merit, almsgiving, and the recitation of Buddhist scripture. The general assumption underlying the intermediate-state funeral rites in Tibet and East Asia is that actions performed by the living affect directly the condition of the dead. Buddhist funerals are thus designed to provide for the dead a means of expediting safe passage over death’s threshold and of ensuring an auspicious future destiny.

*See also:* Cosmology; Death; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Rebirth; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

#### **Bibliography**

Bareau, André. “Chuu.” In *Hōbōgirin*, ed. Jacques May. Paris and Tokyo: L’Academie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres, Institut de France, 1979.

- Cuevas, Bryan J. "Predecessors and Prototypes: Towards a Conceptual History of the Buddhist Antarābhava." *Numen* 43, no. 3 (1996): 263–302.
- Evans-Wentz, W. Y., and Kazi Dawa Samdup, eds. and trans. *The Tibetan Book of the Dead* (1927). New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Kritzer, Robert. "Antarābhava in the Vibhāṣā." *Nōtom Damu Joshi Daigaku Kirisutokiyō Bunka Kenkyōjo Kiyō* (Maranata) 3, no. 5 (1997): 69–91.
- Kritzer, Robert. "Rūpa and the Antarābhava." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 28 (2000): 235–272.
- Lati Rinbochay, and Hopkins, Jeffrey, trans. *Death, Intermediate State, and Rebirth in Tibetan Buddhism*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1979.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Wayman, Alex. "The Intermediate-State Dispute in Buddhism." In *Buddhist Studies in Honor of I. B. Horner*, ed. L. Cousins, Arnold Kunst, and K. R. Norman. Dordrecht, Netherlands, and Boston: Reidel, 1974.

BRYAN J. CUEVAS

## IPPEN CHISHIN

Ippen Chishin (1239–1289) was an itinerant monk who popularized Pure Land Buddhist faith in rural areas of Japan during the Kamakura period (1185–1333). His teachings emphasized the doctrine of Other Power (*tariki*, reliance on the saving power of AMITĀBHA Buddha alone), the practice of dancing while chanting Amitābha Buddha's name (*nenbutsu odorī*), and the distribution of paper tallies to confirm one's connection to Amitābha Buddha. Today Ippen Chishin is revered as the founder of the Jishū (Time) denomination in Japan.

See also: **Japan; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Pure Land Buddhism; Pure Land Schools**

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## ISLAM AND BUDDHISM

The historical meeting between the various powerful states that drew political legitimacy from either Islam or Buddhism was a violent one. The Arab conquest of Bukhara (in present-day Uzbekistan) in 696 C.E., in

which a mosque replaced a monastery, and the Turkic destruction of the important Buddhist monasteries of Nālandā and Vikramaśīla in India in 1202, are widely recognized as the end of Indian Buddhism. Similar devastation was glorified in a Turkic folksong recorded in Al-Kashgari's twelfth-century dictionary, which revels in the desecration of Buddhism during the tenth-century Karakhanid attack on the Uygur Buddhist kingdom of Turfan along the SILK ROAD. With the Inner Asian imperial revival of Buddhism in the twelfth century, however, the direction of religious violence was reversed. The Kara Khitais launched pogroms against Muslims, and Hülegü, a supporter of the Tibetan Phag mo gru pa, killed the 'Abbasid Caliph in 1256.

Of course there were exceptions to these norms of imperial violence. Kabūl Shāh converted to Islam only in 814. When BĀMIYĀN and Gandhāra were seized in 711, Buddhism and Islam coexisted. When Sind was conquered it was decreed that Buddhists, like Christians and Zoroastrians, should be taxed though not killed, as was the case during the reign of Zayn al-'abidīn in Kashmir (1420–1470). Early Arabic sources also note that sometimes Buddhists and Muslims were military allies. Tāranātha's *Rgya gar chos 'byung* (*History of Buddhism in India*, 1608), in accord with other Indian sources, notes that Buddhists rejoiced in the Muslim destruction of Hinduism and records that Buddhists even acted as agents and intermediaries for the Turkic assault on Magadha in central India. The Buddhist–Muslim encounter has manifested a full range of experiences and dialogues.

Arabic translations of Indian Buddhist works reflect the earliest engagement between Buddhism and Islam. These include the animal tales of the *Kalīla wa-Dimna* (*Kalīla and Dimna*, ca. eighth century), based on the *Pañcatantra* (*Five Treatises*, ca. 300 C.E.), and the *Kitāb Bilawhar wa-Yūdāsaf* (*The Book of Bilawhar and Yudasaf*, ca. seventh–eighth century), a compilation from various sources of the Buddha biography that became the prototype for the Christian legend of Barlaam and Josaphat. Although these translation projects ceased by the mid-ninth century, Muslim scholars continued to describe and interpret the Buddhist tradition. In the tenth century, Ibn al-Faqīh and Yāqūt described in detail the Buddhist architecture, ritual, and doctrine as witnessed at Nowbahar in Afghanistan. Similarly, Jayhānī's description of Buddhism in his now lost gazetteer *Kitāb al-masālik* (*The Book of Roads*) provided material on Buddhist thought for both Maqdisī and Gardīzī in their brief descriptions of religion in

India. More detailed descriptions of the dharma, as well as the standard categorization of Indian religions, are found in Ibn al-Nadīm's *Fihrist* (*Catalogue*, 987) and Shahrastānī's *Kitāb al-milal wa-n niḥal* (*The Book of Religions and Faiths*, 1125), works superseded only by Rashīd al-Dīn's *Ta'rikh al-Hind* (*History of India*, ca. 1305/6), which explores at length the Buddha and Buddhist concepts of time as presented by the Kashmiri monk Kamalaśri (dates unknown).

Muslim engagement with Buddhism, however, was not limited to theological and historical works. Islamic architecture derived inspiration from and appropriated localized Buddhist forms across Asia. And in opposition to Islam's well-known iconoclasm, an extensive Muslim trade in Buddhist icons flourished through the tenth century. Indeed, over time the term *bot* (idol, presumably deriving from Buddha) lost its religious significance and became a clichéd metaphor of idealized beauty in Persian poetry.

Extant sources for the Buddhist interpretation of Islam are more limited. The main source is the *KĀLACAKRA* (*Wheel of Time*), a work composed in India during the early eleventh century at a time of increased Muslim migration, primarily Shi'ite groups fleeing persecution from the Sunni caliphate. The work outlines Muslim dietary laws, circumcision, marriage, the nature of god, and god's relationship to humanity. Why there are not more Buddhist interpretations of Islam is uncertain, though the retreat of Buddhism as a culturally dynamic force certainly played a role.

This retreat was premised on many factors—economics, politics, and most importantly, the growing fusion between Hindu and Buddhist thought, particularly among the laity. A syncretism fueled by Advaita Vedānta and tantric thought also played a role in South Asia's Islamization, as Sufi saints appropriated indigenous Indian religious discourses in transmitting and developing Islam in South Asia. Thus, for a time these traditions engaged one another, and holy sites came to share narratives of sacrality. The most famous of these narratives concerns the footprint on a mountain in Sri Lanka traditionally attributed to the Buddha. In the *Akhbār al-Sīn wa-l-Hind* (*Stories about China and India*, 851), this site was identified as the place where Adam descended after his expulsion from paradise. In the fourteenth century, Ibn Baṭūṭa noted that Muslims, Hindus, and Buddhists all regarded "Adam's Peak" as holy.

Yet amid this South Asian religious multiplicity, Buddhism became intellectually isolated, losing both

royal and lay support. Chinese pilgrims to India witnessed this diminishing interest and recorded the concurrent disappearance of Buddhist temples and monasteries. Similarly, artistic remains from the period reflect a systematic shift of royal patronage from Buddhism to Hinduism. Although the Turkic destruction of two monasteries in 1202 is held up as the ultimate demise of Buddhism in India, seventy-eight Hindu temples were also destroyed in the creation of an Indo-Muslim state. Islam was a threat, but Buddhism's inevitable absorption into the amorphous doctrinal and ritual category of Hinduism was a greater one.

This transition occurred so seamlessly in Southeast Asia that when Islam finally arrived, the pre-Hindu layer of Buddhist religious history and culture was largely forgotten except in its famous monuments. In Java, Buddhism eventually merged into tantric Śaivism, only to be displaced by Islam after royal conversion in the fourteenth century, a trajectory also found in Kashmir. More often, Buddhist sources wrote of fearing Hinduization rather than defeat by Muslim forces. The nexus of Buddhism's imminent internal absorption into Hinduism and the external threat posed by Islam is most eloquently captured in the central eschatological myth of the *Kālacakra*. This narrative refashioned the Hindu myth of Viṣṇu's final avatar Kalkin Cakrin into a Buddhist apocalypse where Kalkin rides out of Shambhala, the mythical kingdom where the Buddha's final teachings are preserved, and kills the Muslims who have taken over the world, ushering in an age of pure dharma. This vision of Islamic perfidy has influenced Buddhist representations of Islam up to the present time.

In modern Buddhist states, these negative images are often framed in terms of such categories as ethno-national identity, politics, and demographics, with at times devastating consequences, as witnessed in Burma (Myanmar), where, in Arakan State, a predominantly Muslim area, the Burmese government has carried out policies of institutionalized discrimination including forced labor, restrictions on freedom of movement, and destruction of mosques. Elsewhere, however, dialogue between the traditions is again progressing as Muslim and Buddhist states and citizens grapple with the religious consequences of migration and conversion.

*See also:* Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula; Nationalism and Buddhism; Persecutions; Politics and Buddhism; Thailand

**Bibliography**

- Barthold, V. V. *Turkestan Down to the Mongol Invasion*. Philadelphia: Porcupine Press, 1977.
- Beal, Samuel. *Chinese Accounts of India: Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang*. Calcutta: Susil Gupta, 1958.
- Bechert, Heinz. "The Buddhayana of Indonesia." *Journal of the Pāli Text Society* 9 (1981): 10–21.
- de Silva, K. M., et al., eds. *Ethnic Conflict in Buddhist Societies: Sri Lanka, Thailand, and Burma*. Boulder, CO: Westview Press, 1988.
- Eaton, Richard M. "Temple Desecration and Indo-Muslim States." In *Essays on Islam and Indian History*, ed. Richard Eaton. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Hasan, Perween. "Sultanate Mosques and Continuity in Bengal Architecture." *Muqarnas* 6 (1989): 58–74.
- Huntington, Susan L. *The "Pala-Sena" Schools of Sculpture*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1984.
- I-ching. *A Record of the Buddhist Religion as Practiced in India and the Malay Archipelago (A.D. 671–695)*, tr. J. Takakasu. Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1966.
- Ishii, Yoneo. "Thai Muslims and the Royal Patronage of Religion." *Law and Society Review* 28 (1994): 453–460.
- Jahn, Karl. *Rashīd al-Dīn's History of India*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1965.
- Knodel, John, et al. "Religion and Reproduction: Muslims in Buddhist Thailand." *Population Studies* 53 (1999): 149–164.
- Lawrence, Bruce B. *Shahrastānī on the Indian Religions*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1976.
- Newman, John. "Islam in the Kālacakra Tantra." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 21 (1998): 311–371.
- Roy, Asim. *The Islamic Syncretistic Tradition in Bengal*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Smith, Jane I. "Early Muslim Accounts of Buddhism in India." *Studies in Islam* 10 (1973): 87–100.
- Tāranātha. *History of Buddhism in India*, tr. Lama Chimpa and Alaka Chattopadhyaya. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidas, 1990.

JOHAN ELVERSKOG

# J



## JAINISM AND BUDDHISM

Jainism and Buddhism have a common origin in the culture of world-renunciation that developed in India from around the seventh century B.C.E. This common origin can be confirmed by the many similarities between their respective ancient codes of practice, and the two traditions have always shared an acceptance of the transformative powers of human effort in effecting freedom from REBIRTH.

Although evidence beyond that afforded by partisan texts is not available, Jainism can be judged to be the older religion because from a relatively early period it claimed as authoritative a teacher called Pārśva, who can reasonably be dated to around two centuries before the Buddha. Mahāvīra, who is generally credited with being the “founder” of Jainism, appears to have built upon Pārśva’s teachings. Jainism eventually located Pārśva and Mahāvīra as the twenty-third and twenty-fourth of a succession of teachers called form-maker (*tīrthaṅkara*) or conqueror (*jina*). The word *jina* is the source of the Sanskrit name *Jaina*, used to refer to a follower of these teachers, although the earliest term to designate them was *nigaṇṭha* (bondless). While early Buddhism developed a succession of twenty-five buddhas, most likely under the influence of Jainism, both traditions assert that their teachings are uncreated, without beginning or end, and outside the parameters of historical time.

The date of Mahāvīra relies on synchronicity with that of the Buddha, who is now regarded by scholars as having lived in the fifth century B.C.E. Although the two teachers were contemporaries who lived in the same area of the Ganges basin, there is no record of them having met. The *Saṅgīti-sutta* of the *Dīghanikāya*

describes the strife that broke out in the Jain community after Mahāvīra’s death and the Buddha’s contrast of this with the stability of his own teaching and followers. Mahāvīra, under the name of Nigaṇṭha Nāta-putta, is conventionally located by early Buddhist scripture within a group of six rival ascetics (*śramaṇa*) who taught a variety of false doctrines. Nigaṇṭha Nāta-putta is associated with a “fourfold restraint” with regard to evil, which, in the light of the fact that Mahāvīra taught five “great vows,” suggests that the early Buddhists were familiar with members of the community of the earlier Jain teacher, Pārśva.

The Pāli CANON views the Jains in inimical terms and frequently describes ascetic and lay followers of Mahāvīra joining the Buddhist community. Jain doctrine advocated the existence of a permanent soul or life monad (*jīva*) that changed only in respect to its modifications, a standpoint also applied to reality as a whole. Such a view was very much at variance with Buddhist teaching, which denied the possibility of the existence of entities that were not impermanent or conditioned. Buddhism also rejected as fruitless Jainism’s strong ascetic ethos, which held that only fasting and intense forms of religious exercise would lead to liberation. A further area of Jain teaching that the Buddhists found inadequate was that of intentionality. Although the Jains were aware of the role of mental attitude in determining the moral tone of an action, the Buddhists accused them of advocating a crude mechanistic approach to agency and retribution.

The Jains, for their part, regarded the Buddhists as incorrigibly lax in their behavior and as promoting a view of the momentary nature of the world that verged on nihilism in that moral retribution could not operate without some kind of permanent self. According



to one medieval writer of the Digambara sect, the Buddha himself had originally been a Jain monk who abandoned the true path because of his inability cope with its rigorous demands. Buddhism's claims to be non-violent were rejected on the grounds that Buddhism lacked Jainism's radical analysis of reality as composed of embodied, eternally existing souls, and the Buddhists, whether renunciators or laity, were portrayed by their vegetarian opponents as habitual meat eaters. MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism's teaching of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) was stigmatized by the Jains as promoting a brand of illusionism where no ethical values could hold sway, while the bodhisattva's supposed postponement of enlightenment to aid others' attainment of the goal was deemed to be illogical because it entailed a possible situation in which all beings could be in a state of liberation at one and the same time, thus voiding the realms of rebirth and liberation of any distinct meaning.

In the light of these differences, it might appear difficult to locate areas of interaction or mutual influence between the two traditions. However, a consistent Jain interest in Buddhist learning can be seen in the use of the term *basket* (*piḍaga*) to refer to their scriptures (like the Buddhist expression *tripiṭaka*) and the fact that the titles of several Jain works are modeled on Buddhist originals. Particularly noteworthy is the eighth-century teacher Haribhadra, who wrote several works in which he pointed to soteriological similarities between Jainism and Buddhism. From the doctrinal perspective, it is likely that the Jains borrowed the term *pudgala* (atom) from Buddhism, where, at least among the Sarvāstivādins and the Vātsīputrīyas, the term carried the sense of the individual perceived as an aggregate. As for ritual, a Buddhist text on mantras, the *Vasudhā-rādhārāṇī* (*The Magic Formula of the Goddess Vasudhārā*), has been used by the Jains of Gujarat for the last three centuries.

Certain aspects of early Buddhist meditation practice that relate to the suppression of bodily and mental activity and the senses suggest some sort of external influence, most likely Jain, since such techniques are otherwise said to have been rejected by the Buddha. The Buddhists also appear to have been obliged to consider the nature of the Buddha's omniscience in light of the Jain claim that Mahāvīra and other enlightened people were, as a result of the purification of their souls from karmic accretion, literally "all-knowing" with regard to all constituent elements of the universe in every temporal and spatial location simultaneously. Omniscience was ascribed to the Buddha in the early texts

only in respect to aspects of the religious path. Later Buddhism attributed to him the capacity to know all objects, but only individually, each at one time.

*See also:* **Hinduism and Buddhism; Karma (Action)**

### **Bibliography**

- Balbir, Nalini. "Jain-Buddhist Dialogue: Material from the Pāli Scriptures." *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 26 (2000): 1–42.
- Bollee, W. B. "Buddhists and Buddhism in the Earlier Literature of the Śvetāmbara Jains." In *Buddhist Studies in Honour of I. B. Horner*, ed. L. Cousins, A. Kunst, and K. R. Norman. Boston and Dordrecht, Netherlands: Reidel, 1974.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. "The Buddha and the Jainas Reconsidered." *Asiatische Studien/Etudes Asiatiques* 49 (1995): 333–50.
- Dundas, Paul. *The Jains*, 2nd revised edition. London and New York: Routledge, 2002.
- Jaini, Padmanabh S. *Collected Papers on Buddhist Studies*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 2001.
- Tatia, N. "The Interaction of Jainism and Buddhism and Its Impact on the History of Buddhist Monasticism." In *Studies in History of Buddhism: Papers Presented at the International Conference on the History of Buddhism at the University of Wisconsin, Madison, August 19–21, 1976*, ed. A. K. Narain. Delhi: B. R. Publishing, 1980.

PAUL DUNDAS

---

## JAPAN

Buddhism in contemporary Japan exhibits several distinctive characteristics. In a country that sometimes prides itself on having achieved a secular society of the sort predicted for modernity by Max Weber, the Buddhist religion often seems marginal to contemporary Japanese culture. Yet surveys of the populace reveal that a large majority (roughly 75%) identifies itself as Buddhist. These same surveys indicate that an even larger majority sees itself as Shintō, suggesting that, at least for many Japanese, being Buddhist does not necessarily entail exclusive allegiance to the religion. Indeed, it is sometimes said that Japanese are born Shintō (i.e., receive blessings from a Shintō shrine at birth) and die Buddhist (receive Buddhist funeral and memorial services). The division of spiritual labor here tells us something not only about the fluid character of religious identities but about one of the primary functions of Buddhism in contemporary society. If Bud-

dhism often seems marginal to public life, it remains central to private life through its role in the care and commemoration of the family dead.

### Contemporary organization

The representative institution of contemporary Buddhism is the local temple, which serves as the residence of a married cleric and his family. The temple is supported by a lay membership, for which it provides a calendar of rituals and festivals, occasional pastoral care, and especially funerals and memorial services. Such local institutions usually represent branch temples (*matsuji*) of the many denominations, or schools (*shū*), into which Buddhism is divided. These organizations, registered with the government as religious corporations (*shūkyō hōjin*), are typically centered in a main temple (*honzan*), which serves as symbolic and administrative headquarters. The larger denominations, which can claim thousands of local temples, may include several monastic centers, as well as parochial schools and universities. Whether large or small, the denominations operate as independent religious entities, with their own clergy and real property, their own distinctive scriptures and rituals, and their own lay membership. There is no significant ecumenical body that governs the Buddhist community as a whole. Hence, in institutional terms, Japanese Buddhism is simply the sum of its denominations, and being a Buddhist means being a member of one of the denominations.

The various Buddhist organizations are typically divided into two categories: denominations that trace their origins to ancient and medieval times, and the so-called new religions (*shin shūkyō*), founded in modern times. The former category is often understood as consisting of six sets of denominations, grouped on the basis of their historical association with particular traditional forms of Japanese Buddhism: (1) denominations based at temples in the ancient capital of Nara (e.g., the relatively small Hossō shū, Kegon shū, Risshū, and Shingon risshū); (2) denominations associated with the Tendai tradition; (3) denominations associated with the Shingon tradition; (4) denominations associated with the Pure Land form (e.g., the large Jōdo shū, and still larger Honganji and Ōtani branches of the Jōdo shinshū); (5) denominations associated with Zen (e.g., the large Sōtō shū, the small Ōbaku shū, and the various branches of the Rinzaishū); and (6) denominations associated with the tradition of NICHIREN (e.g., the Nichiren shū and Nichi-

ren shōshū). These groupings do not typically reflect institutional affiliations; contrary to common usage, there is no organization that could be called, for example, the Zen school or the Pure Land school.

In the category of new religions, there is a wide variety of organizations, from small local groups, to large national, and even international, bodies such as the SŌKA GAKKAI. A few date back to the mid-nineteenth century; most of the largest, such as Sōka Gakkai, Reiyūkai, and Risshō kyōseikai, were founded during the first half of the twentieth century and flourished following World War II; still others arose in the last decades of the twentieth century, the most recent sometimes being referred to as the “new new religions” (*shin shin shūkyō*). Occasionally these organizations represent lay movements within a traditional denomination (such as Shinnyoen within a branch of Shingon or, until 1991, Sōka Gakkai within Nichiren shōshū), but for the most part they are wholly independent bodies, typically founded and run by a lay leadership. The older, more established organizations function much like the traditional denominations in providing services to a stable membership of lay households; the newer groups tend to be tailored somewhat more to the spiritual aspirations of individual converts. Some organizations base their teachings primarily on texts of the Buddhist canon, perhaps most often on the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA); others have developed a distinctive scriptural corpus, which may combine traditional Buddhist material with elements drawn from other sources. Indeed, within the broad category of new religions are organizations, such as the notorious Aum shinrikyō, so eclectic in their beliefs and practices that it is difficult to identify them as Buddhist.

If the identification of some of the new religions as Buddhist may mask their more complex religious characters, the standard division of contemporary Buddhism into traditional denominations and new religions may also obscure as much as it reveals. The category of traditional denominations, for example, may suggest an orthodox, historically sanctioned heritage reaching back into premodern times, yet many of the contemporary forms of these denominations owe much to the same modern developments that produced the new religions. By the same token, the tendency, ascribed to the new religions, to incorporate into their Buddhism elements drawn from other sources, such as Shintō and popular religion, has an ancient history common to all the traditional denominations.

Still, whether or not they can easily be applied to the contemporary scene, the two categories can be useful in revealing tensions, present throughout the history of Japanese Buddhism, between tradition and innovation, orthodoxy and heterodoxy, elite establishment and popular practice.

### Early modern developments

Many of the distinctive characteristics of the contemporary Japanese Buddhist institution have their origins in government policies of the Meiji period (1868–1912) and the long Edo (or Tokugawa) period (1600–1868) that preceded it. In the years immediately following the revolution that overthrew the Tokugawa administration, the new Meiji government sought to establish an officially sanctioned Shintō in support of imperial rule. It thus drew a sharp, and historically dubious, distinction between a native Shintō and the imported Buddhism, and sought institutionally to separate the two—a policy that had the practical effect of a brief but severe persecution of many Buddhist establishments. In the end, the government adopted a policy that at once separated church and state and reasserted state authority over the church: On the one hand, it revoked the old Tokugawa laws governing the clergy, decriminalizing violations of the Buddhist precepts and allowing the clerical marriage that has now become common; on the other hand, it carried forward the Tokugawa practice of legal recognition and regulation of Buddhist organizations, setting the precedent for the pattern of religious corporations that we see today.

The contemporary pattern of separate denominations with branch temples serving a local congregation of member households can be understood as a remnant of the Tokugawa government's administration of Buddhism through what are known as the *honmatsu* and *terauke* systems. The former term refers to the organization of the Buddhist institutions into a fixed set of sanctioned denominations, each governed from a headquarters responsible to the secular authorities. The latter term refers to the practice of requiring lay households to register their members at a recognized local temple. These two systems, developed during the seventeenth century in order to regulate both the Buddhist institutions and the religious options of the populace, had the effect of establishing Buddhism as a branch of government administration and the local temples as the registrars of the citizenry.

Such an arrangement assured Buddhism throughout the Edo period of both government support and

popular patronage; and indeed, though the period is sometimes regarded as one of Buddhist decline, in many ways the religion flourished. Not only did many of the sanctioned denominations thrive as institutions, but the period also witnessed a marked growth in the popularity of Buddhist funeral rites and pilgrimage to Buddhist sacred sites that cut across sectarian divides. It also saw the persistence of unauthorized Buddhist communities and the rise of new religious fraternities outside the sanctioned ecclesiastical establishment. And it fostered within that establishment the development of Buddhist centers of sectarian learning (*shūgaku*) that generated scholarship on the history, texts, and doctrines of the various denominations.

The Buddhist sectarian scholarship that developed during the Edo period and continued into the twentieth century did much to frame the modern understanding of the religion. In general, it may be said that such scholarship sought to create a systematic account of the history and teachings of each school: to establish the orthodox tenets (*kyōgi*) of the school, to define the corpus of its scriptural canon, and to provide a history of its origins and transmission. In more modern times, when attempts were made to tell the story of Japanese Buddhism as a whole, these separate sectarian accounts were often simply brought together in a collection of loosely related narratives. Indeed, to this day, the story of Buddhism in Japan is often told primarily through an accounting of the basic doctrines and founding figures recognized by the major denominations (or their groupings into related traditions). Because of the emphasis on the founders, the history of the religion is typically punctuated by the dates of the origins of the schools, which fall into three distinct phases, located in the periods of Nara (710–784), Heian (794–1185), and Kamakura (1185–1333).

The first of these phases covers those schools (traditionally numbered as six) founded in the years between the introduction of Buddhism from the mainland (usually dated 552) and the end of the Nara. The second is associated with the two schools of Tendai and Shingon, introduced near the start of the Heian period. To the last are assigned the traditions of Zen, Pure Land, and Nichiren, all of which look back to founding figures in the Kamakura period. To the extent that these three periods are plotted in a larger historical narrative, it is often one of recurrent spiritual renewal and decline. Thus, the founding of the Heian schools of Tendai and Shingon are seen as a reaction by the founders (SAICHŌ and KŪKAI, respectively) against the stale scholarship and corrupt politics of the Nara Bud-



The Kinkakuji (Golden Pavilion Temple) in Kyoto, Japan, so called because it is covered in gold leaf. © Chris Lisle/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

dhist establishment, and the rise of the “new Buddhism of the Kamakura” (*kamakura shin bukkō*) is understood as a reformation, led by famous founders such as HŌNEN, SHINRAN, DŌGEN, and Nichiren, in response to a Heian Buddhism increasingly dominated by the secular concerns of its aristocratic patrons. The period following the Kamakura is often seen as another time of decline, during which the reforming spirit of the Kamakura founders was lost once again.

Needless to say, this neatly articulated account of the history of the various schools, however well it may reflect the self-understanding of the modern denominations, is hardly the whole, or necessarily the most instructive, story of Buddhism in Japan. Not surprisingly, it has been challenged by historians who seek a broader understanding of the character of the religion and its role in society. For such historians, an account that focuses on the sectarian traditions of the schools and the lives and teachings of their founding figures exaggerates not only the historical significance of a few great men but the historical status of the schools themselves. Even in the early modern and modern periods,

when the institutional and intellectual definitions of the schools are fairly well established, popular Buddhist belief and practice has often, perhaps typically, been oblivious of sectarian distinctions, and the meaning of such distinctions during the premodern period developed only gradually over a millennium of Japanese history.

### Premodern background

The founding of the Nara schools is but a minor note in the early history of Japanese Buddhism, which is itself but part of a larger story of the formation of a central Japanese court and its wholesale importation of continental culture during the seventh and eighth centuries. While the transmission of Chinese Buddhist books and ideas was certainly one feature of this process, far more conspicuous was the creation of a court-supported clerical establishment, housed at great monasteries in and around the capital cities. Much of the subsequent institutional history of Japanese Buddhism revolves around the shifting relations between the central government and the increasingly powerful and independent monastic centers.

Throughout the eighth century, the court sought to bring Buddhism under civil control through the promulgation of regulations (*sōniryō*) governing the ordination, offices, and activities of monks and nuns. Court ambitions for a national Buddhism administered from the capital reached its apogee during the middle of the century, with the government's dedication of the great bronze buddha image of Tōdaiji in Nara and the founding of national monasteries (*kokubunji*) in the provinces. What came to be known as the Nara schools of Buddhism represent simply the curriculum of the scholar monks of Tōdaiji and other officially recognized institutions in the capital, a curriculum of particular Buddhist texts for the study of which the government came to sponsor an annual allotment of ordination rights (*nenbun dosha*).

Though the court would continue to claim authority to regulate the religion, the vision of a national Buddhism did not survive the Nara period. Already in this period, it is clear from government efforts to restrict it that Buddhism was taking on an independent life of its own, in the proliferation of unofficial monasteries sponsored by the laity (*chikishiji*), the development of independent centers of Buddhist practice, often associated with sacred mountains, and the unauthorized activities of popular preachers, healers, wonder-workers, and the like. These trends toward an independent Buddhism would only increase as the religion spread throughout the country and into all levels of society during the succeeding Heian period.

The growing autonomy of Buddhism in the Heian period was occasioned not only by the diffusion of the religion to the populace but by the consolidation of power in the monastic centers. Just as the major aristocratic families came increasingly to dominate the court through the independent means provided by their private land holdings, so too certain monasteries acquired extensive property rights that made them significant socioeconomic institutions. As such, they were players in Heian politics, supported by, and in turn supporting, one or another faction at court; as a result, their elite clergy interacted with, and was itself often drawn from the scions of, the aristocracy. This development produced what is often referred to as Heian "aristocratic Buddhism," with its ornate art and architecture, its elegant literary expression, and its elaborate ritual performance.

The new style of autonomous Buddhist institution is well represented by Tōdaiji, with its historic status

as a national shrine, and the great Kōfukuji and Kasuga Shrine complex, with its links to the powerful Fujiwara clan. But the Nara monasteries were challenged and often superseded by institutions in and around the new capital of Heian (modern Kyoto), of which the most historically influential became Enryakuji, on Mount Hiei, and (to a somewhat lesser extent) Tōji. The former was the seat of the Tendai school; the latter was the metropolitan base of the Shingon (which had established itself on isolated Mount Kōya). Like Tōdaiji, Kōfukuji, and other major monasteries, these institutions not only held significant land rights but developed networks of subsidiary temples that made them, in effect, the headquarters of extended organizations. The identity of the Tendai and Shingon organizations was ritually reinforced by the adoption of new, private rites of ordination (*tokudo*) and initiation (*kanjō*) that supplemented and in some cases even replaced the standard rituals of Buddhist clerical practice. Thus, the first steps were taken toward a division of the Buddhist community into ritually distinct and institutionally separate ecclesiastic bodies.

It is sometimes suggested that these great Buddhist institutions went into decline at the end of the Heian, to be replaced by the new Buddhism of the Kamakura period. In fact, such was their power and prestige that they continued to exercise great influence well into medieval times, as what is sometimes called by historians the exoteric-esoteric establishment (*Kenmitsu taisei*). Just as the rise of the provincial warriors in the Kamakura did not displace the old court aristocracy but rather added new layers of power, so too the development of new Buddhist movements did not replace the establishment but introduced additional options of religious belief, practice, and organization. While some of these options were resisted by members of the establishment, others were welcomed and, indeed, incorporated into the catholic Buddhism of the great monasteries.

The decision to resist or accept rested heavily on the degree to which spokesmen for the new movements aggressively sought patronage in order to establish separate institutions. Thus, to cite the two most conspicuous examples of the time, while many within the Nara-Heian establishment saw both the Pure Land preachers' call to faith in AMITĀBHA (Amida) and the Zen masters' emphasis on meditation as legitimate forms of Buddhist teaching, they opposed those versions of the teachings that sought to convert the laity to the new movements as alternatives to other forms of Buddhism. In this issue, we see not simply a famil-

iar institutional struggle for patronage but the rise of a novel model of religious organization, in which the laity identifies with, and becomes, in effect, a member of a particular Buddhist faction. The new model would become increasingly popular during the medieval period (especially in the traditions of Pure Land, Nichiren, and Sōtō Zen) and led to the development of powerful national organizations that could claim millions of adherents. This is the prime institutional development that made possible the formal division of Japanese Buddhism into the denominations of early modern and modern times.

### Belief and practice

The outreach to lay believers characteristic of some of the new movements of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries involved not only novel institutional models but new styles of Buddhist belief and practice. Conspicuous among these is a style, sometimes termed “selective Buddhism” (*senchaku bukkyō*), in which the believer is urged to exclusive faith in a particular version of Buddhist teaching and exclusive commitment to a particular form of spiritual practice. So, for example, preachers of the Pure Land movement called for abandonment of the spiritual exercises of the bodhisattva path in favor of faith in the vow of the Buddha Amida to take his devotees into his Western Pure Land. Similarly, followers of the Tendai reformer Nichiren sharply criticized other forms of Buddhism and taught exclusive resort to the *Lotus Sūtra* and its revelation of the ongoing ministry of the Buddha Śākyamuni. In both these movements, the new selective style was justified in part by the doctrine that Buddhist history had entered its “final age” (*mappō*), a period of spiritual decline during which it was no longer possible to achieve buddhahood through the traditional practices of the monastic community.

This new religious style of popular outreach, lay organization, and sectarian faith is often said to constitute a “reformation” of Japanese Buddhism, through which the religion emerged from the confines of the cloister into the lives of ordinary people. Yet this account, based heavily on a model provided by the Pure Land tradition (and influenced in modern times by Western religious historiography), hardly does justice to the full range of Buddhism in the late Heian and Kamakura periods. It does not, for example, adequately account for one of the most conspicuous developments of the age: the renewed emphasis within the Buddhist establishment on monastic discipline and the founding of major centers of Chinese-style monas-



Monks of Tōfukuji, Kyoto, going out to beg for alms, 1992. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

tic practice within the new Zen movement. And it tells us little about the religious lives of the bulk of Buddhists, who neither entered the monasteries nor joined the new movements. Hence, historians of the period warn against a narrow focus on the novel teachings of the new Kamakura movements, often preferring to see them against the background of an older, broader religious style of thought and practice that permeated the medieval Buddhist world—a style we may loosely call *mikkyō*, or “esoteric teachings.”

The esoteric style developed initially within the schools of Tendai and Shingon but spread widely during the Heian period to influence all forms of Japanese Buddhism. This style was built on a common MAHĀYĀNA vision of universal buddhahood—universal both in the metaphysical sense that the “dharma body” of the buddha was present in all things and all people, and in the soteriological sense that all people could themselves become buddhas through the realization of this presence. Given such a vision—what scholars sometimes call ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT



The famous Zen garden at the Ryōanji, Kyoto, Japan, which probably dates from the late fifteenth century. © Abe Ahn and Tim Ciccone, [www.orientalarchitecture.com](http://www.orientalarchitecture.com). Reproduced by permission.

(HONGAKU) thought—the chief religious issue was often cast in terms less of how one might purify and perfect the self than of how one might best contact the realm of universal buddhahood and tap into its power. The new Buddhist movements of the Kamakura period can themselves be seen as variant strategies for answering this question.

Thus, for example, the Pure Land teachings tended to treat the symbol of buddhahood in anthropomorphic terms, as the figure of the Buddha AMITĀBHA, and to understand the universality of enlightenment as the unlimited power of Amitābha's compassionate concern for all beings. The religious strategy, then, was to access this power by surrendering the pride that separated us from Amitābha, humbly accepting his help, and calling his name (*nenbutsu*) in faith and thanksgiving. In contrast, the new Zen movement preferred to think of universal buddhahood less in anthropomorphic than in epistemological terms, as a subliminal mode of consciousness shared by all beings. Here, the prime religious problem lay not in pride but in the habits of thought that obscured the enlightened consciousness, and the chief religious strategy was to sus-

pend such habits, through Zen meditation (*zazen*), in order to “uncover” the buddha mind within.

For its own part, the esoteric tradition itself tended to conceive of buddhahood in cosmological terms, as the hidden macrocosm of which the human world was the manifest embodiment. An elaborate system of homologies was developed between the properties of the buddha realm and the physical features of Japan, between the deities of the Buddhist pantheon and the local gods of Japan, between the virtues of the cosmic buddha and the psychophysical characteristics of the individual, and so on. The chief means of communication between the two realms was ritual practice—recitation of spells and prayers, performance of mystic gestures, repentance, sacrifice, PILGRIMAGE, and the like—through which the forces of the other realm were contacted and channeled into this world, and the people and places of this world were mystically empowered by (or revealed as) the sacred realities of the buddha realm.

This cosmological style of religion is often now held up as one of the key unifying forces of Japanese Buddhism, a force that flows across history, from the

Heian, through the medieval period, and even into modern times; a force that spreads across the boundaries of clerical and lay communities or elite and popular Buddhism—a force, in fact, that reaches beyond Buddhism proper into Shintō and FOLK RELIGION, allowing a remarkable freedom of accommodation between the more universal Buddhist vision and the various local Japanese beliefs and practices. The prevalence of this style may help to explain why Japanese Buddhists tend to think of their dead as ancestral “buddha” (*hotoke*) spirits dwelling in the other world, and why, though the Buddhist denominations today are so sharply divided in formal doctrine and institutional organization, they are so similar in their social function as the intermediaries between the realms of the living and the dead.

*See also:* Chan School; Clerical Marriage in Japan; Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Nara Buddhism; Parish (Danka, Terauke) System in Japan; Pure Land Schools; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Tiantai School; Temple System in Japan

### Bibliography

- Abé, Ryūichi. *The Weaving of Mantra: Kūkai and the Construction of Esoteric Buddhist Discourse*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Bielefeldt, Carl. *Dōgen's Manuals of Zen Meditation*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1988.
- Blum, Mark L. *The Origins and Development of Pure Land Buddhism: A Study and Translation of Gyōnen's Jōdo Hōmon Genrūshō*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Bodiford, William. *Sōtō Zen in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Collcutt, Martin. *Five Mountains: The Rinzai Zen Monastic Institution in Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1981.
- Dobbins, James C. *Jōdo Shinshū: Shin Buddhism in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Fauré, Bernard. *Visions of Power: Imagining Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1992.
- Groner, Paul. *Ryōgen: The Restoration and Transformation of the Tendai School*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Jaffe, Richard M. *Neither Monk nor Layman: Clerical Marriage in Modern Japanese Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2001.
- Kasahara, Kazuo, ed. *A History of Japanese Religion*. Tokyo: Kosei Publishing, 2001.
- Ketelaar, James. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Lafleur, William R. *The Karma of Words: Buddhism and the Literary Arts in Medieval Japan*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1983.
- McMullin, Neil. *Buddhism and the State in Sixteenth Century Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1984.
- Payne, Richard K., ed. *Re-Visioning Kamakura Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Reader, Ian. *Religion in Contemporary Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Ruppert, Brian D. *Jewel in the Ashes: Buddha Relics and Power in Early Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2000.
- Stone, Jacqueline. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Tamamura Yoshio. *Japanese Buddhism: A Cultural History*. Tokyo: Charles Tuttle, 2001.
- Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Myōe the Dreamkeeper: Fantasy and Knowledge in Early Kamakura Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1992.
- Tanabe, George J., Jr., ed. *Religions of Japan in Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Yamasaki, Taiko. *Shingon: Japanese Esoteric Buddhism*. Boston: Shambala Publications, 1988.

CARL BIELEFELDT

---

## JAPAN, BUDDHIST ART IN

The juxtaposition of the words *Buddhist* and *art* may seem natural, requiring no comment. But this concept is of recent vintage and stems from encounters between traditional societies and modern interpreters. In the case of Japan, the creation of an elite canon of “Buddhist art” took place in the late nineteenth century, building upon earlier precedents. Over the twentieth century, numerous temple buildings, icons, and other objects received state-approved designations as National Treasure, Important Cultural Property, and



Important Art Object. Artifacts not deemed artistically or historically important have receded from view. Many “art objects” left temple precincts for the art market and now reside in museums and private collections both in Japan and abroad. Icons in temple settings, whether on permanent view or revealed periodically, as often submit to the gaze of tourists and photographers as to visiting worshippers or temple congregations.

*Japanese Buddhist art* refers primarily to sculpture and painting of the seventh through thirteenth centuries, which is perceived to be the most creative period. Canonical objects were commissioned by elite patrons who founded temples and engaged the services of metalworkers, woodcarvers, painters, weavers, and lacquerers—artisans in every media. Initially, people without wealth and property who contributed their labor and skill in the service of the elite would not have participated in the religious practices their productions served. Over time some artisans rose in status as they held lower aristocratic rank or obtained honorary Buddhist titles for their service at court. By the thirteenth century some painters and carvers joined their patrons as donors, even signing their names inside images or on paintings. As Buddhism spread both geographically and socially, groups of devotees visited temples and made monetary donations for the construction and upkeep of images, halls, and festivals. Indeed, by the sixteenth century temples depended on patronage from all levels of society as merchants and artisans grew wealthy at the expense of the aristocratic and military elites.

Many scholars now challenge long-held assumptions about what constitutes “Buddhist art” and whether such a concept remains valid. Art historians and Buddhologists have renewed their scrutiny of objects, sites, practices, and beliefs long forgotten, giving more attention to functions and audiences than to aesthetic properties, and hence opening up later periods and commoner arts to scholarly inquiry. With this process in mind, this entry focuses specifically upon the dynamic of making and using “Buddhist art” in Japan: It only hints at specific objects, their style, iconography, and relationships to other objects. MONASTIC ARCHITECTURE, PORTRAITURE, and arts associated with individual schools of Buddhism are treated in separate entries. Unlike some Asian countries, Japan has preserved material and documentary traces of Buddhist patronage to a remarkable degree. Much that is discussed in this entry would have been equally true for other Buddhist countries.

### Consecrated images

The most prominent Buddhist objects are cast, carved, modeled, or painted images of buddhas and bodhisattvas (collectively, *butsuzō*). In the eyes of makers and worshippers, these things were not sculpture, statuary, or painting, but were rather animate, living images that manifested the aura of the deities they represented. Materials—most commonly wood, silk, mineral pigments, and gold—were themselves sacred, prepared and worked by artisans who were part of the Buddhist establishment. When an image was finished, an eye-opening (*kaigen*) ceremony was held in which the officiant dotted in the pupils of the eyes to signify its birth as a sacred image. Once animated, an image would be placed on a temple altar or in a temporary space, to be provided with offerings of light, incense, water, and food.

Large altar platforms in the main halls of Buddhist temples from all periods generally held ensembles of images including BUDDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, and guardian figures. In many cases these images date from different periods and have separate histories, and may have come from other temples or private residences. Whether an altar maintains its originally planned complement of images, or has been changed, a central buddha or bodhisattva image serves as the main icon of the hall. That image is generally larger in scale than attendant deities. In addition to buddha icons and ensembles in the main halls, most temples also established separate halls devoted to a single deity worshipped alone or as part of an ensemble.

Much smaller images, both carved and painted, were often made for particular occasions and may have been used only once or periodically. During ceremonies and lectures, images served as the fundamental deity (*honzon*), were offered greetings, offerings, prayers, music, and the like, and were then de-animated as the ceremony closed. Smaller images could be returned to shrine boxes or temple storehouses. Some images became the focus of monthly or yearly ceremonies or sūtra readings, but many were kept secret, locked away in cabinets that ultimately enhanced their efficacy and aided in their preservation.

Because buddha images must be made to exacting iconographical standards, most in fact copy other images, leaving little room for innovation on the part of their makers, except perhaps in stylistic detail or technique. The act of making and worshipping an image was a good deed, and inscribed or documented examples reveal that buddha images were dedicated to trans-

fer merit to someone else, to cure illness, to improve the KARMA (ACTION) of someone already deceased, to pray for future generations, and to beseech protection of family and state. Such motivations have remained constant for centuries.

### Cast, carved, and modeled images

Small images initially came to Japan as the baggage of immigrants from the Korean peninsula during the mid-sixth century. Official accounts of the introduction of the dharma from the Korean peninsula devote considerable attention to gifts of BUDDHA IMAGES, to their circulation among the elite, and to building temples to house them. The first images do not survive, but numerous sixth- and seventh-century examples of both imported and local manufacture remain. Most are of gilt-bronze, less than fifty centimeters in height; their iconographic and stylistic diversity reflects both earlier and contemporary developments on the mainland. Thus Shaka (Śākyamuni), Yakushi (Bhaiṣajyaguru), Miroku (MAITREYA), and Kannon (Avalokiteśvara) predominate. These earliest images are generally not inscribed or recorded in documents, nor do they remain in their original settings.

During the seventh and eighth centuries, members of the court took up image-making on a grand scale, sponsoring a succession of massive projects designed to unite the populace, assert state authority, and create a material presence for the Buddhist establishment to rival those abroad. A succession of increasingly ambitious state temples built in Fujiwara-kyō and Heijō-kyō (among them Hōkōji, Daikandaiji, and Yakushiji) culminated in the building of Tōdaiji, with its colossal cast bronze and gilded image of Rushana (Vairocana), a project modeled directly on Tang-dynasty precedents. Because bronze was too costly for most image production, during the eighth century state and temple workshops employed a variety of carving and modeling techniques to achieve an increasingly lifelike appearance. Hōryūji, Tōdaiji, and Kōfukuji all contain numerous life-size or larger images of clay modeled on a wooden armature, as well as those modeled in lacquer-soaked cloth over a wooden frame. Mineral pigments and gold enhanced the surface of the images.

These costly and time-consuming techniques died out in the late eighth century as a result of patronage shifts and the closing of temple and state workshops. During the late eighth, ninth, and tenth centuries, Buddhism spread throughout the provinces, where local leaders built temples in the mountains and on provincial estates. Image-making in wood proliferated, re-



The statue of Vairocana Buddha at Tōdaiji, Nara, Japan. This statue is a seventeenth-century replacement for a destroyed eighth-century original. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.

sulting in a variety of regional styles, iconographies, and carving techniques.

Buddha and bodhisattva images were not the only deities within temple precincts in the eighth and later centuries. Powerful local deities (*kami*) played critical roles in the lives of temples and monks, as for instance when in 749 a HACHIMAN shrine was built at Tōdaiji. The making of carved images of *kami* began in the ninth century, and representations of Hachiman at Tōji, Yakushiji, and elsewhere attest their growing importance as protectors of the dharma. Due to the “Separation of Gods and Buddhas” edicts of the 1870s, however, the prominence of *kami* images and the shrines that housed them at Buddhist temples has largely been obscured or forgotten.

During the eleventh century in the capital Kyoto, members of the Fujiwara and ruling families dedicated themselves to temple-building and image-making on a grand scale. To meet their demands, wood-carvers devised an effective method for carving multiple blocks of wood, which were hollowed and reassembled to



This statue depicts the Shintō deity Hachiman as a Buddhist priest. (Japanese sculpture by Kaikei, ca. 1201.) © Sakamoto Photo Research Laboratory/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

create large numbers of relatively lightweight images in a variety of challenging poses. This “joined wood-block” technique, augmented in the late twelfth century by painted glass eyes and painted or gilded surfaces, became the norm in later centuries. From the eleventh century, carvers and their assistants organized themselves into family-based workshops where such techniques and styles were passed on from one generation to the next.

Hollowing out images created spaces where objects were deposited and inscriptions written. These inscriptions often give the date and circumstances of production, and include the names of donors and carvers. Objects deposited include dedicatory vows, sūtras, smaller images, and personal possessions. Where intact, these collections of objects provide revealing information about the beliefs and practices of image-making.

### Painted images

In addition to three-dimensional images installed on temple altars or kept in small shrine boxes, the walls of some temple buildings were themselves painted with

ensembles of buddhas (Hōryūji Golden Hall, early eighth century), deities of esoteric maṇḍalas and Shingon patriarchs (Daigoji pagoda, 851), representations of the nine stages of Amida’s descent (Phoenix Hall, Byōdōin, 1053), and other subjects. But most walls were never painted or have lost their paintings due to repeated restorations. Instead, buddhas and bodhisattvas were painted on silk, mounted in scroll format, and hung only for special occasions ranging from state-sponsored rites to childbirth or death rituals. The largest of these were the size of temple walls, and represented AMITĀBHA’s pure land, the two-world MAṆḌALA of esoteric deities, and depictions of Śākya-muni’s *parinirvāṇa*.

Painted images often incorporated a profusion of deities and landscape or architectural settings and local Japanese details. Representations of Amida’s descent (*raigō*) for instance, often show Amida (Ami-tābha) and his entourage descending in a seasonal landscape to a dying believer recognizably in aristocratic dress and surroundings. In some cases, dreams or visions led to the creation of hitherto unseen iconography, as in the case of standing deities, different colorations or attributes, or unusual juxtapositions. Paintings depicting buddhas (*honji*) and their *kami* manifestations (*suijaku*), or shrine and temple precincts, produced from the thirteenth and later centuries, reveal the localization of Buddhist beliefs and practices.

### Texts and tales

The arrival of Buddhism in Japan brought with it the written word and an enormous body of sacred literature, including sūtras, commentaries, practice manuals, and miraculous tales. Thousands of manuscripts survive from the eighth century on, some beautifully handwritten or printed, crafted of fine materials, or incorporating painting. Unlike living images installed on altars and wreathed in incense, flowers, and candle light during ceremonies, manuscripts brought individual devotees closer to the dharma, whether they themselves read or wrote the texts, or experienced them through lecture or oral storytelling.

Sūtra-copying was central to Buddhist practice in Japan from the earliest period, as every temple needed copies of basic texts. During the eighth century, most were produced at the state-sponsored workshop at Tōdaiji, but individual monks and lay patrons made their own copies for private use or donation. Like image-making and temple-building, sūtra-copying was an act of devotion and merit, requiring a reverent

attitude. Sūtras were copied for a variety of occasions and reasons, and their completion was often accompanied by ceremonies or lectures. In the eleventh-century court, lavish projects to copy the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) mobilized teams of aristocrats who chose the finest materials—colored and decorated paper, gold and silver ink—to create manuscripts of extraordinary beauty and richness. The boom in sūtra-copying in the mid-eleventh century was related to belief that the world had entered the final era of the dharma (*mappō*). Many monks and lay patrons buried hand-copied sūtras in specially designed sūtra mounds (*kyōzuka*), in remote mountain settings where they were protected by local *kami* while awaiting the advent of Miroku (Maitreya). In some cases, letters or picture books of the deceased would be used as the paper for sūtras written out by their descendants on behalf of the departed. But most sūtra-copying projects were a simple matter of ink and paper, and a private vow from the writer; most ended up in temple or family storehouses. This practice of copying sūtras still flourishes at temples and in private homes.

In addition to sūtras, Buddhist literature abounds in biographies and miracle tales, many illustrated. The life of Śākyamuni was among the first narrative sequences to be represented in Japan in both sculpture (Hōryūji pagoda) and painting. But the initial focus on Śākyamuni quickly expanded to include miracle tales, both imported and localized. In the tenth century, the *Sanbōe* (*Illustrations of the Three Jewels*), written on behalf of a princess, included painted depictions of episodes from the history of Buddhism as well as of contemporary Japanese religious festivals and ceremonies.

Many temple icons were believed to have miraculous origins, and these origin tales (*engi*) were frequently illustrated in painted narratives. More extensive painted scrolls treat entire temple histories, from the making of icons, building of halls, to miracles wrought by their deities. A major genre of illustrated narrative was the sacred biography. In addition to Śākyamuni, the life of Prince SHŌTOKU was illustrated repeatedly, first at temples he founded such as Shitennōji and Hōryūji, and at numerous temples that claimed him as founder. At least as early as the eleventh century, painted narrative cycles of famous patriarchs stressed aspects of their lineage and teaching. Interest in the lives of teachers peaked in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries with the lavish productions of pictorial biographies of Pure Land patriarchs IPPEN CHISHIN, HŌNEN, and Ryōnen produced in numerous

copies for distribution to branch temples. Some of these survive in such pristine condition that one wonders if they were ever viewed. The small scale of hand-held narrative scrolls proved unsuitable for more than intimate viewing, but at Dōjōji (Wakayama prefecture) picture-explaining monks (*etoki hōshi*) unroll a large-format scroll to tell the infamous story of Kiyohime's unrequited love for a monk and her transformation into a dragon, which follows the monk to Dōjōji and incinerates him with her fiery breath.

However, large hanging scrolls more commonly served for picture-explaining lectures directed at visitors and pilgrims. Prince Shōtoku's life may have been the first instance of this, but many such wall-sized biographies and origin tales exist from the thirteenth and later centuries, often now worn and tattered from repeated use. In the sixteenth and later centuries many temples and shrines utilized pilgrimage maṇḍala to instruct visitors about the history of their institution, its halls and deities, and miracles that had occurred within their precincts. These paintings served as effective fund-raising devices, as did representations of the six realms of existence (*rokudō*) with their emphasis upon punishment and hell. Such paintings, crude in execution but powerful in message, were carried about by itinerant storytellers who worked the roadsides, festivals, cities, and even private gatherings.

### Practical needs

Buddhist temples and their affiliated shrines are repositories of the myriad finely crafted objects used to adorn temple halls, ritual implements employed in ceremonies, articles used by temple inhabitants, and precious gifts donated by lay patrons. These constituted part of a temple's material wealth, and thus could be sold if need dictated. Among the temples noted for their extensive storehouses are Hōryūji (seventh- and eighth-century textiles and metalwork, etc.), Tōdaiji (eighth-century objects in all media of foreign and native manufacture), Tōji and Daigoji (esoteric arts and manuscripts of all periods), Kōzanji (manuscripts and printed books, including those from China and Korea), DAITOKUJI (imported Chinese paintings, calligraphies, and tea utensils), and Kōdaiji (lacquerware and textiles), to name a few.

The many public and private ceremonies conducted at Buddhist temples or even in private residences utilized a variety of finely crafted objects for sacred adornment (*sōgon*) and in actual practice. Painted and woven banners were hung or were carried by participants in

processions. Altar tables held ritual implements, incense burners, water dishes, and other items of bronze, gold, and silver. Monastic surplices, altar cloths, seat cushions, and other sacred textiles were made from donated women's garments. Black lacquer with sprinkled gold patterns or precious inlays of silver or mother-of-pearl, adorned tables, cabinets, and boxes for storing objects, clothing, and sacred texts. Large ceremonies and theatrical performances required musical instruments, masks, and costumes.

Because many temples also served as the private retreats for elite patrons, especially noblemen and women who themselves became monks and nuns, many paintings, manuscripts, textiles, lacquerware and other objects housed in temple storehouses cannot properly be characterized as "Buddhist art" even though they were perceived as "temple treasures."

The lower levels of society also participated in the material cultures of Buddhism, especially during the sixteenth and later centuries when a rise in quasi-religious travel by commoners created precursors of contemporary tourism. Temple icons, both carved and painted, were put on periodic display during temple airings and were sometimes sent outside temple precincts for fund-raising purposes. Devotional objects made expressly for purchase by visitors include printed Buddha images and sūtras, AMULETS AND TALISMANS, and painted wooden plaques (*ema*) upon which prayers to specific deities are written. Pilgrims often left paper "calling cards" on temple gates, they piled up stones in the form of a STŪPA, and deposited small carved Buddha images in the rafters of temple halls. In addition to PILGRIMAGE, temples also established vast funerary precincts that have become extraordinary stone graveyards, most notably near the tombs of Prince Shōtoku, KŪKAI, Hōnen, and other holy figures. While such material manifestations of Buddhist practice are not usually termed *art*, they are nonetheless a continuing feature of the visual culture of Buddhist practice in Japan today.

*See also:* Chan Art; China, Buddhist Art in; Hells, Images of; Honji Suijaku; Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Huayan Art; Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin); Pure Land Art

**Bibliography**

Cunningham, Michael R., ed. *Buddhist Treasures from Nara*. Cleveland, OH: Cleveland Museum of Art, 1998.

Kanda, Christine Guth. *Shinzō: Hachiman Imagery and Its Development*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1985.

McCallum, Donald F. *Zenkōji and Its Icon: A Study in Medieval Japanese Religious Art*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1994.

Morse, Anne Nishimura, and Morse, Samuel Crowell. *Object as Insight: Japanese Buddhist Art and Ritual*. Katonah, NY: Katonah Museum of Art, 1995.

Rosenfield, John M., and ten Grotenhuis, Elizabeth. *Journey of the Three Jewels: Japanese Buddhist Paintings from Western Collections*. New York: Asia Society, 1979.

Sanford, James H.; LaFleur, William R.; and Nagatomi Masayoshi. *Flowing Traces: Buddhism in the Literary and Visual Arts of Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

Sharf, Robert H., and Sharf, Elizabeth Horton, eds. *Living Images: Japanese Buddhist Icons in Context*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2001.

Sugiyama, Jirō. *Classic Buddhist Sculpture: The Tempyō Period*, tr. Samuel Crowell Morse. New York: Kodansha International and Shibundo, 1982.

Tanabe, Willa J. *Paintings of the Lotus Sūtra*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1988.

ten Grotenhuis, Elizabeth. *Japanese Maṇḍalas: Representations of Sacred Geography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

Yiengpruksawan, Mimi Hall. *Hiraizumi: Buddhist Art and Regional Politics in Twelfth-Century Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1998.

KAREN L. BROCK

JAPANESE, BUDDHIST INFLUENCES ON VERNACULAR LITERATURE IN

Japanese secular literature is grounded in ways of feeling, thinking, and behaving that developed centuries before they were defined by the classifications used today: Shintō (Way of the Gods), the national memory of ancient myths and rituals; Buddhism, a religion teaching spiritual enlightenment, which originated in India circa 500 B.C.E. and spread to Japan through China by the middle of the sixth century C.E.; and Confucian social philosophy, which trickled into Japan from China and was selectively adapted to the country's needs.

It is equally important to stress that Western attitudes concerning proper feeling, thinking, and behavior—through the Christian missions circa 1549–1630, eighteenth-century Enlightenment notions of democracy, Marxism, and such—have left their mark

mainly since the Meiji Restoration of 1868. To appreciate Japan's literature is first to come to terms with Japan's own deeply seated ideological roots before attempting to impose values and critical analyses developed in other societies.

Evidence of Buddhist influence on Japanese vernacular literature—both doctrinal and secular writings—can be seen, of course, in obvious references to pagodas, sūtras, and monks. But a more difficult, and far more rewarding, understanding can be found by exploring the aesthetic milieu that informs this literature rooted in a native tradition assimilated with Buddhism and Confucianism. The two oldest surviving Japanese literary works—composed in Chinese—the *Kojiki* (*Record of Ancient Matters*, 712 C.E.) and the *Nihon shoki* (*Chronicles of Japan*, 720 C.E.), have much to offer historically, but say little about Buddhist literature. They offer slight opportunity to share an author's feelings, ideals, and sentiments with the immediacy that distinguishes literature from reporting.

The following short thirty-one-syllable Japanese poem (*waka*) by Buddhist novice Manzei (fl. 704–731) is a rare example of a verse arguably revealing Buddhist influence. This poem first appears in the monumental *Man'yōshū* (*Collection of Ten Thousand Leaves*, ca. 759):

To what	<i>yo no naka wo</i>
shall I compare this life?	<i>nani ni tatoen</i>
to the white wake	<i>asaborake</i>
of a boat rowing away	<i>kogiyuku fune no</i>
at the break of dawn.	<i>ato no shiranami</i>

The reasons for the late appearance of Buddhist imagery and ideals in Japanese literary works were simply the late development of a comfortable vocabulary to supersede the often abrasive transliterations of Chinese (and even Indian) religious technical terms into the more fluid native language (*yamato kotoba*) and the refinement of a phonetic (*kana*) syllabary to supplant the often stodgy Chinese compounds. The syllabary, traditionally attributed to KŪKAI (774–835), is now believed to have developed gradually, becoming standardized by the late eleventh century. The anonymous *I-ro-ha uta* (*Syllabary Song*), an *imayō* (“modern-style”) verse organizing all but one of the syllabary's sounds (“-n-”), first appeared in a work written in 1079, and is still a familiar furnishing of the Japanese

literary consciousness. Its message is the ancient Buddhist theme of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE; *mujō*):

Blossoms glow	<i>iro ha ni(h)o(h)e to</i>
but then they scatter,	<i>chirinuru wo</i>
and in this life of ours	<i>wak[g]a yo tare so</i>
who endures?	<i>tsune naramu</i>
Today we cross the	<i>u[wi] no okuyama</i>
dense mound	
of worldly illusion,	<i>kefu koete</i>
dissolving our	<i>asaki yume mish[j]i</i>
shallow dreams,	
beyond inebriation.	<i>[w]ehi mo ses[z]u</i>

It should be noted, however, that this sense of impermanence, in spite of its terminology and somber shadings, is a powerful affirmation of the value and wonder of every moment of our brief lives. The courtly priest Yoshida Kenkō declares in his *Tsurezuregusa* (*Essays in Idleness*, ca. 1330–1333): “If man were never to fade away like the dews of Adashino, never to vanish like the smoke over Toribeyama, but lingered on forever in this world, how things would lose their power to move us [*mono no aware*]! The most precious thing in life is its uncertainty” (*Seeds in the Heart*, p. 859). Some time later the great Nativist scholar Motoori Norinaga (1730–1801)—no friend of Buddhism—characterized *Genji monogatari* (*The Tale of Genji*, ca. 1007) as a novel of *mono no aware*, though he defined it somewhat differently, possibly as “sensitivity to the wonder of things.”

It is also well known that in her defense of fiction (“lies” in the opinion of traditional moralists), Lady Murasaki, the author of *Genji monogatari*, appealed to the Buddhist doctrine of skillful means (*hōben*; Sanskrit, *upāya*), which is so tenaciously argued in the LOTUS SŪTRA (*Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*; Japanese, *Myōhō rengekyō*), the source of seven parables whose imagery permeates traditional secular literature. There are many routes to religious enlightenment expressed through a variety of mythologies, modes of practice, and necessary “fictional” devices possible in literature. The blandness of many modern translations of traditional Japanese poetry and literature is often the result of its being sanitized to conform to Western expectations rather than asking the Western reader to suspend disbelief in a fascinating world of alien values and ideas.

The aesthetics of *mono no aware* lead us to the related ideal of “mystery and depth” (*yūgen*), of major importance to the poetry of the *Shinkokinshū* (*New Collection of Ancient and Modern Times*, ca. 1206) and the Muromachi Noh theater. The phrase first appears in a Chinese Buddhist commentary, and the comments of Kamo no Chōmei (1153–1216), the author of *Hōjōki* (*Essays in Idleness*), point to the emotional ideal while reminding us of Buddhism’s understanding of the limitations of reason:

On an autumn evening, for example, there is no color in the sky nor any sound, yet although we cannot give any definite reason for it, we are somehow moved to tears. . . . It should be evident that this is a matter impossible for people of little sensibility to understand. . . . How can such things be easily learned or expressed precisely in words?

How, for example, can we explain why the following poem by Shunzei (1114–1204) moves us? And why should we try?

As evening falls,	<i>yū sareba</i>
autumn wind across the moors	<i>nobe no akikaze</i>
blows chill into the heart,	<i>mi ni shimite</i>
and a quail seems to be crying	<i>uzura naku nari</i>
in the deep grass of Fukakusa.	<i>Fukakusa no sato</i>

Without minimizing the profound influences of Shintō and Confucianism on traditional Japanese thought and feeling, we must recognize the pre-eminence of Buddhism in shaping the nation’s artistic production, providing much of its imagery and aesthetic direction. The impermanence (*mujō*) behind the ideal of “sensitivity to things” and “mystery and depth,” the consciousness of moral retribution between existences (*sukuse*, karma), and myriad half-sensed feelings and images from an antique past inform a rich literature of some five centuries of histories, poetry (*waka*, *renga*, haiku, . . .), novels (*monogatari*), “essays” (*zuihitsu*), anecdotal “tale literature” (*setsuwa*), theater (Noh, *jōruri*, kabuki, and their modern successors), memoirs (*nikki*), and travel diaries (*kikō*).

But Japanese and English literature, however their fruits may compare or contrast, nevertheless shared a common chronological timeline. The bards of the Old English epic poem *Beowulf* were contemporaries of the guild of reciters (*kataribe*) that produced the *Record of Ancient Matters*.

*See also: Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Cosmology; Entertainment and Performance; Ikkyū; Poetry and Buddhism; Ryōkan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism*

### Bibliography

deBary, William Theodore; Keene, Donald; Tanabe, George; and Varley, Paul, eds. *Sources of Japanese Tradition*, 2nd edition. Vol. 1: *From Earliest Times to 1600*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

Keene, Donald. *Essays in Idleness: The Tsurezuregusa of Kenkō*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1967.

Keene, Donald. *Seeds in the Heart: Japanese Literature from Earliest Times to the Late Sixteenth Century*. New York: Henry Holt, 1993.

LaFleur, William R. *The Karma of Words: Buddhism and the Literary Arts in Medieval Japan*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1983.

Miner, Earl; Hiroko Odagiri; and Morrell, Robert E., eds. *The Princeton Companion to Classical Japanese Literature*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1985.

Tanabe, George J., Jr., ed. *Religions of Japan in Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.

ROBERT E. MORRELL

---

## JAPANESE ROYAL FAMILY AND BUDDHISM

Although the royal family of Japan, headed by the *tennō* (heavenly monarch), has since 1868 been identified by the Japanese media and government with Shintō, it long led a religious life dominated by Buddhism. It was, indeed, the prince-regent SHŌTOKU (574–622) who was identified as having the greatest impact on the early history of Buddhism in Japan, in emphatically supporting Buddhism in early proclamations, in supporting the construction of major temples such as Shitennojō in Ōsaka, and in writing—or, more likely, sponsoring—one or more of the commentaries on Buddhist scriptures that have been attributed to him.

The eighth-century sovereign Shōmu combined a deep faith in Buddhism with an effort to incorporate the faith into his effort to undergird his authority. Following several years of natural disasters and pestilence, while queen Kōgō administered a new and extremely active sūtra-copying bureau, Shōmu hatched a plan to establish a national system of provincial temples and nunneries (*kokubunji*). He surprisingly described himself at the dedication of the Great Buddha at Tōdaiji in Nara as a “slave” of the Three Jewels (a reference to Buddha, his teachings, and his community).

Although the period after Shōmu was infamous for the undue influence of clerics over the ruler, whatever qualms the family and court had vis-à-vis the Buddhists were no longer evident by the early ninth century, when sovereigns balanced support of the Nara schools with that of the new Tendai and Shingon schools. From the 830s on, Buddhist rites formed an increasingly large role in the ritual life of the royal family and court: The Shingon monk KŪKAI successfully petitioned for the inauguration of the annual esoteric Latter Seven-Day Rite (*go-shichinichi mishiho*), to be conducted from January 8 through January 14, simultaneously with the long-established exoteric Misai’e (Gosai’e) rite for the welfare of ruler and realm, and for the construction of the palace chapel, Shingon’in in Kyoto.

Increasing domination of the royal family by the northern Fujiwaras from the late ninth century on was also marked by an effort to promote the ruler’s authority in religious terms. For example, the increase in the number and volume of accession rites performatively represented the ruler’s sanctity and grace on a grand scale. As part of this effort, the court, in the name of the acceding ruler, sponsored the Great Treasures Offering (*ichidai ichido daijinpō hōbei*) and the Buddha Relics Offering (*ichidai ichido busshari hōken*), both of which were made to native shrines throughout the realm. The offering of remains of the Buddha (housed in small STŪPAS) to non-Buddhist religious institutions and local deities (*kami*), while seemingly odd, was focused especially on Usa Hachimangū shrine in Kyūshū, where the local gods had been venerated since at least the early ninth century as both the spirit of the legendary ancient ruler Ōjin (ca. early fifth century) and the bodhisattva HACHIMAN. Meanwhile, *tennō* were sometimes cremated in Buddhist ceremonies, and the royal family increasingly sponsored Buddhist masses to memorialize their dead.



Prince Shōtoku (574–622), great Japanese patron of Buddhism, between two women of the court.

### Royal culture and Buddhism

The retired ruler Uda (867–931) became the first retired *tennō* to become a monk (*in*), entering the Shingon order at Ninnaji Monastery in Kyoto and receiving the *denbō kanjō* initiation as *ācārya* (*ajari*) there. Thus Uda set the precedent not only for royal relatives to often head Ninnaji but for princes to serve regularly as abbots of the so-called O’muro royal-temple compound (*monzeki*) in Ninnaji beginning in the late eleventh century, and, from the twelfth century on, effectively ruling over the entire Buddhist community. (Cloistered rulers also tended to have close ties with the Tendai temples Onjōji and the *monzeki* Shōren’in, both near Kyoto.)

At the same time, Uda also established the pattern for a former *tennō* to engage in politics while donning clerical robes. From the late eleventh century on, retired sovereigns (*insei*) increasingly replaced the Fujiwaras as rulers, while symbolically demonstrating their religiosity by elaborating on precedents set by figures such as Fujiwara no Michinaga (966–1027) and those around him. Thus, retired *tennō* Shirakawa



(1053–1129) established magnificent temples and multiple stūpas as expressions of his grace, and his son Toba (1103–1156)—on better terms with the Fujiwaras—established the Shōkōmyō’in chapel and treasury (*hōzō*) near Kyoto, housing a Buddhist scriptural collection and other treasures in apparent imitation of the Fujiwara chapel Byōdō’in, also near Kyoto, which similarly featured an Amidist sanctuary and a scriptural treasury (*kyōzō*). This “royal culture” of powerful aristocrats and cloistered sovereigns, particularly with its emphasis on demonstrating largess and religious devotion as well as an increasing interest in acquiring knowledge of esoteric Buddhism—and influence over the clerical appointment system—was one of the primary factors that influenced Tendai and Shingon monks and temples of the medieval era. Under this influence, Buddhists increasingly sought to produce large iconographic collections (the first, Zuzō shō [ca. 1135–1141], was reputedly produced by order of Toba), to establish large treasuries of scriptures and other objects, and to specialize in particular tantric rites (*shuhō*) of concern to the royal family.

### Buddhist accession rites and Shintō

Moreover, during the same period, particularly in the O’muro at Ninnaji, the enriching of esoteric Buddhist teachings with worship of native deities produced novel teachings and ritual practices that attempted to confer legitimacy on the ruler, and were later referred to as Goryū Shintō. At the latest, by Go-Uda’s accession (late thirteenth century), the ruler often underwent an esoteric Buddhist consecration rite (*sokui kanjō*) as part of the accession process. The initiation of retired *tennō* Go-Daigo in the fourteenth century into what would later be deemed the “controversial” Tachikawa line of Shingon was, indeed, an elaboration of this trend. Moreover, the first use of the term *Shintō* was established in and through the so-called *kenmitsu* institutions of Shingon and Tendai. Even the emphasis on the three royal regalia was forged in the milieu of those institutions to legitimize royal rule amidst the impending split into rival lines: The jewel (*magatama*) was newly emphasized and was commonly compared to the wish-fulfilling jewel and Buddha relics of the treasuries of esoteric temples such as the Shingon temple Tōji.

In spite of the rising prominence of nativist scholars such as Motoori Norinaga (1730–1801), the royal family remained devoted Buddhists until the Meiji restoration in 1868, when mid-level samurai returned the Japanese government from Tokugawa warrior rule

to royal rule in the name of the *tennō*. Rituals such as the Latter Seven-Day Rite were no longer held in the palace, and any public relationship between the royal family and the Buddhist community was dissolved—a government policy that has continued to the present.

*See also:* Aśoka; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Nationalism and Buddhism; Politics and Buddhism; Tachikawaryū

### Bibliography

- Abe Yasurō. “Hōju to Ōken: chūsei to mikkyō girei” (Jewels and royal authority: esoteric Buddhist rites and the medieval era). In *Iwanami kōza tōyō shisō 16: Nihon shisō 2*. Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1989.
- Abe Yasurō. “Shukaku hosshinnō to inseiki no bukkyō bunka” (The prince-monk Shukaku and the Buddhist culture of the cloistered-rule era). In *Inseiki no bukkyō*, ed. Hayami Tasuku. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1998.
- Amino Yoshihiko. “Igyō no Ōken: Go-Daigo/Monkan/Kenkō” (Awful royal authority: Go-Daigo/Monkan/Kenkō). In *Igyō no Ōken*. Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1987.
- Kamikawa Michio. “Accession Rituals and Buddhism in Medieval Japan.” *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 17, no. 2/3 (1990): 243–280.
- Maki Toshiyuki. “Go-Uda tennō no mikkyō juhō” (The ruler Go-Uda’s initiation into esoteric Buddhism). In *Kodai/chūsei no shakai to kokka*, ed. Osaka Daigaku Bungakubu Nihonshi Kenkyūshitsu. Osaka, Japan: Seibundō, 1998.
- Okano Kōji. “Mudoen senji/issin ajari/sōzu chokunin” (Royal orders without official monastic identification/aristocratic-appointed ācāryas/directly-appointed bishops). In *Inseiki no bukkyō*, ed. Hayami Tasuku. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1998.
- Ruppert, Brian D. *Jewel in the Ashes: Buddha Relics and Power in Early Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center and Harvard University Press, 2000.
- Uejima Susumu. “Fujiwara no Michinaga to insei: Shūkyō to seiji” (Religion and politics: cloistered rule and Fujiwara no Michinaga). In *Chūsei kōbu kenryoku no kōzō to tenkai*, ed. Uwayokote Masataka. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 2001.

BRIAN O. RUPPERT

## JĀTAKA

*Jātaka* is the Sanskrit and Pāli term for a particular genre of Buddhist literature. A *jātaka* is a story in which one of the characters—usually the hero—is identified as a previous birth of the historical Buddha, generally appearing as a man, a deity, or one of the higher ani-

mals (but only rarely as a female of any kind). The existence of the jātaka genre is based on the notion that the Buddha, on the night of his enlightenment, attained the recollection of his previous lives, which then, throughout his life, he often had occasion to relate in order to illustrate a point, drive home a moral lesson, or shed light on some situation. It is these stories that constitute the jātakas.

The jātaka genre appears to be very old, for the term *jātaka* is included in an ancient categorization of Buddhist literary styles, and depictions of jātaka stories appear in Indian Buddhist art as early as the second century B.C.E.

All of the lives related in the jātakas are understood to have taken place during the Buddha's BODHISATTVĀ career, only after he had made a firm vow to become a buddha in the distant future. The general function of the jātakas, then, is to illustrate how the bodhisattva, in life after life, cultivated various virtues and qualities that ultimately contributed to his attainment of buddhahood. Accordingly, most jātakas portray the bodhisattva as an exemplary figure, highlighting such features as his wisdom, compassion, or ascetic detachment. Many jātakas, in fact, are explicitly intended to illustrate the bodhisattva's cultivation of one of the PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) needed for buddhahood. In the *Śāśajātaka*, for example, the bodhisattva is a hare who offers his own body as food to a wandering traveler, thus cultivating the "perfection of generosity." In the *Brāhmaṇajātaka*, he is a boy who refuses to steal even when his brahmin teacher urges him to do so, thus cultivating the "perfection of morality." And in the *Kṣāntijātaka*, he is an ascetic who calmly tolerates the mutilation inflicted on him by an angry king, thus cultivating the "perfection of forbearance." Some jātaka collections are even arranged on this basis: The JĀTAKA-MĀLĀ (*Garland of Jātakas*) of Āryaśūra, a famous Sanskrit collection from approximately the fourth century C.E., arranges the bulk of its thirty-four stories (including the three mentioned above) in accordance with the first three of the six perfections; the *Cariyāpīṭaka* (*Collection on [the Bodhisatta's] Conduct*) of the Pāli canon arranges its thirty-five versified jātakas in accordance with the THERAVĀDA list of ten perfections.

The jātaka genre was used to assimilate an enormous amount of traditional Indian folklore into the Buddhist fold, including many tales whose moral lessons were not specifically Buddhist (or that had no moral lesson at all). Any traditional tale could be transformed into a jātaka simply by turning one of

its characters into a previous birth of the Buddha. This is especially true of the *Jātakatṭhakathā* (*Explanation of the Birth Stories*), a massive Pāli collection of 547 prose and verse jātakas, of which only the verses are considered canonical. Much of the contents of the *Jātakatṭhakathā* are likely non-Buddhist in origin, including, for example, many animal fables, folk tales, and fairy tales. Similarly, as the jātaka genre spread to Buddhist cultures outside of India, it often drew on local folklore to domesticate existing jātakas or compose wholly new ones more relevant to new environments.

Jātaka stories exist not only in Sanskrit and Pāli literature, but also in the Chinese and Tibetan canons, as well as in many vernacular languages and texts. Throughout history and throughout the Buddhist world, jātakas have played a major role in the dissemination of Buddhist teachings, being the constant focus of sermons, rituals, festivals, and many varieties of art and performance. The relevance of the jātakas to everyday Buddhist life is perhaps most apparent in the Theravāda cultures of Southeast Asia, where many jātakas of the Pāli tradition are widely known and frequently alluded to in everyday conversation and moral argument.

*See also:* Avadāna; Buddha, Life of the; Viśvantara

### Bibliography

- Cowell, E. B., ed. *The Jātaka or Stories of the Buddha's Former Births*, 3 vols. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1990.
- Jones, John Garrett. *Tales and Teachings of the Buddha: The Jātaka Stories in Relation to the Pāli Canon*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1979.
- Khoroché, Peter, trans. *Once the Buddha Was a Monkey: Ārya Śūra's Jātakamālā*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1989.
- Schober, Juliane, ed. *Sacred Biography in the Buddhist Traditions of South and Southeast Asia*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

REIKO OHNUMA

## JĀTAKA, ILLUSTRATIONS OF

Visual *jātakas* do not simply illustrate verbal *jātakas* (birth stories) but share equal status with them. Each is a unique narrative belonging to a genre of stories existing in a community of memory rather than in a specific verbal version. Except for the *Viśvantara Jātaka*,

individual *jātakas* are rarely narrated in isolation. They usually participate in larger texts, which occasionally have counterparts in literary genres. Since these larger texts are expressions of different Buddhisms in various times and places, JĀTAKA narratives should be viewed in their embedded textual and sociocultural contexts.

Despite the acknowledged antiquity of the 547 Pāli verse *jātakas*, the earliest datable physical *jātaka* narratives are the visual ones on the Bhārhut stūpa railing (ca. first century B.C.E.). With the exception of the coping reliefs, the Bhārhut *jātakas* belong to a larger text that includes other kinds of narratives, such as incidents from the Buddha's life, AVADĀNAS, and "legends" concerning historical figures. The Bhārhut coping takes the form of an s-shaped lotus vine-cum-garland, within each of whose lower curves a *jātaka* is narrated. Hence, the coping functions as a unified text of the JĀTAKAMĀLĀ (garland of *jātakas*) genre.

The BOROBUDUR stūpa contains another sculpted example of a unified *jātaka* cycle within a larger monumental text, which is possibly an extended biography of the Buddha. Similar cycles proliferate in the murals of the pre-Tang (ca. 421–640 C.E.) SILK ROAD cave monasteries of Kucha and in various media in Burmese STŪPAS and temples from the eleventh century onward, especially at Pagan. Burma has the longest and most prolific tradition of visual *jātakas*, which ceramists, painters, and woodcarvers narrate individually, in small groups, or in cycles. For example, glazed tiles line the upper circumambulatory terraces of the ANANDA TEMPLE, composing a cycle of 554 *jātakas*, prefaced by events from the Buddha's last birth on the lower terraces. The main hall narratives of AJAṆṬĀ's fifth-century caves 1 and 17 compose monumental *jātakāmālās*, which are framed and bracketed by the cave's porch, shrine antechamber, and shrine. The latter narrate important events from the Buddha's ministry and represent cosmic landscapes and beings often shown worshipping the Buddha.

How do visual *jātakas* function? Buddhist texts do not narrate *jātakas* concerning other buddhas and all buddhas perform the same deeds in their last births. Thus, the significant presence of *jātakas* in a Buddhist monastery indicates that Śākyamuni Buddha and his worship are the focus of Buddhist practice and belief there. Further, visual *jātakas* re-create the Bodhisattva's marvelous deeds as models to be imitated and as transcendental actions to be worshiped, characterizing his nature as human and supramundane. Architecture and style express this visually, as in the *jātaka*

cycles painted on the sloping ceilings of the Kizil caves and in the idealized naturalism of paintings at Ajaṇṭā. Finally, *jātaka* cycles allow Buddhist pilgrims to follow the Buddha's steps by walking through his previous lives.

*See also:* Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Dunhuang; Sūtra Illustrations

### Bibliography

- Barua, Beni Madhab. *Bharhut*. Patna, India: Indological Book Corp., 1979.
- Cummings, Mary. *The Lives of the Buddha in the Art and Literature of Asia*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan, Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, 1982.
- Dehejia, Vidya. *Discourse in Early Buddhist Art: Visual Narratives of India*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1997.
- Girard-Geslan, Maud, et al. *Art of Southeast Asia*, tr. J. A. Underwood. New York: Harry N. Abrams, 1998.
- Schlingloff, Dieter. *Studies in the Ajaṇṭā Paintings: Identifications and Interpretations*. Delhi: Ajaṇṭā Publications, 1987.
- Schlingloff, Dieter. *Guide to the Ajaṇṭā Paintings: Narrative Wall Paintings*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1999.
- Whitfield, Roderick. *Cave Temples of Mogao: Art and History on the Silk Road*. Los Angeles: Getty Conservation Institute and the J. Paul Getty Museum, 2000.

LEELA ADITI WOOD

## JĀTAKAMĀLĀ

*Jātakamālā* (*Garland of Jātakas*) is the title of a work by the poet ĀRYAŚŪRA (fourth century C.E.). The title was later adopted by other authors, such as Haribhaṭṭa (early fifth century) and Gopadatta (seventh or eighth century), each of whom gives a personal slant to his own selection of thirty-four legends about the Buddha's previous lives, refashioning them in a mixture of verse and prose. Fourteen of Haribhaṭṭa's retellings survive in the original Sanskrit (the entire work is available in Tibetan), and about half of Gopadatta's *Garland* has so far been retrieved from miscellaneous story collections in Sanskrit.

*See also:* Jātaka

### Bibliography

- Hahn, Michael. *Haribhaṭṭa and Gopadatta: Two Authors in the Succession of Āryaśūra, on the Rediscovery of Parts of Their*

*Jātakamālās*, 2nd revised edition. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1992.

Hahn, Michael, ed. *Haribhaṭṭa's Jātakamālā*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Franz Steiner Verlag, 2002.

Khoroché, Peter, trans. *Once the Buddha Was a Monkey: Ārya Śūra's Jātakamālā*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1989.

PETER KHOROCHE

## JEWELS

Jewels occupy important narrative and ritual spaces throughout the history of Buddhism. Buddhism, insofar as it constitutes the faith dedicated to elimination of desire, would seem at first consideration to be a religion at variance with objects that are culturally most directly associated with wealth. However, from an early stage Buddhists incorporated jewels into their teaching as part of a discourse on value.

The Buddha routinely employed the metaphor of the jewel (*ratna*) in a variety of sūtras to refer to the unlimited value of enlightened wisdom, a value that can be seen as represented in the form of an infinitely beautiful and valuable jewel that at the same time stands in contrast to the limitations of material jewels. Likewise, the jewel was often used as a metaphor to depict the conquest of death that is accomplished in Buddhist liberation—an item that, as with the metaphor of the diamond (*vajra*), represents absolute solidity, beauty, and permanence. Both of these metaphors are represented in their quintessential form in the *Gaṇḍhavyūha-sūtra* (*Flower Garland Scripture*), which elaborately deploys jewels and other glittering metaphors to illustrate enlightened vision of the absolute character of the interpenetration of all phenomena (dharma). While such discourse was often abstract, the jewel was also used in the phrase “Three Jewels” (*triratna*) to refer to the Buddhist tradition in its three basic, most treasured, aspects: Buddha, his teaching (dharma), and his community (SAṄGHA).

Jewels have also been an essential feature in iconographic representations of celestial buddhas and BODHISATTVAS of the Mahāyānist and tantric traditions. While the glittering character of the jewels and gold of the Buddha AMITĀBHA's Pure Land Sukhāvātī are well known, a series of buddhas, bodhisattvas, and other beings protective of Buddhism are routinely represented as carrying one or more jewels, which consti-

tutes their so-called *samaya* (attribute). Among such figures are the bodhisattvas Kṣitigarbha (Chinese, Dizang; Japanese, Jizō) and Avalokiteśvara (Chinese, Guanyin; Japanese, Kannon), the female protective deity Śrī-mahādevī (Japanese, Kichijōten), and figures of esoteric Buddhism, such as the Jewel Buddha Ratnasambhava. The so-called seven jewels (*saptaratna*), likewise, represent the splendid treasures of the ideal wheel-turning Buddhist king: the wheel, the white elephant, the deep blue horse, the sacred jewel, the jewel woman, the merchant-artisan, and the military commander. The same term was also used to refer to seven precious substances used in the construction of elaborate Buddhist edifices, such as brilliant STŪPAS.

The jewel was also the subject of the more elaborate discourse of the “wish-fulfilling jewel” (*cintāmaṇi*), which represents the absolute merit (*puṇya*) offered by the Buddhist dharma and scriptures. While originally an image, the term in some East Asian tantric traditions came to be venerated as an object of esoteric ritual, and was even regarded by some in medieval Japanese Shingon as equivalent with Buddha relics—and the greatest treasure of Shingon—or the product of alchemical production that used relics and other precious substances, and was coveted by the sovereign.

*See also: Huayan Jing; Kingship; Refuges; Relics and Relics Cults*

### Bibliography

Abe Yasurō. “Hōju to ōken: chūsei to mikkyō girei” (Jewels and royal authority: esoteric Buddhist rites and the medieval era). In *Iwanami kōza tōyō shisō 16: Nihon shisō 2*. Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1989.

Cleary, Thomas, trans. *The Flower Ornament Scripture*. Boulder, CO: Shambhala, 1984.

Cook, Francis D. *Hua-yen Buddhism: The Jewel Net of Indra*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1977.

*Go yuigō* (attributed to Kūkai). *Taishō shinshū daizōkyō 77*, no. 2431.

Ruppert, Brian D. *Jewel in the Ashes: Buddha Relics and Power in Early Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center and Harvard University Press, 2000.

Uehara Kazu. “Higashi ajia no bukyō bijutsu ni mirareru mani hyōgen no shosō” (Forms of expression of *cintā[-maṇi]* as seen in East Asian Buddhist art). In *Kodai no saishiki to shisō: higashi ajia no naka no nihon*, ed. Nakanishi Susumu. Tokyo: Kadokawa shoten, 1991.

BRIAN O. RUPPERT

## JIUN ONKŌ

Jiun Onkō (Jiun Sonja, 1718–1804) was born and raised in Osaka, the son of a masterless samurai and a devoutly Buddhist mother. Forced into the Buddhist clergy at thirteen at the time of his father's death, Jiun became a novice under Ninko Teiki (1671–1750), a master in the Shingon Vinaya sect. This sect stressed both Shingon or Japanese tantric Buddhism and traditional monastic discipline. Under Teiki's influence, and after a period of training in his late teens and early twenties that included Zen and further Confucian studies, Jiun went on to become one of the leading Buddhist scholars and reformers of the Tokugawa period (1603–1868).

Early in his career, Jiun devoted much attention to the study of monastic discipline and the creation of supra-sectarian Buddhist communities that became part of his "Vinaya of the True Dharma" movement. To counteract a moral laxity that he saw in the Buddhist clergy, he advocated a return to what he judged to be a common core of Buddhist thought and practice that he called "Buddhism as it was when the Buddha was alive." Buddhist ethics, the practice of meditation, and, for monks and nuns, the observance of the VINAYA or monastic discipline stood at the center of his movement. Jiun's most famous work, *Jūzen hōgo* (*Sermons on the Ten Good Precepts*), completed in 1774, was an argument for Buddhist ethics as the foundation of the Buddhist way of life. Jiun is also remembered as one of Japan's greatest Sanskrit scholars. Working without the aid of a Sanskrit teacher and without a living tradition of Sanskrit studies, Jiun compiled the one thousand-chapter *Bongaku shinryō* (*Guide to Sanskrit Studies*, 1766) that included information on the geography, history, and customs of India, as well as dictionaries, grammars, and textual studies.

In his later years, Jiun turned his attention to the study of nativism and articulated his own understanding of the positive relationship that existed between Buddhism and Japan's local gods. His interpretation of nativism came to be known as Uden Shintō, or the "Shintō Transmitted by Jiun." When Japan began a period of rapid modernization in the Meiji period (1868–1912), Buddhist leaders who shared Jiun's concerns about the moral laxity of the clergy and the overly sectarian character of Japanese Buddhism drew inspiration from his *Sermons on the Ten Good Precepts*, and Japanese scholars who were learning of new research

on Indian Buddhist languages in Europe looked with pride to Jiun's pioneering Sanskrit studies.

*See also:* **Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism**

### Bibliography

- Watt, Paul B. "Sermons on the Precepts and Monastic Life by the Shingon Vinaya Master Jiun (1718–1804)." *Eastern Buddhist* 25, no. 2 (1992): 119–128.
- Watt, Paul B. "Jiun Sonja (1718–1804): A Response to Confucianism within the Context of Buddhist Reform." In *Confucianism and Tokugawa Culture*, ed. Peter Nosco. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Watt, Paul B. "Shingon's Jiun Sonja and His 'Vinaya of the True Dharma' Movement." In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.

PAUL B. WATT

## JO KHANG

Jo khang is Tibet's earliest and foremost Buddhist temple. It is located in the center of Tibet's capital city, Lhasa. The Jo khang enshrines one of Tibet's most sacred Buddhist images—a statue of the buddha Śākya-muni as a young man, said to have been crafted in India during his lifetime. The monastery takes its name from this icon: Jo bo (pronounced Jowo) means "lord"; *khang* means "house."

The Jo khang has been a major center for Tibetan Buddhist worship and religious practice, drawing pilgrims and devotees from all parts of the Tibetan cultural world for well over a millennium. In common parlance the temple, with its numerous side chapels, adjoining courtyards, walkways, and residential quarters, is referred to simply as the Gtsug lag khang (pronounced Tsuglag khang), perhaps translated as "grand temple" or "cathedral." Western sources often describe it, somewhat misleadingly, as "the Cathedral of Lhasa."

Traditional sources such as the *Mañi bka' 'bum* (*Hundred Thousand Pronouncements [Regarding] Mañi*) credit the Tibetan king Srong btsan sgam po (r. ca. 614–650) and his two queens with founding the Jo khang's original temple in approximately 640. According to these accounts, the king's Chinese bride Wencheng carried the Jo bo statue to Tibet as part of her dowry. Arriving in the capital city to inauspicious signs, however,

she divined that the landscape of Tibet was like a great supine demoness, obstructing the introduction and spread of the dharma. She advised the king, a new Buddhist convert, and his Nepalese wife Bhṛkūti to erect the Jo khang directly over the demoness's heart. This project was later augmented with twelve temples constructed at other physiognomic locations, where they served as great geomantic nails to pin down and subdue the forces inimical to Buddhism. The Jo khang originally housed a statue of the buddha AKṢOBHYA belonging to Bhṛkūti. After the king's death, the Jo bo was removed from its previous location in the nearby Ra mo che Temple, founded by Wencheng herself, and installed in the Jo khang's inner sanctum.

Modern scholarship now questions the historicity of many details of this episode, including Srong btsan sgam po's exclusive dedication to Buddhism and the existence of his Nepalese queen. However, the narratives of Tibet's Buddhist conversion through the subjugation of local deities continue to play a significant role in the religious life of many Tibetans, affirming the Jo khang's key position in the sacred geography of the Tibetan Buddhist world.

Since its founding, the Jo khang has been enlarged and renovated on numerous occasions, although architectural details from its original foundation are still evident, especially in the carved wooden door frames attributed to Newari craftsmen from Nepal. The temple suffered in the 1960s during the Chinese Cultural Revolution, when part of the complex and much of its original statuary were damaged or destroyed; restoration took place in the early 1970s and again during the early 1990s.

The temple lies at the heart of Lhasa's principal ritual ambulatory, called the *bar skor* (pronounced barkhor) or middle circuit, which skirts its outer walls and surrounding structures. The Jo khang and *bar skor* together continue to form Lhasa's primary public religious space, where pilgrims and devotees daily walk, prostrate, pray, and perform offerings in the temple's many chapels and around the circumambulation path. The site is also a lively marketplace and social scene, where individuals meander through street vendor's stalls and modern Chinese department stores. Since the late 1980s the *bar skor* has also become the principal Tibetan stage for political protest and civil demonstration.

### Bibliography

Aris, Michael. *Bhutan: The Early History of a Himalayan Kingdom*. Warminster, UK: Aris and Phillips, 1979.

Gyatso, Janet. "Down with the Demoness." *Tibet Journal* 12, no. 4 (1987): 34–46. Reprinted in *Feminine Ground: Essays on Women and Tibet*, ed. Janice Dean Willis. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1989.

Larsen, Knud, and Sinding-Larsen, Amund. *The Lhasa Atlas: Traditional Tibetan Architecture and Townscape*. Boston: Shambhala, 2001.

Richardson, Hugh. "The Jo-Khang 'Cathedral' of Lhasa." In *Essais sur l'art du Tibet*, ed. Ariane Macdonald and Yoshiro Imaeda. Paris: Librairie d'Amérique et d'Orient, 1977. Reprinted in *High Peaks, Pure Earth: Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*, ed. Michael Aris. London: Serindia, 1998.

Vitali, Roberto. "Lhasa Jokhang and Its Secret Chapel." In *Early Temples of Central Tibet*. London: Serindia, 1990.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## JUEFAN (HUIHONG)

Juefan Huihong (1071–1128) was a Buddhist monk and poet active primarily during the tumultuous reign of the Chinese emperor Song Huizong (r. 1101–1125). Huihong promoted an approach to Buddhism he called literary Chan (*wenzi* Chan) that incorporated poetry, painting, and scholarship on religious and secular books, with contemporary CHAN SCHOOL practices. Several prominent literati including Zhang Shangying (1043–1122) and Huang Tingjian (1045–1105) befriended Huihong and advocated his literary Chan, helping to ensure his lasting fame.

Huihong became a monk after he lost his parents at the age of fourteen and was ordained at nineteen. During his early years he primarily studied YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL texts. In 1092 Huihong became a pupil of Zhenjing Kewen (1025–1102), a legendary Chan teacher from the Huanglong collateral branch of the Linji lineage. Between 1092 and 1105, Huihong investigated the sūtras and Chan literature, and visited sacred sites throughout southern China. In 1105 Huihong was jailed for the first of four incarcerations because of his connections to a faction opposed to Huizong's anti-Buddhist policies. Huihong's disfavor at court earned him an exile to Hainan island in 1112–1113. During this time Huihong turned to writing and reading poetry for solace and compiled a treatise on poetic criticism called the *Lengzhai yehua* (*Evening Discourses from a Cold Studio*). In addition, Huihong finished work on his somewhat unorthodox discourse record, the *Linjian lu* (*Anecdotes from the*

*Groves [of Chan]*), and one of the earliest commentaries to the *Śūraṅgama-sūtra* (Chinese, *Shoulengyan jing*; *Heroic March Sūtra*). During the last decade of his life, Huihong finished compiling the *Chanlin sengbao zhuan* (*Chronicles of the Saṅgha Jewel within the Groves of Chan*) with eighty-four biographies.

*See also:* **Chan Art; China; Poetry and Buddhism**

### ***Bibliography***

Gimello, Robert M. "Mārga and Culture: Learning, Letters, and Liberation in Northern Sung Ch'an." In *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. and Robert M. Gimello. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.

Keyworth, George. "Transmitting the Lamp of Learning in Classical Chan Buddhism: Juefan Huihong (1071–1128) and Literary Chan." Ph.D. diss. University of California, Los Angeles, 2001.

GEORGE A. KEYWORTH

# K



KAGYU. See Bka' brgyud

## KAILĀŚA (KAILASH)

Kailāśa (Kailash) is one of Asia's preeminent sacred mountains. It is located in southwestern Tibet near the borders of India and Nepal. By Himalayan standards Mount Kailāśa is a modest peak, standing at 22,028 feet; yet the stature of its isolated snow-capped dome forms a striking image against the arid plateau. Together with Lake Manasarovar, eighteen miles to the southeast, Kailāśa forms one of the region's richest and most active PILGRIMAGE sanctuaries, revered for nearly two millennia by followers of diverse religious traditions including Jains, Hindus, and members of the indigenous Tibetan BON religion. Beginning in the eleventh century, Mount Kailāśa occupied a central position in the sacred landscape of Tibetan Buddhists, who associate the sanctuary complex with an array of BUDDHAS, tantric deities, and past Buddhist masters. Situated at Asia's watershed, four of the continent's largest rivers originate within fifty miles of the mountain: the Brahmaputra, the Karnali, the Sutlej, and the Indus. Tibetan literature refers to the mountain as Gangs dkar Ti se (White Snow Mountain Ti se); in common parlance, however, it is simply called Gangs rin po che (Precious Snow Mountain).

Mount Kailāśa is popularly associated with Mount Meru, the central pillar of the world system as depicted in Buddhist and Hindu COSMOLOGY. Tibetan descriptive guides to Kailāśa, however, equate the mountain with a site known as Himavat or Himalaya (the Snowy, or the Snow Mountain), one of twenty-four sacred

lands (*piṭha*) named in the *Cakrasaṃvara-tantra* as geographic locations efficacious for Buddhist practice (as well as sites "mapped" within the visualized *vajra*-body of the yogin meditator). The mythic narratives of the Cakrasaṃvara literature recount how, in primordial times, these twenty-four lands fell under the dominion of Maheśvara (Śiva), manifesting in the guise of the fierce, blood-thirsty god Bhairava (or Rudra). The buddha Vajradhara, in wrathful form as a Heruka deity, then subdued Bhairava, blessing each location as a MAṄḌALA of the deity Cakrasaṃvara and his retinue. The tradition of identifying Kailāśa within this sacred landscape was especially promoted by members of the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) sect of Tibetan Buddhism, who grouped the peak together with two other important mountain pilgrimage sites in southern Tibet, La phyi and Tsa ri, identified respectively as Cakrasaṃvara's body, speech, and mind. These claims drew criticism from some Tibetan quarters; the renowned scholar SAKYA PAṄḌITA (SAKYA PAṄḌITA; 1182–1251), for example, argued that the sites associated with Cakrasaṃvara were located not in Tibet but India, and were part of a visionary geography accessible only to highly skilled meditators. Modern scholars such as Toni Huber have begun to track the manner in which important sacred locations of India were "remapped" onto Tibetan soil.

Tibetan tradition credits both the historical Buddha and the Indian adept PADMASAMBHAVA (ca. eighth century) with visits to the mountain. Another important narrative recounts how the poet-yogin MI LA RAS PA (MILAREPA; 1028/40–1111/23) inaugurated Buddhism's ascendancy at Mount Kailāśa by defeating a rival Bon priest, Na ro bon chung, in a contest of miracles. The mountain later became associated with the





Kailāśa (Mount Kailash) in southwestern Tibet, the goal of many pilgrimages, is sacred to both Buddhists and Hindus. © Galen Rowell/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

followers of *Mi la ras pa*, principally members of the 'Brug pa and 'Bri gung Bka' bgyud sects, who traveled in great numbers to meditate there.

Pilgrims from all quarters of the Tibetan Buddhist world continue to visit Mount Kailāśa, many remaining in residence for an entire season. Their primary practice is completing the arduous thirty-two mile clockwise circumambulation route around the mountain, often undertaken in a single eighteen-hour day of walking. (Bon pilgrims make the identical circuit in a counterclockwise direction.) Traditional pilgrimage guide books describe a complex array of sacred elements inscribed within the landscape around the mountain, as well as specific religious practices to be undertaken at various points along the trail.

See also: **Space, Sacred**

### Bibliography

Allen, Charles. *A Mountain in Tibet: The Search for Mount Kailas and the Sources of the Great Rivers of India*. London: André Deutsch, 1982.

Chang, Garma C. C., ed. and trans. *The Hundred Thousand Songs of Milarepa*. New Hyde Park, NY: University Books, 1962. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1999.

Huber, Toni. "Where Exactly Are Carita, Devikota, and Himavat? A Sacred Geography Controversy and the Development of Tantric Buddhist Pilgrimage Sites in Tibet." *Kailash* 16, nos. 3–4 (1990): 121–164.

Huber, Toni, and Rigzin, Tsepak. "A Tibetan Guide for Pilgrimage to Ti-se (Mount Kailas) and mTsho Ma-pham (Lake Manasarovar)." In *Sacred Spaces and Powerful Places in Tibetan Culture: A Collection of Essays*, ed. Toni Huber. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1999.

Ricard, Mathhieu, ed. and trans. "At Mt. Kailash." In *The Life of Shabkar: The Autobiography of a Tibetan Yogi*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1994.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

---

## KĀLACAKRA

The Kālacakra Tantra (Tibetan, *Dus kyi 'khor lo'i rgyud*; *Wheel of Time, System of Mysticism*) is the most

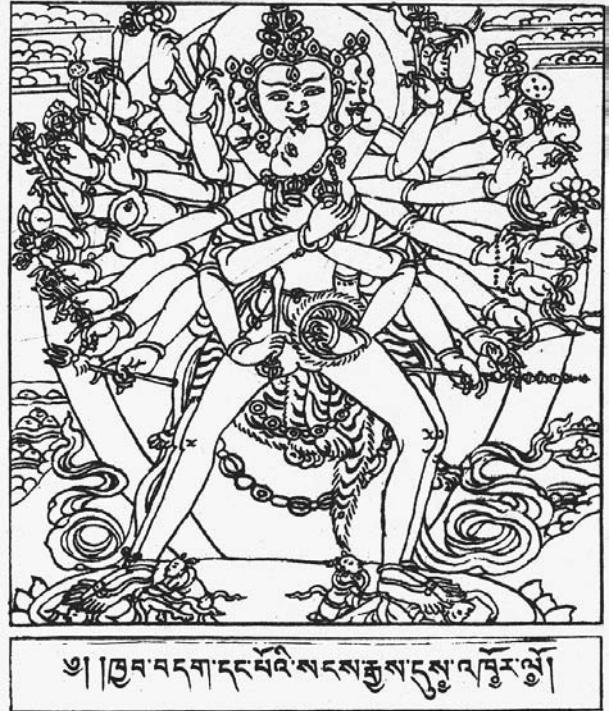
complex of the numerous VAJRAYĀNA Buddhist systems of mysticism. Although it presupposes and draws on all of the preceding developments of Indian Buddhism, it is innovative in both its soteriological doctrines and in its mythic prophetic vision. Based on the ancient idea of the homology of the macrocosm and the microcosm, the Kālacakra presents a tantric yogic method for transforming an individual from a suffering, saṃsāric state into the transcendent state of perfect awakening. Drawing on Hindu mythology and historical events, it predicts a conflict between the forces of good and evil out of which a new golden age will be born.

### Doctrine

The subject matter of the Kālacakra system has a tripartite structure: the external world (*bāhya*), the self (*adhyātman*), and the transcendent (*para*). The last topic can be subdivided into three: INITIATION (*abhiṣeka*), practice (*sādhana*), and gnosis (*jñāna*). The yoga of the Kālacakra is founded on the idea that the world (the macrocosm) and the self (the microcosm) share essential properties and that a person contains all of the elements of the cosmos. Correspondences between world and self allow the universe to be treated as a unified field for the development of salvific knowledge—gnosis.

In the Kālacakra initiation rites—the entryway to the tantric path—the guru introduces the disciple to the MAṆḌALA, a palace inhabited by deities that represents the disciple's world/self in a purified, awakened state. The maṇḍala provides a new self-image for the disciple: Whereas previously the disciple was enmeshed in the impure, limited, and confused projections of ordinary saṃsāric mind, the mysteries of the maṇḍala revealed in the initiation rites furnish a glimpse of the disciple's potential for the realization of awakening.

During the initial phase of tantric practice—the generation stage (*utpattikrama*)—the practitioner first dissolves ordinary perceptions of self and environment into a perception of emptiness, and then imaginatively generates a vision of self in the form of the buddha deities Śrī Kālacakra (Splendid Wheel of Time) and Viśvamātā (Mother of the Universe), together with their progeny, the rest of the maṇḍala. This stage—explicitly correlated with the process of human conception, birth, and maturation—transforms and divinizes the power of imagination, loosens attachment to mundane concerns, and produces a great store of merit.



The deity Śrī Kālacakra, a vision of self generated by the practitioner of tantra. © Lokesh Chandra. Reproduced by permission.

The second phase of practice—the completion stage (*utpannakrama*)—uses controlled sensory deprivation, mental fixation, and manipulation of respiration and other energies in the body to induce a physiological and psychic condition similar to death. In this state all forms of ideation cease, and the practitioner obtains a vision of the emptiness image (*śūnyatābimbam*). The emptiness image is a gnosis that nonconceptually cognizes the totality of the universe in terms of both conventional truth (the appearances of ordinary phenomena) and ultimate truth (the universal emptiness that is everything's lack of absolute, autonomous existence). Vision of the emptiness image gives rise to imperishable bliss (*akṣarasukha*), so that gnosis and bliss are inseparably fused. Repeated cultivation of this experience purifies the mind of obscurations, finally culminating in the practitioner's achievement of the transcendent, perfect awakening of a buddha.

### Myth

According to the Kālacakra tradition, the Buddha taught this tantra at the Dhānyakaṭaka stūpa in South India to King Sucandra, ruler of Shambhala, a vast empire located in Central Asia. The Kālacakra was



Cakrin, twenty-fifth Kalkin of Shambhala. A prophecy of the Kālacakra says that at the end of the current age of degeneration, Cakrin will conquer the followers of the “barbarian religion,” inaugurating a new golden age. © Lokesh Chandra. Reproduced by permission.

preserved in Shambhala by Sucandra’s successors, the sixth of whom—Yaśas—was given the title Kalkin for unifying all of the castes of Shambhala within a single Vajrayāna family. Also, the Kālacakra prophesies that at the end of the current age of degeneration, the twenty-fifth Kalkin of Shambhala—Cakrin—will lead the Hindu gods and the army of Shambhala in battle at Baghdad against the followers of the “barbarian religion” Islam. Kalkin Cakrin’s defeat of the forces of Islam will mark the end of the age of degeneration and the beginning of a new golden age.

The preceding is a Buddhist rewriting of the earlier Hindu myth of Kalki updated to suit historical conditions contemporaneous with the origin of the Kālacakra. In the Hindu myth it is prophesied that the great god VIṢṆU will incarnate as a brahman warrior named Kalki in the village of Shambhala. At the end of the age of degeneration, Kalki will eradicate barbarians and unruly outcastes, thus reestablishing brahman supremacy and initiating a new golden age.

The Kālacakra first appeared in India during the early decades of the eleventh century C.E., when, in the

name of Islam, Sultan Mahmud of Ghazni conducted expeditions of plunder and iconoclastic destruction in northwestern India. Thus the Kālacakra’s retelling of the prophetic myth of Kalki replaces a brahman Hindu hero with a Buddhist messiah in response to the traumatizing depredations of the Muslim invaders of India.

### History

The most important texts of the Kālacakra system contain a date that enables scholars to determine that they were completed between 1025 and approximately 1040. The authors of these works disguised their identities with mythic pseudonyms, but among the known early masters of the tradition is Piṅḍo (tenth–eleventh century), a brahman Buddhist monk born in Java who taught the famous Dīpaṃkaraśrījñāna (ATISHA; 982–1054), and Nāropāda (d.u.–ca. 1040), the renowned Vajrayāna teacher of Nālandā monastic university. The Kālacakra flourished among the Buddhist intelligentsia of northern India from the eleventh through the thirteenth centuries, and it continued to be studied and practiced in India until at least the end of the sixteenth century.

From northern India the Kālacakra spread to Nepal and Tibet, and from Tibet it was transmitted to Mongolia and China. The Tibetans produced a vast literature on the system, and continue to study and practice the Kālacakra. During the last decades of the twentieth century, the fourteenth DALAI LAMA of Tibet performed the Kālacakra initiation rites on numerous occasions in Asia and in the United States, fostering the continued cross-cultural diffusion of this important Vajrayāna tradition.

*See also:* **Hinduism and Buddhism; Islam and Buddhism; Tantra**

### Bibliography

- Lamrimpa, Gen. *Transcending Time: An Explanation of the Kālachakra Six-Session Guru Yoga*, tr. B. Alan Wallace. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.
- Newman, John. “Eschatology in the Wheel of Time Tantra.” In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Newman, John. “Itineraries to Sambhala.” In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Newman, John. “Islam in the Kālacakra Tantra.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 21, no. 2 (1998): 311–371.

Newman, John. "Vajrayoga in the Kālacakra Tantra." In *Tantra in Practice*, ed. David Gordon White. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000.

Sopa, Geshe Lhundub; Jackson, Roger; and Newman, John. *The Wheel of Time: The Kālachakra in Context*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1991.

JOHN NEWMAN

## KAMAKURA BUDDHISM, JAPAN

Kamakura Buddhism is a modern scholarly term referring to a phase in the development of Japanese Buddhism coinciding with the Kamakura period (1185–1333). The term also refers to several new Buddhist movements that appeared during that time, specifically, Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren. These movements eventually became the dominant schools of Buddhism in Japan. Kamakura Buddhism is typically contrasted to NARA BUDDHISM and Heian Buddhism, which denote other forms of Buddhism and the periods in which they emerged. These three categories—Nara, Heian, and Kamakura Buddhism—provide a historical periodization as well as a conceptual framework for the classification of Buddhist schools. Of the three, Kamakura Buddhism is frequently portrayed as the most significant, especially in light of the large memberships of its modern denominations. This threefold classification appears in most surveys of Japanese Buddhism, although some scholars question whether it accurately reflects the character of Buddhism in each historical period and the actual course of its development.

The foundations on which Kamakura Buddhism arose were the religious traditions of the Nara (710–784) and Heian (794–1185) periods. These periods correspond to the time when Japan's capital was located first in the city of Nara and then in Heian (Kyoto). The Kamakura period is likewise named after a city, Kamakura, where the first warrior government was established in 1185. Hence, the periodization of Japanese history, as well as the classification of its Buddhist schools, has arisen as an extension of Japan's geography and political history. There are questions whether this political framework offers the best structure for categorizing and analyzing Japanese Buddhism, but it has become the most common template used in presentations of Japanese Buddhism.

## Nara and Heian Buddhism

Nara Buddhism is typically equated with six schools, or more properly six traditions, of Buddhist scholarship. These developed during the eighth century at major monasteries in and around Nara, such as Tōdaiji, Kōfukuji, Gangōji, Daianji, and Tōshōdaiji. The six consist specifically of: (1) Kusha, the study of the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA, a treatise that analyzes all things into atomistic units; (2) Hossō, the study of YOGĀCĀRA, a philosophy attributing this atomistic reality to mind only; (3) Jōjitsu (Chinese, Chengshi), the study of a treatise that recognizes discrete elements at a conventional level, but not at an absolute level; (4) Sanron, the study of MADHYAMAKA, a philosophy using emptiness as a concept to refute the standard ideas of existence and nonexistence; (5) Kegon (Chinese, HUAYAN), a philosophy of interdependence and mutual identification among all things; and (6) Ritsu (Sanskrit, VINAYA), a systematic exposition of the rules, procedures, and lifestyle applying to the Buddhist clergy.

These six schools represent a complex body of knowledge transplanted from the Asian mainland and studied by clerics as correlative systems rather than as competing philosophies. The state sanctioned and supported the monasteries in which they flourished, and sought to make Buddhist learning and the entire Buddhist order its own preserve. It oversaw who could become priests and nuns, and issued regulations governing them. Such control, aimed at protection of the state and concrete benefits, is considered a defining characteristic of Nara Buddhism. Despite the state's efforts, Buddhist beliefs and practices began to spread more widely in the population, primarily through itinerant Buddhist preachers such as Gyōki (or Gyōgi, 668–749).

Heian Buddhism refers specifically to the Tendai and Shingon schools, which emerged at the beginning of the Heian period (794–1185) and quickly dominated religious affairs in Japan. This new phase commenced soon after the imperial capital was moved from Nara to Kyoto in an attempt to distance the government from the encroaching influence of the Nara temples. Heian Buddhism arose in a sense as a reaction to Nara Buddhism, and also as a continuing expansion of Buddhism from the Asian continent. The Heian founders, SAICHŌ (767–822) of Tendai and KŪKAI (774–835) of Shingon, studied Buddhism in China and introduced into Japan trends they encountered there, along with adaptations of their own. Each considered his own form of Buddhism superior to



The Great Buddha of Kamakura, Japan. (Japanese, bronze, 1252.) © Edifice/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

those preserved in the Nara temples. The Tendai tradition that Saichō established claimed the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) as its core text; propounded the doctrines of emptiness, provisional reality, and the middle way; and developed a complex monastic program of meditative training and rituals, influenced in part by Kūkai's esoteric teachings. Saichō also sought to make his monastic community, located on Mount Hiei northeast of Kyoto, independent of the Nara Buddhist organization by developing his own procedures for ordaining clerics based on MAHĀYĀNA precepts.

Kūkai, for his part, advanced the Shingon idea of the all-pervasive presence of Dainichi (Mahāvairocana) Buddha and the actualization of buddhahood through physical, verbal, and mental acts of ritual. Instead of distancing himself from Nara Buddhism, Kūkai introduced Shingon esoteric ritual into Tōdaiji and other temples, and at the same time developed his own Shingon institutions at Tōji in Kyoto and on Mount Kōya near Osaka. Tendai and Shingon Bud-

dhism thus took their place alongside Nara Buddhism as the religious establishment of Japan, and in many ways superseded it. Both operated in partnership with the ruling powers, creating a religious and ideological foundation for governance. Materially, they benefited from the burgeoning estate system in the Japanese medieval economy, which richly endowed their temples and monasteries and allowed them to develop elaborate traditions of religious training, ritual, doctrine, and iconography. Their beliefs, practices, and institutions, especially those found on Mount Hiei, were the matrix from which Kamakura Buddhism arose.

### The emergence of Kamakura Buddhism

Kamakura Buddhism is commonly presented as a reaction to Heian Buddhism, just as Heian is considered a reaction to Nara Buddhism. By the twelfth century the burgeoning Tendai and Shingon institutions, combined with the Nara temples, formed the prevailing religious order of Japan, frequently referred to as the eight schools (*hasshū*). The fledgling movements that eventually grew into the Kamakura schools emerged out of this milieu and to a certain extent reacted against it. Their teachings and practices were inspired by the existing traditions, and their founders received training at established monasteries and temples, particularly on Mount Hiei. But they approached mainstream Buddhism selectively, embracing some teachings and rejecting others. All three forms of Kamakura Buddhism—Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren—thus developed different orientations from Tendai, Shingon, and Nara Buddhism, and quickly diverged from their norm.

PURE LAND BUDDHISM was perhaps the largest and most pervasive segment of Kamakura Buddhism. The specific Japanese schools commonly classified in the Pure Land category are the Jōdoshū school founded by HŌNEN (1133–1212), the Jōdo Shinshū school founded by SHINRAN (1173–1263), and the Jishū school founded by IPPEN CHISHIN (1239–1289). All three lived during the Kamakura period, and emphasized devotion to AMITĀBHA Buddha and rebirth in his Pure Land paradise. Pure Land beliefs and practices had already emerged as prominent elements in Japanese Buddhism, particularly on Mount Hiei and in aristocratic society. But the Kamakura founders stressed them even more, often to the exclusion of other forms of Buddhism. Hōnen, who was the most prominent Pure Land master of his time, advocated exclusive practice of the *nen-butsu*, invoking or chanting the name of the Buddha Amitābha in the form *Namu Amida Butsu*. Shinran,

who was his disciple, believed that it is Amitābha's power that leads people to enlightenment in the Pure Land and that infuses them with *nenbutsu* practice and FAITH (*shinjin*). Ippen, an itinerant Pure Land holy man, considered the *nenbutsu* an act wherein the Buddha and the believer merge, and he spread the *nenbutsu* widely through distribution of amulets inscribed with it. Hōnen's initiatives inspired an independent Pure Land movement, but also provoked a harsh reaction from established temples and monasteries, resulting in his banishment from Kyoto for four years. Shinran's following, which grew to be a mass movement two centuries later, was distinctive in that its clergy, in accord with his example, forsook Buddhism's clerical celibacy, and married and begot families. And Ippen's activities led to an extensive network of *dōjō* (congregational meeting places) of *nenbutsu* practitioners.

Zen, the second form of Kamakura Buddhism, consists of the Rinzai school, founded by Eisai (or Yōsai, 1141–1215) and others, and the Sōtō school, begun by DōGEN (1200–1253). Both were monks on Mount Hiei, and both traveled to China for further training in monasteries. Each emphasized Zen meditation as a crucial religious practice, though for somewhat different reasons. Eisai considered Tendai Buddhism on Mount Hiei to be in decline, and he sought to revitalize it by introducing China's method of Zen training (and also by emphasizing clerical precepts anew). But Mount Hiei rejected his initiatives. Eisai, nonetheless, found an ally in the recently established warrior government, which first supported him as a Zen master in the city of Kamakura and later sponsored his new Zen monastery, Kenninji, in Kyoto. These institutions, along with others established by subsequent Chinese and Japanese masters, became the basis for the Rinzai branch of Zen. Dōgen, for his part, also trained on Mount Hiei and then at Kenninji before traveling to China. He regarded the Zen method he learned there as Buddhism's most authentic form, and upon returning to Japan he quickly built a following around it, separate from his previous affiliations. Eventually he received patronage from a regional lord who enabled him to establish a monastery, Eiheiji, in the remote province of Echizen. The monastic rules and routines that Dōgen formulated there became the starting point of Sōtō Zen in Japan. At the heart of his teaching and monastic community was Zen MEDITATION, which he considered the very practice of enlightenment.

Nichiren Buddhism, known widely in medieval times as the Hokkeshū, or Lotus school, comprises the third tradition of Kamakura Buddhism, which is

named after its founder NICHIREN (1222–1282). Nichiren was active somewhat later than the other Kamakura founders, but like most of them he was trained for a period in Tendai Buddhism on Mount Hiei. Early in his career he was exposed to various forms of Buddhism including Pure Land, Zen, and Shingon, but on Mount Hiei he fixed upon the *Lotus Sūtra*, Tendai's central scripture, as the highest teaching. While utilizing Tendai terminology and doctrine to articulate his ideas, over time Nichiren came to emphasize single-minded and exclusive devotion to the *Lotus*, and he promoted the practice of the DAIMOKU, chanting the title of the sūtra in the form *Namu Myōhō-rence-kyō* as the quintessential expression of the *Lotus Sūtra*'s truth and power. This practice existed in certain Tendai circles prior to Nichiren's time, but he championed it with a fervor surpassing all previous proponents. At the same time, Nichiren began to criticize other forms of Buddhism—specifically, Pure Land, Zen, Shingon, and Ritsu. This action earned him the enmity of the warrior government in Kamakura, which patronized them. On two occasions the government banished Nichiren to remote parts of Japan as punishment. These events marginalized Nichiren and his following, even as he continued to attract believers, including a significant number of women, to his Lotus teachings.

### **Kamakura Buddhism as a scholarly category**

The classification of the Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren movements as Kamakura Buddhism occurred largely in the late nineteenth and early twentieth century. Scholars then began to identify Kamakura times as a period of significant and lasting change in Japanese religion. To highlight this change they coined the terms *New Buddhism*, to refer to the six schools traceable to the Kamakura period, and *Old Buddhism*, to indicate the eight schools originating in Nara and Heian times. Scholars further attributed distinct characteristics and orientations to New Buddhism that set it apart from the earlier forms. Specifically, New Buddhism tended to reduce religious practice to a single simple activity that could be performed by most people, such as the *nenbutsu*, Zen meditation, or the daimoku. New Buddhism was oriented more to the salvation of regular people than to the lofty goals and arduous lifestyle of monastic elites. Such practices were not predicated on a mastery of complex doctrine, but usually involved a simple religious stance of faith, sincerity, and devotion. Also, such practices did not require the intercession of priests, but could be performed on an individual basis. This focus on specific uncomplicated religious

practices made New Buddhism more exclusivistic, distilling religion to the bare essentials, in contrast to Old Buddhism, which was more inclusivistic, integrating a vast array of practices, beliefs, texts, deities, rituals, and ecclesiastical ranks into a multifaceted religious culture. In the process, New Buddhism set aside many of the magical and apotropaic concerns of Old Buddhism in order to concentrate on personal salvation. Overall, the new Kamakura movements are portrayed as the democratization of Japanese Buddhism—that is, the extension of Buddhism beyond a predominantly upper-class, male, clerical elite to include lowly, female, and lay adherents. This view of Japan's religious development has dominated scholarship for the last century, though it has been subject to a variety of refinements and critiques.

A by-product of this characterization of Kamakura Buddhism has been the tendency to compare it to the Protestant Reformation in Europe. In fact, the example of the Reformation may have influenced the way scholars conceived of Kamakura Buddhism and the features they highlighted. The parallels most often cited between the two are an emphasis on faith, the emergence of a married clergy, the decentralization of religious authority, and the diminished role of clerical intercessors. Among the various forms of Kamakura Buddhism, Shinran's school, the Jōdo Shinshū, has attracted the greatest attention. Shinran himself is frequently compared to Martin Luther. Were it not for Shinran and his school, however, it is questionable how germane the Reformation model would be for analyzing Japanese Buddhism. The tendency to equate Kamakura Buddhism to the Protestant Reformation has declined in recent decades, especially as scholars examine Japanese Buddhism in greater depth and identify dissimilarities. Nonetheless, the terminology of reform has persisted, even though Kamakura is now treated as its own distinct example of reform.

One difficulty in attributing special characteristics to this New Buddhism is that many of the reforms identified in it also occurred in Old Buddhism. Hence, one of the refinements to the category of Kamakura Buddhism has been to extend its boundaries to include various movements and new developments in the Heian and Nara schools too. It is well known, for instance, that various eminent priests of Tendai, Shingon, and the Nara temples were drawn to the *nenbutsu* as a religious practice, and some to Zen meditation also. In addition, various clerics from Nara, such as Jōkei (1155–1213) and Myōe Kōben (1173–1232), promoted popular and easily practiced devotions to

Buddhist deities, including Śākyamuni Buddha, the future Buddha MAITREYA, and the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī. Though not as widespread as Pure Land devotions to Amitābha, these practices were often conducted in a similar manner—for instance, chanting the name of the buddha or bodhisattva before an enshrined image or sacred object. Another initiative in Old Buddhism was to revive the Buddhist PRECEPTS, just as Eisai sought to do alongside Zen meditation in his monastery. Ostensibly, this was done to revitalize the Buddhist order, which was considered lax and in decline. But administering the Buddhist precepts was not limited to clerics. Nara proponents such as Eison (1209–1290) developed mass ceremonies for administering lay precepts to ordinary people as well. Thus, Old Buddhism responded to their needs and religious proclivities as much as New Buddhism did. This wave of popular practice, however, did not displace traditional rituals and doctrine in the established temples, but emerged alongside them. In fact, some learned priests such as GYŌNEN (1240–1321) and Kakuzen (b. 1143) compiled systematic accounts of doctrine, compendiums of beliefs and practices, and historiographies of Buddhism as another way of revitalizing their schools. Hence, Old Buddhism was equally caught up in the religious ferment of the Kamakura period, even while maintaining its traditions of the past.

The most important critique of Kamakura Buddhism as a scholarly concept is found in the alternative theory of medieval Japanese religion proposed by the historian Kuroda Toshio (1926–1993). This theory centers on the idea that the dominant form of religion in medieval times was Kenmitsu, or exoteric-esoteric, Buddhism. Specifically, this refers to an array of practices and assumptions found widely in the temples, monasteries, and organizations of Tendai, Shingon, and Nara Buddhism, rather than in the new Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren movements. Kenmitsu Buddhism was, in short, Japan's medieval orthodoxy, binding together the mainstream institutions through commonly recognized esoteric rituals, even while they diverged on exoteric doctrine. Esoteric ritual was considered efficacious in achieving both spiritual and worldly goals, so the ruling powers of Japan looked to Kenmitsu Buddhism for support and, in turn, patronized and promoted it. Inherent in this depiction of religion is the supposition that the new Kamakura movements were, at best, minor participants in medieval culture and, at worst, heretical fringe groups. The upshot of this view is that Nara and Heian Buddhism are recognized as greater and longer influences on Japan's history than

is commonly acknowledged. The Kamakura Buddhism model thus reflects a projection back onto medieval times of the early modern and modern religious order, since most of its institutions gained prominence only around the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, toward the end of the medieval period.

The Kenmitsu theory offers a critique of the presumption that Kamakura Buddhism was the focal point and the most representative expression of medieval Japanese religion. This critique is built on an astute analysis of medieval religious institutional culture, and it provides an important correction to the tendency to inflate the significance of the new Pure Land, Zen, and Nichiren movements in medieval Japan. But whether the Kenmitsu theory can actually lay to rest the Kamakura Buddhism model is another question. For all its shortcomings, the model underscores the point that over time Japan underwent notable changes in its religious outlook and practice, which are embedded in the dominant forms of Japanese Buddhism today, and that those changes had their inception, if not their heyday, in the Kamakura period. This assumption is so pervasive in the study of Japanese Buddhism that the Kamakura model is likely to continue as an important category in explaining the development of Buddhism in Japan.

*See also:* Chan School; Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Japan; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Nichiren School; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Tiantai School

#### Bibliography

- Bellah, Robert N. "The Contemporary Meaning of Kamakura Buddhism." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 42, no. 1 (1974): 3–17.
- Dobbins, James C., ed. *The Legacy of Kuroda Toshio*. Special issue. *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 23, nos. 3–4 (Fall 1996).
- Dobbins, James C. "Envisioning Kamakura Buddhism." In *Re-Visioning "Kamakura" Buddhism*, ed. Richard K. Payne. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.
- Foard, James H. "In Search of a Lost Reformation: A Reconsideration of Kamakura Buddhism." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 7, no. 4 (1980): 261–291.
- Ienaga Saburō. *Chūsei Bukkyō shisōshi kenkyū* (A Study of the Intellectual History of Medieval Buddhism), revised edition. Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 1955.
- Kuroda Toshio. "Bukkyō kakushin undo no rekishi teki seikaku" (The Historical Character of Buddhism's Reform

Movement). In *Nihon chūsei no shakai to shūkyō* (Society and Religion in Medieval Japan). Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1990.

- Matsunaga, Daigan, and Matsunaga, Alicia. *Foundation of Japanese Buddhism*, Vol. 2: *The Mass Movement: Kamakura and Muromachi Periods*. Los Angeles and Tokyo: Buddhist Books International, 1976.
- Morrell, Robert E. *Early Kamakura Buddhism: A Minority Report*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1987.
- Payne, Richard K., ed. *Re-Visioning "Kamakura" Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.
- Ōsumi Kazuo. "Buddhism in the Kamakura Period." In *The Cambridge History of Japan*, Vol. 3: *Medieval Japan*, ed. Kozo Yamamura. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1990.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Weinstein, Stanley. "The Concept of Reformation in Japanese Buddhism." In *Studies in Japanese Culture*, Vol. 2, ed. Saburō Ōta. Tokyo: Japan Pen Club, 1973.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

---

## KARMA (ACTION)

The term *karma*, which literally means "action," is frequently used in the context of what can be called the doctrine of karma: the belief that acts bring about their retribution, usually in a subsequent existence. This belief is nowadays shared by many Hindus, Buddhists, Jainas, and others, but the details can vary considerably between different believers. In order to understand the doctrine of karma in Indian Buddhism it will be necessary briefly to explore its historical background.

Buddhism was originally one of the religious currents that made up the so-called Śramaṇa (mendicant) movement. Other religious currents belonging to the same movement were Jainism and Ājīvikism; there were no doubt more such currents, but no details about them have survived. All these currents shared the conviction that acts will bring about their retribution. Moreover, they all seem to have shared the aspiration to end the endless cycle of rebirths that results from acts and their consequences. Buddhism, too, was based on these convictions, and it, too, was driven by the aspiration to free its practitioners from the results of their acts, that is, from REBIRTH.



The surviving sources indicate that, outside Buddhism, especially two methods believed to lead to the desired goal had found acceptance among practitioners. On the one hand there were those who drew the conclusion that, if acts are responsible for the consequences that one tries to avoid, the solution can only lie in the practice of complete motionlessness of body and mind. This form of asceticism, preferably performed until death, found followers among the Jinas, the Ājivikas, and elsewhere. There were, however, others who preferred a second method. This method is, in its conception, as simple as it is elegant. If acts lead to undesired consequences, it is sufficient to realize that one has never committed those acts to begin with. And indeed, one has never committed those acts, because that which one really is, one's true self (*ātman*), does not act by its very nature. This second method, in which transcendental insight plays a central role, found entrance into the Vedic Upaniṣads and is almost omnipresent in later Hindu religious literature.

Both of these methods are based on a simple and straightforward notion as to what are acts; clearly all forms of bodily and mental motion, and only bodily and mental motion, are involved here. Complete physical and mental immobility would obviously be a poor, or exaggerated, response if only certain acts (such as, for example, only morally relevant acts) have karmic consequences.

Early Buddhism did not accept these two methods because it did not share with the other religious currents of that period this specific notion of karma. Early Buddhism does not identify bodily and mental motion, but *DESIRES* (or thirst, *trṣṇā*), as the cause of karmic consequences. Neither physical and mental immobility nor insight into the true nature of a presumed self will have any effect on the presence of desire, which means that Buddhism had to find a different method. This is what the Buddha is reported to have done; his method is psychological, and it is said to destroy desire.

It should be clear from the above that the Buddhist understanding of the doctrine of karma and the Buddhist *PATH* to liberation are intricately linked. Both the rejection of extreme *ASCETIC PRACTICES* and the doctrine of no-self (though variously interpreted, even by the later Buddhists themselves) owe their origin to the specifically Buddhist understanding of the doctrine of karma.

The authentic Buddhist path to liberation, however, is difficult to understand and difficult to practice. Moreover, it appears that the canonical passages that

describe it were not sufficiently clear even to many early Buddhist converts. This would explain why Buddhism in India, from its early days onward, time and again reintroduced, in various shapes, the methods that had been rejected by its founder. In particular, already in canonical times, ascetic practices that were centered on the suppression of mental activity made their way into Buddhism. More recent texts speak of the suppression of all activity, both mental and physical, as a desirable aim. An idea that is structurally similar to the non-Buddhist *ātman* doctrine found its way into the Buddhist canon in the form of the Buddhist *anātman* (no-self) doctrine; in both cases the doctrine implies the realization that one does not really act. More recent developments in Indian Buddhism introduce notions, such as that of the *TATHĀGATAGARBHA*, that are even more similar to the initially rejected *ātman* doctrine.

The causal process leading to karmic retribution is described, from canonical times onward, in terms of the causal chain of items called *PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA* (*DEPENDENT ORIGINATION*). This causal chain has been variously interpreted and elaborated in the Buddhist scholastic tradition.

However, problems linked to karmic retribution remained. How, indeed, should one imagine that a bad deed committed in one life will give rise to punishment in another one without the intervention of a conscious and all-powerful agent who keeps account of all the acts carried out by all living beings? The problem of karmic retribution presented itself to various non-Buddhists in India as well, who often solved it precisely by postulating the existence of a creator God who was in charge of it. Buddhism, on the other hand, had no place for a creator God. The workings of karmic retribution, though essential to Indian Buddhists, remained therefore a mystery to many of them.

A daring attempt to solve this mystery finds expression in the *YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL* of Buddhist thought, and most clearly in the writings of *VASUBANDHU* (ca. fourth century C.E.), who presumably converted to *Yogācāra* later in life. It starts from the question of what exactly links an act with its (often much later) retribution. In his early work, the *ABHIDHARMAKOŚA-BHĀṢYA*, Vasubandhu stated already that this link is constituted by a series of mental events. Furthermore, he conceived of the initial intentional act, too, as a mind-event. Its fruition, however, is not normally a mind-event, but an event in the world. How is this to be explained? Vasubandhu does not attempt to answer

this question in his *Abhidharmakośabhāṣya*. In his later *Viṃśikā* (*Twenty Verses*) he does. In this work, he offers the solution that the fruition of an act, like the act itself and the intermediate sequence, must be a mind-event. That is to say, acts and their consequences, and therefore the whole world, are nothing but mind-events. Vasubandhu opts here for idealism in order to solve a problem that resulted from the doctrine of karma.

The Buddhist doctrine of karma, then, is intimately linked to the specific ways to liberation accepted by Indian Buddhists in the course of time, but also to certain doctrinal developments.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō); Hinduism and Buddhism; India; Jainism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Bronkhorst, Johannes. "The Buddha and the Jainas Reconsidered." *Asiatische Studien/Études Asiatiques* 49, no. 2 (1995): 333–350.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. *Karma and Teleology: A Problem and Its Solutions in Indian Philosophy*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 2000.
- Cox, Collett. "Dependent Origination: Its Elaboration in Early Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma Texts." In *Researches in Indian and Buddhist Philosophy: Essays in Honour of Professor Alex Wayman*, ed. Ram Karan Sharma. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu: Traduction et Annotations* (1923). Brussels: Institut Belge des Hautes Etudes Chinoises, 1980.
- Potter, Karl H., ed. *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*, Vol. 8: *Buddhist Philosophy from 100 to 350 A.D.* Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1999.
- Schmithausen, Lambert. "Zur zwölfgliedrigen Formel des Entstehens in Abhängigkeit." *Hōrin: Vergleichende Studien zur japanischen Kultur* 7 (2000): 41–76.
- Willemsen, Charles; Dessein, Bart; and Cox, Collett. *Sarvāstivāda Buddhist Scholasticism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1998.

JOHANNES BRONKHORST

## KARMA PA

*Karma pa* is an appellation given to the spiritual head of the Karma BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU), a major branch of the larger Bka' brgyud sect of Tibetan Buddhism.

The term *Karma pa* is commonly etymologized as "Man of (Enlightened) Action (karma)." The Karma pas are considered to form the first institutionalized succession of reincarnated masters (*sprul sku*, pronounced *tulku*) in Tibet, a process whereby a young child is recognized as the reembodiment of a recently deceased master and raised to continue the latter's religious and political activities. In a tradition perhaps unique to the Karma pas, prior to his death each hierarch is said to compose a letter predicting the date and location of his future rebirth. Entrusted to a close disciple, this prediction letter then forms the basis for seeking out the prelate's next incarnation.

The Karma pas are traditionally believed to be the custodians of a black crown fashioned from the hair of 100,000 DĀKINĪ goddesses, invisible to all save those of great spiritual merit. In the early fifteenth century, the Ming emperor Yongle offered the fifth Karma pa a physical replica, which has since become one of the lineage's most sacred relics, believed to confer liberation upon those who merely see it. For this reason, the Karma pas are sometimes called the Black Crowned (*zhwa nag*) and have somewhat unwittingly received the title Black Hat Lama in the West. While they have occasionally been the target—and the source—of polemical sectarian attack, the Karma pas (like the Dalai Lamas) are traditionally understood by Tibetans to be emanations of the Bodhisattva of Compassion, Avalokiteśvara. They rank among Tibet's greatest religious figures, revered for their learning and exposition as well as their mastery of yogic and meditative disciplines, and at times they have wielded tremendous secular influence and political power.

The line of Karma pas originated during the twelfth century with the first Karma pa, Dus gsum mkhyen pa (Dusum Khyenpa, 1110–1193), a close disciple of Sgam po pa Bsod nams rin chen (Gampopa Sönam Rinchen, 1079–1153), who had studied under the famous yogin MI LA RAS PA (MILAREPA, 1028/40–1111/23). Dus gsum mkhyen pa established several important monasteries, including Karma Dgon (Karma Göñ) in eastern Tibet and, in 1187, Stod lung Mtshur phu (Tölung Tshurphu), northwest of Lhasa. The latter was expanded during subsequent generations, becoming one of the region's leading institutions and serving as the main seat of the Karma pas and the Karma Bka' brgyud. Dus gsum mkhyen pa's successor, the second Karma pa, Karma Pakshi (1204–1283), is remembered especially for his prowess in meditation and the performance of magical feats. Patronized for a time by the Mongol emperor Kublai Khan (r. 1260–1294), he



The seventeenth Karma pa, O rgyan 'phrin las rdo rje (Orgyan Trinle Dorje), in Dharamsala, India, in 2000. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

established ties with the Yuan court in China. The third Karma pa, Rang 'byung rdo rje (Rangjung Dorje, 1284–1339), advanced his predecessor's affiliation with the Mongol court by supervising Emperor Toghun Temur's (r. 1333–1368) ascension to the throne. He was also influenced, like his predecessor, by the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) sect's teachings on the Great Perfection (*rdzogs chen*), and he authored several important treatises on tantric theory and practice.

The fourth Karma pa, Rol pa'i rdo rje (Rolpe Dorje, 1340–1383), and the fifth Karma pa, De bzhin gshegs pa (Dezhin Shekpa, 1384–1415), continued to develop ties with the Chinese court—the former with Toghun Temur and the latter serving as guru to the Ming dynasty emperor Yongle (r. 1402–1424), a position of great influence. While the sixth Karma pa, Mthong ba don ldan (Thongwa Dondan, 1416–1453), did not actively pursue the political connections established by his predecessors, he is known for reinvigorating the ritual practice of the Karma Bka' brgyud, authoring numerous meditation and liturgical manuals. The seventh Karma pa, Chos grags rgya mtsho (Chödrak Gyatso, 1454–1506), is remembered primarily for his philosophical writings on logic and epistemology. His voluminous work on the topic of *pramāṇa* is still used

as a principal textbook in many Bka' brgyud monasteries. The eighth Karma pa, Mi bskyod rdo rje (Mikyö Dorje, 1507–1554), was likewise a prolific scholar whose writings encompassed Sanskrit linguistics, poetry, and art, as well as MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL philosophy and TANTRA. Several of his works sparked a heated debate with DGE LUGS (GELUK) scholars by criticizing the views of their founder, TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), and his *Thun bzhi bla ma'i rnal 'byor* (*Four Session Guru Yoga*) remains an important, widely practiced meditation text. The ninth Karma pa, Dbang phyug rdo rje (Wangchuk Dorje, 1604–1674), is revered for his seminal writings on the theory and practice of MAHĀMUDRĀ. However, with the ascendance of the Mongol backed Dge lugs hierarchs, he also witnessed the decline of his sect's political influence in central Tibetan politics. His successor, the tenth Karma pa, Chos kyi dbang phyug (Chökyi Wangchuk, 1604–1674), was thus forced into virtual exile near the Sino-Tibetan border in the east. As the civil war in Tibet waned, Chos kyi dbang phyug returned to Lhasa where he forged ties with Tibet's new religious and political leader, the fifth DALAI LAMA Ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho (Ngawang Lozang Gyatso, 1617–1682).

The eleventh Karma pa, Ye shes rdo rje (Yeshe Dorje, 1676–1702), and twelfth Karma pa, Byang chub rdo rje (Changchub Dorje, 1703–1732), both lived relatively short lives, although the latter made an important journey through Nepal together with his disciple, the brilliant scholar and Sanskritist Situ Chos kyi 'byung gnas (Chökyi Jungne, 1700–1774). The life of thirteenth Karma pa, Bdud 'dul rdo rje (Dudul Dorje, 1733–1797), was, for the most part, lived outside the sphere of politics. He is especially remembered for his love of birds and animals, to whom he is said to have taught the dharma. Together with his predecessor, the fourteenth Karma pa, Theg mchog rdo rje (Thekchok Dorje, 1798–1868), witnessed a revival of Bka' brgyud doctrine in the eastern Tibetan province of Khams, as part of the so-called Eclectic (*ris med*) Movement of which his disciple Kongs sprul Blo gros mtha' yas (Kongtrul Lodrö Thaye, 1813–1899) was a leading voice. The fifteenth Karma pa, Mkha' khyab rdo rje (Khakhyab Dorje, 1871–1922), the latter's principal disciple, continued to support this movement and left an ample body of collected writings. The sixteenth Karma pa, Rang 'byung rig pa'i rdo rje (Rangjung Rigpe Dorje, 1924–1981), faced the Communist Chinese occupation of Tibet; he fled to India in 1959 and established an exile seat at Rumtek Monastery in

Sikkim. He traveled widely throughout Europe and North America prior to his death in a Chicago hospital, establishing numerous Tibetan Buddhist centers and attracting a large following of Western devotees. The seventeenth Karma pa, O rgyan 'phrin las rdo rje (Orgyan Trinle Dorje, b. 1985), was enthroned at Mtshur phu Monastery in Tibet on September 27, 1992. In late December 2000 he escaped into exile, establishing a temporary residence in Dharamsala, India, where he continued to reside as of 2003. Although his identification as the Karma pa has been disputed by a small number of followers, O rgyan 'phrin las rdo rje maintains the support of the majority of the Tibetan and Western Buddhist community, including the Dalai Lama.

### Bibliography

- Douglas, Nik, and White, Meryl. *Karmapa: The Black Hat Lama of Tibet*. London: Luzac, 1978.
- Hilton, Isabel. "Flight of the Lama." *New York Times Magazine* (March 12, 2000): 50–55.
- Karma Thinley. *The History of the Sixteen Karmapas*. Boulder, CO: Prajña Press, 1978.
- Martin, Michele. *Music in the Sky: The Life, Art, and Teaching of the 17th Karmapa Ogyen Trinle Dorje*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 2003.
- Richardson, Hugh. "The Karma-pa Sect: A Historical Note." *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1958): 139–164, and (1959): 1–18. Reprinted in *High Peaks, Pure Earth: Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*, ed. Michael Aris. London: Serindia, 1998.
- Richardson, Hugh. "Chos-dbyings rdo-rje, the Tenth Black Hat Karma-pa." *Bulletin of Tibetology*, new series 1 (1987): 25–42. Reprinted in *High Peaks, Pure Earth: Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*, ed. Michael Aris. London: Serindia, 1998.
- Sperling, Elliot. "The 5th Karma-pa and Some Aspects of the Relationship between Tibet and the Early Ming." In *Tibetan Studies in Honor of Hugh Richardson*, ed. Michael Aris and Aung San Suu Kyi. New Delhi: Vikas, 1980.
- Williams, Paul M. "A Note on Some Aspects of Mi Bskyod Rdo Rje's Critique of Dge Lugs Pa Madhyamaka." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 11 (1983): 125–145.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION)

Karuṇā (compassion), along with PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM), is one of the two virtues universally affirmed by Bud-

dhists. Basically, karuṇā is defined as the wish that others be free of suffering, in contradistinction to *maitrī* (love; Pāli, mettā), which is the wish that others be happy. Compassion is a quality that a buddha is believed to possess to the greatest possible degree, and that Buddhists still on the path strive to cultivate.

The texts of the THERAVĀDA and other MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS make it clear that the Buddha Śākyamuni was deeply motivated by compassion. The JĀTAKA stories describe how, in his previous lives as a BODHISATTVĀ, the Buddha sometimes sacrificed his life to relieve the suffering of another, as when he fed his body to a hungry tigress unable to feed her cubs. In his final life, after his awakening under the bodhi tree, he decided to teach, rather than enter final NIRVĀṆA, out of compassion for those few who might understand his message. He also sent forth his monks to preach the dharma "for the benefit of the many, for the welfare of the many." Among the rules established by the Buddha for lay and monastic followers are numerous prohibitions against harming others, motivated at least in part by a desire to avoid causing unnecessary suffering; indeed, nonharming (*ahiṃsā*) often has been defined as essential to practicing the dharma. The Buddha also encouraged his followers, in their meditative life, to immerse themselves in the four immeasurable states (*brahmāvihāra*): love, compassion, sympathetic joy, and equanimity, which are extended to all beings throughout the cosmos.

With the emergence of the MAHĀYĀNA some four centuries after the Buddha's death, compassion took on added significance. Such texts as the *Prajñāpāramitā* (*Perfection of Wisdom*) sūtras, the LOTUS-SŪTRA (*SAD-DHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA*), and the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra*, as well as countless treatises and commentaries, articulated a new vision of the Buddha, bodhisattva, and ordinary practitioner. The Buddha now was seen as eternal, omniscient, and infinitely compassionate. To act compassionately, the Buddha was capable of myriad metamorphoses and manifestations, including the creation of PURE LANDS (or buddha-fields) in which suffering beings might have their troubles eased and their progress toward awakening hastened.

The bodhisattva became a normative ideal for Mahāyāna practitioners, penetrating to the emptiness at the core of all persons and phenomena, yet driven by compassion so great that he or she not only wished all beings freed from suffering, but resolved to effect that freedom personally, regardless of the hardships involved. In some Mahāyāna texts, the bodhisattva's

compassion is such that he or she vows to postpone awakening until others are freed. In other texts, compassion drives the bodhisattva to try to become a buddha as swiftly as possible so he or she can maximally benefit others. In either case, the bodhisattva sought to develop *bodhicitta*, the dedication to enlightenment for the sake of others, and UPĀYA, the skill-in-means, guided by wisdom, that enables one to act in the world effectively—and sometimes unconventionally—for the benefit of suffering beings. In general, compassion was seen as indispensable to the attainment of buddhahood, as one of the two “wings” (the other being wisdom) without which one could not ascend to awakening. Perfected, it would issue in the “Form Body,” through which a buddha assists others, as perfected wisdom would become the transcendent, gnostic “Dharma Body.”

Mahāyāna philosophers celebrated and analyzed compassion. CANDRAKĪRTI (ca. 600–650 C.E.) praised compassion as the original seed of the buddhas. Dharmakīrti (ca. 600–660 C.E.) framed logical arguments to prove that compassion could be developed infinitely. ŚĀNTIDEVA (ca. 685–763 C.E.), in his *Bodhicaryāvatāra* (*Entry to Enlightened Conduct*), attempted to demonstrate on rational grounds why one should be compassionate, to articulate why compassion should extend even to one’s enemies, and to provide meditative methods through which one might develop compassion, including the “great mystery” of imaginatively exchanging oneself with others. Other Mahāyāna methods for developing compassion included thinking of all sentient beings as one’s mother (which, according to Buddhist metaphysics, they have been), and then directing the same compassionate thoughts toward them as one would to one’s own mother. Another method was the visualization practice of “giving and taking,” in which one inhales the sufferings of others as smoke, then exhales to them one’s own virtues in the form of light. The tantric traditions that grew out of the Mahāyāna milieu also emphasized compassion as a crucial prerequisite for their complex and sometimes dangerous meditations. Indeed, because of the power evoked by tantric practitioners, compassion was, if anything, even more important for them, though its expression, in images sometimes filled with sexuality and wrath, could seem shocking.

Mahāyāna compassion also was personified, most notably in the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, who looks down compassionately on the world and responds to its cries of anguish. An important focus of worship for Indian Mahāyāna Buddhists, Avalokiteśvara assumed

over a hundred forms, including the four-armed holder of the mantra OM MAṆI PADME HŪM, a thousand-armed and eleven-headed version, and wrathful tantric manifestations. If anything, Avalokiteśvara grew in stature as Buddhism spread beyond India. Among many transformations, he became the female bodhisattva Guanyin in China, the Dalai Lamas in Tibet, and the *dharmma*-protecting bodhisattva Nātha in Sri Lanka. Similarly, various meditative and ritual expressions of compassion evolved in various Asian cultures. These include Sri Lankan attempts to transfer merit to deities who have gathered in a sacred bodhi tree; the Chan Buddhist promise to save all beings, numberless though they be; the widespread practice of purchasing animals, then setting them free; and funeral and memorial rites throughout Buddhist Asia.

Over the centuries, Buddhists reflecting on compassion have faced numerous dilemmas. They have had to balance analytical deconstruction of the “person” with the person-oriented sentiment involved in concern for others. Buddhists have tried to understand the degree to which compassion that is developed in meditation can or should be translated into concrete action in the world. They have also wrestled with establishing criteria for determining which sort of action is truly compassionate, and which is selfish and destructive. These issues have become especially pressing in the modern era as Buddhist traditions have interacted with those of the West, and with those of emerging nations in Asia. Buddhists have pondered seriously whether the imperative to compassion countenances unconventional behavior by spiritual teachers, active resistance to social and political oppression, or acquiescence to war and other forms of violence, including simple anger. Many modern Buddhist thinkers, including the fourteenth DALAI LAMA (1935– ) and THICH NHAT HANH (1926– ), have wrestled with these issues and have found no easy answers. Nevertheless, Buddhist leaders have insisted that compassion remains absolutely integral to the practice of Buddhism, and must be developed to the greatest possible degree, now as in the time of the Buddha.

*See also:* **Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening); Engaged Buddhism**

### **Bibliography**

Aronson, Harvey B. *Love and Sympathy in Theravāda Buddhism*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1980.

- Dalai Lama XIV. *Ethics for the New Millennium*. New York: Riverhead Books, 1999.
- Dayal, Har. *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhist Sanskrit Literature*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass 1975.
- Newland, Guy. *Compassion, a Tibetan Analysis: A Buddhist Monastic Textbook*. Boston: Wisdom, 1985.
- Queen, Christopher S., and King, Sallie B., eds. *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Śāntideva. *The Bodhicaryāvatāra*, tr. Kate Crosby and Andrew Skilton. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Watson, Burton, trans. *The Lotus Sutra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993.
- Williams, Paul. *Altruism and Reality: Studies in the Philosophy of the Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1998.

ROGER R. JACKSON

---

KEGON SCHOOL. *See* Huayan School

---

## KHMER, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Until the twentieth century, most vernacular literature composed or known in Cambodia, including literature intended primarily for entertainment, articulated Buddhist themes concerning COSMOLOGY and HISTORY, moral and ethical values, RITUAL, and the biography of the Buddha. Thus, to a large extent, it is possible to argue that the history and development of Khmer literature in Cambodia is at once the history and development of its vernacular religious literature. Khmer literature is generally divided into the following periods: pre-Angkorian (seventh to ninth centuries); Angkorian (ninth to fifteenth centuries); middle or post-Angkorian (sixteenth to nineteenth centuries); French protectorate or early modern (mid-nineteenth to early twentieth centuries); and contemporary or modern (mid-twentieth century to the present).

The Khmer language belongs to the subgroup of the Austro-Asiatic language family that includes Mon and Khmer. Khmer writing, derived from Sanskrit, developed after the second century C.E. when Indian traders and migrants to the region began to introduce Sanskrit writing and literature, and Indian art forms, religious ideas, and ideologies of KINGSHIP and government. The first dated inscription in Khmer appeared in 612 C.E.,

roughly concurrent with several dated Cambodian inscriptions in Sanskrit. The dual use of both vernacular and Sanskrit inscriptions continued throughout the following centuries with the emergence of the Khmer kingdom of Angkor, which dominated the region between the ninth through thirteenth centuries. Pāli became important as a scriptural and literary language after THERAVĀDA Buddhism rose to prominence in the thirteenth century.

The processes of both *Indianization* and *vernacularization* in Southeast Asia, including the Khmer regions, have received a great deal of scholarly attention. Colonial era scholarship tended to view Southeast Asia as an empty but fertile ground in which a “superior” Indian culture was implanted and took root, giving rise to a whole new Indianized civilization. More recently, scholars have suggested that the absorption of Indian cultural motifs and ideas was possible because they were similar or complementary to existing indigenous cultural forms. Thus the process was perhaps not a wholesale Indianization, but rather a selective process of cultural borrowing and adaptation, with influences moving in both directions. Among the most important borrowings from India for the Khmer was the introduction of Sanskrit writing and literature. Archaeological evidence from pre-Angkorian and Angkorian periods shows that the Khmer utilized both Sanskrit and Khmer for inscribing their religious, literary, and political lives. The clear division of labor between the two languages has been much commented on by scholars: Sanskrit was nearly always the medium for expressive literary purposes such as extolling the virtues of the gods, while Khmer was employed for more documentary purposes such as listing donations of slaves to temples. Sheldon Pollock has theorized that the attraction of Sanskrit as a cosmopolitan language was aesthetic; it provided a powerful medium for imagining the world in a larger, more complex way. *Vernacularization*, the turn away from Sanskrit to the use of localized languages such as Khmer for literary production, began to occur in Cambodia after the fifteenth century. By this time, Sanskrit and Pāli loan words had been absorbed into Khmer and the Khmer had developed a literary idiom of their own for expressing cosmopolitan ideas, evident in the Khmer classical literature composed during the middle or post-Angkorian period.

The most profound example of the ways in which aspects of the Indian literary imagination were absorbed and adapted by the Khmer is that of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, known in Khmer as the *Rāmakerti* (pronounced

“Ream-ker”), the *Glory of Rām*. The outlines of the story, widely known among the Khmer population since at least the time of Angkor, maintain some of the main elements of the Indian *Rāmāyaṇa* while at the same time adapting them in critical ways. Known in Khmer as *Rām*, the hero of the epic is rendered as a *BODHISATTVA*, thus transforming the story into the favorite theme of Khmer literature: the biography of the Buddha. The *Rāmakerti* appears as one of the most ubiquitous subjects of Khmer art; it is painted as temple murals, carved into bas-reliefs on the galleries of Angkorian buildings, reenacted in elaborate traditional dance forms, composed in literary versions, and retold in many oral versions, including shadow puppet plays known as *speak dham*. At least one version of the text has also been used as a manual for the practice of tantric forms of Buddhist meditation in which the Buddhist adept follows the journey of *Rām* in his quest to retrieve his wife *Sītā* as a form of esoteric spiritual instruction.

While the Khmer *Rāmakerti* is generally considered to be the greatest work of Khmer literature, it is not the only one that is celebrated and influential. Equally beloved by Khmer have been versions of the Buddhist *JĀTAKA* depicting the moral development of the *Bodhisattva* in his many lives as he moves toward *buddhahood*. The best known and revered of the Buddha’s life stories, at least since the eighteenth century, are his last ten lives, appearing in Cambodia in a single compilation known as the *Dasajātaka*. The narrative of the *Bodhisattva*’s penultimate life, the *Mahāvesantara-jātaka* (also called the *Mahājāt*), is the most popular of these *jātaka*, redacted in many different manuscript and later print versions. *Jātaka* stories were also rendered into *sātra lpaen*, a genre of narrative poetry intended for entertainment which often contained long descriptions of magical battles and other feats performed by the *Bodhisattva*. This genre appears to have developed beginning in the sixteenth century as part of the process of vernacularization. *Cpāp* or “codes of conduct” constituted another prominent genre of vernacular literature in Cambodia known since at least the seventeenth century. Didactic poetry intended to transmit religious values and practical advice for living, the *cpāp* were composed in stylized meters (to aid memorization) and sung by parents or teachers to children.

By the latter half of the nineteenth century, prominent vernacular texts used in Buddhist education (but also known more widely through artistic representations, sermons, and stories) included not only the

texts already mentioned, but also several works of Siamese composition that had been translated into Khmer versions: the *Trai Bhūm* (a cosmological text), the *Maṅgalaṭṭhadīpanī* (a narrative commentary on the *Maṅgala-sutta*), and the *Paṭhamsombodhi* (a biography of the Buddha). Also in evidence in monastic collections during the period were manuals (*kpuon* or *tamrā*) on ritual, medicine, and astrology. *Buddh Daṅṅnāy* texts, prophesies of the Buddha concerning the arrival of the Buddhist *dhammik*, or righteous king, circulated in written and oral forms. Folk stories loosely based on Buddhist themes were transmitted orally until the early part of the twentieth century when Buddhist writers such as Ukñā Suttantapriṇā Ind, author of the ethics manual *Gatilok* (1921), began to collect and record Khmer oral stories. While French colonial scholars during the protectorate period were often critical of the “fanciful” nature of Khmer vernacular works, their objections have been countered by Khmer scholars. Keng Vansak, a Khmer literary scholar, has argued that Khmer writers have been concerned not with literal representations of reality, but rather with representing the moral experience of social life, which often presents human beings with “insolvable contradictions” between their aspirations for moral perfection and their situatedness in a world of social and political bonds.

Along with the works already described, Khmer Buddhists used vernacular versions of canonical texts. By the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries (and likely earlier), many texts based on Pāli canonical sources such as the *jātaka* and the *DHAMMAPADA* were translated into a genre of texts known as *samrāy*, consisting of interwoven Pāli verses and their Khmer translations, followed by commentary in Khmer. Most of the *samrāy* that survive in existing collections of Khmer manuscripts date from no earlier than the nineteenth century, when monastic libraries were reconstituted following a long period of warfare in Cambodia. During the twentieth century, many Khmer *samrāy* originally composed on palm leaf were republished as print texts with little or no change from the originals. Although traditionalist members of the Khmer *saṅgha* initially resisted the use of print for religious texts, by the 1920s monks and scholars turned to the use of print rather than palm leaf (*sṭik rit*) or accordion-folded mulberry bark paper (*krāmṇī*) for disseminating their works. Among the earliest vernacular texts published in print in the 1920s were segments of the *VINAYA* and the *Singālovāda-sutta*. A full edition of the Pāli *Tipiṭaka*, with Khmer translation, was finally issued in 1969

by the Buddhist Institute, although many Pāli texts had already been translated and published in single editions from the 1920s on. Although print is the principal medium for religious texts in Cambodia today, both palm leaf and *krāmṇī* manuscripts continue to be used and venerated, though rarely produced. Scholars estimate that 98 percent of Cambodia's rich collection of manuscripts was lost or destroyed during the Khmer Rouge period (1975–1979).

See also: **Cambodia; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Bizot, François. *Ramaker ou l'amour symbolique de Ram et Sita*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1989.
- Bizot, François. *Le Chemin de Lanka*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1992.
- Guesdon, Joseph. "La Littérature khmère et le Bouddhisme." *Anthropos* 1 (1906): 91–109.
- Iyengar, K. R. Srinivasa, ed. *Asian Variations in Rāmāyaṇa*. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1983.
- Jacob, Judith. *Cambodian Linguistics, Literature, and History: Collected Articles*, ed. David A. Smyth. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1993.
- Jacob, Judith. *The Traditional Literature of Cambodia: A Preliminary Guide*. London: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Keng Vansak. "Réflexions sur la littérature khmère." *Revue française* 206 (1968): 31–34.
- Khing Hoc Dy. *Contribution à l'histoire de la littérature khmère: littérature de l'époque "classique" (XVème–XIXème siècles)*. Paris: Editions L'Harmattan, 1991.
- Khing Hoc Dy. *Ecrivains et expressions littéraires du Cambodge au XXème siècle*, Vol. 2. Paris: Editions L'Harmattan, 1993.
- Khing Hoc Dy, and Mak Phoeun. "Cambodia." In *South-east Asia: Languages and Literatures*, ed. Patricia Herbert and Anthony Milner. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.
- Lī Dhām Teṇ. *Aksarsāstr Khmaer (Khmer Literature)*. Phnom Penh, Cambodia: Seò óuon Huot, 1961.
- Nepote, Jacques, and Khing Hoc Dy. "Literature and Society in Modern Cambodia." In *Essays on Literature and Society in Southeast Asia*, ed. Tham Seong Chee. Singapore: Singapore University Press, 1981.
- Pollock, Sheldon. "The Cosmopolitan Vernacular." *Journal of Asian Studies* 57, no. 1 (1998): 6–37.
- Pou, Saveros. *Etudes sur le Rāmakerti: XVI–XVII siècles*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1977.
- Pou, Saveros. *Rāmakerti: XVI–XVII siècles*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1977.

Pou, Saveros. "Khmer Epigraphy." In *Sculpture of Angkor and Ancient Cambodia: Millennium of Glory*, ed. Helen Ibbison Jessup and Thierry Zephir. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art, 1997.

Thierry, Solange. *Le Cambodge des contes*. Paris: Editions L'Harmattan, 1985.

ANNE HANSEN

## KIHWA

Kihwa (1376–1433) was a Korean monk of the late Koryō/early Chosōn periods. He was also known by the monastic name Hamhō Tukt'ong. Kihwa was typical of the Sōn (Chan) school masters of his time; he taught his followers the Imje (Linji) oriented *kong'an* (KŌAN) method, along with other standard aspects of Sōn practice. At the same time, he was one of the most focused and energetic advocates of the intrinsic resonance between meditation practice and scriptural study.

Kihwa is considered by many scholars of Korean Buddhism to be one of the best writers of the Korean tradition. He wrote important commentaries on the *Yuanjue jing* (*Perfect Enlightenment Sūtra*), the *Jin'gang jing* (DIAMOND SŪTRA), and the *Chan Yongjia ji* (*Collection of Yongjia of the Chan School*). Kihwa was distinguished by his mastery of Chinese philosophy, but he eventually set aside his Confucian studies in favor of Buddhism. This philosophical background, coupled with his literary talents, served him well when he defended the Buddhist establishment against a rising neo-Confucian ideological movement. The treatise that Kihwa wrote in defense of Buddhism on this occasion, the *Hyōnjōng non* (*Articulating the Correct*), is considered one of the great works in Korean intellectual history. In this work, Kihwa argued that the three traditions of Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism are in basic agreement at a fundamental philosophical level. Kihwa passed away while residing at Chōngsusa, located at the southern tip of Kanghwa Island, where his tomb can still be visited.

See also: **Confucianism and Buddhism; Korea**

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "Buddhism under Confucian Domination: The Synthetic Vision of Sōsan Hyūjōng." In *Culture and the State in the Late Chosōn Korea*, ed. JaHyun Kim Haboush and Martina Deuchler. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 1999.



Muller, A. Charles. *The Sūtra of Perfect Enlightenment: Korean Buddhism's Guide to Meditation, with Commentary by the Sōn Monk Kihwa*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.

A. CHARLES MULLER

## KINGSHIP

Throughout Asia, rulers channeled the rich resources of Buddhist symbolism to reinforce their authority and to authenticate their political imagination. Close linkages between Buddhism and kingship are evident even during the time of the Śākyamuni Buddha. When the Buddha reached Rājagṛha, capital of the kingdom of Magadha, King Ajātaśatru came out with his retinue to welcome him. Later Ajātaśatru was involved in the first of the Buddhist councils, held at Rājagṛha. King Prasenjit of Kośala also sought to identify himself with the Buddha. He is quoted in the *Majjhimanikāya* as saying, "The Lord is a Kośalan and so am I."

It is apparent from the Pāli texts that Buddhism formulated its theoretical position on the subject early in its history in recognition of the significance of kingship to the religion. B. G. Gokhale discerned three such ideological strands. First was the theory of *mahāsammatta* (the great elect), anchored in the Buddha's nostalgia for tribal republicanism; second was the theory of mutually exclusive spheres of *dhamma* (Sanskrit, dharma) and *ana* (politics), an expression of monastic skepticism about the increasingly militant Indian monarchies; and third was the theory of an invincible *dhamma*, that is, *dhamma* as a cosmocratic principle underpinning the political philosophy of a cakravartin (wheel-turning king). The second theory, however, seems to be either a variation or extension of the doctrine of *mahāsammatta*, premised as it is on the superiority of the tribal republican model, under increasing pressure from the emergent centralized states. Indeed, only the doctrines of *mahāsammatta* and cakravartin formed the kernel of the Buddhist concept of kingship and were invoked by rulers as sacred symbols of power.

The theory of *mahāsammatta* depicts the gradual degeneration of humankind from the primeval stage of perfect purity and the consequent need for the reorganization of society. According to this theory, the people assembled and chose by common consent the strongest and the finest person among them as their leader. They asked him to perform judicial tasks on their behalf and agreed to pay part of their produce

in return for his services. He was called rāja (king) because he brought happiness to the people, and kṣatriya (warrior) because he protected their fields. The Buddha's sympathy for this tribal-republican model of the political process is evident in the constitution of the SAṄGHA and the Buddha's denunciation of kings as poisonous snakes or robbers violating people's property.

However, with the increasing growth of centralized monarchical power, Buddhism had to grudgingly accept the "necessary evil" of monarchy. It revised its initial principle of "tribal-republicanism" and adopted the ideal of cakravartin, encapsulating a normative kingship known as *dhammiko dhammarāja*, the king as an upholder of the *dhamma*. Evidently Buddhism sought to inject into the institution of kingship its own conceptions and worldview. A cakravartin king was said to possess seven JEWELS, including a wheel of divine attributes that rolls unhindered and unchallenged over the earth. The wheel's ever-onward movement symbolizes the ceremonial conquests of its possessor (the cakravartin) over all the lands where it goes. The cakravartin king of the Pāli canons is paired with the Buddha as his secular counterpart and conqueror of the universe not by arms, but by force of righteousness. He is described as generously endowed with the ten *rājadharmas* of liberality, good conduct, non-attachment, straightforwardness, mildness, austerity, nonanger, noninjury, patience, and forbearance. The cakravartin of the Pāli texts is clearly shown to possess divine attributes, but in China, where translators rendered the term as a divine emperor with flying wheels or a flying emperor (*feixing huangdi*), the supranormal aspect of the concept became additionally clear. In subsequent centuries Buddhism further revised its ideas of cakravartin in ways that suggest its acknowledgment of the centrality of force to the institution of kingship. According to the new definition found in the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA of VASUBANDHU (ca. fourth century C.E.), there are four kinds of cakravartin: gold-wheel, silver-wheel, bronze-wheel and iron-wheel, the last one taking recourse to violence and yet entitled to the glory of ideal Buddhist kingship.

King AŚOKA (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.) was elevated in Buddhist historiography as an archetypal exemplar of Buddhist kingship because his conquests, stretching from the Himalayas to the ocean, realized the imperial ideals of ancient India, and his espousal of the dharma and support of the saṅgha were singular achievements in the history of Buddhism. Several eminent historians of early India, notably A. L. Basham

and Romila Thapar, have persuasively argued that Buddhism developed its concept of cakravartin in the post-Aśokan era on the basic model provided by Aśoka's political career and philosophy. They have pointed out that at the time of Aśoka the Buddhist ideal of cakravartin was not yet systematized, otherwise Aśoka would have demonstrated his affiliation with it in his inscriptions. V. S. Agrawala also subscribes to this view, noting in his work *The Wheel Flag of India* (1964), that Aśoka's appellation *Priyadarśi* and the name *Sudassana*, a cakravartin king figuring in the *Mahāsudassana-sūta*, have the identical meaning of "good in appearance." It is also noteworthy that the career of a cakravartin king in the Buddhist texts closely parallels the career of Aśoka. Like Aśoka, the mythical cakravartin kings heed counsel from both Brahmins and mendicants, work for the happiness of their subjects, propagate and patronize Buddhism, and protect the dharma.

Several centuries later, with the rise of powerful Kushan states whose rulers styled themselves as *deva-putra* (son of heaven), and the attendant influence of foreign ideas and institutions, the Buddhist recognition of the king's status as god-incarnate became less ambiguous, as is testified by the *SUVAṆṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA*, which describes kings as "son of gods" and "born in the mortal world by the authority of the great gods."

Several rulers of Southeast Asia invoked and sought to trace their ancestry to *mahāsammata*, which represented to them the first Buddhist ruler in history. Devānampiyatissa (247–207 B.C.E.) of Sri Lanka was the first known foreign ruler in history to connect himself to Aśoka and to extend patronage to Buddhism. Soon thereafter, Duṭṭhagāmaṇī (107–77 B.C.E.) placed a relic of the Buddha on his spear to sacralize his war against the Tamil invaders. In subsequent centuries rulers both in the *THERAVĀDA* and *MAHĀYĀNA* traditions employed the versatile symbolism held out by Buddhism—rulers as cakravartin and as *BODHISATTVAS*. The influential Chinese monk Faguo declared, "Emperor Taizu is an enlightened ruler and fond of Buddha. He is the Tathāgata of today." Liang Wudi and Sui Wendi of sixth-century China, King Chinhŭng (r. 540–576) of Silla, Prince SHŌTOKU (574–622) of Japan, Jayavarman II (r. 802–c. 834) of Angkor, and King Chakkraphat (r. 1548–1569) of Thailand are some other famous examples of the close interface between Buddhism and kingship.

*See also: Politics and Buddhism*

## Bibliography

- Agrawala, Vasudeva Sharana. *The Wheel Flag of India: Chakra-Dhvaja, Being a History and Exposition of the Meaning of the Dharma-Chakra and the Sarnath Lion Capital*. Varanasi, India: Prithivi Prakashan, 1964.
- Basham, A. L. *The Wonder That Was India: A Study of the Culture of the Indian Subcontinent before the Coming of the Muslims*. London: Sidgwick and Jackson, 1954.
- Chakravarti, Uma. *The Social Dimensions of Early Buddhism*. Delhi and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1987.
- Gokhale, B. G. "Early Buddhist Kingship." *Journal of Asian Studies* 26, no. 11 (1966–1967): 15–22.
- Gokhale, B. G. "The Early Buddhist View of the State." *Journal of the America Oriental Society* 89, no. 4 (1969): 731–738.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend of King Aśoka: A Study and Translation of the Aśokāvadana*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *World Conqueror and World Renouncer: A Study of Buddhism and Polity in Thailand against a Historical Background*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *The Buddhist Conception of Universal King and Its Manifestations in South and Southeast Asia*. Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: University of Malaya, 1987.
- Thapar, Romila. *Aśoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*, 2nd edition. Bombay: Oxford University Press, 1973.

PANKAJ N. MOHAN

---

**KIZIL.** *See Cave Sanctuaries; Central Asia, Buddhist Art in*

---

## KLONG CHEN PA (LONGCHENPA)

Klong chen pa (Longchenpa, 1308–1363) is widely acknowledged as the greatest writer on the *Rdzogs chen* (*Great Perfection*) teachings of the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school of Tibetan Buddhism. He was born in the Grwa valley in the G.yu ru region of central Tibet. At the age of twelve he took ordination and was given the name Tshul khriṃs blos gros. In this monastic setting, he received a thorough Buddhist training, exhibiting a particular talent for composing poetry, a skill that would continue to shape his later writings.

Klong chen pa had an immeasurable impact on the development of *Rdzogs chen*. From the eleventh through the fourteenth centuries, the *snying thig*

(seminal heart) traditions had produced some of the most creative innovations ever seen in Tibetan Buddhism. But only with Klong chen pa were these scattered and often contradictory developments systematized. Drawing upon his extensive studies of these earlier writings, Klong chen pa detailed a cohesive set of contemplative practices that culminate in patterns of light and emptiness flowing effortlessly from within the body. He presented these visions within the context of wider *snying thig* theories on topics including how the buddhas emanate into the world, how the universe came into existence, and how mind emerges from sleep into dreaming or from the moment of DEATH into the INTERMEDIATE STATE (*bar do*).

In his mid-twenties, Klong chen pa gave up the monastery to live as an itinerant ascetic in the Tibetan wilderness. It was during these years, probably around 1336, that he first met his main teacher, Kumārarāja (1266–1343). From this master, he received the Great Perfection teachings according to the *Vima snying thig* (*Seminal Heart of Vimalamitra*) tradition. This meeting engendered a major shift in Klong chen pa's thought; for the rest of his life, his attentions would focus on the *snying thig*. On the basis of Kumārarāja's teachings, Klong chen pa composed his *Bla ma yang thig* (*Seminal Quintessence of the Lama*), a commentary to the *Vima snying thig*.

To further consolidate his command of the *snying thig*, Klong chen pa next turned to the more recently revealed *gter ma* (treasure) teachings of the *Mkha' 'gro snying thig* (*Seminal Heart of the Ḍākinīs*). His authority over this system was secured when a disciple, while channeling a series of female ḌĀKINĪ, recognized Klong chen pa as the reincarnation of the *Mkha' 'gro snying thig's* discoverer, Tshul khriims rdo rje (1291–1315/17). Thus inspired, Klong chen pa composed his commentary on the system, his *Mkha' 'gro yang thig* (*Seminal Quintessence of the Ḍākinīs*). Later still, he synthesized the two systems of the *Vima snying thig* and the *Mkha' 'gro snying thig* in his masterful *Zab mo yang thig* (*Seminal Quintessence of the Profound*).

The fourteenth century was a critical time in Tibetan history, when the SA SKYA (SAKYA) sect's hegemony (1260–1358) was toppled in a civil war. As these events took shape, Klong chen pa came to be regarded as an ally of the 'Bri gung sgom chen, Kun dga' rin chen, a major rival to the ultimately victorious new Tibetan leader, Tai Situ Byang chub rgyal mtshan (1302–1364). Klong chen pa was exiled to Bhutan, where he lived for a number of years at a monastery

he founded called Thar pa gling, near Bum thang. While there, he fathered a daughter and a son. The latter, Sprul sku grags pa 'od zer, would become a significant *snying thig* teacher in his own right. Eventually, with the help of his lay patrons, Klong chen pa reconciled with the new Tibetan king and was allowed to return to Tibet around 1360.

Klong chen pa composed many of his most famous works while living at his hermitage atop Gang ri thod dkar, in central Tibet. He was a prolific writer, known for his ability to synthesize a rich array of materials and literary styles. His foremost writings were gathered into several collections: The *Mdzod bdun* (*Seven Treasuries*) are his most famous works, presenting the whole of Buddhist thought from a *snying thig* viewpoint; the *Ngal gso skor gsum* (*Resting at Ease Trilogy*) and the *Rang grol skor gsum* (*Natural Freedom Trilogy*) provide in-depth introductions to *Rdzogs chen*; the *Mun sel skor gsum* (*Dispelling the Darkness Trilogy*) are three commentaries on the *Guhyagarbha Tantra*; and the *Snying thig ya bzhi* (*Seminal Quintessence in Four Parts*) is a redaction of his three *snying thig* commentaries together with their predecessors, the *Vima snying thig* and the *Mkha' 'gro snying thig*.

See also: Tibet

### Bibliography

- Germano, David, and Gyatso, Janet. "Lonchenpa and the Possession of the Ḍākinīs." In *Tantra in Practice*, ed. David Gordon White. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000.
- Guenther, Herbert V., trans. and ed. *Kindly Bent to Ease Us: From the Trilogy of Finding Comfort and Ease, Ngal-gso skor-gsum*, 3 vols. Berkeley, CA: Dharma, 1975.
- Rinpoche, Dudjom. *The Nyingma School of Tibetan Buddhism: Its Fundamentals and History*, 2 vols., tr. Gyurme Dorje and Matthew Kapstein. Boston: Wisdom, 1991.
- Thondup, Tulku. *Buddha Mind: An Anthology of Longchen Rabjam's Writings on Dzogpa Chenpo*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1989.

JACOB P. DALTON

## KŌAN

*Kōan* (Chinese, *gong'an*; Korean, *kongan*; "case for judgment" or "public case") is an administrative and legal term that was first adopted by the Chan (Korean, Sōn; Japanese, Zen) school in Song-dynasty China

(960–1279). The Japanese pronunciation of the term, *kōan*, has become standard in English usage. The term mainly refers to the usually enigmatic, frequently startling, and sometimes shocking stories about legendary Chan masters' encounters with disciples and other interlocutors. The *kōan* may be the most distinctive feature of Chan Buddhism, where it is understood as an unmediated articulation of enlightenment (Chinese, *wu*; Japanese, *satori*; awakening). Since the tenth century, Chan students throughout East Asia have studied and pondered *kōans* in order to gain a sudden breakthrough of insight into the minds of the ancient Chan masters and into their own primordial buddha-minds.

The best-known *kōan* is probably the one about the Tang-dynasty (618–907) Chan master Zhaozhou Congshen (778–897), who reportedly was asked: “Does a dog have the buddha-nature or not?,” to which he replied “It doesn’t” (Chinese, *wu*; Japanese, *mu*; Korean, *mu*), or simply “no.” Zhaozhou’s answer poses an impossible and confusing contradiction of the MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist notion, central to all of Chan, that every sentient being is endowed with the buddha-nature or TATHĀGATAGARBHA. Another famous *kōan* is the one about the master Nanquan Puyuan (748–835), who is said to have challenged two monks who were fighting over the ownership of a cat to demonstrate their enlightened minds to him on the spot. When neither could do so, Nanquan Puyuan hacked the cat in two, in gross violation of the Buddhist precept against killing. Other *kōan* stories about Tang Chan masters describe shouting, hitting, and other erratic behavior, although some *kōan* stories seem utterly mundane, such as when Zhaozhou is said to have told a student who asked for instruction to go wash his breakfast bowls.

*Kōans* are understood to embody the enlightened minds of the ancient Chan masters and to communicate a truth that cannot be expressed in ordinary discourse. Many *kōans*, like “Zhaozhou’s dog” and “Nanquan’s cat,” can be interpreted as being about transcending habitual dichotomies like subject and object, and recognizing the oneness of everything in the universe, but such rational analysis is considered foolish and futile. Truly comprehending a *kōan* is thought to entail a sudden and direct nondualistic experience of an ultimate reality, which fundamentally differs from any intellectual understanding.

Since the tenth century, *kōan* commentary has been a favorite means of instruction in all the East Asian

Chan schools, and later *kōans* also came to be used as objects for meditation. Although initially only stories that were held up for special comment by a later Chan master were considered *kōans*, eventually virtually any story about a Chan master could be called a *kōan*. The term also came to refer to any phrase or saying that was used to challenge students of Chan, such as “Why did Bodhidharma come to the West?” or “What is the sound of one hand clapping?”

### **Kōan literature**

It is uncertain when exactly *kōans* first began to be produced. Early Chan materials from the sixth and seventh centuries show that *kōans* were not a feature of early Chan, although the later tradition created many *kōan* stories about the early masters.

It is the Chinese Chan masters of the eighth to mid-tenth centuries who most often are the protagonists of *kōan* stories, but few facts about this so-called golden age of Chan exist and no sources that contain *kōans* can be reliably dated to that period. The earliest datable source for *kōans* is the groundbreaking genealogical Chan history, the *Zutang ji* (Korean, *Chodang chip*; *Collection from the Hall of the Patriarchs*) from 952. Later genealogical Chan histories are also important sources for *kōans*, but the most influential was the *Jingde chuandeng lu* (*Records of the Transmission of the Lamplight [of enlightenment compiled during the] Jingde Era*) from 1004, and many of the most commonly used *kōans* come from this work. *Kōans* can also be found in collections focusing on individual Chan masters. Such collections, which are known as “recorded sayings” or “discourse records” (Chinese, *yulu*), were first published during the Song dynasty.

Early in the Song it became common for Chan masters to sermonize on select *kōans* and offer their own comments (usually just as enigmatic as the original stories), often with verses expressing their understanding. This gave rise to a number of published collections of *kōans* with appended commentary by a specific master. These collections themselves sometimes became the object of several levels of commentary by still other Chan masters, creating complex and multilayered works of literature. The most famous of these compilations is Yuanwu Keqin’s (1063–1135) *Biyān lu* (Japanese, *Hekigan roku*; *Blue Cliff Record*), which itself has become a common subject of commentary by modern Japanese and Western Zen masters.

*Kōan* commentary and other types of *kōan* literature are best understood as literary genres created by

a Song-dynasty Chan school that was looking back to an age of semimythical ancestors. Song Chan masters themselves are almost never the subject of kōan stories. An important audience for this literature has always been the secular educated elite, whose support has been crucial to the fortunes of all the East Asian Chan schools.

### **Kanhua Chan**

In the eleventh century, some Chinese Chan masters began to assign particular kōans to individual students to ponder; in several accounts such mulling over a kōan is reported to have led to an enlightenment experience for the student. Initially, this seems to have been a general contemplation of the kōan that was not specifically associated with formal meditation.

However, in the twelfth century a new meditative technique developed in which the kōan became the subject of intense reflection. This form of meditation, which had no counterpart in traditional Indian meditation practice, became known as *kanhua* Chan (Korean, *kanhwa* Sōn; Japanese, *kanna* Zen; “Chan of observing the key phrase” or “kōan introspection Chan”) and was first formulated by Dahui ZONGGAO (1089–1163) of the Linji Chan tradition. Dahui directed his students to meditate on the crucial part of a kōan, the *huatou* (Korean, *hwadu*; Japanese, *watō*; critical phrase, keyword, or punchline). In Dahui’s favorite kōan, “Zhaozhou’s dog,” the word *wu* (no) is the *huatou*. According to Dahui, prolonged and intense attention to the *huatou*, maintained not only in sitting meditation but in all activities, will cause a huge “ball of DOUBT” to form, which will eventually burst into an enlightenment experience.

Scholars have commonly accepted the Chan school’s own view of the development of *kanhua* Chan as a response to a “spiritual decline” in the Song and an effort to preserve the wisdom and insights of the great Tang Chan masters. However, in “The ‘Shortcut’ Approach of *K’an-Hua* Meditation” (1987) Robert Buswell argues that *kanhua* Chan can be better understood as a culmination of internal developments in Chan “whereby its subitist rhetoric came to be extended to pedagogy and finally to practice.” In “Silent Illumination, *Kung-an* Introspection, and the Competition for Lay Patronage in Sung-Dynasty Ch’an” (1999) Morten Schlütter suggests that Dahui championed *kanhua* Chan, in large part, as a corrective to the MOZHAO CHAN (Japanese, *mokushō*; silent illumination) meditation that was taught in the rival Caodong

tradition of Chan, which Dahui condemned as quietistic and not leading to enlightenment. Dahui seems especially concerned that Caodong masters were teaching silent illumination to members of the secular educated elite, and competition for patronage was clearly an element in the dispute.

### **Kōan use after Dahui**

Dahui’s development of *kanhua* Chan exerted an enormous influence on kōan use and Chan meditation in all of East Asia. However, it is important to be aware that the older practices of kōan study and kōan commentary were never abandoned and continued to exist alongside the practice of *kanhua* Chan.

In Japan, *kanhua* Chan was taken up in the Rinzai (Chinese, Linji) sect of Zen, where kōans were eventually systematized by the reformer HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768) and his disciples into a curriculum of five main levels. Students meditate on the *huatou* (Japanese, *watō*) of a series of kōans and have to pass each kōan in meetings with the Zen master (known as *sanzen* or *dokusan*) by giving the answers considered correct in their Zen master’s particular lineage. The answers, and answers to related follow-up questions, are supposed to be kept secret, but, in fact, crib-sheets exist. However, Zen masters are thought to be able to distinguish an answer that demonstrates true insight (Japanese, *kenshō*) from one that has simply been memorized. Finishing the entire kōan curriculum to the satisfaction of the Zen master ends the training of a student, who is now ready to function as a Zen master. However, completing the curriculum takes many years, and most students leave long before completion to take over their family temples.

The founder of the Japanese Sōtō (Chinese, Caodong) sect of Zen, DŌGEN (1200–1253), who became heir to the Caodong tradition of Chan, did not advocate *kanhua* Chan meditation, and it has never been employed in the Sōtō sect. However, Dōgen often commented on kōans as a means of instruction, and medieval Sōtō students were formally trained in kōan commentary. After reforms in the eighteenth century the Sōtō sect sought to differentiate itself from the Rinzai sect and kōan use became rare in Sōtō.

In Korea, Dahui’s *kanhua* Chan quickly took root, mainly through the efforts of the great Sōn master CHINUL (1158–1210) and his disciple HYESIM (1178–1234), and *kanhua* Chan eventually came to dominate Korean Buddhist meditation practice. In Korean Sōn, a student will usually only contemplate a

few kōans over a lifetime, based on the notion that resolving one kōan is resolving them all.

In China, *kanhua* Chan became a standard for Chan meditation soon after Dahui, even in the Caodong tradition that Dahui had criticized. *Kanhua* Chan continues to be important in Chinese Chan through the twentieth century, although earlier types of meditation, similar to silent illumination, are also considered legitimate.

*See also:* Chan School; China; Japan; Korea; Meditation

### Bibliography

- Bodiford, William M. *Sōtō Zen in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "The 'Short-Cut' Approach of *K'an-Hua* Meditation: The Evolution of a Practical Subitism in Chinese Ch'an Buddhism." In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Thought*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Cleary, J. C., and Cleary, Thomas, trans. and eds. *The Blue Cliff Record*. Boston: Shambhala, 1977.
- Foulk, T. Griffith. "The Form and Function of Kōan Literature: A Historical Overview." In *The Kōan: Texts and Contexts in Zen Buddhism*, ed. Steven Heine and Dale S. Wright. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Hoffmann, Yoel, trans. and ed. *The Sound of the One Hand: 281 Zen Kōans with Answers*. New York: Basic Books, 1975.
- Hori, G. Victor Sogen. "Teaching and Learning in the Rinzaï Zen Monastery." *Journal of Japanese Studies* 20, no. 1 (1994): 5–35.
- Hsieh, Ding-hwa Evelyn. "Yüan-Wu K'o-Ch'in's (1063–1135) Teaching of Ch'an *Kung-an* Practice: A Transition from Literary Study of Ch'an *Kung-an* to the Practical *K'an-Hua* Ch'an." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 17, no. 1 (1994): 66–95.
- Schlütter, Morten. "Silent Illumination, Kung-an Introspection, and the Competition for Lay Patronage in Sung-Dynasty Ch'an." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel Getz. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

MORTEN SCHLÜTTER

## KÖBEN

Kōben (Myōe; 1173–1232), a Japanese Shingon-Kegon monk, embraced traditional Buddhist practices in reaction to reformers like Hōnen (1133–1212), who founded the Pure Land school based on the rejection

of all practices except for the recitation of the name of AMITĀBHA Buddha. Orphaned at the age of eight, Kōben was raised by his uncle, a Buddhist priest, and lived a life of study and practice in monasteries. In 1204 he was granted his own monastery, Kōzanji, in the outskirts of Kyoto, and he spent the rest of his life there and at his hometown in Wakayama prefecture, studying, meditating, and writing.

Trained primarily as a Shingon monk, Kōben revived ritual practices and devised new ones for the purpose of transforming doctrinal teachings into actual experience and vision. He popularized Esoteric Buddhist practices, such as the MANTRA of Radiance (*komyō shingon*), which is still chanted widely today. He was also a prolific poet and kept a diary of his meditative dreams over a period of forty years. Using poetry and meditation, Kōben transfigured the world around him into the idealized realm of his dreams, and he even cut off his right ear to prove to himself that he was not attached to this world.

His active imagination, however, did not prevent him from exercising his critical faculties. Kōben wrote a lengthy, scathing attack to show that Hōnen's exclusive practice of recitation not only rejected traditional Buddhism but also misrepresented the Pure Land tradition. Kōben is therefore remembered primarily as a defender and reviver of traditional Buddhism and the practice of RITUAL and MEDITATION.

*See also:* Japan; Pure Land Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Brock, Karen L. "My Reflection Should Be Your Keepsake: Myōe's Vision of the Kasuga Deity." In *Living Images: Japanese Buddhist Icons in Context*, ed. Robert E. Sharf and Elizabeth Horton Sharf. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2001.
- Morrell, Robert E. *Early Kamakura Buddhism: A Minority Report*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1987.
- Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Myōe the Dreamkeeper: Fantasy and Knowledge in Early Kamakura Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1992.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

## KONJAKU MONOGATARI

*Konjaku monogatari* (or *Konjaku monogatarihū*, *Collection of Tales Now Past*) is a monumental collection of popular stories (*setsuwa*), mostly emphasizing

Buddhist themes, compiled during the twelfth century. The portion still extant today consists of twenty-nine books containing more than one thousand stories grouped into three geographic categories: tales of India, tales of China, and tales of Japan. The tales of India consist of the biography of Śākyamuni Buddha, as well as stories of his disciples and his previous lives (JĀTAKA). The tales of China concern the introduction and propagation of Buddhism, as well as miracles, both Buddhist and non-Buddhist. The tales of Japan are divided into Buddhist themes and secular themes, which tell of famous warriors, ghosts, strange animals, and humorous events. *Konjaku monogatari* is an indispensable work for understanding the role of Buddhism in Japanese culture. Its stories have served as the basis for countless subsequent retellings in the form of dramas, short stories, novels, and screenplays.

*See also:* Japanese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## KOREA

Korean Buddhism must be considered within the larger context of the East Asian MAHĀYĀNA tradition. Broadly speaking, the creative period of Chinese Buddhism was over by the end of the twelfth century, after which Chinese Buddhism ceased to have a significant impact on Korean Buddhism. Furthermore, no indigenous developments within Korean Buddhism radically altered its character after the twelfth century; by and large, the basic identity of Korean Buddhism was formed by this time, in clear contrast with Japanese Buddhism, which began to develop its highly idiosyncratic forms after the thirteenth century. This does not mean that Korean Buddhism ceased to develop, but that its fundamental character was established long ago.

After the thirteenth century, denominational differences within Korean Buddhism became less significant until the entire Korean SAṄGHA eventually became a single order. This process, which took more than six hundred years, culminated in the establishment of the Chogyejong (CHOGYE SCHOOL or order) in 1941. The Chogye order, which practically represents the entirety of modern Korean Buddhism, considers itself a scion of the CHAN SCHOOL (Korean, Sŏn; Japanese, Zen), but it actually embraces many of the diverse forms of East Asian Buddhist thought and

practice that had flowed into Korea beginning in the fourth century C.E. This feature of Korean Buddhism has led scholars to characterize it as *t'ongbulgyo*, a “holistic Buddhism” that is free from sectarian differences and doctrinal conflicts.

### Introduction of Buddhism into the Three Kingdoms

When Buddhism came to Korea in the latter half of the fourth century, the peninsula was divided into three kingdoms, each ruled by an ancient tribal confederation trying to expand its territory at the expense of the others. The religious beliefs and practices of the people were predominantly animistic; they believed in deities that resided in nature, and they worshipped the ancestral spirits of tribal leaders. With the establishment of monarchies, however, Korean society moved beyond its tribal stage and was ready to entertain a new religion with a universalistic ethos.

Among the three kingdoms, Koguryŏ (37 B.C.E.–618 C.E.) in the north was the earliest to form a centralized state and was by far the most powerful. Although some evidence suggests that Buddhism had been known earlier, it was in 372 C.E., during the reign of King Sosurim (r. 371–384), that Buddhism was officially introduced into Koguryŏ. Sosurim maintained a tributary relationship with the Former Qin (351–394) in northern China, and its king, Fujian (r. 357–385), an ardent supporter of Buddhism, sent a monk-envoy named Sundo (d.u.), with Buddhist images and scriptures, to Koguryŏ. Significantly, in that same year Sosurim also established the T'aehak, an academy for Confucian learning. The following year he promulgated legal codes, laying the foundation for a centralized bureaucratic state.

Around the time Buddhism came to Koguryŏ, the Paekche kingdom (18 B.C.E.–660 C.E.), which occupied the southwestern part of the peninsula, was introduced to Buddhism by the Eastern Jin in southern China, with which Paekche had a close diplomatic relationship. As with Koguryŏ, the new religion came to Paekche at the time the kingdom, in particular King Kŭn Ch'ogo (346–375), was consolidating royal control over tribal powers.

The kingdom of Silla (57 B.C.E.–935 C.E.), which held the southeastern corner of the peninsula, was the last of three kingdoms to be introduced to Buddhism. When Buddhism first came to Silla during the reign of King Nulchi (417–447), it met strong resistance from ruling aristocratic families that were deeply rooted in

tribal religious practices. The martyrdom of Ich'adon, a loyal minister, provoked King Pōphūng (r. 514–540) to finally recognize the new religion in 527 C.E. Pōphūng had promulgated legal codes for the kingdom in 520, and he prohibited killing throughout the land two years after recognizing Buddhism.

Buddhism introduced a number of new religious practices and ideas to Korea: Buddhist MONKS were clearly set apart from the rest of the society; images of BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS offered a clear focus for devotion; and Buddhist scriptures contained soaring philosophical ideas with an expansive COSMOLOGY and advanced moral teaching. In addition, a host of new cultural phenomena accompanied Buddhism, including architecture, craftsmanship, a writing system, calendrics, and medicine. Buddhist monks were not simply religious figures, they were magicians, doctors, writers, calligraphers, architects, painters, and even diplomats and political advisers. Although many years passed before Korean Buddhists had a solid understanding of the philosophical subtleties of Buddhist teachings, its material culture alone was sufficient to win the hearts of the kings and nobles, as well as the common people.

### Expansion of Buddhist influence

It was Silla, the least developed of the three kingdoms, that benefited most from Buddhism after Silla leaders turned Buddhism into a powerful ideology of the state. As a source of religious patriotism, Buddhism played an important role in Silla's unification of the divided peninsula. King Chinhūng (r. 540–576), the successor of Pōphūng, was the first Silla monarch who allowed his subjects to become monks. Pōphūng himself became a monk at the end of his life, taking the Buddhist name Pōbun (Dharma Cloud), an act that demonstrated the unity of the state and the saṅgha. Beginning with Pōphūng, many Silla rulers adopted Buddhist names, including Śuddhodana, Māyā, and Śrīmālā, for themselves and their families. Buddhism had clearly become a force for legitimizing royal authority.

Eminent monks, such as Wōn'gwang (d. 630) and Chajang (ca. seventh century), became spiritual leaders of both the saṅgha and the state. Wōn'gwang is best known for his *sesok ogye* (five precepts for laypeople), which he presented at the request of two patriotic youths. The precepts stipulated that one must serve the sovereign with loyalty, serve parents with filial piety, treat friends with sincerity, never retreat from the battlefield, and not kill living beings indiscriminately. Instead of offering the traditional five precepts,

Wōn'gwang adapted Buddhist ethics to the pressing needs of the Silla kingdom during a crucial period of its history.

Chajang, a Silla nobleman, traveled to Tang China in 636 and spent seven years studying Buddhism. Upon his return, he was given the title of *taegukt'ong* (Grand National Overseer), one who supervises the entire saṅgha. Chajang established the ordination platform for monks at T'ongdo Monastery and strictly enforced the Buddhist VINAYA throughout the saṅgha. He is also credited with building a magnificent nine-story pagoda in the compound of Hwangnyong Monastery, the national shrine of Silla.

Although the rulers and aristocratic families were attracted to Buddhism mainly for its material benefits, such as the protection of the state and the welfare of the family, many monks avidly studied and lectured on important Chinese Buddhist texts. Almost all the major Mahāyāna texts, which had played an important role in the formative period of Chinese Buddhism, were introduced into Korea. Buddhist monks from Koguryō and especially Paekche subsequently played seminal roles in the transmission of Buddhism and Sinitic culture to Japan.

Buddhist thought flourished in Korea once the Silla rulers unified the three kingdoms in 680. The contributions of the eminent monks ŬISANG (625–702) and WŌNHYO (617–686) were particularly important. Ŭisang had traveled to China and studied under Zhiyan (602–668), the second patriarch of the HUAYAN SCHOOL. Upon his return to Silla, he became the founder of the Korean Hwaōm (Huayan) school, the most influential doctrinal school in Korean Buddhism. The founding of many famous monasteries in Korea, such as Hwaōmsa, Pusōksa, and Pōmōsa, are attributed to Ŭisang, and his *Hwaōm ilsūng pōpgye to* (*Chart of the One-Vehicle Dharma-Realm of Huayan*) sets forth the gist of Hwaōm philosophy in the form of 210 Chinese characters arranged in a square diagram.

Wōnhyo, commonly regarded as the greatest thinker in Korean Buddhism, was a prolific writer who produced no less than eighty-six works, of which twenty-three are extant either completely or partially. By his time, most of the important sūtras and treatises had flowed into Korea from China, and they were causing a great deal of confusion for Silla Buddhists, as they had for the Chinese. It was Wōnhyo's genius to interpret all of the texts known to him in a way that would reveal their underlying unity of truth without sacrificing the distinctive message of each text. He



found his hermeneutical key in the famous Mahāyāna text, the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN). Wŏnhyo's commentaries on this text influenced FAZANG (643–712), the great systematizer of Huayan thought.

But Wŏnhyo was more than a scholar-monk. He tried to embody in his own life the ideal of a bodhisattva who works for the well-being of all SENTIENT BEINGS. Transcending the distinction of the sacred and the secular, he married a widowed princess, visited villages and towns, and taught people with songs and dances. Silla Buddhism fully matured during Wŏnhyo's time, not only in terms of its doctrinal depth but also its ability to engage the common people.

Beginning in the late eighth century, the unified Silla dynasty began to show signs of disintegration due to conflicts within the ruling class and the rise of local warlords. During this period of political turmoil the Sŏn or Chan school of Buddhism was introduced into Korea from Tang China. Numerous Sŏn centers were soon established, mostly in provinces far away from the Silla capital of Kyŏngju and under the patronage of local warlords and magnates. Most of the founders of the NINE MOUNTAINS SCHOOL OF SŌN (Kusan Sŏnmun) received transmission in China from members of the dharma-lineage of the famous Mazu DAOYI (709–788). Their new approach to Buddhism soon created conflict with the older schools of doctrinal Buddhism (Kyo), bifurcating the Korean saṅgha.

### Buddhism in the Koryŏ dynasty

The long political turmoil of the late Silla period ended with the redivision of the Korean peninsula into three kingdoms and the rise of Wang Kŏn (r. 918–943), a local warlord who founded a new dynasty, the Koryŏ (918–1392). Although the political climate had changed, the intimate relationship between Buddhism and the state did not. Buddhism became even more firmly established as the state religion. Wang Kŏn was a pious Buddhist and attributed his political success to the protective power of the buddhas. He was also a firm believer in geomancy, and he constructed numerous Buddhist monasteries according to geomantic principles with a view to curbing evil forces emanating from unfavorable places. Following his example, the succeeding Koryŏ monarchs became ardent supporters of Buddhism. During the reign of King Kwangjong (949–975), the state established a monks' examination system that was modeled on the civil service examination. Titles were conferred upon the monks who passed the examination, according to

their ranks. The highest honor belonged to the royal preceptor (*wangsa*) and the posthumous national preceptor (*kuksa*). In short, the Buddhist saṅgha became part and parcel of the state bureaucracy, and the idea of *hoguk pulgyo* (state-protection Buddhism) became firmly entrenched during the Koryŏ dynasty.

In the latter half of the eleventh century, a new school arose and changed the denominational dynamics of the Koryŏ saṅgha. ŬICH'ŎN (1055–1101), the fourth son of King Munjong, became a Hwaŏm monk at the age of eleven. At thirty-one he traveled to Song China, where he met many illustrious Chinese masters, who inspired him to establish a new order, the Ch'ŏnt'aejong (TIANTAI SCHOOL) in Koryŏ, a decision rooted in his determination to resolve the severe conflict between Sŏn and Kyo (doctrinal Buddhism) in the Koryŏ saṅgha. Ŭich'ŏn was critical of Sŏn's iconoclastic rhetoric, which he believed ignored scriptural learning. He wanted his new school to balance doctrinal study (*kyo*) and MEDITATION (*kwan*). Ŭich'ŏn's leadership and royal background soon made Ch'ŏnt'aejong a flourishing order, but the conflict continued to intensify. Not long after Ŭich'ŏn, the Nine Mountains school of Sŏn began to consolidate under a new name, the Chogyejong.

A century later, a Sŏn monk named CHINUL (1158–1210) led a quiet monastic reform movement in order to purify the Koryŏ saṅgha, which he believed was in a state of serious moral and spiritual decay. Convinced through his encounter with the writings of the Hwaŏm exegete Li Tongxuan (635–730) that Sŏn's "sudden enlightenment" (*tono*) approach could also be found in Hwaŏm teaching, Chinul concluded that there was no discrepancy between Sŏn and Kyo. Chinul established a comprehensive approach to Sŏn that balanced "sudden enlightenment" with "gradual cultivation," and he permitted both a Hwaŏm method of "sudden enlightenment" and the "extraordinary" (*kyŏgoe*) method of *hwadu* (KŌAN) meditation. Chinul's Sŏn teaching, set forth in many of his writings, became the foundation for the thought and practice of Korean Sŏn Buddhism to the present day.

Koryŏ Buddhism is also noted for its monumental woodblock editions of the Chinese Buddhist canon, the first of which is said to have been commissioned by King Hyŏnjong (1009–1031) in the hope of protecting the country from invading Liao forces. This edition was burned by Mongols in 1232. King Kojong (1213–1259) commissioned another edition of the canon on Kanghwa Island, where he had fled after the Mongol invasion. This edition, which consisted of

more than eighty thousand woodblocks, took sixteen years to complete (1236–1251); it is still preserved in the Tripiṭaka Hall of Haein Monastery near Taegu.

### **Buddhism during the Chosŏn dynasty**

Supported by the court and the nobles, the Koryŏ saṅgha enjoyed considerable economic prosperity. Large monasteries became major landowners after the donation of land and serfs by the kings and influential families, and many monasteries developed into financial powers by pursuing various commercial enterprises. The saṅgha's economic power became so immense that it generated much complaint and criticism toward the end of the dynasty. Lesser bureaucrats were especially strong critics, influenced by neo-Confucianism, a new ideology introduced from Song China in the late thirteenth century.

With the collapse of the Koryŏ regime, Buddhism came under further attack. The new Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910), which was built upon neo-Confucian ideology, severed its official relationship with Buddhism. Land holdings were confiscated and hundreds of monasteries were disbanded. As anti-Buddhist measures grew more severe, people were prohibited from ordaining, monks were not allowed to enter the capital city, the monks' examination system was abolished, and the various Buddhist denominations were forced to consolidate. Only two denominations, Sŏnjong and Kyojong, were left, all others being absorbed into them. In short, Buddhism was forced out of mainstream society, and monks were downgraded to the lowest social stratum.

It was during this period of PERSECUTION that the denominational identities of the traditional Buddhist schools disappeared and the ascendancy of Sŏn began. Less dependent, perhaps, upon institutional and doctrinal structures, Sŏn withstood the persecution better than Kyo and managed to maintain its tradition deep in the mountain areas.

Buddhism experienced a short revival during the sixteenth century when HYUJŎNG (1520–1604) became the most important leader of the Chosŏn saṅgha, both Sŏn and Kyo. Although a Sŏn master, Hyujŏng demonstrated an accommodating attitude toward doctrinal studies. He argued that Kyo is the word of the Buddha, whereas Sŏn is his mind. Although he believed in their essential unity, Hyujŏng taught that a monk's training should begin with Kyo, but eventually the trainee must move on to Sŏn in order to attain perfection. Hyujŏng thus established the principle of "relinquishing Kyo

and entering into Sŏn" (*sagyo ipsŏn*), which is still followed among Korean monks today.

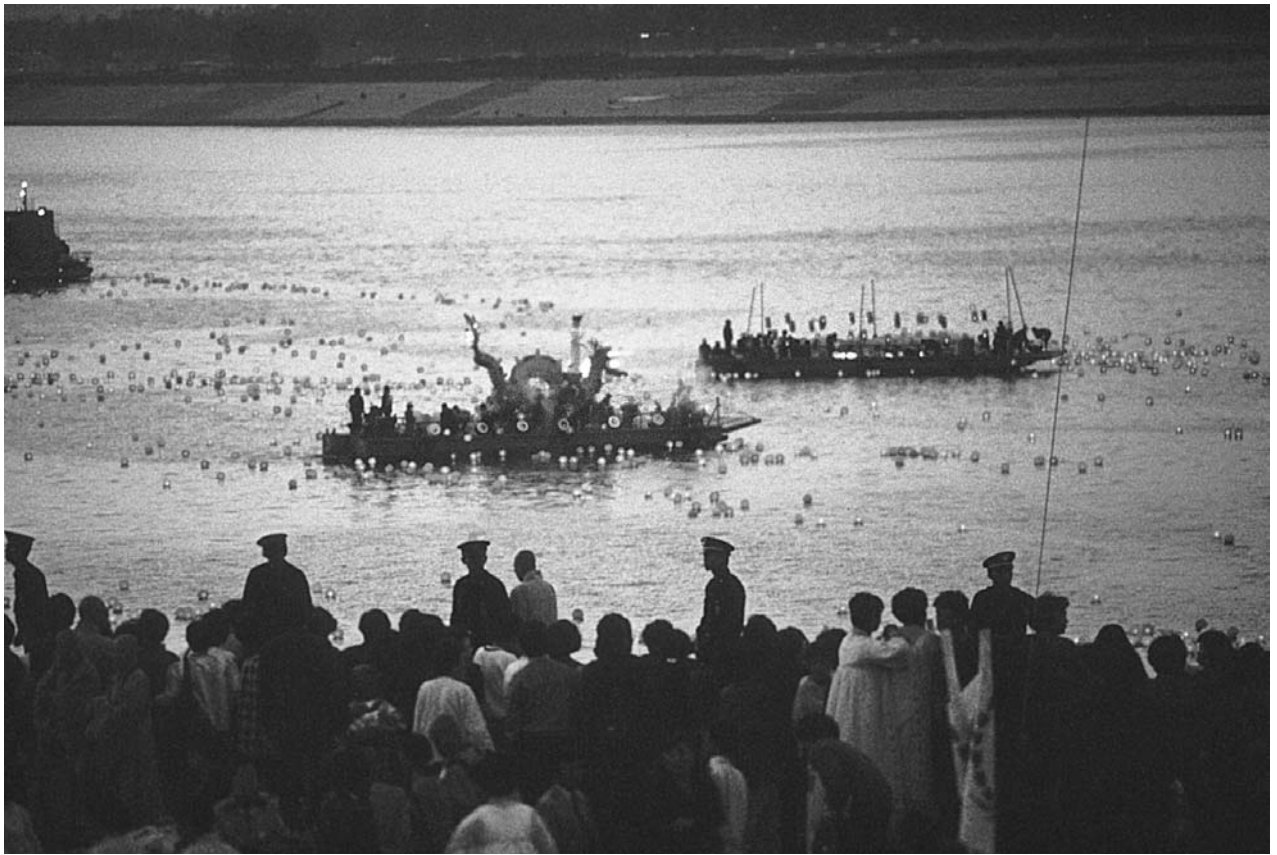
Hyujŏng and his followers, especially YUJŎNG (1544–1610) and Yŏnggwan (1485–1571), also played an important role in mobilizing the monks' militia against Japanese forces during the Hideyoshi invasion (1592–1599). Although Buddhist monks were held in contempt in the strongly anti-Buddhist Confucian society, they were ironically the salvation of the state during this national crisis. Many monks were subsequently given high honorific military titles, and their improved status continued for a while after the war.

On the whole, during the Chosŏn period, Buddhism fell from the place of high respect and honor that it had enjoyed during the Silla and Koryŏ periods, and it remained largely confined to the countryside, isolated from mainstream intellectual and cultural life. Nevertheless, monks of high learning and character continued to flow into the saṅgha, providing leadership during a difficult period.

### **Modern period**

During the Japanese colonization of Korea (1910–1945), Korean Buddhism faced new challenges. The Japanese policy toward Buddhism was inconsistent. Although the Japanese government lifted the ban on monks' entry into metropolitan areas and allowed most religious activities, the government-general also tried to control the Korean saṅgha and to force its merger with one or another Japanese sect of Buddhism. The *sach'allyŏng* (Monastery Act) placed the Korean saṅgha under political surveillance by imposing a hierarchical organization on the monasteries and by requiring state approval for the appointment of the abbots. An important development in Korean Buddhism under colonial rule was the emergence of married priests (*taech'ŏsŭng*), an influence of Japanese Buddhism, which eventually became a major source of conflict in the saṅgha after Korean independence.

Government persecution during the Chosŏn period had forced the amalgamation of schools and sects, and the denominational identities of Korean Buddhism were essentially obliterated, with the exception of the distinction between Sŏn and Kyo, although even this distinction became practically meaningless after the ascendancy of Sŏn. Efforts were made during the Japanese colonial period to define the character of Korean Buddhism by giving it a denominational name. In view of its predominantly Sŏn character, it adopted in 1941 the name Chogyejong, after the old Koryŏ Sŏn order.



Lanterns on the river during the Buddha's birthday celebrations, Seoul, South Korea, 1990. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

After independence, a struggle broke out between celibate monks (*pigusŭng*) and married clergy over control of the monasteries, resulting in the schism of the saṅgha in 1962 into two denominations: the celibate Chogye order and the much smaller T'aego order for married priests. Although new sects such as Ch'ŏnt'aejong and Chin'gakchong arose during the 1960s, the Chogye order represents virtually all of Korean Buddhism today. It is administered by its national office (*ch'ongmuwŏn*) based at the Chogye monastery in Seoul. A comprehensive program of ordination and training of monks is provided by four main Chogye monasteries: Haeinsa, Songgwangsa, T'ongdosa, and Sudŏksa. Having separate quarters and facilities for Sŏn meditation, doctrinal studies, vinaya studies, and Pure Land recitation, these comprehensive monasteries are called *ch'ongnim* ("grove of trees," referring to the large body of monks residing there), and they are distinguished from other large and small monasteries.

In modern times, the Chogye order is organized on the basis of three important levels of distinction. These distinctions are by no means rigid, but they reveal the nature and spirit of contemporary Korean Buddhism.

First, monastic communities of celibate monks and nuns are distinguished from lay Buddhists, a distinction familiar throughout the Buddhist world. In Korea, a further distinction exists between the monks who are engaged in *chŏngjin* (meditation practice) or *kongbu* (doctrinal study) and those who provide *woeho* (external support) for them. The first group is devoted to some form of spiritual cultivation, while the other is responsible for the maintenance of the monastery, food preparation, financial management, construction and repair of buildings, ritual services for lay Buddhists, and other works. This distinction, which dates back to the Chosŏn period when Buddhism was persecuted by the state, is more than a division of labor; it constitutes a nearly polar division within the Korean saṅgha, especially in large well-established monasteries.

Monks devoted to study are further distinguished in that some practice Sŏn in the meditation hall under the guidance of Sŏn masters, while others study scriptures and doctrines in the lecture hall. These two groups do not have equal status because scriptural study, which is expected of every monk, is regarded as

a preparatory step toward meditation, and the authority of the Sōn master is incomparably higher than that of the lecturer. This distinction reflects the primarily Sōn orientation of Korean Buddhism, with doctrinal or scriptural study occupying a subordinate or subsidiary position.

At the beginning of the twenty-first century, it is estimated that more than ten million Buddhists live in Korea, mainly in the South. (Although some Buddhist monasteries exist in North Korea, the number of practicing Buddhists is negligible, if they do indeed exist.) Buddhism strengthened its urban presence considerably during the 1980s and 1990s in response to increased activity by Christian churches in South Korea. Many urban centers of Buddhism were established by the traditional influential monasteries, and some independent Buddhist centers have arisen, drawing large numbers of middle- and upper-class Koreans. Meanwhile, many monks with keen social consciences are leading movements dedicated to various social, political, and environmental causes, including the reconciliation of North and South Korea.

Buddhism has left an indelible mark upon the Korean people and their culture. The vast majority of Korean cultural monuments and treasures derive from Buddhism, and many names of towns and mountains are of Buddhist origin. Stories and legends with Buddhist motifs abound, as do novels and films based on Buddhist themes. For centuries Buddhism has provided Koreans with a way to cope with major misfortunes or crises in life. The belief in the law of karma and the cycle of birth-and-death has become a part of the Korean psyche, and the Buddhist teaching that life is impermanent and full of suffering has been fundamental to the Korean worldview ever since the arrival of Buddhism in the fourth century.

**See also:** Korea, Buddhist Art in; Korean, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Printing Technologies

#### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., trans. *The Korean Approach to Zen: The Collected Works of Chinul*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1983.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch'an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-Sūtra, A Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *Tracing Back the Radiance: Chinul's Korean Way of Zen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practice in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., ed. *Currents and Countercurrents: Korean Influences on the Buddhist Traditions of East Asia*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2004.
- Keel, Hee-Sung. *Chinul: The Founder of the Korean Sōn Tradition*. Berkeley, CA: Institute of South and Southeast Asian Studies, 1984.
- Keel, Hee-Sung. "Word and Wordlessness: The Spirit of Korean Buddhism." In *The Buddhist Heritage*, ed. Tadeusz Skorupski. Tring, UK: Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1989.
- Lancaster, Lewis R., ed. *Religion and Society in Contemporary Korea*. Berkeley, CA: Institute for East Asian Studies, 1992.
- Lancaster, Lewis R., and Yu, Chai-shin, eds. *Introduction of Buddhism to Korea: New Cultural Patterns*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1989.
- Lee, Peter H., trans. *Lives of Eminent Korean Monks: The Hae-dong Kosūng Chōn*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1969.
- Lee, Peter H., ed. *Sourcebook of Korean Civilization*, 2 vols. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993/1996.
- Lee, Young Ho, trans. "The Ideal Mirror of the Three Religions (Samga Kwigam) of Ch'ōnghō Hyujōng." *Buddhist-Christian Studies* 15 (1995): 139–187.
- Muller, A. Charles, trans. *The Sūtra of Perfect Enlightenment: Korean Buddhism's Guide to Meditation*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Park, Sung Bae. *Buddhist Faith and Sudden Enlightenment*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1983.

HEE-SUNG KEEL

---

## KOREA, BUDDHIST ART IN

Buddhism, over the one and a half millennia since its introduction to Korea in the fourth century, has inspired the creation of uniquely Korean traditions in Buddhist art. Korean monarchs and members of the ruling class from the sixth to the fourteenth centuries were patrons of the Buddhist religion and supported the creation of artistic and ceremonial objects and the construction of the most famous Buddhist monasteries and pagodas in Korea. Buddhism lost these influential patrons during the Chosōn dynasty (1392–1910), but thereafter gradually permeated among ordinary folk, a change that is reflected in the country's Buddhist art.

### Buddhist monastery architecture

Korea's Three Kingdoms—Koguryō (37 B.C.E.–668 C.E.), Paekche (18 B.C.E.–660 C.E.), and Silla (57 B.C.E.–935 C.E.)—built great monasteries in their capitals or nearby, judging by the historical records and the architectural remnants. The latter include Kūmgangsa near P'yōngyang (probably from the early sixth century); Hwangnyongsa (founded in 553) with its legendary nine-story wooden pagoda (destroyed in 1234 by the Mongols, except for the foundation stones, now visible after excavation) and Punhwangsa (built in 634, only three stories survive of the original nine-story pagoda built of brick imitating stone), both in the Silla capital of Kyōngju; and Mirūksa (built by King Mu of Paekche in the early seventh century) in Iksan.

Korean Buddhist monasteries feature architectural elements similar or identical to those of secular buildings introduced from China. In general, there is little difference in architectural style between sacred and secular buildings in East Asia. The monasteries of the Three Kingdoms consisted of a lecture hall, a main hall with Buddhist images (also known as *kūmdang*, or Golden Hall, the focus of worship), a pagoda, and a temple gate arranged along a north-south axis. Later, many more image halls (*pōptang*) were added to the complex according to the scale of the monastery. These ceremonial halls are dedicated to a specific buddha or bodhisattva and other Buddhist deities—thus Piro chōn for Vairocana; Taeung chōn (Hall of the Great Hero) and Yōngsan chōn (Hall of Vulture Peak), both for Śākyamuni Buddha; Muryangsu chōn (Hall of Infinite Life) and Kūngnak chōn (Hall of Utmost Bliss), both for AMITĀBHA Buddha; Yaksa chōn for the Medicine Buddha, Bhaiṣajyaguru (Yaksa Yōrae); Mirūk chōn for MAITREYA; Kwanūm chōn for Avalokiteśvara; Chijang chōn for Kṣitigarbha; Sipwang chōn for the Ten Kings; Nahan chōn for ARHATS; and Chosa dang for a monastery's founding teachers. Sometimes three buddhas, who embody past, present, and future, are enshrined in one hall. Besides the bell and drum pavilions, there were additional buildings for the storage of Buddhist scriptures, lecture and meditation halls, monks' living quarters, and kitchens.

### Pagodas and reliquaries

Multistoried pagodas (*t'ap*), built in the center of the monastery's courtyard for daily circumambulation, were originally reliquaries of the historical Buddha Śākyamuni, but increasingly came to serve as commemorative monuments. Simple, monumental granite stone pagodas were built with minimal adornment.

The finial was designed in the form of an ancient Indian stūpa. The relic chamber in wooden pagodas was located in the foundations beneath the central pole, while in stone pagodas it was located above ground just below the central mast. From the late seventh century "twin pagodas," a Chinese innovation introduced for the sake of symmetry, began to appear. King Sinmun built Kamūnsa (twin pagodas) in 682 in memory of his father King Munmu, who unified the Three Kingdoms under the rule of Silla. STŪPAS (*pudo*), mostly octagonal single-story stone monuments, served to enshrine the relics of eminent monks.

RELIQUARY containers were exquisitely crafted in ceramic, gilt bronze, silver, gold, and glass. The outer container is usually a square or rectangular box. The innermost reliquary, which contains the relic of the true body of the Buddha (the remains after cremation), is a tiny crystal or glass bottle with an exquisite gold or openwork stopper. Gilt-bronze images and written Buddhist sūtras, both representing the dharma body, were also deposited in reliquaries. In the five-story granite stone pagoda in Iksan Wanggung-ni was found a copy of the DIAMOND SŪTRA in seventeen gold sheets, on which is embossed the entire text in majestic regular script style, the only known example in East Asia. Reliquaries from the unified Silla period (668–935) were often in the shape of a miniature pagoda or palanquin with a bejeweled canopy and musicians or guardian kings at the corners. Stūpas of eminent monks from the Chosŏn period (fourteenth to seventeenth centuries) yielded white ceramic and brass reliquaries in the form of simple covered bowls.

### Buddhist paraphernalia

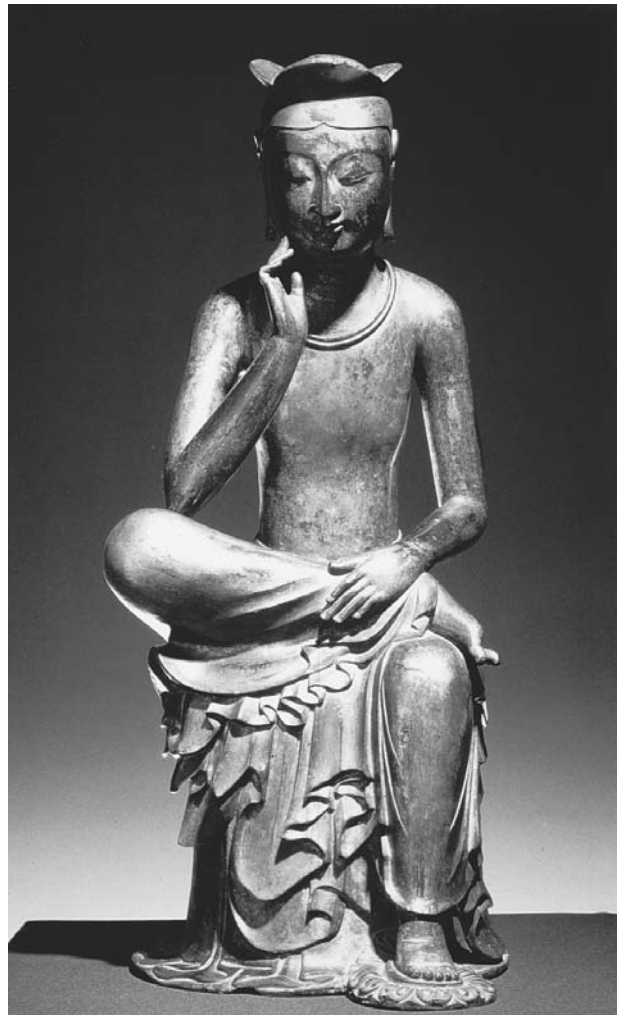
Bronze bells, censers, incense boxes, *kuṇḍikā* (water bottles), and flower vases can all be categorized as Buddhist RITUAL OBJECTS and ceremonial paraphernalia; such objects were executed with considerable craftsmanship since the Three Kingdom period. A Paekche gilt-bronze censer from the late sixth century, excavated in Nūngsan-ri site in Puyō, shows a superb combination of traditional ideas in its dragon support and its lotus bowl and cover in the shape of the legendary Penglai paradise mountain surmounted by a phoenix. During the Unified Silla period, magnificent bells were cast in bronze as seen in the huge Pongdōksa bell. The refinement of design with floral bands and elegant airy *apsaras* kneeling on clouds, as well as the profound sound and superb casting technique, is unmatched in East Asia. In the Koryō period (918–1392) incense containers and bottles for private use and for altars were

made of lacquer or bronze. They were often decorated with tiny and elegant inlaid designs executed with mother-of-pearl on lacquer vessels or with silver on bronze vessels.

### Buddhist sculpture and painting

Buddhist images of Śākyamuni, Amitābha, the Medicine Buddha Bhaiṣajyaguru, and the Universal Buddha Vairocana, who were enshrined in the *kūmdang*, are the focus of worship. No large bronze images, prior to the ninth century, have survived, but small votive gilt-bronze images (ten to thirty centimeters in height and dated between the seventh and ninth centuries) have been excavated from temples, residential sites, and pagodas. These images were for personal altars or for ritual offering. From the earliest period (sixth century) Buddha images portrayed characteristically Korean broad faces with high cheekbones, while the drapery styles, which show influence from the Six Dynasties in China, are characterized by the symmetrical arrangement of garments and an emphasis on frontality. Maitreya Bodhisattva (Mirūk posal), the Future Buddha, was worshiped in royal and aristocratic circles in the early seventh century in all of the Three Kingdoms. Some of the finest images demonstrate Korean mastery of the lost-wax bronze-casting technique and refinement in every detail. Avalokiteśvara Bodhisattva (Kwanseūm posal) was one of the most popular images throughout history in Korea. The Avalokiteśvara image excavated from Sōnsan, a small bronze masterpiece, effortlessly conveys a gentleness in facial expression, a gracefully raised right hand with lotus bud, and the fluent style of sashes and skirt.

A new style of thin monastic garment worn with the left shoulder bare appears in most eighth- and ninth-century Buddha images in Korea, after Korean monks began traveling to Tang China, Central Asia, and as far as India. Monumental granite stone images (all their original coloring is now lost) were carved from the seventh century and enshrined in cave temples (e.g., the Amitābha Buddha triad in Kunwi in North Kyōngsang province); during the seventh to ninth centuries they were also placed in natural environments, such as Namsan, the sacred Buddhist mountain in Kyōngju. The SÖKKURAM Buddha image from the mid-eighth century is unquestionably one of the great masterpieces of the world in its outstanding concept and execution in rough textured granite. In the Koryō and Chosōn dynasties, Buddhist images wearing heavy garments covering both shoulders were made in all kinds of materials, in particular bronze, clay, and wood. Es-



Maitreya Bodhisattva. (Korean, gilt bronze, Paekche, seventh century.) National Museum of Korea. Reproduced by permission.

pecially in the Chosōn period, large carved wooden altarpieces depicting the pantheon of buddhas, bodhisattvas, arhats, and guardian kings in high relief were frequently placed behind three-dimensional main buddhas in the worshiping halls.

The paintings of sacred images on the walls of monastery must have been practiced in Korea at the same time the sculptured images were executed, but despite written records in the SAMGUK YUSA (MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS), no visual material has survived.

*Sagyōng* (handwritten and hand-painted Buddhist scriptures) flourished during the Koryō dynasty. The most frequently copied sūtras of the Koryō dynasty were the HUAYAN JING (Korean, *Hwaōmgryōng*), *Amitābha Sūtra* (Korean, *Amit'agyōng*), and LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA; Korean, *Pōphwagyōng*). *Sagyōng* took the form of precious



Amitābha Buddha. (Korean, Koryŏ, gold, colors on silk, 1306.) Nezu Institute of Fine Arts. Reproduced by permission.

illuminated manuscripts in which the title, the exquisite miniature paintings of the dazzling frontispiece, and the text were decorated and written in gold or silver on dark indigo-dyed paper made from the inner bark of the mulberry. During the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, Koryŏ became the center of illuminated manuscript production in East Asia.

In the Koryŏ period, when Buddhism prospered under royal and aristocratic patronage, Pure Land Buddhist paintings of Amitābha, Water Moon Avalokiteśvara, and Kṣitigarbha flourished. These paintings were rendered on hanging silk scrolls in various sizes, depending on their use; smaller scrolls were for private altars, and larger ones for temples. The images are outlined in red or black ink and painted with mineral colors, including cinnabar red, malachite

green, and lead white. These principal colors, finely ground and prepared with a binder, were first applied on the back of the silk, then on the front, in order to ensure the durability of the colors and to intensify the hue. Gold for exposed parts of the Buddha's body and decorative motifs were applied on top of this. Facial details were drawn and the image would be completed during an eye-dotting ceremony. In the Chosŏn dynasty Buddhist paintings of large figural groups were often executed on hemp. Mineral pigments on such paintings were applied only to the front surface. As a consequence, some colors, especially red and green, have been lost from paintings dating from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. A new type of painting, in which Buddhist images were mixed with native Korean spirits and deities, began to emerge in the second half of the Chosŏn dynasty.

*See also:* Chan Art; China, Buddhist Art in; Huayan Art; Monastic Architecture; Portraiture; Pure Land Art

#### **Bibliography**

- The Art of Śarīra Reliquary.* Seoul: National Museum of Korea, 1991.
- Best, Jonathan W. "Early Korean Buddhist Bronzes and Sui Regional Substyles: A Contextual Study of Stylistic Influence in the Early Seventh Century." In *Sambul Kim Won-yong kyosu chŏngnyŏn t'oeim kinyŏm nonch'ong*. Seoul: Ilchisa, 1987.
- Fontein, Jan. "Masterpieces of Lacquer and Metalwork." *Apollo* (August 1968): 114–119.
- Hwang, Su-young. *Han'guk ūi pulsang* (Korean Buddhist Sculpture). Seoul, 1990.
- Kang, Woo-bang. *Pulsari Changŏm* (The Art of Śarīra Reliquary). Seoul: National Museum of Korea, 1991.
- Kim, Hongnam. *The Story of a Painting: A Korean Buddhist Treasure from the Mary Jackson Burke Foundation*. New York: Asia Society Galleries, 1991.
- Kim, Lena. "Buddhist Sculpture." In *Korean Art Treasures*, ed. Youngsook Pak and Roderick Whitfield. Seoul: Ye-gyŏng, 1986.
- Kim, Lena. "Tradition and Transformation in Korean Buddhist Sculpture." In *Arts of Korea*, ed. Judith Smith. New York: Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1998.
- Lee, Junghee. "Sixth Century Buddhist Sculpture." *Korean Culture* 2, no. 2 (1981): 28–35.
- McCallum, Donald F. "Korean Influence on Early Japanese Buddhist Sculpture." *Korean Culture* 3, no. 1 (1982): 22–29.
- Mun, Myong-dae. *Han'guk chogaksa* (History of Korean Buddhist Sculpture). Seoul: Yorhwadang, 1984.

- Pak, Youngsook. "The Korean Art Collection in the Metropolitan Museum of Art." In *Arts of Korea*, ed. Judith Smith. New York: Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1998.
- Pak, Youngsook. "Grundzüge der koreanischen Architektur." In *Korea: Die Alten Königreiche*. Munich, Germany: Hirmer Verlag, 1999.
- Pak, Youngsook, and Whitfield, Roderick. *Handbook of Korean Art: Buddhist Sculpture*. Seoul: Yekyong, 2002.
- Sørensen, Hendrik Hjort. *The Iconography of Korean Buddhist Painting*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1989.

YOUNGSOOK PAK

## KOREAN, BUDDHIST INFLUENCES ON VERNACULAR LITERATURE IN

Buddhism had an enormous impact on the development of Korean vernacular literature, primarily in pre-modern Korea. Buddhism's influences on the Korean language and vocabulary are also noteworthy, a legacy still apparent in contemporary Korea. Buddhist literature constituted the mainstream of Korean literature before the Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910) and a substantial part of Korean literature during and after that period. The development of the Korean script, Korean verse and prose forms, and the Korean language were all closely associated with Buddhism.

*Yongbi ōch'ŏn'ga* (*The Songs of the Flying Dragons According to Heaven*, 1445), a eulogy of the founding of the Chosŏn dynasty, was the first literary work composed in the indigenous Korean script. This phonetic script was originally promulgated in the edict *Hunmin chŏngŭm* (*Correct Sounds to Instruct the People*) and it came to be known as *Han'gŭl* (one and great letters) during the twentieth century. Heavily influenced by Buddhism, the *Songs of Flying Dragons* became a model for epic poems in vernacular Korean. Buddhism also had an impact on writing style. The interpretive text outlining the *Han'gŭl* writing system, *Hunmin chŏngŭm*, was published around 1446 and was modeled after Buddhist canonical scriptures in its use of prose narration followed by reiteration in verse. Numerous Buddhist texts were translated into *Han'gŭl*, including Buddhist miracle tales and classical Chinese and Sanskrit MANTRAS. In addition, a number of narrative songs (*kasa*) and short lyric poems (*sijo*), novels, Confucian edification works, and textbooks were composed in vernacular Korean under Buddhist influence.

## Examples of Buddhist vernacular literature in Han'gŭl

The promulgation of *Han'gŭl* in 1446 signaled the blossoming of Korean vernacular literature. Prior to devising its own writing system, Korea had used Chinese characters for transcription, even though they were not always appropriate to a Korean setting. A Korean alphabet was thus devised under the leadership of King Sejong (1418–1450). However, Confucian scholar-officials of the Chosŏn government, led by Ch'oe Malli (ca. mid-fifteenth century), strongly opposed the use of Korea's own script on the grounds that it would violate the policy of respecting the senior state, China. They even labeled the Korean alphabet a "debased" writing system that was inferior to that of China, calling it *ŏnmun* (vulgar language) or *amk'ŭl* (language for women), a tradition that continued into the twentieth century. As a result, the Korean alphabet became marginalized and for many years it was primarily used by women and commoners who could not read classical Chinese.

The translation of important Mahāyāna Buddhist texts, such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), marked the first major use of *Han'gŭl*. A wide range of Buddhist texts were rendered into vernacular Korean in order to propagate Buddhist teachings while, at the same time, diffusing the newly invented *Han'gŭl*. Translated works included *Sŏkpo sangjŏl* (*A Detailed Biography of the Buddha Śākyamuni*, 1447); *Wŏrin ch'ŏn'gangjigok* (*The Songs of the Moon's Reflection on a Thousand Rivers*, 1449); *Wŏrin sŏkpo* (*The Moon's Reflection on the Buddha's Lineage*, 1459); and *Pumo ūnjung kyŏng* (*The Sūtra of Parental Gratitude*, 1563). *A Detailed Biography of the Buddha Śākyamuni* depicted the eight principal stages in the Buddha's life, and it catalyzed the development of vernacular Korean literature from the fifteenth to the sixteenth centuries. The earliest Buddhist poem written in vernacular Korean, *The Songs of the Moon's Reflection on a Thousand Rivers*, is comparable to one of the masterpieces of Indian literature, BUDDHACARITA (*Acts of the Buddha*), a narrative of the life of Śākyamuni. *The Moon's Reflection on the Buddha's Lineage* is a combined publication of the aforementioned two works. A Chinese Buddhist apocryphal work, *The Sūtra of Parental Gratitude* was translated to promote the pan-Asian ideal of filial piety. *Han'gŭl* was also used to transliterate anthologies of Sanskrit mantras, including *Odae chinŏn* (*The Five Great Mantras*, 1485).

Another important area of Korean Buddhist literature in *Han'gŭl* is vernacular novels. *Ku unmong* (*The*



*Cloud Dream of the Nine*, 1687–1688) by Kim Man-jung (1637–1692) is a typical Buddhist novel that portrays all the fame and glory of the human world as a dream, making the Buddhist notion of SŪNYATA (EMPTINESS) its primary theme. *Sassi namjōng ki* (*The Story of Lady Sa*, ca. 1689–1692) serves as a prototype for later novels, taking the promotion of virtue and reproof of vice as its main theme. *Onggojip chōn* (*The Tale of a Stubborn Person Ong*), *Sim Ch'ōng chōn* (*The Tale of Sim Ch'ong*), and *Hūngbu chōn* (*The Tale of Hūngbu*), all composed in the late Chosōn period, adopted the Buddhist motifs of karmic fruition and promotion of virtue. Korean vernacular literature gained wider readership in the mid-nineteenth century, about the time that the classical Confucian novel in Chinese entered its period of decline.

Koreans composed literature in classical Chinese before the invention of the Korean alphabet. Unlike China and Japan, however, Korea did not have a strong tradition of fictional prose narratives before the seventeenth century. The promulgation of the Korean script brought popular literary forms, including fiction, to prominence. In particular, political, social, and economic diversification resulting from the invasions of Japan and Qing China from the end of the sixteenth century to the mid-seventeenth century was matched by cultural diversification, and the vernacular novel was a product of this milieu. Han'gŭl versions of the novel came to be particularly popular among women and lay readers, who were unfamiliar with Chinese writing, and vernacular novels gained a wide readership. Buddhist vernacular literature did not appeal to the literati, however, due in part to the dominance of Confucianism during the Chosōn period.

### **Buddhist influences on Korean language and vocabulary**

Buddhism also exerted considerable influence on the Korean language and vocabulary. Contemporary scholars have argued that Han'gŭl originated from symbol letters (*puhoja*), a kind of signifier used in Buddhist literature in classical Chinese during the Koryō dynasty (918–1392). Some Korean and Japanese scholars have begun studying *puhoja* as the possible origin of the Korean alphabet and they have noted its use in Buddhist canonical texts during the Koryō period. An ardent debate in Korean academe rages over this issue.

Many Korean geographical names are associated with Buddhism. For instance, Mount Sōrak (Snowy Peak), one of the most beautiful mountains in Korea, is considered the Korean counterpart of the Hi-

malayas, the birthplace of the Buddha. Much of Korean cultural language involves Buddhist words or is associated with Buddhism. A representative example is the word *ip'an sap'an*, which originally referred to practicing monks who studied both doctrine and meditation (*ip'an*) and to administrative monks (*sap'an*). In addition, there are some difference in the way similar terms are used in China and Korea. For example, the terms *pigu* (Chinese, *biqu*; monk) and *piguni* (Chinese, *biquini*; nun) are still used in Korea, but they are no longer recognized in China. Moreover, the meaning of some Buddhist terminology has changed. For instance, the meditative term *musim* (no mind, or no false mind) today means “heartlessness.” The original meaning of *ōp* (karma) referred to both good and bad actions; now it signifies only evil actions. Furthermore, the Buddhist terms that entered everyday parlance often had derogatory meanings, a product of the Confucian dominance of premodern Korea. Since the Chosōn period, in particular, the meaning of certain Buddhist terms has become derogatory; thus, *ip'an sap'an* came to signify “a brawling situation.” Originally the term *yadan pōpsōk* referred to “an outdoor sermon”; it is now used in a negative sense to mean “an extremely noisy situation.”

Historically, Buddhist literature played a leading role in the formation of vernacular Korean literature. By the late nineteenth century, the importation of Western civilization and culture caused traditional verse and prose forms to give way to new forms. Although the *Nim ūi ch'immuk* (*Silence of Love*, 1926) by monk HAN YONGUN (1879–1944) is considered one of the masterpieces of modern Korean poetry, vernacular Buddhist literature in Han'gŭl was not generally perceived as literary. It is only in recent years that Buddhist literature has regained a growing readership in Korea.

*See also:* Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Korea; Languages; Poetry and Buddhism

### **Bibliography**

- Bantly, Francisca Cho. *Embracing Illusion: Truth and Fiction in The Dream of the Nine Clouds*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Lee, Peter H. *Korean Literature: Topics and Themes*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1966.
- Rutt, Richard, trans. *A Nine Cloud Dream*. In *Virtuous Women: Three Classic Korean Novels*, ed. Richard Rutt and Kim chong-un. Seoul: Royal Asiatic Society, 1974.

Sa, Chaedong. *A Study of the History of Korean Narrative Literature (Han'guk sōsa munhak ūi yōn'gu)*, 5 vols. Taejon, Korea: Chungang munhwasa, 1995.

Shim, Jae-ryong. *Korean Buddhism: Tradition and Transformation*. Seoul: Jimmundang, 1999.

*A Study of Korean Buddhist Literature (Han'guk Pulgyo munhak yōn'gu)*, 2 vols. Seoul: Han'guk Munhak Yōn'guso, Dongguk University Press, 1988.

Yi, Sūngjae. "The Philological Meaning of Symbol Letters" (Puhoja ūi munjaron chōk ūiūi). In *Studies of the Korean Language (Kugōhak)* 38 (2001): 89–116.

JONGMYUNG KIM

## KUIJI

Kuiji (Dasheng Ji, Ci'en *Dashi*; 632–682) was the dharma-name of a prominent Tang dynasty (618–907) scholar and monk. Scion of a family of politically powerful generals, Kuiji was orphaned as a young child and ordained in his teens. Assigned to the imperially sponsored translation team of the renown pilgrim-monk XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), Kuiji soon established himself as one of Xuanzang's most capable protégés. After Xuanzang's death, Kuiji went on to write a series of voluminous commentaries and doctrinal essays based on his understanding of the Dharmapāla lineage of Indian *viññaptimātra-yogācāra* philosophy. He was posthumously designated the first patriarch of what was eventually styled the FAXIANG SCHOOL of Chinese Buddhism, which represented the second main transmission of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL into East Asia.

Kuiji's presentation of *viññaptimātra-yogācāra* thought was based principally on the *Cheng weishi lun*, a translation of VASUBANDHU's fourth-century *Triṃśikā (Thirty Verses)*, substantially supplemented with a selective synopsis of ten Indian commentaries. This work was officially a product of Xuanzang's translation project, although its preface indicates the key role Kuiji played in selecting and adjudicating the various doctrinal controversies excerpted from the divergent Indian commentarial traditions. The result was a highly technical and doctrinally conservative presentation of Yogācāra thought, one very different from, and in conflict with, the PARAMĀRTHA school of Yogācāra thought already popular in China. This, coupled with the fickleness of imperial patronage after Xuanzang's death, led to the eventual decline of Kuiji's influence, a fate already evident during the latter part of his life as his main rival FAZANG (643–712) rose in promi-

nence under the sponsorship of the royal consort, who was eventually to declare herself the Empress Wu.

## Bibliography

Sponberg, Alan. "Meditation in Fa-hsiang Buddhism." In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.

ALAN SPONBERG

## KŪKAI

Kūkai (774–835) was a ninth-century Japanese figure renowned for his introduction of esoteric Buddhism into early Heian society. In his youth Kūkai studied Confucianism and Chinese literature at Daigaku, the state college. But he soon dropped out of Daigaku and joined a throng of privately ordained priests and nuns (*shido sō*), and he avidly trained in Buddhism. In 804, at age thirty-one, Kūkai hastily received official ORDINATION and was chosen to be part of the Japanese diplomatic mission to Tang China. Under the guidance of Master Huikou (746–805) of Qinglongsi in the capital city of Chang'an, Kūkai studied a system of esoteric Buddhism grounded in the *Mahāvairocana-sūtra* (Japanese, *Dainichikyō*) and the *Tattvasaṃgraha* or *Vajraśekhara-sūtra* (or *Tantra*; Japanese, *Kongōchōkyō*). Shortly after Huikou's death, Kūkai returned to Japan, carrying with him over 210 new Buddhist scriptures.

Kūkai was the first to invent a paradigm for separating esoteric and exoteric Buddhism (*Ben kenmitsu nikyōron*) and then to understand their complementary relationship (*Hannya shingyō hiken, Himitsu mandara jūjūshinron*). Kūkai's creation of a theory of ritual language (*Shōji jissōgi, Unjigi*) enabled the early Heian clergy to achieve integration between their textual studies and ritual practices, and accelerated their adoption of esoteric Buddhism. Kūkai also founded the Latter Seven-Day rite (*Goshichinichi mishihō*), the New Year esoteric Buddhist ceremony at the palace, and the ritual service aimed at legitimating the Japanese ruler as a cakravartin (wheel-turning monarch). Kūkai's ritual initiated the rapid integration of esoteric Buddhist rites into the ceremonies of the royal court, a process that led to the rise of Buddhism as the dominant ideology of the state. In medieval Japan, Kūkai became one of the most popular Buddhist saints; he was worshiped as a savior who lived on in his seat of endless meditation on Mount Kōya.

See also: Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Shingon Buddhism, Japan

### Bibliography

- Abé, Ryūichi. "Saichō and Kūkai: Conflict of Interpretations." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22 (1995): 1–2.
- Abé, Ryūichi. *The Weaving of Mantra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of Japanese Tendai School*. Berkeley: Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, University of California at Berkeley, 1984.
- Hakeda, Yoshito. *Kūkai: Major Works*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1976.

RYŪICHI ABÉ

## KUMĀRAJĪVA

Kumārajīva (350–409 or 413), the most important translator in East Asian Buddhist history, was born to a noble family in Kucha, a center of largely MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS on the northern branch of the SILK ROAD. His native language, now known as Tokharian B, belonged to the Indo-European family. Under the guidance of his mother, Kumārajīva became a monk while still a boy, then traveled with her to Kashmir to study Buddhist philosophy of the Sarvāstivāda school. While continuing his studies in Kashgar (roughly between Kucha and Kashmir), Kumārajīva was converted to the MAHĀYĀNA by a monk who was a former prince of Yarkand, in the Khotan area, along the southern SILK ROAD. Eventually, Kumārajīva converted his earlier Indian teacher to the Mahāyāna.

In 383 a Chinese army occupied Kucha and took Kumārajīva away as a captive. He was held for some two decades in Liangzhou near DUNHUANG in the Gansu corridor, where he presumably learned to speak and read Chinese. When the Later Qin regime conquered Liangzhou in 401, Kumārajīva was taken to the Chinese capital of Chang'an, where he was immediately put at the head of a large translation staff.

Although a brilliant scholar, Kumārajīva was painfully aware of his own failings as a monk. While in Chang'an he was forced by the ruler to sire numerous children, in the hopes of producing offspring as gifted as their father. Nothing is known of them.

There are four aspects to Kumārajīva's greatness. First and most important is the volume, variety, and

richness of his translations. Kumārajīva and his staff translated seventy-four works in 384 fascicles, including the *Amitābha-sūtra* (402), about the Pure Land paradise in the west; a new and more readable *Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom in 25,000 Lines*, 404), a basic *prajñāpāramitā* text; the *Dazhidu lun* (*Great Perfection of Wisdom Treatise*, 405), a massive commentary attributed to Madhyamaka philosopher NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), but edited and probably compiled by Kumārajīva; the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA, 406), the single most important Mahāyāna scripture in all of East Asian Buddhism; the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa-sūtra* (406), a very readable scripture about a wise lay bodhisattva; and the *Zhonglun* (*Treatise on the Middle*, 409?), Nāgārjuna's *Mādhyamakakārikā* (*Verses on Madhyamaka*) and commentary. The translations produced by Kumārajīva's team borrowed significantly from predecessors such as Zhi Qian (fl. mid-third century) and are known for their fluent and readable style. In cases where multiple Chinese translations exist, it is always Kumārajīva's version that is used.

The second aspect of Kumārajīva's greatness is that individual translations or groups of texts became the bases for distinctive exegetical traditions, especially the *Tattvasiddhi-śāstra* (Chinese, *Chengshi lun*; *Completion of Truth*) and the "Three Treatises" or *Sanlun* of the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL. Third, Kumārajīva's texts contained much more than doctrine; they also included various types of songs and poetry, legends and stories, literary styles and motifs, and a vast repertoire of religious images. Fourth, and certainly not least, is that Kumārajīva taught a group of gifted students who wrote texts that formed the foundation of East Asian Buddhism, including SENGZHAO (374–414), DAOSHENG (ca. 355–434), Sengrui (also Huirui; 352–436), and others.

See also: Paramārtha; Śikṣānanda

### Bibliography

- Ch'en, Kenneth Kuan Sheng. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- Liu Mau-Tsai. *Kutscha und seine Beziehungen zu China vom 2. Jh. v. bis zum 6. Jh. n. Chr.*, 2 vols. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1969.
- Robinson, Richard H. *Early Mādhyamika in India and China*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1967.

Tsukamoto Zenryū. *A History of Early Chinese Buddhism: From Its Introduction to the Death of Hui-yüan*, tr. Leon Hurvitz. Tokyo and New York: Kodansha, 1985.

Zürcher, E. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959 (1972).

JOHN R. MCRAE

## KYŎNGHŎ

Kyŏnghŏ Sŏngu (1849–1912) was among the few important Sŏn (CHAN SCHOOL) Buddhist leaders in nineteenth-century Korea. His rise to eminence took place at a time when Buddhist institutions were in cultural and political decline after almost six hundred years of Confucian domination.

In 1879, after secluding himself in a hut for several months in order to practice intense *kongan* (KŌAN) meditation, Kyŏnghŏ became enlightened. Subsequently his fame spread far and wide and hundreds of followers gathered to receive his instructions. In the following decades he revived Sŏn practice greatly and set up different monasteries as training centers. Kyŏnghŏ also contributed to the renaissance of Korean Buddhism by organizing Buddhist societies on behalf of the laity.

Kyŏnghŏ passed away in his hermitage on Kapsan in 1912. His lineage of Sŏn was continued by several

important disciples, all of whom have left their imprint on contemporary Buddhism in Korea.

Kyŏnghŏ did not write any major works, but he left behind a large number of instructions for meditation, exhortations to practice, and occasional pieces, as well as many songs and poems in praise of Sŏn in particular and Buddhism in general. Among these his *Odo ka* (*Song of Enlightenment*) is the most important. Much of this material was compiled posthumously by his disciples and subsequently published. Kyŏnghŏ also compiled a manual for Sŏn practitioners entitled *Sŏnmun ch'waryo* (*Important Points of Sŏn Buddhism*), which is still in use today.

*See also:* Chan School; Korea

### **Bibliography**

*Kyŏnghŏ chip* (*Collected Works of Kyŏnghŏ*), ed. Han Yongun. Seoul: Poryon'gak, 1979. Reprint of Chungang Sŏnwŏn Chang edition, 1942.

*Kyŏnghŏ pŏbŏ* (*The Dharma Talks of Kyŏnghŏ*), ed. Kyŏnghŏ Songu Sŏnsa Pŏbŏ Chip Kanhaeng Hoe. Seoul: Inmul Yŏn'gu, 1981.

*Sŏnmun ch'waryo* (*Important Points of Sŏn Buddhism*), ed. Kyŏnghŏ Sŏngu. Seoul: Poryŏn'gak, 1982.

Sørensen, Henrik H. "The Life and Times of the Korean Sŏn Master Kyŏnghŏ." *Korean Studies* 7 (1983): 7–33.

HENRIK H. SØRENSEN

*This page intentionally left blank*

# L



## LAITY

The laity in Buddhism makes up two of the four constituent parts of the SAṄGHA (monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen) and the great majority of Buddhists. The ordained differ from the laity by virtue of their renunciation of the householder's life and observance of a strict code of behavior, which make them worthy and deserving, a pure and holy "field of merit." Laypeople acquire merit through giving food, clothing, shelter, and other material support to the ordained, and merit-making by laity to the ordained has been a central aspect of lay life in all Buddhist societies. Prohibitions on the ordained acquiring individual wealth, as well as prohibitions on sexual activity, make the ordained dependent upon laity for their living and the perpetuation of a religious order.

### The textual legacy

Laity in early Buddhist texts are referred to as *upāsaka* (laymen) and *upāsikā* (laywomen), devoted followers of Buddhist teaching, and they are distinguished from ordinary householders. Lay followers should take proper care of the monks during the retreats, hear the dharma expounded at that time and on the monthly Poṣadha (Pāli, *Uposatha*) days, take the three refuges, follow the first five *śīlas* or moral rules (refraining from taking life, stealing, unchastity, lying, and taking intoxicants), offer robes to the monks at the end of the rainy season, undertake PILGRIMAGE, and venerate STŪPAS containing relics of the Buddha. The *Sigalovāda-sutta* (*Discourse to Sigala*) urges laity to revere their parents, spouses and children, friends and companions, and religious teachers. Instructions specifically for women direct them in various texts to

be capable in work, to manage servants well, to be physically attractive to their husbands, and to manage his fortune well.

THERAVĀDA Buddhism has traditionally emphasized a strong distinction between the ordained and the laity. The *nikāyas* show that laity can reach the first three stages of sanctity (*soṭāpanna*, *sakadāgāmi*, and *anāgāmi*), but they cannot become arhats. Instead, they aim for a better rebirth. Recent studies suggest, nevertheless, that the *Sutta Piṭaka* also contains a second, contrasting view on the laity, holding that laity can attain enlightenment. The *Mahāvagge Maṇḍapey-yakathā* depicts the Buddha teaching the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS and the eightfold path to the laity, and the *Nakulapitā-sutta* (*Discourse to Nakulapitā*) has the Buddha teaching a layman about the five aggregates and the error of confusing these with the self.

With the appearance of early MAHĀYĀNA in the first century, new concepts and practices developed, widening the laity's scope. The cardinal idea of emptiness undermined all conceptual oppositions, including that between monastics and laity. The idea of the BODHISATTVA who purposefully remains in the world to save others further undermined the dichotomy separating the ordained and laity, and the idea of the lay bodhisattva emerged.

The quintessential example of the lay bodhisattva is the layman VIMALAKĪRTI, in the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* (*The Teaching of Vimalakīrti*), composed between the first century B.C.E. and first century C.E. Vimalakīrti expounds on the nature of emptiness, exhibiting his wisdom to an immense assembly of holy men and bodhisattvas. He ridicules their doctrinal abstractions and pretensions to a higher status than the



Laypersons dip lotus flowers in holy water and sprinkle it on themselves at Phra Kaew Monastery, Bangkok, Thailand, 1991. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

laity. Other sūtras continue the themes of this work, sometimes introducing laywomen as the protagonists. Two such examples are Vimalakīrti's daughter in the *Candrottārādārikāvyaākaraṇa-sūtra* (*Discourse on the Prediction Made about the Girl Candrottārā*) and Queen Śrīmālā in the *Śrīmālādevīsiṃhanāda-sūtra* (*Lion's Roar of Queen Śrīmālā*).

Other Mahāyāna texts present filial piety as a kind of Buddhist morality, in a concession to the prominence of this principle especially among the laity in East Asia. The central role of the priesthood in funerary and ancestral rites in East Asian Buddhism stems from the elevation of filial piety as an ethical ideal in such works as the *Ullambana-sūtra*.

### Laity in Theravāda countries

Lay life in Theravāda countries is greatly influenced by the custom of men entering a Buddhist monastery for a period of time, later returning to lay life. Nearly all Burmese men and about half the men in Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia have spent at least one rains-retreat, and often much longer, as an ordained monk.

This means that the laity of several Theravāda countries has significant personal experience of monastic life, unparalleled by any comparable custom in countries where Mahāyāna predominates. This custom creates close ties between laity and the ordained and expands the range of religious experience for lay men. Women are excluded because the tradition of valid OR-DINATION for NUNS is believed to have died out.

Lay practice revolves around the precepts and merit-making activities. Laypeople observe the five basic precepts already discussed, and on holy days they may take a further five: refraining from sex, eating after noon, perfumes and adornments, seeing public entertainments, and the use of grand beds. Giving food to monks on a daily basis is a widespread practice, as is contributing to such ceremonies as a man's ordination, New Year's, an abbot's promotion, meals for monks, presentation of robes, cremations, and to general monastery fund-raising or repairs. Donations may take the form of money, items involved in a particular ceremony, or they may be things monks are allowed to own, such as bedding, a razor, an umbrella, or a nee-

dle and thread. Founding and supporting schools and hospitals is also religiously meritorious. The performance of meritorious giving thus creates and strengthens the connections between monastic and lay society.

### Laity in Mahāyāna countries

In East Asia ritual merit transfer is the basic motif structuring the relation between laity and the ordained. In essence, descendants make gifts to monastics, who transfer the merit to descendants' ancestors in order to ensure them a better REBIRTH or a more comfortable existence in the other world. Merit transfer has also become institutionalized in the mid-summer GHOST FESTIVAL, based on the *Ullambana-sūtra*.

A wide variety of devotional practices are performed by lay Buddhists in China, Korea, and Japan, including veneration of such sacred objects as Buddhist images, relics, and stūpas; copying and reciting sūtras, prayers, and formulas; use of Buddhist rosaries, AMULETS AND TALISMANS; pilgrimage; and participation in cults and rites for particular buddhas and bodhisattvas, including Śākyamuni, MAITREYA, AMITĀBHA, Avalokiteśvara, Kṣitigarbha, Bhaiṣajyaguru, Samantabhadra, Acalā, and others.

Chinese laity formed societies for reciting the Buddha's name, for study, and for publication as early as the Six Dynasties (222–589). The tradition of the learned layman in China had a prototype in Pang Yun (born ca. 740), "Layman P'ang," whose Chan sayings were later collected as *Pang jushi yulu* (*The Recorded Sayings of Layman Pang*). He gave away his house and sank his possessions in a boat, taking up a wandering life and studying under several Chan masters, though not becoming a monk.

A Buddhist revival in the late Ming dynasty (1368–1644) grew out of a lay movement of provincial gentry, who underwrote the founding of monasteries, sponsored the clergy, and enthusiastically practiced Buddhist devotions. Gentry went on pilgrimage to Buddhist monasteries, composed poems about them, and restored them. They corresponded with monks, attended lectures, chanted Buddhist texts and the Buddha's name, and burned incense. They organized lay associations with names like Lotus Society for pure land devotions, or associations for liberating captive animals. They participated in public rites called "Bathing the Buddha" for the Buddha's birthday and the Ghost Festival.

During the late Qing dynasty (1644–1911) and the Republican period (1911–1920), the number of Bud-

dhist lay societies grew rapidly, attracting literati and bourgeoisie adherents. Merit clubs operated vegetarian restaurants in the cities, and study groups met to discuss sacred texts or to hear lectures by visiting monks. Recitation clubs gathered to recite the Buddha's name in the hope of being reborn in the Western Pure Land. Founded by a Hangzhou businessman in 1920, the Right Faith Society operated a clinic and a boys' primary school, also providing soup kitchens, free coffins for the poor, and a widows' home. The Buddhist Pure Karma Society, founded in Shanghai in 1925, ran an orphanage and a clinic dispensing free medicine; it also broadcast a nightly radio program.

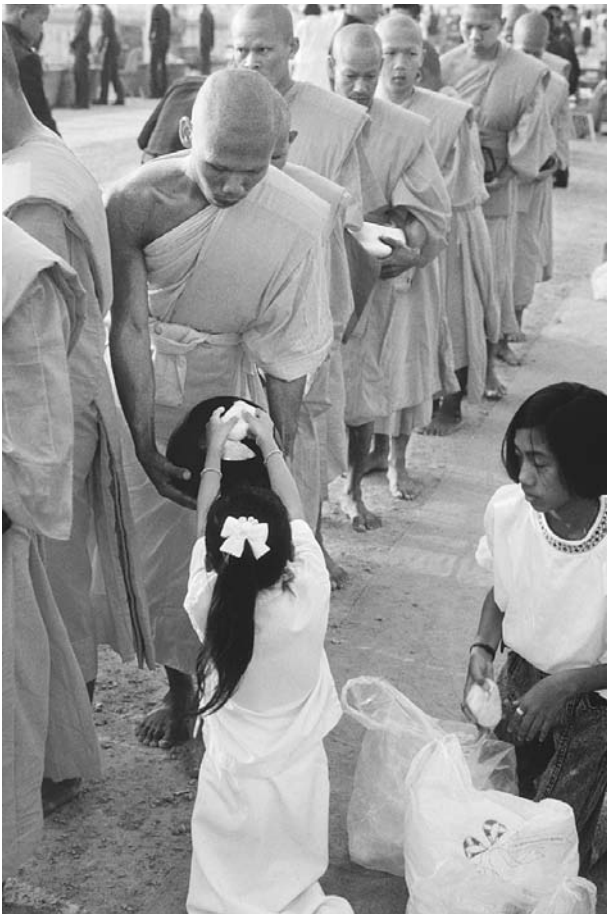
In ancient Korea, lay practice centered on worship of both Maitreya and Amitābha. Chanting Amitābha's name was a central lay practice. Pure land faith was propagated through Buddhist folk tales from the unified Silla dynasty (668–935) that were later incorporated into a history, SAMGUK YUSA (*MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS*, 1285). This work reflects strong lay participation in Buddhism and also shows that lay associations were formed around pure land practice.

Ancient and medieval Japan exhibited a rich variety of lay Buddhist practices, including pilgrimage to famous monasteries and sacred mountains or around circuit routes devoted to Avalokiteśvara or the historical Buddhist figure KŪKAI (774–835); sponsoring Buddhist art works and ceremonies; and building or repairing temples. The Great Buddha statue of Tōdaiji in Nara was completed in 752, in part by lay contributions organized by the lay Buddhist En no Ubasoku (from Sanskrit *upāsaka*).

Classical literature is replete with images of laity. In 984 a lay noble, Minamoto Tamenori, completed the *Sanbōe* (*Illustrations of the Three Jewels*), an illustrated collection of Buddhist tales in three volumes, as a guide to Buddhism for an imperial princess. It included tales of Japanese Buddhists, the miracles achieved through their devotions, and stories of meritorious people whose good deeds produced rewards in this life and the next.

Especially after periods of warfare, many widows adopted a semimonastic style of life, taking the tonsure though not necessarily living in a monastery, forming societies to commission or repair statues, and devoting themselves to prayers for the souls of the dead. Sometimes such women congregated near a monastery and performed tasks like laundry and food provisioning for the monks.





Monks receive alms from lay Buddhists at Phra Dhammakāya Monastery near Bangkok, Thailand, 1991. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

During the Edo period (1600–1868), the entire population was legally required to affiliate with a Buddhist monastery. These inalterable, exclusive affiliations were established by family units and passed down through generations. In return for supporting the monasteries and their priests, the priests performed the family's funerals and periodic ancestral rites. Although the legal obligation of monastery affiliation dissolved in the 1870s, the fact of family graves and records being kept by the monasteries means that these affiliations have largely been preserved.

Laity established associations for pilgrimage and for the recitation of Amitābha's name or the title of the *LOTUS SŪTRA* (*SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA*). Stories of the ideal layperson, based on historical individuals, were published by the True Pure Land sect during the Edo period in collections called *ōjōden* (tales of rebirth [in the pure land]). These tales vividly illustrated valued traits: filial piety, honesty, compassion, devotion

to reciting Amitābha's name, and strong conviction of the certain rebirth in the Western Pure Land.

### Laity and modernization

The modernization of Buddhist societies has brought sweeping changes. The extension of the franchise and expanded political participation in secular life colored religious life, creating the expectation that laity should be able to influence the character of Buddhist institutions. The spread of literacy has enabled laity to read and interpret sacred scripture with increasing independence from the ordained. Higher education hones a critical spirit and encourages skepticism regarding clergy's preeminence over the laity and their monopoly over funerals and other rituals. The prestige of science and rationality in modernizing societies further nurtures a critical view of traditional religious beliefs, practices, and institutions.

The encounter with Christian missionaries and Western imperialism was an important catalyst to Buddhist revival movements, and laymen have frequently played significant roles. The lay branch of the Buddhist Theosophical Society, founded in Sri Lanka in 1880, created a press, the Buddhist English School (later Ananda College), and a newspaper, *The Buddhist*. Prominent laity like ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (born David Hewavitarne, 1864–1933) acquired their first experience of activism in the Buddhist Theosophical Society and in the Young Men's Buddhist Association (later renamed the All-Ceylon Buddhist Congress), founded in Colombo in 1898 by C. S. Dissanayake.

Dharmapāla founded the first international Buddhist organization, Mahābodhi Society, in Colombo in 1891, later starting a revival of Buddhism in India, beginning with a project to restore *BODH GAYĀ*. Dharmapāla linked his support for Buddhism to the struggle for Indian independence, so that Buddhist advocacy was inseparable from the call for political independence. The Indian Buddhist revival did not become a mass movement, however, until the leadership of Bhimrao Ramji AMBEDKAR (1891–1956), an attorney trained in the United States and Britain who worked for the legal emancipation of the Untouchables. Despairing of integrating the Untouchables into Hindu caste society, he converted to Buddhism in 1950. When he called on all Untouchables to convert, mass conversions followed in several Indian states.

In late nineteenth- and early twentieth-century Japan, Buddhist reform movements arose, frequently

led by groups of priests and laymen, calling for free inquiry into traditional beliefs and practices, rejecting superstition, and striving to articulate a modern Buddhist ethic. One such association, Bukkyō Seitō Dōshikai, published a widely circulated journal called *Buddhism* (*Bukkyō*), sought inspiration from Unitarianism, embraced skepticism, and even questioned whether Mahāyāna is true Buddhism. Other reformers admired socialism, affirmed equality, and called for reform of authoritarian sectarian organizations. Still others aligned Buddhism with nationalism, such as Nation's Pillar Society (Kokuchūkai), founded in 1914 by a Nichiren priest who later disrobed and wrote in defense of marriage, Tanaka Chigaku (1861–1939).

### Buddhist new religious movements in Japan

The formalism inherent in the historical origins of Japanese temple affiliations has made the country a fertile area for the founding of new religious movements expanding the scope of lay Buddhism. In the early twentieth century Buddhist new religions emerged, based on the belief that the laity possess all necessary qualifications to perform funerals and ancestral rites without clerical mediation. Reiyūkai Kyōdan, founded in 1930, and its offshoot Risshō Kōseikai, founded in 1938, are two such examples. Both derive from Nichiren Buddhism and emphasize ancestor worship through the *Lotus Sūtra*.

After World War II, many more Buddhist new religions emerged. The largest is SŌKA GAKKAI, which was founded in 1930 but which did not become a mass movement until after 1945. Its main religious practices are chanting the title of the *Lotus Sūtra* and studying its doctrines. It founded a political party in 1964. Sōka Gakkai was originally affiliated with a branch of the NICHIREN SCHOOL, Nichiren Shōshū, but this connection was abolished in 1991. Sōka Gakkai maintains an extensive program of peace work and branches throughout the world. With membership estimated at seventeen million, it is one of the largest—if not the largest—Buddhist lay associations in history.

In recent years Buddhist new religions deriving from Shingon Buddhism, such as Agon-shū, Shinn-yoen, and Gedatsukai, have been founded. In 1995 the Buddhist new religion Aum Shinrikyō, founded in 1986, carried out an attack on the Tokyo subway system that killed twelve people and required some five thousand to be hospitalized. The founder, Asahara Shōkō, hoped to cause Armageddon to fulfill his

prophecy of the millennium. This group had no affiliation with any branch of Japanese Buddhism; it drew its main doctrines from Tibetan Buddhism mixed with the founder's eclectic readings in Christianity and Western millenarianism.

*See also:* Merit and Merit-making; Monasticism

### Bibliography

- Barua, Dipak Kumar. *An Analytical Study of Four Nikāyas*. Calcutta: Ribindra Bharati University, 1971.
- Beyer, Stephan. *The Cult of Tara: Magic and Ritual in Tibet*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1973.
- Brook, Timothy. *Praying for Power: Buddhism and the Formation of Gentry Society in Late-Ming China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1993.
- Bunnag, Jane. *Buddhist Monk, Buddhist Layman: A Study of Urban Monastic Organization in Central Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1973.
- Dutt, Nalinaksha. "Place of Laity in Early Buddhism." *Indian Historical Quarterly* 21 (1945): 163–183.
- Fuller, Ruth Sasaki; Iriya Yoshitake; and Fraser, Dana R.; trans. *The Recorded Sayings of Layman P'ang: A Ninth-Century Zen Classic*. New York: Weatherhill, 1971.
- Gombrich, Richard, and Bechert, Heinz, eds. *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1991.
- Hirakawa, Akira. *A History of Indian Buddhism: From Sakyamuni to Early Mahayana*, tr. Paul Groner. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Lancaster, Lewis, and Yu, C. S., eds. *Assimilation of Buddhism in Korea: Religious Maturity and Innovation in the Silla Dynasty*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.
- Malalgoda, Kitsiri. *Buddhism in Sinhalese Society 1750–1900: A Study of Religious Revival and Change*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1976.
- Samuels, Jeffrey. "Views of Householders and Lay Disciples in the *Sutta Piṭaka*: A Reconsideration of the Lay/Monastic Opposition." *Religion* 29 (1999): 235–238.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults of North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Buddhist Revival in China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1968.

HELEN HARDACRE

## LALITAVISTARA

The *Lalitavistara*, of late but uncertain date (ca. fourth century C.E.), is an important Sanskrit biography that recounts in both prose and verse the life of the Buddha from his preexistence in Tuṣita heaven to his first sermon at Sārnāth. Originally written in Sanskrit, it is Mahāyānist in its view of Śākyamuni, embellishing his life story with accounts of miracles and evidence of his supernatural nature.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

Bays, Gwendolyn, trans. *The Voice of the Buddha: The Beauty of Compassion*, 2 vols. Berkeley, CA: Dharma, 1983.

JOHN S. STRONG

## LAMA

A lama is a Tibetan Buddhist teacher. In the most narrow sense, the term *bla ma* (pronounced “lama”) refers to a lay or ordained religious instructor. It is also commonly used by Tibetans as a title for *tulku* (*sprul sku*), a reincarnated teacher. The prominent position of the lama in Tibetan Buddhism gave rise, first in China and then in the West, to the misnomer *Lamaism* to refer to Tibetan religion.

The term *bla ma* was one of countless neologisms invented by early Buddhist translators active in seventh- and eighth-century Tibet. It was coined to render the Sanskrit term *guru*, commonly glossed in India as “heavy,” in apparent reference to the great burden of good qualities and responsibilities the religious guide carries. The Tibetan word *bla* was already endowed with considerable religious weight, referring to the life-force or spirit of an individual or corporate entity, such as a family or a community. The *bla* is mobile, able to establish residence in numerous external places or objects called *bla gnas*, or “*bla* support.” Damage to the *bla gnas* is harmful, even fatal, to the person to whom it belongs. More perilous still is the ever-present danger that the *bla* might wander away or be stolen by demons, to the detriment of the person or group. Rituals are commonly performed to prevent the loss of the *bla* and call it back when it has departed.

*Bla* also carries the senses of “high,” “appropriate,” and “lord,” and was used to translate the Sanskrit terms *pati* (lord) and *ūrdhvam* (elevated). The second part of the word, *ma*, can be read as either a substantive marker, a negative particle, or “mother.” The multivalence of both syllables has led to near-countless etymologies of the term by Tibetan and Western exegetes alike, among them “highest” (literally, “none above”) and “exalted mother.”

The lama, incarnate or otherwise, occupies a central role in Tibetan Buddhism. This status can in part be attributed to the influence of tantric Buddhism. The tantric guru serves as the conduit for the teachings, transmitting secret instruction and rites through a series of initiations. The tantric practitioner is enjoined to view his or her guru as a buddha, more precious than any other BUDDHAS or BODHISATTVAS. Because of this the lama is considered in Tibet to be the fourth jewel, equal if not superior to the buddha, dharma, and SAṄGHA.

This exalted status is perhaps a reason for the invention of *Lamaism*, a term that has its roots in eighteenth-century China. Since the thirteenth century, powerful Tibetan lamas interacted with Mongol and Chinese imperial rulers, who referred to the lamas as *seng*, the term for Chinese monks. In the eighteenth century, however, the category of the Tibetan Buddhist master was differentiated from *seng* and transliterated as *lama*. This gave rise to the term *lama jiao*, the religion of *bla ma*, whence came the English *Lamaism*. The term was adopted by Western travelers and scholars of Tibet who routinely viewed Tibetan religion as a debased mingling of indigenous Tibetan animism with “pure” Indian Buddhism, and hence literally unworthy of being called Buddhism. Though usage persists, the term *Lamaism* is considered offensive by Tibetans and is by and large dropping out of circulation.

### Bibliography

Lessing, Ferdinand. “Calling the Soul: A Lamaist Ritual.” *Semitic Philology* 11 (1951): 263–284.

Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *Prisoners of Shangri-La: Tibetan Buddhism and the West*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.

Nebesky-Wojtkowitz, Réne de. *Oracles and Demons: The Cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*. Kathmandu, Nepal: Book Faith India, 1993.

Sperling, Elliot. “The Fifth Karma-pa and Some Aspects of the Relationship between Tibet and the Early Ming.” In *Tibetan Studies in Honour of Hugh Richardson: Proceedings of the In-*

ternational Seminar on Tibetan Studies, ed. Michael Aris and Aung San Suu Kyi. Warminster, UK: Aris and Phillips, 1980.

Tseten Zhabdrung. "Research on the Nomenclature of the Buddhist Schools in Tibet," tr. Tenzin Dorjee. *Tibet Journal* 11, no. 3 (1986): 40–50.

ALEXANDER GARDNER

## LANGUAGE, BUDDHIST PHILOSOPHY OF

The earliest Buddhist discussions of language are found in the canonical literature, where the principal focus is on the correct use of speech. In *Majjhimanikāya* (*Middle Length Discourses*) 58, for example, the Buddha advises his followers to consider before they speak whether what they are about to say is factual, true, beneficial, endearing, and agreeable to others. If what one was thinking of saying is false or harmful, then one should not say it at all. If it is true and beneficial but is likely to be unpleasant to the hearer, then one should wait for a suitable occasion to say it. Even if what one has an urge to say meets all those criteria, one should still wait for the correct time to say it. Being mindful of one's speech is said in that canonical text to be a natural manifestation of kindness and sympathy for others.

As Buddhist scholasticism developed in India, scholastics became increasingly occupied with criticizing non-Buddhist schools and defending Buddhism against criticisms made by non-Buddhists. Among the many topics that were debated by scholastics, one of the most important was the issue of the authority of scriptures. It was in the context of discussing this issue that most of the Buddhist reflections on the nature of language occurred.

In such Pāli canonical sources as the *Suttanipāta*, the Buddha is portrayed as telling his followers that the Vedas had been composed by unscrupulous Brahman priests who were intent on duping people into hiring them to perform expensive religious rituals. In defending the authority of the Vedas against Buddhists and other critics, scholastics within the Brahmanical tradition devised two different and mutually incompatible strategies. The first strategy consisted in attributing the Vedic texts to God. The argument was that God, being omniscient and benevolent, could neither deceive nor be deceived, and therefore every text composed by him is necessarily reliable. The second strategy consisted in claiming that the Vedic texts had

never been composed by anyone and were therefore eternal. The argument here was that errors occur in texts only because of the limited knowledge and integrity of imperfect authors. But if a text has no author at all, then it has no author whose limitations are liable to introduce errors into the text. An authorless text is therefore error-free and hence perfectly reliable. Both of these Brahmanical strategies involved claiming that the language of the Vedic texts was different from any ordinary human language. Various features of the Vedic form of Sanskrit were adduced as evidence that Vedic Sanskrit was eternal and unevolving and that it was the ultimate source of all human languages, which could therefore all be seen as corrupted versions of the pristine Sanskrit language. Moreover, it was claimed that the relationship between a Sanskrit word and the object that it denotes is eternally fixed. The Sanskrit name for any object is the object's true name; its name in any other language was merely a matter of human convention and convenience. The Brahmanical writer Bhartṛhari (fifth century), against whose views several Buddhist scholastics articulated their views on language, argued that knowledge from the Veda surpassed both personal experience and reasoning, since both empirical investigation and logic are limited to the particular limitations of the individual, while the Veda has none of these human limitations.

Disagreeing with the Brahmanical view that Sanskrit has a privileged place among all languages and is the only legitimate language for rituals, the Buddha strongly advised that dharma teachers should communicate in the vernacular language of their audience. No language is intrinsically more pure or expressive than any other; a language is expressive only if it is understood by both the speaker and the hearer.

Among the first of the Buddhist scholastics to argue extensively against the Brahmanical tradition on issues of language was DIGNĀGA (fl. ca. 500 C.E.). Dignāga's principal claim was that all language is nothing more than a system of signs governed by conventional rules that are established by the consensus of the language-using community. Since language consists of signs, the interpretation of language is nothing but a special application of inference. In much the same way that the observation of a column of smoke could be taken as a sign that fire is burning somewhere, the spoken or written word *fire* can be seen as a sign that the person who uses it is thinking something about fire.

Two important claims about language follow from the claim that linguistic interpretation is a species of inference. First, it follows that since all inference is fallible, any knowledge communicated through any language is also fallible. Second, it follows that since the knowledge gained through inference is much more vague and imprecise than knowledge gained through direct experience, linguistically communicated knowledge is much less precise and of lower practical value than knowledge gained through direct experience. This means that any body of scripture, whether the Veda or the canonical literature of Buddhism, is of limited value. Only personal experience can be fully trusted. DHARMAKĪRTI (ca. 600–ca. 660) and other Buddhists who followed Dignāga argued that what made Buddhist canonical literature valuable was that it contained advice that, when followed properly, would help people reduce the amount of suffering that they experience in the world. Buddhist canonical sources, in other words, were seen as valuable not because they tell the truth, as the Brahmins claimed the Vedas do, but because they suggest methods by which people may discover the truth for themselves.

Although Indian Buddhist apologists were critical of many Brahmanical views concerning language, one belief that was never questioned was that MANTRAS had the power to heal and achieve various other results in the physical world. The Buddha forbade monks uttering mantras for material gain, but he also forbade monks the practice of MEDICINE for profit. The warning against mantras was therefore only against the Brahmanical practice of reciting them for material reward. Philosophers such as Dharmakīrti and his followers, while being opposed to the recitation of mantras for personal rewards, expressed their conviction that mantras have the power to alter conditions in the material world and thus must be used with discretion and compassion.

*See also:* **Buddhavacana (Word of the Buddha); Dhāraṇī; Languages; Logic**

#### *Bibliography*

- Ganeri, Jonardon. *Philosophy in Classical India*. London: Routledge, 2001.
- Hayes, Richard P. *Dignāga on the Interpretation of Signs*. Boston and Dordrecht, Netherlands: Kluwer, 1988.
- Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Scripture, Logic, and Language: Essays on Dharmakīrti and His Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.

RICHARD P. HAYES

## LANGUAGES

As it spread throughout Asia, Buddhism succeeded in crossing a remarkable number of linguistic boundaries, in some cases being transposed into languages very different from those spoken in India. Its doctrines came to be presented orally in numerous languages and dialects, and its canonical literature, once written down, was translated into over a dozen languages even in premodern times. Since the historical sources do not permit scholars to identify all the languages used for oral presentations of the teaching, the following entry will focus on written expressions, considering oral transmission during only the early period of Indian Buddhism.

Whether any words of the Buddha are preserved in his own tongue is a matter of dispute. The THERAVĀDA claims that Pāli, the Middle Indian language used by that school for its scriptures, was the language of the Buddha. Modern research, however, has convincingly shown Pāli to be a western, or rather a west-central, dialect of Middle Indian, while the Buddha himself must have spoken an eastern dialect, most probably Old Māgadhī, the local language of the area in which he wandered, or perhaps some form of “Gangetic koine.” Not a single utterance of the Buddha is preserved in that language, but certain words and forms in the Pāli canon reveal traces of a transposition from the eastern into the western dialect. Therefore it is safe to assume that during the early phases of its transmission, the word of the Buddha was transposed into local dialects wherever Buddhist monks traveled and taught.

The Buddha himself is said to have regulated the use of languages or dialects for the spread of his teaching. According to a difficult passage preserved in various vinayas, two monks, both former brahmins, asked the Buddha for permission to redact the teaching in a form corresponding to (Vedic) Sanskrit in order to avoid corruptions. The Buddha, however, declined the request and apparently ordered that everybody should transmit his teaching in their own (spoken) language. This passage is generally understood as permitting the use of the various vernaculars for the spread of the doctrine; it is consistent with the exoteric nature of Buddhism and its basic intention of making its doctrines accessible to everybody, in deliberate contrast to brahminical restrictions.

It is questionable whether any kind of Urkanon took shape during the lifetime of the Buddha or soon after.

Initially, preservation of the teachings with their wording unaltered was not considered a necessary criterion of authenticity, and this contributed greatly to fostering linguistic diversity and spreading the teaching as Buddhism left its homeland in the Ganges plain. The texts that had hitherto been transmitted orally were then transposed into other more or less supraregional Middle Indian dialects to facilitate understanding and wider dissemination. At present we know of only two, Pāli and Gāndhārī, Pāli being a western dialect, whereas Gāndhārī was widely used in the northwestern part of the subcontinent and, with the growth of the Kushan empire, in Bactria and Central Asia. Pāli became the canonical language of the Theravāda school, and Gāndhārī that of the DHARMAGUPTAKA. Considerably later sources mention other Prakrits used by various schools, namely Paiśācī, Apabhraṃśa, and Madhyoddeśika. Apabhraṃśa is assigned to the Saṃmatīyas or to the Sthaviras, and Madhyoddeśika to either the Sthaviras or the MAHĀSĀṆGHĪKA SCHOOL.

All schools must at first have transmitted their canonical texts in Prakrit. Some of them, like the Theravāda, retained their Middle Indian language, while others participated in the so-called Sanskrit renaissance and started to Sanskritize their received literature. Sanskritization was apparently a gradual process permitting schools that were spread over a vast area to undergo different regional developments. The literature of the (Mūla-)Sarvāstivāda is preserved only in Buddhist Sanskrit, but its older layers reveal many traces of the underlying Prakrit. Surviving fragments suggest that the Dharmaguptakas also took part in the process of Sanskritization, at least in Central Asia. The growing number of fragments found in Afghanistan since 1994 supports the view that the Mahāsāṅghikas, and especially the Lokottaravāda, used a specific mixture of Prakrit and Sanskrit that may be termed Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit in the true sense, and which was probably referred to as Madhyoddeśika (intermediate recitation), a term not yet fully understood.

### Retention or translation

When Buddhism began to spread beyond the Indian subcontinent, missionaries and local followers were confronted with the problem of how to communicate the teaching, the rituals, and the literature in a totally different linguistic environment. Basically, two possibilities offered themselves: to preserve the Indian language used so far, or to translate into the local language. Preserving the Indian original offered practitioners several advantages, among them a sense of

the sacredness of oral and written texts derived from their use of the holy language supposedly spoken in the homeland of the Buddha or even by the Buddha himself; continuing access to other Indian sources; and, very importantly, unambiguousness in terminological matters. It also provided a useful common currency in a multiethnic and multilingual environment, no small issue when a Buddhist missionary movement came to be supported by the ruling powers for its unifying potential. On the other hand, Indian languages would have been incomprehensible to most followers outside India and a deterrent to prospective converts, especially in areas where non-Indo-European languages were spoken. This unintelligibility would have facilitated their readiness to exchange the Indian original for a more suitable vernacular, even if it necessitated the gargantuan task of finding at least approximate equivalents in the target language for difficult Indian Buddhist terminology. Discussions preserved in several Chinese and Tibetan treatises clearly show that some translators were well aware of the methodological, philological, and cultural problems involved in the translation process; their reflections on these problems resulted in attempts to establish guidelines for bridging the linguistic and cultural divide.

In the course of history both these possibilities—retention of the Indian original and translation into the vernacular—were employed, sometimes side by side. Several times the vernacular chosen for translation became itself a transregional “church” language (i.e., the idiom used for canonical scriptures and liturgical purposes) when its specific form of Buddhism crossed further linguistic borders, as in the case of Chinese and Tibetan. Although no Buddhist tradition developed prescriptions for or against the use of a specific language, in most cases one observes a slowly but steadily increasing tendency to regard the language of the written canonical texts as sacred, and this greatly reduced the original openness to linguistic changes characteristic of the early period of oral transmission in India. Wherever the language of the canonical literature was not identical with the vernacular, sooner or later the vernacular came to be used for the production of a sometimes very rich noncanonical Buddhist literature consisting of commentaries, story collections, manuals, poetry, devotional texts, and the like, and sometimes this led to the development of a new literary language in its own right. Examples are the use of Newari, Tamil, and Old Javanese alongside Sanskrit, and Thai, Japanese, and Mongolian alongside Pāli, Chinese, and Tibetan, respectively.

**Central Asia.** A most interesting case exemplifying the various possibilities is Central Asia, where various forms of Buddhism coexisted during the second half of the first millennium. First, there were some ethnic groups, notably speakers of the two dialects of Tocharian (the easternmost form of western Indo-European), of the two Saka dialects, Tumshuq and Khotanese (Middle Iranian), and of Uigur (a Turkish language), who continued to use Sanskrit as their “church” language, but also translated scriptures into their vernacular and composed their own Buddhist texts. That these ethnic groups transmitted scriptures in Sanskrit is proven by the existence of a considerable number of bilingual manuscripts and texts, manuscripts where glosses in one of the local languages are added to a Sanskrit text between the lines, as well as texts, at least in the case of the Tocharians and Uigurs, where the Sanskrit original and the vernacular translation alternate word by word or sentence by sentence in the same line. Second, there were the Chinese and the Tibetans, both of whom translated Buddhist literature into their own languages from the very beginning of missionary activity in their countries. Finally, there is the specific case of the Sogdians, speakers of another Middle Iranian language, whose merchants must have been instrumental in spreading Indian Buddhism and its literature from the Kushan empire to China. When they started in the second half of the first millennium to translate Buddhist texts into Sogdian, they did so from Chinese translations of Indian originals. All this can be gleaned from Central Asian manuscript finds, and specifically from the walled-up library in DUNHUANG, where texts in all these different languages were found side by side.

According to Jan Nattier no translation of an Indian Buddhist text into a vernacular is found west of Kashgar, the westernmost town in the Tarim basin. So far, recent manuscript finds in Afghanistan confirm her view, since nearly all the texts are written in Indian languages. There is only one exception—a Buddhist text in Bactrian, yet another Middle Iranian language, but at present it is not clear whether it is a translation or a ritual text written in the vernacular for a specific purpose.

**China and East Asia.** As soon as Buddhism reached China it proved necessary to translate its texts into Chinese. One reason for this must have been the extreme grammatical and phonetic differences between Indian languages and Chinese; another reason was the sheer foreignness of Buddhism to the Chinese, whose highly sophisticated and literary culture was distinguished by

rather different value systems and aesthetic perceptions. Translation techniques went through various models and periods, starting with the second-century translator AN SHIGAO, who made extensive use of the vocabulary and other features of the spoken language. This tendency to incorporate vernacular elements was followed by a period that was characterized by an attempt to employ Daoist vocabulary to express Buddhist terms and ideas, and to write in a more literary mode. A new standard was set during the fifth century when the famous translator KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413) introduced the translation bureau, a team of Chinese and foreign specialists who, usually under state patronage, jointly took care of the various steps involved in the translation process. Similar institutions were set up several times in the history of Central and East Asian Buddhism—for example, in Tibet during its imperial age, and later in Central Asia and China for the translations of the Tangut, Mongol, and Manchu versions of the *tripitaka*.

As Chinese culture became paradigmatic throughout East Asia, Buddhism went along with it. In its Sinitic form, Buddhism spread to Korea, Japan, and Vietnam, and literary Chinese became the “church” language of Buddhist literature throughout East Asia. In Central Asia, as mentioned above, Chinese translations served as the basis for all the translations into Sogdian, but also for many into Uigur and some into Tibetan. Between the eleventh and thirteenth centuries, a considerable number of translations—first of Chinese, then also of Tibetan translations of Buddhist texts—were further translated into Tangut or Xixia, another Sino-Tibetan language used in the Tangut empire northwest of China, before its destruction by Genghis Khan.

**Tibet and Mongolia.** Buddhism reached Tibet around the seventh century. From the very beginning, apparently, texts were translated into the vernacular, but they did not encounter an existing literary heritage as they had in China; indeed the traditional sources inform us that the Tibetan script was created specifically to translate Buddhist materials. A few of the early translations are preserved. Their grammar is often awkward, if not contrary to Tibetan usage, because of their attempt to reproduce the word order of the Indian original, and different Tibetan words are employed to express the same Buddhist term. Another difference from the situation in China concerned the role of Buddhism in Tibet: It appears that from the beginning Buddhism served domestic political purposes

and received considerable support from the royal court. This close relationship with royal power led at the beginning of the ninth century to a singular event in the translation history of Buddhist literature. With a view to setting general standards for translation methods and producing renditions intelligible to everybody, the king issued a decree laying down compulsory rules for translators. To implement the decree, a royal translation bureau published a list of about ninety-five hundred Sanskrit technical terms and their standard Tibetan equivalents, together with a treatise explaining the translation of some four hundred Buddhist terms. After that, fresh translations were made and the older ones revised according to these new rules, which continued to be observed after the fall of the royal dynasty in the mid-ninth century until the end of the translation period in the fifteenth century. This led to a unique phenomenon in the Buddhist world: The language of nearly all Tibetan translations is extremely standardized and, usually without violating the rules of Tibetan grammar, faithful to the Sanskrit originals to a degree never again reached in any other language used for translating Buddhist texts.

Like Buddhist Chinese for East Asia, Classical Tibetan became the “church” language for much of Central Asia. In the final period of their Buddhist tradition, the Uigurs translated several works from Tibetan. After the Mongols arrived in the domain of Tibetan Buddhism in the sixteenth century, Tibetan texts were continuously translated into Mongolian. During the eighteenth century Chinese emperors even supported complete Mongolian translations of the Bka’ ’gyur (Kanjur) and Bstan ’gyur (Tanjur), the two collections of canonical translations in Tibetan. Mongolian lamas wrote works in Mongolian, but Mongolian never succeeded in replacing Tibetan as the prime language for ritual and literature. From Inner Mongolia in the east to Buryatia and the Kalmyk steppe in the west, Mongols continued to study Buddhism in Tibetan. As in the case of the Mongolians, in the eighteenth century the Chinese Qianlong emperor, whose dynasty was of Manchu origin, sponsored the translation of canonical texts into Manchu. Although these translations were made from Chinese recensions, the collection was then styled Bka’ ’gyur after the Tibetan model. However, this enormous effort was primarily a political gesture and, unlike the Mongolian case, did not lead to Buddhist literary activity in Manchu.

**South and Southeast Asia.** Wherever Buddhism spread in South and Southeast Asia, its canonical lit-

erature was not transposed into the many vernaculars, but remained Indian. Depending on the background of the missionaries involved, it continued to be transmitted in either Pāli or Sanskrit. Although the canon of the Theravāda came to be written in many different scripts, such as Sinhalese, Burmese, Thai, and Khmer, its language until modern times was always Pāli, and Pāli remained the medium of Buddhist ritual and scholarship in Sri Lanka and in all the Theravāda countries of Southeast Asia. Individual texts of the canon, however, were translated into various vernaculars (Burmese, Khmer, Lanna Thai, Mon, Thai) from the eleventh century onward, and in these and several other vernaculars (Arakanese, Lao, Shan, Tai Khun, Tai Lue), rich indigenous Buddhist literatures were created. Sanskrit was used by other traditions of Buddhism, most of them following MAHĀYĀNA or even Tantrayāna doctrines, in Burma, Laos, and Cambodia before the arrival of Theravāda, and in Java and Bali.

### Modern vernaculars

All this has changed dramatically during the last 150 years. In the West, scholarly studies of Buddhism began around the middle of the nineteenth century, when the first canonical texts were translated into Western languages. Somewhat later, scholars in countries throughout Asia started systematically to translate texts from their “church” languages into the modern vernaculars, especially when this entailed a shift between two different language families. As a result, one can hardly find a literary language in today’s world, with the possible exception of Africa, that has not been used for translating Buddhist texts, and it would also be fair to say that English has now overtaken Chinese as the most frequently used medium for the spread of Buddhist ideas and literature.

*See also:* **Buddhist Studies; Canon; Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in; Language, Buddhist Philosophy of; Newari, Buddhist Literature in; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in; Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Bechert, Heinz, ed. *The Language of the Earliest Buddhist Tradition*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1980.
- Grönbold, Günter. *Der buddhistische Kanon: Eine Bibliographie*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1984.



- Hinüber, Oskar von. "Origin and Varieties of Buddhist Sanskrit." In *Dialectes dans les littératures Indo-Aryennes*, ed. Colette Caillat. Paris: Collège de France, 1989.
- Jong, J. W. de. "Buddha's Word in China." *East Asian History* 11 (1996): 45–58.
- Link, Arthur E. "The Earliest Chinese Account of the Compilation of the Tripiṭaka." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 81 (1961): 87–103, 281–299 (esp. 283–292).
- McDaniel, Justin. "The Curricular Canon in Northern Thailand and Laos." *Manusya: Journal of Humanities* 4 (2002): 20–59.
- Meier, F. J. "Probleme der chinesischen Übersetzer des buddhistischen Kanons." *Oriens Extremus* 19 (1972): 41–46.
- Nattier, Jan. "Church Language and Vernacular Language in Central Asian Buddhism." *Numen* 37 (1990): 195–219.
- Norman, K. R. "The Languages of Early Buddhism." In *Premier Colloque Étienne Lamotte: Bruxelles et Liège 24–27 septembre 1989*. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut orientaliste, 1993.
- Röhrborn, Klaus, and Veenker, Wolfgang, eds. *Sprachen des Buddhismus in Zentralasien: Vorträge des Hamburger Symposions vom 2. Juli bis 5. Juli 1981*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1983.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. "On Translating the Buddhist Canon." *Studies in Indo-Asian Art and Culture*, ed. Perala Ratnam. New Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1974.

JENS-UWE HARTMANN

## LAṆKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA

The *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra* (*Discourse on the Descent into Laṅka*) is a text in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, probably composed sometime around the fourth century C.E., that purports to be a teaching given by the Buddha on the island of Sri Lanka. The sūtra discusses a number of important Mahāyāna doctrines, including the non-difference of identity between SAṂSĀRA (or the cycle of REBIRTH) and NIRVĀNA, and includes an entire chapter devoted to a denunciation of meat-eating. Its organization and presentation are haphazard, which has led a number of scholars to conclude that it is a compendium of heterogeneous materials that saw significant later interpolation. There are three extant Chinese (*Lengqie abadolo bao jing*) and two Tibetan (*Lang Kar gShegs pa'i mdo*) translations of the text, and one Sanskrit manuscript from Nepal, which was used by Bunyū Nanjio in 1923 to construct a critical edition.

The *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra* is often associated with the Indian Yogācāra tradition because it discusses a number of basic doctrines associated with it, such as the

storehouse consciousness (ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA), the womb of the tathāgata (TATHĀGATAGARBHA), and mind-only (*cittamātra*). However, the *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra* is not mentioned in the works of Yogācāra "founders" ASAṅGA (ca. 320–ca. 390) or VASUBANDHU (fourth century C.E.). It was far more influential in East Asia, and it played a prominent role in the development of the Chan tradition. Its importance in East Asia is attested by the fact that there are fifteen Chinese commentaries on it, the most important of which is by FAZANG (643–712). It is also one of the nine core Mahāyāna texts (Navagrantha) of Newari Buddhism in Nepal.

See also: **Chan School; Yogācāra School**

### Bibliography

- Sutton, Florin G. *Existence and Enlightenment in the Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra: A Study in the Ontology and Epistemology of the Yogācāra School of Mahāyāna Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.
- Suzuki, Daisetz T., trans. *The Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra* (1932). Reprint, Boulder, CO: Prajñā Press, 1978.

JOHN POWERS

## LAOS

The primary sources for the history of Buddhism in Laos are texts, such as palm leaf and mulberry leaf manuscripts, stone and metal inscriptions, traveler's reports, and printed materials. These sources, which are held in monastic, governmental, and royal archives, provide information on Lao Buddhism from only the fourteenth century and after, and many have yet to receive scholarly scrutiny. A survey of the information gleaned from these sources reveals the story of Buddhism in Laos to be a fragmented and contested history of royal patronage and governmental reform, as well as a creative engagement between local, indigenous beliefs and a translocal religion. As the various kingdoms of what became Laos emerged as regional centers of power and wealth, Buddhism helped construct Lao identity. In turn, royal reform, rituals, beliefs, aspirations, and vehicles of expression reconstituted Lao Buddhism.

Texts and inscriptions reflect the fragmented and, for lack of a better word, syncretic, nature of the early history of Lao Buddhism. Generally, the most common texts found in Laos before the twentieth century

are *nithāns* (folktales such as *Thao Hung Thao Chuang*, *Sin Xai*, *Om Lom Dang Kieo*), *anisaṃsas* (blessings used in Buddhist ritual and magical ceremonies), *parittas* (incantations for protection), *xalongs* (ceremonial instructions for both lay and religious ceremonies), apocryphal *JĀTAKA* (noncanonical birth stories of the Buddha), *nissayas* (creative glosses and commentaries of Pāli texts), and *tamnāns* (relic, image, and monastery histories). *Xalongs*, *anisaṃsas*, and *parittas* are used in everyday house, buffalo, monastery, and bodily blessings; they are also used when making love potions and protective tattoos. The *tamnāns* show the heavy Buddhist influence in the governmental, economic, and military history of Laos. *Nithāns* and apocryphal *jātakas* are intricate and entertaining stories of heroism, romance, and adventure that were (and are) often narrated at religious events or life-cycle rituals, such as funerals, and at the end of the rains retreat. *Nithāns* and apocryphal *jātakas* were also the basis for monastic education and public sermons. What should be emphasized is that Pāli canonical texts are often in the minority in these collections. Translocal Buddhist narratives and philosophical texts have been commented on and adapted by local Lao teachers, and these commentaries and adaptations are much more popular in Laos than their source texts from India and Sri Lanka.

Although they have yet to be fully surveyed, read, and catalogued, Lao Buddhist inscriptions, particularly votive inscriptions, generally provide evidence of royal or wealthy lay patronage of certain monasteries. They also reflect the great influence that Northern Thailand and, after 1560, Burma (Myanmar) had on the practice of Buddhism in Laos. One inscription from Dansai (formerly part of the Lao Kingdom of Lān Xāng, but part of Thailand since the mid-nineteenth century) tells of Buddhist monks accompanying the king to a political meeting with the king of AYUTTHAYA. Another inscription from Wiengjan (the present capital of Laos) suggests that there were many monks from Chiang Mai (Northern Thailand) in the region, which would account for similarities in Lao and Northern Thai Buddhist and secular literature composed between 1480 to 1620.

King Phōthisālarāt (r. 1520–1547) was probably the most active patron of Buddhism and Buddhist literature in Laos. It is Phōthisālarāt and his son Xētthāthirāt (r. 1548–1571) who were responsible for the creation of most of the extant sources of Lao Buddhist history. Phōthisālarāt actively tried to “purify” Lao Buddhism by banning magical practices and the wor-

shipping of *phī* (ghosts) and *phrabhūm* (local deities of trees, rocks, waterfalls, etc.). However, modern rituals like the *riek kwan*, *phūk heuan*, and *bun bang fai* in various parts of Laos show the limited success of his reforms; all of these rituals combine the worship and propitiation of *phī* and *phrabhūm* by Buddhist monks with the chanting of Buddhist MANTRAS. The practice of drawing magical diagrams (*yantras*) by monks and lay experts has also been popular since at least the fifteenth century and involves the mixing of Buddhist prayers with aspirations to be lucky in love, finance, and the avoidance of attacks by knives, guns, and poison.

Laos did not have a printing press until the French colonial period (ca. 1893–1954) and only recently has there been a regular printing of religious books in Lao. These books cover a wide range of subjects, but generally resemble their palm and mulberry leaf manuscript predecessors. Still, whether it be printed books, inscriptions, or manuscripts, the textual sources resist easy classification and cannot be used to provide a clear, linear history of Buddhism in Laos. However, this should not suggest that Lao scholars from the fourteenth century to the present did not attempt to write (or perhaps preserve orally) historical chronicles. There are several extant royal and religious chronicles, the most famous being the *Nithān Khun Borom* (*The Story of Khun Borom*). These chronicles tell of the introduction of Buddhism into Laos under King Fā Ngum (r. 1353–1374) in the mid-fourteenth century; the growth and reform of Buddhism under King Xētthāthirāt in the late sixteenth century; the movement of monks, scribes, artisans, and so on from Chiang Mai to Laos after the Burmese invasion of the former in the 1560s; the patronage and building of numerous monasteries under King Surinyavong (r. 1638–1695); the burning of the Sisaket Monastery and the theft of the Emerald Buddha by the Siamese (Thai) in the late eighteenth century; the building of numerous monasteries and the reunification of the three kingdoms of Laos (Luang Pabang, Wiengjan, and Champasak) by King Ānuwong (r. 1804–1828) and the subsequent burning of the Wiengjan by the forces of Siam in 1827. Still, these chronicles, like Western and local modern historical reconstructions written in the twentieth century, generally sacrifice accuracy to clarity, covering over the variety of Buddhist beliefs and practices with a sheen of unity and linearity.

In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, travelers’ reports provide information about the history of Buddhist practice among the general population,



Monks circumambulate the Phra That Luang stūpa during an annual ceremony in Vientiane, Laos. © Nik Wheeler/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

information that is lacking in royal chronicles, protective chants, and relic and monastery histories. Travelers' reports confirm the validity of some of the rituals described in folktales and epic poems. The multivolume collection by members of the Mission Pavie (1879–1895) and the work of Karl Izikowitz in the 1930s discuss how local animistic practices of the Hmong, Sedang, Moi, and other Lao hill tribes became mixed with Buddhist practices. These sources also describe how monks took on the roles of magicians, appeasers of local deities, doctors, and secular and religious teachers in Lao villages. Still, aside from these reports and many others, a comprehensive study of how Buddhism and indigenous Lao religions have interacted remains a desideratum.

After almost a century of war and foreign occupation, the independent People's Democratic Republic of Laos emerged in 1975. Its Marxist government has allowed the practice of Buddhism to flourish and has even enlisted Buddhist monks to serve as political ad-

vocates who hold up the communist ideals of generosity, community cooperation, and equality among the classes. The Lao government has encouraged greater involvement of monks in community development and secular education by sponsoring the Union of Lao Buddhists and other Buddhist/Communist organizations, while discouraging monks' practice of traditional healing rituals, exorcism, and prophecy, and discouraging them from using the monkhood to avoid military and government service. The Lao government has also attempted to limit lay donations (in order to gain merit for a favorable rebirth) to monasteries, even though this practice has been the foundation of lay/monk interaction for the entire history of Lao Buddhism. Still, like the efforts of King Phōthisālarāt and King Ānurvong to reform Buddhism, these government policies have mostly been quietly ignored, and although monks have played a greater role in secular education since 1975, the unique and syncretic practices of Lao Buddhists that the sources evince persist and even flourish among both the urban and rural populations.

*See also:* Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

#### Bibliography

- Archaimbault, Charles. "Religious Structures in Laos." *Journal of the Siam Society* 52, no. 1 (1964): 57–74.
- Archaimbault, Charles. *Structures religieuses Lao (Rites et Mythes)*. Vientiane, Laos: Vithagna, 1973.
- de Berval, René, ed. *Kingdom of Laos: The Land of the Million Elephants and of the White Parasol*, tr. Teissier du Cros and others. Saigon, Vietnam: France-Asie, 1959.
- Bizot, François. *La pureté par les mots*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1996.
- Coedes, George. "Documents sur l'histoire politique et religieuse du Laos occidental." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 25, nos. 1–2 (1925): 1–202.
- Finot, Louis. "Recherches sur la littérature Laotienne." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 17, no. 5 (1917): 1–218.
- Lévy, Paul. "Les traces de l'introduction de Bouddhisme à Louang Prabang." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 40 (1940): 411–424.
- Ngaosrivathana, Mayoury, and Breazeale, Kennon, eds. *Breaking New Ground in Lao History: Essays on the Seventh to Twentieth Centuries*. Chiang Mai, Thailand: Silkworm, 2002.
- Nhouy, Abhay. *Aspects du Pays Lao*. Vientiane, Laos: Editions comite litteraire lao, 1956.

- Pavie, Auguste. *Recherches sur l'histoire de Cambodge, du Laos, et du Siam*. Paris: E. Leroux, 1898.
- Peltier, Anatole-Roge. "Les littératures Lao du Lan Na, du Lan Xang, de Keng Tung et Sip Song Panna." *Peninsule* 21 (1990): 29–44.
- Reynolds, Frank. "Ritual and Social Hierarchy: An Aspect of Traditional Religion in Buddhist Laos." *History of Religions* 9 (1969): 78–89.
- Saddhatissa, H. "Pāli Literature from Laos." In *Studies in Pāli and Buddhism: A Memorial Volume in Honor of Bhikkhu Jagdish Kashyap*, ed. A. K. Narain and Leonard Zwillig. Delhi: B. R. Pub. Corp., 1979.
- Stuart-Fox, Martin. *A History of Laos*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1997.
- Stuart-Fox, Martin. *The Lao Kingdom of Lan Xang: Rise and Decline*. Bangkok, Thailand: White Lotus Press, 1998.

JUSTIN MCDANIEL

LAOS, BUDDHIST ART IN. See *Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in*

## LAW AND BUDDHISM

Comparative jurisprudence divides legal systems into families or types based on cultural and historical origins. Buddhist law is the most recent entrant into the category of religious legal systems, a category that includes Islamic law, biblical law, Hindu law, and Talmudic law. The development of Buddhist law as a disciplinary subject has been slow because of the lack of a single unifying religious language or script and Buddhism's wide cultural dispersal throughout Asia. Scholars have also presumed that Buddhism did not have an obvious relationship to secular legal systems because of its distinction between lay and monastic populations and its tolerant, as opposed to mutually exclusive, approach to local religions and politics. More recent studies, however, have demonstrated that the influence of Buddhism on law and political systems has been profound.

There are at least four ways in which Buddhism interacts with law. First, Buddhism itself incorporates a monastic law code, the *VINAYA*, and special disciplinary procedures for the monastic population. This code has been analyzed extensively and functions as a template for secular rules. Second, some regions have created Buddhist states following the example of

AŚOKA, an early Buddhist political leader. Sri Lanka, Bhutan, and Thailand are current examples. Third, Buddhism has been a significant social force in shaping the cultural attitudes toward law and the legal system in many Asian countries that are not Buddhist states. The time period and the local context from which Buddhism was exported to the country, as well as the local context into which it has been adopted, are all important factors. Fourth, when the local population reasons through the lens of Buddhism, the legal system can be significantly affected. The form of reasoning and the backdrop of the *vinaya* rules, as well as the foundational principles of Buddhism, such as KARMA (ACTION), ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), causation, factorial reasoning, and right action, can all strongly affect a legal system.

The origins of internal Buddhist monastic law are clear. After his enlightenment, Śākyamuni Buddha began to collect a group of disciples who followed his teachings. As part of the process of institutional definition, he made hundreds of casuistic determinations about the proper behavior, clothing, and speech of individuals, and he shaped the collective rituals of the SAṄGHA. The *Suttavihaṅga* section of the *vinaya* describes these early legal decisions. There are no similar legal decisions for the LAITY. In the *vinaya*, the most serious offenses (*pārājika*) for a monk—killing, stealing, having sex, or misrepresenting one's meditative powers—result in expulsion from the order. Nuns have an additional four *pārājika*. The PRĀTIMOKṢA, a list of over two hundred PRECEPTS for monks, and over three hundred for nuns, is recited twice a month by the members of every saṅgha to remind them of the guidelines for their society. The procedures and rules of the internal legal systems of monasteries and nunneries are based on the *vinaya*, with a formal meeting of the full saṅgha serving the authoritative decision-making body. Legal positivists argue that a religious entity is not a state authority and that ostracism from a group is not a true legal sanction, so the *vinaya* system cannot be considered a legal system. But this analysis is based on the misconception that law operates only in nation-state command systems and that the authority function in Buddhism is fulfilled by a divinity rather than the Buddha's designated successor, the saṅgha.

Several regions have followed the path of the third-century B.C.E. Magadhan emperor Aśoka by establishing Buddhist states based on received scripts, Buddhist scriptures, and the idea of the compassionate cakravartin (wheel-turning king). Such Buddhist-inspired law codes and jurisprudential cultures evolved

in Sri Lanka, Burma (Myanmar), and Tibet. In Sri Lanka, for example, the arrival in the third century B.C.E. of Indian monks brought the oral tradition of the Pāli canon to the island. Combining the ideologies of race, religion, and region, Buddhist states governed much of the island until 1818, when the Kandyan monarchy was finally overthrown by the British.

Although Buddhism may have entered Southeast Asia as early as the time of Aśoka, King Anawrata was the first to unify Burma into a Buddhist state in the eleventh century. The king and monks of the capital city of Pagan combined the *Pāli Vinaya* with Hindu law and Buddhist treatises to create the *dharmasat* and *rājasat* secular law codes, which spread in the ensuing centuries across what is now Burma, Thailand, Cambodia, and Laos. In Tibet, the first king to be influenced by Buddhism was Srong bstan sgam po, who, in the seventh century C.E., sent his minister to Gandhāra to develop a written script and bring back Buddhist texts. Buddhism became the state religion in Tibet in the eighth century and strongly influenced the local legal rules already in place from the period of the earliest kings. For example, the Ganden Phodrang law code of the Dalai Lamas, written in the seventeenth century, is a secular law code of customary practices filled with Buddhist reasoning, such as factorial analysis, consensus, uniqueness of cases, motivation, and veracity tests.

Buddhism has been a significant factor, although not usually the sole or even the central influence, in the legal structure of many Asian countries. Buddhism entered these regions at different historical points and through various sources. For example, Japan first received Buddhist monks, texts, and images from Korea, and although Prince SHŌTOKU promoted Buddhism as the state religion at the end of the sixth century, the Confucian and Daoist traditions of East Asia always accompanied and, some would argue, superseded, Buddhism's effect on the legal system of Japan. At the end of the Tokugawa period (1603–1868), Buddhism in Japan was also overshadowed by the indigenous Shintō religion and worship of the emperor. In Mongolia, Buddhism was adopted in the thirteenth century into a country that already had a strong legal administrative system based on the Zasag law code of Genghis Khan. Vietnam had state patronage of several different forms of MAHĀYĀNA and THERAVĀDA Buddhism competing with Hinduism from the tenth century, but after the fifteenth century, the state ideology of Confucianism led to a decline in Buddhism's influence on the legal system. The transplantation, waxing, and

waning of Buddhist influence on law is a large area for further study.

Basic Buddhist principles, reasoning processes, and rules may influence law because they are employed by the population that use the legal system. Thus, a country may impose a strong socialist law code, such as the Russian-imported Mongolian codes in force between 1924 and 1992, upon a population whose culture reasons through Buddhist principles. This is true of the Tibetan population today, which, although it has been incorporated into the Chinese state, continues to employ Buddhist reasoning and principles in most of its decision making.

As Buddhism spread from India to China and Japan, Pagan, and Sumatra, it had extensive influence on secular legal systems. Modern scholars have begun to look more seriously at this influence, as well as the operation of legal procedures within Buddhist monasteries and nunneries. Scholars have also begun to study the overlay of exogenous legal systems and the transplantation of law codes from other countries onto Buddhist legal systems. Local-level influence of Buddhism is another interesting area of research. For example, in a 1970s study of litigation in Chiangmai, Thailand, interviews with litigants showed that the number of injury claims had steadily decreased over a ten-year period due to a stronger emphasis in the local community on reasoning through karmic causes and their consequences. Combining both BUDDHIST STUDIES and comparative law, Buddhist law is an emerging new disciplinary area.

### Bibliography

- Dutt, Sukumar. *Buddhist Monks and Monasteries of India: Their History and Their Contribution to Indian Culture*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.
- French, Rebecca R. *The Golden Yoke: The Legal Cosmology of Buddhist Tibet*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1995.
- Hinüber, Oskar von. "Buddhist Law According to the *Theravāda Vinaya*: A Survey of Theory and Practice." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 18 (1995): 7–45.
- Holt, John C. *Discipline: The Canonical Buddhism of the Vinayapiṭaka*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1981.
- Horner, I. B., trans. *The Book of the Discipline (Vinaya-pitaka)*, Vol. 1: *Suttavibhaṅga*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1938. Reprint, 1996.
- Huxley, Andrew. "The Reception of Buddhist Law in Southeast Asia, 200 B.C.E.–1860 C.E." In *La réception des systèmes juridiques: implantation et destin*, ed. Michel Douchet and Jacques Vanderlinden. Brussels: Bruylant, 1994.

Tambiah, H. W. *Principles of Ceylon Law*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: H. W. Cave, 1972.

REBECCA FRENCH

**LIBERATION.** See **Bodhi** (Awakening); **Nirvāṇa**; **Path**

## LINEAGE

Lineage formation permeates religious traditions. Lineages are commonly found outside of religious traditions as well, to note the roles played in the origin and development of various kinds of institutions. In Buddhism, lineage serves as an important organizational framework for connecting members of specific schools, factions, or institutions. It is the natural outcome of the recognition of authority, especially given the development of sectarian differences. In Buddhism, when individual sectarian groups compiled lineages, they did so retroactively in an attempt to shape past history in ways that would enhance group status. The most common practice was to link their teachings to past authorities and ultimately to the founder of Buddhism, Śākyamuni himself, thus legitimizing their own principles and practices and shielding them from accusations of unorthodoxy. In this way, lineage in the Buddhist context was associated with such notions as identity, legitimacy, and orthodoxy. As a result, the formation and promotion of sectarian lineages must be interpreted in accordance with the contemporary aims of the sponsoring groups; lineage formation was a means to sanction their cause, and not a literal account of the actual historical record.

Concern for lineage emerged early in Buddhism. According to Étienne Lamotte, the formation of Buddhist schools in India was due mainly to the geographical extension of the community over the entire Indian territory (*History of Indian Buddhism*, p. 519). Given this geographical dispersion, individual Buddhist communities developed unique interests and were confronted by particular problems. One of the results of geographical fragmentation was the rise of sectarian leaders representing the interests of particular communities. The authority of the sect was usually based on a professed doctrine linked to a well-known, but often fictitious, founder, whose doctrines were in turn traced to immediate DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDHA. In this way, the Sthavīras traced them-

selves to MAHĀKĀŚYAPA, and the MAHĀSĀMĀGHİKAS traced themselves to Bāṣpa. The Sarvāstivādins (Kāśyapa, ĀNANDA, Madhyāntika, Śāṅnavāsin, UPAGUPTA, Pūrṇa, Mecaka, Kātyāyanīputra) and Vātsīputrīyas (ŚĀRIPUTRA, RĀHULA, Vatsīputra) also developed lineages based on this premise (Lamotte, p. 521). As a result, lineage formation may be deemed a feature of Buddhist sectarianism from its outset in India, where it was a function of sectarian quests for authority and legitimacy.

Lineage was particularly important in East Asian Buddhism, where it served as the primary means of ascribing identity by linking and grouping individuals on the basis of their affiliations, whether as master-disciple, as patriarchs of a particular school, or as a succession of monastery abbots. As a mechanism for conferring legitimacy, lineages were frequently constructed to assert the claims of contemporary practitioners by assuming the authority or antiquity of presumed ANCESTORS. This practice had broad resonance throughout East Asian cultures, predicated on domestic reverence for ancestors and biological lineages. The formation of Buddhist sectarian-based dharma genealogies has structural parallels with this propensity for honoring ancestors and maintaining clan solidarity.

### Lineage and ancestor veneration

The genesis of East Asian reverence for ancestors is revealed in the Chinese term *zong*, which informs the esteem placed on clan and lineage in both the broader cultural and specifically Buddhist contexts. The term *zong* is difficult to translate because it allows for a variety of connotations and nuances, depending on the context. Encyclopedic dictionaries of the Chinese language, such as the *Ci yuan* (*The Roots of Words*), provide several meanings for *zong*, including “ancestral hall” (*zu miao*), “ancestor” (*zuxian*, literally “patriarch-predecessor”), “clan” (*zongzu*), “origin” (*benyuan*), and “honor” or “respect” (*zunchong*). The character *zong* originally depicted an ancestral hall, where a clan’s ancestor or ancestors were honored. The character is composed of two parts: The upper part depicts a roof, and the lower part depicts “a tablet for the deceased,” indicating the term’s original meaning of a hall where the tablets of ancestors are kept.

The term *zong* appears frequently in posthumous titles for Chinese emperors, as in Gaozong (High Ancestor) or Taizong (Great Ancestor), and one of the term’s primary meanings in ancient China was as the progenitor of a specific clan. *Zong* eventually took on

a concrete meaning as clan guardian or protector, a figure who was the object of ritual veneration by clan descendants. The living clan head was responsible for decisions affecting clan welfare and prosperity, for the preservation of clan identity, and for the perpetuation of its legacy. The authority of the clan head was symbolically linked to the clan progenitor. Chinese emperors naturally seized upon this symbolism, promoting themselves, as well as their own deceased ancestors, as protectors of the Chinese people, responsible for the welfare and prosperity of the country as a whole. In this sense, the imperial family represented the “grand clan” of the Chinese people, the focal point of collective as opposed to individual clan identity.

Following the Chinese predilection to ascribe individual identity on the basis of clan affiliation, Buddhists in China were officially removed from their natal clan and adopted into the “Buddhist” one using the clan name Shi. *Shi* is an abbreviation of the name Shijiamouni, the Chinese pronunciation of Śākyamuni, which is derived from the Buddha’s clan name, Śākya, in India. Buddhist monks in China regarded their teachers as they would a father, and began to take great interest in genealogy. As in India, genealogy served as a means of validating claims, and lineage became the contested terrain of sectarian disputations. In the early fifth century, the Indian monk Buddhahadra translated the *Damoduoluo chanjing* (*Dharmatrāta’s Meditation Scripture*), with prefaces by HUIYUAN and Huiguan. The scripture highlights Buddhahadra’s Sārvastivādin lineage in an attempt to establish that the meditation teaching contained in the scripture was guaranteed by direct lineal succession from the Buddha. In addition, a vinaya work translated by Buddhahadra and FAXIAN in 416 to 418 C.E. provided a similar lineage of succession from the Buddha to Buddhahadra’s teacher for a supposed vinaya lineage. Another indigenous Chinese work, the *Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan* (*Biographies of the Circumstances of Transmission of the Dharma Repository*), dated 472 C.E., provided a list of lineal heirs from the Buddha to Śiṃha bhikṣu.

### Lineage in Chinese Buddhism

The lineages of succession in these texts provided the bases for sectarian legitimization claims of leading Chinese Buddhist traditions, such as the Tiantai School and Chan School. Based on the *Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan*, the Tiantai school created a list of twenty-three patriarchs of the “sūtra-transmission,” to which they added a series of three Tiantai meditation masters—

Huiwen, Huisi, and ZHIYI (538–597)—to claim legitimate succession from the Buddha (see Table 1). According to Zhiyi’s disciple Guanding (561–632), who created the lineage, Tiantai masters were connected because Huiwen adopted the meditation promoted in the *Da zhidu lun* (*Great Perfection of Wisdom Treatise*) attributed to the famed scholastic NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), the thirteenth patriarch in the *Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan* list.

The notion of *zong* as clan ancestor connected to lineal descendants played a particularly important role in shaping identity in the Chan school. In Buddhist mythology, Śākyamuni Buddha was not the only Buddha, but the last in a line of seven BUDDHAS of antiquity—Vipaśyin, Śikhin, Viśvabhū, Krakucchanda, Kanakamuni, Kāśyapa, and Śākyamuni. According to Chan school traditions, the seven buddhas are believed to have transmitted a uniform dharma, or teaching, between them. This teaching is summarized in the four line refrain: “Shunning all evil; performing every good; purifying one’s mind—this is the teaching of all buddhas.” As the source of all Buddhist teaching, the various tenets of Buddhism are said to spring from these verses. In this way, Śākyamuni’s message was conceived as a universal teaching transmitted to him through a line of predecessors, and handed down to his immediate disciples. Early Chan relied on the lineage supplied with Buddhahadra’s translations, eventually fusing it with Tiantai assertions based on the *Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan*, and supplanting it with their own innovations. Like the Tiantai list of lineage succession, the Chan list was composed of two parts: a list of Indian patriarchal transmission, coupled with a

TABLE 1

#### Tiantai lineage based on the *Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan* (*Biographies of the Circumstances of Transmission of the Dharma Repository*)

##### Śākyamuni

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Mahākāśyapa  | 14. Kānadeva     |
| 2. Ānanda       | 15. Rāhulata     |
| 3. Śaṅavāsa     | 16. Saṅghānandin |
| 4. Upagupta     | 17. Gayaśāta     |
| 5. Dhrtaka      | 18. Kumārata     |
| 6. Miccaka      | 19. Jayata       |
| 7. Buddhanandin | 20. Vasubandhu   |
| 8. Buddhamitra  | 21. Manorhita    |
| 9. Pārśva       | 22. Haklenayaśas |
| 10. Punyayaśas  | 23. Śiṃha bhikṣu |
| 11. Aśvaghōṣa   | 24. Huiwen       |
| 12. Kapimāla    | 25. Huisi        |
| 13. Nāgārjuna   | 26. Zhiyi        |

SOURCE: Author.

TABLE 2

**Chan lineage based on the *Baolin chuan* (*Transmission of the Treasure Grove*)**

**Śākyamuni**

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Mahākāśyapa  | 15. Kānadeva     |
| 2. Ānanda       | 16. Rāhulāta     |
| 3. Śaṅavāsa     | 17. Saṅghānandin |
| 4. Upagupta     | 18. Gayaśāta     |
| 5. Dhṛtaka      | 19. Kumārata     |
| 6. Miccaka      | 20. Jayata       |
| 7. Vasumitra    | 21. Vasubandhu   |
| 8. Buddhānandin | 22. Manorhita    |
| 9. Buddhāmitra  | 23. Hāklenayaśas |
| 10. Pārśva      | 24. Śiṃha bhikṣu |
| 11. Puṅyayaśas  | 25. Basiasita    |
| 12. Aśvaghōṣa   | 26. Puṅyamitra   |
| 13. Kapimāla    | 27. Prajñātāra   |
| 14. Nāgārjuna   | 28. Bodhidharma  |

SOURCE: Author.

transmission among native Chinese masters. The Chan list of Indian patriarchs was conventionally fixed at twenty-eight in the *Baolin chuan* (*Transmission of the Treasure Grove*), completed in 801 (see Table 2).

Only two points separate Chan's assertion of lineage succession from the earlier Tiantai one. Vasumitra is inserted as seventh in the line of patriarchal succession, a claim based on the appearance of his name in the *Chanjing*, mentioned above. The addition of Vasumitra effectively expands the Tiantai list from twenty-three to twenty-four. More significantly, the Chan list maintains that the transmission was suspended with Śiṃha bhikṣu, as the Tiantai list had supposed, but continued on and was eventually brought physically to China in the person of BODHIDHARMA (ca. early fifth century). This assertion was made to lend credence to the claim that Chan represented the unbroken succession of Buddhist teaching from Śākyamuni to a series of Chinese patriarchs, including the undisputed list of six masters from Bodhidharma to HUINENG (638–713) (see Table 3).

The assertion of a Chinese patriarchal tradition provoked a well-known dispute over correct lineal succession among rival Chan factions. The dispute began in 732 when a hitherto obscure monk named Shenhui (684–758) attacked the legitimacy of the imperially acknowledged representatives of Chan. In 701 or 702, an illustrious disciple of Hongren, Shenxiu (ca. 606–706), had been invited to court by Empress Wu, where he was received with great acclaim. Following Shenxiu's death, his disciples Puji (d. 739) and Yifu (d. 736) became the standard bearers of Chan at the imperial court. Until the arrival of Shenhui, Shenxiu was the

undisputed sixth patriarch of Chan. Shenhui challenged that the true heir of Hongren's dharma had been his own master, Huineng, and that he himself was Huineng's heir. To substantiate his claim, Shenhui insisted Bodhidharma's robe, the symbol of legitimate transmission, had been passed by Hongren to Huineng, not Shenxiu. Shenhui branded Shenxiu's illegitimate Chan the "Northern school," in contrast to the legitimate "Southern school" teaching of his own master, Huineng. Over time, Shenhui's arguments gained favor and Huineng was officially accepted as the sixth patriarch in 816. All subsequent Chan factions traced their lineage through Huineng.

Chan and Tiantai lineage formation culminated in the Song dynasty (960–1279). While early Chan insisted on a single line of orthodox transmission through the sixth patriarch and accepted collateral lineages only with reluctance, the later tradition recognized multilineal branches. Fueled by the geographical spread of Chan throughout China, numerous groups sought legitimacy by tracing their lineage of patriarchs through Huineng. After Huineng, the principal or "trunk" lineage of Chan was presumed to bifurcate, and several branch lineages flourished. The bifurcation posited that all later Chan lineages were descended through two of Huineng's disciples, Nanyue Huairang (677–744) and Qingyuan Xingsi (d. 740). Huairang linked the flourishing movement of Mazu DAOYI (709–788) and his followers in the late eighth and early ninth centuries to the Chan tradition of Huineng, and it is clear that Huairang's record was tailored to legitimize these motivations. Xingsi's record was conceived

TABLE 3

**Lineage of early Chinese Chan patriarchs and their connection to the "Five Houses"**



SOURCE: Author.



with similar aims, to legitimize the assertions of later lineages descended through Xingsi and Shitou Xiqian (700–790).

By acknowledging several branches, Chan was able to capitalize on its clan identity as an extended family. This framework served as the organizing principle for the classic works of Chan lineage formation compiled in the Song, the transmission histories, or lamp records (*denglu*): the *Zutang ji* (*Patriarch's Hall Anthology*, compiled 952); the *Jingde chuandeng lu* (*Jingde-Era Transmission of the Lamp Record*, compiled 1004); the *Tiansheng guandeng lu* (*Tiansheng-Era Record of the Propagation of the Lamp*, compiled 1036); the *Jianzhong jingguo xudeng lu* (*Jianzhong jingguo-Era Supplementary Lamp Record*, compiled 1101); the *Zongmen liandeng huiyao* (*Combined Lamp Record of the Chan Lineage*, compiled 1183); the *Jiatai pudeng lu* (*Jiatai-Era Universal Lamp Record*, compiled 1202); and the *Wudeng huiyuan* (*Concise Compendium of the Five Lamp [Histories]*, compiled 1252). The common metaphor employed throughout these works is the notion of transmitting the lamp or flame (*chuandeng* or *zhuan-deng*), with the lamp representing the light of enlightenment or the teachings of Buddhism. In the Chan context, dharma transmission represents not just a particular teaching or principle, but the secret essence of the Buddha's awakening, referred to variously as "perfect wisdom," the "dharma-eye," the "mind-teaching," or the "mind-essence." The transmission of the dharma is likened to the passing of a flame from one lamp to another, representing the transmission of Buddha's enlightenment from one generation to the next.

As an organizing principle, these works share the belief in a common lineage of Chan ancestors, or patriarchs, extending from Śākyamuni and MAHĀKĀŚYĀPA through the series of Indian patriarchs culminating with Bodhidharma, who brought the transmission to China, initiating the series of Chinese Chan patriarchs. These transmission records are principally concerned with documenting the profusion of Chan masters following the sixth patriarch, and organizing them according to lineage. The genesis of the so-called five houses or five clans (Weiyang, Linji, Caodong, Yunmen, and Fayen) of Chan Buddhism is found in these records. Organized in this fashion, the master–disciple relation serves as a surrogate father–son relationship, linking practitioners to the larger tradition of Chan ancestors and providing identity based on specific lineages. In this way Chan came to mirror the Chinese clan system, organized around common ancestors, patrilineal style relationships, factional branch lineages,

and so on. The Chan clan came to represent a set of familial style relationships. Individual monks belonging to a lineage were related vertically as spiritual fathers, sons, grandfathers, grandsons, and so on. They were related to other Chan branch lineages horizontally as would be siblings, cousins, uncles, and nephews.

The last decades of the Song dynasty witnessed the production of two works, the *Shimen zhengtong* (*Orthodox Lineage of the Buddhist Tradition*, compiled in 1237) and the *Fozu tongji* (*Comprehensive History of the Buddhas and Patriarchs*, compiled between 1258 and 1269), which presented the universal history of Buddhism from the Tiantai perspective. These works held that the essence of Buddhism was embodied in Tiantai teaching and practice, which had been faithfully transmitted from Śākyamuni through the Indian patriarchs, to the Tiantai patriarchs in China. Like their Chan counterparts, the Tiantai records were structured around the principle of patriarchal succession. However, unlike Chan, they proposed that Tiantai patriarchs and their descendants occupied the central and dominant position of Buddhism in China. As in the case of Chan lineages, the essentially congruent Tiantai lineages presented in these works cannot be accepted uncritically, but should be regarded as products of a process aimed at securing prestige, patronage, and special privilege for Tiantai during the Song period (Shinohara, pp. 524–525).

By the Song dynasty, Dharma-transmission was formalized through the granting of a dharma-scroll conferred by a master on deserving disciples. The "dharma-scroll" contained a list of names through whom the transmission had passed, from Śākyamuni down through the current master. In effect, it constituted the dharma-lineage of the particular sect in question, and authorized the recipient to teach. According to Holmes Welch (*The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*, p. 157), this system was still practiced in China in the twentieth century. In addition to dharma-lineages, individual monastery lineages listed the names of abbots who served at them.

The notion of lineage framed in the Chinese context had great impact on the development of Buddhism throughout East Asia. Lineage as a basis for sectarian identity was promoted in Japan and Korea, where native versions of Chinese Buddhist schools prospered, and native lineages were grafted onto their Chinese predecessors. Contemporary Zen priests in Japan continue to receive dharma-scrolls or dharma-certificates as authentication of their status in a Zen lineage. Men-

tion should also be made of the use of lineage in Tibetan Buddhism, where incarnate lamas, leaders of the Buddhist community, are assumed to be successive embodiments of leading buddhas and bodhisattvas, following a notion introduced with the first KARMA PA Lama, Dus gsum mkhyen pa (Düsum Khyenpa; 1110–1193). This is the most distinctive of Tibetan hierarchical institutions, which identifies a future lama as the rebirth of his deceased predecessor. The most famous example of this is the DALAI LAMA, considered to be an incarnation of Tibet's patron bodhisattva, Avalokiteśvara, the bodhisattva of compassion.

### Bibliography

- Ebrey, Patricia Buckley. *Confucianism and Family Rituals in Imperial China: A Social History of Writing about Rites*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Will to Orthodoxy: A Critical Genealogy of Northern Chan Buddhism*, tr. Phyllis Brooks. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1997.
- Foulk, T. Griffith. "Myth, Ritual, and Monastic Practice in Sung Ch'an Buddhism." In *Religion and Society in T'ang and Sung China*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Patricia Buckley Ebrey. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Foulk, T. Griffith. "Sung Controversies Concerning the 'Separate Transmission' of Ch'an." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Foulk, T. Griffith, and Sharf, Robert H. "On the Ritual Use of Ch'an Portraiture in Medieval China." *Cahiers d'Extrême Asie* 7 (1993–1994): 149–219.
- Jan, Yün-hua. "Tsong-mi: His Analysis of Ch'an Buddhism." *T'oung Pao* 58 (1972): 1–54.
- Jorgensen, John. "The 'Imperial' Lineage of Ch'an Buddhism: The Role of Confucian Ritual and Ancestor Worship in Ch'an's Search for Legitimation in the Mid-T'ang Dynasty." *Papers on Far Eastern History* 35 (1987): 89–133.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śāka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin and Jean Dantinne. Louvain, Belgium: Université Catholique de Louvain Institute Orientaliste; Peters Press, 1988.
- Shinohara, Koichi. "From Local History to Universal History: The Construction of the Sung T'ien-t'ai Lineage." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Welch, Holmes. "Dharma-Scrolls and the Succession of Abbots in Chinese Monasteries." *T'oung Pao* 50 (1963): 93–149.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.
- Welter, Albert. "Mahākāśyapa's Smile: Silent Transmission and the Kung-an (*Kōan*) Tradition." In *The Kōan: Texts and Contexts in Zen Buddhism*, ed. Steven Heine and Dale S. Wright. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Yampolsky, Philip B. *The Platform Sutra of the Sixth Patriarch*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1967.

ALBERT WELTER

LINJI SCHOOL. See Chan School; Yixuan

LITURGY. See Chanting and Liturgy

## LOCAL DIVINITIES AND BUDDHISM

There is no single Buddhist term that covers the same semantic area as the English word DIVINITIES or its equivalents, such as deities, gods, and supernatural beings. In fact, Buddhist COSMOLOGY recognizes several kinds of divine or semidivine beings, all endowed with superhuman faculties: BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS; former disciples of the Buddha (*śrāvakas*); saints of various kinds (arhats in particular); angelic figures (*gandharva*, *kiṃnara*); "gods" proper (Sanskrit *devas*; Japanese *kami*; Burmese *nats*); anti-gods (asura); various kinds of ghosts; demonic and monsterlike figures (*preta*, *yaḥṣa*, *rākṣasa*); mythological animals (*nāga*, *garura*, *mahorāga*); and devils and other denizens of hell. Each of these classes has its own place in cosmology and its role in SOTERIOLOGY.

Buddhas, bodhisattvas, and Buddhist saints are not gods, but they are often worshiped as such. A major doctrinal distinction separates buddhas, bodhisattvas, and other saintly figures from all other superhuman entities in that the former are situated outside of the realm of transmigration. Gods, spirits, ghosts, and the like, in contrast, are still prisoners of the law of KARMA and will accordingly be reborn in the future in different shapes until they attain the supreme liberation. Even though Buddhist cosmology attributes a clear preeminence to the Buddha and other enlightened beings, local deities still play an important role in the life and the liturgy of Buddhists in many parts of the world.

### Buddhism and local deities: approaches and problems

The role and status of divinities within the Buddhist tradition is complicated. Deities are often seen as

something essentially different from “true” Buddhism (however defined). Negative views consider the worship of local gods as a deluded, superstitious practice. In general, however, divinities are treated as skillful means (UPĀYA), as a concession to popular beliefs that can be useful to guide the unenlightened toward salvation. Only in some cases are there specific attempts to give doctrinal legitimacy to local deities as full-fledged components of the Buddhist universe.

Despite the ambiguous doctrinal position of deities in the Buddhist system, it is important to emphasize that interaction with local divinities was a key factor in the diffusion of Buddhism, both inside and outside of India. Unfortunately, little information is available on the relationship between Buddhism and local deities in premodern times. Wherever Buddhism is the dominant or state religion, folkloric practices and traditions concerning local deities have often been downplayed as mere “superstition.” Nativist movements in East Asia, in contrast, have tended to reduce the role of Buddhism in their countries and to emphasize instead the autochthonous tradition, with the result of often rendering invisible the connections between Buddhism and local divinities.

The difficulty of describing the relationship between Buddhism and local deities has also affected scholars. Buddhologists, on the one hand, tend to focus more on the translocal (orthodox doctrines and rituals), rather than on the local (actual Buddhism as it is practiced in specific historical and cultural contexts); as a consequence, they have paid little attention to local deities. Anthropologists, on the other hand, focus on contemporary cultural situations, without much emphasis on the history of the relationship between Buddhism and local cultures. Furthermore, the dominant tendency for many years among scholars of religious phenomena was that of privileging separate traditions, based on an emphasis on textualized doctrines and “faith,” rather than on living religiosity, which often cannot be reduced to canonical, doctrinal scriptures.

### **Buddhist appropriation of local deities: motifs and models**

From the beginning, Buddhism appears to have dealt with Indian deities in positive terms by incorporating them within its own system, rather than by ignoring or persecuting them. In fact, according to the Buddhist interpretation, the Indian gods need the appearance of a buddha among the humans before they can be taught the way to attain salvation; in this way, the Buddhists

made deities into subordinates of the Buddha and, by extension, his emissaries.

Many stories about the establishment and the diffusion of Buddhism involve the conversion, subjugation, or control of local deities. Discreet but crucial interventions by the Indian gods accompany the spiritual career of Śākyamuni Buddha as told in classical narratives such as the BUDDHACARITA (*Acts of the Buddha*) or the JĀTAKA tales. The scriptures often present the Buddha as the teacher of gods. One of the earliest sūtras, the *Ekottarāgama* (*Numerically Ordered Collection*) describes a famous scene in which Buddha ascends to heaven and preaches to INDRA and the other gods of the classical Indian pantheon, who were gathered together with the Buddha’s mother, Queen Māyā. In some cases, gods were reluctant to convert, which made recourse to violent methods necessary. Particularly famous is the subjugation of Maheśvara (Śiva), in which a bodhisattva entered the samādhi of adamant anger and killed Maheśvara; the latter was then resuscitated as a buddha in a distant world system. On special occasions, the Buddha did not object to transforming himself into a frightening and powerful demon in order to subjugate other demons. Stories also recount the conversion of hostile local deities, which then turned into protectors of the dharma and its adepts. Early tales of interaction with divinities have set the standard for subsequent strategies employed by Buddhists to spread their teachings in foreign lands.

Buddhism was often propagated by monks traveling with traders. These monks addressed the political and economic elites of the new lands they visited. Their goal was to replace (or, at least, restructure) the pre-existing cosmology and its related pantheon with the Buddhist worldview, with the Buddha on top. However, the spread of Buddhism among the commoners was to a large extent the work of saintlike figures who went around subjugating territorial guardian spirits, while at the same time establishing monasteries, schools, and other infrastructures, and preaching the Buddhadharmā.

In an important sense, then, the diffusion of Buddhism in a country often began with the taming of local deities, usually described as hostile, violent, and dangerous. This practice started in India and was based on scriptural precedents. A number of local deities and spirits were thus included in the Buddhist pantheon as protectors of the dharma. The nāga (serpents/dragons), symbols of water and fertility, were worshiped by the original inhabitants of the Indian subcontinent prior to the Āryan invasions. Particularly well known are the

conversion of the nāga Apalāla in northwestern India and the subjugation of the nāgas by MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA. The nāga cult also spread in Southeast and East Asia. YAKṢA and *yakṣinī*, evil spirits (ogres) of forests and uncultivated plains, were subjugated by the Buddha in Sri Lanka in order to spread the dharma there. Asura (anti-gods) are often a model for local deities, such as the *nats* in Myanmar and deified warriors in Japan. *Garuḍa*, mythical birds who were the enemies of the nāgas, turned into the flying vehicle of VIṢṆU before they were included in the Buddhist pantheon. *Rākṣasa*, cannibalistic evil spirits, became protectors of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). Some of these deities, in spite of their intrinsic violent character, even became important foci of devotion, such as Mahākāla, the *yakṣinī* Hārītī, Kubera, and Hayagrīva. Still other divine beings became guardians of local images, stūpas, and monasteries.

In general, there were a few common strategies for the Buddhist conversion of local deities throughout Asia. Deities were first converted, sometimes violently (subjugation), either following their own request or after a confrontation. This step signaled the supremacy of Buddhism over local deities. Even when local spirits were not directly incorporated but marginalized (as happened in Tibet, where indigenous deities were subdued by erecting monasteries on specific parts of their bodies), there was still the need for propitiation, thus further emphasizing the fundamental evil nature of preexisting local deities and the importance of Buddhism to control them.

On a second stage, converted deities became protectors of the dharma, its adepts, and its facilities. In this way, deities were able to perform their usual, pre-Buddhist tutelary functions, but within a larger, translocal cosmology, and in a different soteriological framework. Later, we sometimes observe the formation of new, post-Buddhist local deities, distinct from but related to Buddhist divinities. Examples include HACHIMAN and Inari in Japan, BON deities in Tibet, and certain kinds of spirits in Thailand, such as the *winjan*. In some cases, local deities came to be envisioned as manifestations (*avatāra*) of translocal, usually Indian, gods. For example, the supreme *nat* spirit in Myanmar, Thagya Min nat, is identified with Inda (Indra). Japanese Shintō *kami* were also considered manifestations of Indian deities. In China certain local gods of a strong Daoist flavor are closely related to, if not completely identified with, Buddhist figures; such is the case of the goddess Mazu and her close relationship with the bodhisattva Guanyin (Avalokiteśvara).

By presenting local deities—and the social organization and power relations that support them—as manifestations of chaos and violence, these narratives emphasize the civilizing, ordering, and beneficial nature of Buddhism, its institutions, and its representatives. Even though the initial disruption was actually caused by Buddhist monks who questioned, altered, or destroyed local cultural practices represented by local deities, such an emphasis on order and peace was not simply groundless propaganda. In many cases, Buddhist missionaries came from more advanced cultures and brought with them new technologies, ideas, and representations that were structured in a translocal and more encompassing worldview. The inclusiveness of Buddhism, its capacity to integrate different and contrasting elements inside its own superior system was represented by the inclusion of previously anti-Buddhist forces and mutual enemies, such as Maheśvara and the asuras, or on a different level, nāgas and *garuḍas*.

### Buddhism and local cults

Local deities in countries where Buddhism spread are usually regarded as manifestations of an animistic worldview. The term *animism*, however, cannot effectively represent the variety and complexity of cultures in which Buddhism penetrated. Local deities range from souls of individuals, spirits of the dead, ghosts, and other postmortem demonic entities, to local and tutelary deities of various kinds. These entities are envisioned as forces concerned with health, fertility, and prosperity (or lack thereof). The Buddhist intervention restructured all these multifarious forms into a system, more or less coherent, that was based (at least, to an extent) on Buddhist doctrines. For example, in present-day Myanmar a combination of Pāli Buddhism, nāga cults, and *nat* animism has been attested in the Pagan area since the tenth to eleventh centuries; analogous situations exist in Thailand and Laos. In premodern Japan, local deities were incorporated into the Buddhist cosmology and liturgy as manifestations of buddhas, bodhisattvas, and classical Indian gods. In other areas, such as China and Tibet, a division of labor arises between the Buddhist clergy and ritualists of other traditions (e.g., Daoists or Bon adepts, and traditional specialists).

While not directly related to the quest for ultimate liberation (be it configured as NIRVĀṆA or the attainment of Buddhahood), local divinities played an important role in merit-making and in securing protection, two areas, distinct but closely interrelated, that roughly correspond to karmic and apotropaic Buddhism as

defined by Melford Spiro. Merit, often expressed as concrete, material benefits rather than in purely spiritual terms, could be conceived of as a form of protection from illness, evil spirits, and natural calamities often caused by supernatural entities. On the other hand, invoking protection from local divinities could result in benefits that were not much different in practice from those resulting from the performance of purely “orthodox” Buddhist devotions.

Buddhism dealt with local spirits in numerous ways, ranging from discursive structuring (definition of their status and attribution of a specific place within the Buddhist cosmology and soteriology), to ritual interaction, to mere noninterference. *Discursive structuring* seems to operate in general only on the main principles, but it does not work in detail. For example, in the case of Thai “village cosmology” the relationship is unclear between *thewada* (from the Sanskrit *devatā*), gods that are considered to be situated outside the cycle of rebirth (in itself a heterodox idea), and local spirits known as *phī*. *Ritual interaction* takes many forms, from the reading of Buddhist scriptures that took place in front of the Japanese *kami* until the anti-Buddhist persecutions of 1868, to the celebrations of festivals for the protectors of Thai monasteries (Chao Phau). In the case of *noninterference*, Buddhists leave certain issues concerning local spirits to traditional figures such as shamans, storytellers, diviners, and so forth. In fact, in most Buddhist cultures a number of such traditional specialists deal with local deities, spirits, and ghosts. In some cases, they form distinct and independent professional and social groups, such as *kami* priests in premodern Japan, Bon priests in Tibet, and certain shamanlike specialists in China and Southeast Asia. Most of the time, however, traditional specialists of local sacred affairs are not religious professionals, but perform their services as a side business in addition to their ordinary, secular professions.

### **Buddhist cosmology and popular religious practices concerning the afterlife**

An area of religious life in which the interaction of Buddhism with local divinities is particularly intense is the one that deals with DEATH and the afterlife (funeral ceremonies, ancestor cults, and neutralization of evil ghosts). In particular, the Buddhist cosmology of HEAVENS and HELLS, together with its multiple PURE LANDS (Sukhāvātī, Potālaka, etc.) always involves these kinds of issues. To most Buddhists, *nirvāṇa* is not an immediate goal; what matters most is REBIRTH into a higher state of being, from which the dead can be-

stow blessings onto the living who honor and worship them. This is the starting point of ancestor cults, which are associated with the idea that lack of proper ritual action toward the deceased will cause misfortune and disaster. In this way, memorialization brings together merit-making in the form of ritual exchanges with ANCESTORS and apotropaic beliefs and practices promising protection against evil ghosts. Memorialization also fuses Buddhist classic cosmology and local divinities (in the form of ancestors, tutelary deities, and spirits of various kinds). It is not by chance, then, that in most of Asia, Buddhist monks are directly involved in funerals, memorialization of the dead (who are turned into ancestors), and control of ghosts, often associated with evil deities of classical cosmology such as yakṣa and asura, the *nats* in Myanmar, and the *phī* in Thailand and Laos. Particularly interesting in this respect are East Asian Buddhist funerary practices and their underlying cosmology of hells. Chinese Buddhists applied the bureaucratic structure of their state to the afterlife, developing the cult of the Ten Kings of hell—judges who decide the destiny of the defunct in the afterlife. This cult combines Buddhist conceptions of hell, popular Indian ideas of rebirth, Indian gods such as Yāma, Daoist deities, and Chinese popular beliefs and practices (including Confucian bureaucracy). Another cult (known as *shī eguei gongyang* in China and *se gaki kuyō* in Japan) that developed in China dealt with the so-called hungry ghosts, an East Asian version of the Indian preta, which shows concerns and fear about the spirits of those who died a “bad” death or who were not properly memorialized by their families. These funerary cults spread all over the Sinicized world in East Asia and still constitute one of the most important and enduring contributions of Buddhism to East Asian cultures.

### **The problem of syncretism**

The term *syncretism* has had a long history of negative connotations as indicating a random mixture of various religious elements dictated by ignorance, superstition, or even diabolic influences. The term presupposes the existence of a “pure” form of a given religious tradition, uncorrupted by blending with other religions. For these reasons, it is difficult to use *syncretism* as a neutral, descriptive term. The word was redefined, however, in *The Encyclopedia of Religion* (1987) as referring to “connections of a special kind between languages, cultures, or religions” (vol. 14, p. 218). In this form, however, it is too vague to be useful for analysis of specific cases of religious interac-

tions. The essential problem is that religious and cultural interactions in general are not mere juxtapositions of distinct and independent elements. The case of the Buddhist impact on local divinities is particularly revealing. Certainly, some deities were abandoned and forgotten, and new ones were added. But what matters more is the systematic and pervasive restructuring of the cultural field of the sacred that the interaction with Buddhism generated. Local deities were given features of Indian gods and vice versa, thus generating new entities; but new deities were also created to deal with the new conceptual and ritual situation that had developed. Interestingly, some Buddhist deities (or some of their features) were rendered native by the phenomena of *relocalization*, a process that at times even obliterated their Buddhist origin. This is the case with *kami* such as Hachiman and Inari in contemporary Japan, of deities incorporated into the folk religions of China and Korea, and of the Bon tradition in Tibet (an independent establishment still clearly indebted to Buddhism). All these cases cannot simply be reduced to modes of juxtaposition, combination, or even connection. Various conceptual categories should be mobilized instead to describe the multifarious forms of Buddhist interaction with local divinities in shifting historical, cultural, social, and ideological contexts. In other words, rather than taking as a starting point an abstract and reified idea of Buddhism and analyzing how it deals with local deities, it appears to be more appropriate and fruitful to investigate the various roles that certain DIVINITIES play within specific Buddhist contexts. As examples, we can think of processes of state formation (with divinities protecting newly formed states and their regional divisions), social control (the symbolic order of families, clans, and local communities as represented by specific divinities and ritual interactions with them), labor and economic concerns, and semiotic practices guiding the combination of various deities (as based on formal, functional, structural, and semantic features).

*See also:* Folk Religion: An Overview; Ghosts and Spirits; Kūkai; Merit and Merit-Making; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

### Bibliography

- Bechert, Heinz, ed. *Buddhism in Ceylon and Studies in Religious Syncretism in Buddhist Countries*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck and Ruprecht, 1978.
- Colpe, Carsten. "Syncretism," tr. Matthew J. O'Connell. In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 14, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Gellner, David N. "For Syncretism: The Position of Buddhism in Nepal and Japan Compared." *Social Anthropology* 5, no. 3 (1997): 277–291.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London: University of California Press, 1992.
- Iyanaga Nobumi. *Daikokuten hensō* (Bukkyō shinwagaku 1). Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 2002.
- Kamstra, Jacques H. *Encounter or Syncretism: The Initial Growth of Japanese Buddhism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1967.
- Kitagawa, Joseph M. *Religion in Japanese History*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1966.
- Kvaerne, Per. *The Bön Religion of Tibet: The Iconography of a Living Tradition*. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1995.
- Matsunaga, Alicia. *The Buddhist Philosophy of Assimilation: The Historical Development of the Honji-Suijaku Theory*. Rutland, VT, and Tokyo: Sophia University Press, 1969.
- Murayama Shūichi. *Honji suijaku*. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1974.
- Sarkisyanz, Manuel (Emanuel). *Buddhist Backgrounds of the Burmese Revolution*. The Hague: M. Nijhoff, 1965.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London: University of California Press, 1982.
- Strong, John S. *The Experience of Buddhism: Sources and Interpretations*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 1995.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Teeuwen, Mark, and Rambelli, Fabio, eds. *Buddhas and Kami in Japan: Honji Suijaku as a Combinatory Paradigm*. London and New York: RoutledgeCurzon, 2003.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Tucci, Giuseppe. *The Religions of Tibet*, tr. Geoffrey Samuel. Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London: University of California Press, 1980.

FABIO RAMBELLI

---

### LOGIC

Indian thinkers of many traditions, including Buddhism, often maintain that reliable knowledge is the key to spiritual liberation. By the fourth century C.E.,

many such thinkers were engrossed in an ongoing conversation focused on two interrelated questions: What constitutes reliable knowledge? And what types of reliable knowledge are there? The answers to these questions led to intricate debates on the nature of perception, reason, and language. Buddhists participated prominently in this conversation, but their contribution does not constitute a separate “school” of thought. It is, instead, a style of Buddhist philosophy that eventually gained much sway among Buddhist thinkers in India; Tibetan traditions continue to employ it vigorously to this day. Since Buddhists have no indigenous term for this philosophical style, Western scholars invented the term *Buddhist logic* to describe especially the formulations initially presented by DIGNĀGA (ca. 480–540 C.E.) and refined by DHARMAKĪRTI (ca. 600–670 C.E.).

Dignāga gave the first systematic presentation of Buddhist logic, but Dharmakīrti and his followers provided the form that became widespread in India and Tibet. Concerning the types of reliable knowledge, Buddhist logic holds that there are just two kinds, each with a corresponding type of object: (1) perception, which cognizes particulars, and (2) inference, which cognizes universals. A particular is a completely unique, causally efficacious entity that exists for only a moment. We know that particulars are real because they are causally linked, directly or indirectly, to our cognitions of them. Universals, the objects of inference, are concepts that are meant to apply to many particulars. They are causally inert; hence, although we imagine them to be real, they cannot in fact be the causes of any cognition. For this reason, Buddhist logicians maintain that only particulars are truly real; universals may seem real, but they are actually mental fictions that we create through a process of excluding everything that is irrelevant to the context at hand.

To understand the difference between particulars and universals, suppose that this dot ● is a unique particular. It may seem to be the same as this other dot ●, but that sameness is created by associating two unique sensory experiences with a single universal, the concept *dot*. Each specific instance may also seem to last over time, but the apparent stability of particulars over time is also an illusion created by associating them with a single universal. Moreover, only the actual dot on the page can cause a cognition; the universal *dot* cannot do so (we can see ●; we cannot see our concept of it).

Buddhist logicians further argue that an instance of reliable knowledge must be an efficacious cognition—

efficacious because it enables one to achieve one’s goal. Strictly speaking, then, reliable knowledge can be partially defective. For example, a cognition might falsely attribute qualities to a thing but still remain effective: While correctly identifying something as fire, one might incorrectly believe that the observed fire is exactly identical to all other fires. Nevertheless, that cognition is still efficacious because those false attributions do not obstruct one from attaining one’s goal: If you seek to warm your hands, then it does not matter whether you falsely believe that the fire in front of you is identical to all others.

Buddhist logicians must allow that reliable knowledge may be partially defective because they must make use of language without accepting some characteristics implied by universals. The concept *dot*, for example, makes us falsely believe that all dots are one; nevertheless, we can successfully use this concept to speak of the (actually unique) dots on this page. Likewise, the concept *person* falsely makes me believe that I am identical to the infant that I was; nevertheless, we can use *person* to speak of one who suffers and seeks liberation.

This critical approach to universals creates problems when Buddhist logicians present their theory of logic, which is in fact a detailed theory of inference. Here, the form of an inference is “S is P because E,” where the terms are a subject (S), a predicate (P), and the evidence (E). An example would be, “Joe is mortal because of being human.” An inference is well formed if three relations hold: the evidence entails the predicate (a human must be mortal); the negation of the predicate entails the negation of the evidence (a nonmortal must be nonhuman); and the evidence is a quality of the subject (Joe is indeed human). For Buddhists who employ this theory of inference, two notable problems persist. First, the inference’s terms must be universals, and since universals are strictly speaking unreal, how does one account for relations among them? And second, if one uses an inference to prove that a purely imaginary entity does not exist, how can that purely imaginary entity be the subject of that inference? That is, if one wishes to prove that “an absolute Self is nonexistent,” how can an imaginary entity (the absolute Self) bear any predicate? This latter question is particularly acute for Madhyamaka thinkers who employ the Buddhist logicians’ theory of inference.

*See also:* Madhyamaka School; Yogācāra School

**Bibliography**

Dreyfus, Georges B. *Recognizing Reality: Dharmakīrti's Philosophy and Its Tibetan Interpretations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1997.

Stcherbatsky, Th. *Buddhist Logic*, 2 vols. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1992. Reprint of 1930–1932 edition.

Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Scripture, Logic, Language: Essays on Dharmakīrti and His Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.

JOHN DUNNE

**LONGMEN**

The Longmen cave complex is located twelve kilometers south of Luoyang, Henan province, in China. From the end of the fifth century through the middle of the eighth century, CAVE SANCTUARIES were excavated out of the limestone hills on two sides of the Yi River. They were sponsored by Buddhist devotees from all sectors of the society—aristocrats and commoners, ethnic nomads and Chinese alike, attesting to the widespread support of Buddhism. The late Northern Wei and High Tang periods represent two periods of great activity, during which imperial patronage also played an important role. The central Binyang cave, begun in 505 and sponsored by the Northern Wei emperor Xuanwudi (r. 449–515), ushered in a new phase of Chinese Buddhist art that synthesized foreign and native Chinese art styles, combining a three-dimensional approach to form with minute attention to surface details and patterns. Fengxian Monastery, completed in 675, epitomized the imperial patronage of Emperor Gaozong (r. 649–683) and Empress Wu (r. 684–705) of the Tang dynasty. The colossal statue of Vairocana Buddha, accompanied by disciples, bodhisattvas, and guardian deities, is a powerful statement of the omniscience of the Buddha as the lord of the universe and as a protector of the state.

See also: **China, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture**

**Bibliography**

Gong Dazhong. *Longmen shiku yishu (The Art of the Longmen Cave-Temples)*. Shanghai: Renmin chubanshe, 1981.

Longmen Cultural Relics Conservation Institute and the Archaeological Institute of Beijing University. *Longmen shiku (Longmen Cave-Temples)*. 2 vols. Beijing: Wenwu Press, 1991.

Mizuno Seiichi, Nagahiro Toshio, et al. *Ryūmon sekkutsu no kenkyū (A Study of the Longmen Cave-Temples)*. Tokyo: Zayūho kankōkai, 1941.

DOROTHY WONG

**LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA)**

The *Lotus Sūtra* (Sanskrit, *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*) numbers among the most popular of MAHĀYĀNA scriptures. It is celebrated for its reconciliation of diverse teachings in the “one Buddha vehicle” (*ekayāna*) and for its promise that buddhahood can be achieved by all. Although it has not figured prominently in the Mahāyāna traditions of India or Tibet, the *Lotus Sūtra* has for centuries profoundly influenced Buddhist thought, art, and literature throughout East Asia. Its ideas have served as the basis for philosophical systems and meditative and ritual practice, while its parables and mythic imagery have inspired paintings, drama, and poetry. Since the late nineteenth century, the *Lotus* has also been read as supporting various forms of Buddhist social engagement.

**Texts and translations**

As with most Mahāyāna sūtras, little is known of the circumstances surrounding the composition of the *Lotus Sūtra*. There is only one extant full-length commentary that appears likely to have been composed in India: the *Fahua lun (Treatise on the Lotus)*, attributed to VASUBANDHU (ca. fourth century C.E.), which exists in Chinese translation. Scholars date the sūtra’s compilation to roughly around the first two centuries of the common era. Six Chinese translations were made, of which three survive: *Zhengfa hua jing*, translated by DHARMARAKṢA in 286; *Miaofa lianhua jing*, translated by KUMĀRAJĪVA in 406; and *Tianben miaofa lianhua jing*, translated by Jñānagupta and Dharmagupta in 601 (this last is a revision of Kumārajīva’s translation). Kumārajīva’s translation has twenty-eight chapters; the material comprising its twelfth, “DEVADATTA,” chapter is included at the end of chapter eleven in the other two translations, which have only twenty-seven chapters (subsequent chapter references in this entry are to Kumārajīva’s twenty-eight chapter version). Whether Kumārajīva’s translation originally contained the Devadatta chapter, or whether it was added later, has been a matter of some debate.

Of the three Chinese versions of the *Lotus Sūtra*, Kumārajīva’s proved by far the most popular. A Tibetan



translation, *Dam pa'i chos pad ma dkar po zhes bya ba theg pa chen po'i mdo*, was also made in the early ninth century by Surendrabodhi and Sna nam Ye shes sde. Since the nineteenth century, Sanskrit manuscripts and manuscript fragments of the *Lotus* have been discovered in Nepal, Kashmir, Tibet, and other parts of Central Asia. Critical comparison of these various versions has advanced scholarly understanding of the process of the sūtra's composition. As of the beginning of the twenty-first century, eight English translations have been published (all but one based on Kumārajīva's Chinese), along with translations into other modern languages.

Though the exact dating of individual chapters probably varies considerably, modern textual study suggests that the *Lotus Sūtra* may have been compiled, broadly speaking, in three stages. The first nine chapters, which focus on the themes of the "one vehicle" and "skillful means," represent an initial stage. Chapters ten through twenty-two, emphasizing BODHISATTVA conduct and the importance of revering, preaching, and transmitting the sūtra, constitute a second stage. This second stage corresponds, roughly, to that portion of the sūtra called the "assembly in open space," in which the jeweled STŪPA of the Buddha Prabhūtaratna appears from beneath the earth to testify to the *Lotus Sūtra's* truth, and Śākyamuni Buddha, accepting Prabhūtaratna's offer of a seat beside him in the stūpa, uses his supramundane powers to lift the entire assembly into midair on a level with the two buddhas. The final chapters, dealing with devotion to specific bodhisattvas, appear to have been added still later. Traditionally, however, exegetes have divided the sūtra not by stages in its compilation but by interpretation of its content. ZHIYI (538–597), de facto founder of the Tiantai School, termed the first fourteen chapters the "trace teaching" (Chinese, *ji-men*; Japanese, *shakumon*), preached by Śākyamuni in a provisionally manifested form as the historical Buddha, and the second fourteen chapters, the "origin teaching" (*benmen*, *honmon*), revealing Śākyamuni to be the original or primordial Buddha, awakened since the inconceivably distant past. This division of the sūtra into "trace" and "origin" sections formed the basis for numerous subsequent interpretations, especially in the Tiantai/Tendai and Nichiren Schools.

In China, a practice began of grouping apparently related sūtras into threes. The "threefold *Lotus Sūtra*" consists of Kumārajīva's *Sūtra of the Lotus Blossom of the Wonderful Dharma* (Chinese, *Miaofa lianhua jing*; Japanese, *Myōhōrengekyō*) as the main sūtra; the

*Sūtra of Immeasurable Meanings* (*Wuliang yi jing*, *Muryōgikyō*) as the introductory sūtra; and the *Sūtra on the Method of Contemplating Bodhisattva Samantabhadra* (*Guan Puxian pusa xingfa jing*, *Kan Fugen bosatsu gyōhōkyō*) as the concluding sūtra. No Sanskrit version is extant for either the introductory or the concluding sūtra, and the circumstances of their compilation remain unclear. According to the first chapter of the *Lotus Sūtra*, just before expounding the *Lotus* itself, the Buddha preached "a Mahāyāna sūtra called Immeasurable Meanings"; the *Sūtra of Immeasurable Meanings* was assumed to be that very sūtra. It also contains the statement: "In these forty years and more, I [Śākyamuni] have not yet revealed the truth." The "truth" here was taken to mean the *Lotus Sūtra*, and this passage was used as a proof text to support arguments according the *Lotus* a supreme position among the Buddha's lifetime teachings. The *Samantabhadra Sūtra* was clearly composed with reference to chapter twenty-eight of the *Lotus Sūtra*, which is also about Samantabhadra, and sets forth a detailed meditation on this bodhisattva that includes repentance for sins committed with the six sense faculties. Zhiyi incorporated this ritual of repentance into the *Lotus* samādhi, the third of the "four kinds of samādhi" taught in the Tiantai meditative system.

### Central themes of the *Lotus Sūtra*

**The one vehicle and skillful means.** Mahāyāna polemics extol the ideal of the bodhisattva who strives for the liberation of all, over and against the goal of personal NIRVĀṆA sought by the Buddha's disciples (śrāvakas) and the privately enlightened (PRATYEKABUDDHAS), followers of the two so-called HĪNAYĀNA vehicles. Some Mahāyāna sūtras, such as the *Vimalakīrtinirdēśa*, condemn the way of the two vehicles as a spiritual dead end. The *Lotus Sūtra*, however, attempts to reconcile them with the Mahāyāna by asserting that the threefold division in the Buddha's teaching, into separate vehicles for śrāvakas, pratyekabuddhas, and bodhisattvas, is a skillful means (UPĀYA); in reality, there is only one buddha vehicle. That is, the Buddha taught these three separate vehicles as a pedagogical device, in accordance with his auditors' varying capacity for practice and understanding, but they are all designed to lead ultimately to the one buddha vehicle and thus spring from a unitary intent. These intertwined themes—the Buddha's teaching through skill in means and the ultimate resolution of the three disparate vehicles in the one vehicle—are presented discursively in chapter two and then illustrated in sub-

sequent chapters through analogies and parables, such as the three carts and the burning house, the rich man and his poor son, medicinal herbs, the magically conjured city, the gem concealed in a robe, and so forth.

While the *Lotus Sūtra* repeatedly asserts the supremacy of the one vehicle, it never actually explains what it is. This has opened the way for diametrically opposed readings of the sūtra. One controversy among Chinese exegetes centered on whether the one vehicle is the same as, or different from, the bodhisattva vehicle (the so called “three carts or four” controversy). At stake was the question: Is the Mahāyāna the true, final teaching, and only the two vehicles provisional? Or is the Mahāyāna itself, like the two Hīnayāna vehicles, also ultimately a skillful means, leading to but transcended by a truth beyond expression? A related point of disagreement in the history of *Lotus* interpretation concerns whether the one vehicle should be read inclusively or exclusively. From an inclusive standpoint, since the one vehicle is all-encompassing, all practices and doctrinal formulations can be seen as provisional skillful means, which, while different in themselves, nonetheless all point toward the same realization. From an exclusive or hierarchical viewpoint, however, the one vehicle is equated with one specific teaching, the *Lotus*, which is thereby invested with absolute status, over and against all other teachings, which are then relegated to the lesser category of “provisional.”

**Universal buddhahood.** A corollary to its claim that there is only one vehicle is the *Lotus Sūtra*’s assertion that buddhahood is the final goal of all. In the sūtra’s words, “Among those who hear this dharma, there is not one who shall not attain buddhahood.” This is illustrated by predictions of future buddhahood bestowed upon the Buddha’s śrāvaka disciples, as they come to understand that the goal of personal NIRVĀṆA they had pursued was a skillful expedient, not a final destination in itself. The twelfth, Devadatta, chapter was widely interpreted as extending the promise of buddhahood to persons seen as having particular obstacles to liberation. The prediction of eventual buddhahood for Devadatta, the Buddha’s wicked cousin, was read as illustrating the potential for enlightenment even in evil persons, and the instantaneous realization of buddhahood by the dragon king’s daughter, described in the same chapter, as a promise of enlightenment for WOMEN. In keeping with traditional views that buddhahood must be achieved in a male body, the dragon princess changes into a male in the moment before her enlightenment. Modern readers seeking

support in the Mahāyāna for a position of gender equality find this element in the narrative troubling. Historically, however, exegetes and devotees have not necessarily adhered to a literal reading, and the *Lotus* was in fact thought to hold particular relevance for women’s attainment of buddhahood.

**The primordial Buddha.** The latter part of the *Lotus Sūtra*, especially the “origin teaching,” presents a radically revised depiction of Śākyamuni, not as the historical Buddha who lived and taught in India, but as the original or primordial Buddha. In chapter eleven, before he opens the jeweled stūpa of Prabhūtaratna, Śākyamuni “recalls his emanations,” and the buddhas who then gather from throughout the ten directions are shown to be his manifestations. Particularly in chapter sixteen, Śākyamuni reveals that he first achieved enlightenment, not under the bodhi tree in this lifetime as people think, but billions of kalpas ago, in the inconceivably remote past. Ever since then, he has been here in this world and also in others, preaching the dharma and converting living beings. Thus his birth, renunciation, practice, awakening, and entry into nirvāṇa are all revealed to be the skillful means by which he constantly teaches and liberates others.

The Buddha of the origin teaching is often spoken of as the “eternal Buddha,” a term that, though easy to understand, flattens out a long and complex history of interpretation. Early Chinese exegetes disagreed over whether this Buddha’s life span was finite or infinite, or whether he was a Buddha in the dharma-body (dharmakāya), the recompense-body (sambhogakāya), or the manifested-body (nirmāṇakāya) aspect. In a dynamic synthesis, Zhiyi interpreted the original Buddha of the *Lotus Sūtra* as embodying all three bodies in one: The dharma body is the truth that is realized; the recompense body is the wisdom that realizes it; and the manifested body, a compassionate expression of that wisdom as the human Buddha who appeared and taught in this world. In the Japanese Tendai tantric tradition (Taimitsu), the primordial Buddha of the *Lotus Sūtra* was identified with Vairocana or Mahāvairocana, the cosmic Buddha pervading everywhere, whose form is all things, whose voice is all sounds, and whose mind is all thoughts. In Tendai ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) doctrine, the primordial Buddha is said to be the “triple body that is unproduced” (*musa sanjin*), that is, innate originally. Here, the Buddha’s enlightenment in the remote past is taken as a metaphor for the original enlightenment that is the beginningless true aspect of all things.

NICHIREN (1222–1282), founder of the school that would eventually bear his name, regarded the Buddha of the origin teaching as the only true Buddha, of whom all other buddhas are but manifestations. The practitioner is identified with this Buddha in the act of embracing faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* and chanting its title or DAIMOKU, *Namu Myōhō-rence-kyō*.

### The *Lotus Sūtra* and devotional practices

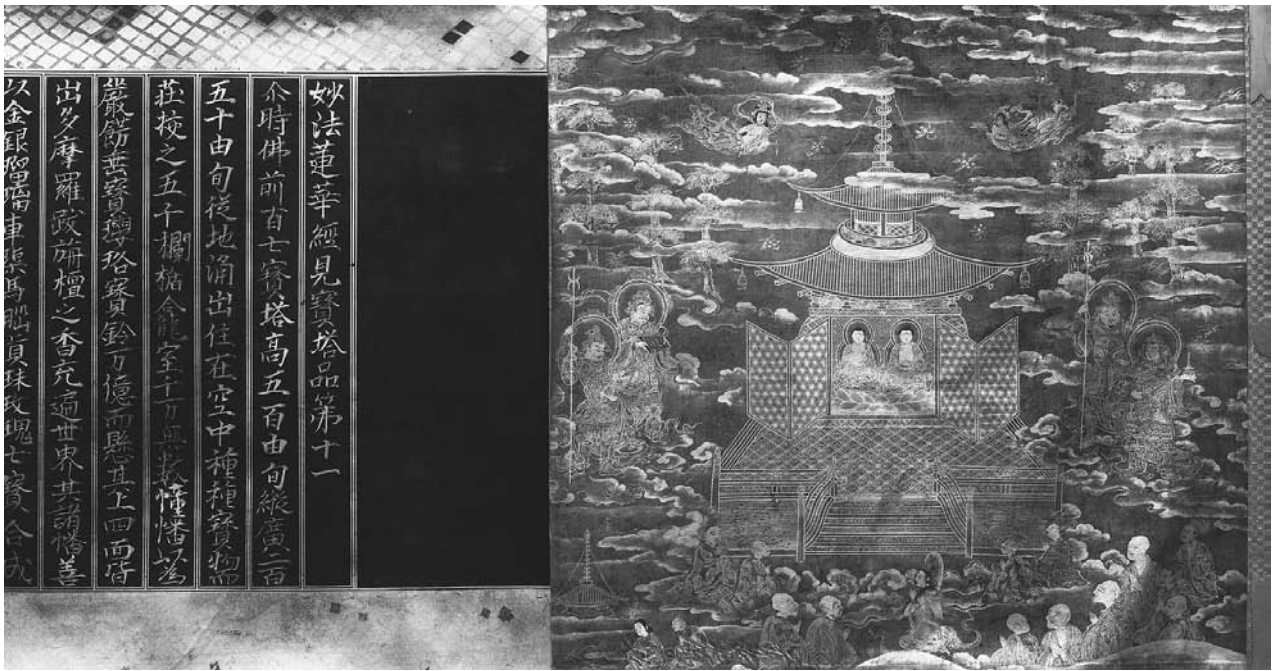
Following its introduction to China, numerous commentaries were written on the *Lotus Sūtra* by Buddhist scholars of many schools, stimulating doctrinal debate. The one vehicle doctrine played a key role in the Chinese scholastic project of establishing comprehensive classificatory systems (*panjiao*) that attempted to order the diverse Buddhist teachings transmitted from India and Central Asia into a coherent whole. Yet, while valued in elite circles, such doctrinal developments were probably less influential in the spread of faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* than were a range of devotional practices performed by both clerics and laypeople across social levels. These forms of *Lotus* practice transcended distinctions of school or sect and exerted a profound impact on the Buddhist ritual and devotional culture of East Asia.

*Lotus Sūtra* devotion in its Indic context belonged to a distinctive Mahāyāna “cult of the book,” in which sūtras were enshrined and revered in a manner analogous to the worship of Buddha relics enshrined in stūpas. The sūtra itself exhorts its devotees to text-centered acts of reverence, such as the “five practices” of receiving and keeping, reading, reciting from memory, teaching, and transcribing the *Lotus Sūtra*. As with other Mahāyāna sūtras, *Lotus Sūtra* devotion in East Asia has often centered around copying, worshipping, and preaching the sūtra. Such devotional acts might be sponsored officially, by the court, or undertaken privately. The merit thought to result was dedicated toward a number of aims, including realization of enlightenment; birth in a buddha’s pure land or other ideal realm; eradication of sins; the postmortem welfare of deceased relatives; and this-worldly benefits, including the peace and stability of the country, long life, recovery from illness, and prevention of calamity. Tales compiled in both China and Japan extol the wondrous blessings obtained by monks, nuns, ascetics, and ordinary lay people who carried out such practices.

Copying the *Lotus Sūtra* might be undertaken by an individual or by a religious association formed for the purpose, or a professional calligrapher might be com-

missioned. Sūtra copying was seen as a virtuous deed whose merit might be dedicated toward one’s own salvation or that of deceased family members. In China, *Lotus Sūtra* copying flourished particularly in the Sui (589–618) and Tang (618–907) dynasties. In Japan, the *Lotus* was the sūtra most frequently copied in the Heian period (794–1185). Some transcriptions commissioned by wealthy patrons were copied on dark blue paper using gold or silver ink. Especially striking are surviving copies in which each of the *Lotus Sūtra*’s 69,384 characters has been drawn seated on a lotus pedestal or surrounded by a stūpa, thereby expressing the conviction that “each character of the *Lotus* is a living buddha.” The *Lotus Sūtra* also numbered among those scriptures most often preserved in anticipation of the era of decline known as the Final Dharma age (Chinese, *mofa*; Japanese, *mappō*). In China, it was sometimes inscribed on stone slabs on hillsides, or in Japan, copied and buried in bronze cylinders to await the advent of MAITREYA, the next buddha. Vernacular sermons on the *Lotus*, sometimes with accompanying illustrations, made its message broadly accessible, as did popular songs, poems, and artistic representations. One of the most widespread visual images of *Lotus* is that of the jeweled stūpa, sometimes represented by the two buddhas, Śākyamuni and Prabhūtaratna, seated together. This scene is depicted in cave paintings, on steles, in MAṄḌALAS, and by small votive stūpas.

The *Lotus* has also been associated with devotion to, or emulation of, specific bodhisattvas described in its later chapters. Chapter twenty-three describes how a bodhisattva called “Beheld with Joy by all Living Beings” steepes his body in perfumed oils and then burns it in offering to the Buddha and the sūtra. This would become the textual basis for SELF-IMMOLATION, one of many forms of “discarding the body” undertaken by Buddhist ascetics. This controversial practice has been carried out as an act of renunciation, as an offering to the dharma, to achieve birth in a pure land, and as a form of protest when Buddhism has faced persecution. A broader influence on East Asian Buddhism as a whole stems from chapter twenty-five, which describes how the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara (Guanyin, Kwan-ūm, Kannon) will respond compassionately to those who call upon his aid. This chapter eventually circulated as an independent sūtra and helped promote devotion to Avalokiteśvara, which flourishes to this day. Descriptions in this chapter of the bodhisattva rescuing devotees from fire, flood, bandits, and other dangers were frequent subjects of *Lotus*-related painting.



An illuminated *Lotus Sūtra*. (Japanese, Heian period, 794–1185.) © Christie's Images/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

### The *Lotus Sūtra* and specific schools

While reverence for the *Lotus Sūtra* in East Asia has transcended all sectarian divisions, it has also come to be associated with two specific traditions: the Tiantai school, which spread in China, Korea, and Japan; and also the NICHIREN SCHOOL, which emerged in thirteenth-century Japan. The *Lotus*-related practices of these schools were influenced by, and in turn helped to shape, broader traditions of *Lotus* devotion.

**The Tiantai/Tendai tradition.** Zhiyi, the Tiantai founder, produced extensive and influential commentaries on the *Lotus*: the *Fahua xuanyi* (profound meaning of the *Lotus*), elucidating what he saw as the sūtra's underlying principles, and the *Fahua wenju* (words and phrases of the *Lotus*), a line-by-line exegesis. The *Lotus* also provided him with a textual foundation for his conceptual innovations. A passage in Kumārajīva's translation of chapter two sets forth the "ten such-likes" (*shirushi*; Japanese, *jūnyoze*) as the "true aspect of the dharmas" (*zhufa shixiang*; Japanese, *shohō jissō*) that only buddhas can understand. By punctuating the passage in three different ways, Zhiyi derived the threefold truth of emptiness, conventional existence, and the middle, which informs the structure of his integrated system of doctrine and meditation. The same passage also provided him with a textual basis for "the single thought-moment being three thousand realms" (*ynian sanqian, ichinen sanzen*), his architectonic vi-

sion of the entire universe as an interpenetrating whole in which mind and concrete actualities are nondual and all dharmas are mutually inclusive. This is the "realm of the inconceivable," the first of ten modes of meditation set forth in his treatise on meditation, MOHE ZHIGUAN (*Great Calming and Contemplation*).

Though Zhiyi valued the *Lotus* as the "subtle" teaching that alone reveals the perfect interfusion of the three truths, he held that other sūtras also contain "subtle" elements; their particular admixtures of partial or provisional teachings were necessary responses to differences in human capacity and did not, in his view, reflect a rigid hierarchy of sūtras. However, the Tiantai systematizer and sixth patriarch ZHANRAN (711–782), who lived in a time of increased sectarian consciousness and rivalry with other schools, organized the sūtras into a hierarchy of "five periods and eight teachings," with the *Lotus Sūtra* at the apex. Zhanran's classification was instrumental in establishing the sūtra's reputation as supreme among the Buddha's teachings.

New approaches to the *Lotus Sūtra* developed in Japanese Tendai, differentiating it from the Tiantai of the Asian mainland. Most notable was the flowering of a distinctive Tendai system of tantric Buddhism, or Taimitsu. Taimitsu theoreticians such as ENNIN (794–864), Enchin (814–891), and Annen (841–?) reinterpreted the *Lotus Sūtra* as a tantric scripture and

equated the Śākyamuni Buddha of the “origin teaching” with Vairocana or Mahāvairocana, the cosmic Buddha of the tantric teachings who is without beginning or end and who pervades everywhere. The *Lotus* also served as a basis for Taimitsu ritual, for example, in the “Lotus rite” (*Hokke hō*), performed to eradicate sin, build merit, and realize awakening. The MAṆḌALA used in this rite depicts Śākyamuni and Prabhūtaratna seated together in its central court, as they appeared in the jeweled stūpa, and may have influenced the form of Nichiren’s maṇḍala. SAICHŌ (767–822), founder of Japanese Tendai, had already identified the *Lotus Sūtra* with the doctrine of “realizing buddhahood with this very body” (*sokushin jōbutsu*). Taimitsu thought and practice further promoted understandings of the *Lotus* as enabling the direct realization of enlightenment.

Another distinctive *Lotus*-based development of Japanese Tendai was the doctrine of original enlightenment, which dominated Tendai doctrinal studies from approximately the eleventh through seventeenth centuries. Though deeply colored by the assumptions of tantric Buddhism, original enlightenment doctrine was classified by its producers as “exoteric,” in contrast to esoteric transmissions of tantric ritual. Original enlightenment thought might be seen as an attempt to reinterpret traditional Tiantai/Tendai doctrines and texts—including the works of Zhiyi and Zhanran, standard debate topics, and even the *Lotus Sūtra* itself—from the perspective that enlightenment is not “attained” but innate from the outset.

Largely through the medium of the Tiantai/Tendai tradition, both on the continent and in Japan, the *Lotus Sūtra* became associated with PURE LAND BUDDHISM. Zhiyi had incorporated Pure Land elements into the constantly walking samādhi, the second of the “four kinds of samādhi” in his system of meditation. Here the practitioner circumambulates an altar to AMITĀBHA Buddha while at the same time visualizing Amitābha’s marks and qualities, eventually gaining insight into the nonduality of the visualized Buddha and the visualizing mind. During the Song dynasty (960–1279), Tiantai monks took the lead in promoting societies for Pure Land practice, including both monastics and LAITY. In Japan during the Heian period, an especially close connection existed between the *Lotus Sūtra* and Pure Land Buddhism, exemplified on Mount Hiei, the great Tendai monastic center, where monks performed the *Lotus* samādhi in the morning and chanted the *Amitābha Sūtra* in the evening. Mount

Hiei was also the first site in Japan for practice of the “continuous *nenbutsu*,” said to have been introduced from Mount Wutai in China by Saichō’s disciple Ennin. This was a ritual form of contemplating Amitābha and intoning the *Amitābha Sūtra* with the aim of eradicating sin and achieving birth in Amitābha’s Pure Land, which became incorporated into Tendai practices. *Lotus*-Pure Land associations flourished in the broader society as well, and many people recited and copied the *Lotus Sūtra* with the aspiration of achieving birth in Amitābha’s paradise. Not until the Kamakura period (1185–1333), with the advent of teachers like HŌNEN (1133–1212) and Nichiren, would strongly exclusivist forms of both *Lotus* and Pure Land devotion emerge.

### Nichiren and modern *Lotus*-based movements.

Nichiren developed a strongly exclusivist reading of the *Lotus* as the only true teaching. He believed that the Buddha had intended this sūtra specifically for the Final Dharma age, in which he and his contemporaries believed they were living. Other, provisional sūtras, Nichiren insisted, could no longer lead to buddhahood in this benighted era. Accordingly, he stressed the practice of *shakubuku*, or teaching the dharma by directly rebuking attachment to provisional teachings. He saw his work of spreading faith in the *Lotus* as preparing the way for Bodhisattva Superior Conduct (*Viśiṣṭacāritra*; Japanese, *Jōgyō*), the leader of the bodhisattvas who are Śākyamuni’s original disciples, taught by him since his enlightenment in the inconceivably distant past, as described in the origin teaching. In chapter fifteen, these bodhisattvas emerge from beneath the earth and vow to spread the *Lotus* after Śākyamuni’s nirvāṇa. Much of the later Nichiren tradition would identify Nichiren as an actual manifestation of Bodhisattva Superior Conduct.

The *Lotus Sūtra* foretells grave trials that its devotees will face in upholding it in an evil age after the Buddha’s nirvāṇa. Historically, these passages probably reflect opposition from the Buddhist establishment encountered by the particular Mahāyāna community that compiled the sūtra. Nichiren, however, saw these predictions as being borne out in the trials and persecutions he himself faced, and he read the *Lotus* as a work of prophecy being fulfilled by himself and his disciples. He termed this “reading with the body” (*shikidoku*), meaning to practice the *Lotus* not only by verbally reciting it and mentally believing in its teachings, but also by gladly undergoing in one’s own person the harsh trials that the sūtra says its devotees in the latter age must endure.

By the spread of exclusive faith in the *Lotus*, Nichiren taught, the buddha land could be realized in this present world. Especially in the twentieth century, this goal inspired a number of modern and contemporary *Lotus*- or Nichiren-based movements, which have assimilated Nichiren's vision of transforming this world into a buddha land to a range of political and humanitarian agendas. These groups include the small ascetic monastic order Nipponzan Myōhōji, which is committed to the antinuclear movement and to absolute nonviolence, as well as the large lay movements Risshō Kōsei Kai and SŌKA GAKKAI, which engage in various local and international peace, educational, and relief projects.

**See also:** Chanting and Liturgy; Folk Religion: An Overview; Gender; Scripture

### Bibliography

- Bielefeldt, Carl. "The One Vehicle and the Three Jewels: On Japanese Sectarianism and Some Ecumenical Alternatives." *Buddhist-Christian Studies* 10 (1990): 5–16.
- Davidson, J. Leroy. *The Lotus Sutra in Chinese Art: A Study in Buddhist Art to the Year 1000*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1954.
- Dykstra, Yoshiko K. *Miraculous Tales of the Lotus Sutra from Ancient Japan: The Dainihonkoku Hokekyōkenki of Priest Chingen*. Osaka: Intercultural Research Institute, Kansai University of Foreign Studies, 1983.
- Fujita, Kotatsu. "One Vehicle or Three?," tr. Leon Hurvitz. *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 3 (1975): 79–166.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School* (1984). Reprint, Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Groner, Paul. *Ryōgen and Mount Hiei: Japanese Tendai in the Tenth Century*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Hubbard, Jamie. "Buddhist-Buddhist Dialogue? The *Lotus Sutra* and the Polemic of Accommodation." *Buddhist-Christian Studies* 15 (1995): 119–136.
- Hurvitz, Leon. "The Lotus Sūtra in East Asia: A Review of *Hokke shisō*." *Monumenta Serica* 29 (1970–1971): 697–762.
- Hurvitz, Leon, trans. *Scripture of the Lotus Blossom of the Fine Dharma*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1976.
- Pye, Michael. *Skilful Means: A Concept in Mahayana Buddhism*. London: Duckworth, 1978.
- Reeves, Gene, ed. *A Buddhist Kaleidoscope: Essays on the Lotus Sutra*. Tokyo: Kosei, 2002.
- Schopen, Gregory. "The Phrase 'sa pṛthivīpradeśaś caitabhūto bhavet' in the *Vajracchedikā*: Notes on the Cult of the Book in Mahāyāna." *Indo-Iranian Journal* 17, nos. 3–4 (1975): 147–181.
- Stevenson, Daniel B. "The Four Kinds of Samādhi in Early T'ien-t'ai Buddhism." In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Stevenson, Daniel B. "Tales of the Lotus Sutra." In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Swanson, Paul L., ed. *Tendai Buddhism in Japan*. Special issue of *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 14, nos. 2–3 (1987).
- Swanson, Paul L. *Foundations of T'ien-t'ai Philosophy: The Flowering of the Two Truths Theory in Chinese Buddhism*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1989.
- Tamura, Yoshirō, and Kurata, Bunsaku, eds. *Art of the Lotus Sūtra: Japanese Masterpieces*, tr. Edna B. Crawford. Tokyo: Kosei, 1987.
- Tanabe, George J., Jr., and Tanabe, Willa Jane, eds. *The Lotus Sutra in Japanese Culture*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1988.
- Tanabe, Willa J. *Paintings of the Lotus Sutra*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1988.
- Watson, Burton, trans. *The Lotus Sutra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993.
- Yuyama, Akira. *A Bibliography of the Sanskrit Texts of the Saddharmapuṇḍarikāsūtra*. Canberra: Centre of Oriental Studies and Australian National University Press, 1970.
- Ziporyn, Brook. *Evil and/or/as the Good: Omniscience, Intersubjectivity, and Value Paradox in Tiantai Buddhist Thought*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2000.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

*This page intentionally left blank*

ENCYCLOPEDIA OF  
**BUDDHISM**



# EDITORIAL BOARD



## EDITOR IN CHIEF

Robert E. Buswell, Jr.

*Professor of Buddhist Studies and Chair, Department of Asian Languages and Cultures  
Director, Center for Buddhist Studies  
University of California, Los Angeles*

## BOARD MEMBERS

William M. Bodiford

*Associate Professor of Buddhist Studies  
University of California, Los Angeles*

Donald S. Lopez, Jr.

*Carl W. Belsler Professor of Buddhist and Tibetan Studies  
University of Michigan*

John S. Strong

*Professor of Religion and Chair, Department of Philosophy and Religion  
Bates College*

Eugene Y. Wang

*Gardner Cowles Associate Professor of History of Art and Architecture  
Harvard University*



ENCYCLOPEDIA OF  
**BUDDHISM**

Volume Two

M-Z

Appendix, Index

Robert E. Buswell, Jr., Editor in Chief

**MACMILLAN  
REFERENCE  
USA™**

**THOMSON**  
—★—™  
**GALE**



## Encyclopedia of Buddhism

Robert E. Buswell, Jr., Editor in Chief

©2004 by Macmillan Reference USA.  
Macmillan Reference USA is an imprint of  
The Gale Group, Inc., a division of  
Thomson Learning, Inc.

Macmillan Reference USA™ and  
Thomson Learning™ are trademarks used  
herein under license.

For more information, contact  
Macmillan Reference USA  
300 Park Avenue South, 9th Floor  
New York, NY 10010  
Or you can visit our Internet site at  
<http://www.gale.com>

### ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

No part of this work covered by the copy-  
right hereon may be reproduced or used  
in any form or by any means—graphic,  
electronic, or mechanical, including photo-  
copying, recording, taping, Web distribu-  
tion, or information storage retrieval  
systems—without the written permission  
of the publisher.

For permission to use material from this  
product, submit your request via Web at  
<http://www.gale-edit.com/permissions>, or  
you may download our Permissions Request  
form and submit your request by fax or  
mail to:

*Permissions Department*  
The Gale Group, Inc.  
27500 Drake Road  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535  
Permissions Hotline:  
248-699-8006 or 800-877-4253 ext. 8006  
Fax: 248-699-8074 or 800-762-4058

While every effort has been made to en-  
sure the reliability of the information pre-  
sented in this publication, The Gale Group,  
Inc. does not guarantee the accuracy of the  
data contained herein. The Gale Group, Inc.  
accepts no payment for listing; and inclusion  
in the publication of any organization,  
agency, institution, publication, service, or  
individual does not imply endorsement of  
the editors or publisher. Errors brought to  
the attention of the publisher and verified  
to the satisfaction of the publisher will be  
corrected in future editions.

Cover photograph of the Jo khang  
Temple in Lhasa, Tibet reproduced by  
permission. © Chris Lisle/Corbis.

The publisher wishes to thank the  
Vergleichende Sprachwissenschaft (Institute  
of Comparative Linguistics) of the University  
of Frankfurt, and particularly Dr. Jost  
Gippert, for their kind permission to use  
the TITUS Cyberbit font in preparing the  
manuscript for the *Encyclopedia of Bud-  
dhism*. This font was specially developed  
by the institute for use by scholars working  
on materials in Asian languages and enables  
the accurate transliteration with diacriticals  
of texts from those languages. Further  
information may be found at  
<http://titus.fkidg1.uni-frankfurt.de>.

Encyclopedia of Buddhism / edited by Robert E. Buswell, Jr.  
p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 0-02-865718-7(set hardcover : alk. paper) — ISBN 0-02-865719-5  
(Volume 1) — ISBN 0-02-865720-9 (Volume 2)

1. Buddhism—Encyclopedias. I. Buswell, Robert E.

BQ128.E62 2003

294.3'03—dc21

2003009965

This title is also available as an e-book.  
ISBN 0-02-865910-4 (set)

Contact your Gale sales representative for ordering information.

Printed in the United States of America  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# M



## MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL

The Madhyamaka school proclaims a middle way that rejects belief in the existence of an eternal self and inherently existent phenomena as well as the belief that such selves and phenomena do not exist at all. This school reinterprets the teaching of PRATĪYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) to mean that because various causes and conditions produce phenomena, all are empty of any inherent existence. ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) means that no phenomena and no persons are unoriginated and unrelated. Emptiness itself is empty. Since everything is empty, there is no real difference between good and bad, pure and impure, or SAṂSĀRA and NIRVĀṆA. These distinctions exist on the level of conventional truth and serve to introduce people to the ultimate truth that transcends dualistic language and conceptual thought. The liberating experience of meditation uncovers ultimate truth and destroys all attachment to erroneous conceptions of the self and the world.

The Madhyamaka school's influential teaching of emptiness endures in Buddhist traditions as diverse as the Tibetan DGE LUGS (GELUK) school and the East Asian CHAN SCHOOL and it continues to inspire debate among Western scholars whose interpretations of Madhyamaka's founder are equally diverse.

### **Early history: Nāgārjuna and his disciple Āryadeva**

From the first century B.C.E. to the second century C.E., debate over the interpretation of the Buddha's teachings contributed to the writing of sūtras and scholastic ABHIDHARMA texts with new analyses of the Buddha's teachings. The authors of *abhidharma* works

believed that the world contains a finite number of mental and physical phenomena (dharma) that have an inherent existence of their own (*svabhāva*) and that Buddhist saints (ARHATS) experience nirvāṇa through their insight into the nature of these phenomena. The movement that came to be known as the MAHĀYĀNA criticized the arhats' PATH as narrowly focused on their self-centered pursuit of nirvāṇa. BODHISATTVAS, who aspire to become buddhas, begin their path with the intention of working for the enlightenment of all beings. Mahāyāna supporters claim that the bodhisattva path is superior because it balances the individual pursuit of insight with great compassion for others. Although the origins of the Mahāyāna movement remain obscure, most scholars agree that it developed in monastic circles in India. No canon of Mahāyāna sūtras existed, nor, if statements in early Mahāyāna sūtras are to be taken at face value, would there have been interest in establishing one, since each sūtra proclaimed its own unique authoritative status.

**Nāgārjuna and his major works.** NĀGĀRJUNA, who composed treatises that incorporated the teachings of these diverse sūtras into a philosophical system, lived in a monastic community in southern India from about 150 to 250 C.E. The Madhyamaka (Middle Way) school of Buddhist philosophy takes its name from Nāgārjuna's belief that śūnyatā (emptiness) is the middle way between the extreme positions of nihilism and eternalism. Nihilism rejects belief in a transmigrating self that experiences the results of actions; eternalism believes in the eternal existence of such a self. Nāgārjuna, in *Ratnāvalī* (*Jewel Garland*) 1:44–5, explains that the eternalist view, which motivates people to do good in hope of a heavenly reward, is better than the nihilist view, but better still is the liberating insight

into emptiness that repudiates both views. Nāgārjuna and his disciple, ĀRYADEVA (ca. 170–270 C.E.), were convinced that they were preserving the true middle way of the Buddha's teachings, while other Buddhists had strayed from it and adopted extreme positions.

Nāgārjuna's writings encompass several genres: letters, philosophical works, and hymns. His *Suhṛllekha* (*Letter to a Friend*), addressed to a South Indian Śātavāhana dynasty king, advises the king that since the world from the highest heavens down to worst hells is impermanent and painful, he should follow the eight-fold path. Nāgārjuna encourages the king to develop insight into dependent origination and the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS and to pursue meritorious actions with the intention of attaining buddhahood and creating his own buddha field, just as AMITĀBHA Buddha had. In the *Ratnāvalī*, Nāgārjuna discusses the bodhisattva's path and the goal of buddhahood in more detail. Through the cultivation of compassion and the six perfections, a bodhisattva advances on the ten stages that culminate in the inconceivable state of buddhahood. Although some people ridicule Mahāyāna beliefs, intelligent people use reason to accept the teaching of emptiness and achieve perfect enlightenment (4.67:99).

Nāgārjuna uses reason to prove that phenomena are empty of any inherent existence of their own in his most important philosophical work, the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* (*Root Verses on the Middle Way*). Emptiness (śūnyatā) means that nothing is created by itself or sustains itself without depending on various causes and conditions. Nāgārjuna's belief that all phenomena have arisen in dependence on causes and conditions is equivalent to saying that they are all empty of any inherent existence (24:18). He further explains this point of view in the *Śūnyatāsaptati* (*Seventy Verses on Emptiness*). While knowledge of emptiness is the proper means for relinquishing all extreme views, Nāgārjuna does not consider emptiness to be another view that somehow mediates between extreme positions. He refers to an early Mahāyāna scripture, the *Kāśyapa-parivarta* (*The Section on Kāśyapa*), in which the Buddha asks whether a patient would be cured if the medicine a doctor uses to treat his symptoms remains in the body without being expelled (13:8). Kāśyapa replies that the patient's problems would become worse. Like the Buddha, Nāgārjuna regards emptiness as a therapeutic antidote to the ill effects of attachment to views and those who retain emptiness after it has achieved its purpose as incurable. He advocates insight into the emptiness of phenomena as a means for calming the mind and controlling its tendency to develop

concepts (18:5). He describes (24:8–10) two types of truth—conventional and ultimate—and explains that without relying on conventional truth, which functions on the level of ordinary language and experience, the ultimate cannot be taught; and without understanding the ultimate, nirvāṇa is not achieved. Nirvāṇa and the cycle of death and rebirth (saṃsāra) cannot be differentiated (25:19–20) since emptiness characterizes both.

While the language and logic that Nāgārjuna uses in *Vigrahavyāvartanī* (*Warding off Arguments*) to criticize his opponents' views about the means of valid knowledge (*pramāṇa*) are as empty of substantive meaning as theirs, that does not impair their usefulness in exposing contradictions in their positions. Nāgārjuna has no thesis of his own to prove (vv. 29, 59), and he condemns the destructive psychological effects of attachment to views in his *Yuktiṣaṣṭikā* (*Sixty Verses on Reasoning*). He warns (vv. 47–52) that engaging in divisive debates produces the afflictions of desire and anger. Intelligent people who perceive phenomena to be like illusions and reflections, whose minds remain undisturbed, achieve nirvāṇa (vv. 55–58).

Nāgārjuna's collection of hymns praise the Buddha for his compassionate action and for his liberating knowledge of a world beyond conceptual discriminations. The *Acintyastava* (*Praise for the Inconceivable Buddha*) concludes (vv. 56–58) with the remarks that the Buddha's gift of the dharma, the nectar of his teaching, is that phenomena are empty. In the *Paramārthastava* (*Praise of the Ultimate*) he praises the Buddha, whom he describes as incomparable and beyond all words and all duality, although in the concluding verses Nāgārjuna asks how praise is possible when it and its object (like all phenomena) are empty.

**Āryadeva and his major work.** Nāgārjuna's main disciple, Āryadeva, in his major work, the *Catuḥśataka* (*Four Hundred Verses*), presents the path to the attainment of buddhahood, structured around the accumulation of the two requisites of merit and knowledge. The first eight chapters describe meritorious practices that gradually prepare the aspiring bodhisattva to receive knowledge about the empty and insubstantial nature of persons and phenomena, which the last eight chapters discuss in greater detail. Āryadeva utilizes the metaphor of illness and treatment in speaking about the actions of bodhisattvas and buddhas. They are skilled diagnosticians who provide the proper medication based upon a diagnosis of the illnesses that afflict SENTIENT BEINGS and remain patient

when ignorant people, afflicted by illness, reject their medicine (5.11–13, 8.20). Throughout their career, but especially on the first stage of the path, bodhisattvas are encouraged to perfect the virtue of DĀNA (GIVING). The merit of donating material goods, however, is far surpassed by the gift of instruction in the dharma (5.7). The bodhisattvas' ability to discern the thoughts of others enables them to adapt the teaching to the capacities of each student. Only after the student is judged capable of understanding the most profound teachings, will these teachings be given (5.10). Āryadeva emphasizes that it is insight into the selfless and empty nature of all phenomena, rather than the performance of any meritorious action, that brings about the attainment of peace (8.11). The progressive method of instruction begins with the practices of generosity and moral conduct and culminates in peace (8.14). First, all demeritorious actions must be rejected, then the concept of a self, and finally all phenomena (8.15). There is no difference between the cycle of existence and nirvāṇa for a bodhisattva who has a powerful mind (8.22). The disciplined calming of the mind confers the power to realize nirvāṇa in the present life (8.23).

In the last eight chapters of the *Catuhśataka*, Āryadeva refutes belief in permanent phenomena (atoms, the soul, time) and criticizes various theories about sense perception and causality. People who doubt and fear the Buddha's teachings on the selflessness of persons and phenomena cling to the less subtle views of Brahmin priests and naked ascetics (12.13–17, 19–22). The final chapter, a dialogue between teacher and student, considers the logical problems raised by the critics of emptiness. Āryadeva argues against the position that the negation of one thesis implies a commitment to the establishment of the opposite thesis (16.3–4, 7–8, 14). Statements about the existence of one thing and the nonexistence of another are unacceptable both on the conventional and ultimate level (16.16–18, 24). He concludes that no refutation can succeed against an opponent who refuses to hold any thesis (16.25).

**Madhyamaka in Central Asia and East Asia.** Little is known about Rāhulabhadra (ca. third century C.E.), a disciple of both Nāgārjuna and Āryadeva. One of his hymns, the *Prajñāpāramitāstotra* (*Praise of the Perfection of Wisdom*) is included in the Chinese text *Da zhidu lun* (*Treatise on the Great Perfection of Wisdom*). Because of the inclusion of this hymn, most scholars regard this text attributed to Nāgārjuna as a

compendium of Madhyamaka philosophy compiled by Central Asian scholars, including its translator, KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413). Kumārajīva also translated the three treatises (*san lun*), on which the Chinese branch of the Madhyamaka school was based: the *Zhong lun* (*Middle Treatise*), the *Shi'er men lun* (*Twelve Gate Treatise*), and the *Bai lun* (*Hundred Verses Treatise*), the first two attributed to Nāgārjuna and the third to Āryadeva. Kumārajīva's disciple SENGZHAO (374–414) composed original works that explain how the sage's calm and empty mind apprehends ultimate truth while still living in the world. The San Lun lineage ended in 623 with the death of Jizang (549–623), renowned for his commentaries on the three basic Madhyamaka treatises. A seventh-century Korean monk, Hyegwan, who studied with Jizang, brought these teachings to Japan, where they flourished briefly in the eighth century. Modern scholars appreciate the elegance of Kumārajīva's translations, although the academic schools founded in China and Japan to study them were not influential and did not survive after the eighth century.

### Development of divisions within the Madhyamaka school

The distinction—Svātantrika versus Prāsaṅgika—often used to describe the views of later Madhyamaka writers developed late in Buddhist textual history, perhaps not until the eleventh century. These two classifications refer to the Svātantrika school's acceptance of independent (*svatantra*) inferences in philosophical debate and the Prāsaṅgika school's rejection of such inferences. The Prāsaṅgika school favors a *reductio ad absurdum* method that uses the opponent's own arguments to show the undesired consequences (*prasaṅga*) to which their opponents' theses invariably lead and that does not require proof of a contrary thesis. The Svātantrika school and Prāsaṅgika schools are associated with the works of BHĀVAVIVEKA and CANDRAKĪRTI, respectively.

**Bhāvaviveka and his major works.** Bhāvaviveka (ca. 500–570) wrote a lengthy commentary on Nāgārjuna's verses, the *Prajñāpradīpa* (*Lamp of Insight*), in which he criticized the *prasaṅga* method used in an earlier commentary, *Mūlamadhyamakavṛtti* of Buddhapālita (ca. 470–540 C.E.). Bhāvaviveka also wrote several original works, chief among them, the *Madhyamakahrdayakārikā* (*Verses on the Heart of the Middle Way*) and his own commentary on this work, the *Tarkajvālā* (*Blaze of Reasoning*). In *Madhyamakahrdayakārikā* 3:26 Bhāvaviveka uses syllogistic LOGIC to

support the Madhyamaka position. He states that earth does not have any inherent existence from the perspective of ultimate reality (*paramārthataḥ*) because it is dependent on causes and conditions, like cognition. This syllogism has three parts—his thesis, the negative statement about inherent existence, and the reason—and an example. The thesis is a nonaffirming negation (*prasajyapratīṣedha*) and not an affirming negation (*pariyudāsapratīṣedha*) because it is concerned only with denying that the earth has inherent existence and not with affirming that it has some other characteristic.

Bhāvaviveka's *Tarkajvālā* provides valuable information on the development of both Buddhist and Brahmanical thought. He defends the Madhyamaka school against its detractors through the use of inferences and syllogisms developed by the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL logician DIGNĀGA (ca. 480–540) and by the Brahmanical Nyāya logicians. In chapters four and five Bhāvaviveka refutes the positions of his Buddhist opponents; in chapters six through nine, he refutes, respectively, the positions of the Brahmanical philosophical schools Sāṃkhya, Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika, Vedānta, and Mīmāṃsā.

**Candrakīrti and his major works.** Candrakīrti (ca. 600–650) studied the works of Nāgārjuna and Āryadeva with students of Bhāvaviveka and Buddhapālita, and he supported Buddhapālita's position against Bhāvaviveka's criticism in his *Prasannapadā* (*Clear Words*) commentary on the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*. He also wrote commentaries on the *Śūnyatāsaptati*, the *Yuktiṣaṣṭikā*, and Āryadeva's *Catuḥśataka*. Candrakīrti's independent work, the *Madhyamakāvatāra* (*Introduction to the Middle Way*), presents a general introduction to the Madhyamaka school's ideas on the nature of the bodhisattva path and its goal of buddhahood. Candrakīrti is best known for his criticism of Bhāvaviveka's use of independent inferences in the *Madhyamakāvatāra* (6.12) and in the first chapter of the *Prasannapadā* (Pr 14–39) and for his criticism of the Yogācāra school's epistemological and logical views in the *Madhyamakāvatāra* (6. 34–78; Pr 58–75). He rejects as illogical the Yogācāra position that external objects are permutations of consciousness and that consciousness is reflexively aware of itself (*svasaṃvedana*). Candrakīrti knows the criteria set down by Dignāga for judging the soundness of an argument and applies them to demonstrate the flaws in his opponents' inferences and syllogisms. He is unwilling to support philosophical systems whose asser-

tions are expressed positively or in the form of affirming negations. He rejects the distinctions Bhāvaviveka makes between theses established either conventionally or ultimately (6.12).

Candrakīrti distinguishes between conventional and ultimate truth in *Madhyamakāvatāra* (6:25–26). What ordinary people perceive as the object of their undamaged sense faculties is true from the conventional point of view; everything else is false. Eyes damaged by disease may produce false sense impressions. Water, mirrors, and the sun's rays may also produce false sense perceptions. These internal and external causes of false perception disturb the mental sense. Equally disturbing to the mental sense are non-Buddhist philosophers' views, which are not even conventionally true because ordinary people do not hold them. He describes conventional truth as the means, and ultimate truth as the goal (6:80). Candrakīrti concedes there are not really two truths but only one since the Buddha has said that nirvāṇa, which is non-deceptive, is the unique ultimate truth. Because conventional truth is deceptive it is not ultimately true.

Candrakīrti organizes his commentary on the *Catuḥśataka* around a debate between Āryadeva and various opponents. In the first half, he utilizes legal and political treatises, stories from the Hindu epics the *Rāmāyaṇa* and the *Mahābhārata*, and even secular love poetry in his demonstration of the superior merits of the Buddhist path. In the last half he critically examines the views of Buddhist and non-Buddhist opponents that lead people astray. These philosophers, he says in commenting on 12.4, talk about renunciation but they do not follow the right path and do not use the proper method. The proper method is the understanding of ultimate truth, namely, that all phenomena are empty of inherent existence. The cycle of death and rebirth ceases, he explains in his comments on 14:25, when consciousness no longer superimposes inherent existence on phenomena. What does not cease is the awakening of mind (*bodhicitta*) and the actions of a bodhisattva, which culminate in the ultimate knowledge of a buddha. The most influential work on the awakening of mind and the bodhisattva path is by ŚĀNTIDEVA.

**Śāntideva and his major works.** Śāntideva (ca. 685–763 C.E.) composed the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* (*Collection of Teachings*), a lengthy collection of excerpts from nearly one hundred Mahāyāna sūtras. His major work, the *BODHICARYĀVATĀRA* (*Introduction to the Conduct That Leads to Enlightenment*) traces the path of the

bodhisattva from the initial resolution to become a buddha to the final dedication of merit after the completion of the six perfections. In the first chapter he distinguishes between the mind resolved upon awakening and the mind that proceeds toward awakening; the initial resolution creates merit but the merit of the bodhisattva actively proceeding toward awakening is unending (1:15–17). Chapter two and three describe the religious acts—offerings made to the Buddha, taking refuge in the Three Jewels, and the confession of faults—that the bodhisattva undertakes before setting out on the path. Chapter three describes the bodhisattva’s request for buddhas in all directions to illuminate the world with their teachings (3:4–5) and the bodhisattva vows undertaken on behalf of all sentient beings (3:7–23). The fourth chapter indicates the strength of the bodhisattva’s resolve to fulfill these vows. In chapter five Śāntideva begins his discussion of the six PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS). Chapter six’s discussion of the perfection of patience concentrates on the avoidance of anger, the major impediment to the bodhisattva’s resolution. Chapter seven focuses on the cultivation of vigor and chapter eight on meditation. In chapter eight Śāntideva explains how bodhisattvas meditate on the equality of self and others (8:89–119) and put themselves in the place of others by understanding that all suffering comes from selfish pleasures and all happiness from putting others’ happiness first (8:120–131).

Śāntideva, in the lengthy ninth chapter on the perfection of wisdom, defends Madhyamaka beliefs against a multitude of objections from Buddhist and non-Buddhist opponents and refutes them. Śāntideva begins with a discussion of the two truths (9:2–8) and proceeds to refute the Yogācāra view of consciousness (11–34), *abhidharma* misconceptions about liberation and emptiness (40–56), and various wrong views about the self (57–87) and how feelings (88–101) and cognitions (102–5) arise. A detailed refutation of causality (114–37) is followed by his explanation of the emptiness of all phenomena and how insight into this teaching provides relief from the cycle of birth and death (138–167). The final chapter describes the dedication of merit derived from the bodhisattva’s progress on the path to awakening.

**The Yogācāra-Madhyamaka synthesis of Śāntarakṣita and Kamalaśīla.** Śāntideva and Candrakīrti, both associated with the Prāsaṅgika wing of the Madhyamaka school, vigorously criticize Yogācāra beliefs. Two later Madhyamaka writers, Śāntarakṣita

(ca. 725–790) and Kamalaśīla (ca. 740–795), found ways to incorporate some of these beliefs into their own systems. These scholars followed an example set two centuries earlier by the Yogācāra scholars Dharmapāla (ca. 530–561) and Sthiramati (ca. 510–570), who wrote commentaries on the Madhyamaka works of Nāgārjuna and Āryadeva. In the eighth-century monastic centers in eastern India, a synthesis of Yogācāra and Madhyamaka ideas came into prominence. The main figure associated with this movement is Śāntarakṣita. Like Bhāvaviveka, he uses logic to demonstrate the Madhyamaka position that phenomena lack inherent existence. Unlike Bhāvaviveka and his followers, Śāntarakṣita and his circle rejected the idea that external objects can be known even on the level of conventional truth. Madhyamaka and Yogācāra philosophers regard external objects as conceptual constructions. Śāntarakṣita (vv. 91–92 of *Madhyamakālamkāra, Eloquence of the Middle Way*) considers both object and subject as having the nature of consciousness, which is self-reflexive but still lacking in inherent existence. Śāntarakṣita concludes (v. 93) that Madhyamaka and Yogācāra taken together comprise the true Mahāyāna teachings. Śāntarakṣita’s comprehensive *Tattvasaṃgraha* (Compendium of Truth) critically examines the beliefs of all schools of philosophy known to him: Nyāya, Mīmāṃsā, Sāṃkhya, Advaita Vedānta, Jain, materialist, as well as the views of a variety of Buddhist schools.

Kamalaśīla was Śāntarakṣita’s disciple. In addition to his commentaries on Śāntarakṣita’s *Madhyamakālamkāra* and *Tattvasaṃgraha*, he wrote independent works, the *Madhyamakāloka* (*Light of the Middle Way*) and the *Bhāvanākrama* (*Stages of Meditation*), a set of three works that concern the bodhisattva’s practice of meditation. In the first *Bhāvanākrama* Kamalaśīla explains how the bodhisattva meditates first on compassion for all beings since compassion is the basic motivation for pursuing the path to buddhahood. The bodhisattva’s practice encompasses both skillful means (the first five perfections) and wisdom, which is acquired through study, critical reflection, and meditative realization. The second and third *Bhāvanākrama* explains how the bodhisattva combines the practice of calming meditation (*śamatha*), which concentrates the mind, with insight meditation or VIPASSANĀ (SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ), which examines the meditative object and realizes the nonduality of subject and object. Śāntarakṣita and Kamalaśīla were major figures in the initial introduction of Buddhism into Tibet.



**Madhyamaka in Tibet.** Madhyamaka teachings were well established in central Tibet by the end of the eighth century. Śāntarakṣita first came to Tibet from Nepal around 763 and taught in Lhasa for four months until the hostility of the king's ministers forced him back to Nepal. He returned in 775 and supervised the construction of the first Tibetan monastery, BSAM YAS (SAMYE), and served as its abbot until his death. Bsam yas, according to Tibetan historical texts, hosted the BSAM YAS DEBATE between Śāntarakṣita's student Kamalaśīla and the Chinese monk Heshang Moheyan over the issue of the bodhisattva's pursuit of the gradual path toward awakening versus a sudden awakening. Moheyan prescribed meditation practices characteristic of the Chan school.

At Bsam yas teams of Tibetan translators and Indian and Chinese collaborators continued to translate Buddhist texts. By the end of the ninth century, they had completed translations of the works of Nāgārjuna and Āryadeva, as well as works of Buddhapaṇita, Bhāvaviveka, Candrakīrti, Śāntideva, Śāntarakṣita, and Kamalaśīla. These texts include several of the hymns attributed to Nāgārjuna, his letters and several of his philosophical treatises, the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*, the *Vigrahavyāvartanī*, the *Yuktiṣaṣṭika*, and the *Śūnyatāsaptati*, Buddhapaṇita's and Bhāvaviveka's commentaries on the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*, Candrakīrti's *Yuktiṣaṣṭikavṛtti* and *Śūnyatāsaptativṛtti*, Śāntideva's *Bodhicaryāvatāra* and *Śikṣāsamuccaya*, Śāntarakṣita's *Madhyamakālaṃkāra*, and Kamalaśīla's *Madhyamakāloka* and *Bhāvanākrama*.

During the first dissemination of Buddhism in Tibet the views of Śāntarakṣita and Kamalaśīla's syncretistic Yogācāra-Madhyamaka school and the views of Bhāvaviveka flourished. Candrakīrti's interpretation of Madhyamaka presented a significant challenge to Bhāvaviveka's interpretation during the second dissemination of Buddhism in the tenth and eleventh centuries. The Indian scholar ATISHA (982–1054) arrived in western Tibet in 1042; at Mtho ling Monastery, he wrote his best-known work, the *Bodhipathapradīpa* (*Lamp for the Path to Awakening*) and a commentary that describes the Madhyamaka school's basic doctrines (vv. 47–51). He observes that people of slight abilities perform meritorious actions in hope of better rebirth, people of middling abilities seek nirvāṇa, and people of the highest ability seek buddhahood and an end to the suffering of all beings. Atisha identifies himself as part of a Madhyamaka lineage that includes Nāgārjuna, Āryadeva, Candrakīrti, Bhāvaviveka, and Śāntideva.

Although the study and teaching of Madhyamaka texts has a long history in Tibet, it is not until the late eleventh or early twelfth century that a clear distinction begins to develop between Svātantrika and Prāsaṅgika Madhyamaka. Pa tshab Nyi ma grags (b. 1055) translated three of Candrakīrti's major works: his early independent treatise on Madhyamaka, the *Madhyamakāvatāra*, and his commentaries on Nāgārjuna's and Āryadeva's major works. According to the Tibetan historians 'Go lo tsa ba and Gser mdog Pan chen, Spa tshab Nyi ma grags made the Prāsaṅgika viewpoint of Candrakīrti the dominant interpretation of the classical works of Nāgārjuna and Āryadeva from the twelfth century onward. Until Nyi ma grags translated *Prasannapadā* and clearly differentiated Candrakīrti's interpretation of Madhyamaka from Bhāvaviveka's, there had been no solid foundation for distinguishing between the two interpretations.

From the fourteenth through sixteen centuries scholars associated with all four of the major Tibetan schools—KLONG CHEN PA (LONGCHENPA) (1308–1363) of RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school; Red mda' ba (1349–1412), Rong ston (1367–1449), and Go ram pa (1429–1489) of the SA SKYA (SAKYA) school; Mi bskyod rdo je (1507–1554) and Padma dkar po (1527–1592) of the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) school; TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), Rgyal tshab, (1364–1432), and Mkhas grub (1385–1438) of the Dge lugs (Gelug) school—wrote works defining their positions on Madhyamaka philosophy. During this period, Dol po pa (1292–1361) of the Jo nang pa school developed his position on the teaching of emptiness, which incorporated insights from Yogācāra texts, particularly those concerned with the teaching of innate Buddha nature. He differentiated between the negative descriptive of emptiness, self-emptiness (*rang stong*), which regards all phenomena as lacking inherent existence, and a more positive description of emptiness, other-emptiness (*gzhan stong*), which refers to a truly existent ultimate reality that is beyond the limits of ordinary conceptualization. These medieval debates over positive and negative descriptions of emptiness recur in the works of contemporary scholars who study Madhyamaka thought.

The terse verses of Nāgārjuna's *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*, which led to divergent interpretations among the classical schools of Madhyamaka thought, have also produced a spate of modern books and articles proposing various interpretations of his philosophy. Andrew Tuck's 1990 study, *Comparative Philosophy and the Philosophy of Scholarship: On the*

*Western Interpretation of Nāgārjuna*, associates the Western interpretation of Madhyamaka with whatever philosophical trends were current at the time. Nāgārjuna's nineteenth-century Western interpreters portrayed him as a nihilist. Twentieth-century interpretations, under the influence of modern analytical philosophy, focused on his use of logic and his skepticism about the use of language. Richard Hayes, in "Nāgārjuna's Appeal" (1994) concludes that twentieth-century scholarship on Madhyamaka largely corresponds to two distinct but traditional approaches: exegesis and HERMENEUTICS. The exegetical approach primarily focuses on the accumulation of philological, historical, and textual data, while the hermeneutic approach attempts to make that data relevant to the concerns of a modern audience.

### Bibliography

- Crosby, Kate, and Skilton, Andrew, trans. *The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Garfield, Jay L. *The Fundamental Wisdom of the Middle Way: Nāgārjuna's Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Hayes, Richard. "Nāgārjuna's Appeal." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 22 (1994): 363–372.
- Hopkins, Jeffrey, trans. *Buddhist Advice for Living and Liberation: Nāgārjuna's Precious Garland*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1998.
- Huntington, C. W., Jr. *The Emptiness of Emptiness: An Introduction to Early Mādhyamika*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.
- Keenan, John P. *Dharmapāla's Yogācāra Critique of Bhāvaviveka's Mādhyamika Explanation of Emptiness*. Lewiston, NY: Mellen Press, 1997.
- Lang, Karen. *Āryadeva's Catuḥśataka: On the Bodhisattva's Cultivation of Merit and Knowledge*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Akademisk Forlag, 1986.
- Lindtner, Christian. *Nāgārjuniana: Studies in the Writings and Philosophy of Nāgārjuna*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Akademisk Forlag, 1982.
- Ramanan, K. Venkata. *Nāgārjuna's Philosophy as Presented in the Mahāprajñāpāramitāśāstra*. Rutland, VT: Charles Tuttle, 1966.
- Robinson, Richard. *Early Mādhyamika in India and China*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1967.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1981.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. *Three Studies in the History of Indian and Tibetan Madhyamaka Philosophy*. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 2000.
- Sonam, Ruth. *Yogic Deeds of Bodhisattvas: Gyel-tsap on Āryadeva's Four Hundred*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1994.
- Sprung, Mervyn, trans. *Lucid Exposition of the Middle Way: The Essential Chapters from the Prasannapadā of Candrakīrti*. Boulder, CO: Prajña Press, 1979.
- Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Materials for the Study of Āryadeva, Dharmapāla and Candrakīrti*, 2 vols. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 1990.
- Tuck, Andrew. *Comparative Philosophy and the Philosophy of Scholarship: On the Western Interpretation of Nāgārjuna*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1990.

KAREN LANG

### MA GCIG LAB SGRON (MACHIG LABDRÖN)

Ma gcig lab sgron (pronounced Machig Labdrön; ca. 1055–1149) was an eminent female Tibetan Buddhist teacher who codified and disseminated the ritual meditation system called severance (*gcod*, pronounced chö). Born in the southern Tibetan region of La phyi, Ma gcig lab sgron was recognized as a gifted individual even in her youth. According to her traditional biographies, she had a natural affinity for the *prajñāpāramitā* (perfection of wisdom) sūtras, spending much of her youth reading and studying their numerous texts and commentaries. For several years, she continued her education under Grwa pa mngon shes and Skyo ston Bsod nams bla ma in a monastic setting where she was eventually employed to use her skills in ritual recitation and exegesis. She then took up the lifestyle of a tantric yoginī, living as the consort of the Indian adept Thod pa Bhadra, eventually giving birth to several children, perhaps five in all. Vilified as a "nun who had repudiated her religious vows," Ma gcig lab sgron left her family and eventually met the famed Indian yogin who became her primary guru, Pha Dam pa sangs rgyas (d. 1105/1117), a contemporary of the famous Tibetan poet-saint MI LA RAS PA (1028/40–1111/23). Dam pa sangs rgyas transmitted to Ma gcig lab sgron the instructions of pacification (*zhi byed*) and the MAHĀMUDRĀ teachings. She combined these with her training in *prajñāpāramitā* and other indigenous practices, passing them on as the system of severance, principally to the Nepalese yogin Pham thing pa and her own son Thod smyon bsam grub.

The tradition of severance, like that of pacification, is commonly classified among eight important tantric traditions and transmission lineages that spread throughout Tibet—the so-called eight great chariot-like lineages of achievement (*sgrub brgyud shing rta chen po brgyad*), a system that prefigures the development of a fourfold sectarian division often noted in writings on Tibetan Buddhism. Ma gcig lab sgron herself described severance as a practice that severs (*gcod*) attachment to one's body, dualistic thinking, and conceptions of hope and fear. Although usually practiced by solitary yogins in isolated and frightening locations, severance liturgies are also performed by monastic assemblies, both accompanied by the ritual music of hand drum and human thigh-bone trumpet. The meditation, rooted in the theory of the *prajñāpāramitā* and *mahāmudrā*, also involves the visualized offering of the adept's body—flesh, blood, bones, and organs—as food for a vast assembly of beings, including local spirits and demons.

Ma gcig lab sgron is revered in Tibet as a ḌĀKINĪ goddess, an emanation of the Great Mother (Yum chen mo) and the bodhisattva Tārā. Her reincarnations have also been recognized in contemporary individuals, including the former abbess of the important Shug gseb Nunnery near Lhasa, Rje btsun Rig 'dzin chos nyid zang mo (1852–1953). Ma gcig lab sgron remains a primary Tibetan example of the ideal female practitioner and her tradition of severance continues to be widely employed among Tibetan Buddhist practitioners, both lay and monastic, of all sectarian affiliations.

See also: *Prajñāpāramitā Literature; Tibet; Women*

### Bibliography

- Edou, Jérôme. *Machig Labdrön and the Foundations of Chöd*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Gyatso, Janet. "The Development of the Gcod Tradition." In *Soundings in Tibetan Civilization*, ed. Barbara Nimri Aziz and Matthew Kapstein. Delhi: Manohar, 1985.
- Roerich, George N., trans. and ed. *The Blue Annals*, 2 vols. Calcutta: Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1949. Reprint, New Delhi: Motilal Benarsidass, 1989.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## MAHĀBODHI TEMPLE

The history of Mahābodhi, the temple located at the site of the Buddha's enlightenment at BODH GAYĀ, is

a contested one. According to the Chinese pilgrim XUANZANG (ca. 600–664 C.E.), the imposing structure visible during his lifetime was built over a smaller temple erected by King AŚOKA. A Bhārhut medallion shows a circular open structure enclosing the diamond throne and the bodhi tree above it. While the Aśokan pillar beside it suggests that it may represent the original Aśokan shrine, archaeological evidence for the latter is inconclusive. The large stone slab resembling the diamond throne of the Bhārhut relief recovered from the ruins might well be a conscious archaism.

The structural temple Xuanzang describes probably dates from the third to fifth centuries C.E. (late Kushan and Gupta dynasties). Myriads of tiered niches housing golden figures covered its soaring 170-foot high tower of whitewashed brick. Stringed pearl and celestial sages decorated its walls. A three-storied jeweled pavilion with projecting eaves abutted the east wall. Niches with ten-foot high silver figures of the bodhisattvas MAITREYA and Avalokiteśvara flanked the outside gate, while a Buddha image twice that size occupied the sanctuary's massive diamond throne. The Buddha's earth-touching gesture (MUDRĀ) represented the moment when the Buddha called the earth to witness his eligibility for enlightenment and MĀRA was defeated. The new structure necessitated the removal of the bodhi tree from the sanctuary to a location outside the temple, which Gupta inscriptions called a *mahāgandhakuṭī*, or the great fragrant chamber where the Buddha resides. Thus, in Bodh Gayā by the fifth century, the bodhi tree as the primary locus of the Buddha's living presence was replaced by his residence, throne, and image.

The present Mahābodhi temple is a late nineteenth-century restoration of dubious authenticity. It has a tall central tower with a high arch over the entrance and identical smaller towers on each of its four corners. Evidence from India, Burma, and Thailand indicates that corner towers were present before the eleventh century. This evidence consists of a small eleventh-century model of the Mahābodhi from eastern India and of its four Burmese and Thai re-creations beginning in the eleventh century. In referencing the directions and the four continents, the corner towers intensify the central tower's kinship with Mount Sumeru, thereby reinforcing the seat of enlightenment's increasing importance over the tree at Bodh Gayā. By contrast, in Sri Lanka the bodhi tree at Anurādhapura remains the prime relic of the enlightenment. No major enclosed structure has diminished or usurped its primacy as one of Sri Lanka's two ma-

for Buddha relic-shrines. Its preeminence probably derives from the belief that it is the sapling from the original bodhi tree that Aśoka's missionary son brought to the island together with Buddhism.

### Bibliography

- Beal, Samuel, trans. *Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World, Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629)*. London: Trubner, 1884. Reprint, Delhi: Oriental Books Reprint Corp., 1969.
- Bhattacharyya, Tarapada. *The Bodhgayā Temple*. Calcutta: Firma K. L. Mukhopadhyah, 1966.
- Cunningham, Alexander. *Mahābodhi or the Great Buddhist Temple under the Bodhi Tree at Buddha-Gaya*. London, 1892.
- Leoshko, Janice, ed. *Bodh Gayā: The Site of Enlightenment*. Bombay: Marg, 1988.
- Mitra, Rajendralala. *Buddha-Gaya: The Great Buddhist Temple, the Hermitage of Sakya Muni*. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Press, 1878. Reprint, Delhi: Indological Book House, 1972.
- Myer, Prudence. "The Great Temple at Bodhgaya." *Art Bulletin* 40 (1958): 277–278.

LEELA ADITI WOOD

## MAHĀKĀŚYAPA

Mahākāśyapa (Pāli, Mahākassapa), a disciple of the Buddha, was of Brahmin descent. According to Buddhist legend, the Buddha was aware of a karmic connection between himself and Mahākāśyapa, and waited for him as his most distinguished disciple to accept him into the order. In the MAHĀYĀNA sūtras, Mahākāśyapa readily understands the deeper meaning of the Buddha's teachings. Mahākāśyapa's supernormal powers and talents of meditation indicate his ability to penetrate to a soteriological layer of the dharma that is not accessible to the normal "hearers" (*śrāvaka*) of the Buddha or even to Buddhist saints, the ARHATS. The CHAN SCHOOL symbolized this capacity by showing Mahākāśyapa holding a lotus flower in his hand, which represents his grasp on the Buddha's teaching. Mahākāśyapa was made the first patriarch of the Chan school.

Legend holds that Mahākāśyapa became the head of the Buddhist community after the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa*. Shortly after the death of the Buddha, Mahākāśyapa convened the first Buddhist council near Rājagṛha, India, an event that is traditionally understood to have led to the codification of the Buddhist

CANON (Tripiṭaka). Mahākāśyapa also functions as the transmitter of the dharma from the Buddha to the future Buddha MAITREYA. Buddhist tradition describes Mahākāśyapa as absorbed in the "attainment of cessation" (*nirodhasamāpatti*) deep inside Cockfeet Mountain (Kukkuṭapadagiri), where he keeps the garment of the Buddha, which he received from the hand of the master and will transfer to Maitreya as a symbol of the latter's legitimate succession.

See also: **Councils, Buddhist; Disciples of the Buddha**

### Bibliography

- Nyanaponika, Thera, and Hecker, Hellmuth. *Great Disciples of the Buddha: Their Lives, Their Works, Their Legacy*. Boston: Wisdom, 1997.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1994.

MAX DEEG

## MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA

Mahāmaudgalyāyana (Pāli, Mahāmoggallāna; Chinese, Mulian), a disciple of Śākyamuni Buddha, attained the enlightened status of an ARHAT, or saint. He is renowned for the magical powers he developed through MEDITATION. Mahāmaudgalyāyana uses his powers to travel to other realms of the universe where he witnesses the happiness and suffering that living beings experience as a result of their KARMA (ACTION). He also uses his magical powers to discipline monks, gods, nāgas, and other beings. Mahāmaudgalyāyana converted to Buddhism and entered the monastic order together with his childhood friend ŚĀRIPUTRA. They became the Buddha's two chief disciples in accordance with a prediction made to that effect many eons earlier by a previous buddha. Thus Mahāmaudgalyāyana and Śāriputra are sometimes depicted flanking the Buddha in Buddhist art. Mahāmaudgalyāyana predeceased the Buddha after being beaten by heretics. His violent death is attributed to bad karma; in a previous life he had killed his own parents.

Mahāmaudgalyāyana is most famous for liberating his mother from a bad rebirth as a hungry ghost. Beginning in the Tang period in China, this story became the basis for a popular annual Buddhist festival in East Asia called the GHOST FESTIVAL. During this festival, Buddhists make offerings to the monastic community,

dedicating their merit to deceased ancestors in the hopes that these attain a better rebirth or greater comfort in their current rebirth. Mahāmaudgalyāyana is venerated in East Asia for his filial piety and shamanic powers. Like other arhats, Mahāmaudgalyāyana was also the focus of worship already in ancient and medieval India. In Burma (Myanmar) he is one of a set of eight arhats propitiated in protective rituals and he is also believed to grant his worshippers magical powers.

*See also:* Disciples of the Buddha

### Bibliography

- Malalasekera, G. P. “Mahā Moggallāna Thera.” In *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names* (1937–1938), 2 vols. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1995.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend and Cult of Upagupta*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.

SUSANNE MROZIK

## MAHĀMUDRĀ

The Sanskrit term *mahāmudrā*, which might be translated as “great seal,” refers to a Buddhist doctrine describing the underlying nature of reality, the consummate practices of meditation, and the crowning realization of buddhahood. Although important for all of the later Tibetan sects, including the SA SKYA (SAKYA) and DGE LUGS (GELUK), *mahāmudrā* became principally associated with the many branches of the BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU). The *mahāmudrā* tradition began with the Indian MAHĀSIDDHAS, or great adepts, including Tilopa (988–1069), NĀROPA (1016–1100), and Maitrīpa (ca. 1007–1085), and was disseminated in Tibet by such early Bka’ brgyud masters as MAR PA (MARPA, 1002/1012–1097), MI LA RAS PA (MILAREPA, 1028/40–1111/23), and their followers.

According to the sixteenth-century Bka’ brgyud exegete Bkra shis rnam rgyal (Tashi Namgyal, 1512–1587), the doctrine is called *great seal* because, “Just as a seal leaves its impression on other objects, so *mahāmudrā*, the ultimate reality, leaves its imprint upon all realities of SAṂSĀRA and NIRVĀṆA.” It is a seal because it refers to “the inherent character or abiding reality of all things” (Namgyal, p. 92). The term in Ti-

betan, *phyag rgya chen po* (pronounced chagya chenpo) literally translates the Sanskrit and is traditionally explained in numerous ways. According to the *Phyag chen thig le* (Sanskrit, *Mahāmudrātilaka*; *The Seminal Point of Mahāmudrā*), *phyag* symbolizes the wisdom of emptiness and *rgya* the freedom from things of saṁsāra. *Chen po* stands for their union.

*Mahāmudrā* is commonly taught under the tripartite rubric of ground (in the sense of foundation), PATH, and fruition. This approach was summed up by the great nineteenth-century reformer Kong sprul Blo gros mtha’ yas (Kongtrul Lodrö Thaye, 1813–1899) in the following way: “Ground *mahāmudrā* is the view, understanding things as they are. / Path *mahāmudrā* is the experience of meditation. / Fruition *mahāmudrā* is the realization of one’s mind as buddha” (Nalanda Translation Committee, p. 83). Ground *mahāmudrā* expresses the primordially pure nature of the mind that normally goes unnoticed; it is likened to a jewel buried in the ground. Path *mahāmudrā* represents a wide variety of meditation practices. These can follow a systematic approach—as exemplified in numerous texts by the ninth Karma pa, Dbang phyug rdo rje (Wangchuk Dorje, 1604–1674)—incorporating preliminary practices (*sngon’gro*) with those of *mahāmudrā* serenity (*śamatha*) to still the mind, and *mahāmudrā* insight (*vipaśyanā*) to recognize the mind’s nature. The practice of path *mahāmudrā* may also incorporate seemingly simple instructions such as resting free from exertion within naked awareness itself. Fruition *mahāmudrā* is the final result, the realization of phenomenal appearances and noumenal emptiness as nondual. This is not something newly produced, but rather the recognition of what is termed *ordinary mind* (*tha mal gyi shes pa*), the mind’s innate clarity, purity, and luminosity. Such recognition is often described in vivid terms as being indestructible, youthful, fresh, shining, and experienced as great bliss.

Some Bka’ brgyud scholars have divided *mahāmudrā* literature into two streams: sūtra *mahāmudrā* and TANTRA *mahāmudrā*. The former, based on Indian texts such as the *Uttaratantra-śāstra* (*Treatise on the Unexcelled Continuity*), describes a system centered primarily upon the cultivation of the six PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS) without the need for specific tantric initiation or practice. This approach—exemplified in the *Thar pa rin po che’i rgyan* (*Jewel Ornament of Liberation*), a text composed by Mi la ras pa’s celebrated disciple Sgam po pa (Gampopa, 1079–1153)—was

strongly criticized by Tibetan writers such as the renowned scholar SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA, 1182–1251). Tantra *mahāmudrā* is an approach in which the practices of *anuttarayoga*, or highest yoga tantra—such as those belonging to the system known as the Six Doctrines of Nāropa (*Nā ro chos drug*)—are used as a means for realization.

See also: **Tantra; Tibet**

### Bibliography

- Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Dalai Lama XIV) and Berzin, Alexander. *The Gelug/Kagyū Tradition of Mahāmudrā*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1997.
- Dorje, Wangchug. *The Mahāmudrā Illuminating the Darkness of Ignorance*, tr. Alexander Berzin. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1978.
- Nalanda Translation Committee. *The Rain of Wisdom*. Boston: Shambhala, 1980.
- Namgyal, Takpo Tashi. *Mahāmudrā: The Quintessence of Mind and Meditation*, tr. Lobsang P. Lhalungpa. Boston: Shambhala, 1986.
- Sgam po pa. *The Jewel Ornament of Liberation*, tr. Herbert V. Guenther. London: Rider, 1959. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1971.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA

The *Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra* (Pāli, *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*; *Great Discourse on Extinction*) recounts the final months of the Buddha's life, his last acts and sermons to his disciples, his death, and the distribution of his relics. A canonical text, it was one of the early building blocks of the Buddha's biography, and versions exist in Pāli, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese. It should not be confused with the later MAHĀYĀNA sūtra of the same name.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Nirvāṇa Sūtra**

### Bibliography

- Walshe, Maurice, trans. "Mahāparinibbāna Sutta: The Great Passing." In *Thus Have I Heard: The Long Discourses of the Buddha*. London: Wisdom, 1987.

JOHN S. STRONG

## MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ

According to the *Gotamī-apadāna* and the *Therīgāthā*, Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī (Pāli, Mahāpajāpatī Gotamī) was Siddhārtha Gautama's maternal aunt and foster mother. When Mahāprajāpatī was born, an astrologer predicted her leadership qualities and she was named Prajāpatī (Pāli, Pajāpatī), "leader of a large assembly." She and her sister Māyā were both married to Śuddhodana, the ruler of Kapilavastu. Māyā gave birth to a son who was named Siddhārtha and then died just seven days after his birth. After Māyā's death, Prajāpatī suckled the boy and raised him as her own child. Prajāpatī also gave birth to two children of her own, Nanda and Sundarīnandā.

Mahāprajāpatī is widely regarded as the first *bhikṣuṇī* and progenitor of the Buddhist order of NUNS (Bhikṣuṇī SAṄGHA). After Siddhārtha became "an awakened one" (a Buddha) and visited Kapilavastu, Mahāprajāpatī began to practice the dharma and achieved the stage of a stream enterer (*śrotāpanna*). According to tradition, she thrice requested the Buddha's permission to join the saṅgha, but was refused each time. Finally, she cut her hair, donned renunciant garb, and, accompanied by five hundred Śākyan noblewomen, walked to Vaiśālī where she once again sought admission to the order. This time, when ĀNANDA interceded on Mahāprajāpatī's behalf, the Buddha affirmed that women are indeed qualified to achieve the fruits of dharma (i.e., liberation), and granted her request.

The Buddha is said to have stipulated eight special rules (*gurudharma*) as the condition for Mahāprajāpatī's admission to the saṅgha. These rules, which later came to be applied to Buddhist nuns in general, make the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha dependent upon (and, to a certain extent, subordinate to) the Bhikṣu Saṅgha (order of monks) with regard to ordination, exhortation, admonishment, and reinstatement, thereby delimiting the nuns' independence.

In addition to being the first Buddhist nun and the leader of the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha from its origins, Mahāprajāpatī achieved higher spiritual attainments, including the six higher knowledges and supernormal powers. She often served as a trusted intermediary in communications between the *bhikṣuṇīs* and the Buddha. In the later part of her life, she reached the state of an ARHAT, as evidenced in her own verse, recorded in the *Therīgāthā*: "I have achieved the state where

everything stops.” Within the patriarchal social context of her time, Mahāprajāpatī became an exemplar of women’s potential for leadership and spiritual attainment, and her achievements have inspired Buddhist WOMEN ever since.

### Bibliography

- Blackstone, Kathryn R. *Women in the Footsteps of the Buddha: Struggle for Liberation in the Therīgāthā*. Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 1998.
- Horner, Isaline Blew. *Women under Primitive Buddhism: Laywomen and Almswomen*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1975.
- Walters, Jonathan S. “The Buddha’s Mother’s Story.” *History of Religions* 33 (1994): 350–379.
- Walters, Jonathan S. “Gotamī’s Story.” In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.

KARMA LEKSHE TSOMO

---

## MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA SCHOOL

The Mahāsāṃghika (or Mahāsāṅghika) school is believed to have emerged from the first major schism in the Buddhist order, at a council held in the fourth century B.C.E., more than a century after Gautama’s death. The name, from *mahāsāṃgha*, “great(er) community,” supposedly reflects the Mahāsāṃghikas’ superior numbers, the Sthaviras being the minority party to the dispute. The split may have been caused by disagreements over the VINAYA, or the famous five theses of Mahādeva concerning the ARHAT, or the introduction of MAHĀYĀNA sūtras into the canon. Traditional accounts of these issues are obscure and conflicting. What is certain is that the Mahāsāṃghikas and their many subschools (Lokottaravādins, Prajñāptivādins, Pūrvasāilas, Aparasāilas, etc.) followed a conservative form of the vinaya, yet were responsible for many doctrinal innovations, chief of which is the theory known as *lokottaravāda*. This holds that the Buddha transcends all human limitations, and is thus above (*uttara*) the world (*loka*), his life as Gautama being a compassionate display.

Some Mahāsāṃghika ideas later flowed into Mahāyāna Buddhism, which is, however, now thought to have drawn its inspiration from many schools. Once well represented throughout the subcontinent, especially in the northwest (including present-day Afghanistan) and the south, the Mahāsāṃghikas eventually

disappeared as a living ordination tradition. Now only parts of their canon survive, including the distinctively structured vinaya and what may be their *Ekottarikāgāma* (both in Chinese translation). Sections of the Mahāsāṃghika-Lokottaravādin Vinaya also survive in Sanskrit (notably the *Mahāvastu*), as do fragments of the literature of other subschools.

See also: **Mainstream Buddhist Schools**

### Bibliography

- Bureau, André. *Les sectes bouddhiques du petit véhicule*. Saigon, Vietnam: École Française d’Extrême-Orient, 1955.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1988.
- Nattier, Janice J., and Prebish, Charles S. “Mahāsāṅghika Origins: The Beginnings of Buddhist Sectarianism.” *History of Religions* 16 (1977): 237–272.

PAUL HARRISON

---

## MAHĀSIDDHA

The Sanskrit term *mahāsiddha* (“great master of spiritual accomplishment” or “great adept”) and the simpler, near synonymous form *siddha* (adept) refer to an individual who has achieved great success in tantric meditation. Buddhist traditions mainly associate siddhas with the transmission of tantric instructions throughout South, East, and, to some degree, Southeast Asia. They are especially important for the Buddhist schools of Nepal and Tibet, which commonly enumerate eighty-four *mahāsiddhas*, many of whom are regarded as founders of tantric lineages still in existence today.

Primarily active on the Indian subcontinent during the eighth to twelfth centuries, Buddhist siddhas are chiefly characterized by their possession of *siddhi* (success), yogic accomplishments of two types: the ordinary or mundane accomplishment of magical powers, and the supreme accomplishment of perfect enlightenment. Life stories of individual siddhas abound with examples of the first type of success: mastery over the physical elements and material world, superhuman cognition, even immortality. Siddhas are commonly associated with particular displays of accomplishment; for example, Virūpa’s ability to stop the sun mid-

course and Saraha's immunity to the heat of molten metal. According to tradition, however, such powers are mere by-products of tantric meditation, not the goal itself. Siddhas or *mahāsiddhas* qualified by the second type of accomplishment therefore stand as the VAJRAYĀNA enlightened ideal—a model for swiftly attaining realization and ultimate enlightenment through the practice of meditation and yoga.

While many siddhas were probably historical figures, records of their lives and teachings vary in depth and detail. The majority of these accounts are known from the rich corpus of biographical literature preserved in Tibetan, often based on oral and literary traditions from India. Prominent among them is the twelfth-century author Abhayadatta's *Caturaśītisiddhapravṛtti* (*Lives of the Eighty-Four Siddhas*)—extant in Tibetan translation—which presents brief vitae for numerous important masters (Robinson, 1979). The *Bka' babs bdun ldan* (*Seven Instruction Lineages*), written by the Tibetan historian Tāranātha (1575–1634), records elements of siddhas' lives as they pertain to the promulgation of important tantric lineages (Templeman). Several widely revered siddhas, such as the Bengali master NĀROPA (1016–1100), have been the subject of comprehensive biographies (Guenther).

Accounts of the *mahāsiddhas* generally portray individuated personalities while following tropes common to much of Buddhist sacred BIOGRAPHY—discontent and renunciation, practice of austerities, the overcoming of difficulties, and eventual realization. Siddhas were both male and female and represented all strata of Indian society: Some were born into royal families, others to uneducated laborers. Many began their lives as monks or scholars in one of the great Indian Buddhist universities. Most were compelled at a certain point to abandon their ordinary life, the monastery, or the throne, in favor of mountain solitude and a life of meditation and yogic practice. Some studied under a living master (occasionally another siddha), others received teachings through direct visions of the Buddha. After attaining siddhi, they often led the life of a wandering ascetic, or appeared in the guise of a yogin-madman, intentionally transgressing the normal parameters of religious practice. Siddhas often instructed their disciples through songs of realization (*dohā*), but hundreds of works—including tantric commentaries, liturgies, and meditation manuals—attributed to Indian adepts are also preserved in the Tibetan canon. As objects of meditation, devotional prayer, and religious art, the figures of the siddhas themselves form an important locus of

religious practice throughout the Himalayan Buddhist world.

Well-known individuals among the traditional reckonings of eighty-four *mahāsiddhas* include Saraha and Maitrīpa, responsible for the spread of MAHĀMUDRĀ (great seal) instructions; Tilopa and Nāropa, earliest founders of the Tibetan BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) sect; and Virūpa, source for the Tibetan doctrine of path and fruition (*lam 'bras*) of the SA SKYA (SAKYA) sect.

*See also:* **Tantra**

### *Bibliography*

- Davidson, Ronald M. *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.
- Guenther, Herbert V. *The Life and Teaching of Nāropa*. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1986.
- Robinson, James B. *Buddha's Lions: Lives of the 84 Siddhas*. Berkeley, CA: Dharma Publications, 1979.
- Robinson, James B. "The Lives of Indian Buddhist Saints: Biography, Hagiography and Myth." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Templeman, David, trans. *The Seven Instruction Lineages*. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1983.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

---

## MAHĀVASTU

The *Mahāvastu* (*Great Story*) recounts in both verse and prose the life of the Buddha from the perspective of the Lokottaravādins, a subgroup of the MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA SCHOOL. Written between the second century B.C.E. and the fourth century C.E. in Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit, it embellishes many episodes of Śākyamuni's biography with *jātakas*, *avadānas*, and other legends, presenting him as a basically supernatural figure.

*See also:* **Avadāna; Buddha, Life of the; Jātaka**

### *Bibliography*

- Jones, J. J., trans. *The Mahāvastu*, 3 vols. London: Luzac, 1949–1956.

JOHN S. STRONG



## MAHĀYĀNA

There are, it seems, very few things that can be said with certainty about Mahāyāna Buddhism. It is certain that the term *Mahāyāna* (which means “great or large vehicle”) was in origin a polemical label used by only one side—and perhaps the least significant side—of a protracted, if uneven, Indian debate about what the real teachings of the Buddha were, that might have begun just before, or just after, the beginning of the common era in India. It is, however, not clear how soon this label was actually used outside of texts to designate a self-conscious, independent religious movement. The term does not occur in Indian inscriptions, for example, until the fifth or sixth century. It is also certain that Buddhist groups and individuals in China, Korea, Tibet, and Japan have in the past, as in the very recent present, identified themselves as Mahāyāna Buddhists, even if the polemical or value claim embedded in that term was only dimly felt, if at all.

But apart from the fact that it can be said with some certainty that the Buddhism embedded in China, Korea, Tibet, and Japan is Mahāyāna Buddhism, it is no longer clear what else can be said with certainty about Mahāyāna Buddhism itself, and especially about its earlier, and presumably formative, period in India. While it is true that scholars not so long ago made a series of confident claims about the Mahāyāna, it is equally clear that now almost every one of those claims is seriously contested, and probably no one now could, in good faith, confidently present a general characterization of it. In part, of course, this is because it has become increasingly clear that Mahāyāna Buddhism was never one thing, but rather, it seems, a loosely bound bundle of many, and—like Walt Whitman—was large and could contain, in both senses of the term, contradictions, or at least antipodal elements. But in part, too, the crumbling of old confidences is a direct result of the crumbling of old “historical” truisms about Buddhism in general, and about the Mahāyāna in particular. A few examples must suffice.

### The old linear model and the date of the “origin” of the Mahāyāna

The historical development of Indian Buddhism used to be presented as simple, straightforward, and suspiciously linear. It started with the historical Buddha whose teaching was organized, transmitted, and more or less developed into what was referred to as *early Buddhism*. This Early Buddhism was identified as HĪNAYĀNA (the “small,” or even “inferior vehicle”),

THERAVĀDA (the teaching of the elders), or simply “monastic Buddhism” (what to call it remains a problem). A little before or a little after the beginning of the common era this early Buddhism was, according to the model, followed by the Mahāyāna, which was seen as a major break or radical transformation. Both the linear model and the rhetoric used to construct it left the distinct impression that the appearance of the Mahāyāna meant as well the disappearance of Early Buddhism or Hīnayāna, that, in effect, the former replaced the latter. If the development was in fact linear, it could, of course, not have been otherwise. Unfortunately, at least for the model, we now know that this was not true. The emergence of the Mahāyāna was a far more complicated affair than the linear model allowed, and “Early” Buddhism or Hīnayāna or what some now call—perhaps correctly—*mainstream Buddhism*, not only persisted, but prospered, long after the beginning of the common era.

The most important evidence—in fact the only evidence—for situating the emergence of the Mahāyāna around the beginning of the common era was not Indian evidence at all, but came from China. Already by the last quarter of the second century C.E. there was a small, seemingly idiosyncratic collection of substantial Mahāyāna sūtras translated into what Erik Zürcher calls “broken Chinese” by an Indoscythian, whose Indian name has been reconstructed as Lokakṣema. Although a recent scholar has suggested that these translations may not have been intended for a Chinese audience, but rather for a group of returning Kushan immigrants who were no longer able to read Indian languages, and although there is no Indian evidence that this assortment of texts ever formed a group there, still, the fact that they were available to some sort of Central Asian or Chinese readership by the end of the second century must indicate that they were composed sometime before that. The recent publication of, unfortunately, very small fragments of a Kushan manuscript of one of these texts—the *Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā* (*Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines*)—also points in the same direction. But the difficult question remains how long before they were translated into “broken Chinese” had these texts been composed, and here the only thing that can be said with some conviction is that, to judge by their contents, the texts known to Lokakṣema cannot represent the earliest phase or form of Mahāyāna thought or literature. They seem to presuppose in fact a more or less long development of both style and doctrine, a development that could have easily taken a cen-

tury or more and, therefore, would throw the earliest phase of this literature back to about the beginning of the common era. The emergence of the Mahāyāna has—mostly as a matter of convention—therefore been placed there. But even apart from the obvious weaknesses inherent in arguments of this kind there is here the tacit equation of a body of literature with a religious movement, an assumption that evidence for the presence of one proves the existence of the other, and this may be a serious misstep.

### **The evidence for the Mahāyāna outside of texts**

Until fairly recently scholars were content to discuss the emergence of the Mahāyāna almost exclusively in terms of literary developments, and as long as they did not look outside of texts the emergence of a Mahāyāna could indeed be placed—at least conventionally—around the beginning of the common era. But when they began to look outside of texts, in art historical or inscriptional or historical sources, for evidence of the Mahāyāna as a religious movement, or for evidence of actual Mahāyāna groups or cults in India, this became much more difficult. A good illustration of the issues involved here might be seen in the Indian evidence for what became first in China, and then in Japan, a major form of Mahāyāna Buddhism.

One of the Mahāyāna texts translated by Lokakṣema is called in Sanskrit the *Sukhāvāṭīvyūha-sūtra*, and a Chinese translation of it came to be a central text for East Asian PURE LAND BUDDHISM. According to the line of thought sketched above, since this text was translated already at the end of the second century it must have been composed in India sometime earlier and, by convention, around the beginning of the common era. Thus, if we limited ourselves to textual evidence, this form of Mahāyāna Buddhism must have emerged in India at that time. If, however, we look outside of texts there is simply no evidence for this. There is a large body of archaeological, art historical, and inscriptional evidence for Buddhist cult practice for this period, but absolutely nothing in it would suggest anything like East Asian Pure Land Buddhism, and no trace of the Buddha AMITĀBHA, the central figure and presumed object of devotion in this Buddhism. In the hundreds of Buddhist donative inscriptions that we have in India for the whole of the first five centuries of the common era, in fact, there is only a single certain, utterly isolated and atypical, reference to Amitābha, and it is as late as the second half of the second century. Among the hundreds of sur-

viving images from the same period, images that testify to the overwhelming presence of the historical Buddha Śākyamuni as the focus of attention, there is again a single certain isolated image of Amitābha. There is a very small number of images or reliefs from Northwestern India (Gandhāra) that some scholars have taken as representations of Amitābha and his Pure Land, but there is no agreement here, and the images or reliefs in question may date from as late as the fifth century. In other words, once nontextual evidence is taken into account the picture changes dramatically. Rather than being datable to the beginning of the common era, this strand of Mahāyāna Buddhism, at least, appeared to have no visible impact on Indian Buddhist cult practice until the second century, and even then what impact it had was extremely isolated and marginal, and had no lasting or long-term consequences—there were no further references to Amitābha in Indian image inscriptions. Almost exactly the same pattern occurs on an even broader scale when nontextual evidence is considered.

### **The Mahāyāna and monastic Buddhism in the middle period**

Although the history of Buddhism in India is in general not well documented, still, for the period from the beginning of the common era to the fifth to sixth centuries—precisely the period that according to the old scheme should be the “period of the Mahāyāna”—we probably have better sources than for almost any other period. Certainly, we have for this period an extensive body of inscriptions from virtually all parts of India. These records document the religious aspirations and activities of Buddhist communities throughout the period at sites all across the Indian landscape, and they contain scores of references to named Buddhist groups and “schools.” But nowhere in this extensive body of material is there any reference, prior to the fifth century, to a named Mahāyāna. There are, on the other hand, scores of references to what used to be called Hīnayāna groups—the Sarvāstivādins, Mahāsāṃghikas, and so on. From this point of view, at least, this was not “the period of the Mahāyāna,” but “the period of the Hīnayāna.” Moreover, it is the religious aspirations and goals of the Hīnayāna that are expressed in these documents, not those of a Mahāyāna. There is, for example, a kind of general consensus that if there is a single defining characteristic of the Mahāyāna it is that for Mahāyāna the ultimate religious goal is no longer NIRVĀṆA, but rather the attainment of full awakening or buddhahood by all. This

goal in one form or another and, however nuanced, attenuated, or temporally postponed, characterizes virtually every form of Mahāyāna Buddhism that we know. But, again, there is hardly a trace of this aspiration prior to the fifth century anywhere in the large body of Indian Buddhist inscriptions that have survived. Even more mediate goals associated with the Mahāyāna are nowhere represented. There is, for example, not a single instance anywhere in Indian inscriptions of a donor aspiring to REBIRTH in a Pure Land, and this is in startling contrast with what occurs in countries or communities—like LONGMEN in China—where Mahāyāna Buddhism was actually practiced and was important.

What is particularly disconcerting here is the disconnect between expectation and reality: We know from Chinese translations that large numbers of Mahāyāna sūtras were being composed in the period between the beginning of the common era and the fifth century. These texts were constructing, defining, and debating competing versions of a, or the, Mahāyāna, and articulating Mahāyāna religious ideas and aspirations. But outside of texts, at least in India, at exactly the same period, very different—in fact seemingly older—ideas and aspirations appear to be motivating actual behavior, and old and established Hīnayāna groups appear to be the only ones that are patronized and supported. In India at least, in an age when Mahāyāna Buddhas like Amitābha and AKṢOBHYA might have been expected to dominate, it is, in fact, the old Buddha Śākyamuni who everywhere remains the focus of attention—it is his image, for example, that is easily and everywhere found.

### **The Mahāyāna and the role of the laity**

What to make of this disconnect remains, of course, a major conundrum for any attempt to characterize the Mahāyāna or to track its history and development—much of which might, in fact, have taken place outside India. But this is by no means the only disconnect that is encountered in trying to get a handle on the Mahāyāna. One of the most frequent assertions about the Mahāyāna—to cite another example—is that it was a lay-influenced, or even lay-inspired and dominated, movement that arose in response to the increasingly closed, cold, and scholastic character of monastic Buddhism. This, however, now appears to be wrong on all counts. While it is true that as it developed outside of India Mahāyāna Buddhism appears to have taken on at least the appearance of a more lay-oriented movement, a good deal of this appearance may be based on

a misunderstanding or misrepresentation of the established monastic Buddhism it was supposed to be reacting to. It is, in fact, becoming increasingly clear that far from being closed or cut off from the lay world, monastic, Hīnayāna Buddhism—especially in its Indian, Sanskrit forms—was, very much like medieval Christian monasticism, deeply embedded in and concerned with the lay world, much of its program being in fact intended and designed to allow laymen and women and donors the opportunity and means to make religious merit. This in many ways remains the function of monastic Buddhism even today in modern Theravāda countries. Ironically, then, if the Mahāyāna was reacting to monastic Buddhism at all, it was probably reacting to what it—or some of its proponents—took to be too great an accommodation to lay needs and values on the part of monastic Buddhism, too pronounced a preoccupation with providing an arena for lay religious practices and all that that involved—acquiring and maintaining property, constructing institutions that would survive over time, and so on. The Mahāyāna criticism of monastic Hīnayāna Buddhism may have been, in effect, that they had moved too far away from the radically individualistic and ascetic ideals that the proponents of the Mahāyāna favored. This view is finding increasing support in Mahāyāna sūtra literature itself.

The old characterization of the Mahāyāna as a lay-inspired movement was based on a selective reading of a very tiny sample of extant Mahāyāna sūtra literature, most of which was not particularly early. As scholars have moved away from this limited corpus, and have begun to explore a wider range of such sūtras, they have stumbled on, and have started to open up, a literature that is often stridently ascetic and heavily engaged in reinventing the forest ideal, an individualistic, antisocial, ascetic ideal that is encapsulated in the apparently resurrected image of “wandering alone like a rhinoceros.” This, to be sure, is a very different Mahāyāna that is emerging. But its exploration is now still a work in progress. At this point we can only postulate that the Mahāyāna may have had a visible impact in India only when, in the fifth century, it had become what it had originally most strongly objected to: a fully landed, sedentary, lay-oriented monastic institution—the first mention of the Mahāyāna in an Indian inscription occurs, in fact, in the record of a large grant of land to a Mahāyāna monastery. In the meantime the Mahāyāna may well have been either a collection of marginalized ascetic groups living in the forest, or groups of cantankerous and malcontent conservatives

embedded in mainstream, socially engaged monasteries, all of whom continued pouring out pamphlets espousing their views and values, pamphlets that we now know as Mahāyāna sūtras. We simply do not know.

### The Mahāyāna and the misrepresentation of non-Mahāyāna literature

If, then, the notion of the Mahāyāna as a lay-inspired or oriented movement now seems untenable, the notion that it was a reaction to a narrow scholasticism on the part of monastic, Hīnayāna, Buddhism should have seemed silly from the start. Such a view was only even possible by completely ignoring an enormous collection of what are almost certainly the most culturally vibrant and influential forms of Buddhist literature. The representation of Hīnayāna Buddhism as narrowly scholastic rests almost entirely on a completely disproportionate, and undeserved, emphasis on the ABHIDHARMA. The *abhidharma* was almost certainly important to a narrow circle of monks. But *abhidharma* texts were by no means the only things that Hīnayāna monks wrote or read. They also wrote—especially it seems in what should have been “the Mahāyāna period”—an enormous number of stories, and they continued writing them apparently long after the early Mahāyāna sūtras were in production. Some of these stories are specifically called JĀTAKA and AVADĀNA and they have come down to us as separate collections—the Pāli *jātakas*, for example, which in bulk alone equals the *abhidhamma*, and the Sanskrit AVADĀNAŚATAKA—or embedded in vinayas or monastic codes, as is the case particularly in the enormous MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA where such monastic stories predominate. The amount of space given over to these stories in this vinaya alone makes the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA look like a minor work.

Given the great amount of monastic energy that went into the composition, redaction, and transmission of this literature, and given its great impact on Indian Buddhist art, especially in what should have been “the Mahāyāna period,” it is particularly surprising that the system or set of religious ideas that it articulates and develops has never really been taken seriously as representative of monastic Buddhism in India from the first to the fifth century. It contains—variously expressed and modulated—an uncomplicated, if not always consistent, doctrine of KARMA (ACTION) and merit that supports a wide range of religious activities easily available to both monks and laymen. It takes as a given the possibility of both monks and laymen interacting with and assisting the dead. It

articulates in almost endless permutations what must have been a highly successful system of exchange and reciprocity between laymen and monks. It presents a very rich and textured conception of the Buddha in which he appears as almost everything from a powerful miracle worker to a compassionate nurse for the sick, but is also always the means to “salvation” or a better rebirth. The religious world of Buddhist story literature in addition offered to both monks and laymen easily available objects of worship—relics, stūpas, and images—and, again contrary to the old model, a fully developed conception and cult of the Buddha-as-Bodhisattva. The fact that all of this, and a great deal more that is religiously significant, is delivered in a simple, straightforward story form that was easily accessible makes it abundantly clear that a very large part of Hīnayāna monastic literature is anything but narrowly scholastic and off-putting. Indeed, in comparison with most Mahāyāna sūtra literature it appears to be positively welcoming, and it seems that the characterization “narrowly scholastic” fits far better with the Mahāyāna texts themselves. It is, for example, hard to imagine anyone but a confirmed scholastic reading the *Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines* for pleasure, and almost impossible to imagine anyone confusing it—or the vast majority of other Mahāyāna sūtras—with real literature. And yet, already long ago the French scholar Sylvain Lévi was able to characterize the enormous repository of monastic tales that is the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* as not only a “masterpiece” of Buddhist literature, but of Sanskrit literature as a whole. Many of the issues here, however, involve something more than just literary form or style.

### The scholasticism of the Mahāyāna

Both the assertion of the lay orientation of the Mahāyāna and of an increasingly inaccessible, scholastic monastic Buddhism, for example, are clearly linked to another of the early and persistent characterizations of both: Monastic Hīnayāna Buddhism was from very early on said to have been uninvolved in—indeed opposed to—ritual and devotion and focused exclusively on meditative practice and doctrine. The Mahāyāna, on the other hand, was somehow supposed to be the opposite, and to have been particularly marked by devotion. But while it is true that certain strands of the Mahāyāna in their later and largely extra-Indian developments came to be cast in increasingly devotional forms, it is by no means clear that this was so from the beginning, and hard to see how it could ever have been maintained that the Mahāyāna in its earlier

Indian forms was particularly devotional. Any such notion should have been easily dispelled by even a quick reading of the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* of NĀGĀRJUNA, the figure who has been taken—whatever his actual date—as the earliest individually named spokesman for the Mahāyāna in India. This is a work that is, in fact, decidedly scholastic, focused exclusively on a narrow band of doctrine, arcane, and very far from easily accessible: Even with long and laborious commentaries, both ancient and modern, much of it remains elusive. If it is, in fact, representative of the early forms of the Mahāyāna in India, then whatever that Mahāyāna was it could hardly have been a broad-based, easily accessible, lay-oriented, devotional movement. What seems to hold for Nāgārjuna's *Kārikās*, moreover, would seem to hold for much of Mahāyāna sūtra literature. Much of it also cannot be described as easily accessible, and most of it, perhaps, would only have been of interest to a certain type or types of monks.

The *Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines*, for example, as well as its ever-lengthening companion pieces in 10,000, 18,000, 25,000, and 100,000 lines, sometimes seem to be little more than unrelenting repetitions of long lists of technical doctrinal categories—that would, presumably, have been known by or of interest to only very learned monks—which are, again unrelentingly, said to be “empty.” It is also not just the *Perfection of Wisdom* that can be so described. The *Kāśyapaparivarta* (*Chapter of Kāśyapa*), another Mahāyāna text that might be early, although it differs somewhat in format, is much the same in content: The whole first part of it consists of a long list of doctrinal items arranged in groups of fours. Some Mahāyāna sūtras—the SAMDHINIRMOCANA-SŪTRA (*Sūtra of the Explanation of Mysteries*), for instance—can hardly be distinguished from technical treatise or śāstras. There are, of course, exceptions. The *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* (*Teaching of Vimalakīrti*), for example, is commonly cited as one, but even then its atypicality is always noted and the contrast with other Mahāyāna sūtras emphasized. In contrast to the authors of other Mahāyāna sūtras its author, says Étienne Lamotte, “does not lose himself in a desert of abstract and impersonal doctrine” (p. v). There are also occasional lively vignettes elsewhere—for instance, the scene in the *Drumakinnararājaparipṛcchā* (*Questions of the Spirit King Druma*) where when the austere monk MAHĀKĀŚYAPA is so charmed by some heavenly music he cannot help himself and jumps up and dances, or the stories in the *Ratnakaraṇḍa-sūtra* (*Sūtra of the Basket*

*of Jewels*) where Mañjuśrī makes MĀRA carry his begging bowl, or spends the rains-retreat in the King's harem—but these appear to be rare. What narrative or story elements occur in known Mahāyāna texts appear to be either polemics intended to make fun of other monks, as in the *Questions of Druma*, the *Basket of Jewels*, and in the *Teaching of Vimalakīrti*; or are simply unintegrated add-ons, like the story of Ever-Weeping in the *Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines*; or wholesale borrowings, as in the first part of the *Rāṣṭrapālāparipṛcchā* (*Questions of Rāṣṭrapāla*). Even with these possible exceptions, and bearing in mind that only a limited corpus of Mahāyāna sūtra literature has so far been studied, much of what has been studied seems positively dreary and is commonly said to be so in the scholarly backroom. Not only is there little narrative or story, there is also a very great deal of doctrinal, meditative and ascetic minutia—Lamotte's “desert.” To learned monks—indeed very learned monks—this might have had great attraction, but how it would have struck anyone else remains imaginable, but unclear. What is clear, however, is that the scholasticism found from the beginning of Mahāyāna literature did not abate or go away, and already in India the Mahāyāna produced some very impressive, even mind-boggling, “philosophical” systems, like those lumped together under the heading Yogācāra. Works ascribed to the monk ASAṄGA play a key role in the Yogācāra, and a story preserved in BU STON's *History of Buddhism* about the reaction of Asaṅga's younger brother—himself a scholastic of the first order—might be instructive. He is supposed to have said:

Alas, Asaṅga, residing in the forest,

has practiced meditation for 12 years.

Without having attained anything by this meditation,

he has founded a system, so difficult and burdensome,

that it can be carried only by an elephant.

### **The Mahāyāna and the move away from devotion and cult**

None of this, of course, squares very well with the notion that the Mahāyāna was in India a popular devotional movement—if even learned monks found its scholasticism off-putting, any laity would almost certainly as well. But this is not the only thing that does not square. There is, for example, surprisingly little apparent interest in devotional or cult practice in the Ma-

hāyāna sūtras that can, at least provisionally, be placed in the early centuries of the common era, and in what little there is there is a curiously anticultic stand.

One of the most visible characteristics of the Mahāyāna as it developed outside of India may well be an emphasis on a multiplicity of “present” Buddhas other than Śākyamuni, on the Buddhas Amitābha and Bhaiṣajyaguru in particular, less so on the Buddha AKṢOBHYA. But while there are early Mahāyāna sūtras devoted to the first and third of these that were composed, presumably, in India, these early texts contain really very little that would suggest any elaborate system of cult, WORSHIP, or RITUAL. It is, in fact, only in the sūtra devoted to Bhaiṣajyaguru, which cannot be early, that we get clear references to the use of cult images and set, specific ritual forms. There is, moreover, as already mentioned, only the barest certain trace of any devotion to Amitābha in the Indian art historical or inscriptional record, and none at all—or only very late—for Bhaiṣajyaguru or Akṣobhya. Unlike the great bodhisattvas, these buddhas seem never to have captured the Indian religious imagination in an immediate way. Rebirth in Amitābha’s Pure Land was, to be sure, in India—as later in Nepal and Tibet—a generalized religious goal, but as such probably differed very little from other generic positive rebirths.

It is, however, not just in the early sūtras dealing with the new buddhas that it is difficult to find references to cult practice, to images—once erroneously thought to have been a Mahāyāna innovation—or even to the stūpa cult. They are surprisingly rare in all Mahāyāna sūtras until the latter begin their elusive transformation into TANTRA, and this process must start around the fourth century. The comparative rarity of references in this literature to the stūpa cult was particularly damaging to Akira Hiraakawa’s theory that tied the origin of the Mahāyāna to this cult, but his theory has been largely set aside on other grounds as well (i.e., a serious underestimation of the role of established monastic Buddhism [Hīnayāna] in the construction and development of the cult). It is in the literature of the latter, in fact, particularly in its vinaya and *avadāna* literatures, that the origin tales, the promotion, and the religious ideology of both the stūpa cult and the cult of images occur, not in Mahāyāna sūtras—if they refer to either it is at least clear that they take both as already established cult forms, and are in fact reacting to them, at first, at least, by attempting to deflect attention away from them and toward something very different. This attempt is most commonly

articulated in passages that assert—to paraphrase—that it is good to fill the world with stūpas made of precious substances, and to worship them with all sorts of perfumes, incenses, and so on, but it is far and away, in fact infinitely, better and more meritorious to take up even a four-line verse of the doctrine, preserve it, recite it, teach it and—eventually, it now seems—write or copy it. Virtually the same assertion, using virtually the same language, is made in regard to religious giving—it is good to fill the whole world with jewels and give it as a gift to the Buddha, but it is far and away superior to take up, study and instantiate even a small part of the doctrine, or some practice, or a text. This, for example, is a constant refrain in the DIAMOND SŪTRA (*Vajracchedikā*).

Passages of this sort—and they are legion—appear explicitly devaluing precisely what archaeological and inscriptional evidence indicates large numbers of Buddhist monks, nuns, and laypeople were doing everywhere in India in the early centuries of the common era: engaging in the stūpa cult and making religious gifts. They also appear to be inflating the value of what large numbers of Buddhist monks, nuns, and laypeople might well have not been doing, but what the authors or compilers of Mahāyāna sūtras wanted them to: seriously taking up or engaging with the doctrine. This looks very much like reformist rhetoric—conservative and the opposite of “popular”—and yet it, perhaps more than anything else, seems characteristic of a great deal and a wide range of Mahāyāna literature. Here too it is important to note that Gregory Schopen was almost certainly wrong—and his theory too must go the way of Hiraakawa’s—in seeing in these passages only an attempt by the “new” movement to substitute one similar cult (the cult of the book) for another similar cult (the cult of relics). That such a substitution occurred—and perhaps rather quickly—is likely, but it now appears that it is very unlikely that this was the original or fundamental intention. That intention—however precarious, unpopular, or successful—was almost certainly to shift the religious focus from cult and giving to doctrine, to send monks, nuns, and even laymen quite literally back to their books. That in this attempt the book itself was—again, it seems, rather early—fetishized may only be a testament to the strong pressures toward cult and ritual that seem to have been in force in Indian Buddhism from the beginning. The success of this attempt might well account for the fact—otherwise so puzzling—that it is very difficult to find clear and uncontested Mahāyāna elements in the Indian art historical and inscriptional

record: If adherents of the Mahāyāna had in fact heeded the injunctions in their own texts, and turned away from cult and giving, they would have left few if any traces outside their large “pamphlet” or “tract” literature. But any success within Mahāyāna groups would also have to be set alongside the apparent failure to affect the mainstream Indian Buddhist tradition for a very long time: That tradition not only continued, but increased its construction and promotion of monastic cult sites and objects of devotion, and became increasingly entangled in religious gifts—land, cash endowments, and business enterprises. All our sources for the first five centuries make this clear. So too, it seems, did the Mahāyāna: When in the late fifth and early sixth centuries we finally get the first references to the Mahāyāna by name, it is, again, in association with large grants of land. There are still other possible indications that the Mahāyāna “reform” was not entirely successful even among its own ranks: A Mahāyāna text like, for example, the *Samādhirāja-sūtra* (*King of Concentrations Sūtra*) is still spending a great deal of space asserting the primacy of practice over worship, of realization over religious giving, and still fulminating against the accumulation of donations—preaching to the supposedly converted is probably never a good sign. It is also important to note that such assertions are not necessarily unique to the Mahāyāna. They occur sporadically (already?) in some Hīnayāna sources, both sūtra and vinaya, and are found even in works like Āryaśūra’s *JĀTAKAMĀLĀ*. Such assertions may prove to be only an old Buddhist issue that the Mahāyāna revived.

### The Mahāyāna and the new bodhisattvas

There is left, lastly, the one element that is associated with the Mahāyāna and that appears, perhaps more than anything else, to have had a major and lasting impact on Indian religious life and culture. It has already been noted that what evidence we have seems to suggest that the new Mahāyāna buddhas—Amitābha, and even less so Akṣobhya and Bhaiṣajyaguru—may never have really taken root in India, and the same would seem to hold for an almost endless list of Mahāyāna bodhisattvas or “aspirants to awakening.” But two of these latter, starting from the fifth century, clearly caught on: the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī and the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, especially the latter. The first of these, the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī, is certainly the earlier of the two. He, an exemplification of the new wisdom and emphasis on doctrine, occurs in some of the

Mahāyāna sūtras that can be dated early, but never really as anything other than a model or ideal, and certainly not as an object of cult or devotion. It is only much, much later, when his character has changed, that cult images of Mañjuśrī occur, and even then—after the fifth century—they are not particularly numerous. It is quite otherwise with Avalokiteśvara. He comes later—perhaps considerably later—than Mañjuśrī, but already in the earliest textual references to him of any detail (probably in a late chapter of the *LOTUS SŪTRA* [*SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA*]), and the earliest undisputed art historical representations of him (probably some Gupta images from Sārnāth and some reliefs from the western cave monasteries), he appears as a “savior” figure, and he continues in this role, sometimes jostling with Tārā, a female competitor, until the “disappearance” of Buddhism from India.

The bodhisattva concept reflected in the late forms of Mañjuśrī and Avalokiteśvara is certainly important, but it remains unclear whether it is best seen as an organic development of specifically Mahāyāna ideas, or, rather, as a part of much larger developments that were occurring in Indian religion as a whole. What seems fairly sure, however, is that there was an earlier and much more prosaic—though none the less heroic—Mahāyāna conception of the bodhisattva as well. Simply put, this amounted to ordinary monks, nuns, and perhaps very committed laypersons taking a vow to replicate the career of Śākyamuni in all its immensity, committing themselves to, in effect, a long, if not endless, series of lifetimes spent in working for the benefit of others, of postponing their release and full enlightenment for the benefit of all. This ideal has had, of course, strong appeal in the modern West, but it also may account, at least in part, for the failure of the early Mahāyāna in India. At the least it asked too much—think what it would cost an individual just to become Saint Francis; at the worst such an ideal might well have appeared to religious women and men in India as counterintuitive, if not positively silly. What we know of such committed men and women would suggest that they were sternly conditioned to flee the very thing, the long cycle of rebirth, that they were being asked to embrace. In the end, however—and that is where we are—this may simply be yet another thing we do not really know about the Mahāyāna.

*See also:* Madhyamaka School; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Merit and Merit-Making; Prajñāpāramitā Literature; Relics and Relics Cults; Yogācāra School

**Bibliography**

- Bechert, Heinz. "Notes on the Formation of Buddhist Sects and the Origins of Mahāyāna." In *German Scholars on India*, Vol. 1. Varanasi, India: Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office, 1973.
- Boucher, Daniel. "The Textual History of the Rāṣṭrapālapariṣcchā: Notes on Its Third-Century Chinese Translation." In *Annual Report of the International Research Institute for Advanced Buddhology at Soka University for the Academic Year 2000*. Tokyo: International Research Institute for Advanced Buddhology, Soka University, 2001.
- Conze, Edward. "Mahayana Buddhism." In *The Concise Encyclopaedia of Living Faiths*, ed. R. C. Zaehner. London: Hutchinson, 1959.
- Deleanu, Florin. "A Preliminary Study on Meditation and the Beginnings of Mahāyāna Buddhism." In *Annual Report of the International Research Institute for Advanced Buddhology at Soka University for the Academic Year 1999*. Tokyo: International Research Institute for Advanced Buddhology, Soka University, 2000.
- Dutt, Nalinaksha. *Aspects of Mahāyāna Buddhism and Its Relation to Hīnayāna*. London: Luzac, 1930.
- Harrison, Paul. "Searching for the Origins of the Mahāyāna." *Eastern Buddhist* 28, no. 1 (1995): 48–69.
- Hirakawa, Akira. "The Rise of Mahāyāna Buddhism and Its Relationship to the Worship of Stūpas." *Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko* 22 (1963): 57–106.
- Lamotte, Étienne. "Sur la formation du Mahāyāna." In *Asiatica: Festschrift Friedrich Weller*. Leipzig, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1954.
- Nattier, Jan. *A Few Good Men: The Bodhisattva Path According to the Inquiry of Ugra (Ugrapariṣcchā)*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2003.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study of Buddhist Values and Orientations*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Sasaki, Shizuka. "A Study on the Origin of Mahāyāna Buddhism." *Eastern Buddhist* 30, no. 1 (1997): 79–113.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Figments and Fragments of a Mahāyāna Buddhism in India: More Collected Papers*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2003.
- Shimoda, Masahiro. *A Study of the Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra: With a Focus on the Methodology of the Study of Mahāyānasūtras* (In Japanese, with English summary). Tokyo: Shunjūsha, 1997.
- Silk, Jonathan A. "What, if Anything, Is Mahāyāna Buddhism? Problems of Definitions and Classifications." *Numen* 49 (2002): 76–109.
- Stcherbatsky, Th. *The Conception of Buddhist Nirvāṇa* (1927). The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1965.
- Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London and New York: Routledge, 1989.
- Williams, Paul. *Buddhist Thought: A Complete Introduction to the Indian Tradition*. London and New York: Routledge, 2000.
- Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

GREGORY SCHOPEN

**MAHĀYĀNA PRECEPTS IN JAPAN**

The term *Mahāyāna precepts* is usually used to differentiate lists of PRECEPTS or rules found in MAHĀYĀNA texts from those found in the VINAYA, the traditional source upon which monastic discipline was based. A large number of Mahāyāna texts contain such lists, some detailed and others very simple.

The history of Mahāyāna precepts in Japan was decisively influenced by the country's geography. Japan is an island country; during the Nara period, it was difficult to reach from the Asian mainland, and therefore difficult for ORDINATIONS to be performed in the orthodox manner, in rituals presided over by ten monks who had correctly received the precepts. GANJIN (688–763), for example, tried six times to lead a group of monks from China to Japan so that they could conduct a proper ordination. As a result, at least some monks resorted to self-ordinations, a Mahāyāna ritual in which monks would go before an image of the Buddha and perform confessions and meditate until they received a sign from the Buddha sanctioning their ordination, a sign that could occur either while they were awake or in a dream. In addition, government control of ordinations led other monks to use Mahāyāna precepts to ordain their followers. The most famous example of this is Gyōki (668–749), who used a set of Mahāyāna precepts, probably from the *Yogācārabhūmi*, to ordain groups of men and women who performed social works, such as building bridges and irrigation systems, activities specified in some sets of Mahāyāna rules.

The term *Mahāyāna precepts* was frequently used in a polemical manner to criticize the rules of the vinaya. However, most monks who adhered to the vinaya rules believed that they were following precepts that were largely or completely consistent with Mahāyāna teachings. Ganjin used an ordination platform that included an image of two buddhas sitting



in a reliquary. This image is peculiar to the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and indicated that Ganjin probably interpreted the vinaya in a manner consistent with Tendai teachings that enabled him to “open and reconcile” HĪNAYĀNA teachings of the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS with those of Mahāyāna so that no contradiction occurred. Moreover, Japanese monks were also ordained with the fifty-eight rules from a Mahāyāna text, FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ’S NET SŪTRA). In this case, the Mahāyāna precepts were intended to supplement those found in the vinaya, thereby giving the practitioner a Mahāyāna perspective. As a result, virtually the entire history of Buddhist precepts in Japan could fall under the rubric of Mahāyāna precepts.

A decisive break with the rules of the vinaya occurred when SAICHŌ (767–822), founder of the Tendai School, argued that his monks should use the fifty-eight Mahāyāna precepts of the *Brahmā’s Net Sūtra* for their ordinations. Saichō’s main objective was to free his monks from administrative control of his adversaries in the Buddhist schools of Nara. His commitment to traditional standards of monastic discipline is revealed in a provision that Tendai monks “provisionally receive the Hīnayāna precepts” after twelve years on Mount Hiei. Because Saichō died before the court accepted his proposals, Tendai monks were left without clear instructions on how the terse precepts of the *Brahmā’s Net Sūtra* were to be interpreted when they were the main basis of monastic discipline.

According to the *Brahmā’s Net Sūtra*, when the major precepts of the sūtra were violated, confession, followed by a sign from the Buddha, served to restore the precepts. If a person did not receive a sign, the precepts could be received again. When esoteric Buddhist practices were used, a DHĀRAṆĪ (magical spell) might be sufficient to remove the karmic consequences of wrongdoing. Some later Tendai monks such as Annen (late ninth century) argued that the esoteric Buddhist precepts were predominant, but these were so abstract that they offered little concrete guidance to monks. Several centuries later, Tendai monks argued that the principles of the *Lotus Sūtra*, a vague set of recommendations, were sufficient to serve as precepts. Such interpretations meant that the Buddhist order of monks and nuns played little or no role in enforcing the precepts. In some cases, monastery rules might play a role in providing standards for behavior, but Tendai monastic discipline went into general decline.

A number of monks made efforts to revive monastic discipline. Monks such as Shunjō (1166–1227) traveled to China and brought back the practice of using ordinations based on the vinaya but interpreting the precepts in a Mahāyāna manner based on Tiantai teachings. Ninkū (1309–1388) tried to strengthen monastic discipline by emphasizing stricter adherence to the *Brahmā’s Net* precepts. Instead of relying on the terse precepts found in that sūtra, he wrote detailed subcommentaries on the text, basing his interpretation of the precepts on a commentary by the de facto founder of the Chinese Tiantai School, ZHIYI (538–597). Kōen (1263–1317) was the center of another group based at Kurdani on Mount Hiei that tried to revive monastic discipline by reviving Saichō’s twelve-year period of sequestration on Mount Hiei. At the end of the sequestration, a ritual called a “consecrated ordination” was conducted in which a monk and his teacher affirmed that they had realized buddhahood with this very body through their adherence to the precepts. Myōryū (1637–1690) and Reikū (1652–1739) used Saichō’s statement allowing monks to “provisionally receive the Hīnayāna precepts” to argue that the vinaya could be used to supplement the *Brahmā’s Net Sūtra*.

The issues and approaches that appeared in Tendai affected other schools in a variety of ways. Many Zen monks also strove to revive the precepts by using “Mahāyāna precepts.” Eisai (1141–1215), often considered the founder of Rinzaï Zen, deemed the precepts from the vinaya to be the basis of Zen and wrote several works on them. DŌGEN (1200–1253) used a unique set of sixteen Mahāyāna precepts for ordinations and wrote extensively on monastic discipline. The various Pure Land traditions interpreted the precepts in several ways, sometimes citing the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA (*mappō*) as a reason why they were no longer valid, as in the case of Shinshū. However, the various branches of the Jōdo school continued to use precepts in their ordinations even though monks frequently were not required to follow them. For NICHIREN, adherence to the *Lotus Sūtra* served as the precepts. In addition, the establishment of an “ordination platform of the original teaching” played a role in Nichiren’s later thinking; the concept, however, was not clearly defined and has been interpreted in a variety of ways by later thinkers. Eison, founder of the Shingon Ritsu tradition, used a Mahāyāna self-ordination to establish a new lineage that followed the vinaya.

In the last few centuries, few Japanese monks have followed any set of precepts closely. However, discus-

sions of the role of precepts have continued to be important, as is shown by the fierce arguments that ensued when the Meiji government made celibacy and meat-eating optional. Even though many monks did not observe these rules, the prestige lost by the new government ruling was important. In addition, the use of Mahāyāna precepts for lay believers should be noted. These are conferred on laity who wish to have ethical rules to guide their lives; these precepts are also used to ordain the dead so that they will have a good rebirth. In conclusion, although Japan is often described as a country where monks do not follow the precepts, they have discussed them continuously for well over a millennium.

*See also:* Japan; Meiji Buddhist Reform

### Bibliography

- Bodiford, William. *Sōtō Zen in Medieval Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Groner, Paul. "The *Fan-wang ching* and Monastic Discipline in Japanese Tendai: A Study of Annen's *Futsū jubosatsukai kōshaku*." In *Buddhist Apocryphal Literature*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Groner, Paul. "Vicissitudes in the Ordinations of Nuns during the Late Nara and Early Heian Periods." In *Engendering Faith: Women and Buddhism in Premodern Japan*, ed. Barbara Ruch. Ann Arbor: Center for Japanese Studies, University of Michigan, 2002.
- Jaffe, Richard. *Neither Monk nor Layman: Clerical Marriage in Modern Japanese Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2001.

PAUL GRONER

## MAHĪŚĀSĀKA

The Mahīśāsaka mainstream Indian Buddhist school, a subschool of the Sthavira branch, was prominent in southern India and was closely tied historically and doctrinally to the THERAVĀDA school. The term *Mahīśāsaka* is variously interpreted as referring to the name of the founder, a geographical locale, or to their role in governing or instructing the earth.

*See also:* Mainstream Buddhist Schools

COLLETT COX

## MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS

By several centuries after the death of the Buddha, the itinerant mendicants following his way had formed settled communities and had changed irrevocably their received methods of both teaching and praxis. These changes were inevitable, a consequence of the growth and geographic dispersion of the practicing communities. Confronted with new challenges and opportunities in an increasingly organized institutional setting, monks expanded and elaborated both doctrine and disciplinary codes, created new textual genres, developed new forms of religious praxis, and eventually divided into numerous sects or schools.

### The character of mainstream Buddhist schools

Unfortunately, sources for this period, including documents, inscriptions, and archaeological evidence, are poor. Inscriptions and archaeological finds, while providing a priceless contemporaneous record, are limited in detail. Documentary sources, including chronicles, doxographies, translator records, narrative sections of canonical texts, lists of teachers or school lineages, and the diaries of Chinese Buddhist pilgrims who visited India from the fifth to seventh centuries C.E., provide greater detail, but postdate the emergence of schools by several centuries. As themselves products of the sectarian fragmentation that they describe, these documentary sources are colored by sectarian agendas. Nevertheless, they furnish valuable insight into the values and objectives of the developing Buddhist tradition.

A picture of the history of Buddhist schools depends upon reconstruction of the major events in the early history of Buddhism in India: the life of the Buddha; the communal recitations or councils; the so-called first schism; and the fragmentation of the monastic community after this initial schism. Also important are more general questions concerning the criteria by which various groups were distinguished from one another and the notion of what constituted a sect or school within the tradition. It is unclear whether the school names mentioned in traditional sources were intended to refer to independent groups distinguished on similar grounds. Nor is it clear whether the notion of what constituted a sect or school remained consistent in sources of different periods. For example, certain school names corresponded to separate communities of practitioners distinguished by distinct ordination lineages and collections of monastic disciplinary codes. Other names, especially those that appear in the doctrinal scholastic texts and later doxographical treatises,

appear to have been used not to mark distinct communities of practitioners, but simply for heuristic purposes, to represent differences in doctrinal perspective or teaching lineage. As a result, different source texts emphasize different factors that contributed to sectarian fragmentation. These contributing factors include geographical separation, language differences, doctrinal disagreements, selective patronage, the influence of non-Buddhists, lineage loyalties to specific teachers, the absence of a recognized supreme authority or unifying institutional structure, varying degrees of laxness regarding or active disagreements over disciplinary codes, and specialization by various monastic groups in differing segments of Buddhist SCRIPTURE.

Further, the image of a harmonious early community from which distinct sects or schools emerged through gradual divergence in practice and in teaching must be questioned. Traditional sources attest to discord among the Buddha's disciples even during his lifetime, and relate that at the Buddha's death one monk, Subhadra, rejoiced since his followers would now be free to do as they liked. Similarly, accounts of the first communal recitation or council held soon after the Buddha's death record that one group of practitioners led by Purāṇa rejected the consensual understanding of the Buddha's teaching and preferred instead to transmit it as Purāṇa himself had heard it. Whether literally true or not, these stories affirm that the later traditions conceived of their own early history as involving both consensus and dissent.

### The first schism

Virtually all later sources agree that the first schism within the early Buddhist community occurred with the separation of the MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA SCHOOL, or "those of the great community," from the remaining monks referred to as Sthaviras, or the "elders." Complex and inconsistent, these traditional sources post-date the first schism by several centuries and reflect the biases and viewpoints of separate transmission lineages. Hence, the actual circumstances for the first schism remain obscure and tied to other roughly contemporaneous events that later traditions connect with possibly three additional early councils. The first of these events, recorded in the monastic records of virtually all later schools, is the council of Vaiśālī, which most sources date to approximately one hundred years after the death of the Buddha. Monastic records suggest that this council was convened in response to a disagreement over certain rules of monastic discipline, but do not state that the council resulted in a schism.

Later Pāli chronicles and the records of Chinese pilgrims and translators explicitly link the first schism with the outcome of either the first council immediately after the death of the Buddha or this second council of Vaiśālī. They relate that some participants would not accept the communal recitation of the teaching at the first council or the decisions concerning the rules of monastic discipline rendered at the second council. These dissenters, who constituted the adherents of the "great community" (*mahāsamgha*), recited a textual collection of their own and formed a separate Mahāsāṃghika school.

Other northern Indian Buddhist sources, all post-dating the second century C.E., associate the first schism with yet another council, claimed to have been held at Pāṭaliputra during the mid-third century B.C.E. As a reason for this council, they cite discord over a doctrinal issue, specifically five points concerning characteristics of a "worthy one," or ARHAT. These five points suggest that arhats are subject to retrogression from their level of religious attainment or to limitations such as DOUBT, ignorance, various forms of assistance from or stimulation by others, or the employment of artificial devices such as vocal utterances in the practice of the PATH. Although these points have been interpreted in traditional and many modern sources as an attempt to downgrade the status of the arhat in general, it is possible that they reflect an attempt primarily to distinguish and to clarify specific stages in religious praxis. The later textual sources of the northern early Buddhist schools relate that the supporters of the five points were more numerous and hence were referred to as the Mahāsāṃghikas, "those of the great community"; the minority opponents were then referred to as the "elders," or Sthaviras.

Finally, Pāli sources record yet another council held in the third century B.C.E. at Pāṭaliputra under the auspices of King Aśoka. According to these accounts, after years of discord within the monastic community, Aśoka convened a council under the direction of the Buddhist monk Moggaliputta Tissa in order to rectify monastic conduct and to root out heretical views. After questioning by Aśoka, sixty thousand monks were expelled from the community, and a select group of some one thousand monks were charged to set down the contents of the Buddha's true teaching. Moggaliputta Tissa is said to have recorded both the heretical views and their refutation in the Pāli scholastic text, the *Kathāvatthu* (*Points of Discussion*). Pāli sources also relate that at the conclusion of the council, Aśoka

promulgated an edict inveighing against future divisions within the community and sent missionaries to spread the Buddha's teaching throughout his kingdom and beyond.

This particular account of a council at Pāṭaliputra, found only within Pāli sources, may reflect a conflict limited to the predecessors of the later THERAVĀDA school. However, the so-called schism edict promulgated during the reign of King Aśoka provides additional evidence of concern about discord within the Buddhist monastic community during the third century B.C.E. that was sufficient to warrant secular intervention. Despite differences in the scholarly interpretation of certain directives presented within the edict, it clearly condemns formal division within the monastic community (*saṅghabheda*) and declares that the community of monks and nuns should be united. Thus, this edict implies the presence of or at least the threat of divisions within a community that ideally should be united and stable.

Hence, the traditional sources do not paint a coherent picture of the reasons for the first schism, but instead offer two radically different possibilities, each reflected in later sectarian accounts. The Theravāda and Mahāsāṃghika sources cite differences in the monastic disciplinary code, and the Sarvāstivāda sources, differences in doctrinal interpretation. The former possibility finds support in the oldest Mahāsāṃghika account of the schism, the *Śāriputrapariṣchā* (*Questions of Śāriputra*). Here the Mahāsāṃghikas object to an attempt to tighten discipline through an expansion of the monastic disciplinary code and prefer instead to preserve the more restricted disciplinary rules as they stood.

Scholarly consensus also prefers the view that the earliest distinct Buddhist groups emerged not through disagreements over doctrine, but rather through differences in their lineages of ORDINATION (*upasampadā*) and in monastic disciplinary codes (VINAYA). While variety in doctrinal interpretation certainly existed even in the early period, the definition of formal division within the monastic community, which was eventually to be accepted by all groups, specifies monastic discipline as the key factor in the formation of independent groups. If this was indeed the case, then the names of schools reflecting differences in doctrinal interpretation, which are preserved in the later scholastic and COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE, cannot automatically be assumed to denote independent monastic communities, additionally defined by different ordination lineages and monastic disciplinary codes. These doc-

trinally distinguished school names may instead have functioned simply as heuristic labels, meaningful within the context of doctrinal interpretation, scholastic debate, and teaching lineages, but having limited significance in the life of the monastic community as a whole. Such an interpretation would be consistent with the reports of Chinese pilgrims that monks of different doctrinal persuasion resided together within the same monastery, where they were presumably unified by the same ordination lineage and monastic disciplinary code. Distinct monastic disciplinary codes (*vinaya*) of only six schools have been preserved: Mahāsāṃghika, MAHĪSĀKA, DHARMAGUPTAKA, Theravāda, SARVĀSTIVĀDA AND MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA. Therefore, at the very least, these six school names denote independent groups with distinct lineages of authority and separate monastic communities. In general, relations even among schools distinguished on the basis of monastic disciplinary code were generally not hostile. All practitioners were to be accepted as disciples of the Buddha, and to be treated with courtesy, regardless of differing disciplinary or doctrinal allegiances.

### Traditional mainstream schools

Traditional sources maintain that eighteen schools emerged following the first schism, but since more than thirty school names are recorded, the number eighteen may have been chosen for its symbolic significance. The variety of names points to different origins for the schools, including a geographical locale (e.g., Haimavata, “those of the snowy mountains”), a specific teacher (e.g., Vātsīputrīya, “those affiliated with Vātsīputra,” or Dharmaguptaka, “those affiliated with Dharmagupta”), a simple descriptive qualification (e.g., Mahāsāṃghika, “those of the great community,” or Bahuśrutīya, “those who have heard much”), or a distinctive doctrinal position (e.g., Sarvāstivāda, “those who claim that everything exists,” or Vibhajyavāda, “those who make distinctions,” or SAUTRĀNTIKA, “those who rely upon the sūtras”). The later doxographical accounts, each of which is colored by its own sectarian bias, do not agree on the chronology or on the order in which the schools emerged, but instead give temporal primacy to the particular group or school with which they were affiliated. They do, however, tend to agree on the basic filiation of the schools with either the Sthavira or the Mahāsāṃghika branch and generally concur that the additional schools were formed within a century or two of the first schism.

**The Mahāsāṃghika branch.** From the Mahāsāṃghika branch, according to tradition, initially arose three major groups, each of which was associated in later accounts with additional school names. One group, the Kaukuṭika, may have derived its name from the Kukkuṭārāma Monastery in Pāṭaliputra. The name of a second group, the Ekavyavahārika (or Lokottaravāda) refers to “those who make a single utterance.” Later sources interpret this name as reflecting the view that all phenomena can be described by one utterance, namely, the fact that all entities exist merely as mental constructs or provisional designations. However, the name could also be interpreted as referring to the distinctive doctrinal position of this school that the Buddha offers only one utterance, namely, a transcendent utterance. This interpretation would be consistent with an alternative or possibly later name for this group, Lokottaravāda, or “those who claim that (the Buddha and his utterance) are transcendent.” Such a concern with the character of the utterance of the Buddha is also evident in the views associated with the schools that emerged from the first group of the Kaukuṭika: namely, the Bahuśrutīya, who claimed that the Buddha offered both transcendent and ordinary teachings, and the Prajñāptivāda, or “those who offer provisional designations,” which might also imply the claim that the Buddha utilized not simply transcendent utterance or absolutely true language, but also provisional designations or relative language.

Thus, the original Mahāsāṃghika branch appears to have been divided, at least in part, on the basis of a difference of opinion concerning the fundamental character of the Buddha’s teaching, either as exclusively transcendent or as both transcendent and provisional. A third group emerging from the Mahāsāṃghika branch, the Caitya, centered in the region of Andhra in southern India, were presumably named in accordance with their practice of worship at shrines (caitya). They were also associated with a teacher, Mahādeva, who adopted and possibly reworked the five points concerning the characteristics of a “worthy one” that were cited by northern Indian Buddhist sources as the reason for the first schism between the Mahāsāṃghikas and the Sthaviras.

**The Sthavira branch.** Later accounts record as many as twenty or more schools that trace their origin to the Sthavira branch. Despite inconsistency in these accounts, the first to emerge was probably the Vātsīputrīya (or Saṃmatīya), also referred to as the PUDGALAVĀDA, or “those who claim that person(hood)

(*pudgala*) exists.” The Pudgalavādins were attacked vociferously by other Buddhist schools for violating the most basic of Buddhist teachings, namely, that no self is to be found (anātman). The opponents of the Pudgalavādins argued that animate beings exist only as a collection of components or SKANDHA (AGGREGATE), which are conditioned and impermanent. Any unifying entity such as personhood exists only as a mental construct or a provisional designation, which has no reality in itself. For the Pudgalavādins, this view was tantamount to nihilism. They saw a unifying entity of some type as a necessary basis for the notion of mutually distinct animate beings and for the continuity of their experience. Otherwise, the phenomena of moral action, REBIRTH, and religious attainment accepted by all Buddhists would be impossible. Consistent with this position, the Pudgalavādins also maintained the existence of an INTERMEDIATE STATE (*antarābhava*) after death, a transition state that links the aggregates of one lifetime with those of the next. Pudgalavāda positions that are presented and criticized in extant textual sources suggest that the Pudgalavādins did not simply defend the existence of personhood, but also used a distinctive method of argumentation that challenged the growing rigidity of stringent Buddhist scholastic analysis. Pudgalavāda arguments employ a sophisticated method of negative dialectics that continues certain tendencies in the earlier sūtra dialogues and stands in sharp contrast to their opponents’ more straightforward, positivist methods.

**Sarvāstivāda.** Apart from the Pudgalavāda, the Sthavira branch was further divided into two groups: the Sarvāstivāda and the Vibhajyavāda. Evidence for an initial threefold split within the Sthavira branch among the Pudgalavādins, Vibhajyavādins, and Sarvāstivādins comes from two early scholastic treatises, the *Kathāvatthu* of the Theravādins and the *Vijñānakāya* (*Collection on Perceptual Consciousness*) of the Sarvāstivādins. Traditional sources date the *Kathāvatthu* to the period of King Aśoka (third century B.C.E.), but the presence in the *Kathāvatthu* of doctrinal positions associated with each of these three groups does not prove that adherents of these views formed separate schools at that time. The earliest inscriptional references to the name Sarvāstivāda, found in the northwestern regions of Kashmir and Gandhāra as well as in the north central region of Mathurā, date from the first century C.E. Both regions are connected by tradition with prominent early Sarvāstivāda teachers and later became strongholds of the Sarvāstivāda school.

Much of the Sarvāstivāda version of the Buddhist CANON is preserved in Chinese translations, including the complete monastic disciplinary code (vinaya), a portion of the dialogues (sūtra), and the complete collection of scholastic treatises (ABHIDHARMA), as well as many other postcanonical scholastic texts and commentaries. The presence of certain texts in multiple recensions confirms that the Sarvāstivāda school was not homogeneous, but was rather a vast group distinguished by regional, chronological, doctrinal, and other differences. This was most likely true of all early Buddhist schools. In the case of the Sarvāstivāda school, these internal distinctions are clearly demarcated in their scholastic texts by the attribution of distinct doctrinal positions to Sarvāstivāda groups of different regions.

Intragroup differences within the Sarvāstivāda school also may have led directly to the emergence of a Mūlasarvāstivāda school, whose separate monastic disciplinary code survives in Sanskrit, and to whom can probably be attributed other assorted sūtra dialogues and miscellaneous texts preserved in Chinese translation. The precise identity, however, of the Mūlasarvāstivādins remains elusive, and their relation to the Sarvāstivādins a point of scholarly disagreement. Some suggest that the Mūlasarvāstivādins represent merely a later phase in the development of the Sarvāstivāda sectarian stream. Others see the distinction as reflecting both geographical and chronological differences within the Sarvāstivāda school, which was widespread throughout northern India and Central Asia, and in particular in the northwestern region of Kashmir and Gandhāra and the north central region of Mathurā. In this latter view, when the Sarvāstivāda school of the northwest declined in prominence, the Sarvāstivādins of Mathurā became more significant and adopted the name Mūlasarvāstivāda (root Sarvāstivāda) to proclaim their status as the original Sarvāstivādins.

The Sarvāstivādins of northwest India were renowned for their scholarly study of Buddhist doctrine or *abhidharma*. From compiling voluminous treatises called *vibhāṣā*, commentaries on the most significant of their canonical *abhidharma* scriptures, those in the Kashmiri Sarvāstivāda branch eventually came to be called Sarvāstivāda-Vaibhāṣika. The last and best known of these *vibhāṣā* treatises is called the *Mahāvibhāṣā* (*Great Exegesis*). The later Sarvāstivāda summary digests and pedagogical manuals of *abhidharma* contain detailed discussions of all manner of doctrinal issues from ontology to religious praxis. The

most controversial of these issues is the position from which the name Sarvāstivāda is derived: namely, *sarvam asti* or “everything exists,” referring specifically to the existence of conditioned factors (dharma) in the three time periods of the past, present, and future. This assertion was motivated by the need to provide a basis for the commonly perceived efficacy of past and future causes and conditions. If past actions are accepted as conditions for the arising of present events, and past or future entities function as objects of recollection or presentiment, these past and future actions or entities must, the Sarvāstivādins claim, be admitted to exist. Attacked for violating the fundamental Buddhist doctrine of impermanence, the Sarvāstivādins responded with an elaborate ontology that attempted both to delimit the specific manner in which past and future factors exist and to preserve their conditioned and hence impermanent character.

Most prominent among the critics of this hallmark Sarvāstivāda position were the Sautrāntikas or Dārṣṭāntikas. The original meanings and referents of these names as well as their relationship to one another remain the subject of scholarly disagreement. Since no evidence survives of a separate Sautrāntika or Dārṣṭāntika monastic disciplinary code, they would appear to represent a particular doctrinal perspective, most likely the same doctrinal party within the Sarvāstivāda school. Proponents of this group may have used the term *Sautrāntika* (those who rely upon the sūtras) self-referentially, and their opponents among the Sarvāstivādins may have labeled them pejoratively as Dārṣṭāntika (those who employ examples). The Sautrāntika/Dārṣṭāntikas criticized orthodox Sarvāstivāda ontology as thinly veiled permanence and instead argued for a doctrine of extreme momentariness. They rejected unequivocally the existence of past and future factors, and equated the existence of present factors with an instantaneous exertion of activity. In contrast to the complex array of existent factors proposed by the Sarvāstivādins, the Sautrāntika/Dārṣṭāntikas claimed that experience is best described as an indistinguishable process. The name *Sautrāntika*, “those who rely upon the sūtras,” also indicates a rejection of the authority that the Sarvāstivādins bestowed upon their separate canonical *abhidharma* collection.

**Vibhajyavāda.** The connotation of the term *Vibhajyavāda* has also been the subject of prolonged scholarly disagreement, largely because of the variety of senses in which the term was used over time. In the early sūtras, *Vibhajyavāda* occurs as a descriptive term

for the Buddha, who, in reference to various specific issues, is said to “discriminate” carefully rather than to take an exclusivist position. In their accounts of the council at Pāṭaliputra, later Pāli sources use the term *Vibhajjavāda* to describe the correct teaching of the Buddha, and within Pāli materials the name continues to be used as one among several names for the Theravāda sect. A third-century C.E. inscription links the term *Vibhajjavāda* with the Sthaviras located in the regions of Kashmir, Gandhāra, Bactria, Vanavāsa (i.e., Karnataka), and the island of Sri Lanka. This connection between the Vibhajjavādins and the northwestern regions of Kashmir, Gandhāra, and Bactria clearly indicates that Vibhajjavāda was not simply another name for the Theravāda school. The Mahīśāsakas, Dharmaguptakas, and the Kāśyapīyas, attested in inscriptions from the Northwest, are all connected by later sources with the Vibhajjavādins. As a result, the name *Vibhajjavāda* might be best characterized as a loose umbrella term for those, excluding the Sarvāstivādins, who belonged to the original Sthavira branch.

A review of the many specific doctrinal views explicitly attributed to the Vibhajjavādins in the scholastic literature of the Sarvāstivādins supports this interpretation. These viewpoints do not form a coherent group, but rather are unified simply by virtue of being opposed to respective Sarvāstivāda positions. For example, the Vibhajjavādins are said to support that: thought is inherently pure; form (*rūpa*) occurs even in the formless realm (*ārūpyadhātu*); a subtle form of thought remains in states claimed to be without thought; PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) and the path (*mārga*) are unconditioned; there is no intermediate state (*antarābhava*) between rebirth states; clear comprehension (*abhisamaya*) of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS occurs in a single moment; worthy ones (*arhat*) cannot retrogress from their level of religious attainment; and finally, that the time periods (*adhvan*) are permanent in contrast to conditioned factors, which are impermanent. Various doctrinal positions attributed to the Mahīśāsakas, Dharmaguptakas, Kāśyapīyas, or the Dārṣṭāntikas are also assigned to the Vibhajjavādins, but each of these schools is characterized by views distinct from the others. For example, the Mahīśāsakas and the Dharmaguptakas disagreed on whether or not the Buddha should be considered as a part of the monastic community and on the relative merit of offerings to each. The Mahīśāsakas saw offerings to the community, which included the Buddha, as more meritorious, and the Dharmaguptakas advocated offerings to the STŪPA as representing the

unsurpassed path of the Buddha, who is distinct from and far superior to the community.

Also associated with the Vibhajjavādins, the Theravāda school became dominant in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia and survives there to the present day. The connection of the Theravāda school to the original Sthavira branch is clearly indicated by its Pāli name *thera*, which is equivalent to the Sanskrit, *sthavira*, and by close ties to the Mahīśāsaka school suggested by both textual and doctrinal similarities. Traditional sources claim that Buddhism was brought to Sri Lanka by the missionary Mahinda, either after the death of Buddha’s direct disciple, ĀNANDA, or during the reign of Aśoka in the mid-third century B.C.E. By the fourth century C.E., the Theravāda school had divided into three subgroups, distinguished by their monastic centers: the Mahāvihāravāsins from the Mahāvihāra founded at the time of the introduction of Buddhism to Sri Lanka; the Abhayagirivāsins, dating from some two centuries later; and finally the Jetavanīyas, dating from the fourth century C.E.

The Theravāda textual collection, including both canonical and extensive extracanonical and commentarial texts, is the only early Buddhist collection extant, in toto, in an Indian language (Pāli). Theravāda doctrinal positions often accord with those attributed to the Vibhajjavādins, in opposition to those of the Sarvāstivādins. For example, like the Vibhajjavādins, the Theravādins claim that thought in its fundamental state is pure, that there is no intermediate state (*antarābhava*) between rebirth states, that clear comprehension (*abhisamaya*) of the four noble truths occurs in a single moment, and that worthy ones (*arhat*) cannot retrogress from their level of religious attainment. Perhaps the most distinctive view adopted by the Theravādins is that of a fundamental and inactive state of mind (*bhavaṅga*), to which the mind returns after each discrete moment of thought, and by which one rebirth state is connected with the next. Further, regarding the Sarvāstivāda claim that factors exist in the past and future, the Theravādins adopt the position that only present factors exist. However, on some positions the Theravādins agree with the Sarvāstivādins (e.g., that there are five possible rebirth states; that all forms of defilement are associated with thought), and on still others, they differ from both the Vibhajjavādins and the Sarvāstivādins (e.g., that NIRVĀṆA is the only unconditioned factor). Thus once again, a doctrinal picture of the various early Indian Buddhist schools reveals a complex mosaic of both shared and distinctive doctrinal positions.

## Mahāyāna

The development of the MAHĀYĀNA must also be viewed in the context of the mainstream Buddhist schools. Differing scholarly opinions attempt to locate the origin of Mahāyāna variously within the confines of a particular mainstream Buddhist doctrinal school, in ascetic movements within mainstream Buddhist monasteries, or among lay religious practitioners. Although it is doubtful that any particular mainstream Buddhist school can lay claim to the Mahāyāna, it is clear that later Mahāyāna practitioners adopted the monastic disciplinary codes of mainstream Buddhist schools. Further, key doctrinal positions later associated with Mahāyāna can be traced to mainstream Buddhist doctrinal works: for example, the religious ideal of the BODHISATTVA; the six PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS) that are the cornerstone of Mahāyāna religious praxis; the theory of multiple forms of the Buddha; and a fundamental, subtle form of thought. But in more general terms, the methods of philosophical argumentation, areas of doctrinal investigation, and modes of communal religious life and praxis that were established in mainstream Buddhist schools determined the course of Buddhist inquiry and practice in India for some one thousand years.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Councils, Buddhist**

## Bibliography

- Bareau, André. *Les Sectes bouddhiques du Petit Véhicule*. Saigon, Vietnam: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1955.
- Bechert, Heinz. "The Importance of Aśoka's So-Called Schism Edict." In *Indological and Buddhist Studies: Volume in Honour of J. W. de Jong on His Sixtieth Birthday*, ed. L. A. Hercus et al. Canberra: Faculty of Asian Studies, Australia National University, 1982.
- Chau, Thich Thien. *The Literature of the Personalists of Early Buddhism*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Ho Chi Minh City: Vietnam Buddhist Research Institute, 1997.
- Cousins, Lance S. "The 'Five Points' and the Origins of the Buddhist Schools." In *The Buddhist Forum: Volume II, Seminar Papers 1988–1990*, ed. Tadeusz Skorupski. London: Heritage, 1991.
- Cousins, Lance S. "Person and Self." In *Buddhism into the Year 2000: International Conference Proceedings*. Bangkok and Los Angeles: Dhammakāya Foundation, 1994.
- Cousins, Lance S. "On the Vibhajjavādins: The Mahiṃsāsaka, Dhammaguttaka, Kassapiya, and Tambapaṇṇiya Branches of the Ancient Theriyas." *Buddhist Studies Review* 18, no. 2 (2001): 131–182.
- Cox, Collett. *Disputed Dharmas: Early Buddhist Theories on Existence*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1995.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium: Peeters Press, 1988.
- Nattier, Janice J., and Prebish, Charles S. "Mahāsāṅghika Origins: The Beginning of Buddhist Sectarianism." *History of Religions* 16 (1977): 237–272.
- Norman, K. R. "Aśoka's 'Schism' Edict." In *Collected Papers*, Vol. 3. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1992.
- Sasaki, Shizuka. "Buddhist Sects in the Aśoka Period (1–8)" *Bukkyō Kenkyū* 18, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 27, 28 (1989–1999).

COLLETT COX

## MAITREYA

Maitreya is the bodhisattva anticipated by all Buddhists traditions to become the next buddha of this world, Jambudvīpa. Currently dwelling in the Tuṣita heaven, Maitreya awaits rebirth at that time in the distant future when Śākyamuṇi Buddha's dispensation will have been completely forgotten.

Depicted as both BODHISATTVA and future buddha, Maitreya is frequently portrayed sitting Western-style with legs pendant, sometimes with ankles crossed. Another distinctive iconic attribute is a miniature STŪPA or funerary mound placed at the front of his head, recalling the legend that Śākyamuṇi Buddha's disciple MAHĀKĀŚYAPA remains suspended in meditation beneath a stūpa, awaiting Maitreya, to whom he will present Śākyamuṇi's robe and alms bowl, thus establishing the transmission of authority from one buddha to the next. East Asian Buddhists also recognize Maitreya in a particularly graceful form as the bodhisattva appearing in the lovely "pensive prince" pose and also as the "laughing buddha" ubiquitously encountered in the entryway of Chinese monasteries (and restaurants), the latter form based on the semihistorical sixth-century monk Putai, who was especially loved for his kindness to children.

A devotional cult focusing on Maitreya developed very early in India, later becoming especially prominent in Central Asia and China during the fifth and sixth centuries. Devotees sought to secure rebirth in Tuṣita, first to benefit from Maitreya's teaching there, and later to join him during his tenure as the next buddha. Although eventually eclipsed in East Asia by



the more popular AMITĀBHA cult, anticipation of Maitreya's golden age continued to erupt periodically in millenarian movements that were intensely devotional and occasionally political as well.

*See also:* **Buddha(s); Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements**

### *Bibliography*

Lancaster, Lewis. "Maitreya." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, ed. Mircea Eliade, vol. 9. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

Sponberg, Alan, and Hardacre, Helen, eds. *Maitreya, the Future Buddha*. Cambridge, UK, and New York: Cambridge University Press, 1988.

ALAN SPONBERG

## MAṄḌALA

The Sanskrit noun *maṅḍala* is often translated as "circle" or "discoid object"; however, the term is also used to define visual and meditative images. Used in Hindu and Jain traditions as well as Buddhism, maṅḍalas are described as cosmoplans both in the external sense as diagrams of the cosmos and in the internal sense as guides to the psychophysical practices of an adherent. Fundamentally, however, they represent the manifestation of a specific deity (or group thereof) in the cosmos and as the cosmos. Maṅḍalas can include a few deities or thousands. Both figurative works, as well as those focusing on words, syllables, or attributes, are made. The principal deity, who is also its generative force, is usually placed at the center or core of the maṅḍala. Other deities, who function both independently and as manifestations of the essence and powers of the central image, are carefully placed to illustrate their relation to the primary icon. A maṅḍala can be understood, to some extent, as a web of forces radiating in and out of a self-contained and self-defined spiritual cosmos. Rites based on these icons presume a constant dialogue between the deity at the heart of the maṅḍala and the practitioner who moves, at least metaphorically, from the outside to its core. Once within, the practitioner identifies with the central deity, apprehends all manifestations as part of a single whole, and moves closer to the goal of perfect understanding or enlightenment.

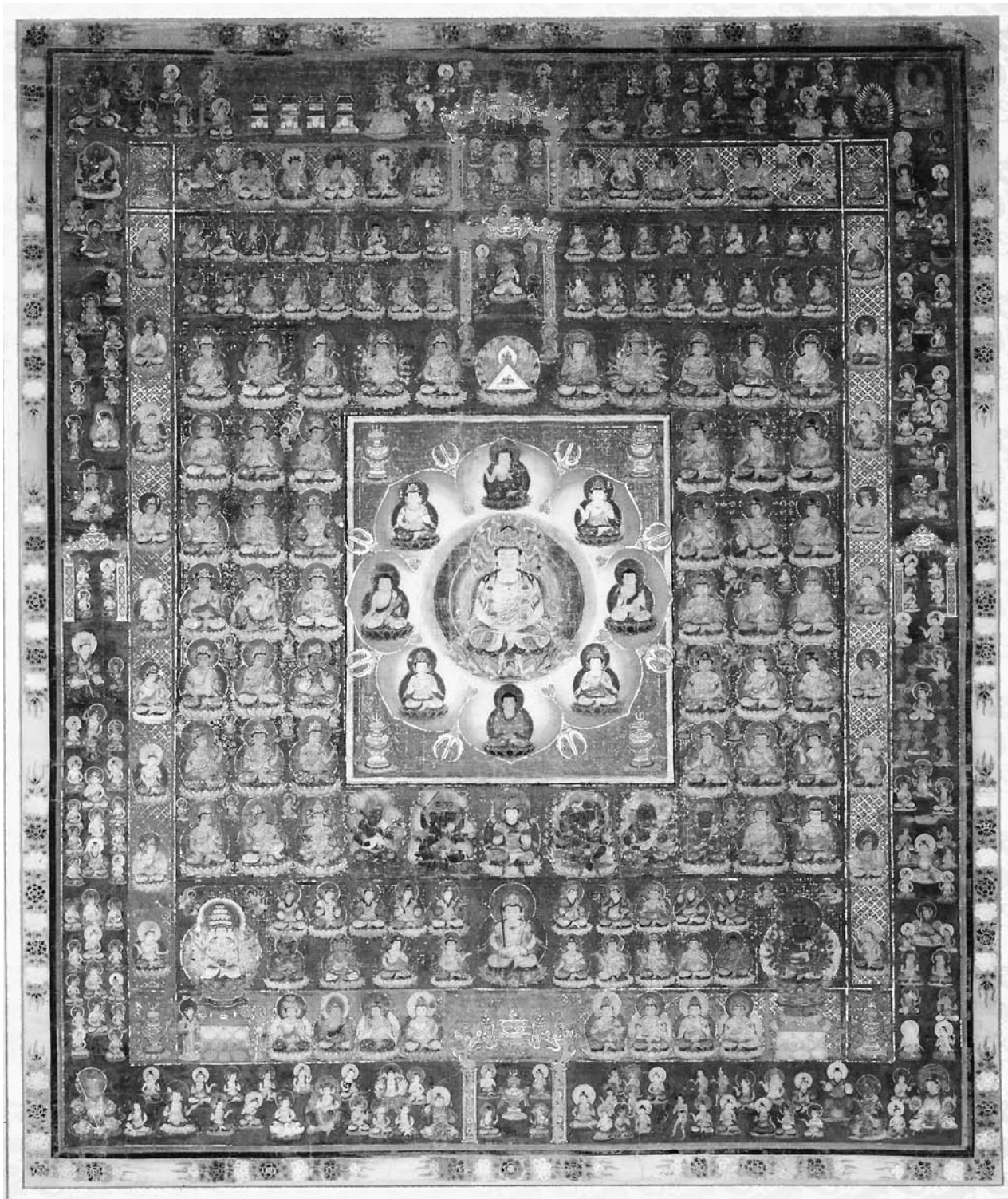
Preserved principally in architectural structures and permanent material such as wood, stone, and paint,

maṅḍalas are also made in ephemeral material such as sand or butter. The creation of a maṅḍala is integral to a RITUAL, during or after which it is sometimes destroyed. Both permanent and impermanent examples are used to decorate and sanctify monasteries and homes, in initiation rites for monks and rulers, and as the focus of visualization by clergy and other advanced practitioners and of worship by lay followers.

Groups of eight BODHISATTVAS assembled around a seated buddha (variously identified as Śākyamuni, AMITĀBHA, or Vairocana) are among the earliest and most widespread examples of maṅḍala imagery. Lists of eight great bodhisattvas occur in early MAHĀYĀNA texts, where they are described as protectors of the faithful and providers of mundane blessings, and are linked to a group of eight BUDDHAS. In later texts such groupings are identified as maṅḍalas. The first preserved visual examples of the Maṅḍala of Eight Great Bodhisattvas date from the sixth century, and the type was widespread from the eighth to the twelfth century. Examples include an interesting portable wooden shrine in the Nelson-Atkins Museum in Kansas City, Missouri; a group found along the interior walls of cave 11 at Ellora in India; a distinctive ninefold arrangement from cave 12 at the same site; versions from Chandi Mendut, Chandi Sari, and Chandi Pawon in Indonesia; a large mural in cave 25 in the Yulin grottoes in Gansu province in China; and images in Ldan ma brag in the Chamdo district and the Assembly Hall of Gra thang Monastery in Tibet. Later painted examples are found in both Korea and Japan.

Compositions of the Maṅḍala of Eight Great Bodhisattvas fall into three basic types: those in which the eight bodhisattvas are arranged in two sets of four to either side of the central Buddha; those in which the eight bodhisattvas encircle the central Buddha; and less common examples in which the nine figures in the maṅḍalas are arranged in groups of three placed one above the other. Of these, the circular arrangements, which provide prototypes for the inner sections of other maṅḍalas, are the most influential in later Buddhist art.

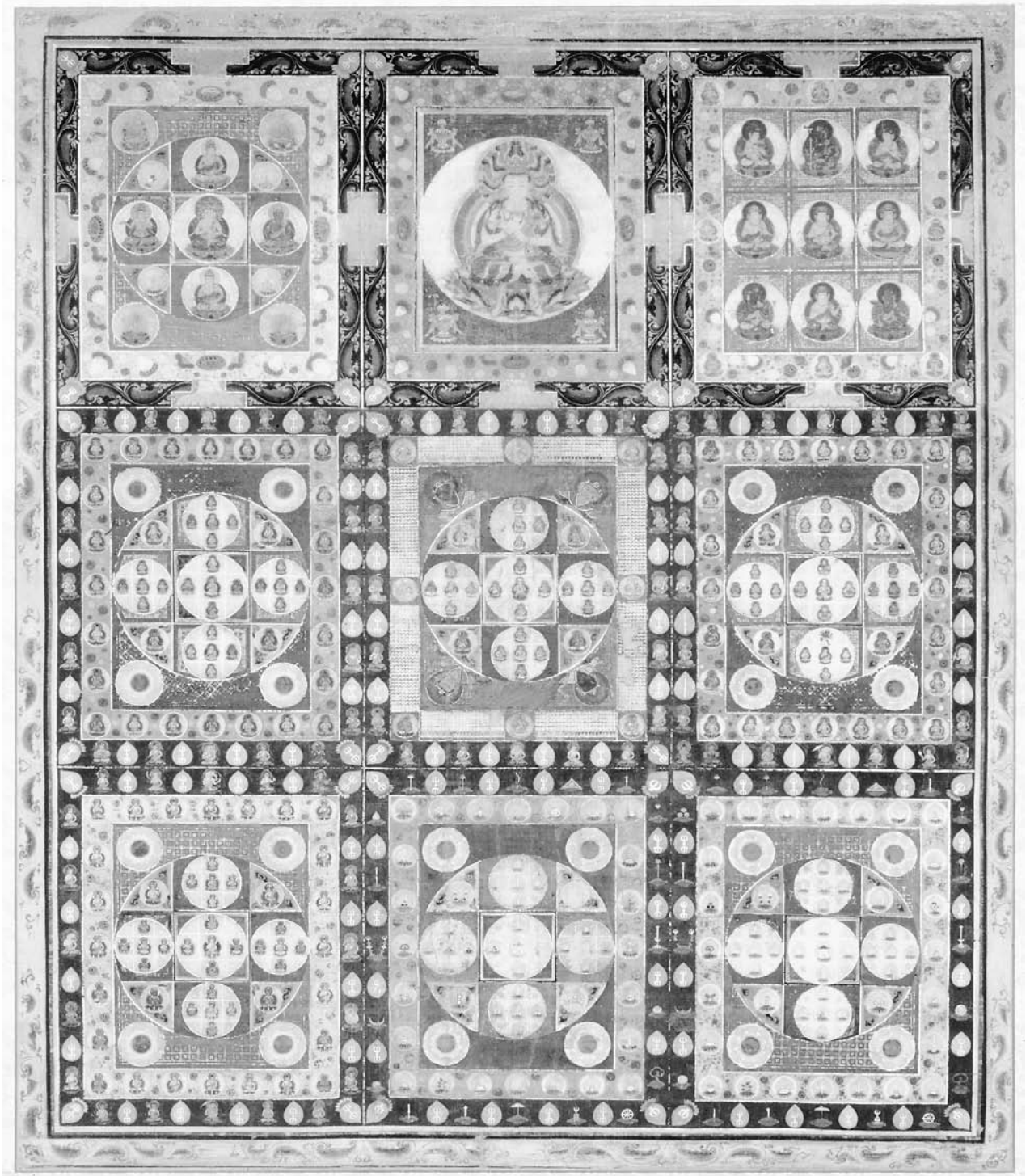
A Buddha surrounded by eight bodhisattvas forms the core of the Womb World Maṅḍala (Sanskrit, Garbhadhātu; Japanese, Taizōkai), whereas a ninefold arrangement is repeated in the structure of the Diamond World Maṅḍala (Sanskrit, Vajradhātu; Japanese, Kongōkai), examples of which are preserved since at least the eighth century. Found principally in Japan, these maṅḍalas are shown as a pair and are placed on the east and west walls of the inner precinct of a tem-



Maṅḍala of the Womb World. (Japanese hanging scroll, Kamakura period, thirteenth–fourteenth century.) The Brooklyn Museum of Art. Reproduced by permission.

ple. The Womb World (or Matrix) has 414 deities and symbolizes the possibility of buddhahood in the phenomenal world, while the Diamond World with 1,416 deities is a guide to the requisite spiritual practices.

Both the Womb World and the Diamond World maṅḍalas focus on Vairocana Buddha, and both are further subdivided into courts, each of which has its own primary and secondary deities and its own theme.



Maṅḍala of the Diamond World. (Japanese hanging scroll, Kamakura period, thirteenth–fourteenth century.) The Brooklyn Museum of Art. Reproduced by permission.

For example, in the Womb World Maṅḍala, Vairocana is seated in the center of an eightfold lotus containing four buddhas and four bodhisattvas. The maṅḍala unfolds from the center in twelve sections, each containing a central deity and attendant figures, symbolic of

aspects of the cosmos or the process of spiritual development. The three courts to the east, reading from the center, include six deities surrounding a central triangle containing the burning fire of wisdom; the historical Buddha, Śākyamuni, thought to be a man-

ifestation of Vairocana in the phenomenal world, with thirty-eight disciples; and at the outermost edge, Mañjuśrī, the Bodhisattva of Wisdom, with an entourage of twenty-three other figures.

Each maṅḍala is based on a different text: the Womb World on the *Mahāvairocana-sūtra* (*Great Vairocana Sūtra*) and the Diamond World on the *Vajraśekhara* (*Diamond World*). The former was translated from Sanskrit into Chinese by the Indian Śubhakarasiṃha (637–735) in the eighth century, while the latter is based on a translation by Amoghavajra (705–774) during the same period. Together with Vajrabodhi (669–741), these monks are revered as the founders of the MIJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL of Buddhism in China. Examples of both maṅḍalas are said to have been brought to Japan from China in the early ninth century by the famed monk KŪKAI (774–835). As is more often than not the case with maṅḍalas, not all examples of these two conform precisely to these texts.

South or Southeast Asian evidence for either maṅḍala, and particularly for their use as a pair, is rare. It has been suggested that some figures in cave 6 at Aurangabad, a sixth- or seventh-century site in western India, can be understood to symbolize the Diamond and Womb World maṅḍalas. A variant of the Diamond World Maṅḍala is thought to underlie the structure and imagery of the famous ninth-century BOROBUDUR in Java. In addition, two examples of three-dimensional maṅḍalas, created using small (three- to five-inch) sculptures, have been found in Indonesia: a well-known late tenth- to early eleventh-century group from Nganjuk, and a slightly earlier assemblage from Surucolo.

Two divergent maṅḍala traditions are preserved after the eleventh century. One is associated with Indo-Tibetan Buddhism, the other with Japanese practices. The Indo-Tibetan examples reflect the spread of the Anuttarayoga or Unexcelled Yoga Tantra tradition from India to Tibet; however, with the exception of a few stone stela, Indian prototypes are no longer extant.

A lotus flower, generally eight-petaled, fills the core of Indo-Tibetan maṅḍalas. The lotus is housed in a palacelike inner sanctuary with elaborate arched gateways at the four cardinal directions. The square palace is surrounded by an outer circle composed of rings of fire, *vajras* (ritual implements symbolic of the adamant properties of the diamond), and lotus petals. The small figures that inhabit the graveyards or charnel grounds, often placed between the inner palace and the

outer ring, are standard images in Tibetan maṅḍalas, and reflect early practices that led to the development of Anuttarayoga Tantra. The figures at the sides of the maṅḍala represent either teachers associated with its practices, or related deities.

Maṅḍalas are made as single works or in sets. A well-known series, based on the *Vajravali* (*Diamond Garland*) and commissioned by Ngor chen kun dga' bzang po (1382–1456), includes both single icons and paintings depicting four related maṅḍalas.

A seventeenth-century painting of the KĀLACAKRA Maṅḍala in the Museum of Fine Arts in Boston shows a large central maṅḍala surrounded by four smaller versions for related deities. The painting is based on the *Kālacakra Tantra* (*Wheel of Time Tantra*), a late text distinguished by its elaborate cosmology and the prophecy of an apocalyptic war ending in the triumph of Shambhala, a hidden Buddhist kingdom, and the enlightenment of the cosmos. The central palace has been divided into three structures, one symbolic of body, one mind, and one speech, the three primary components of the complicated Kālacakra system.

The twelve animals carrying circles filled with deities in the space between the middle and outer walls of the palace represent the days of the year according to the Kālacakra cycle. The tiny figures at the top of the painting are the kings of Shambhala, where the Kālacakra teachings were first taught and are preserved. The numerous small figures that provide the upper background for the five maṅḍalas represent lamas who have upheld the Kālacakra lineage. Those toward the bottom are various deities associated with the Kālacakra. Monks and lay patrons, involved in the creation of the work and possibly in its ritual use, are shown seated around an offering table at the lower left.

In addition to continuing early maṅḍala traditions, such as that of the eight bodhisattvas, Japanese Buddhism created several unique traditions, also known as maṅḍalas, that illustrate revered sites, such as the Kasuga shrine near Nara or Mount Kōya to the south of Osaka. Ascetics and others, some of whom were influenced by early forms of Esoteric Buddhism popular in Japan from the eighth through the twelfth centuries, frequently used such sites. Over time, the sharing of ideas and practices among these varied seekers and more settled monastic adherents led to the creation of a system known as HONJI SUJAKU or “true-nature” manifestation. According to this system, native Shintō gods are manifestations of imported Buddhist deities, and the two become interchangeable. Paintings

illustrating these complicated ideas include representations of famous scenic sites, with or without the Shintō shrines and Buddhist temples they house. Such paintings also include representations of both Shintō and Buddhist manifestations of the deities associated with these sites, as well as representations of the sacred animals or other emblems affiliated with the practices and beliefs of individual locations.

See also: **Stūpa**

### Bibliography

Brauen, Martin. *The Maṇḍala: A Sacred Circle in Tibetan Buddhism*, tr. Martin Willson. Boston: Shambhala, 1998.

Leidy, Denise Patry, and Thurman, Robert A. F. *Maṇḍala: The Architecture of Enlightenment*. New York: Asia Society and Tibet House, 1997.

ten Grotenhuis, Elizabeth. *Japanese Maṇḍalas: Representations of Sacred Geography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

DENISE PATRY LEIDY

---

## MANTRA

Mantras, or incantations, magic formulas, or spells, were originally used in Vedic religion to invoke the gods during sacrificial rituals. They were used as spells and magic charms in mainstream Indian and East Asian Mahāyāna Buddhism, in which the word *mantra* was more or less interchangeable with the word DHĀRAṆĪ. *Mantra* was translated into Chinese as *zhenyan* (“true word”). *Mantra* became so fundamental an aspect of tantric Buddhism, or VAJRAYĀNA, which rose in the seventh and eighth centuries, that it was initially called the “Mantrayāna.”

Chanted in tantric ritual and practice, mantras are generally short combinations of syllables that have no direct or easily translatable meaning. The chanted sound of the formula, not the meaning, is the important factor. Mantras are powerful language understood to be the literal words or sounds of the Buddha. The word “mantra” is often combined or interchanged with the word *hṛdaya* (“heart”), so that it means something like “quintessence.” A *hṛdaya-mantra* often begins with *om* and ends with *svāhā*, *hūṃ*, or *phat*. This use of mantra is essentially the same as, and is often translated as “seed syllable,” though that term is properly a translation of *bīja*. The best-known mantra

among Tibetan and Mongolian Buddhists is OM MANI PADME HŪṂ, an invocation of the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara, who is depicted holding a jewel and a lotus—the exact meaning of which has long been a matter of popular and scholarly debate.

See also: **Dhāraṇī**; **Language, Buddhist Philosophy of**; **Tantra**

### Bibliography

Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et Mandarins: le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Éditions Gallimard, 1996.

RICHARD D. MCBRIDE II

---

MAPPŌ. See **Decline of the Dharma**

---

## MĀRA

Māra, whose name literally means “death” or “maker of death,” is the embodiment of lust, greed, false views, delusion, and illusion. He is a virtually ubiquitous presence in Buddhist texts from the earliest accounts of the Buddha’s enlightenment on. Māra stands as an active antagonist of the Buddha and his followers, as well as a powerful metaphor. Paradigmatically, Māra attempts to stop the Buddha in his quest for enlightenment.

In one of the earliest accounts of Māra’s treachery, in the *Sutta Nipāta* (425–449), Māra approaches the about-to-be enlightened Buddha and attempts to convince him to abandon his efforts and to adopt the more conventional Brahmanical religious life, the life of sacrifice and good karma. The Buddha rejects this suggestion, and rebukes Māra and his minions. In later accounts of this episode found in the MAHĀVASTU (*Great Story*), LALITAVISTARA, *Nidāna-kathā* (*Story of Causation*), and the BUDDHACARITA (*Acts of the Buddha*), Māra sends his various armies, including his own daughters, to frighten and tempt the Buddha as he sits in meditation; all such efforts of course fail. Finally, Māra himself comes to the Buddha and calls into question his right to sit on the *bodhimaṇḍa*, the place of enlightenment, claiming that it is he, and not the Buddha, who is the rightful occupant of that position (due to his own past good karmic deeds). The Buddha then reaches out his hand and calls the earth goddess, Bhūdevī, to bear witness to his past good deeds; the earth quakes, the goddess appears, and Māra and his

armies flee. This episode, known as the *Māravijaya*, or “defeat of Māra,” became one of the most common modes of representing the Buddha in many parts of the Buddhist world, conveying as it does his defeat of the forces of temptation, lust, greed, avarice, torpor and sloth, and, ultimately, death itself. Māra also figures in the postenlightenment of the Buddha, when he deludes ĀNANDA at the moment when the Buddha’s disciple is about to entreat the Buddha to remain on earth, preventing Ānanda from requesting that the Buddha stay until the end of the eon to teach. Māra then reminds the Buddha that he had promised to depart once the dharma and SAṄGHA were established, and so the Buddha agrees that this will be his final life.

Māra becomes a ubiquitous presence in Buddhist texts and iconography, standing as he does as the embodiment of *trṣṇā*, the grasping that fundamentally leads to further rebirth and, thus, further suffering. In Southeast Asia, it is the saint UPAGUPTA who defeats Māra, binding him with his own snares and converting him to Buddhism. In the Pure Land text, the *Bhaiṣajyaguruvaīdūryaprabhārāja-sūtra* (*Sūtra of the Royal Lapis Healing Buddha*), the “healing Buddha” vows to free all beings caught by Māra’s “heretical entrapments” and instill in them the correct views.

See also: **Buddha, Life of the; Divinities; Evil**

### Bibliography

Boyd, James W. *Satan and Māra: Christian and Buddhist Symbols*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1975.

Ling, Trevor O. *Buddhism and the Mythology of Evil: A Study in Theravāda Buddhism*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1962.

JACOB N. KINNARD

---

**MARATHON MONKS.** See *Shugendō*

---

## MAR PA (MARPA)

Mar pa (Mar pa Chos kyī blo gros, 1002/1012–1097) was a renowned translator and lay Buddhist master. He is revered as the Tibetan founder of the BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU) sect of Tibetan Buddhism. According to many traditional Bka’ brgyud texts, Mar pa is the reincarnation of the Indian MAHĀSIDDHA, or great adept, Ḍombī Heruka (ca. ninth–tenth century B.C.E.). Born in

Tibet to wealthy landowning parents in the southern Tibetan region of Lho brag, Mar pa was a precocious child, characterized in his traditional biographies as having a volatile, though inwardly compassionate, personality. His parents addressed both qualities by sending the boy to study Sanskrit and Indian vernacular languages under the learned translator ’Brog mi Lotsāva Śākya ye shes (ca. 992/993–1043/1072) in western Tibet.

Because the resources for studying Buddhism in Tibet at the time were limited, Mar pa decided to seek instruction in India, a journey he would make three times over the course of his life. He first spent three years in Nepal, acclimating to the new environment and continuing his study of local languages. There he met two Nepalese teachers, Chitherpa and Painḍapa, who offered many religious instructions but also encouraged Mar pa to seek out the master who would become his chief guru, the great siddha NĀROPA (1016–1100).

Nāropa first submitted Mar pa to a series of arduous trials, finally judging this perspicacious Tibetan to be a fit disciple. He studied under Nāropa at the forest retreat of Pullahari, receiving initiations and teachings of several important tantric lineages. Among these instructions is a collection known in Tibetan as the Six Doctrines of Nāropa (Nā ro chos drug). This elaborate system of tantric ritual and meditative disciplines includes the yogic practices of: (1) inner heat (*gtum mo*); (2) the illusory body (*sgyu lus*); (3) dreams (*rmi lam*); (4) radiant light (*’od gsal*); (5) the intermediate state (*bar do*); and (6) transference of consciousness (*’pho ba*).

Mar pa’s second great master was the Indian siddha Maitrīpa (ca. 1007–1085), from whom he received instruction in the MAHĀMUDRĀ teachings and the tradition of *dohā*, or songs of spiritual realization. Although later disseminated in different forms among various Tibetan Buddhist sects, the Six Doctrines of Nāropa and *mahāmudrā* became central meditation systems for the Bka’ brgyud. Mar pa received other tantric transmissions from Indian masters, such as Jñānagarbha and Kukkurīpā, as well.

Mar pa then returned to Tibet, where he married several wives (the most well known is Bdag med ma, who figures prominently in the life story of the renowned yogin MI LA RAS PA [Milarepa; 1028/40–1111/23]), established a home, and began his career as a Buddhist teacher and translator who was at the same time a landowner and farmer. Mar pa had planned to

pass his dharma lineage on to his son Dar ma mdo sde (for whom Mi la ras pa's famous final tower was built), but the child died at a young age. Mar pa's accumulated instructions, which contributed to the formation of a new stream of Buddhist thought in Tibet known as new tantra (*rgyud gsar ma*), were later passed to several principal disciples including Mi la ras pa. At least twenty-four works translated from Sanskrit attributed to Mar pa are preserved in the Tibetan Buddhist canon.

See also: **Tantra**

### **Bibliography**

Lhalungpa, Lobsang P., trans. *The Life of Milarepa*. New York: Dutton, 1977. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1984.

Trungpa, Chögyam, and the Nalanda Translation Committee, trans. *The Life of Marpa the Translator*. Boston: Shambhala, 1986.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

---

## MARTIAL ARTS

Modern historians of East Asia have noted the seemingly incongruous presence of martial monks in Buddhist monasteries at various moments in Asian history. This unusual conjunction has appeared ironic to many in the West, given the prominent place the renunciation of violence has had in Buddhist teachings and monastic PRECEPTS. On the other hand, to many Westerners who have taken up the practice of the Asian martial arts, this conjunction has been seen not as contradictory, but as essential to the modern rhetoric of spirituality and the martial arts. Zen Buddhism, in particular, has played an important role in this approach to the martial arts. Underlying these contradictory understandings has been a Western tendency to idealize and romanticize both Buddhism and the martial arts, removing them from their historical and institutional contexts. Abetting such tendencies has been an uncritical use of categories that have emerged over the past two centuries in the study of religion both in Asia and the West, including the category of religion itself. To understand the relationship of the martial arts to Buddhism, then, it is necessary to know something of the history and nature of Buddhist institutions in Asia, and, also of the ways in which Western perceptions of Eastern religion and spirituality have contributed to contemporary understandings and, in many cases, distortions of Asian Buddhism.

One of the definitive moments in becoming a Buddhist, either as a monastic or a layperson, is the act of taking a set of vows, which differ in character and total number depending on whether one remains a householder or receives ORDINATION as a monastic. Regardless, all Buddhists take a vow to abstain from harming living beings. One would be wrong, however, to regard these vows in general and nonviolence in particular as ends in themselves or as ethical absolutes. Rather, they seem to have been regarded as practical means to end suffering both for other living beings and for oneself. This fact has allowed for some flexibility in interpretation, as well as a degree of antinomianism. Faced with the dilemma of a vow of nonviolence and of allowing, for example, a mass murderer to continue wreaking havoc in the world—and at the same time adding to the sum of his own bad KARMA (ACTION) and implied future suffering—the compassionate act may be assassination, thus reducing the sum total of accumulated suffering. Such arguments have historically been offered by certain Buddhists to legitimate violence, in the assassination of a murderous Tibetan king in one instance. Though this example is somewhat extreme, in coming to terms with Buddhist ethics and practice, it suggests the importance of the historical and social contexts of Buddhist institutions.

### **Monasteries and warrior monks**

Buddhist monasteries in Central Asia and the Far East, rather than existing as sites purely of otherworldly concerns, originated as institutions intimately embroiled in the affairs of society. Central Asian Buddhists introduced MONASTICISM to China sometime around the second or third centuries C.E. Monks accompanied Central Asian traders into China primarily to serve the ritual needs of their merchant patrons. At about the same time and for the next several hundred years, various Central Asian armies invaded north China, setting up their own generally short-lived dynasties. These kingdoms, like the merchants, employed the ritual services of Buddhist monks, now including many ethnic Chinese converts. Under such conditions, monastic institutions often found themselves caught in the ebb and flow of the political fortunes of their various sponsors. In addition, some monasteries, through their relationship with merchants and royalty, became wealthy in land and precious goods, making them frequent prey to marauding bands of warriors and bandits.

In the *Xu gaoseng zhuan* (645, *Continued Lives of Eminent Monks*), one of the earliest records of the lives of Buddhist monks in China, there are a number of ac-



Child monks perform kung fu (gongfu) exercises at Lingyanshan Monastery, Puli, Taiwan. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

counts in which the monks' martial abilities are noted, sometimes in defending their own monasteries, sometimes in serving the interests of their royal patrons in other than ritual practices. Some early sources also suggest that monasteries sometimes admitted applicants more for their martial skills than for their devotion to meditation or a life of renunciation. It seems to have been common at this time for warriors who were demobilized at the end of a war or marked for vengeance among the defeated to seek cover and anonymity in the monastic system. Martial trained monks would have been of value in times of instability, and in such cases the maintenance of monastic vows would often have been a lesser priority. According to a fifth-century history of the Wei dynasty (*Wei shu*), several monasteries in the capital of Chang'an came under scrutiny in 438 for having developed large arsenals of weapons and posing a threat to public order.

As monasteries in China became more sinicized, they evolved bureaucratic modes of organization that closely paralleled those of Chinese civil administration. Hierarchical in structure, they were composed of var-

ious departments of monks with designated functions, such as lecturers, ritualists, and meditators. It is not surprising then that we find monks whose primary functions were to manage the fields and the wealth of their monastic establishments. Among their duties would be the protection of that wealth, and implicit in this was an incentive perhaps to cultivate martial skills. In fact, there is little evidence to suggest that more than a few monasteries developed such defense forces. However, one monastery that did respond to these incentives was the Shaolin Monastery, located at the foot of Mount Song, considered the central peak of China's five sacred mountains (*wu yue*), in Henan province. It is this monastery that has informed most later histories associating Chinese Buddhism with martial arts. According to the biography of the monastery's fifth-century founder, Fotuo, two of his first disciples were selected based not on their aptitude for traditional Buddhist cultivation practices, but for their acrobatic talents. While not explicitly martial, the ability of one of these disciples to balance precariously on a narrow well ledge while playing a sort of hacky-sack game with



his feet bears close similarity to some of the martial exercises emphasizing balance exhibited in Shaolin martial forms.

By the seventh century the Shaolin Monastery had developed the cudgel as its weapon of choice. The heavy cudgel, while capable of great devastation, was neither metal nor sharp, and thereby was rhetorically legitimated as a nonweapon appropriate to Buddhist monks. According to popular histories, in 621 the monastery offered its cudgel-wielding monks, thirteen in all, to the service and ultimate victory of Li Shimin (d. 649), who became the first emperor of the Tang dynasty (618–907). Whether or not this tale is true, the monastery seems to have enjoyed imperial favor during the Tang dynasty, having been granted extensive land and wealth. Such increased holdings would have provided even greater incentive to maintain a martial presence in the monastery. Over the centuries, Shaolin monks developed other styles of combat, both armed and unarmed. By the fifteenth century, Shaolin had become synonymous in China with martial arts and has remained so to the present day.

The existence of monastic defense forces can also be found in Tibet and in medieval Japan, though in very different political and social circumstances and with different consequences. Some of the more important Japanese shrine-temple complexes and Buddhist sects, which were thoroughly integrated into the social and political ethos of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, built legions of monks trained in military skills and maintained militias not only to protect their existing wealth in land and power but also in some cases to expand it. The *MONASTIC MILITIAS* of Mount Hiei developed as a formidable force during this period, not only defending their own domains but also attacking the domains of neighboring monasteries and even attempting to intimidate the emperor in his Kyoto palace. Their existence, however, was abruptly ended in 1571 when Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582) surrounded Mount Hiei with his soldiers and slaughtered all the people associated with the monastery, including every man, woman, and child living on the mountain. He subsequently destroyed another Buddhist force, the legions of the Exclusive (Ikkō) Pure Land Buddhist sect, which had used its power to dominate entire provinces.

What emerges from this brief overview of early Buddhist history are two important observations about the relationship of Buddhist monasticism and the martial arts. First, the phenomenon of monastic warriors and militias, while a historical fact, was nonetheless rela-

tively isolated in time and place. Second, there is no compelling evidence in the texts dating from the early periods to indicate that martial training was carried out in the context of traditional Buddhist ritual or cultivation practices such as meditation, sūtra explication, or chanting. Rather, martial training in Chinese, Japanese, and Tibetan monasteries appears to have been regarded not as a practice leading to awakening or liberation, but as an expedient deemed necessary in the circumstances in which many medieval Buddhist institutions found themselves.

### Zen Buddhism and martial arts

Although there is little or no Buddhist doctrinal rationale for the activities of the monastic militias of the early period, the modern practice of Asian martial arts, particularly those that developed in Japan, are frequently characterized in terms that suggest modes of spiritual practice directly informed by the Buddhism of the *CHAN SCHOOL* (Japanese, Zen). Most contemporary martial arts have thus taken on a quasi-religious character. The student is encouraged to strive to attain a state of pure consciousness while in the midst of combat. In a psychological state of equanimity and oneness with the adversary, the student is assured that his or her actions will flow with effortless spontaneity. Initiations, practices, and successful progress are generally marked by formal rituals, including bowing, processions, and the award of certificates or insignia. These can be seen as stripped-down secularized versions of Asian religious rituals and practice. The distinction between the achievement of a state of awakening, understood as the ultimate goal of Buddhist practice, and the effortless defeat of an adversary in battle coalesce. The monk becomes warrior; the warrior becomes monk. Not surprisingly, many popular texts on martial arts trace their lineage to the Shaolin Monastery in China.

By the eighth century, Shaolin Monastery had become identified with the fifth-century semilegendary figure of *BODHIDHARMA*, popularly regarded as the person who introduced Chan Buddhism to China. According to legend, Bodhidharma spent nine years meditating in a cave above Shaolin Monastery. However, the earliest text to mention Bodhidharma, the sixth-century *Loyang qielan ji* (*Record of Monasteries in Loyang*), describes him not as a wall-gazing meditation master, but as a wonder-working thaumaturge from the Western (barbarian) Lands. The thaumaturgic tradition in China contains accounts of such shamanlike characters performing prodigious feats of physical

agility, such as leaping great distances. Though there is no suggestion that Bodhidharma performed martial feats, including him in this tradition makes clear that his skills placed him outside the exegetical or ritual spheres of the monastery and more firmly within a familiar Chinese tradition of religious eccentrics. Such an image was readily amenable to later martial traditions, particularly in Japan. The few works attributed to Bodhidharma give no indication of a concern with martial practices. Furthermore, as argued above, the Shaolin martial arts traditions bore only incidental relation to Chan Buddhist teachings.

While not detracting from the martial skill that many achieve in these arts, there remains the question of whether these achievements and the views of the modes and objectives of Zen practice that inform them accurately reflect Buddhist monastic practices in Japan or China now or in the past. In general, they do not. At best they represent successful adaptations of certain Buddhist meditative techniques to martial practices, and at worst they impart an aura of mystification that has less to do with Buddhism than with commercialization, nationalism, or self-promotion.

The rise of Japanese martial arts as they are known today only began to take shape in the closing decades of the nineteenth century following the collapse of the Tokugawa shogunate. The year 1868 marked the beginning of a thoroughgoing cultural revolution in Japan when the newly installed Meiji government sought to erase hundreds of years of local and state culture organized around a pervasive network of Buddhist temples and monks, and to replace this cultural substrate with the “rational” organs of the modern state. Temples were burned, images destroyed, and monks returned to lay status under the guise of destroying feudal superstition. State Shintō was declared the embodiment of the true spirit of the Japanese people and was, by definition, nonreligious, having been purified of the superstitious elements that had seeped into it due to the long presence of Buddhism in Japan. However, because “the spirit of the Japanese people” was somewhat ambiguous in meaning, an issue of great concern to the new national leadership was how to cultivate that spirit without religious institutions.

At this point the Zen Buddhists and particularly their secularized apologists were able to reenter the public discourse. Reinventing themselves as the embodiment of a distinctly Japanese form of rational modernity and the custodians of a spiritual practice free of religious superstition, they were able to inject

such notions as no-mind (*mushin*), here generally understood as the sublimation of the self to the people (the state), into the physical training curriculums of Japan’s schools. Moving into the twentieth century, these physical training curriculums took on an increasingly martial aspect and were highly amenable to the Japanese nationalism that was then emerging. Ironically, many of the notions put forward by these Zen advocates were in fact drawn more from Chinese Daoist and Confucian sources than they were from Buddhist traditions, specifically certain breathing practices and notions of self-sacrifice within an encompassing social hierarchy. Zen monks had been the primary conduits of such ideas into Japan as early as the twelfth century. Around the beginning of the twentieth century the suffix *dō*, from the Chinese *dao* (way), replaced many of the more mundane categorical Japanese terms for the martial arts. This revised vocabulary, including the terms *judō* (way of gentleness), *kendō* (way of the sword), and *budō* (martial way), was clearly intended to impart a spiritual significance not present in words denoting technique or art (*-jutsu*).

D. T. SUZUKI (1870–1966), writing in English, emerged in the mid-twentieth century as the person most responsible for introducing these interpretations of Zen and its relation to the martial arts, among other themes, to the English-speaking world. Significantly, he was not a Zen priest but a scholar trained in the “science of religion” during an eleven-year stay in the United States under the tutelage of Paul Carus (1852–1919). During these years, Suzuki was exposed to the writings of William James on pure experience and Rudolph Otto on the nature of religion, and the influence of their ideas can be seen in his psychological interpretations of Zen Buddhism and the martial arts. Little wonder, then, that Suzuki’s writings on Zen have struck many Westerners as exotic, and at the same time somehow familiar, drawing as they do on contemporary Western notions of religion and psychology. It should not be overlooked, however, that Suzuki’s writings before World War II often revealed a distinctly nationalist slant. The Zen mind of pure experience was frequently represented as a unique capacity of the Japanese spirit, ultimately inaccessible to non-Japanese. Though the contradictory notion of a universal potential to experience the Zen mind can be found throughout his writings, this theme became pronounced only in his postwar writings. Suzuki did more to shape popular conceptions of Zen in the twentieth century than anyone else. However, much of his representation of Buddhism constitutes what must be

considered an invented tradition, and it is this tradition that has permeated much of the Western understanding of the relationship between Buddhism and the martial arts.

The contemporary practice of the martial arts has clearly adapted some ideas and practices from the rich Buddhist heritage of Asia. But this does not make the objectives or the rationale of the martial arts Buddhist. In fact, much more of both the practice and rationale of contemporary martial arts are rooted in Chinese Daoism and Confucianism, as well as in modern notions of secular religion, sport, performance, and competition.

*See also:* Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

### Bibliography

- Bodiford, William M. "Religion and Spiritual Development: Japan." In *Martial Arts of the World: An Encyclopedia*, Vol. 2, ed. Thomas A. Green. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO, 2001.
- Draeger, Donn F., and Smith, Robert W. *Asian Fighting Arts*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1969.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Japan's Ignored Cultural Revolution: The Separation of Shintō and Buddhist Divinities in Meiji (*Shim-butsu Bunri*) and a Case Study (*Tōnomine*)." *History of Religions* 23, no. 3 (1984): 240–265.
- Inoue, Shun. "Budō: Invented Tradition in the Martial Arts." In *The Culture of Japan as Seen through Its Leisure*, ed. Sepp Linhart and Sabine Frühstück. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1998.
- Shahar, Meir. "Ming-Period Evidence of Shaolin Martial Procedure." *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* (December 2001): 359–413.
- Sharf, Robert H. "The Zen of Nationalism" (1993). In *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.
- Suzuki, D. T. *Zen and Japanese Culture* (revised edition of *Zen Buddhism and Its Influence on Japanese Culture*, 1938). Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1959.

WILLIAM POWELL

## MĀTRĀCEṬA

Mātr̥ceṭa (second century C.E.) was a Sanskrit poet. A Śaivite convert to Buddhism, he is the author of: (1) *Varṇārhavarṇastotra* (*Hymn in Praise of the Praise-worthy*), a poem in 386 stanzas (hence the subtitle

*Catuṣṣataka*) in praise of the Buddha, which survives in Sanskrit (incomplete) and Tibetan; (2) *Prasāda-pratibhodbhava* (*Inspired by Faith*), a poem in 153 stanzas (hence the subtitle *Śatapañcāsatka*) also in praise of the Buddha, which survives in Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese; and (3) *Mahārājakanīṣkalekha* (*Letter to the Great King Kaniṣka*), a poem in 85 stanzas, surviving only in Tibetan translation, in which the aged Mātr̥ceṭa offers advice to the young Kaniṣka. A number of other works in the Tibetan Tanjur are attributed to Mātr̥ceṭa, but only a few further fragments remain of the original Sanskrit. Mātr̥ceṭa's poetry is notable for its terse, clear style, which heightens the intensity of his thought and feeling.

*See also:* Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Bailey, D. R. Shackleton, ed. and trans. *The Śatapañcāsatka of Mātr̥ceṭa*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1951.
- Hahn, Michael, ed. and trans. *Invitation to Enlightenment: Letter to the Great King Kaniṣka and Letter to a Disciple by Candragomin*. Berkeley, CA: Dharma, 1999.
- Hartmann, Jens-Uwe, ed. and trans. *Das Varṇārhavarṇastotra des Mātr̥ceṭa*. Göttingen, Germany: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1987.

PETER KHOROCHÉ

## MEDICINE

Medicine has always been part of Buddhism. The central Buddhist teaching of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS is often described in terms of a medical paradigm by which suffering is the disease, desire its cause, cessation of desire its cure, and the Eightfold Path the method of its treatment. Although there is no evidence that medicine lay behind the formulation of the four noble truths, examples of the Buddha's role as healer, medical similes, and references to medical terminology occur throughout Buddhist literature.

Evidence suggests that the orthodox Hindu medical tradition of Āyurveda (the knowledge of longevity) owed its origins to a certain extent to the heterodox religions, which included Buddhism. Certain wandering ascetics collected useful medical information for the purpose of self-healing. Gradually, part of this medical knowledge was brought together and, eventually, became the beginning section of the chapter of

medicines (*Bhesajjakhandha*) of the Buddhist monastic code (*Vinayapīṭaka*; *Basket of Discipline*) of the Pāli canon. Once established in the earliest canon, medicine became integral to Buddhist doctrine.

The monastic code of the Pāli canon provides two forms of medical information: *materia medica* and stories of treatments based on cases of diseases. The pharmacopeia, known as “the medicines requisite in sickness,” consisted of the five basic medicinal substances permitted all monks—clarified butter, fresh butter, oil, honey, and molasses—as well as various fats, roots, extracts, leaves, fruits, gums, and salts. Although monks and nuns are normally forbidden to eat after noon, in cases of illness, certain foods were deemed medicines and could, therefore, be consumed at any time of the day.

The stories of medical treatments found in the monastic code are among the earliest examples of medical practice found anywhere in the world and illustrate the Buddha’s rational and utilitarian approach to healing. Buddhists focused on concrete therapies rather than the theory of disease and medicine. The process was paradigmatic: A certain monk, suffering from a particular illness, came to the Buddha who, after careful consideration, sanctioned a treatment. This practical method of healing became the model for later medical manuals. These are among the first examples of the Buddha’s role as healer. He provided cures for a variety of illnesses, ranging from demonic possession to sores on the feet, which were typically the kinds of maladies from which wandering ascetics might have suffered. Both the diseases and their cures bear a close affinity to their counterparts in the Sanskrit medical treatises.

The story of the semimythical physician Jīvaka Kōmārabhacca, found in another part of the Pāli VINAYA, discloses a similar paradigm of utilitarian medicine. Variations of this popular tale occur in Tibetan and Chinese Buddhist canonical literature. Jīvaka’s extraordinary skill made him the physician to kings and to the Buddha.

Medicine grew along with Buddhism in India. Under the reign of King AŚOKA in the mid-third century B.C.E., Buddhism became a virtual state religion, and by royal proclamation basic medical care was provided to both humans and animals throughout the kingdom. By the seventh century C.E., medicine was part of the educational curriculum at major monastic centers in India. When Buddhism spread from India, medicine went with it and developed under indigenous influences.

In the early centuries C.E., Sri Lanka received the original monastic medical doctrines. New Buddhist medical treatises were composed, and certain monasteries maintained a type of clinic with medicinal baths. In the THERAVĀDA countries of Southeast Asia, traditional medicine remains closely connected to Buddhism.

In Central Asia, Buddhism was the vehicle for the transmission of Indian medicine to other parts of Asia. The original rational paradigm was the basis for new medical texts and manuals, which took the form of collections of formulas, each effective against several ailments. Originally composed in Sanskrit, they were translated into different Central Asian languages, and from those into Tibetan. Some manuals were even written on animal skins, which allowed doctors to carry them with ease and consult them when necessary. Certain Sanskrit medical treatises, translated into Tibetan, were incorporated into the Tibetan Buddhist canon. Indian medicine combined with Chinese, Persian, and indigenous Tibetan medical practices to yield Tibetan medicine. In China, where the cults of the healing buddhas and BODHISATTVAS found popularity, Buddhist medical doctrines were integrated with indigenous Chinese medicine. Similar trends were followed in Korea and Japan.

Early Buddhism’s incorporation of medicine into its religious doctrine was unique and contributed to the religion’s development. The practical care and medical attention that was given to all who required it helped provide the support and popularity necessary to sustain a religious movement through its various transformations in Asia.

### **Bibliography**

- Birnbaum, Raoul. *The Healing Buddha*. Boulder, CO: Shambhala, 1979.
- Chattopadhyaya, Debiprasad. *Science and Society in Ancient India*. Calcutta: Research India Publications, 1977.
- Filliozat, Jean. “La Médecine indienne et l’expansion bouddhique en Extrême Orient.” *Journal Asiatique* 224 (1934): 301–307.
- Liyanaratne, Jinadasa. *Buddhism and Traditional Medicine in Sri Lanka*. Kelaniya, Sri Lanka: University of Kelaniya, 1999.
- Mitra, Jyotir. *A Critical Appraisal of Āyurvedic Material in Buddhist Literature*. Varanasi, India: Jyotirlok Prakashan, 1985.
- Rechung Rinpoche Jampel Kunzang, trans. and ed. *Tibetan Medicine*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1973.
- Tatz, Mark, trans. *Buddhism and Healing: Demièvre’s Article “Byō” from Hōbōgirin*. Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1985.

- Zysk, Kenneth G. "Buddhist Healing and Āyurveda: Some General Observations." In *Studies in Orientology: Essays in Memory of Prof. A. L. Basham*, ed. S. K. Maity, Upendra Thakur, and A. K. Narain. Agra, India: Y. K. Publishers, 1988.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. "Indian Ascetic Traditions and the Origins of Āyurvedic Medicine." *Journal of the European Āyurvedic Society* 1 (1990): 119–124.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. "New Approaches to the Study of Early Buddhist Medicine: Use of Technical Brāhmaṇic Sources in Sanskrit for the Interpretation of Pāli Medical Texts." *Pacific World*, New Series, no. 11 (1995): 143–154.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. *Medicine in the Veda*, Vol. 1: *Indian Medical Tradition*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1996.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. "Mythology and the Brāhmaṇization of Indian Medicine: Transforming Heterodoxy into Orthodoxy." In *Categorisation and Interpretation: Indological and Comparative Studies from an International Indological Meeting at the Department of Comparative Philology, Göteborg University*, ed. Folke Josephson. Göteborg, Sweden: Meijerbergs Arkiv för Svensk Ordforskning 24, Göteborg University, 1999.
- Zysk, Kenneth G. *Asceticism and Healing in Ancient India: Medicine in the Buddhist Monastery*, Vol. 2: *Indian Medical Tradition*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 2000.

KENNETH G. ZYSK

## MEDITATION

In common usage, the word *meditation* approaches the meanings of the Indian Buddhist term *DHYĀNA* (TRANCE STATE): a shift in awareness typically carried out intentionally, in silence, and while holding the body in a static position (most characteristically sitting with legs crossed). Various practices of *dhyāna* are associated with notions of sainthood, wisdom, serenity, and extraordinary mental powers, such as the *ABHIJÑĀ* (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES). Additionally, the term suggests mental and bodily discipline, and is associated with systematic methods of self-cultivation, and with monastic or eremitical lifestyles.

Generally, Buddhist theories of meditation propose that the core of these practices consists in achieving a state of deep calm and concentration, called *samādhi*, which in turn can give rise to, or serve as the foundation for, a clear and accurate view (*vipaśyanā*) that discerns the real from the unreal. Furthermore, perfect calm and concentration can give rise as well to extraordinary visions and marvelous powers.

Wondrous powers arise when the mind is "concentrated, pure, translucent, spotless, free of trouble and

confusion, supple." For instance, "from [one's] own body arises another body that has the constituents and shape of a material body but is made of mind. [And one] applies and directs this mind to the acquisition of wondrous powers. . . . Although [this person is] one, he becomes many, or having become many becomes one again; he becomes invisible, and then visible again" (*Dīghanikāya* 1, 77–78).

And, the perfect calm of a concentrated mind leads to extraordinary levels of knowing—especially an insight into reality that liberates the meditator from the bonds of *DUḤKHA* (SUFFERING). "He applies and directs this mind to that insight that comes from knowledge. He discerns clearly: 'my body is made of matter, . . . produced by a father and a mother, and continually renewed by boiled rice and juicy foods, . . . it is subject to decay, wear, dissolution, and disintegration. This consciousness of mine too depends on that body, is bound up in that body'" (*Dīghanikāya* 1, 76). With this, the meditator knows the reality of the *FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS*: This is suffering; this is the origin of suffering; this is the cessation of suffering; and this is the path leading to the cessation of suffering (*Dīghanikāya* 1, 83).

The literate elites generally regard as more estimable this second fruit of meditation: insight into the nature of reality and liberation from the bonds of suffering and *REBIRTH*. Nonetheless, meditation remains a practice for embodied beings, and is also valued for its putative transformative power on the world of embodiment.

### The body

Insofar as the meditator assumes bodily postures that are considered to be those of the Buddha himself, in particular sitting cross-legged in the traditional lotus posture, the act of meditation is, in a manner of speaking, the actualization of the goal of meditation: to become like the Buddha. One is advised to "sit on a soft, comfortable seat," and to assume "the cross-legged posture," appropriately called "the posture of the Buddha *Vairocana*," or the half-lotus posture. Then, other aspects of body and mind need to conform to the ideal icon of a Buddha: (1) eyes neither open nor closed, and aimed at the tip of the nose; (2) body erect, without slouching or becoming too stiff; (3) mindfulness turned inward; (4) shoulders level; (5) head [erect] without bending [the neck] forward, backward, [or wavering] to either side, the nose in line with the navel; (6) teeth and lips [only] lightly closed, the tongue resting on the gums of the upper teeth; (7) breath in-

audible, neither heavy nor too rapid, breathing in and out slowly and effortlessly (Kamalaśīla, *First Bhāvanākrama*). These instructions, written in the eighth century C.E. for a Tibetan audience, would not differ substantially from the instructions given to beginners in other Buddhist traditions.

Other postures may acquire a similar significance, whether they are explicitly linked to the technique of meditation or not. Thus, walking meditation reflects the gait and demeanor of the awakened, and monks are sometimes asked to sleep in the recumbent position of the Buddha in NIRVĀṆA, while they remain mindful of DEATH and liberation.

Some traditions expressed the connection between body and meditation more concretely by locating certain religious experiences or stages of meditation in different parts of the body. Such conceptions were central to the so-called Tantric tradition, especially in India, although the idea also has East Asian manifestations. In this meditation theory, several “spiritual nerve centers” (cakras) map out the interface between body and meditative experience. As many as eight and as few as five cakras are located along the spinal column, on what traditional anatomy regarded as two veins or pathways for spiritual energy. In the process of meditation this energy (conceived sometimes as a kind of fluid) was forced up or down these veins, concentrating alternatively in each one of the cakras: from the lowest in the area of the genitals or the sphincter, through the area of the solar plexus, the heart, the larynx, the eyes, and the crown of the head. Generally, the concentration of energy on the top cakra was regarded as the culmination of the meditation process, although each cakra had a distinct spiritual value.

A less technical location of meditation in the body occurs in the practice of mindfulness meditation, where the main exercise consists in cultivating a clear awareness of one’s body, its breathing, its movements, its functions and feelings. In the Chan tradition, likewise, there is a common rhetoric of the body not only in an emphasis on proper posture, but also in the notion that nonconceptual thought is located in the belly (Japanese, *hara*), not in the head.

### The body as object of meditation

The human body itself can become the object of meditation. Classical Indian texts describe various ways to think about or mentally analyze the body into its parts and processes. Some advise the meditator to sit next to a corpse and reflect on the meditator’s own mor-

tality, on the fragility and corruption of the body, and on the impossibility of discovering a permanent self in one’s own material frame. This meditation is known as “cultivating the impure” (*aśubhabhāvanā*) because a greater part of the practice consists in understanding that the living body shares the foul nature of the rotting corpse. The practice continues in isolated pockets in THERAVĀDA countries, where monks now may have to visit a public hospital and sit in the morgue with the bodies of the unidentified and the indigent. The more common practice is to keep a skeleton or a skull in the monastery as a prop to aid in what may be termed “a reflection on one’s self,” vicariously using someone else’s body to imagine one’s own as the object of meditation.

In Tibet this tradition resonated with a number of local practices. In areas where the dead are disposed by exposure, a traditional meditation on the corpse was possible and occasionally practiced. But more characteristic of Tibetan Buddhism is the practice of *gcod* (*chöd*), a complex sequence of both performative and meditative actions meant to provoke various experiences of bodily dissolution. The meditator, instructed by an experienced master who knows the proper invocations and protective prayers, imagines himself being devoured by demons in a variety of settings called “feasts.” In a “red feast,” for instance, the body is visualized as being dismembered and cut up into bloody fragments, which are then offered to flesh-eating demons. A “white feast” transforms each part of the body into an idealized, pure part of a universe that will delight the gods. The new sanctified body becomes ambrosia and feeds benevolent deities.

Transforming the body into a spiritual body by ritual or meditation is a central notion in the TANTRAS. For instance, the ritual use of symbolic hand gestures, called MUDRĀ, sacred “seals,” serve as a unifying principle for the transformation of the person through artistic representation, ritual performance, and meditation. Although many of these are even today common Indian hand gestures, they are regarded as the gestures of the Buddha himself, their association with the Buddha being confirmed by their appearance in Buddhist icons, and by the attribution of “secret” or mystical meanings the gestures.

### Ritual acts, ritual frames

The theme of embodiment can also be used as a heuristic in understanding the connection of meditation to RITUAL. Most meditation practices occur within some sort of ritual or symbolic frame, and follow very



A monk meditates at a small stone altar on the grounds of the ruins at Sarnath, India. © Chris Lisle/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

specific instructions. In most cases meditation sessions are planned, prepared, and adorned, and thus tagged, in predictable fashion, as “proper meditation,” or “meditation like that of the Buddha.” Meditation sessions are usually seen as an integral part, if not the culmination, of a religious life that includes moral preparation and doctrinal definitions of what one should expect. Apart from the expectations of doctrine, ethical values, and cultural habits, Buddhist meditations are also usually announced and framed by ritual activities.

A long tradition of preliminaries associated with meditation rituals survives in various forms in East Asian and Tibetan practice. Custom, as well as ritual manuals, helped consecrate ritual practices as diverse as cleaning and adorning the place of meditation, setting up an altar or image, offering flowers and perfumed water, and framing the period of meditation with ancillary rituals, such as the sevenfold act of worship or the invocation of protective deities. In fact, meditation and ritual often form a web of activities that includes not only ostensible silent meditations and publicly performed ceremonies, but also activities such

as chanting, recitation, and circumambulation that hold an ambiguous status between ritual and meditation, mechanical reading and deep reflection.

Special meditations are also sometimes regarded as preliminary or preparatory exercises. For instance, the Tibetan tradition often recommends the practice of the *sngon’gro* (*ngöndro*, preliminaries), which are divided into two types. The first is that of the four “outer preliminaries,” which often serve as a standard or common meditation for the nonspecialist. This set of four consists of meditations of the “recollection” type, with reflection on the following four topics: the value of human rebirth, impermanence, the vicissitudes of KARMA (ACTION), and the suffering of living beings. The second type is formed by the five “inner preliminaries,” which are construed as purificatory activities, each neutralizing or counteracting the effects of one of the major passions. Thus, pride is countered by taking refuge and performing ten thousand prostrations, jealousy by cultivating the aspiration to awaken for the sake of all living beings (the BODHICITTA), hatred by reciting the hundred-syllable mantra of Vajrasattva, craving by a MAṄḌALA offering, and delusion by visu-

alizing one's teacher as identical with one's protective deity (a practice called *guru-yoga*).

### Mental culture

The above reflections are not meant to minimize the significance of meditation as a technology of self-cultivation meant to affect mental states and traits, as well as the content of mind. India scholastics canonized an early schema (perhaps pre-Buddhistic) that saw meditation as combining two kinds of mental exercise. One exercise, *dhyāna* proper, involved techniques for the cultivation of calm (*śamatha*) and concentration (*samādhi*), and was the main ground for extraordinary powers, yet, by itself, it could not lead to liberation. The other, the exercise of the cognitive faculty (*jñāna*) in an act of accurate perception (*darśana*), involved the practice of calm, clear-minded observation (*vipaśyanā*) and the cultivation of discernment (*prajñā*).

Most Buddhist meditation theories consider both aspects of meditation necessary in the pursuit of liberation, but argue that correct insight is the uniquely Buddhist component in this joint practice. Nonetheless, techniques of calm and techniques of discernment often overlap. The ABHIDHARMA, for instance, tended to group together certain techniques and objects of meditation that were seen as primarily means toward the development of concentration, but could be used as props for discernment. Many of these lists are in fact mixed groupings of objects, styles, and states of meditation. One such inventory, explained by BUDDHAGHOSA in his *Visuddhimagga* (*Path of Purity*), lists forty "fields" of cultivation of meditation (each is a *kammaṭṭhāna*, working ground). The list includes heterogeneous categories, such as a hierarchy of meditative states (the four *dhyānas*), object-states (e.g., the boundless states or *brahmavihāra*), general objects (e.g., material or corporeal objects), and particular object-tools of meditation (that is, objects designed specially as aids to meditation).

Buddhaghosa's summary is thus a heterogeneous list describing various technical dimensions of meditation. For instance, among the "object-tools" of meditation are the all-inclusive or total objects, usually identified by their Pāli name *kaṣiṇa*. This device is a simple visual object that can become the single, neutral object of attention. For instance, a red *kaṣiṇa* is a circle of red sand or clay that is spread out on the ground before the meditator, who then focuses on it until he is able to displace all thoughts from the mind except the image of the red circle. The meditator continues the practice until he is able to keep in his mind

the red circle even when he is away from the actual external *kaṣiṇa*. The outcome is regarded as a state of perfect calm and concentration that can serve as a foundation for special psychic powers or as a preliminary to insight meditation.

**The mind: practices of recollection.** Like meditation techniques and objects, meditative states cannot be easily classified as objects or states, processes or supports for sustained attention, nor can they be easily distinguished into states of serenity, processes of observation, or moments of insight. For example, the practice of MINDFULNESS (*smṛti*) can be used emblematically for concepts that encompass concentrated mental calm, as well as insightful observation, and that likewise straddle the distinction between object, process, and goal.

Broadly understood, mindful recollection includes a spectrum of mental states and exercises that the tradition conceives as "memory" or "bringing to mind" (the literal meaning of *smṛti*) and that overlap with practices of watchful recollection (*anusmṛti*). As a superordinate term *smṛti* refers broadly to three related practices: (1) vigilance with regard to one's own demeanor and behavior, (2) bringing to mind (recalling) and keeping in the mind (retaining) a prescribed object of meditation, and (3) constantly directing one's attention toward, and keeping in awareness, a prescribed object, especially the processes of one's body and mind.

The first usage, watching one's own behavior, arguably fits better in a discussion of the rules of monastic conduct and consists primarily of an effort to remain constantly aware of one's own demeanor, bodily posture, tone of voice, gaze, and so on, with a view to keeping mind and body (thoughts and senses) calm and restrained. This dimension of practice is totally ignored in Western accounts of Buddhist meditation but is amply described in classical literature under the rubrics of *saṃvara* (self-restraint) and *śikṣā* (training practices). Although often found as an integral part of monastic practice, its importance is suggested by both its pervasiveness on the ground and by influential classical treatments in works like ŚĀNTIDEVA'S *BODHICARYĀVATĀRA* or the *Xiaozhiguan* attributed to ZHIYI, the systematizer of the Chinese Tiantai School.

Recollection practices of the second type (recalling and retaining prescribed objects of meditation) may be divided heuristically into the recollection of ideas, the recollection of sensory images, and the evocation of affective states. In the classical Indian practice of



*anusmṛti* (recollection), the meditator is required to bring to mind one of six different ideal subjects: the Buddha, his teachings (dharma), the community of his noble disciples (saṅgha), good moral habits, generous giving, and heavenly beings (deva). The meditator first brings to mind the traditional description of the chosen topic, then reviews discursively the good qualities associated with the subject of meditation.

A practice that is not explicitly called *smṛti*, yet involves a systematic bringing to mind or an evocation of affect is “abiding in sublime abodes” (*brahmavihāra*, also called “boundless states”). Four such states are prescribed: benevolence, compassion, joy, and equanimity. In one of the most common forms (recommended and practiced in Theravāda circles) the meditator begins by developing thoughts of benevolence toward a person to whom the meditator is indifferent, then toward a friend, then an enemy, and finally all SENTIENT BEINGS, infusing the whole universe with feelings of benevolence. The meditator then proceeds to develop the other three feelings in the same manner.

A third type of *smṛti*, commonly known as “mindfulness practice” or “attention to mindfulness” (*smṛtyupasthāna*; Pāli, *satipaṭṭhāna*), may be called “mindfulness proper.” It is the “recollection” or bringing to mind of bodily and mental states, and of the conditions to which these states are subject. Once “recollected” they are held in attention and observed with clear awareness.

Tradition prescribes four objects of mindfulness: body, sensations (bodily feelings), mind (thought and stream of consciousness), and dharmas (doctrinal truths and doctrinal ideas). However, tradition has it that all four are encompassed by the sole practice of “mindfulness of breathing” (*ānāpānasmṛti*), which can be undertaken in preparation for, or in conjunction with, the practice of the other four. One may argue that mindfulness proper is a type of insight practice (*vipāśyanā*), insofar as calm awareness is a requisite for keen observation. Observation is usually formulated as follows: “What is my body doing?” or “What is my mind doing at this moment?”

At the end of the nineteenth and the beginning of the twentieth century, several Buddhist monks from Myanmar (Burma) set out to reform the practice of Buddhist meditation. Leading figures like Ledi Sayadaw (1856–1923) and Sayagyi U Ba Khin (1889–1971) objected to what they perceived as an excessive emphasis on meditation as *samādhi*, that is, technically, as mental withdrawal and spiritual power. They pro-

posed a putatively more direct meditation in which mindfulness was the primary technique and insight the ultimate goal. This, they felt, had been the teaching of the Buddha himself.

Presented in a variety of forms, this basic approach came to be known as “mindfulness” or “insight” (or by the original Pāli terms, *satipaṭṭhāna* and *vipassanā*). The prototypical practice was mindfulness of breathing, but other forms of mindful awareness and recollection were emphasized. Insight meditation lent itself to lay practice, and soon came to satisfy the aspirations of the new secular, middle-class audience that appeared in modern Southeast Asia, and of young Western disciples who came to Asia in search of the dharma.

**The mind: calm and insight.** Contemporary advocates of mindfulness/insight methods regard such practices as distinctive or self-contained practices, as suggested in canonical texts like the *Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta* (*Majjhimanikāya* 1, 55–63). However, the most common scholastic position in classical times was to suppose that one needed techniques for making body and mind supple and malleable, serene and focused, as a basis for mental culture.

In this context, the word *samādhi* denotes a family of techniques shared by other religious systems of India, but normative Buddhist literature generally regards these techniques as preparatory or foundational, and not as aims in themselves. Although, in practice, many even today pursue states of *samādhi* for their own sake, the higher, normative goal is insight, which is believed to lead to liberation from suffering and from the cycle of rebirth.

Insight is not a simple “looking” or “seeing,” but rather a review of reality or truth. Insight is therefore not easily separated from doctrine and doctrinal reflection. The classical Indian tradition sometimes accepts the possibility that there can be insight without the cultivation of serenity. An integration of both is not a given, and it is neither simple nor necessary, yet most traditions acknowledge the need for both, even when one is emphasized more than the other. Generally, the theoretical integration is based on two assumptions: that a preparatory calming of the mind will allow for clear insight, and that the objects used as the foundation for calm can also be used as objects of investigation by means of insight. The goal of insight is discernment or clear understanding (*prajñā*), and this discernment would never arise without the cultivation (*bhāvanā*) of insight accompanied by the cultivation of perfect calm and concentration.

## Meditation in Mahāyāna

Most Buddhist currents and religious groups in India—whether they were identified as *nikāya* (so-called MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS) or MAHĀYĀNA communities—tended to model meditation on elements found in a common pool of practices. These corresponded in their rough outlines to the techniques summarized in the formula of the forty *kammaṭṭhāna*, and they are also found in practice manuals (so-called *yogācāra* or *yogāvacāra* manuals). Sometimes these recommendations were incorporated into larger treatises on doctrine and practice, like the encyclopedic *Yogācārabhūmi* attributed to ASAṄGA.

Thus, Mahāyāna meditation in India followed some variants of the common background of practices found in non-Mahāyāna traditions. Mahāyāna texts recommend, for example, the practice of the boundless states, the meditation on the corpse (*aśubhabhāvanā*), and mindfulness practices. Many of these practices were transported to Mahāyāna regions outside India in versions that seldom differed significantly from the accounts found in the Indian texts we possess.

Nevertheless, a number of innovations occurred in Mahāyāna, in India and beyond. Emphasis on ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) led some Mahāyāna authors to criticize the notion that the corpse was impure or foul (*aśubha*), arguing that it was better to conceive of it as empty of both substance and characteristics. In the same vein, the classical meditation on mental states (*citta*), which had earlier focused on a clear distinction between mental states that are good or healthy (*kuśala*) and those that are noxious or unhealthy (*akuśala*), shifted according to Mahāyāna dialectic, and the meditator asked himself whether his own thoughts, good or bad, could be located anywhere: “Where did they come from, where will they go, where are they located, inside of me, outside, or somewhere in between?”

Śāntideva describes in his *Bodhicaryāvatāra* a psychologically complex meditation on no-self and compassion that became a classic in Tibet and has been admired in the West for almost a century. The meditation has two parts: identification of self with others, and reversing roles between self and others. In the first part, the meditator explores the boundaries of the self and the preconceptions that make us set such boundaries. For instance, one is to reflect on the fact that suffering is the same in all beings, so that our natural impulse to avoid suffering makes more sense as a desire to protect all living things from suffering than in any selfish desire to protect ourselves at the expense of others.

In the second part of the meditation, Śāntideva imagines another person, one who is less fortunate than he is. Then he assumes the role of this other person and imagines this person looking back at Śāntideva first with envy, then reproaching him for his pride and for his insensitivity in regarding the less fortunate as inferiors, instead of as the only reason for his existence, for only those in pain justify one’s existence since service to others is the only meaning of the Buddhist’s life.

A group of texts written approximately a century later, Kamalaśīla’s three *Bhāvanākramas*, also describe uniquely Mahāyāna practices. These three essays borrow extensively from the Yogācāra tradition. The second essay establishes clearly a uniquely Mahāyāna use of the boundless states (*āpramāṇya*) as a way to generate the great compassion that will motivate the meditator to seek the awakening of a buddha. The same texts also summarize meditations on emptiness that progress from an *abhidharmic* analysis of matter, through a *yogācāra* analysis of mind and its contents, and culminate in a state of samādhi that is devoid of any conceptual contents (*ānimittasamādhi*). The latter state is the gateway to the liberating knowledge that is nondual (*advayajñāna*).

## Tantric practices

The Buddhist textual and ritual traditions that are usually called *Tantric* expanded on some of the practices outlined above and adopted practices that may have been autochthonous to the localities where Tantra grew roots. The typical Tantric meditation session is a pastiche or a stratified event, in which elements from different periods and currents of the tradition intermingle. Such a session, called a *sādhana* (realization, empowerment) is typically a mixture of evocation and visualization overlaying a classical Mahāyāna liturgy.

Three characteristics of Tantric meditation stand out in a *sādhana*; two of them are evident to an outside observer, one is apparent only to the practitioner. First, meditation exercises can take the form of complex liturgies. These are ritual events that may or may not include meditation proper, since often the representation or performance of the liturgical process is considered as effective as, equivalent to, or inductive of events internal to the practitioner. Yet, silent, private meditation may incorporate these ritual elements as inner, or mental, rituals. The dividing line between a meditation embedded in a ritual and a liturgy meant to display publicly the structure and power of the meditation is often blurred.

Second, one cannot escape the obvious emphasis on the senses that pervades Tantric practice. Sight is both stimulated and used by a number of multi-colored props, offerings, and ritual implements, and by the maṇḍala (a graphic representation that in part maps out the ritual and any internal processes of meditation). The sense of smell is stimulated by the frequent use of incense and flowers. The ear is involved through recitation and through the focusing of the ritual and the meditation on specific ritual formulas and “mystical” formulas (mantras) and syllables (*bījas*).

The third characteristic is less palpable. Tantric liturgical-meditative events are often presumed to depend on or to induce an inner sensory process in the practitioner. This process is sometimes called “visualization,” since instructions often ask the meditator to “see” something in his or her heart or mind. This object is to be retained in the mind for a prescribed time, to the exclusion of everything else, and serves some of the functions of the *kaśiṇa*.

Although some Western observers have questioned the meaning of these instructions, it seems clear that the practitioner is being asked to view something in the mind. Whether this is at all possible is not as critical as understanding that many people think it is possible. Once the picture is in the mind one can look at it, view it, and contemplate it; or one can become one with the object.

The inner process is also called *sādhana*, and it may be construed as a “realization” because it implies that the vision is, or should be made to become, something that is real or that can be appropriated or incorporated into one’s person. The meditator, for instance, is asked to perceive mentally, in his own heart, the first vowel, A, which gradually turns into the orb of the moon. In the middle of this moon he should see a lovely blue lotus. On the filaments of this lotus he will see the spotless orb of a second moon, upon which appears the yellow seed-syllable (*bīja*) *Tām*. Thereupon, the meditator sees rays of light issuing from this yellow seed-syllable, and this mass of rays destroys the darkness of the world’s delusions, illuminates all the endless worlds that exist in the ten directions, and gathers the numberless, measureless families of buddhas and bodhisattvas from the whole universe, bringing them before the meditator.

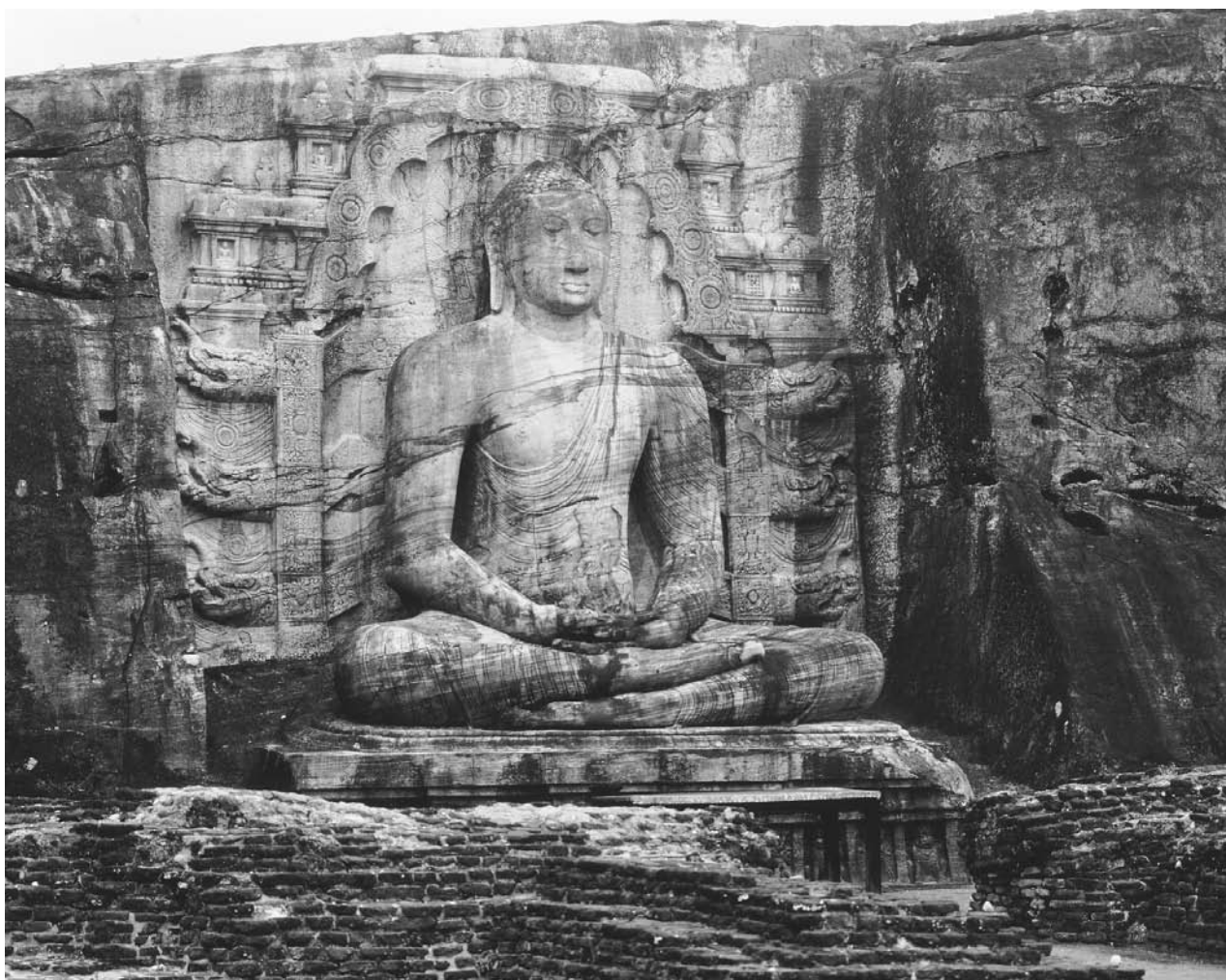
Such visualizations often lead to meditations of the insight type that we have seen before: The mental picture of a buddha, for instance, is examined by asking

questions regarding the substantiality of the image, and of the buddha it represents.

The evocation of deities in contexts that shade off from simple invocation to visualization, and from apotropaic and propitiatory prayer to meditations of identity, was especially popular among Tibetan Buddhists. It is sometimes called *deity yoga* in the West, in accordance with a free English translation of the Tibetan term *lha’i mgnong rtogs* (“realization” or “actualization” of the deity). In a deity-yoga *sādhana*, the meditator invokes and visualizes the physical appearance (including shape, sound, and smell) of his or her own meditation deity (the chosen or assigned object of meditation), which is also the person’s main protective deity, the “chosen” tutelary deity (*yi dam*; Sanskrit, *iṣṭadevatā*). As a step into higher meditations the practice is indistinguishable from a basic *sādhana*, but as a devotional practice it is perhaps the most popular of all meditations in circles that follow Tibetan traditions of meditation. A meditation of this type is the *nyungne* (*bsnyung gnas*), which is especially popular among the laity and is devoted to the bodhisattva of compassion, Avalokiteśvara. This ritual meditation is usually carried out during the days celebrating the birth, enlightenment, and death of the Buddha. The *nyungne* is a two-day fasting retreat for laypersons, led by a monk. Although the primary objective appears to be strengthening the vows and precepts of the bodhisattva and the invocation of Avalokiteśvara’s compassionate assistance, the model for the liturgy is still that of a deity-yoga *sādhana* inviting the bodhisattva to make himself present before and inside the meditator.

Another form of Tantric practice, a syllable or a full phrase (of the mantra genre), recited aloud or mumbled, becomes the focus for the development of concentration and insight. These Sanskrit syllables often represent sacred presences, and by extension embody and therefore invoke and appropriate them (that is, fuse or exchange the identities of meditator and deity).

In Japanese Tantric practice, as modeled, for instance, in the Shingon tradition, the syllable *hrī* is taken to represent the name, person, and presence of AMITĀBHA. When the syllable is drawn or recited, the believer presumes that the Buddha Amitābha has been invoked or, better yet, that he is present. The set of all syllables, and therefore of all buddhas, bodhisattvas, and deities, is contained in the primary vowel sound A. This syllable is regarded as the origin and essence of all syllables, and hence of all language and every-



A twelfth-century statue of the Buddha seated in meditation position, at Polonnaruwa, Sri Lanka. (Sri Lankan, 1153–1186.) The Art Archive/British Museum/The Art Archive. Reproduced by permission.

thing constructed and generated by language. Its invocation therefore brings forth not an individual buddha, but the totality or essence of what is real (*dharmadhātu*).

Tantric meditation blends the themes and instruments of ritual, sound, and language, combining them with the ideas of serenity and insight, all in a process rooted in a conviction that deities can be made manifest before or assimilated into the meditator. This is then not only meditation of speech, but also meditation of visual imagery; yet it is also a technique for inviting holy, ideal beings to come, as guests, before the meditator, and then gradually share their identity with that of the meditator. Additionally, this identity is usually reduced to the emptiness of all things, which is, paradoxically, what is ultimately real, stable, and foundational.

### Other uses of the word

Belief in the transformative power of word and syllable is not limited to Tantra. A different sort of invocation is found in the practice of calling on or calling out the name of the Buddha Amitābha. Indian notions of the sacred name found fertile ground in East Asia, where they tended to cluster around the cult of this buddha in particular, whose invocation has become synonymous with Buddhist devotionism.

In China, where the East Asian tradition has its roots, one may chant either the name of the Buddha Amitābha or the equivalent of the Sanskrit expression “homage to the Buddha Amitābha” (*namo ’mitābhāya buddhāya*; Chinese, *namo Amito-fo*), which has been turned into a sacred name or “the Name.” The recitation is conceived as devotion or devotional surrender, but can also be conceived as meditation embedded in

traditions of mental culture and moral-ascetic cultivation. In the latter function, the recitation may be part of a visualization exercise in which the meditator imagines or images the paradise of Amitābha, the Pure Land.

Traditional understandings of meditation on the name include conceiving of it as concentrated wish or devotion, as meditation on the true name or essence of the Buddha, or as an aid to visualizing Amitābha's Western Paradise. Additionally, the recitation of the sacred name has been used as part of Chan meditation practice.

The Chan use of language in meditation is less explicit than it is in Tantric tradition, as the Chan tradition claims to have access to an experience that is nonconceptual and free from the boundaries of language. Yet important strands of the tradition claim that this nonconceptual mode of being is achieved through a peculiar use of words. Although ostensibly the ultimate meaning of *Chan* is “an independent transmission that is outside doctrinal teaching, and does not rely on words,” Chan has had much to do with words, and has developed a specialized language of the unspoken and the ineffable.

The Chan traditions (*chanzong*, or *Zen* in contemporary Western parlance) began to develop an approach that was described as a method of no-method, but which was in fact a radical method, using a rhetoric of iconoclasm and paradox. The tradition conceives enlightenment as already present in the mind, or, rather, as the mind itself being already enlightened and therefore requiring no cultivation, no meditation. Some strands of the tradition argue accordingly that method and meditation are superfluous; truth must be grasped directly, without mediation; delusion and suffering are nothing but a mistake, and if one abandons the mistake, the true mind manifests itself. Such extreme statements perhaps were put into practice among a limited circle of disciples and for a short time during the Tang dynasty (618–907 C.E.), but, in theory, this rhetoric remained in the tradition as an ideal description of Chan.

Be that as it may, the most characteristic Chan use of language developed in the Song dynasty (960–1279 C.E.) and is known in the West as the *KŌAN*—borrowing the Japanese pronunciation (*kōan*) of the Chinese *gong'an*. The term refers today to a key word or phrase used as the pivot or focus for meditation and believed to be derived directly from the words of ancient masters. The key phrase is usually found in an anecdotal or legendary exchange between disciple and

master. These dialogues are known as “question and answer” (Japanese, *mondō*; Chinese, *wenda*) and are for the most part presented as vignettes of incidents or anecdotes of dialogues from the lives of great Chan masters. The incident or exchange was regarded as a “public case” (the meaning of *gong'an*), hence a “court precedent” embodying the wisdom of the greatest judges of what is true enlightenment, that is, the great meditation masters of the past. The master's “verdict” or judgment was the key phrase (*huatou*) in the anecdote.

In the Japanese Rinzai tradition, the meditator memorizes the anecdote with its key phrase (both called *kōan* in common parlance) and uses the phrase as the focus of concentrated attention. In China, Korea, and Vietnam, it is common to reserve the cases for study, reflection, commentary, or debate, and make the focus of meditation a more general or all-encompassing question, such as: “What is it?” “Who is it?” “Who is reciting the sūtras?” In this phrasing, the *it* and the *who* are the focus of concentrated attention.

Whatever the assigned question might be, the meditator is expected to cultivate undistracted awareness of the *kōan* during sitting meditation and then “take it with him wherever he goes.” This is reminiscent of the *kaśiṇa* exercise, in the sense that the person is expected to become one with, and think of nothing but, the object of meditation.

But the exercise also develops insight because the phrase becomes an object of inquiry as part of the question formulated in the *kōan* (e.g., “What is *this*?”) The answer has to be nondiscursive: a gesture or a sound, or perhaps even the right unquestioned and unreflective word. A common reply is an interjection. Among the interjections, some have become classical answers on the same plane with other sayings of the great masters. One such word is *ho!* (Japanese, *katsu!*), a Chinese monosyllabic expression indicating a sharp scolding or sarcastic surprise. The Chan master Can of Boyun Wuliangsi states,

Throughout the twenty-four hours of the day, walk with your key phrase (*huatou*), stand with your key phrase, sit with your key phrase, lie down with your key phrase. Your mind should feel just like a thorn bush, so you cannot swallow such notions as “person,” “self,” “delusion,” etc. Whether you are walking, standing, sitting, or lying down, turn your entire body into a ball of DOUBT . . . Then, upon hearing some sound or seeing some shape or color, most certainly you will shout, “Ho!” This single sound takes you to the end. (*Taishō* 2024, vol. 48, 1100a2–7)

The system remained permeable to various influences from the literature and philosophy of the countries in which kōan were used. For instance, beginning with the Ming dynasty (1368–1644), Pure Land recitation was often used as a kōanlike topic. Master Zhiji advised,

Recite the name of the Buddha Amitābha once, or three, or five, or seven times. Then turn back silently and ask yourself, “Where does this recitation of the name of the Buddha arise?” Or ask yourself, “Who is this reciting the name of the Buddha?” If you have doubts, simply have doubts . . . Investigate it carefully, inquire into it thoroughly. (*Taishō* 2024, vol. 48, 1102b18–23)

The practice of Zen meditation, although idealized sometimes as a path of lonely self-discovery, requires constant coaching, prodding, and questioning by a qualified Zen master. In the Japanese Rinzai Zen tradition, interactions between the disciple and the meditation instructor take place in private interviews known as *sanzen* (Zen practiced by visiting) or *dokusan* (private visit). The interview can be frightening to the novice because the master traditionally sits on a cushion with his teaching rod lying at his feet, in a dark room, with a single candle illuminating the room from behind the master’s back. The disciple must bow before the master and immediately give or demonstrate his understanding of the meditation exercise. Any exchange taking place in *dokusan* is considered secret because it is believed to embody transmission from mind to mind.

Although tradition sometimes suggests that all kōans ultimately have the same meaning, it is not uncommon to organize kōans in graded or step-wise presentations, or to prescribe them for different purposes (including the healing of specific diseases). Collections composed mostly during the Song dynasty also generated much debate as to the meaning of kōans and the proper explanation or “answer” to the riddle implicit in the fact that a kōan cannot have a “discursive” meaning.

In Japan, approximately after the seventeenth century, kōans were systematized into a curriculum of Zen training that included, for instance, traditional correct answers to the kōans. The plan also incorporated some kōans of Japanese origin, such as the famous, “What is the sound of one hand,” attributed to HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768). The disciple is expected to come up with the correct answer to a given kōan, which will then be accepted or rejected by the master. Once the answer is accepted, the master assigns a different kōan. The rigidity of the system and a number

of abuses were often criticized, the most thorough and devastating criticism coming at the beginning of the twentieth century.

### The contexts of meditation

What we conceive as “Buddhist meditation” may involve a spectrum of beliefs and practices embedded in both the private and the public lives of Buddhists. Moreover, as outlined above, meditation practice and doctrine, inner meditation processes, and external ritual overlap significantly and reinforce each other.

Unlike ritual, meditation is, in practice, open-ended and subject to missing its ultimate goal, even when technically correct. To express it differently, meditation is supposed to have a transformative effect, but in actual practice, the effect may come about gradually, imperfectly, or not at all. Both the experience of the struggle, the failures and frustrations, and the pragmatic quest for the right technique, time, and intensity of practice are topics worth exploring.

The full range of meditation includes many experiences. We have noted already some of the more abstract: notions of truth, polemical and philosophical insights, and the experience of preparation, retreat, or ritual frames. But, as a personal journey, meditation meets many obstacles: a person’s frustration with meditation; sleepiness or overexcitability during meditation; physical pain, fatigue, or discomfort; and the disappointment of making no progress. For people who practice meditation these obstacles are equally important experiences. Sometimes they are either commented upon in meditation instruction, or used for meditation itself.

Needless to say, meditation, like other aspects of the religious life, also has its social contexts and its interpersonal correlates. In its social contexts, meditation can have many meanings and functions. Similarly, the goals of meditation can vary considerably even in the lifetime of one individual. Such goals may be associated with traditions of hygiene, health, and healing, or with those of wonder-working. Meditation is also often closely associated with the visionary quest, the quest for visions of hidden or distant worlds, HEAVENS and HELLS. It is also associated with ASCETIC PRACTICES, withdrawal, or escape. In all of these functions the tendency is to see meditation as essentially the concentration of spiritual power.

Buddhists can, and often do, appeal to the experience of meditation as a justification or a foundation for their beliefs, values, and practices, regardless of

their willingness or capacity to actually practice meditation. But it is also true that many Buddhists see meditation as a value in itself, as an ideal that may be difficult to achieve, too difficult for most of us, but nevertheless as a spiritual discipline that represents the highest accomplishment that a human being is capable of achieving. A Buddhist expressing this second view of meditation can also consider meditation as essentially a practice, something to be done or accomplished, and therefore, as something that is not merely a belief or an ideal.

*See also:* **Bodhi (Awakening); Chan School; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Psychology; Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā); Yogācāra School**

### **Bibliography**

- Beyer, Stephan. *The Cult of Tārā: Magic and Ritual in Tibet*. Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London: University of California Press, 1973.
- Beyer, Stephan V., ed. and trans. *The Buddhist Experience: Sources and Interpretations*. Encino, CA: Wadsworth, 1974.
- Beyer, Stephan V. “The Doctrine of Meditation in the Hīnayāna” and “The Doctrine of Meditation in the Mahāyāna.” In *Buddhism: A Modern Perspective*, ed. Charles S. Prebish. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1975.
- Blacker, Carmen. “Methods of Yoga in Japanese Buddhism.” In *Comparative Religion: The Charles Strong Trust Lectures*, ed. John Bowan. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1972.
- Blofeld, John. *The Tantric Mysticism of Tibet: A Practical Guide*. New York: Dutton, 1970.
- Blofeld, John Eaton Calthorpe. *Mantras: Sacred Words of Power*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1977.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. *The Two Traditions of Meditation in Ancient India*. Stuttgart, Germany: Verlag, 1986; 2nd revised edition, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993 (mistakenly identified as “first edition” on the copyright page).
- Cleary, Thomas. *Stopping and Seeing: A Comprehensive Course in Buddhist Meditation by Chih-I*. Boston: Shambhala, 1997.
- Conze, Edward, ed. and trans. *Buddhist Meditation*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1956.
- Gómez, Luis O. “Prayer: Buddhist Perspectives” and “Spirituality: Buddhist Perspectives.” In *Encyclopedia of Monasticism*, Vol. 2, ed. William M. Johnston. Chicago: Fitzroy Dearborn, 2000.
- Griffiths, Paul J. “Indian Buddhist Meditation.” In *Buddhist Spirituality: Indian, Southeast Asian, Tibetan, Early Chinese*, 2 vols., ed. Yoshinori Takeuchi. New York: Crossroad, 1993.
- Jamgon Kongtrul Lodro Tayé (Kong-sprul Blo-gros-mtha’-yas). *Jamgon Kongtrul’s Retreat Manual*, tr. Ngawang Zangpo. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1994.
- King, Winston L. *Theravāda Meditation: The Buddhist Transformation of Yoga*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1980.
- Kornfield, Jack. *Living Dharma: Teachings of Twelve Buddhist Masters*. Boston: Shambhala, 1996. Previously published as *Living Buddhist Masters*, Santa Cruz, CA: Unity Press, 1977.
- Minoru Kiyota, ed., assisted by Elvin W. Jones. *Mahāyāna Buddhist Meditation: Theory and Practice*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1978.
- Nyanaponika Thera. *The Heart of Buddhist Meditation*. London: Rider, 1962.
- Sharf, Robert H. “Buddhist Modernism and the Rhetoric of Meditative Experience.” *Numen* 42 (1995): 228–283.
- Sharf, Robert H. “Experience.” In *Critical Terms for Religious Studies*, ed. Mark C. Taylor. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.
- Sharf, Robert H., and Sharf, Elizabeth Horton. *Living Images: Japanese Buddhist Icons in Context*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2001.
- Singh Khalsa, Dharma, and Stauth, Cameron. *Meditation as Medicine: Activate the Power of Your Natural Healing Force*. New York: Pocket Books, 2001.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. “The Cosmological and Performative Significance of a Thai Cult of Healing through Meditation.” *Culture, Medicine, and Psychiatry* 1, no. 1 (1977): 97–132.
- Thrangu, Khenchen. *The Practice of Tranquility and Insight: A Guide to Tibetan Buddhist Meditation*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1993.
- Vajirañāna, Paravahera (Mahāthera). *Buddhist Meditation in Theory and Practice: A General Exposition According to the Pāli Canon of the Theravāda School* (1962). Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Buddhist Missionary Society, 1975.
- Yamasaki, Taiko. *Shingon: Japanese Esoteric Buddhism*, translated and adapted by Richard and Cynthia Peterson, ed. Yasuyoshi Morimoto and David Kidd. Boston: Shambhala, 1988.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

---

## MEIJI BUDDHIST REFORM

The collapse of the Tokugawa regime and the wave of changes accompanying the restoration of imperial rule and the formation of a new government at the start of the Meiji period (1868–1912) stimulated directly and indirectly numerous significant changes in Japanese Buddhism. The harsh critiques of Buddhism by Confucians, Nativists, and Shintōists during the waning years of the Tokugawa period (1600–1868) and at the start of Meiji culminated in the state-mandated sepa-

ration of Buddhist and local elements of worship (which came to be identified as Shintō), triggering a brief but exceedingly violent suppression of Buddhism that lasted until 1871. Numerous Buddhist clerics were forcibly laicized, monastery lands were confiscated, and many temples and works of Buddhist art were destroyed. Even after the overt violence subsided, Buddhists were left reeling by an end to state support, government-mandated institutional centralization and restructuring, and the end to state enforcement of traditional protocols of Buddhist discipline, particularly the prohibitions against such clerical infractions as eating meat, marriage, and abandoning clerical dress or tonsure. An additional threat to Buddhism was posed by the growing influence in Japan of foreign Christian missionaries and Japanese Christian converts, who, along with domestic critics of Buddhism, characterized Buddhism as decadent, corrupt, impotent, and outdated.

Buddhists responded to the challenges of the Meiji period at the denominational, clerical, and lay levels. At the institutional level, leaders of the main Buddhist denominations availed themselves of the growing centralization of denominational governance in an effort to end the clerical abuses that they believed had helped bring Buddhism to its troubled state. Such leaders as Fukuda Gyōkai (1809–1888), Shaku Unshō (1827–1909), and Nishiari Bokusan (1821–1910) called on the Buddhist clergy to voluntarily preserve traditional Buddhist praxis, especially adherence to the PRECEPTS, and to ground themselves thoroughly in traditional Buddhist learning. These reform efforts gave rise to the adoption of strict new denominational rules and the creation of centers for clerical education that evolved into such sectarian universities as today's Ryūkoku, Ōtani, and Komazawa universities. The main branches of the Jōdo Shinshū, in particular, sponsored travel and study in Europe and the United States by such important contributors to the construction of modern Japanese Buddhism and Buddhist studies as Akamatsu Renjō (1841–1919), Kitabatake Dōryū (1820–1907), Shimaji Mokurai (1838–1911), Nanjō Bun'yū (1849–1927), and Takakusu Junjirō (1866–1945).

Groups of clerics, working independently of the denominations, began movements that aimed to reform clerical practice, meld Buddhist and Western styles of PHILOSOPHY and scholarship, and restructure denominational governance. Notable among the cleric-led movements that sought to extend Buddhist morality into day-to-day social life were Kiyozawa Manshi's

(1863–1903) Jōdo Shin-based “spiritualist” movement (*Seishin shugi*); the pro-temperance Hanseikai (Self-reflection Society), which was led by such Nishi Honganji notables as Takakusu Junjirō, MURAKAMI SENSHŌ, INOUE ENRYŌ, and Furukawa Rōsen (1871–1899); and Shaku Unshō's Tokkyōkai (Morality Society). Other clerical reformers, for example, Kuruma Taku-dō (1877–1964), Tanabe Zenchi, and Nakazato Nishō, worked for the acceptance of clerical marriage and the creation of an educated Buddhist clergy that was totally engaged with family, social, and national affairs.

Lay Buddhist movements, stimulated by the growth of a literate middle class, were also a major feature of the religious landscape during the Meiji era. Such former clerics as Inoue Enryō, Ōuchi Seiran (1845–1918), Daidō Chōan (1843–1908), and Tanaka Chigaku (1861–1939) founded new lay Buddhist organizations that ran the political gamut from liberal to very conservative. These groups variously sought to create a new Buddhism that would play an integral role in the daily lives of their members, give Buddhism intellectual parity with Western religion, philosophy, and science, and, at the same time, provide solid ideological support for the new Japanese nation-state. Ōuchi's Sonnō Hōbutsu Daidōdan (Great Association for Revering the Emperor and Worshipping the Buddha) and Tanaka Chigaku's Nichiren-based, lay religious groups that evolved into Kokuchūkai (National Pillar Society) were vehemently anti-Christian and strongly nationalistic. These movements served as influential models for many of the Buddhist-based new religious movements that arose in the first half of the twentieth century.

*See also:* Clerical Marriage in Japan; Japan

#### *Bibliography*

- Collcutt, Martin. “Buddhism: The Threat of Eradication.” In *Japan in Transition*, ed. Marius Jansen and Gilbert Rozman. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1986.
- Grapard, Allan G. “Japan's Ignored Cultural Revolution: The Separation of Shintō and Buddhist Divinities in Meiji (Shinbutsu Bunri) and a Case Study: Tonomine.” *History of Religions* 23 (February 1984): 240–265.
- Ketelaar, James Edward. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Snodgrass, Judith. *Presenting Japanese Buddhism to the West: Orientalism, Occidentalism, and the Columbian Exposition*. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press, 2003.

RICHARD M. JAFFE



## MERIT AND MERIT-MAKING

Merit (*puṇya*; Chinese, *gongde*; Japanese, *kudoku*) is karmic virtue acquired through moral and ritual actions; it is widely regarded as the foundation of Buddhist ethics and salvation. Although Jōdo Shinshū, the Shin (true) PURE LAND SCHOOL of Japanese Buddhism, rejects the efficacy of meritorious acts, the vast majority of Buddhist communities affirm the soteriological effects of good actions. As indicated by the term *merit-making*, virtue is the deliberate result of human consideration and conduct.

Buddhist literature widely attests to the making and consequences of merit. The JĀTAKA tales tell stories of how people benefit from their virtues and suffer from their vices. “Be quick in goodness,” counsels the *Word of the Doctrine* (DHAMMAPADA), “from wrong hold back your thought.” In *Milinda’s Questions* (MILINDA-PANĀHA), the Buddhist monk Nāgasena tells King Milinda that those who are pure in heart, refined and straight in action, and free from the obstacles of craving will see NIRVĀṆA. In these Pāli texts, merit accrues from moral actions.

In MAHĀYĀNA literature, the importance of morality is affirmed, but the notion of merit is extended to the idea of benefits obtained largely through ritual actions. Since ritual involves magical power exceeding that of moral effort, the benefits are greater. The LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA; Japanese, *Myōhō rengekyō*), for example, describes the magnificent benefits that will fall on those who do no more than read, recite, copy, and uphold the sūtra. Their benefits will be without limit or measure, far exceeding the merits acquired through moral practices such as almsgiving, patience, and gentleness. An investment in ritual actions yields greater benefits than merits realized through moral effort.

The relationship between ritual benefits and moral merits varies according to different traditions and teachers, but in most cases both are affirmed and are indicated by the single Japanese term *kudoku*, which literally means “the virtue of effort.” In order to specify the particular value of Buddhist effort, as opposed to all other human actions, the idea of the “field of merit” (*puṇyakṣetra*; Chinese, *futian*; Japanese, *fukuden*) identifies Buddhism as the field within which merit and benefits can be realized and even multiplied. The Chinese and Japanese terms extend even further beyond the idea of ritual benefits to suggest divine

blessings. The field of blessings is identified variously with the Buddha, the SAṄGHA (monastic community), and the dharma—that is, the entirety of Buddhism itself—and is defined even more specifically as particular deities, texts, or objects such as relics, all of which have the power to grant blessings. Despite the emphasis on ritual benefits and divine blessings, the merit of moral action is seldom forgotten. In the category of the “three fields of blessings,” for example, the first field involves reverence to the BUDDHAS, the second calls for repaying obligations to parents and teachers, and the third requires acts of compassion to help the poor and the sick. The value of any act, therefore, depends not just on the person carrying out the act but on the recipient as well. More merit and benefit will accrue by giving to buddhas rather than humans, humans rather than animals, monks rather than laypersons, and the poor rather than the rich.

Benefits and blessings, the related virtues of merit, are enjoyed as rewards for one’s efforts, but they can also be dedicated or transferred to others. Like economic transactions, merit can be transferred from one account to another. In *Milinda’s Questions*, Nāgasena argues that only the merits of good deeds can be transferred to others; the results of evil deeds cannot. Many rituals close with a section on the transfer of merit (*pariṇāmanā*; Japanese, *ekō*) to all sentient beings and to ancestors. Far from being fixed, karmic merit is transactional: Bad KARMA (ACTION) acquired in the past can be extinguished or offset by merit accrued in the present, and the karmic accounts of the dead can be augmented by a transfer of merit from the living. Rendering karmic aid to the dead is particularly important for those who might be reborn in the HELLS, where they will face the Ten Kings of Hell, who will surely indict them for lack of merit. Even for those whose lives were clearly meritorious, transferring merit assured their general well-being, and is a key element in the postmortem care of ANCESTORS. The best reason for transferring merit to the deceased is to help them gain rebirth in the pure land, the heavenly paradise in Buddhist COSMOLOGY.

Since these transfers take place through formal rituals, monks and nuns, acting as agents brokering the transfer, receive donations for their services. This economic support has been an essential part of the institutional life of Buddhism; in addition to being the foundation of Buddhist morality and salvation, the belief in merit and the transfer of merit is a cornerstone for sustaining the clergy and their monasteries.



Sparrows are freed by a merit-maker during the Thai new year festival in Bangkok, Thailand, 1999. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

Merit can also be transferred between people without the ritual services of a cleric. Passing merit directly between people technically does not constitute a transfer of merit, which requires the ritual intervention of a monk or nun and is limited to the merit of good deeds. These direct karmic interchanges are better described as exchanges of merit taking place through personal relationships. In these situations, it is commonly believed that harm done to another will result in harsh retribution. Wrongdoing represents a loss of merit from the perpetrator to the victim, who thereby has the right to retaliate, often in the form of curses. Misfortunes are commonly interpreted to be retributions and even revenge inflicted by those who have been wronged. In Japan, aborted fetuses, for example, are said to be able to inflict harm on the parents who terminated their lives. Resolution of this problem takes the form of a ritual (*MIZUKO KUYŌ*) through which a

transfer of merit (*ekō*) from the parents to the fetus provides proper recompense. An exchange of bad karma through personal relationships can be corrected through a transfer of merit.

As a moral commodity, merit is quantifiable. Chanting the name of the Buddha produces merit, and greater numbers of repetitions result in greater merit. In both China and Japan, people kept merit books in which they recorded the number of times they performed a ritual. Accumulated merit could be applied to oneself or transferred to a group, to ancestors, or to particular persons, such as the emperor. Quantification also permitted simplification, and practices such as reciting the Buddha's name became popular among lay believers who did not have the resources for more complex rituals. The conflation of merit, benefits, and blessings meant that the rewards of virtue could be en-

joyed in this life as well as the next, and testimonies abound about how people gained worldly boons from their moral and ritual practices.

With the exception of Jōdo Shinshū, all schools of Buddhism affirm the acquisition of worldly benefits through merit-making. In Japan, the ritual essentials are extremely simple, consisting of short petitionary prayers and the purchase of good luck amulets and charms. In the teaching of karma, nothing can happen by luck or chance, everything is the result of human deliberation and action. The belief in the power of amulets to produce benefits and blessings is often criticized by intellectuals and scholars as a form of magic that contradicts the doctrine of karma. Defenders of the practice, however, point out that it is precisely the law of karma that is at work when believers create merit by purchasing and venerating amulets. Benefits—and they include health, wealth, business success, good grades, family harmony, traffic safety, safe childbirth, and a host of other good things in life—result from the virtue of acquiring amulets and believing in the divine power it represents. Since amulets are believed to be consecrated with the power of specific deities, the worldly benefits are received as divine blessings.

While there is clearly an element of magical thinking associated with amulets, few people believe that the mere possession of charms will produce the desired effects without any exertion of effort on their part. Japanese students, for example, purchase amulets for good grades, but do not believe that they are thereby relieved of having to study for an exam. Right action is still necessary in order to create merit, which can be complemented by divine blessings, but is not abrogated.

Set within the larger context of the teaching of karma, merit and merit-making comprise a cogent system in which moral action produces merit, ritual performance generates benefits, and the buddhas and bodhisattvas grant blessings to those who earn them through their efforts and can share the fruits of their virtues with the living and the dead in hopes of gaining a good rebirth and, ultimately, entry into nirvāṇa.

*See also:* Amulets and Talismans; Death; Ghosts and Spirits; Rebirth

#### *Bibliography*

Brokaw, Cynthia J. *The Ledgers of Merit and Demerit: Social Change and Moral Order in Late Imperial China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.

Kalupahana, David. *Buddhist Philosophy: A Historical Analysis*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1975.

Reader, Ian, and Tanabe, George J., Jr. *Practically Religious: Worldly Benefits and the Common Religion of Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.

Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

---

## MIJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL

The Esoteric school (Chinese, Mijiao) of Buddhism was introduced to China as part of the general spread of MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism that took place in the third and fourth centuries of the common era. The earliest forms of Esoteric Buddhist practice consisted of incantations and DHĀRAṆĪ, as found in a number of canonical and essentially exoteric sūtras belonging to the Mahāyāna tradition. The gradual development toward esotericism in Indian Mahāyāna Buddhism is reflected in Chinese translations, which preserve the largest number of early Esoteric Buddhist scriptures. In the course of its development in China, Esoteric Buddhism evolved from a ritualistic appendix on the exoteric scriptures to full-scale Esoteric Buddhist scriptures that propagated a wide range of practices and beliefs with ritualized magic at the center. In the course of this development the Esoteric Buddhist tradition adapted a number of Daoist beliefs and practices, while at the same time greatly contributing to the development of that rival religious tradition.

During the Tang dynasty (618–907) Esoteric Buddhism reached its zenith in terms of influence and popularity, and its lore and ritual practices were adopted by most Buddhist traditions in China. Esoteric Buddhism under the Tang was chiefly represented by the Zhenyan (True Word) school, which propagated a systematic and highly elaborate form of Esoteric Buddhism. Its leading patriarchs were Śubhākarasiṃha (637–735), Vajrabodhi (669–741), and Amoghavajra (705–774), all of whom were of foreign ancestry. All three teachers served as preceptors for a succession of Chinese rulers. The teachings and rituals of the Zhenyan school were based on a large number of sūtras and scriptures, most of which propounded the use of MUDRĀS, MAṆḌALAS, and visualizations, as well as incantations of magical formulas in the forms of MANTRAS and dhāraṇīs. The main teachings and practices focused on the *Mahāvairocana (Great Sun)* and

the *Vajraśekhara* (*Vajra Pinnacle*), sūtras that exemplify the *kriyā* (action [i.e., rite]) and *caryā* (ritual performance) stages according to the later classification of Esoteric Buddhism. In other words, the school focused on the initial or preliminary stages of practice in accordance with mature Tantric Buddhist doctrine. The antinomian practices commonly associated with the later Tantric tradition, including meat-eating, the drinking of alcohol, and ritual sex (i.e., the conscious breaking of the conventional Buddhist PRECEPTS), were not practiced by the teachers of the Zhenyan school. However, in the ritual cycles relating to the Vajrasattva cult as propagated by Amoghavajra, there is evidence of tendencies toward antinomianism.

The centers of Zhenyan Buddhism were situated in the twin capitals of Chang'an and Luoyang, and included a series of famous monasteries such as Anguosi, Da Xingshansi, and Qinglongsi. During the late eighth and early ninth centuries, Mount Wutai in Shanxi province, with its hundreds of monasteries and hermitages, was a flourishing center of Zhenyan Buddhism. It was during this period that the Japanese monks SAICHŌ (767–822), the founder of the Japanese Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) school, and KŪKAI (774–835), who established Zhenyan in the form of SHINGON BUDDHISM in Japan, studied under Esoteric Buddhist masters in China.

The Huichang persecution of Buddhism of 844 to 845 destroyed most of the important Buddhist monasteries in Chang'an and Luoyang, and, while it seriously crippled the Zhenyan school, it did not cause lasting damage to the development of Esoteric Buddhism in China. Although the Zhenyan tradition declined, Esoteric Buddhist practices in nonsectarian and more unstructured forms continued to flourish in the provinces. In particular, Sichuan in the southwestern part of China saw the rise of a strong Esoteric Buddhist tradition that continued well into the Southern Song dynasty (960–1279). Yunnan, which at that time was ruled by the Dali kingdom (937–1253), also saw the rise of a distinct form of Esoteric Buddhism that incorporated influences from China, Tibet, and Burma.

During the early Song, a new wave of translations of Buddhist scriptures introduced the first full-fledged tantras to Chinese soil, including the *Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa* (*Fundamental Ordinance of Mañjuśrī*), the *Hevajra-tantra* (*Tantra of Hevajra*), and the *Guhyasamāja-tantra* (*Tantra of Guhyasamāja*). However, it appears that the antinomian practices expounded in these scriptures did not win many adherents among the Chinese Buddhists.

In contrast, the Tanguts, a people of Tibeto-Burmese stock, who had founded the Xixia dynasty (1038–1223) in present-day Ningxia and Gansu provinces, followed a mixture of Sino-Tibetan Buddhism that included Esoteric Buddhism in its Tantric form. Here the higher yoga and *annuttarayoga* tantras were taught. Tibetan lamas served as imperial preceptors to the Tangut rulers.

During the Yuan (1260–1368) and early Ming (1368–1644) dynasties, Esoteric Buddhism in the form of Tibetan Lamaism was introduced in China, where it remained influential for several centuries. Under the Qing dynasty (1644–1911), Lamaism became the official religion of the Manchu rulers, who favored a succession of important lamas from Tibet and Mongolia. During this period, a number of important Tibetan and Mongolian tantric texts were translated into Chinese.

*See also:* China; Daoism and Buddhism; Esoteric Art, East Asia; Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Persecutions; Tantra; Tiantai School

### Bibliography

- Chou I-liang. "Tantrism in China." *Harvard Journal of Asian Studies* 8 (1945): 41–332.
- Lü Jianfu. *Zhongguo Mijiao shi* (*The History of Esoteric Buddhism in China*). Beijing: Zhongguo Shehui Kexue Chubanshe, 1995.
- Orzech, Charles D. "Seeing Chen-yen Buddhism: Traditional Scholarship and the Vajrayāna in China." *History of Religions* 29, no. 2 (1989): 87–114.
- Osabe Kazuo. *Tō Sō Mikkyō shi ronkō* (*Essays on the History of Esoteric Buddhism during the Tang and Song*). Kobe, Japan: Eiden bunshōdō, 1963.
- Osabe Kazuo. *Tōdai Mikkyō shi no zakkō* (*History of Esoteric Buddhism during the Tang Dynasty*). Kobe, Japan: Eiden bunshōdō, 1971.
- Shi Jinbo. *Xixia fojiao shilu* (*An Abbreviated History of Buddhism under the Xixia*). Yinchuan, China: Ningxia renmin chubanshe, 1988.
- Sørensen, Henrik H., ed. *The Esoteric Buddhist Tradition: Selected Papers from the 1989 SBS Conference*. Copenhagen and Aarhus, Denmark: Seminar for Buddhist Studies, 1994.
- Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et mandarins: Le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Éditions Gallimard, 1996.
- Xiao Dengfu. *Daojiao yu mizong* (*Daoism and Esoteric Buddhism*). Taipei, Taiwan: Xinwenfeng, 1993.
- Yoritomi Motohiro. *Chūgoku mikkyō no kenkyū* (*Studies in Chinese Esoteric Buddhism*). Tokyo: Daitō shuppan sha, 1980.

HENRIK H. SØRENSEN

## MI LA RAS PA (MILAREPA)

Mi la ras pa (pronounced Milarepa, 1028/40–1111/23) was a highly revered Tibetan yogin. He is considered an early founder of the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) sect of Tibetan Buddhism. Mi la ras pa is esteemed throughout the Tibetan cultural world as an exemplar of religious dedication, perseverance through hardship, and meditative mastery. His life story has been the subject of a vast hagiographic tradition in Tibet. The most famous biographical account (Lhalungpa 1977) and collection of spiritual songs (Chang 1962), both composed in the late fifteenth century, remain extremely popular within the Tibetan Buddhist world. The themes associated with his biographical tradition—purification of past misdeeds, FAITH and devotion to the guru, ardor in MEDITATION and yogic practice, and the possibility of attaining buddhahood in a single lifetime—have influenced the development of Buddhist teaching and practice in Tibet, and the way they have been understood in the West.

*Mi la* was his clan name; *ras pa* is derived from the word for a single cotton robe (*ras*) worn by Tibetan anchorites—an attire Mi la ras pa retained for most of his life. The name is therefore an appellation, perhaps translated as “The Cotton-Clad Mi la.”

Although his dates are debated, biographies agree that Mi la ras pa was born to a prosperous family in the Gung thang region of southwestern Tibet. At an early age, after the death of his father, he and his family were dispossessed of their wealth and home by Mi la ras pa's paternal aunt and uncle, and thereby reduced to a life of poverty and privation. At the behest of his mother, Mi la ras pa studied black magic in order to exact revenge upon his relatives, and he eventually murdered a great number of people. Later, feeling contrition and realizing the magnitude of his misdeeds, he sought to redeem himself from their karmic effects through the practice of Buddhism. He studied briefly under several masters before meeting his principal guru, the great translator of Indian texts MAR PA (MARPA) (1002/1012–1097). Mar pa, however, did not immediately teach Mi la ras pa, but rather subjected him to continual abuse, forcing him to undergo various ordeals, such as the famous trial of constructing immense stone towers. Pushed to the brink of utter despair, Mi la ras pa even contemplated suicide. Mar pa finally assuaged his disciple, revealing that the trials were actually a means of purifying previous negative karma. He explained that Mi la ras pa was, from the beginning, his disciple as prophesied by the Indian

master NĀROPA (1016–1100). Mi la ras pa received numerous tantric initiations and instructions—especially those of MAHĀMUDRĀ and the practice of yogic inner heat (*gtum mo*)—together with the command that he should persevere against all hardship, meditating in solitary caves and mountain retreats.

Mi la ras pa spent the rest of his life practicing meditation in seclusion and teaching small groups of disciples, mainly through poetry and songs of realization. He had little interest in philosophical discourse and no tolerance for intellectual pretension. His songs are composed in vernacular idioms, abandoning the highly ornamental formal structures of classical poetry in favor of a simple, direct, and often playful style. According to tradition, he was active across southern Tibet from Mount KAILĀSA (KAILASH) to Bhutan. Dozens of locations associated with the yogin have become important pilgrimage sites and retreat centers. Foremost among Mi la ras pa's disciples were Sgam po pa Bsod nams rin chen (Gampopa Sonam Rinchen, 1079–1153) and Ras chung pa Rdo rje grags (Rechungpa Dorje Drak, 1084–1161).

*See also:* Tibet

### Bibliography

- Chang, Garma C. C., trans. *The Hundred Thousand Songs of Milarepa*, 2 vols. New Hyde Park, NY: University Books, 1962. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1999.
- Lama Kunga Rinpoche and Cuttillo, Brian, trans. *Drinking the Mountain Stream*. Novato, CA: Lotsawa, 1978. Reprint, Boston: Wisdom, 1995.
- Lama Kunga Rinpoche and Cuttillo, Brian, trans. *Miraculous Journey*. Novato, CA: Lotsawa, 1991.
- Lhalungpa, Lobsang P., trans. *The Life of Milarepa*. New York: Dutton, 1977. Reprint, Boston: Shambhala, 1984.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## MILINDAPAÑHA

The *Milindapañha*, or *Milinda's Questions*, is a Pāli text that, though normally regarded as extracanonical, is nonetheless accepted in Myanmar (Burma) as part of the *Khuddakanikāya* of the Pāli canon. Possibly based on a Sanskrit or Prakrit original, it dates prior to the fourth century C.E., when it—or the Sanskrit original—was translated into Chinese. Some even surmise that the original text was written in Greek.

In general, the text records a series of conversations between the Buddhist monk Nāgasena and the Bactrian Indo-Greek king Milinda (also called Menander), who ruled northwestern India from Sāgalā (modern Siālkot) during the second century B.C.E. Its main thrust lies in eighty-one dilemmas, couched in Socratic dialogue, in which Milinda seeks to reconcile what appear to him to be contradictory statements by the Buddha in the Pāli canon. Most notable of these is Milinda's inability to reconcile the supposed doctrine of anattā (Sanskrit, anātman; no-self) and the Buddha's belief in REBIRTH, which Nāgasena skillfully resolves with his account of the chariot, in which he demonstrates that the terms *self* and *chariot* are simply concepts superimposed upon what is in fact merely a collection of parts.

Although clearly regarded as authoritative by the scholar BUDDHAGHOSA, who quotes from it in his *Vī-suddhimagga* (*The Path of Purification*) and other commentaries (Horner, vol. I, p. xx), the text seemingly evinces Sarvāstivādin influence in maintaining that both nibbāna (NIRVĀṆA) and space are without cause, whereas for the Theravāda only nibbāna is non-compounded.

See also: Pāli, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

Horner, I. B., trans. *Milinda's Questions*, 2 vols. London: Luzac, 1963–1964.

PETER MASEFIELD

## MILLENARIANISM AND MILLENARIAN MOVEMENTS

Like most religious traditions, Buddhism has an understanding of time, both cyclic and linear, and a developed tradition of thought concerning the eventual end of the world. Within Buddhism, this tradition centers around the person of MAITREYA bodhisattva, who was identified early on as the future successor to Śākyamuni Buddha. Particularly in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, Maitreya came to be viewed as a messianic figure. In East Asia, the arrival of Maitreya was linked both to the apocalyptic end of the current epoch and the initiation of a future epoch in which the world would be transformed into a paradise. Historically, the worship of Maitreya has served as the seed both for

general utopian longing and armed movements meant to usher in the millennium.

### Judeo-Christian and Buddhist millenarianism

Millenarianism is a branch of utopianism, one specifically concerned with the arrival (or return) of a divinely portended messianic figure and the subsequent establishment of an earthly kingdom of peace and plenty. The term itself derives from the Christian belief in a thousand-year reign of Christ preceding the final judgment, leading to anticipation that the apocalypse would occur in the year 1000 C.E. For most Western readers, the concept of millenarianism is closely connected to the Judeo-Christian tradition, both the Jewish belief in the arrival of a messiah and the related Christian belief in Armageddon and the return of Christ Triumphant as described in the Book of Revelation. There is an inherent danger in relying too heavily on these conceptions of the millennium to understand similar ideas in Buddhism. The scriptural portents given by prophets of the Old and New Testaments provide a very specific picture of the arrival of the messiah and the nature of the judgment, reward, and punishment, none of which fits precisely with those of Buddhism or has much significance for millenarian movements in Buddhist history.

At the same time, however, certain elements of Judeo-Christian millenarianism are conceptually similar to those seen in other traditions (including what might be termed *political millenarianism*, such as the anticipated return of a mythical ruler), suggesting that millenarian thought and movements involve certain universal themes. The first such element is a system of reckoning cosmic time. In most traditions, time is composed of three parts: epochs of the mythical past, the current age, and the distant future. These three epochs are separated by events of cosmic significance in which the old order is destroyed or altered completely, and thus the recorded history of humankind falls primarily inside the second age. In the Judeo-Christian tradition, the pivotal event that marked the commencement of the age of humans was the expulsion of Adam and Eve from the Garden of Eden. Human history progresses in a linear fashion from that point, reaching its culmination in the arrival or return of the messiah, at which point humankind as a whole will be subjected to its final judgment.

The second element is the conception of the post-millennial paradise, which is depicted in very physical, earthly terms. Jewish messianism has historically produced a wide spectrum of ideas and movements, but

is most fundamentally predicated on the physical return of the Jews to Palestine. The Christian Book of Revelation, as well, emphasizes the physicality of the millennium, with resurrection of the body and the founding of the Kingdom of God on earth. This type of millenarianism, which is predicated on the arrival of a sacred figure from heaven, is referred to as the *descending* motif. It is distinguished from belief in a post-mortem paradise, often described as a place where purified souls await the final apocalypse. The ascent of souls to this heavenly kingdom marks this as the *ascending* motif.

### Maitreya in South and Central Asia

Millenarian thought and devotion to Maitreya have appeared in almost every manifestation of the Buddhist tradition and may reflect pre-Buddhist themes. The arrival of a messianic and triumphant figure is based on the Indian ideal of the cakravartin, a virtuous universal monarch who is divinely destined to unify the earthly realm. Both the Buddha himself and Buddhist political figures such as King AŚOKA and the Japanese prince SHŌTOKU were identified with this monarch. Early contact between Buddhism and Zoroastrianism (from Iran and Bactria) may have influenced this belief with the addition of beliefs concerning Mithra, a deity associated with apocalyptic change, and the image of Saōsyant, a divine savior who would appear on earth at the end of twelve cosmic cycles, purge the world of sin, and establish an immortal material paradise. Scholars are undecided as to the exact relation of these traditions to the development of Buddhist millenarianism and Maitreya worship.

Maitreya is not discussed in any of the canonical South Asian texts and is mentioned only tangentially in the canonical literature of the THERAVĀDA, but he catapults to prominence in the MAHĀVASTU (*Great Story*), a central text of the MAHĀSĀṂGHĪKA SCHOOL. This text, which outlines the theory of bodhisattvas as supernatural beings, places Maitreya at the head of a list of future buddhas. The Mahāyāna sūtras continue in this line, portraying Maitreya as a worthy monk, who spent lifetimes developing in wisdom and preaching the dharma before being reborn as a bodhisattva in the Tuṣita heaven, where he awaits his incarnation as the buddha of the next epoch.

This latter event, however, is spoken of in relatively vague terms, and it is destined to occur only in the very distant future (five billion years, by some accounts), according to cycles of growth and decay. An early Bud-

dhist idea says that the universe oscillates between growth and decay in cycles called *kalpas*. All things, from the dharma to human life span (which can be as long as eighty thousand years or as short as ten) depend on this cycle, which is currently in an advanced state of decay, a phenomenon known as the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA. Once the nadir of this cycle has passed, the universe will again begin a period of growth, and as it approaches its peak, a cakravartin king will appear to usher in Maitreya's advent and the Maitreyan Golden Age.

This formulation is significant because it placed the return of Maitreya in the distant future and says that the human world must first pass the nadir of the cosmic cycle before this can happen. Because things would get worse before they got better, people placed their hopes on the ascending motif of individual salvation, such as rebirth in the Pure Land or Tuṣita heaven, rather than the millennium.

### Buddhist millenarianism in China

It was in China that the worship of Maitreya and tradition of longing for a distant golden age evolved into millenarian movements. This transformation happened for three reasons. First, when Buddhism took root in China during the first few centuries C.E., it encountered a well-established tradition of Daoist millenarianism. This tradition encompassed many of the elements that would come to be associated with Buddhist millenarianism in East Asia, such as the tripartite division of sacred time. The Daoist millenarian tradition was focused on the immanent return of a transcendent manifestation of Laozi called Lord Lao on High (*taishang laojun*), who would establish a millennial kingdom called the Great Peace (*taiping*). From the second through fourth centuries C.E., this belief served as the seed for a number of sizable rebellions, including one that was able to establish a viable, although short-lived, state in the mountainous southwest.

The second innovation was the restructuring of the theory of cosmic rise and decline so as to place the enthronement of Maitreya Buddha at the nadir of the cycle, rather than at its peak. These ideas were developed in Chinese apocryphal sūtras from the sixth century, which discussed the arrival of Maitreya as a vast cleansing that would see a cosmic battle between bodhisattvas and demons, following which a pure and perfect world would be created. This reinterpretation not only made the arrival of the millennial event more immanent, it also located it at the lowest point of human

suffering. This new eschatology was especially appealing during times of demographic crisis, such as war or famine, which were now felt to portend the end of the age. Although such crises also fueled the ascending motif of Buddhist utopianism, the belief that the individual soul would find postmortem salvation in the Pure Land, Maitreya soon came to be distanced from this vision and closely associated with the descending motif of the apocalypse. This belief also provided inspiration for those who would take action to hasten along the millennium by causing the destruction that marked the end of the cycle.

The third innovation was the participation of Chinese political actors in worship of Maitreya and reinterpretation of the cakravartin, not as a precursor to the arrival of Maitreya, but as Maitreya himself. In part, this was facilitated by the pre-Buddhist belief in the divine significance of Chinese rulers as beneficiaries of the “mandate of heaven.” As early as the fourth century, rulers of the Chinese Northern Wei dynasty (386–534) were identified as Buddhist deities, first as TATHĀGATAS and later as Maitreya. The most famous instance occurred in the late seventh century, when the empress Wu Zhao (625–705) revealed her identity as Maitreya Buddha in order to bolster her highly contested claim to the throne.

This politicization of Maitreya worship was soon turned against its masters, and came to take on the distinctly antistate stance that it has held ever since. The earliest known instances both occurred in the year 613, when two separate individuals each proclaimed themselves to be Maitreya Buddha and raised the flag of rebellion. In the eighth and eleventh centuries, large-scale uprisings were mounted under the slogan of ending the decaying epoch of Śākyamuni and ushering in the arrival of the new buddha. Finally, in the early fourteenth century, a collection of religious societies devoted to the Maitreyan vision rose in rebellion against the Mongol Yuan dynasty (1279–1368), and the leader of one of these groups, Zhu Yuanzhang (1328–1398), founded the Ming (meaning “bright,” an allusion to the Buddhist ideal of divine KINGSHIP, the *vidyārājas*; Chinese, *ming wang*) dynasty in 1368.

### White Lotus sectarianism

The Ming dynasty brought organized Buddhism under close state control, while lay devotion became increasingly integrated into a syncretic mixture of Buddhism, Daoism, and Confucianism known as the Three Teachings. Particularly during the Ming and Qing dy-

nasties (mid-fourteenth through early twentieth centuries), this mixture took shape in a tradition of popular teachings known collectively as White Lotus sectarianism.

Although the White Lotus encompassed a number of independent teachings, the tradition as a whole developed through a medium of scriptures known as “precious scrolls” (*baojuan*), which were composed by the hundreds over the course of these six centuries. The earliest known text, dating from 1430, expounds a basic version of the White Lotus eschatology, including a tripartite division of sacred time, punctuated by periods of apocalyptic calamity between epochs, and the role of Maitreya as the buddha of the millennial third epoch. However, although Maitreya is occasionally mentioned in these scriptures in connection with the change of epoch, he is not the primary figure. Rather, the characteristically sectarian contribution to this scheme is a supreme deity called the Eternal Venerable Mother (*wusheng laomu*), from whom all life emanates, and who has sent a series of teachers to earth in order to save humankind from its own wickedness. This must be accomplished before the end of the second epoch, at which point, those of her human children who have cultivated goodness and purified themselves will be called to join the Dragon Flower Assembly and invited to dwell in a millennial paradise ruled over by Maitreya and the Eternal Venerable Mother.

As was the case with later Maitreyan millenarianism, the eschatological vision of the White Lotus sect sees the decay and destruction of the human order as precursors of the epochal change. Moreover, this process can be hastened by human action in the form of armed rebellion. Thus, the White Lotus tradition was strictly banned, most energetically by the Ming emperor who himself had ridden just such an uprising to power. The most notable period of White Lotus activity was during the nineteenth century, when a number of such teachings, such as the Eight Trigrams (*bagua*) and Primal Chaos (*hunyuan*) teachings, rose in rebellion, often spurred on by the claim of a leader to be the reincarnation of Maitreya. Such claims persisted well into the middle of the twentieth century, when groups such as the Way of Pervading Unity (*yiguandao*) prophesied that a Communist victory over the Nationalist forces would prompt the early arrival of the millennium. Even among those groups active during this period with no organizational or doctrinal ties to the White Lotus tradition, such as the mid-nineteenth-century Taipings or the Boxers five



decades later, the themes of millennial world renewal are easily linked to the larger tradition of Maitreya worship.

### Agrarian utopianism in Japan

In Japan, as well, native utopian ideals promised a coming age of peace and plenty. As had been the case in China, Buddhist millennialism in Japan grafted onto an extant tradition, restructuring elements so as to incorporate Buddhist terminology and figures such as Maitreya. However, in the Japanese tradition, this millennium was not premised on epochal change or the violent destruction of the world order, and as a consequence, did not serve as the inspiration for revolt as often as it did in China.

One characteristic of Japanese belief was the location of the promised land on earth, either on a mountaintop or across the sea. The pre-Buddhist cult of mountain worship was taken up and transformed by various sects of Japanese Buddhism, who established sacred mountains as the home of Maitreya and the location of the millennial paradise. The deathbed utterance of KŪKAI (774–835), the deified founder of the esoteric Shingon school, that he would descend to earth with Maitreya, has prompted the belief that he remains alive and in deep meditation on Mount Kōya. This and other sacred mountains, such as Fuji and Kimpū, became regarded as gates to the Pure Land, and were the home of ascetics known as *yamabushi*, who dwelled between heaven and earth. Similarly, another tradition prophesied the arrival of Maitreya by ship, prompting a tradition of popular folk worship in anticipation of the triumphal arrival of Maitreya in a ship laden with rice.

*See also:* Apocrypha; Cosmology; Monastic Militias; Nationalism and Buddhism; Politics and Buddhism; Pure Land Buddhism; Sanjie Jiao (Three Stages School); Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

#### Bibliography

- Baumgarten, Albert I., ed. *Apocalyptic Time*. Boston and Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2000.
- Haar, B. J. ter. *The White Lotus Teachings in Chinese Religious History*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Hori, Ichirō. *Folk Religion in Japan: Continuity and Change* (1968), ed. Joseph M. Kitagawa and Alan L. Miller. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1994.

Naquin, Susan. *Millenarian Rebellion in China: The Eight Triangles Uprising of 1813*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1976.

Overmyer, Daniel. *Folk Buddhist Religion: Dissenting Sects in Late Traditional China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1976.

Overmyer, Daniel. *Precious Volumes: An Introduction to Chinese Sectarian Scriptures from the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1999.

Ownby, David. "Chinese Millennial Traditions: The Formative Age." *American Historical Review* 104, no. 5 (1999): 1,513–1,530.

Seidel, Anna. "The Image of the Perfect Ruler in Early Taoist Messianism: Lao-tzu and Li Hung," *History of Religions* 9, nos. 2–3 (1969/1970): 216–247.

Sponberg, Alan, and Hardacre, Helen, eds. *Maitreya: The Future Buddha*. Cambridge, UK, and New York: Cambridge University Press, 1988.

THOMAS DUBOIS

---

MIND. *See* Consciousness, Theories of

---

### MINDFULNESS

Mindfulness (Sanskrit, *smṛti*; Pāli, *sati*) is a spiritual practice that is common to both early Buddhism and early Jainism. It plays a particularly important role in the former. Two conspicuously different forms of mindfulness are found near each other in the standard description of the PATH to liberation that occurs numerous times in the early canonical sermons: one in preparatory exercises and the other in meditation proper. During the former the (hypothetical) practitioner "acts consciously while going and while coming, while looking forward and while looking backward, while bending his limbs and while stretching them, while carrying his clothes and alms-bowl, while going, while standing, while sleeping, while waking, while speaking and while remaining silent." However, at some point the practitioner sits down, folds his legs, holds his body erect, and applies mindfulness. Applying mindfulness (Sanskrit, *smṛtyupasthāna*; Pāli, *satipaṭṭhāna*) is the precondition for the four stages of dhyāna (trance state) that follow. Indeed, mindfulness accompanies the practitioner in all of them, the fourth being characterized by "purity of equanimity and mindfulness." Clearly mindfulness in its highest degree

of purity is required for the next step: reaching liberating insight.

As happens frequently in the Buddhist canon, a number of sermons present mindfulness itself or, more precisely, the applications of mindfulness as the way to liberation. Some of these sermons have *smṛtyupasthāna* or *satipaṭṭhāna* in their title, and distinguish four applications of mindfulness: (1) on the body; (2) on feelings; (3) on the mind; (4) on the dharmas. The Pāli *Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta* of the *Majjhima Nikāya* makes the highest promises to those who practice mindfulness: “If anyone should develop these four applications of mindfulness in such a way for seven days, one of two fruits could be expected for him: either final knowledge here and now, or if there is a trace of clinging left, non-return.”

Mindfulness also figures in the noble eightfold path, at the seventh place, just before meditative concentration (*samādhi*). This position agrees with the account found in the standard description of the path to liberation, where mindfulness is a precondition for and an accompaniment of the four stages of *dhyāna*.

No doubt as a result of subsequent attempts to organize the received teachings of the Buddha, mindfulness came to be incorporated in various lists. It is, for example, the first of the seven “members of enlightenment” (*bodhyaṅga*). However, the list of seven members of enlightenment is itself an item in a longer list that altogether contains thirty-seven so-called aids to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣyadharmā*). The artificial nature of this enumeration can be seen from the fact that this long list also, and separately, contains the four applications of mindfulness, plus mindfulness as included in the five faculties (*indriya*), in the five forces (*bala*), and in the noble eightfold path. That is to say, mindfulness by itself accounts for eight of the thirty-seven aids to enlightenment.

See also: **Dhyāna (Trance State); Meditation**

### **Bibliography**

- Bronkhorst, Johannes. “Dharma and Abhidharma.” *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 48 (1985): 305–320.
- Gyatso, Janet, ed. *In the Mirror of Memory: Reflections on Mindfulness and Remembrance in Indian and Tibetan Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.

JOHANNES BRONKHORST

## MIRACLES

The English word *miracle* (from the Latin *miraculum*, meaning “object of wonder”) has traditionally been used in a Christian context to refer to an extraordinary event that cannot have been brought about by human power alone or by the ordinary workings of nature and hence must be ascribed to the intervention of God. For most Christian theologians, only God can perform miracles; the function of saints, in heaven close to God, is to act as intermediaries on behalf of a supplicant to request a miracle from God. Hence, according to a strict Christian interpretation of the word, there are no miracles in the Buddhist tradition. A looser definition of the term, however, harking back to its original meaning as “object of wonder,” allows miracles to be understood as extraordinary events that, because they cannot be explained by ordinary human powers or the everyday functioning of nature, evoke a sense of wonder. This looser definition proves useful to describe a wide variety of phenomena, including omens and other extraordinary changes in the natural world, acts of the Buddha and his disciples, and supernormal powers acquired through MEDITATION—all common throughout Buddhist literature.

### **Miracles in the life of the Buddha**

Paradigmatic miracles occur in accounts of the life of the Buddha, well-known wherever Buddhism is practiced. Although there is much diversity in detail, accounts of the Buddha’s birth generally describe it as a marvelous event, different in almost every way from an ordinary birth. The Buddha was conceived in a dream in which his mother saw a white elephant enter her womb, an event accompanied by earthquakes and other auspicious omens. Unlike other women in ancient India who gave birth sitting down, the Buddha’s mother gave birth standing up, the infant emerging not from the womb, but from his mother’s right side, causing her no pain. At birth the infant was bathed by streams of water that fell from the sky, after which he immediately took seven steps and declared in a loud voice, “I am the chief in the world.”

Later, as the child matures, marvelous events accompany him throughout his life as he receives the assistance of gods who through various devices help him to pursue his fated life as a seeker of truth. At the moment when Śākyamuni is enlightened and becomes a buddha, the earth shakes, the heavens resound with the sound of drums, and flowers fall from the sky. As a

buddha, Śākyamuni was believed to possess the standard set of supernormal powers or ABHIJÑĀ (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES) accruing to those of high spiritual attainments, including the power to know details of his previous lives, the ability to see the past lives of others, the power to read minds, and other magical powers, such as the ability to fly. In the course of his teachings, the Buddha demonstrates these powers repeatedly, frequently, for instance, recounting events that took place in the previous lives of members of his audience in order to explain the workings of KARMA. Similarly, the Buddha performed two famous miracles at the city of Śrāvastī in order to win converts. After admonishing his own disciples for displaying their magical powers in public, the Buddha declared that, in their place, he would perform a miracle at the foot of a mango tree to demonstrate his superiority to proponents of false teachings. On hearing this, his opponents uprooted all of the mango trees in the vicinity so that he would be unable to fulfill his vow. In response, the Buddha took the seed of a ripe mango, and no sooner planted it in the ground than it sprouted and in an instant grew into an enormous tree. This done, he fulfilled his promise to perform a miracle by the mango tree when he rose into the sky and emitted water and fire from his body in spectacular fashion.

Finally, the Buddha's NIRVĀṆA is accompanied by a number of marvelous events. When the Buddha predicts his own death, vowing to enter nirvāṇa in three months time, the earth quakes once again. Three months later, as the Buddha lay down to die, flowers fell from the sky. At the moment he entered nirvāṇa, there was a great earthquake and loud peals of thunder. Some of those present then attempted to light the funeral pyre, but were unable to do so. Later, when the disciple MAHĀKĀŚYAPA, who had been away, arrived on the scene, the pyre miraculously caught fire of itself, leaving behind relics that were themselves later attributed with miraculous powers.

Many attempts, of varying degrees of sophistication, have been made to root out all that is miraculous, and hence historically suspect, in accounts of the Buddha's life in order to derive a more sober, believable narrative, or to interpret miracles in the Buddha's life as rhetorical tools for explaining Buddhist doctrines. For the vast majority of Buddhists, however, marvelous events were and are an integral part of any biography of the Buddha. In general, Buddhists have interpreted these literally, as signs of the Buddha's unique attainments. Indeed, some of the phenomena described

above, such as the Buddha's power to see the previous lives of others, are recounted in such a matter-of-fact manner that they are miraculous only in a weak sense. In other words, however fantastic such powers may appear to a modern skeptic, from the perspective of the tradition, they are more commonsensical than marvelous.

### Disciples of the Buddha

Many of the Buddha's disciples were credited with supernormal powers and associated with miraculous events. Mahākāśyapa, as a product of his determined cultivation of the most trying austerities, could fly. ŚĀRIPUTRA attained the "dharma eye," allowing him to perceive the past lives of others. MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, called "foremost of those who have supernormal powers," could vanish from one place and appear in another in an instant.

Later figures in Indian Buddhism possessed marvelous powers as well. UPAGUPTA, for instance, to prove a point, once caused a drought of twelve years. The powerful King AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.), who was at first hostile to Buddhism but eventually became its greatest patron, was, according to legend, converted upon seeing the supernormal powers of a monk his executioners could not kill.

### Miracles in the spread of Buddhism

Miracles continued to play a prominent role in the history of Buddhism as it spread beyond India. Legends of the founding of Buddhism in other lands are typically tied to miraculous events. In Sri Lanka, it is said that the Buddha himself visited the island at a time when it was dominated by demons. Traveling directly to a grand meeting place of these demons, the Buddha hovered above them in the sky, calling up rain, winds, and darkness, and thereby terrifying the demons to such an extent that they conceded dominion of the island to him. In China, the introduction of Buddhism was linked to Emperor Ming of the Han dynasty (r. 58–75) who, according to the legend, had a marvelous dream in which he saw a golden deity flying through the air. The following day, when he asked his ministers to explain the dream, one informed him that he had heard of a deity called the Buddha whose body was of golden color and who could fly. The emperor then dispatched envoys to obtain more information about the Buddha, thereby initiating the introduction of Buddhism to China. In Japan, the introduction of the first Buddhist image was followed by widespread pesti-

lence, prompting the emperor to have the image destroyed. This act was followed by the miraculous appearance of a large log of camphor wood that emitted the sound of Buddhist chants. Impressed, the emperor gave orders that the wood be fashioned into two Buddhist images, thus assuring the successful introduction of Buddhist devotion to Japan.

### Miracles and monks

Throughout the Buddhist world, accounts of holy Buddhist monks are laced with miraculous events and descriptions of their marvelous powers. Many of these are patterned on accounts of the Buddha, noting a monk's auspicious birth and the omens that followed his death. It is said, for instance, that when the prominent Chinese monk Hongren (602–675) was born a bright light filled the room, and that when he died the sky turned dark and mountains trembled, as they did every year on the anniversary of his death. Other monks are credited with the standard supernormal powers of being able to read minds, levitate, and recognize the past lives of others. For example, according to one biography, the Korean monk WŎNHYO (617–686) once appeared at one hundred places at the same time. Holy monks are often thought to have special powers over nature, taming wild animals and changing the weather. The twelfth-century Vietnamese monk Tịnh Giỏi, for instance, received the title Rain Master after provoking rain during a serious drought, something other eminent monks of the time were unable to accomplish. The Japanese monk KŪKAI (774–835) was also said to be able to provoke rain through his mastery of Buddhist ritual. To this day, stories circulate of miraculous events associated with prominent or mysterious monks, nuns, and lay Buddhist figures, living and dead.

In addition to miracles provoked by individuals, countless miracles are associated with Buddhist objects. Buddhist scriptures are said at times to protect their owners from fire, Buddhist images come to life in dreams to offer warnings and advice, and prayers to relics result in miraculous cures. Such stories permeate Buddhist culture, only a small portion of the total ever being written down or otherwise reaching beyond the local level.

### Explanations for miracles

Scholastic Buddhist literature does not group all of the phenomena discussed here into one category; there is no well-attested Buddhist term equivalent to *miracle*.

Buddhist writers have expounded at length on the classic set of supernormal powers accruing to holy men, but have shown less interest in proposing a general theory of miracles. In some cases, the miraculous was explained according to local theories. In East Asia, for instance, recourse was often made to the Chinese concept of resonance (*ganying*) by which animals, the weather, and so on respond to a person of high attainments or an event of extraordinary significance just as one string on a musical instrument responds naturally to another. More frequently, wondrous events are simply recorded without a sustained attempt at explanation. In fact, many Buddhist texts and teachers make a point of downplaying the significance of supernatural events. They insist that supernormal powers are a by-product of cultivation and not its goal. The Buddha himself upbraided his disciples for displaying their powers in public. Nonetheless, the allure of the marvelous made it an exceptional rhetorical tool. That is, Buddhist texts are at pains to demonstrate the extraordinary powers of, for instance, the Buddha, before going on to dismiss these powers as child's play and peripheral to the far greater goals of enlightenment and release from suffering.

There has never been a strong tradition of skepticism toward miracles within Buddhist circles, though those hostile to Buddhism were always ready to discount Buddhist claims to the marvelous. For the most part, Buddhists have always accepted the supernormal powers of the Buddha and the potential of Buddhist figures and objects to provoke miracles. In modern times, however, it has become commonplace for Buddhist writers to strip away miraculous events from ancient Buddhist writings in an attempt to reveal a historical core to a given legend. While not in itself unreasonable, this approach is often accompanied by the assumption that miraculous stories emerge in response to the demands of an unsophisticated laity, steeped in popular superstition. In fact, for most of Buddhist history, miracle stories have been popular at all social levels and accepted as literally true by even the most erudite of monks.

The future of Buddhist miracles is uncertain. Even Buddhist leaders skeptical of accounts of miracles have not made concerted efforts to disprove Buddhist miracles or discourage the propagation of stories of marvelous, supernatural events associated with Buddhism, suggesting that miracles will continue to occupy a place of importance in Buddhist culture for the foreseeable future.

See also: **Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies; Buddha, Life of the; Disciples of the Buddha; Relics and Relics Cults**

### Bibliography

- Gómez, Luis O. "The Bodhisattva as Wonder-Worker." In *Prā-jñāpāramitā and Related Systems: Studies in Honor of Edward Conze*, ed. Lewis Lancaster. Berkeley, CA: Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, 1977.
- Kieschnick, John. *The Eminent Monk: Buddhist Ideals in Medieval Chinese Hagiography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Nakamura, Kyoko Motomochi. *Miraculous Stories from the Japanese Buddhist Tradition: The Nihon ryōiki of the Monk Kyōkai*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1973.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Thomas, Edward J. *The Life of Buddha as Legend and History* (1927). London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1975.
- Woodward, Kenneth L. *The Book of Miracles: The Meaning of the Miracle Stories in Christianity, Judaism, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Islam*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1999.

JOHN KIESCHNICK

## MIZUKO KUYŌ

*Mizuko kuyō* is a Japanese rite performed at Buddhist temples for the repose of aborted fetuses. *Mizuko*, literally "water child," is the modern term used for fetus, and *kuyō* refers to rituals for making offerings. *Mizuko kuyō* was popular particularly in the 1970s and 1980s, and is still performed at many Buddhist temples.

Japanese Buddhists are divided in their attitudes toward *mizuko kuyō*. The Shin (true) Pure Land school (Jōdo Shinshū) is opposed officially to this rite on the grounds that it is based on the superstitious fear that spirits of the dead can curse the living. Others criticize the rite as a moneymaking scheme made popular through advertisements designed to make women feel guilty about abortions and the anguish of the aborted fetuses, who will surely curse those who killed them. Defenders of the rite argue that *mizuko kuyō* provides the same ritual service that funeral and memorial rites do in commemorating and caring for the deceased.

Associated with *mizuko kuyō* is the practice of dedicating a sculpted image of Kṣitigarbha (Japanese, Jizō), the BODHISATTVA who protects children, by tying a baby

bib around its neck. Parents inscribe the bib with the name of the child, and often include words of apology and regret. While some of these words can be interpreted as expressions of guilt arising from the clear sense of moral wrongdoing, they more often express sadness and regret for having done something circumstantially unavoidable but not morally reprehensible.

See also: **Abortion**

### Bibliography

- Hardacre, Helen. *Marketing the Menacing Fetus in Japan*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997.
- LaFleur, William R. *Liquid Life: Abortion and Buddhism in Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

## MODERNITY AND BUDDHISM

No religion has a greater claim to embodying modernity than Buddhism. This assertion can be supported by examining what is meant by *modernity*, and by relating this modernity to the doctrinal characteristics of Buddhism. The term *modernity* derives from Latin *modernus*, which itself derives from the adverb *modo*, a term that since the fifth century C.E. was equivalent to *nunc* (now). During the European Middle Ages one's status as *modernus* required distinguishing oneself from the *antiqui*. Modernity, then, is to be understood as requiring an act of self-conscious distanciation from a past in which ignorance or naiveté prevailed. More specifically, modernity has required moving from an organic to a mechanic conception of the cosmos and society, from hierarchy to equality, from the corporate to the individual, and from an understanding of reality in which everything resonates with everything else to an understanding built around precision and the increasing differentiation of domains. Ultimately, *modernity* has had to do with the perpetual questioning of one's presuppositions. In terms of religion, modernity has generally involved the rejection of a symbolic view of reality and of anthropomorphic conceptions of the divinity, and, even more radically, the rejection of any notion of transcendence. When discussing modernity in the context of Western history, this process has been understood above all as involving a movement away from religion. Both in Christian and Buddhist terms, however, such a view is problematic to the extent that the process of differen-

tiation has involved less a movement away from religion than the coming into being of two separate domains, the religious and the secular.

### Concepts of modernity and causality

The concept of modernity has been used in a Buddhist context, mainly when studying reform movements of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. The concept of modernity has not been used, however, when studying the emergence of the movement or the characteristics of the dharma. The main reason for this has to do with the assumption that although the time of modernity's birth may be uncertain, its place of birth, the West, is certain. Against this view it is worth considering whether instead of thinking in terms of one modernity, one should think in terms of multiple modernities. Thinking in terms of multiple modernities forces us to consider the differences between a modernity that combines heightened reflexivity and technological development, as in the West since at least the seventeenth century, and a modernity understood mainly in cultural terms. This means that even as we seek to identify the constitutive elements of modernity, we must keep in mind that those characteristics are not found all at once. For example, in the world in which Buddhism appeared there was no technological equivalent to the Buddha's concern with causality. On the other hand, as we shall see below, one can establish a correlation between the Buddhist analysis of reality in terms of dharmas and the use of coins in northern India in the sixth century B.C.E.

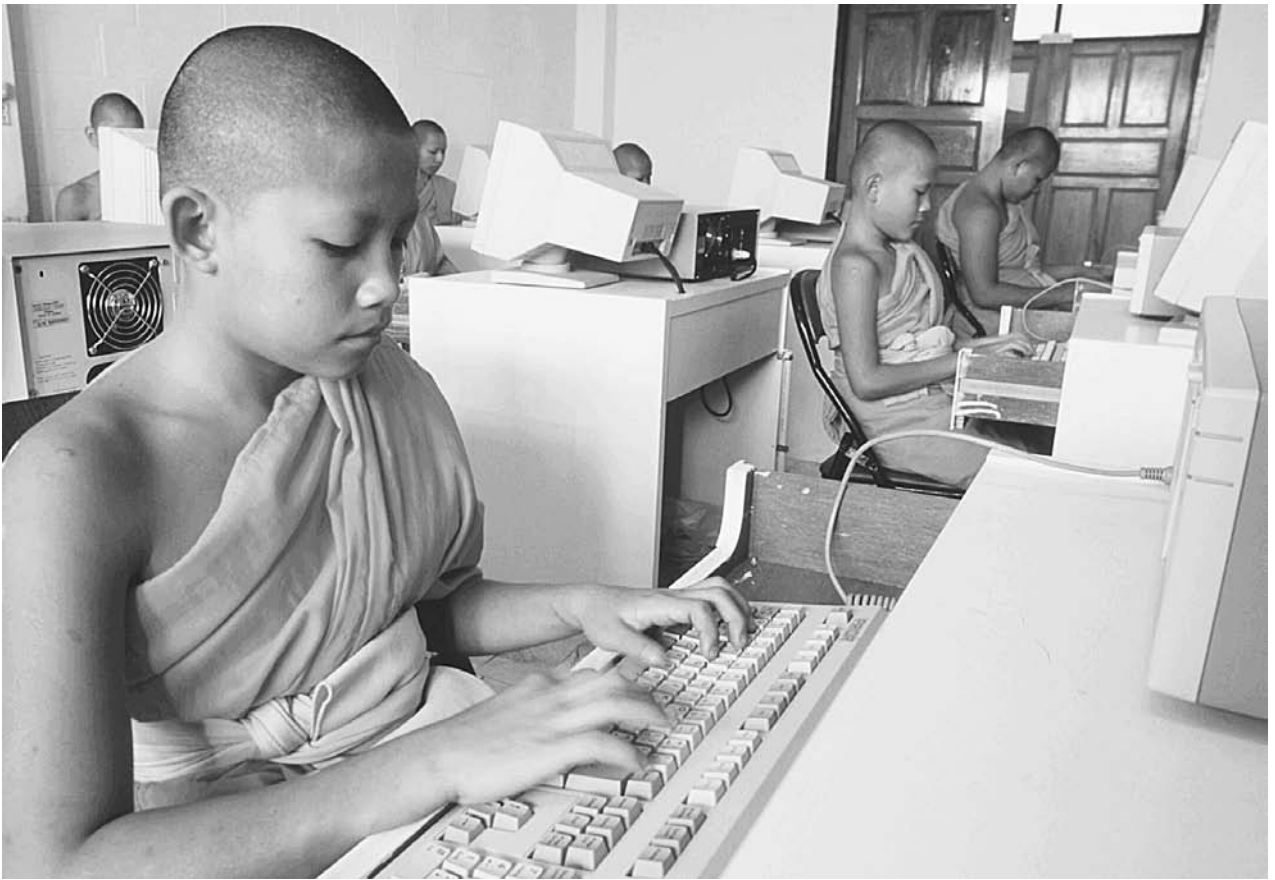
Causality is present at the beginning of Buddhism, when, according to the *Mahātanhāsaṅkhāya-sutta* of the *Majjhimanikāya*, the Buddha teaches: "When this exists, that comes to be; with the arising of this, that arises." Causality is similarly present as the principle that underlies the relation among the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS: DUḤKHA (SUFFERING), the cause of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the PATH that leads to that cessation. The counterpart of a causal chain whose components can be identified is a conception of the world based on the principle of correlation, a conception in which various aspects of reality resonate with each other, allowing those who can manipulate such correlations to claim special rights and powers for themselves. The Buddha rejected such an organic understanding of society, which was exemplified by the brahmins' claims to have been born from the mouth of the primordial being, Puruṣa. According to the *Assalāyana-sutta* of the *Majjhimanikāya*, the Buddha ridiculed those claims, pointing out that brahmin

women give birth just like everybody else. This issue is related to the contrast between the Buddhist and the traditional Indian understanding of language. While the former regards the connection between words and reality as arbitrary, so that words are understood as labels, the latter, being a "sonic" view of reality, regards the connection between words and reality as involving an intrinsic connection between the very sound of words and the things named by them.

It is this assumption of a nonarbitrary connection between words and things that underlies the belief in the efficacy of RITUAL and of practices generally labeled as magic. It is worth noticing in this regard the Buddha's refusal to be considered a magician in the sense of being a *māyāvin*, a possessor of *māyā* (understood in this context as "fraud" or "deceit")—this, despite the fact that he was believed to possess supernatural or magic powers (*ṛddhi*) and was known as *daśabala* (endowed with ten powers). The Buddhist rejection of the ritual powers claimed by brahmins and by priests in general is still present today, for, at least in theory, Buddhist monks are not supposed to have sacramental powers analogous to those that depend on a person's birth or those that Catholic priests claim to have obtained through ordination. The distance established between monks and sacramental powers is further demonstrated by the fact that the return of monks to lay status is common, especially in Southeast Asia. It is true that throughout the Buddhist world, including Sri Lanka and southeast Asia, monks engage in ritual practices, such as the *paritta* ceremony, the selling of AMULETS AND TALISMANS, and the preparation of astrological charts, love philters, and the like. But it is also true that when seeking to return to a scripturally-based religion, Buddhist reform movements have been able to find canonical support for the rejection of what reformers considered superstitious practices.

### Subjectivity and intentionality

The condemnation or at least mistrust of ritual practices, especially of the wasteful expenditures associated with them, has been central to attempts at modernization. Equally important have been efforts to move religious practices away from the material world and toward a spiritual realm, a realm that has frequently been equated with the domain of morality. All these processes are ultimately linked to an emphasis on subjectivity, will, and intentionality. We encounter all of them in Buddhism, long before they became the preoccupation of medieval Christians. We find an early example when the Buddha advises Sigālaka to engage



Young monks take a computer class at Ban-Thaton Temple in northern Thailand in 1995. © Gilles Mingasson/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

in ethical behavior and avoid dissipation instead of engaging in elaborate ritual practices. We also encounter it more than two millennia later when, intent on modernizing their country, southeast Asian kings such as Mongkut (r. 1851–1868) and Chulalongkorn (1868–1910) sought to curtail ritual expenditures, labeling them as wasteful and superstitious. That a Thai king such as Mongkut sought to reform the SAṄGHA in the process of centralizing power and modernizing his country is typical of attempts at modernization. Equally typical—whether in Thailand, in Myanmar (Burma), or in Reformation Europe—is the fact that reformers have usually shown an extreme unease toward ritual and consider themselves as having returned to the original, textually-based teachings of their religion. Indeed in Thailand, the monks around Mongkut (himself an ex-monk) called themselves the *Thammayut* (*Dhammayuttika*, “those adhering to doctrine”). Connected to these twin processes of centralization of power and curtailing of ritual activities is the delimitation of a religious realm, analogous to that found in the West since the eighteenth century.

Once again, we find examples of this delimitation in Southeast Asia, partly as the result of the desire to emulate the degree of development demonstrated by colonial powers, and ultimately to counteract the colonial powers’ activities.

The emphasis on intentionality is found in the acknowledgment, present since the earliest day of Buddhism, that in order for an action to be considered blameworthy, one has to be aware of what one is doing. This distinguishes Buddhism radically from the archaic approach found in the Hindu world, according to which one incurs guilt regardless of one’s intentions. What is peculiar to Buddhism is the coexistence of an emphasis on intentionality and a radical rejection of a reified self. Indeed, what distinguishes Buddhism from all other religious systems is a processual understanding of reality combined with the rejection of reification, an understanding and a rejection that find their culmination in the concept of *anātman* (no-self).

But rejection of the notion of self does not entail lack of concern for subjectivity. The reverse is in fact

the case, as Buddhist intellectual elites have devoted considerable effort to exploring in theory and in practice various levels of awareness. Contrary to common assumptions, however, meditative practices do not always have as their goal a calm mind (*śamatha*). In the context of a discussion of the connection between Buddhism and modernity it is significant to note that the mental states that are the goal of *VIPASSANĀ* (SANSKRIT, *VIPĀŚYANĀ*) meditation—awareness, discrimination, analysis—are congruent with the analytical attitude that allows one to master the world. In more general terms, the exploration of one's subjectivity can be said to constitute a central component of one's attempt to distance oneself from the tyranny of the past. But this exploration of levels of consciousness did not lead Buddhists to a mastery of the physical world similar to the one that occurred in the West since the scientific revolution, bringing us back to the point made at the beginning of this entry about the need to distinguish a modernity that takes place mainly in cultural terms from one that encompasses economic and technological attainments. It should be added that one of the components of the Buddhist revival that has taken place in Sri Lanka has involved a revival of *vipassanā* meditation among the urban middle classes.

### **Institutional modernity**

There are intimations of Buddhist modernity not just at the philosophical or psychological level, but also at the institutional level. We have already seen how throughout Buddhist history attempts were made to put distance between monks and supernatural powers. A further step in that direction was taken when it was determined that position in the *saṅgha* would depend exclusively on seniority, and that decisions would be made by majority vote or consensus. Another significant characteristic of the *saṅgha* is the fact that, in principle, administrative positions could not be inherited because monks were expected to be celibate. It goes without saying that to a greater or lesser extent all these regulations were breached in practice. We know, for example, that monks had property and that they were able to keep prebends within the family by passing administrative positions from uncle to nephew. Similarly, one needs to keep in mind that the seniority system is overruled by GENDER considerations, insofar as even the most junior monk is considered senior to even the most senior nun. Despite this, gender-based taboos prevalent in South Asia generally do not apply to Buddhists; for example, whereas menstruating women are not allowed to enter Hindu

temples, their Buddhist counterparts can enter their own temples. More generally, it is important to note that even when disregarded in practice, that certain regulations had to be honored at least in theory establishes an abstract legal framework. Even more significant is the fact that such a framework was not transcendentally legitimized.

### **The economics of modernity**

It would be worthwhile to examine the conditions that may have contributed to the emergence of this radically modern understanding of the world. In broad swathe, the process of urbanization, political centralization, and monetarization of the economy that took place in northern India in the sixth century B.C.E. can be understood as constituting a radical change that required a readjustment of the ideological system that includes religion. In this sense, Buddhism can be understood as a critique of the new order, but also as a commentary. Money, for example, can be related both to asceticism and to the concept of *dharma*. Money is in some ways analogous to asceticism because it symbolizes the solidification of labor, and, insofar as it is not spent, money constitutes a deferral of the satisfaction of one's desires. Money is also related to the concept of *dharma* in that just as all of reality can be analyzed in terms of *dharma*s, all economic interactions—labor, commodities, one's position in the world in relation to labor—can be analyzed using money as the means of universal convertibility. In a hierarchical society in which one's chances in life were determined by one's position in the hierarchy, money, as the ultimate solvent, can have liberating effects. In this regard, insofar as it dissolves qualitative relationships into quantitative ones, money dissolves hierarchies, and in that sense it functions as does language in relation to sensory objects: as a label, as a mere designation. That in a society such as India the cash nexus can be liberating can be seen even today in the case of the B. R. AMBEDKAR Buddhists of Maharashtra: As Timothy Fitzgerald shows, besides being highly literate and resisting actively the power of brahmins and Marathas, Ambedkar Buddhists are willing to work only for cash.

Given the importance of money in Buddhism, it is not surprising that it was urban groups, above all merchants, who identified most readily with this approach to life. This was also the case for the land-based *gahapati*, who were also early supporters of the *saṅgha*. The *gahapati* are especially relevant, not only because they constituted networks of traders who can be regarded as having helped the expansion of Buddhism; as



interstitial groups, the *gahapati* are also significant for comparative purposes, given analogous developments in the eastern Mediterranean at the time of the birth of another successful world religion, Christianity. Considering the importance of trade and traders in the early history of Buddhism, it is at first surprising to find that the rules of discipline kept monks from handling the ultimate leveler, money. But such rules can be understood as rendering visible the autonomy of the economic realm, as well as the relatively new reality of money as the embodiment of labor.

Suspicion toward transcendence, an emphasis on contractual arrangements, and a tendency toward analysis and abstraction—all these characteristics can easily be shown to have been disregarded in practice long before the advent of the Mahāyāna. Thus, for every Mongkut one can point to *dharmārajas*, such as the rulers of Angkor. Similarly, the modernization of Thailand can be contrasted to the rigidity of southeast Asian polities whose Buddhist-based systems of legitimation interfered with attempts to resist colonial aggression. Likewise, we can see the rationalization of everyday life challenged, either by the materiality of popular ritual or by the utopian emphasis on subjectivity and inner freedom cultivated by the middle classes. In conclusion, we may apply to Buddhism what we have written about modernity in general—namely, that the fundamental ambiguity at its core is revealed by the tension between the two strands at work in the cultivation of subjectivity: on the one hand the self-centered rationality of individualism, and on the other the ideal of internal freedom and ceaseless self-exploration exemplified by mystics.

See also: **Colonialism and Buddhism; Economics**

### Bibliography

- Benavides, Gustavo. "Modernity." In *Critical Terms for Religious Studies*, ed. Mark C. Taylor. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.
- Bond, George D. *The Buddhist Revival in Sri Lanka: Religious Tradition, Reinterpretation and Response*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1988.
- Fitzgerald, Timothy. "Politics and Ambedkar Buddhism in Maharashtra." In *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*, ed. Ian Harris. London and New York: Pinter, 1999.
- Gombrich, Richard. *Theravāda Buddhism: A Social History of Buddhism from Ancient Benares to Modern Colombo*. London and New York: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1988.

Gombrich, Richard, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.

Harris, Ian, ed. *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*. London and New York: Pinter, 1999.

Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values, Issues*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.

Tambiah, S. J. *World Conqueror and World Renouncer. A Study of Buddhism and Polity in Thailand against a Historical Background*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.

GUSTAVO BENAVIDES

---

## MOHE ZHIGUAN

The *Mohe zhiguan* is a work by ZHIYI (538–597). It was transcribed from his lectures by his disciple Guanding (561–632), and it is considered one of the “Three Great Works of Tiantai” and a comprehensive manual of Tiantai practice. The title means “The Great Calming and Contemplation,” *zhi* and *guan* being the Chinese translations of the traditional Buddhist terms *śamatha* and *vipāśyanā* (Pāli, *vipassanā*). In Chinese, the first term means literally “stopping,” the latter “contemplating”; for both Zhiyi distinguishes “relative” and “absolute” types. Relative stopping and contemplating are each interpreted, in typical Tiantai manner, as having three aspects:

1. Stopping as putting an end to something.
2. Stopping as dwelling in something.
3. Stopping as an arbitrary name for a reality that is ultimately neither stopping nor nonstopping.

1. Contemplation as comprehending something.
2. Contemplation as seeing through something.
3. Contemplation as an arbitrary name for a reality that is ultimately neither contemplation nor noncontemplation.

The first sense of stopping corresponds to the second sense of contemplation (ending something as seeing through it); the second sense of stopping corresponds to the first sense of contemplation (dwelling in some-

thing as comprehending it); and the third senses of both correspond to each other (each is a provisional name for an absolute reality that can be described alternately as quiescent, illuminating, both, or neither). On the basis of this interpervasion of stopping and contemplating, Zhiyi establishes the “absolute (or perfect-sudden) stopping and contemplating.” Zhiyi first gives an overview of the ritual procedures for practice in the “four samādhis”: the “constantly sitting,” “constantly walking,” “half sitting and half walking,” and “neither sitting nor walking” samādhis. The first three are specific ritual practices, during which Tiantai doctrinal contemplations were to be simultaneously applied. The fourth samādhi, known also as the “samādhi of following one’s own attention,” while also associated with particular texts and practices, was more broadly applicable. This involved the contemplation of each moment of subjective mental activity (good, evil, or neutral) as it arose, and the application of the Tiantai three truths doctrine to see its nature as empty, provisionally posited, and the mean—that is, as the absolute ultimate reality that pervades and includes, and is identical to, all other dharmas.

After this overview, Zhiyi describes “ten vehicles of contemplation.” The first of these ten vehicles is the contemplation of (1) the realm of the inconceivable. It is here that Zhiyi gives his famous teaching of “the three thousand quiddities inherently entailed in each moment of experience” (*yinian sanqian*). All possible determinacies are here to be seen not as “contained” in or “produced by” a single moment of experience, but as “identical to” each moment of experience, just as a thing is identical to its own characteristics and properties, or to its own process of becoming and perishing. As a supplement to this practice, Zhiyi then describes nine other contemplations of the same object in terms of (2) *bodhicitta*, (3) skillful pacification of the mind, (4) universal refutation of all dharmas, (5) recognition of obstructions and throughways, (6) adjustment of aspects of the way, (7) curative aids, (8) understanding stages of progress, (9) forbearance, and (10) freedom from attachment to spiritual attainments. The text applies these ten methods first to one’s own conditioned existence as such, and then to other more specific objects of contemplation, such as KARMA (ACTION), illnesses, defilements, and so on.

See also: Tiantai School; Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipaśyanā)

### Bibliography

- Donner, Neal. “Chih-i’s Meditation on Evil.” In *Buddhist and Taoist Practice in Medieval Chinese Society*, ed. David W. Chappell. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1987.
- Donner, Neal. “Sudden and Gradual Intimately Conjoined: Chih-i’s T’ien-t’ai View.” In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Donner, Neal, and Stevenson, Daniel B. *The Great Calming and Contemplation: A Study and Annotated Translation of the First Chapter of Chih-i’s Mo-ho chih-kuan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Hurvitz, Leon. *Chih-i (538–597): An Introduction to the Life and Ideas of a Chinese Buddhist Monk*. Brussels: Institut Belges Des Hautes Etudes Chinoises, 1980.
- Ng Yu-kwan. *T’ien-t’ai Buddhism and Early Mādhyamika*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii, 1993.
- Stevenson, Daniel. “The Four Kinds of Samādhi in Early T’ien-t’ai Buddhism.” In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.

BROOK ZIPORYN

---

## MONASTIC ARCHITECTURE

The monastery has been and remains the core of Buddhist communal life in all parts of Asia. Designated religious space first appeared in India in the late centuries B.C.E., and the importance, size, and complexity of Buddhist monastery buildings increased as the religion traveled eastward across Central Asia to China, Korea, and Japan. Always constructed with local materials, monastery architecture adapted itself to every region of Asia, from desert sands to snow-covered mountains, and the individual structures changed according to the worship requirements of every branch and school of Buddhist Asia. Yet its fundamental purpose as a setting for Buddhist worship and education has remained constant through more than two millennia.

### Monastic architecture in South Asia

The origins of the Buddhist monastery lie in residential architecture at the time of the historical Buddha, Gautama Siddhārtha. According to legend, a merchant once offered the Buddha and his congregation sixty dwellings for meditation and retreat. Thereafter it became fashionable for wealthy lay devotees to offer large complexes of buildings to accommodate the needs of

monastic life. Although each structure was probably made of perishable materials, such as bamboo, thatch, and wood, the buildings included dwellings, private cells, porches, storehouses, privies, promenades, wells, bathing chambers, and halls of unspecified purposes. The same multiplicity of building functions, usually in a secluded location but close enough to the greater population to allow for alms collection, would remain standard for monastery architecture in East Asia. The conversion of residential space into Buddhist space, including the donation of residences for transformation into monasteries, would also become common in East Asia.

Three structures named in Sanskrit texts or inscriptions of the last centuries B.C.E. are associated with early Indian Buddhist monastic architecture: the *vihāra*, the *caitya*, and the *STŪPA*. All were constructed of enduring materials and were derived from vernacular architecture in which rooms of a covered arcade enclose an open courtyard. In a Buddhist context, *vihāra* refers to the residential cells of monks and the courtyard they define. Because a resident monastic population is fundamental to religious life, the Sanskrit term *vihāra* can, in certain instances, be translated as “monastery.” The first meaning of *caitya* is mound or pedestal, but the concept of a locus for elevation quickly gave way to a more general meaning of “sacred place.” In the vocabulary of Buddhist architecture, *caitya* is most often an adjective for hall (*caityagrha*), and the most common form of *caitya* is a rock-carved worship cave with a *stūpa* inside. Some of the best examples of this kind of *caitya* hall are at Lmas Rṣi in the Barabar Hills and Bhājā and the nearly adjacent site, Karlī, both about one hundred kilometers southeast of Mumtaz (Bombay). Dated to around the third century B.C.E., the first century B.C.E., and the first century C.E., respectively, the exterior entry to each is marked by a pointed, horseshoe-shaped arch known as a *caitya* arch. The same archway appears in relief sculpture from contemporary *stūpas* at Bhārhut and SĀÑCĪ.

Although each is best known for its monumental *stūpa* and in some cases *torāṇa* (gateways) with relief sculptures recounting the life and legends of the Buddha, the monasteries Sāñcī in Madhya Pradesh, Amāvatī and Nāgārjunikoṇḍa in Andhra Pradesh, and Taxila in present-day Pakistan included all three types of monuments in the late centuries B.C.E. and early centuries C.E. Moreover, all remained sacred sites of Buddhism to which architecture would be added through their history. Temple 17 at Sāñcī, for instance, built

four centuries after the monastery’s famous *stūpa*, is an excellent example of a Gupta temple.

### Rock-carved monastic architecture

Full-scale monastic complexes were also carved into natural rock in India. Most famous are the *caitya* and *vihāra* of AJAṆṬĀ in Aurangabad, Maharashtra. Consisting of twenty-eight caves excavated over ten centuries, Ajaṇṭā includes some of the best examples of architecture of the Gupta period (ca. fourth to seventh centuries), the stylistic pinnacle in Buddhist art production in India. Two distinctive cave types and all three architectural forms are preserved there. The majority of caves are *vihāra*-style, consisting of monastic cells enclosing a central, open, squarish space or an interior with pillars arranged in grid pattern. *Caitya*-style caves at Ajaṇṭā (numbers 9, 10, 19, and 26) are elliptical in shape with pillar-defined arcades and a *stūpa* at the interior end of the ellipse. Like the majority of caves at Ajaṇṭā, all the *caitya*-caves are MAHĀYĀNA. That is, the Buddha image is represented, often seated on in a *stūpa*, in the *caitya* chapels. In plan, it is hard to differentiate between a Mahāyāna and pre-Mahāyāna *caitya*- or *vihāra*-style cave. Inside they are immediately distinguishable, the early ones having an unornamented *stūpa* for circumambulation at the deepest point in the cave and the later ones with the Buddha image represented not only on the *stūpa* but in other sculpture and murals.

Rock-cut monasteries and temple complexes were constructed in India through the course of Buddhist history. The details of architectural style were often of the period, so that a Gupta monastery might house a building whose structure, minus the iconographic decoration, would be hard to distinguish from a contemporary Hindu temple. In general, it can be said that Hindu architecture surged and Buddhist monastery construction began to wane after the Gupta period. By that time, however, monks and travelers from the east had come to India to study, and Indian Buddhists had traveled eastward. The midway points where meetings between Chinese and Indian monks occurred resulted in some of the most extraordinary Buddhist monasteries known. Monasteries in these points of encounter in former Chinese and Russian Turkestan, the present-day Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region of China, and the republics of Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, and Turkmenistan, survive as ruins in oases of the death-defying mountain ranges, deserts, and barren wasteland that characterize CENTRAL ASIA.

Almost every oasis had a Buddhist presence, although chronologies of the sites and their architecture are sketchy. It is similarly difficult to trace the movement of Buddhist sects from one to another. Datable materials suggest Buddhist monasteries propagated in Central Asia by the third century C.E. and survived until other religions, such as Islam, or invasions of peoples, such as the Mongols, destroyed them. Like most construction in Central Asia, monastery buildings were almost without exception mud brick. Some of the earliest Buddhist monasteries in Central Asia are in Miran on the southern SILK ROAD in eastern Xinjiang province. An inscription and paintings date Buddhism in Miran to the second century C.E. Both freestanding temples and stūpas survive.

Buddhism was present in China by the first century C.E., and a growing number of sites such as the rock-carved elephant at Lianyungang in Jiangsu province attest to this fact. By the fourth century, Buddhist CAVE SANCTUARIES inspired by Indian models were carved in several regions of Xinjiang, in China proper, and at oases in China's westernmost territory. Most famous among the cave monasteries are, from west to east, Kizil, Kumtura, and Bezeklik in Xinjiang; the Mogao and other cave-temple groups in the DUNHUANG region and Maijishan in Gansu province of Western China; and YUN'GANG, Tianlongshan, Xiangtangshan, LONGMEN, and Gongxian in the north central Chinese provinces of Shanxi, Hebei, and Henan. Additional cave sanctuaries have been studied in China in the last two decades of the twentieth century, in particular in Gansu, the Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region, and southeastern China, giving way to redating and refinement of chronologies. Still, it is not possible to suggest a clear path of transmission of Buddhism and its monasteries. Rather, monastery remains suggest that, from the third or fourth centuries through the ninth or tenth centuries, monks traveled and dwelt in Buddhist sites from Afghanistan, Persia, Turkmenistan, and Uzbekistan in the West to Central China in the East, alongside practitioners of other faiths; their monasteries consisted of rock-cut caitya halls, freestanding temples, and stūpas. The earliest monastery remains in China date to the fifth century. As far as can be determined, the dominant structures in early Chinese monasteries were a stūpa and Buddhist worship hall, with the stūpa often towering as a major monument in a town or city.

### Monastic architecture in China

By this time, the stūpa had become four-sided in plan, closer in appearance to multistory Chinese towers of the late B.C.E. and early C.E. centuries than to circular stūpas of India or Central Asia. The Northern Wei (386–534) capital at Luoyang in Henan province contained 1,367 Buddhist structures or building complexes. Its two most important monasteries were Jimingsi, which had a seven-story pagoda, and Yongningsi, whose wooden pagoda rose 161 meters in nine stories. Each side of each story had three doors and six windows and was supported by ten pillars. The doors were vermilion lacquer, held in place with golden nails. Golden bells hung from each corner of each level. The great Buddha hall directly to its north was fashioned after the main hall of audience of the Luoyang palace. It contained a three-meter golden Buddha. Also following imperial architecture, Yongningsi was enclosed by a 212-by-301 meter mud-earth wall, 3.3 meters thick, with a gate on each side; its main gate, seven bays across the front, was sixty-six meters high and rose three stories. Yongning Monastery is said to have contained a thousand bays of rooms, among which were monks' quarters, towers, pavilions, and the main Buddha hall and pagoda behind one another at the center.

The oldest wooden architecture in China survives at four monasteries in Shanxi province of the late eighth and ninth centuries of the Tang dynasty (618–907). Still resembling palace architecture, Buddhist halls also became models for sarcophagi in the Tang period. The most important monasteries were commissioned by the emperor or empress, usually for national capitals or sacred Buddhist peaks.

It was still common in the Tang dynasty for imperial residential architecture to be transformed into a Buddhist monastery. The residence of the Prince of Wei, son of the second Tang emperor, was transformed in 658 into a monastery of more than four thousand bays of rooms with thirteen major Buddhist halls arranged around ten courtyards. One hall measured 51.5 by 33 meters at the base. It was not the main hall, which was considerably larger. By the Tang dynasty, it is possible to associate building plans with Buddhist ceremonies. Halls used for ordination of Zhenyan (Shingon in Japan) monks were divided into front and back areas, the private back space for the initiation rite in which the Womb and Diamond World MAṆḌALAS were removed from the wall and placed on a low central table or the floor. Other halls had a central inner space for the altar and images and an enclosing



The Mogao Caves at Dunhuang, China, also known as the Cave of the Thousand Buddhas. © Wolfgang Kaehler/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

ambulatory defined by pillars. Both hall types and full-scale monasteries are depicted in Buddhist murals and paintings on silk of the period.

From the Song (960–1279), Liao (907–1125), and Jin (1125–1234) dynasties, monasteries with numerous buildings survive all over China. As was the case earlier, a pagoda or multistory pavilion and main Buddha hall on the same building line dominated some monasteries. Tenth- or eleventh-century monasteries with pagodas or pavilions as their focus include Dule Monastery in Hebei province, whose pavilion and front gate date 984; Fogong Monastery in Shanxi, whose 67-meter pagoda, the tallest wooden pagoda in China today, dates 1056; and Fengguo Monastery in Liaoning, whose main hall was built in 1013.

One of the most extensive lines of main structures survives at Longxing Monastery in Zhengding, Hebei province, where a hall to the Sixth Patriarch HUIYANG, a hall to Śākyamuni Buddha, an ordination platform, and a pavilion to Avalokiteśvara known as Dabei or Foxiang Pavilion stood on the main axial line behind the front gate; pairs of side halls, pavilions, and tow-

ers framed each major courtyard in front of one of the axially-positioned structures. The pairing of pagodas and pavilions on either side in front of a main hall became standard in tenth- to thirteenth-century Chinese Buddhist monasteries. Shanhua Monastery in Datong in Shanxi province consisted of a front gate, a hall of the three deities, and a main hall along its main building line, along with two pairs of halls and a pair of pavilions joined to the covered arcade that enclosed it. One of the pavilions at both Shanhua and Longxing monasteries contained the sūtra collection of each monastery. A sūtra hall, often a pavilion or other multistory structure, was another standard feature in Chinese monasteries of this middle period.

By the Southern Song dynasty (1127–1279), centered in Hangzhou, monasteries of the CHAN SCHOOL dominated Buddhist architecture. The major monasteries of this meditative school were dominated by seven halls arranged along a north-south line: a front gate, a Buddha hall, a Vairocana hall, a dharma hall, abbot's quarters, and a room for seated meditation. Buildings for mundane affairs, such as storage halls and

dormitories, filled the space on either side of the main building line. Monks' quarters sometimes contained a single huge bed on which monks meditated and slept.

By the thirteenth century, monastery architecture in China was marked by great variety. The lack of consistency can in part be explained by numerous Buddhist schools and by an increasing syncretism in Buddhist and Daoist worship that gave rise to new sects. Often a twelfth- or thirteenth-century Buddhist monastery was architecturally indistinguishable from a Daoist one until one entered the halls and saw the statues and paintings. In addition, Daoist precincts could be constructed at Buddhist monasteries and Buddhist precincts at Daoist temple complexes.

### Lamaist monasteries in China

By the fourteenth century, Lamaist Buddhist architecture also was present on the Chinese landscape. The most representative structure of a Lamaist Buddhist monastery is the bulb-shaped pagoda known as a *dagoda*, often painted white. The Lamaist pagodas of Miaoying Monastery, built in 1279, and in Beihai Park, built in 1651, still rise above much of the rest of Beijing's architecture. Lamaism and its architecture dominated the regions of China adjacent to Tibet, the center of this branch of Buddhism, in particular the areas of Sichuan and Gansu and regions adjacent to them in Ningxia Hui, Qinghai, and Inner Mongolia. Patronized by the Manchu rulers of the last Chinese dynasty, Qing (1644–1911), some of the most creative architecture of China's last three imperial centuries stands at Lamaseries. The most purely Tibetan monasteries, in Qinghai and Sichuan, include multistory stone buildings with small windows and flat roofs, the style famous on the mountainous terrain of Tibet. The Sino-Tibetan style of Inner Mongolia, Ningxia, and Gansu, represented by Wudangzhao in Baotou or Xilituzhao in Hohhot, both in Inner Mongolia, is characterized by the axial arrangements seen in Chinese monasteries but with great sūtra halls in the block style of Tibet, as well as numerous funerary pagodas. Often several buildings are interconnected into one block-like structure, but roofs may be of Chinese glazed ceramic tile.

Ta'er Monastery in Qinghai is of this type. Most impressive are the Sino-Tibetan Lamaseries of Chengde (formerly Jehol) in Hebei province. Site of a summer palace of the Qing emperors, Chengde had twelve temple complexes, known as the Eight Outer Temples after the eight offices through which they were ad-

ministered in the eighteenth century. Often the monasteries contain Chinese-style architecture in the front and Tibetan-style buildings behind. One monastery even had architecture that replicated the POTALA palace in Tibet. Dominated by great sūtra halls, traditional buildings dedicated to, for example, the four divine kings, are also present at the Eight Outer Temples. This kind of regionalism in architecture was widespread in Qing China, giving way not only to scores of residential styles among the "minority" peoples of the empire, but also to Sino-Burmese Buddhist monasteries in Xishuangbanna in southwestern Yunnan province near the border with Myanmar. Traditional Buddhist monasteries never disappeared from China. Yonghegong, a princely palace in the heart of Beijing that was turned into a lamasery during the eighteenth century, with its main halls painted red and golden rooftops on an axial line, represents a Chinese-style lamasery. In other parts of China, Chan monasteries continued to be built and restored, especially at historically sacred locations, such as the four great peaks: These include Wutai in Shanxi province, dedicated to Mañjuśrī; Putuo, the unique island setting off the coast of Ningbo, dedicated to Avalokiteśvara; Emei in Sichuan, dedicated to Samantabhadra; and Jihua in Anhui, dedicated to Kṣitigarbha. The later monasteries of traditional sects retained axial arrangements but were larger than their pre-fourteenth century predecessors, with two new hall types, the diamond hall and the hall of divine kings. Both halls were incorporated into Lamaist construction in China. Also new in the fourteenth century were brick halls, nicknamed "beamless" halls, which stood in sharp contrast to the ubiquitous wooden buildings of Chinese construction.

### Monastic architecture in Korea

Since initial contacts in Northeast Asia, things Chinese were transmitted to the Korean peninsula. Buddhism entered Korea from China officially in 372. Although not every Chinese Buddhist school became popular in Korea, most were known to Korean monks who traveled to China or through Chinese Buddhist missionaries. Korean Buddhist monasteries thus contained the standard structures of Chinese monasteries. A standard plan in Korean Buddhist monasteries has an entry gate with a pair of divine kings on each side, followed by a dharma hall and main hall.

Buddha halls, pagodas, and cave sanctuaries all are found in Korea. Korea's best-known Buddhist monasteries, Pulguksa and SÖKKURAM, both in the outskirts of Kyōngju, capital of the unified Silla kingdom

(668–935), borrow from monastery traditions of China and represent two distinctly Korean types of Buddhist architecture at the same time. Pulguksa consists of a front gate and two halls directly behind it, and smaller halls dedicated to buddhas or bodhisattvas in their own precincts. The entry and most of the enclosing corridors of the monastery, however, are elevated on stone foundations. Pulguksa's twin pagodas are also made of stone, the predominant and uniquely Korean material of early pagodas. Sökkuram is Korea's most famous Buddhist cave sanctuary. The greatest concentration of Buddhist rock-carved niches and worship spaces in Korea is on Namsan (South Mountain), also in the vicinity of Kyōngju. The largest monastery in Korea is T'ongdosa, located between Kyōngju and Pusan. One of the most noteworthy monasteries is Haeinsa, where an extensive set of woodblocks of the Korean CANON survives.

### Monastic architecture in Japan

Early Buddhist monasteries in Japan are believed to have followed the patterns of continental East Asia, transmitted directly from China or from China by way

of Korea. Much can be learned about East Asian monasteries from Japan's monasteries because more pre-ninth-century wooden architecture survives in Japan than anywhere else in East Asia. As was the case in contemporary China and Korea, the main structures of Japanese monasteries of the Nara period (710–784) were the Buddha hall and pagoda. Their arrangements, however, signaled distinctive types believed to follow regional variations in Korea and probably also in China. At Shitennōji in Osaka, for example, whose plan dates before the Nara period, to 593, the pagoda and hall are on an axial line, matching the arrangement that was implemented in China at Yongning Monastery in the late fifth or early sixth century. At Hōryūji and Kawaharadera, the pagoda and main Buddha hall, known in Japan as *kondō*, were built side by side.

At Asukadera, south of Nara in Asuka and dated to the sixth century, three *kondō* enclosed a dominant central pagoda on all but the south side. Yet another Nara-period plan included twin pagodas on either side in front of the main hall. Eighth-century monasteries of Japan also inform us of the range of buildings in an active temple complex of the early period in East Asia.



The Great Buddha Hall at Tōdaiji, in Nara, Japan, built in 1692. It replaced an original of 752 that was twice destroyed by fire. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.



The Phoenix Hall, at the Byōdōin, Kyoto, Japan. Built in 1053, it was intended as a three-dimensional representation of the Sukhāvati Pure Land—the Western Paradise—of Amitābha. © Sakamoto Photo Research Laboratory/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

Hōryūji, for instance, had a gatehouse, *kondō*, pagoda, and covered arcade connected to the gatehouse at its core, as well as a south gate, lecture hall, monks' dormitories, sūtra library, bell tower, refectory, and administrative offices, and a separate precinct with an octagonal hall dedicated to Prince SHŌTOKU (574–621).

The Great Eastern Monastery in Nara (Tōdaiji) had south and middle gates, its main Buddha hall, another gate, a lecture hall, and monks' quarters on the main building line, and twin pagodas, halls for ceremonies of the second and third moons of the year, an ordination hall, and a treasure repository located elsewhere. None of these buildings was unique at Hōryūji or Tōdaiji. Monasteries could also include shrines to monks or monk-founders, halls to individual buddhas or bodhisattvas, gardens, bathhouses, and anything else that offered full-service life and education to the monastic and sometimes lay community. Coincident with the move of the main capital to Heian (Kyoto) at the end of the eighth century, esoteric Buddhist schools rose in Japan. In contrast to monasteries of the Nara capital, early Heian-period monasteries had smaller

buildings located in remote, often mountainous settings. Not only were the clergy kept distant from court affairs, the new mountain monasteries were primarily for esoteric Buddhist schools, especially Tendai and Shingon, which had been transmitted to Japan from China at the turn of the ninth century.

Although monastery structures in the middle part of the Heian period remained small in comparison to their Nara counterparts, decoration became lavish. The change corresponded to the surge in PURE LAND BUDDHISM, whose monasteries often included a re-creation of the Buddha's paradise, or Pure Land, in the form of a hall with lotus pond in front of it. The PHOENIX HALL (AT THE BYŌDŌIN) in Uji, once the residence of one of Japan's wealthiest families, and the Golden Hall of Chūsonji in Hiraizumi are typical Fujiwara-period (951–1086) monastery buildings.

By the end of the Heian period, however, monasteries that were much less ornate became popular. Single-bay square halls dedicated to AMITĀBHA, Buddha of the Western Paradise, were common. Austere



monastery construction was characteristic of the next period of Japanese history, the Kamakura (1185–1333). Austerities were suited to Zen, the dominant form of Buddhism among the military rulers of Japan. Five great Zen monasteries and countless small ones covered the mountainous village of Kamakura; these were modeled after the great Chan mountain monasteries of Southern Song China. The front gate of a Zen monastery was two stories with a triple entry and access to the second floor, where statues of the sixteen arhats often were found. The main hall was known as the *butsuden*, or Buddha hall. Public ceremonies were held in the *butsuden*, whereas lectures and other assemblages of monks took place in the dharma hall, a structure also found in Chinese monasteries of the eleventh century. Both in Kamakura and in Kyoto, Zen monasteries consisted of public reception space used chiefly by the main abbot, abbot's quarters, halls for study and meditation, a hall for sūtra recitation, a hall dedicated to the monastery founder, and usually gardens. The abbot's quarters traced its origins to a humble single-bay square hut (*hōjō*), the kind of dwelling used by the earliest Indian Buddhists, but the structure became increasingly important and lavish by the end of the Kamakura period.

Yet another hall type in Zen monasteries was the *shariden*, the relic hall. Examples of all these structures remain in Kamakura and most survive at one of the best examples of Zen architecture outside Kamakura—Tōfukuji in Kyoto. Whereas some Kamakura-period monastery architecture originated in two areas of China's southeastern coast, and came to be known as Indian style or Tang style, in contrast to native Japanese style, monastery architecture of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries displayed a uniquely Japanese architectural aesthetic. As represented by the monasteries of the Silver and Golden pavilions, Ginkakuji and Kinkakuji in Kyoto, the return of the Japanese capital to Kyoto was coincident with a return to luxurious living among the military lords of Japan's Muromachi period (1338–1573).

Buddhist monasteries continue to be built and restored in China, Korea, and Japan at the beginning of the twenty-first century, and are preserved as historic relics in India and Central Asia.

*See also:* Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; China, Buddhist Art in; Himalayas, Buddhist Art in; Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Monasticism; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

## Bibliography

- Mitra, Debala. *Buddhist Monuments*. Calcutta: Sahitya Samdad, 1971.
- Prip-Møller, Johannes. *Chinese Buddhist Monasteries: Their Plan and Its Function as a Setting for Buddhist Monastic Life*. Copenhagen, Denmark: G. E. C. Gad; London: Oxford University Press, 1937.
- Sarkar, H. *Studies in Early Buddhist Architecture of India*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1966.
- Seckel, Dietrich, *The Art of Buddhism*, tr. Ann Keep. New York: Greystone Press, 1968.
- Soper, Alexander. *The Evolution of Buddhist Architecture in Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1942.
- Suzuki Kakichi. *Early Buddhist Architecture in Japan*, tr. Mary N. Parent and Nancy S. Steinhardt. Tokyo, New York, and San Francisco: Kodansha International, 1980.
- Zhongguo jianzhu yishu quanji* (universal history of the art of Chinese architecture), Vol. 12: *Fojiao jianzhu* (Buddhist architecture). Part 2: *The North*. Beijing: China Building Industry Press, 2002. Part 2: *The South*, Beijing: China Building Industry Press, 1999.

NANCY SHATZMAN STEINHARDT

---

## MONASTICISM

The term *monasticism* is derived from the Greek word *monos*, which means “single” or “alone.” Despite the etymology, the majority of Buddhist monastics are not hermits or solitary wanderers. Monastics, even those who may choose to take up a solitary life from time to time, belong to the Buddhist SANGHA or community. The range of Buddhist monastic communities is quite extensive, including everything from extremely large and wealthy urban monasteries, to mid-size and small village monasteries, to forest, cave, and mountain monasteries.

Buddhist monasticism has its origins in India and dates back to the lifetime of Śākyamuni Buddha. The earliest members of the monastic order appear to have led lives that alternated between wandering from place to place in groups and residing in parks and groves donated by kings and wealthy merchants. Some Buddhist scholars, such as Sukumar Dutt, have argued that the wandering lifestyle was gradually transformed into a more permanently settled monastic existence as a result of the Buddha's requirement that MONKS and NUNS cease wandering during the monsoon season. Other Buddhist scholars, such as Mohan Wijayaratna, have argued that the first monastic complexes were the result

of the desire of wealthy laypeople to donate land and permanent structures to the saṅgha. Although scholars debate the origins of monasteries, they do agree that with the advent of permanent structures, there arose a class of monastics who remained in the monasteries permanently to act as caretakers and administrators.

Texts and archeological evidence reveal that shortly after the death of the Buddha, there were eighteen large Buddhist monasteries near the city of Rājagṛha alone. The records of Chinese Buddhist pilgrims point to the existence, during the fifth to seventh century C.E., of great Buddhist monasteries and monastic universities in India that housed thousands of monastics from a variety of Buddhist traditions. The monasteries quickly became wealthy institutions endowed with land, buildings, and numerous possessions.

The Buddhist monastic order was originally made up of ordained male and female monastics. During the medieval period, however, the lineage of fully ordained nuns died out in the THERAVĀDA order. Although the formal order was gone, some women did continue to live as novices in nunneries. While novice nuns in certain countries (such as the *dasa sil mātāvas* in Sri Lanka) often lack the recognition and support that is so essential to their survival, novice nuns in other countries (such as the *śrāmaṇerikā* in Tibet) have enjoyed a wider network of support and a greater recognition of their status. Since the 1980s there have been moves to reintroduce the lineage of fully ordained nuns in certain Theravāda countries such as Sri Lanka and Thailand, though this effort has often met fierce opposition from the male order.

By the medieval period all Buddhist monastic orders had died out in India. By that time, Buddhist monasticism had already become a pan-Asian phenomenon. Within the last century Buddhist monastic institutions have not only been reestablished in India, but have also been founded throughout North and South America, Africa, Europe, and Australia.

### Monasticism and the saṅgha

In Buddhism, the monastic order is referred to as the saṅgha, which, in its strictest sense, refers specifically to MONKS and NUNS. The saṅgha began when the Buddha accepted his first five disciples shortly after his enlightenment. As the monastic order grew and the religion spread in an ever-widening radius, numerous disciplinary rules were put forth to govern the lives of the monks and nuns. Even though the rules, which are found in the VINAYA section of the Buddhist CANON,

are very complex, the underlying intention is straightforward: to help guide the lives of monks and nuns on a spiritual PATH and to create a unified group of monastics. The Buddhist monastic order functions to preserve and teach the Buddhist doctrine and, by dictating how to live in accordance with the way taught by Śākyamuni Buddha, the order's rules provide an historical link to the past.

The Buddha originally functioned as the head of the monastic order. At the time of his death he refused to appoint a successor; instead, the Buddhist teachings and disciplinary code were said to take the place of a central authority. Lacking a leader who could maintain doctrinal and disciplinary congruity, the saṅgha split into several monastic traditions in the centuries following the death of the Buddha. The early splits in the saṅgha were often based on disputes regarding discipline and led to the formation of separate vinaya texts. Within the first millennium following the death of the Buddha and continuing to the present, the disputes often related to doctrinal and disciplinary issues, thus resulting in the growth of Buddhist sects and schools centered around particular doctrines, texts, monastic leaders, and practices.

The lack of a central authority in Buddhism may be seen as problematic and as the cause of internal disputes and divisions. In a more positive light, the openness to interpret Buddhist practice and doctrine has led to a staggering range of Buddhist monastic institutions and types of monastic vocations, thus contributing to the adaptation of the tradition through time and space. As the order expanded geographically over time, adjustments were needed to make the tradition and the monastic institution acceptable to the people living in the various countries where the religion was introduced. For example, while monks of the Theravāda order (such as those living in Sri Lanka, Myanmar, Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia) are prohibited from farming and must receive their food directly from the laity, the monks from the CHAN SCHOOL of East Asia are encouraged to grow their own food, an idea that is closely related to the Confucian ideal of not being a parasite to society.

### Categories of monastics

Buddhist monasteries house many different categories of Buddhist monastics, from postulants seeking admission into the saṅgha to the abbot of a monastery. Prior to becoming a monk or nun, a person seeking admission into the saṅgha usually spends a probationary period, ranging from several days to several years, in



Thiksay Monastery, Leh, Ladakh, India, 1997. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

the monastery where he or she is seeking ORDINATION. During this period, the postulant learns about the practice of monastic life, is involved in various menial and demanding tasks around the monastery, and is in charge of taking care of the needs of the other monastics. This period allows the postulant as well as the monks and nuns of the monastery to ascertain whether monastic life is an appropriate choice.

Traditionally, entrance into the Buddhist saṅgha follows a two-step process in which the postulant first becomes a novice (*śrāmaṇera*, *śrāmaṇerikā*) before becoming a fully ordained monk (*bhikṣu*) or nun (*bhikṣuṇī*). To become a novice, one must be old enough to scare away crows (usually interpreted to be seven to eight years of age). Novices must follow ten basic injunctions or PRECEPTS:

1. Not killing
2. Not stealing
3. Not engaging in sexual activity
4. Not lying
5. Not taking intoxicants
6. Not eating after midday
7. Not watching shows or listening to musical performances
8. Not wearing garlands or perfume
9. Not sleeping on high beds
10. Not handling gold or silver (understood to be money)

Monks and nuns who remain in the order may choose, once they reach twenty years of age, to take a second, more formal “higher” ordination (*upasampadā*). As “fully ordained” monastics, monks and nuns are required to follow a greater number of precepts that not only elaborate the ten novice precepts, but also deal with subjects of decorum, dress, and demeanor. Even though the number of precepts differ between the various regions and schools as determined by the vinaya code that is followed, monastics rarely follow all of the precepts, and in some traditions in Japan and Tibet, for example, a married clergy was deemed acceptable and even preferable.

The categories of monks and the stages of ordination outlined above are often traced back to Indian Buddhist practices. In actuality, many variations exist regarding ordination and the categories of monastics. One such variation pertains to whether or not becoming a fully ordained monastic is a permanent or temporary commitment. Another important variation concerns the *upasampadā* ordination: While in most Theravāda countries there are social pressures for novices to take the *upasampadā* ordination once they reach the appropriate age, the majority of monks in China choose to remain novices, possibly due originally to a lack of monasteries able to administer the monastic precepts. Moreover, most East Asian monastics, after becoming fully ordained, take another set of precepts called BODHISATTVA vows derived from the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA), which, in accordance with the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, are based on a commitment to lead all beings to enlightenment.

### Daily monastic routines

Monastic daily routines are often centered around four types of activities: studying, practicing MEDITATION, performing RITUALS, and fulfilling assigned monastery duties. Outside of these activities, Buddhist monastics have also involved themselves, from time to time, in politics and in social service activities like the construction of shelters for the homeless, schools, animal shelters, and hospitals.

Generally, daily monastic routines include activities such as cleaning the monastery; performing a variety of monastery duties; honoring the Buddha, his teachings (dharma), the monastic community (saṅgha), and one's own teacher; studying; chanting; and meditating. In addition to being restricted by the monastic code, the daily monastic routines are further limited by the actual Buddhist tradition, monastery, rank of the monastic, and time of the year. For instance, while certain meditation-oriented monasteries might dedicate the majority of the day to the practice of meditation, the daily routine of other monasteries might focus more heavily on studying Buddhist texts and performing rituals. In addition to these differences, monastic routines vary between Buddhist traditions and countries. Whereas Theravāda monks from Thailand, Myanmar (Burma), or Laos might go out in the early morning to collect alms and must refrain from eating after midday, Mahāyāna monks from China, Taiwan, Korea, and Japan rarely seek alms and may partake in an evening meal (sometimes called a "med-

icine meal"). Daily monastic routines may also change depending upon the time of year. For example, whereas monks living in certain Sōn (Chinese, Chan) monasteries in Korea might meditate for over fourteen hours a day during the retreat seasons (summer and winter), they may devote little time to meditation during the nonretreat season. During this time, monks often visit other monasteries, travel on PILGRIMAGES, and engage in various other projects around the monastery, such as gardening, farming, and construction work.

Buddhist monastic routines are also punctuated by monthly rituals and ceremonies that may vary in form and content between the different Buddhist traditions. One such monthly ritual commonly practiced in the Theravāda tradition is the *poṣadha* (Pāli, *uposatha*) ritual, which is held semimonthly on new moon and full moon days. In this ritual, the disciplinary code is recited and the members of the monastic community are asked whether or not they have broken any of the precepts. This confessional ritual creates a sense of unity within the monastic community and encourages self-scrutiny and monastic purity, which are necessary for spiritual progress.

The *poṣadha* ritual is slowly gaining in renewed popularity in certain Mahāyāna countries such as Taiwan and Korea. In monasteries where the ritual is not practiced, other monthly and semimonthly rituals may take its place. It is common in the Korean Sōn tradition, for instance, that every fortnight during the new and full moons days the abbot gives a lecture and may even administer the bodhisattva precepts to the monks. Usually this lecture covers various aspects of the Buddha's or other famous Buddhist monks' teachings, as well as brief instructions on meditation.

Yearly rituals and celebrations also play an important role in monastic routines. One of the most popular and important annual Buddhist ceremonies is the celebration of the Buddha's birth, enlightenment, and death. This ceremony usually occurs during the full moon of the fourth lunar month (usually late April or early May) of each year. In anticipation of this very important celebration, monks in the week leading up to the full moon begin thoroughly cleaning the monastery and decorating it with handmade paper lanterns. During this ritual, the laity flock to their local monastery, where they wander in and around the monastic buildings, meet with the monks and nuns, partake in certain rituals, and attend lectures on various aspects of the Buddha's life and teachings.

### Relationship between the monastic institution and the laity

The survival of the Buddhist monastic order depends on two factors: men and women who desire to take up the monastic life and the LAITY who support them. From the earliest period, it was the laity who funded the construction of the first Buddhist monasteries in India and beyond.

Despite the fact that a monastic “goes forth” (*pravrajita*) from society when he or she enters the saṅgha, monks and nuns remain deeply connected to the laity in a symbiotic manner. The laity ideally supplies the four requisites (food, clothing, shelter, and medicine) to the monks and nuns in exchange for guidance and spiritual support in the form of sermons and the performance of rituals. The interaction between monastics and the laity varies considerably depending on the type of monastery: Whereas residents of forest, cave, and mountain monasteries tend to have more limited contact with the laity, monastics living in village and city monasteries often have close ties with the laity. Indeed, along with serving as centers where the laity could receive instructions on Buddhist doctrine and practices, these urban and village monasteries functioned and may still function as educational centers that teach religious and secular subjects.

Underlying the symbiotic relationship between the monastic order and the laity is the very important concept of merit. As the monastic order is made up of people who represent, perpetuate, and follow the teachings of the Buddha, the monastic institution itself is said to be the highest field of merit and therefore most worthy of offerings. According to this system, donating to the monastic order is one of the most wholesome acts a person can perform and anything donated to the saṅgha increases the donor’s store of merit. Not only does this merit ensure good fortune and more propitious rebirths in the future, it can also be transferred to others who need it, such as a deceased relative.

*See also:* Chanting and Liturgy; Councils, Buddhist; Economics; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Merit and Merit-Making; Repentance and Confession

#### Bibliography

Bunnag, Jane. *Buddhist Monk, Buddhist Layman: A Study of Urban Monastic Organization in Central Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1973.

Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practice in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

Dutt, Sukumar. *Early Buddhist Monachism: 600 B.C.–100 B.C.* London: Kegan Paul, 1924.

Gombrich, Richard. *Precept and Practice: Traditional Buddhism in the Rural Highlands of Ceylon*. Oxford, UK: Clarendon, 1971.

Gunawardana, R. A. L. H. *Robe and Plough: Monasticism and Economic Interest in Early Medieval Sri Lanka*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1979.

Henry, Patrick G., and Swearer, Donald K. *For the Sake of the World: The Spirit of Buddhist and Christian Monasticism*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1989.

Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Śaka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Paris: L’Institute Orientaliste de Louvain, 1988.

Olivelle, P. *The Origin and the Early Development of Buddhist Monachism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Gunasena, 1974.

Samuel, Geoffrey. *Civilized Shamans: Buddhism in Tibetan Societies*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution, 1993.

Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.

Silber, Ilana F. *Virtuosity, Charisma, and Social Order: A Comparative Sociological Study of Monasticism in Theravāda Buddhism and Medieval Catholicism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1995.

Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.

Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism: 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.

Wijayaratna, Mohan. *Buddhist Monastic Life: According to the Texts of the Theravāda Tradition*, tr. Claude Grangier and Steven Collins. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

JEFFREY SAMUELS

## MONASTIC MILITIAS

Monastic militias (Chinese, *sengping*; Korean, *sūng-byōng*; Japanese, *sōhei*) is a generic term for armed members of the SAṄGHA or the private armed forces employed by Buddhist monasteries. The term *monastic militia* is not a Buddhist one, but was coined by Confucian historians and its use cannot be attested ear-

lier than circa 1451 in Korea, 1682 in China, or 1715 in Japan. Although the term is relatively late, it can be used to retrospectively designate earlier phenomena. Buddhist scriptures prohibit the use of force and the taking of life. Nonetheless, East Asian history records many instances during times of political conflict, regional unrest, dynastic change, or foreign invasion when Buddhist institutions relied on armed forces to defend their interests. During the years from 1553 to 1555, for example, Chinese monastic forces fought alongside government troops to repel coastal raiders. Likewise, in 1592 Korean Buddhist monks formed armed bands to help fight invading Japanese armies.

Neither Chinese nor Korean examples, however, have been as historically prominent or as well studied as those of early and medieval Japan. Throughout most of that period the institutions of secular government in Japan derived legitimation from the divine protection of buddhas (enshrined in temples) and local gods (placated at shrines), while the temples and shrines engaged in the secular activities of controlling large tracts of land and the people who worked thereon. Beginning in the tenth century, major shrines (such as Ise) developed the tactic of protesting unfavorable government actions by sending armed bands of men to the capital, where they would parade the divine body of the gods in front of the residences of terrified government officials. Major Buddhist centers (Mount Hiei, Onjōji, Kōfukuji, Tōdaiji, etc.) soon adopted this tactic. By the end of the eleventh century, they were directing their armed forces not just to protest government authorities but also to attack one another.

Mount Hiei, the main center of the Japanese Tendai school, became infamous for its men of arms. During the twelfth century they repeatedly attacked and burned Onjōji, a rival Tendai center. English-language accounts of these conflicts frequently render the term *sōhei* as “warrior monks,” although membership in those armed bands was not limited to the clergy, but consisted primarily of laborers (*shuto*, *jinin*, etc.) in various degrees of servitude to the temples and shrines. The warlord Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582) campaigned to eliminate the military power of Japanese Buddhist institutions beginning with Mount Hiei, which he torched in 1571. His successor Toyotomi Hideyoshi (1537–1598) successfully concluded this campaign in 1585 when he defeated the Shingon school’s stronghold of Negoroji and eradicated monastic militias from Japan.

See also: **Hyujōng; Martial Arts; War; Yujōng**

### Bibliography

- Adolphson, Mikael S. *The Gates of Power: Monks, Courtiers, and Warriors in Premodern Japan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Hirata Toshiharu. “Akusō ni tsuite.” In *Shūkyō shakaishi kenkyū*, ed. Risshō Daigaku Shigakkai. Tokyo: Yūzankaku, 1977.
- Kuroda Toshio. *Jisha seiryoku: mō hitotsu no chūsei shakai*. Tokyo: Iwanami Shoten, 1980.
- McMullin, Neil. *Buddhism and the State in Sixteenth Century Japan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1984.
- Nishigaki Harutsugu. “Ritsuryō taisei no kaitai to Ise jingū.” *Chichō* 56 (1955): 37–51.

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## MONGOLIA

In the late twelfth and early thirteenth centuries, a confederation of Mongol tribes rose up in Outer and Inner Mongolia under the leadership of Genghis Khan (Chinggis Khan, named Temujin, 1162?–1227). Though the Mongols had certainly had contact with Buddhist neighbors (Jurchen, Tanguts, and Chinese), Genghis continued to support indigenous shamanist practices. However, following his death in 1227 and the subsequent conquest of China and much of Central and Western Asia by his sons and grandsons, Buddhism—specifically Tibetan Buddhism—began to have a significant impact on Mongolian concepts of rulership and empire.

### Buddhism during the Mongol Yuan dynasty (1260–1368)

Genghis’s son Ogodei (r. 1229–1241) established a Mongol empire that stretched from Korea (occupied in 1238) to present-day Poland and Hungary (1241). Ogodei’s second son, Gödan Khan, invaded Tibet several times and in 1244 brought three prominent Tibetan SA SKYA (SAKYA) lamas as guests (or hostages) to his court in Liangzhou (modern Gansu province). They were SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA, 1182–1251), head of the Sa skya pa, and his two nephews, Phags pa (1235–1280) and Phyang na rdo rje (1239–1267). Under duress, Sa skya Paṇḍita wrote a letter to Tibet’s great nobles and lamas praising Gödan Khan, but he also initiated him into Tibetan Bud-

dhist practice, thereby trading political control of Tibet for spiritual authority over the Mongol khan. Mongol rule over Tibet was formally achieved in 1252 by Ogodei's nephew, Möngke (r. 1251–1259), whose guru was the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) master, miracle worker, and eventual second KARMA PA, Karma Pakshi (1204–1283).

Möngke's successor and brother, Kublai Khan (Qubilai Khan, r. 1260–1294) followed Gödan Khan's example when he proclaimed himself emperor of the Chinese Yuan dynasty in 1260. Urged by his wife Chabi, Kublai allowed 'Phags pa to initiate him into the *Hevajra Tantra* on the promise that he would gain the intelligence and compassion of the great protector Mahākāla. Tibetan VAJRAYĀNA Buddhism offered worldly benefits to the emperor as well. By naming 'Phags pa *guoshi* (national preceptor) and, ten years later, *dishi* (imperial preceptor), the two reigned side-by-side as "sun and moon" in an ostensibly balanced *yon mchod* (patron-lama) relationship. 'Phags pa acted as the Mongols' agent in Tibet and as head of their Zongshiyuan (court of the general administration of Buddhism), the office in charge of religious institutions throughout the empire. Kublai's protection and patronage of the Tibetan Sa skya pa signaled his auspicious status as a world-ruling Buddhist cakravartin (wheel-turning king), though he also encouraged an atmosphere of religious tolerance, even sponsoring debates at court between Buddhists and Daoists. In 1345 Kublai was posthumously celebrated at the Juyongguan, a grand stone stūpa-gate constructed northeast of the Mongol capital at Dadu (modern Beijing), where a multilingual inscription asserted his identity as "benevolent king" and "Mañjuśrī-emperor." Kublai's representation as an emanation of Mañjuśrī, the bodhisattva of wisdom, who, it was believed, dwelled in China's Wutaishan (Five Terrace Mountains in modern Shanxi province), was a strategic move designed to solidify waning Mongol control over north China.

### **Mongolian Buddhism after the fall of the Yuan dynasty (late fourteenth to sixteenth centuries)**

The Mongol Yuan dynasty was not long able to rule China effectively after Kublai's death, however. By the middle of the fourteenth century, they had lost control of southern China and, in 1368, the Yuan was toppled by a former Chinese Buddhist monk, Zhu Yuanzhang, who founded the Ming dynasty. With the collapse of their East Asian empire, the Mongols retreated beyond the Great Wall. Evidence of their continued devotion to Buddhism is sparse in the centuries

following the end of the Yuan. Buddhist practice was mainly limited to the Genghisid aristocracy, who retained limited political control in the Chahar region of eastern Inner Mongolia as the Northern Yuan. In the late sixteenth century, however, as the Ming dynasty began to decay, a number of khans moved to rebuild the Mongol empire. Among them was a Western Mongol of the Tumed tribe, Altan (the Golden) Khan (r. 1543–1582). Altan drove the Northern Yuan east to Liaodong, captured Ogodei's old Outer Mongolian capital, Kharakhorum, and forged an alliance with the Ming. Altan was not a blood descendant of Genghis Khan, however, which proved to be an obstacle in his attempts to forge a new Mongolian confederation. Following an initiation into Tibetan Buddhism presaged in a dream, in 1577 he arranged to meet the DGE LUGS (GELUK) lama Bsod nams rgya mtsho (1543–1588) at Kokonor, in modern Qinghai province (Amdo). Bsod nams rgya mtsho was in the direct lineage of TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419), the founder of the Dge lugs order. At Kokonor the two exchanged titles: Bsod nams rgya mtsho recognized Altan as Kublai Khan's incarnation, and Altan gave Bsod nams rgya mtsho a new title, Dalai (meaning "ocean" in Mongolian) Lama. Bsod nams rgya mtsho became the third in the DALAI LAMA lineage, with two of his predecessors posthumously named as the first and second. This exalted title and Mongol support gave the Dge lugs pa an advantage in their ongoing struggles with the Bka' brgyud pa, who were advisers to the Tibetan kings, and the Sa skya pa. The Mongols had once again become an essential component in the power structure of Tibetan Buddhism.

To honor Bsod nams rgya mtsho, Altan Khan built a monastery, Byang chen theg chen chos 'khor gling, at his capital Koke qota (modern Hohhot in Inner Mongolia). There, following Altan's decree prohibiting shamanist practices, the third Dalai Lama used the fire MAṄḌALA of Mahākāla to burn *ongod*, shamanist ancestral images. By Altan Khan's order, the deities of Tibetan Buddhism quickly replaced many of the spirits of shamanism, while in the following decades the shamanist spirits of important Mongolian mountains were incorporated whole into an expanding Buddhist pantheon.

The Dge lugs pa's willingness to ally themselves with Mongol khans brought other candidates forward. Among them was Genghis's descendant, Abadai Khan of the Outer Mongolian Khalkha tribe, who met with Bsod nams rgya mtsho at Koke qota in 1576 or 1577, where he was entitled as khan. Abadai Khan returned

to Khalkha to found the Tusheet khanate and to build Erdeni Zuu, a monastery at Ogodei's old capital of Kharakhoram modeled on Altan Khan's monastery in Koke qota. After failing to recruit Dge lugs pa lamas to come to Khalkha for his monastery's consecration, Abadai enlisted local Sa skya pa lamas. As a result, Erdeni Zuu continued to be allied with the Sa skya pa, even long after the Khalkha khans solidly came to support the Dge lugs pa.

In 1588 the third Dalai Lama died en route to Mongolia. Altan Khan, sensing a brilliant opportunity, pushed to have his own great-grandson recognized as the fourth Dalai Lama, who was named Yon tan rgya mtsho (1589–1617). Despite this prestigious coup, through the first decades of the seventeenth century Inner Mongolia remained contested ground. The Northern Yuan emperor, Ligdan Khan (r. 1605–1634), a devout Buddhist, patronized the Sa skya pa and supported a complete Mongolian translation of the *Bka' gyur* (a project later emulated in a woodblock printed version by the Manchu Kangxi emperor, r. 1660–1723). In 1617 Ligdan was given a golden image of Mahākāla that was said to have been made by 'Phags pa and used in Kublai's campaigns against south China. Ligdan enshrined it at the center of his capital in Chahar. As he retreated west in the face of Manchu incursions in 1634, the Mahākāla and all the powers that accompanied it fell into Manchu hands. In 1636 they took the image and installed it in the center of their ancestral capital, Mukden, later moving it to Beijing.

### Mongolian Buddhism and the Manchus

Meanwhile, in Tibet, the fifth Dalai Lama enlisted the support of Gushri Khan of the Qoshot, who had established himself in the Kokonor region. In 1642 Qoshot troops defeated the rivals of the fifth Dalai Lama and the Dge lugs, most notably the king of Gtsang. This year traditionally marks the beginning of the Dalai Lamas' rule over Tibet. However, it was only with the death of Gushri Khan in 1656 that the fifth Dalai Lama became the unrivaled ruler of Tibet.

Some years earlier, in 1639, Abadai's son, the Tusheet Khan Gombodorji (1594–1655), had had his own young son, known as Öndür Gegen or Zanabazar (1634–1723), initiated as a Buddhist monk at Erdeni Zuu before a convocation of Khalkha lords. The boy traveled to Tibet with a large retinue in 1651, where the fifth Dalai Lama recognized him as an incarnation of the famous historian Tāranātha (1575–1634), a member of a rival order, the Jonang pa, who had spent

years missionizing in Mongolia. The Dalai Lama gave Öndür Gegen the title Rje btsun dam pa (Mongolian, Bogdo Gegen) and charged him with establishing the Dge lugs pa in Khalkha. Öndür Gegen is credited with building numerous monasteries, the primary of which was a traveling collection of yurts, Urga (from Mongolian *örgöö*, "palace") or Da Khuree (Great Circle), where he reigned as Rje btsun dam pa Khutukhtu (Mongolian for incarnate lama) of Urga. He also designed rituals; established religious festivals, among them the annual Maitreya Festival; borrowed from the Panchen Lama's monastery, Bkra shis lhun po; and produced brilliant paintings and sculptures. In 1691, pressed by the onslaughts of Galdan, khan of the Western Mongolian Dzungar tribe, Öndür Gegen led the Khalkha lords to Dolonnor, Inner Mongolia, to seek the protection of the Qing Kangxi emperor. The emperor and his lama subsequently spent considerable time together in Beijing and at Wutaishan. When first the emperor and then Öndür Gegen died in 1723, the latter's remains were enshrined at imperial expense at a new, palatial Chinese-style monastery, Amarbayasgalant khiid (hermitage), south of Lake Baikal.

The Qing emperors, following the Mongols' precedent, were recognized by the fifth Dalai Lama as emanations of Mañjuśrī. They maintained close diplomatic relations with the great lamas of Tibet and Mongolia. During the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, hundreds of Mongolian lamas flooded into the Qing capital at Beijing, where they were mainly housed at the Huangsi (Yellow Monastery) and the Yonghegong (Palace of Harmony). The lineage that forged the closest ties to the Qing emperors was that of the Lcang skya Khutukhtus, who were granted primacy over the Dge lugs pa Buddhists of Inner Mongolia. Particularly effective was the third incarnation, Rol pa'i rdo rje (1719–1786). Born in Amdo of a Monguor (Tibetanized Mongol) family, Rol pa'i rdo rje was brought to the Songzhu Monastery in Beijing as a child during the reign of the Yongzheng emperor (r. 1723–1735) and raised with Yongzheng's eventual heir, Hongli, who reigned as the Qianlong emperor (r. 1736–1795). Qianlong's reign marks the height of Mongolian and Tibetan Buddhist prestige and power at the Qing court. Rol pa'i rdo rje initiated the emperor into the *Cakrasaṃvara Tantra* in 1745, taught him Tibetan and Sanskrit, and accompanied him on regular pilgrimages to Wutaishan. Rol pa'i rdo rje was also an invaluable adviser in the emperor's efforts to control the process of incarnation among the powerful lineages of Tibet and Mongolia, and in his many projects in Buddhist art,





The monastery of Erdeni Zuu in Kharakhorum, Mongolia, founded in 1585. It is now a museum. © Nik Wheeler/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

architecture, translation, and publishing in Beijing, Chengde (Jehol), Dolonnor, and beyond.

The Mongolian lineages of the Rje btsun dam pa Khutukhtus of Urga and the lCang skya Khutukhtus of Beijing and Inner Mongolia, as well as many other Mongolian lineages, were perpetuated through incarnation into the twentieth century. The Qing closely controlled this process to the end of the dynasty and found all the Rje btsun dam pa Khutukhtus after Öndür Gegen's immediate successor in Tibet. Few of Öndür Gegen's incarnations (with the exception of the fourth) exhibited his spiritual or political brilliance; in fact, few lived to reach adulthood. The eighth in the line (1870/1–1924) was brought to Urga from Tibet in 1876 and eventually found himself enthroned as Bogdo Khan, a Mongolian title previously reserved for the Qing emperors, upon the fall of the Qing empire in 1912. He played a dual role as leader of the Mongolian Dge lugs pa and head of the new (Outer) Mongolian state until his death from syphilis in 1924. His

incarnation, the ninth Bogdo Gegen, was found shortly after, but by then Mongolia was in the midst of political chaos and the new incarnation was forced into exile.

### **Mongolian Buddhism in the twentieth century**

Through the 1930s and 1940s Buddhist themes were deployed as propaganda by various contending forces. Among them were the Japanese, who during their occupation of Manchuria claimed Japan was Shambhala; the Russians, who made the same claim about the Soviet Union, even as others hinted that V. I. Lenin was an incarnation of Glang dar ma, the apostate ninth-century Tibetan king; and the Chinese, who spread rumors that the PANCHEN LAMA, then in exile in China, would invade Mongolia leading the armies of Shambhala. Other would-be rulers, among them Jamtsarano, a Buriat Mongol and a practicing Buddhist, urged a revitalization of Buddhism that would recapture the principles of Śākyamuni. His renewal move-

ment failed to convince the new communist-led government of the People's Republic of Mongolia, however, and, in 1937, following the precedent set by Joseph Stalin's repression of the Russian Orthodox Church, Buddhism was banned. The Mongolian government executed thousands of lamas, burned monasteries to the ground, and destroyed religious books and images. Beginning with the collapse in 1991 of the Soviet Union, to which the People's Republic of Mongolia was tied as an unofficial satellite, Buddhism began to resurface in both Outer Mongolian and in Russian Buriatia. Gandantegchinling, the main monastery in Ulan Bator (located at the last site of Uрга); Amarbayasgalant khiid, where Öndür Gegen's remains were once enshrined (and whence they were apparently stolen); Erdeni Zuu; and other monasteries in Outer Mongolia began to rebuild their monastic populations, both through the return of former monks, by then elderly, and the entrance into monastic life of new initiates. By contrast, in Inner Mongolia, an autonomous region of the People's Republic of China, Buddhism has been submitted to the same Chinese state control as exists in Tibet.

### Bibliography

- Bawden, Charles R. *The Modern History of Mongolia*. London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1968. 2nd revised edition, London and New York: Kegan Paul, 1989.
- Berger, Patricia, and Bartholomew, Terese. *Mongolia: The Legacy of Chinggis Khan*. San Francisco: Asian Art Museum of San Francisco, 1995.
- Dharmatala, Damcho Gyatsho. *Rosary of White Lotuses, Being the Clear Account of How the Precious Teaching of Buddha Appeared and Spread in the Great Hor Country*, tr. Piotr Klafkowski. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1987.
- Farquhar, David. "Emperor as Bodhisattva in the Governance of the Ch'ing Empire." *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 38, no. 1 (1978): 5–35.
- Grupper, Samuel. "The Manchu Imperial Cult of the Early Ch'ing Dynasty: Texts and Studies on the Tantric Sanctuary of Mahakala at Mukden." Ph.D. diss. Indiana University, Bloomington, 1979.
- Heissig, Walther. "A Mongolian Source to the Lamaist Suppression of Shamanism in the Seventeenth Century." *Anthropos* 48, nos. 1–2 (1953): 1–29; nos. 3–4 (1953): 493–536.
- Heissig, Walther. *The Religions of Mongolia*, tr. Geoffrey Samuel. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980.
- Jagchid, Sechin. "Buddhism in Mongolia after the Collapse of the Yuan Dynasty." In *Traditions religieuses et para-religieuses des peuples altaïques*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France, 1972.
- Moses, Larry W. *The Political Role of Mongol Buddhism*. Bloomington: Asian Studies Research Institute, Indiana University, 1977.
- Pozdneyev, Aleksei M. *Mongolia and the Mongols*, tr. John Roger Shaw and Dale Plank. Bloomington: Indiana University, 1971.

PATRICIA BERGER

MONGOLIA, BUDDHIST ART IN. See Himalayas, Buddhist Art in

## MONKS

The English word *monk* derives from the Latin *monachus*, originally referring to a religious hermit, but eventually coming to mean instead a male member of a religious order living in a community of other renunciants devoted to the performance of religious duties. Similarly, while terms for monk in the Buddhist tradition (Sanskrit, *bhikṣu* or *śramaṇa*; Pali, *bhikkhu* or *samaṇa*) are rooted in words connoting mendicancy and austerity, the Buddhist monk is more generally understood as a member of a community of religious renunciants (the SAṄGHA) who has undergone a formal ORDINATION ceremony conducted by a quorum of fully ordained monks. In addition to the fully ordained monk (*bhikṣu*), novice monks (*śrāmaṇera*) may also be considered members of the monastic community.

Hence, one way to understand what it means to be a Buddhist monk is to examine the collective to which monks belong, a line of inquiry readers can pursue under entries for *saṅgha* and *MONASTICISM*. It is equally useful, however, to focus on smaller groups or types of monks within this larger community, and to examine the most common motivations for becoming a monk—subjects not necessarily covered in compendia of monastic regulations or discussions of the history of the monastic community as a whole.

### Ascetics

One such type is the ascetic monk, who devotes himself to physical austerities. Almost all monks are ascetics in a loose sense of the term, since becoming a monk involves renunciation of certain sensual pleasures, usually including avoidance of sex, adornment, and alcohol. But some monks are drawn to the challenge of greater acts of self-denial. These may involve

fasting, sleep deprivation, self-mutilation, and various other sorts of physical trials. Reasons for a man to pursue such a life are various, including an attempt to purify the body, to experiment with states and insights achieved through mortification of the body, a desire for the prestige that society renders ascetic virtuosi, and even, in some cases, dementia and masochism. One or more of these factors coalesce in the ascetic, one type of Buddhist exemplar.

The Buddha himself is an ambivalent model for the ascetic monk. In one of the most memorable episodes in accounts of the Buddha's life, he rejects extreme austerities after nearly starving himself to death, and, much to the dismay of his disciples, begins to take food after realizing that enlightenment cannot be achieved on an empty stomach. In the context of ancient India, with its strong traditions of severe asceticism, the Buddha cannot be said to have promoted an extreme variety of self-mortification. Nevertheless, the stories of the Buddha's ascetic feats before this realization, including acts he committed in previous lives, have inspired many to follow his earlier example. Another important early exemplar of the ascetic path was the Buddha's disciple MAHĀKĀŚYAPA, known as "the foremost of those who observe the austere discipline." Mahākāśyapa engaged in long bouts of uninterrupted meditation, isolated in a cave, and wearing only robes made of coarse rags, cast off by others. So immune was he to sensual concerns that, according to one account, he once accepted and ate an offering from a leprous woman into which a piece of her rotted finger had accidentally fallen.

For monks outside of India, more proximate models for ASCETIC PRACTICES are readily found in accounts of local monks in Tibet, Thailand, China, Vietnam, and elsewhere. Supernormal powers are one of the by-products of ascetic practice. Mahākāśyapa, for instance, was said to be able to fly. Stories of strange and wondrous abilities are often attached to such figures and are among the reasons monks have chosen to pursue ascetic training. In modern times, Buddhists throughout the world have, following a general trend, become increasingly uncomfortable with extreme forms of asceticism, but the ascetic impulse at some level continues to provide a key motivation for men to become monks and for the laity to follow them.

### Scholars

If the ascetic lifestyle appeals to those attracted to physical and at times even anti-intellectual practice, the model of the scholar monk provides inspiration for

men drawn to the study and explanation of Buddhist doctrine, ritual, and history. For much of the history of Buddhism, monasteries were centers of learning, equipped with excellent libraries and staffed with erudite monks. Indeed, in premodern Sri Lanka and Burma (Myanmar), monasteries served as schools for neighboring children, providing basic EDUCATION in reading and writing as well as Buddhist knowledge. Even in China, with its strong tradition of secular learning, candidates preparing for the imperial civil service examinations would often study in monasteries for the discipline and tranquility, not to mention books, to be found there. As in the case of asceticism, a model for the scholar-monk could readily be found among the Buddha's most prominent disciples in the person of ŚĀRIPUTRA, known among the Buddha's disciples as "foremost in wisdom." Praised for his prodigious memory, astute questioning, and ability to refute false doctrines in pointed debate, Śāriputra was also the paradigmatic saint of the most abstruse, formal branch of Buddhist knowledge, ABHIDHARMA. All cultures where Buddhism is practiced have produced monks known for their erudition, primarily in Buddhist learning, but also in fields not directly related to Buddhism, such as painting, poetry, calligraphy, engineering, and medicine. The Japanese monk KŪKAI (774–835), for instance, in addition to his considerable contributions to the development of Buddhist thought in Japan, is also known as one of Japan's greatest calligraphers, poets, and lexicographers, credited with compiling the oldest extant dictionary in Japan and even, some claim, with inventing the *kana* syllabary—the foundation of modern written Japanese. In modern times it is not uncommon for scholastically inclined monks to pursue academic degrees at home and abroad, and to teach in secular institutions.

### Administrators

While not, at first glance, as glamorous as the otherworldly ascetic or the brilliant scholar, the institutional leader, responsible for monastic administration and the performance of ceremony is essential to the survival of the saṅgha. On a mundane level, monastic administrators are charged with soliciting funds and overseeing the performance of ritual for lay patrons. They also set standards for the monastery, in some cases earning a monastery a reputation for rigor, intellectual activity, or splendor of ceremony. Institutional leaders may be either conservative monks, determined to maintain traditional standards, or reformers, intent on introducing change to the Buddhist order or to society in general. In the twentieth-



Monks at a ceremony at Biechuan Monastery, Guangdong, China, 1987. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

century, Buddhists have turned to such reform monks to meet the challenge of finding new sources of revenue with the emergence of radically different national economies, and of opposing or incorporating new intellectual and social trends, including socialism, feminism, and the findings of modern science. Leading Buddhist monks now establish universities and hospitals, instigate missionary programs abroad, and at times exercise considerable political influence. In Taiwan and Sri Lanka, monks have stood for political office. Less directly, but more importantly, leading monks shape the political opinions of their followers and control substantial economic resources. While some express discomfort with the prestige and power that accrue to institutional leaders, seemingly at odds with the traditional monastic imperative to renounce such values, others see them as admirable and necessary for protecting and disseminating Buddhist beliefs and practices.

### **Eccentrics and degenerates**

Standing outside these conventional types, on the margins of the monastic community, are monks known

for their eccentricity. The “holy fool,” a monk who appears to be mad or stupid but is in fact enlightened, is a stock figure in much of Buddhist art and literature. Such figures are often credited with supernatural powers to foresee the future, heal the sick, and influence the weather. The fifth-century Chinese thaumaturge, Baozhi, for instance, was known to wander the streets making incomprehensible statements. Only later were his statements understood to have predicted important events. In modern times, some monks are known for their bizarre, unpredictable behavior and willingness to break monastic regulations on the grounds that a full appreciation of doctrines of nonduality and emptiness renders conventional restrictions moot. Attitudes toward such figures are necessarily ambivalent, as it is often difficult to distinguish between an enlightened holy man, beyond the ken of ordinary morals, and a charlatan.

Individual monks may be more drawn to one of the types of monks described above over another, but few monks would openly challenge the legitimacy of any of them: Ascetics, scholars, institutional leaders, and

even enlightened eccentric monks are all, for the most part, positive images. Equally prominent in all cultures where Buddhism is practiced, however, is the negative image of the corrupt, degenerate monk. In Buddhist writings, perhaps the most famous bad monk was DEVADATTA, cousin and disciple to the Buddha, who out of envy and ambition tried repeatedly to thwart the Buddha's goals, at one point even attempting to poison him, an act for which he was, in the end, consigned to hell. Equally vile was Mahādeva, said to have had sex with his mother before killing both his parents, after which he sought ordination in a desperate attempt to redeem himself. As a monk, his most significant act was to propose five controversial theses that led to dissension within the saṅgha. Legends such as these probably grew out of attempts to vilify proponents of rival schools or factions. Descriptions of malicious, insincere monks are common in Buddhist writings, where they are condemned and employed as a pedagogical device to inspire more noble monks to avoid their example. Because of this rhetorical aspect in such stories, one must be cautious before accepting accounts of immoral monks as accurate descriptions of real behavior, even when such accounts come from Buddhist sources.

Outside of Buddhist sources, the corrupt monk is also a stock figure in non-Buddhist literature, where monks are often portrayed as only pretending to accept Buddhist principles of renunciation and detachment in order to better achieve the most base and worldly aims. The characteristics of such monks depend in part on the mores of their country of origin. In China, for instance, where vegetarianism is an important part of the monk's identity, monks are often portrayed as secretly satisfying their cravings for meat and wine. And sexually depraved, insatiable monks appear in the literature of all cultures where Buddhism is practiced. Again, it is often difficult to assess the accuracy of such characterizations. While from ancient times to the present there have no doubt always been monks of questionable ethics ready to violate their vows for selfish intent, many such accounts are products of lay fantasy rather than accurate descriptions of actual monks.

Grouping the entire monastic community into a few ideal types masks its diversity. In addition to joining the saṅgha for ascetic training, to investigate Buddhist doctrine, to promote Buddhist institutions, or for less lofty motives, some join because of social obligation, whether out of the custom of becoming a monk for a short period as in Thailand and Burma, or to fulfill a vow made by one's parents. Men become monks after

failing in the secular world or after becoming disillusioned with secular success. They may seek tonsure out of a yearning for tranquility, contempt for the materialism and pettiness of ordinary society, or out of a sense of boredom. In short, the list of reasons for becoming a Buddhist monk is long and varied. It is in part because of this diversity of character and motive that the monastic vocation has held such an enduring appeal for so many and that monks have played such an influential role in all of the societies in which Buddhism is or was once prevalent.

*See also:* Disciples of the Buddha; Nuns; Wilderness Monks

### Bibliography

- Bechert, Heinz, and Gombrich, Richard, ed. *The World of Buddhism: Buddhist Monks and Nuns in Society and Culture*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1984.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Zen Monastic Experience: Buddhist Practice in Contemporary Korea*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Kieschnick, John. *The Eminent Monk: Buddhist Ideals in Medieval Chinese Hagiography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Buddhism in Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism, 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.

JOHN KIESCHNICK

---

## MOZHAO CHAN (SILENT ILLUMINATION CHAN)

Used as a derogatory term by its critics, “silent illumination” Chan (Chinese, mozhao Chan; Japanese, mukoshō Zen) designates an approach to practice and enlightenment that strongly emphasizes the inherently enlightened buddha-nature (TATHĀGATAGARBHA) in all SENTIENT BEINGS. Silent illumination Chan advocates an objectless, still MEDITATION, in which all dualisms disappear and enlightenment naturally manifests itself.

The term *silent illumination* was first used in Chinese Chan (Korean, Sōn; Japanese, Zen) circles in the first half of the twelfth century, probably introduced

by the great Chan master of the Caodong tradition, Hongzhi Zhengjue (1091–1157). However, the term was made infamous by Hongzhi's contemporary Dahui ZONGGAO (1089–1163) of the Linji Chan tradition, who vehemently attacked what he called the “heretical silent illumination Chan” of his day as a quietistic form of meditation, lacking in wisdom and enlightenment. Dahui Zonggao countered with his own *kanhua* Chan meditation (literally “Chan of observing the key phrase” or “KŌAN introspection Chan”), and he succeeded in imbuing the term *silent illumination* with strongly negative connotations that came to characterize it in all of East Asian Buddhism.

Hongzhi is the only Chan master on record who used *silent illumination* in a positive sense, although it is possible that the term was expunged from the records of other Caodong masters after Dahui's attacks. In his writings and recorded sayings, Hongzhi often lyrically extols the realm of enlightenment that manifests in quiet meditation, as in the opening lines of his famous poem “Mozhao Ming” (“Inscription on Silent Illumination”), where he writes: “In complete silence, words are forgotten; total clarity appears before you.” However, in this poem and elsewhere, Hongzhi stresses that although there is no need to strive for an enlightenment experience, the meditator must not fall into a murky and unthinking state of mind; transcendent wisdom will naturally manifest itself only in an alert mind. To Hongzhi, silent illumination was by no means a passive or thought-suppressing exercise.

Other Caodong masters around the time of Hongzhi can be shown to have embraced similar teachings, beginning with the reviver of the Song-dynasty (960–1279) Caodong tradition, Furong Daokai (1043–1118). There is, however, no evidence that a special silent illumination approach characterized the Caodong Chan tradition from the time of its reputed founder, Dongshan Liangjie (807–869), although this has often been assumed.

In the thirteenth century the Japanese monk DŌGEN (1200–1253) received a transmission in the Chinese Caodong tradition and founded the Japanese Sōtō sect of Zen. Dōgen did not use the term *silent illumination*, but his *shikantaza* (just sitting) meditation practice can clearly be seen as influenced by the silent illumination of the twelfth-century Caodong tradition, although there is no agreement among scholars as to the extent of this influence. The Japanese Rinzai (Chinese, Linji) sect of Zen, which became heir to Dahui Zonggao's *kanhua* Chan, has occasionally accused the Sōtō sect

of practicing silent illumination, but the Sōtō sect has never used the term for its own teachings. In Korean Sōn, *kanhua* (Korean, *kanwha*) Chan dominated early on, and silent illumination Chan never had an impact. Although *kanhua* Chan became the standard for meditation in China shortly after Dahui Zonggao and was even adopted in the late Song Caodong tradition, silent illumination style meditation is still recognized as legitimate in Chinese Chan.

*See also:* Chan School

### Bibliography

Leighton, Taigen Daniel, ed. and trans. (with Yi Wu). *Cultivating the Empty Field: The Silent Illumination of Zen Master Hongzhi*. San Francisco: North Point Press, 1991.

Schlütter, Morten. “Silent Illumination, Kung-an Introspection, and the Competition for Lay Patronage in Sung-Dynasty Ch’an.” In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel Getz. Honolulu: Hawaii University Press, 1999.

MORTEN SCHLÜTTER

---

## MUDRĀ AND VISUAL IMAGERY

With the exception of the earliest phases of Indian Buddhist art, when the presence and achievements of the Buddha were represented by symbols, such as a STŪPA (burial mound), footprints, or an empty throne, the study of Buddhist art is generally that of figural representations. BUDDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, and other deities are invariably depicted as idealized anthropomorphic images, and their physical perfection—defined differently in various places and times—reflects their spiritual advancement. Indian images of the Buddha emphasize intellectual concepts, represented by, for example, the wide breast and narrow waist of a lion, or the long legs of a gazelle. In addition, physical marks, such as the *uṣṇīṣa* (a cranial protuberance), the *ūrṇā* (a tuft of hair or “third eye” between the eyebrows), webbed fingers, and wheels on the soles of the feet, further distinguish a buddha from other beings. Symbols such as the lotus, emblematic of purity, or the wheel, indicative of preaching, are ubiquitous in Buddhist art.

The first anthropomorphic images of the Buddha stressed his role as a teacher, showing him wearing the monk's long skirt covered by a full shawl. By the eighth century, crowned and bejeweled buddhas were also represented. Such icons, which parallel monastic practices in which a crown was placed on the head of a

monk during initiation, are one way of representing the numerous transcendent buddhas of the later pantheon. Like the earlier icons, bejeweled buddhas are physically perfect. Gestures, postures, and implements are used to distinguish them from one another.

### Mudrās in Buddhist imagery

The enthroned Buddha seated in a meditative or lotus posture (*padmāsana*) on a tenth- or eleventh-century Indian sculpture holds his proper right hand in a gesture of meditation and his proper left in the gesture of touching the earth (*bhūmisparśamudrā* [Figure 1, d]). The earth-touching gesture illustrates a specific moment in Śākyamuni's sacred biography when he was challenged by MĀRA, the personification of EVIL. To defend his right to seek enlightenment, the Buddha-to-be Śākyamuni reached down to touch the ground, calling upon the earth as witness to validate the propriety of his quest. The earth responded thunderously, and Māra was vanquished. Known generically as *mudrās*, such gestures, which have long roots in Indian culture, may derive from early dance traditions or from other forms of physical communication. Śākyamuni is known to have used one in an early JĀTAKA tale (a story detailing one of the lives he lived before he become a buddha) in order to communicate with a potential wife. Sixteen such gestures are listed in an early Buddhist text, while three hundred are found in a later work.

The four smaller standing buddhas on this same sculpture illustrate additional moments in Śākyamuni's life: Moving clockwise from the lower left are Śākyamuni's descent from the Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods (Trāyastriṃśa), which he visited to preach to his mother; the first sermon; the story of a monkey's offering of honey to the Buddha; and the taming of the mad elephant Nālāgiri, sent by his evil cousin DEVADATTA to kill him. These events, from a standardized group of scenes called the Eight Great Events in a buddha's life, can be interpreted both as historical records and as paradigms for the process of enlightenment. For example, the taming of the mad elephant is sometimes understood as a symbol of the mastery of certain aspects of the self that must be disciplined.

The specific historical moments illustrated by the four smaller buddhas are identified by the postures of the figures, the objects they hold in their hands, and their hand gestures or mudrās. For example, the gesture of fearlessness (*abhayamudrā* [Figure 1, a]) often

identifies the moment when Śākyamuni tamed the mad elephant. In this mudrā, the right hand is held upward with the palm facing outward, illustrating the act of teaching and signifying the Buddha's ability to grant fearlessness to his followers.

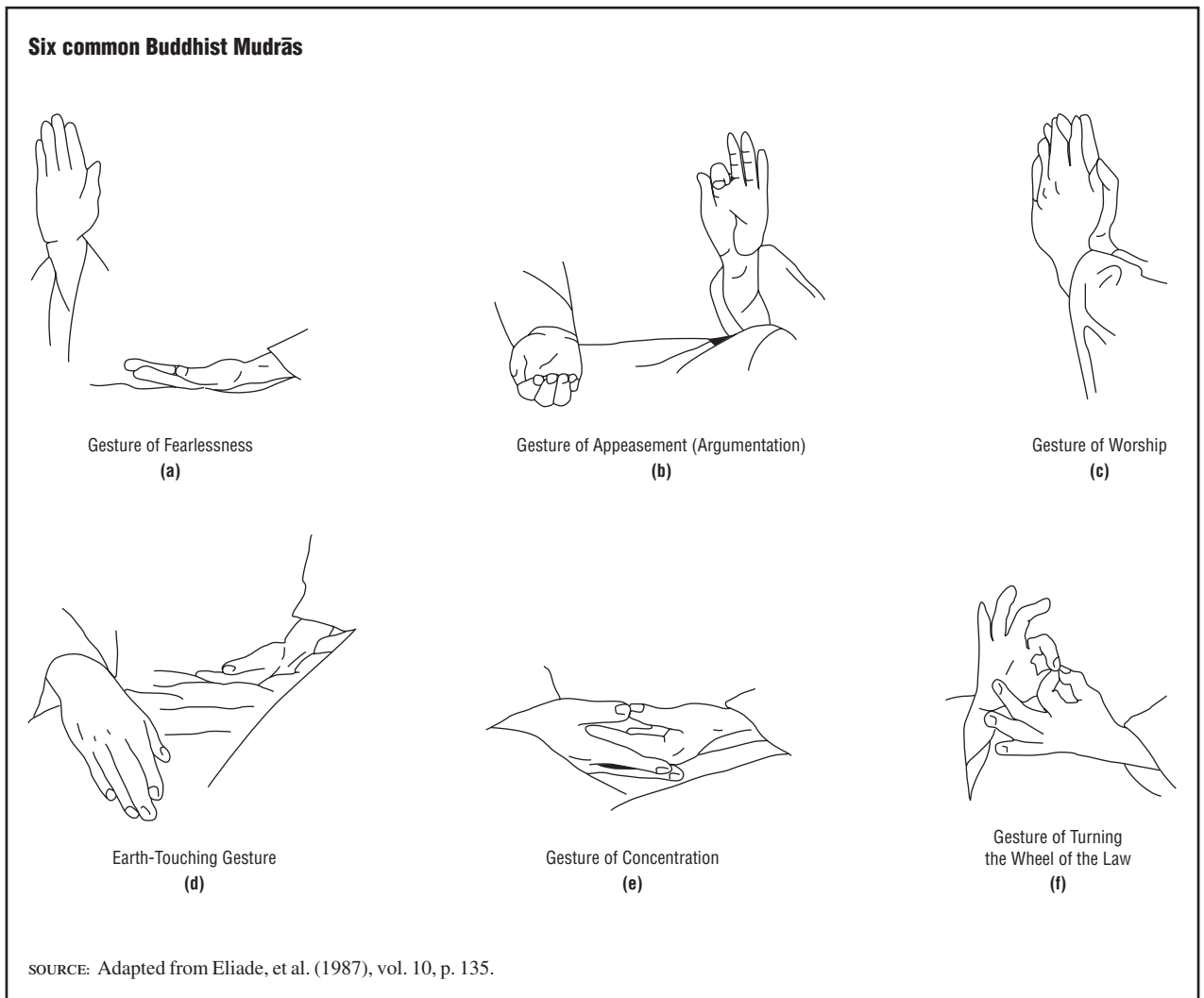
Most of the mudrās found in Buddhist texts are not used in the visual arts, but instead are performed in personal devotions and as an aspect of RITUAL. In general, deities with their hands held up and open are actively engaged in the cosmos, while those with closed hands, or hands held close to the body, are in a transcendent state. The gesture of appeasement or argumentation (*vitarkamudrā* [Figure 1, b]) in which the thumb and index, middle, or ring finger of the upraised right hand are shown touching, indicates teaching, and is one of the most common in visual imagery. Teaching is also defined by upraised hands with the thumb and index fingers of both hands touching each other, a gesture known as "turning the wheel of the law" (*dharmacakramudrā* [Figure 1, f]). Hands placed on the lap, one above the other, with palms upward (*dhyānamudrā* [Figure 1, e]) indicate concentration or meditation. Donors and other devotees have clasped palms, a universal symbol of prayer, known as the gesture of worship (*añjalimudrā* [Figure 1, c]).

### Bodhisattvas

Hand gestures and postures are also used to identify the innumerable bodhisattvas found in the Buddhist pantheon. In early Buddhism, the term *bodhisattva* is used to define an individual who, like Śākyamuni, is on the path to enlightenment. The aristocratic clothing and jewelry worn by these figures indicate their active engagement in the world, while the same accoutrements worn by the great bodhisattvas in later traditions suggest their transcendence. These later figures, a primary theme in the visual arts, are revered for their decision to remain accessible to and guide the devout.

MAITREYA is a bodhisattva in the present age, and will become a buddha in the next. As a bodhisattva, he is identified by the stūpa that is found in his headdress, which indicates that he carries on the legacy of the current buddha Śākyamuni. The white lotus he holds and the small figure of the Buddha AMITĀBHA in his headdress identify Avalokiteśvara, the personification of compassion. Mañjuśrī, the personification of wisdom, rides a lion and holds a blue lotus that bears a copy of a "perfection of wisdom" (*prajñāpāramitā*) text. Mañjuśrī is sometimes paired with Samantabhadra (whose name means "universal kindness") on an elephant. In addition, Kṣitigarbha, or the Bodhisattva of the Earth

FIGURE 1



Womb, who is generally portrayed as a monk, plays an important role in Central and East Asia, where he is revered as a guide to paradise, a protector from the torments of hell, and, at times, the special guardian of travelers, and women and children.

By the sixth century, the major bodhisattvas had acquired multiple manifestations. For example, Avalokiteśvara, who eventually became the most widely revered deity in Asia, has both an eleven-headed form (*Ekadaśamukha*) and one with one thousand hands and one thousand eyes (*Sahasrabhujasahasranetra*). In Chinese culture, Avalokiteśvara occasionally takes female forms, which led to his misrepresentation as a Buddhist “madonna” in early Western studies of the religion. Mañjuśrī and Samantabhadra also have manifestations distinguished by multiple arms and heads. The former, whose name means “pleasing to behold,” is invariably depicted as a young prince, and often wears a necklace

made of tiger claws, commonly used in India to protect children.

Some images show Mañjuśrī with one head and four hands, seated in a lotus posture. As befits his role as a bodhisattva, he is active, leaning slightly to the right. Mañjuśrī brandishes a truncated sword in his primary right hand, and a lotus supporting a text in his left. His secondary right hand once held an arrow that was paired with a bow in the left. The first two implements illustrate his capacity to defeat egoism, the second his ability to confound ignorance. Often called Tīkṣṇa-Mañjuśrī, this manifestation of the Bodhisattva of Wisdom is prevalent in the Himalayas and China, but not elsewhere in Asia.

Female deities found in later Buddhist traditions are sometimes understood as buddhas and sometimes as bodhisattvas. Of these, Tārā, who takes many forms, some green, some white, is the most prominent. She



is frequently linked with Avalokiteśvara and is revered in Tibet. Others include Prajñāpāramitā, the personification of wisdom, and Uṣṇīṣavijaya, the embodiment of the cranial protuberance on the Buddha's head.

### Guardians and other figures

A wide array of protectors is found in Buddhist iconography. The guardians of the four cardinal directions, derived to some extent from early Indian nature spirits known as *yakṣas*, are the earliest and most longstanding. After the sixth century, they are usually shown wearing heavy armor and carrying weapons and other attributes in the arts of Central and East Asia. Door or entranceway guardians (*dvārapālas*), on the other hand, are shown in active, almost threatening, postures, and wear only the dhoti, a skirtlike Indian garment. The five wisdom kings (*vidyārāja*), who manifest the powers of the transcendent Buddha Vairocana, are commonly found in East Asian traditions beginning in the eighth century. They are characterized by Indian clothing, weapons, and terrifying expressions.

Related figures, often based on Hindu Śaivism, such as Hevajra, Cakrasaṃvara, and Yamantaka-Vajrabhairava, are common in Tibetan traditions, where they serve as both protectors and the focus of individual practices. Yamantaka-Vajrabhairava is a terrifying manifestation of Mañjuśrī, whose benign head appears at the top of his stack of nine faces. His primary face, which is that of a buffalo, is a reference to Yama, the Hindu god of death, who rides this animal. Yamantaka-Vajrabhairava's adoption of this face illustrates his ability to transcend the state of death. He has thirty-four arms, many of which hold ritual implements, and sixteen legs. The garland of severed heads, and the human beings and animals that he tramples, illustrate negative states that must be conquered in the quest for enlightenment. His embrace of Vajravetali signifies the union of compassion and wisdom, the two penultimate Buddhist virtues. Known as father-mother, or *yab-yum*, such icons are common in Tibet.

Tibetan Buddhism preserves the use of a system of five buddha families to help structure the enormous pantheon that had evolved by the eleventh and twelfth centuries. The Tibetan system derives from one used in eastern India (Bihar, West Bengal, and Bangladesh) during this period, and is loosely based on an earlier grouping of three families. Each family is headed by one of the five major transcendent buddhas: AKṢOBHYA, Amoghasiddhi, Vairocana, Amitābha, and Ratnasambhava. Each of the five buddhas and the

various members of his family have an associated color, vehicle, attribute, gesture, and direction.

Sculpted and painted portraits of famous monks, both historical and semilegendary, are found in Tibet, China, Korea, and Japan. Other commonly portrayed figures include ARHATS, enlightened disciples of the Buddha who became popular in China in the ninth and tenth centuries, and spread from there to Korea, Japan, and Tibet. In addition to representations in sculpture and painting, arhats are often shown as a theme in the decorative arts. Found in groups of sixteen, eighteen, or five hundred, they are depicted either as gruesome figures or as handsome young men. The MAHĀSIDDHAS, a group of semihistorical adepts often credited with the creation of the later esoteric traditions practiced in Tibet, are commonly found in paintings from that part of Asia.

*See also:* Bodhisattva Images; Buddha Images; Buddha, Life of the, in Art; China, Buddhist Art in; Himalayas, Buddhist Art in; Huayan Art; India, Buddhist Art in; Indonesia, Buddhist Art in; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Robes and Clothing; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

### Bibliography

- Eliade, Mircea, ed. *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, 16 vols. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Mallmann, Marie-Thérèse de. *Introduction à l'Iconographie du tantrisme bouddhique*. Paris: Librairie Adrien-Maisonneuve, 1975.
- Saunders, E. Dale. *Mudrā: A Study of Symbolic Gestures in Japanese Buddhist Sculpture*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1985.
- Snellgrove, David L., ed. *The Image of the Buddha*. London: Serindia; Paris: UNESCO, 1978.

DENISE PATRY LEIDY

MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA. *See* Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA

The *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* is one of the six extant Buddhist monastic codes, or VINAYAS. There is some controversy about how to understand its title, and

thereby its place among the various vinayas. It could be read as “The Root (or Original) Monastic Code of the Group that Teaches that All Exists,” or it could be read as “The Monastic Code of the Root (or Original) Group that Teaches that All Exists.” However it be taken, it is almost certain that the presence of *mūla* in the title reflects a polemical claim on the part of its compilers or their group.

Although again there is some controversy, the best available evidence would seem to indicate that, in the form that we have it, it was probably compiled in the first or second century C.E. in northwest India. Several scholarly studies have suggested that, in comparison with the other vinayas, the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* often seems to contain some very early material or accounts that are markedly undeveloped when compared with those found elsewhere. “Very early,” however, is relative since this vinaya, like all the surviving vinayas, appears to have been redacted late, centuries after the time of the Buddha, and to presuppose a fully developed and very sophisticated form of monasticism.

One of the most striking characteristics of the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* is its enormous size. It has been called “monstrous” and has been said to be about four times longer than any other vinaya. Its Tibetan version, in traditional format, fills thirteen large volumes and consists of more than four thousand leaves or eight thousand “pages.” In addition to this Tibetan version, which appears to be complete, the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* survives in a partial (but still massive) Chinese translation, and significant parts of it have also come down to us in Sanskrit. Very little of this monster has been translated into English; a little more has been translated into German.

This vinaya, like all vinayas, contains a huge number of major rules and minor regulations meant to govern everything from ORDINATION to how to use the latrine. But this vinaya also contains rules detailing how monks should lend money on interest or borrow money from laymen, how they should warehouse and sell rice, take images in procession into town, make up parts of canonical texts, and a host of other things not commonly presented as integral parts of Buddhist monasticism.

Rules per se, however, take up a relatively limited space in this huge collection. It also contains a significant number of texts that elsewhere are found in the sūtra collection. More importantly, perhaps, it is stuffed with stories and narrative tales. On this account one scholar has even called it “one of the masterpieces

of Sanskrit literature,” and it has certainly been a source that later authors and artists drew on heavily for their subjects, and that scholars will be mining for a very long time.

*See also:* Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

Schiefner, F. Anton von. *Tibetan Tales Derived from Indian Sources*, tr. W. R. S. Ralston. Boston: Osgood, 1882.

Schopen, Gregory. *Buddhist Monks and Business Matters: More Collected Papers*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2003.

GREGORY SCHOPEN

---

## MURAKAMI SENSHŌ

Murakami Senshō (1851–1929) was a Jōdo Shinshū, Ōtani branch cleric and scholar of Buddhism. He was born in Tanba (Hyōgo prefecture) in Japan, the eldest son of an Ōtani-branch Jōdo Shin cleric. Murakami received a classical Confucian and Buddhist education at academies in Himeji and at the Higashi Honganji in Kyoto. He took the surname Murakami when he married into the family of Murakami Jōkai, a Shin cleric in Mikawa. Murakami went on to hold teaching positions successively at the Sōtōshū Daigakurin, the Ōtani Kyōkō, and finally, Tokyo Imperial University, where he became a lecturer in Indian philosophy.

In an effort to further scholarship of Buddhism that was historically sound, pan-sectarian in scope, and sympathetic to the tradition, Murakami, together with Washio Junkyō (1868–1941) and Sakaino Kōyō (1871–1933), founded the important journal *Bukkyō shirin* (*Buddhist History*), one of the earliest academic journals devoted to the humanistic study of Buddhism in Japan. Murakami also published the pathbreaking, pan-sectarian study of Japanese Buddhist history, *Dainihon Bukkyōshi* (*History of Japanese Buddhism*). Most controversially, in his book describing the doctrines fundamental to all streams of Buddhism, *Bukkyō tōitsu ron* (*The Unity of Buddhism*), and more fully in *Daijō bussetsu ron hihan* (*Critique of the Argument that Mahāyāna Is the Teaching of Śākyamuni Buddha*), Murakami advanced the radical thesis that MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism was not the direct teaching of Śākyamuni Buddha. Rather, he contended that Mahāyāna was a development of Śākyamuni’s teaching and that all other BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS for

example, AMITĀBHA (Amida) and Mahāvairocana (Dainichi), were, unlike the historical Śākyamuni, abstract expressions of the historical Buddha's ideal qualities. Hostile reactions to his book from the Buddhist establishment, particularly his own Shin denomination, forced Murakami to renounce his status as a Shin cleric in 1901. He reconciled with the Shin establishment, however, reclaiming his clerical status in 1911.

See also: **Buddhist Studies**

### *Bibliography*

Vita, Silvio. "Interpretations of Mahāyāna Buddhism in Meiji Japan: From Religious Polemics to Scholarly Debate." *Transactions of the International Conference of Orientalists in Japan* 31 (1986): 44–57.

RICHARD M. JAFFE

---

## MYANMAR

The modern state of Myanmar, also known as Burma, is geographically the largest and westernmost country of mainland Southeast Asia. Its population of approximately forty-seven million as of the year 2000 is comprised of more than one hundred nationalities, the largest of which include the majority Bamar or ethnic Burmans, the Rakhine (Arakanese), the Shan, the Kayin (Karen), and the Mon. As a convention in English, members of all of these nationalities receive the designation *Burmese* as citizens of the country. The vast majority of the Burmese people, regardless of their ethnic affiliation, subscribe to THERAVĀDA Buddhism as their traditional faith. So pervasive is the influence of this religion on the people of Myanmar that it is often said that to be Burmese is to be Buddhist. Indeed, historically it was Theravāda Buddhism more than any other force that drew the many peoples of Myanmar together into a single civilization, so much so that even non-Buddhist citizens of the country acknowledge the centrality of Theravāda ethical, social, and political conceptions to the fabric of Burmese life.

### **Historical background**

Burmese chroniclers trace the origin of Theravāda Buddhism in their country to the Buddha himself, who they assert personally converted the inhabitants of Lower and Upper Myanmar. These regions are the respective homelands of the Mon and the ancient Pyu

people, precursors of the modern Bamar and the nationalities most closely associated with the evolution of Burmese Buddhism. Burmese sources further equate the Mon homeland with Suvāṇṇabhūmi and the Pyu-Bamar homeland with Aparanta, identifications that allow them to claim for their country two missions from King AŚOKA (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.). Reflecting a long-standing cultural rivalry with Sri Lanka, the same sources emphasize that the two missions restored an already established Theravāda tradition in Myanmar, whereas the simultaneous single Aśokan mission to Sri Lanka merely established Theravāda Buddhism on the island for the first time. As a final claim to primacy, the Mon identify the great Pāli commentator BUDDHAGHOSA as a native son.

Although Theravāda Buddhism has a long history in Myanmar, there is little evidence of its presence in the country before the fourth century C.E. In addition, that which has been uncovered does not support the traditional portrayal of early Burmese Buddhism as uniformly Theravāda. Rather it shows an eclectic mix of traditions that included multiple forms of Buddhism, Brahmanism, and indigenous animist cults. Excavations at the ancient Pyu capital of Śrīkṣetra, for example, unearthed images of VIṢṆU, MAHĀYĀNA bodhisattvas, and Pāli and Sanskrit Buddhist inscriptions. Seventh-century Chinese travelogues note that the city supported Sthaviravāda (Theravāda), Mahāsāṃghika, Mūlasarvāstivāda, and Saṃmatīya monks and that the Pyu observed the custom of ordaining all youths as novices in the Buddhist religion.

During this early period Myanmar absorbed cultural influences chiefly from South India, though important contacts were also maintained with Sri Lanka. Beginning in the ninth century, by which time the Bamar had begun to replace the Pyu in Upper Myanmar, Bengal emerged as a major source of Indian influence in the region. Large numbers of Buddhist votive tablets bearing Mahāyāna imagery and Sanskrit inscriptions written in north Indian script were imported and produced locally at this time. Bengali influence waned by the twelfth century as a consequence of the Muslim conquest of north India, a development that encouraged the expansion of Burmese ties with Sri Lanka. The Sri Lanka connection facilitated the introduction of new reformist strands of Sinhalese Theravāda Buddhism that in time emerged as the majority Buddhist tradition of mainland Southeast Asia. This process proceeded incrementally and did not complete itself in Myanmar until the eighteenth century.

In 1057 C.E., the Bamar king of Pagan, Anawrahta (Pāli, Anuruddha), conquered the Mon kingdom of Thaton in Lower Myanmar, inaugurating the first Burmese empire (1057–1287). Tradition states that he carried off to his capital Pāli texts, relics, and orthodox monks, and that he adopted Theravāda Buddhism as the sole religion of his domain. To prepare for this, Anawrahta suppressed an already established sect of heretical Buddhist monks known as the Ari, who, though notorious for their wickedness, had enjoyed the traditional support of his forefathers. Whatever the historical accuracy of the legend, epigraphic and archaeological evidence indicates that Anawrahta was more eclectic than portrayed. He assisted the Sinhalese king Vijayabāhu I to reinstate a valid Theravāda ordination line in Sri Lanka; at the same time he circulated in his own kingdom votive tablets adorned with Mahāyāna imagery. Anawrahta also supported a royal cult of *nat* or spirit propitiation dedicated to the very deities said to have been worshipped by the Ari monks.

In 1165 the Sinhalese king Parakkamabāhu I reformed the Theravāda SAṄGHA of Sri Lanka by abolishing the Abhayagiri and Jetavana monasteries and compelling all worthy monks to be reordained in the Mahāvihāra fraternity. Within two decades, this reformed Sinhalese tradition was established at Pagan and elsewhere in the Burmese empire. The Burmese monarch extended patronage to the imported Sinhalese order but did not compel the native saṅgha to unite with it. As a consequence, the Burmese monastic community split into two groups, an indigenous unreformed faction called the Myanma saṅgha, and the reformed Sinhalese faction called the Sīhala saṅgha. The Sīhala saṅgha was revered for its discipline and scholarship, though it fractured repeatedly, giving rise to a pattern of saṅgha disunity that has been characteristic of Burmese monasticism ever since.

In the thirteenth century a powerful community of forest-dwelling monks emerged from the Myanma saṅgha, whose discipline was lax when viewed by Sinhalese standards. Modern scholarship has identified these as the Ari monks of the chronicles. Ruins of their headquarters at Minnanthu near Pagan include temples decorated with Mahāyāna and tantric imagery, suggesting that the forest dwellers were votaries of these traditions. The Tibetan historian Tārānātha (1575–1634) states that Buddhist TANTRA was introduced to Pagan from Bengal by this time and inscriptions indicate that as late as the fifteenth century the Myanma saṅgha received, along with Pāli scriptures

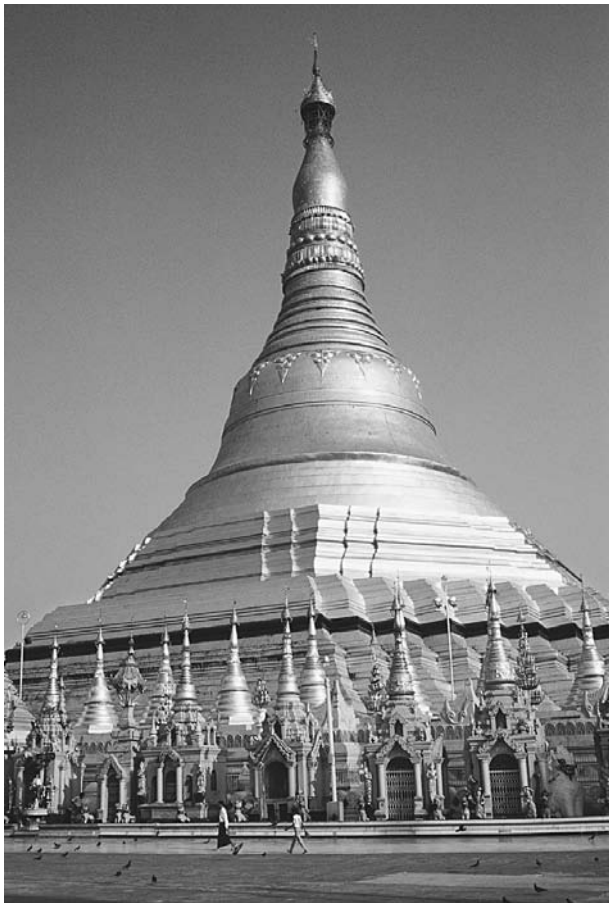
and commentaries, Mahāyāna and tantric works as donations to its libraries.

### Ascendancy of Sinhalese orthodoxy

Toward the end of the thirteenth century the Pagan empire began to disintegrate. The Mon broke away and established the kingdom of Rāmañña in Lower Myanmar, while the Bamar divided Upper Myanmar into several smaller states, chief of which was the kingdom of Ava. The monastic community remained divided throughout the region. In the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, new waves of reformed Theravāda Buddhism emanating from Sri Lanka were introduced into Southeast Asia via Lower Myanmar. In 1476 Dhammazedī, the Mon king of Rāmañña, adopted these reforms, compelling all monks in his realm to be reordained in the new more stringent Sinhalese order and to be educated according to a standardized curriculum.

Dhammazedī's reformed saṅgha was favored by two succeeding Burmese empires, the Taungoo (1531–1752) and the Konbaung (1752–1885), though rival monastic fraternities were allowed to flourish unmolested. It was during this period of relative stability that the village monastery became the basic institutional unit of the Burmese saṅgha and assumed its traditional role as village center and school for village youth. It was principally through this institution, which facilitated literacy and the propagation of a standardized Buddhist ethos, that the cultural integration characteristic of Burmese civilization was achieved. In 1791 the Burmese monarchy ordered Dhammazedī's reforms imposed uniformly throughout the empire, thus unifying the Burmese saṅgha for the first time. Although monastic unity was short lived and did not survive the demise of the Konbaung dynasty, all contemporary monastic fraternities in Myanmar trace their lineages back to Dhammazedī's reforms and share a common interpretation of the monastic code. Buddhism was disestablished as the state religion under the British colonial government (1885–1947) to the detriment of saṅgha discipline. State oversight of religious affairs was restored at Burmese independence in 1947, and has remained in place under both the original democratic government and the subsequent military junta that has ruled the country since 1962.

In addition to overseeing monastic affairs, Burmese kings devoted themselves to the acquisition of Buddha relics (Pāli, *dhātu*; Burmese, *dat-daw*) and to the preservation of Buddhist texts. These three together (relics, texts, and monks) are the physical embodiments



The golden spire of the Shwedagon pagoda in Yangon (Rangoon), Myanmar (Burma). © David Cumming; Eye Ubiquitous/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

of the Buddha, the *dhamma* (Sanskrit, *dharma*; teachings), and the *saṅgha*—the three JEWELS (Pāli, *tiratana*) at the center of Buddhist devotional practice. Within the precincts of every capital were grand pagodas (Burmese, *zedi*) housing relics that functioned as palladia of the state, and during periods of imperial unity, the shrines of subjugated territories were often restored and embellished as signs of the emperor's piety and magnanimity. Myanmar's most magnificent shrine, the gilded SHWEDAGON pagoda in Yangon (Rangoon), reached its present monumental dimensions through a process of repeated expansion at the hands of rival monarchs. Since Pagan times Burmese kings took upon themselves the task of promoting monastic learning and preserving accurate copies of the Theravāda CANON—the Pāli *tipiṭaka*. The most recent recensions of the *tipiṭaka* in Myanmar were produced during two Buddhist councils; the first convened by King Mindon in 1871 and the second convened by Prime Minister U Nu in 1954. Since at least the fifteenth century, officially edited *tipiṭakas*

have formed the core curriculum of state administered monastic examinations.

### The Burmese synthesis of traditions

Buddhism in Myanmar combines several key elements from its variegated past to produce a unique form of Theravāda orthodoxy. Occupying the center is the Pāli textual tradition with its beliefs, practices, and institutions as interpreted by the Burmese Theravāda *saṅgha*, and supported by the state and the general populace. There are, in addition, important rites and beliefs that derive from non-Pāli sources but are regarded as wholly orthodox. Prominent among these is the *shin-pyu* ceremony, the obligatory temporary ordination of boys as Buddhist novices, and the simultaneous ear-piercing ceremony for girls, rites of passage that can be traced back to the Buddhist initiation ceremonies of the ancient Pyu. The popular cult of Shin Upagot (Sanskrit, UPAGUPTA), an immortal ARHAT and remover of obstacles, and the cave-shrine of Alaung-daw Kathapa near the city of Monywa, which allegedly contains the sacred corpse of MAHĀKĀŚYAPA (Pāli, Mahākassapa), both have their origins in Sanskrit Buddhist traditions. The famous water festival of Thin-gyan, which marks the Burmese New Year in April, was adapted from the Hindu New Year festival of Holi, with Buddhist elements taken from Pāli scripture interpolated into the festival's legend.

For purely worldly concerns, Burmese seek the assistance of a host of *nats* or spirits. Considered morally ambiguous at best, *nats* may be nature deities or the ghosts of legendary persons who died violent deaths and whose energies can be tapped in exchange for veneration. At the national level the belief system is organized into the cult of the Thirty-Seven Lords, which originally was a royally administered cult of spirit propitiation that tied pre-Buddhist regional deities and their human devotees into a hierarchical web of ritual obligation paralleling the political order. *Nat* worship often entails the offering of alcohol and blood sacrifice (chickens), for which reason it is regarded even by its votaries as falling outside of Buddhism. Nevertheless the *nat* pantheon is conceived of in entirely Buddhist terms and it is situated within the lower strata of the Buddhist cosmos as articulated by the normative tradition.

Burmese Buddhism as a salvific system can be divided into three general types or PATHS. The first and most traditional of these is the path of merit-making whereby one strives to accumulate merit (Pāli, *puñña*; Burmese, *kuthol*) through the observance of PRECEPTS

(Pāli, *sīla*), the performance of meritorious deeds, and acts of DĀNA (GIVING) directed especially toward religious persons and objects, such as monks and pagodas. The goal of merit accumulation is repeated for happy rebirth as a human or god, with NIRVĀṆA (Pāli, *nibbāna*) or final liberation at most a very distant goal in the mind of the practitioner. The majority of Burmese Buddhists, both lay and ordained, have happy rebirth as their preferred goal, an orientation that has been typical of Buddhists in Myanmar since at least the Pagan period.

The second system is the path of VIPASSANĀ (SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ) or insight meditation. *Vipassanā* meditation, when successfully practiced, leads to the attainment of BODHI (AWAKENING), or enlightenment, and nirvāṇa, either in this life or in a not-too-distant future life. Practitioners of *vipassanā* in Myanmar typically meditate privately and join meditation centers (Burmese, *wipathana yeiktha*) during retreats. The observance of precepts and a general moral lifestyle is considered a necessary foundation for insight practice. *Vipassanā* meditation was revived in Myanmar in the early eighteenth century and by the late twentieth century was widely popular among all classes throughout the country.

The third salvation system is called *weikza-lam* or the path of the Buddhist wizard. This is an esoteric system of powerful occult sciences requiring initiation by a master. The goal of this path is to become a *weikza* or *weikza-do* (from the Pāli *vijjādhara*), which is a kind of semi-immortal magician or wonder-worker. The *weikza* vows to remain in the world for the benefit of the faithful until the advent of the future Buddha MAITREYA (Pāli, *Metteyya*), at which time the *weikza* will attain nirvāṇa or take a vow to become a perfect buddha himself. As a service, he acts as teacher to human disciples, instructing them in the recitation of spells, the casting of runes, alchemy, and *samatha* (Sanskrit, *śamatha*) or tranquility meditation. *Weikza* practitioners typically eschew *vipassanā* meditation on the basis that it could potentially cut short their career by causing them to attain nirvāṇa too quickly. In its methodology and goals, the *weikza-lam* shows striking similarities to the tantric Buddhist MAHĀSIDDHA tradition of medieval Bengal. Because it proposes an alternative soteriology to that contained in Pāli sources, the *weikza-lam* is sometimes viewed with suspicion by the religious authorities.

See also: **Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Aung Thwin, Michael. *Pagan: The Origins of Modern Burma*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1985.
- Bischoff, Roger. *Buddhism in Myanmar: A Short History*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1995.
- Duroiselle, Charles. "The Ari of Burma and Tantric Buddhism." *Annual Report of the Archaeological Survey of India* (1915–1916): 79–93.
- Htin Aung, Maung. *Folk Elements in Burmese Buddhism*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1962.
- Mendelson, E. Michael. *Saṅgha and State in Burma: A Study of Monastic Sectarianism and Leadership*, ed. John P. Ferguson. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1975.
- Ray, Nihar Ranjan. *Sanskrit Buddhism in Burma*. Amsterdam: H. J. Paris, 1937.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.
- Than Tun. "Mahākassapa and His Tradition." *Journal of the Burma Research Society* 42, no. 2 (1959): 99–118.

PATRICK A. PRANKE

---

## MYANMAR, BUDDHIST ART IN

Burma, renamed Myanmar in 1989, is the largest mainland country in Southeast Asia. Burma has a continuous tradition of Buddhist art from the early centuries of the common era to the present. The principal forms of this art involve the construction of monuments, either stūpas or temples, which embody the main artistic media: architecture, painting, and sculpture, in addition to the decorative arts. Despite the large number of monuments and other vestiges of this tradition, Burmese art history has remained a neglected area of study.

### Early history, 600–800 c.e.

Between the fifth and eighth centuries C.E. the Irrawaddy valley was settled by a people known as the Pyu, sometimes described as the Proto-Burmese, who migrated from southwest China. Living in walled city-states, their civilization was documented by imperial Chinese chroniclers who marveled at the Pyu's sophistication in matters of music, dance, jewelry making, textile production, and religious life. Archaeological finds at Śrī Kṣetra, the largest Pyu city near the modern town of Prome (Pyay), and Beik-than-myo, which literally translates as "Viṣṇu City," indicate a mixed religious

life derived from the Indian subcontinent. This had elements of Sanskritic and Pāli Buddhism. In addition, various Hindu images have been found indicating that Pyu religious life incorporated a number of cults and movements. The workmanship of these images, particularly the gold work on the reliquary casket found at the Khin Ba mound, is exquisite and bears testimony to the accounts of the Chinese chroniclers. The principal Buddhist monuments found at Śrī Kṣetra, large stūpas like the Be-be-gyi, are said to derive from colossal Sri Lankan prototypes; cave temples, such as the Lei-myet-hna, were made of brick and are precursory to the monuments found at Pagan. They share similar structural systems, incorporating the pointed arch and voussoir brick patterns.

Along the southern Burma coastline the Mon civilization enjoyed good maritime contacts with India and acted as a conduit for the ingress of Buddhism into the Irrawaddy valley. Iconographic finds at Thaton and the other Mon sites indicate a mixed religious life derived from the subcontinent. Portable votive plaques made of terra-cotta illustrate principal scenes from the life of the Buddha; relief stone sculptures are in the Mon-Dvārāvati style, which is also found in southern Thailand. Bronzes and other portable images brought from the subcontinent also have been found. There are no surviving temples or original stūpas from this period. The Mon possessed their own script, and their knowledge of Pāli texts was significant to the development of art at Pagan.

### **Pagan, 1000–1300 C.E.**

The Pyu city of Śrī Kṣetra fell to a Chinese raid in 832 C.E., after which a new state emerged to dominate the middle part of the Irrawaddy valley at Pagan. Early Pagan STŪPAS, such as the Nga-kywe-na-daung, or temples, such as the Alo-pyi, are of Pyu origin. By the eleventh century C.E., Pagan under King Anawartha came to dominate much of the valley and annexed the Mon kingdom of Thaton. As a consequence, both Mon and Pāli texts appeared for the first time at Pagan. These provided the basis for cycles of religious paintings and sculpture. Inside temples, THERAVĀDA texts, tales of the life of the Buddha, and JĀTAKA stories were depicted. Along the terraces of stūpas, terra-cotta plaques, usually glazed, illustrated *jātaka* stories. As with the Pyu cities, religious life at Pagan appears to have been mixed, even eclectic, with Theravāda, MAHĀYĀNA, and Brahmanic elements coexisting. It is significant that Pagan's rise coincided with the decline of Buddhism in India and elsewhere. The wealth and pa-

tronage of Pagan kings attracted both scholars and artists to court, whether from the MAHĀYĀNA world of Pāla Bengal or the Theravāda heartland of Sri Lanka. By the beginning of the twelfth century the Pagan kings had firmly embraced Theravāda, and epigraphy describes the “purification” of the country's religious life. Theravāda notions of KINGSHIP styled the Pagan kings as *dhammarāja* and *khammarāja*—protectors of Buddhism granting them legitimacy in their imperial mission to unite all Burma. Pagan kings in turn promoted the faith through the lavish and profuse construction of monuments.

According to the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) survey completed in 2000 there are 2,217 standing monuments at Pagan; in addition there are numerous mounds indicating collapsed monuments. An earlier survey by an eighteenth-century king had listed over 4,000 monuments. The palace-city was walled and moated and covered a relatively small corner of the twenty-five-square-mile site. The principal architectural forms are the stūpa and the temple, with a number of hybrid forms integrating both these types. Monastery complexes, library structures, and ordination halls are to be found, either as part of, or independent of, larger temple complexes. Nearly all of these monuments were constructed with brick. Monuments were endowed, whether by the king and royal family or by courtier families, with considerable grants of glebe land and “pagoda slaves” for the maintenance of these foundations into posterity. The greater dedications were collegiate centers of study and scholarship. Most of the wooden monasteries, which, along with the palaces and domestic buildings, were made from perishable materials, have been lost. It may be that the decline of Pagan in the late thirteenth century was the result of the strain of having much of the national economy dedicated to the service of these monuments and their incumbents. Considerable information on the extent and costs of such dedications is contained in contemporary epigraphy.

Burmese Buddhism, from Pagan times to the present, has been described as *kammatic*, the main preoccupation, from the king to humblest subject, being the earning of merit to ensure a favorable REBIRTH in the next existence. Coupled to this, the royal dedication of colossal monuments was seen as an act of communal merit-earning that would benefit the entire nation. (This thinking has remained current with successive postindependence military regimes, who, like the kings of Pagan, dedicate a large part of the na-

tional product to Buddhist building activities.) Linked to this was the belief that enlightenment is too difficult for most people to attain and therefore the objective in merit-making is to be reborn when the future Buddha Metteya (MAITREYA) appears on earth, for an encounter with Metteya brings instant and easy enlightenment. This messianic belief, whose origins can be found in Pyu sculptures, gave rise to a pentagonal plan for monuments that reached its zenith in the construction of the virtuoso Dhamma-yazika stūpa at Pagan.

During the three centuries of artistic activity at Pagan there were three principal phases in which art and architecture evolved. During the early period, Pyu temple types, such as the Abe-yadana or Naga-yon, housed paintings and sculpture clearly derived from Pāla Bengal that illustrate textual sources originating from Sri Lanka but captioned in the Old Mon language. Coupled with imperial expansion was a proselytizing movement of conversion to the Theravāda way, and this art was essentially educational. By 1150, with the construction of the That-byin-nyu and Dhamma-yan-gyi temples under Sithu I, a transitional period becomes evident in the Pagan temple, whereby a clear Burmese idiom emerges in architecture, painting, and sculpture. At the same time, the Old Burmese language is written for the first time as captions beneath wall paintings. Bronze work, perhaps derived from the Arakan, achieves a succinct beauty rarely paralleled in Buddhist art. Temples grow taller, lighter, and more spacious compared with the darker, more mystical early types. By 1200, late period temples, such as Sula-mani or Hti-lo-min-lo, with the main shrine on the upper level, display a virtuoso technical sophistication and quality of craftsmanship. Likewise, painting and sculpture pass from an early period style that is, in spiritual terms, highly charged to a late period style that is supremely confident, yet in execution delicate and in effect delightful.

Iconography from this period betrays the mixed origins of Pagan Buddhism and by the mid-eleventh century the dominance of the Theravāda tradition. Bodhisattva, *dvārapāla*, *garuḍa*, *nāga*, and other “sacred beasts” of the Hindu-Buddhist pantheon abound mainly as decorative elements in great cycles of narrative paintings depicting the life of the Buddha, the *jātaka*, and other Theravāda tales. During the early period, Buddhist “purifications” of ancient animist cults were absorbed into the new state religion, as were Hindu deities, as supporters of the faith. These spirit or *nat* cults survive to this day, and such “folk art”

combined with ritual, costume, and dance is a rich potential area of anthropological study.

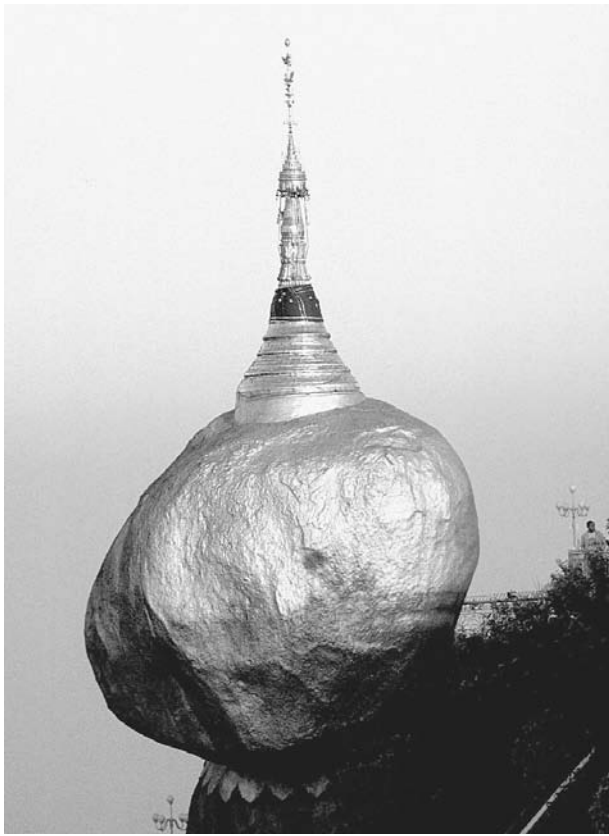
### Post-Pagan, 1300–1752

Following the Mongol incursion of 1278, Pagan fell into economic decline and into the power vacuum stepped Shan-Tai tribes who were responsible for much of the desecration of the temples at Pagan. Later converted to Buddhism, the art and architecture of the Shan states is a rich potential source of study with distinct styles of architecture, sculpture, and decoration more akin to Thailand than Burma. Likewise for the Arakan, a kingdom on the Bay of Bengal that remained independent until the late eighteenth century with its capital at Mrauk-U and its own highly original styles betraying the proximity of India. By the sixteenth century the Burmese under the First Ava dynasty had reasserted itself at Toungoo. They established capitals at Pegu, which they captured from the Mons, who had regained lost territories following the decline of Pagan, and then at Ava in 1637. During this period the country was reunified and Thailand invaded several times. Little of architectural interest survives from this period, with the exception of various royal stūpas that have since been remodeled. Sculpture from this period can be heavy and crude in execution. The first mural paintings since the end of Pagan may be seen at the Thi-loka-guru (1672) caves at Sagaing and at the Hpo-win-daung caves in the Chindwin valley. These paintings, like the sculpture of this period, are naïve yet vividly entertaining. Early carved wood monasteries at Mingkin show an excellence of decorative work, and Ava period temples, though technically less ambitious than Pagan temples, reveal fine stucco work in the Pagan tradition.

### The Konbaung dynasty, 1752–1885

It was not until the rise of the Konbaung dynasty in 1752 that a true revival of the arts in Burma is evident. The Konbaung kings were conscious of their own Pagan heritage; indeed, they set about the first restorations of monuments there and dedicated a number of new monuments at Pagan. Compared with the more restrained classical idiom of Pagan, the art of the Konbaung has a distinctly rococo tendency. Decoration can be highly florid; stucco carvings adorning temple pediments tend to be flamboyant. The principal Konbaung monuments are found in the area around present-day Mandalay, in the vicinities of the sites of the three former Konbaung capitals at Ava, Amarapura, and Mandalay itself, established in 1855. Under the Konbaung,





Kyaiktiyo Pagoda hangs on a cliff top in Mon state, Myanmar (Burma). Pilgrims must hike seven miles up a jungle mountain path to reach it. The twenty-four-foot-tall stūpa atop the rock is said to contain a hair from the Buddha's head. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

woodcarving flourished, as seen in a number of splendid carved wood monasteries, including Shwe Kyaung in Mandalay and Bagaya Kyaung in Ava. The unfinished Mingun Pagoda, built by the megalomaniacal King Bodawhpaya in 1790, is said to be the largest brick structure in the world, and its bell is the largest working bell in the world. Across the Irrawaddy from Mandalay, the pilgrimage center of Sagaing contains a number of Ava, Konbaung, and colonial-period dedications revealing the high levels of craftsmanship achieved in the decorative arts during these periods. Illustrated manuscripts (secular and religious), glass mosaic work, textiles, lacquer ware, and silversmithing are but a few of the crafts that flourished.

The sixth conquest of AYUTTHAYA in Thailand in 1767 resulted in the relocation of a number of Thai artists in Burma whose work includes the redecoration of the Upali Thein at Pagan. Chinese influences appeared in the works of Bagyidaw. The hand of Italian engineers employed by King Mindon can be seen in a

number of Italianate pavilions at the new Mandalay palace and in a number of religious dedications, notably the Atu-ma-shi Monastery, destroyed by fire in an 1890 war and since reconstructed. Following the British annexation of Upper Burma in 1886, the Buddhist arts underwent something of a renaissance as a result of increased prosperity coupled with the liberation of a devout mercantile class from sumptuary controls. Splendid monastery complexes, such as the Ma-so-shin and Myin-wun-taik monasteries, were constructed in the 1890s with traditional ground plans and pseudo-Palladian facades. The classical arcades of the Yakhine Maha-myat-muni Hpaya-gyi, the principal pagoda of modern Mandalay, dedicated in 1784 but largely rebuilt in the colonial period, again reveal this European influence. In the mural paintings found within the Hpaya-gyi, early portrayals of Europeans, railway trains, and steamboats are depicted in classical Konbaung style.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Merit and Merit-Making; Monastic Architecture; Myanmar; Shwedagon

#### **Bibliography**

- Aung Thaw. *Historical Sites in Burma*. Rangoon: Ministry of Union Culture, 1972.
- Harvey, G. E. *A History of Burma from Earliest Time to 10 March 1824*. London: Frank Cass and Co., 1925.
- Luce, G. H. *Old Burma—Early Pagan*, 3 vols. Locust Valley, NY: J. J. Augustin, 1969–1970.
- Pichard, Pierre. *Inventory of Monuments at Pagan*, 8 vols. Paris: UNESCO; Gartmore, Scotland: Kiscadale Publications, 1992–2002.
- Spiro, Melford E. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. New York: Harper and Row, 1972.
- Strachan, Paul. *Pagan: Art and Architecture of Old Burma*. Whiting Bay, Scotland: Kiscadale Publications, 1989.
- Than Tun. *Essays on the History of Buddhism in Burma*, ed. Paul Strachan. Whiting Bay, Scotland: Kiscadale Publications, 1988.

PAUL STRACHAN

---

MYŌE. *See* Kōben

---

MYSTICISM. *See* Bodhi (Awakening); Meditation

# N



## NĀGĀRJUNA

The Indian philosopher Nāgārjuna (ca. second century C.E.) is probably the single most important Buddhist philosopher. Nothing reliable is known about his life; modern scholars do not accept the traditional account whereby Nāgārjuna lived for some six hundred years and became a Tantric wonderworker (siddha), although it is believed that Nāgārjuna was the teacher of ĀRYADEVĀ (ca. 170–270 C.E.). There is moreover a debate over which works can be attributed to this Nāgārjuna, with some agreement on:

*Madhyamakakārikā* (*Verses on Madhyamaka*), Nāgārjuna's main work, still extant in Sanskrit;  
*Vigrahavyāvartanī* (*Countering Hostile Objections*), verses extant in Sanskrit together with an auto-commentary, a reply by Nāgārjuna to his critics.

Save for a few fragments, the following works survive only in Tibetan and, in some cases, Chinese translation:

*Yuktiṣaṣṭikā* (*Sixty Verses on Reasoning*);  
*Śūnyatāsaptati* (*Seventy Verses on Emptiness*);  
*Vaidalyaprakaraṇa* (*The Treatise That Grinds into Little Pieces*), an attack on the categories of the Hindu epistemologists;  
*Ratnāvalī* (*The Jewel Garland*), a long epistle apparently to a king (a shorter royal epistle attributed to Nāgārjuna is the *Suhṛllekha* [*Letter to a Friend*]);  
*Catuḥstava* (four hymns).

Nāgārjuna saw his philosophy as itself part of the spiritual project of enlightenment, of “seeing things the way they really are” (*yathābhūtarśana*). His arguments should be placed in the context of Buddhist philosophy (preceding ABHIDHARMA thought), which he both presupposed and the ontology of which he trenchantly criticized. It was Nāgārjuna who first explained philosophically the concept of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS). According to Nāgārjuna, emptiness is a property (a *-ness*) possessed by each thing without exception. It is the property of lacking intrinsic existence (*niḥsvabhāvatā*) as a result of being one way or another, the result of causal processes. Existing is nothing more than an intersecting point of causal factors. Nāgārjuna sought to demonstrate this by asserting that if something—say, a table—were more than just an intersecting point of causal factors, it would prove resistant to analytical deconstruction. Absolutely nothing can resist the process of analytical deconstruction, investigating its coherence through reasoning. Thus Nāgārjuna's works embody arguments in the style of a skeptic, debunking concepts like existence and nonexistence, causation, perception, time, motion, and even religious concepts like the Buddha, or enlightenment itself. Nāgārjuna also offers methodological reflections on what he is doing, why he is not a nihilist or even really a skeptic, and how his practice fits into the overall Buddhist project. For Nāgārjuna this project is a deep “letting-go,” which nevertheless also facilitates compassionate reengagement.

Nāgārjuna was enormously influential in India. The MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL of philosophy, which he probably founded, was the earliest of the two great Indian schools of MAHĀYĀNA thought. In Tibet, Madhyamaka is said to represent the highest philosophical standpoint,

the final truth. In East Asian Buddhism, the influence of emptiness can be seen in Chinese and Japanese art, in poetry, in the martial arts, and even, ostensibly, in Japanese business practice.

In the West, attempts have been made to compare Nāgārjuna's thought with Immanuel Kant, G. W. F. Hegel, or Francis Herbert Bradley, and more recently with Jacques Derrida (deconstruction, particularly of egocentricity) and Ludwig Wittgenstein (liberation of others from philosophical predicaments that result from fundamentally confused preconceptions; return to the everyday world of praxis). Emptiness has also been portrayed as a philosophy of relativity, or ecological cosubsistence.

### Bibliography

- Bhattacharya, Kamaleswar, ed. and trans. *The Dialectical Method of Nāgārjuna (Vīgrahavyāvartanī)*, critically ed. E. H. Johnston and Arnold Kunst. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1978.
- Hayes, Richard. "Nāgārjuna's Appeal." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 22 (1994): 299–378.
- Inada, Kenneth K. *Nāgārjuna: A Translation of His Mūlamadhya-kakārikā, with an Introductory Essay*. Tokyo: Hoku-seido Press, 1970.
- Lindtner, Christian. *Nāgārjuniana: Studies in the Writings and Philosophy of Nāgārjuna*. Copenhagen, Denmark: Akademisk Forlag, 1982.
- Potter, Karl H., ed. *Buddhist Philosophy from 100 to 350 A.D.*, Vol. 8: *Encyclopedia of Indian Philosophies*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1999.
- Ruegg, David S. *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1981.
- Tola, Fernando, and Dragonetti, Carmen. *On Voidness: A Study on Buddhist Nihilism*. Delhi: Banarsidass, 1995.
- Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London and New York: Routledge, 1989.
- Williams, Paul, with Tribe, Anthony. *Buddhist Thought: A Complete Introduction to the Indian Tradition*. London and New York: Routledge, 2000.

PAUL WILLIAMS

## NARA BUDDHISM

The term *Nara Buddhism* refers to Buddhist scholarship and monasteries in Nara, the first permanent capital of Japan, during the Nara period (645–794 C.E.). From the time of the official introduction of Buddhism to Japan in the mid-sixth century, the Japanese ac-

quired a wide variety of Buddhist scriptures and other texts from Korea and China, where doctrinal schools had developed. By the Nara period, Buddhism in Japan was classified into six philosophical schools. These schools did not comprise exclusive sectarian organizations, but were custodians of doctrinal traditions studied freely by monks and nuns.

The six doctrinal traditions were: (1) the *Jōjitsu*, which denied the permanent reality of the self and the world; (2) the *Kusha*, which denied the permanent reality of the self but not the world; (3) the *Sanron*, which asserted that the self and the world are empty; (4) the *Hossō*, which asserted the nature of reality as a function of the mind; (5) the *Kegon*, which linked all existences into a web of connections; and (6) the *Ritsu*, which taught the precepts governing the lifestyle of monks and nuns. Large monasteries such as Tōdaiji, Kōfukuji, and Tōshōdaiji served as home bases for these schools.

Nara Buddhism was incorporated into the government, which enforced a legal code for monks and nuns. The code prohibited clergy from practicing and propagating Buddhism in the countryside and restricted them to their home monasteries. The government also limited the annual number of monks receiving ordination, which could only be carried out at an officially sanctioned ordination platform. The court conferred ranks on leading monks, thus creating a sense of gratitude and obligation as well as a chain of command used to regulate the clerical community. The official system gave rise to illegal monks, who were often self-ordained and worked freely among the people.

The court also created a national system, the PROVINCIAL TEMPLE SYSTEM (KOKUBUNJI, RISHŌTŌ). The central monastery was Tōdaiji, which established a branch monastery in each of the provinces. This national system emphasized the power of the court as the central political authority, and also placed Buddhism in the service of the nation. The provincial monasteries were dedicated to the ritual protection of the country.

Large families and clans also built private monasteries. Kōfukuji, for example, was the clan monastery for the powerful Fujiwara family. At the family level, Buddhist rites were conducted for the well-being of the clan, and for commemorating their ancestors. Nara Buddhism thus consisted of the national system, family monasteries, and illegal monks working among the people.

Late in the Nara period, the monk DŌKYŌ (d.u.–772) gained political power through an intimate relationship with a reigning empress, and attempted to usurp

the throne. The scandal highlighted the significant power and influence that the Nara Buddhist establishment had gained, and the court, for many reasons including its concern about Buddhist interference, decided to move the capital out of Nara. The new permanent capital was located in Heian-kyō (now known as Kyoto), and while Nara continued to be an important site for Buddhist learning and practice, new forms of Buddhism, namely Tendai (Chinese, TĪANTAI SCHOOL) and Shingon, arose in the succeeding Heian period (794–1185).

*See also:* Japan; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Nationalism and Buddhism; Shingon Buddhism, Japan

### Bibliography

de Bary, William Theodore; Keene, Donald; Tanabe, George; and Varley, Paul. *Sources of Japanese Tradition*, 2nd edition, Vol. 1. New York: Columbia University Press, 2001.

Kitagawa, Joseph M. *Religion in Japanese History*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1966.

GEORGE J. TANABE, JR.

## NĀROPA

Nāropa (1016–1100) was an Indian tantric adept and scholar who is counted among the eighty-four MAHĀSIDDHAS, or great adepts. He is widely revered in Tibet for his tantric instructions. According to one of his traditional biographies, Nāropa was born to royal parents in a brahman family of Bengal. At the age of eleven he traveled to Kashmir in northwest India and after a brief period of Buddhist study, he was forced to marry at the age of seventeen. The marriage lasted only eight years, after which the couple divorced by mutual consent; Nāropa's former wife (or sister according to some sources) has been identified as Niguma, who became an influential tantric teacher in her own right. Nāropa received monastic ordination and in 1049 entered the Buddhist university of Nālandā, in present-day Bihar. He excelled as a scholar and subsequently served a term as abbot and senior instructor at Nālandā, where he was given the name Abhayakīrti.

In 1057, however, he reached a turning point in his career. One day, in the midst of his philosophical studies, he was surprised by a vision of an old, haggard woman—in reality a DĀKINĪ goddess. She challenged the level of his spiritual insight and, through her provocative intervention, the prodigious scholar real-

ized that although he understood the literal words of his religious texts, he did not yet fathom their underlying meaning. The woman compelled Nāropa to abandon his post at the university and seek his destined spiritual master, the great tantric adept Tilopa (988–1069), a figure about whom scant historical information exists. During his extended search across northern India, Nāropa repeatedly encountered Tilopa in various guises, although he was unable to recognize the guru in his true form. Finally, as Nāropa was driven to the brink of despair and even suicide, Tilopa revealed himself and accepted the seeker as a worthy disciple.

In the ensuing years, Tilopa famously subjected Nāropa to a series of twelve greater and twelve lesser trials, inflicting upon him the most terrible forms of abuse and physical punishment. Nāropa persevered, however, eventually coming to understand these ordeals as a means for purifying his past negative actions. Among the seminal instructions Tilopa taught were the Four Transmissions (*bka' babs bzhi*). Although the list varies according to different sources, the four are often enumerated as the transmissions of illusory body (*sgyu lus*), dreams (*mi lam*), radiant light (*'od gsal*), and inner heat (*gtum mo*). Nāropa later codified these instructions and transmitted them to his own principal disciples, including the Tibetan translator MAR PA (MARPA; 1002/1012–1097), who then carried them to Tibet. This system, known in Tibetan as the Six Doctrines (or Yogas) of Nāropa (Nā ro chos drug), was promulgated by numerous Buddhist sects, but became especially associated with the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU). The Bka' brgyud sect subsequently came to view Nāropa as an important founder of their lineage. Several works of spiritual songs and tantric commentarial literature attributed to Nāropa are preserved in the Tibetan Buddhist canon.

*See also:* Tibet

### Bibliography

Guenther, Herbert V. *The Life and Teaching of Nāropa*. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1986.

Mullin, Glen H. *Tsongkhapa's Six Yogas of Nāropa*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.

Mullin, Glen H. *Readings on the Six Yogas of Nāropa*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1997.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## NATIONALISM AND BUDDHISM

Buddhists traditionally maintained close ties with established political authority, which typically meant **KINGSHIP**. When the global system of nation-states began to develop in earnest during the nineteenth century, Buddhists too began to engage in nationalist imaginings. The linear, progressive, and essentialist concept of nation is a modern construct. Researchers have attributed the following characteristics to nationalism: global industrialization, the development of print capitalism and of modern science and technology, and the pursuit of status and respect.

There is an affinity between modernity and nationalism and between Buddhism and nationalism. For example, “Zen nationalism” was born through the process of interaction between Japanese Buddhism and Western modernity. As a way of defending Buddhism during the **MEIJI BUDDHIST REFORM**, the Japanese created what they termed New Buddhism, a “modern, cosmopolitan, humanistic, and socially responsible” form of the tradition (Sharf, “Buddhist Modernism,” p. 247). Robert Sharf notes that the contemporary version of Zen Buddhism is an offspring of this New Buddhism. Japanese Zen Buddhists employed Western discourse to create the new tradition and eventually presented it as being superior to Western modernity. This universalizing discourse of Zen implied the cultural superiority of Japanese Buddhism.

Similarly, the universalism of religion and the particularism of nationalism go hand in hand, despite their apparent differences. Religion remains a strong force, if not an active accomplice, in the formation of nationalism. Kenneth Wells points out that Korean Protestants, for example, had no difficulty in retaining their identities as both Koreans and Protestants. Korean Protestants fused their religion and nationalism by trying to incorporate their Christian beliefs into the process of nation building. The same may also be said for Buddhist nationalism.

### **Buddhist responses**

During the latter half of the nineteenth and the first half of the twentieth centuries, most Buddhists in Sri Lanka, China, Korea, and Japan faced similar political and social changes due to the colonial expansion of the West. To these Asian Buddhists, who had theretofore enjoyed stability, Western invasions initiated crises that threatened the survival of the religion. The rapid influx of Western civilization brought about chaotic

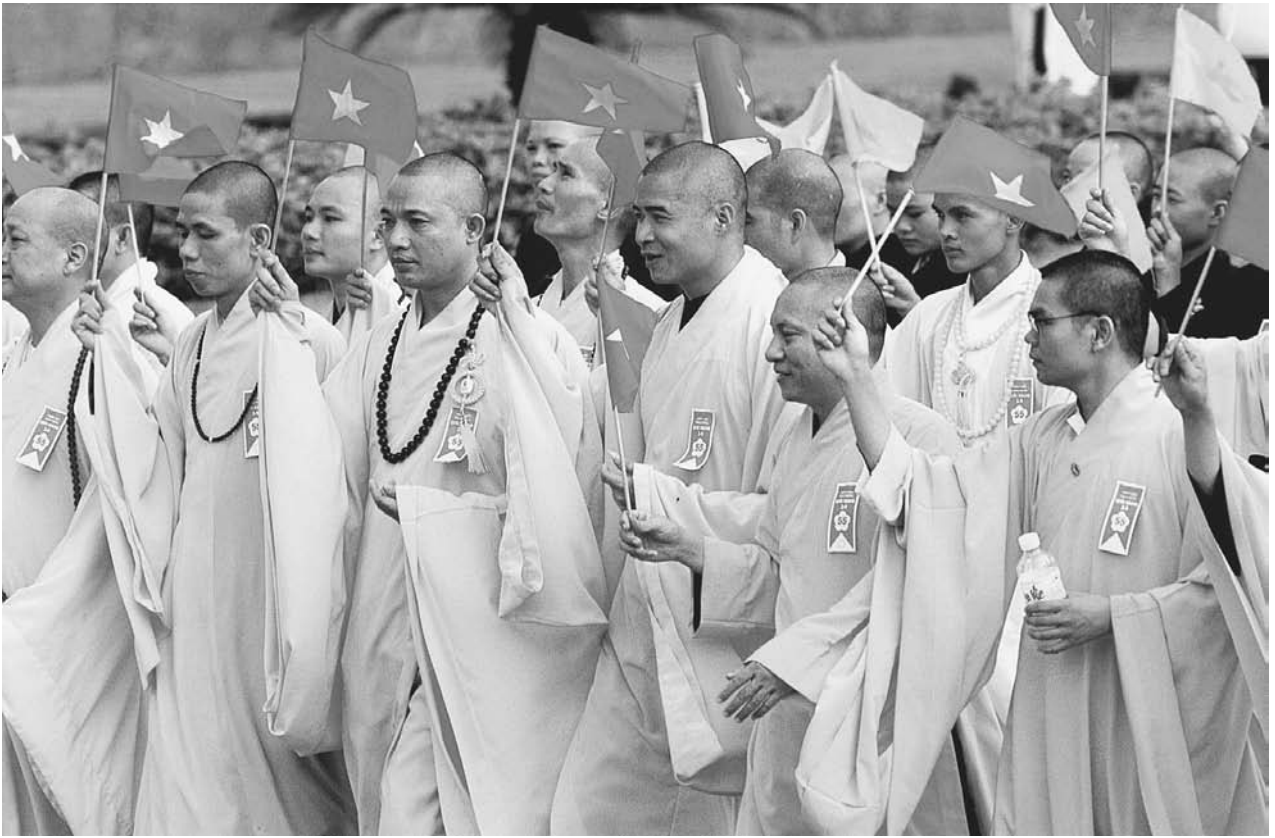
disturbances to the traditional social and political equilibrium; Asian Buddhists could no longer enjoy their privileged status in the traditional order. Some Asian intellectuals began to believe that their traditional religions, including Buddhism, were superstitious and backward, and thus obstacles to the modernization process. Under these circumstances, Buddhist institutions throughout Asia soon became the target of attack and they found themselves surrounded by rapidly secularizing societies.

The survival of Buddhism depended largely on the capability and willingness of Buddhists to adapt their religion not only to Western modernity but also to the new political structure of nation-states that emerged as a result of interaction with the West. In particular, the rapid dissemination of Christianity awakened Buddhists to the imminent nature of the challenges they were facing. Whether Buddhism could demonstrate its viability in this new context became a pivotal point for the continuance of the religion.

Buddhists participated in nationalist movements, often embracing nationalism in the name of modernization. Buddhism was reappropriated in terms of issues central to Protestantism and the Enlightenment, namely, anticlericism, this-worldly engagement, rational and pragmatic inclination, and individualism. In this process of reappropriation, religious identity was formed and intensified. The emergence of religious identity instilled national pride in many Buddhists. Buddhism was regarded as their indigenous heritage vis-à-vis the imported Western religion of Christianity.

In Sri Lanka, the challenge of Christian missionaries sharpened the Buddhist sense of self-identity. It took much time and prolonged attack from Christian missionaries before the Sinhala Buddhists entered into polemical debates with them. Before the 1860s Buddhists did not react in any organized way to the hostile attacks of Christianity. With the developing self-awareness prompted by the need to respond to Christian inroads, however, Buddhists began to refute the coexistence of variant religious practices that characterized their traditional religion. Buddhists tried to purge such popular elements as spirit cults, magic, and astrology from their practices. They took a fundamentalist approach, attempting to return to what they considered to be canonical Buddhism.

Furthermore, the history of organized Buddhism in Sri Lanka was identified with the history of the nation, and Buddhism was promoted as a way to defend the



Monks carrying Vietnamese flags march past the mausoleum of Ho Chi Minh during an Independence Day parade in Hanoi, Vietnam, 2000. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

nation from the colonial West. ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933), a lay celibate, urged the Sinhalese to restore their true identity as Buddhists by discarding foreign influences. Buddhist intellectuals adopted nationalism in order to confer cultural identity and ethnic consciousness on the Sinhalese.

In China, under the name of modernization, the state campaigned to eradicate “superstitious” practices and to convert religious properties for public purposes. The late Qing dynasty (1644–1911) targeted Buddhist properties as financial resources to rebuild the country and to defend against the threat imposed by Western imperial powers. The Chinese Buddhist establishment, which already had suffered severe devastation during the Taiping rebellion in the mid-nineteenth century, faced the persistent recurrence of violence. The state withdrew its official protection of Buddhism in 1900 and issued a general order to convert temple property to schools.

Under these circumstances, Chinese Buddhists also presented Buddhism as their traditional religion and attempted to use their religion to counterbalance the

challenges of Christianity and Western cultural encroachment. Liang Qichao (1873–1929) contended that the Chinese made Buddhism their own by creating their own indigenous schools of Buddhist philosophy and practice. In his presentation of the tradition, Chinese Buddhism encompassed both philosophical and religious attributes, while Christianity rested on the delusive beliefs of a shallow philosophy.

In Japan, the Meiji state (1868–1912) supported the active importation of Western civilization. Under the guise of modernization, the state inflicted severe blows to the Buddhist establishment. Starting in the mid-seventeenth century, anti-Buddhist measures had begun in individual domains. The Meiji government carried out these anti-Buddhist policies nationwide, equating Buddhism with the previous Tokugawa regime and forging a distinctive Shintō national ideology by separating Shintō from Buddhism. The Office of Proselytization was set up by Shintō propagandists in 1869 to promote Shintō as the national creed. The separation of Buddhism and Shintō led to a massive anti-Buddhist movement that resulted in the destruction of great numbers of Buddhist institutions. The

government further developed its policy of disestablishing Buddhism in 1871 and 1872.

Japanese Buddhists offered their services to the government in order to soften the ongoing persecution. They tried to prove Buddhism's value by supporting national policies. Japanese Buddhists claimed that Buddhism was the indigenous religious practice of Japan and that the Japanese version of the religion was the consummation of all previous developments within Asian Buddhism. They also promoted Buddhism as a way to defend their nation against the incursions of Christianity. Along with growing nationalist sentiments, they identified themselves as protectors of Japanese tradition against the encroachments of Western culture, including Christianity.

Korean Buddhists developed their sense of national identity around the turn of the twentieth century, beginning with the opening of the nation to the Western world in 1876 and the subsequent colonization by Japan in 1910. Awakened by the influx of Western modernity, and threatened by the rapid growth of Christianity and Japanese Buddhism on the peninsula, Korean Buddhists developed a sense of their own independent identity. They attempted to present Buddhism as a source of national identity by identifying it as the backbone of Korean history and culture. They began to consolidate their own identity as distinct from that of Japanese Buddhists, in particular, and to write their own history.

Overall, Buddhist nationalism arose in response to the influx of Western civilization. Buddhists presented the religion as being useful to the nation and reclaimed its status as a traditional religion, in opposition to the imported Christian traditions of the West.

### **The problematic nature of Buddhist nationalism**

For an understanding of Buddhist nationalism, however, a more nuanced approach is needed. When the ethnicity of the rulers was the same as that of the governed, Buddhist nationalism posed no difficulties. Japanese Buddhists, for instance, became faithful followers of state policies, identifying themselves with the nation-state. By the mid-Meiji period, Buddhism managed to present itself as the essence of Japanese culture. Buddhist leaders actively joined the state's military policies. They endorsed and rationalized imperial policies during the Sino-Japanese War (1894) and the Russo-Japanese War (1904). They sent war missionaries to the battlefields to comfort soldiers. They also organized the Buddhist Society

for the Defense of the Nation during World War I and became involved in the state's war effort during the Pacific War.

In contrast, Buddhists under colonial governments displayed confusing behaviors in their development of nationalism. The Buddhist clergy in Sri Lanka, for example, pursued formal recognition from, and the patronage of, the colonial government. They asked persistently for state intervention in the maintenance and supervision of Buddhist temporalities. Kitsiri Malalgoda suggests that these ties with foreign rulers account for the fact that the Sinhala Buddhist revival movements did not develop into a concerted movement for national independence. The Chinese SAṄGHA also showed ambivalence when their religious interests and national interests diverged. Chinese monasteries voluntarily subjected themselves to Japanese Buddhist schools to protect their property. They rushed to register their monasteries with major Japanese Buddhist denominations to solicit protection from the Japanese consulate. The Chinese saṅgha was accused of collaborating with the Japanese after the Japanese commenced a campaign of military conquest in 1937.

During the colonial period, the Korean Buddhist saṅgha also maintained close ties with the Japanese regime, seeking favors from it. The majority of Korean Buddhist leaders tacitly or overtly acquiesced to the Japanese policy of "Japan and Korea Are One Entity," which aimed to eradicate Korean identity. Some Korean monks gave lectures in support of the Japanese war effort during the 1940s and even made consolatory visits to the Japanese imperial army, submitting to the demands of the Japanese regime.

The political ambivalence and impotence of Buddhists resulted in liaisons with those in power, no matter who they were. Japanese Buddhists followed imperialist policies out of their collective interest in protecting their establishments and in consonance with their traditional subservience to political authority. The saṅgha's traditional dependence on the ruling court produced further confusion among Sinhala, Chinese, and Korean Buddhists. This ambivalence toward the state attests to the complexity of Buddhist nationalism.

This complexity derives partly from the fact that the concept of nation is unstable and a source of contention. There are many different versions of *nation* and *nationalism*, such as the nation-state and the "ethnic nation." Japanese Buddhists identified the state with nation, faithfully supporting its policies. In comparison, Sri Lanka developed its own version of nation,

while recognizing the confinement of the colonial state. Likewise, Korean Buddhists also separated nation from state. At the same time, the Japanese colonial state did not entirely deny the development of ethnic nationalism, as long as the nation-state was not threatened. After 1930 the Japanese regime even participated in the creation of national identity for Koreans. For the efficient operation of the nation-state, the Japanese colonial government felt that it needed to create homogeneous national subjects, even as it treated Koreans as second-class citizens.

Asian Buddhists forged their religious identity and redefined the role of Buddhism in response to Western modernity and the concept of the nation-state. Buddhists adopted social tactics and nationalist stances in order to prove the utility of the religion, so that the status of Buddhism in society would be improved. The accommodations they reached with colonial powers, however, account for the Buddhists' insensitivity to, and occasional collaborations with, imperial war, social injustice, and military occupation.

*See also:* Christianity and Buddhism; Colonialism and Buddhism; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Anderson, Benedict. *Imagined Communities: Reflections of the Origin and Spread of Nationalism*. London: Verso, 1983. Revised edition, 1991.
- Bond, George. *The Buddhist Revival in Sri Lanka: Religious Tradition, Reinterpretation, and Response*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1988.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "Imagining 'Korean Buddhism': The Invention of a National Religious Tradition." In *Nationalism and the Construction of Korean Identity*, ed. Hyung Il Pai and Timothy R. Tangherlini. Berkeley, CA: Institute of East Asian Studies, 1998.
- Gellner, Ernest. *Nations and Nationalism*. Oxford: Blackwell, 1983.
- Gombrich, Richard, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Greenfeld, Liah. "Transcending the Nation's Worth." *Daedalus* 122, no. 3 (1993): 47–62.
- Heisig, James, and Maraldo, John, eds. *Rude Awakenings: Zen, the Kyoto School, and the Question of Nationalism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1995.
- Ketelaar, James. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Curators of the Buddha: the Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.
- Malaloga, Kitsiri. *Buddhism in Sinhalese Society 1750–1900: A Study of Religious Revival and Change*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1976.
- Sharf, Robert. "Buddhist Modernism and the Rhetoric of Meditative Experience." *Numen* 42 (1995): 228–283.
- Sharf, Robert. "Whose Zen? Zen Nationalism Revisited." In *Rude Awakenings: Zen, the Kyoto School, and the Question of Nationalism*, ed. James W. Heisig and John C. Maraldo. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1995.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Buddhist Revival in China*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1968.
- Wells, Kenneth. *New God, New Nation: Protestants and Self-Reconstruction Nationalism in Korea, 1896–1937*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Wright, Arthur F. "Buddhism in Modern and Contemporary China." In *Religion and Change in Contemporary Asia*, ed. Robert F. Spencer. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1971.

PORI PARK

## NENBUTSU (CHINESE, NIANFO; KOREAN, YŎMBUL)

*Nenbutsu*, also transcribed as *nembutsu* (Chinese, *nianfo*; Korean, *yŏmbul*), is the religious practice in PURE LAND BUDDHISM of chanting or invoking the name of the Buddha Amida (Sanskrit, AMITĀBHA or Amitāyus; Chinese, Amituo). There are many buddhas whose names can be chanted, but in practice, *nembutsu* typically refers to chanting Amida's name. In Japan, the practice consists of reciting the six-character formula *Namu Amida Butsu* (Chinese, *Namo Amituo fo*), "Homage to Amida Buddha." This invocation can be spoken once or repeatedly. Commonly it is intoned as a melodic chant, but can also be uttered in ordinary intonation. It is sometimes used as an ancillary practice in meditative trance or visualization, but more frequently it is performed as an independent and self-contained practice. Buddhist liturgy, especially of the Pure Land tradition, typically contains sections or interludes of *nembutsu* chanting.

Religious chanting, which was common in Buddhism from an ancient period, no doubt influenced the development of the *nembutsu*. But another influence was the practice of reflecting or meditating on the Buddha. In fact, *nembutsu* literally means thinking on



the Buddha or keeping him in mind (*Buddhānusmṛti*). To that extent, it does not explicitly denote verbal activity. But since chanting sacred syllables or names often accompanied meditation, the practice of intoning the Buddha's name coalesced with the idea of keeping him in mind. Over the centuries there emerged two primary views of *nenbutsu* chanting: One treated it as an aid to visualizing the Buddha, which was considered a practice leading to enlightenment; the other treated it as an act resulting in birth in Amida's Pure Land paradise. The two, however, often overlapped. In Japan, the verbal practice eventually overshadowed visualization, so that *nenbutsu* came to mean invoking Amida's name without necessarily meditating on him, though mental awareness of the Buddha was always considered one aspect of saying his name.

*See also:* **Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha); Chanting and Liturgy; Pure Land Schools**

### **Bibliography**

- Andrews, Allan A. "Pure Land Buddhist Hermeneutics: Hōnen's Interpretation of Nembutsu." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 10, no. 2 (1987): 7–25.
- Fujiwara, Ryosetsu. *The Way to Nirvana: The Concept of the Nembutsu in Shan-tao's Pure Land Buddhism*. Tokyo: Kyōiku Shincho Sha, 1974.
- Hori, Ichiro. "Nembutsu as Folk Religion." In *Folk Religion in Japan: Continuity and Change*, ed. Joseph M. Kitagawa and Alan L. Miller. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1968.
- Pas, Julian. *Visions of Sukhāvātī: Shan-tao's Commentary on the Kuan Wu-Liang-Shou-Fo Ching*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

---

**NEO-CONFUCIANISM.** *See* **Confucianism and Buddhism**

---

## NEPAL

Like most of the Himalayan region, the valley called Nepal was a frontier zone until the modern state's creation in 1769. The area absorbed and interpreted Indic cultural influences from the south and, later, from the Tibetan region to the north. This entry will discuss the history of the early Indic traditions in the Kath-

mandu valley, the Tibetan Buddhist lineages originating from the Tibetan plateau, the Newar-supported MAHĀYĀNA traditions, and the recently imported THERAVĀDA tradition.

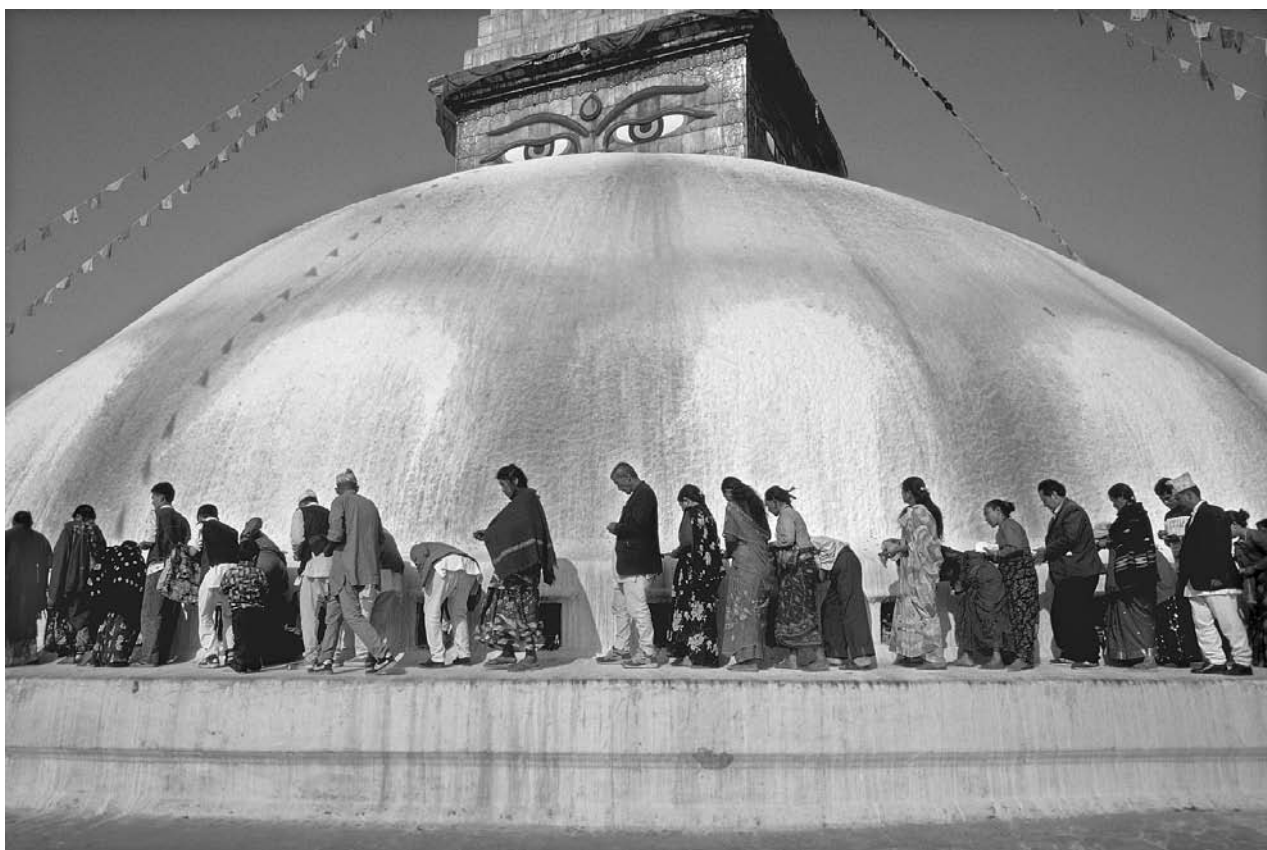
### **Early Buddhism in the Licchavi era**

The earliest historical records of the central Himalayan region—more than two hundred Sanskrit inscriptions made by kings of a ruling dynasty who referred to themselves by the name Licchavi—are found in the Nepal valley beginning in 464 C.E. These inscriptions indicate that Hindu temple institutions existed alongside Buddhist monastic traditions in a harmonious relationship confirmed by the Chinese pilgrim XUANZANG around 640 C.E. This relationship has endured up to the present day. The Licchavi inscriptions reveal connections between the Nepal valley and the traditions of monasticism and patronage that originated across the Gangetic plain from the time of the Buddha. There are references in the inscriptions to MONKS and NUNS from over a dozen discrete saṅghas residing in land-owning vihāras (monasteries) and enjoying the support of prominent local merchants and caravan leaders. The most frequently mentioned saṅgha is that of the MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA SCHOOL.

These early monasteries were centers of a predominantly Mahāyāna culture, with the inscriptions providing only a few hints of Vajrayāna practice. Monastic precincts reveal verses of praise addressed to Śākya-muni and other buddhas, as well as shrines to the celestial bodhisattvas Manjuśrī, Vajrapāṇi, Samantabhadra, and—most frequently—Avalokiteśvara. Donations of STŪPAS, in several instances by nuns, are also mentioned. Nepal's earliest monasteries charged monks with maintaining law and civic order in settlements built on lands donated to them, a custom that is unattested in Indian sources. Examples of similar duties are also found in the records of the residents (*mandalis*) of contemporaneous Hindu temples.

### **Tibetan monasticism across the Himalayan highlands**

Tibetan texts recount how great Indian sages came up through the Nepal valley to establish Buddhist traditions on the Tibetan plateau. Later legends describe their subduing demons and establishing communities of devotees. Although the history of these first Himalayan monasteries remains obscure, some may have been established by the great siddha PADMASAMBHAVA (ca. late eighth century) or his disciples. Texts composed to recount the lives of ATISHA (982–1054) and



Nepalese lay Buddhists circumambulate the Bodhanath Stūpa in Kathmandu, Nepal, 1997. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

MAR PA (MARPA; 1002/1012–1097) describe their sojourns visiting still-recognized valley locations.

Once Buddhism was firmly established in central Tibet as a result of its second introduction (ca. 1050 C.E.), the northernmost settlements of modern highland Nepal became sites where monasteries were established by every major school of Tibetan Buddhism. These areas include Humla in the far west, as well as (from west to east) Dolpo, Lo-Mustang, Nyeshang, Nupri, Manang, Langtang, Helambu, Solu-Khumbu, and Walung. Local boys interested in training to become senior monks would travel to central Tibet and return to maintain local institutions that typically sheltered, at most, a dozen or so monks whose main occupation was ritual service. This same pattern occurred for the BON faith in a few of these regions.

There was a second level of connection with the monastic networks of central Tibet established among the Tibeto-Burman-speaking peoples living in the mid-hills, including the Magars, Gurungs, Tamangs, and Sherpas. Many of these peoples followed the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school and relied on house-

holder lamas to perform Buddhist rituals for their villages. To train for this service, young men typically lived for several years as apprentices with elder household lamas or in the regional highland monasteries. Most returned to marry and maintain shrines established as their family's own property. Thus, most "Buddhist monasteries" among Tibeto-Burman peoples were (and are) family shrine-residences, and sons usually succeed their fathers as local Buddhist ritualists.

By the early Malla era (1350 C.E.) Tibetan monks came to the Nepal valley to acquire tantric initiations, ritual practices, and texts from resident masters (Newars and others), traditions they conveyed up to the highlands. Some Tibetan monks also established branch monasteries affiliated with the main Tibetan schools; the first were located near the monumental stūpas at Svayambhū and Baudha. Notable Tibetan teachers probably influenced the practices of Newar Buddhists.

Although the Hindu state of Nepal, which was established in 1769, did not favor Buddhism and tried to make Buddhists conform to brahmanical laws, the

traditions and loyalty of most Buddhist ethnic groups has endured, as have Nepal's family-based monasteries. Since 1990 the strength of Buddhist identity that is held together by these institutions among the Tibeto-Burman groups has become the basis of ethnic nationalism directed against the high caste dominated Hindu state.

The Kathmandu valley is now one of the most important centers of Tibetan Buddhism in the world for several reasons. First, one of the world's largest concentrations of Tibetan refugees has settled in the Kathmandu valley, where they have focused on building institutions for their communities. Some of the profits generated by the carpet-weaving industry have been used to expand the initial structures and build new monasteries. Second, since about 1970, many of the most affluent Tibeto-Burman Buddhists from Nepal have chosen to establish homes in the valley, both for business and political purposes. Prominent donors from this community have bought lands and built monasteries that have drawn monks or nuns from their home regions. Finally, as Tibetan Buddhism has become increasingly attractive to Westerners, prominent Tibetan lamas funded by their donations have established "dharma centers" that in most ways resemble traditional monasteries. Here one can find textual study and meditation being pursued by both ethnic Tibetans and Westerners clad in monastic robes.

### **Newar Buddhism (1000 C.E. to the present)**

By the early Malla era, the valley had become an important regional center active in domesticating an indigenous Indic Mahāyāna Buddhism. Nepalese monks developed a highly ritualized Buddhist culture among the Newars, whose life-cycle rites, Mahāyāna festivals, and temple ritualism reached high levels of articulation. It was VAJRAYĀNA Buddhism and tantric initiation that assumed the highest position in local understanding, though only a few practiced esoteric traditions. MONASTIC ARCHITECTURE reflects this development: In the large courtyards that define the monastic space, the shrines facing the entrance have, on the ground floor, an image of Śākyamuni, but on the first floor above is the *āgama*, a shrine with a Vajrayāna deity, with access limited to those with tantric initiation.

By the later Malla era (1425–1769 C.E.), when Hindu shrines and law were in the ascendancy, Newar Buddhism underwent many changes and assumed roughly the form extant today. This era was marked by the

building of many new vihāras, but there was also a literal domestication of the saṅgha, wherein former monks became householders. These Newar householder monks called themselves *Bare* (from the Sanskrit term *vande* or *vandanā*, an ancient Indic term of respect for monks), adopted the names *śākyabhikṣu*, and *vajrācārya*, and began to function as endogamous castes. This meant that one had to be born into the saṅgha and, with a few exceptions, everyone else was prohibited from being admitted. Thus, ordination into celibate monastic life was possible only in the local Tibetan saṅghas. The Newar saṅghas were probably transforming their tradition to conform to caste laws and thereby preserve the social and legal standing of the Buddhist community, as well as their extensive monastic land holdings. Since that time, those wanting to become adult members of the Newar saṅgha must first undergo (in local parlance) śrāvaka-styled celibate ordination (usually taking three days), then Mahāyāna-styled initiation into what is referred to as the bodhisattva saṅgha.

Many contemporary Newar monasteries, especially in Patan, still bear the name of their founding patrons, some dating back to the early Malla period. Local Buddhist monks, like Hindu *paṇḍitas* (scholars), were especially active in manuscript copying; by the modern era, Buddhist monastic libraries had become a vast repository of Sanskrit texts.

Unlike the monastic institutions of Tibet that fostered in-depth philosophical inquiry and vast commentarial writings, Newar monks produced few original contributions to Buddhist scholarship. The Newar saṅgha's focus was the performance of rituals drawing upon deities and powers of the Mahāyāna-Vajrayāna Buddhist tradition. Like married Tibetan monks of the Rnying ma order, *vajrācārya* priests serve the community's ritual needs, with some specializing in textual study, medicine, astrology, and meditation. Lifelong ritual relations link householders to family *vajrācārya* priests, which some have called "Buddhist brahmins." Their ritual services are vast, including Buddhist versions of Hindu life-cycle rites (*saṃskāra*), fire rites (*homa*), daily temple rituals (*nitya pūjā*), MANTRA chanting protection rites, merit-producing donation rites, stūpa rituals, chariot festivals (*ratha jātra*), and tantric initiation (*abhiṣeka*). Some of these cultural performances were noted centuries ago in India. In Kathmandu's Itum Bāhā one can still observe monks rapping on wooden gongs to mark time, a monastic custom begun over two thousands years ago

in ancient India. The “Mahāyāna cult of the book” endures as well. In this and many other respects, Newars continue the evolutionary patterns of ritual practice and lay ideals of later Indic Buddhism. Claims that “Indian Buddhism died out” defy geography and ignore the ongoing survival of Newar Buddhism.

Once the Newar kings were ousted by the Shah dynasty from Gorkha that unified the modern state in 1769, discrimination against Buddhists and changes in land tenure laws undermined the tenancy system that had supported the domesticated Newar monastic institution. At its peak, Newar Buddhists had established over three hundred monasteries. Today, roughly 10 percent have all but disappeared and more than 50 percent are in perilous structural condition. The majority of the monasteries, however, still function and most of the remainder can still be located using modern records.

The cities of Kathmandu and Patan both have a system of main monasteries (*mu bāhā*), eighteen and fifteen, respectively; each monastery is linked to one or more satellite monasteries. Every householder monk is ordained in one of these monasteries, though they may reside in one of the several hundred branch monasteries affiliated with the main monasteries. A system of rotation requires that each ordained male perform the monastic daily ritual duties periodically. Bhaktapur and other smaller towns in the Kathmandu valley also have *bāhās*, but each is an independent entity. Newar monasteries are now ruled by the senior male members of their individual saṅghas, which makes reform or innovation within the local saṅgha difficult. From the Shah-era conquest in 1769 until the present, Newar Mahāyāna Buddhism has been gradually weakening as a cultural force due to the loss of landed income and leadership. Yet despite the decline of the monasteries as buildings and institutions, much is still preserved in the elaborate monastic architecture, the thousands of archived texts, and the wealth of cultural observances.

The typical Newar *bāhā* is situated around a courtyard. The main entrance, often ornamented by a tympanum, usually has small shrines dedicated to the monastery guardians Ganesh and Mahākāla, which flank the passageway leading into the main courtyard. Opposite the entrance is the main shrine building. On the ground floor is the *kwāpa dyah*, usually Śākyamuni Buddha, flanked by images of his two great disciples, MAHĀMAUDGALĀYANA and ŚĀRIPUTRA. Stairs within the main shrine building lead to the *āgama*, a tantric

shrine that is opened only to adults who have received the appropriate Vajrayāna initiation. The windows and the door, including another tympanum, are often adorned by elaborate wood carvings.

One of the most important changes that Shah rule brought to the middle hill regions of the country was the expansion of trade, and this was commonly in the hands of Newars who migrated to trade towns. The thousands who left the valley brought their prominently Buddhist culture with them. Thus, in towns such as (from east to west) Daran, Dhankuta, Chainpur, Bhojpur, Dolakha, Trisuli, Bandipur, Pokhara, Palpa, and Baglung, Newar Buddhists built *bāhās* as branch institutions of those in their home cities.

### Theravāda Buddhism

Since the mid-twentieth century, Newars who have become disenchanted with their form of Mahāyāna monasticism have supported the establishment of Theravāda Buddhist reform institutions in the Kathmandu valley. Inspired by teachers from Sri Lanka, Burma, Thailand, and India, Newars “entered the robes” and some founded institutions in the large cities that are dedicated to the revival of Buddhism based upon textual study, popular preaching, and lay meditation.

Beginning with the Ānandakuṭī Monastery at Svayambhū for monks and the Dharmakīrti dormitory for nuns in central Kathmandu, Newars have been ordained and have renounced the householder life to live in these institutions. Technically, the ancient order of nuns has died out in Theravāda countries; the term *anagārika* is used locally, although the women conform to most vinaya rules, including celibacy.

Theravāda institutions have been instrumental to promoting the modernist “Protestant Buddhism” originating in colonial Sri Lanka. These institutions have subtly critiqued Newar and Tibetan Mahāyāna beliefs and practices, while seeking to revive the faith by promoting textual study and vernacular translations, scheduling popular preaching, and spreading the practice of lay meditation. Other independent meditation centers started by Goenka, a lay teacher from India, have since the early 1980s gained considerable popularity. Theravāda monasteries and meditation centers are now found in most major towns of the Kathmandu valley of Nepal.

*See also:* Himalayas, Buddhist Art in; Newari, Buddhist Literature in

**Bibliography**

- Dowman, Keith. "A Buddhist Guide to the Power Places of the Kathmandu Valley." *Kailash* 9, nos. 3–4 (1982): 183–291.
- Gellner, David N. *Monk, Householder and Tantric Priest: Newar Buddhism and Its Hierarchy of Ritual*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1992.
- Hutt, Michael. *Nepal: A Guide to the Art and Architecture of the Kathmandu Valley*. Boston: Shambhala, 1994.
- Lewis, Todd T. "Newars and Tibetans in the Kathmandu Valley: Ethnic Boundaries and Religious History." *Journal of Asian and African Studies* 38 (1989): 31–57.
- Lewis, Todd T. *Popular Buddhist Texts from Nepal: Narratives and Rituals of Newar Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2000.
- Lienhard, Siegfried. "Nepal: The Survival of Indian Buddhism in a Himalayan Kingdom." In *The World of Buddhism*, ed. Heinz Bechert and Richard F. Gombrich. New York: Facts on File, 1984.
- Locke, John K. "The Vajrayāna Buddhism in the Kathmandu Valley." In *The Buddhist Heritage of Nepal*. Kathmandu, Nepal: Dharmodaya Sabha, 1986.
- Ramble, Charles. "How Buddhist Are Buddhist Communities? The Construction of Tradition in Two Lamaist Communities." *Journal of the Anthropological Society of Oxford* 21, no. 2 (1990): 185–197.
- Riccardi, Theodore, Jr. "Buddhism in Ancient and Early Medieval Nepal." In *Studies in the History of Buddhism*, ed. A. K. Narain. New Delhi: B. R. Publishing, 1980.
- Slusser, Mary S. *Nepal Mandala*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1982.
- Snellgrove, David. "Buddhism in Nepal." In *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism*, Vol. 2. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.
- Toffin, Gerard. *Societe et religion chez les Newar du Nepal*. Paris: CNRS, 1984.

TODD T. LEWIS

---

NEPAL, BUDDHIST ART IN. See **Himalayas, Buddhist Art in**

**NEWARI, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN**

Beginning with Sanskrit inscriptions dating from the fifth century C.E., the large mid-montane Himalayan valley called Nepal has been a vibrant cultural center where both Hindu and Buddhist traditions have flourished. What is called "Nepal" today was formed after

1769 when the modern Shah state expanded across the region, conquering the valley city-states and making Kathmandu its capital. The first cities and religious monuments of this valley were built by the Newars, the earliest attested ethnic group of the region. Newars speak a nontonal Tibeto-Burman language called *Newari* in the Euro-American world, but referred to by Newars as *Nepāl Bhāṣā*, using Sanskritic terminology, or *Newā: Bhāy* in the spoken vernacular. This language has been thoroughly influenced by Sanskrit vocabulary, especially in the technical terms imported from the Indic traditions that shaped Newar culture. Newari texts have similarly been written using north Indian-derived scripts, the earliest on palm leaves (*tāra patra*), and from the seventeenth century onward on paper made from the daphne plant. In the latter form, the texts were written on stacked rectangular pages, or in the format of a folded book (*thyā sāphu*). Many such books were illustrated with finely rendered miniature paintings, some with fifty to one hundred images.

Since this valley was from its origins a Himalayan trade and pilgrimage center, and later a refuge for Buddhist monks fleeing the destruction of north Indian monasteries in the wake of the Muslim conquests that ended in 1192 C.E., many monasteries in Kathmandu, Bhaktapur, and Patan became centers of manuscript veneration, archiving, and copying. From this era onward, Tibetan scholars visited Nepal to obtain Sanskrit manuscripts and, in some cases, to confer with Nepalese *paṇḍitas*. There have been many Newar Buddhist scholars—especially among the "householder monk" groups calling themselves *śākyabhikṣus* and *vajrācāryas*—who could read and utilize Sanskrit, making it an important local language for the indigenous Buddhist elite. Some notable *paṇḍitas* up through the modern era also composed works in Sanskrit.

The vast holdings of Sanskrit manuscripts in the Kathmandu Valley have remained central to the modern academic study of Buddhism, beginning with the texts sent to Calcutta and Europe by the official British resident in Nepal from 1825 to 1843, Brian Hodgson. Many ancient Sanskrit texts survived only in Nepal. Though one might include these works as a literature used by the Newar Buddhist religious elite and other literati, the remainder of this entry focuses on the religious texts composed in the Newari vernacular.

The Newar saṅgha's widespread familiarity with Sanskrit, and especially the use of Sanskrit mantras and religious terminology, explains the existence of the many hundreds of manuscripts rendered in a bilingual

(Sanskrit and Newari) format. While the elite ritualists, adepts, and scholars used Sanskrit texts to guide their ritual practices, tantric meditations, and philosophical studies, they also redacted relevant Indic works into their own language and composed treatises in their own lingua franca. The Newar literati devised over ten calligraphic scripts, especially for manuscripts used for ritual “book pūjā” purposes: *Newā Lipi* since the ninth century, and *Raṅjana* since the fourteenth century.

Vernacular Buddhist literature in Nepāl Bhāsā mirrors the distinctive cultural traditions of Newar Buddhism, which was centered on a saṅgha of “householder monks” and their focus on intricate ritual and popular narratives more than scholasticism, with VAJRAYĀNA practices important for the elite. Accordingly, no vinaya or early canonical works are extant in the bilingual collections and only fragments of any Buddhist scholastic treatises (*śāstra*) have been identified. More common are MAHĀYĀNA “classics” such as the *Prajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*), *BODHICARYĀVATĀRA* (*Introduction to the Conduct That Leads to Enlightenment*), and the LOTUS SŪTRA (*SADHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA*).

Especially numerous are texts devoted to the celestial BODHISATTVA Avalokiteśvara, such as the *Kārandavyūha* (*Description of the Basket*). The most locally influential text in this genre is the *Guṇakaraṅḍavyūha* (*Description of the Garlanded Basket*), a Sanskrit work originally composed in Nepal that has been widely translated into Newari.

Several other important works were composed by local scholars in Sanskrit and translated into numerous Newari editions. First is the *Bhadrakalpa Avadāna* (*Glorious Stories of This Auspicious Era*), a text that recounts the Buddha’s return to his hometown Kapilavastu. More important in the indigenous worldview is the *Svayambhū Purāṇa* (*The Sacred Account of Svayambhū, the Self-Existent*). It has a curious title for a Buddhist text, indicating the strong influence of Hindu traditions in Nepal. But this text recounts the Buddhist origins of the valley as a hierophany of the Ādi-Buddha as a flaming lotus in a lake, one subsequently visited by buddhas of former ages of the world. In the current era, this lake is finally drained by the Bodhisattva Mañjuśrī to form the Kathmandu Valley and opened to settlement by his disciples, making the *Svayambhū Purāṇa* a work simultaneously of Mahāyāna Buddhology and ethnic origins. This text was later expanded to include the history of tantric teachers entering the domain and to discuss the history of related sacred sites. Most im-

portant among these is the sacred hilltop now called Svayambhū Mahācaitya.

The most common manuscript genres in Newar Buddhist literature are popular narratives (JĀTAKAS and AVADĀNAS) and ritual texts. “Folklorists” in the Newar saṅgha collected, redacted, and “trans-created” (to use Kamal Prakash Malla’s term) the classical tales from the JĀTAKAMĀLĀ (*Garland of Jātakas*), AVADĀNAŚATAKA (*A Hundred Glorious Deeds*), and MAHĀVASTU (*Great Story*). Some stand alone due to their popularity. These include the *Simhalasarthabāhu Avadāna*, the *Mañicūḍa Avadāna*, the *Vīrakūśa Avadāna*, the *Kavirakumār Avadāna*, and the *Viśvantara Jātaka*; such texts have been used up to the present day by *paṇḍit*-storytellers who attract audiences for evening performances during the Newar Buddhist monsoon holy month, Gunlā. Interestingly, several of these Newar *avadāna* anthologies, such as the *Vicitrakarṇika Avadāna*, have no known classical source.

Given the embedding of story recitations into many ritual texts, it is difficult to separate the genres. Newar *paṇḍitas* have typically labeled their ritual guides as *vidhi* (directive) or *kriyā* (performance), and these span a vast repertoire from life-cycle rites and building construction rites to festival practices, temple observances, and tantric initiations. Special Mahāyāna rites called *vratas* have their own textual guides, including those dedicated to the beneficent Tārā, the fierce protector Mahākāla, the Buddhist earth mother Vasundhārā, and many others. By far the most common text in this category is that outlining the *Aṣṭamī Vrata* and dedicated to Avalokiteśvara. Of special prominence in this Newar literature are guidebooks for making 100,000 clay stūpas, the *Lakṣacaitya Vidhi*, and for the old-age ritual (*bhūmaratha kriyā*) for elders reaching seventy-seven years and seven months, which includes making a STŪPA and reciting the *Uṣṇīṣavijayā dhāraṇī*. Also important are after-death guidebooks for utilizing the *Durgatipariśodhana Tantra*’s salvific mantra and a sand MAṆḌALA made by a *vajrācārya* ritualist.

Even more numerous, and variable, are the *mantra-dhāraṇī* collections. The most widespread single text is the *Pañcarakṣā* (*Five Protectors*), which provides recitations and visualizations of five protectors, each with stories testifying to their pragmatic efficacies. Other works, many reflecting the compiler’s own fields of ritual expertise, are simply lists of recitations for specific purposes. These span all spheres of human experience: worshiping, memorizing, singing, healing, attracting love, rainmaking, injuring. Related to this are collections

of devotional songs that can be sung by priests or by worshipers playing drums and other instruments.

### Modern published literature

The printing press expanded the possibilities of Newar Buddhist piety, as devotees continue to make books for merit, memorialize the dead, pen new translations, and create hundreds of new magazines that disseminate works of scholarly interpretation and Buddhist revivalism. In these forums, partisans of traditional Newar Buddhism, as well as advocates of the THERAVĀDA movement, have sought to promote their traditions. Leading *vajrācārya* priests have continued their tradition of composing ritual guide pamphlets and anthologies for their colleagues, with such publications numbering over a thousand since 1950. Since about 1960, Theravādin scholars have published Newari translations of nearly the entire Pāli canon. Traditional *paṇḍitas* and private scholars have likewise published their own new complete Newari translations of the Mahāyāna classics, including the *Aṣṭasāhasrikā Prajnāpāramitā* by Jog Muni Vajrācārya (Kathmandu, 1968), the LALITAVISTARA by Nisthananda Vajrācārya (1978), the BODHICARYĀVATĀRA by Dīyabajra Bajrācārya (1986), and the *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-vaipulyasūtra* by Saddharmarāja Vajrācārya (1989). Special mention should be made of *Sugata Saurabha* (*The Sweet Fragrance of the Buddha*), a book-length life of the Buddha that was written in Newari by Nepal's greatest twentieth-century poet, Chittadhar Hridaya. Newar poets have also composed songs for *bhajan* singing that have been widely published and used.

Finally, since 1950, a vast library of Newari scholarly publications has come into being. These works concern local epigraphy, texts, temples, and cultural traditions. Most notable among indigenous scholars is Hem Rāj Shākya, whose monographs on the Svayambhū stūpa (1977), the *Samyak* festival (1980), and other monuments testify to the Newars' vigorous love of their own culture and the continuing high regard in Newar society for literary works on Buddhism. The views of a medieval copyist are still discernible at the beginning of the twenty-first century: "I have written this manuscript painstakingly. Try your best to protect and preserve this MSS from oil stains, fire, and thieves. Look after it as you would your own offspring because while writing this mss my backbone, my head, and my eyesight have all bent downward" (Vaidya and Kamsakar, p. iv).

See also: Nepal

### Bibliography

- Lewis, Todd T. "Mahāyāna *Vratas* in Newar Buddhism." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 12, no. 1 (1989): 109–138.
- Lewis, Todd T. "The *Nepāl Jana Jīvan Kriyā Paddhati*: A Modern Newar Guide for Vajrayāna Life-Cycle Rites." *Indo-Iranian Journal* 37 (1994): 1–46.
- Lienhard, Siegfried, ed. *The Songs of Nepal: An Anthology of Newar Folksongs and Hymns*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1984.
- Locke, John. "The Uposadha Vrata of Amoghapāsha Lokeshvara." *L'Ethnographie* 83, nos. 100–101 (1989): 109–138.
- Malla, Kamal Prakash. *Classical Newari Literature*. Kathmandu: Nepal Study Centre, 1981.
- Tatelman, Joel. "'The Trials of Yashodharā': The Legend of the Buddha's Wife in the Bhadrakalpāvadāna." *Buddhist Literature* 1 (1999): 176–261.
- Vaidya, Janak Lal, and Kamsakar, Prem Bahadur. *A Descriptive Catalogue of Selected Manuscripts Preserved at the Aśā Saphū Kuthi*. Kathmandu: Cvasāpāsā, 1990.

TODD T. LEWIS

### NICHIREN

Nichiren (1222–1282) is regarded as the founder of the Hokke (Lotus) or NICHIREN SCHOOL, one of several new Buddhist movements that emerged in Japan's Kamakura period (1185–1333). Of humble origins, Nichiren was ordained at age sixteen at Kiyosumi Temple in Awa province (now Chiba prefecture) and trained especially in the Tendai school's teachings of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and in esoteric Buddhism. Later he studied in Kamakura, site of the new shogunate or military government, and at the great Tendai center on Mount Hiei, as well as at other major Buddhist temples in western Japan. Eventually he based himself in Kamakura and won followers among the eastern warriors. Nichiren's early writings are critical of PURE LAND BUDDHISM, especially the newly popular Pure Land doctrine of HŌNEN (1133–1212), which he saw as undermining traditional Tendai emphasis on the *Lotus* and esoteric teachings. Over time, however, Nichiren developed a doctrine of exclusive devotion to the *Lotus Sūtra*, which he regarded as the Buddha's highest teaching and the sole vehicle for realizing buddhahood now in the final dharma age (*mappō*). He advocated chanting the DAIMOKU or title of the *Lotus Sūtra* in the formula "Namu Myōhō-rengē-kyō," and

he devised a calligraphic MAṆḌALA, depicting the assembly of the *Lotus Sūtra*, as an object of worship (*honzon*) for his followers. While defining himself in opposition to the established Buddhism of his day, Nichiren also creatively assimilated into his *Lotus* exclusivism many older elements of both exoteric and esoteric Buddhist thought and practice.

Based on MAHĀYĀNA and especially Tendai teachings of the profound interrelationship between persons and their outer world, Nichiren saw contemporary disasters, including famine, epidemics, and Mongol invasion attempts, as karmic retribution for collective rejection of the Lotus in favor of “inferior” teachings; conversely, he asserted, the spread of faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* would transform this world into a buddha land. This conviction underlay his commitment to *shakubuku*, an assertive approach to spreading the dharma by directly critiquing opposing views. Nichiren’s repeated criticisms of the Buddhist establishment and of its patrons in government incurred the wrath of the authorities; he himself was twice exiled and attempts were made on his life, while his followers were arrested, banished, and in a few cases executed. Undeterred, Nichiren urged defiance of worldly authority when it contravenes Buddhist truth, and he valorized encounters with harsh trials. Undergoing such persecution, he taught, serves to eradicate past evil deeds, proves the validity of one’s practice, and guarantees the realization of buddhahood. Nichiren’s ideal of establishing the buddha land in the present world has inspired modern followers, who have assimilated it to a range of political agendas as well as social and humanitarian projects. Today more than forty religious organizations claim association with him, including traditional schools and new religious movements.

*See also:* Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Tiantai School

### Bibliography

- Habito, Ruben L. F., and Stone, Jacqueline I., eds. *Revisiting Nichiren*. Special issue of *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 26, nos. 3–4 (1999).
- Lamont, H. G. “Nichiren.” In *Kodansha Encyclopedia of Japan*, Vol. 5. Tokyo: Kodansha, 1983.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. “Nichiren and the New Paradigm.” In *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

Watanabe Hōyō. “Nichiren.” In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 10, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.

Yampolsky, Philip B., ed. *Selected Writings of Nichiren*, tr. Burton Watson and others. New York: Columbia University Press, 1990.

Yampolsky, Philip B., ed. *Letters of Nichiren*, tr. Burton Watson and others. New York: Columbia University Press, 1996.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

## NICHIREN SCHOOL

The term *Nichiren school* (Nichirensū) broadly denotes the entire Buddhist tradition deriving from the medieval Japanese teacher NICHIREN (1222–1282). It comprises more than forty independent religious institutions, including traditional temple denominations, lay associations, and new religious movements. Originally a monk of the Tendai tradition, Nichiren did not regard himself as the founder of a new sect, nor did he designate his following by any particular sectarian name. Because he taught exclusive faith in the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), after his death, his following became known as the Lotus sect (Hokkeshū). The name Nichirensū came into broad usage from around the late sixteenth century.

### Present organization and observances

The largest of the Nichiren Buddhist temple denominations takes Nichirensū as its legal name and has its head temple at Kuonji at Mount Minobu in Yamanashi Prefecture, where Nichiren spent his last years. Other Nichiren Buddhist denominations include, for example, Hokkeshū (Shinmon, Honmon, and Jinmon branches), Honmon Butsurūshū, Honmon Hokkeshū, Kenpon Hokkeshū, Nichiren Honshū, Nichiren Kōmonshū, Nichiren Shōshū, and Nichirensū Fūjū Fuse-ha. Many of these temple organizations trace their history back to the original monastic lineages established by Nichiren’s immediate disciples, which underwent repeated schisms during the fourteenth through sixteenth centuries due to geographic separation, institutional rivalry, and differences of doctrinal interpretation. The nineteenth century saw the flourishing of Nichiren Buddhist lay associations (*kōchū* or *kō*), sometimes independent of priestly guidance, which were the predecessors of today’s Nichiren- or *Lotus Sūtra*-based lay organizations. Of these latter groups, the most prominent are Reiyūkai, Risshō Kōseikai, and SŌKA GAKKAI, which number among





A Nichiren priest paying respect to Mount Fuji from atop neighboring Mount Minobu, Japan, 1991. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

Japan's largest "new religions." To an extent not seen in other Buddhist sects, the religious energy of modern Nichiren Buddhism has shifted to lay movements.

Despite considerable differences of interpretation and ritual observance, all these various groups revere Nichiren and the *Lotus Sūtra* and recite the title or *DAIMOKU* of the *Lotus* in the formula "Namu Myōhō-*renge-kyō*," as Nichiren taught. (The actual pronunciation of the *daimoku* may vary slightly according to the particular group.) This practice, deemed especially suited to the present era, known as the "Final Dharma age" (*mappō*), is said to manifest individuals' innate potential for buddhahood and lead to positive transformation of the world. Reciting portions of the *Lotus Sūtra* and chanting the *daimoku* are performed at all formal ceremonies and constitute the basic practice of both clergy and laity. In addition to annual rites conducted by temples of all Buddhist sects, such as New Year's observances and memorial services

for the dead at the equinoxes and during the summer Obon festival, Nichiren Buddhist temples and lay societies perform ritual observances on dates sacred to their tradition, usually transposed from the lunar to the Western calendar. These include Nichiren's birthday (celebrated February 16); the date of his first sermon, said to mark the founding of the Nichiren school (April 28); commemorations of various persecutions that Nichiren faced in propagating his teachings; and the day of his death or *NIRVAṆĀ* (October 13).

### The founder Nichiren

Nichiren is often counted as one of the founders of the "new Buddhism" of the Kamakura period (1185–1333). He was born in Kominato in Awa Province (Chiba prefecture) in humble circumstances. At age twelve he entered a nearby temple, Seichōji or Kiyosumidera, for study and was ordained four years later, in 1237. Driven by a desire to understand the truth of the

Buddha's teachings, he spent the next sixteen years studying at major monasteries, including the great Tendai Buddhist center at Mount Hiei near Kyoto, the imperial capital. Later he based himself in Kamakura, seat of the newly established shogunate or military government, where he proselytized among warriors of middle and lower rank. Nichiren's early teachings draw heavily on Tiantai/Tendai thought grounded in the *Lotus Sūtra* and its commentaries, as well as on esoteric Buddhism. His early teachings also championed traditional Buddhist institutions over and against the growing influence of the new Pure Land sect founded by HŌNEN (1133–1212). Over time, however, Nichiren increasingly stressed that only the *Lotus Sūtra* leads to liberation during this Final Dharma age, and he began to dissociate himself from the Tendai Buddhist establishment, which he saw as having adulterated devotion to the *Lotus* with the practice of provisional teachings no longer suited to the times. Based on Tendai doctrines of the nonduality of persons and their environment, Nichiren interpreted the disasters of his day—including famine, epidemics, and Mongol invasion attempts—as karmic retribution for people having abandoned the *Lotus Sūtra* in favor of lesser teachings; conversely, he held, the spread of faith in the *Lotus* would transform this world into the Buddha land. This theme informs his famous admonitory treatise, *Risshō ankoku ron (On Establishing the Right [Dharma] and Bringing Peace to the Land)*, delivered to the shogunate in 1260, as well as his later writings.

Convinced of the pressing need to communicate his message, Nichiren adopted *shakubuku*, a confrontational method of teaching the dharma by directly rebuking attachment to provisional teachings, whether through writing, preaching, or religious debate. Nichiren's mounting criticism of other forms of Buddhism, and of government officials for supporting them, soon incurred the anger of the authorities. He was exiled twice, to the Izu peninsula (1261–1263) and to Sado island (1271–1274), and was once nearly beheaded during the so-called Ryūkō or Tatsunokuchi persecution of the twelfth day, ninth month, 1271. Several of his followers were imprisoned or had their lands confiscated. Nichiren considered these trials a proof of the righteousness of his convictions and asserted the need to uphold the *Lotus Sūtra* in the face of opposition, even at the cost of one's life. His mature teachings were developed during his exile to Sado and his subsequent reclusion on Mount Minobu (1274–1282), where he devoted his last years to writing and to training successors. More than a hundred of his writings,

including personal letters and doctrinal essays, survive in his own hand.

### Nichiren's teachings

Nichiren adopted the Tiantai SCHOOL doctrine of reality as “three thousand realms in a single-thought moment” (*ichinen sanzen*) to explain the theoretical basis upon which ordinary people can realize buddhahood, and their surroundings become the buddha land. In terms of practice for the Final Dharma age, however, Nichiren understood “the single thought-moment being three thousand realms,” not as a formless principle to be discerned within one's own mind, as in Tiantai meditation, but as manifested in concrete form as the “three great secret dharmas” (*sandai hihō*). Derived from the “origin teaching” (*honmon*) or latter half of the *Lotus Sūtra*, regarded as the preaching of the original or primordially enlightened Buddha, these three constitute the core of Nichiren's teaching. They are:

**(1) The *daimoku*.** For Nichiren, the five characters *Myō-hō-ren-ge-kyō* (in Japanese pronunciation) that comprise the *Lotus Sūtra*'s title are not merely a name but embody the essence of all Buddhist teachings and are the seed of buddhahood for all beings. All the practices and resulting virtues of the primordial Buddha are encompassed in these five characters and are “naturally transferred” to the practitioner in the moment of FAITH and practice. That is, the practitioner and the original Buddha are identified in the act of chanting the *daimoku*.

**(2) The *honzon*, or object of worship.** Nichiren's *honzon* has the two inseparable aspects of the “Buddha,” the primordial Śākyamuni of the origin teaching, enlightened since the beginningless past, and the “dharma,” the truth of “Myōhō-rence-kyō,” to which this Buddha is awakened. Nichiren gave this object of worship iconic form as a calligraphic MAṄḌALA of his own devising. “Namu Myōhō-rence-kyō” is inscribed down its center, while to the left and right are written the characters for the names of the two buddhas, Śākyamuni and Prabhūtaratna, along with the names of other representatives of those present at the assembly of the *Lotus Sūtra*. This maṅḍala depicts the realm of the primordial Buddha, which, Nichiren taught, ordinary persons can enter through faith. More than 120 of these maṅḍalas, inscribed for individual followers and their families, survive in Nichiren's handwriting. Various configurations of sculpted images representing the original Buddha and his *Lotus* assembly were also used by later Nichiren followers.

**(3) The *kaidan*, or ordination platform.** This designates the place of practice. Nichiren's own writings do not explain it in detail, and considerable controversy has surrounded its interpretation. Nichiren himself may well have envisioned the *kaidan* as an actual physical structure, supplanting the other, court-sponsored ordination platforms of his day, to be erected by imperial authority at some future time when people had widely embraced faith in the *Lotus Sūtra*. At the same time, the *kaidan* has often been interpreted metaphorically, to mean that wherever one embraces faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* is the buddha land.

Although he taught devotion to the *Lotus* as a self-contained, exclusive practice, Nichiren understood that practice as encompassing all possible benefits: realization of buddhahood, assurance for one's next life, eradication of sin, cultivation of merit, and protection and blessings in this world.

### Contributions to Japanese culture

A key element of Nichiren's legacy is his doctrine of *risshō ankoku* (establishing the right [dharma] and bringing peace to the land), which holds that faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* can manifest the buddha land in this present world. This ideal supports the value of positive engagement with society and may have contributed to the growth of mercantile culture in Japan's medieval cities. In the mid-fifteenth century, half the population of Kyoto—the majority of them manufacturers, tradespeople, and moneylenders—is said to have belonged to the Nichiren school. Since the late nineteenth century, Nichiren's goal of transforming this world into a buddha land has been assimilated to a range of political and social goals. During Japan's modern imperial period (1868–1945), some Nichirenist lay societies, such as the Kokuchūkai (Pillar of the Nation Society), established in 1914 by Tanaka Chigaku (1861–1939), interpreted Nichiren's *risshō ankoku* ideal in terms of Japanese nationalism and deployed it to legitimize the armed expansion of empire. In the post–World War II period, especially among the new religious movements, it has been interpreted as a spiritual basis for the antinuclear movement, efforts for global peace, and a range of humanitarian endeavors. Nipponzan Myōhōji, a small Nichiren Buddhist monastic order, embraces absolute pacifism and engages in peace marches and civil protest, while Nichiren- or *Lotus*-based lay organizations, notably Sōka Gakkai and Risshō Kōseikai, support the United Nations as NGO (nongovernmental

organization) members and engage in relief work and civic projects. This side of Nichiren Buddhism lends itself to contemporary emphasis on Buddhist social engagement.

Another, less well-recognized contribution of the Nichiren school lies in its history of committed individuals, beginning with Nichiren himself, who risked official displeasure for the dharma's sake. Once well established, most Nichiren Buddhist institutions, both past and present—like religious institutions more generally—have tended to take a conciliatory stance toward existing authority and support the status quo. Nonetheless, Nichiren's teaching that one must uphold the *Lotus Sūtra* even in the face of persecution from the country's ruler created a moral space exterior to worldly authority, from which that authority could be criticized and, if necessary, opposed. This attitude of defiance has periodically resurfaced, often on the part of those who saw themselves as reformers within the Nichiren school, seeking to revive the founder's spirit. Medieval hagiographies celebrate the stories of those monks of the tradition who, in imitation of Nichiren, admonished high officials to take faith in the *Lotus Sūtra* for the country's welfare and were imprisoned or tortured as a result. A later example is the Nichiren *fuju fuse* (neither receiving nor giving) movement of the late sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, whose monks—until driven underground—resisted official controls imposed on religious institutions, refusing to accept alms from rulers who were not *Lotus* devotees or to participate in public religious ceremonies for their benefit. Similarly, during the 1940s, leaders of both Honmon Hokkeshū and Sōka Gakkai were imprisoned for their defiance of wartime government religious policy, which mandated displays of reverence for state Shintō. Nichiren's intransigent spirit and his example of unwavering loyalty to a transcendent truth have also inspired individuals, linked only tenuously to the Nichiren tradition or even outside it altogether, who have faced official sanctions for their beliefs. These include the Christian leader Uchimura Kanzō (1861–1930) and the socialist activist Senoo Girō (1890–1961).

*See also:* Engaged Buddhism; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Original Enlightenment (Hongaku)

### Bibliography

Dolce, Lucia Dora. "Esoteric Patterns in Nichiren's Interpretation of the *Lotus Sutra*." Ph.D. diss. University of Leiden, 2002.

- Habito, Ruben L. F. "Lotus Buddhism and Its Liberational Thrust: A Rereading of the *Lotus Sutra* by Way of Nichiren." *Ching feng* 35, no. 2 (1992): 85–112.
- Habito, Ruben L. F., and Stone, Jacqueline I., eds. *Revisiting Nichiren*. Special issue of *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 26, nos. 3–4 (1999).
- Lamont, H. G. "Nichiren Sect." In *Kodansha Encyclopedia of Japan*, Vol. 5. Tokyo: Kodansha, 1983.
- Murano, Senchū. "Nichirenshū." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 10, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Petzold, Bruno. *Buddhist Prophet Nichiren: A Lotus in the Sun*, ed. Shotaro Iida and Wendy Simmons. Tokyo: Hokke Jānaru, 1978.
- Rodd, Laurel Rasplica. *Nichiren: Selected Writings*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1980.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. "Rebuking the Enemies of the Lotus: Nichirenist Exclusivism in Historical Perspective." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 21, nos. 2–3 (1994): 231–259.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Tanabe, George J., and Hori, Kyōtsū, eds. *Writings of Nichiren Shōnin: Doctrine 2*. Tokyo: Nichirenshu Overseas Promotion Association, 2002.
- Watanabe Hōyō. "Nichiren." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 10, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Yampolsky, Philip B., ed. *Selected Writings of Nichiren*, tr. Burton Watson and others. New York: Columbia University Press, 1990.
- Yampolsky, Philip B., ed. *Letters of Nichiren*, tr. Burton Watson and others. New York: Columbia University Press, 1996.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

NIKĀYA. See *Āgama/Nikāya*

## NINE MOUNTAINS SCHOOL OF SŌN

The Nine Mountains school of Sōn (Korean, Kusan Sōnmun) is a comprehensive term referring to the nine monastic centers of the Korean Sōn school (Chinese, CHAN SCHOOL), which were established from the eighth through the ninth centuries. Each of the nine schools takes its name from the mountain on which its central monastery is located: Kajisan, founded by Toūi (d. 825); Silsangsan, founded by Hongch'ōk (fl. 826); Tongnisan, founded by Hyech'ōl (785–861); Sagulsan, founded by Pōmil (810–889); Pongnimsan,

founded by Hyōnuk (787–869); Sajasan, founded by Toyun (797–868); Hūiyangsan, founded by Chisōn Tohōn (824–882); Sōngjusan, founded by Muyōm (799–888); and Sumisan, founded by Iōm (869–936).

According to tradition, Chan Buddhism was first introduced into Korea by the Silla monk Pōmnang (fl. 632–646), who putatively studied in China under the Fourth Patriarch Daoxin (580–651), then returned to Silla and transmitted the teachings to Sinhaeng (d. 779), who also went to China, where he studied under Chigong (Chinese, Zhiqong; 703–779), a Korean disciple of Puji (651–739), the second patriarch of the Northern Chan school. Sinhaeng thus imbibed both the "gradual teachings" of the Northern school and the "sudden teachings" of the so-called Southern school, passing them on to his disciples Chunbōm (d.u.), Hyeūn (d.u.), and finally Chisōn Tohōn (824–882), who founded the Hūiyangsan school in 879.

Though sectarian rivalries certainly existed, the underlying kinship of the nine schools was recognized, and they were referred to collectively as the Chogye (Tsao-hsi) school, an allusion to Caoxi mountain, the residence of the sixth patriarch HUINENG (638–713). In point of fact, the Nine Mountains school was more doctrinally diverse than the name would indicate. This is because of the traditional emphasis placed on lineage in Korean Buddhism: For a new school to be included among the mountain schools, the founder had to have studied in China first; if he belonged to a mountain school before leaving for China, he was still considered a member of that school on his return, regardless of the new doctrine he brought back. A number of Nine Mountains adherents brought back new doctrines that were taught and practiced in Korea but were not given separate identities as schools.

One feature of Korean Sōn is the dominance of the "sudden teachings" of the so-called Southern Chan school. Seven of the nine schools were founded by monks who studied under first generation successors of Mazu DAOYI (709–788), the founder of the Hongzhou school of Chan. Thus it was only natural that the "sudden teachings" became the dominant doctrinal feature of traditional Korean Sōn. This orientation continues in contemporary Korean Buddhism.

See also: **Chogye School; Korea**

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch'an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-Sūtra, A Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.

Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *Tracing Back the Radiance: Chinul's Korean Way of Zen*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.

Cho, Sungtaek. "Buddhist Philosophy, Korean." In *Encyclopedia of Philosophy*, Vol. 2. London and New York: Routledge, 1988.

SUNGTAEK CHO

NIRODHA. See Four Noble Truths

## NIRVĀṆA

The most common term used by Buddhists to describe a state of freedom from suffering and rebirth, *nirvāṇa*, is one of the most widely known Buddhist words outside Asia. It is found in dictionaries as an English word, *nirvana*, and has acquired a patina that makes many assume its meaning is obvious. Yet, it is a word about which Buddhists themselves have never reached agreement.

### The term *nirvāṇa*

The quest for the real or original "idea of *nirvāṇa*" often masks our preconceptions about what is reasonable or desirable in religious doctrine and practice, or, for that matter, what we expect from Buddhism (Welbon). It may be that when we ask: "What is *nirvāṇa*?" we seek to answer the wrong question. Instead we need to ask: How have Buddhists used the term? With what polemical or apologetic purposes? What human aspirations might these uses reveal?

The word's etymology already reveals the concept's ambiguity and polysemy. The Sanskrit term *nirvāṇa* is an action noun signifying the act and effect of blowing (at something) to put it out, to blow out, or to extinguish, but the noun also signifies the process and outcome of burning out, becoming extinguished, cooling down, and hence, allaying, calming down, and also taming, making docile. Technically, in the religious traditions of India, the term denotes the process of accomplishing and experiencing freedom from the unquenchable thirst of DESIRE and the pains of repeated births, lives, and deaths.

The word contains a problematic metaphor, an image of denial that only suggests what *nirvāṇa* is not (fire, heat, ardent craving, and repeated pain), but offers only limited clues as to what might be the term's referents or discursive contexts. Furthermore, the se-

mantic overlap between "extinguishing" and "cooling down" does not solve the question of what are the exact means and the end result of putting out this fire. These uncertainties encapsulate much of the doctrinal debates over *nirvāṇa*.

The religious uses of the term *nirvāṇa* perhaps precede the beginnings of Buddhism, and may have been imported into Buddhism with much of its semantic range from other śramaṇic movements. It has had wide currency in Indian religions as a more or less central concept among the Jains, the Ājīvikas, the Buddhists, and certain Hindu strands. In different religious traditions its meanings range from composure in calm detachment (or in *samādhi*) to liberation from suffering, and from "escape from this world to a world of bliss" to the utter "rest" of dying out (e.g., as in Jain ritual suicide). *Nirvāṇa* can also be associated in the same breath with an impersonal absolute and a personal deity (as it is in the *Bhagavadgītā*).

### Early definitions

For the most part, definitions found in Buddhist scriptural literature emphasize the cooling down of craving, aversion, and unawareness (*Suttanipāta* 4, 251–252). In a typical scriptural passage a nun puts out an oil lamp and characterizes the act as a *nibbāna* (the Pāli equivalent of Sanskrit *nirvāṇa*): "As I pull down the wick-pin and put out the flame of the lamp, ah, indeed, it is like my mind made free!" (*Therīgāthā* 116). The canonical explanatory metaphor speaks of a flame that is blown out, or of a fire that burns out when it runs out of fuel or is denied its fuel. However, in this context extinction means relief, calm, rest, and not the annihilation of being. In an Indian setting, fire is mostly hot and uncomfortable, or it is associated with a raging destructive forest conflagration during the dry months before the monsoon; it is not a symbol of life, but a symbol of painful desire.

A passage depicting an encounter between the Buddha and the wandering ascetic Vacchagotta explains that a buddha (here called a *tathāgata*) is liberated when "all cogitation, all worry and rumination, all me-making and mine-making as well as the penchant to conceit are extinguished, no longer desired, stopped, abandoned, no longer grasped" (*Majjhimanikāya* 1, 486). When someone is liberated in this way one cannot say that *he will* reappear or that *he will not* reappear after DEATH. It is like a fire that dies out; it does not go anywhere (*Majjhimanikāya* 1, 486–487). In the same way the Buddha is free "from those bodily forms and sensory images which a per-

son seeking to characterize him would use to recognize [him as a] Tathāgata. They are cut off at the root, . . . so that they will not rise again in the future. The Tathāgata is free from any representations of bodily forms and sensory images, he is profound, immeasurable, unfathomable like the ocean” (*Majjhimanikāya* 1, 487–488). Needless to say, the same is declared about the other four constituents of the human person: sensations, thoughts, habits, and consciousness—that is, all five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES) have been uprooted by the TATHĀGATA.

As is often the case, here the question is what a buddha is after death. The connection of nirvāṇa to death is central to understanding the term, and one of the most common contexts for its usage. The Buddha’s death is one of the defining moments of his life and person—one of the earliest events in the biography to be recorded, and the signal moment in the liberation from REBIRTH (and redeath). Especially with reference to the Buddha or persons regarded as having led an unusually holy life, *nirvāṇa* is synonymous with death, needless to say, a death that is peaceful and liberating. When a saint dies he “puts out the fire” (*parinirvāṇi* or *parinirvāyati*).

In other contexts, terms expressing profound, stable calm or mental concentration may be synonymous with *nirvāṇa*. In both cases the word suggests an ideal and desirable state of detachment and the paradoxically powerful presence of that which is absent: the dead saint or a serene demeanor. Thus, *nirvāṇa* is suggested by both a tranquil demeanor and the presence or miraculous appearance of relics, or by a reliquary mound (STŪPA). Such monuments, like images of the reclining Buddha that serve as models for the way a monk must lie—ready for death and liberation—remind us of how real the absence that is *nirvāṇa* can be and how close it is to relaxed sleep.

Within this broader context, one must locate a range of meanings in the metaphor of “blowing out,” which suggests a number of different kinds of extinction, cooling down, or freedom from the turmoil and raging fires of human existence. It is freedom from rebirth by virtue of the *extinction* of everything that defines the person as subject to birth, death, and suffering (that is, the skandhas). Yet, this extinction can be understood as cessation or relinquishment, or both. Additionally, the encounter with Vacchagotta suggests that it is a freedom from a way of thinking, a type of self-definition and self-consciousness (and freedom from the attitudes generated by this way of thinking).

Hence, “extinction” could also be freedom from the turbulence of the mind, from the fire generated by churning ideas of self and possession. This conception of *nirvāṇa* as extinguishing a form of knowing one’s self (the fuel) overlaps with the notion of freedom from desire and aversion (the heat of the fire). Finally, *nirvāṇa*, like the extinguished fire, cannot be imagined: Such is the ineffable state of a liberated buddha, and the mysterious condition of being absent in death yet present as the tathāgata. The tradition will waver between all these meanings, sometimes integrating them, at other times preferring one over the other.

Some of the most important components of the metaphor appear in what is arguably one of the earliest strata of textual Buddhism, the *Aṭṭhakavagga* of the *Suttanipāta*. Here, the preferred Pāli term is *nibbuti*, a synonym for *nibbāna* that is usually rendered in Sanskrit as *nirvṛti* (extinction, perfect rest, and contentment). This word may be a distortion of *nivṛti* (to put a lid on, to arrest), but is most likely a transformation of *nivṛtti* (stop turning around, bring to rest), a form attested in the scholastic literature. A poem in the *Aṭṭhakavagga* (*Suttanipāta* 915 ff.) links *nibbuti* to the state of peace (*santipadam*) attained by the person who cools down (*nibbāti*—perhaps “blows out his own fire”). The poem also describes the goal as a state of detached solitude (*viveka*) in which one gains a special insight (*Suttanipāta* 915), and one no longer dwells in or holds on to (*anupādiyāno*) anything in the world.

Specifically addressed at monks, the poem advises that they mindfully dedicate themselves to the practice of putting away or taming (*vinaya*) the thirst within, uprooting the conceptions and mental fabrications (*papañcasamkhā*) that depend on one’s ideas about oneself (*Suttanipāta* 916). The text describes the practice that leads to peace as remaining mindful and discerning the dharma. Significantly *dharma* in this poem is not some conception of truth or reality; it is rather a practice: observing with detachment common ideas about one’s self (being better or inferior to others, being equal to others) and being mindful of the life of the world-renouncer.

The connection with MINDFULNESS (*smṛti/sati*) reminds us not only of the close connection of *nirvāṇa* to ideas of mental cultivation, but also signals the fact that *nirvāṇa* is also a term for the calm demeanor of the awakened or of those on the way to awakening. The young Gautama is said to be *nirvṛta* (*nibbuto*) in contexts describing his appearance or demeanor, and not his attainment of liberation. In such contexts, the

word means not only that he is “calm,” but also that he appears to be “serenely content.” This usage suggests the common Buddhist metaphor of the wild elephant or the elephant in rut that, once tamed, becomes calm and acquires the grace that derives from training.

Tradition offers more than a definition by negation (i.e., what *nirvāṇa* is not). Extinction is not only a state of absence of sorrow and absence of desire; it is bliss. But it is also an active process: a coming to rest, a stopping (*nirodha*), and a cooling down. Definitions by negation can be understood as apophatic moves, attempts to speak of the unknowable, the ineffable. One cannot speak of the Tathāgata after he has left behind the conditions of rebirth, one can only say that he is not born and that he does not die, and so on. Finally, some descriptions come closer to telling us what *nirvāṇa* is: It is the unchanging (*Udāna* 80–81); it is the unconditioned, the true, the auspicious, the secure, the refuge, the pure state of health (*Suttanipāta* 4, 369–373). This range of perceptions corresponds to the ambiguity of the original metaphor, and, needless to say, becomes fertile ground for much speculation. One is always at liberty to try to imagine in what sense any given human being or human activity is closer to or further away from *nirvāṇa*.

### Theories of *nirvāṇa*

In a constant struggle to understand the unfathomable state of the liberated Buddha, the tradition develops a number of theories. According to a classical view, “thirst” (*trṣṇā*, the insatiable craving for existence and sensual satisfaction), is completely eliminated with *BODHI* (AWAKENING), and thus the root cause for future rebirth is destroyed. When this happens, the person experiences “*nirvāṇa* with residual attachment factors” (*sopadhīṣeṣanirvāṇa*); that is, freedom from desire has been attained and freedom from rebirth is assured, but the person must still remain in the world of suffering until the moment of death, when he will be free from any possibility of further rebirth. In other words, awakening causes the extinction of thirst and thus removes the causes for future rebirth, but does not remove the preexistent causes that continue to propel the individual in his or her present existence until the moment of death. Some caveats apply to the idea that final *nirvāṇa* is assured after awakening because one may bring a potent cause, a karmic condition that has not matured yet and will cause further rebirth until this cause bears its fruit. Hence, a person may achieve awakening and still be reborn once more in this world or in one of the HEAVENS.

However, when death occurs for a person who has achieved this first level of *nirvāṇa*, the *nirvāṇa* with residual factors, it is almost a foregone conclusion that there will be no more rebirth—at the moment of death this person will attain “*nirvāṇa* with no residue of attachment factors” (*nirupadhīṣeṣanirvāṇa*). In Western literature, this final state is sometimes called *parinirvāṇa*, but this special usage of the term may be relatively recent (Thomas).

Full awakening implies, by necessity, the first level of *nirvāṇa*, yet *nirvāṇa* and awakening (*bodhi*) are not exact synonyms. Although the tradition itself at times blurs the distinction, one may separate the two as follows. *Nirvāṇa* is the affective, soteriological, and eschatological dimension of buddhahood: It is release from passion, desire, agitation, anger, birth and death, and any future rebirth. *Bodhi*, on the other hand, is the cognitive dimension of the experience: It is insight, perfect understanding, freedom from the veils of desire, aversion, and confusion, and, in some interpretations, omniscience. Despite their importance, throughout most of the history of Buddhism the concepts of awakening and *nirvāṇa* have been neither the sole nor the orienting goals of Buddhist doctrine and practice. At times they appear as defining principles, in tandem or competing with each other, but often they occur as placeholders and signs of orthodoxy or as a background to complex webs of doctrines and practices.

Turning provisionally to related scholastic formulations, one of the central concerns appears to have been the connection between the absolute or uncaused goal of *nirvāṇa* and the practices that constitute the *PATH* (necessarily a chain of causes and effects). Expressed abstractly, if *nirvāṇa* is not caused, then how can it be attained? If it is the absence of birth and death, is it the absence of life? If it is not a form of existence, then, how can it be bliss? The *MILINDAPAÑHA* attempts to address some of the problems, arguing that there is no cause for the arising of *nirvāṇa* (it is *ahetuja* like empty space), but its attainment is the fruit of following the path (*Milinda* 267–271). Similarly, the *Abhidharmakośa* (II.55) goes to great lengths to argue that *nirvāṇa* has no cause and no effect: It is the saint’s attainment of *nirvāṇa* that is caused by the practice of the path.

The *Abhidharmakośa* (IV.8 and II.55) argues that liberation in *nirvāṇa* is the supreme good (*śubhaḥ paramataḥ*) and yet is not an entity (*abhāvamātra*—“not a thing in any way”). It is a conscious or inten-

tional cessation, and yet it is somehow the goal of all the virtues and goodness of a buddha. Moreover, the *Abhidharmakośa* (II.55) seems to distinguish the cessation (*nirodha*) of dharmas that is the result of an intentional process (nirvāṇa proper) from other forms of cessation or nonexistence (such as that of a burned out fire).

The tendency to conceive of nirvāṇa as a nonstate or a state that is not within the sphere of that which exists is also suggested by the classical Indian notion that a yogin in meditation can achieve a cessation of life (a subtle state of death, as it were) called *nirodhasamāpatti* (Griffiths). Although such mental states are not the same as the final liberation of nirvāṇa, they are considered “analogous” to nirvāṇa (*Abhidharmakośa* II.44). This tallies well with common Indian ideas about the nature of samādhi as an alternative reality or a state that is outside the normal parameters of being and life. A parallel association can be seen in the contemporary custom of calling the tombs of Hindu saints their “samādhi.”

Despite the apparent synonymy of *nirvāṇa* with the calm of meditation, the Buddhist tradition generally seeks a liberation that is for all time (or timeless) and not only a temporary state of serenity in samādhi. Thus, an early distinction separates liberation of mind (*cetovimukti*—perhaps liberation [only] in the mind) from liberation through insight (*prajñāvimukti*). Technically, the first is experienced by an ARHAT during the phase of traversing the path, and the second is attained at the moment of attaining the fruits of arhatship. This implies a distinction between an inner peace achieved during transitory states of mental recollection, and nirvāṇa proper, which is only possible after complete liberation through insight.

### Further developments and polemical issues

However, the neatness of scholastic speculation may hide the disarray of competing views of nirvāṇa. Although an exact chronology is not possible, a later summary of conflicting concepts of nirvāṇa is found in a list of “mistaken ideas” in the LANĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA, which criticizes those who conceive of nirvāṇa as:

A state in which thought and mental states are no longer active because the skandhas, *dhātus* and *āyatana*s have ceased . . . or when one is no longer aware of past, present, or future, just as when a lamp is extinguished, . . . or when a fire runs out of fuel; others say liberation is going to another place or state when one stops discriminating sense objects, as when a wind stops blowing; others . . .

say it is the destruction of the view that there is a knower and a known . . . ; others imagine nirvāṇa to be the destruction of the self, the living thing, the person . . . ; others, the extinction of merit and demerit, the destruction of the afflictions by means of knowledge . . . ; others, seeing the true nature of things as they are in their self-nature, such as the many colors on the peacock, variously formed precious stones. (pp. 182–187, § LXXIV)

A variety of interpretations of nirvāṇa can be attested historically as well, especially in MAHĀYĀNA. But, arguably, major differences appeared at an early stage in the development of *nikāya* Buddhism (the so-called HĪNAYĀNA schools). Buddhists advocating teachings like those of the Lokottaravāda, for instance, assumed that a buddha’s nirvāṇa not only continues to exist beyond or after temporary states of samādhi but that it exists *before* time and existence, in an atemporal state, attained as it were since beginningless time.

Echoes of this view appear, for instance, in the so-called TATHĀGATAGARBHA doctrine, whose proponents argued that the Buddha’s perfect nirvāṇa was already present in every sentient being. Buddhas exist in a permanent state of bliss, a nirvāṇa free from the self only in the sense that it lacks the negative qualities of selfhood. This state is the opposite of the impermanent, the impure, and the painful, and embodies the innate purity of a buddha-seed or buddha-nature present in most (if not all) SENTIENT BEINGS (an important polemic being fought over the presence or absence of this capacity in a particular group of people, the ICCHANTIKA).

Nirvāṇa also becomes the focus of polemical attempts to define Mahāyāna by contrast to a purported Hīnayāna. Mahāyāna apologetes distinguished the nirvāṇa of BODHISATTVAS from that of śrāvakas. The views of the latter are present in a polemical caricature to serve as the straw man for the promotion of Mahāyāna ideals: Śrāvakas are portrayed as aspiring to an imperfect and selfish state of peace. While they seek release from suffering only for themselves, the bodhisattva seeks awakening for the sake of all sentient beings.

This turn is arguably the beginning of a major shift in the position of nirvāṇa within the Buddhist conceptual edifice. One sees this shift in Śāntideva’s resolution: “Nirvāṇa means to renounce all things, and my mind is set on attaining nirvāṇa; if I must renounce everything, it would be better to give it all to other sentient beings” (*Bodhicaryāvatāra* III.11).

At times this polemical stance is expressed by suggesting that bodhisattvas value awakening and compassionate engagement far more than their own



liberation in nirvāṇa. But, another formulation, perhaps stemming from a different polemic, states that in some sense saṃsāra and nirvāṇa are the same. This is usually traced back to aphoristic statements of NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), but it may be treated as another one of those background concepts that appear in many other formulations of Mahāyāna doctrine. The identity encapsulates both an ontology and a SOTERIOLOGY. As an ontology, it may be taken to imply that liberation from suffering takes place in the world (hence freedom from attachment to nirvāṇa), but in a world transformed by an awakened vision (hence detachment from saṃsāra). The stage of such vision and freedom is liberation (hence, a “higher” nirvāṇa).

Yogācāra scholastics proposed that the bodhisattva’s nirvāṇa is a “nirvāṇa that has no foothold” (*apratiṣṭhitanirvāṇa*) in either nirvāṇa (perfect peace, rest) or saṃsāra (the turmoil of transmigration). This doctrine may be historically a spin-off of early ideas of the bodhisattvas’ activity in saṃsāra or ontological reflections on the bodhisattva vow, but doctrinally it can be conceived as a development of the principle of the identity of saṃsāra and nirvāṇa, and also it seems to be linked to the idea of nirvāṇa as an act of generosity proposed by ŚĀNTIDEVA (ca. 685–763).

The idea of nirvāṇa with no foothold is also extended to buddhas, whose compassion could not conceivably allow them to “depart into nirvāṇa” while other sentient beings continue to suffer. As expressed succinctly by CANDRAKĪRTI (ca. 600–650) in one of the concluding verses to his *Madhyamakāvatāra* (XI.51): “With a mind to liberate those in pain, you have made the world the object of your compassion. Blessed, Compassionate One, out of love, you turn away from your own nirvāṇa forsaking its peace.” The passage could be interpreted as an exhortation to forsake certain notions of nirvāṇa: doctrinal and practical conceptions of peace and relief from suffering that entail world-denial.

Another common, perhaps background, Mahāyāna conception, which may in fact have ancient roots in *nikāya* Buddhism, is the doctrine of “innate or natural” nirvāṇa (*prakṛtinirvāṇa*), according to which all things are already, and have been since beginningless time, in perfect peace. The world as it is and has always been is not polluted or polluting, does not cause our attachments and fettered relationships, does not cause suffering. This is taken to be synonymous with saying “all things are empty.” This doctrine may be

implicit in early canonical teachings about the natural luminescence (*prakṛtiprabhāsvaratā*) of the tranquil mind.

However, many of the above ideas also overlap with so-called mind-only theories of liberation (sometimes subsumed under the rubric *Yogācāra*), with their historical interconnections remaining obscure. The mind-only approach to liberation and reality is epitomized in a statement of the *Laṅkāvatāra-sūtra*:

The all-knowing [buddhas] describe nirvāṇa as a turning back or stopping (*vyāvṛtti*) of the functions of consciousness, occurring when one understands that there is nothing but what appears as thought itself, when one no longer clings to external objects, existent or nonexistent, . . . when one sees the condition of things as they are . . . with the mind dwelling in neither subject nor object. (pp. 184–185, § LXXIV)

The conundrum implicit in the metaphors of extinction has not been avoided, for the same text describes the Buddha’s liberation with another metaphor of the same family:

[All functions of consciousness] are active (*pra-vṛt-*) or cease (*ni-vṛt-*) impelled by the wind of sense objects, which are appearances in thought itself, like waves on the ocean. Therefore, when the mind consciousness (*manovijñāna*) has been turned back or stopped, all seven forms of consciousness are stopped. . . . When a flooded stream subsides and dries out, no waves arise; in the same manner when the multifarious manifestations of consciousness cease [consciousness] is no longer active. (p. 127 and stanza 181, § LIII)

Mahāyāna doctrine in India contributed to the intellectual underpinnings of tantric theories of the process and goals of liberation. One can express the connection syllogistically, if not historically, by stating that, if all things are inherently or naturally already in nirvāṇa, then the body and the passions perhaps are in some way expressions of liberation, embodiments of peace. Doctrinally, tantric views of nirvāṇa fit within the range of Mahāyāna doctrines described above. Sometimes it is proposed that the bodhisattva, like a skillful magician, knows that the world is a magical apparition and hence is not tainted by the world, and, furthermore, can interact with the world in some way like a magician or wonder-worker. At other times, it is emptiness and compassion that define the bodhisattva’s and the yogin’s liberation, with compassion and a skillful use of liberating strategies (UPĀYA) eclipsing the renunciation and liberation as world denial. At

other times, the body as such is the location for nirvāṇa, so that a homology between the body, speech, and mind of the practitioner and that of the buddha becomes the basis for ritual and meditation, and emptiness replaces concepts of the serene ineffable.

Whether the acceptance of the world and the passions is seen as a skillful use of liberating strategies (*upāya*) or as a redefinition of nirvāṇa (as the peace of accepting the passions without clinging to them), a redefinition of traditional Buddhist ascetic views of the body took place, and some of the older ideas of nirvāṇa had to shift position within the puzzle of Buddhist doctrine. Such shifts in emphasis and perspective find expression today among a few pockets of Buddhists in Nepal, in Tibetan communities (in Tibet and in exile), and among East Asian Buddhists.

### Summary interpretation

One may argue, by way of conclusion, that nirvāṇa is one of those shifting foundations that believers see as solid rock, but history reveals as shifting sands. And yet, one must wonder how else it could have been with a concept that attempts to make intelligible so many questions about human presence and awareness, passion and serenity, and passion and death. Abstractly, one may say that the idea of nirvāṇa has had three distinguishable, though overlapping, functions in the development of Buddhist belief and practice. First, nirvāṇa appears to be the defining fulcrum for understanding the path as a way to peace through calm abiding. Second, nirvāṇa is the placeholder for various attempts at understanding a liberation that is peace and calm as something more than a temporary psychological state: liberation, timeless felicity, but, above all a deathless state that is nevertheless often associated with saintly death or the last moment in the holy path. Last, but equally important, nirvāṇa served as a stable reference point, as placeholder, for the tradition as it struggled to define its own identity against competing Buddhist and non-Buddhist communities of belief. Thus, even if one's main hope is rebirth in a paradise, that paradise must exist to facilitate nirvāṇa. More generally, *nirvāṇa* is one of those words that also embody the struggle to understand the possibility of perfection, of inner peace, and of freedom from the turmoil of our own desires and conflicted views of ourselves. It is not surprising that for all the many attempts to understand nirvāṇa as a psychological state or a state of body or mind, most traditions continue to give a special value to death in nirvāṇa or nirvāṇa in death, for the enigmas of full freedom and unending bliss seem to push

imagination to a realm beyond the normal range of the experience of living humans.

### Bibliography

- Collins, Steven. *Nirvāṇa and Other Buddhist Felicities: Utopias of the Pāli Imaginaire*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Griffiths, Paul. *On Being Mindless: Buddhist Meditation and the Mind-Body Problem*. La Salle, IL: Open Court, 1986.
- Kasulis, Thomas. "Nirvāṇa." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 10, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *The Way to Nirvāṇa: Six Lectures on Ancient Buddhism as a Discipline of Salvation*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1917.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. "Nirvāṇa." In the *Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics*, Vol. 9, ed. James Hastings. New York: Scribner's, 1927.
- Thomas, Edward Joseph. *Nirvāṇa and Parinirvāṇa*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1947.
- Welbon, Guy Richard. *The Buddhist Nirvāṇa and Its Western Interpreters*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1968.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

## NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA

The core text of the Mahāyāna Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra was completed in Kashmir around 300 C.E., but over the next century additional material enlarged it to three or four times its original length. Today only fragments remain of the original Sanskrit text, but we have a complete Chinese translation of the extended sūtra by Dharmakṣema. Finished in 421, it became one of the most influential religious texts in East Asia. Tibetan translations appeared later (P. 788, D. 120), but this scripture had relatively little impact in Tibet.

Echoing and at one point even citing the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* affirms that the Buddha's death or *parinirvāṇa* did not mean his destruction, but occurred to illustrate that the true body of a buddha (*buddhakāya*) is uncreated (*asaṃskṛta*) and eternal, and to provide relics for veneration. Arguing against the Yogācāra categorization of SENTIENT BEINGS by their differing spiritual potentials, the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* asserts that all sentient beings equally possess the same potential for buddhahood. Rendered in Chinese as *buddha-nature*, this far-reaching doctrine implies that the

core nature of each individual is that of a buddha, but mental afflictions (*kleśa*) prevent most from realizing it.

Although earlier Buddhist literature described sentient beings as plagued by ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), DUḤKHA (SUFFERING), nonself, and impurity, in this sūtra, buddha, NIRVĀṆA, and by extension the buddha-nature within everyone are all characterized by permanence, joy, self, and purity. Despite our experience, there is thus another “great self” within us, and the sūtra even uses the term *true ātman*.

East Asian Buddhism was also profoundly affected by the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra*'s advocacy of vegetarianism and its overt inclusion of the ICCHANTIKA in its doctrine of universal salvation. *Ichchantika* are individuals devoid of faith or morality, some of whom even slander the dharma. Like most other sūtras, the first part of the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* excludes them, but beginning with chapter nine, the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra* repeatedly asserts that *icchantika* also have the buddha-nature.

### Bibliography

- de Jong, J. W. “Review of the Mahāyāna Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra Translated by Kosho Yamamoto.” *Eastern Buddhist*, Vol. 9 (new series), no. 2 (1976): 134–136.
- Matsuda Kazunobu. “New Sanskrit Fragments of the Mahāyāna Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra in the Stein/Hoernle Collection: A Preliminary Report.” *Eastern Buddhist*, Vol. 20 (new series), no. 2 (1987): 105–114.
- Ming-Wood, Liu. “The Doctrine of Buddha-Nature in the Mahāyāna Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* (Wisconsin), Vol. 5 (1982): 63–94.
- Yamamoto Kosho, trans. *The Mahāyāna Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra: A Complete Translation from the Chinese Classical Language in 3 volumes*. Oyama, Japan: Karinbunko, 1973.

MARK L. BLUM

---

**NO-SELF.** See *Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self)*

---

### NUNS

Buddhist nuns, like nuns and MONKS of other religious orders, renounce sexual activity, marriage, and household life. As renunciants, they voluntarily make a commitment to abide by a given number of PRECEPTS, or rules of conduct. To regulate their involvement with the affairs of the world, they agree to accept a subsis-

tence standard of food, shelter, clothing, and medicine. The lay community provides these requisites; in return, the nuns provide teachings, advice, and a model of discipline and contentment.

To leave the household life (*pravrajya*) and become a member of the Buddhist order (SAṄGHA), a woman must first obtain the permission of her parents, husband, or guardian. There are four stages in the process of becoming a fully ordained nun (Sanskrit, *bhikṣuṇī*; Pāli, *bhikkhuni*). The first three stages of the process are administered by, and at the discretion of, the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha. Candidates first receive the ten precepts of a *śrāmaṇerikā* (novice), then the precepts of a *śikṣamāṇā* (probationary nun), and finally the precepts of a *bhikṣuṇī* (fully ordained nun). The purpose of the two-year probationary period as a *śikṣamāṇā*, a stage that is not required for monks, is twofold. First, it ensures that candidates for *bhikṣuṇī* ordination are not pregnant and, second, it allows time to provide the candidates with thorough training. The final stage in the process of becoming a fully ordained nun involves receiving the *bhikṣuṇī* precepts for a second time from the Bhikṣu Saṅgha. It is unclear whether this second *bhikṣuṇī* ordination indicates that bhikṣus have the final authority for *bhikṣuṇī* ordinations or whether they simply confirm the ordination the candidates have already received from the *bhikṣuṇīs*.

### Precepts and practice

*Bhikṣuṇīs* and those in training abide by the precepts of the *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa-sūtra*. The first five categories of the precepts are common to both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*. Arranged according to the seriousness of the transgression, they are: (1) *pārājika* (defeats that entail expulsion from the saṅgha); (2) *saṅghāvaśeṣa* (remainders that entail suspension); (3) *niḥsargikā-pātayantikā* (abandoning downfalls that entail forfeiture); (4) *pātayantika* (propelling downfalls or lapses); and (5) *śaikṣā* (faults or misdeeds). An additional category, the *pratideśanīya* (offenses requiring confession), prohibits *bhikṣuṇīs* from begging for specific foods, unless they are ill. There are also seven *adhikaraṇa-śamatha* (methods of resolving disputes) for both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*.

In all schools of VINAYA (monastic discipline), there are considerably more precepts for *bhikṣuṇīs* than for bhikṣus. Because the Bhikṣu Saṅgha was already quite well organized by the time the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha was established some years later, the *bhikṣuṇīs* were expected to follow most of the bhikṣu precepts. In addi-

tion, approximately one hundred precepts were formulated on the basis of wrongdoings that occurred among the nuns. The four *pārājikas*, which are common to both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*, are to refrain from: (1) sexual intercourse, (2) taking what is not given, (3) taking a human life, and (4) telling lies, especially about one's spiritual attainments. There are four additional *pārājikas* that *bhikṣuṇīs* are required to refrain from: (5) bodily contact with a lustful man; (6) arranging to meet a man with amorous intentions; (7) concealing a *pārājika* of another *bhikṣuṇī*; and (8) obeying a bhikṣu who has been expelled from the saṅgha. (For a bhikṣu, to touch a woman, sit in a secluded place with a woman, or follow an expelled bhikṣu is an offense in the next suspension category.) In the second category of precepts, *saṅghāvaśeṣa*, there are seventeen for *bhikṣuṇīs* in the DHARMAGUPTAKA and THERAVĀDA schools and twenty in the Mūlasarvāstivāda. The *saṅghāvaśeṣas* in the Dharmagupta school prohibit *bhikṣuṇīs* from such actions as matchmaking, baselessly accusing someone of a *pārājika*, making an accusation against a layperson, knowingly ordaining a thief, absolving a suspended *bhikṣuṇī* without permission, traveling alone, refusing to accept admonishments, creating a schism in the saṅgha, and so on.

*Bhikṣuṇīs*, like bhikṣus, are required to hold three primary ritual observances: (1) *poṣadha*, the bimonthly recitation of the PRĀTIMOKṢA; (2) *pravāraṇā*, the invitation at the end of the rains-retreat (*vārṣa*); and (3) *kaṭhina*, the distribution of robes that concludes the rains-retreat. Traditionally, *bhikṣuṇīs* primarily devoted themselves to teaching, meditating, and other means of mental cultivation toward the goal of liberation. In modern times, they have also become active in translating, publishing, and a wide variety of other social welfare activities.

### The lineage of full ordination for women

According to Buddhist accounts, the order of Buddhist nuns began five or six years after the order of monks when MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ, Buddha Śākyamuni's maternal aunt and foster mother, requested admission to the saṅgha. After the Buddha refused her request three times, she and a contingent of five hundred noblewomen shaved their heads, donned mendicants' robes, and walked barefooted to Vaiśālī to demonstrate their determination. When the Buddha's attendant ĀNANDA pressed their case and asked whether women were equally capable of achieving the fruits of the dharma, the Buddha confirmed that they were. He consequently granted Mahāprajāpatī's request to join

the order, purportedly on the condition that she agree to accept eight special rules (*gurudharma*): (1) a *bhikṣuṇī* ordained even one hundred years must rise and pay respect to a bhikṣu even if he was ordained that very day; (2) *bhikṣuṇīs* must not hold their rains-retreat in a place where there is no bhikṣu; (3) *bhikṣuṇīs* must request instruction from the bhikṣus twice each month; (4) at the conclusion of the rains-retreat, *bhikṣuṇīs* must declare the faults they have seen, heard, and suspected before the order of bhikṣus; (5) suspended *bhikṣuṇīs* must be reinstated before a quorum of twenty bhikṣus and twenty *bhikṣuṇīs*; (6) the ordination of *bhikṣuṇīs* must be conducted by both orders (first by ten *bhikṣuṇīs* and then by ten bhikṣus); (7) *bhikṣuṇīs* must not revile bhikṣus; and (8) *bhikṣuṇīs* must not admonish bhikṣus, although bhikṣus may admonish *bhikṣuṇīs*. Although it is unlikely that these eight rules were actually imposed by the Buddha, they are cited as the source of the unequal status of nuns and monks in Buddhist societies.

Accounts indicate that, following Mahāprajāpatī's ordination, thousands of women became nuns. Among these early nuns, many were renowned for their extraordinary attainments: Khemā for wisdom, Dhammadinnā for teaching, Paṭācārā for monastic discipline, Kisā Gautamī for asceticism, Nandā for meditation, Bhaddā for past-life recall, and Uppala-vaṇṇā for supernormal powers. During the Buddha's time, many nuns were said to have achieved the fruits of practice, including the state of an ARHAT, or liberation. Examples of their songs of realization are included in the *Therīgāthā* (*Verses of the Bhikṣuṇī Elders*).

There is evidence that the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha continued to exist in India until about the tenth century, though in dwindling numbers and with less support than the order of monks. According to the Sinhalese chronicle *Dīpavaṃsa*, the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha in Sri Lanka was established in the fourth century B.C.E. when Saṅghamittā, daughter of King AŚOKA, traveled from India especially to transmit the *bhikṣuṇī* precepts to Queen Anulā and hundreds of Sinhalese women. Around the eleventh century, the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha died out in Sri Lanka due to droughts and the Chola invasions from India. Before that time, however, in the fifth century C.E., the *bhikṣuṇī* lineage was transmitted from Sri Lanka to China. Sri Lankan *bhikṣuṇīs* headed by a *bhikṣuṇī* named Devasarā traveled in two delegations to Nanjing, where they administered the ordination to Jingjian and several hundred other Chinese nuns. From China, the *bhikṣuṇī* lineage was gradually



Nuns of Jamyang Choling Institute, Dharamsala, India. Courtesy of Karma Lekshe Tsomo. Reproduced by permission.

transmitted to Korea, Vietnam, and Taiwan, where it still thrives.

### Buddhist nuns in contemporary society

In 2003 there were an estimated 125,000 Buddhist nuns, including at least 35,000 *bhikṣuṇīs*. Nuns in China, Korea, Taiwan, and Vietnam follow the Dharmagupta lineage school of vinaya, which is the only *bhikṣuṇī* lineage in existence today. In these traditions, a woman who wishes to become a nun first requests the rite of leaving home (*pravrajya*), shaves her head, dons the robes, and receives the ten precepts of a *śrāmaṇerikā* (novice nun). After a period of training, a *śrāmaṇerikā* who is at least twenty years old may then request *bhikṣuṇī* ordination. The two-year probationary period as a *śikṣamāṇā* is currently observed only in stricter monasteries. According to the vinaya, nuns are required to receive their novice ordination and monastic training under the guidance of qualified *bhikṣuṇī* masters; in Taiwan, however, it is not uncommon for women to receive ordination and train under *bhikṣu* masters. Ideally, *bhikṣuṇī* ordination is conducted by a full quorum of ten *bhikṣuṇīs* and ten *bhikṣus*, in rites supervised in the morning by the *bhikṣuṇīs* and in the afternoon of the same day by the *bhikṣus*. Occasion-

ally, *bhikṣuṇī* ordinations are conducted by high-ranking *bhikṣus* without the formal participation of *bhikṣuṇī* ordination masters and such ordinations are accepted as legitimate, if not technically correct.

As far as is known, the *Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha* was never officially established in Cambodia, Japan, Laos, Mongolia, Thailand, or Tibet. Although there is evidence to document that *bhikṣuṇīs* existed in earlier times in Myanmar, Nepal, and Sri Lanka, these orders unfortunately died out long ago. In countries where *bhikṣuṇī* ordination is not currently available, nuns do not have the same status, nor do they receive the same patronage or access to religious education as monks. In recent years, inspired by an international Buddhist women's movement, conditions for nuns in all countries have begun to improve markedly.

In the Theravāda countries of Cambodia, Laos, Myanmar, Sri Lanka, and Thailand, and in Theravāda communities in Bangladesh, Indonesia, and Nepal, nuns receive eight, nine, or ten precepts. These nuns are celibate, shave their heads, take no solid food after noon, and generally maintain the lifestyle of a *bhikṣuṇī*, but are not regarded as members of the saṅgha. Nuns in Cambodia, Laos, and Thailand wear white robes; in

Cambodia they are known as *donchee*, in Laos as *maikao*, and in Thailand as *maechee*. Nuns in Myanmar wear pink robes with an orange underskirt and brown shawl over the left shoulder, and are known as *tila shin* (possessors of morality). Nuns in Sri Lanka wear orange or brown robes, and are known as *dasasī-lāmātā* (ten-precept mothers). In these traditions, emphasis is placed on monastic discipline, meditation practice, and dissemination of the Buddha's teachings.

Recently, the standards of Buddhist education among Theravāda nuns have improved considerably and the contributions that nuns have made and continue to make to society are being more widely recognized. Interest in achieving equal opportunities for full ordination for women has increased, both among nuns and laypeople. In Sri Lanka, an estimated four hundred nuns have become *bhikṣuṇīs* since 1988, first by attending ordinations held in Los Angeles, Sārnāth, and BODH GAYĀ, and more recently in ordinations held in Sri Lanka itself. Many nuns in Theravāda countries hesitate to press for *bhikṣuṇī* ordination for two primary reasons. First, *bhikṣuṇīs* are prohibited from handling money and are expected to maintain themselves by a daily alms round. Thus, their survival literally depends on receiving sufficient support from the lay community. Judging by the history of nuns in India and Sri Lanka, where the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha may have died out due, in part, to famine, sufficient support for nuns is never certain. Second, according to the stipulations of the eight *gurudharmas*, *bhikṣuṇīs* are subordinate to the bhikṣus in a number of ways. Some nuns have very legitimate fears that the independence nuns presently enjoy may be compromised if the *bhikṣuṇīs* are beholden to, or come under the domination of, the Bhikṣu Saṅgha.

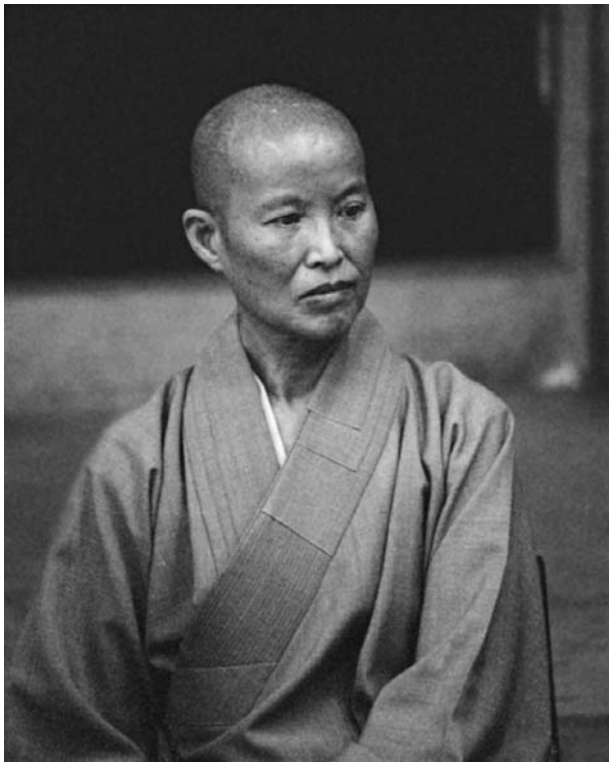
In Japan, nuns receive the BODHISATTVA precepts of the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA), which are similar to the ten precepts of a *śrāmaṇerikā*, and they follow a celibate monastic lifestyle. In 590 C.E., three nuns named Zenshin-in, Zenzo-ni, and Kenzen-ni traveled from Japan to the Paekche kingdom of Korea, where they received the *śrāmaṇerikā*, *śikṣamāṇā*, and *bhikṣuṇī* ordinations successively. These nuns returned to Japan, but were unable to conduct a *bhikṣuṇī* ordination there because they did not constitute the required minimum of five *bhikṣuṇī* precept masters. When the Tiantai monk GANJIN (Jianzhen) came to Japan in 754 C.E., three *bhikṣuṇīs* accompanied him, but they were also too few in number to conduct a *bhikṣuṇī* ordination. Thus, the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha was never established in Japan. Nev-

ertheless, numerous nunneries and several thousand nuns exist throughout Japan today, primarily in the Jōdo, Tendai, Shingon, Nichiren, Sōtō, and Rinzaï Zen schools. Together with several million devoted laywomen, they play essential roles in preserving and disseminating Japanese Buddhist culture.

In Tibet and, more recently, in Mongolia, nuns take thirty-six precepts, which are a detailed enumeration of the ten precepts of a *śrāmaṇerikā*. Although there is mention of *bhikṣuṇīs* in Tibetan historical records, there is no evidence that a Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha was ever established in Tibet. In the Tibetan tradition, which is followed by nuns throughout the Tibetan cultural region, nuns wear robes identical to those of the monks. These nuns are recognized as members of the saṅgha but, as novices, they do not generally receive the same education, esteem, or material support as do monks. Nuns and devoted laywomen nevertheless receive the bodhisattva precepts, receive teachings on both the sūtras and tantras, and engage in a variety of practices, including prostrations, meditation, MAṆḌALA offerings, and MANTRA recitation.

Conditions for study and practice seem to be most conducive for nuns in those traditions that have living *bhikṣuṇī* lineages. In Korea, the training for a prospective *bhikṣuṇī* lasts up to six years, and places a high value on sūtra studies, vinaya studies, and meditation. The monastic year is divided into four seasons. Summer and winter are spent in intensive meditation and retreat; spring and autumn are spent cultivating, harvesting, and preparing the food needed during the meditation seasons, as well as performing other tasks required to maintain the monastery. Educational standards among Korean nuns have improved dramatically in recent decades and nuns are increasingly taking leading roles in Buddhist education, youth activities, and other social welfare programs.

Nuns are also prominent in the resurgence of Buddhism that is currently taking place in Taiwan. Full ordination and a wide range of educational opportunities are available to Taiwanese nuns, including Buddhist studies programs in several hundred colleges, institutes, and universities. Nuns in Taiwan are active in social service activities, health care, and the arts. In addition to founding and directing numerous temples and institutions for Buddhist education and training, nuns have founded and maintain libraries, museums, orphanages, medical centers, care homes, and women's shelters. Although nuns substantially outnumber monks in Taiwan, monks generally hold the



Master Cheng Yen (Zhengyan), Buddhist nun and founder of the Tz'u-chi (Compassionate Relief) Society, the largest charity in Taiwan, 1993. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

leadership positions in Buddhist organizations. Nevertheless, nuns in Taiwan are widely respected for the exemplary work they do to propagate Buddhism and benefit society.

The unequal status of nuns in Buddhism has become a topic of concern in recent years, especially as Buddhist teachings gain popularity in Western countries and encounter modern ideals of GENDER equality. Although only a few hundred Western women have become Buddhist nuns so far, the subordinate status of women in Buddhist societies has stimulated efforts to improve conditions for women within the various Buddhist traditions by providing more equitable opportunities for religious education, ordination, and meditation training. With improved facilities, nuns will undoubtedly assume more positions of spiritual and institutional leadership in the years to come. As nuns gain greater representation within the various Buddhist traditions, a reevaluation and restructuring of hierarchically ordered institutions is inevitable.

See also: Ascetic Practices; Monasticism; Women

## Bibliography

- Arai, Paula. *Women Living Zen: Japanese Sōtō Buddhist Nuns*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Barnes, Nancy Schuster. "Buddhist Women and the Nuns' Order in Asia." In *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*, ed. Christopher S. Queen and Sallie B. King. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Bartholomeusz, Tessa. "The Female Mendicant in Buddhist Sri Lanka." In *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Bartholomeusz, Tessa. *Women under the Bō Tree: Buddhist Nuns in Sri Lanka*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Blackstone, Kathryn R. *Women in the Footsteps of the Buddha: Struggle for Liberation in the Therīgāthā*. Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 1998.
- Dresser, Marianne, ed. *Buddhist Women on the Edge: Contemporary Perspectives from the Western Frontier*. Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 1996.
- Falk, Nancy. "The Case of the Vanishing Nuns: The Fruits of Ambivalence in Ancient Indian Buddhism." In *Unspoken Worlds: Women's Religious Lives in Non-Western Cultures*, ed. Nancy Falk and Rita Gross. San Francisco: Harper, 1979.
- Findly, Ellison Banks, ed. *Women's Buddhism, Buddhism's Women: Tradition, Revision, Renewal*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.
- Grimshaw, Anna. *Servants of the Buddha: Winter in a Himalayan Convent*. Cleveland, OH: Pilgrim Press, 1994.
- Gross, Rita M. *Buddhism after Patriarchy: A Feminist History, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1993.
- Havnevik, Hanna. *Tibetan Buddhist Nuns*. Oslo: Norwegian University Press, 1990.
- Hirakawa, Akira. *Monastic Discipline for the Buddhist Nuns: An English Translation of the Chinese Text of the Mahāsāṃghika-Bhikṣuṇī-Vinaya*. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1982.
- Kabilsingh, Chatsumarn. *Thai Women in Buddhism*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax Press, 1991.
- Murcott, Susan. *The First Buddhist Women: Translations and Commentaries on the Therīgāthā*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax Press, 1991.
- Norman, K. R., trans. *The Elders' Verses II: Therīgāthā*. London: Luzac, 1966.
- Rhys-Davids, Caroline Augusta Foley, and Norman, K. R. *Poems of Early Buddhist Nuns (Therīgāthā)*. Oxford: Pali Text Society, 1989.
- Tsai, Kathryn Ann. *Lives of the Nuns: Biographies of Chinese Buddhist Nuns from the Fourth to Sixth Centuries*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.

- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe. *Sisters in Solitude: Two Traditions of Buddhist Monastic Ethics for Women, a Comparative Analysis of the Dharmagupta and Mūlasarvāstivāda Bhikṣuṇī Prātimokṣa Sūtras*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe, ed. *Buddhist Women across Cultures: Realizations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe, ed. *Innovative Women in Buddhism: Swimming against the Stream*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 2000.
- Watkins, Joanne C. *Spirited Women: Gender, Religion, and Cultural Identity in the Nepal Himalaya*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1996.
- Willis, Janice Dean. *Feminine Ground: Essays on Women and Tibet*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1989.

KARMA LEKSHE TSOMO

---

NYINGMA. See Rnying ma



*This page intentionally left blank*



OBON. *See* Ghost Festival

## OM MAṆI PADME HŪṂ

Om maṇi padme hūṃ is the MANTRA of the bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara. In recitation, rotation, and writing, the six-syllable mantra, as it is popularly known, is deeply embedded in daily life throughout the Tibetan cultural sphere. It is an invocation to the bodhisattva in the guise of Maṇipadma (the final e is a vocative case ending to the feminine noun). It might therefore be rendered “Om O [thou who] hast a jewel and lotus Hūṃ.” This interpretation, though familiar to Tibetan exegetes since at least the ninth century, has largely eluded Westerners, who have commonly misconstrued its meaning as some variation of “Hail to the jewel in the lotus.”

While multiple Avalokiteśvara DHĀRAṆĪ and mantra were in circulation by the third century C.E., the six-syllable mantra seems to have first appeared in the *Kāraṇḍavyūha-sūtra*. This text, composed as early as the fifth century C.E., offers extensive description of the mantra’s power, chief among them rebirth in the pure realms contained within the hair pores of Avalokiteśvara. According to legend, a copy of the *Kāraṇḍavyūha-sūtra*—or alternatively simply the six syllables contained in a jeweled casket (*kāraṇḍa* means casket)—fell out of the sky onto the roof of the semi-historical sixth-century Tibetan king Lha tho tho ri. The *sūtra* was translated some time before 812, as it is included in the Ldan dkar ma catalogue of imperial-

period translations published in that year. Although comparable mantras associated with Avalokiteśvara are found in several DUNHUANG texts, usage of the six-syllable mantra appears to have gained wide popularity only in the eleventh century.

Tibetans traditionally interpret the mantra and its six syllables in terms of numerical correspondences, such as to the six realms of existence. Oral recitations of the mantra, commonly counted on prayer beads, are said to prevent REBIRTH in the six realms and purify even the gravest of sins. Recitation is often supplemented by simultaneous spinning of the well-known prayer wheel (*maṇi ’khor lo*, *chos ’khor lo*, or *lag ’khor*). This is a device that allows the practitioner to activate the mantra’s efficacy through spinning the wheel. According to tradition a single revolution produces an amount of merit equal to reading all of the Buddha’s discourses; ten revolutions purify an amount of sin equal to Mount Meru, and so forth. The mantra is also written, engraved, and painted on rocks, its physical presence understood to offer protection to those nearby.

Western travelers to Tibet have been fascinated by the prevalence of the mantra since the thirteenth century, when the Franciscan missionary William of Rubruck observed the continual chanting of *on maṇi baccam*, as he recorded it. The mantra, and its ubiquitous mistranslation, Jewel in the Lotus, has over the centuries worked its way into the Western fascination with all things Eastern, engendering any number of mystical (including sexual) interpretations, and seeping into various Western countercultural movements, spiritual and otherwise.



A trail of “maṇi” stones bearing sacred inscriptions along a Buddhist pilgrimage route in Kashmir in the Himalayas. © Hulton Archive by Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

See also: Heart Sūtra

### Bibliography

- Imaeda, Yoshro. “Note préliminaire sure la formule *Om maṇipadme hūṃ* dans les manuscrits tibétains de Touen-houang.” In *Contributions aux études sur Touen-houang*, ed. Michel Soympié. Geneva, Switzerland: Librairie Droz, 1979.
- Kyabje Yonzin Trijang Dorje Chang Losang Yeshe Tenzin Gyatso Pal Zangpo. “The Significance of the Six Syllable Mantra *OM MA NI PAD ME HUM*.” *Tibet Journal* 7, no. 4 (1982): 3–10.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *Prisoners of Shangri-La: Tibetan Buddhism and the West*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.
- Martin, Dan. “On the Origin and Significance of the Prayer Wheel, According to Two Nineteenth-Century Tibetan Literary Sources.” *Journal of the Tibet Society* 7 (1987): 13–29.
- Studholme, Alexander. *The Origins of Om Maṇipadme Hūṃ: A Study of Kāraṇḍavyūha Sūtra*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2002.

Verhagen, P. C. “The Mantra ‘*Om maṇi-padme hūṃ*’ in an Early Tibetan Grammatical Treatise.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 13, no. 2 (1990): 133–138.

ALEXANDER GARDNER

## ORDINATION

Ordination, the ceremony by which men and women accept the more than two hundred rules of the Buddhist VINAYA and are thus defined as clerics, has been immensely important throughout the entire Buddhist tradition, even as its definitions, functions, and salience have differed over time and space. Ordination ceremonies are roughly the same for men and women, except that those for women often include additional requirements that subordinate NUNS to MONKS. The ordination of women was completely halted in the eleventh to the thirteenth centuries in Southeast Asian Buddhism, and recent efforts to introduce the nun’s ordination from China and Taiwan have not yet been widely accepted. In ancient India and medieval Tibet and East Asia, the emergence of MEDITATION and esoteric (tantric) INITIATION lineages has reduced the salience of ordinations. Japanese Buddhism is well known—even infamous throughout the Buddhist world—as the only national tradition to have rejected celibacy and avoidance of intoxicants, a development that has had some impact on modern Korean and Taiwanese Buddhism as well.

In addition to conventional types of ordination, the ceremony was sometimes applied (or, more often, the five PRECEPTS administered) to gods and spirits as Buddhism competed with and amalgamated native religious traditions during its expansion throughout Asia. In Japan from late medieval times on funerals for laypeople often included posthumous ordination, and in modern Southeast Asia the ordination of trees has been used to protect forests from logging. Given the diversity of attitudes and approaches, it is not surprising that modern Western Buddhists have generally interpreted the ordination ritual and the associated vows abstractly, and only a few Western Buddhist have undertaken lifetime maintenance of the full monastic precepts.

### Description of the ordination ceremony

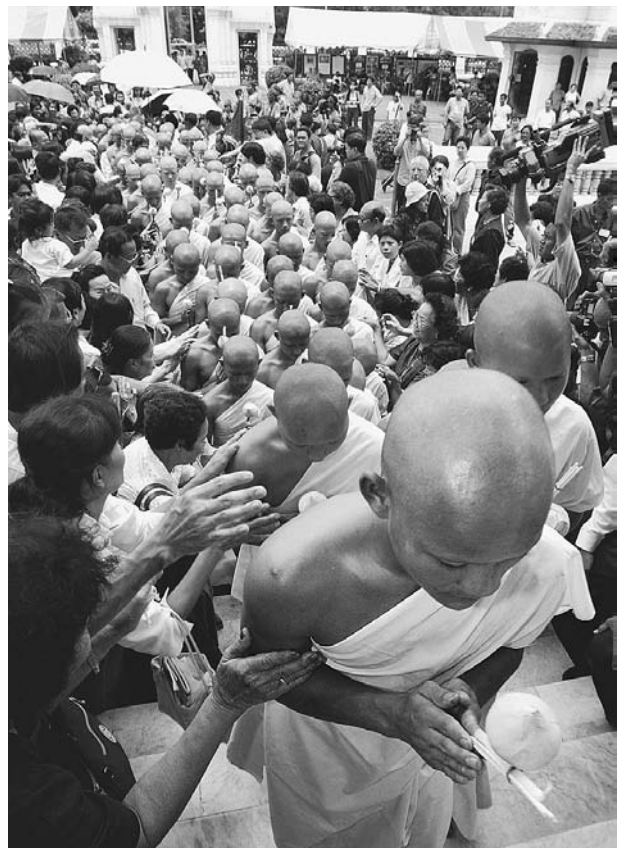
Entrance into the SAṄGHA occurs in two stages, the first being the novice’s ordination involving ten precepts, by which the novice becomes a *śramaṇera* or

*śramaṇerikā*. In Southeast Asia this step may be taken as early as age seven; in East Asia one may not formally become a novice until age nineteen, even though one may have lived within the monastic community from a very young age. Short-term novitiates of a few weeks or months are common in Southeast Asia. Short-term higher ordinations are also common; the term is usually a summer rains-retreat period or longer. There is no particular onus on those who do not go on to full ordination. (The ritual described in this section is based on the unpublished translation by Gregory Schopen of the ordination ritual found in the *MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA*.)

The full or higher ordination (*upasampadā*), by which one becomes a *bhikṣu* or *bhikṣunī*, can occur only at or after age twenty (dated from conception). In the primitive saṅgha there was presumably a generally accepted core of about 150 rules in the monastic code (*PRĀTIMOKṢA*), but the diversification of ordination lineages has led to divergences in many of the minor rules. Hence *THERAVĀDA* monks in Southeast Asia observe 227 rules (*Theravāda* nuns once observed 311), Tibetan monks observe the 258 rules (the nuns 354) of the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya*, and Chinese and Korean monks observe the 250 rules (the nuns 348) of the *Dharmaguptaka-vinaya*. East Asian monks also accept the bodhisattva vows derived from the *FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA)*, a formal part of ordination, and in most Japanese schools these vows have entirely supplanted the *prātimokṣa* rules.

The ordination ceremony must involve all the monks in a given local saṅgha, and no one can enter or leave during the proceedings; usually a separate temporary boundary (*sīma*) is established for the duration of the ceremony. There should be an assembly of ten or more fully ordained monks (or, in border regions, five monks) and a *vinaya* master to serve as preceptor. The ceremony begins with the ordinand paying reverence to the monks, then entreating the preceptor to confer ordination on him. The ordinand then takes possession of his robes, or the cloth for their making, declaring to the preceptor that they are of appropriate material and cut. If the robes have not yet been made, the ordinand declares his intention to wash, cut, dye, and sew them properly from the material provided. The same process occurs for the bowl.

The ordinand then moves out of hearing range but stays within sight so that the officiant can ask the ordinand's private instructor about his appropriateness for ordination. The private instructor then goes over



Buddhist novices from a hill tribe in northern Thailand pray as they walk past their families during an ordination ceremony in Bangkok, 2001. © AFP/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

to the ordinand and, after reminding him not to be embarrassed by the questions, ascertains whether the ordinand is free from any of the impediments to ordination. These include questions about the individual's age, gender, genital completeness, and authorization by his parents (if living), and his identity as other than slave, criminal, eunuch, hermaphrodite, or despoiler of nuns. The questions also confirm that the ordinand has not been a member of another religious group or suffered expulsion from another saṅgha; has not murdered his father, mother, or an *ARHAT*; has not caused a split in the saṅgha or wounded the Buddha; is not a magically created phantom or animal; is not in debt (beyond the ability to pay at point of ordination); is not suffering from any illness (giving a long list); and is someone who is now fully entered into the religious life, including the practice of chastity.

Upon returning to the assembly the private instructor informs them of the ordinand's absence of any obstacles. The candidate is then brought forward and, after reverence to the Buddha and the elders of the community, the private instructor entreats the

assembly three times to confer ordination on him. As a member of the saṅgha in full standing, the officiant then restates this entreaty as a formal resolution to the community. Following this, the same questions placed privately are now posed to the candidate before the entire group, and upon his successful responses the officiant formally moves that the assembly ordain him. The time of this event is measured (using pegs of specified size) on a sundial, so as to determine the new monk's exact seniority.

The ordinand is then made to affirm that he can maintain his asceticism for the rest of his life, including the four supports (*niśraya*) of clothing, food, housing, and medicine. He also confirms that he can maintain celibacy in both mind and body, and avoid stealing, killing, and lying. In the text of the Mūlasarvāstivāda ordination, the injunctions against such errors are lengthy and emphatic, with particular attention on the transgression of claiming false knowledge or attainment of spiritual truths, cosmic realities, meditative states or yogic powers, or achievement of arhatship. The ordinand affirms that he will not revile, offend, chastise, or deride others, even when others do so to him.

After all this, the officiant finally declares that the ordinand has now been properly entered into the religious life by a preceptor, two teachers, the agreement of the saṅgha, and a formal action (the ceremony) involving three inviolable motions. The ceremony does not immediately end with this declaration, but continues with injunctions to the new monk to maintain his training, to treat his preceptor as his father just as the preceptor will treat the monk as son, to respect those senior to him, to strive for the direct realization of Buddhist truths, to learn the monastic rules not covered yet in the bimonthly saṅgha meeting, and to maintain attentiveness with all aspects of the dharma.

### Historical variations in Buddhist ordination

Ordination was used in the early years of Buddhism to define the membership of the saṅgha and induce members to adhere to a uniform religious lifestyle, both differentiating the Buddhist order from other religious groups and inspiring its members with a shared sense of identity as formally accepted descendants of the Buddha. As the Buddhist movement diversified, there developed multiple ordination lineages, called *nikāyas* (literally, segment or division), each with slightly different interpretations of the vinaya regulations. Since these *nikāyas* also predom-

inated in different geographical areas and developed sometimes very different sets of ABHIDHARMA philosophical texts, they functioned as separate MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS.

There is no evidence for any variant approach to ordination in the early MAHĀYĀNA vocation, but with the emergence of master–student initiation lineages in the Kashmiri meditation tradition (fourth century C.E. and thereafter) and the Indian tradition of TANTRA (ca. sixth century C.E. and thereafter), the relative significance of ordination declined somewhat. The Tibetan saṅgha maintains the use of ordination as an important threshold of entry into the practice of Buddhism, but greater emphasis is placed on tantric initiation lineages and the identification of *tulkus* (reincarnated sages). In an analogous fashion, local monastery relationships and both CHAN SCHOOL and esoteric (tantric) initiation lineages changed the religious salience of ordination in East Asia. More drastic changes occurred in modern Japan, where the Buddhist clergy have redefined ordination as a more lofty but less demanding dedication to Mahāyāna ideals not requiring maintenance of the rules of celibacy.

In the early years of Buddhism in each of the cultural realms of East Asia (China, Korea, Japan, and Vietnam), there was great emphasis on proper training in Buddhist vinaya (monastic regulations) and the correct ordination of monks and nuns. DAO'AN (312–385) devised a set of monastic rules himself, but was happy that it could be displaced by portions of the *Sarvāstivāda-vinaya* introduced toward the end of his life. The entire *Four Part Vinaya* (*Sifen lü*) of the Dharmaguptaka school, which was to become the most widely used version in China, was translated in 414 by Buddhayaśas and Zhu Fonian; complete vinayas of four other mainstream Buddhist schools were translated during the next decade or so. The insights of the pilgrim and translator XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) on contemporary Indian practices upon his return to China in 649, as well as his suggestion that all Chinese monks needed to be ordained anew, caused substantial uneasiness among his peers. This was one of the motivations behind an ordination platform movement initiated by the great historian and vinaya specialist DAOXUAN (596–667), who in the very last year of his life had visions of the Buddha's ordination platform at Jetavana. Although entirely contrary to Indian historical realities, the *sīma* boundary of the Indian ordination was reinterpreted as a Chinese-style raised platform. Daoxuan's example inspired other Chinese

monks to build platforms and confer ordinations on the surface of what was effectively a caitya or monumental embodiment of the Buddha. A famous account of just such an ordination, or at least the sermons associated with it, is found in the PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING). After a major rebellion in China in 755, both government and rebels sponsored the ordination of Buddhist monks for fund-raising purposes; each ordinand paid a hefty fee but then received a lifetime exemption from taxation. In the Song dynasty (960–1279) blank ordination certificates were sometimes traded for financial speculation, but the government eventually eradicated all such abuses. It is generally held that government control of ordination negatively influenced the quality and independence of the Chinese saṅgha.

Several developments contributed to a change in the status and function of ordination in Chinese Buddhism. Based on the voluminous vinaya writings of Daoxuan, the Chinese tradition consolidated on the use of the Dharmaguptaka school's *Four Part Vinaya*. It was only during the Song dynasty, though, that the Chinese vinaya tradition really became formalized as an independent "school," and even here this word denotes a social reality very different from the *nikāyas* of Indian Buddhism. That is, a handful of major "public monasteries" in China were designated as vinaya centers, meaning that they were the ones where most but not all sophisticated study of the vinaya tradition occurred, and where all Chinese monks and nuns were ordained. The official ordination process became a large-scale affair involving not only the ceremony of vow-taking and induction itself, but a lengthy period of preliminary training in liturgy (recitation of scriptures, use of bells, drums, and other ritual implements, etc.) and deportment (wearing of robes, monastic etiquette, etc.). All Chinese monks and nuns were, and still are, united by their experience of this rite of passage, but the scale and formality of the event came to mean a reduced significance in contrast with other monastic relationships. That is, monks and nuns are far more likely to identify with the "disciple lineages" based on the local monasteries and teachers where they initially trained in Buddhism, to which they often returned after the weeks-long ordination ritual. In addition, elite segments of the monastic population also identify more profoundly with Chan and MIJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL initiation lineages. The use of *moxa* or incense to burn marks on the heads of Chinese ordinands seems to have begun around the sixteenth century.

There are various accounts, if only from later sources, describing the efforts taken by fourth- to fifth-century Korean Buddhists to establish proper vinaya practices there. Missionaries from Koguryō (northern Korea) and Paekche (southwestern Korea) were the earliest ordained monks in Japan. The earliest ordained Japanese Buddhists were women sent to Paekche in the late sixth century, the choice of women perhaps deriving from their function as priestesses or shamans (*miko*) in ancient Japanese society. The quest for orthodox vinaya regulations and qualified ordination masters preoccupied early Japanese Buddhists as much as it had their Chinese and Korean counterparts in earlier centuries, although here the source of canonical praxis was China rather than India. A great advance occurred with the arrival of the vinaya specialist Jianzhen (Japanese, GANJIN; 688–763) in Japan in 753. He had been frustrated many times in his efforts to reach Japan, becoming blind in the process. Although the Japanese government installed him in a magnificent monastery (Tōshōdaiji, still one of the most beautiful sites in Nara) and had him lead a spectacular ordination ceremony at a platform on the grounds of Tōdaiji, the "Great Eastern Monastery" that housed the Daibutsu or Great Buddha, Ganjin was frustrated by the Japanese refusal to consider ordination as much more than an elaborate ritual.

This tendency to disregard the 250 regulations of the *Four Part Vinaya* was carried even further by SAICHŌ (767–822), who argued that the government should allow his newly founded Tendai school to ordain monks without reference to the vinaya, which Saichō rejected as being "hīnayāna." Saichō's goal was to maintain control over the training of his own students, who frequently did not return from their ordinations in Nara; his wishes were granted just after his death, and the subsequent growth of Mount Hiei and the Tendai school as a whole meant that fewer and fewer Japanese clergy took vows based on the vinaya. In the early thirteenth century the Pure Land priest SHINRAN (1173–1262), who like many important Kamakura-period figures had trained for a period at Mount Hiei, declared himself to be "neither priest nor layperson" and publicly married. Although there was a short-lived movement to revitalize Buddhism through strict maintenance of the precepts at about the same time, marriage eventually became the norm for priests in Shinran's True Pure Land school (Jōdo shinshū). Although many Japanese priests in other schools maintained widely recognized but technically illicit marriage relationships throughout the late medieval

period, it was only with the government's disestablishment of Buddhism in 1872 that a broad spectrum of the Japanese clergy renounced celibacy.

See also: **Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan; Monasticism**

### Bibliography

- Bunnag, Jane. *Buddhist Monk, Buddhist Layman: A Study of Urban Monastic Organization in Central Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1973.
- Coleman, Mary T. *Monastic: An Ordained Tibetan Buddhist Speaks on Behalf of Full Ordination for Women*. Los Angeles and Charlottesville, VA: Dharma Institute, 1995.
- Dickson, J. F. "The Admission and Ordination Ceremonies." In *Buddhism in Translations*, by Henry Clarke Warren. New York: Atheneum, 1963 (1896). Reprinted from *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1874): 1–16.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School*. Berkeley: Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, University of California at Berkeley, 1984.
- Gutschow, Kim. "What Makes a Nun? Apprenticeship and Ritual Passage in Zanskar, North India." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 24, no. 2 (2001): 187–215.
- Heirman, Ann. *Rules for Nuns According to the Dharmaguptakavinaya: The Discipline in Four Parts*. New Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 2002.
- Holt, John. *Discipline: The Canonical Buddhism of the Vinayapitaka*. New Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1981.
- Horner, Isaline Blew. *Women under Primitive Buddhism: Laywomen and Almswomen*. London: Routledge, 1930.
- Kieffer-Puelz, Petra. "Die buddhistische Gemeinde." In *Der Buddhismus I. Der indische Buddhismus und seine Verzweigungen*, ed. Heinz Bechert et al. Stuttgart: Kohlhammer, 2000.
- Lévy, Paul. *Buddhism: A "Mystery Religion"?* London: School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, 1957.
- Mendelson, E. Michael. "Initiation and the Paradox of Power: A Sociological Approach." In *Initiation: Contributions to the Theme of the Study-Conference of the International Association for the History of Religions Held at Strasburg, September 17th to 22nd 1964*, ed. C. J. Bleeker. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1965.
- Olivelle, Patrick. *The Origin and Early Development of Buddhist Monachism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Gunasena, 1974.
- Sangharakshita. *Forty-Three Years Ago: Reflections on My Bhikkhu Ordination, on the Occasion of the Twenty-Fifth Anniversary of the Western Buddhist Order*. Glasgow, Scotland: Windhorse Publications, 1996.
- Seneviratne, H. L. "L'ordination bouddhique à Ceylan." *Social Compass* 20 (1973): 251–56.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *Buddhism and the Spirit Cults in North-East Thailand*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1970.
- Thanissaro Bhikku, trans. *The Buddhist Monastic Code: The Patimokkha Training Rules*, 2 vols. Valley Center, CA: Metta Forest Monastery, 1994.
- Tiyanavich, Kamala. *Forest Recollections: Wandering Monks in Twentieth-Century Thailand*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe, ed. *Sisters in Solitude: Two Traditions of Buddhist Monastic Ethics for Women—A Comparative Analysis of the Chinese Dharmagupta and the Tibetan Mūlasarvāstivāda Bhikṣuṇī*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Wachirayanawarorot. *Ordination Procedure*. Bangkok, Thailand: Mahamakut Rajavidyalaya [Mahamakut Educational Council], 1973.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.
- Wijayaratna, Mohan. *Buddhist Monastic Life According to the Texts of the Theravāda Tradition*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1990.
- Wijayaratna, Mohan. *Les moniales bouddhistes: naissance et développement du monachisme féminin*. Paris: Cerf, 1991.
- Yen Kiat, Bhikku. *Mahayana Vinaya*. Bangkok, Thailand: Wat Bhoman Khunnarama, 1960.

JOHN R. MCRAE

---

## ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU)

The doctrine of original enlightenment (Japanese, *hongaku*) dominated Tendai Buddhism from roughly the eleventh through the early seventeenth centuries and profoundly influenced medieval Japanese religion and culture. This doctrine holds that enlightenment or the ideal state is neither a goal to be achieved nor a potential to be realized but the real status of all things. Not only human beings but ants and crickets, even grasses and trees, manifest innate buddhahood just as they are. Seen in its true aspect, every aspect of daily life—eating, sleeping, even one's deluded thoughts—is the Buddha's conduct.

Especially since the latter part of the twentieth century, considerable controversy has arisen over the cultural significance and ethical implications of this doctrine. Some scholars see in original enlightenment thought a timeless Japanese spirituality that affirms nature and accommodates phenomenal realities. Others

see it as a dangerous antinomianism that undermines both religious discipline and moral standards. Beginning around the 1980s an intellectual movement known as CRITICAL BUDDHISM (HIHAN BUKKYŌ) has denounced original enlightenment thought as an authoritarian ideology that, by sacralizing all things just as they are, in effect bolsters the status quo and legitimates social injustice. Such sweeping polemical claims, however, have tended to inflate the term *original enlightenment* beyond its usefulness as an analytic category and to ignore its specific historical context within medieval Tendai.

### Terms and texts

No scholarly consensus exists as to the best way to translate the word *hongaku*. In addition to “original enlightenment,” the expressions “original awakening,” “innate awakening,” “primordial enlightenment,” and others are also used (for the pros and cons of various translations, see Jacqueline I. Stone, *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*, p. 369, n. 1). The term *original enlightenment* has its locus classicus in the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN), attributed to the Indian master AŚVAGHOŚA (ca. 100 C.E.), but was probably composed in China around the sixth century. There, *original enlightenment* (Chinese, *benjue*; Japanese, *hongaku*) refers to the potential for enlightenment even in deluded persons, and forms a triad with the terms *nonenlightenment* (*bujue*, *fukaku*), the deluded state of those ignorant of that potential, and *acquired enlightenment* (*shijue*, *shikaku*), the actualizing of that potential through Buddhist practice. In medieval Japanese Tendai literature, however, *original enlightenment* no longer denotes merely a potential but indicates the true status of all things just as they are.

Original enlightenment thought as a distinct Tendai intellectual tradition appears to have had its inception around the mid-eleventh century, when *hongaku* teachings began to be passed down from master to disciple in the form of oral transmissions (*kuden*). Eventually, these transmissions were written down in a few sentences on single sheets of paper called *kirikami*, which were in turn compiled to form larger texts, attributed retrospectively to great Tendai masters of the past, such as SAICHŌ (767–822), ENNIN (794–864), or GENSHIN (942–1017). Thus the precise dating of any specific collection, or of the ideas contained in it, is extremely difficult. In the thirteenth through fourteenth centuries, the doctrines of these oral transmission collections began to be systematized; Tendai scholars also

began to produce commentaries on traditional Tiantai texts and on the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) itself, reinterpreting them from a *hongaku* perspective. It is only from about the fourteenth to fifteenth centuries that the dating and authorship of some of this literature can be established with relative certainty.

### Major ideas

Original enlightenment doctrine has been described as a pinnacle in the development of MAHĀYĀNA concepts of nonduality. In particular, it is indebted to the great totalistic visions of the HUAYAN SCHOOL and the TIANTAI SCHOOL, in which all things, being empty of fixed substance, interpenetrate and encompass one another. Another important influence on the development of original enlightenment doctrine was tantric Buddhism, particularly its claim that all phenomena—forms, colors, sounds, and so on—are the activities of a primordial or cosmic Buddha who pervades the universe. The noted scholar Tamura Yoshirō (1921–1989) observed that, in original enlightenment thought, the absolute realm of abstract truth or principle (*ri*) and the conventional realm of concrete actualities (*ji*) are conflated. In other words, there is no reality beneath, behind, or prior to the phenomenal world; the moment-to-moment arising and perishing of all things, just as they are, are valorized absolutely as the expressions of original enlightenment. This idea is commonly expressed by such phrases as “all dharmas are the buddhadharma,” “the defilements are none other than enlightenment,” and “SAṂSĀRA is none other than NIRVĀṆA.”

From this perspective, the buddhas represented in the sūtras, radiating light and endowed with excellent marks, are merely provisional signs to inspire the unenlightened. The “real” buddha is all ordinary beings. Indeed, “he” is not a person at all, whether historical or mythic, but the true aspect of all things. This buddha is said to be “unproduced,” without beginning or end; to “constantly abide,” being always present; and to “transcend august attributes,” having no independent form apart from all phenomena just as they are. This view of the buddha is associated with the “origin teaching” (*honmon*) of the *Lotus Sūtra*, which describes Śākyamuni Buddha as having first achieved awakening at some point in the unimaginably distant past. Reinterpreted from the standpoint of *hongaku* thought, this initial attainment by Śākyamuni in the remote past becomes a metaphor for the beginningless original enlightenment innate in all.



### Practice and enlightenment

This reinterpretation has significant implications for Buddhist practice. According to conventional views, enlightenment is attained as the culmination of a linear process in which the practitioner gradually accumulates merit, extirpates defilements, and eventually reaches awakening. Original enlightenment literature describes this view as the perspective of “acquired enlightenment,” which “proceeds from cause (practice) to effect (enlightenment)”; it is judged to be, at best, an expedient to encourage the ignorant, and at worst, a deluded view. Original enlightenment doctrine reverses this directionality to “proceed from effect to cause.” In other words, practice is seen, not as the cause of an enlightenment still to be attained, but as the expression of an enlightenment already inherent. One could also express this as a shift from a linear to a maṇḍalic view of time, in which practice and enlightenment are simultaneous.

Original enlightenment doctrine has often been criticized as leading to a denial of religious discipline: Why practice, if one is already enlightened? While the danger of this sort of antinomian interpretation certainly exists, original enlightenment thought is more accurately understood as representing a transformation in how practice is understood. It opposes instrumentalist views of practice as merely a means to achieve something else, and instead redefines practice in nonlinear terms as the paradigmatic expression of the nonduality of the practitioner and the buddha.

Moreover, despite its thoroughgoing commitment to a nondual perspective, original enlightenment doctrine distinguishes between the experiential state of knowing (or even simply having faith) that “all dharmas are the buddhadharma” and that of not knowing it. It is only on the basis of insight into nondual original enlightenment that such statements as “saṃsāra is precisely nirvāṇa” can be made. Based on such insight or faith, however, not only formal Buddhist practice but all other activities of daily life can be seen as constituting the buddha’s behavior.

### Hongaku doctrine and medieval Japanese culture

Original enlightenment teachings developed within, and also contributed to, a broader medieval tradition of “secret transmission,” deriving largely from private master-to-disciple initiation into the ritual procedures transmitted within lineages of esoteric Buddhism. In time, knowledge, not only of ritual and doctrine, but of poetry, the visual and performing arts, and also

many crafts came to be handed down through master-disciple lineages. The “orally transmitted teachings” of original enlightenment thought were similarly elaborated and passed down within specific Tendai teaching lineages. Chief among these were the Eshin and Danna lineages; each had several sublineages. Despite conventions of secrecy, evidence points to considerable exchange among lineages and to individual monks receiving transmissions from more than one teacher.

The premises of original enlightenment doctrine were also assimilated to other vocabularies and influenced the broader culture. One such area of influence was Shintō theory. From around the mid-Heian period (794–1185), local deities (*kami*) had been understood as “traces” or manifestations projected by the universal buddhas and bodhisattvas as a “skillful means” to benefit the people of Japan. This view clearly subsumed *kami* worship within a Buddhist framework. Original enlightenment thought, with its emphasis on concrete actualities as equivalent to absolute principle, set the stage for a revalorization of the *kami* as equal, or even superior, to buddhas, and thus played a key role at the theoretical level in the beginnings of formal Shintō doctrine.

Original enlightenment thought also influenced the development of medieval aesthetics, especially poetic theory. Though the composition and appreciation of verse were vital social skills in elite circles, many clerics saw poetry as a distraction for the committed Buddhist because it involved one in the world of the senses and the sin of “false speech.” Original enlightenment ideas provided one of several “nondual” strategies by which poets, many of whom were monks and nuns, reclaimed the composition of verse, not only as a legitimate activity for Buddhists, but, when approached with the proper attitude, as a form of Buddhist practice in its own right. From this perspective, poetry, or art more generally, was seen, not as a second-level representation of a higher, “religious” truth, but as an expression of innate enlightenment.

*See also:* Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Poetry and Buddhism; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Shugendō; Tantra

### Bibliography

Groner, Paul. “A Medieval Japanese Reading of the *Mo-ho chih-kuan*: Placing the *Kankō ruijū* in Historical Context.” *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22, nos. 1–2 (Spring 1995): 49–81.

- Habito, Ruben L. F. *Originary Enlightenment: Tendai Hongaku Doctrine and Japanese Buddhism*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1996.
- Hubbard, Jamie, and Swanson, Paul L., eds. *Pruning the Bodhi Tree: The Storm over Critical Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- LaFleur, William R. "Symbol and *Yūgen*: Shunzei's Use of Tendai Buddhism." In *Flowing Traces: Buddhism in the Literary and Visual Arts of Japan*, ed. James H. Sanford, William R. LaFleur, and Masatoshi Nagatomi. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Shirato, Waka. "Inherent Enlightenment (*hongaku shisō*) and Saichō's Acceptance of the Bodhisattva Precepts." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 14, nos. 2–3 (1987): 113–127.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. "The Contemplation of Suchness." In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Stone, Jacqueline I. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Sueki, Fumihiko. "Two Seemingly Contradictory Aspects of the Teaching of Innate Enlightenment (*Hongaku*) in Medieval Japan." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22, nos. 1–2 (Spring 1995): 3–16.
- Tamura, Yoshirō. "Japanese Culture and the Tendai Concept of Original Enlightenment." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 14, nos. 2–3 (June–Sept. 1987): 203–210.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

## OXHERDING PICTURES

This is a series of Chan (Japanese, Zen) school illustrations of a boy chasing and taming a wild ox that symbolizes the process of seeking and attaining enlightenment by means of self-discipline and self-transformation. Through the ten paintings that are titled and accompanied by verse commentaries, a narrative of the awakening process unfolds. The boy represents a seeker, and the ox represents the chaotic, unharnessed tendencies of the mind or ego that has the potential to be transformed into a vehicle for realizing true spiritual awareness.

What is known as the *Ten Oxherding Pictures* is not a single collection of illustrations, but multiple versions of the series of pictures and poems. The best known are two early versions developed in the eleventh or twelfth century during the Song dynasty of China: one by Puming, which is probably the oldest, and the other by Kuoan. These are included in the main supplement

to the Chinese Buddhist canon, the *Xu zang jing* (*Supplemental Buddhist Canon*), but they have been reproduced and modified on numerous occasions. Revision of the paintings and comments was especially popular in Tokugawa-era Japan, and new versions have been produced in the modern period as well. A well-known version by Kuo'an is transcribed by Nyogen Senzaki and Paul Reys and illustrated by Tomikichiro Tokuriki in a way that is similar to the originals, but with some interesting differences.

The early version by Puming is titled as follows:

1. *Undisciplined.*
2. *Discipline Begun.*
3. *In Harness.*
4. *Faced Round.*
5. *Tamed.*
6. *Unimpeded.*
7. *Laissez Faire.*
8. *All Forgotten.*
9. *The Solitary Moon.*
10. *Both Vanished.*

The other early series by Kuo'an is titled as follows:

1. *Searching for the Ox.*
2. *Seeing the Traces.*
3. *Seeing the Ox.*
4. *Catching the Ox.*
5. *Herding the Ox.*
6. *Coming Home on the Ox's Back.*
7. *The Ox Forgotten.*
8. *The Ox and the Man Both Gone Out of Sight.*
9. *Returning to the Origin.*
10. *Entering the World.*

In both sets, subtle details in the landscape and the coloring of the boy, ox, trees, moon, and other background elements change to reflect the changing state of mind of the seeker, who gradually attains enlightenment.

The main difference in the versions hinges on the sequence of events and the religious implications in the

final outcome. In the Puming version, the boy tames the ox and the two coexist in a paradisiacal state, and then move into a mystical realm. By the penultimate picture, the ox is gone, and in the last, the boy also disappears, leaving an empty circle. In the Kuoan version, the empty circle appears in the seventh picture, but by the end the boy, without the ox, reenters the ordinary world to apply his enlightenment in the marketplace.

*See also:* Chan School

### ***Bibliography***

Miyuki, Mokusen. "Self-Realization in the Ten Oxherding Pictures." In *Self and Liberation: The Jung/Buddhism Dialogue*, ed. Daniel J. Meckel and Robert L. Moore. New York: Paulist Press, 1992.

Reps, Paul. *Zen Flesh, Zen Bones*, collected by Paul Reps and tr. by Paul Reps and Nyogen Senzaki. Boston: Charles E. Tuttle Publishing, 1957.

Suzuki, D. T. *The Manual of Zen Buddhism*. London: Rider and Company, 1950.

STEVEN HEINE

# P



## PADMASAMBHAVA

Active in the late eighth century, Padmasambhava (Lotus Born) is widely revered throughout the Himalayan regions under the title Guru Rinpoche. He is of particular importance to the followers of the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school of Tibetan Buddhism, who consider him the “Second Buddha” and a founder of their school. Today Padmasambhava is the focus of many rituals. The tenth day of each lunar month is devoted to him. At monasteries of the Rnying ma school, these days are observed with ritual feasting, and sometimes religious dances (*’chams*) are performed to pay homage to the Indian master’s eight manifestations (*gu ru mtshan bryad*). Many Buddhist monasteries are decorated with paintings of these same eight forms.

The influences of this renowned master on Tibetan Buddhism have been both historical and inspirational. Initially in the eighth century he seems to have played a crucial role in the establishment of Buddhism in Tibet. Since then he has appeared to Tibetans in revelations and visionary encounters. As a result of the latter inspirational role, visionary biographies of Padmasambhava abound, and his historical activities have become heavily mythologized.

Historically, relatively little is known of this master. He seems to have come from Oḍḍiyāna, a kingdom probably located in the northwest of India. The late eighth century was an unusually creative period in the development of tantric Buddhism. In particular, these years saw the arrival of the Mahāyoga class of TANTRAS. Remarkable for their transgressive practices and imagery, the Mahāyoga tantras taught the violent means for subjugating demons and harmful spirits. Pad-

masambhava seems to have specialized in these new Mahāyoga practices. Traveling through the Himalayan regions of India and Nepal, his reputation was enhanced by his activities around Kathmandu valley, where he is said to have stayed in retreat for some years at Muratika, Yang le shod, and the Asura cave. Around this time, the Tibetan king, Khri song lde btsan (r. 755–797), was working to construct Tibet’s first Buddhist monastery, BSAM YAS (SAMYE). On the recommendation of the Indian scholar Śāntarakṣita, the king invited Padmasambhava to assist with subjugating the indigenous Tibetan spirits opposed to the foreign religion. Padmasambhava accepted the invitation, and his activities around Bsam yas were considered crucial to the establishment of Buddhism as the state religion of Tibet.

This basic narrative is embellished with many legendary details in the later visionary biographies received as *gter ma* (treasure) texts after the eleventh century. One early biography that was particularly influential was the *Zang gling ma* (*Copper Colored Mountain*) discovered by Nyang ral nyi ma’i ’od zer (1124–1192). Named after the paradise for which Padmasambhava is believed to have departed Tibet, this biography describes the master’s miraculous birth from a lotus blossom at the center of Lake Danakośa in Oḍḍiyāna. Initially raised by the king Indrabodhi, the youth is said to have renounced his royal trappings to live as a Buddhist ascetic. Various legendary adventures are then recounted, including Padmasambhava’s meeting with his first consort, the Indian Mandārāva, at the Lotus Lake (Mtsho Padma) in Himachal Pradesh. While residing near Kathmandu, he is said to have gathered the scattered practice traditions for the deity Vajrakīlaya into a single, all-powerful system. In



Padmasambhava, who played a crucial role in the establishment of Buddhism in Tibet in the eighth century. (Tibetan *thang ka* [scroll painting], nineteenth century.) The Art Archive/Private Collection Paris/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

Tibet, he used his tantric powers to convert the local spirits into protectors of the Buddhist faith. As reward for his work, the Tibetan king offered Padmasambhava a second consort, named Ye shes tsho rgyal. This powerful woman would eventually become a cult figure in her own right. Together with her, Padmasambhava is said to have concealed his most secret teachings as hidden *gter ma*, to be revealed by later generations of Tibetans at the appropriate times. The future revealers of these *gter ma* were understood to be reincarnations of Padmasambhava's students, so that the process of revelation was, in part at least, one of remembering long-forgotten teachings once received from the great master.

Later biographies added still more detail, and the places visited by Padmasambhava continued to multiply. Over the centuries the legend grew as Padmasambhava's myth was replayed in various border regions. As new regions were converted to Buddhism, narratives would often surface describing Padmasambhava's alleged visits to sites crucial to those regions. According to such narratives, Padmasambhava visited these sites to subjugate the local non-Buddhist spirits, thus preparing the ground for the future conversion of the regions to Buddhism. Many such sites have remained sacred and are still PILGRIMAGE destinations for Buddhists throughout Tibet, Nepal, India, and Bhutan. Thus, Padmasambhava's primary importance has become twofold: as the inspirational source for the *gter ma* revelations and as a legendary tamer of local spirits.

*See also:* Apocrypha; Tibet

### Bibliography

- Douglas, Kenneth, and Bays, Gwendolyn. *The Life and Liberation of Padmasambhava: The bKa' thang shel brag ma as Recorded by Yeshe Tsogyal*, 2 vols. Berkeley, CA: Dharmapala, 1978.
- Guenther, Herbert V. *The Teachings of Padmasambhava*. New York: Brill, 1996.
- Gyatso, Janet. "The Logic of Legitimation in the Tibetan Treasure Tradition." *History of Religions* 33, no. 2 (1993): 97–134.
- Rinpoche, Dudjom. *The Nyingma School of Tibetan Buddhism: Its Fundamentals and History*, 2 vols., tr. Gyurme Dorje and Matthew Kapstein. Boston: Wisdom, 1991.

JACOB P. DALTON

## PĀLI, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

The term *Pāli*, used today in both Buddhist and Western cultures as a designation of a language, is a relatively modern coinage, not traceable before the seventeenth century. An earlier name given to this language in Buddhist literature is Māgadhī, the language of the province Magadha in Eastern India that roughly corresponds to the modern Indian state Bihār. The only Buddhist school using this language is the THERAVĀDA in Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia. Theravādins erroneously consider Pāli to be the language spoken by the Buddha himself.

During the nineteenth century, Western scholarship discovered that Pāli is not an eastern Middle Indic language and has little relationship to Māgadhī, which is known from other sources. By comparing the languages used in the inscriptions of AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.), it is possible to demonstrate that Pāli, while preserving some very old Eastern elements, is clearly based on a western Middle Indic language, one of the languages that developed out of Vedic Sanskrit, which was used in India roughly until the time of the Buddha (ca. fourth century B.C.E.). Although Pāli is clearly younger than the time of the Buddha, it is the oldest surviving variety of Middle Indic.

The dialect used by the Buddha himself when instructing his disciples is unknown and irretrievably lost. It might have been some early variety of Māgadhī. The oldest Buddhist language, which can be traced by reconstruction, is Buddhist Middle Indic, a lingua franca that developed much later than the lifetime of the Buddha. Buddhist Middle Indic is the basis of Pāli and the Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit used by the MAHĀSĀMĀGHKA Lokottaravādins.

Even though Pāli, as an artificial language, was never actually a vernacular of any part of India, it was by no means a "dead" language. Changes in the phonetic shape of Pāli, most likely introduced by Buddhist grammarians at various times, can be observed, although dating them is problematic. None of these changes were far-reaching, although they seem to have continued well into the sixteenth century, if not later.

The oldest literature preserved in Pāli is the CANON of the Theravāda Buddhists, the only Buddhist canon extant in its entirety in an Indian language. Consequently, it is linguistically the oldest form of Buddhist scriptures known. This, of course, does not mean that other scriptures in different younger languages or

translations necessarily preserve only later developments of Buddhist thought and tradition. Though generally conservative, Pāli literature probably developed over several centuries before it was committed to writing. According to the Theravādins, this redaction happened during the first century B.C.E. in Sri Lanka, when various disasters decimated the number of Buddhist monks and threatened the oral tradition. Like the Vedic texts, early Buddhist literature was composed during a period of pure orality in India, before script was introduced during the reign of Aśoka. This early oral tradition has left obvious traces in the written literature, particularly in the numerous formulas typical of oral composition, which were used to facilitate memorization.

The writing down of the Theravāda canon is related in Theravāda church history as preserved in two chronicles (VAṂSA) composed in Pāli: the *Dīpavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Island*, ca. 350 C.E.) and the later *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*, late fifth century C.E.). Both give a legendary history of political and religious events in Sri Lanka; the latter, which was extended several times, ends with the British conquest in 1815.

### Tipiṭaka (Threefold Basket)

According to the Theravāda tradition, the texts committed to writing comprised the complete *Tipiṭaka* (Sanskrit, *Tripitaka*), the *Threefold Basket*—the designation for the canon in all Buddhist schools. Although a similar name is also used by the Jains for their holy scriptures, the choice of the term *basket* for a collection of texts cannot be explained. The Threefold Basket is, however, not the oldest division of the canonical texts. An earlier division into *nine limbs* (*nava aṅga*) was abandoned at a very early date, most likely when the collection of texts grew into a large corpus and had to be regrouped following different principles.

**Vinayaṭṭaka (Basket of Discipline).** Each of the Tipiṭaka's three parts are made up of collections of texts concerning three different aspects of Buddhist community life and teaching. The first part of the Tipiṭaka is the *Vinayaṭṭaka* (*Basket of Discipline*), which is further divided into three parts. At the beginning is the *Suttavibhaṅga* (*Explanation of the Sutta*), an old commentary in which the *sutta* itself is embedded. *Sutta* here does not mean, as in later usage, a discourse of the Buddha, but a set of 227 rules (*Pāṭimokkha*; Sanskrit, PRĀTIMOKṢA) regulating the life of each individual monk. Some of these rules are among the oldest Buddhist texts preserved, with parallels in the Vinaya or monastic codes of other schools. The mean-

ing of the title *Pāṭimokkha* is unclear. This text must be recited twice each month by monks in every monastery. In spite of its age, an early development of this text can be traced. Brief rules, such as “in drinking alcohol, there is an offense,” eventually developed into much longer and legally complicated formulations. The original brevity reflects the original meaning of *sutta* (Sanskrit, *sūtra*), “[set of] brief rule(s).” The first four rules describe offenses entailing an expulsion from the order (*pārājika*, concerning a chiding away [of a monk from the community]). The offenses described in the following rules are increasingly less grave. The seventh and last groups of offenses contain rules for general civilized behavior, and an appendix enumerates methods to settle disputes. All the rules are embedded in frame stories, which describe the occasion that necessitates the creation of such a rule. The commentary explains single words of the rules and develops their legal applications.

The second part of the *Vinayaṭṭaka*, the *Khandhaka* (sections), contains rules governing the life of the community as a whole. The *Khandhaka*, which is divided into twelve parts, begins with the enlightenment of the Buddha and the founding of the Buddhist order (SAṄGHA) and ends with the reports on the first two councils at Rājagṛha and Vaiśālī, respectively. The tenth part of the *Khandhaka* is devoted to the foundation of the order of NUNS, to which the Buddha agreed only after much hesitation.

The third and much later part of the *Vinayaṭṭaka* is a handbook, the *Parivāra* (ca. first century C.E.). This handbook comprises a collection of texts containing brief summaries of the Vinaya, among them an interesting collection of difficult legal questions called *Sedamocanakaḡāthā* (*Sweat Producing Verses*).

**Suttapiṭaka (Basket of the Discourses).** The second part of the Tipiṭaka, the *Suttapiṭaka* (*Basket of the Discourses*) is divided into four older parts, which are mentioned in the *Vinayaṭṭaka*'s report of the first council, and a fifth later addition. The name *Suttapiṭaka*, however, does not occur in the report on the council describing the formation of the canon. Single texts were called *veyyākaraṇa* (explanation) or *dhammapariyāya* (discourse on the teaching) before the name *sutta(ṇṭa)* was introduced at an uncertain date.

The first part of the *Suttapiṭaka* is made up of twenty-four texts called the *Dīghanikāya* (*Group of Long Discourses*). The *Dīghanikāya* contains, among other things, discussions with the six heretics, and one of the most famous Buddhist texts, the *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*

(Sanskrit, MAHĀPARINIRVĀNA-SŪTRA; *Great Discourse on the Nirvāṇa*), the longest text in the canon and the first lengthy literary composition in ancient India.

The second part of the *Suttapiṭaka*, the *Majjhimanikāya* (*Group of Middle Length Discourses*), comprises 152 texts in which different aspects of Buddhist teaching are explained in the form of dialogues. The last two groups (*nikāya*), the *Samyuttanikāya* (*Connected Discourses*) and the *Āṅguttaranikāya* (*Discourses Increasing by One*), are structurally unique; the mostly short texts (according to the tradition about 7,500 in the *Samyuttanikāya* and almost 10,000 in the *Āṅguttaranikāya*) are the first attempts to present the teaching in a more systematic form. Topics in the *Āṅguttaranikāya* are arranged by number: The first book contains items existing only once, the last one items existing eleven times. (The last two *suttantas* of the *Dīghanikāya* follow a similar method for arranging texts.) The first part of the *Samyuttanikāya*, the *Sagāthavagga* (*Section Containing Verses*), stands apart, containing some old views that are occasionally close to Vedic concepts.

The *Khuddakanikāya* (*Group of Small Texts*), is an unsystematic collection of partly very old, partly very young texts. The *Khuddakanikāya*'s famous DHAMMAPADA (*Words of the Doctrine*), a collection of 423 verses, is one of the most popular texts with Buddhist monks and laypersons. The *Khuddakanikāya* also includes one of the oldest parts of the canon, the *Suttanipāta* (*Group of Discourses*), a collection of small independent texts, mostly in verse. It seems likely that some titles quoted in an inscription of Aśoka are in fact referring to texts of this collection. If correct, this is the oldest Indian epigraphical evidence for extant Buddhist texts.

Another collection mentioned in early inscriptions are the JĀTAKA stories. Some of the 547 stories, which describe the former lives of the Buddha as BODHISATTVA (Pāli, *Bodhisatta*), are illustrated and provided with titles in the bas-reliefs of Bharhut in India. Only the jātaka verses are part of the Tipiṭaka. The collection of prose stories, called *Jāṭakatthavaṇṇanā* (*Explanation of the Birth Stories*), is regarded as a commentary and was composed in its present form about a millennium later than the verses, which, for the most part, are not specifically Buddhist. The best known is the 547th, the *Vessantara jātaka* (Sanskrit, VIŚVANTARA), which describes the last birth of the Bodhisattva, before he ascends to the Tuṣita heaven, from where he is reborn on earth to reach enlightenment.

Among the other collections in the *Khuddakanikāya* are the *Verses of the Elders* (*Thera-* and *Therīgāthā*),

which are supposed to have been spoken by disciples of the Buddha. Those ascribed to “elder nuns” (*Therīgāthā*) are the oldest literature known from ancient India supposed to have been composed by women. As such they are unique in Middle Indic as well as in Sanskrit literature. Some texts of the *Khuddakanikāya* are early commentaries, with one text, the *Paṭisambhidāmagga* (*Path of Discrimination*), which would fit better into the third part of the canon, the *Abhidhammapiṭaka*.

**Abhidhammapiṭaka (Basket Concerning the Teaching).** The title *Abhidhamma* is interpreted later by Buddhists as “Higher Teaching.” The seven texts of this final part of the canon comprise the *Kathāvatthu* (*Text Dealing with Disputes*), where conflicting opinions on different points of the Buddhist teaching are discussed. According to tradition, this text was composed during the reign of Aśoka by Moggalliputta Tissa. Therefore, this is the only text in the canon with an author and a date. The other texts of the *Abhidhammapiṭaka* mostly contain enumerations of different *dhammas* elaborated by unfolding a summary (*mātikā*), which appears at the beginning of the respective text. as the frame of an *Abhidhamma* text. Parts of the *Vinayapiṭaka*, and particularly the *Sāmyuttanikāya*, can be similarly condensed and are handed down as “skeleton texts” to be unfolded in recitation. The last *Abhidhamma* text, the *Paṭṭhāna* (*Conditional Relations*), can be expanded in such a way that it becomes infinite, as the commentary says.

### Commentaries and subcommentaries

The Tipiṭaka was the object of explanatory commentaries at an early date. According to tradition, both Tipiṭaka and commentary, the *Aṭṭhakathā* (*Explanation of the Meaning*), were brought to Sri Lanka by Mahinda during the time of Aśoka (third century C.E.). The commentary actually preserved is a revision of an earlier, now lost, explanation of the Tipiṭaka composed in old Sinhalese Prākṛit.

During the fifth century C.E., BUDDHAGHOSA composed his still valid handbook of Theravāda orthodoxy for the Mahāvihāra in Anurādhapura. This *Visuddhimagga* (*Path to Purification*) is the centerpiece of Buddhaghosa's commentaries on the first four *nikāyas*. As stated in the respective introductions, each of the four commentaries comprises a full explanation of the Buddha's teaching in combination with the *Visuddhimagga*. Contrary to the claims of the Theravāda tradition, Buddhaghosa wrote, or supervised the writing,



only of these texts, huge in themselves. The commentaries on the *Vinaya-piṭaka*, on the *Abhidhammapiṭaka*, and on part of the *Khuddakanikāya* are anonymous.

A commentary of uncertain date (probably between 450 and 600 C.E.) on seven of the collections of the *Khuddakanikāya* was composed by Dhammapāla (although Lance Cousins has recently suggested Jotipāla as the author of this commentary). It is important to note that Dhammapāla's sequence of *Khuddakanikāya* texts deviates from the one common in the Mahāvihāra, and that he used a different recension of two texts, suggesting that he was following traditions of South Indian Pāli literature, which probably flourished through the first millennium C.E., but is now almost completely lost.

Subcommentaries constitute another layer of Pāli literature. After older subcommentaries on the *Abhidhammapiṭaka* (ascribed to Ānanda) and on Buddhaghosa's commentaries (ascribed to Dhammapāla), the next subcommentaries were written during the reign of Parakkamabāhu I (r. 1153–1186), who reformed and unified the Buddhist order in Sri Lanka. Consequently, much weight was put on explaining the *Vinayapiṭaka*. This task was entrusted by the king to Sāriputta and his disciples.

### Pāli literature in Southeast Asia

With Theravāda also firmly established in Southeast-Asia (Burma [Myanmar], Thailand, and Cambodia), new branches of Pāli literature developed. During a short period in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries, Pāli literature flourished in Chiang Mai (Northern Thailand). A chronicle of Buddhist teaching concentrating on developments in Southeast Asia, the *Jinakālamālinī* (*Garland of the Epochs of the Conquerer*) by Ratanapañña, and subcommentaries to the *Vinayapiṭaka* and *Abhidhammapiṭaka* by Ñāṇakitti indicate a remarkable, but short-lived, literary activity. At the same time, cosmological texts such as the *Cakkavāḍḍipāṇī* (*Elucidation of the World Systems*), composed in 1520 by Sirimaṅgala, brought new elements into Pāli literature.

Another literary genre that flourished in this period (and that remains particularly popular in Thailand) is the jātika. Numerous apocryphal jātakas were written in vernacular languages, as well as in Pāli. The best known Pāli collection is the *Paññāsajātaka* (*Fifty Jātakas*), which formally imitates the canonical collection. This was also the time when the oldest extant Pāli manuscripts were copied in ancient Lān Nā (Northern Thai-

land). Palm leaf manuscripts are also known from Sri Lanka and Burma, mostly copied during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. A singular exception is a fragment of a Pāli manuscript preserved in Kathmandu containing four folios from the *Vinayapiṭaka* written during the eighth or ninth century in Northern India.

In Burma, a long and fruitful philological activity began with Aggavāmsa's *Saddanṭī* composed in 1154. This grammatical treatise deeply influenced the whole later Pāli tradition. Strong emphasis was also put on explaining the *Abhidhammapiṭaka* and on writing handbooks on *Abhidhamma* matters.

### Conclusion

It is striking that the older Pāli literature is almost exclusively confined to the canon and its commentaries. Handbooks on the *Vinayapiṭaka* or *Abhidhammapiṭaka*, such as those written by Buddhadatta, a contemporary of Buddhaghosa, or on HERMENEUTICS, such as the *Peṭakopadesa* (*Instruction Concerning the Tipiṭaka*) and the *Nettipakarāṇa* (*Guide to Interpretation*), both predating Buddhaghosa, are rare exceptions, as are the chronicles. It is only after the twelfth century that Pāli literature began to develop outside (and beside) the canon. However, these later literary activities, particularly the later literature from Southeast Asia, are comparatively little studied. When Pāli studies began in Europe with the publication of a Pāli grammar by Eugène Burnouf (1801–1852) and Christian Lassen (1800–1876) in 1826, emphasis was on research on older literature. The canon was first printed after T. W. Rhys Davids (1834–1922) founded the Pāli Text Society in 1881; the society continues to publish translations and canonical and commentarial texts in Pāli.

*See also:* Entries on specific countries; **Commentarial Literature; Languages; Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Gombrich, Richard. "What Is Pāli? Introduction To." In *A Pāli Grammar*, by Wilhelm Geiger, tr. Bata-Krishna Ghosh, rev. and ed. K. R. Norman. Oxford: Pali Text Society, 1994.
- Lienhard, Siegfried. *A History of Classical Poetry: Sanskrit, Pāli, Prakrit. A History of Indian Literature*, vol. 3, fasc. 1. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1984.
- Norman, K. R. *Pāli Literature: Including the Canonical Literature in Prakrit and Sanskrit of All the Hinayana Schools of Buddhism. A History of Indian Literature*, vol. 7, fasc. 2. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1982.
- Oberlies, Thomas. *Pāli: A Grammar of the Language of the Theravāda Tipiṭaka*. Berlin: de Gruyter, 2001.

- von Hinüber, Oskar. *A Handbook of Pāli Literature*. Berlin: Gruyter, 1996.
- von Hinüber, Oskar. *Entstehung und Aufbau der Jātaka-Sammlung*. Mainz: Akademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur, 1998.
- von Hinüber, Oskar. "Structure and Origin of the Pātimokkhasutta of the Theravadins." *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 51 (1998): 257–265.
- von Hinüber, Oskar. "Lān Nā as a Centre of Pāli Literature during the Late Fifteenth Century." *Journal of the Pali Text Society* 26 (2000): 119–138.

OSKAR VON HINÜBER

## PANCHEN LAMA

The Panchen Lamas are the second most powerful religious and secular figures in Tibet, after the Dalai Lamas. The word *pan* is a short form of the Sanskrit word *paṇḍita* (scholar), and *chen* is a Tibetan word that means "great." Although the institution of Panchen Lama, like the DALAI LAMA, is part of the DGE LUGS (GELUK) tradition in its origins, its power and authority extend beyond the confines of that particular sect.

The line of Panchen Lamas begins with the abbots of Bkra shis lhun po (pronounced Tashilunpo) Monastery in Gzhi ka rtse (Shigatse), the largest city in Gtsang (Tsang) in west central Tibet. Bkra shis lhun po was founded by Dge 'dun grub (Gendun Drup, 1391–1474), a student of the great scholar-saint TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419). Dge 'dun grub, who was posthumously named the first Dalai Lama, was instrumental in extending the influence of the fledgling Dga' ldan pa (Gandenpa, later called Dge lugs pa) sect beyond the east central region centered around Lhasa.

The first named Panchen Lama was Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan (Lobsang Chökyi Gyaltzen, 1567–1662), the teacher of the fourth and fifth Dalai Lamas and the force behind the coalition that in 1642 defeated the Karma pas and their Gtsang patrons. Following that defeat, the center of power moved decisively from Gtsang to the new government called the Tuṣita Palace (Dga' ldan pho brang) seated in the POTALA palace in Lhasa. As an expression of gratitude for his help, the fifth Dalai Lama (1617–1682) named his teacher the abbot of Bkra shis lhun po Monastery and bestowed on him the title Panchen Lama.

As with the Dalai Lamas, a number of important figures were subsequently and retroactively named

earlier incarnations of Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan. The most important of them was Mkhas grub dpal bzang po (Kaydrub Pelzangpo, 1385–1438), one of the two closest disciples of Tsong kha pa. Following him was Bsod nams phyogs kyi glang po (Sonam Chokyi Langpo, d. 1504?) and Blo bzang don grub (Lobsang Dondrub, 1505–1566). According to this manner of calculation, Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan became the fourth Panchen Lama, and the present disputed child incarnation of the Panchen Lama, Dge 'dun chos kyi nyi ma (Gendun Chökyi Nyima, b. 1990), is the eleventh.

In some early English accounts the Panchen Lamas are called Tashi Lamas, a confusion between the name of the person and Bkra bzhis lhun po Monastery; in Chinese publications, they are called Panchen Erdini, a Mongolian word that means "precious jewel." This latter title was first bestowed on the fifth Panchen Lama, Blo bzang ye shes (Lobsang Yeshay, 1663–1737) in 1731 by the Manchu-Chinese emperor Kangxi.

After the death of the seventh Dalai Lama in 1758, the sixth Panchen Lama, Blo bzang dpal ldan ye shes (Lobsang Palden Yeshay, 1738–1780) was regarded by the Manchus as the foremost Tibetan spiritual leader because of his great learning and rectitude. He was repeatedly invited to Beijing. He finally assented and died there from smallpox in 1780.

Although the relationship between the Dalai Lamas and Panchen Lamas in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries was cordial, the traditional antagonism between western Gtsang and the east central regions of Tibet, centered in Gzhi ka rtse and Lhasa, respectively, soon reappeared. The Manchus, and later the Chinese Communist Party led by Mao Zedong, exploited this tension to counter the power of the Dalai Lamas.

The relationship between the thirteenth Dalai Lama, Thub bstan rgya mtsho (Tubten Gyatso, 1876–1933), and the ninth Panchen Lama, Thub bstan chos kyi nyi ma (Tubten Chökyi Nyima, 1883–1937), was severely strained according to Melvyn Goldstein in *A History of Modern Tibet* (1989) when the Dalai Lama attempted to tax the Panchen Lama's estates to help pay for a new modern army. The Panchen Lama's retainers saw this as a veiled attack on the institution of the Panchen Lama, and this in turn led the Dalai Lama's government to accuse the Panchen Lama of treason. The ninth Panchen Lama then fled to China where he remained until his death.

The tenth Panchen Lama, Chos kyi rgyal mtshan 'phrin las rnam rgyal (Chökyi Gyaltzen Tinlay



In 1995 the Dalai Lama, in his Indian exile, announced that a boy named Dge 'dun chos kyi nyi ma was the new Panchen Lama. China, asserting its authority, repudiated the choice and later declared another boy to be the true Panchen Lama. Here the Chinese nominee, six-year-old Rgyal mtshan nor bu (Gyaltzen Norbu), is escorted into the Xihuang Monastery in Beijing in 1996. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

Namgyel, 1938–1989), like the fourteenth Dalai Lama, Bstan 'dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, b. 1935), was born in 'A mdo, the far northeastern region of Tibet. The tenth Panchen Lama was educated traditionally and was given a position in the Chinese government. In 1959, when the Dalai Lama fled to India, the Chinese government urged the Panchen Rinpoche to assume the Dalai Lama's position, but he declined to do so. He further antagonized the increasingly repressive Communist China government in 1962 with a seventy-thousand-character petition detailing the appalling conditions in Tibet and asking for an end to persecution and a genuine acceptance of religious freedom. This petition, later published as *A Poisoned Arrow: The Secret Report of the 10th Panchen Lama*, eventually led to his imprisonment for ten years. After his release

from prison in February 1981, the Panchen Lama was reinstated; until his death in Gzhi ka rtse in 1989, he worked with the central and regional authorities for the betterment of Tibet. Tibetans consider the tenth Panchen Lama a great patriot, and pictures of him, which are allowed by the Chinese government, are widely found.

At the beginning of the twenty-first century, two claimants vie for the title of eleventh Panchen Lama. In May 1995 in Dharmasala, India, the fourteenth Dalai Lama announced that a six-year-old boy from Tibet, Dge 'dun chos kyi nyi ma, was the reincarnation of the Panchen Lama. He had named the boy chosen by Bya bral (Chadrel) Rin po che, a religious official from Bkra bzhis lhun po and the head of the committee originally constituted by the Chinese government to search for the Panchen Lama's reincarnation. To demonstrate its sole authority over important Tibetan institutions, China repudiated the choice and later that year declared another boy, Rgyal mtshan nor bu (Gyaltzen Norbu), a six-year-old from Hla ri ri in Nag chu in northeastern Tibet, to be the true Panchen Lama. Since 1996 Dge 'dun chos kyi nyi ma and his family have been detained despite the efforts of the international community to secure their release.

*See also:* Lama; Tibet

### Bibliography

- Goldstein, Melvyn. *A History of Modern Tibet, 1913–1951: Demise of the Lamaist State*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989.
- Panchen Lama X. *A Poisoned Arrow: The Secret Report of the 10th Panchen Lama*. London: Tibet Information Network, 1998. Available online at [www.tibetinfo.co.uk/pl-opening.htm](http://www.tibetinfo.co.uk/pl-opening.htm).
- Richardson, Hugh, and Snellgrove, David. *A Cultural History of Tibet*. London: Weidenfeld and Nicholson, 1968.
- Smith, E. Gene. "Introduction." In *The Autobiography of the First Panchen Lama Blo-bzang-chos-kyi-rgyal-mtshan*, ed. Ngawang Gelek Demo. Delhi: Ngawang Gelek Demo, 1969.

GARETH SPARHAM

## PARAMĀRTHA

Paramārtha (Zhendi; 499–569) was one of the most influential translators of Buddhist philosophical texts in China. Born Kulanātha in Ujjain in north central India to a brahmin family, Paramārtha traveled in 545 to

Funan (modern Cambodia), where there was active support for Buddhism. He was brought to Nanhai (modern Canton) in 546. From there he was summoned to the Liang capital at Jiankang (modern Nanjing) by Emperor Wu, a great patron of Buddhism. Shortly after his arrival, the capital was sacked and Emperor Wu was overthrown. Paramārtha fled the chaos, traveling southeast to Fuchun in modern Zhejiang province, where his translation career appears to have begun in earnest. He translated the *Shiqi di lun* (*Treatise on the Seventeen Stages [of the Bodhisattva Career]*) in 550 with the assistance of over twenty monks. Two years later he returned to Jiankang, now under the newly inaugurated reign of Emperor Yuan, and translated the *SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA* (*Golden Light Sūtra*), again with the help of over twenty monastic assistants. A number of additional sūtras and treatises are attributed to Paramārtha and his associates, including the *Mile xia sheng jing* (*Sūtra on Maitreya's Descent [from Heaven]*), the *RENWANG JING* (*HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA*), and the *AWAKENING OF FAITH* (*DASHENG QIXIN LUN*). The latter two texts are widely believed by modern scholars to be *APOCRYPHA*, that is, texts produced in China but claiming legitimacy as authentic discourses of the Buddha.

Paramārtha's most notable contribution is in being the first person to widely disseminate *YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL* thought in China. To this end he translated several important treatises by the Indian founders of this school, *ASAṄGA* (ca. 320–390) and *VASUBANDHU* (fourth century C.E.). These include *Viṃśatikā* (*Twenty Verses*), *Triṃśika* (*Thirty Verses*), *Madhyāntavibhāga* (*On Distinguishing the Extremes from the Middle*), and *Mahāyānasamgraha* (*Compendium of Mahāyāna*). Scholars have long noted, however, that Paramārtha was no mere translator; by all appearances he added much of his own commentarial exegesis. In particular, Paramārtha attempted to synthesize *Yogācāra* and *TATHĀGATAGARBHA* thought into a single philosophical system. One of Paramārtha's most notable contributions in this regard is the positing of a ninth level of consciousness (the *amalavijñāna*, immaculate consciousness), which transcends the evolutionary consciousness and storehouse consciousness posited by the *Yogācāra* school. For Paramārtha, this immaculate consciousness is the true source of all reality, the means to overcome the defilements that afflict the lower levels of consciousness, and thus it is identified with the *tathāgatagarbha*, the *sine qua non* for enlightenment.

Despite a prodigious teaching and translation career, Paramārtha deeply lamented the chaotic condi-

tions of sixth-century China, culminating in a thwarted suicide attempt in 568. The death of his closest disciple later that same year further debilitated Paramārtha; he died in February 569. Nonetheless, Paramārtha's work laid the philosophical foundation not only for the *Faxiang* (*Yogācāra*) school in China, but for the intellectual developments of the *Huayan*, *Tiantai*, and *Chan* traditions of the *Sui* and *Tang* dynasties as well.

*See also:* **Chan School; Consciousness, Theories of; Faxiang School; Huayan School; Tiantai School**

### Bibliography

Demiéville, Paul. "Sur l'authenticité du Ta Tch'eng K'i Sin Louen." *Bulletin de la Maison Franco-Japonaise* 2, no. 2 (1929): 1–78. Reprinted in *Choix d'études bouddhiques, 1929–1970*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1973.

Paul, Diana Y. *Philosophy of Mind in Sixth-Century China: Paramārtha's "Evolution of Consciousness."* Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1984.

DANIEL BOUCHER

## PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION)

*Pāramitā* (Pāli, *pāramī*; Tibetan, *pha rol tu phyin pa*; Chinese, *boluomi*) refers to the spiritual practice accomplished by a *BODHISATTVA*. The term has been interpreted variously as meaning, for example, "perfection," "to reach the other shore," or "to cross over." In Japanese Buddhism the term has been used to indicate the spring and autumn equinox. The literal meaning of the Tibetan *pha rol tu phyin pa* is "to reach the other shore," a meaning with which the Chinese translation *dao bian* agrees. Traditionally, the term *pāramitā* comprises four groups: the group of six *pāramitās*; the group of ten *pāramitās*; the group of four *pāramitās*; and the perfections of esoteric Buddhism. However, the constituents of each grouping differ according to the sūtra or śāstra in which they are discussed.

The understanding of *pāramitā* in the sense of "to reach the other shore" suggests that one goes from the ordinary world of *SAṂSĀRA* (this shore) to the realm of *NIRVĀṆA* (the other shore). Depending on the text, this formula may mean, for example, that a buddha is one who has reached the other shore already, while an ordinary being is one who has not yet reached the other shore (*Maitreyapariṣccha-sūtra*). "Reaching the other

shore” may mean that, in accordance with one’s practice, one attains the final goal with nothing remaining, or that one reaches reality-as-it-is (just as all streams finally return to the ocean), or that one attains the incomparable fruition (of awakening).

The group of six pāramitās includes DĀNA (GIVING), *śīla* (ethical behavior), *kṣānti* (patience), *vīrya* (endeavor or effort), DHYĀNA (contemplation or meditation), and PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM). *Dāna* means to give an ordinary gift, to give the gift of the dharma, or to give the gift of mental peace and tranquility to another. *Śīla* means to honor and practice proper ethical behavior. *Kṣānti* means to endure hardship. *Vīrya* means to strengthen one’s mind and body and to practice continuously the other five perfections. Dhyāna means to focus one’s mind and make it firm and stable. Prajñā means to awaken to the defining characteristics of existence. Of these, the first five can be understood to describe the practices manifested in a bodhisattva’s activities of KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION) and the last a bodhisattva’s wisdom. Because prajñā is so foundational to the other five perfections, it is referred to as the “mother of all buddhas.”

When four more perfections—UPĀYA (appropriate action), *praṇidhāna* (vow), *bala* (strength), and *jñāna* (understanding)—are added to the former six, the grouping of ten pāramitās is established. *Upāya* means that a bodhisattva assists SENTIENT BEINGS by means of utilizing his expertise (*upāyakauśalya*). *Praṇidhāna* means that having become awakened, a bodhisattva makes the highest vow to save all sentient beings from the round of saṃsāra. *Bala* refers to the power to guide sentient beings to proper spiritual practices. *Jñāna* refers to the attainment of peace that comes with awakening and the instruction of sentient beings to attain the all-inclusive wisdom. Along with perfecting one’s self, these ten perfections serve the purpose of benefiting all sentient beings. These comprise the bodhisattva’s spiritual practices completed on each of the ten stages of the *Daśabhūmika-sūtra*.

The group of four pāramitās refers to an explanation of the perfections found in the *Śūraṅgama (samādhi)-sūtra* and includes *permanent perfection*—a perfection that is completely everlasting; *bliss perfection*—a perfection that is completely peaceful; *material perfection*—a perfection that has the nature of being completely substantive; and *pure perfection*—a perfection that has the nature of being wholesome. These four can be understood to comprise the four virtues of one who has attained nirvāṇa (the extinction of the cause of suffering).

The perfections of esoteric Buddhism are focused on Vairocana Buddha who is located at the center of the Vajradhātumaṇḍala. These postulate *vajrapāramitā* (diamond scepter perfection) in the East, *ratna-pāramitā* (jewel perfection) in the South, *dharmapāramitā* (doctrine perfection) in the West, and *kāmapāramitā* (desire perfection) in the North.

Aside from these, THERAVĀDA Buddhism, in texts such as *Cariyapīṭaka*, *Buddhavaṃsa*, and *Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā*, postulates the following ten perfections: *dāna* (charity), *sīla* (ethical behavior), *nekkhamma* (liberation), *paññā* (wisdom), *virīya* (endeavor or effort), *khānti* (patience), *sacca* (truth), *adhiṭṭhāna* (resolve), *mettā* (loving kindness), and *upekkhā* (equanimity).

See also: Mahāyāna; Maṇḍala; Prajñāpāramitā Literature

### Bibliography

- Conze, Edward, trans. *The Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1975.
- Dayal, Har. *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhist Sanskrit Literature*. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1932.
- Dutt, Nalinaksha, ed. *Bodhisattvabhūmiḥ*. Patna, India: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1978.
- Kawamura, Leslie, ed. *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhism*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press, 1981.
- Ogihara, Unrai, ed. *Bodhisattva-bhūmi: A Statement of Whole Course of the Bodhisattva*. Tokyo: Sankibo Buddhist Book Store, 1971.

LESLIE S. KAWAMURA

## PARISH (DANKA, TERAUKE) SYSTEM IN JAPAN

Parish temples (alternately *dannadera*, *dankadera*, or *bodaiji*) constitute over 90 percent of Buddhist temples in contemporary Japan. These terms have their etymology in the Sanskrit word DĀNA (GIVING) and were used during the medieval period to refer to major temple patrons. The broader concept of a “parish” in Japan, however, emerged during the Tokugawa period (1603–1868) as the predominant Buddhist temple affiliation method for ordinary lay members. The practice of organizing Buddhist adherents into

parishes stems from the Tokugawa government's anti-Christian (*Kirishitan*) campaigns and ordinances of 1613 and 1614. Christianity, which had achieved a foothold in certain regions during the sixteenth century through the efforts of Portuguese and Spanish missionaries, was increasingly seen by the new Tokugawa regime as a subversive force and a threat to their hegemony. The threat of Christianity, as seen from the perspective of government officials, lay less with its biblical teachings and doctrines, than with the issue of Christian loyalty to God and the pope rather than to the Tokugawa government's secular authority. This led to a ban on Christianity in 1614.

To ensure that no Japanese person remained a Christian, the government ordered "Investigations of Christians" (*Kirishitan aratame*) to be conducted in each domain. Former Christians were certified by the local Buddhist temple and village officials as no longer Christians but as parish members of a Buddhist temple. The first surveys of Christians, begun in 1614, were followed by more extensive surveys ordered by the government in 1659 in which not only the parish temple, but the village *goningumi* (a unit of five households sharing mutual responsibility) were required to attest that no one in their group was a Christian. By 1670 the practice of temple investigation and registration (*tera-uke seido*) had become almost universal when a standardized temple registration certificate was adopted by Buddhist temples across all regions of Japan. This document certified that parishioners were neither Christians nor Nichirenfuju fuse members (a sect of Nichiren Buddhism banned by the government in 1669). Although the Buddhist temple held primary responsibility for monitoring and reporting on its parishioners to the village head, each village head had to gather these certificates in order to compile reports called *shūmon aratamechō* (Registry of Religious Affiliation), also known as *shūmon ninbetsuchō* or *shūshi aratamechō*.

These registries helped authorities monitor and control the populace by using Buddhist temples and local authorities to maintain detailed records, weeding out any persons who might be a potential threat to the government. From the perspective of the average parishioner, the practice of temple registration legally obligated them ritually and economically to their parish temple under the threat of being branded a "heretic," which continued to have meaning even as the possibility of Christian subversion of the government disappeared.

Temple membership was not an individual affair; rather, the unit of religious affiliation was the emergent unit of social organization, the "household" (*ie*). Thus, from the mid-Tokugawa period onward, the term *danka* (used interchangeably with *danna*), which includes the Chinese character for *household*, became the dominant term for parish households. For each household, the main benefit of membership was the funerary and ongoing memorial services that temples provided for all household members. Temple grounds also served as the location for the family gravestones. Thus, once a family registered as a member of a particular temple, that affiliation continued for successive generations during which sect changes were virtually impossible.

Parish temples emphasized parishioners' obligation toward the temple in terms of financial support and attendance of funerals and ancestral rites. Whether it be to pay for rituals or temple construction, it is clear that parishioners were not simply asked to support their parish temple, they were obligated to do so. The consequences of not doing so resulted in parishioners being branded heretics.

In ritual terms, the parish temple also became virtually synonymous with "funerary Buddhism," where DEATH rituals, as opposed to meditation, *sūtra* study, or prayers for worldly benefits, became the main ritual practice. Beyond the funeral proper, Buddhist parish priests performed death rites throughout the year. Memorial services were routinely performed for thirty-three years following a death. Services were also performed for various classes of deceased people, such as hungry ghosts (Sanskrit, *preta*), ANCESTORS, and women and children who had died during childbirth. Large festivals for the dead, such as the summer Obon festival for ancestors or the Segaki festival for hungry ghosts, marked important moments in each temple's annual ritual calendar. This preoccupation with ritualizing death was intimately tied to the emergence of the Buddhist parish temples during the Tokugawa period. Hereditary parishioners, who associated the parish temple with the proper maintenance of funerary rites and family customs, provided the ritual and economic backbone of Buddhist temples. The parish system in Japan, originally established as a method to monitor Christians, eventually became the basic organizational structure for Japanese Buddhism into the modern period.

*See also:* Nationalism and Buddhism; Temple System in Japan

### Bibliography

- Marcure, Kenneth. "The *Danka* System." *Monumenta Nipponica* 40, no. 1: 39–67.
- Tamamuro Fumio. "Local Society and the Temple-Parishioner Relationship within the Bakufu's Governance Structure." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 28, nos. 3–4 (2001): 260–292.
- Williams, Duncan. "Representation of Zen: A Social and Institutional History of Sōtō Zen Buddhism in Edo Japan." Ph.D. diss. Harvard University, 2000.

DUNCAN WILLIAMS

## PARITTA AND RAKṢĀ TEXTS

*Paritta* (protection) or *rakṣā* (Pāli, *rakka*; protection) are protective texts that keep a person who chants them safe from evil spells, menacing other-worldly creatures, and the dangers of knives, guns, disease, betrayal, fire, and poison. *Parittas* like the *Ratana*, *Maṅgala*, *Mora*, *Dibbamanta*, *Khandha*, *Dhajagga*, and *Āṭānāṭṭiya suttas* are some of the most common texts used in Southeast Asian Buddhism. *Rakṣās* like the *Pañcarakṣā* and sections of the *Candragarbha-sūtra* also fall under this protective invocational genre and are well known by practitioners in India, Tibet, and East Asia. They are important in daily monastic and lay Buddhist life, and collections of these texts, such as the *Pirit Pota* in Sri Lanka or the *Jet Tamnān* in Laos, are found in most homes and monasteries. Any Buddhist who regularly attends monastic ceremonies, or requests monks to bless his or her property or endeavors is familiar with these Pāli and Sanskrit texts, which often serve as subjects for sermons. *Paritta* and *rakṣā* literature has long been associated with ritual action and protective implements, such as sacred string, holy water, candles, AMULETS AND TALISMANS, incense, knives, engraved metal *manta* (Sanskrit, MANTRA) texts—rolled and worn around the neck (Thai, *takrut*)—and the like. *Paritta* and *rakṣā* literature is also the subject of decorative and ritual art in Tibet and East Asia.

Primary textual sources abound for those interested in Buddhist protective texts. There are several places in the earliest Pāli *suttas*, chronicles, and commentaries from the third century B.C.E. to the sixth century C.E. that mention how *parittas* were employed during protective ceremonies. For example, the commentary on *Ratana-sutta* mentions that ĀNANDA sprinkled water from the Buddha's alms bowl as he went through Vesāli reciting the *sutta*. Older canon-

ical texts from the third century B.C.E. to the third century C.E. that also describe *parittas* being used in ceremonies are mentioned in the *Mahāvamsa* (VII 14) when the Buddha is said to have permitted the use of a protective chant to cure a snakebite in the *Vinaya-piṭaka* (II 109–110). As Peter Skilling points out, the *Āṭānāṭṭiya-sutta* of the *Dīghanikāya* is a protective *paritta*. The MILINDAPAÑHA (150, 27) states that the Buddha himself sanctioned the use of these protective texts. The *Dhammapadaṭṭhakathā* (III 6) includes a story in which the Buddha recommends the use of a protective *manta* for monks who are afraid of tree spirits.

Although the differences between the uses of *paritta* texts of South and Southeast Asia and their counterparts—the *rakṣā* texts of India, Tibet, and East Asia—have not been adequately explored, certain MAHĀYĀNA sūtras contain sections that could be called protective texts. Some texts that fall under this rubric are sections of the *Sikṣāsamuccaya* and *Aṣṭasāhasrikā-prajñāpāramitā*, as well as tantric (Tibetan, *rgyud*) texts in the Tibetan Kanjur, such as the *Mahāsitavana-sūtra* and *Bhadrakara-sūtra*. In East Asia, chapter 21 of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), on the supernatural powers of the tathāgata, is also considered a protective text.

The five goddesses of Tibetan and East Asian Buddhism also are the focus of protective texts known loosely as the *Pañcarakṣā*. These texts are hymns that praise and request the protective power of the five goddesses (Mahāprātisārā, Mahāsārapramardiṇī, Mahāmantrānūdhāriṇī, Mahāmantrānusāriṇī, and Mahāmāyūrī). The last, Mahāmāyūrī, became the focus of her own cult, and popular protective texts, such as the fourth-century *Mahāmāyūrī-Vidyārājñī*, were used to invoke her in ritual. These five deities are especially popular among Newar Buddhists in the Kathmandu Valley of Nepal, but they are also depicted on murals in the AJANṬĀ cave complex in India and are the subject of elaborate MAṆḌALAS in Tibet and China. In the various *mikkyo* (esoteric) schools of Japan, Mahāmāyūrī, in particular, is a *myōō* (radiant wisdom ruler) and she is depicted riding on the back of a peacock (who has the ability to kill snakes) and holding two fruits that ward off evil spirits and protect against illness.

In Southeast Asia *parittas* are part of everyday Buddhist monastic and secular life. In modern Thailand *parittas* are chanted at a number of ceremonies and especially at house, water buffalo, and even motorcycle

blessings. In northeastern Thailand these ceremonies often involve a quorum of four monks who chant while holding a white cord that connects their hands to everyone in the room. This cord is also wrapped around a Buddha image and often surrounds the whole room or even the whole house. One end of the cord is submerged in a bowl of water and, after the chanting, a handful of leaves is placed in the water and then used to flick water over those objects to be blessed and the people who attend the ceremony. Protective *yan* (Sanskrit, *yantra*) are drawn with moistened white powder and sealed with small gold leaves and the exhalation of the monk who has chanted. The power of *parittas* lies in their sound and in their role in a protective ceremony, and less (or not at all) in their semantic meaning. In fact, their meaning often has nothing to do with their role and result in a ritual.

The numbers of mantras (Pāli, *manta*) in the various *paritta* collections varied widely before the printing of modern prayer books like the *Royal Chanting Book of Thailand*, the various *Gu Meu Phra Song* of modern Laos, and the *Catubhānavāra* in Burma (Myanmar). Still, the *Ratana*, *Maṅgala*, and *Dibbamanta parittas* have remained at the core of these collections for centuries. The parameters of the *Rakṣā* genre in Tibet and East Asia are more difficult to define and this genre overlaps in content and function with that of DHĀRAṆĪ. Both groups of texts play a significant role in the ritual life of Buddhists across the various schools in Asia.

### Bibliography

- Becchetti, Catherine. *Le Mystère dans les Lettres: Étude sur les yantra bouddhiques du Cambodge et de la Thaïlande*. Bangkok, Thailand: Edition des Cahiers de France, 1991.
- Bizot, François, and Lagirarde, François. *La Pureté par les mots*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1996.
- De Silva, Lily. "Paritta: A Historical and Religious Study of the Buddhist Ceremony for Peace and Prosperity in Sri Lanka." *Spolia Zeylanica (Bulletin of the National Museums of Sri Lanka)*, 36:1 (1981).
- Khanna, Madhu. *Yantra*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1979.
- Nginn, P. S. *Les fêtes profanes et religieuses*. Vientiane, Laos: Éditions du Comte Littéraire, 1967.
- Saddhatissa, H., trans. *The Suttanipāta*. London: Curzon, 1985.
- Saso, Michael. *Homa Rites and Maṅḍala Meditation in Tendai Buddhism*. New Delhi: South Asia Books, 1991.
- Skilling, Peter. "The Rakṣā Literature of the Śrāvākayāna." *Journal of the Pāli Text Society* 15 (1992): 110–180.

- Skilling, Peter. *The Mahāsūtras*. Cambridge, MA: Wisdom, 1994.
- Snodgrass, Adrian. *The Matrix and Diamond World Maṅḍalas in Shingon Buddhism*. New Delhi: Aditya Prakashan, 1988.
- Spiro, Melford. *Burmese Supernaturalism*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1967.
- Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et mandarins: le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Gallimard, 1996.
- Terwiel, B. J. *Monks and Magic: An Analysis of Religious Ceremonies in Central Thailand*. London: Curzon, 1975.

JUSTIN MCDANIEL

## PATH

From the inception of their tradition, Buddhists have conceived of their soteriological regimens as analogous to a "path" (*mārga*). Buddhists from different traditions invariably believed in the power of the *mārga* to provide a tested and viable passage to NIRVĀṆA, and to replicate in those who followed its course verifiable transformative experiences. The idea that religious life primarily involves one's own personal effort in walking an explicit path of training distinguishes the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS from those religions that place pride of place on adherence to stipulated doctrines or the saving grace of a transcendent "other."

The teachings of the Buddha were often referred to as "traces of [the Buddha's] footsteps or tracks" (*prati-padā*), because they were seen as being deliberately left behind by him after he had personally traversed the highway to liberation.

The path is more than a descriptive account of absolute paradigms of religious ideals *in illo tempore*; it also defines prescriptive parameters for religious behavior and spiritual attainment in mundane time, which allows Buddhists of different traditions to articulate their religious experiences in mutually intelligible language. The notion of path helps to organize a highly illusive and subjective realm of personal experience according to normative standards, and provides a heuristic model upon which Buddhist teachers could ground their pedagogy and claim a sense of continuity within the transmitted tradition.

The notion of path contains the simultaneous implication of constancy and elasticity. The Buddha is said to have professed that he was but one of the many enlightened beings since time immemorial who had



walked on this same “ancient path,” making his role more that of a restorer than an innovator. Ever accessible and enduringly relevant to human quandaries, Buddhists describe this path as being discoverable even by those in future eons who were bereft of the benefit of direct Buddhist instruction, seeing the periodic resurrections of the timeless Dharma by future BUDDHAS as a virtual certainty and a reassuring prospect. In this regard, the metaphor of path represents something that is unalterably reliable, a constant that will forever exist, whether or not it is discovered. Since the conundrums besetting all SENTIENT BEINGS are presumed to be the same throughout the ages, attributable to primordial nescience (*avidyā*) and craving (*trṣṇā*), the solution thereof is presumed to be immutable and eternally applicable as well.

On the other hand, the path is also construed by some as elastic and open to potential elaborations and even modifications. It is more than the Buddha’s account of an unchanging, settled course of action to be passively retraced by future generations. The Buddhist path was also seen as in some way originally and ingeniously devised by the Buddha, who had judiciously and expediently plotted its guideposts with considerations specific to both time and individual. This utilitarian view of the path allows for the possibility of different paths with different approaches, so long as they lead to the appropriate goal or the general well-being and betterment of sentient beings. Many Buddhists therefore conceive the path as open to renewal and reinvention by the spiritually qualified in order to address changing religious needs, an approach consistent with the Buddhist strategy of employing diverse UPĀYA (skillful means) in the edification of even the least spiritually inclined. The path as a historical reality, too, was never statically suspended outside the contexts of history, but constantly evolves in dynamic interaction with social and cultural changes. This intrinsic resilience is particularly evidenced by the new categories of soteriological schemata that Buddhism formulated as the religion was transplanted to different geographical regions or responded to the emergence of new traditions.

This tendency to formulate mārga systems as an afterthought to newly arisen doctrines and ideals is contrary to the common expectation that the path should exclusively provide practical guides to the realization of enlightenment. In actuality, the development of new programs of praxis has often been instigated by polemical agendas or by an impulse to provide a sense of coherence, self-containment, and legitimacy to an

ideology that a faction was promoting. Rather than spiritual maps, then, path schemata could at times serve more as hermeneutical devices to relegate or promote, to exclude or incorporate, different teachings and traditions, like KŪKAI’s ten abodes of the mind (*jūjūshin*), which subsumes the whole of Buddhism in a schema that privileges his own school of SHINGON BUDDHISM (Buswell and Gimello, p. 20), or as ceremonies of ritualized and formalized behavior that invoke and reaffirm ancient mystical paradigms, like the initiation procedures into the Sōtō Zen transmission of the mind (Bodiford, pp. 423–424).

The emergence of the MAHĀYĀNA movement led to a plethora of new, elaborate mārga systems. Among these, the status traditionally assigned to the Buddha underwent significant upgrading as the gaping distinction of the BODHISATTVA path and its goal of buddhahood from mainstream Buddhist SOTERIOLOGY and its ideal of arhatship became the hallmark of Mahāyāna’s dramatic self-idealization. Correspondingly, the path that led to such an infinitely more elevated religious goal was also framed quite differently in both quality and projected duration. The arduous and protracted crucibles that a bodhisattva is supposed to endure are exemplified and organized in the uniquely Mahāyāna scheme of the ten stages or grounds (*bhūmi*) of the bodhisattva path: the stages of joy, immaculacy, splendor, brilliance, invincibility, immediacy, transcendence, immovability, eminence, and dharmacLOUD. In this schema, each stage is primarily defined by marvelous powers, transcendental wisdom, and altruistic qualities in increasingly mythic proportion and is to be completed in exponentially greater numbers of eons. The Mahāyāna tradition’s understanding of its soteriological objectives similarly was expanded immeasurably to embody the loftiest inspirational models, rather than strictly prescribing something that is readily accessible in the here and now. Buddhahood, the radically reenvisioned product of this expansively reconstituted path, stood in the most hyperbolic contrast to the now polemicized HĪNAYĀNA ideal personality of the ARHAT, in terms of a buddha’s near-omnipotent capacity to save all beings and his myriad other wondrous qualities.

### Doctrinal implications of the path

Just as a path is delineated according to fixed coordinates, the Buddhists maintained that their religious path is based on the bedrock of certain cosmically operative laws that are eternal, inviolate, and efficacious. According to Buddhism, these laws—such as KARMA

(ACTION) and its fruition, anātman (no-self) and ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), and PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) or the conditioned coarising of suffering and of psychophysical existence—are discernible and logical, and open to rational and meditative scrutiny, because they are the organizing principles of reality itself rather than the haphazard and fantastic figments of personal mystical experiences. Since the Buddhist spiritual path was said to pattern itself after these universal principles, the path is also held out to be fundamentally rational and logical in that it is propped on the grounds of a proper diagnosis of human problems, the accurate pinpointing of the source of those problems, the prognosis of a problem-free condition, and the solution tending to the eradication of the problem—the contents of the paradigmatic Buddhist soteriological formula, the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS.

In distinction to non-Buddhist soteriological solutions—which are seen as either futile or at least inefficient because of their failure to properly identify and base their solutions on operative and governing natural laws—the four noble truths represent instead an attempt to plot religious development in accordance with certifiable causal relations so that the path is specifically and efficaciously tailored to target the real cause of suffering. The noble eightfold path by the same token is understood to be “right,” not so much because it stands in opposition to what is morally wrong but because it is proclaimed on the principle of the middle way—a religious attitude grounded on the experientially sensible, which is free from the extremes of such categorical assertions as eternalism and nihilism, dogmatism and skepticism, self-indulgence and self-denial, and so on (Kalupahana, pp. 121 and 152). Denouncing blind FAITH in hearsay, metaphysical reasoning, and divine revelation, the Buddha was widely seen by his followers not as a purveyor of arbitrary ritual injunctions but as one whose direct experiential insight conforms well to both reason and the observable principles of all phenomena (Jayatilleke, pp. 169–204). Just as the word *Dharma* in its Indian religious and philosophical context represents both the underlying principles governing all phenomena and the religious teachings deriving thereon, the term *mārga* to a large extent is synonymous and connotes the same dual implication. The four noble truths therefore anchor personal religious action on external natural laws, making the realization of “the way things are” equivalent to the attainment of ultimate liberation and purification.

Although reason and analysis were rarely presumed in the Buddhist tradition to be sufficient in themselves

to engender liberating insight—in fact some schools of Buddhism at times saw them as impediments to be transcended before genuine, nonconceptual wisdom could set in—a consistent attempt was made to integrate the conative aspect of the path with its cognitive aspects. In other words, the four noble truths were enumerated in such a way so as to make them congruous with the Buddha’s analysis of existential realities as encapsulated in the scheme of, say, *pratītyasamutpāda*, so that Buddhist praxis is presented as an ineluctable course of action deriving from the proper understanding of the way things are.

These are not just “truths” in the sense that they are distinguished from what is rationally incoherent or incompatible with epistemological facts. Buddhists have always viewed this “proper understanding” to be more than just a neutral intellectual assent to what is factual: It actually carries a compelling ethical dimension that informs and structures religious behavior so that the latter is carried out in accordance with the ethical efficacy of the external natural laws. Thus, to see reality is to understand the imperative to walk the path, in the same manner that these reified Buddhist sets of truths, like the twelvefold chain of dependent origination and the four noble truths, were not intended to be metaphysical expositions, but instead psycho-ethical analyses that helped to galvanize spiritual action. This was the reason that the Buddha proclaimed that penetration into any one of the noble truths amounts to penetration into all four: Since the fourth noble truth is the prescribed praxis (conative) after the diagnosis and prognosis of the problem were identified in the first three truths (cognitive), the conative and cognitive aspects of the path are in this way seen to be complementary and mutually validating. In this framework of understanding, to divorce one’s religious action from empirical insight is to continue to allow the assertion of, and the search for, the wrongly posited absolutistic substance (*svabhāva*) to further create delusions that are in turn the propelling force of wrong actions and SAṂSĀRA.

On the other hand, Buddhist soteriological programs often conversely posit PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM) as the consummating finality of the *mārga* rather than the path’s initial guiding vision. This seeming ambivalence on whether cognitive exercise of insight or purificatory practice constitutes the body of the path gives rise to variant explanations of BODHI (AWAKENING) as, alternatively, the result of a gnoseological realization of reality, the overcoming and abandonment of mental defilements, or the spontaneous maturation

of wholesome karmic seeds. Take, for example, the penchant of mainstream Buddhist schools to define spiritually accomplished people in four distinct gradations: the so-called four noble persons of *stream-enterer*, *once-returner*, *nonreturner*, and *arhat*. At least within this scheme, the completion of the path is characterized as entailing both an epiphanic instant of insight *and* the extended application of explicit procedures of mental purification. The progression from the first to the fourth grades of perfection is usually defined in terms of the eradication of ten specific psychological “fettors” (*saṃyojanaprahāṇa*). The abandonment of the first three fetters—the view of an (abiding) personality, belief in the efficacy of rites and rituals (and other religious exertions that are causally irrelevant to the removal of suffering), and skeptical DOUBT—is associated with the establishment of right view and is said to be achieved at the very moment when supramundane knowledge is ignited (once the false view of personality is eliminated, the other two fetters vanish instantly). But the remaining seven fetters, such as lust and ill will, are generally said to be so deep-seated and lingering that they could only be subdued, attenuated, and eventually eradicated through the enactment of a full soteriological regimen.

### Different models of the path

The path’s functionality can be understood structurally in several models. The first assumes the path constitutes the simultaneous cultivation of various mutually balanced activities, each indispensably addressing and governing a particular aspect of the spiritual life. One such soteriological program is the noble eightfold path (*ārya-aṣṭāṅgikamārga*) of right view, right intention, right speech, right conduct, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right concentration. Its layout of the constituent practices on the path does not necessarily imply the sequential order in which these stages are to be cultivated, but is rather an indication that the Buddhist path enjoins a holistic lifestyle that comprehensively tends to all facets of an individual’s daily activity, whether mental, physical, verbal, or spiritual.

The second model conceptualizes the path as a spiraling, self-augmenting process, with each step in the soteriological program being implicitly embodied and reinforced by subsequent steps. Each round of this spiraling path goes through the same constituent sets of practices, but with all of them becoming correspondingly strengthened in foundational and supportive power to the other sets. The rationale behind the work-

ing principle of the “three trainings” (*trīṇi śikṣāṇi*) is illustrative of this model of upwardly spiraling spiritual progression. The first of these trainings, *morality* (*śīla*, consisting of basic ethical codes like nonviolence, rules on the use of daily requisites, such as moderation in eating, and the restraint of the senses and of other grossly distracting and disquieting activities), is understood to condition one’s mental and physical states so that they become amenable to the second training: *mental absorption* (*samādhi*) or *tranquility* (*śamatha*), whose highly refined cultivation of concentration and equanimity requires a pliant and elated psychophysical state that is not dulled by immoderation or burdened with anguish. Minimizing mental hindrances correspondingly magnifies the mental clarity that is the direct result of tranquility practice; this makes possible the exercise of the third training: *prajñā* (wisdom) or *insightful discernment* (*VIPASSANĀ*; SANSKRIT, *VIPASĀNĀ*) of the impermanent, unsatisfactory, selfless nature of existential reality. The transcendent wisdom kindled thereby in its turn deepens the practitioner’s conviction to establish himself or herself on a firm moral foundation, rendering in him or her a profoundly subtle and harmonious mindset that is reinforcing and naturally compatible with the first training. This positive loop feeds on itself, building momentum as each of the constituent trainings conduces to more advanced ones and, at the same time, injects new vigor into, and qualitatively reorients, the antecedent ones.

Since the noble eightfold path has often been organized and interpreted in the framework of the three trainings (e.g., right intention as belonging to the first training in morality, right concentration to training in tranquility, and so on), it shows that traditional Buddhist HERMENEUTICS sought to correlate at least some of these alternative *mārga* schemata. In fact, all these modular understandings of the Buddhist path have large areas of overlap and each soteriological scheme could be readily classified into more than one model.

Third, contrary to what the metaphor of a “path” would intuitively suggest, the Buddhist *mārga* has been depicted in a “sudden,” or subitist, model by some traditions, entailing a momentous spiritual vision that instantaneously transports the practitioner beyond the conditioned (*saṃskṛta*) realm of gradual, deliberate exertions. Robert E. Buswell, Jr., and Robert Gimello describe several scenarios in which such an “anti-*mārga*” model prevailed:

Thus do Buddhist texts abound in such seeming self-contradictions as the claim that the fruit (*phala*) of prac-

tice is actually a prevenient cause (*hetu*) of its own causal practices, the assertion that practice and realization are really indistinguishable from each other, the claim that sudden realization precedes and enables gradual practice, and even the conviction that all prideful confidence in the sufficiency of one's "own power" (*jiriki*) as exercised in "difficult practices" (*nangyō*) must be relinquished humbly in the "easy practice" (*igyō*) whereby one accepts the "other power" (*tariki*) of the transcendent. (Buswell and Gimello, p. 24)

The final proposed model conceptualizes the path as a linear sequence of increasingly refined stages of psycho-ethical amelioration from rudimentary to more advanced practices, with former steps succeeded by those that follow and abandoned after they have served their purpose. This pragmatic view of the nature of religious practice lends itself to the traditional Buddhist reluctance to assign absolutistic and overriding value to any set of practices as an end in itself. Like the individual footsteps that form a track, the different practices suitable at different points in spiritual development are not to be mistaken as definitive endpoints, but only as onward-leading phases in a continuous process of development that one passes through rather than abides in.

In this depiction of the path as a linear progression, the ultimate value of spiritual practices has little to do with insuperable religious ideals in and of themselves. Their worth lies instead in their value in producing and sustaining more advanced forms of cultivation. If one unduly clings to these transitional trainings after they have served their purpose, they would only become self-inhibiting affectations and conceptual burdens rather than the expedient, liberating devices they were meant to be—hence, the ubiquitous parable in Buddhist texts of the person letting go of the raft as soon as the river is crossed and the famous maxim "even what is good has to be abandoned, let alone what is evil" (*dhammā pi . . . pahātabbā pageva adhammā*).

Such a model of successive advancement is found in the so-called five paths paradigm: the path of equipment, the path of preparation, the path of seeing, the path of cultivation, and the path of completion (alternately called the path beyond instruction), with each "path" serving as a preparatory and prerequisite step to its immediately subsequent path. At the most elementary path of equipment, one is expected to engage in meritorious actions that will plant the wholesome karmic seeds that are conducive and necessary to spiritual maturation. But after one has arrived at the second path of preparation, where one is supposed to apply oneself to more refined, formal trainings, such

as mental cultivation, the actions appropriate to the first path would now be a distraction, rather than a help. Once one has entered the stage of cultivation, which entails the actualization and implementation of the proper dharma one "sees" on the preceding path, one need not revert back to the former stage to repeat the awakening experience, because the insight engendered thereby is generally held out to be final and not liable to regression.

It is practically inconceivable to try to understand the Buddhist doctrinal outlook and programs of practice without appreciating and making reference to their conception of the path. Its modal varieties and richness in meanings were naturally the result of many centuries of development, reflecting the perennial Buddhist fascination with the theme and its diverse interpretations, but the basic assumptions and spiritual ethos it carries, as outlined previously, have also given Buddhism whatever degree of consistency it has enjoyed.

*See also: Psychology*

### **Bibliography**

- Bodiford, William. "Dharma Transmission in Sōtō Zen: Manzan Dōhaku's Reform Movement." *Monumenta Nipponica* 46, no. 4 (1991): 423–451.
- Bronkhorst, Johannes. *The Two Traditions of Meditation in Ancient India*. New Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1993.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., and Gimello, Robert M., eds. *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Gethin, Rupert. *The Buddhist Path to Awakening: A Study of the Bodhi-Pakkhiyā Dhammā*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1992.
- Gethin, Rupert. *The Foundations of Buddhism*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Gregory, Peter N., ed. *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Gregory, Peter N., ed. *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Thought*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Jayatilke, J. N. *Early Buddhist Theory of Knowledge*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1963.
- Kalupahana, David J. *A History of Buddhist Philosophy: Continuities and Discontinuities*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- King, W. L. *Theravāda Meditation: The Buddhist Transformation of Yoga*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1980.

- Mahāthera Henepola Gunaratana. *The Jhānas: In Theravāda Buddhist Meditation*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1988.
- Nānārāma. *The Seven Stages of Purification and The Insight Knowledges: A Guide to the Progressive Stages of Buddhist Meditation*. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Buddhist Publication Society, 1983.
- Ruegg, David S. *Buddha-nature, Mind, and the Problem of Gradualism in a Comparative Perspective: On the Transmission and Reception of Buddhism in India and Tibet*. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1989.
- Takeuchi, Yohinori, et al., eds. *Buddhist Spirituality: Indian, Southeast Asian, Tibetan, Early Chinese*. New York: Crossroad, 1997.
- Thanissaro Bhikkhu. *The Wings to Awakening*. Barr, MA: Dhamma Dana, 1996.
- Vetter, Tilmann. *The Ideas and Meditative Practices of Early Buddhism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1988.

WILLIAM CHU

PATIENCE. See *Pāramitā (Perfection)*

## PERSECUTIONS

Buddhism has been the object of persecution throughout its history. While this often involved direct religious persecution (e.g., persecution at the hands of dominant iconoclastic religions because of the devotional focus on the BUDDHA IMAGE), if one investigates the context of any particular episode, one may detect nonreligious factors that led to, allowed for, or exacerbated persecution. Such factors include the role of Buddhism in authorizing secular power and acting as the potential and actual supporter of political rivals; the power of Buddhist institutions as wealthy landowners, including the suspected and actual use of fortresslike monasteries as banks or armories; the involvement of monastic groups in warfare, including militarized monks and MONASTIC MILITIAS; Buddhism's role as a mediator of political views at the grassroots level; Buddhism's international dimension and potential representation of foreign rather than national interests, along with its emphasis on PILGRIMAGE within and beyond national boundaries; the fact that important sacred sites, objects of devotion, or esteemed religious leaders could develop into rival foci of power or could reflect local rather than national interests; and Buddhism's traditional role in EDUCATION,

making it the source of potentially conflicting views and independent thinking. The fact that it is possible to draw selectively on aspects of Buddhism to affirm virtually all types of governance and political ideology has also contributed to its continued entanglement in power struggles in the huge transformations that have swept the modern world.

In some cases, persecutions were aimed against the representatives of the religion itself—the institutions, texts, sacred sites, or people. At other times, persecutions were waged against groups with which Buddhism overlapped or was coterminous.

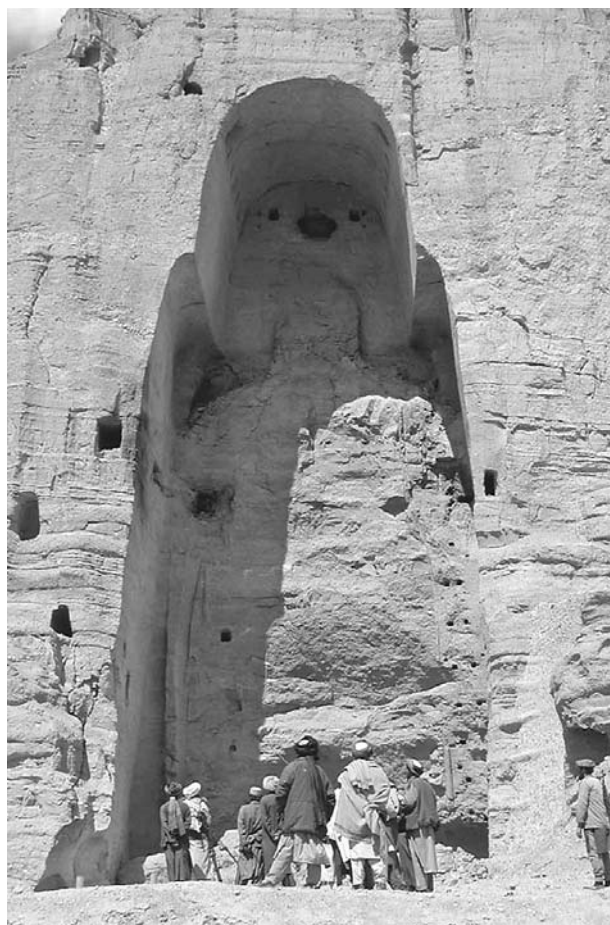
### Bāmiyān

The relative roles of religious persecution and the broader factors listed above can be hard to identify. Let us take by way of example the well-publicized attack on the remaining traces of Buddhism in Afghanistan, the demolition in BĀMIYĀN by the Taliban in March 2001 of the two colossal Gandhāran Buddha statues from the third and fourth centuries C.E. Taliban foreign minister Wakil Ahmad Mutawakel described this act as an internal religious affair, stating that “false idols” should be destroyed according to Islamic teachings. While some Islamic scholars point out that Islam does not prescribe the destruction of idols, and some demonstrate that the images of Hinduism and Buddhism are not idols in the sense intended in the Qur'an, iconoclasm within Islam can be based both on the injunctions on Muslims not to worship idols and on repeated historic precedents, starting with Muhammad's destruction of the images around the Ka'ba. A 1996 Taliban ruling against idolatry prohibited portraits in public places. Nevertheless, since the Bāmiyān statues had been standing for centuries in a predominantly Muslim country, since some Islamic powers have advocated tolerance toward sacred objects of other religions, and since the Taliban had as recently as 1999 identified the statues as part of the pre-Islamic heritage of Afghanistan rather than as current objects of idolatry, one must look for further causes underlying this event.

In addition to the reactionary Islam represented by the Taliban, there are two other significant factors. One is the Taliban's long-standing suppression of the Hazara community in the region of Bāmiyān. The other is the international isolation of the Taliban—only Pakistan recognized the Taliban's right to govern. In addition, in February 2001 the United Nations imposed new sanctions on Afghanistan for harboring terrorists. The importance of the Bāmiyān statues for world her-



A visitor in 1997 approaches one of the two giant Buddha statues carved from the face of a cliff at Bamiyān, Afghanistan. © Muzammil Pasha-Files/Reuters/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.



Taliban soldiers and visiting journalists before a niche that had contained one of the giant Buddha statues at Bamiyān after their destruction in March 2001. © Sayed Salahuddin/Reuters/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

itage meant that they were destroyed as “false idols” in a political sense; the destruction served as a message of the Taliban’s defiance to the world.

### Premodern persecutions

**Puṣyamitra.** Our ability to interpret the reasons behind a persecution depends very much on the nature of our sources. The earliest recorded episode of the persecution of Buddhism came at the hands of the Indian king Puṣyamitra in the second century B.C.E. The event is related in Buddhist literary works that reached their current form centuries later. Puṣyamitra was a brahmin who murdered and usurped the position of the last king of the Mauryan empire. The most famous Mauryan king had been Aśoka, who lived a century earlier. The legend of Aśoka’s patronage of Buddhism has been perpetuated in Buddhist traditions and continues to provide a role model for Buddhist rulers to

this day. Among other great acts of piety, Aśoka had the relics of the Buddha redistributed throughout his vast empire and re-enshrined under eighty-four thousand new STŪPAS, the commemorative funerary structures that form the fulcrum of the sacred landscape of Buddhism. Puṣyamitra desired to become even more legendary than Aśoka. Realizing that he could not compete in virtue, he decided to match virtue with vice, and set about destroying monasteries and stūpas, burning books, and massacring monks and nuns.

The destruction of the glories and institutions associated with the royal lineage that Puṣyamitra had replaced can be understood in terms of his wish to undermine rival sources of authority. Puṣyamitra himself celebrated the horse sacrifice, the supreme ritual demonstration of dominion in brahmanical Hinduism, the dominant rival of Buddhism for much of its history in South and Southeast Asia. Nevertheless, the narrative also reflects another model—that of

traditional Indian drama in which adverse events result from the vices of the king. According to this narrative, Puṣyamitra is driven by jealousy, and although the immediate victims of his persecutions are Buddhists, his acts backfire. Puṣyamitra sets a bounty on the head of all Buddhist monks, and an ever growing number of heads are presented to him. But the inexhaustible supply of heads is the product of a miracle rather than real beheadings, and the resulting bounty payouts bankrupts the royal treasury. When Puṣyamitra later tries to destroy the bodhi tree, its protective spirit has Puṣyamitra and his armies crushed to death beneath a mountain.

This theme of the cruel but ultimately self-destructive whims of kings is widely attested elsewhere in Buddhist literature. It is a recurrent theme in the JĀTAKA tales, which teach morals through stories of the Buddha's former births. The VINAYA also describes the dangers for monks of associating with kings, an association that has proved both a source of Buddhism's success and a trigger for its suppression.

**Zoroastrian persecution.** The earliest persecution for which there is contemporaneous historical evidence took place under the Sassanian dynasty, which came to power in Iran in the third century C.E. The context was the centralization of power. We know most about Sassanian efforts to reform and unify the indigenous Persian religion of Zoroastrianism by establishing a single Avestan canon, destroying all royal sacred fires other than its own, establishing a new calendar, and replacing cult images with sacred fires. The iconoclasm extended to images of other religions. Although Zoroastrianism and Buddhism had coexisted peacefully in Iran since the Kushan period (first to early third century C.E.), the dominant Zoroastrianism felt increasingly threatened by other proselytizing religions, including Christianity, Buddhism, and Judaism. The Sassanian high priest Kirder proudly records in an inscription that Buddhists, along with Jews, Brahmins, various types of Christians, and Manichaeans were being removed from the land. The eleventh-century Muslim historian Al-Biruni, who made use of Zoroastrian sources, claims that Buddhism was widespread in Iran until this persecution. The long-term result of Sassanian iconoclasm and the subsequent rise to dominance of Islam, heavily influenced by Zoroastrianism, is that the only traces of Buddhism in the region are cave temples and place names, such as Naubihar, which means "new Buddhist monastery."

**The White Huns.** Further pre-Islamic persecution of Buddhism took place under the White Huns, also known as the Huna or Hephthalites. This tribe, thought to have originated in southwestern Mongolia, invaded areas of Central Asia and India during the fifth and sixth centuries. The invasion of Afghanistan in 515 C.E. by Mihirakula (502–542) devastated Buddhist strongholds in the Gandhāran region along the SILK ROAD. The resulting diminished state of Buddhism can be traced in the accounts of successive Chinese pilgrims. At the beginning of the fifth century C.E., the Chinese monk FAXIAN documents the flourishing state of Buddhism in the region. In 520, after the Mihirakula attacks, Song Yan records monasteries in ruins and heavy population losses, which had become total desertion and ruination by the time XUANZANG traveled that route in the seventh century. Nevertheless, finds of coins from later periods in stūpas of the region indicate that patronage of Buddhism did continue beyond this date.

**The demise of Buddhism in India.** The most famous persecution of Buddhism was that which led to its demise in India, namely, the series of Islamic expansions into the subcontinent from the eighth to the fourteenth centuries. The conquest of the remaining Pāla and Sena dynasties of Bengal and Bihar in the twelfth to the thirteenth centuries brought an end to the last powerful Buddhist kingdoms of India and sent many Buddhists fleeing to safer regions in the Himalayas and mainland Southeast Asia. Although the increasing popularity of other Indian religions, such as devotional Hinduism, and the merging of non-institutional Buddhist practice into the broader Indian religious milieu are important factors in the disappearance of Buddhism in India, several Muslim chronicles of the time portray the impact of repeated massacres, the looting of monasteries, the destruction of Buddhist images, and the burning of books, people, and libraries.

These events had a major impact on the shape of Buddhism in other regions. In particular, they eliminated the South Asian mainland as a source of Buddhism for East, Central, and Southeast Asia. Tibetan and Newar Buddhism preserved most fully the features of Indian Buddhism of the medieval period. Meanwhile, the Sri Lankan victory over the Hindu kingdoms of South India, led Sri Lanka to become the dominant source of Buddhist authority in mainland Southeast Asia, while in insular Southeast Asia, Islam became the dominant religion. Buddhism was not completely

eliminated from the South Asian mainland at this time. It has continued to maintain a presence in peripheral regions in the Himalayas, mostly dominated by the culture and Buddhism of Tibet. To a limited extent, Buddhism also retained a presence until the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries in other pockets, including port areas on the southeast coast, where people traded with THERAVĀDA countries.

### Premodern East and Central Asia

In regions often regarded as the strongholds of Buddhism beyond India, namely Tibet, China, Korea, and Japan, periods of flourishing patronage of Buddhism have nevertheless often given way to (sometimes severe) persecution.

The first diffusion of Buddhism to Tibet ended with the ninth-century civil war between factions loyal to the indigenous BON religion on the one side and Buddhism on the other, an episode remembered in Buddhist histories as the beginning of two centuries of persecution.

In China, arguments against Buddhism almost always related to its status as a foreign religion that therefore undermined Confucian values, the emperor, and the state. The golden era of longevity of pre-Buddhist emperors is adduced as testimony to Buddhism's intrinsic threat to stability. The first recorded Chinese persecution took place under Emperor Wu or Taizi (r. 423–452) of the Northern Wei dynasty (386–534). During the suppression of a rebellion in 446, a cache of arms was discovered at a Buddhist monastery, and Buddhism was seen as loyal to the rebels. Further discoveries indicative of lax monastic practices, including wealth banked at the monastery by locals, were cited as additional reasons for subsequent persecution in which monks and nuns were executed, as was any person who harbored them. Buddhist images were smashed, and monasteries, pagodas, and books were burnt. Although a gradual relaxation took place, Buddhism was proscribed again during the Northern Zhou dynasty (557–588).

State domination of Buddhism continued under the Tang dynasty (618–907) and ORDINATION was forbidden in 845 during the so-called Huichang persecution. Over 260,000 monks and nuns were forcibly returned to lay life and hundreds of monasteries were destroyed. After this time, restrictions controlled the number of ordinations allowed and set age limits, prohibiting adult males under the age of forty from being ordained. Periodic crackdowns on monasteries

and ordinations occurred during the twelfth century under the Song dynasty (960–1279). The leaders of the Ming dynasty (1368–1644), which imposed hard labor for unauthorized ordinations in the fifteenth century, also persecuted Tibetan Buddhists in Chinese territories. Successive Chinese governments from the fourteenth to the eighteenth century suppressed, often brutally, intermittent rebellions led by the White Lotus Society, a secret millenarian religious group that appealed to the poor and predicted the advent of the future buddha Maitreya.

Mongol invasions of Korea in the thirteenth century devastated the country, destroying Buddhist monasteries, art, and the famous Koryŏ Buddhist canon. Because the wealth accumulated by the monasteries during centuries of state support gave them too strong an influence in national affairs, the Chŏson dynasty (1392–1910) officially promoted Confucianism. The dynasty's anti-Buddhist sentiment developed into full-scale persecution in the fifteenth century. Buddhism suffered again, as did other aspects of Korea's culture and economy, after the Japanese invasions in the sixteenth century. Further persecution occurred during the Japanese occupation beginning in 1910, during which Japanese forms of Buddhism were advanced to supplant Korean forms, especially in urban centers.

In Japan, the militarization of monasteries and their participation in feudal power structures led to competition between schools. By the eleventh century, rivalries among Tendai and Nara monasteries frequently resulted in armed conflicts. Buddhist figures that were regarded as threats to national stability, including HŌNEN (1133–1212) and NICHIREN (1222–1282), were suppressed or sent into exile. In further reaction to its militarization and political involvement, Buddhism was suppressed in the sixteenth to seventeenth centuries, particularly under the warlord Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582), who destroyed thousands of temples and massacred their inhabitants.

The founding of the Tokugawa military government in 1603 brought stability to the Buddhist establishment in Japan. All families had to register with a Buddhist temple; affiliation became fixed and the temples administered taxes. This development came at the expense of Christian missionaries who were associated with European political ambitions and were thus persecuted as a first step in Japan's two hundred years of isolationism. When the Meiji regime assumed power in 1868, its first act was to disestablish Buddhism and



to separate the worship of local gods from Buddhist temples. These policies, which created Shintō as an independent religion, resulted in the destruction of thousands of Buddhist temples.

### School rivalry in Sri Lanka

Persecution resulting from rivalries between different Buddhist traditions also occurred in Sri Lanka before the twelfth-century unification of the Mahāvihāra by Parākramabāhu I. After unification, monks of rival schools took fresh ordination in the Mahāvihāra, losing all previous rank. The Pāli canon came to be treated as orthodox, while the Abhayagirivihāra and Jetavana became associated with the more inclusive MAHĀYĀNA texts.

The *Nikāyaśāṅgraha* also records the third-century persecution of the Abhayagirivihāra by Goṭhābhaya, who burned their books and branded (marked as criminals) the expelled monks. The *Mahāvamsa* records how Goṭhābhaya's successor, Mahāsenā, temporarily reversed royal patronage in favor of the Abhayagirivihāra. The *Nikāyaśāṅgraha* further records the decimation of the mysterious blue-robe sect, a form of tantric Buddhism, in Southern India under King Śrī Harṣa: "Pretending to be convinced, he sent for the blue-robed brethren and their books, and having got them with the books into a house, he made a fire-offering of house and all" (Fernando, p. 19).

These chronicles, which are recorded in the Mahāvihāra tradition, naturally attribute persecution of their own tradition to evil monks, and the persecution of rivals as a triumph over corruption. Nevertheless, the process described appears to be similar in each case. After consecration of a king, particularly after victory in a major military campaign, the king sought to "purify" the saṅgha in emulation of Aśoka.

### European colonial period

From the sixteenth to the twentieth century, the European colonial powers managed to undermine Buddhism through a subtle structure of institutional persecution. Mechanisms for the implicit promotion of Christianity included the establishment of secular and Christian education systems designed for colonial administration, the rewarding of conversion with promotion and employment, nonsupport for state-saṅgha interaction, and failure to set protocols for lay support of Buddhism. Active persecution also occurred, particularly in the early days of European colonization. These patterns were especially evident in

Sri Lanka, beginning with the suppression of Buddhism by Portuguese Catholics in the sixteenth century, and continuing through the active and then implicit promotion of Protestantism, first by the Dutch and later by the British.

Attitudes favoring Christians continued to influence events even after the colonial period. Suppression of Buddhism by the American-backed government in the former French colony of South Vietnam led to the well-known Buddhist SELF-IMMOLATION protests in 1963. The Catholic government was in power in part because of Vatican pressure on the United States to prevent the democratic elections that would have given mandate to the moderate Marxist Ho Chi Minh. President Diem aimed to destroy rival religious groups by passing legislation that gave preferential status to Catholics and prevented the practice and teaching of other religions. The persecution of the majority Buddhist population, including the torture and murder of tens of thousands of Vietnamese and the incarceration in concentration camps of hundreds of thousands, came to a head when Diem prohibited the carrying of religious banners on the Buddha's birthday. This restriction contrasted with the flying of the Vatican flag in celebration of the Catholic archbishop, who was Diem's brother, only a few days earlier. Diem's troops fired directly into Buddhist crowds, and mass hunger strikes and other protests followed. The self-immolation of the monk Thich Quang Duc in 1963 in full view of the international press brought the plight of Vietnamese Buddhists to the world's newspapers and television screens, eventually forcing the U.S. government to publicly distance itself from Diem's religious policies.

### Communism

The most significant ideology affecting religions in twentieth-century Asia has been communism. Although Buddhism sometimes fared marginally better than other religions, the overall damage has been great because many of the areas affected by communism were traditional Buddhist strongholds.

Some non-communist governments, such as those in Thailand and Indonesia, actively encouraged particular forms of Buddhism by way of defense against communism. In Thailand this entailed undermining some forms of Buddhist practice, including WILDERNESS MONKS whose traditional domain was the poor and remote northeast, which bordered countries with Marxist governments. This is an example of the persecution of a group within Buddhism because it was believed to be coterminous with a different target, namely com-

unist insurgents. Other governments, such as that of China, which occupied Tibet and eastern Southeast Asia, have actively persecuted Buddhism. Maoist terrorists in Nepal have also targeted religion.

Communist China did not initially seek to wipe out religion, but to wean people from it gradually as economic and social reforms made the prop of religion unnecessary. In fact, the 1949 constitution advocated freedom of religious belief, and Buddhist institutions were harnessed for welfare work and to educate society about new government policies. The younger generation of monks was particularly enthusiastic, given that the highest ethical value of Buddhism—compassion—could find expression in the ideals of egalitarianism and social uplift, which communism espoused.

Nevertheless, this cooperation with communism undermined the distinctive features of most forms of Buddhism. Monks and nuns had to abandon their traditional “unproductive” roles and undertake activities that were traditionally prohibited for Buddhist monastics, such as farm and factory work. Through the land reform act of 1950, feudal land ownership was replaced by communalization, and monasteries and nunneries lost their sources of revenue. Monasteries were turned into factories, communal food halls, military bases, and government education centers. Furthermore, the government made little distinction between “religion” and “superstition” when attempting to suppress the latter. Government-controlled Buddhist organizations discouraged festivals, offerings to deities, and the burning of paper money for the deceased—all key features of traditional Buddhism. The policy that loyalty to the state was a higher value than religious belief meant that religious activities could be discouraged as a hindrance to productivity.

Moreover, measures taken to ensure that all religious statements were in line with party politics eliminated freedom of expression. The Communist government monitored the recruitment of monks, and their freedom of movement, necessary for pilgrimage, was severely restricted. In a short time, Buddhism was effectively dismantled and transformed into an instrument of the state. By the commencement of the Cultural Revolution in 1966, any pretext of religious tolerance was abandoned, and all personal or material expressions of religion were outlawed and destroyed.

The enactment of these policies in Tibet moved at a slower pace. Communist China’s 17-Point Plan, negotiated with Tenzin Gyatso, the fourteenth DALAI

LAMA, in 1950, protected religion and monasteries from communalism, and China pursued a policy of gradual transformation from the top, with the involvement of highly esteemed Buddhist leaders. This approach changed when Mao Zedong encouraged rapid collectivization during the mid-1950s. Opposition to these reforms led to a bloody uprising involving monks from prestigious monasteries in Lhasa. The Chinese army responded with force, the Dalai Lama fled to India, and China abandoned its more lenient policy on Tibet. Religious property was confiscated, religious buildings were destroyed, and monks and nuns were imprisoned, disrobed, or put to alternative work. Still, it was not until the Cultural Revolution that the practice of Buddhism by individuals, so central to Tibetan culture, was banned outright in Tibet, as elsewhere in China. After the late 1970s, Chinese policy toward Tibetan Buddhism gradually softened in the hope of persuading Tibetans to accept Chinese rule. The failure of negotiations with the Tibetan government in exile, however, has triggered a hardening of control since the mid-1990s.

The Chinese pattern of initially using Buddhism for its own ends, then suppressing it, has been mirrored in other communist countries. The saṅgha of Laos had already become politicized, with French encouragement, as part of its defense against the Japanese from the 1920s until the 1940s. When Laos was returned to French colonial occupation in 1946, active members of the Lao Issara, the national independence movement, sought refuge in Thailand. The saṅgha, meanwhile, could promote anticolonial sentiment as an aspect of Buddhist teaching, while also collecting funds for Lao Issara under the cover of the traditional donations given to temples on holy days. After independence, the royalist government of Laos formed a coalition with the Marxist party, the Pathet Lao, in 1957. The Pathet Lao then negotiated the Ministry of Religious Affairs as one of its portfolios, allowing the Pathet Lao to further politicize the saṅgha in its favor.

Monastic teachings reach all levels of society, and the infiltration of the saṅgha by Pathet Lao cadres was relatively straightforward because of the tradition of unrestricted ordinations. Those seeking ordination often came from the same groups most susceptible to Marxist ideology: young men from relatively poor rural backgrounds, who traditionally sought ordination as a means of education and social advancement, but who were excluded from the secular education and economic development experienced by the urban elite. When the royalist government responded by

instituting tighter controls on monks, the Pathet Lao could play the defender of religious freedom. By this time, it was too late for the royalist party to regain the authority it once had amongst the saṅgha. When the Pathet Lao formed its own government in 1975, it used the saṅgha to legitimize its increasing monopoly on power. Monks fled to Thailand to avoid being sent to reeducation camps that effectively turned Buddhist preaching into education in government ideology, and the rigorously controlled saṅgha lost credibility among the laity, which had traditionally supported it and from whom its members were recruited.

The persecutions of the Khmer Rouge in Cambodia were far more extreme than those of the Pathet Lao. As part of the Khmer Rouge goal to transform Cambodia into a truly socialist republic within the space of a few years, Pol Pot oversaw the wholesale destruction of Cambodian society and culture between 1975 and 1978. People were reeducated to not give alms to monks, monks were forcibly laicized, Buddhist rituals were forbidden, and monasteries and libraries were destroyed. Any monk suspected of resistance was executed. Few Cambodian monks survived these years of hard labor, mass starvation, and extermination, which saw the death of an estimated one quarter of the Cambodian population. Although some monks found refuge abroad, more than 90 percent of Cambodia's Buddhist literary heritage was extirpated.

Religion continued to be heavily controlled under the Vietnamese-backed government after 1979, and it is only since the reinstatement of the monarchy in 1991 that Buddhism entered a phase of revival in Cambodia.

The modern world's improved communications, the attendant potential for state intervention, and the mass availability of educational systems that embody an intellectual disdain toward religion, have meant that, to some extent, Buddhism had already begun to lose esteem even before communists came to power. Even where Buddhism is not under attack, modernity has undermined the dominant traditional Buddhism of ritual and worship in favor of philosophy and those aspects of Buddhism that can be mapped onto modern scientific thought and global ethics. To some extent Buddhism has been defended because of the role it has played as a motivating force and as a form of cultural identity. During the twentieth century, these aspects of Buddhism were harnessed both by independence movements that brought to an end the European colonial era and by nationalist governments

that drew their mandate from an ethnically Buddhist majority.

*See also:* Christianity and Buddhism; Colonialism and Buddhism; Communism and Buddhism; Decline of the Dharma; Islam and Buddhism; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements; Modernity and Buddhism; Politics and Buddhism; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Syncretic Sects: Three Teachings

### Bibliography

- Ball, W. "How Far Did Buddhism Spread West?" *Al Rafidan* 10 (1989): 1–11.
- Boyce, Mary. *Zoroastrians: Their Religious Beliefs and Practices*. London and New York: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1979. Revised reprint, 1987.
- Bush, Richard C. *Religion in Communist China*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press, 1970.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "Buddhism under Confucian Domination: The Synthetic Vision of Sōsan Hyujōng." In *Culture and the State in Late Chosŏn Korea*, ed. Jahyun Kim Haboush and Martina Deuchler. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 1999.
- de Groot, J. J. M. *Sectarianism and Religious Persecution in China*. Amsterdam: Johannes Müller, 1903.
- Fernando, C. M. *The Nikāya Saṅgrahawa*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: H. C. Cottle, 1908.
- Geiger, Wilhelm, and Bode, Mable Haynes, trans. *The Mahāvamsa or The Great Chronicle of Ceylon*. London: Pali Text Society, 1912.
- Geiger, Wilhelm, trans. (German). *Cūlavamsa: Being the More Recent Part of the Mahāvamsa*, tr. C. Mabel Rickmers (English). London: Pali Text Society, 1929.
- Goldstein, Melvyn C., and Kapstein, Matthew T., eds. *Buddhism in Contemporary Tibet: Religious Revival and Cultural Identity*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Japan's Ignored Cultural Revolution: The Separation of Shinto and Buddhist Divinities in Meiji (*Shinbutsu bunri*) and a Case Study (*Tōnomine*)." *History of Religions* 23, no. 3 (1984): 240–265.
- Harris, Ian, ed. *Buddhism and Politics in Twentieth-Century Asia*. London: Pinter, 1999.
- Ketelaar, James E. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium: Institut Orientalist, 1988.

- Stuart-Fox, Martin. *Buddhist Kingdom, Marxist State: The Making of Modern Laos*. Bangkok, Thailand: White Lotus, 1996.
- Warder, A. K. *Indian Buddhism*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1970.
- Warikoo, K., ed. *Bamiyan: Challenge to World Heritage*. New Delhi: Bhavana Books, 2002.

KATE CROSBY

**PERSON.** See *Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Pudgalavāda*

## PHILOSOPHY

Within the Buddhist tradition there exist enormously sophisticated systems of thought. Whether these systems should be regarded as “philosophy” or “theology” or something else is a difficult question and a topic of much debate. *Philosophy* is a Western word and concept, derived from the Greek origins of Western thinking, and no traditional Buddhist language had a word analogous to *philosophy* prior to the modern era. The Buddhist term most closely related is DHARMA, which means something like *truths* or *teachings*, especially teachings about how to live.

It is often said that the Buddhist teachings are more philosophical than religious because of their open spirit of inquiry and their lack of a central concept of God. In this sense, *philosophy* means “overarching ideas about the nature of the world and the meaning of human life that guide daily living.” By this definition, much Buddhist dharma is indeed philosophy. But it is important to recognize that this is not what professional philosophers in the modern West mean by that term. For most contemporary philosophers, philosophy is concerned with logical analysis and the structure of human thinking. Although a few Buddhists have taken up these issues, especially in India, they have done so under the guidance of what they take to be larger and more important questions that are ultimately ethical and spiritual (e.g., What is excellence of human character? What is enlightenment and how can it be achieved?). Logic and analysis have no standing on their own as Buddhist concerns. One reason for this is that early Buddhist sūtras depict the Buddha rejecting abstract philosophical speculation in preference for practical techniques of self-transformation. Another reason is that very early in the Buddhist tradi-

tion philosophers attained a high level of psychological sophistication. Through the rigors of meditative practice, they came to realize that what one considers to be true—no matter how good one is at logical analysis—is shaped and conditioned by the state of one’s character. What this means is that desires, intentions, and thoughts of a certain kind will inevitably lead a person to reason out the truth of the matter in ways that are in part preshaped by those same desires, intentions, and thoughts.

Therefore, in much Buddhist thought, truth is not simply a matter of logic or reason, since both logic and reason are themselves dependent on other factors. For Buddhists, realizing the truth is the result of a great deal of internal work beyond analytical reasoning, and it is for this reason that philosophy in the Buddhist tradition is best classified as a subcategory under “means to awakening” or, more appropriately, under “MEDITATION.” Most analytical thinking in the Buddhist tradition takes place in the context of meditation, which can be divided into two overarching categories: *śamatha* (calming) and *VIPASSANĀ* (SANSKRIT, *VIPAŚYANĀ*; contemplation). Contemplation, or insight meditation, is a conceptual practice focusing on the analysis of the world and one’s internal conceptions of it. Most Buddhist philosophical writings are intended to be used in this kind of meditative practice, and most of them were written within a monastic setting. Buddhist philosophy, therefore, has a practical intention: It is meant to open and transform the mind of the meditator and lead, ultimately, to *BODHI* (AWAKENING). The idea of philosophical thinking outside of that spiritual and ethical setting is utterly foreign to Buddhist culture.

### Issues

Among the many issues prominent in Buddhist “philosophy,” the following are most instructive for getting a sense of how this tradition of thought is shaped: No-self, change and causality, morality and ethics, and philosophy and truth.

**No-self.** The idea for which Buddhists are perhaps best known is the claim that there is no self (*anātman*); that what we take to be the true inner core of a human being is actually an illusory process of constant change. This idea runs against the grain of ordinary thinking, not just in Western cultures but in Asia as well. The Buddhist critique of the concept of the self is based on the conclusion that in fact people never experience an unchanging inner core, and that their ideas about that core are derived from a quite natural tendency to

understand themselves through their desires and attachments. Although the idea of the self that was rejected in early Buddhism was quite specific—the concept of ātman in the Hindu *Upaniṣads*, the unchanging core that undergirds all experience—the development of this critique in the history of Buddhist philosophy extends far beyond the specifics of that initial rejection. The basic anātman position is that there exists no controller, no possessor, no constant self behind experience, which means that it is not that “I” have a body and thoughts and feelings but that “I am” these elements at any given moment in the process of life. Rejecting the unchanging self does not mean that no one is here; the idea of no-self is the Buddhist effort to explain who or what is here, and how that person can best live.

In order to clarify the rejection of self, early sūtras posit the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES), the five components that make up a person: physical body, feelings, conceptions, volition, and self-consciousness. Sūtras explain how these five components of the self are always changing, always dependent on one another, and therefore not constant, not stable, and not the unchanging foundation that one assumes. Although languages posit an “I” behind these fluctuating states, no such background possessor is ever present to experience. Buddhist sūtras challenge meditators to examine their own experience, and to locate the truth of the posited self. The Buddhist critique of the concept of the self is unique among the world’s religions, and it provided a powerful starting point for the history of Buddhist philosophy.

**Change and causality.** Perhaps the most basic philosophical principle in Buddhist philosophy is the claim that all things are characterized by ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE); that is, all things are subject to change, including birth and death. The initial context for this realization was the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS, where suffering is caused by desires for and attachments to things that are always changing and passing away. Failure to recognize the ubiquity of impermanence and failure to adjust one’s life accordingly lead inevitably to poor judgment and subsequent suffering.

That moral context for reflection on change was just the beginning. Later Buddhist philosophers took the basic principle of impermanence as the starting point for a wide variety of reflections on the nature of the always changing world. Closely associated with the idea of impermanence was the concept of PRATĪYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), the Buddhist expla-

nation for how it is that things change. Change is not random; it is caused and conditioned by other surrounding factors. The principle of dependent origination states that all things arise, change, and pass away dependent upon the influence of other things. Nothing, therefore, is self-sufficient; everything depends. Buddhist thinkers took this principle to be an example of the “middle way” between two logically unacceptable views—eternalism, the view that things exist permanently and on their own, and annihilationism, the view that things have no existence at all. *Pratīyasamutpāda* falls between those extreme views by affirming that things exist within a larger process of dependence. Although these ideas certainly could be applied to the natural world, and on occasion were, their most important application concerned the workings of the mind. How is it possible, Buddhist philosophers asked, to live an enlightened life, in touch with the way things really are and free of delusion, greed, and hatred? That possibility, like any other, they concluded, arises dependent on the requisite conditions. Living your life in accordance with those conditions gives rise to the state of NIRVĀṆA. The principles of impermanence and dependent origination are the most basic ideas in Buddhist philosophy.

**Morality and ethics.** Like all Buddhist philosophy, Buddhist ETHICS is articulated in the context of meditation, and set in the framework of the quest to eliminate the devastating effects of suffering by achieving the state of human excellence called nirvāṇa. Suffering and enlightenment are the central ethical issues. Ethics is a practical matter of shaping one’s life in accordance with the wisdom of the Buddha’s realization. Far from making Buddhist ethics simple, this setting in the domain of practice gave rise to a voluminous philosophical literature on how it is that human life ought to be lived. One difference between Buddhist ethics and modern Western moral philosophy is the Buddhist focus on everyday life, on choices that people habitually make all of the time. The idea behind this focus is that one’s character is formed in every act one undertakes, especially in the acts that one performs over and over. This is where the Buddhist concept of KARMA (ACTION) functions most forcefully. Modern Western ethics has focused almost exclusively on exceptional situations, on perplexing moral dilemmas that arise occasionally in a person’s lifetime when major choices need to be made. As a consequence of this focus, very little attention has been given to how one achieves a state from which major decisions will be made with integrity. From a Buddhist ethical perspective, how one

makes major choices in life depends almost entirely on how one has cultivated oneself throughout one's life. Buddhist enlightenment, therefore, depends on daily acts of morality and meditation on the virtues that sustain them. This focus can be seen clearly in the lists of virtues that function in the context of meditation, including, for example, the “four immeasurables” (loving kindness, compassion, sympathetic joy, and equanimity) or the “six PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS)” (generosity, morality, tolerance, effort, concentration, and wisdom).

**Philosophy and truth.** The pursuit of truth in Buddhist philosophy is not so much an effort to formulate general doctrines about the world as it is to change people's lives, to enlighten. Philosophy is therefore not a theoretical activity abstracted from life, but rather a practical matter of articulating a way of living, placed in the service of human liberation. As a form of meditation, theoretical thinking is linked to other forms of spiritual practice. The link is important in Buddhism because truth is not simply the product of logical analysis. The quality of someone's analysis of the world depends for Buddhists on the purification of their minds and characters. It is not possible, they reason, for someone entangled in personal desires and self-centeredness to encounter the truth, no matter how intelligent they are. Truth in Buddhist meditative contexts is more a matter of how clearly someone can see the ways in which their own minds falsify reality based on attachments and self-absorption. Understanding this psychological prerequisite to truth, calming and insight meditation begin to open the mind to the possibility of truthful understanding.

### Traditions and styles

Buddhist philosophy has unfolded over a two-thousand-year history, and continues today, perhaps as strongly as ever. Over these many centuries, numerous traditions and styles of philosophy have thrived. The following are a few of the best known and most representative.

**Abhidharma.** ABHIDHARMA, meaning higher or extended dharma, is an early Buddhist philosophical literature that has scriptural status. These texts differ from sūtras in the same way that systematic philosophical analysis differs from practical religious teachings. Abhidharma is “extended” beyond the first communication of dharma by pursuing a comprehensive vision and analytical rigor. Abhidharma works, such as BUDDHAGHOSA's famous Pāli text *Visud-*

*dhimagga* (*Path to Purification*), attempt to lay out the underlying structures of the Buddhist dharma by providing lists, definitions, and descriptions of what might be encountered in meditative experience. Abhidharma breaks ordinary experience down into its component parts—dharmas—the final building blocks of human experience. The Abhidharma is the earliest and most widely known form of Buddhist philosophy.

**Madhyamaka.** NĀGĀRJUNA, the second century C.E. founder of the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL, is the most famous of all Buddhist philosophers. His philosophical tradition, which developed for many centuries in MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist cultures such as China and Tibet, began as an extension and correction of Abhidharma thinking. Nāgārjuna's philosophy of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) is derived from a systematic thinking through of the earlier concept of dependent origination. From this point of view, the Abhidharma effort to list the ultimate building blocks of human experience was misguided. If all things lack independence, arising dependent on other equally dependent things, then nothing can be found to possess the secure and permanent status that earlier Buddhists had sought. In this sense, Madhyamaka extends the Buddhist analysis of existence one step further—all existing things are “empty” of permanent and self-constituting natures. Although things do indeed exist, this philosophy seeks to articulate the way in which they exist, and, like other forms of Buddhist philosophy, to use this analysis for the purpose of awakening.

**Yogācāra.** Often considered the culmination of Buddhist philosophy in India, the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL represented a renewed effort to accomplish a systematic account of experience in the style of Abhidharma, but now employing the Madhyamaka critique. Granting that all components of experience are “empty,” philosophers such as ASAṄGA (ca. 320–390 C.E.) and VASUBANDHU (fourth century C.E.) sought to explain how it is that impermanent and dependent factors come together to shape the world as it is. Their basic thesis was that the primary factor upon which experience depends is the mind; since all experience is the mind's experience, understanding the complexities of the mind was the most important philosophical task. Well-known for their thesis that reality is “mind only,” Yogācārins based their analysis on meditative experience. They broke the mind down into eight types of consciousness and the three fundamental “natures” of mind, constructing what is perhaps the most sophisticated statement of Buddhist psychology.

**Huayan.** One of several innovative philosophical schools that began in China and subsequently influenced Buddhism throughout East Asia, the HUAYAN SCHOOL came to prominence during the early Tang dynasty (618–907) as a philosophical articulation of the meaning of certain Mahāyāna sūtras, most notably the HUAYAN JING (*Avatamsaka-sūtra*, *Flower Garland Sūtra*). This sūtra is unusual in communicating the experiences of enlightened BODHISATTVAS, rather than the Buddha, but the focus of the text is on what the world looks like from the perspective of awakening. Reality is “emptiness,” articulated in Huayan as the enormously complex interplay of all elements in existence, each dependent on all others. Each aspect of the world receives its particular shape through the influence of all other aspects, while its seemingly insignificant influence radiates out into every dimension of the universe. Huayan philosophy is staggering in its complexity and sophistication, and it is currently exerting a profound theoretical influence on the field of ecological studies.

**Kyoto school.** Working under the influence of modern Western philosophy, a group of twentieth-century Buddhist philosophers in Japan has attained international recognition. Nishida Kitarō, Tanabe Hajime, and Nishitani Keiji, all former professors at Kyoto University, are the most famous thinkers in this school. Although their philosophical writings are too complex and diverse to summarize, all of them sought to articulate a philosophical vision of reality in the modern Western sense, while simultaneously subordinating this vision to the quest for spiritual awakening, as has been the custom throughout the history of Buddhism. Philosophical thinking has its goal in self-awakening, and its truth is the effectiveness with which it accomplishes that primary task. The translation of these works of philosophy into Western languages has provided non-Buddhists throughout the world with substantial examples of the sophistication of the long and impressive tradition of Buddhist philosophy. It may very well be that the influence of Buddhist philosophy on world affairs is only now in its opening stages.

See also: **Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Consciousness, Theories of; Dharma and Dharmas; Logic; Psychology**

#### **Bibliography**

Collins, Steven. *Selfless Persons: Imagery and Thought in Theravāda Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1982.

Eckel, Malcolm David. *To See the Buddha: A Philosopher's Quest for the Meaning of Emptiness*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

Garfield, Jay. *The Fundamental Wisdom of the Middle Way: Nāgārjuna's Mūlamadhyamakārikā*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1995.

Gethin, Rupert. *The Foundations of Buddhism*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Griffiths, Paul. *On Being Mindless: The Classical Doctrine of Buddhahood*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1994.

Kalupahana, David. *Buddhist Philosophy: A Historical Analysis*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1976.

Keown, Damien. *The Nature of Buddhist Ethics*. Basingstoke, UK: Palgrave, 2001.

Nagao, Gadjin. *Madhyamaka and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.

Williams, Paul. *Buddhist Thought: A Complete Introduction to the Indian Tradition*. London: Routledge, 2000.

Wright, Dale. *Philosophical Meditations on Zen Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1998.

DALE S. WRIGHT

## PHOENIX HALL (AT THE BYŌDŌIN)

The extant Phoenix Hall (Hōōdō) of Byōdōin is located on the west bank of the Uji River southeast of Kyoto. Regent Fujiwara Yorimichi (990–1074) transformed an inherited villa into the (now lost) Main Hall of Byōdōin in 1051, his sixtieth year. The unprecedented Phoenix Hall, consecrated in 1053, was built as a three-dimensional representation of the depiction of Amida's Sukhāvātī Pure Land, as found in the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* (*Visualization Sūtra*). With its bird-like wings and tail, the Phoenix Hall faces east and was designed to be viewed from a small palace on the opposite shore. The hall and its central Amida (AMITĀBHA) icon served as the focus of meditation and as a backdrop to ceremonies. Narrative paintings depicting the nine stages of REBIRTH adorned the doors and walls surrounding the icon, each showing a seasonal landscape as the setting for a “descent of Amida” (*raigō*) to recognizably Japanese devotees. Above the walls, fifty-two small wood-carved bodhisattvas and musicians complete the effect of Amida's descent.

Mimi Yiengpruksawan has made a convincing case that the Phoenix Hall was the private domain of

Yorimichi and his descendants, rather than the quasi-public focus of the temple. Esoteric Tendai ceremonies were carried out in front of the Main Hall icon, Dainichi Nyorai, while the Phoenix Hall appears to have been Yorimichi's private devotional chapel where he himself could meditate upon Sukhāvātī. After his death, his daughter Kanshi lived at Byōdōin and carried out ceremonies on behalf of her father and other relatives, both at the temple's sūtra repository and at the Phoenix Hall.

*See also: Japan, Buddhist Art in*

### **Bibliography**

Akiyama Terukazu. "The Door Paintings in the Phoenix Hall of Byōdōin as Yamatoe." *Artibus Asiae* 53, nos. 1–2 (1993): 144–167.

Yiengpruksawan, Mimi Hall. "The Phoenix Hall at Uji and the Symmetries of Replication." *Art Bulletin* 77, no. 4 (1995): 648–672.

KAREN L. BROCK

## PILGRIMAGE

The practice of journeying to locations of special significance is a common feature of many religious traditions and it has played a formative role in the history of Buddhism. Given this rich pilgrimage tradition, there are several ways to approach the subject of pilgrimage in Buddhism. These range from analytical perspectives that highlight the distinctive histories and social dynamics of individual pilgrimage sites in the diversity of cultures shaped by Buddhism, to perspectives reflecting a broader comparative framework. These latter approaches emphasize features common to a number of Buddhist pilgrimages, and to religious pilgrimage in general. This entry examines Buddhist pilgrimage from several angles and is organized in three sections: historical overview, pilgrimage practices, and contemporary perspectives.

### **Historical overview**

We cannot say with assurance when pilgrimage first became a part of Buddhist tradition. However, the fact that the canonical collections of several early Buddhist schools include a sūtra in which Gautama Buddha himself exhorts his followers to visit sites associated with his life indicates the centrality that pilgrimage came to have in the early centuries of the Buddhist movement.

This passage occurs in the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA, which narrates the Buddha's last days before his final passing away. In the Pāli version, four places identified with pivotal events in his life (birth, enlightenment, first teaching, and final passing away) are described as worthy of being seen and productive of strong religious feeling, and the passage concludes by promising that anyone who dies while undertaking such a journey with serene joy will be reborn in a blissful heavenly realm.

The earliest archeological evidence of Buddhist pilgrimage comes from inscriptions commissioned by the Indian emperor AŚOKA in the third century B.C.E. There are also later textual traditions that give Aśoka a formative role in the creation of a Buddhist sacred geography through the enshrinement of Gautama Buddha's relics in eighty-four thousand relic monuments throughout his empire. According to the Rummīnī pillar edict in Nepal, Aśoka visited the site of the Buddha's birth and erected a commemorative pillar there. Another inscription may refer to Aśoka's pilgrimage to the site of the Buddha's enlightenment at BODH GAYĀ, and a third, located at Nigālī Sāgar in Nepal, tells of Aśoka's visit to and enlargement of the relic monument of the former Buddha Koṅāgamana, suggesting that a devotional cult centered on the lives of previous BUDDHAS had also emerged at this time.

The history of Buddhist pilgrimage becomes clearer during the Śuṅga period (second to first centuries B.C.E.) with the relic monuments at Bhārhut and SĀNCĪ, where we also find extensive donative inscriptions. These remains suggest the existence of well-developed regional pilgrimage centers supported by a wide range of donors, including lay and monastic men and women. Significantly, neither Bhārhut nor Sāncī is identified with the presence of Gautama Buddha during his lifetime. Instead, the sites have been rendered religiously powerful through the enshrinement of relics, and through vivid artistic representations of scenes from the Buddha's biography, including his past lives.

The sites attested in the Aśokan inscriptions and in the Śuṅga-era monuments point to the two primary means through which particular locations became the focus of special religious devotion: claims that the Buddha himself visited them during his lifetime and later enshrinements of physical objects that represent him, either through alleged historical continuity (bodily remains or objects he used) or visual evocation (sculptures and paintings). These were not mutually exclusive options, as many sites were associated with events in the Buddha's life and with later relic and





Husband-and-wife pilgrims praying on their way to a Nichiren temple in Japan, around 1925. © Hulton Archive by Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

image enshrinements; some were associated with the presence of previous buddhas, as well. As many scholars have noted, there was a close relationship between the development of a comprehensive Buddha BIOGRAPHY, which was not a part of the earliest tradition, and the emergence of pilgrimage sites.

Buddhism was first transmitted into China around the beginning of the common era. Beginning around 400 C.E., we find the earliest surviving accounts of Chinese Buddhist pilgrims to India. These testify to the emergence of major pilgrimage routes, extending through CENTRAL ASIA and northwest India into the Ganges basin, which attracted pilgrims from distant lands. Among the most prominent of these monk-pilgrims were FAXIAN (ca. 337–418) and XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), each of whom traveled to India through Central Asia and spent many years collecting texts and visiting important religious centers throughout the Indian subcontinent and beyond. Faxian's account testifies to the great proliferation of places that had come to be associated with events in Gautama Buddha's life, particularly those of a miraculous character, and to the

number of relic monuments attributed to Aśoka's great relic distribution.

Faxian also spent two years in Sri Lanka, and he mentions the tradition that Gautama Buddha visited the island in order to pacify the nāgas residing there, a tradition narrated in detail in the monastic histories of the island (e.g., *Dīpavaṃsa*, *Mahāvāṃsa*). On one of his sojourns, the Buddha is said to have visited and consecrated a number of different locations around the island and these form the nucleus of what was eventually defined as an authoritative list of sixteen Sri Lankan pilgrimage sites. Narrative traditions of a similar character later developed in Southeast Asia, linking the movement and enshrinement of relics and images with locations in the region already sacralized by legendary visits of Gautama Buddha.

As Buddhist traditions spread throughout Asia and became institutionalized through royal patronage and popular support, the network of Buddhist pilgrimage expanded in two senses. On the one hand, monks and nuns throughout the Buddhist world traveled back to

the Buddhist heartland for access to texts, to places of religious power associated with buddhas and other powerful religious figures, and to centers of Buddhist learning (thus a centripetal force). An analogous, centrifugal movement drew Buddhist relics and images (and in some cases, Gautama Buddha himself, as recounted in later texts) outward to create new centers of pilgrimage in what had been the territorial margins of Buddhist tradition. In many cases these new devotional centers were established in places long regarded as religiously powerful because of the presence of local or regional deities, places often marked by striking natural features such as mountains, lakes, and caves. Typically, these “pre-Buddhist” beings were not simply replaced, but instead subdued and converted into guardians of Buddhist sacralia. Such centers of pilgrimage undoubtedly brought together devotees with diverse religious identities and forms of practice, thus facilitating the integration of Buddhist ideas and practices into broader religious milieux.

The fluidity of interaction that pilgrimage so effectively orchestrates has contributed greatly to the expansion and adaptation of Buddhist traditions outside the land of its origins. Buddhist pilgrimages are generally voluntary undertakings motivated by a range of individual concerns, including the acquisition of merit, the need for purification and expiation, and hopes for healing, increased prosperity, fertility, and so on. They also commonly bring together people from diverse social and religious groups. As a result, they have frequently encouraged the interplay of different symbolic systems and behaviors, thus facilitating the adaptation of Buddhist traditions to new historical circumstances. In the case of Chinese pilgrimage sites, for example, it is difficult to determine what defines a “Buddhist” pilgrimage, since popular beliefs and practices were drawn from Daoism and Confucianism, as well as Buddhism, and these seemingly exclusive religious designations are meaningful only when referring to professional elites. Thus these sites have commonly enabled a multivocality of meanings and a diversity of practices to flourish side by side with varying degrees of integration.

### **Pilgrimage practices**

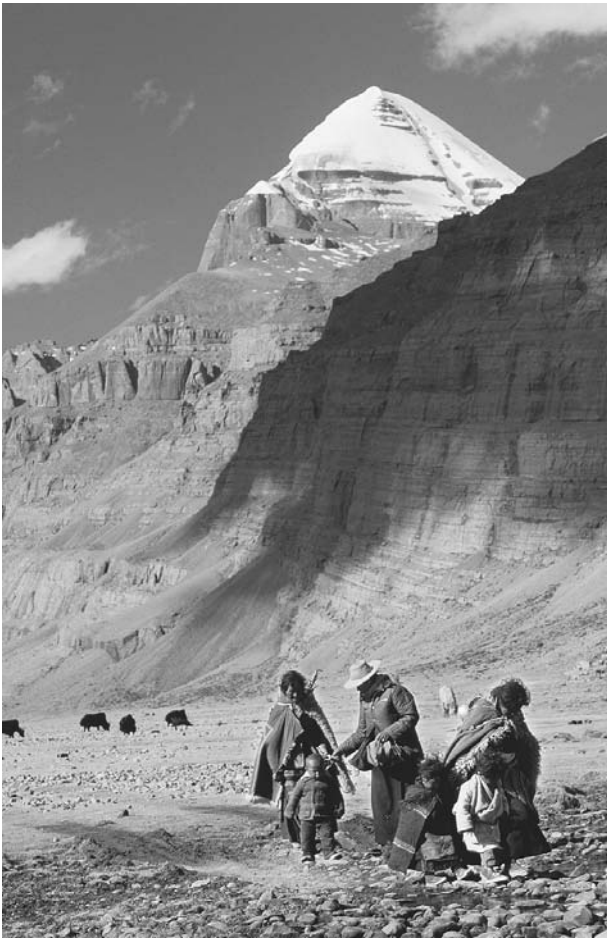
Certainly the most salient feature of pilgrimage is movement. A minimal definition of pilgrimage is a journey to a place of special religious significance, and movement here means the movement of individual bodies away from the places where they typically reside and toward a center of intensified religious power.

A pilgrimage is usually an exceptional undertaking, often involving significant disruption of the pilgrim’s ordinary life and frequently entailing some element of physical discomfort or ordeal. Among the more striking examples are the protracted journeys of the early Chinese pilgrims to India; Faxian was away for fifteen years, Xuanzang for sixteen. The degree of difficulty and danger faced by the pilgrim obviously varies widely; in addition, specific Buddhist pilgrimage sites have been more or less accessible at different historical periods. The availability of cars, buses, and planes has clearly transformed the pilgrimage experience for many modern participants.

As was the case for the early Chinese pilgrims, the goal of the journey was often not a single site of religious significance, but rather the completion of a pilgrimage route punctuated with a succession of sites, each with its distinctive associations. Japanese Buddhist pilgrimages, such as those to Shikoku and Saikoku, typically involve the clockwise completion of an extensive pilgrimage circuit; these reflect the common Buddhist practice of circumambulation (Sanskrit, *pradakṣiṇa*) in which one ritually honors a person or object of religious authority by circling them clockwise, thus keeping the right side of the body facing them. Circumambulation of sacred mountains is a prominent feature of Tibetan Buddhist pilgrimage, with some pilgrims going so far as to complete an entire circuit, sometimes hundred of miles long, with a succession of full-body prostrations.

Other forms of ritualized devotion include various forms of offering, such as flowers, incense, light in the form of candles or lamps, gold leaf, and so on, as well as the recitation of appropriate chants or MANTRAS. Offering rituals are often not limited to the Buddhist figures represented at Buddhist shrines; as noted above, other supernatural beings and forces are commonly believed to reside in pilgrimage sites and these are also venerated, sometimes in fulfillment of a special vow to honor the deity in return for a specified benefit. Finally, a broad range of Buddhist figures are deemed worthy of veneration by pilgrims, including buddhas, BODHISATTVAS, and ARHATS. In some Chinese Chan Buddhist communities, the miraculously mummified bodies of deceased teachers became the object of pilgrimage.

One of the fundamental organizing principles of pilgrimage is the contrast between the heightened power and purity of the pilgrimage site and the space around it, and this is reflected in special modes of bodily



Tibetan Buddhist pilgrims circle Kailāśa (Mount Kailash) in south-western Tibet. © Galen Rowell/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

department. Many pilgrims wear special clothing that clearly distinguishes them from non-pilgrims. The hierarchical classification of the body according to standards of purity, with right favored over left and higher over lower (head/feet), structures much devotional behavior, such as circumambulation and offering rituals. Social hierarchy is present, as well, in the authority exercised by experienced pilgrims over novices, and by local officiants and guides who mold the behavior of the visiting devotees. Hierarchies of purity and sacrality are also commonly reflected in the spatial and architectural organization of pilgrimage centers; this may explain why mountains and other elevated locations are so frequently the “natural” settings for pilgrimage. Pilgrimage traditions in some cases also define time, as well, by their connections with calendars of religious observance. Many Tibetan pilgrimages operate on a twelve-year cycle, while visits to a number of Sri Lankan pilgrimage sites are organized around a calendar of full-moon-day observances.

### Contemporary perspectives

Considerable scholarship has been devoted to pilgrimage, much of it focused on Christianity. Victor Turner’s theory of pilgrimage as a “liminoid phenomenon” has been the most influential general theory of pilgrimage. Turner asserts that pilgrimage places its participants in an ambiguous social status that frees them from some of the dominant social structures of their regular lives and enables particular kinds of personal transformation to occur. In part this transformation takes the form of a heightened group identification among people who would normally be socially distinguished. The “betwixt and between” character of pilgrims’ social status also renders them more emotionally vulnerable to the powerful symbolic systems that dominate pilgrimage sites, a vulnerability often heightened by physical ordeal. This model, which knits together social and psychological factors, and which attempts to take into account both the cognitive and affective dimensions of pilgrim’s experiences, is sufficiently flexible to illuminate many specific pilgrimages from various religious traditions. As many scholars have noted, however, this approach also emphasizes the commonality of pilgrims’ experience, and may mask the divisive social and political forces that often constellate around pilgrimage centers.

In Sri Lanka, for example, Buddhist pilgrimage tradition played an important role in the nineteenth- and twentieth-century Buddhist revival in response to British colonial rule; it has also heightened conflict between Sinhalas and Tamils. In Tibet, the pilgrimage tradition centered on Mount KAILĀŚA (KAILASH), which identifies it as Mount Meru and Śiva’s abode, has long drawn pilgrims from Hindu, Buddhist, and Jain traditions who venerate it with circumambulation. In the wake of the Chinese occupation of Tibet, however, pilgrimage was prohibited for nearly two decades beginning in 1962; since the early 1990s restrictions have been relaxed somewhat, and increasing numbers of Western practitioners of Buddhism are making this arduous pilgrimage to the “center of the world” as new Buddhist communities are established in Europe and North America.

*See also:* Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relics Cults; Space, Sacred

### Bibliography

Coleman, Simon, and Elsner, John. *Pilgrimage: Past and Present in the World Religions*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1995.

McKay, Alex, ed. *Pilgrimage in Tibet*. Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 1998.

Morinis, Alan, ed. *Sacred Journeys: The Anthropology of Pilgrimage*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1992.

Naquin, Susan, and Yü, Chün-fang, eds. *Pilgrims and Sacred Sites in China*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1992.

Nissan, Elizabeth. "Polity and Pilgrimage Centres in Sri Lanka." *Man* (New Series) 23, no. 2 (1988): 253–274.

Reader, Ian, and Swanson, Paul L., eds. "Pilgrimage in Japan." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 24, nos. 3–4 (1997): 225–452.

Turner, Victor, and Turner, Edith. *Image and Pilgrimage in Christian Culture: Anthropological Perspectives*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1978.

KEVIN TRAINOR

## PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING)

The *Liuzu tan jing* (*Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch*) is the capstone text of the early CHAN SCHOOL of Chinese Buddhism. The sūtra resolves hotly contested issues of earlier decades in a charmingly instructive narrative. At its heart is a verse competition between Shenxiu (ca. 606–706) and HUINENG (ca. 638–713), in which the latter becomes sixth patriarch in spite of being an illiterate and socially declassé layman from the far south of China. The entire story is fictional—Shenxiu had long since left the “fifth patriarch” Hongren’s (601–674) monastic training center when the events supposedly took place—but the text’s imaginative dramatization of Chan spiritual training has been almost universally accepted. Composed originally around 780 (the approximate date of the DUNHUANG version), the *Platform Sūtra* is an important source for understanding both the Chinese monastic institution and the state of evolution of Chan mythology at that time. Although the text did not remain universally popular throughout the medieval and premodern period—the Japanese Zen master DŌGEN (1200–1253) was particularly critical of it—it is widely read and cited throughout East Asian Buddhism today.

In the opening anecdote, Hongren instructs his students to compose verses demonstrating their understanding of Buddhism, with the author of the best verse becoming his successor. After some consternation, Shenxiu submits:

The body is the bodhi tree.

The mind is like a bright mirror’s stand.

At all times we must strive to polish it  
and must not let dust collect.

The response by Huineng, a menial laborer at the monastery for the preceding eight months, reads:

Bodhi originally has no tree.

The mirror also has no stand.

The buddha-nature is always clear and pure.

Where is there room for dust?

The Dunhuang manuscript actually contains two slightly different versions of Huineng’s response. Further editorial adjustment is shown in later versions from the tenth and thirteenth centuries, which reduce this contribution to a single verse with a famous third line, “Fundamentally there is not a single thing.”

The *Platform Sūtra* has generally been misread as a clear-cut validation of a subitist “Southern school” associated with Huineng. However, the text actually outlines a three-level movement from an initial assertion about Buddhist practice, through a deconstruction of that assertion using the rhetoric of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), to a profoundly nuanced restatement of the initial assertion. Shenxiu taught the constant or perfect practice of the PATH of the BODHISATTVA, by which he meant that one should always remain in meditation and always work to help other SENTIENT BEINGS. If he had actually used the metaphor of the mirror as given here, polishing the mirror would be a standard procedure of ethical training, not a gradualistic device for progressing toward enlightenment.

Huineng’s verse contains no reference to suddenness, but is rather a deconstructive move implying a more profound understanding of Shenxiu’s initial “perfect teaching.” The balance of the *Platform Sūtra* explains this more profound understanding using such expressions as the “formless precepts” and metaphoric reinterpretations of “sitting in meditation.”

### **Bibliography**

McRae, John R. *The Northern School and the Formation of Early Ch’an Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.

McRae, John R., trans. *The Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 2000.

Yampolsky, Philip B. *The Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch: The Text of the Tun-huang Manuscript with Translation, Introduction, and Notes*. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1967.

JOHN R. MCRAE

## POETRY AND BUDDHISM

The effect of Sanskrit Buddhist poetics and prosody on Chinese language and culture is one of the most profound characteristics of the introduction of Buddhism to East Asia. Indian Buddhist poetry formally begins with the poet and philosopher AŚVAGHOṢA (ca. first or second century C.E.), who composed the earliest surviving examples of the *kāvya* literary style of Sanskrit poetry, the BUDDHACARITA (*Acts of the Buddha*) and *Saundarananda*. Prior to Aśvaghōṣa, Buddhists employed Pāli and other local languages in metrical arrangement. The Sanskrit used in Aśvaghōṣa's poetry, however, is highly literary and displays linguistic artistry more in accordance with later Jaina or Hindu poets of the Gupta period (320–540). Sanskrit *kāvya* poetry and poetics spread to Burma (Myanmar), Thailand, Cambodia, and the Malay Archipelago before affecting the reception of Buddhism in China, Japan, and Tibet.

Buddhists introduced notions of resonance, repetition, a system of four tones (as opposed to five or seven), meter, and poetic defects (Sanskrit, *doṣa*)—all of which generated discussion on the mechanics of poetics among East Asian aristocrats. Indian and Central Asian Buddhist literature incorporated religious verse or *gāthās* (Chinese, *jie* or *jietuo*), one of the twelve divisions of the tripiṭaka according to genre. In addition to *gāthās*, *geya* (Chinese, *qiye*)—the verse summaries of tenets presented in sūtra literature—captivated monastic and lay Buddhists in China because of the *śloka* meter, with four quarter verses of eight syllables each.

Because of the difficulty in dating most Indian texts, it is nearly impossible to ascertain which specific Indian texts or figures were influential in China. But, scholars do know that the genre of composing poems of eulogy or praise (Chinese, *zan* or *jiesong*) for religious or secular reasons, with five to seven Chinese characters to a line, was instigated on the basis of Sanskrit *gāthās*.

During the period of disunion of the Wei, Jin, and Northern and Southern dynasties (220–589), Buddhist ideas and literature spread throughout East Asia as composing poetry became the principal literary art. While most East Asian poets did not study the Sanskrit language, many familiarized themselves with the principles of accurately rendering the sounds of Sanskrit into Chinese—using Indian Siddham (Chinese, *xitan*) script in order to chant sūtras or DHĀRAṆĪ. In the monastic estates, where lay and monastic elites assembled, the massive project of translating Buddhist texts into Chinese prompted men like the Buddhist poet Xie Lingyun (385–433) to work on a standardized system for the transcription of Sanskrit sounds. Xie's system was later used by literati to compose standard rhyme dictionaries for composing poetry.

Chinese literati came to write about poetics and the mechanics of composition in a genre of writing called *shihua*. Although it was not until the Song (960–1279) dynasty that the genre became pervasive, early authors in China based their theories on Sanskrit analogues transmitted through Buddhism. KŪKAI (774–835), the famous transmitter of EXOTERIC-ESOTERIC (KENMITSU) BUDDHISM IN JAPAN, composed the most comprehensive treatise on both Sanskrit and Chinese poetics in his *Bunkyō hifuron* (*A Treatise [Comprising] a Mirror for Literature and a Repository of Rare [Verses and Expressions]*). Kūkai's mastery in languages has made his *Bunkyō hifuron* the principal reference work on Buddhist poetry and inspired generations of East Asian poets.

The Tang (618–907) and Song dynasties are traditionally recognized for their poets and poetry. During these dynasties, Buddhist monks and lay officials like Hanshan, Guanxiu, Juefan Huihong (1071–1128), Wang Wei (701–761), and Su Shi (1036–1101) all associated with the emergent CHAN SCHOOL (Korean, Sōn; Japanese, Zen) to make poetry a conspicuous and permanent aspect of Buddhist practice.

*See also:* Canon; Chinese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Japanese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Languages; Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Demiéville, Paul. "Le Tch'an et la poésie chinoise." In *Choix d'études bouddhiques*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1973.
- Lienhard, Siegfried. *A History of Classical Poetry: Sanskrit, Pali, Prakrit*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1984.

Mair, Victor H., and Mei, Tsu-lin. "The Sanskrit Origins of Recent Style Prosody." *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 51, no. 2 (1991): 375–470.

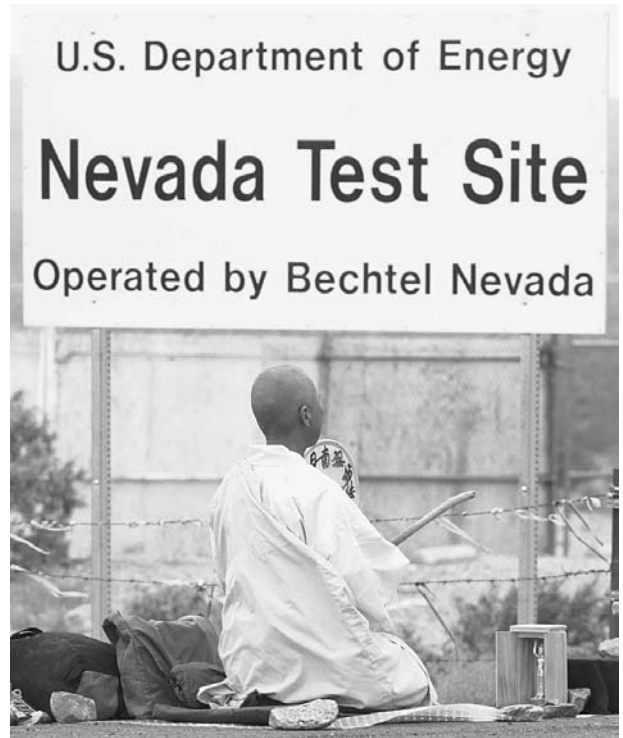
GEORGE A. KEYWORTH

## POLITICS AND BUDDHISM

Siddhārtha Gautama was himself a prince, who nonetheless rejected political power, abandoning his royal inheritance along with his family and material comforts. In the biographies of the Buddha there is thus a strong sense of dichotomous contrast: The "world" (of family, wealth, and politics) must be renounced in the pursuit of enlightenment. MONKS and NUNS were instructed to refuse or minimize involvement with the political leadership. Nonetheless, ORDINATION was a political statement with political consequences, since the ordinand claimed to be opting out of the power structures of the (lay) world. Indeed one measure of the holiness of a Buddhist saint has been a distance from the centers of political power. Even monks who were intimately involved in political lobbying and who lived lives of urban comfort nonetheless retained some of the symbolism of the poor mountain or forest renunciant.

There are scriptural cases of the Buddha's dealings with rulers, generally in the contexts of teaching them the dharma and receiving donations. Bimbisāra, king of Magadha during the Buddha's lifetime, is remembered as a pious disciple and generous donor who gave land for the SAṄGHA and sponsored the creation of the first Buddha image.

More influential was the example of King AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.), ruler of the Mauryan dynasty, who converted to Buddhism and promoted its spread throughout much of India. His conversion came after a famously bloody war campaign, and the violence of his earlier military career is often thought to lie behind his religious fervor. His policy of conquest by force (*digvijaya*) was replaced by an idea of conquest by righteousness (*dharmavijaya*). Much of the image of Aśoka as personally pious dates from later sources, which blend into hagiographic idealization. Aśoka's official pronouncements are known from the extant edicts carved in rocks and distributed throughout his empire, often on display in Buddhist monasteries. He also sponsored religious sects other than Buddhism, and the dharma teachings that the edicts emphasize are fairly nonspecific exhortations to law-abiding social conduct. Aśoka did recommend sūtras to read, and he



A monk participating in a Mother's Day protest against nuclear weapons testing prays at the entrance to the Nevada test site in 2000. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

seems to have intervened in a schism, forcing schismatic monks to wear white robes and be removed from the orthodox saṅgha. According to traditional Sinhalese accounts, he took a role in the Council of Pāṭaliputra (250 B.C.E.), which formalized a schism between the Sthaviras (elders) and the MAHĀSĀMĠHIKAS (Great Assembly). Aśoka became a model of the righteous Buddhist king, and temples to King Aśoka were founded throughout East Asia.

Some kings have chosen to be ordained as monks. Some of the Japanese emperors lived as monk-recluses (in their palaces). As another example, King Mongkut of Siam (1804–1868) was hurriedly ordained a monk a week before his father's death, and was thereby sheltered from succession struggles. Instead, Mongkut's half-brother reigned for twenty-seven years, and upon his death, Mongkut disrobed and ascended the throne for a further seventeen-year reign. During his time as a monk, Mongkut founded a reform sect of Thai Buddhism, which has continued to enjoy royal favor.

### The ideal ruler

The ideal ruler was described as cakravartin (wheel-turning king or universal ruler) and *dharmarāja*, or as a bodhisattva. Cakravartins have the thirty-two marks

of a great man, rule in accordance with dharma, and preside over an age of peace. Buddhist rulers have claimed the right to purify the religion and to judge the teachings. In China, the emperor presided over debates between representatives of Buddhism, Daoism, and Confucianism, pronouncing the winner at the end of the day. Various state laws provided some legal backing, such as tax exemptions, to monastic institutions. Conceding that the ruler has a legitimate role to play in reducing the bad karma of crime, the saṅgha has performed rituals to protect the ruler and the state.

Many rulers in Asia, even pro-Buddhist rulers, have sought to control aspects of the saṅgha. Taking on the role of the cakravartin, rulers have at times “purged” the saṅgha of its “impurities” by enforcing stricter controls on entry (quotas on ordinations, or added stipulations), by extending secular law into the jurisdiction of the VINAYA (monastic code), and by expelling certain monks and nuns. In some cases, then, attacks on clerical institutions have been phrased in pro-Buddhist terms. In other cases, there was no such rationalization and the goal was simply the extermination of the saṅgha. Such violent anti-clerical PERSECUTIONS have occurred sporadically throughout history, but perhaps the best known include the persecution during the Huichang period in China (ca. 842–845), the Communist-inspired iconoclasm of the Chinese Cultural Revolution (1966–1976), and the violence in Tibet since the 1950s. In Japan, the slaughter of monks during the civil warfare of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, and the anti-Buddhist movements of the early Meiji (1868–1870s), come to mind.

The ideal ruler is a lavish patron, funding monastery construction and large publication projects. Many rulers in Asia have indeed donated land and other wealth for the establishment of monasteries, with a variety of motives. Undoubtedly the popular perception of the ruler as pious, the complicity of the monastic institutions in state propaganda, and the conspicuous displays of wealth all helped to legitimate the reign. The doctrine of merit (Sanskrit, *puṇya*; Chinese, *gongde*) made economic wealth religiously significant, as donations became the very substance of the saṅgha. The construction of large Buddha images, such as the colossal Buddha at Tōdaiji in Nara, dedicated in 752 C.E., was also a powerful means of asserting political jurisdiction. The Tōdaiji image was built from donations gathered throughout the imperial domain, and in both its material contributions and its iconographic

symbolism, consolidated the sense of a unified imperial nation.

The imperial states of Asia were often intimately involved in the process of importing the dharma. Even when the state ideology was non-Buddhist or anti-Buddhist in orientation, rulers made donations out of political expediency, and many officials of the state were committed to Buddhism in a “private” capacity. Imperial women in particular were often sponsors of Buddhism.

Monks were sometimes desirable subjects for rulers. The great translator of Sanskrit texts, KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–ca. 409/413), was one of the spoils of war in conflicts between Chinese and Central Asian states. Well-traveled monks lent prestige and foreign intelligence to a regime; they also embodied a certain magical auspiciousness. According to the account by XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) of his travels to India, rulers of the kingdoms he passed through often wanted him to stay. King Harsha (r. 606–647) paid his respects to Xuanzang, convened a debating tournament and declared him the winner, and released him only after much delay. When Xuanzang returned to China, he was welcomed by Emperor Gaozong (r. 649–683), who attempted to press the monk into political service. Failing that, he urged Xuanzang to record his travels.

### **Buddhism as a political problem**

Buddhism has at times been perceived as a political danger. Various versions of millennial Buddhism have been seen as challenges to the state, and in some cases truly were. The idea of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA (also known by the Japanese term *mappō*) described the declining, or degenerating, capacity of human beings to achieve enlightenment as they grew increasingly remote from Śākyamuni Buddha. Various time frames were projected, with most orthodox estimates placing the decisive “end of the dharma” in the distant future. However, some popular millennial movements have posited the arrival or imminence of the end. In some cases Buddhists concluded that FAITH in AMITĀBHA Buddha was the only viable option in such a degenerate age, but in other cases it was believed that the messianic figure MAITREYA was present or soon would be present.

*Mappō* assumed political importance both as a critique of government, since corrupt government was one indication of the decline, and also as an element of movements actively opposing the state. Though or-

thodox traditions posit the arrival of the next buddha, Maitreya, in the remote future, the notion of a messiah who incarnates in a corrupt world to wash away the existing order has been taken more immediately at a popular level. In the fourteenth century, the White Lotus society developed expectations of the imminent arrival of Maitreya that required a cleansing of the evil political regime. The White Lotus Rebellion, which occurred in China from 1796 to 1805, was just such an attempt. Many states have been suspicious of religious secret societies, including those with Buddhist roots. In some cases Buddhist institutions openly maintained large standing armies; in Japan, powerful monasteries accumulated land holdings so large that they effectively became feudal domains, complete with taxation and militias. When Japan was unified by force in the sixteenth century, it was inevitable that warlords such as Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582) came to face Buddhist institutions in battle, especially the Jōdo shinshū. During the Tokugawa period (1600–1868), local monasteries and temples came to function as organs of the state, so that anti-Buddhism overlapped with nativism and new versions of Shintō. The strong association of Buddhism and the Tokugawa regime led to a persecution and widespread destruction of Buddhism in the years after the Meiji restoration of 1868.

### The relations of monk and ruler

Although the saṅgha has had much to gain from good relations with political rulers, in an ideal sense monks are supposed to be uninterested in material wealth. The legendary story of BODHIDHARMA meeting Emperor Wu of the Liang (r. 502–550) has the great patriarch of the CHAN SCHOOL bluntly dismissing the salvific potency of all the emperor's wealth: All the donations to build temples and copy scriptures produced no merit at all. Furthermore, the ideal monk was supposed to be unaffected by the threat of violence represented by the ruler. Lore has developed in which the heroic monk casually brushes aside any hint of fear. The monk SENGZHAO (374–414), for example, faced with the threat of execution, recited a verse to the ruler:

The four elements originally have no master;  
 The five skandhas are basically empty.  
 When my head meets the white blade,  
 It will merely be like beheading the spring  
 wind.

Placed in a situation of conflict with the civil authorities, threatened with the possibility of physical punishment and death, Sengzhao used his words to convey a simple message: The body is empty, so killing me would be useless and cannot even frighten me; you ultimately cannot kill me, because there is no “me” to kill. The basic trope then, is the use of the idea of ŚŪNYATĀ, (EMPTINESS) during a display of virtuous bravado in the face of an overbearing ruler.

This ability to speak truth to power was in part derived from Buddhist anthropology and the cultivation of nonattachment, but also from the position of the monk as “outside” or “beyond” the world. Indeed, at times the foreignness of Buddhism was embraced and displayed: Monks—even native-born monks—described themselves as *fangwai zhi bin* (guests from outside the boundaries) who come from outside the imperial domain. The analogy of exteriority is evident also in the term *chujia* (left the household), although this was also quite literally true—clerics were indeed absent from the home. As Stephen Teiser remarks: “The power of monks—their ability to enrich substantially the welfare of the family—depends upon their social placement outside of the family” (p. 205). The same could be said of their placement outside of the political realm.

There were moments when the ritual practices of clerics were in direct physical contact with other, incompatible, systems of behavior. For example, in China, Confucian imperial guest ritual conflicted with the vinaya—as when a monk refused to bow to the ruler. Yet at these moments of obvious physical presence, we find the otherness of the monk admitted, indeed emphasized. The claim of belonging to some authority “outside the boundaries” was at the same time the claim to a site within the realm, from which to speak of the ruler as if from outside his realm.

The strength of this assertion relied on the tradition of legal privileges accorded to foreign visitors (for example, visiting princes). Hereditary kinship with the ruler of a foreign state brought a number of privileges, such as partial noncompliance with imperial ritual, and partial extraterritoriality. Buddhist discourses often analogized monks to high-ranking representatives of a “ruler,” the Buddha. Monks are the Buddha's “sons,” his “crown princes,” and so should, by analogy, have diplomatic immunity or extraterritoriality. Buddha is an emperor (of the dharma), and monks (his heirs) are princes, and thus the authoritative ambassadors of his words. In China, even as heaven





Tibetan monks demonstrating in front of the U.S. Capitol for the cause of religious freedom in Tibet in 1998. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

mandates just rulership (*tianming*), the just ruler receives Buddha's charge or mandate for improving society and maintaining moral conduct: The model ruler is a "wheel-turner" who is responsible for law and order. There was a division of labor between the Buddha and the cakravartin, with the Buddha delivering beings from the world to a salvation "outside the world" (*fangwai*), and the cakravartin working "in the world" to reduce bad karma.

### **Law and party politics**

Imperial domain requires territory and more or less demarcated spatial boundaries (physical or imagined), within which there is jurisdiction; applicable laws were those determined by the emperor and his ministers,

scholars, and magistrates, and the military and police power needed to enforce those laws. At times the monastic institutions and the state contested areas of jurisdiction. For example, if a monk commits murder, the saṅgha is entitled to disrobe him, but not to send him to prison; the state may wait until the monk is disrobed before arresting him, or may claim a right to reach directly into the monastery. Similarly, state law codes have recognized the status of the cleric in a variety of ways, sometimes affording the ordained a dispensation not to perform military service, or acknowledging the Buddhist educational qualification as equivalent to secular educational degrees. In Thailand, degrees from Buddhist universities have gained qualified recognition from the government; for example,

these degrees are fully accredited for those who disrobe and serve as military chaplains. Thai law prescribes penalties on those who impersonate a monk.

There have also been explicitly Buddhist political parties. SŌKA GAKKAI, a Nichiren Shoshū-derived movement founded in 1930 in Japan, has been politically active, especially after World War II. In 1964 Sōka Gakkai leader Ikeda Daisaku established the political party Kōmeitō, formally unaffiliated but closely aligned with Sōka Gakkai. Officially dissolved in 1994 but reformed in 1998 as the New Kōmeitō, it has remained small but influential. In Sri Lanka as well, Buddhist nationalism has become a powerful political force. In India, the lawyer and politician B. R. AMBEDKAR (1891–1956) campaigned for the rights of untouchables, and shortly before his death led a mass conversion to Buddhism. There has also been a global mobilization of Tibetan Buddhist adherents against the Chinese occupation of Tibet. These and many other cases show that despite elements of other-worldly rhetoric, Buddhism is easily enlisted in political causes.

*See also:* Communism and Buddhism; Councils, Buddhist; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Kingship; Law and Buddhism; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements; Monastic Militias; Nationalism and Buddhism; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Orzech, Charles D. *Politics and Transcendent Wisdom: The Scripture for Humane Kings in the Creation of Chinese Buddhism*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1998.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Religion and the Legitimation of Power in South Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1978.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Religion and Legitimation of Power in Sri Lanka*. Chambersburg, PA: ANIMA, 1978.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Religion and Legitimation of Power in Thailand, Laos, and Burma*. Chambersburg, PA: ANIMA, 1978.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *World Conqueror and World Renouncer: A Study of Buddhism and Polity in Thailand against a Historical Background*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.
- Teiser, Stephen. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Zürcher, E. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

ERIC REINDERS

## PORTRAITURE

Representations of MONKS, NUNS, and members of the LAITY flourished in East Asian and Tibetan Buddhist traditions. In pre-Buddhist Han China, portraits of exemplary figures past and present derived from historical, biographical, and eulogistic texts. Ancient Chinese concepts of *portrait* are encompassed by the words *xiang* (Japanese, *zō*), *zhen* (Japanese, *shin*), and *ying* (Japanese, *ei*). Where a caption named a figure, both words and image called to mind the larger story of that individual; a likeness was not essential. Yet most modern definitions of portraiture mandate that the subject be an individual, and that the representation be based on observed reality. Within Buddhist contexts, the word *xiang* also denotes BUDDHA IMAGES (*foxiang*; Japanese, *butsuzō*), as well as representations of local deities (*shen*; Japanese, *kami*). Combinations like *zhenxiang* (Japanese, *shinzō*), and *yingxiang* (Japanese, *eizō*) stress the importance of resemblance and truth, not merely to appearances but also to the spirit. Like devotional icons, portraits consecrated in formal ceremonies embodied the living aura of their subjects. As such, they too, served as the focus of offerings and ceremonies.

### Lineages and patriarchs

In China early Buddhist portraiture featured genealogies or lineages that trace a particular history of dharma transmission. At the Kanjingsi cave chapel at LONGMEN (ca. 720–730), a procession of twenty-nine patriarchs of the “western lands” (i.e., India) carved in larger than life relief surround the central image of Śākyamuni. This artificial group, found in a text of the Northern CHAN SCHOOL, begins with Śākyamuni’s senior disciple MAHĀKĀŚYAPA and ends with BODHIDHARMA, putative founder of Chan in China. Although individually lifelike and varied, these depictions recall the Han tradition of exemplar portraits. LINEAGE portraits, in both painting and sculpture, spread to both Japan and Tibet. In mid-eighth century Japan at Tōdaiji, the patriarchs of each of the six competing schools of Buddhism were painted on wooden cabinets holding sūtras promoted by each school. Zhang Shengwen’s *Long Roll of Buddhist Images* (1173–1176, National Palace Museum, Taipei), painted for the kingdom of Dali in southwestern China, incorporated a succession of Chan portraits showing each master seated in a landscape setting. In Tibet, the founders of the four Tibetan orders appeared as the large central figure in *thang kas* (*thanka*; painted hanging scrolls),

surrounded by smaller depictions of their teachers and Buddhist deities. No matter how convincing or lifelike, such images were imaginary and deified representations of semilegendary and long-dead masters created to legitimize particular lineages.

The impulse to remember and venerate the sanctity of one's own teacher led to the creation of individual portraits from life and the writing of hagiographies. Numerous Chinese tales and images exemplify efforts to preserve the corpses of venerated saints, both through natural mummification and a complex practice of preservation by desiccation and cloth soaked in lacquer. Corpses encased in such a coating, placed within sūtra-mausoleums or separate temple halls, became objects of veneration for both temple and pilgrims. The mummy of the sixth Chan patriarch HUINENG (ca. 638–713) is the most famous extant example, while the life-sized hollow dry lacquer image of GANJIN (Chinese, Jianzhen; 688–763) may be an example of a sculpted image substituted for a “failed mummy.” At Tōshōdaiji in Nara, Japan, Ganjin's portrait served as a relic of the strong connection between a revered teacher and his surviving students, as well as a portrait of the temple's founder. In the thirteenth century, VINAYA school revivalists venerated Ganjin as their patriarch and erected a portrait hall for the image. Many portraits of individual monks commemorate their leadership talents and patronage activities, as for instance Hongbian (late ninth century), whose clay portrait was installed in a small chapel at DUNHUANG. Not a mummy, the image contained a bag of ashes, while a record of his activities was inscribed in a neighboring chapel.

A conflation of these strains of portraiture appears with KŪKAI (774–835), who studied Zhenyan (SHINGON BUDDHISM, JAPAN) teachings in Chang'an from 804 to 806. Kūkai brought back to Japan seven life-size individually painted portraits of his immediate predecessors that incorporated written biographies. After Kūkai's death, his followers added his own portrait to make a set of eight Shingon patriarchs. These paintings were copied and disseminated to Shingon temples throughout Japan, where they became an essential component in main halls and on pagoda walls.

Portraiture blossomed in thirteenth-century Japan as a result of an increased awareness of Buddhist history and fresh contact with Chinese teachers. Students of Pure Land, Vinaya, and Chan teachings brought back portraits of their teachers from China. These de-

picted formally dressed abbots seated in elaborate cloth-decorated chairs, holding attributes of their status and character. Often drawn from life, these paintings frequently bore inscriptions by the sitter. These individual portraits were venerated in Japanese monasteries, and when the subject died, they became the focus of memorial ceremonies. As the lineages of these teachers spread throughout Japan, copies proliferated. At some temples, separate portrait/memorial halls enshrined painted or sculpted images of founders. Perhaps the strongest manifestations of the lineage/memorial portrait tradition are the countless portraits of Chan abbots. Abbot portraits occupied central altar space in the various subtemples of Zen monasteries in Japan, where sculpted founder portraits replaced buddha images as the central object of devotion.

### Donors and lay believers

Buddhist portraiture was not confined to representations of lineages, patriarchs, and abbots. In ancient India, famous lay patrons, both men and women, abound in illustrated narratives, occasionally with identifying inscriptions. Relief carved images of lay patrons also appear on the gates to stūpa mounds. While neither of these types of representation qualify as portraiture, they can be seen as precursors to donor images of royalty and prominent families found in the cave-chapels of Dunhuang and Longmen in China. At the POTALA in Lhasa, a large ninth-century sculpted statue of King Srong btsan sgam po (Songtsen Gampo, ca. 627–649) suggests that the making of sculpted donor portraits may have been more common than extant evidence suggests. Many of the workshop-produced paintings found at Dunhuang depict generic lay donors, with space left to record names, dates, and vows. The genres of ancestor and commemorative portraits flourished in China long after Buddhism waned among the elite classes.

In Japan, however, portraits of the lay elite survive in considerable numbers. Numerous sculpted portraits of Prince SHŌTOKU (574–622) at different ages commemorate his role in establishing Buddhism. The hollow bodies of the sculptures often contain copies of the sūtras he promulgated, as well as donations from patrons. Several pious emperors received the tonsure upon abdicating the throne; thus their portraits show them with shaven heads in monk's clothing. Their descendants enshrined these portraits in private chapels or in temples they founded.

Throughout Japan's medieval period, numerous portraits of the aristocratic and military elite were created at their deaths to be hung in mortuary temples (*bodaiji*). Documentary sources tell of painters summoned to sketch their likenesses, either before or after death. These sketches served as the basis for life-size portraits, usually painted but occasionally carved. Family memorial portraits also included representations of prominent women, retired empresses and military wives, and even boys who had died young. The portraits frequently incorporated written biographies or eulogies, or the Buddhist name conferred on the deceased. Although memorial portraits depict their subjects in finery appropriate to their station, such portraits were not secular in function or place of display. The families of the deceased provided material support, often including the personal possessions of the deceased, to these mortuary temples for memorial ceremonies as well as care of family burial sites.

*See also:* Arhat Images; Bodhisattva Images; Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Chan Art; China, Buddhist Art in; Japan, Buddhist Art in

### Bibliography

- Guth, Christine M. E. "Portraiture." In *Japan's Golden Age: Momoyama*, ed. Money L. Hickman. Dallas, TX: Dallas Museum of Art, 1996.
- Levine, Gregory P. "Switching Sites and Identities: The Founder's Statue at the Buddhist Temple Kōrin'in." *Art Bulletin* 83, no. 1 (2001): 72–104.
- Mori, Hisashi. *Japanese Portrait Sculpture*, translated and adapted by W. Chie Ishibashi. Tokyo and New York: Kodansha International, 1977.
- Phillips, Quitman E. *The Practices of Painting in Japan, 1475–1500*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2000.
- Sharf, Robert H. "The Idolization of Enlightenment: On the Mummification of Ch'an Masters in Medieval China." *History of Religions* 32, no. 1 (1992): 1–31.
- Sharf, Robert H. "On the Ritual Use of Ch'an Portraiture in Medieval China." *Cahiers d'Extreme-Asie* 7 (1993–1994): 149–219.
- Sharf, Robert H., and Sharf, Elizabeth Horton, eds. *Living Images: Japanese Buddhist Icons in Context*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 2001.
- Spiro, Audrey. *Contemplating the Ancients: Aesthetic and Social Issues in Early Chinese Portraiture*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1990.

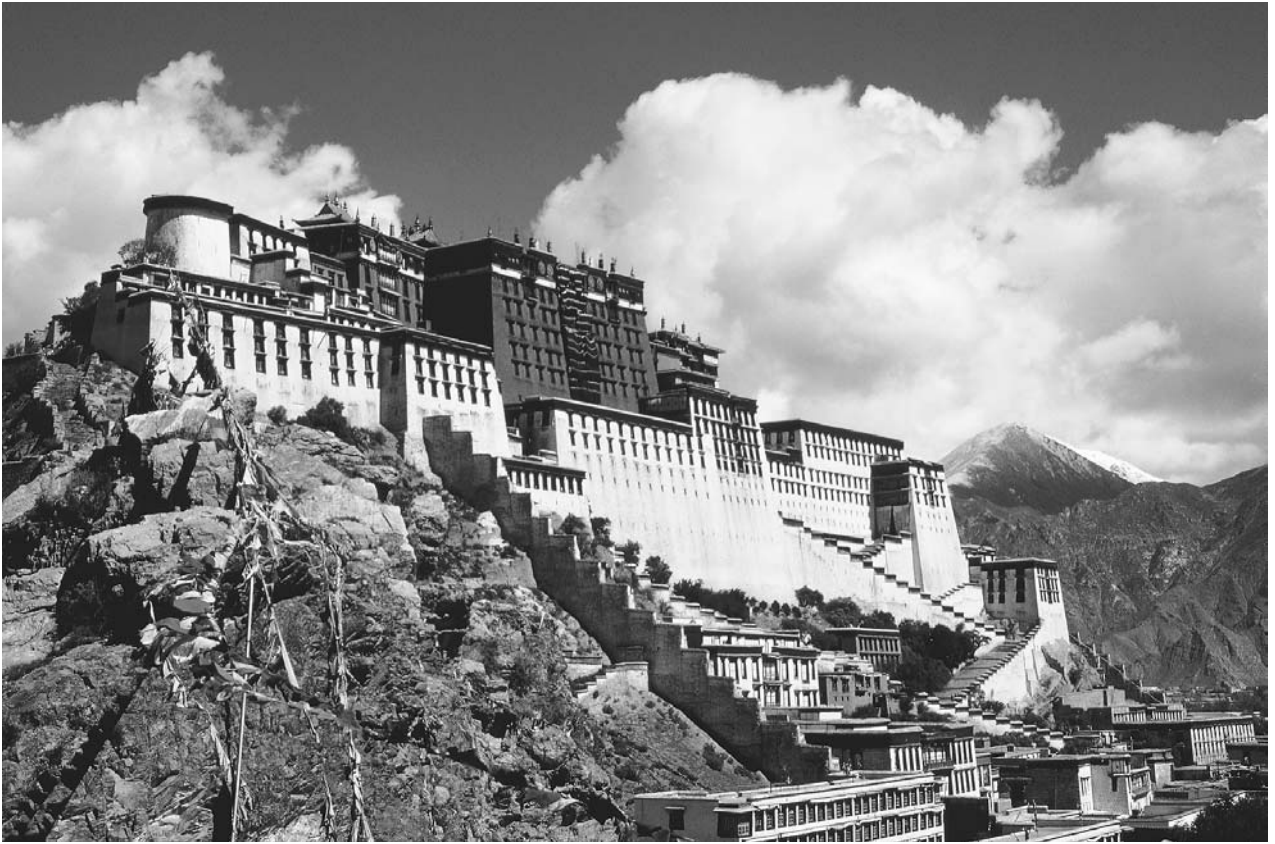
KAREN L. BROCK

## POTALA

The Potala palace, one of Tibet's largest and best known landmarks, is an enormous fortresslike structure located in the Tibetan capital Lhasa. The Potala served as the winter residence of the DALAI LAMAS and as the locus of the Tibetan government from the seventeenth century to the fourteenth Dalai Lama's flight from Tibet in 1959. In thirteen floors said to contain more than one thousand rooms, the Potala encompasses an elaborate conglomeration of residential chambers, reception and assembly halls, temples, reliquary chapels, monastic quarters, and offices. Located atop a small hill called Mar po ri on the northwestern edge of Lhasa, the palace's full name is the Summit Palace of Potala (Rtse po ta la'i pho brang). The name refers to Mount Potalaka in India, which is revered as the abode of the compassionate BODHISATTVA Avalokiteśvara, who is believed to manifest in the figure of the Dalai Lamas.

The earliest foundations of the palace date to the Tibetan king Srong btsan sgam po (r. ca. 614–650), who moved his capital to Lhasa from the south, erecting an eleven-storied structure on Mar po ri in 637 that served as the center for his court. Some ten centuries later, in 1645, the fifth Dalai Lama (1617–1682) began renovations to this structure, planning a new ecclesiastic residence and offices for the Dga' ldan pho brang—the central Tibetan government—all to be moved from the nearby 'Bras spungs (pronounced Drepung) Monastery. These additions included the so-called White Palace, composed mainly of administrative and residential quarters, and the upper Red Palace containing rooms used for religious purposes, which now include the reliquary tombs of the fifth and seventh through thirteenth Dalai Lamas. Construction continued for many decades and was not finished until the close of the seventeenth century. According to Tibetan histories, the fifth Dalai Lama's adroit regent Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho (1653–1705) kept news of the hierarch's death secret for more than twelve years in order to bring this monumental project to completion. Jesuit missionaries Albert Dorville and Johannes Grueber published sketches of the partially erected Potala palace, which they witnessed while passing through Lhasa in 1661.

For nearly three hundred years, the Potala served as an epicenter of Tibetan religious and political power. The outer facade was shelled by occupying Chinese troops in 1959, the time of the fourteenth Dalai Lama's



The Potala palace is the traditional residence of the dalai lamas in Lhasa, Tibet. © Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

flight into exile in India. Since then, much of the Shol village, a frequent destination of the flamboyant sixth Dalai Lama (1683–1707), located at the palace’s foot, has been systematically dismantled. Although the Potala’s structural damage was subsequently repaired, the vacant palace remains a potent symbol for the absence of Tibet’s principal religious and political leader.

The Potala’s massive structure also continues to play a central part in contemporary Tibetan religious practice. It forms the northern boundary of the large circumambulation route around Lhasa called the *gling skor* (pronounced ling khor) or sanctuary circuit. Pilgrims visit the palace daily, winding through its many inner chambers, reciting prayers and presenting offerings at its many hundreds of shrines. In 1994 the Potala was named a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

*See also:* Tibet

#### **Bibliography**

Bishop, Peter. “Reading the Potala.” In *Sacred Spaces and Powerful Places in Tibetan Culture: A Collection of Essays*, ed. Toni Huber. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1999.

Larsen, Knud, and Sinding-Larsen, Amund. *The Lhasa Atlas: Traditional Tibetan Architecture and Townscape*. Boston: Shambhala, 2001.

ANDREW QUINTMAN

## PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM)

With KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION), prajñā (wisdom) is one of two virtues universally affirmed by Buddhists. Broadly, prajñā is correct discernment of any object; specifically, it is intellectual and experiential insight into soteriologically significant truths, whether metaphysical (e.g., categories of DHARMAS, the functioning of KARMA, the realms of SAṂSĀRA) or ontological (e.g., no-self, emptiness, the natural purity of mind). Virtually all Buddhist traditions affirm that wisdom is a prerequisite to enlightenment, and that a buddha possesses the maximum possible wisdom, or gnosis (jñāna).

Like many Indian religious teachers of his era, the Buddha apparently regarded the “sentient condition” (repeated, uncontrolled REBIRTH in unsatisfactory realms) as rooted primarily in misapprehension of

reality. For early Buddhists, ignorance (*avidyā*) was, with desire and aversion, one of the three poisons that perpetuate *SAMSĀRA*, the cycle of rebirth; it was also the first of the twelve factors of *PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA* (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION) that account for continued rebirth. This ignorance misconstrues both the details and the ultimate nature of the world and of persons. In particular, the belief that one is or has a permanent, independent self leads to desire and aversion, thence to unskillful actions and unpleasant results, including rebirth. In fact, both philosophical and meditative investigation reveals that, because there is nothing anywhere in the conditioned world that is permanent, there can be no such self. The recognition of this fact of no-self (*anātman*) is the antidote to ignorance, that is, wisdom. When one realizes experientially, with insight *MEDITATION* founded on one-pointed concentration, that there is no self, one no longer creates desire or aversion for the sake of that self, and one begins to uproot defilements, becoming an *ārya*, whose enlightenment is assured.

In *THERAVĀDA* and other mainstream Buddhist texts, both canonical and commentarial, wisdom is, with morality (*śīla*) and concentration (*samādhi*), one of three indispensable Buddhist trainings. Wisdom itself is commonly divided into that gained through study of written and oral teachings, reflection upon the meaning of those teachings, and meditative internalization of those meanings. This list and its sequencing show that in most Buddhist contexts both philosophical and experiential wisdom were valued, but that experiential wisdom, gained through insight meditation, was considered superior. Most great Theravāda and Śrāvakayāna texts—from the *Sūtra* and *ABHIDHARMA* *Piṭakas* to scholastic masterworks such as *BUDDHAGHOSA*'S *Visuddhimagga* (*Path to Purification*) and *VASUBANDHU*'S *ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA* (*Treasury of Abhidharma*) (both ca. fifth century C.E.)—provided a more or less systematic categorization of the dharmas or phenomena into which Buddhists analyze reality, while also stressing the limitations of intellectualism and the necessity for meditative scrutiny of oneself and the world, especially so as to negate the idea of a subsisting self.

Despite caveats about scholasticism, Theravāda and Śrāvakayāna philosophers sometimes reified dharmas and their categorizations, and many *MAHĀYĀNA* texts evidently were written to counter this tendency. The earliest and most influential was the *PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ* *LITERATURE*, which focused on wisdom as the sixth and culminating *PĀRAMITĀ* (PERFECTION) that a *BOD-*

*HISATTVA* must master en route to full buddhahood. This literature described wisdom as the nonconceptual realization that not just the self, but the very dharmas that constitute the person and the world are intrinsically empty. The *bodhisattva* must also perfect such methods (*UPĀYA*) as generosity, morality, patience, effort, and contemplation, but does so while bearing in mind their emptiness. Other *Mahāyāna* *sūtras* promoted wisdom in other ways, seeing it as the realization of nonduality, sameness, lack of intrinsic nature, mind-only, the interpenetration of all dharmas, or the stainless primordial mind. However they described the object of wisdom, these *sūtras* shared an emphasis on the ultimate inconceivability of reality and the primacy of experiential over intellectual approaches to wisdom.

Far from ending philosophical debate, however, the *Mahāyāna* *sūtras* spawned countless commentaries and treatises, which systematically analyzed both the subjective and objective aspects of wisdom, from *YOGĀCĀRA* *SCHOOL* enumerations of types of consciousness, to *Pramāṇa* school analyses of epistemic authority, *MADHYAMAKA* *SCHOOL* debates about the place of reason in arguments for emptiness, and *TATHĀGATAGARBHA*-tradition evocations of a pure buddha-wisdom lying dormant in every sentient being. Scholar-monks examined the relation of wisdom to *bodhicitta*, compassion, and skillful means; the way to arrive at a “middle view” that avoided the extremes of eternalism and nihilism; the balance to be struck in meditation between concentration and analysis; and what is known by a buddha’s perfect gnosis. By the late first millennium C.E., north India was dotted with great monastic universities emphasizing a scholarly approach to wisdom.

Not surprisingly, countercurrents developed. East Asian Chan traditions focused on direct transmission and nonconceptual realization of perfect wisdom. Indian and Tibetan tantric movements developed dramatic ritual and meditative practices to bring about a wisdom consciousness that simultaneously realizes emptiness, sees forms, and experiences bliss. Chan and tantric traditions themselves sometimes embraced scholasticism, and were in turn reformed by contemplatives, such as *HUINENG* (638–713) in the *CHAN* *SCHOOL* and *Saraha* (late first millennium C.E.) in *TANTRA*, who sought to return wisdom to its home in nonconceptual meditative experience. Meditative schools, however, sometimes adopted irrationalism or antinomianism, and so were opposed by others, including *ZONGMI* (780–841) in China and *TSONG KHA PA* (1357–1419) in Tibet, who insisted that philosophical

training was a prerequisite to attaining experiential wisdom through meditation.

Wisdom was not restricted to philosophers and contemplatives; it became accessible to ordinary Buddhists through art and ritual. Content aside, texts were often believed to impart wisdom and protective power simply by virtue of being containers of the dharma, and they were worshipped accordingly. Certain doctrinal formulas were inscribed on steles and statuary; for example, “Of those dharmas arising from causes, the tathāgata has described the cause, and also their cessation—thus spoke the Great Ascetic.” Wisdom was condensed into DHĀRAṆĪS and MANTRAS, which evoked power and knowledge in the practitioner, and served as purifiers in confession rituals. Wisdom also was deified, sometimes as male, as in the bodhisattva Mañjuśrī, whose widespread cult is centered at Wutaishan in China, but more often as female, as in Prajñāpāramitā, who is “mother of the Buddhas,” or Vajrayoginī, who symbolizes the tantric gnosis experiencing emptiness and bliss simultaneously.

Wisdom remains central to contemporary Buddhism, especially as Buddhist traditions enter the modern world. Insight meditation (*vipassanā*) is practiced more widely than ever before, Buddhist views are compared with one another and with Western ideologies, and old debates continue about how to describe the object of wisdom, balance intellectual and experiential approaches to wisdom, and apply wisdom to living life in the world with real intelligence and freedom.

See also: **Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening)**

### Bibliography

- Buddhaghosa, Bhadantacariya. *The Path of Purification: Visuddhimagga*, tr. Bhikku Ñāṇamoli. Boulder, CO: Shambhala, 1976.
- Collins, Steven. *Selfless Persons: Imagery and Thought in Theravāda Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1982.
- Lancaster, Lewis, ed. *Prajñāpāramitā and Related Systems*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1997.
- Napper, Elizabeth. *Dependent Arising and Emptiness: A Tibetan Buddhist Interpretation of Mādhyamika Philosophy Emphasizing the Compatibility of Emptiness and Conventional Phenomena*. London and Boston: Wisdom, 1989.
- Pettit, John W. *Mipham’s Beacon of Certainty: Illuminating the View of Dzogchen, the Great Perfection*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.

Ruegg, David Seyfort. *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1981.

Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London and New York: Routledge, 1989.

Yampolsky, Phillip B., trans. *The Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1967.

ROGER R. JACKSON

---

## PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE

One of the earliest records of the MAHĀYĀNA school’s discourse in Indian Buddhism is to be found in the family of texts known as the Prajñāpāramitā, often translated as “Perfection of Wisdom.” These texts appear in several forms. Some were similar in content but were characterized by expansion. Titles were later added to these expansions, based on the length of each. The oldest of this group was designated as 8,000 lines and the largest as 100,000. There were those numbering 18,000 and 25,000 lines. Another group of texts was formed in the opposite fashion, by contraction. The great length of the earlier texts created problems of how to preserve and use documents that covered hundreds of palm leaves or strips of birch bark. One solution was to look for ways to present the core of the teaching in shortened formats. Out of this grew the texts that are most often recited in monasteries and Buddhist ceremonies in East Asia, the so-called DIAMOND SŪTRA and HEART SŪTRA. One further development was added by the tantric movement. In this form, MANTRAS and DHĀRAṆĪ dominated, and the smallest of the contractions appeared in which the doctrine of the Prajñāpāramitā was contained in the single letter A.

There is very little known about the community of monastics who produced these texts that were to become a primary source for Mahāyāna development. The lack of inscriptions, archeological finds, and mixed reports from early Chinese pilgrims suggest that the documents were not the result of a large institutional structure. From internal evidence within the texts that gave high praise to the practice of making written copies, it may be that this discourse was transmitted mainly through the emerging technology of writing. The early years of Buddhism, after the time of the Buddha, was based on an oral tradition and a large organization of monasteries. The use of written manuscripts may have allowed a small group to dis-

seminate these particular ideas without reliance on more traditional oral methods.

Within the texts, the teaching is mainly done through the use of dialogue between well-known figures, including the Buddha and his major followers. The subject matter revolves around long established debates over the nature of perception and cognition. The list of terms seldom varies from the *Mātrkā* (seed) categories set up in the ABHIDHARMA groups. The innovation found in the *Prajñāpāramitā* is the emphasis given to the momentary and unique nature of each moment of cognition and the insights regarding this process achieved by a special group of adepts known as BODHISATTVAS.

See also: Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Conze, Edward. *The Prajñāpāramitā Literature*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1960.
- Conze, Edward, trans. *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines and Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, CA: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.
- Lancaster, Lewis, ed., and Gómez, Luis, assoc. ed. *Prajñāpāramitā and Related Systems: Studies in Honor of Edward Conze*. Berkeley: University of California Regents, 1977.
- Lopez, Donald S. *Elaborations on Emptiness: Uses of the Heart Sūtra*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.

LEWIS LANCASTER

## PRĀTIMOKṢA

The *prātimokṣa* (Pāli, *pātimokkha*), presumably the oldest section of the VINAYA, contains the disciplinary code that regulates the life of the SAṄGHA, the Buddhist monastic community. The etymology of the term *prātimokṣa* is uncertain, but it denotes the highest standard of conduct for Buddhist monastics. In the early days of the Buddhist community, the *prātimokṣa* was apparently a simple profession of faith in the Buddha's primary teachings that was recited periodically by the expanding saṅgha. Later, the term came to refer to the corpus of disciplinary rules that developed gradually over time as the saṅgha grew and regulations were formulated in response to specific incidents of misconduct.

The *prātimokṣa* is recited twice a month, on the full moon and new moon days, at an observance known as saṅgha *poṣadha* (Pāli, *uposatha*). This ob-

servance is a rite of confession in which the actual confession of faults precedes the recitation of precepts and declaration of purity. The *Bhikṣuprātimokṣa* is recited by fully ordained MONKS and the *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa* is recited by fully ordained NUNS in separate observances; novices and laypeople are not permitted to attend. The semimonthly obligatory recitation of the *prātimokṣa* is a means of reviewing the ethical guidelines and rules of etiquette that the monks and nuns voluntarily agree to observe, and a time for them to reaffirm their purity with regard to the prohibitions. This liturgical observance, conducted within a *sīmā* (ritually established boundary), is a way to ensure harmony within the saṅgha and between the saṅgha and the laity. Rituals of REPENTANCE AND CONFESSION and specific procedures for expiating offenses are prescribed. The importance of the PRECEPTS is evident in the Buddha's declaration that the *prātimokṣa* would guide the saṅgha after he passed away.

The *prātimokṣa* precepts found in the vinaya (monastic discipline) regulate the lives of Buddhist monastics who have received the *upasamṃpadā* (full ORDINATION), as well as novices and probationers who are in training. The precepts give detailed instructions that regulate ethical decision making, food, clothing, shelter, furnishings, and other material requisites, as well as the rules that govern etiquette and personal interactions. The extant texts of all schools of vinaya list five categories of precepts that are common to both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*: (1) *pārājika* (defeats that entail expulsion from the saṅgha, such as killing a human being or engaging in sexual intercourse); (2) *saṅghāvaśeṣa* (remainders that entail suspension, such as acting as a go-between or baselessly accusing someone of a *pārājika*); (3) *niḥsargika-pāṭayantika* (abandoning downfalls that entail forfeiture, such as keeping excess robes or engaging in business activities); (4) *pāṭayantika* (propelling downfalls or lapses, such as intentionally telling a lie or eating at an improper time); and (5) *śaikṣā* (faults or misdeeds, such as wearing the robes improperly or eating in a careless fashion). There is one additional category for bhikṣus, the two *aniyatadharma* (individually confessed downfalls), and one for *bhikṣuṇīs*, the eight *pratideśanīya* (offenses requiring confession). The seven *adhikaraṇa-śamatha* (methods of resolving disputes) are included in the *prātimokṣas* of both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*. These seven methods include assembling the parties to the dispute, remembering events, admitting one's responsibility, resolving matters by a majority decision, and so forth.



Diverse schools of vinaya (*nikāyas*) developed in India within a few hundred years after the Buddha's *parinirvāṇa*, but the prātimokṣa rules and procedures of all these schools are thought to derive from the rules of discipline that were originally recited at the first of the Buddhist councils. Although the substance of the precepts is fundamentally the same, the specific numbers of precepts vary slightly from one school to another, for a variety of reasons. For example, (1) local communities had different interpretations of monastic discipline and there was no central authority to adjudicate them; (2) the precepts were transmitted orally and in different languages for several hundred years before they were written down; and (3) as the Buddhist community spread to different geographical and cultural areas, some precepts were adjusted in accordance with local customs. These schools are in almost complete agreement concerning the precepts, exhibiting only minor differences.

Of the roughly eighteen schools of vinaya that developed in India, three lineages of prātimokṣa are still in existence today. The THERAVĀDA Vinaya is preserved in Pāli and practiced by bhikṣus in Bangladesh, Burma, Cambodia, Laos, Thailand, and Sri Lanka; although the *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa* exists in Pāli, there is no living lineage of *bhikṣuṇīs* in the Theravāda tradition. The *Dharmaguptaka-vinaya* is preserved in Chinese and practiced by bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs* in China, Japan, Korea, Taiwan, and Vietnam. The MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA is preserved in Tibetan and practiced by bhikṣus in Bhutan, the Indian Himalayas, Mongolia, Nepal, and Tibet; although the *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa* exists in Tibetan, there is no living lineage of *bhikṣuṇīs* in the Tibetan tradition. In the Theravāda tradition, there are 227 precepts for bhikṣus and 311 for *bhikṣuṇīs*; in the Dharmagupta, there are 250 for bhikṣus and 348 for *bhikṣuṇīs*; and in the Mūlasarvāstivāda, there are 258 for bhikṣus and 354 for *bhikṣuṇīs*.

The *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa-sūtra* exists in all three of these vinaya schools, but a living lineage of *bhikṣuṇīs* exists only in the Dharmagupta school. Tens of thousands of *bhikṣuṇīs* in China, Korea, Taiwan, and Vietnam today regulate their lives by the *Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa* of the Dharmagupta school. In all three extant vinaya schools, the number of precepts for *bhikṣuṇīs* is considerably greater than for bhikṣus. The Bhikṣu Saṅgha was quite well organized and influential by the time the Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha was established five or six years later, so the *bhikṣuṇīs* were naturally expected to follow the majority of the bhikṣus precepts, in addition to new precepts occasioned by spe-

cific misbehavior among the nuns. In the first category of precepts, the *pārājikas*, there are four that are common to both bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*. They are to refrain from: (1) sexual intercourse, (2) taking what is not given, (3) taking a human life, and (4) telling lies, especially about one's spiritual attainments. The four additional *pārājikas* for *bhikṣuṇīs* are to refrain from: (5) bodily contact with a lustful man; (6) arranging to meet a man with amorous intentions; (7) concealing a *pārājika* of another *bhikṣuṇī*; and (8) obeying a bhikṣu who has been expelled from the saṅgha. Of the second category of precepts, *saṅghāvaśeṣas*, bhikṣus in all schools have thirteen, whereas *bhikṣuṇīs* in the Dharmagupta and Theravāda have seventeen, and *bhikṣuṇīs* in the Mūlasarvāstivāda have twenty. Some *saṅghāvaśeṣas* are similar for bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs* (e.g., acting as a go-between, baselessly accusing someone of a *pārājika*, refusing to accept admonishments, creating a schism in the saṅgha), while others are dissimilar.

Broadly interpreted, there are eight types of prātimokṣa precepts: bhikṣu (fully ordained monk), *bhikṣuṇī* (fully ordained nun), *śikṣamāṇā* (probationary nun), *śrāmaṇera* (male novice), *śrāmaṇerikā* (female novice), *upāsaka* (layman), *upāsikā* (laywoman), and *upavāsatha* (one-day lay observance). There is no counterpart to the *śikṣamāṇā* (probationary nun) ordination for monks. The first seven categories of prātimokṣa precepts generally entail a lifetime commitment, except in countries such as Thailand where temporary ordination is offered. The eighth type of prātimokṣa precepts, *upavāsatha*, is the observance of eight precepts for twenty-four hours by laypeople. The aim of all types of prātimokṣa precepts is to cultivate restraint of the senses as a means to achieve liberation.

*See also: Councils, Buddhist; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals*

### Bibliography

- Davids, T. W. Rhys, and Oldenberg, Hermann, trans. *Vinaya Texts*, parts 1–3. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1974.
- Dhirasekera, Jotiya. *Buddhist Monastic Discipline: A Study of Its Origin and Development in Relation to the Sutta and Vinaya Piṭakas*. Sri Lanka: Ministry of Higher Education, 1982.
- Horner, Isaline Blew. *The Book of Discipline*, 6 vols. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1982.
- Prebish, Charles S. *Buddhist Monastic Discipline: The Sanskrit Prātimokṣa Sūtras of the Mahāsaṃghikas and Mūlasarvāstivādins*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1975.

Tsomo, Karma Lekshe. *Sisters in Solitude: Two Traditions of Buddhist Monastic Ethics for Women, a Comparative Analysis of the Dharmagupta and Mūlasarvāstivāda Bhikṣuṇī Prātimokṣa Sūtras*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

Vajirañāṇavarorasa, Somdet Phra Māha Samaṇa Chao Krom Phrayā. *The Entrance to the Vinaya: Vinayamukha*, 3 vols. Bangkok, Thailand: Mahāmakūṭ Rājavidyālaya Press, 1969–1983.

Wijayarātana, Mohan. *Buddhist Monastic Life According to the Texts of the Theravāda Tradition*, tr. Claude Grangier and Steven Collins. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1990.

KARMA LEKSHE TSOMO

## PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGATION)

The theory of dependent origination (*pratītyasamutpāda*; Pāli: *paticcasamuppāda*), which literally means “arising on the ground of a preceding cause,” could well be considered the common denominator of all Buddhist traditions throughout the world, whether THERAVĀDA, MAHĀYĀNA, or VAJRAYĀNA. The canonical texts of the Theravāda tradition portray ŚĀRIPUTRA (the Buddha’s disciple) as saying that “whoever understands dependent origination understands the teaching of the Buddha, and whoever understands the teaching of the Buddha understands dependent origination” (M. i, 190–191). In the Vajrayāna tradition, a similar view is expressed by the fourteenth DALAI LAMA (1935–) who stated in his 1990 book, *Freedom in Exile*, that the fundamental precept of Buddhism is this law of dependent origination. No matter what the tradition, one can clearly see the importance attributed to the theory: It renders it a fundamental tenet of Buddhism, indispensable for realizing and understanding the implications of Buddhist philosophy.

The theory of dependent origination is usually divided into twelve links (*nidāna*), each of which conditions the following link. The order presented in Table 1 is traditionally referred to as the normal order (*anuloma*), which illustrates the process of the development of SAṂSĀRA. The *pratītyasamutpāda* is also often presented soteriologically in reverse order (*pratiloma*), which simply indicates that if one link is eradicated, the next is also eradicated.

The chain of dependent origination is often approached as a causal theory. One usually speaks of

TABLE 1

The twelve links of the chain of dependent origination	
1. Ignorance	PAST
2. Karmic activities	
<hr/>	
3. Consciousness	
4. Mind and matter	
5. Six sense-doors	
6. Contact	PRESENT
7. Sensation	
8. Craving	
9. Attachment	
10. Becoming	
<hr/>	
11. Birth; rebirth	FUTURE
12. Old age, death	

causality when one says “there being this, that appears.” Yet it is necessary to stress that a substantial “cause” from which the “effect” was generated cannot be deduced from dependent origination. The *Samyuttanikāya* (*Connected Discourses*; S.ii.87–88) explains that fertile soil, water, and light are necessary conditions for the growth of a sapling, but none of these factors alone will yield the expected result. Similarly, each of the links of the chain of dependent origination is necessary for the production of the next element, yet none can definitely be perceived as sufficient on its own.

Since this complex chain of causation is always said to give rise to suffering, the deactivation of any of the twelve links of this chain is bound to break the causal process and to eliminate suffering. According to the Pāli canon, both the chain of dependent origination and the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATE) are responsible for suffering. The Buddha stated repeatedly that the root of all suffering lies in the five aggregates, which represent the psychophysical constituents of the individual. This is further evidenced by the *Mahāvagga* of the *Aṅguttaranikāya* (*Discourses Increasing by One*), where an intimate relation between the five aggregates and the theory of dependent origination is established. In this specific discourse, a description of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS is offered in terms of dependent origination. Therein, the first noble truth follows the standard canonical rendering and ends with the following phrase: “in short, the five aggregates are suffering” (A. i, 177). Yet the description of the two following truths does not comply with the paradigmatic rendition.

Instead, they are depicted in terms of the theory of dependent origination. The noble truth concerned with the arising of suffering is simply explained by the *pratīyasamutpāda* in normal order (*anuloma*), while the noble truth of cessation of suffering is defined by dependent origination in reverse order (*pratiloma*). It is clear then that dependent origination, traditionally seen as an explanation for the arising and the eradication of suffering, is intimately related to the theory of the five aggregates.

The Theravāda tradition holds that certain links of the chain of causation are limited either to the past, present, or future. In other words, and as illustrated in Table 1, different links constitute different temporal divisions. Although this chronological division is not expressed explicitly in the Pāli canonical literature itself, it is supported by the *Abhidhammatthasaṅgaha* (*Compendium of Philosophy*) of Anuruddha, a South Indian Buddhist philosopher (ca. eleventh–twelfth century C.E.). What is unclear, however, is the delineation and theoretical distinction among these three divisions. Since the past is nothing but the aging of the present, and the present the actualization of the future, each temporal division has to be seen as the paraphrasing of, or a different perspective on, the two other divisions. Since these divisions are merely arbitrary, the links of dependent origination that were classified under a certain time period could have been easily classified under another. What comes under “past” could have been under “future” or “present,” and vice versa. Therefore, it becomes evident that elements belonging to a specific time period represent a process similar to the one reflected by the elements belonging to another. Ignorance and karmic activities operate on the same principles as birth and old age and death, and as the eight middle links. The physical and psychological elements at work in the individual remain the same whether in the past, present, or future. Stated differently, the theory of dependent origination could run thus: Within one life span (links 11–12; birth and old age and death), one keeps generating karmic activities (link 2) because of ignorance (link 1), and this generation of karmic activities due to ignorance is more easily understandable by examining the process described by the eight middle links.

Equally striking is that the division of the chain of causation into three time periods implies the presence of the five aggregates in each of these periods, since an “individual” (composed of the five aggregates) must experience this process within each of the periods; this is the perspective put forth by VASUBANDHU (fourth

century C.E.) in his ABHIDHARMAKŌSABHĀṢYA (AbhK. iii, 20). This suggests that the theory of dependent origination is not merely a soteriological tool, indicating how the individual ought to proceed in order to attain liberation from the causal process of saṃsāra, but also a psychological chart mapping the working of the mind.

*See also:* Duḥkha (Suffering)

### Bibliography

- Dalai Lama XIV. *Freedom in Exile: The Autobiography of the Dalai Lama*. New York: HarperCollins, 1990.
- Lamotte, Étienne. “Conditioned Co-Production and Supreme Enlightenment.” In *Buddhist Studies in Honour of Walpola Rahula*, ed. Somaratna Balasooriya et al. London: Gordon Fraser, 1980.
- Macy, Joanna. “Dependent Co-Arising: The Distinctiveness of Buddhist Ethics.” *Journal of Religious Ethics* 7, no. 1 (1979): 38–52.
- Silburn, Lilian. *Instant et cause: Le discontinu dans la pensée philosophique de l’Inde*. Paris: Librairie Philosophique J. Vrin, 1955.
- Tanaka, Kenneth K. “Simultaneous Relation (sahabhū-hetu): A Study in Buddhist Theory of Causation.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 8, no. 1 (1985): 91–111.

MATHIEU BOISVERT

---

## PRATYEKABUDDHA

In the early tradition of the Pāli canon the *paccekabuddha* (Sanskrit, *pratyekabuddha*) refers to a male individual who has attained enlightenment or insight (*bodhi*; hence, *buddha*) by himself. In contrast to a *sammāsambuddha* (Sanskrit, *samyaksambuddha*), which is a completely enlightened person, a *pratyekabuddha* keeps enlightenment for himself (*pratyeka*) and does not embark on a career of preaching it to others. In early Buddhist COSMOLOGY, buddha era and non-buddha era follow each other. During a buddha era, an enlightened being like the historical Buddha (Siddhārtha Gautama) is born, attains enlightenment, and eventually preaches the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS that he has discovered. He then starts a dispensation on the basis of his compassion for other suffering beings. A *pratyekabuddha* also attains enlightenment by his own effort, but does not have the energy to preach or establish a Buddhist dispensation because, as the

canonical texts explain, he lacks the compassion of a fully enlightened buddha. Even so, he is considered a teacher, albeit a silent one, teaching by the example of his life and actions.

The figure of the pratyekabuddha may have been the result of integration in early Buddhist history of pre-Buddhist ascetics, who had been revered by the people as saints and sages. By incorporating them into Buddhist history, early Buddhist communities were able to establish a kind of continuity with the pre-Buddhist period. At the same time, they were able to acknowledge the possibility of enlightened persons in other eras and cultures.

Pratyekabuddhas therefore have a special, but limited, place in Buddhist ideology. A fully enlightened person, a buddha, finds the eternal truths of the Buddhist message by himself and starts a period of Buddhism. A pratyekabuddha, on the other hand, will not preach and will have no followers. Like a pratyekabuddha, an ARHAT is a person who attains the highest state of enlightenment. However, according to Buddhist tradition, the arhat did not reach this stage by his or her own efforts, but rather came to understand the four noble truths and traveled the PATH as taught by the Buddhist tradition. In the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, the paths of arhat, pratyekabuddha, and buddha are initially all considered as leading to NIRVĀṆA, but the path of a buddha is believed to be the only worthy goal, the One Vehicle of Supreme Buddhahood, which will eventually be attained by all.

**See also:** Ascetic Practices; Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies

### Bibliography

- Kloppenborg, Ria. *The Paccekabuddha: A Buddhist Ascetic*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1974.
- Wiltshire, Martin G. *Ascetic Figures before and in Early Buddhism: The Emergence of Gautama as the Buddha*. Berlin and New York: de Gruyter, 1990.

RIA KLOPPENBORG

## PRATYUTPANNASAMĀDHI-SŪTRA

*Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*, an early MAHĀYĀNA meditation text, was first translated into Chinese by Lokakṣema in 179 C.E. The full Sanskrit title is *Pratyutpanna-buddha-saṃmukha-avasthita-samādhi-sūtra*,

which translates as “the scripture of the meditation in which one comes face-to-face with the buddhas of the present,” that is, buddhas now inhabiting other worlds. The principal objectives of this encounter are to hear the dharma from the buddha of one’s choice and to be reborn with him in his world after death. The text’s use of AMITĀBHA in Sukhāvātī as a paradigm case suggests links with PURE LAND BUDDHISM, but practitioners may seek to encounter and be taught by any buddha of the present. The sūtra thus provides a means and a rationale for continuing scriptural revelation. After purifying themselves, practitioners meditate on the buddha’s virtues and visualize his physical person (using the standard list of thirty-two marks and eighty features), while seated facing the appropriate direction (e.g., west for Amitābha). Doing this continuously for up to seven days and nights, they eventually see the desired vision, either in the waking state or in dreams. Interestingly, the sūtra itself undercuts an excessively literal understanding of the process or undue emotional attachment to its results by deconstructing them in terms of the doctrine of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), thus representing a merging of various currents of Mahāyāna Buddhist thought and practice.

Evidence for the practice in India is slim, although many sources extol the salvific value of such visions of the buddhas. In East Asia, however, the *pratyutpannasamādhi* and its derivatives are well attested elements in the meditative and ritual repertoire of Buddhism.

### Bibliography

- Harrison, Paul. “Buddhānusmṛti in the Pratyutpanna-buddha-saṃmukhāvasthita-samādhi-sūtra.” *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 6 (1978): 35–57.
- Harrison, Paul. *The Samādhi of Direct Encounter with the Buddhas of the Present: An Annotated English Translation of the Tibetan Version of the Pratyutpanna-Buddha-Saṃmukhāvasthita-Samādhi-Sūtra with Several Appendices Relating to the History of the Text*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1990.

PAUL HARRISON

## PRAYER

Buddhists, like many other religious people, usually pray *to* someone or something, and they pray *for* the realization of certain goals. Sometimes Buddhists pray using their body alone (a simple bow in front of an altar); sometimes they use words (the recitation of a verse of homage or devotion, a verbal petition or a

supplication). Buddhist prayer can also be done in the mind. Buddhists pray in private, individually in public, or together with others as a joint activity.

Buddhists pray to a variety of beings, both human and nonhuman. The object of prayer can be the historical Buddha, or one of a seemingly infinite number of transhistorical BUDDHAS or BODHISATTVAS. When THERAVĀDA Buddhists, for example, prostrate before a Buddha statue, this might be considered an act of praying with the body. If, in addition, they chant the most famous Pāli worship formula, “Homage to the worthy one, the lord, the completely awakened one,” that might be considered to involve a verbal prayer as well. If this is further accompanied by thoughts of the Buddha’s greatness, or by feelings of gratitude or devotion, this might be considered to involve the mind in prayer. In the Chinese and Japanese Pure Land tradition, the practice of *nenbutsu* (*nianfo*), the recollection of the Buddha AMITĀBHA and his pure land, is quintessentially a mental action, but it is usually accompanied by the repeated recitation of a prayer-formula, “Homage to the Buddha Amitābha.”

Prayers can also be directed to human beings, both living and not. For example, Tibetan Buddhists practice what is popularly called *guru devotion*. Mentally, this involves the cultivation of an attitude in which the teacher comes to be seen as a buddha. Verbally, *guru devotion* can be done through the simple repetition of the guru’s name. In more elaborate rituals, for example, in the “worship of the guru” (*bla ma mchod pa*), the living or deceased guru, whose presence is ritually invoked, becomes the object of the adept’s devotions: Offerings are made, the guru is requested not to forsake the world and to continue to teach the doctrine, and he or she will also be asked to impart blessings on the adept.

Buddhists also direct their prayers at special things. For example, the widespread practice of “going for refuge to the three jewels” can be seen not only as a prayer to the buddha and the SAṄGHA, but also to the dharma (a holy, but inanimate, object). Sometimes a specific scripture will become an object of prayer and devotion, as in the Sino-Japanese cults of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). The worship of STŪPAS or relics might also be said to be forms of prayer directed at something, rather than at someone.

Besides praying to what we might call “transcendental” objects, however, Buddhists also pray to the various DIVINITIES (devas) that are believed to inhabit the world. These can be quite extraordinary beings, like

the great gods of the Hindu pantheon, or the protectors of the dharma. They can also be lesser, though nonetheless powerful, spirits associated with a particular region or place. Tantric Buddhists developed elaborate prayer rituals to propitiate both dharma protectors and indigenous spirits. In many of these rituals practitioners visualize themselves in the form of an enlightened deity, who then demands, rather than requests, the cooperation of the protector. This is important, lest it be thought that all forms of Buddhist prayer requires the adept to assume a position of humility and submission before the object to whom the prayer is directed.

Finally, Buddhists pray for a variety of things that range from worldly goals (e.g., a good harvest, children, protection from harm, health, money, erudition, love) to the most sublime (enlightenment). They pray for a better REBIRTH (e.g., as a human or god) or, as is widespread in Mahāyāna Buddhism, they pray to be reborn in a pure land. When one engages in prayer for one’s own sake, this is often conceptualized in terms of the dual activities of purification and the accumulation of merit. For example, Tibetan Buddhists spin prayer wheels, metal cylinders that rotate on their axes and that contain MANTRAS (Tibetans themselves call these objects *maṇi wheels*). The spinning of prayer wheels is often done during other activities, almost as a reflex, and would appear not to involve any conscious goal. However, Tibetans generally believe that the movement of sacred objects (in this case, printed mantras) generates merit for the mover, and so the goal of merit-making is at the very least implied in the spinning of prayer wheels.

Buddhists also believe in the efficacy of prayers for the sake of others, both living and dead. The Mahāyāna in particular stresses the importance of praying for others, as in the practice of “dedicating one’s merits” for the benefit of all sentient beings, which can also be seen as an act of prayer.

*See also:* Merit and Merit-Making; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Refuges; Relics and Relics Cults

### Bibliography

- Griffiths, Paul J. “A Hymn of Praise to the Buddha’s Good Qualities.” In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Makransky, John. “Offering (*mChod pa*) in Tibetan Ritual Literature.” In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José I. Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.

Sharf, Robert. "The Scripture on the Production of Buddha Images." In *Religions of China in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.

Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London: Routledge, 1989.

JOSÉ IGNACIO CABEZÓN

## PRECEPTS

Precepts within Buddhism are rules and guidelines intended to properly shape the mind and its manifestations in physical and verbal behavior so as to facilitate progress on the PATH to liberation. The term *precepts*, although a valid rendering of one sense of the Sanskrit word *śīla* (Pāli, *sīla*), fails to convey the full range and force of that word, which properly refers to the morality or virtue that constitutes one of the prerequisite foundations for ultimate spiritual attainment. The cultivation of *śīla* in this broad sense represents one of three required forms of training (*trīṇi śikṣāṇi*), along with concentration and wisdom, that correspond to the noble eightfold path. Although the precepts appear as external prescriptions and are often couched in negative terms, their goal and the proper thrust of Buddhist morality is the natural and positive embodiment of right action, speech, and livelihood. The various categories of precepts that will be discussed below are therefore not to be seen as ends in themselves, but rather as necessary steps in training for awakening. As steps, these categories distinguish between the lay and monastic life stations, between males and females, as well as between different levels of progress and commitment in religious life.

### The five, eight, and ten precepts

The most basic moral prescriptions in Buddhism are often identified with the categories of five, eight, and ten precepts, which are generically known as rules of training (Sanskrit, *śikṣāpada*; Pāli, *sikkhāpada*). The five precepts address the moral obligations of all Buddhist laypersons and are sometimes taken along with the three REFUGES in a formal ceremony. They are thus viewed, much like monastic precepts, as a set of vows that call for abstention: (1) from the taking of life, (2) from stealing, (3) from sexual misconduct, (4) from lying, and (5) from intoxicants. Laypersons seeking to express greater dedication to the Buddhist path and further growth in moral training can take on observance of the eight precepts. Besides adopting a stricter interpretation of the first five precepts in which ob-

servance of the third precept requires complete abstinence from sexual activity, adherence to the eight precepts further entails: (6) refraining from eating after midday, (7) avoiding singing, dancing, and music, as well as use of perfume, and (8) refraining from the use of luxurious beds. Observance of these eight rules conventionally takes place only for limited periods, often on six days each month, arranged around the full and new moon days that coincide with the bi-monthly confessional ceremonies (Sanskrit, *poṣadha*; Pāli, *uposatha*) in the monastic community.

In contrast to the categories of five and eight precepts that pertain to the moral training of laypersons, the category of ten precepts sets forth a basic moral vision for Buddhist monastics. Those entering the monastic order take these ten precepts in a "going-forth" ceremony (*pravrajyā*, *pabbajā*) through which they become novices (*śrāmaṇera*, *sāmaṇera*). The ten precepts resemble an expanded form of the eight precepts, which involves adherence to the five precepts, including a strict ban on all sexual activity, and further entails vowing to refrain: (6) from eating after midday, (7) from singing, dancing, and music, (8) from wearing jewelry and using perfumes, (9) from sleeping on luxurious beds, and (10) from handling gold and silver.

### The monastic disciplinary code

Whereas the ten precepts set forth a basic moral compass for MONKS and NUNS, the monastic disciplinary code (PRĀTIMOKṢA, *pātimokkha*), consisting of a greatly enlarged number of more than two hundred precepts, historically has been a determining factor in shaping the Buddhist monastic order (SAṄGHA) as an institution. These precepts, which constitute the central content of the VINAYA-*piṭaka* in the Buddhist CANON (Tripiṭaka, Tipiṭaka), function on different levels.

On the one hand, the monastic code has an obvious moral dimension. Many of these precepts are simply a further elaboration of the moral principles laid out in the ten precepts, and therefore reinforce the continued moral training of monastics after their ORDINATION. At the same time, the aim of these precepts has been to preserve the Buddhist saṅgha's image as a model of rectitude in the eyes of the lay community. Thus, the Buddha is recorded as having established some of the precepts as a result of incidents in which the conduct of monks threatened to cause scandal in those for whom the monastic community was to provide moral guidance and upon whom the monastic community relied for its physical support.

From another perspective, these precepts have an institutional dimension. In practical terms, many of the precepts in the *prātimokṣa* have the concrete goal of ensuring order and smooth functioning in the everyday affairs of the community. More fundamentally, however, the very existence of the whole Buddhist community is premised upon the stability of the *saṅgha*, which in turn is dependent upon the valid conferral of the precepts in ordination. The *vinaya* specifies that the *prātimokṣa* are to be formally taken (*upasampadā*) in the presence of a requisite number of properly ordained monks. Furthermore, the candidates were required to fulfill conditions that were ascertained through a set of questions during the ceremony. Finally, there were specifications with regard to the site of ordination, which DAOXUAN (596–667), founder of the Chinese *Vinaya* school (Lüzong), developed into a detailed set of specifications for the erection of an ordination platform. Absence of these key conditions was thought to invalidate this crucial ceremony that marks the passage to status as a fully ordained monk or nun. Great attention, therefore, has been paid through history to ensure the validity of this process. A striking example of such concern took place in Japan in the eighth century when questions about proper ordination cast the validity of the whole Buddhist order, which had existed in Japan for over a century, into doubt. Consequently, the Chinese ordination master GANJIN (Jianzhen, 688–763) was invited to Japan. After five failed attempts, he finally arrived in Japan in 754, erected an ordination platform according to specifications in Nara before the great Tōdaiji, and performed a properly prescribed ordination, thus ensuring the legitimacy of the *saṅgha* in Japan.

The centrality of the *prātimokṣa* for the moral discipline of monks and nuns and the cohesion of the *saṅgha* is symbolically expressed through fortnightly confessional ceremonies (*poṣadha*, *uposatha*) at which monastics in a locality are required to gather together (with monks and nuns meeting separately) for a recitation of the precepts of the *prātimokṣa*. The recital of each precept is accompanied by a required confession before the community of any instance of transgression. The shared recognition and adherence to a particular articulation of the *prātimokṣa* evident in these ceremonies has been the token of unity for communities of the *saṅgha* through history, while disagreement with regard to the precepts has led historically to the creation of new communities with their own separate *prātimokṣa*. Unlike Christianity, in which doctrinal disagreements often inspired the rise of new groups,

sectarian division within early Buddhism is thought to have been largely premised on differing approaches to the discipline.

One of the historical results of these divisions was the production of divergent *prātimokṣa* contained within different versions of the *vinaya-piṭaka*. There currently exist in various languages versions of the *vinaya* from six different schools: SARVĀSTIVĀDA AND MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA, DHARMAGUPTAKA, MAHĀSĀMĠHIKA, MAHĪŚĀKA, and THERAVĀDA. Of these, three have contemporary relevance: The Theravāda tradition observes the precepts in its Pāli version of the *vinaya*; the East Asian tradition of Buddhism has largely adhered to the precepts of the Dharmaguptaka *Vinaya* (*Sifen lü*) for over a thousand years; and discipline in the Tibetan Buddhist tradition is based on the *vinaya* of the Mūlasarvāstivāda. Each of these differs with regard to the number of precepts constituting the *prātimokṣa*. For full ordination, the Theravāda *Vinaya* contains 227 rules for monks (or 311 for nuns), the Dharmaguptaka 250 (or 348), and the Mūlasarvāstivāda 258 (or 354). Today only East Asian Buddhism continues to preserve a tradition of fully ordained nuns.

The precepts of the *prātimokṣa* are grouped in categories that are arranged in descending order of seriousness according to the gravity of an offense. The most serious category (*pārājika*) contains offenses that require immediate expulsion from the *saṅgha* with no possibility of reinstatement in one's lifetime. For monks, this category involves four major offenses: sexual intercourse, stealing, murder, and false claims with regard to one's spiritual attainment. The *prātimokṣa* for nuns legislates four more offenses in this category, including intimate touching of men, holding hands with men, hiding the serious offenses of other nuns, and following a censured monk. The second category (*saṅghāvasesa*) concerns offenses that call for discipline falling short of expulsion but requiring temporary forfeiture of one's full status as a monk or nun and removal from the community for a period of time. This category contains thirteen offenses for monks that include sexual impropriety, erecting dwellings, slander, and causing dissension in the *saṅgha*. For nuns, this category in the Dharmaguptaka *Vinaya* holds seventeen precepts, including prohibition from serving as a marriage broker. The remaining categories of the *prātimokṣa* address less serious offenses calling for punishments that range from confiscation of inappropriate items and confession before the whole community to confession before one person. Although the

different versions of the vinaya listed above vary in the number of categories and precepts, they nevertheless manifest a remarkable similarity.

### Mahāyāna precepts

The MAHĀYĀNA tradition from its inception paid great heed to training in morality and the observance of precepts. This emphasis was incorporated into the bodhisattva path as an essential element of the PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) that the bodhisattva was expected to cultivate. The second of these perfections calls for dedication to morality and strict adherence to the precepts. This dedication has often been expressed simply through observance of traditional precepts. Mahāyāna monks and nuns, for example, have ordinarily taken and adhered to the full precepts of the prātimokṣa. In time, however, Mahāyāna came to develop precepts that were unique to the bodhisattva vocation. The most famous articulation of such precepts is that found in the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA), an apocryphal text thought to have been produced in China. This scripture sets forth fifty-eight precepts, dividing them into ten major and forty-eight minor rules that besides emphasizing the basic moral orientation of the five precepts also stress the bodhisattva's obligation to care for all beings. They further call for extreme ASCETIC PRACTICES, such as the burning of limbs, thus marking a significant departure from the discipline of the prātimokṣa.

These bodhisattva precepts were administered to lay persons and monastics alike. Monks and nuns customarily would take these precepts in a separate ceremony following the administration of the prātimokṣa in ordination. Historically, the Mahāyāna tradition rarely called attention to the disparity between these "Mahāyāna precepts" and the "precepts" of the vinaya. The founder of the Japanese Tendai school, SAICHŌ (767–822), however, made just such a distinction. In attempting to firmly establish the Tendai teaching that he had brought back from China, Saichō asked permission of the court to build an ordination platform on Mount Hiei. Tendai monks ordained on this platform were not to receive the customary precepts but only the bodhisattva precepts, thereby ensuring that their ordination was a purely "Mahāyāna" one. When the Japanese court granted Saichō's request shortly after his death, the Japanese Tendai school and the traditions that grew out of it adopted an approach to precepts that differed from that taken by the rest of the Buddhist world.

*See also: Councils, Buddhist; Ethics; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan; Repentance and Confession*

### Bibliography

- Gethin, Rupert. *The Foundations of Buddhism*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō: The Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School*. Berkeley: Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, University of California at Berkeley, 1984.
- Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values and Issues*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Holt, John Clifford. *Discipline: The Canonical Buddhism of the Vinayapiṭaka*, 2nd edition. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1995.
- Matsunaga, Daigan, and Matsunaga, Alicia. *Foundation of Japanese Buddhism*, Vol. 1. Los Angeles: Buddhist Books International, 1974.
- Prebish, Charles. *Buddhist Monastic Discipline*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1975.
- Welch, Holmes. *The Practice of Chinese Buddhism 1900–1950*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1967.

DANIEL A. GETZ

---

## PRINTING TECHNOLOGIES

Since at least the eighth century C.E., printing technologies have been used to promulgate Buddhist teachings, preserve Buddhist literature, and protect Buddhist people and their sacred sites and possessions. Most of the techniques that will be discussed below were not developed originally by Buddhists, but were an outgrowth of the rich cultural, intellectual, and religious traditions of China and their spread eastward to Korea and Japan and, subsequently, to the West.

### Dhāraṇī and the origin of Buddhist print culture

The earliest technique employed for printing Buddhist texts was xylography, which used reverse-image characters carved on woodblocks to print pages of text. The exact process that led to the development of woodblock printing is unknown, although the earliest advances in print culture and technology took place in medieval China after the invention of paper in about 105 C.E. Printing from blocks of wood is commonly considered to be the first true printing technology, although printing with stamps and seals (*yin*), from





A monk holds a hand-carved wooden printing block of the Buddhist canon in the xylograph repository at Haeinsa in Taegu, South Korea. © Leonard de Selva/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

which the common term for printing is derived, had long been performed. The process leading to the development of xylography is presumed to be an extension of the practice of cutting wooden Daoist charms in order to make impressions on clay (early fourth century C.E.) and, later, covering them with the red ink of cinnabar or vermilion to make imprints on white paper (early sixth century C.E.).

The earliest examples of Buddhist printing involve a type of charm or spell called a *DHĀRAṆĪ*. To date, the oldest printed material that has been discovered is the Korean *Mugu chōnggwang taedarani kyōng* (Chinese, *Wugou jīngguang datuoluoni jīng*; *Great Dhāraṇī Scripture of Flawless, Pure Light*), a scroll, nearly twenty feet long and three and a half inches wide, produced from about twelve woodblock pages printed on bamboo paper. Executed with great skill, it was rolled together and placed in the relics container of a stone pagoda at Pulguk Monastery in Kyōngju, Korea, in 751, and was discovered in 1966. Scholars believe that it was printed sometime between 704 and 751 in either Kyōngju or Luoyang, China. The next oldest examples of printed material are the remnants of the Japanese *Hyakuman-*

*tō darani* (*Dhāraṇī of the Hyakuman Pagodas*), which were printed around 770 to commemorate the end of a long civil war. These dhāraṇī are copies of the first four of the six dhāraṇī included in the *Great Dhāraṇī Scripture of Flawless, Pure Light*. They were made from copper blocks printed on small scrolls of yellowish hemp paper. Although technically inferior to the Korean dhāraṇī, the *Hyakuman-tō darani* was a great achievement; 3,076 of the printed dhāraṇī are preserved at HŌRYŪJI in Nara, Japan.

### Xylography

Most Buddhist texts in traditional East Asia were printed using xylography or woodblock printing. After the dhāraṇī scriptures, the *DIAMOND SŪTRA* (*Vajracchedikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra*) of 868, which was discovered at DUNHUANG in 1907, is the oldest known printed book. It was printed for merit and for everyday use on seven woodblock pages and pasted on a foot-wide scroll sixteen feet long. Other dhāraṇī texts and versions of the *Diamond Sūtra* that were placed as relics in Buddhist sculptures and pagodas during the tenth and eleventh centuries have been discovered

in China, Korea, and Japan. Pasting printed pages onto scrolls gave way to the folded book in the ninth or tenth century. Stitched books, bound with such materials as bamboo and horsehair, were introduced in the tenth or eleventh century and are still used for some Buddhist writings.

The impetus for carving the entire Buddhist CANON on woodblocks may be traced to an imperially sanctioned xylographic edition of Confucian classics made between 932 and 953 under the auspices of the Later Shu state in Sichuan. During the early Song period, an official edition of the Chinese Buddhist canon was carved on woodblocks between 972 and 983 in Chengdu—5,048 volumes in 130,000 blocks. A dynastically sponsored printing revolution followed in Asia for the next several hundred years. The Khitans, Jurchens, Tanguts, and Koreans all carved and printed Buddhist canons either in Chinese characters or in native scripts.

### Lithography

Long before the development of xylography, exact copies of important literature and beautiful calligraphy were produced by making rubbings from stone inscriptions. The Confucian classics were carved in stone in 175 C.E. The first stone carvings of Buddhist scriptures were made during the Northern Qi period (550–577) around the capital at Ye. A grand project of preserving the Buddhist scriptures was begun during the end of the Sui period (581–618) at Yunju Monastery on Fangshan in northern China southwest of present-day Beijing. In dread of the impending DECLINE OF THE DHARMA (*mofa*) and the corruption and loss of the Buddhist religion, the monk Jingwan (d. 639) vowed to carve the entire canon of Buddhist scriptures onto stone as a means of preserving them for all time. The stone tablets were stored in mountain caves and underground caches near the monastery at Shijing shan (Stone Scripture Mountain). The project continued through the Tang (618–907), Liao (907–1125), and Jin (1125–1234) dynasties due to both imperial and local support. More than four thousand stone tablets from nine caves and ten thousand buried tablets of the Fangshan lithic canon have been identified.

### Movable type

Although movable type was invented in China, Korean artisans perfected the techniques associated with this method of printing. In China, movable earthenware type was made in the mid-eleventh century; later, type made of tin was cast, but it is not known whether these

were used by Buddhists. Movable wooden type was invented by the beginning of the fourteenth century (at the latest), but examples of printing by this process are difficult to differentiate from xylography. Pieces of a wooden Uigur-script font were found at Dunhuang and dated to about 1300.

The type mold was invented in either China or Korea, probably during the early thirteenth century prior to the Mongolian invasions. The earliest reference to printing with movable metal type is found in the colophon to a woodblock print of the Korean *Nammyōng Ch'ōn hwasang song chūngdo-ga sasil* (*Buddhist Master Nammyōng Ch'ōn's Laudatory Commentary on the "Song Verifying Enlightenment"*). The colophon says that the text was originally printed with cast metal type in Korea in 1234. The oldest extant example of metal type printing is the *Pulcho chikchi simch'e yojōl* (*Essentials in which the Buddhas and the Patriarchs Point to the Essence of the Mind*), which was printed in 1377 at Hūngdōk Monastery in Ch'ōngju in central Korea. The type was made using the lost-wax type-casting method, which seems to have been the earliest process for making movable metal type. One drawback to this method is that each piece of type has a slightly different shape, so the printed result lacks aesthetic balance.

During the late fourteenth and early fifteenth centuries, a more advanced method of casting metal type using wooden models, called *mother type* (*moja*), was developed by the Chosōn government of Korea. The precision of the wooden mother types was such that the shapes of all the pieces were alike. The technology of movable metal type was transmitted from Korea back to China and later to Japan. The first book printed with movable type in Japan was made in 1595. After the creation and promulgation of the Korean alphabet in 1446, some of the earliest books published with movable metal type in the Korean vernacular were episodes of the Buddha's life and hymns honoring Śākyamuni written and printed in 1447 and 1448. During the ensuing centuries in Korea, metal type editions of Buddhist scriptures and illustrated vernacular expositions of Buddhist scriptures were produced, the most common being the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMA-PUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), the *Diamond Sūtra*, and the *Fumu enzhong jing* (*Sūtra on the Profound Kindness of Parents*; Korean, *Pumo ūnjung kyōng*). These same scriptures, as well as the *Shiwang jing* (*Sūtra of the Ten Kings*), were also printed widely in contemporary China and Japan, usually from woodblocks, with a few printed from movable type.

**Computer-age print culture**

Computer technology's coming of age at the end of the twentieth century has created new possibilities for preserving Buddhist literature, and making it accessible electronically over the Internet. Many web sites provide access to Buddhist scriptures in a variety of canonical languages and vernacular translations that are machine readable and easily searchable. The development of unicode fonts and digital imaging in the late 1990s made it possible to digitize the Chinese Buddhist canon. The Chinese Buddhist Electronic Text Association ([www.cbeta.org](http://www.cbeta.org)) has developed a searchable electronic text of the *Taishō shinshū daizōkyō* (*Revised Version of the Canon, Compiled during the Taishō Era, 1924–1935*). The Research Institute of the Tripiṭaka Koreana ([www.sutra.re.kr](http://www.sutra.re.kr)) has created an electronic font that duplicates exactly the calligraphy of the *Koryō taejanggyōng* (*Korean Buddhist Canon* or *Tripiṭaka Koreana*), enabling researchers to view the texts of the canon as though they were original woodblock prints.

*See also:* Canon; Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relics Cults; Scripture

**Bibliography**

- Carter, Thomas Francis, and Goodrich, L. Carrington. *The Invention of Printing in China and Its Spread Westward*, 2nd edition. New York: Ronald Press, 1955.
- Hickman, Brian. "A Note on the *Hyakumantō Dhāraṇī*." *Monumenta Nipponica* 30, no. 1 (1975): 87–93.
- Lancaster, Lewis R. "The Rock Cut Canon in China: Findings at Fang-shan." In *Buddhist Heritage: Papers Delivered at the School of Oriental and African Studies in November 1985*, ed. Tadeusz Skorupski. London: Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1989.
- Ra Kyung-jun. "Early Print Culture in Korea," tr. Richard D. McBride II. *Korean Culture* 20, no. 2 (1999): 12–21.
- Twitchett, Denis. *Printing and Publishing in Medieval China*. New York: Frederic C. Beil, 1983.

RICHARD D. MCBRIDE II

---

**PROVINCIAL TEMPLE SYSTEM  
(KOKUBUNJI, RISHŌTŌ)**

Twice in Japanese history the state has established a provincial temple system for the purpose of political unification and state legitimation. In emulation of the national temple network instituted in seventh-century

China, Emperor Shōmu (701–756 C.E.) set out in 741 to enhance the state's power through the authority of Buddhism. One official temple (*kokubunji*) was designated in each of the sixty-seven provinces; Tōdaiji in Nara was the network's central temple. These were each to be staffed by twenty clerics who would pray for the state's protection. Provincial nunneries (*kokubun-niji*) were also established, each housing ten nuns to pray for the atonement of wrongdoing. This system declined when the capital was moved from Nara to Kyoto in 794. None of the provincial *kokubunji* emerged as temples of national importance.

The brothers Ashikaga Takauji (1305–1358) and Tadayoshi (1306–1352), the founders of the second shogunate, implemented another system of provincial temples. At the urging of Zen cleric and shogunal adviser Musō Soseki (1275–1351), temples called *ankokuji* were designated between about 1338 and 1350 in every province to mourn victims of ongoing warfare. Pagodas containing religious relics contributed by the imperial court were also constructed in each province. Called *rishōtō*, they were usually five stories in height and were erected at Shingon or Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) temples. *Ankokuji* were mainly family temples of prominent local warriors within the Five Mountain (Gozan) Zen network. The conceptual precedent for this temple-pagoda system was the *kokubunji*, but there were also antecedents in Chinese and Indian Buddhist practice. The countrywide establishment of temples and pagodas also bespoke territorial control, reflecting Ashikaga political ambitions. With the shogunate's decline at the end of the fifteenth century, the temple-pagoda system weakened; today twenty-eight pagodas remain, but no temples.

*See also:* Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Japan

**Bibliography**

- Collcutt, Martin. *Gozan: The Rinzaï Zen Monastic Institution in Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1981.
- Tamura, Yoshio. *Japanese Buddhism: A Cultural History*. Tokyo: Kosei, 2000.

SUZANNE GAY

---

**PSYCHOLOGY**

It has become so common, if not trite, to speak of "Buddhism as a psychology" that the idea no longer

seems peculiar or surprising in either Asia or the West. The parallel is not totally spurious or devoid of heuristic value: Important aspects of Buddhist doctrine and practice may be construed as efforts at understanding human psychology. Yet, it would be imprudent to accept uncritically the accuracy of this parallelism. The present entry summarizes some of the reasons why we have come to assume that there are overlaps in perspective and goals that seem to argue for an interpretation of Buddhism as a “psychology,” and some of the reasons why this seeming parallelism can be misleading.

### Why Buddhism and psychology?

Early in the twentieth century Buddhism became associated in the Western imagination with the objectives of Western psychology. This presumed connection has also been accepted by many Asian exponents of Buddhist doctrine. In suggesting a parallel we often imagine “psychology” as an idealized source of unassailable truths about better living and human happiness, and perhaps with the mythic, almost mystical, power that many Westerners attribute to the disciplines and discourses of Buddhism. The vagueness of many of these comparisons may also be attributed in part to the fact that there is no autonomous Buddhist discipline of psychology—that is, a discrete genre of discourse (let alone a scientific discourse) corresponding to the many meanings that the term *psychology* has in contemporary academic and popular conversation. Conversely, contemporary scientific discourse does not as yet have a language to speak reliably about the wide range of concepts and practices that we intuitively call “Buddhist psychology.”

The temptation to link observations and normative conceptions about Buddhism with our ideas about psychology does not reflect a single view of Buddhism. “Buddhism as psychology” is usually grounded on ideas that include a number of separate, at times overlapping, and at times competing, conceptions about religion and spirituality. First, it is common to imagine Buddhism as a therapy, as a way to heal a sick soul—a mind in error or a person in pain. Second, some consider Buddhist theories of mind parallel to Western psychological inquiry—perhaps conflating somehow a broad spectrum of Buddhist doctrines with the equally diverse set of Western philosophical and empirical psychologies. Third, since the inception of the Western discipline of psychology, religion has been seen as one among other objects to be understood with the methods of scientific psychology (e.g., in both Wilhelm

Wundt and Sigmund Freud). Yet, simultaneously, religion (and perhaps Buddhism in particular) has been regarded as somehow coextensive with many of the doctrines and goals of popular psychologies. Hence, as a fourth historical connection, one must note that several of the above factors have helped to anchor in our collective mind the otherwise imprecise modern ideal of an ahistorical “spirituality” that transcends the “traditional dogmas” of institutional religions.

### Buddhism as psychology: Traditional views

Traditional Buddhist sources often compare the Buddha to a physician; his dharma is the prescription that cures all ills. The preferred interpretation of this metaphor imagines this cure as a healing of the mind—repairing a mind otherwise immersed in an error that leads to repeated, almost interminable, suffering across many lives. But the cure also entails a transformation of other aspects of the person: bodily demeanor, behavior toward others and care of self, emotion and desire. In other words, Buddhists may be suggesting that important parts (if not the most important or core aspects) of their religious practice can be seen as a project of comprehensive behavioral modification, with “behavior” including body, speech, and mind. However, this transformation of body and mind is also taken to entail the development of extraordinary powers that are not within the usual Western conception of the mental. Such special faculties include the capacity to transform and replicate the body, the power to know past lives, and so forth.

Even if it is conceived as purely the healing of an afflicted human mind, the Buddha’s cure is believed to have the power to remove all suffering, because the total removal of the error, and of the mental turmoil arising from the error, leads to the end of REBIRTH and the elimination of all *DUḤKHA* (SUFFERING) of mind and body. In this sense, Buddhism is primarily a psychology if we assume that the cure is fundamentally a mental cure, or if we imagine the desired state of health as being “psychological” in the sense that it encompasses the totality of the human being as a sentient being capable of intentional behavior. Or, one may also adopt the popular notion that all physical ills are ultimately psychosomatic, so that “psychological” mental culture is simultaneously a technique of the whole person. Additionally, the concept of “psychology” may be applied to Buddhism by extending the notion of mental disease beyond the apparent limits that death imposes on an individual body, and beyond the limitations of the mind of a single individual in a single existence.

Thus, generally speaking, the Buddhist tradition may be interpreted as a religious tradition with a prominent emphasis on the mind and liberation of the mind, but still a tradition for which the release from all suffering—if not the total release from an inherently painful embodiment—is the ultimate goal. Significant exceptions are found in traditions that have either sidelined the schemata of rebirth or have demythologized it. This is the case, for instance, with the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL and traditions that adopt similar rhetorical or dialectic understandings of the dichotomy between rebirth (SAMŚĀRA) and liberation (NIRVĀṆA). In such traditions it is not at all clear that belief in “rebirth” is to be taken to imply the acceptance of a psychosomatic process existing outside of, or independently from, the imaginative faculties of the individual. The Madhyamaka school, for instance, offers tantalizing, yet paradoxical and baffling claims that rebirth and all the suffering that it brings is only the construction of mind or language, and that suffering disappears when it is shown to be a mistaken notion.

Be that as it may, the most common normative principle in elite Buddhism is the belief that liberation is the consequence of a cognitive and affective shift, brought about not so much by an intellectual effort, but by contemplative exercises, and ascetic and moral training, that entail radical transformations of the person. In other words, changes in behavior and belief are understood to derive their liberating power from changes that can be described as “psychological” only in the broadest possible sense of the idea of “psychology”: shifts in the way in which a person perceives what is real, worthy, desirable, or satisfying, or changes in passion and affect, in behavior and demeanor, and in the bodily, sensory, and intellectual faculties. Such changes are “psychological” also in the sense that they are behavioral, they require modifications in the mode and orientation of a person’s mental, verbal, and bodily action.

A certain “primacy of mind” is a common, and at times dominant, orientation in elite Buddhist doctrines of self-cultivation, soteriology, and ontology. One may also state with a certain degree of confidence that this elite characterization of the tradition has a mythic value even outside the small circles of monastic specialists who engage in the practice of MEDITATION or in formulating the theory of meditation and sainthood. This makes Buddhism a tradition in which ideals and techniques of psychological or psychosomatic self-cultivation play a central role as markers of religious identity and continuity of tradition.

## A philosophy of mind

But the question then arises as to whether or not there will be any heuristic or practical value in understanding this psychological orientation—or, for that matter, explicit Buddhist theories about the structure and the vicissitudes of the “mental”—as significantly parallel to Western psychological inquiry, or as viable alternatives that can be compared by means of common criteria of truth or effectiveness. The systematic exploration of such parallels can take us simultaneously in various directions and across difficult issues of epistemology and the philosophies of mind and science. This is fertile ground for future research, but we shall explore in this entry only cursorily what there is in the Buddhist tradition, if anything, that may be called a “psychology.”

Buddhism shares with other Indian systems of religion and philosophy an interest in how the human self is constituted, including the nature and origin of the mental and the bodily broadly understood (*nāmarūpa*), as well as the nature of awareness (*vijñapti*) and consciousness (*vijñāna*). Early Buddhist speculation separated itself from other early śramaṇic systems by formulating unique theories about the embodied self (*jīva* and *kāya*) and the state of a liberated being (TATHĀGATA), as well as by formulating critiques of those who denied the consequences of intentional actions (*kriyā*), or of those who overemphasized the pervasiveness of moral causation.

Related to these broad issues were, on the one hand, early theories of liberation and the PATH, and, on the other, structural conceptions of the mind-body complex, which sought to explain the origins, processes, and ultimate liberation of this complex by identifying the components and arrangement of mental states and processes. Some, presumably early, texts show attempts to reduce the sentient person to elementary substances, such as water, fire, earth, air, and space. But, among the most influential of the protoscientific theories are the structural theories of SKANDHA (AGGREGATE), *dhātu* (sensory domains), and *āyatana* (sense faculties). The three theories show obvious signs of having originated independently from each other, but one can still treat them, as the tradition does, as three components of a single theory, which is summarized below.

We may assume naively that each human person (*pudgala*) is a single living (*jīva*) and a sentient entity (*sattva*) that is the objective referent of the word “self” (*ātman*). Buddhist introspection and inference, how-

ever, claim that the real referent for this idea is a constellation of phenomenal, transient entities that can be summarized under five headings or “sets” (skandha). Strictly speaking, these sets are “aggregates” of related phenomena held together *in* the idea of a single self *by* our own persistent grasping (*upādāna*). The five—matter, sensation, conceptions/perceptions, habitual tendencies, and awareness—include body (matter, sensations, habitual tendencies) and mind (sensation, conception, habitual tendencies, and awareness). The mental components can also be analyzed in terms of a sensorium that includes a mental sense sphere and organ (manas), resulting in a hierarchical system of six senses (*āyatana*), with mind as gatekeeper. The system is further analyzed into twelve sensory elements, each sense faculty being paired with an organ and an object (the object being internal for the mind sense). These twelve are called *dhātu* (perhaps “domain” or “basis”).

The system of the twelve sense *dhātus* maintains the close connection between body and mind already noted (organ and input, in fact, appear to be placed on a similar ontological plane). The connections are further developed by proposing three faculties and processes of awareness (*viññāna*) for each domain (*dhātu*). This additional layer of analysis emphasizes the privileged status of the mind, insofar as mental awareness (consciousness proper) occupies a higher position in the hierarchy, serving as the center for both sensory and mental processes.

Early speculations about the constitution of the self used these analytic categories to explain how a human person (*sattva*) could be constituted, in the absence of a simple, autonomous, and unitary self (*ātman*). In psychological terms, this may seem to undermine our experience of being an autonomous agent capable of its own perceptions, ideas, sensation, and feelings, with the capacity to choose the path to liberation. But the tradition insists that intentionality, moral responsibility, and personal continuity can be explained by using the above building blocks.

Attempts to explain the natural illusion of the elemental reality of self and will led to the creation of theories of mind. Such theories developed as speculation entered the more systematic stage of the ABHIDHARMA and as the Buddhist philosophical schools engaged other Indian philosophical systems in a centuries-long polemical dialogue. In the *abhidharma* literature the psychological categories of the sūtra literature were organized according to canonical sets and analytic categories. Systems of terminological matrices (*mātṛkā*)

helped organize sets of terms in concepts like the *Dhammasaṅganī* and the *Dhātukāya* (*Taiśhō* 1540). In the latter work, for instance, canonical terms for mental states are reorganized under categories such as universally present states and states only present when the mind is confused and afflicted (*kliṣṭa*). The universally present states or processes (sensation, conception, volition, etc.) are also organized into six groups of six each (so-called hexads) that correspond to the inner and outer spheres (*āyatana*) of sentience: factors of consciousness, of sense contact, of sensation, of perception, of conception, and of drive (or DESIRE, *tṛṣṇā*).

In the *abhidharma*, the apparent unity of the self is explained by a variety of theories, but the most common types (which are not necessarily mutually exclusive) are theories of causal continuity and theories of the location of awareness. The first is epitomized by the concept of *santāna*—the cause and effect series of bodily and mental events that constitutes a human life and personality. The second is illustrated by the concept of *ādāna* or *ālaya* (site, container, holder), according to which past experiences leave traces on a foundation or base of the personality (the *āśraya*), so that their proximity and interaction can create the illusion of a single person.

### Ethics and liberation as theories of mind

Both types of theories share in varying degrees a general Buddhist tendency to see intentionality or will (*cetanā*) as the governing force behind the causal series, and various levels of the mind as the locus for the encoding and “storage” of karma and its consequences. These models generate, and attempt to explain, a variety of problems that can be covered only briefly in this entry. One may mention, as representative examples, the doctrine of *vāsanā* (traces), the theory of unmanifest processes (*avijñapti*), and the problem of mentation and mental construction (*prajñapti*).

The doctrine of *vāsanā* was fundamental to Buddhist “moral psychology” in India, and represented an attempt to explain both moral habits (propensities) and the process of karmic traces and consequences. The interaction between mental states and consequent suffering was seen as a process whereby intention and its behavioral manifestations left faint traces (*bīja*, planted seeds) that constituted a system of habitual and mostly unconscious drives. The process was summarized in the metaphor of a cloth impregnated by a perfume or a dye (the technical sense of the term *vāsanā*). In the same way that the perfume instills some of its

properties on the cloth, and that the cloth retains the faint aroma, intentional action leaves traces in the human causal chain. The predisposition as trace is known as *anuśaya*, and as manifest character and mental state it is known as *kleśa* (a term that means both “stain” or “dye” and “torment”). The character state and the action generate and maintain habitual tendencies and cause future karmic effects. The *kleśas* may be regarded as a psychological condition, whereas KARMA (ACTION) is an ostensive or behavioral cause, although it too generates latent or potential consequences. The two constitute the pervasive ruling conditions (*adhipati-pratyaya*) for all suffering, and of the sentient being’s beginningless wandering in the realm of rebirth.

The category of *kleśa* subsumes under a single rubric habits of emotion, intentionality, and cognition, such as three fundamental unhealthy mindsets: concupiscent, animosity, and delusion (the *Dhātukāya*’s inventory includes five: the cravings of sense desire, craving for nonsensuous pleasures, craving for disembodied bliss, animosity, and DOUBT). The idea is found outside Buddhism (e.g., in the *Yogasūtras*) and constitutes a common assumption of religious moral psychology in India: Unhealthy frames of mind are at the root of suffering; healthy mindsets are at the root of liberation. The idea presupposes a virtue epistemology in which attitudinal character flaws are intertwined with errors of cognition, and error is abandoned and replaced with certainty only if the whole person cultivates and masters the highest moral, attitudinal, attentional, and cognitive virtue.

However, Buddhist philosophers often separate, at least theoretically, the processes that transcend the *kleśas* (meditative processes, or *bhāvanā*) from those that transcend error (cognitive-meditation process of correct seeing and discernment, or *darśana*). In the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, the distinction is summarized in the idea that rending the veil of the *kleśas* (*kleśa-āvaraṇa*) is only part of the process of liberation. A separate cognitive shift is needed, overcoming the obscuration caused by a veil that covers the objects of cognition (the veil called *jñeya-āvaraṇa*), a veil maintained by the habitual tendency to cognize by way of dualities: being/nonbeing, self/object, and so forth.

The preceding theoretical constructs sometimes parallel and sometimes overlap with the idea that acts of mentation and acts of manifest behavior generate bodily changes that, although unseen, are powerful determinants of future experience and behavior. This unmanifest transformation is known as *avijñapti*

(“lacking the capacity to make itself noticeable,” hence, that which is “unnoticed, unreported, latent, not manifest”) and is a type of material or bodily change. Generally mental states are, by definition, nonmanifest, and Buddhist thinkers do not appear to have explored the possibility of unconscious conflicts or processes.

The theory of the *avijñapti* and the *vāsanās* do not appear to have cross-fertilized in any significantly productive manner. Although both theoretical constructs explain in part how contradictory, unexpected, or unwilling behavior can occur, they were not used to explain inner conflict or struggles between the forbidden and the tolerated. Nonetheless, one may argue that Buddhist philosophers, especially in India, struggled with the idea that some of the most potent determinants of human experience and behavior are not readily accessible to consciousness, much less to willful control. Thus, suffering in general was understood to be more than simply the awareness of painful states, cognitions, and vicissitudes: The most powerful and pervasive form of suffering is understood only by the saints, for it is the innately or inherently painful nature of the very construction (*saṃskāra-duḥkhata*) of the person’s psychosomatic makeup. It is the profound ache behind the conscious and unconscious, the ever-frustrated attempt to hold on to the false idea of a self. Suffering is, therefore, like desire and delusion, a pervasive free-floating drive, a thirstlike unquenchable drive that pushes us not only toward sense-enjoyment, but toward wanting to be and wanting not to be.

These principles help explain in part the process by which a sentient being effects psychosomatic movements in the direction of either psychic health or psychic “dis-ease.” However, to explain the possibility of liberation, the scholastics had to propose explanations for the possibility of error. With regard to this problem, the fundamental question for the Buddhist philosopher was how one could see a self where there was none, or see an object of desire and pleasure in phenomena that were inherently undesirable and painful. Furthermore, if our perception of the world is in essence a construct of mentation (*abhisamskṛta*), one needed to explain the process of verbal and mental reification that led to delusion and suffering.

The theory made a common assumption that convention constructs, or at the very least, distorts reality—either through a process of discursive elaboration (*prapañca*) or conceptual imagination (*vikalpa*). A key term behind such theories was that of “conventional

designation” or “provisional conceptual distinctions” (*prajñapti*). The idea led in some schools to the denial of a correspondence theory of truth and to a phenomenalist theory of perception and conception.

The idea of conventional reality as construct seems to have followed three distinct, but at times overlapping, lines of inquiry: one epistemological-linguistic, one phenomenalist, and the other mentalistic (sometimes called idealistic). The linguistic view is relevant to psychology in the sense that it presupposes that mind itself is constructed (*vikalpita*), or, at the very least, conditioned by discursive thought (so that, for instance, we will perceive what words tell us to perceive or what the inner interplay between desire and mental chatter drive us to think). This is generally the tendency in the Madhyamaka traditions. The phenomenalist view, represented by schools that have been identified with the SAUTRĀNTIKA traditions, is a theory of representation: Perception is an inner, mental process in which one becomes aware of the mental representation of external things (an almost natural derivative of the hierarchy of the six senses). From extreme phenomenalist positions one can easily slide into an idealistic understanding of how the apparently real can feel real yet be an illusion: If the mind needs only an inner representation of the world to feel like it knows an external world, then all of conventional reality may very well exist in the mental sphere, perhaps only as mere mentation (*viññapti*).

Perhaps the most significant derivatives of this third line of speculation were the positions adopted among followers of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL. The idea of the real as mere mentation (*viññaptimātratā*), originally proposed by ASAṄGA (ca. 320–390 C.E.) and VASUBANDHU (fourth to fifth century C.E.) was developed by Dharmapāla (sixth century C.E.), who attempted to explain how there could be both an ultimately real inner world (consciousness) and a world that is objective (external to the mind) and ordered (subject to causes and conditions). Dharmapāla developed further the school’s idea of a consciousness that is the repository (ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA) of karmic traces, manifesting itself in eight forms of consciousness: the consciousness corresponding to each of the five sense organs, mental consciousness (*manovijñāna*), a foundational but still deluded consciousness (*kliṣṭamanovijñāna*), and the ground consciousness (*ālayavijñāna*).

This eightfold division of consciousness has been arguably the most influential Buddhist topography of the mind. Its applications extend, naturally, into the

questions of what makes the mind become pure, and whether or not there is an inherently pure level of consciousness (*amalavijñāna*) or a mind that is inherently awakened. The schema was central to theories of the path, even among those East Asian Buddhists for whom the theory of karma and the doctrine of rebirth had lost its earlier importance—as was the case, for example, in the use of the theory to explain Zen SATORI (AWAKENING) in HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768).

Also important in scholastic theories of the development of mind was the difficult concept of the “basis” (*āśraya*) for the action and transformations of karma. According to this conception, all aspects of the psychosomatic person are in constant transformation; if the person follows the path of the buddhas to its completion, this basis is transformed or inverted (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*), so that it is perfectly pure and the normal faculties become the special powers and knowledges of a buddha.

Systematic reflections on the nature of mind overlap with ontological speculation, but the above three theories of error and true knowledge also provide at least part of the foundation for the ethical, contemplative, and soteriological dimensions of Buddhist theory and practice. For instance, the transformation of the psychosomatic basis (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*) is believed to result, predictably, in a radical transformation of cognition (*jñāna*): body and mind become the living wisdom (active cognition) of a buddha. This wisdom has five aspects. It is perfectly and constantly aware of the true nature of things (*dharmadhātu-jñāna*); it is a serene, mirrorlike reflection of all things (*ādārśa-jñāna*); it cognizes the semblance and equivalence of all things (*samatā-jñāna*); yet, it discerns clearly (*pratyavekṣā-jñāna*) and engages freely in the work of a buddha (*kr̥tyupasthāna-jñāna*). Furthermore, this wisdom is all-knowing, all-compassionate, and free from any notion of a self. With such implications to be derived from at least one Buddhist theory of mind, the Western observer needs to be constantly aware of the nuances that separate the intent and underlying question in Buddhist speculation from those that tend to drive Western psychological research.

### Comparing psychological theories

What may appear as a similar interest in the disphase between conscious and unconscious storage and retrieval is not understood in Buddhism as a question of psychoneurology or intrapsychic conflict, but as a distinction between memory and karmic causation. The



contemporary reader may understand karma as a kind of memory—an inscription of a trace upon the self, which, once recovered informs consciousness of a previous psychic event—but one needs to note the ethical and soteriological meanings that the Buddhist discovers in such processes. One may imagine (by projecting on the Buddhist tradition a psychodynamic schema) that the process by which awareness is fostered and transformed to achieve awakening is some sort of transformation of the repressed; but even granting this stretching of Buddhist doctrine, the most common Buddhist conceptions of what is “healthy” (*kuśala*) about this process would not come close to contemporary views of mental health as autonomy, acceptance, and enjoyment of human sexual desire, and the like.

Furthermore, for most traditional Buddhist elites, the traces left on consciousness by human action remain and develop as part of an inexorable law of moral responsibility and retribution that is only transcended by a path out of our imperfections, not by a simple acceptance of human shortcomings or a celebration of the body and the emotions. Moreover, the final discovery of the forgotten and the unraveling of its meaning is reached through extrasensory perception, and only by those who attain the yogic power of the remembrance of past lives (*jāti-smāra*). Most traditional Buddhist philosophers, unlike Western empirical psychologists, took it as a given that the extrasensory perception of a yogi (*yogipratyakṣa*) is a valid source of empirical evidence—in fact, one that needs no corroboration and is not open to falsification when the cognizer is one of those deemed awakened.

Nonetheless, one could argue that it is precisely in the soteriological and moral dimensions of Buddhist psychology that one may find avenues of thought that complement or challenge some contemporary views of mental health. Of particular theoretical and historical importance are those Buddhist theories dealing with the techniques of meditation—arguably the most typically Buddhist “therapeutic” techniques and the place where Buddhism as religion and ethical system can be said to become a way of overcoming “dis-ease,” and therefore, as perhaps a psychological cure or a therapy. Theories of meditation often attest to the keen psychological awareness of those who reflected on Buddhist doctrine and practice. In their application, these theories at times suggest the techniques of Western psychosocial healing practices, despite an apparent difference in their presuppositions and goals.

### **Meditation, consciousness, and healing**

Buddhist theories of meditation are concerned with the transformation of rigid habits and turbulent states of mind that may roughly correspond to contemporary notions of maladaptive or dysfunctional behaviors; but the underlying theory and questions hiding behind diverging ideas of dysfunction may be disparate enough to make comparison difficult. The meditator seeks to make the mind pliable, aspiring to achieve a “tranquil flow of mind” (*upekṣā*) that is effortless and free from the extremes of mental turpitude and excitation (*laya* and *auddhatya*). A mind that is in such a state is no longer dominated by the mind’s usual tendencies toward inertia (*dauṣṭhulya*) and unrest (*kleśa*). Nonetheless, although the goal is a state free of confusion and anguish, freedom from distress and dysphoria is not here a condition for increased autonomy and adaptation in negotiating inner drives and outer social reality, as it is generally understood in Western psychologies, but a condition often described as desireless, free of conceptual constructs, and empty (the three “doors to liberation,” *vimokṣamukha*).

Defects of thought (*doṣa*) are superseded by cultivating antidotes or opposite states (*pratipakṣa*) that lead to a removal of both the veils (of *kleśa* and of the object of knowledge), and hence lead to liberation. But such antidotes are also substitute behaviors, that is, they are virtues, and they transform the confused person into the person of serene insight. But the state of liberation, at least as understood by the major scholastic systems, is not comparable to Western ideas of individual autonomy, adaptive acceptance of the body and its drives, and resolution of intrapsychic and interpersonal conflict. It is liberation from rebirth, hence, from birth, aging, and death, as well as from desire and suffering. Furthermore, in systems following traditional Mahāyāna scholastic definitions, liberation is accompanied by the omniscience and the miraculous powers of a buddha, or at the very least the superior wisdom and wonder-working powers of the BODHISATTVA.

In the classical Buddhist view of “mental health,” most normal desires are seen as a sort of madness, and as a “delusion” originating in a beginningless round of past lives; full health is accomplished only when one becomes a full buddha, or when it is approached gradually as one matures in the bodhisattva’s spiritual career. It is difficult to imagine how such a view of “mental health” (perhaps, better: “absence of dis-ease”) is commensurable with contemporary Western no-

tions, which do not value the renunciation or the denial of desire.

However, some Buddhist doctrinal positions deviate in varying degrees from the above characterization. Important currents within the Chan and Tantric traditions qualify their understanding of renunciation (or are openly critical of the denial of desire) and tend to focus on the problems of self-deception and the tyranny of conceptual constructs and dualities, including the duality between desire and desirelessness, holy and mundane. Nonetheless, even these traditions tend to preserve monastic institutions and practices that draw a boundary between the transcendence of duality of the religious specialist and the need to negotiate dualities and ambivalences in lay life. In this context, acceptance of desire appears to be a stepping stone in the direction of a different form of desirelessness, and not necessarily an acceptance of our instinctual drives in the sense that the West has come to conceive of it after the psychoanalytic revolution.

An ambiguous acceptance of desire may be postulated in the case of the Chan tradition, where despite its iconoclastic rhetoric of immediacy and nonduality, a strict ethos of self-control and unrelenting effort points at least toward a transcendence of individual will (pace radical or mad monks like the fifteenth-century Japanese Zen monk IKKYŪ). In TANTRA, where desire is to be transformed rather than abandoned, the transformation is framed in ritual and symbolic contexts that can hardly be assimilated into contemporary notions of the tolerance of strong affect and intrapsychic conflict (such framing occurs even in the radical antinomian rhetoric of the *Caryāgīti*). In both traditions it may be more accurate to speak of a paradoxical inversion of the normal order of ascetic denial, but not of an acceptance of desire as conceived in the more common contemporary assumptions about psychological well-being.

Nonetheless, much needs to be explored if we are to be able to understand the significance of the insights offered by Buddhist concepts of self-deception and delusion. Such insights include the recognition of a connection between suffering and misuses of language and conceptual labeling, as well as the obsessive quality of unawareness or error. These are elements suggested, for instance, by the speculations of the Madhyamaka school, where desire and unawareness seem to coalesce in the concept of obstinate dwelling in error (*abhiniveśa*). This idea of an inertia that favors a persistent dwelling in distorted perception

seems to echo Western concepts like those of neurotic paradox and the repetition compulsion.

The above digressions suggest that much remains to be understood, not only about the history of Buddhist understanding of desire and its obstinate clinging to imagined objects, but also about the implications of variations within Buddhism. It is not at all clear, for instance, that we are yet in a position to understand the psychological implications (or for that matter, the health valence) of the full spectrum of Buddhist attitudes toward cognition and emotion, and the role of ethical and contemplative discipline in the relief of distress.

Perhaps as an attempt to circumvent some of the above difficulties, some researchers have looked at only one narrow cross section of Buddhist practice by studying selected meditative states. In the last quarter of the twentieth century, researchers investigated the effects of meditation practice on psychophysiological states. Using contemporary physiological and psychological measures, Japanese researchers established a connection between Zen meditation and neural and physiological states associated with rested, wakeful attention (Kasamatsu and Hirai 1966; Hirai 1978 and 1989). Subsequent studies have confirmed and expanded on their results (summarized in Murphy and Donovan).

The most interesting and robust result of these studies was the accumulation of evidence that showed that meditation is not a type of hypnosis, catalepsy, or a “catatonic state,” as had been proposed earlier in the twentieth century. By measuring the brain waves of meditators, these experimenters determined that the brain of a subject in deep meditation (especially, but not exclusively, an experienced meditator) emits patterns of alpha and theta waves that are distinct from those emitted by subjects that were anxious, under hypnosis, or in deep sleep. This result of electroencephalographic (EEG) measurements suggests that the meditator is in fact in a state of “calm awareness,” as claimed by Buddhist tradition. Subsequent MRI and SPECT studies suggest similar conclusions (Newberg et al.).

These investigations suggest that meditation techniques affect the body as well as the mind, lowering, for instance, blood pressure and galvanic skin pressure. The studies also confirm something noted by the tradition: The obvious importance of the body does not diminish the importance of the mind; a particular way

of controlling the body is a precondition of, and perhaps entails, a particular state of mind.

For the tradition, even for those branches that give the body an explicit central role, the mind is paramount; and yet, paradoxically, the goal of Buddhist meditation is often presented as an experience of no-mind. Something about the presumed psychological makeup of the meditator is lost, erased, or shown to be an error or an illusion. Hence the theme of “extinction” or “cessation” that is so common to many theories of meditation. One attains a serene and clear awareness of a state that may be legitimately described as “mindless.” Yet, different Buddhist traditions understand the “mindless” in different ways—from a literal absence of thought (P. J. Griffiths) to various notions of freedom from speech in speech (as in the Chan and Tantric traditions). And even in the latter traditions there is much room for variation, from the early Chan notion that the arising of a single thought generates a world of conceptual constructs and confusion to the acceptance of a higher form of discrimination that gains new value after one awakens to nonduality—as in the Yogācāra’s five buddha-jñānas or in the MAHĀMUDRĀ stage of noncultivation (*sgom med*).

However, these studies have not looked at a number of potential sources for disconfirming evidence or falsification. For instance, it is not clear that they have considered the significance of failure to progress in meditation (who succeeds and when) or cases of psychological distress or physical illness due to meditation (phenomena that are amply documented in Buddhist literature), or the significance of differences among expert meditators regarding the meaning and content of the experiences that correspond to the brain measurements and readings. In fact, it is not at all clear that even expert meditators agree on the significance of various states of mental concentration or *samādhi* (Sharf 1995 and 1998). One may argue that the psychological significance or goals of meditation point to using body and mind to re-create a new self; one assumes a specific bodily and mental posture, persisting in it until the mind is serene and focused, or one focuses the mind on what appears at first to be the self, in order to dissolve misconceptions about the self, including the misconception of imagining that who we are is identical to this self whom we hold so dear. But this summary of traditional understandings raises a number of questions regarding the significance of neuropsychological and physiological studies of meditation. First, where in these studies do we find any evidence about self and conceptions of the self? Second, the tradition

itself is not in complete agreement as to what it is that remains or comes to light once the delusions of self are removed.

Furthermore, the neurological focus still needs to explain what to the Buddhist is paramount: Transformations of mind and self have significant ethical and soteriological implications. Such implications include a vast and complex path theory explaining how one becomes a buddha, and, for instance, acquires the three modes of wisdom described above. These expectations cannot be dismissed or demythologized by assuming an objective cerebral or psychological referent.

### **Buddhism and scientific psychology**

As a corollary to the above, one returns to the question of what in Buddhism may be considered parallel to Western ideas about how one heals intrapersonal and interpersonal distress—and to the related question of whether or not there is a Buddhist tradition similar to Western clinical psychology and psychiatry. Despite the existence of medical traditions in Buddhist countries (T. Clifford), little was done until recent times to create a dialogue between medicine and Buddhist practice, let alone a systematic study of mental diseases and the Buddhist goal of relieving all “dis-ease.” There are multiple cultural and institutional reasons for this apparent lack, including the fact that the very notion of mental disease is a relatively recent Western creation. Nonetheless, some Buddhist practices and systems of belief may be considered parallel to Western techniques for healing through the modification of thought and behavior, and conversely, Western specialists have adapted Buddhist ideas with greater or lesser open acknowledgment of their depth.

Historically, one should mention the Swiss psychiatrist Carl G. Jung (1875–1961) as the pioneer. Despite certain ambivalence about “the Orient” (Gómez 1995), Jung borrowed generously, especially in his analysis of “mandala symbolism,” which combined traditional Buddhist and Hindu understandings about the significance of the MAṆḌALA with keen clinical observations.

In recent times we have seen the development of biofeedback and behavioral techniques that involve ideas of self-monitoring (Rokke and Rehm) and mindful reassessment of experience (Smyth), and of relaxation as a natural response to specific stimuli (Benson and Klipper), techniques that echo, explicitly or implicitly, Buddhist serenity and MINDFULNESS techniques (de Silva 1984, 1985, and 1986). These ef-

forts go well beyond some of the soft formulations found in the literature of self-help, spirituality, New Age, and pop psychology. In fact, the implicit and the avowed recognition of the influence of Buddhist ideas and attitudes extends beyond associations with contemporary popular expectations. We now count several systematic, and successful attempts to integrate aspects of Buddhist theories of cognition and meditation into empirically testable clinical theory. The most explicit use of Buddhist models is seen in Zindel Segal's mindfulness-based cognitive therapy for depression (Segal et al.). This technique incorporates both the behavioral and the cognitive aspects of mindfulness meditation into the treatment of depression, including the practice of mindfulness of breath (*ānāpānasati*) as a way to refocus or shift attention away from distorting patterns of cognition and emotion toward adaptive schemas.

Less explicitly linked to Buddhist practice, but now amply tested as an effective therapy is Marsha Linehan's *dialectic cognitive-behavioral therapy* or DBT (Linehan 1993a and 1993b). This system is a subtle integration of empirically based cognitive-behavioral strategies and a number of elements of Buddhist theory of knowledge and meditation. Linehan, for instance, conceives the processes of dysfunction and therapy in part through the lens of her own experience with Zen practice, but also through her own nontraditional understanding of the practice. The process is a dialectic because it assumes and relies on the "fundamental interrelatedness or wholeness of reality" and the placement of individual experience within a whole of relationships. This means, on the one hand, that the client needs "to accept herself as she is in the moment and the need for her to change" (1993b, pp. 1–2), but also that change requires the cultivation of "core mindfulness skills" through which the client learns to observe and accept without judgment even those behaviors or interpersonal deficits that need to be changed.

Jeffrey Schwartz, who was also inspired in part by his Buddhist practice, has adapted similar mindfulness techniques into the treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder. In this particular technique, one may posit that Schwartz's behavioral strategy is a variant of Buddhist uses of attention and selective inattention, including the confrontation of disgust and negative emotions while in a serene state. Here Buddhist techniques may be understood as equivalent to Western systematic desensitization, and exposure with response

prevention. Yet, although both traditions follow similar paths in reorienting the suffering individual toward a reevaluation of the causes of distress and disgust, Schwartz highlights the Buddhist practice of detached, nonjudgmental awareness, rather than the purposeful increase in anxious tension built into exposure techniques.

Unlike attempts to link Buddhism to psychology by demanding a softening of the strictures of scientific research, these applications respond to a critical reflection on Buddhist conceptions followed by systematic clinical trials and empirical testing. But they also represent a willingness to follow the theory and technique in whichever direction is required to achieve effectiveness, including the use of techniques and belief systems that would have been totally foreign to traditional Buddhists.

However, one should note that the danger of missing a valid parallel is as great as the danger of accepting spurious correspondences. An important component of Linehan's technique called "distress tolerance skills" (1993a) parallels psychodynamic concepts of affect tolerance and affect dysregulation (Riesenberg-Malcolm). One would be tempted to regard these principles as unrelated (at least genetically) to any Buddhist technique of self-cultivation, except that a wide range of Buddhist practices pursue similar goals. One may mention, in passing, the contemplation of objects of disgust (corpse meditation or *aśubhabhāvanā*), as well as the use in the Tiantai School of repentance rituals that both move away from distress and remorse by contemplating emptiness and approach emptiness by contemplating the passions and their effects.

### **Commensurability and dialogue**

The use of Buddhist techniques or beliefs as points of departure for contemporary psychologies or as a partner in scientific dialogue raises issues of commensurability: Are Buddhist psychological conceptions in some way commensurate with Western ideas of psychology and can there be a fruitful dialogue between the two? An obvious risk is to read psychological (scientific) literature the same way one reads religious literature: as statements of eternal truth. But equally tempting is the tendency to read psychological studies as confirmations or equivalents to Buddhist doctrinal speculation and religious practice.

Psychological "conclusions" are essentially provisional heuristic tools, with two functions: prediction

and explanation, which are in turn validated (the probability of their disconfirmation reduced) when they themselves set the direction for further research and observation. There are, of course, good reasons to doubt their total independence from culture and the sociology of knowledge, but one risks misunderstanding their scope if one chooses to ignore the research protocols that underlie scientific statements about human psychosomatic processes.

Similarly, religious discourse and practice has its own protocols, and these must be thoroughly understood before one draws comparisons. Even today, practicing Buddhists tend to reject an interpretation of their beliefs and practices that may feel “reductionistic.” As already noted, a psychoneurological explanation may ring true, but for it ultimately to have heuristic value or applicability beyond its conceptual conclusions it must account for the belief systems (the truths and myths of tradition) and the actual practices (ritual and contemplative patterns and events) cherished by the believers themselves.

Nonetheless, one may begin to consider, speculatively at this point in our understanding of the issue, ways in which Buddhist traditions may be seen to contain insights or techniques that may help illuminate contemporary problems of psychology. As suggested above, such illumination could be in a number of areas of philosophical and psychological inquiry: theories of consciousness and the unconscious, such as the theories of perception, emotion, and mental health. Some of these issues have been discussed in an ongoing series of symposia involving Western scholars, scientists, and the fourteenth DALAI LAMA.

The discussions point toward interesting possibilities for the future, and the participation of the Dalai Lama also reminds us of the frame of reference within which Buddhist psychological theories have developed—and arguably will continue to develop. Buddhist theories of mind speak of health and “dis-ease,” but they also have ethical concerns that do not always overlap with the concerns of Western psychologists. The Buddhist may, for instance, be concerned with total liberation from the bonds of desire that have enslaved us for millions of rebirths, whereas the Western psychologist may be seeking an adaptive compromise in this single life. The Buddhist meditator may value unquestioned acceptance of a teacher’s wisdom, whereas the Western psychologist may be interested in the matter of power differentials and authority in the relationship between therapist and client.

Most likely the majority of scientific psychologists, whatever their theoretical leanings, would not want to describe Buddhist doctrine and practices as equivalent to any one of the Western psychologies. Conversely it is difficult to imagine how a person committed to Buddhism in belief, practice, or both would want to reduce his or her preferred set of beliefs and practices to anything similar to what is considered scientific or empirical. And yet, if history is an effective teacher, we may expect to find an increasing cross-fertilization between both styles of studying and healing the human being as a unity of body and mind.

*See also:* **Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Chan School; Consciousness, Theories of; Sentient Beings**

### **Bibliography**

- Austin, James H. *Zen and the Brain: Toward an Understanding of Meditation and Consciousness*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1988.
- Benson, Herbert, and Klipper, Miriam Z. *The Relaxation Response*. New York: Avon, 1976.
- Birx, Ellen. *Healing Zen*. New York: Viking, 2002.
- Block, Ned; Flanagan, Owen; and Guzeldere, Guven. *The Nature of Consciousness: Philosophical Debates*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1998.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *MindScience: An East-West Dialogue*, ed. Daniel Goleman and Robert A. F. Thurman. Boston: Wisdom, 1991.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *Gentle Bridges: Conversations with the Dalai Lama on the Sciences of Mind*, ed. Jeremy W. Hayward and Francisco J. Varela. Boston: Shambhala, 1992.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV), with Daniel Goleman et al. *Worlds in Harmony: Dialogues on Compassionate Action*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax, 1992.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *Healing Anger: The Power of Patience from a Buddhist Perspective*, tr. Geshe Thupten Jinpa and Sonam Thupten Jinpa. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1997.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *Transforming the Mind: Teachings on Generating Compassion*, tr. Geshe Thupten Jinpa. London: Thorsons, 2000.
- Bstan Dzin Rgya Mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso, Dalai Lama XIV). *Healing Emotions: Conversations with the Dalai Lama on Mindfulness, Emotions, and Health*, ed. Daniel Goleman. Boston: Shambhala, 2003.
- Chalmers, David J. *The Conscious Mind: In Search of a Fundamental Theory*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.

- Chang, Ruth, ed. *Incommensurability, Incomparability, and Practical Reason*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1998.
- Chen, X. "How Do Scientists Have Disagreements about Experiments? Incommensurability in the Use of Goal-Derived Categories." *Perspectives on Science* 2 (1994): 275–301.
- Chen, X. "Thomas Kuhn's Latest Notion of Incommensurability." *Journal for General Philosophy of Science* 28 (1997): 257–273.
- Chen, X.; Andersen, H.; and Barker, P. "Kuhn's Theory of Scientific Revolutions and Cognitive Psychology." *Philosophical Psychology* 11 (1998): 5–28.
- Churchill, J. "The Bellman's Map: Does Antifoundationalism Entail Incommensurability and Relativism?" *Southern Journal of Philosophy* 28 (1990): 469–484.
- Claxton, Guy, ed. *Beyond Therapy: The Impact of Eastern Religions on Psychological Theory and Practice*. London: Wisdom, 1986.
- Claxton, Guy. "Neurotheology: Buddhism, Cognitive Science and Mystical Experience." In *The Psychology of Awakening: Buddhism, Science, and Our Day-to-Day Lives*, ed. Gay Watson, Stephen Batchelor, and Guy Claxton. York Beach, ME: Weiser, 2000.
- Clifford, Michael D. "Psychotherapy and Religion." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Vol. 12, ed. Mircea Eliade. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Clifford, Terry. *Tibetan Buddhist Medicine and Psychiatry: The Diamond Healing*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1994.
- Cornwell, John, ed. *Consciousness and Human Identity*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Csikszentmihalyi, Mihalyi. "The Concept of Flow." In *Play and Learning*, ed. Brian Sutton-Smith. New York: Gardner Press, 1979.
- Damasio, Antonio. *The Feeling of What Happens: Body and Emotion in the Making of Consciousness*. New York: Harcourt, 1999.
- D'Aquili, Eugene G., and Newberg, Andrew B. *The Mystical Mind: Probing the Biology of Religious Experience*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1999.
- Davidson, Richard J., ed. *Anxiety, Depression, and Emotion*. New York: Oxford, 2000.
- Davis, Martha; Robbins Eshelman, Elizabeth; and McKay, Matthew. *The Relaxation and Stress Reduction Workbook*, 5th edition. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger, 2000.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Buddhism and Behaviour Modification." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 22, no. 6 (1984): 661–678.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Early Buddhist and Modern Behavioral Strategies for the Control of Unwanted Intrusive Cognitions." *Psychological Record* 35, no. 4 (1985): 437–443.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Buddhism and Behaviour Change: Implications for Therapy." In *Beyond Therapy: The Impact of Eastern Religions on Psychological Theory and Practice*, ed. Guy Claxton. London: Wisdom, 1986.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Buddhist Psychology: A Review of Theory and Practice." *Current Psychology: Research and Reviews* 9, no. 3 (1990): 236–254.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Buddhism and Counselling." *British Journal of Guidance and Counselling* 21, no. 1 (1993): 30–34.
- de Silva, Padmal. "Buddhist Psychology: A Therapeutic Perspective." In *Indigenous Psychologies: Research and Experience in Cultural Context*, ed. Uichol Kim. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 1993.
- DeCharms, Christopher. *Two Views of Mind: Abhidharma and Brain Science*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1998.
- Deikman, A. J. "Experimental Meditation." *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* 136 (1963): 329–343.
- Deikman, A. J. "De-automatization and the Mystic Experience." *Psychiatry* 29 (1966): 324–338.
- Deikman, A. J. "Implications of Experimentally Produced Contemplative Meditation." *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* 142, no. 2 (1966): 101–116.
- Deikman, A. J. Review of *Freedom from the Self: Sufism, Meditation, and Psychotherapy*, by M. Shafii. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* 174, no. 8 (1986): 503–504.
- Dennett, Daniel C. *Kinds of Minds: Toward an Understanding of Consciousness*. New York: Basic Books, 1996.
- Dreyfus, Georges. "Is Compassion an Emotion? A Cross-Cultural Exploration of Mental Typologies." In *Visions of Compassion: Western Scientists and Tibetan Buddhists Examine Human Nature*, ed. Richard J. Davidson and Anne Harrington. London: Oxford University Press, 2002.
- Edelman, Gerald M., and Tononi, Giulio. *A Universe of Consciousness: How Matter Becomes Imagination*. New York: Basic Books, 2000.
- Eisenberg, Nancy. *Altruistic Emotion, Cognition, and Behavior*. Hillsdale, NJ: Erlbaum, 1986.
- Ellis, Ralph D. *Questioning Consciousness: The Interplay of Imagery, Cognition, and Emotion in the Human Brain*. Philadelphia: John Benjamins, 1995.
- Epstein, Mark. *Thoughts without a Thinker: Psychotherapy from a Buddhist Perspective*. New York: Basic Books, 1995.
- Farthing, G. William. *The Psychology of Consciousness*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1992.
- Faure, Bernard. *Chan Insights and Oversights: An Epistemological Critique of the Chan Tradition*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Fingarette, Herbert. *Self-Deception*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 2000.

- Firestone, Robert W.; Firestone, Lisa A.; and Catlett, Joyce. *Creating a Life of Meaning and Compassion: The Wisdom of Psychotherapy*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2003.
- Fisher, Seymour, and Fisher, Rhonda L. *The Psychology of Adaptation to Absurdity: Tactics of Make-Believe*. Tuxedo Park, NY: Erlbaum, 1993.
- Flack, William F., Jr., and Laird, James D., eds. *Emotions in Psychopathology Theory and Research*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Forman, Robert K. C. *The Problem of Pure Consciousness: Mysticism and Philosophy*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1990.
- Forman, Robert K. C., ed. *The Innate Capacity: Mysticism, Psychology, and Philosophy*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Goleman, Daniel. *Destructive Emotions: How Can We Overcome Them? A Scientific Dialogue with the Dalai Lama*. New York: Bantam Books, 2003.
- Gómez, Luis O. "'Oriental' Wisdom and the Cure of Souls: Jung and the Indian 'East.'" In *Curators of the Buddha*, ed. Donald S. Lopez. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.
- Gómez, Luis O. "Healing Suffering by Healing Consciousness: The End of Suffering in Buddhist Discourse." In *Pain and Its Transformations*, ed. S. Coakley and A. Kleinman. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2003.
- Greenberg, Leslie S. *Emotion-Focused Therapy: Coaching Clients to Work through Their Feelings*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2002.
- Griffiths, Paul E. "Emotions." In *The Blackwell Guide to Philosophy of Mind*, ed. Stephen P. Stich and Ted A. Warfield. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2003.
- Griffiths, Paul J. *On Being Mindless: Buddhist Meditation and the Mind-Body Problem*. La Salle, IL: Open Court, 1986.
- Guenther, Herbert V. *Philosophy and Psychology in the Abhidharma*. Lucknow, India: Buddha Vihara, 1957.
- Guggenbühl-Craig, Adolf. *Power in the Helping Professions* (1971), tr. Myron B. Gubitz. Woodstock, CT: Spring Publications, 1999.
- Gyatso, Janet, ed. *In the Mirror of Memory: Reflections on Mindfulness and Remembrance in Indian and Tibetan Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Gyatso, Janet. "Healing Burns with Fire: The Facilitations of Experience in Tibetan Buddhism." *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 67, no. 1 (1999): 113–147.
- Harvey, Peter. *The Selfless Mind: Personality, Consciousness, and Nirvana in Early Buddhism*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1995.
- Hill, Peter C. "Toward an Attitude Process Model of Religious Experience." *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion* 33, no. 4 (1994): 303–314.
- Hirai, Tomio. *Zen and the Mind: Scientific Approach to Zen Practice*. Tokyo: Japan Publications, 1978.
- Hirai, Tomio. *Zen Meditation and Psychotherapy*, revised edition of *Zen and the Mind* (1978). Tokyo: Japan Publications, 1989.
- Hood, Ralph W., Jr., ed. *Handbook of Religious Experience*. Birmingham, AL: Religious Education Press, 1995.
- Houshmand, Zara; Livingstone, Robert B.; and Wallace, B. Alan, eds. *Consciousness at the Crossroads: Conversations with the Dalai Lama on Brain Science and Buddhism*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1999.
- Humphrey, Nicholas. *A History of the Mind*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1992.
- Hunt, Harry. *On the Nature of Consciousness: Cognitive, Phenomenological, and Transpersonal Perspectives*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1995.
- Jaini, Padma. Nabh. S. "The Sautrāntika Theory of *Bīja*." *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 22, no. 2 (1959): 236–249.
- Jayasuriya, W. F. *The Psychology and Philosophy of Buddhism*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Y.M.B.A. Press, 1963.
- Jayatilleke, K. N. *Early Buddhist Theory of Knowledge*. London: Allen and Unwin; New York: Humanities Press, 1963.
- Johansson, Rune E. A. *The Psychology of Nirvana*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1969; New York: Anchor Books, 1970.
- Jones, Stanton L. "A Constructive Relationship for Religion with the Science and Profession of Psychology: Perhaps the Boldest Model Yet." In *Religion and the Clinical Practice of Psychology*, ed. Edward P. Shafranske. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1996.
- Joseph, R.; Newberg, Andrew B.; Alper, Matthew; et al. *NeuroTheology: Brain, Science, Spirituality, Religious Experience*, 2nd edition. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 2003.
- Jung, Carl Gustav. *Concerning Mandala Symbolism*, tr. R. F. C. Hull. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1959.
- Kasamatsu, A., and Hirai, T. "An EEG Study on the Zen Meditation (Zazen)." *Folia Psychiatrica et Neurologia Japonica* 20, no. 4 (1966): 315–336.
- Kasamatsu, A., and Hirai, T. "An EEG Study on the Zen Meditation (Zazen)." *Psychologia* 12, nos. 3–4 (1969): 205–225.
- Kaszniak, Alfred W., ed. *Emotions, Qualia, and Consciousness*. London: World Scientific, 2001.
- Klein, Anne C. *Knowledge and Liberation: Tibetan Buddhist Epistemology in Support of Transformative Religious Experience*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1986.
- Kobayashi, K. "The Effect of Zen Meditation on the Valence of Intrusive Thoughts." *Dissertation Abstracts International* 43, no. 1-B (July 1982): 280.

- Langer, Ellen J. *Mindfulness*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1989.
- Laplanche, Jean. *Life and Death in Psychoanalysis*, tr. Jeffrey Mehlman. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1976.
- Lati Rinbochay and Napper, Elizabeth. *Mind in Tibetan Buddhism: Oral Commentary on Ge-shay Jam-bel-sam-pel's Presentation of Awareness and Knowledge* (1980), translated and edited by Elizabeth Napper. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1986.
- Linehan, Marsha M. *Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment of Borderline Personality Disorder*. New York: Guilford Press, 1993a.
- Linehan, Marsha M. *Skills Training Manual for Treating Borderline Personality Disorder*. New York: Guilford Press, 1993b.
- Lusk, Julie T., ed. *Thirty Scripts for Relaxation Imagery and Inner Healing*. Duluth, MN: Whole Person, 1992.
- Lycan, William G. *Consciousness and Experience*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1996.
- Macrae, J. "Therapeutic Touch as Meditation." In *Spiritual Aspects of the Healing Arts*, compiled by Dora Kunz. Wheaton, IL: Theosophical Publishing House, 1985.
- Mahāsi Sayadaw. *The Progress of Insight through the Stages of Purification: A Modern Pali Treatise on Buddhist Satipatthana Meditation*, tr. Nyanaponika Thera. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Forest Hermitage, 1965.
- Matilal, Bimal Krishna. *Perception: An Essay on Classical Indian Theories of Knowledge*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1986.
- Miller, William R., ed. *Integrating Spirituality into Treatment: Resources for Practitioners*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1999.
- Molino, Anthony. *The Couch and the Tree: Dialogues in Psychoanalysis and Buddhism*. New York: North Point Press, 1998.
- Murphy, Michael, and Donovan, Steven. *The Physical and Psychological Effects of Meditation: A Review of Contemporary Research with a Comprehensive Bibliography, 1931–1996*, 2nd edition. Sausalito, CA: Institute of Noetic Sciences, 1997.
- Newberg, Andrew; D'Aquili, Eugene G.; and Rause, Vince. *Why God Won't Go Away: Brain Science and the Biology of Belief*. New York: Ballantine, 2001.
- Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Imagining Karma: Ethical Transformation in Amerindian, Buddhist, and Greek Rebirth*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 2002.
- Ortony, Andrew; Clore, Gerald L.; and Collins, Allan. *The Cognitive Structure of Emotions*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Otis, L. S.; Shapiro, Deane H., Jr.; and Walsh, Roger N. "Adverse Effects of Transcendental Meditation." In *Meditation: Classic and Contemporary Perspectives*, ed. Deane H. Shapiro and Roger N. Walsh. New York: Aldine, 1984.
- Parfit, Derek. *Reasons and Persons*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1984.
- Renik, Owen, ed. *Knowledge and Authority in the Psychoanalytic Relationship*. Northvale, NJ: Jason Aronson, 1998.
- Riesenberg-Malcolm, Ruth. *On Bearing Unbearable States of Mind*. London and New York: Routledge, 1999.
- Rokke, Paul D., and Rehm, Lynn P. "Self-Management Therapies." In *Handbook of Cognitive-Behavioral Therapies*, ed. Keith S. Dobson. New York and London: Guilford Press, 2001.
- Rubin, Jeffrey B. "Psychoanalytic Treatment with a Buddhist Meditator." In *Object Relations Theory and Religion: Clinical Applications*, ed. Mark Finn and John Gartner. Westport, CT, and London: Praeger, 1992.
- Rubin, Jeffrey B. *Psychotherapy and Buddhism: Toward an Integration*. New York: Plenum Press, 2000.
- Sanderson, C., and Linehan, M. M. "Acceptance and Forgiveness." In *Integrating Spirituality into Treatment: Resources for Practitioners*, ed. William R. Miller. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1999.
- Schmithausen, Lambert. "On the Problem of the Relation of Spiritual Practice and Philosophical Theory in Buddhism." In *German Scholars on India*, Vol. 2, ed. Cultural Department, Embassy of the Federal Republic of Germany. Bombay: Embassy of the Federal Republic of Germany, 1976.
- Schmithausen, Lambert. *Ālayavijñāna: On the Origin and Early Development of a Central Concept of Yogācāra Philosophy*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1987.
- Schumaker, John F., ed. *Religion and Mental Health*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Schwartz, Jeffrey M. *Brain Lock: Free Yourself from Obsessive-Compulsive Behavior*. New York: HarperCollins, 1996.
- Scott, Alwyn. *Stairway to the Mind: The Controversial New Science of Consciousness*. New York: Copernicus, 1995.
- Searle, John R. *The Mystery of Consciousness*. New York: New York Review of Books Press, 1997.
- Segal, Zindel V.; Williams, J.; Mark, G.; and Teasdale, John D. *Mindfulness-Based Cognitive Therapy for Depression: A New Approach to Preventing Relapse*. New York and London: Guilford Press, 2000.
- Serres, Michel. *Les cinq sens: Philosophie des corps mêlés*. Paris: Grasset et Fasquelle, 1985.
- Shafraanske, Edward P., ed. *Religion and the Clinical Practice of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1996.
- Shapiro, Deane H., Jr. "Adverse Effects of Meditation: A Preliminary Investigation of Long-Term Meditators." *International Journal of Psychosomatics* 29 (1992): 62–66.
- Shapiro, Deane H., Jr., and Walsh, Roger N., eds. *Meditation: Classic and Contemporary Perspectives*. New York: Aldine, 1984.



- Sharf, Robert H. "Buddhist Modernism and the Rhetoric of Meditative Experience." *Numen* 42 (1995): 228–283.
- Sharf, Robert H. "Experience." In *Critical Terms for Religious Studies*, ed. Mark C. Taylor. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1998.
- Singh Khalsa, Dharma, and Stauth, Cameron. *Meditation as Medicine: Activate the Power of Your Natural Healing Force*. New York: Pocket Books, 2001.
- Sinha, Jadunath. *Indian Psychology*, 2nd edition, 2 vols. Calcutta: Sinha, 1958, 1961.
- Smith, J. C. "Meditation as Psychotherapy: A Review of the Literature." *Psychological Bulletin* 82 (1975): 557–564.
- Smyth, Larry D. *Clients Manual for the Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment of Anxiety Disorders*, 2nd edition. Havre de Grace, MD: RTR, 1999.
- Stocker, Michael, and Hegeman, Elizabeth. *Valuing Emotions*. New York and Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1996.
- Tart, Charles T., ed. *Altered States of Consciousness*, 3rd edition. San Francisco: HarperCollins, 1990.
- Varela, Francisco J., ed. *Sleeping, Dreaming, and Dying: An Exploration of Consciousness with the Dalai Lama*. Boston: Wisdom, 1997.
- Varela, Francisco J. "Steps to a Science of Inter-Being: Unfolding the Dharma Implicit in Modern Cognitive Science." In *The Psychology of Awakening: Buddhism, Science, and Our Day-to-Day Lives*, ed. Gay Watson. York Beach, ME: Weiser, 2000.
- Waddell, Norman, trans. *Wild Ivy: The Spiritual Autobiography of Zen Master Hakuin*. Boston: Shambhala, 1999.
- Wall, Patrick. *Pain: The Science of Suffering*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2000.
- Wallace, Benjamin, and Fisher, Leslie E. *Consciousness and Behavior*, 4th edition. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1999.
- Wallace, Robert Keith. "Physiological Effects of Transcendental Meditation." *Science* 167 (1970): 1,751–1,754.
- Walsh, Robert N. "Meditation." In *Handbook of Innovative Therapy*, 2nd revised edition, ed. Raymond J. Corsini. New York: Wiley, 2001.
- Walsh, Roger, and Vaughn, Frances. *Paths beyond Ego: The Transpersonal Vision*. Los Angeles: Jeremy P. Tarcher, 1993.
- Watson, Gay. *The Resonance of Emptiness: A Buddhist Inspiration for a Contemporary Psychotherapy*. Richmond, UK: Curzon, 1998.
- Watson, Gay, ed. *The Psychology of Awakening: Buddhism, Science, and Our Day-to-Day Lives*. York Beach, ME: Weiser, 2000.
- Weiskrantz, Lawrence. *Consciousness Lost and Found: A Neuropsychological Exploration*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Wilber, Ken; Engler, Jack; and Brown, Daniel P., eds. *Transformations of Consciousness: Conventional and Contemplative Perspectives on Development*. Boston: Shambala, 1986.
- Wolman, Benjamin B., and Ullman, Montague. *Handbook of States of Consciousness*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1986.
- Wood, Thomas E. *Mind Only: A Philosophical and Doctrinal Analysis of Vijñānavāda*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1991.
- Wright, Crispin; Smith, Barry C.; and Macdonald, Cynthia, eds. *Knowing Our Own Minds*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Yasuo, Yuasa. *The Body: Toward an Eastern Mind-Body Theory*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1987.
- Zangpo, S., and Feuerstein, G. "The Risks of Visualization: Growing Roots Can Be Dangerous." *Quest* (Summer 1995): 26–30, 84.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

## PUDGALAVĀDA

The Pudgalavāda was a group of schools sharing the doctrine that the person (*pudgala*) or self (*ātman*) is real. The earliest Pudgalavāda school was the Vātsīputrīya; from the Vātsīputrīya came the Dharmottarīya, Bhadrāyānīya, Sāṃmitīya, and Śaṅgarika. Of these schools, the Vātsīputrīya and Sāṃmitīya were the most important.

Very little of their literature has survived. This circumstance, together with their apparent denial of the Buddhist doctrine of nonself, has created the impression that they were an eccentric minority on the fringe of Buddhism. But in fact they were in the mainstream; XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) tells us that roughly a quarter of the monastic population in India in the seventh century C.E. was Pudgalavāda.

They agreed with other Buddhists that the self is neither the same as the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES) nor separate from them, but affirmed the self as "true and ultimate." They thought of the self as conceptual yet real, real because for the purposes of kindness and compassion the self was not reducible to the skandhas, and apparently because the self was a reflection of the timeless reality of NIRVĀṆA in the flux of the skandhas. As a fire can exist locally only through its fuel, so the self can exist as a particular person only through the skandhas. As the fire vanishes when the fuel is exhausted, but cannot be said to be either existent or nonexistent, having "gone home" to its timeless

source, so the self that has attained nirvāṇa, vanishing at death, cannot be said either to exist or not to exist.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Mainstream Buddhist Schools

### **Bibliography**

Priestley, Leonard C. D. C. *Puḍgalavāda Buddhism: The Reality of the Indeterminate Self*. Toronto, ON: Centre for South Asian Studies, University of Toronto, 1999.

Thien Chau, Thich. *The Literature of the Personalists of Early Buddhism*, tr. Sara Boin-Webb. Delhi: Motilal Barnasidass, 1999.

LEONARD C. D. C. PRIESTLEY

## PURE LAND ART

Visions of PURE LANDS are premised upon the Maḥāyāna COSMOLOGY of multiple worlds in “ten directions,” each presided over by one buddha and each constituting a blissful alternative to the Sahā world of impurity in which we live. The Western Land of Bliss (Sukhāvātī) associated with AMITĀBHA Buddha epitomizes the notion of the pure land. The term *pure land* is thus used in a narrow sense to refer to Amitābha’s Land and in a broader sense to refer to domains associated with BUDDHAS of other directions. Visual representation of pure lands, a major theme in the Buddhist art of East Asia, takes three major forms: (1) sculptural representations of Amitābha Buddha with his retinue; (2) BIANXIANG (TRANSFORMATION TABLEAUX) showing paradise scenes or pictures of the descent of Amitābha to usher the deceased to the Land of Bliss; and (3) landscape and architectural simulation of the Western Paradise.

### **Western Pure Land evoked through the Amitābha image**

The Amitābha image, with its evocation of the Western Pure Land, dates back to at least the fourth century in China, culminating in its veneration by HUIYUAN (334–416) and his followers on Mount Lu. There was a remarkable lack of doctrinal coherence underlying the early practice, which took its cues largely from sūtras tangential to Amitābha’s Pure Land. Chief among them is the PRATYUTPANNASAMĀDHI-SŪTRA, which emphasizes the role of BUDDHA IMAGES, including images of Amitābha, as an expedient agency for achieving the state of contemplation, rather than as

cultic icons in their own right. In early cases involving Amitābha images, stone chambers were chosen as the topographic setting for such meditative activities, as a means of “traveling,” in the words of a devotee named Liu Yimin around 400 C.E., “to the most distant region (of the Western Paradise) . . . to settle for the great repose (of Nirvāṇa) as the final term.”

Such pure land aspirations gained momentum during the fifth and sixth centuries in China. However, the majority of buddha icons made during this period depicted Śākyamuni, MAITREYA, and the Śākyamuni/Prabhūtaratna pair. A new trend emerged in northern China in the 460s: Of the variety of buddha images made by lay commoners, about 17 percent were Amitābha icons, which received little patronage from monks and nuns. It was not until a century later that the SAṄGHA’s interest in Amitābha icons overrode their interest in icons of Śākyamuni and Maitreya. The change suggests that the pure land cult associated with Amitābha was a movement that began from the bottom up. It largely tallied with the early indifference shown by the learned Buddhist community during this period toward Amitābha Pure Land sūtras, as indicated by the initial absence of scholarly commentary regarding them. Early donors of Amitābha images were unclear about the location of Amitābha’s Pure Land in the Buddhist cosmological scheme. Amitābha images were often integrated into the imagined afterlife encounter with Maitreya, the future Buddha. In southern China, Amitābha images were cast in gilded bronze, with the largest statues reported to be sixteen feet tall. In the north, stone was the favored medium.

### **Transformation tableaux of the Western Pure Land**

It is not clear when pure land pictures first appeared in China. A mural in cave 169 at Binglingsi, executed in 420, contains the earliest painted icon of Amitāyus, but shows no topographic features of the Western Paradise. The earliest surviving example of a pure land picture in China is a set of topographic tableaux carved on the back of the nimbus of icons from the Wanfosi at Chengdu. The oldest of these survives in an ink rubbing, dated 425, with the pure land scene largely missing. A sixth-century relief carving, similar in design, on the back of double bodhisattvas from the same site, preserves a complete composition. It is based on the “Life Span” and “The Universal Gateway” chapters of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). In the middle is the assembly gathered at the bird-shaped Vulture Peak, where Śākyamuni announces that, at the

end of a kalpa, fire and terror engulf the human world, while his pure land remains intact, where halls, pavilions, gardens, and groves are “adorned with gems,” and “jeweled trees abound in flowers and fruit, and living beings enjoy themselves at ease.” The composition is thus divided into two contrasting parts: below, scenes of calamities; above, the pure land. Human figures appear in the lotus pond, a scene of rebirth associated with a pure land. The carving is often hailed as a precursor to later representations of the Western Pure Land. The composition also anticipates pictures of the “White Path to Paradise,” which are typically divided into two realms: Below is the impure mundane world of the east, teeming with suffering beings from the SIX REALMS OF EXISTENCE; above is the Western Pure Land. In between is a symmetrically divided river. To the left and south is the pool of fire of anger and violence; to the right and north is the river of greed and desire. Flanked by these two engulfing rivers is a thin white path that leads to the Western Paradise. Śākya-muni, on one side of the river, urges the devotee to cross, while Amitābha and his retinue beckon on the other shore. Shandao’s commentary on the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* (*Contemplation of the Buddha of Limitless Life Sūtra*) presents a matching textual account. However, pictures of this kind are found only in surviving Japanese hanging scrolls of the Kamakura period (1185–1333).

Another notable early painting of a pure land, executed around the early seventh century, appears in cave 420 at DUNHUANG. Based in part on the *Lotus Sūtra*, the mural shows Vulture Peak on the right and Śākya-muni passing into nirvāṇa in the middle. Issuing from the foot of Vulture Peak is a winding river dotted with lotuses, with a boat and numerous ducks crossing to the other shore. Flanking the river are an array of nine buddhas and various buddha-lands. The scene draws on the “Life Span” chapter of the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, translated by Dharmakṣema in 423 C.E., which describes an “Eastern world named Joy and Beautiful Sound,” a pure land. Both the Wangfosi carving and the Dunhuang mural demonstrate the tenuous relationship between early pictures of pure lands and the Amitābha sūtras. The pictures arose out of a topographic imagination that was driven by soteriological interest and cued by scriptures.

As the cult of the Amitābha Pure Land gained currency during the second half of the sixth century, its pictorial representation took more definitive shape. Two compositional prototypes emerged during the Northern Qi period (550–577). The first is the

“Amitābha with Fifty Bodhisattvas,” a picture allegedly acquired by the five bodhisattvas of the Kukkuṭārāma Monastery from the Western Paradise, and dubiously claimed to have been transmitted by the Indian monk Kāśyapa-mātāṅga (d. 73 C.E.) to China. Cao Zhongda of the Northern Qi is said to have specialized in pictures of this type, which continued to appear into the seventh century. A painting on the east wall of cave 332 at Dunhuang shows a gigantic tree dominated by the Amitābha triad. Fifty reborn souls appear as bodhisattvas perched on various tree branches; two other figures are each wrapped in a lotus bud.

The second compositional prototype represents the more popular model. It is exemplified by a large spread of relief sculpture from cave 2 of South Xiangtangshan, now at the Freer Gallery in Washington, D.C. The composition contains all the key elements of subsequent Western Paradise tableaux. Three haloed deities—Amitābha in the middle, with Avalokiteśvara and Mahāsthāmaprāpta on each side—constitute the Western triad. In front of them are three ponds. In the middle pond, four human figures emerge respectively from a lotus—the extent to which they break out of the lotus bud indicates the ranking order of their classes in the merit-based three-tiered hierarchy of rebirth, as described in the Larger SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHASŪTRA. Each of the two side ponds shows a figure—either a bodhisattva or a Buddha disciple—bathing in the “jeweled ponds” to cleanse the impurities of the world of transmigration before entering the Land of Bliss. The pond motif has since become a distinctive feature of Amitābha’s Pure Land. This design grew into a major compositional form in the seventh century, as exemplified by the Amitābha tableau in cave 220 at Dunhuang, dated 642 C.E., and in the Golden Hall of Hōryūji in Japan.

Western Pure Land pictures developed new forms in the seventh and eighth centuries. The threefold gradation of rebirths in the pure land based on the Larger *Sukhāvativyūha-sūtra* evolved into a ninefold scheme—three grades, each subdivided into three degrees—as pure land tableaux incorporated the *Guan Wuliangshou jing*. An early example is a seventh-century wall painting in cave 431 at Dunhuang, which contains vignettes of the descent of Amitābha or his delegates to fetch the dying person to the Western Paradise. In its early phase, the composition took the form of a horizontal band measuring 1 by 15.4 meters, a form apparently adapted from the hand scroll format, and it emphasizes narrative actions rather than pure land scenes. In the early eighth century, a triptych form took



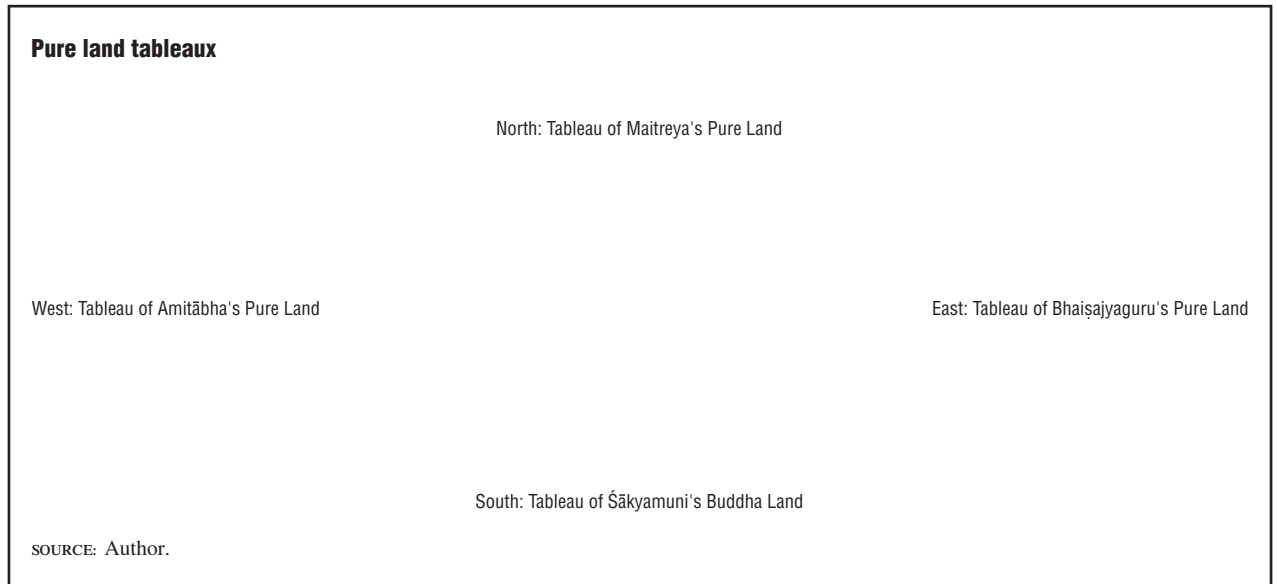
A bas-relief in limestone representing Amitābha's Western Paradise. (Chinese, Northern Qi dynasty, sixth century.) Freer Gallery of Art Library. Reproduced by permission.

shape. The two side panels depict the story of Ajātaśatru, a prince who puts his father, King Bimbisāra, and his mother, Queen Vaidehī, under house arrest. In response to the queen's appeal, the Buddha appears and teaches her sixteen ways of visualization. This royal family drama and the scenes of visualization often occupy two side columns that flank the central paradise scene in triptychs. The side vignettes set the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* tableau apart from the Amitābha tableau. Their identification on the basis of sūtra(s) is in fact tenuous since the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* does not include the description of the Western Pure Land that appears in the Amitābha sūtras.

### Other pure lands

Pure land tableaux are not limited to the Western Paradise. In MAHĀYĀNA cosmology, there are "pure lands of ten directions." Tableaux depicting other pure lands include those of the Medicine Buddha (Bhaiṣajyaguru) of the East; Maitreya, often associated with north; and those described in sūtras not pertaining to particular pure lands. There is even a tableau of pure lands of the ten directions as identified by its cartouche in cave 158 at Dunhuang. The tableau of the Pure Land of the Bhaiṣajyaguru of the East features scenes of lamp-lighting, "Nine Violent Deaths," and "Fulfillment of Twelve Great Vows"

FIGURE 1



made by the Bodhisattva Bhaiṣajyaguru before he becomes a buddha. The tableaux of Maitreya Pure Land (a somewhat misleading term since Maitreya's domain is considered by some scriptures as an impure land) are of two types: Maitreya's ascent to Tuṣita Heaven, and Maitreya's descent into Jambudvīpa to preach under the dragon-flower trees. Gaining popularity in the Tang dynasty, the tableau of Maitreya's descent includes miracle scenes, such as "Seven Harvests after One Sowing," "Clothing Growing Out of Trees," "Five-Hundred-Year-Old Women Getting Married," and so on. Regardless of the kind of pure land being depicted, most of the tableaux largely follow the compositional model of Amitābha's Pure Land, with the exception of certain distinctive features associated with a particular buddha realm.

### Pictorial programs of pure land tableaux

During the seventh and eighth centuries, tableaux of pure lands were integrated into larger pictorial programs. The documented set of pure land tableaux in the five-story pagoda at the Kōfukuji in Japan is a typical example current in the eighth century (Figure 1). A temporal scheme, mapped out by way of spatial opposition, underlies the iconographic program. The Bhaiṣajyaguru tableau suggests the present, the Amitābha tableau the future (afterlife); the Śākyamuni land signals the present, the Maitreya land the future (afterlife). Thus, the entire program maps out a symbolic cosmos for the spirit of the deceased to cross the boundary between this and the other world. The topographic continuum may also underlie the spatial op-

position between different pure land tableaux. Placing the *Lotus Sūtra* tableau opposite the Western Pure Land scene may imply a progressive transition from the wilderness of the earthly terrain to the order of the afterlife domain. It is therefore misleading to identify these pure land tableaux on the basis of the sūtras they appear to "illustrate."

### Pictures of the Buddha's welcoming descent

A significant detail of the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* tableau forms the basis of a new development. The last three of the sixteen visualizations, as exemplified by seventh-century vignettes in cave 431 at Dunhuang, show the descent of the Buddha or his delegates to dying devotees to escort their spirits to the Western Paradise. These vignettes anticipated the pictures of the Buddha's welcoming descent (*raigō*), which became popular in Japan beginning in the twelfth century. The early descent paintings, exemplified by a set of three hanging scrolls in Jūhakkā-in at Mount Kōya, show the frontally seated Amitābha, surrounded by his entourage on a swirl of clouds, descending toward the implied viewer. A compositional variation of this image gained popularity, especially in the Kamakura period. In this variation, Amitābha and his heavenly attendants on streaming clouds sweep down diagonally from the upper left to the lower right toward the dwelling of the dying devotee. Their swift movement is dramatized by sharp-angled trailing clouds blazing through space, often set against precipitous peaks, as shown in a scroll at Chion-in. Amitābha's seated posture also changes to an upright stance to reinforce the



The Phoenix Hall at the Byōdōin, Kyoto, Japan. Built in 1053, it was intended as a three-dimensional representation of the Sukhāvati Pure Land—the Western Paradise—of Amitābha. © Archivo Iconografico, S.A./Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

sense of his instantaneous arrival. Amitābha in such a composition may also be replaced by other buddhas, such as Maitreya.

Related to the descent pictures in the Kamakura period is a new type of design known as “Amitābha Crossing the Mountains.” The composition shows the radiant bust-length Amitābha trinity towering over mountain peaks in the horizon. Premised upon the association of Amitābha Pure Land with the west, the radiant icon evokes the setting sun. Standard textbook accounts correlate the development of the descent pictures to the doctrinal lineage of Pure Land school teaching laid out by Shandao and explicated and propagated in Japan by GENSHIN (942–1017), HŌNEN (1133–1212), and SHINRAN (1173–1262). It is more fitting to see teachings by Genshin and his followers not as the determining source for image-making, but as collaborative testimony to the collective aspiration that finds different channels of expression.

### **Spatial installation of pure lands**

Both sculptures and paintings are often integrated into spatial simulation of pure lands. An early-seventh-century Chinese monk named Zhenhui is said to have built a “pure land” dominated by a square high altar

overlooking a ground of lapis lazuli with crisscrossing paths bounded by golden ropes. An elaborate surviving example of a pure land simulation is the PHOENIX HALL (AT THE BYŌDŌIN) near Kyoto, built in the mid-eleventh century. Its interior houses an Amitābha statue in the center, surrounded on four sides with wooden panels depicting painted scenes of the nine degrees of rebirth. In front of the hall is a pond, a key feature of the topography of the Western Paradise. Moreover, the architectural design of the Phoenix Hall itself evokes a winged bird, another feature associated with the Amitābha land.

As the general trend of Buddhist art gradually turned more toward esoteric charms and invocations, Amitābha Buddha was increasingly assimilated into MAṄḌALA designs; written characters invoking prayer formulae replaced iconic images and visionary tableaux. With the loss of its topographic character, pure land art also lost its distinction.

*See also:* Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; China, Buddhist Art in; Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Japan, Buddhist Art in; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Pure Land Buddhism; Pure Land Schools

**Bibliography**

- Fukuyama, Toshio. *Heian Temples: Byodo-in and Chuson-ji*, tr. Ronald K. Jones. New York: Weatherhill, 1976.
- Mochizuki, Shinkō. *Chūgoku Jōdo kyōrishi* (History of the Chinese Pure Land doctrinal teaching). Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 1942.
- Nakamura Kōji. “Saihō jōdohen no kenkyū” (Studies in transformation tableaux of the Western Pure Land), parts 1–29. *Nihon bijutsu kōgei* no. 491 (August 1979): 84–90, through no. 519 (December 1981): 31–35.
- Nakamura Kōji. “Wagakuni no jōdo hensō to Tonkō” (The transformation tableaux of pure land in Japan and Dunhuang). In *Chūgoku sekkutsu Tonkō Bakkōkutsu* (Chinese grottos: Mogao cave shrines at Dunhuang), Vol. 3. Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1982.
- Okazaki, Jōji. *Pure Land Buddhist Painting*, tr. Elizabeth ten Grotenhuis. Tokyo, New York, and San Francisco: Kodansha International and Shibundo, 1977.
- Tsukamoto, Zenryū. “Jōdohenshi gaisetsu” (A historical survey of the transformation tableaux of pure lands). *Bukkyō geijutsu* (*Ars Buddhica*) 26 (1955): 27–41.
- Tsukamoto, Zenryū. *Jōdoshu shi, bijutsuhen* (History of the Pure Land sect: art history volume), Vol. 7 of *Tsukamoto Zenryū chosaku shū*. Tokyo: Daitō, 1975.
- Wang, Eugene. “Transformation in ‘Heterotopia’: The Longhuta and Its Relief Sculptures.” *Orientalia* 29, no. 6 (1998): 32–40.
- Wang, Eugene. “Watching the Steps: Peripatetic Vision in Medieval China.” In *Visuality before and beyond the Renaissance: Seeing as the Others See*, ed. Robert Nelson. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Wang, Eugene. *Shape of the Visual: Imaginary Topography in Medieval Chinese Buddhist Art*. Seattle: University of Washington Press, 2004.
- Wu Hung. “Reborn in Paradise: A Case Study of Dunhuang Sūtra Painting and Its Religious, Ritual and Artistic Context.” *Orientalia* 23, no. 5 (1992): 52–60.
- Wu Hung, and Ning Qiang. “Paradise Images in Early Chinese Art.” In *The Flowering of a Foreign Faith: New Studies in Chinese Buddhist Art*, ed. Janet Baker. New Delhi: Marg, 1998.

EUGENE Y. WANG

**PURE LAND BUDDHISM**

Pure Land Buddhism signifies a wide array of practices and traditions within MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism directed to the Buddha AMITĀBHA (Amitāyus) and his realm, Sukhāvātī (Land of Bliss), which came to be referred to in Chinese as the *Pure Land* (*jingtu*; Japanese, *jōdo*). Mahāyāna recognized the existence of in-

numerable BUDDHAS and even BODHISATTVAS who presided over their own buddha-fields (*buddhakṣetra*), realms that they had purified or were in the process of purifying. Early on, some of these buddhas and their pure lands were singled out as the objects of particular scriptural and liturgical distinction. For example, the *Askṣobhyavyūha-sūtra* suggests that AKṢOBHYA and his buddha-field Abhirati in the eastern quadrant of the universe achieved a significant cultic status in Mahāyāna’s early period. It was, however, Amitābha and his buddha-field in the west that ultimately came to attract the overwhelming preponderance of attention, particularly in East Asia, and to a modified extent in the VAJRAYĀNA Buddhism of the Tibetan cultural area. It is to this tradition, focused on Amitābha and his paradise Sukhāvātī, that the term *Pure Land Buddhism* conventionally applies.

**Pure Land and Mahāyāna Buddhism**

The Buddha Amitābha and his Land of Bliss were already amply attested to in early Mahāyāna scriptures. The story of Amitābha as found in the Longer SUKHĀVĀTĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA rehearsed elements that were fundamental to the Mahāyāna vision: the bodhisattva vocation with its initial set of vows and subsequent accumulation of merit through austerities, the attainment of supreme enlightenment, and the creation of a land through stored merit for the salvation of all SENTIENT BEINGS. Consequently, the practices affiliated with the Pure Land tradition were reflective of Mahāyāna values and were inextricably embedded within a complex of cultivational and liturgical regimens that prevailed throughout the Mahāyāna tradition.

Mahāyāna contains a soteriological paradox that historically led to wide disparities with regard to Pure Land practice, as well as to contrasting views on the nature and function of that practice. On the one hand, Amitābha’s Pure Land itself was the result of cultivation of the bodhisattva PATH, thus serving as an example that encouraged emulation in all of those seeking the Pure Land. They too were expected to assiduously follow that path, rigorously engaging in the requisite spiritual disciplines and austerities, all the while attending to the welfare of all sentient beings. On the other hand, the Pure Land as a place of refuge and liberation was a creation of Amitābha’s beneficent vows to save all sentient beings and as such became a goal for those seeking liberation not through their own effort but through faith in Amitābha’s salvific power. Strengthening this latter view was the belief that grew

up in some Mahāyāna circles that the dharma had entered into an age of decline in which the diminished capacities of adherents were no longer adequate to meet the rigorous demands of the traditional bodhisattva path. Thus, only through easier practices and through Amitābha's assistance could people hope to attain liberation. While the sectarian Pure Land movement that developed in Japan embraced the latter perspective, an overall examination of Pure Land tradition reveals that both of these seemingly contradictory perspectives have prevailed alongside each other for most of the tradition's history, and therefore both must be taken into account for a balanced approach to Pure Land developments. The requirement for an even-handed historical view in Pure Land also necessitates avoiding the facile distinction between monastic and lay practice that associates members of the monastic community with the rigors of the bodhisattva path and lay adherents with an easier course. Indeed, the very argument for easier practice came from members of the monastic community, while, conversely, we find laics in history emulating liturgical and meditative practices that had monastic origins.

### Mindful recollection of the Buddha

Pure Land practice was initially predicated on the aspiration common throughout Mahāyāna to achieve proximity to a buddha either through a meditative vision or through REBIRTH in his Pure Land. This aspiration derived from a latent sense of regret frequently voiced in Buddhist scriptures with regard to Śākya-muni's departure and subsequent absence from this world, as well as from the abiding hope that liberation could be more easily achieved in the presence and under the tutelage of a buddha. This goal of seeking access to a buddha was thought to be best achieved through a practice known as "mindful recollection of the Buddha" (BUDDHĀNUSMṚTI), a discipline that had roots in early Buddhism and became a common feature in Mahāyāna scriptures. This meditative discipline most simply refers to the practice of calling to mind and concentrating on the qualities of a buddha, but in reality it embraces a wide range of contemplative objects and techniques. In the Pure Land tradition, the practice sometimes entailed concrete visualization of the Buddha Amitābha, his attendant bodhisattvas Avalokiteśvara and Mahāsthāmaprāpta, or the Land of Bliss. Then again, in contrast to these tangible visualizations, the practice at other times required a meditation on the formless and empty nature of the Buddha's ultimate reality, the *dharmakāya*.

Meditative concentration was achieved by such diverse practices as fixing the mind on one or many aspects of the Buddha Amitābha's appearance, concentrating on the name of the Buddha, or vocally intoning that name through chant or speech. Furthermore, the practitioner could engage in the process through a variety of postures including sitting, standing, walking, or lying down.

The practice of *buddhānusmṛti* was accorded a central cultivational role in sūtras that dealt with Amitābha and his Pure Land. An early Mahāyāna scripture, the PRATYUTPANNASAMĀDHI-SŪTRA, called for an uninterrupted meditation on the Buddha Amitāyus for seven days and nights, promising that the Buddha would appear before the adherent at the end of that period. The previously mentioned Longer *Sukhāvāṭīvyūha-sūtra*, in presenting the conditions for rebirth, set forth the exclusive recollection of the Buddha of Measureless Life (Amitāyus), if even for ten moments of thought, as a requirement for all levels of spiritual capacity. Another scripture of non-Indian provenance, the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* (*Contemplation of the Buddha of Limitless Life Sūtra*), had as its main content the explication of thirteen different visualizations on various attributes of the Buddha and his Pure Land.

### Meditative practice in East Asia and Tibet

The Chinese translation of the Sanskrit word *buddhānusmṛti* was *nianfo* (Japanese, *nenbutsu*), a term burdened with ambiguity as to the form of practice it denotes. In many contexts, *nianfo* commonly signifies a mental recollection of a Buddha's attributes. This discipline was also called *nianfo sanmei* (the *samādhi* of *buddhānusmṛti*), an expression that reinforced a contemplative emphasis by alluding to the meditative trance in which the Buddha would appear. In yet other contexts, the term *nianfo* came to refer to invoking the Buddha's name vocally. Despite this seeming contrast, it must be kept in mind that the recitation of the name, whether voiced or silent, chanted or spoken, was originally but one method of several in the mindful recollection of the Buddha. Steering away from this contemplative emphasis, the sectarian traditions of Japanese Pure Land Buddhism, Jōdo shū and Jōdo Shinshū, appealed to a distinction made by the Chinese monk Shandao (613–681), assigning recitation of the name a separate and superior status among the various practices. This recitation conventionally expressed as *Namo Amituo Fo* (Japanese, *Namu Amida Butsu*), a formula that was drawn from the *Guan Wuliangshou*



*jing*, therefore came to eclipse all other practices within the sectarian Pure Land traditions. Western scholarship until recently has focused largely upon these traditions and therefore has tended to overlook the ongoing importance of the meditative tradition in East Asia, as well as in Tibet. Since the centrality of the vocal invocation as a distinct practice within the sectarian traditions is treated in other entries, the discussion below will avoid the bifurcation of the two practices and assume that the invocatory practice constituted one method of several within the practice of mindful recollection.

In China the practice of recollecting the Buddha was present from the outset of Pure Land belief. The scholar-monk HUIYUAN (334–416), whom the Chinese Buddhist tradition came to regard as the initiator of the Pure Land movement and therefore its first patriarch, founded a society of monks and elite gentry in 402 C.E. that adopted the buddha recollection of the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra* as its core practice. More than a century later, ZHIYI (538–597), the founder of the Tiantai school, incorporated the same sūtra's practice into his four-fold system of meditative practice. Zhiyi's system, which had as its goal the contemplative apprehension of ultimate reality, integrated the meditations into liturgical regimens performed in daily ritual cycles. These performances often included preparation of the ritual site, personal purification, offerings of flowers and incense, invitation and invocation of the deities, physical obeisance, confession of sins, and application of merit. In the Constantly Walking Samādhi, the second of the four practices, Zhiyi structured the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*'s practice of mindful recollection around a strenuous ordeal that required the practitioner to continuously circumambulate an image of Amitābha in a dedicated hall throughout a period of ninety days, leaving the premises only to attend to bodily functions.

Zhiyi's liturgical and contemplative regimens continued to exert influence on the development of Pure Land in the Tiantai school in China, as well as its Japanese counterpart, the Tendai school. Zhiyi's ninety-day retreat was promoted by such prominent Tang-dynasty (618–907) figures as Chengyuan (712–742) and Fazhao (d. 822), who also created a musically based ritual for the community on Mount Wutai. During the Song dynasty (960–1279), the Tiantai monk Zunshi (964–1032), emulating the liturgical patterns established by Zhiyi, developed a number of rites and practices dedicated to Amitābha and to the achievement of rebirth in his Pure Land. Zunshi's rituals,

which included a longer and a shorter penitential ceremony, came to hold a place of honor in subsequent ritual practice that has survived into the modern era.

During the aforementioned historical developments within the Tiantai school, the practice of recollection on Amitābha shifted in focus from the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra* to emphasis on the *Guan Wuliangshou jing*. Members of the Tiantai school in the Song dynasty consequently constructed retreats called Sixteen Visualization Halls that were based on the *Guan Wuliangshou jing* and consisted of a central hall at the middle of which stood an image of Amitābha. Around this cultic focal point were arranged a series of cells for retreatants dedicated to extended periods of ritual and contemplative practice.

The Tiantai school was not alone in promoting the practice of recollecting the Buddha as a Pure Land discipline. Members of the Huayan and Chan traditions also contributed to the understanding of the practice. Common to all these traditions, however, was a hierarchical ranking of the various practices signified by the term *nianfo*. Characteristic of this type of ranking was the fourfold distinction set forth by the great Chan–Huayan scholar ZONGMI (780–841), who assigned the recitation of the name to the lowest position, with contemplation of a sculpted or painted image, visualization either of a single attribute or of the whole body of the Buddha, and contemplation of the truly real (that is, apprehension of the *dharmakāya*) following in ascending order. Implicit in this categorization and others like it in other traditions is the notion that what is ultimately apprehended in contemplation is the identity of Buddha and his field with one's own mind. This identity constituted part of a comprehensive idealistic philosophical system embraced by some members of the Tiantai, Huayan, and Chan traditions. These philosophers saw all reality as ultimately reducible to mind, and in some cases applied this idealistic approach to Pure Land. One of the most famous of such articulations of mind-only Pure Land was that produced by the Chan scholar YANSHOU (904–975). Members of the Chan school sometimes adopted this view as the basis of a polemic that argued for the superiority of the goals and practices of Chan over the aspiration to rebirth and its attendant practices found within Pure Land.

In Tibetan Buddhism, although the devotion to Amitābha did not acquire the same degree of prominence as in East Asia since his cult coexisted alongside practices dedicated to other buddhas and their pure

lands, the contemplation of Amitābha and his realm, nevertheless, historically has come to occupy a significant position in tantric practice. During the twelfth to the fourteenth centuries, Sukhāvātī figured prominently in visions of RNYING MA (NYINGMA) masters among whom Dam pa Bde gshegs (1122–1192) developed a tantric *sādhana* for visualizing Amitābha, along with a prayer for rebirth in his land. The BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) tradition accorded special significance to a tantric technique called “transference” (*pho ba*), in which consciousness at the moment of DEATH could be projected to a desired realm of rebirth. Later in history this goal was explicitly linked to the attainment of Sukhāvātī. Yet another type of Pure Land contemplation is found in a “sleep exercise” (*nyal bsgom*), made popular by the SA SKYA (SAKYA) order. In this practice, the adept before sleep visualizes himself as a deity in Sukhāvātī before a seated Amitābha. The visualization, which culminates in a dissolving of Amitābha into the adept, is practiced with the belief that it will lead to eventual rebirth in Sukhāvātī.

### Other practices

The various meditative disciplines described above have occupied a significant but by no means exclusive position in the tradition of Pure Land practice. Sometimes, general Buddhist merit-gaining activities, such as the strict observance of PRECEPTS, the chanting or copying of scriptures, the commissioning of carved images, and other forms of donative activity, have been imbued with Pure Land significance. Also throughout Mahāyāna traditions are found prayers and, in Vajrayāna, the recitation of DHĀRAṆĪ that seek rebirth for oneself and members of one's family. More proper to the original Mahāyāna vision, Pure Land practice has often been integrated into the larger context of the bodhisattva vocation with its concomitant host of activities aimed at the acquisition and transference of merit as well as at the aiding of all sentient beings. In Pure Land accounts, we find devotees taking the bodhisattva precepts and engaging in bodhisattva acts, such as the building of bridges and the digging of wells, the releasing of living creatures destined for slaughter, the conversion of people from taking of life, the eating of meat, the providing of hostels for travelers, and the burial of the dead. On a more extreme note, some Pure Land adherents undertook the physical austerities (*dhūta*) enjoined in the bodhisattva precepts and Mahāyāna scriptures, such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). Practitioners burnt fingers, limbs, and sometimes even

their entire person both as acts of devotion to the *Lotus Sūtra* and as deeds done in the hope of rebirth in Pure Land. Beyond these acts of SELF-IMMOLATION, religious suicide within Pure Land found expression in Kamakura Japan when devotees drowned themselves in expectation of rebirth.

The goal of rebirth in the Pure Land made the period directly preceding and that immediately following death a critical time fraught with both danger and opportunity in the determination of one's future destiny. This resulted in the creation of deathbed and funerary practices that aided the dying and the newly deceased in the attainment of Pure Land. The content of one's last thoughts were thought to be the crucial factor in determining one's next rebirth, and thus deathbed rites were designed to assist the dying in forging a karmic link with the Pure Land by fixing their mind on Amitābha. Depending on the dying person's disposition, deathbed rituals might involve repentance, the chanting of sūtras, or, most importantly, mindful recollection of Amitābha (*nianfo*, *nenbutsu*), deriving largely from the promise of the *Guan Wu-liangshou jing* that ten uninterrupted thoughts on the Buddha would lead to rebirth even for those who had accumulated a lifetime of evil karma. Increasingly, this latter practice was interpreted in terms of vocally reciting the Buddha's name. The dying person was encouraged to intone the Buddha's name, and, if that was no longer possible, it was done for him or her by assistants. He or she would be often placed in front of an image of Amitābha and given a cord to hold that was attached to Amitābha's right hand. This symbolic link portended both the aspirant's hope for rebirth and the grace and power of the Buddha flowing through the connection. Funeral rites in East Asia and in the Tibetan cultural area have often attended to the theme of rebirth in Sukhāvātī through liturgical expression and prayers.

Underpinning deathbed and funeral practices was a promise articulated in Amitābha's nineteenth vow that at the moment of death Amitābha and his attendant bodhisattvas would appear before the devotee. In Japan, this belief inspired the creation of artistic and ritual representations of this crucial event signifying the attainment of rebirth. *Raigōzu*, paintings depicting Amitābha and his retinue descending on a white cloud to meet the dying devotee, became popular during the Heian period. The same period also witnessed the widespread enactment of *mukaekō*, a ceremony in which the Buddha's coming was recreated in song and dance accompanied by verbal chanting of the *nenbutsu*.

The focus upon the events surrounding a devotee's death similarly gave rise to prognosticatory practices aimed at discerning evidence confirming the successful attainment of rebirth. Among the numerous signs accompanying the death of a devotee, deathbed and postmortem accounts report apparitions, DREAMS, the presence of fragrances or auras at the moment of death, the preservation of the devotee's body, or the discovery of relics (*śarīra*) in the ashes of the adherent's cremated body. The narration of these auspicious signs became a central element in collections of Pure Land biographies that proliferated in China and Japan with the development of Pure Land belief.

These compendia offer windows through time on Pure Land adherents from a wide range of religious and social positions. The biographical collections include hagiographies of monks and laity, men and women, elite and poor. Besides their edificatory role, the collections were historically instrumental in creating a sense of Pure Land as a unified tradition, a perception that was reinforced by the Chinese Pure Land biographical collections of the Song period, which constructed a patriarchal lineage for the tradition.

### Pure Land societies

Although the meditative practices enumerated above could be understood as suited for solitary cultivation, it is equally important to emphasize the communal settings in which Pure Land came to flourish. Chinese Buddhists traditionally traced the origins of Pure Land in China back to the aforementioned Huiyuan, who in 402 C.E. on Mount Lu organized a society of 123 members drawn from the monastic community and the gentry elite. The members of this society took a solemn vow before an image of Amitābha that whoever achieved the Pure Land first would aid those remaining behind in attaining rebirth. This association, which was later named the White Lotus Society (*Bailian she*), became a paradigm in the formation of societies (*jieshe*) that proliferated particularly during the Song dynasty. Many of these later societies differed from Huiyuan's confraternity in a number of significant ways. Their membership was drawn not from the elite alone but from a wider societal spectrum, including women and people of the lower classes. The size of these societies was sometimes in the thousands, far exceeding the modest size of Huiyuan's society. Furthermore, these associations often engaged in practices that did not always explicitly or exclusively address Amitābha and the Pure Land or that differed from the meditative emphasis in Huiyuan's group. Lastly, some

of these societies were founded and led by lay people rather than monks. This is notably the case of the White Lotus movement founded by Mao Ziyuan (d.u.) in the twelfth century.

This period in which Pure Land associations multiplied in China also witnessed a proliferation of similar associations in Korea and Japan. The Korean monk CHINUL (1158–1210), who is best known for the Koryō period (918–1392) revival of the Sōn (Chan) tradition, is credited with initiating a movement of religious societies (*kyōlsa*; Chinese, *jieshe*) that drew inspiration from the Chinese movement of the same era. In Heian Japan, the scholar Yoshishige Yasutane (d. 1002), who is famous for compiling the first Japanese collection of Pure Land biographies, and the Tendai monk Genshin (942–1017), renowned for his seminal work on Pure Land, the *Ōjōyōshū* (*Essentials of Rebirth*), were active in establishing and participating in societies such as the *Kangakue* (Society for the Advancement of Learning) and the *Nijūgozammaie* (Twenty-five [Member] Samādhi Assembly) that had a Pure Land orientation. Besides regular gatherings in which the name of Amitābha was recited, the *Nijūgozammaie* also provided support for sick and dying members, adopting many of the deathbed practices discussed above. In contrast to these associations with elite membership, groups with members from all social strata were enlisted by the itinerant holy men (*hijiri*) who spread Pure Land practice among the masses. Perhaps the most famous of these was Kūya (903–972), who proclaimed the vocal recitation of the Buddha's name from street corners.

*See also:* **Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha); Decline of the Dharma; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Pure Lands; Pure Land Schools**

### Bibliography

- Dobbins, James C. "Genshin's Deathbed Nenbutsu Ritual in Pure Land Buddhism." In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Foard, James; Solomon, Michael; and Payne, Richard M., eds. *The Pure Land Tradition: History and Development*. Berkeley: Center for South and Southeast Asian Studies, University of California at Berkeley, 1996.
- Getz, Daniel A. "T'ien-t'ai Pure Land Societies and the Creation of the Pure Land Patriarchate." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

- Gómez, Luis O., trans. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light: Sanskrit and Chinese Versions of the Sukhāvātyūha Sūtras*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1996.
- Stevenson, Daniel. "The Four Kinds of Samādhi in Early T'ien-t'ai Buddhism." In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Stevenson, Daniel. "Deathbed Testimonials of the Pure Land Faithful." In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald Lopez. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Stevenson, Daniel. "Pure Land Buddhist Worship and Meditation in China." In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald Lopez. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London: Routledge, 1989.
- Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China*, 2 vols. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

DANIEL A. GETZ

## PURE LANDS

The English term *Pure Land* is used as a handy equivalent for the East Asian notion of a purified buddha-field, a large extent of space made pure and beautiful by the presence of a BUDDHA or BODHISATTVA. In its specific usage the phrase "the Pure Land" is one such purified world, the buddha-field of the Buddha AMITĀBHA. The English term has no Indian antecedent and is a direct translation of Chinese *jingtu* (pure field, pure land), or its Japanese equivalent *jōdo*.

### Buddha-fields, pure and impure

Buddhist cosmology depicts a universe formed of multiple worlds (*lokadhātu*) of varying sizes and characteristics. Some of these worlds have never had a buddha, but others are the special fields of practice (*kṣetra*) of individual bodhisattvas, who, upon attaining awakening, will make this territory the field within which they exert their saving power and share their immeasurable merit in their role as perfect buddhas.

Called *buddha-fields* (*buddhakṣetra*), these worlds are made beautiful and perfect by the meritorious power of the buddhas that inhabit them and by the power of that buddha's solemn bodhisattva vows. However, buddha-fields may have varying spiritual climates or degrees of perfection, and they are accordingly classified as *pure* or *mixed*. Worlds where the saving action of a buddha has not yet had its effect, or

those that lack a buddha and are therefore technically not yet buddha-fields, are sometimes known as *impure* worlds. The world we inhabit, known as the Sa-hā World, is considered one such imperfect world, despite the effects of Śākyamuni's awakening and ministry. Other worlds have been completely "purified" by various buddhas and bodhisattvas, and are held as models of what a fully purified world, a pure land, would be.

As long as a bodhisattva is still seeking full awakening, his "field" is not a "pure land"; thus, *pure* or *purified* denote the result of a long process by which the bodhisattva transforms a common world into a paradise or an ideal and marvel-filled world. This realm is "pure" in the sense that evil, disease, and suffering have been eliminated by the bodhisattva's vows and actions; but it is also said that the field is "adorned" because it is made rich and beautiful with extraordinary marvels and treasures (jewel trees, charming ponds, spiritually uplifting music, etc.). Such a perfect world is a paradise-like place in which believers hope to be reborn after they die at the end of their present life of suffering.

Those pure lands are places of maximum bliss (Chinese, *jile*; Japanese, *gokuraku*), paradisiacal lands, but they must be distinguished from other Indian notions of heavenly and earthly paradises. The imagery used to describe pure lands is indeed similar to the language used to describe the heavenly blissful realms of the gods (*devaloka*), the royal cities of universal monarchs, and the carefree life in the mythical land of Uttarakuru. However, unlike a pure land, these other paradisiacal realms are not completely free from the pains of REBIRTH, nor are they places favorable to the attainment of the final rest of NIRVĀṆA.

### Buddhist paradises

The conception of a pure land is also different from Western notions of paradise: A pure land is not technically a place of pristine innocence before "the Fall," nor is it the place or time for the souls or resurrected bodies of the blessed to dwell with a creator after death or after the restoration of the original paradise at the end of time. Pure lands are worlds parallel to ours, existing at the same time as our world, but perfected for the express purpose of allowing living beings the opportunity to pursue liberation in a favorable environment. They are places where one can escape from (in fact one will dwell outside of) the six REALMS OF EXISTENCE described in Buddhist COSMOLOGY. Perhaps one point of similarity to some Western conceptions of

heavenly glory is the idea that pure lands are communities of saints, and that their inhabitants may influence the course of life in our world—primarily through the saving power of the buddha presiding over the pure land, but also because, as bodhisattvas, the inhabitants of a pure land may descend upon our lowly world or travel outside the pure land to worship buddhas and save SENTIENT BEINGS in many faraway universes.

Although the purification of a world system is the work of only one bodhisattva, and there can be only one buddha presiding over a pure land, the number of pure lands in the universe is as great as many times the grains of sand in the Ganges River. Scriptural texts, however, usually mention only ten pure lands by name, one for each of the main and intermediate points of the compass, and at the zenith and the nadir. But a more common number of pure lands is four, one for each of the main directions of the compass.

Only a few of these lands seem to have a clear mythology associated with a system of worship and belief. Among the purified fields associated with specific myths and texts or connected to special practices one must mention above all the western Pure Land of Buddha Amitābha, called Sukhāvātī (Blissful). But also of historical significance are the eastern Pure Land of AKṢOBHYA, Abhiratī (Enchantment), and the eastern land of Bhaiṣajyaguru, Vaiḍūryanirbhāsa (Shining like Beryl). Still, the most famous is unquestionably Amitābha's Sukhāvātī; it is the most common referent of the phrase “the Pure Land” (Chinese, *jingtu*; Japanese, *jōdo*, or for that matter, *jile* and *gokuraku*). Thus, the hope of being reborn in Amitābha's Pure Land is often synonymous with “Pure Land belief.”

The Buddha Amitābha (Japanese, Amida) obtained this pure land as the result of the solemn vows (in East Asia traditionally counted as forty-eight) he made when, as the bodhisattva Dharmākara, he promised to seek enlightenment in order to create a paradise where those who heard his name and believed in him could be reborn. The hope of rebirth in Sukhāvātī and faith in Amitābha's saving grace, like beliefs and practices associated with other pure lands, is firmly grounded in generalized MAHĀYĀNA beliefs such as the bodhisattva vows, the saving powers of buddhas and bodhisattvas, the theme of bodhisattvas traveling to visit distant buddha-fields where they worship myriad buddhas, and the power of the transfer of merit.

Sukhāvātī is depicted as a paradise, that is, a garden-like enclosure, the inhabitants of which know nothing but beauty and bliss. In marvelous gardens and groves,

birds and plants preach the dharma, and the presence of the Buddha Amitābha is accessible to living beings in varying degrees and guarantees the effortless attainment of nirvāṇa. Living beings from impure lands who hear the name of the Buddha Amitābha and have faith in his vows will be reborn in his pure land immediately after they die in their own world.

In some cases the mythology allows for pure lands that are not technically purified worlds—thus, MAITREYA, the buddha of the future, transforms the place he inhabits into a pure land by virtue of his presence. Yet his place of dwelling forms part of our world, for it is the heaven of the deities known as Tuṣita, located among the heavenly planes that rise above Mount Meru; once reborn in this world Maitreya will inhabit a royal city, Ketumatī, that also shares some features with conceptions of the pure lands. East Asian Buddhists have identified other locations in our world as technically pure lands; this is the case, for instance, of the Vulture Peak near Rājagṛha, where it is said that Śākyamuni preached the Mahāyāna sūtras, or of Avalokiteśvara's mythic island dwelling called Potalaka. Additionally, the literature mentions many more abstract notions of purified worlds, such as Vairocana's Lotus Pure Land.

### Imagining pure worlds

Of course, even pure lands presumed to be outside our world are given a concrete, if mythical, location (Sukhāvātī is trillions of worlds away), and they have very concrete topographic and material characteristics (Sukhāvātī is completely flat, Abhirati has mountains). Yet, this does not preclude metaphoric or atopic understandings of the reality of the pure land. Many Buddhists have rejected or qualified the notion of a distant pure land, or at the very least have emphasized the importance of “purifying” or transforming our own world. Some equate the purification of one's own mind with the purification of society at large, so that this, our world of suffering and conflict, can or should become the pure land. These views were particularly important in the development of traditions fusing meditation with FAITH in the pure land, but the idea of the pure land as a state in this life rather than, or in addition to, being a distant place recurs throughout the history of Mahāyāna Buddhism. Buddhists have argued at times that our world can be a pure land, either by virtue of the power of a pure mind (a key concept in the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*), or because the practice of the dharma can transform a human society into a holy land (a common theme in the mythology of Buddhism



Amitābha in the Western Paradise, from a painting at Dunhuang. (Chinese, ca. 618–907.) © Pierre Colombel/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

generally). The first of these ideas is not only an analogic understanding of the concept, but also a psychological or epistemological understanding of the ideals of purity, beauty, and perfection. The second conception has social implications and may overlap with millenarian hopes that have appeared throughout the history of Buddhism.

The idea of a “pure land of the mind” pervades the CHAN SCHOOL tradition even among those who do not adopt pure land practices. In his *Zazen wasan* (*Hymn in Praise of Zazen*) the Japanese Zen Master HAKUIN EKAKU (1686–1768) states that “the pure land is near at hand” for one who practices dhyāna, and that for one who experiences no-mind, “this very world is the Pure Lotus Land.” In a more systematic way the idea appears in Tiantai theological writings, and even among the Chinese founders of pure land theology and practice. Thus, Shandao (613–681) explains that even while still in this world one is reborn in the pure land the moment one recites the *nianfo* (Japanese, *nenbutsu*). Such conceptions may resurface under favorable social conditions, as may have been the case among the reformers of Buddhism during the

Chinese Republican period, or some of the Meiji and Taishō Japanese Pure Land thinkers, and perhaps in the *myōkōnin* movement of the same period of rapid modernization and rising nationalistic fervor.

The East Asian concept of the pure land does not have an exact equivalent in the Buddhist literatures of Tibet and Southeast Asia. However, one may speak of a pan-Asian Buddhist belief in a purified and beautified paradise that offers ease of life, freedom from suffering, and the opportunity for a long life dedicated to spiritual pursuits in the presence of a buddha. In Tibet this belief is generally firmly set in the scholastic edifice of Mahāyāna and tantric ritual practice, and does not take the independent life that it took in East Asia. The pure land figures prominently in appeals to Amitāyus (Amitābha’s alter ego) for long life, and for a sojourn in the pure land as a respite from the sorrows of this world.

Graphic representations of different pure lands played an important role in East Asian iconography and religious architecture, such as on the murals at DUNHUANG. Similar motifs appear as MAṆḌALAS (Japanese, *mandara*) or schematic representations of

the pure land, be it Amitābha's land, as in the *Taima Mandara* (based on the *Guan Wuliangshou jing*, *Contemplation of the Buddha of Limitless Life Sūtra*), or one of the representations of mythic geographies, as in the Kumano Mandara. The practice of using images of Amitābha for making believers at the moment of their death mindful of their hope of being reborn in his pure land also resulted in a variety of representations. The most famous among these are depictions of Amitābha's descent with his retinue of bodhisattvas "coming to meet" (*raigō*) and welcome believers who are on their deathbeds.

The idea of a pure land plays a symbolic and iconic role that goes well beyond the technical theological sense of the concept. The concept has a more general manifestation: a paradisiacal or utopic place in which bliss and enlightenment are possible through the beneficent agency of a supremely enlightened and virtuous being, namely a buddha. In this broader sense, earthly locations and religious monuments may be seen as equivalents or embodiments of pure lands. For instance, the temple of Byōdōin in Uji, Japan, represents a pavilion in Amitābha's Pure Land. The POTALA in Lhasa represents the pure abode of Sphyanras gzigs (Chenresik; Avalokiteśvara); the Potala is itself reproduced in the summer palace of the Manchu emperors in Jehol. A combination of several of these themes is seen in the temple complex of Jōruriji, near Nara, Japan, a Shingon temple named after Bhaiṣajyaguru's Pure Land. In this complex, two buildings arranged around a pond represent the pure lands of Amida (Amitābha—to the west) and Yakushi (Bhaiṣajyaguru—to the east); believers position themselves on the eastern bank of the pond, which represents our impure world, and look across to the Amida temple (iconically representing the pure land as depicted in the *Guan Wuliangshou jing*). Additionally, specific topographic configurations may be understood as pure lands. This is the case in Japan where, for instance, the Jōdosan peak in Tateyama and the three mountains of the Kumano shrine are regarded as literal and ritual pure lands.

The great variety of conceptions and representations of the concept need not be interpreted as an overflowing of the narrow boundaries of the more technical conception of a purified buddha-field. In earthly or iconic representations the idea of a pure land retains its mythic and metaphoric sense of a place made pure and beautiful by the saving presence of extraordinary holiness, especially the marvelous effects of the sacred presence—in person, icon, or memory—of a buddha or a bodhisattva. One may nevertheless

summarize the above themes within five categories of pure land: (1) extraterrestrial pure lands of the future, objects of faith and goals of hope for rebirth—today the most common conception of the pure land; (2) cosmographic pure lands, that is, adorned extraterrestrial fields of the many buddhas and bodhisattvas of the universe; (3) topographic pure lands, which form part of concrete locations within mythic geographies; (4) millenarian, utopic, or ideal pure lands requiring a radical transformation of the present world in which we live; and (5) metaphoric or psychological pure lands, which are summarized by the phrase "a pure mind is the pure land."

*See also:* **Dhyāna (Trance State); Heavens; Hells; Pure Land Art; Pure Land Buddhism; Pure Land Schools**

### Bibliography

- Fujita, Kōtatsu. "Pure and Impure Lands." In *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, ed. Mircea Eliade, Vol. 12. New York: Macmillan, 1987.
- Gómez, Luis O., trans. and ed. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light: Sanskrit and Chinese Versions of the Sukhāvativyūha Sūtras* (1996), 3rd printing, corrected edition. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Kloetzli, Randy. *Buddhist Cosmology, from Single World System to Pure Land: Science and Theology in the Images of Motion and Light*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983.
- Lamotte, Étienne, trans. and ed. *L'enseignement de Vimalakīrti*. Louvain, Belgium: Institut Orientaliste, 1962. English translation: *The Teaching of Vimalakīrti*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. London: Pāli Text Society, 1976.
- MacCulloch, J. A. "Blest, Abode of the (Japanese)." *Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics*, 2 (1927): 700b–702a.
- Rowell, Teresina. "The Background and Early Use of the *Buddhakṣetra* Concept." *Eastern Buddhist* 6 (1933): 199–246, 379–431; and 7 (1936): 131–145.
- Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origins*, tr. Gaynor Sekimori. Tokyo: Kosei, 1997.

LUIS O. GÓMEZ

---

## PURE LAND SCHOOLS

The MAHĀYĀNA sūtras developed considerable lore based on the idea of different buddhas and bodhisattvas dwelling in buddha-fields (*buddhakṣetra*). It is common for practitioners to meditate on, make offerings to, chant sūtras about, and recite the name or MANTRA of a particular BUDDHA or BODHISATTVA. These

Mahāyāna expressions developed out of the *darśana* complex, which is well documented in the earliest materials, and were seen as part of the overall institutional fabric of Indian Mahāyāna. (Buddha *darśana* refers to “seeing” the buddha and entering his nirvanic power, which leads to spirital progress.) The core Mahāyāna idea is to cultivate a *darśanic* relationship with the buddha and thus gain awakening, or one could aim at future birth in the buddha-field. The genre of Mahāyāna literature that developed these ideas was instrumental in the formation of the tantras. AMITĀBHA Buddha and his accompanying bodhisattvas, Avalokiteśvara and Mahāsthāmaprāpta, are the focus of the Pure Land tradition in East Asia.

### Pure Land teachings in China

In China, the institutionalization of the Pure Land teachings and the first line of transmission began with the founding of the White Lotus Society by HUIYUAN (334–416) on Mount Lu. This society’s practice was based on the PRATYUTPANNASAMĀDHI-SŪTRA. The lead devotee was Liu Yimin, one of the eighteen sages of Mount Lu, who wrote the society’s manifesto and a collection of chants. The area became a center of Pure Land teachings.

The *Larger SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA*, a major text in the tradition, had been translated twice by the mid-third century. In 402 the *Amitābha Sūtra* (also called the *Amida Sūtra* or *Smaller Sukhāvātīvyūha-sūtra*) and later the *Daśabhūmikavibhāṣā* (*Treatise on the Ten Stages*), attributed to NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century), were translated by KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413). The *Guan Wuliangshou jing* (*Contemplation of the Buddha of Limitless Life Sūtra*) is claimed by tradition to have been translated between 424 and 453, though it is probably a Chinese or Central Asian composition. Once these three major sūtras and one main commentary became available, the Pure Land teachings moved away from being solely based on the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*.

Tanluan (476–542) became interested in Pure Land teaching through the influence of Bodhiruci (sixth century), who translated the *Jingtu lun* (*Discourse on the Pure Land*) attributed to VASUBANDHU (fourth century) in 531. Tanluan wrote an extensive commentary to this work, as well as *Zan Amitofo ji* (*Verses in Praise of Amida Buddha*) and *Lüe lun anlejingtu yi* (*An Abridged Discourse on the Pure Land of Peace and Bliss*). Tanluan accepted the *Daśabhūmikavibhāṣā*’s distinction of the difficult PATH (the path of sages) and the easy path (the Pure Land path). He believed that

Amitābha’s Pure Land was the ultimate reality; that reciting Amitābha’s name (Chinese, *nianfo*; Sanskrit, *buddhānusmṛti*) eliminates negative karma; and that the practice of *nianfo* requires a mind of true “confidence.” He also described how an accumulation of positive karma aids rebirth and is distributed when returning to aid sentient beings, and he accepted the divisions of the dharmakāya into a dharma-nature aspect and an expedience aspect. Tanluan coined the term *other power*, meaning not relying on one’s false notion of a self and its abilities but on the nirvanic power of Amitābha, a refinement of the Mahāyāna concept of *adhiṣṭhāna* (base, power, approach, establish). According to Japanese sources, this constitutes a second transmission lineage.

One of the greatest successors in Tanluan’s line is Daochuo (562–645), who, inspired by Tanluan’s writings, wrote *Anle ji* (*A Collection of [Passages Concerning Birth in the Land of] Peace and Bliss*), and promoted the idea of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA and the idea that the *nianfo* samādhi was the highest samādhi. Shandao (613–681) was the most influential master in this lineage. At first he studied on Mount Lu and achieved some success practicing according to the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*. He later became Daochuo’s disciple and was able to attain the *nianfo* samādhi. Shandao reaffirmed Tanluan’s and Daochuo’s positions while developing further the overall doctrine. Although he discussed many Pure Land practices, he placed great emphasis on *nianfo*; he taught that *nianfo* was sufficient for rebirth in the Pure Land and that Amitābha was a *saṃbhogakāya* buddha. Shandao delineated three types of confidence: sincere confidence, deep confidence, and confidence that seeks rebirth. Shandao also taught visualization methods and repentance, and developed the famous parable of the two rivers (fire-anger and water-greed) and the white path (the Pure Land path leading from SAṂSĀRA to NIRVĀṆA) over the rivers. On the near side Śākyamuni stands, indicating that we should cross. On the far side, Amitābha stands, indicating that we should come.

A third line of Pure Land began with Cimin (680–748), who had traveled in India and began spreading Pure Land teachings after his return. Cimin composed *Jingtu cibeiji* (*The Pure Land Compassion Collection*; partially extant), *Xifang zan* (*Western Quarter Chant*), and *Pratyutpannasamādhi Chant*. His teachings emphasized meditation, study, recitation, and precepts.

The line that developed from the *Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra* also became part of the Tiantai School as Zhiyi



(538–597) incorporated it into his system of practice. Zhiyi was a devotee of Amitābha (and other buddhas). In addition, he worked on the problem of classifying the different types of Pure Lands and developed the *constant walking samādhi*, which is focused on Amitābha, a core practice for Tiantai.

From the Tang dynasty on, Tiantai forms of Pure Land practice were influenced by developments both within the school and from outside. Tiantai followers helped make Pure Land part of daily life during the Song dynasty (960–1279) and thereafter by forming White Lotus societies and engaging in other activities to spread the tradition.

The Pure Land teachings were also influential in the CHAN SCHOOL. The Tiantai form influenced the fourth Chan patriarch Daoxin (580–651). Xuanshi, a disciple of the fifth patriarch, Hongren (688–761), founded the Southern Mountain Chan of the Nian Fo Gate school. Baizhang (749–814) incorporated Pure Land practices into his Chan rules, which are the behavioral code for Chan monasteries. YANSHOU (904–975) was influenced by Cimin's line. Of particular note is Yinyan Longqi (1592–1673), who became the founder of the Ōbaku Zen school in Japan. The idea of Pure Land practice even becomes the KŌAN, "Who recites the *nian fo*."

There were many significant figures in Chinese Buddhist history who, although masters of different teachings such as Huayan and Sanlun, were influential in the overall development of Pure Land thought and practice. In fact, Pure Land teachings became so ubiquitous in Chinese Buddhism that to speak of them as a *school* is a misnomer.

### Pure Land teachings in Japan

Gyōgi (668–749), while cultivating donations for the building of Tōdaiji in Nara, spread the Pure Land teachings to the populace by publicly reciting the *nenbutsu* (Chinese, *nianfo*) and teaching people about the Pure Land in their homes. Chikō (709–780), a resident of Nara's Gangōji, wrote a now lost commentary to Vasubandhu's *Discourse* and had a MAṄḌALA painted after his vision of the Pure Land. These are the major Pure Land activities during the early period.

SAICHŌ (767–822), the founder of Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) in Japan, introduced the teachings on Amitābha associated with this line of transmission. ENNIN (794–864), Saicho's main disciple in addition to those mentioned above, learned the "*nianfo* in five movements" while in China. Upon his return to Japan,

he blended the "constant walking samadhi" with the "five movements" and created the nonstop (*fudan nenbutsu*). He also seems to have known some esoteric aspects of Amitābha lore. With these beginnings Tendai became the fountainhead of Pure Land teachings in Japan for many centuries with masters like Ryōgen (912–985), Ryōnin (1072–1134), and many more. Of special distinction is the great master and prolific writer GENSHIN (942–1017), who composed some twenty works on Pure Land teachings, including the celebrated *Ōjōyōshū* (*Essentials for Birth*).

The Heian period witnessed Amitābha sages who helped spread the teachings to the general population. Several of these are historically significant. Kōya (903–972), a Tendai monk, performed many good works and taught the *nenbutsu* in the Nagoya, Kyoto, and northern Japan. Senkan (918–983), Kōya's disciple, wrote *Gokurakukoku Mida wasan* (*Sukhāvātī Realm Amida Chant*) and many other works. Kōya strictly observed the PRECEPTS and established eight rules and ten vows for his disciples. In addition, masters associated with many other schools of Japanese Buddhism also practiced and promoted Pure Land teachings.

The Kamakura period saw an emphasis on finding the one primary practice that was sufficient for awakening, an effort that brought theretofore exclusive practices to the fore and led to a simplification of considerable lore throughout Japanese Buddhism. The first major figure to address this effort as it related to Pure Land teachings was HŌNEN (1133–1212), a learned Tendai priest. He wrote a commentary to Genshin's work, which became the standard of interpretation. In 1198 Hōnen wrote *Senchaku hongan nenbutsu shū* (*Passages on the Selection of the Nenbutsu in the Original Vow*), which explained the essentials of the *nenbutsu* way, including exclusive recitation, theory of the Pure Land lineage, emphasis on the three sūtras, and welcoming by Amitābha at the time of death. Hōnen's writings generally accepted the interpretation of the Shandao line. He also transmitted the bodhisattva precepts, and his teachings formed the basis of the Jōdo school.

Among Hōnen's important disciples, SHINRAN (1173–1262) is of particular note. Like Hōnen, Shinran was first trained as a Tendai scholar-practitioner. He lived as an openly married priest and propagated Pure Land teachings near eastern Tokyo. He wrote a number of works including *Kyōgyōshinshō* (*Teaching, Practice, Faith, and Attainment*). A new sect (Jōdo Shinshū) was based on his interpretations of the Pure Land

teachings. Shinran considered Amitābha to be the *Adi* Buddha, and he emphasizes “other power,” exclusive *nenbutsu*, crosswise transcendence (instant and gradual attainment of awakening with Pure Land birth), the disadvantages of the path of sages, and the advantages of the Pure Land path. He also emphasized one vehicle (the *nenbutsu*), the dharma ending age, and that “confidence” or “faith” is endowed by the Tathāgata, is Buddha-nature, and is the key to liberation.

The last great Pure Land master of the Kamakura period was IPPEN CHISHIN (1239–1289), who studied under a second-generation disciple of Hōnen. Ippen had an awakening while in retreat at Kumanojin-ji and afterward spread the “dancing *nenbutsu*” teaching, which expresses the joy of the liberating power of Amitābha. The Ji school is based on his teachings.

Although Chinese and Japanese practices and interpretations have developed along different lines,

taken as a whole they help form a rich fabric for the tapestry of the greater Pure Land tradition.

*See also:* **Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha); Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Pure Land Buddhism**

#### ***Bibliography***

- Foard, James; Solomon, Michael; and Payne, Richard K.; eds. *The Pure Land Tradition: History and Development*. Berkeley: Regents of the University of California, 1996.
- Haar, B. J. ter. *The White Lotus Teachings in Chinese Religious History*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Inagaki, Hisao. *The Three Pure Land Sūtras*. Kyoto: Nagata Bunshodo, 1994.
- Ono, Gemmyo. “On the Pure Land Doctrine of Tz’u-Min.” *Eastern Buddhist* 5, nos. 2–3 (1930): 200–210.

A. W. BARBER

*This page intentionally left blank*

# R



## RĀHULA

Rāhula was the son of Siddhārtha Gautama, the Buddha-to-be. On hearing the news of Rāhula's birth, according to paracanonical literature, Siddhārtha Gautama immediately decided to renounce the world and go forth into homelessness, considering the birth of a son an obstruction in his search for truth. The name *Rāhula* literally means "little Rāhu"; Rāhu is the demon formerly believed to obstruct the sun and the moon and thus cause eclipses. When the Buddha visited his hometown for the first time after his realization of buddhahood, his former wife sent Rāhula to his father to ask him for his inheritance. Not receiving any response, Rāhula followed the Buddha, repeating his request, until eventually the Buddha had his son ordained by his chief disciple ŚĀRIPUTRA.

As a monk, Rāhula proved extremely conscientious, well-behaved, and eager to put into practice what he was taught. The Pāli canon contains a number of important discourses addressed to Rāhula, and it was while listening to the Buddha's *Cūla-Rāhulavādasutta* (*Shorter Discourse of Advice to Rāhula*) on not-self (anātman) and disenchantment (*nirvidā*) that Rāhula realized arhatship. The account of his winning ultimate freedom that is given in the Chinese version of the *Ekottarāgama* (*Discourses Increasing by One*) differs: Having received from the Buddha the decisive advice, Rāhula practiced MINDFULNESS of breathing, experienced DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE), and obtained the three kinds of ABHIJÑĀ (HIGHER KNOWLEDGES), culminating in penetrating insight. Thus his mind was freed from all malign influences.

Tradition has it that Rāhula died before his father. In his lifetime, he was esteemed foremost among the Buddha's disciples in his eagerness to train.

*See also:* Disciples of the Buddha

### **Bibliography**

Huyèn-Vi, Thich; Bhikkhu Pāsādika; and Boin-Webb, Sara. "Ekottarāgama (XV): Translated from the Chinese Version (Taishō, Vol. 2, 581b29 ff.)." *Buddhist Studies Review* 10, 2 (1993): 213–222.

Malalasekera, G. P. "Rāhula Thera." In *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names*, Vol. 2. London: Indian Text Series, 1937–1938.

BHIKKHU PĀSĀDIKA

## REALMS OF EXISTENCE

The Sanskrit term *gati* (literally "manner of going") refers to the different "destinies" or realms of existence that await beings at death and into which they will be reborn as a result of the particular KARMA (ACTION) that has dominated their lives. The older Buddhist texts (followed by the exegetical texts and manuals of such schools as the THERAVĀDA and Sarvāstivāda) preserve a list of five basic realms: HELLS, hungry ghosts, animals, human beings, and gods. But it was always recognized that these five—and especially the last—represented broad categories. Thus we find different hells listed and different types of hungry ghosts distinguished, as well as a whole hierarchy of gods (deva).

Some Buddhist schools and some MAHĀYĀNA sūtras speak of six basic realms of existence, adding the asuras (jealous gods) to the list. Other schools, although in effect also recognizing rebirth as an asura as a significant and distinctive form of existence, refused to allow an actual list of six *gatis* on the grounds that such a list was not given in the earliest sūtras.

There is an old tradition (continued now especially in Tibetan Buddhism) of representing the six realms graphically as forming six segments of a wheel of existence: at the top, the heavenly realms of the gods, and moving clockwise, the jealous gods (separated by the wishing tree), animals, hells, hungry ghosts, and humans. The outer rim of the wheel is formed of the twelve links of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION). At the hub, driving the whole process, are a cock (greed), a snake (hatred), and a pig (ignorance).

*See also:* Cosmology; Divinities; Ghosts and Spirits; Heavens

### Bibliography

Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B., trans. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Buddhist Cosmology*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1982.

Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origin*. Tokyo: Kosei, 1997.

RUPERT GETHIN

## REBIRTH

Rebirth (Sanskrit, *punarāvṛtti*, *punarutpatti*, *punarjanman*, or *punarjīvātu*), also called transmigration and reincarnation, is the belief common to all Buddhist traditions that birth and death occur in successive cycles driven by ignorance (*avidyā*), DESIRE (*trṣṇā*), and hatred (*dveṣa*). The cycle of rebirth, termed SAṂSĀRA, is beginningless and ongoing, and it is determined by the moral quality of a person's thoughts and KARMA (ACTION). The effects of good moral actions lead to wholesome rebirths, and the effects of bad moral actions lead to unwholesome rebirths.

### Origins of the doctrine

Scholars have long debated the origins of the theory of rebirth among the religions of India. Some trace the belief to the ritual models inscribed in the ancient literature of the Vedas and Brāhmaṇas, which rested firmly on belief in the efficacy of ritual sacrifice as a means to secure a place in heaven. To guarantee positive future results these sacrificial acts were required to be perpetually reenacted. The conceptual parallels in this ancient model of a continuous cycle of ritual action have led some scholars to suggest that the mechanics of Vedic ritual should be seen as the precursor

to later Indian theories of karma, saṁsāra, and rebirth. Other more controversial suggestions have been that rebirth doctrine originated among the ancient non-Aryan tribal groups of India. Still others theorize that the doctrine was formulated by followers of the *saṁnyāsin* (renouncer) traditions affiliated with the broad-based *śramaṇa* (mendicant) movement that began to emerge in India around the sixth century B.C.E., a movement that included the early Buddhists and Jains.

### Rebirth and the problem of no-self

The Buddhist doctrine of rebirth differs fundamentally from the idea generally upheld in Hinduism and Jainism, both of which accept the existence of an eternal and substantial self or soul (*ātman* in Hinduism, *jīva* in Jainism) that transmigrates from life to life. Buddhism, by contrast, rejects the notion of an absolute self. Fundamental to its understanding of rebirth is the doctrine of no-self (*anātman*)—the idea that in saṁsāra, which is forever in flux, impermanent, and constantly changing, there can be no permanent, unchanging, independent self or soul.

But if there is no absolute self, how does Buddhism resolve the problem of transmigration and of the continuity of karma between one life and the next? The early Buddhist schools in India offered a variety of responses to this conundrum. One school, the Vātsīputrīya (also known as the PUDGALAVĀDA), went so far as to propose the concept of an inexpressible personal entity (*pudgala*) that traveled from life to life, a concept that seemed to contradict the fundamental tenet of *anātman*. Other schools, such as the Sarvāstivāda, posited the existence of an ethereal entity (called a *gandharva*) composed of subtle forms of the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES) that passed through an INTERMEDIATE STATE (*antarābhava*) between death and the next birth. In the early period of Buddhism in India, concepts like *pudgala* and *antarābhava* were subjects of much controversy.

Not all of the schools accepted such ideas. The THERAVĀDA, for example, denied the existence of an intermediate state and argued instead for the existence of an inactive mode of deep consciousness (*bhavaṅga*) that forms a causal link (Sanskrit, *pratisandhi*; Pāli, *paṭisandhi*) between one life and the next. In this view, the first moment of consciousness in a new birth is simply the direct conditioned effect of the final moment of consciousness of the immediately previous existence.

### Rebirth and cosmic causality

In basic Buddhist doctrinal terms, an answer to the difficult question of rebirth in light of the cardinal teaching of “no-self” is to be located in how Buddhism understands causality, the way one thing leads to another. One Buddhist formula describes it as follows: “When this exists, that exists; from this arising, that arises. When this does not exist, that does not exist; from this ceasing, that ceases.” Technically speaking, this principle of causality is explicated by the formal doctrine of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), which holds that all phenomena, including the “self” and the surrounding world, arise out of a network of relationships dependent upon other causes and conditions. The self, therefore, is not to be understood as an essential, independent entity moving from one life to the next, but rather as a manifestation of a complex of causes and conditions, both mental and physical, themselves interdependent and continually in flux.

The doctrine of dependent origination is graphically depicted as a circular chain consisting of twelve conditioned and conditioning links (*nidāna*): (1) ignorance, the inability to perceive the truth of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE) and dependent origination, conditions (2) karmic formations, from which comes (3) consciousness, which leads to (4) mind-and-body (name and form) and then (5) the six senses (sources); the gateway of the six senses leads to (6) sensory contact that creates (7) sense impressions or feelings; these lead to (8) attachment; attachment leads to (9) grasping, which in turn gives rise to (10) becoming; becoming culminates in (11) birth, from which follow (12) aging and death, and the cycle begins again. In sequence, these twelve links generate life cycles within the perpetual process of saṃsāra driven by karma. In this way, the twelvefold chain of dependent origination describes the process of rebirth. Birth and death, then, are to be understood as nothing more or less than oscillating links in the ongoing chain of cause and effect. Rebirth is a configuration of a new cluster of causes and conditions propelled by previous karmic impulses. The process is compared to lighting one candle with the flame of another; the former flame is not the same as the latter and yet there is still a transfer of the flame. Like lighting a new candle, rebirth is simply the movement of a continuum of ever-changing mental and physical complexes from one physical support to another. It is this particular notion of causality that lies at the heart of the Buddhist understanding of rebirth.

The engine of rebirth is karma, the good and bad actions of body, speech, and mind that have been per-

formed not only in the immediately preceding life but also many lifetimes ago. The cumulative moral quality of a person’s karma determines the quality of each successive life. There is widespread consensus among Buddhists everywhere, however, that the state of a person’s mind at the moment of death can actually be the most significant factor in setting the course for the future rebirth. It is usually the case that the mind at death tends to be occupied by whatever habitual thoughts and actions were most familiar in life or by whatever actions are performed just prior to death. For this reason, Buddhism recommends the cultivation of proper mindfulness and the performance of virtuous activities at the time of dying, which are all designed to insure a favorable rebirth. To be sure, the concern of the vast majority of ordinary Buddhists is less about the achievement of liberation from the cycle of saṃsāra and more about the attainment of a better position within that cycle. A good rebirth, according to Buddhism, is birth in one of the three higher realms of saṃsāra, that of gods (*deva*), demigods (*asura*), and human beings (*manuṣya*), with human birth deemed the most precious. Rebirth in the other three realms, of animals (*tiryak*), ghosts (*preta*), and hell beings (*naraka*), is regarded as terribly unfortunate. In all Buddhist cultures, certain merit-enhancing actions are performed at death to assure favorable circumstances in the next life. In the most general terms, these actions include the dedication of merit, almsgiving, and the recitation of Buddhist scriptures.

### Methods for ensuring a wholesome rebirth

In China and Japan, much emphasis is placed on rebirth in a buddha’s pure land, such as AMITĀBHA’s pure land of Sukhāvātī, the Land of Bliss. Although there are multiple explanations for how best to ensure rebirth in one of these pure lands, in general it requires faith and a sincere aspiration to be reborn there. The repeated chanting of the name of the particular buddha of that realm or the recitation of his scripture at the moment of dying is also recommended. In addition, Chinese Buddhists at the time of death sometimes offer ritual paper money, popularly called “spirit money,” to the postmortem bureaucrats and executive officers who are believed to abide in the afterlife. It is thought that this monetary offering will lessen the deceased’s karmic debts and secure passport to a more favorable rebirth. The burning of such “hell notes” as an offering for the benefit of the dead is also practiced among Buddhists in Burma (Myanmar) and Vietnam.

In Japanese Buddhism, posthumous ORDINATION, the monastic ordination of the dying on their deathbed, is commonly practiced as a means to guarantee salvation and a better rebirth. In this way it can be said that all Buddhists in Japan die as MONKS or NUNS. Tibetan Buddhism also recognizes the value of virtuous actions and proper MINDFULNESS at the moment of death. In Tibet, special rituals are performed to actually guide the deceased's consciousness through the perilous pathways of the intermediate state (Tibetan, *bar do*) and into the next life. These funerary rituals are inscribed in specific Tibetan Buddhist liturgical manuals, some of which have achieved notoriety in Western-language translations, such as the TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD.

In all of these Buddhist deathbed practices an underlying principle is at work. Virtuous actions performed at the moment of death by the dying and by surviving relatives can positively affect a person's future destiny. In other words, a good death leads to a good rebirth.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Cosmology; Death; Hinduism and Buddhism; Intermediate States; Jainism and Buddhism

#### Bibliography

- Jamgon Kongtrul Lodrö Tayé. *Myriad Worlds: Buddhist Cosmology in Abhidharma, Kālacakra, and Dzog-chen*, tr. and ed. by the International Translation Committee founded by the V.V. Kalu Rinpoche. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1995.
- O'Flaherty, Wendy Doniger, ed. *Karma and Rebirth in Classical Indian Traditions*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980.
- Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origins*, tr. Gaynor Sekimori. Tokyo: Kōsei, 1997.
- Teiser, Stephen F. *The Scripture of the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Tenzin Gyatso (Dalai Lama XIV). *The Meaning of Life: Buddhist Perspectives on Cause and Effect*, tr. and ed. Jeffrey Hopkins. Boston: Wisdom, 2000.

BRYAN J. CUEVAS

## REFUGES

At the beginning of virtually every Buddhist ritual performed in South and Southeast Asia, whether public or private, the following Pāli invocation is chanted:

Buddhaṃ saranaṃ gacchāmi.  
Dhammaṃ saranaṃ gacchāmi.  
Sanghaṃ saranaṃ gacchami.

The translation is:

I go to the Buddha as a refuge.  
I go to the *dhamma* as a refuge.  
I go to the saṅgha as a refuge.

Taking refuge in the triratna (triple gem) is usually first chanted by a monk and then repeated by the laity. It is a collective confessional statement in which the three “jewels” of the *sāsana* (tradition or teaching) are publicly affirmed, a declaration that the Buddha discovered the truth and made it known to the SAṄGHA, who have preserved and embodied it.

Taking refuge in the triratna is often a prelude to the acceptance of basic PRECEPTS. Observing the *pañcaśīla* (fivefold morality) is regarded as normative for all pious Buddhists. Indeed, it is an ancient moral formula shared with other Indian religious śramaṇa (renunciant) and Brāhmaṇa (priestly) traditions and comprises the cardinal principles encoded within the monastic *Vinayaṭīka* (*Book of Discipline*). This code includes prohibitions against taking life, against taking what is not given, against lying about spiritual achievement, against engaging in sexual misconduct, and against imbibing intoxicants—five basic precepts for Buddhists. *Aṭṭhaśīla*, the taking of eight precepts by laity on full-moon days, includes observing the five precepts plus three more: not taking solid food after noon, wearing only white clothes without ornamentation, and sitting and lying only on mats.

*See also:* Ordination; Vinaya

#### Bibliography

- Carter, John Ross. *On Understanding Buddhists: Essays on the Theravāda Tradition in Sri Lanka*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1993.
- Gombrich, Richard. *Precept and Practice: Traditional Buddhism in the Rural Highlands of Ceylon*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1971.

JOHN CLIFFORD HOLT

## RELICS AND RELICS CULTS

Relic veneration has been virtually ubiquitous in the history of Buddhist traditions. The reputed remains of the historical Buddha, as well as those of other BODDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, and even DISCIPLES OF THE BUDDDHA, have been the objects of WORSHIP in a variety of locations and eras. Such remains have usually taken the form of granulated ashes or bones, and have often been seen as possessing a sheen similar to, if not identical with, JEWELS. In some contemporary Buddhist traditions, believers search for relics among the cremated remains of deceased masters; if found, such remains will sometimes be divided for distribution among affiliated monasteries.

### Meaning and early historical context

The term that is usually used to refer to relics in Sanskrit Buddhist literature is *śarīra*, which refers to the body. Less frequently, *dhātu*, a word with multiple and complex senses, is used. Relics have been a focus of veneration for Buddhists since, it would seem, the passing of the historical Buddha Śākyamuni himself. The MAHĀPARINIRVĀNA-SŪTRA (Pāli, *Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*; *Great Discourse on the Extinction*) depicts the relics of the Buddha as remaining at his cremation pyre. Monarchs of northern India vied to obtain the relics for enshrinement, leading to a dispute that was prevented only by a Brahman named Droṇa, who divided the remains into eight portions for distribution. Archaeological investigations at reliquary sites, such as Vaiśālī and Piprahwa in northern India, have further confirmed that the practice of relic veneration existed prior to the time of King AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.).

According to the Pāli *Kaliṅgabodhi-jātaka*, funerary mounds housed three types of relics of the Buddha: bodily relics (*sarīrika-cetiya*), use or contact relics (*uddesika-cetiya*), and commemoration relics (*pāribhogika-cetiya*). In general, Buddhist traditions have interpreted the bodily relics to be granulated ashes, as well as remains of teeth, hair, and flesh. Use or contact relics were objects believed to be associated with the Buddha, such as his begging bowl and staff. The relics of commemoration, a category that presumably developed later than the others, consisted of images of the Buddha.

Relics were signs that simultaneously represented DEATH and the conquest of death. As emphasized by Peter Brown in the context of the veneration of saints' relics in Western Mediterranean Christendom of the

third to sixth centuries, the reputed remains of saints provided believers with hope; the presence of the relic, as an instantiation of the "special dead," provided a kind of proof of existence beyond death and alleviated anxieties concerning what seemed to be radical finitude. For Buddhists, relics, especially those of the historical Buddha, served as a sign of death and the subjugation of death.

On the one hand, the Buddha was subject to the universal law of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), like all other beings. Moreover, relics, like the living community of MONKS, constituted a "field of merit," so that making offerings to relics and reliquaries enabled believers to accumulate great merit (*puṇya*). Indeed, a conceptual relationship existed in Buddhist literature between relic veneration and the actions of the Buddha during previous lives as a BODHISATTVĀ. In particular, JĀTAKA tales describe acts of giving on the part of the bodhisattva, such as the offering of his body or other valuable objects on behalf of other beings, which served as a model of ideal giving. Thus, sites associated with the offering of the bodhisattva's body became locations for construction of relic STŪPAS, and Buddhist literature depicted the construction of reliquaries in response to such actions. In fact, homilies that invoked tales of the Buddha's sacrifice were probably made at stūpas in order to encourage believers to give lavish offerings to reliquaries.

On the other hand, relics represented the Buddha's conquest of death through his attainment of *parinirvāṇa*; they were an index of his former presence. Indeed, as Gregory Schopen has noted, the relics and the reliquary constituted a "legal person" because the Buddha was viewed as a living entity on the site and the rightful owner of objects offered at the stūpa. One Buddhist text forbade the appropriation of even a robe given to a reliquary, warning against its exchange for money, because no object of the stūpa could have a price. Other writings went so far as to identify the theft of reliquary property with the five acts of immediate retribution within the Buddhist community (Schopen 1987, pp. 206–208).

In addition, the transfer of relics to increasingly disparate locations made it possible for Buddhists to venerate holy figures without going on long-distance pilgrimages. Buddhists throughout Asia were clearly concerned about their access to sites associated with the historical Buddha, and remains reputedly of him or those close to him were highly valued. Through the local veneration of relics, Buddhists could gain merit





A monk carries a miniature stūpa containing a tooth believed to have been the Buddha's. It was put on display in Taiwan in 1998. Here it is escorted from the airport by an official party led by the Taiwanese prime minister. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

equivalent to that accrued through PILGRIMAGE to sacred sites like BODH GAYĀ and Lumbinī Garden. Thus, the presence of reputed relics bridged the temporal gap between contemporary believers and the historical Śākyamuni, whose life grew increasingly distant with the passage of time.

In fact, for Buddhists, the mobility of relics offered a new mode of relationship with Śākyamuni, the early disciples, and later Buddhist saints. Insofar as relics could be easily transported across long distances, these objects (like the images and amulets studied by Stanley Tambiah in contemporary Thai Buddhism) were “repositories of power.” They constituted the burning energy (*tejas*) manifested in the body of the Buddha and other holy beings, as well as in images of them. Indeed, the transfer of relics to, and their discovery in, Southeast Asia and East Asia became so common that one might argue, as Brown has noted in the context of

Christendom, that “Translations—the movement of relics to people—and not pilgrimages—the movement of people to relics—hold the center of the stage in late-antique and early-medieval piety” (pp. 89–96). Throughout the history of early Buddhism, as well as later MAHĀYĀNA and TANTRA Buddhism, relics of one form or another were venerated in a vast variety of locales, and constituted a form of veneration that complemented efforts at pilgrimage.

#### **The increasing dissemination of *śarīra***

The categories of Buddhist relics include not only bodily remains of the historical Buddha and other saints, but a variety of other objects. For example, image consecration in Buddhism included the common practice of inserting relics inside of the images.

In works associated with the rise of Mahāyāna Buddhism, the words of the Buddha as embodied in sūtras

were represented as *śarīra* or *dhātu*. As the Mahāyāna came to prioritize worship of “the book” as manifesting the presence of the Buddha, sūtras as relics came to be considered superior to physical remains. Moreover, insofar as the practice of venerating bodily relics had developed earlier and was historically dominant, the discussions of relics in sūtras of the early and middle Mahāyāna were ambivalent, both antagonistic toward the practice and modeling it. Scriptures such as the early *Aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom in 8,000 Lines*) thus stressed the fundamental importance of relic veneration, while at the same time emphasizing that because sūtras are the dharma of the Buddha, their veneration is, ultimately, superior to that of physical remains.

In this context, such “dharma” relics came to be inserted in stūpas throughout Asia by the early centuries of the common era. In most cases, only portions of the scripture were included. The verse most often enshrined described PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION): “Those dharmas which arise from a cause: the Tathāgata has declared their cause, and that which is the cessation of them; thus the great renunciant has taught.” Thus, the words of the Buddha, when inserted in reliquaries, revived his presence, and works such as the *Pratītyasamutpāda-sūtra* described the great merit of inserting such verses even into miniature stūpas.

By roughly the middle of the first millennium, the emergent Mahāyāna DHĀRAṆĪ sūtras (incantatory formulae scriptures) proclaimed that dhāraṇī should be deposited in stūpas and interpreted as relics. Indeed, as noted by Yael Bentor, the contents of scriptures such as the *Guhyadhātu* equate their very presence with that of the Buddha and his relics (p. 252). The practice of inserting dhāraṇī in stūpas occurred in parts of China, Tibet, Korea, and Japan, in addition to the Indian subcontinent.

The Shingon school of the Japanese tantric tradition, which inherited the practice of venerating relics from Chinese Buddhism, stressed the importance of the bodily relics that the founder KŪKAI (774–835) brought back from China. Over time, the Shingon school developed innovative interpretations of relics. The so-called *Last Testament* (*Go-yuigō*) of Kūkai, from roughly the tenth century, describes how Buddha relics and a variety of precious substances and herbs can be combined to produce a wish-fulfilling “jewel” (Japanese, *nyoi hōju*; Sanskrit, *cintāmaṇi*). Likewise, some scriptures describe how, in the event

that “authentic” relics cannot be obtained for ritual use, relics can be constructed from a variety of precious stones, pebbles, or medicines.

### **Buddhist kingship and the ritual use of relics**

As noted above, Buddhist tradition told of the efforts of monarchs to obtain relics of the Buddha on the occasion of his cremation. Moreover, King AŚOKA’s construction of reliquaries, and the wealth of literature describing him constructing eighty-four thousand stūpas throughout the Indian subcontinent, consolidated the narrative foundations for a long history of royal patronage of relics, as well as for a wide variety of ritual uses.

The *Aśokāvadāna* (*Legend of Aśoka*) had the greatest influence on the development of Buddhist traditions concerning the ideal of the wheel-turning king (cakravartin) and his relationship with relics. In particular, the motif of the ruler’s construction and protection of reliquaries arose out of Aśoka’s effort to give exhaustively to the Buddhist community, and the centerpiece of his actions is his construction of stūpas. As a wheel-turning king, Aśoka is the chief supporter of the “wheel of dharma,” the teachings of Buddhism; to fulfill that duty, he cares for the body of the Buddha in the form of relics. In symbolic terms, as suggested by Paul Mus, when a king constructs stūpas to house relics, he and his kingdom become a kind of living reliquary. To the extent that stūpas constitute *mesocosms* (cosmic centers for the ritual invocation of the absent Buddha), the Buddhist king may also be conceived of as a symbol of the Buddha.

The construction of stūpas and their veneration by rulers and aristocrats continued with the spread of Buddhism. Rulers in China, especially those of the Wei of the mid-fifth to sixth centuries, gave elaborately to the Buddhist community, a relationship epitomized by the sponsorship of the construction of stūpas and images. Emperor Wen (r. 581–604) of the Sui dynasty took imitation of Aśoka’s patronage to great lengths, going so far as to sponsor the construction of multiple stūpas enshrining Buddha relics for distribution to monasteries throughout the land.

Imperial patronage of relic veneration in China, Sri Lanka, and other areas of Asia constituted both a demonstration of the rulers’ largess and a response to the fervor of local Buddhists. For example, the writings of Chinese pilgrims such as FAXIAN (ca. 337–418) indicate that the Chinese were aware of the practice among Asian rulers of conducting relic processions to



The Buddha's finger relic, in a miniature gold pagoda. In 2002 it was taken from Famensi in Xi'an, China for display in Taiwan. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

bolster their authority, and the large crowds that attended such processions gave evidence of faith among the populace. Indeed, a famous tract by Han yu (768–824) argued forcefully against welcoming the relic of the Buddha's finger from FAMENSI into the Chinese imperial palace in 819. Han yu demonstrated in his criticisms of believers' behavior the extent of their devotion, whereby some burned their heads and fingers, and discarded clothing and large numbers of coins. On the occasion of another procession of Buddha relics in 873, worshippers variously offered their arms, fingers, and hair in acts that symbolically matched the bodily sacrifices that Śākyamuni as a bodhisattva had made in the *jātaka* tales.

In Japan, the royal government, in a gesture similar to that of Emperor Wen, sponsored the presentation of Buddha relics throughout the land. In this case, however, the offerings were made to celebrate royal accession to shrines of the native deities (*kami*), with relic veneration being incorporated directly into cults associated with royal authority. Moreover, clerics of the Shingon school held an annual royal rite in the palace Shingon'in chapel in veneration of the relics brought

back by Kūkai, suggesting that monastic Buddhists, together with the royal family and aristocracy, saw the veneration of relics as key to the annual renewal of the ruler's body and of the realm. At the same time, possession of the relics legitimized the Shingon lineage internally and vis-à-vis the royal family. By at least the thirteenth century, the relics of Shingon were seen as indispensable to royal authority; by the fourteenth century, clerics of both the Shingon and Tendai tantric traditions identified the wish-fulfilling jewel with the regalia of the sovereign.

*See also:* Merit and Merit-Making; Printing Technologies; Reliquary; Self-Immolation

#### **Bibliography**

- Bentor, Yael. "On the Indian Origins of the Tibetan Practice of Depositing Relics and *Dhāraṇīs* in Stūpas and Images." *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 115, no. 2 (1995): 248–261.
- Boucher, Daniel. "The *Pratītyasamutpādagāthā* and Its Role in the Medieval Cult of the Relics." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 14, no. 1 (1991): 1–27.

- Brown, Peter. *The Cult of the Saints: Its Rise and Function in Latin Christianity*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1981.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Rhetoric of Immediacy: A Cultural Critique of Chan/Zen Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Mus, Paul. *Barabadur: esquisse d'une histoire du bouddhisme fondée sur la critique archéologique des textes*, 2 vols. Hanoi, Vietnam: Imprimerie d'Extreme-Orient, 1935. Reprint, New York: Arno Press, 1988.
- Ruppert, Brian D. *Jewel in the Ashes: Buddha Relics and Power in Early Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center and Harvard University Press, 2000.
- Schopen, Gregory. "Burial 'Ad Sanctos' and the Physical Presence of the Buddha in Early Indian Buddhism: A Study in the Archaeology of Religions." *Religion* 17 (1987): 193–225.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend of King Aśoka: A Study and Translation of the Aśokāvadāna*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1983.
- Tambiah, Stanley Jeyaraja. *The Buddhist Saints of the Forest and the Cult of Amulets: A Study of Charisma, Hagiography, Sectarianism, and Millennial Buddhism*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- Trainor, Kevin. *Relics, Ritual, and Representation in Buddhism: Rematerializing the Sri Lankan Theravāda Tradition*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1997.

BRIAN O. RUPPERT

## RELIQUARY

As the focus of worship in early Buddhist monasteries, every STŪPA or pagoda had a foundation deposit, usually sealed within a stone casket or small chamber beneath the central mast, and hence inaccessible once the stūpa was raised above it.

Reliquary deposits were placed either in a vault centrally located in the foundations of a pagoda or higher up in a chamber within the structure. Such deposits were made at the time of construction, but those in the foundation vault would be recovered and reconsecrated whenever it became necessary to rebuild the structure above them (e.g., when a pagoda built of wood burnt down and was rebuilt). Exceptionally, as at FAMENSI, the vault would be accessible on other occasions.

Many deposits have been revealed through excavation and conservation projects in the second half of the twentieth century. The earliest examples, like the earliest pagoda (Songyuesi ta at Dengfeng in Henan province, dated 520) are from the Northern Wei dynasty (386–534). At this date, the reliquary container is a cubical stone chest, no more than thirty centimeters in height, with a chamfered stone lid. The relics or *sheli* (the Chinese rendering of the Sanskrit *śarīra*) are tiny crystalline grains, usually enclosed in a very small glass bottle. This in turn is enclosed within other containers, and accompanied by wrappings of silk and offerings of various kinds, including precious objects and coins. Among the latter it is common to find coins minted a decade or so earlier in Byzantium or the Sasanian empire, which had come to China through trade along the SILK ROAD.

In the seventh century, the shape of the reliquary was changed into the form of a Chinese coffin, with arched lid, higher at one end than the other, a Sinitized form that was to persist until the end of the twentieth century, when clear plastic containers of this form were used to reconsecrate the four relics found in the Famensi pagoda deposit.

The most recently discovered reliquary deposit was recovered during excavation of the Leifengta, on the shores of the West Lake in Hangzhou, the brick core of which collapsed in 1924. Excavated in 2001, the foundation chamber contained an iron chest (the domed and flat-sided one-piece cover extending to the flat square base with raised inner flange) with its contents intact. The relics inside were contained in a miniature one-story stūpa of silver, dedicated by the ruler of the eastern state of Wu-Yue in the tenth century, set on a gilt-bronze circular tray with floral decoration. A seated bronze image of Śākyamuni supported on a dragon, bronze mirrors, coins, and exquisite jade carvings were also found inside the iron chest. The rulers of Wu-Yue are said to have dedicated eighty-four thousand such miniature stūpas. One reliquary deposit, the Wanfosi at Jinhua in Zhejiang province, contained no fewer than twenty-one of them.

Relic deposits, often dated and containing, besides the relic grains themselves, Buddhist images and scriptures; wooden, lacquered and inlaid containers; and countless objects made of precious materials, provide some of the most fascinating evidence of Buddhist devotion. In the eyes of Buddhist devotees, relics were of equal if not greater importance than scriptures and images. The great traveler and translator XUANZANG (ca.

600–664) brought 150 relic grains, as well as seven images and 657 chapters of Buddhist scriptures, from his sixteen-year journey to India.

*See also:* Relics and Relics Cults; Ritual Objects

### Bibliography

Wang, Eugene Y. "Of the True Body: The Famensi Relics and Corporeal Transformation in Tang Imperial China." In *Body and Face in Chinese Visual Culture*, ed. Wu Hung et al. Cambridge, MA: Harvard Asia Center and Harvard University Press, 2003.

Whitfield, Roderick. "Buddhist Monuments in China: Some Recent Finds of Śarīra Deposits." In *The Buddhist Heritage: Papers Delivered at the Symposium of the Same Name Convened at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, November 1985*, ed. Tadeusz Skorupski. Tring, UK: Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1989.

RODERICK WHITFIELD

## RENNYO

Rennyō (1415–1499) was the eighth head of the Honganji temple of the Jōdo Shinshū tradition of PURE LAND BUDDHISM in Japan. The Shinshū, which originated in the teachings of SHINRAN (1173–1263), emerged during Rennyō's period as the largest and most powerful Buddhist movement in Japan. Rennyō is largely credited with the Shinshū's expansion and success in the fifteenth century and with building Honganji from a minor temple in Kyoto into a formidable institution.

Early in his career Rennyō's initiatives incensed rivals at the Tendai monastic complex on Mount Hiei outside Kyoto, which dominated religious affairs in the region. Its agents attacked and destroyed Honganji in 1465, and sent Rennyō fleeing into the provinces, where he spent the next decade and a half proselytizing. Gradually, he built up a massive following, especially among peasants, and he popularized Shinshū teachings through his *ofumi* (pastoral letters), which were circulated and read aloud in congregational meetings. The message he proclaimed was that faith in Amida (AMITĀBHA) Buddha assures birth in the Pure Land where Buddhist enlightenment is certain. Rennyō also taught that the *nenbutsu*, the Pure Land practice of reciting Amida's name, was a palpable expression of coalescence with the Buddha and indebtedness to him. People in this religious state, he

claimed, live a life of peace and assurance, and are inspired to follow rules of upright conduct. This message lay behind the popularization of the Shinshū throughout Japan. In the early 1480s Rennyō fulfilled his dream of rebuilding Honganji as a magnificent temple complex on the outskirts of Kyoto. It became the site of a huge annual memorial service on the anniversary of Shinran's death, in which Shinshū pilgrims came from around the country to participate.

*See also:* Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Pure Land Schools

### Bibliography

Dobbins, James C. *Jōdo Shinshū: Shin Buddhism in Medieval Japan*, (1989). Reprint, Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.

*The Rennyō Shonin Reader*. Kyoto: Jōdo Shinshū Hongwanjisha, 1998.

Rogers, Minor L., and Rogers, Ann T. *Rennyō: The Second Founder of Shin Buddhism*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1991.

Weinstein, Stanley. "Rennyō and the Shinshū Revival." In *Japan in the Muromachi Age*, ed. John Whitney Hall and Toyoda Takeshi. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1977.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

## RENWANG JING (HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA)

The *Renwang jing* (*Humane Kings Sūtra*) is one of the more influential of the East Asian "apocryphal" scriptures—texts that purported to be translations of Indian works, but were actually composed in China and Korea. Although its full title indicates that it is a transcendent wisdom (*prajñāpāramitā*) text, it is better characterized as a blend of transcendent wisdom, YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL, and TATHĀGATAGARBHA teachings. The *Renwang jing* is unusual in that its target audience is the rulership, rather than lay practitioners or the community of monks and nuns. Thus, whereas the interlocutors in most scriptures are ARHATS or BODHISATTVAS, the discussants in this text are the kings of the sixteen ancient regions of India. The foregrounded teachings, rather than meditation and wisdom, are humaneness and forbearance, these being the most applicable religious values for the governance of a Buddhist state.

A second “translation” was supposedly carried out a few centuries after the appearance of the original version by the monk Amoghavajra (Pukong, 705–774), one of the most important figures in the Chinese MIJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL. But this new version was actually just a rewrite, since there was no original Sanskrit version. This second version of the text (T 246), while based mostly on the original version (T 245), contains new sections that include teachings on MAṆḌALA, MANTRA, and DHĀRAṆĪ. In the same way that other apocryphal works, such as the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ’S NET SŪTRA), came to hold a special authoritative position in the subsequent development of Buddhism in Korea and Japan, as well as China, the *Renwang jing* became the standard model text in these East Asian countries for Buddhist-based state protection and statecraft.

See also: Apocrypha; Kingship; Politics and Buddhism; Prajñāpāramitā Literature

### Bibliography

Orzech, Charles. *Politics and Transcendent Wisdom: The Scripture for Humane Kings in the Creation of Chinese Buddhism*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1998.

A. CHARLES MULLER

## REPENTANCE AND CONFESSION

Repentance and confession have been a part of the practice of Buddhism from its beginning, and several distinctive forms have evolved for different contexts. Indian Buddhism developed at least three forms: (1) communal repentance and confession within the monastic SAṄGHA; (2) metaphysical repentance of one’s karmic past to a supramundane buddha; and (3) meditational repentance of incorrect attachments and understanding. Chinese Buddhists developed public and elaborate forms of repentance and confession; these have cosmic dimensions to relieve the suffering of both the living and the dead.

### Indian Buddhism

When disciples of the Buddha first left their family lives for full-time practice, they adopted a set of guidelines that were recited in a twice-monthly ceremony called *poṣadha* (Pāli, *uposatha*). During this gathering, monks recited the rules of discipline (PRĀTIMOKṢA) as a check and support for their individual practice. Participation

in the group recitation required purity, so prior confession and restitution were required by monks and nuns if they had violated any rules. Although expulsion resulted from violation of the more serious *pārājika* rules (no killing, stealing, sexual intercourse, or lying about one’s spiritual achievements), lesser rule violations could be remedied by confession and other supportive behavior.

When *saṅghādisesa* (Sanskrit, *saṅghāvaśeṣa*) rules were broken, for example, recovery required confession to a community of at least twenty monastics, plus a probationary two-week seclusion for reflection and reform. *Saṅghādisesa* rules set prohibitions against disruptive behaviors, such as failing to accept admonitions, speaking in envy, gossiping about another, or repudiating the Buddha, dharma, and saṅgha. Violation of the *nissaggiya pācittiyas* (Sanskrit, *naihsargika-prāyaścittika*) rules also required confession, but only to a minimum of five monastics, plus forfeiture of an article that had been wrongly obtained, such as a robe, bowl, or rug. Confession was required to only one or more monastics for breaking rules against telling laity about the misbehavior of monks, bad manners, carelessness, not keeping an accepted invitation, or abusing others by scolding, tickling, or degrading them. Similarly, violations of a fifth category of rules dealing with food required only confession. Lesser rules dealing with ETIQUETTE did not require confession at all.

Confession did not excuse the violator from the penalties of rule breaking; rather, confession was a matter of truth-telling and of inviting appropriate penalties for rectifying the situation. A monk or nun could confess only to other monastics, and confession was not a public event open to the laity. By contrast, the rite of *pavāraṇa*, which occurred after the annual rainy-season retreat, publicly examined the wrongs that monks and nuns had committed during the three-month retreat. The confession and public repentance involved in *pavāraṇa* differed from the private whispered confession of the *prātimokṣa*. Thus, repentance and confession within the Buddhist monastic community served not only to support individual practice, but also to maintain the unity of the monastic community and its good reputation with the laity.

A second form of repentance and confession arose as a way to cope with bad KARMA (ACTION) and had a very different goal from maintaining monastic purity. These confessions referred to unexpiated guilt resulting from unknown or unremembered past wrongs, and were a plea for forgiveness to alleviate suffering

and harm in the present life. The goal was not merely to escape the social penalties of rule breaking, but to avoid the larger karmic consequence of wrongful actions, thoughts, and attitudes. Such a confession of karmic wrongs is given a mythological framework in the “Chapter on Confession” in the Mahāyāna *SU-VAṆNAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA* (*Sūtra of Golden Light*). According to this chapter, during the vision of a shining drum, verses came forth that proclaimed the power of the drum to suppress many woes, and a confession of all previous wrongs was uttered to supramundane, compassionate buddhas. Even the name *Survaṇṇaprabhāsa* (Golden Light) was believed to destroy all evil deeds done over thousands of eons. But the most striking feature of this form of Buddhist confession was the theistic function of the buddhas, who were asked to give protection and to forgive all evil deeds. This text presents an endless time span, the recognition of possible unexpiated guilt, a request for forgiveness, supramundane compassionate buddhas as sources for forgiveness, and the use of the name of the *Suvarṇaprabhāsa* to destroy all evil actions and their consequences.

The worldview expressed by this ritual extends beyond the present social world of the monastery to invoke karmic history and draw on supramundane powers, such as the force of compassionate buddhas and the magical power of dhāraṇī, to rectify a harmful situation. In this worldview, wrongs from previous rebirths not only affect one’s present REBIRTH, but also relate directly to the Buddha, who can intercede and offer relief and support. Repentance is not primarily communal, but rather devotional and directed to a cosmic, transhistorical figure, and thus it can be called “metaphysical repentance.” It was this kind of repentance that later evolved into large public rituals in China.

A third form of repentance and confession is based on the *Sūtra of Meditation on Bodhisattva Samantabhadra*. In this text, the wrongs to be eliminated are from both the remembered and the unknowable past, but the method of repentance and confession goes beyond pleading for mercy and help. Instead, the text offers instruction for visualization of the Bodhisattva Samantabhadra, and leads to instruction about all the karma and wrongs of former lives that can then be confessed. In addition, the devotee systematically reviews the functioning of each of the sense organs, followed by a recitation of ritual repentance (said three times) for all inner attachment and external wrongdoing. Samantabhadra’s “law of repentance” says that attach-

ment to phenomena perceived by the senses causes one to fall into the cycle of birth and death.

Whereas meditative inspection of the sense-fields is the main basis for regretting and rectifying past wrongs, the final dimension of personal transformation is the development of a new understanding based on contemplating the “real mark of all things,” namely, their emptiness of enduring distinguishing attributes (*lakṣaṇa*). This contemplation of the emptiness and signlessness of dharmas is the locus classicus for the idea of “formless repentance” found in Chinese CHAN SCHOOL texts like the PLATFORM SŪTRA OF THE SIXTH PATRIARCH (LIUZU TAN JING). Since this contemplation removes bad karma and frees one from past wrongs and present attachments based on exposure to enlightened awareness, just as “the sun of wisdom disperses dew and frost,” then this could be called *insight repentance*.

Insight repentance differs from the confessional model of early Buddhism to correct wrong actions in the present through penance, exclusion, probation, restitution, or confession. Instead, for Chan Buddhists, wrongs are to be “cast aside by your own true Buddha nature” through an inner change, and inner transformation by enlightenment corrects all “past, future, and present” wrong actions and thoughts. As a result, many Zen practitioners in the West daily recite: “All the evil karma ever created by me since of old, on account of my beginningless greed, hatred, and ignorance, I now confess openly and fully.”

### Chinese Buddhism

All three forms of Indian repentance were adopted in China. The great Chinese vinaya master DAOXUAN (596–667) grouped the causes of repentance into three categories: violations of monastic codes, violations of phenomena (immoral behavior), and violations of principle (wrong attitudes, perceptions, and understanding). The Tiantai monk ZHIYI (538–597) was influential in developing the metaphysical and insight repentance methods. In his *Fahua sanmei chanyi* (*Lotus Samādhi Techniques*), Zhiyi presents the Lotus Samādhi ritual as a dialectic between the *Meditation on Samantabhadra Sūtra* and the “Chapter on Peaceful Practices” in the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). The first text instructs practitioners to repent sins from the six senses, whereas the second text states that bodhisattvas do not make distinctions, nor do they practice any dharmas. Zhiyi argues that these two texts complement one another, and he shows how they switch positions, with the second advocating remem-

bering, reciting, and explaining the scriptures, while the first advocates “formless repentance,” as in the statement “Since one’s own mind is void of itself, there is no subject of demerit or merit.” This “formless repentance” not only became popular in Chan Buddhism, but also led to a reduction of repentance in Japanese Buddhism to the single act of recognizing the emptiness of all things—doer, deeds, and karma.

Zhiyi emphasized, however, that both “practices of form” and “formless practice” are preliminary, but at the time of realization, both methods are discarded. Instead, based on the statement in the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA that “In the mind that is ‘one moment of thought’ one is able to name and evaluate each of the incalculable birth-and-deaths,” Zhiyi asserts that at every moment one is to understand three truths: emptiness, the value of provisional worldly truth that includes precepts and repentance, and an inclusive middle path. As a result, one empathizes with the pain of all beings and causes them to cross over to unboundedness.

This inclusion of others into one’s repentance caused a dramatic increase in repentance rituals in China. Shioiri Ryōdō (1964) observed the remarkable fact that the Chinese pilgrims who traveled most extensively in India—FAXIAN (ca. 337–418), XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), and YIJING (635–713)—reported only two public Buddhist repentance rituals in India and Southeast Asia. By comparison, Chinese Buddhist repentance rituals are prominent as regular public ceremonies, so that more than one-fourth of the ritual texts collected among contemporary Chinese Buddhist practitioners by Kamata Shigeo (1986) are repentance texts. These ceremonies pervade the Chinese Buddhist liturgical year and constitute a major bond between the monastic elite and the laity, and between the world of Buddhism and Chinese society.

The Chinese transformed Buddhist repentance practices because they believed that the sufferings of the dead can be visited upon the living, and the actions of the living can transform the sufferings of the dead. Chinese Buddhists also assumed that a conspicuous public display of regret and anguish over previous wrongs would influence cosmic powers to show mercy. As a result, public repentance during the GHOST FESTIVAL to relieve the suffering of deceased family members became a major ritual in Chinese society from medieval times to the present (Teiser, 1988).

See also: Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Precepts

## Bibliography

- De Visser, M. W. *Ancient Buddhism in Japan: Sūtras and Ceremonies in Use in the Seventh and Eighth Centuries A.D. and Their History in Later Times*, Vol. 1. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1935.
- Eberhard, Wolfram. *Guilt and Sin in Traditional China*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1967.
- Eckel, M. David. “A Buddhist Approach to Repentance.” In *Repentance: A Comparative Perspective*, ed. Amitai Etzioni and David W. Carney. New York: Rowman and Littlefield, 1997.
- Kamata Shigeo. *Chūgoku no Bukkyō girei* (Chinese Buddhist Ceremonies). Tokyo: Daizo shuppan, 1986.
- Kuo Li-ying. *Confession et contrition dans le bouddhisme chinois de V<sup>e</sup> au X<sup>e</sup> siècle*. Paris: L’École Française d’Extrême-Orient, 1994.
- Prebish, Charles S. *Buddhist Monastic Discipline: The Sanskrit Prātimokṣa Sūtras of the Mahāsamghikas and Mūlasarvāstivādins*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1975.
- Rhys Davids, T. W., and Oldenberg, Hermann. *Vinaya Texts, Part I: The Pātimokkha, The Mahāvagga I–IV. Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. 13. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1996 (reprint of the Oxford University Press edition, 1885).
- Shioiri Ryōdō. “Chūgoku Bukkyō ni okeru raisan to butsumei kyōten” (Repentance Rituals and Scriptures of the Buddha’s Name in Chinese Buddhism). In *Bukkyō shisōshi ronshū: Yūki Kyōju shōju kinen*. Tokyo: Daizo Shuppan, 1964.
- Teiser, Stephen. *The Ghost Festival in Medieval China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Teiser, Stephen. *The Scripture on the Ten Kings and the Making of Purgatory in Medieval Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1994.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe. *Sisters in Solitude: Two Traditions of Buddhist Monastic Ethics for Women*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

DAVID W. CHAPPELL

## RITUAL

In the Pāli *nikāyas* there are four stages to final liberation: (1) stream-enterer (*sotāpanna*), who has glimpsed NIRVĀṆA and will attain full liberation in no more than seven rebirths; (2) once-returner (*sakadāgāmin*), who will be reborn only once more; (3) non-returner (*anāgāmin*), who will have at most one more lifetime in a celestial pure abode; and (4) ARHAT, who is fully liberated in this life. Each of these stages is associated with the elimination of progressively more



subtle fetters (*saṃyojana*). The three lower fetters are removed upon entering into the stream: (1) wrong view in the reality of the self (*sakkāyadiṭṭhi*); (2) doubt concerning the Buddha and his teaching; and (3) attachment to rules and observances (Pāli, *sīlabataparāmāsa*; Sanskrit, *sīlavrataparāmāśa*), whether ritual or ascetic, in the belief that these themselves are liberative.

During the nineteenth century, modernizing apologists emphasized the rational and ethical qualities of Buddhism and, in keeping with assumptions common to Western religious culture, focused on issues of belief and doctrine. This version of Buddhism interpreted the elimination of the fetter of attachment to rules and observances as a comprehensive rejection of ritual practices. Based on this selective reading of Pāli sources, Buddhism was portrayed as a tradition in which ritual played no role. Claiming that Śākyamuni Buddha rejected all ritual practice, this interpretation of Buddhism gave privileged position to MEDITATION, so much so that today Buddhism is often simply identified with meditation. The distinction of meditation and ritual as mutually exclusive categories, however, is an artificial one that has its roots in Western religious culture rather than in Buddhism.

Rather than rejecting ritual, however, Śākyamuni appears to have rejected animal sacrifice, which forms the core of Vedic ritual and the religious authority of the brahman priests who perform such sacrifices. Historically, many Buddhist activities, such as the prātimokṣa recitation, were ritualized early in the history of the tradition. By the third through sixth centuries C.E. ritual practices were well established among Indian Buddhist practitioners.

While use of the term *ritual* seems to indicate a specific category, such that there ought to be a clear way in which one can identify what is and what is not a ritual, scholars still do not agree on a general definition of *ritual*. It is instead more useful to think in terms of *ritualization*, that is, a process by which certain activities are regularized both in performance and periodicity. Rather than a bounded category, or a simply stipulative definition, ritualization suggests a range of degrees to which activities have been regularized. Over the course of Buddhist history, important activities, including individual religious practices (*sādhana*), have been ritualized.

### Basic model for Buddhist rituals

Elements of what became known as the unexcelled worship (*anuttarapūjā*) are found as early as the late

second century C.E. The other name for this is the seven-limbed *pūjā* (*saptāṅgā pūjā*), since rituals of this kind often employed seven elements. This latter name is somewhat misleading in that the number of possible elements was more than seven, and the number of elements in particular rituals might be more or less than seven. The standard elements from which rituals could be constructed include: praise (*vandanā*), WORSHIP (*pūjanā*), confession of faults (*deśana*), rejoicing in the merits of others (*modanā*), requesting the buddhas to teach (*adhyeṣaṇā*), requesting the buddhas to remain in this world (*yācanā*), transfer of merit (*pariṇāmana*), arising of *bodhicitta* (*bodhicittotpāda*), taking refuge (*śaraṇagamana*), making vows (*praṇidāna*), and sacrifice of oneself (*ātmatyāga*).

Another kind of ritual organization is found in many tantric Buddhist rituals. These rituals are constructed symmetrically around the symbolically central action of ritualized identification between the practitioner and the deity evoked; this is called *deity yoga*. The five steps of these rituals are:

- **purification**—preparation of the practitioner
- **construction**—preparation of the ritual site
- **encounter**—inviting, greeting, and feasting the deity
- **identification**—meditative union, or ritual identification
- **dissociation**—recapitulates the first three steps:
- **departure of the deity**: corollary of encounter
- **dissolution of the ritual site**: corollary of construction
- **departure of the practitioner**: corollary of purification

A number of different categories of ritual practice are known. Early eighth-century translations into Chinese by Bodhiruci list three categories: *śāntika*, for protection; *pauṣṭika*, for increase of benefits; and *abhicāraka*, for domination. By the end of the ninth century, an additional two categories are evidenced: *vaśīkaraṇa*, for attraction; and *aṅkuṣa*, for acquisition. These categories inform both the Indo-Tibetan and East Asian traditions. In Tibetan ritual traditions, a set of four appears to have become the standard grouping, while in East Asia the standard grouping comprises all five. These categories establish a complex set of associations for ritual performance: for ex-



A Shingon priest performs a *homa* ritual ceremony at Takamuruin, Kōyasan, Japan. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

ample, the time of day for performing the ritual, the color of the practitioner's clothing, and the kind of altar to be employed.

### **An exemplary ritual: *homa***

Originating in the Vedic tradition, *homa*, or fire ritual, is found in both Hindu and Buddhist tantra. Within the Buddhist world *homa* is found wherever the tantric tradition has taken root, including Mongolia, China, Tibet, Japan, and Bali. The ritual comprises a series of offerings made into a fire built on the altar. The mouth of the altar hearth is homologized to the mouth of the deity and to the practitioner's mouth, while the fire is the deity's digestive fire and the fire of wisdom (*prajñā*) that purifies defilements (*kleśa*).

The *homa* ritual demonstrates the way in which rituals are organized according to a basic metaphor. *Homa* is a feast for the deities who are evoked in the course of the ritual. This ritual metaphor is found in many tantric Buddhist rituals, and evidences the connection between them and their Vedic sources, which also serve as ritual feasts.

In addition to the ritual metaphor and *homa*'s organization, specific elements within the ritual highlight the continuity of practice across more than three millennia and multiple religious cultures. These include an opening offering to Agni, the Vedic god of fire and sacrifice; implements used (e.g., two ladles for making offerings); and the varieties of materials offered, most emblematically, clarified butter (ghee). The processes of cultural adaptation are reflected in the use of various substitutes, such as sesame oil (Japanese, *goma abura*) for ghee. The widespread practice of the *homa* ritual indicates the central place that ritual holds in much of the Buddhist tradition. Rather than being purely rational and ethical, Buddhism has therefore always maintained a crucial role for ritual in its religious culture and practice.

*See also:* Initiation; Ordination; Ritual Objects; Tantra

### **Bibliography**

Aune, Michael B., and DeMarinis, Valerie, eds. *Religious and Social Ritual: Interdisciplinary Explorations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

- Bell, Catherine. *Ritual Theory, Ritual Practice*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Bell, Catherine. *Ritual: Perspectives and Dimensions*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Bentor, Yael. *Consecrations of Images and Stūpas in Indo-Tibetan Tantric Buddhism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1996.
- Bentor, Yael. "Literature on Consecration (*Rab gnas*)." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Beyer, Stephan. *The Cult of Tara: Magic and Ritual in Tibet*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1978.
- Cabezón, José Ignacio. "Firm Feet and Long Lives: The *Zhabs brtan* Literature of Tibetan Buddhism." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Cozort, Daniel. "*Sādhana* (*sGrub thabs*): Means of Achievement for Deity Yoga." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- EGGE, James R. *Religious Giving and the Invention of Karma in Theravāda Buddhism*. Richmond, UK: Routledge Curzon, 2002.
- Gombrich, Richard F. *How Buddhism Began: The Conditioned Genesis of the Early Teachings*. London and Atlantic Highlands, NJ: Athlone, 1996.
- Kohn, Richard J. *Lord of the Dance: The Mani Rimdu Festival in Tibet and Nepal*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2001.
- Makransky, John. "Offering (*mChod pa*) in Tibetan Ritual Literature." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Payne, Richard K. *The Tantric Ritual of Japan: Feeding the Gods, The Shingon Fire Ritual*. Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1991.
- Payne, Richard K. "The Tantric Transformation of Pūjā: Interpretation and Structure in the Study of Ritual." In *India and Beyond: Aspects of Literature, Meaning, Ritual, and Thought*, ed. Dick van der Meij. London and New York: Kegan Paul, 1997.
- Payne, Richard K. "Tongues of Flame: Homologies in the Tantric Homa." In *The Roots of Tantra*, ed. Katherine Anne Harper and Robert L. Brown. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2002.
- Wallis, Glenn. *Mediating the Power of Buddhas: Ritual in the Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2002.
- Weber, Claudia. *Buddhistische Beichten in Indien und bei den Uiguren: Unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der uigurischen Laienbeichte und ihrer Beziehung zum Manichäismus*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1999.

RICHARD K. PAYNE

## RITUAL OBJECTS

The VINAYA relates that the historical Buddha permitted his ordained mendicants only four possessions—three robes and a begging bowl. These simple, functional objects served as the first Buddhist ritual implements since they were the primary material means to clearly distinguish the members of the monastic community from the laity. Initiates could not be ordained until they had properly received them. Over the succeeding centuries, as Buddhism was transmitted throughout Asia, the number of permissible possessions increased to six—three robes, a begging bowl, a stool, and a water strainer—and then to eighteen, including a censer and staff. Moreover, as the rituals of the religion became increasingly elaborate, greater numbers of implements were required. Although different regions frequently interpreted the forms of these objects in culturally specific ways, implements often had their origins in secular Indian modes of veneration and ornamentation.

### Implements of ornamentation

Indian Buddhists correlated sacred adornment with the manifestation of the supernatural. In decorating the interior of halls that housed the object of WORSHIP, they hoped to realize the appearance of the paradises in which the deities were believed to dwell, as described in the sūtras. Thus, elaborate decoration and exquisite craftsmanship came to characterize the implements that adorned the halls.

As images of the Buddha and other members of the Buddhist pantheon became the focus of worship, implements were employed to demarcate the sacred space in which they were enshrined. For example, canopies, which derived from the parasols used by the ancient Indian elite, were suspended over the deity. Garlands of flowers that likewise had been used by the South Asian nobility for personal adornment were draped over images. In northern climates the festoons were reinterpreted in openwork plaques of fabric, leather, or metal, and ornamented with semiprecious stones. Today in Japan these symbolic floral offerings, which are known as *keman*, continue to be hung from the beams of the interiors of image halls. In addition banners known as *ban*, which had been adapted in luxurious textiles or gilt bronze from ancient battle standards signifying victory over one's enemies, fly from dragon-headed poles both in the interior and exterior of the halls.



A monk holds prayer beads at the Rumtek Monastery near Gangtok, Sikkim, seat of the Bka' brgyud (Kagyü) school of Tibetan Buddhism. © Ric Ergenbright/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

### Vessels for offerings

In India the primary offerings made to the Buddha and stūpas were incense, flowers, and candles. The Japanese *Darani jikkyō* (*Sūtra of Collected Dhāraṇī*) explains that incense and perfumed water were used to purify, flowers to pay homage, and light to illuminate the darkness of ignorance. Offerings of food symbolized the giving of alms. In East Asia a set of three metal vessels for these offerings—a candlestick, incense burner, and flower vase—were placed on the main altar in front of an image. In some Buddhist sects the set of three was replaced by a more elaborate set of five, including two candlesticks, two flower vases, and an incense burner.

### Ritual implements in the Japanese liturgical context

The great diversity in the practice of Buddhism in Asia has resulted in a great variety of rituals and of ritual implements. Study of contemporary Buddhist ritual

practice in Japan, which closely follows that on the continent in earlier centuries, reveals that most sectarian differences ultimately are outweighed by fundamental similarities. The ceremonies begin with a call to worship, marked by the striking of a large bronze bell. During the procession of monks into the hall, the chief officiant holds a long-handled censer—an emblem of his authority. In the CHAN SCHOOL (Zen) the chief officiant may alternatively wield an animal-hair *wisk* or a scepter with a foliate end. After making obeisance to the deity, he seats himself on a raised, square ritual platform (*raiban*). To his left and right are two small tables, generally crafted from lacquer, which hold ritual implements and texts.

During the introductory section of the service, stylized chanting is accompanied by the shaking of a monk's staff (*shakujō*) and the strewing of flower petals from openwork baskets (*kekō*) in order to purify the ritual space. During the main part of the ceremony the deity is summoned, praised, and hosted, after which prayers are made. Expressions of appreciation are then communicated to the deity and the celebrant then promises that the benefits accrued from the ritual will be shared with others. During the service the celebrant frequently strikes a metal chime (*kei*), which is suspended from a lacquer stand to the right of the *raiban*, to punctuate the different sections of the liturgy. This percussion instrument generally takes the form of an inverted chevron with a raised lotus boss.

### Esoteric ritual implements

Implements are essential to the performance of esoteric Buddhist rituals. Derived in form from ancient Indian weapons, esoteric ritual implements are believed to imbue the officiant with extraordinary powers and thus assist the individual in the quest to join Buddhist deities in the quest for enlightenment.

As in MAHĀYĀNA ritual, the practitioner sits on a ritual dais, but esoteric ritual employs a ritual platform, on which are placed a great variety of implements and which in turn is placed in front of the painting or sculpture that is the focus of the rite. In India this platform would have been formed from earth over a seven-day period and then later destroyed. In China and Japan it took a more permanent form in wood. The implements used in esoteric rituals can generally be divided into four categories: those for protecting the practitioner, those for purifying the deity and officiant, those for holding offerings, and those for providing musical accompaniment. The most



Monks rotate prayer wheels at the Ivolginski Datsan Temple in Buryatiya, eastern Siberia. © Oleg Nishikin/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

important are those that protect and empower the practitioner and the ritual space. These are placed on the ritual altar and include the various forms of *vajra*, the *vajra* spikes placed at the four corners to support a five-colored rope, the *cakra* placed in the center, and crossed *vajra* at the four corners.

Most frequently composed of clawlike opposed outer prongs and a sharply notched profile, *vajra* resemble stylized thunderbolts. The most common form is one with three prongs on each end, said to symbolize the three mysteries of body, speech, and mind. Other *vajra* include the five-prong form, symbolizing the five wisdoms of the five buddhas, and the single-prong form, symbolizing the universal truth. The implements are usually fashioned from gilt bronze, but esoteric texts specify that they may also be made from gold, silver, copper, iron stone, rock crystal, acacia, sandalwood, and purple sandalwood.

The *cakra* was believed to be one of the seven treasures of a *cakravartin* or universal monarch. Said to miraculously precede him into battle, conquering foes in the four directions, the *cakra* resembles a wheel. Dif-

ferent texts mention *cakra* with a varying number of spokes. Those with four spokes symbolize the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS and those with six symbolize the realms of existence. In Japan, where it is called a *rimpō*, the wheel most often takes an eight-spoked form that was thought to symbolize the eightfold PATH. The crossed *vajra* (known in Japanese as *katsuma*) resembles two intersecting three-pronged *vajra*. Based upon an Indian weapon that was hurled, this metal implement is believed to provide protection in the four directions.

The second category of implements used in esoteric rituals are those that hold various materials used in the ritual to purify the deity and the officiant. Most often they consist of a set of covered containers for water and powdered incense, which are placed near the ritual dais. A third category includes vessels for holding the offerings to be made to the deity. These consist of a censer for burnt incense offerings and the six vessels, which hold offerings of sacred water, floral garlands, powdered incense, and light. Generally made from gilt bronze, they are placed in sets along the four sides of the ritual dais. Vases for offerings of flowers



A monk holding a vajra rings a small bell as an aid to ritual chanting at a monastery in Bhutan. © Hulton/Archive by Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

and vessels for offerings of food are positioned in the four corners.

The final group includes various musical implements such as bells and cymbals used to gain the attention of the deity, entertain it with sound, and then to provide it with melodious accompaniment upon its departure. Bells are also used to awaken the enlightened mind of the practitioner. Although single examples are frequently used in rituals, handheld bells also occur in sets of five, consisting of a single-pronged vajra-handled bell, a three-pronged vajra-handled bell, a five-pronged vajra-handled bell, a jewel-handled bell, and a pagoda-handled bell. The five bells are placed on the ritual altar, along with vajra of similar forms. The five vajra represent the *samaya* form of the five wisdom buddhas and their secret wisdom, while the five bells represent their outwardly directed teachings.

A metal ritual tray, frequently raised, is placed on the ritual altar in front of the practitioner. On it is placed a set of implements to be utilized during the

ceremony. Usually a single-pronged vajra, a three-pronged vajra, and a five-pronged vajra surround a vajra-handled bell, but the arrangement of the implements and the placement of the tray itself vary according to sect and to school.

### Bibliography

- Morse, Anne Nishimura, and Morse, Samuel Crowell. *Object as Insight: Japanese Buddhist Art and Ritual*. Katonah, NY: Katonah Museum of Art, 1995.
- Reynolds, Valrae. *From the Sacred Realm: Treasures of Tibetan Art from the Newark Museum*. New York and Munich, Germany: Prestel, 1999.
- Yamasaki Taikō. *Shingon: Japanese Esoteric Buddhism*, translated and adapted by Richard Peterson and Cynthia Peterson. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1988.

ANNE NISHIMURA MORSE

---

RINZAI ZEN. *See* Chan School

---

## RNYING MA (NYINGMA)

The Rnying ma (ancient) school is one of the four main schools of Tibetan Buddhism, the other three being the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU), the SA SKYA (SAKYA), and the DGE LUGS (GELUK). According to the Tibetan historical tradition, Buddhism arrived into Tibet in two waves. The "early spread" (*snga dar*) arrived over the seventh to the ninth centuries, during the height of the Tibetan empire, and the "later spread" (*phyi dar*) came after the late tenth century. Adherents of the Rnying ma school trace their roots back to Buddhism's early spread, while followers of the three newer (*gsar ma*) schools adhere to those traditions that arrived during the later spread. In this way, the Rnying ma school is defined in juxtaposition to the other schools of Tibetan Buddhism; *Rnying ma* as a term only began to be used in the eleventh century, after the later spread had begun.

From an early date, criticisms were leveled against the tantric traditions of the Rnying ma pa (adherents of the Rnying ma school). The period that separated the two waves of Buddhism (roughly 842–978 C.E.) witnessed the collapse of the Tibetan empire and a subsequent breakdown of any centralized authority. Buddhist monasteries throughout Tibet lost their official patronage and were closed down. Traditional

Tibetan histories unanimously portray these years as a “dark period,” a time of degeneration for Buddhism when, freed from the watchful eye of authoritative Buddhist institutions, the scattered local communities went astray. The response among the new schools was to reimport Buddhism from India, while the Rnying ma pa claimed that their Buddhism was a pure strand that had survived intact since the glory days of the Tibetan empire and Buddhism’s earlier spread. In the competitive atmosphere of Buddhism’s later spread, a TANTRA’s legitimacy depended on its being a translation from an Indian original. Many Rnying ma tantras came under suspicion for being Tibetan APOCRYPHA. A fair number of new works were certainly composed in Tibet, particularly during the creative disorder of the dark period.

Perhaps the most successful of the post-tenth-century Rnying ma pa responses to these accusations was their development of the “treasure” (*gter ma*) revelation system. Received in visionary encounters or discovered hidden in the physical landscape, these revelations were timely teachings attributed to the legendary (usually Indian) masters of the early imperial period. In this way, new Rnying ma works could surface under the protection of a canonical Indian origin. The Rnying ma school shares the system of treasure revelation with the non-Buddhist BON religion of Tibet, but generally speaking, none of the other schools made use of this strategy.

Also unique to the Rnying ma school and Bon is their highest category of Rnying ma teachings, called *Atiyoga* or *Rdzogs chen* (*Great Perfection*). This was the highest of the Rnying ma school’s nine vehicles (*theg pa dgu*), a hierarchical schema for organizing Buddhist teachings according to the sophistication of the view each advocated. After the eleventh century, the Rnying ma pa focused increasingly on the *Atiyoga* class of teachings, and the writings from this period are some of the most creative in Rnying ma literature. The development of *Rdzogs chen* culminated in the systematizing works by KLONG CHEN PA (LONGCHENPA) (1308–1363). This fourteenth-century master was also instrumental in sealing a new relationship between *Rdzogs chen* and PADMASAMBHAVA, the eighth-century tantric master who was instrumental in bringing Buddhism to Tibet. Since the eleventh century, the Rnying ma pa had looked to Padmasambhava as their principal founding father, but this master does not appear to have enjoyed a particularly close association with *Rdzogs chen* until the fourteenth century. Before

that, the most influential *Rdzogs chen* works were usually attributed to two other masters of Tibet’s early imperial period, Vairocana or Vimalamitra. By the end of the fourteenth century, however, Padmasambhava reigned supreme in the minds of the Rnying ma pa, over almost all aspects of their school.

In the seventeenth century the Rnying ma school became embroiled in the political turmoil that led to the fifth DALAI LAMA’s takeover of Tibet. The family of the fifth Dalai Lama (1617–1682) had maintained close contacts with the Rnying ma pa, particularly with the followers of the Northern Treasures (*byang gter*). As the Dalai Lama rose to power in the mid-seventeenth century, he brought his Rnying ma pa associates with him. Under his patronage, the period witnessed a sudden surge in large, new Rnying ma monasteries being founded throughout central and eastern Tibet.

This proliferation of monasteries engendered a shift in the character of the Rnying ma school toward large-scale monastic institutions and elaborate public festivals. The changes were spearheaded by a close associate of the Dalai Lama, Gter bdag gling pa (1646–1714), the founder of Smin grol gling Monastery. This master, together with his brother, Lochen Dharmaśrī (1654–1717), conducted extensive historical research into the Rnying ma school’s past; on the basis of his findings he formulated a new ritual tradition that could be shared by all of the new monasteries.

With the death of the fifth Dalai Lama and his regent, the Rnying ma pa lost their protection, and in 1717 the Mongolian Dzungars, themselves dogmatic supporters of the Dalai Lama’s own Dge lugs school, invaded central Tibet. During their short time there, the Dzungars looted the new Rnying ma monasteries of *Rdo rje brag* and *Smin grol gling*, executing the head lamas. But the work accomplished at *Smin grol gling* survived this blow, and the Rnying ma pas’ resolve to consolidate their school only strengthened over the next two centuries. An important element in this trend came with the late-eighteenth-century revelation of the *Klong chen snying thig* treasure cycle by ‘Jigs med gling pa (1730–1798). ‘Jigs med gling pa came from Khams in eastern Tibet, and his teachings were quickly adopted by all of the large new monasteries throughout this region.

The *Klong chen snying thig* (*Seminal Heart of the Great Expanse*) also inspired many of the great nineteenth-century lamas of eastern Tibet who were involved in the new nonsectarian (*ris med*) movement. This movement was based in Sde dge, the cultural capital of the

region. In reaction to the growing sectarianism throughout Tibet, those involved sought out common ground between the schools and developed massive new literary collections that could be shared by all the schools of Tibetan Buddhism. The Rnying ma philosophy of Rdzogs chen played a particularly important role in this movement. The shape of today's Rnying ma school derives directly from the efforts of these nonsectarian masters of the nineteenth century.

*See also:* Tibet

### **Bibliography**

- Germano, David. "Architecture and Absence in the Secret Tantric History of the Great Perfection (*rdzogs chen*)."  
*Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 17, no. 2 (1994): 203–335.
- Rinpoche, Dudjom. *The Nyingma School of Tibetan Buddhism: Its Fundamentals and History*, tr. Gyurme Dorje and Matthew Kapstein. Boston: Wisdom, 1991.
- Smith, E. Gene. *Among Tibetan Texts: History and Literature of the Himalayan Plateau*. Boston: Wisdom, 2001.
- Thondup, Tulku. *Masters of Miracles and Meditation: The Longchen Nyingthig Lineage of Tibetan Buddhism*. Boston: Shambala, 1996.

JACOB P. DALTON

---

## ROBES AND CLOTHING

Buddhist robes (*kāṣāya*; Chinese, *jiasha*; Japanese, *kesa*) originally reflected the ideals of a life of poverty and simplicity. The VINAYA or monastic codes permitted a monk only three rectangular pieces of cloth of different sizes for use as religious robes. The small-, medium-, and large-sized robes were worn alone or in combination with each other. These rectangular mantles had no tailoring and simply wrapped around the body. They resembled the clothing of ordinary people and therefore used distinctive colors, materials, and fabrication to distinguish the wearer as one who had left the ordinary world to embark upon the path to enlightenment. As Buddhism spread throughout Asia, the robes delineated in greater detail such things as rank and sectarian affiliations through further variations in color, materials, and fabrication. The robes also came to be regarded as merit-making objects themselves, requiring special treatment, much like any other ritual object.

### **Regulations for early Buddhist robes**

To differentiate Buddhist robes from the ordinary white robes of common people, the robes were dyed. Texts do not concur on the exact colors to be used, but most prohibit the use of undiluted primary colors. However, there is consensus that the preferred color is *kāṣāya*, which literally means impure, and came to refer to a reddish-yellow or brownish-yellow saffron or ochre color. THERAVĀDA monks still regularly wear this color; MAHĀYĀNA monks wear it less often. The actual shades vary, but the use of impure or mixed coloring is essential and emphasizes the teaching of nonattachment and nonpreference even for the color of one's robes. The use of impure or muddied color was such an important characteristic that the word, *kāṣāya*, became the common name for the robes themselves.

According to the PRECEPTS, the actual material for Buddhist robes was not as important as the humble origins of the material. The best material was that which had no value to others, such as unwanted and soiled rags. The precepts urged monks to be wearers of robes taken from the dust heap. While acceptable materials included silk, cotton, wool, hemp, and even fur, the most important characteristic was that they be tattered and defiled in some way, such as having been charred by fire, gnawed by rats, used as a shroud for the dead, or stained with menstrual blood, mucus, urine, or feces. Texts also caution against the use of embroidery and ornate weaving, a proscription later ignored. Plain, common materials are best, but the primary requirement is that they should not engender covetousness or attachment.

The third distinguishing feature of Buddhist robes is that they should be sewn from many pieces. Against charges that robes of whole cloth might reflect sensual enjoyment, the Buddha announced that robes made of uncut cloth should not be worn. Although in later passages of the Vinaya the Buddha allowed two of the three robes to be made of whole cloth, the standard *kāṣāya* was a patchwork marked by horizontal and vertical divisions. The Vinaya reference to patterns of rice fields bordered by embankments inspired the patchwork design of the *kāṣāya*.

Robes were patched together in vertical columns, always odd in number, and edged by a binding. The smallest of the three regulation robes had five columns, each comprised of one long and one short panel; the medium-sized robe had seven columns, each comprised of one short and two long panels; and the largest and most formal robe either had nine columns, each



made up of two long and one short panel, or twenty-five columns, each comprised of four long and one short panel. Figure 1 shows the pattern for a seven-columned medium-sized *kāṣāya*. Variations based on odd numbers of columns between nine and twenty-five also exist, and there are legends of unusual robes with more columns. Small square patches reinforce the material at the four outer corners and at spots where cords are attached. Buddhist robes did not have any kind of fastening until the disciple ĀNANDA's robes were blown by a breeze, and in order to maintain modesty the Buddha permitted the use of cords and buckles of wood, bone, or shell. Braided cords and buckles were common in East Asia, but not in Southeast and South Asia.

The precepts also reinforce the idea of the robe as ritual object regulated in size, shape, and methods of stitching. Moreover, various texts recommend that each stitch be accompanied by a bow or a MANTRA (incantation), and advise that robes be cleaned with purified water and stored on high shelves surrounded by flowers and incense. Before Japanese Sōtō Zen monks don their robes, for example, they make three prostrations, place the folded robe on top of their heads and chant a verse in praise of the robe as a garment of liberation. Clearly the color, materials, and fabrication transform common robes into mantles of piety that represent humility and require respect.

### **Buddhist robes as insignias of status, occasion, and sectarian affiliation**

Despite the Buddha's exhortations, changes occurred. One of the most noticeable was the East Asian practice of bordering the patched panels with a dark material, forming a robe of striking contrasts. Most significantly, the colder climates and customs of dress in East Asia led to the use of tailored garments worn beneath the *kāṣāya*. Established by the sixth century in China, these underrobes consisted of an upper garment that had neckband sleeves falling to the wrist, and a piece of pleated cloth used for a skirt, which Indian Buddhists had also used. In East Asia these two pieces eventually were sewn into a single kimono-like garment. In Japan a culotte type of skirt was also worn. The use of these underrobes changed the function of the *kāṣāya* in East Asia. *Kāṣāya* were no longer needed for warmth and modesty, but rather were used to convey rank, status, occasion, and sectarian affiliation.

The colors of a *kāṣāya* distinguished rank, status, and the level of formality of the occasion. To move from white to saffron robes signaled the advance from

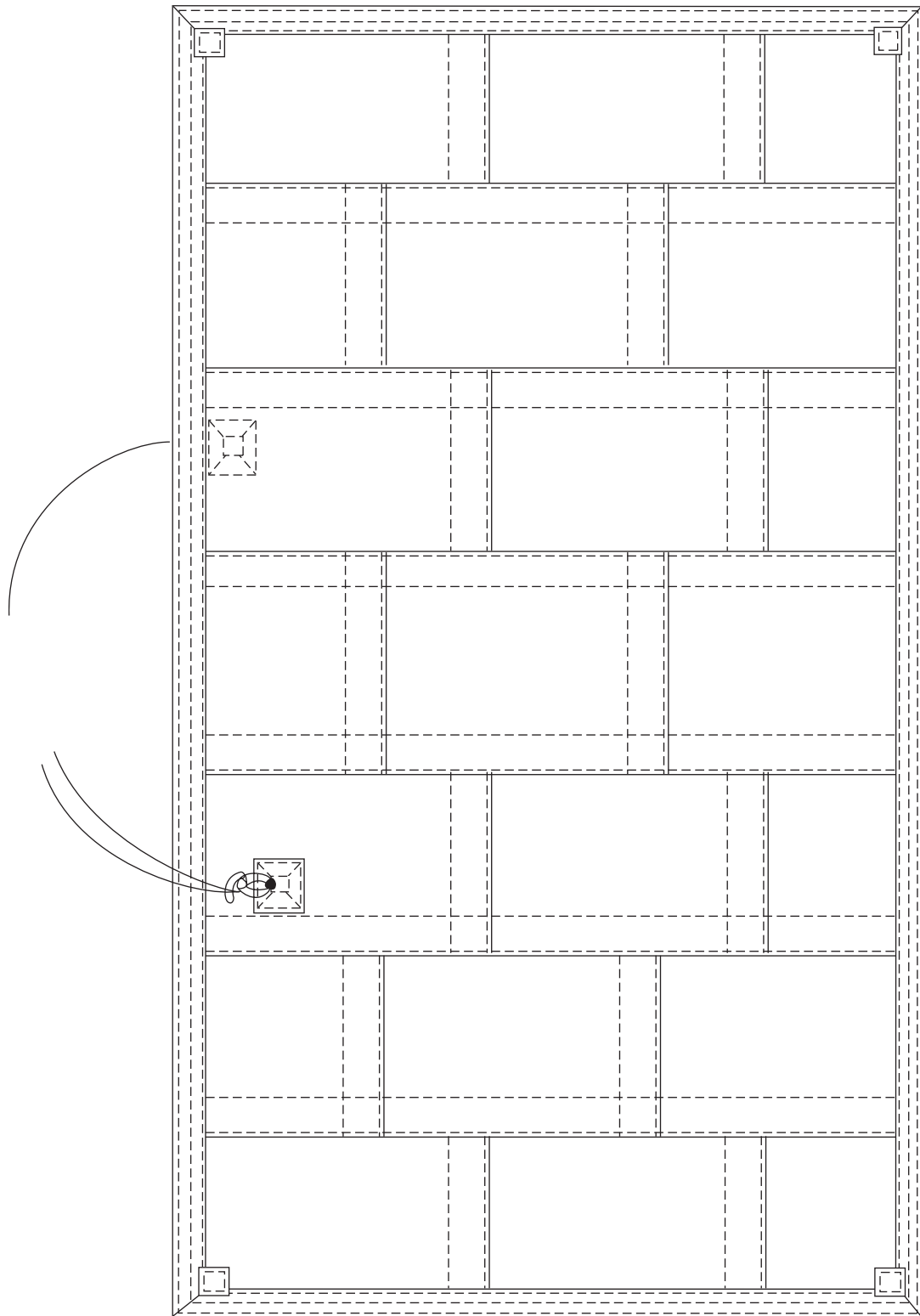
layman to monk in Thailand, just as the first level of novices in Japan today wear black and are permitted other robes only after receiving the formal transmission. East Asian Buddhists created complex systems of ecclesiastical ranks and offices modeled after those used at the imperial court, and they assigned certain colors to specific ranks. Martin Collcutt in *Five Mountains* (1981) describes the ranks and titles within medieval Japanese Zen monasteries. He notes that ordinary monks wore black underrobes and *kāṣāya*, but abbots wore robes of color. These colors depended not just on the individual's rank but also on the status of the particular monastery. For example, only abbots of the senior monastery of the highest status were permitted to wear deep-purple robes.

The propriety of colorful robes was debated at various times. However, religious leaders as divergent as PARAMĀRTHA (499–569), an Indian monk and translator of the sixth century, and DŌGEN (1200–1253), the founder of Sōtō Zen Buddhism in thirteenth-century Japan, affirmed that while muddy ochre may be best, robes of blue, yellow, red, black, purple, or a combination of these colors were permissible. Occasion also governed the selection of the robe's color. For example, in 1561 the New Pure Land sect decreed that henceforth their monks would wear white underrobes for happy events such as weddings, black underrobes for solemn occasions such as funerals, and colored underrobes for other ceremonial functions.

Another indication of a monk's rank was the quality of the *kāṣāya* material. Many *kāṣāya* for high-ranking monks in East Asia were made of exquisite brocades decorated with gold leaf, gold threads, and embroidery. These refinements were justified as marks of respect appropriate for robes that were devotional objects rather than ordinary garments. The precepts themselves also permit the use of donated materials, which could be refined, and this led to greater diversity of materials. The Vinaya relates the story of Jivaka, who received an especially beautiful cloth from a king. When he asked the Buddha if it were permissible to wear such a cloth, the Buddha approved, saying that the monks were free to wear rag robes or to accept householders' garments, although it would be best to cut them. The status and fervor of the donor as well as the rank of the recipient were reflected in the quality of the donations, and thus donors contributed the most valuable materials they could afford. During the seventeenth through nineteenth centuries in Japan, for example, believers donated fragments of bright and richly decorated theatrical garments for monks to

**FIGURE 1**

**Seven-columned kāṣāya**



SOURCE: Adapted from Kyūma (1994), p. 48.

patch together for robes. In modern times, Japanese congregations sometimes solicit funds to provide their monks with beautiful and expensive *kāṣāya*, which can cost up to \$100,000. Even these fabrics, however, are still cut or overstitched to resemble the patchwork required by the Buddha's directive.

Other indications of rank and formality of occasion include the number of columns in the *kāṣāya*, five columns for ordinary monks and occasions, and seven and nine columns for high-ranking monks and more formal events. Even the fastening cords were color coded to rank. Certain accessories also emphasized rank. The head scarf or hood that was worn initially by important Tiantai monks, for example, originated from the story that ZHIYI (538–597), the Chinese founder of Tiantai School Buddhism, received a gift of a sleeve from the emperor to wear on his head for protection against the severe cold as he administered the PRECEPTS. Recalling this legend, the Japanese emperor also gave a sleeve for use as a hood to SAICHŌ (767–822), who introduced Tiantai (Japanese, Tendai) Buddhism to Japan. Later, other sects adopted the sleeve-like headdress.

Sectarian regulations were complex and underwent many revisions in the twentieth century. Japanese underrobes, for example, often have crests that symbolize particular sects, and sometimes *kāṣāya* incorporate scenes from the life of the sect's founder. Also in Japan, the abbreviated, folded *kāṣāya* forming long narrow bands vary in style according to sect. They are worn across the chest in the NICHIREN SCHOOL or sect, and as circlets around the neck in the New Pure Land sect, while Zen sects retain the use of a biblike abbreviated *kāṣāya*. Laypeople also wear the abbreviated *kāṣāya* around their necks as badges of affiliation and piety. While Buddhist robes convey shared ideals and meanings, it is clear that the color, materials, and fabrication can also distinguish the wearers from one another.

### Buddhist robes as devotional objects

*Kāṣāya* are also objects of spiritual charisma that function as devotional objects and amulets. The robes of great religious teachers are passed down to disciples as evidence of transmission of the teachings, and they function as proof of spiritual LINEAGE. DŌGEN, in the chapter on "The Merits of the Buddhist Robe" in his *Shōbōgenzō* (*Treasury of the True Dharma Eye*), argues that *kāṣāya* are more important than Buddhist relics. The association of robes with relics is suggested too by the occasional deposit of robes within Buddhist sculptures along with sūtras and other valuable objects.

Dōgen further argues that the Buddha himself told his monks to think of their robe as a STŪPA, that is, as a reliquary. And, in fact, relics and other precious objects were sometimes sewn into the backs of the robes. *Kāṣāya* were also visualized as altars, with the patches in the four corners representing the four Heavenly Kings that protect the four corners of the altar. The central patch was considered the seat of the Buddha, and the two patches on either side as the attendants to the Buddha.

The *kāṣāya* derives its spiritual worth from its ability to induce enlightenment and create merit. Tales of its power abound from India to Japan. Two famous examples include the story of Utpalavarnā, a prostitute in a previous life, who had once dressed herself in a *kāṣāya* as a joke. Despite her many sins, this action, even though it was in jest, produced sufficient merit to eventually lead her to enlightenment. Similarly, a JĀTAKA tale tells of the Buddha's previous life as a lion that was tricked into allowing a hunter to approach because the hunter had disguised himself and hid his weapons within a *kāṣāya*. Realizing the ruse, the lion nevertheless sacrificed himself rather than hurt a person dressed in Buddhist robes. In short, the *kāṣāya* produced merit and provided protection, and laypeople sometimes made miniature *kāṣāya* to carry with them as amulets at all times.

The Buddhist robe is layered with meanings. It can symbolize simplicity or splendor and can convey identities of place and position. As Dōgen suggested, its essential importance lies in the fact that wearing this humble robe plants the seed of enlightenment and destroys the poisonous arrows of delusion.

*See also:* Etiquette; Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relics Cults

### Bibliography

- Collcutt, Martin. *Five Mountains: The Rinzaï Zen Monastic Institution in Medieval Japan*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Council on East Asian Studies and Harvard University Press, 1981.
- Dōgen Zenji. *Shōbōgenzō*, tr. Nishiyama Kosen. Tokyo: Nakayama Shobo, 1988.
- Faure, Bernard. "Quand l'habit fait le moine: The Symbolism of the Kāṣāya in Sōtō Zen." *Cahiers d'Extreme-Asie* 9 (1995): 335–369.
- Griswold, A. B. "Prolegomena to the Study of the Buddha's Dress in Chinese Sculpture." *Artibus Asiae* 26, no. 2 (1963): 85–131.

Kennedy, Alan. *Manteau de Nuages: Kesa Japonais*. Paris: Réunion des Musées Nationaux, 1992.

Kyūma, Echū. *Kesa no hanashi*. Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 1994.

Till, Barry, and Swart, Paula. *Kesa: The Elegance of Japanese Monks' Robes*. Victoria, BC: Art Gallery of Greater Victoria, 1996.

WILLA JANE TANABE

---

## RYŌKAN

Ryōkan (Taigu, 1758–1831) was the eldest son of a prosperous family in a port town of northwest Japan. He was ordained at the age of seventeen as a Sōtō Zen monk. After ten years of monastic training and five years of wandering Ryōkan returned to his home district, where he lived alone in a mountain hermitage. He maintained no ties to the Buddhist institutions, preferring a life of simplicity and poverty, writing poetry and practicing solitary meditation. He supported himself by the traditional practice of begging for alms, often stopping to play with children or to drink with the farmers. Gradually his fame spread and he became widely known as a poet and calligrapher. Scholars and writers traveled from far away to see him. The last three years of his life he became close friends with

Teishin, a beautiful young nun who was an accomplished poet.

Ryōkan's poetry describes the fleeting details of his rural life with both joy and sadness, adding occasional references to Buddhism and classical allusions. He wrote in both Japanese and literary Chinese, often bending or ignoring rules of composition in favor of common speech. Beneath this surface of transparent simplicity is Ryōkan's great erudition in the most ancient classics of both Japanese and Chinese poetry. His unparalleled popularity in contemporary Japan comes both from his poetry and from the ideal of his life. Ryōkan is seen as one who achieved religious awakening in the midst of ordinary events, living a life that embodied the ideal of the unity of the mundane and transcendent.

*See also: Japanese, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in; Poetry and Buddhism*

### *Bibliography*

Abé, Ryūichi, and Haskel, Peter. *Great Fool, Zen Master Ryōkan: Poems, Letters, and Other Writings*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1996.

Yuasa, Noboyuki. *The Zen Poems of Ryōkan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1981.

DAVID E. RIGGS

*This page intentionally left blank*

# S



SAHA WORLD. *See* Cosmology

---

## SAICHŌ

Saichō (767–822), posthumously known as Dengyō Dai-shi, was the founder of the Japanese Tendai (Chinese, Tiantai) school. He was a prolific scholar, and is best known for his efforts to reform monastic regulations and to create a new system of ordination for monks.

Soon after he was ordained in the capital city of Nara, Saichō began studying and meditating at Mount Hiei, just northeast of Kyoto, in 785. When the capital moved to Kyoto in 794, Saichō was no longer distant from the political center. Enryakuji, which he built atop of Mount Hiei, became the training ground for Japan's most illustrious Buddhist monks for the next four centuries. Although Enryakuji was a Tendai monastery, Saichō's original interests, as well as later developments, incorporated a diverse body of Buddhist practices, including Japanese Zen and Pure Land, and a strong emphasis on tantric Buddhism. Saichō's initial vision for a monastic center was motivated by his desire to purify and strengthen the spirit of Buddhist practice in Japan. He eventually proposed that Tendai monks be exempted from the government requirement to be ordained in Nara and, moreover, that Mount Hiei should house a center where monks could be ordained under Mahāyāna precepts that traditionally made no distinction between monastic and lay practitioners. His criticism of the doctrine and practice of the Nara Buddhist schools, particularly Hossō, resulted in strong opposition to his proposals. Nonetheless, the new ordination center was built shortly after his death. As a result, the Tendai school became a

sectarian institution independent from Nara, and its monks became free from the vinaya.

*See also:* Mahāyāna Precepts in Japan; Nara Buddhism; Tiantai School

### *Bibliography*

- Abé, Ryūichi. "Saichō and Kukai: A Conflict of Interpretations." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22, nos. 1–2 (1995): 103–137.
- Groner, Paul. *Saichō and the Establishment of the Japanese Tendai School*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2000.
- Weinstein, Stanley. "The Beginnings of Esoteric Buddhism in Japan: The Neglected Tendai Tradition." *Journal of Asian Studies* 34, no. 1 (1974): 177–191.

DAVID L. GARDINER

---

SAKYA. *See* Sa skya (Sakya)

---

ŚĀKYAMUNI. *See* Buddha(s); Buddha Images

---

SAMĀDHI. *See* Meditation

---

## SAṂDHINIRMOCANA-SŪTRA

Probably originally composed sometime around the fourth century B.C.E. in India, the *Samḍhinirmocana-sūtra* (*Discourse Explaining the Thought or Sūtra on*

*Unfurling the Real Meaning*) is today extant only in Chinese and Tibetan versions (Chinese, *Jie shenmi jing*; Tibetan, *Dgongs pa nges par 'grel pa'i mdo*). As its title indicates, the text claims to provide definitive explanations for contradictory statements in earlier sūtras. It is divided into ten chapters, each of which has a main interlocutor who asks the Buddha to explain the intentions behind earlier statements attributed to him. All of the interlocutors are identified as BODHISATTVAS on the tenth stage (*bhūmi*), and the discourse is set in a heavenly realm. These tropes are apparently intended to establish the text as the definitive statement on contentious doctrinal issues.

The first four chapters focus on a discussion of the ultimate truth (*paramārtha*). The fifth contains a seminal description of the *storehouse consciousness* (ĀLAYA-VIJÑĀNA), and the sixth explains the notion of the *three characteristics* (*trilakṣaṇa*) of phenomena (imputational, other-dependent, and thoroughly real). The seventh chapter is mainly concerned with outlining principles of Buddhist HERMENEUTICS, and the eighth focuses on MEDITATION theory and practice. The ninth chapter describes the bodhisattva PATH, and the final chapter is concerned with the characteristics of buddhahood, the culmination of the practices the text describes.

The *Samḍhinirmocana-sūtra* became the main scriptural source for the YOGĀCARA SCHOOL, one of the two main philosophical traditions of Indian MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism (the other being Madhyamaka). It figures prominently in the thought of ASAṄGA (ca. 320–390), VASUBANDHU (fourth century C.E.), and their commentators, and inspired a voluminous literature in Tibet that is based on TSONG KHA PA'S *Legs bshad snying po* (*Essence of Good Explanations*).

### Bibliography

Powers, John. *Hermeneutics and Tradition in the Samḍhinirmocana-sūtra*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1993.

Powers, John, trans. *Wisdom of Buddha: The Samḍhinirmocana-sūtra*. Berkeley, CA: Dharma, 1995.

JOHN POWERS

## SAMGUK YUSA (MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS)

The *Samguk yusa* (*Memorabilia of the Three Kingdoms*) is a collection of myths, anecdotes, and short stories from ancient Korea, mostly from the kingdom of Silla. The text was compiled around 1285, after the Mongol

subjugation of Korea, by the Buddhist monk Iryōn (Kim Kyōnmyōng, 1206–1289) and contains at least one later insertion by his disciple Mugūk (d.u.). Little is known about the text prior to 1512. The title word *yusa* (Chinese, *yishi*) suggests that the text was meant to serve as an unofficial supplement to an official work, perhaps the *Samguk sagi* (*Historical Records of the Three Kingdoms*), compiled by Kim Pusik between 1136 and 1145. *Samguk yusa* is roughly modeled after the *Lidai fabao ji* (*Record of the Dharma-Jewel over Successive Generations*, ca. 780) and the *Taiping guangji* (*Expanded Tales of the Taiping Era*, compiled 977–978) in form and content.

The *Samguk yusa* is comprised of five chapters. The first chapter begins with a dynastic chronology and follows with the foundation myths of the native Korean kingdoms and other traditional narratives dating from before Silla's conquest of the other kingdoms. The second chapter contains tales from the peninsular wars for unification, as well as postunification dynastic and other tales. The third chapter is comprised of two sections subtitled "The Flourishing of the Dharma" and "Stūpas and Images," which present the Buddhist perspective of the transmission of the religion to the peninsula and tales about the miraculous founding and history of particular sacred or cultic sites. The fourth chapter, "Exegetes," contains hagiographies of eminent Silla scholastic monks. The fifth chapter is divided into four subsections titled (1) "Divine Spells," hagiographies of Buddhist monks who specialize in working miracles through chanting DHĀRAṆĪ and sūtras; (2) "Thaumaturges," stories of individuals, particularly Buddhist monks, who possess magic powers; (3) "Escape and Seclusion," stories of people who escaped this mortal realm; and (4) "Filial Piety and Virtue," traditional narratives of filial sons and virtuous daughters.

See also: Korea; Korean, Buddhist Influences on Vernacular Literature in

### Bibliography

Ha, Tae-Hung, and Mintz, Grafton K., trans. *Samguk Yusa: Legends and History of the Three Kingdoms of Ancient Korea*. Seoul: Yonsei University Press, 1972.

RICHARD D. McBRIDE II

## SAMŚĀRA

Samśāra (wandering) is a term referring to the beginningless cycle of birth, DEATH, and REBIRTH and a

process characterized by mental and physical DUḤKHA (SUFFERING). This ongoing series of lives is determined by the moral quality of an individual's thoughts and KARMA (ACTION) in this life and in previous lives. It is generally postulated that within saṃsāra the effects of good moral actions lead to wholesome rebirths, while the effects of bad moral actions lead inevitably to unwholesome rebirths. Liberation (NIRVĀṆA), release from the cycle altogether, is achieved only by those individuals who gain correct insight and realization of the truth of the Buddha's teachings.

Saṃsāra is divided cosmologically into five (sometimes six) distinct realms of existence, within which living beings are reborn in dependence upon their karma. These places of rebirth include the realms of DIVINITIES (deva), human beings (*manuṣya*), animals (*tiryak*), spirits of the dead or hungry ghosts (preta), and the hells (*naraka*). When the list of five realms is expanded to six, the place of demigods (asura) is added below the god realm. Life in any one of these realms is never eternal and never free from the prospect of suffering. Whether wandering temporarily in the higher realms of gods and humans or in the lower realms of animals, ghosts, and the denizens of hell, all living beings experience the sufferings of birth, death, and rebirth. Saṃsāra and the realms of rebirth are depicted in paintings of the wheel of life (*bhavacakra*), which are especially common in Tibet.

Liberation from the cycle of saṃsāra is not always the immediate goal of Buddhism. In some Buddhist traditions, particularly in East Asia, greater emphasis is placed on rebirth in a buddha's pure land (Chinese, *jingtu*; Japanese, *jōdo*). The pure lands are purified buddha-fields (Sanskrit, *buddhakṣetra*) or paradises, which are free from mental and physical suffering and watched over by a particular buddha. Dissenting opinions exist about the exact location of the PURE LANDS. Some place them within the realms of saṃsāra, and others place them outside the cycle altogether. Rebirth in one of the pure lands is determined less by karma and more by sincere FAITH and aspiration to be reborn there. The compassionate assistance of the buddha who resides in the pure land is also a decisive factor in securing rebirth in such an auspicious realm. Among the most popular pure lands are AMITĀBHA's Land of Bliss (Sukhāvātī) and AKṢOBHYA's Land of Delight (Abhirati).

See also: **Cosmology**

### Bibliography

- Jamgön Kongtrül Lodrö Tayé. *Myriad Worlds: Buddhist Cosmology in Abhidharma, Kālacakra, and Dzog-chen*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1995.
- Sadakata, Akira. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origins*, tr. Gaynor Sekimori. Tokyo: Kōsei, 1997.

BRYAN J. CUEVAS

---

SAMYE DEBATE. See **Bsam yas Debate**

---

### SĀÑCĪ

Sāñcī's extensive monastic complexes occupy a hilltop near the prosperous Indian town of Vidiṣa, where major road and river routes intersect. Its many free-standing pillars, STŪPAS, temples, assembly halls, and monastic residences (vihāras) date from the reign of King AŚOKA (third century B.C.E.) to around 1200 C.E., making it one of the oldest and most constantly occupied extant Buddhist sites. A small flat-roofed Gupta temple (ca. fourth century C.E.) is probably the earliest extant stone temple in South Asia. Many structures were erected on the foundations of earlier ones. Begun during Aśoka's rule, an apsidal temple complex (no. 40) was enlarged in Śuṅga times (ca. second to first centuries B.C.E.) and again later. Four quadrangular dry-masonry vihāras belong to the seventh century C.E. Two of these were double-storied, while another incorporated a stone-faced temple with a northern-style tower in its eastern wall. As at AJAṆṬĀ, Sāñcī's early stūpas are unadorned and austere, while a Buddha image graces its Gupta stūpa. Here too, Buddha images do not replace stūpas; rather the two coexist.

Dominating the hilltop, the Great Stūpa's core of Mauryan bricks and the edict pillar beside it suggest Aśoka may have built it as part of his legendary redistribution of the Buddha's bodily relics (*śarīra*). During the Śuṅga period, the stūpa was doubled in size to its present diameter of thirty-six meters. A railed berm accessed by a double staircase was also added to the dome, and an identical but more massive stone railing with openings at the cardinal directions enclosed the sacred precinct. These unadorned railings defined circumambulatory passages where Buddhist devotees could perform the basic rite of worshiping their lord's relics.



In the Śātavāhana period (ca. 150 C.E.), towering gateways consisting of two pillars bearing three architraves were erected at each railing opening. Every surface was carved with tumultuous and naturalistic reliefs that constantly threaten to break free from their architecturally defined, linear frames and the rock matrix. In comparison with Bhārhut (first century B.C.E.), Sāñcī has proportionately more narrative scenes of Aśoka and of animals worshipping the Buddha's living presence in relics such as the bodhi tree and the stūpas, as well as more scenes from the Buddha's life and far fewer JĀTAKAS. Sāñcī's narratives typically include scenes of worshipping crowds moving freely in space. Style and meaning cohere in expressing the unself-conscious and unrestrained joyousness that often characterizes devotional worship (bhakti). Loaded up with auspicious actions, motifs, and figures, Sāñcī's gates simultaneously honor the sacred precinct and protect its liminal openings against negative powers seeking to enter. What better way to do so than by representing and invoking the power of worship?

The Great Stūpa's six hundred short inscriptions in Prakrit attest to a pattern of collective, multiple donation typifying early Buddhist patronage. Accounting for a third of all donations, monks and nuns form the largest donor group. Next come merchants crisscrossing the subcontinent. Donors include a guild of ivory-carvers and the Śātavāhana king's chief artisan.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; India, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture; Relics and Relics Cult

### Bibliography

- Cunningham, Alexander. *The Bhilsa Topes; or, Buddhist Monuments of Central India* (1854). Reprint, Varanasi, India: Indological Book House, 1966.
- Dehejia, Vidya, ed. *Unseen Presence: The Buddha and Sanchi*. Bombay: Marg, 1966.
- Maisey, Fredrick Charles. *Sanchi and Its Remains: A Full Description of the Ancient Buildings, Sculptures, and Inscriptions* (1892). Reprint, Delhi: Indological Book House, 1972.
- Marshall, John Hubert. *The Monuments of Sāñcī*. London: Probsthain, 1940.
- Marshall, John Hubert. *A Guide to Sanchi*, 3rd edition. Delhi: Manager of Publications, 1955.

LEELA ADITI WOOD

## SAṄGHA

The saṅgha (community) is the third of the three Buddhist REFUGES, or JEWELS (*triratna*), of BUDDHA, DHARMA, and saṅgha. The word *saṅgha* literally means “that which is well struck together”; it derives from a Sanskrit root, *han* (to strike), with the prefix *sam* conveying a sense of togetherness and completeness. The idea is that the true Buddhist community is well hammered together, impervious to schism, and in perfect harmony. From the very earliest period the undisputed focus of Buddhist WORSHIP has been the saṅgha, together with the Buddha and dharma, and the statement *buddhaṃ śaraṇaṃ gacchāmi, dharmaṃ śaraṇaṃ gacchāmi, saṅghaṃ śaraṇaṃ gacchāmi* (I go for refuge to the Buddha, I go for refuge to the dharma, I go for refuge to the saṅgha) has been the primary, shared affirmation of Buddhists.

### Idealized community

The traditional explanation of saṅgha describes it not as a community of ordinary monks and nuns belonging to a Buddhist order, but as a special community of eight noble beings called *āryas* (Pāli, *ariyas*) who carry in their hearts the liberating dharma. They are described in the *Ratana-sutta* of the *Cullavagga* of the *Sutta Nipāta* (II.1.6–7), one of the very earliest Buddhist teachings: “The eight persons praised by the virtuous are four pairs. They are the disciples of the Buddha and are worthy of offerings. Gifts given to them yield rich results . . . free from afflictions they have obtained . . . the state beyond death. This is the precious saṅgha jewel.”

The first pair of noble beings are those who have reached, or are on their way to, the state of the ARHAT (one worthy of praise and offerings). The arhats, like the Buddha, have found liberation from unending SAṂSĀRA (the cycle of birth and death). The three other pairs of noble beings are those who, if not arhats, have reached, or are on their way to, the state of *anāgāmin*; that is, they are nonreturners to this ordinary world, which is dominated by sense gratification. If they are not yet at that stage of development, they have reached, or are on their way to, the state of *sakṛdāgāmin* (once-returners), and they will return once more to this ordinary world. The fourth pair of noble beings are *srota-āpannas*, stream-enterers, who have obtained, or are on their way to obtaining, a state where they may return to this ordinary world up to seven more times before they reach the goal of liberation at the end of

the PATH. They are called *stream-enterers* because the stream of the dharma, the understanding of the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS that systematize the content of the Buddha's liberating teaching, has become one with the stream of their minds. In this traditional understanding of the saṅgha, the Buddha, as an arhat, is a member of the saṅgha, and embodies the dharma as well.

The salvific function of the saṅgha has been much discussed. Traditional explanations liken it to a nurse who helps a patient take the medicine (the dharma) that is prescribed by the Buddha, who is likened to a perfect doctor. Early Indian Buddhism (*Majjhimani-kāya* 75, 105), perhaps drawing on ancient Indian medical theory (e.g., *Caraka-saṃhitā* 9.19), claims that the Buddha or TATHĀGATA (one who knows things as they are) can only teach disciples the path to the end of suffering, he cannot “wash away the sufferings of others by hand” (*Udanavārga*). The suffering person effects his or her own cure by putting into practice the eight-fold path to freedom taught by the Buddha. Salvific power resides in the dharma, not in the Buddha or in the saṅgha, and according to early Buddhist texts, not in monks or nuns, either as individuals or as a group.

### History of the early community

The earliest parts of the Buddhist canon extant in Pāli suggest that the original historical community consisted of those engaging in ascetic endeavors as śramaṇas (Pāli, *samaṇa*) and *pravrajika* (Pāli, *pabbajita*; those gone forth into homelessness). Buddhist ascetics were distinguishable from other similar groups of mendicants primarily by their dislike of intellectual disputation, their avoidance of extreme asceticism, their shared admiration for Gautama Śākyamuni, and a commitment to mental cultivation or MEDITATION (*Sutta Nipāta* 2). Whereas the very earliest members of the community had no fixed monasteries, and sheltered under trees or in caves, the difficulty of traveling during the rainy season soon led members to take shelter in permanent buildings. It is likely that householders and wealthy patrons who originally gave alms without discrimination to all religious mendicants, be they Jainas, Ājīvikas, or orthodox followers of the Veda, over time began to favor the followers of Gautama Buddha and to understand themselves as responsible for their sustenance and well-being. This led to the basic division of the community into bhikṣu (Pāli, *bhikkhu*; MONKS) and *bhikṣuṇī* (Pāli, *bhikkhunī*; NUNS), words that literally mean “beggars,” and *upāsaka* and *upāsikā* (male and female LAITY). According to tra-

dition, ĀNANDA, the personal attendant of Gautama, asked that women be admitted into the community, and the first Buddhist nun was MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ, the Buddha's aunt.

Entrance into the community was originally earned simply by answering the Buddha's call to come forward. When charismatics like ŚĀRIPUTRA and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, with considerable followings of their own, became Gautama's disciples, the community grew considerably larger. Even before Gautama's demise it is probable that senior members of the community were allowed to induct new members by having them recite the refuge formula (I go for refuge to the Buddha, etc.) three times. Gradually a more complex *upasampadā* (ritual ordination) came into being. By that time, ORDINATION meant ordination as a monk or nun, and for practical purposes the Buddhist community became equivalent to the community of monks and nuns, though the community of the four assemblies (monks, nuns, and male and female laity) was also recognized.

The history of the community of Buddhist monks and nuns over its first five hundred years is primarily a history of *saṃgīti* (councils) and *nikāya* (ordination lineages or schools). Immediately after the death of the Buddha, members of the fledgling community met in what was later called the First Council to record the Buddha's teachings. Probably the earliest codification of community rules, the PRĀTIMOKṢA, was formulated at about that time. Prātimokṣa may originally have meant “anti-dissipatory,” and its recitation was the main factor connecting the various *nikāyas*, which were already growing separate because of geography, loyalty to particular charismatic monks, and minor disagreements over discipline.

The Second Council took place about a hundred years after the death of the Buddha. By that time the basic constitution of the community of monks and nuns, and most of the rules and rituals relating to monastic discipline and procedure, had already been codified. The texts in which this codification is found are together called the VINAYA (discipline). These texts comprise the first of the three sections of the *tripiṭaka* (the Buddhist CANON). The *Vinaya Piṭaka* consists of three main sections: (1) the *Vinaya-vibhaṅga*, a list of personal rules for the different levels of ordination along with stories about how they came into being; (2) the *Skandhaka* (Pāli, *Khandhaka*), an explanation of the rules governing community procedures, such as

admission to the order and the conducting of the rains-retreat; and (3) the *Parivāra*, a compendium of additional materials.

The vinaya texts list seven different sets of rules for junior and senior members of the community. Besides the rules for the bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs* (fully ordained monks and nuns), there are also sets of rules for male and female novices. The further special set of rules for probationary nuns probably reflects a stage in the gradual elimination of the female component of the community. The *bhikṣuṇī* component of the community eventually died out in India, though it has continued in China and Korea to the present day.

The morality expected of all members of the monastic community is given in the *prātimokṣa*. At its core are four basic rules of defeat (*pārājika*): to refrain from taking life, from taking what is not offered freely, from sexual activity, and from lying about spiritual attainments. Transgression of any of these rules entails expulsion from the order. The different *nikāyas* list slightly different totals for the number of rules, ranging from about 350 for the full *bhikṣuṇī* down to about thirteen for novices. Among these rules are some that enjoin on members of the community the yellow-, maroon-, or blue-colored robes, the begging bowl, the *kuṭi* (monastic cell), and dietary habits such as not eating in the afternoon and not keeping food overnight.

The first major split in the saṅgha occurred between the MĀHĀSĀMĠHIKAS (the Great Assembly, or Majorityists) and the Sthaviras (elders). Since most of what we know about the early history of the Buddhist order comes from the *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*), a history written in Pāli from the particular viewpoint of monks of the ancient Mahāvihāra monastery in Sri Lanka (the *nikāya* from which the present-day THERAVĀDA school understands itself to originate), there has been a tendency to overemphasize the differences between different Buddhist *nikāyas*, and to see them as sects fundamentally opposed to each other, rather than as different saṅghas, each connected through the same basic *prātimokṣa*.

The community of Buddhist monks and nuns has never been a monolithic entity. It is possible that its basic decentralized structure, characterized by the absence of a strong central ruler in favor of consensual assemblies, reflects the customs of the Śākyas, part of the Vṛjji (Pāli, Vajji) confederation in the area of north-central India where Śākyamuni (“the sage of the Śākyas”) was born. Although diversity was an integral part of the Buddhist community from an early period,

the early *nikāyas* were careful to formulate themselves in ways that avoided formal schism. Even after the Māhāsāṃghika/Sthavira schism, there was no fundamental split in the saṅgha, and it is an error to imagine that the split into HĪNAYĀNA and MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism was based on irreconcilable differences between these early *nikāyas*.

There were at least eighteen early Buddhist *nikāyas*, some of which give their names to later schools of Buddhist practice and philosophy. Many, if not all, recited the *prātimokṣa* in their own vernacular language, and it is likely that each also had a vinaya, and perhaps an entire *tripiṭaka*. The complete *tripiṭaka* of the Mahāvihāra *nikāya*, or Theravāda school, written in Pāli, became available to European-language scholars in the nineteenth century.

Although the original versions of the *Vinaya Piṭaka* of many of the other schools have been lost, except for occasional texts and fragments, some are extant in Chinese and Tibetan translation. Among them, the *Dharmaguptaka-vinaya* in particular was followed in China and countries strongly influenced by Chinese Buddhism, and the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA was followed in Tibet and the regions influenced by it.

Each saṅgha was (and still is to a great extent) defined by a shared recitation of the *prātimokṣa* at a bimonthly *poṣadha* (Pāli, *uposatha*; confession or restoration-of-morality ceremony) carried out while scrupulously following *karmavacana* (Pāli, *kammavācā*; prescribed formula) and ritual action dictated by tradition. Also defining of a community are two other ritual activities: setting up the *sīmā* (established boundaries) for the *varṣavāsa* (rains-retreat; Pāli, *vassavāsa*) and the ritual crossing of those boundaries at the end of the retreat. This custom probably dates back to the original followers of Gautama and to the places where buildings were located for groups of monks and nuns to spend the rainy season. A minimum of ten, or in some cases five, fully ordained members of a saṅgha constitute the required quorum. The presence or absence of these defining acts of a saṅgha is the basic criterion for deciding whether or not the *śāsana* (Pāli, *sāsana*; Buddhist teaching) is or is not present in a particular region. Members of different communities keep basically the same rules, but they do not attend each others' ceremonies and they do not form a single saṅgha, except in the sense that they symbolize, through their clothes and adherence to the rules in the *prātimokṣa*, the community of noble beings described above.



Tibetan monks sitting together during a ceremony at a monastery in Himachal Pradesh, India. © Lindsay Hebbard/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

### **Mahāyāna and Tantric saṅghas**

We can see clearly in Edward Conze's translation of the *Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom* (p. 66 ff.) that the idealized Mahāyāna community is based on the eight noble beings. In addition to the eight noble beings of earlier Buddhism, however, the Mahāyāna community also includes *BODHISATTVAS* and buddhas. These are theoretically infinite in number, but best known amongst them are the eight bodhisattvas, including Mañjuśrī, Avalokiteśvara, Kṣitigarbha, and so on, and the buddhas AKṢOBHYA, AMITĀBHA, and Vairocana. These noble bodhisattvas and buddhas are sometimes called "celestial" because they are located not in this ordinary world, but on a *bhūmi* (high spiritual level) or in a fabulous *buddhakṣetra* (buddha-field or pure land).

Mahāyāna tradition holds that bodhisattvas and buddhas are not motivated by *NIRVĀṆA*, the partial freedom from *REBIRTH* attained by the eight noble beings. They instead produce *BODHICITTA* (thought of enlightenment), attain *samyaksaṃbodhi* (right and perfect enlightenment), become buddhas, and work for countless ages for the benefit of the world. Noble bo-

dhisattvas are on their way to attaining, and buddhas have actually attained, an everlasting enlightenment that shows itself in manifold ways appropriate for the benefit of the world. The Mahāyāna scriptures therefore claim that the Buddhist community is present in the world to a much greater degree and in many different forms compared to the community of the eight noble beings that is described in the scriptures of the *MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS*.

In Buddhist *TANTRA*, the idealized community is understood to be pervaded by the nature of the guru and further augmented by *VIDYĀDHARA* (knowledge holders or sorcerers). *Vidyādhara* are said to be highly motivated bodhisattvas who utilize esoteric meditation, including sexual pleasure, to quickly attain high spiritual goals. Also given importance in the idealized tantric community are wrathful female figures (*ḌĀKINĪ*), personal meditation deities (*iṣṭadevatā*), and dharma protectors (*dharmapāla*).

The differences between actual historical Mahāyāna and pre-Mahāyāna communities have not been conclusively determined. The records of early Chinese travelers in India suggest that both functioned equally

as communities of monks, sometimes even including members of the same *nikāya*. As for the historical tantric communities, they are also largely an object of speculation. Ronald Davidson has suggested tribal origins for some of them. It is likely that some tantric saṅghas formed around charismatic tantric masters (*vajrācārya*) and held ritual meetings (*gaṇacakra*) and other rites as a group. David Gellner has shown that such groups still exist amongst the Newar Buddhists of Nepal.

### Modern Buddhist communities

There has been a tendency in European writing since the end of the colonial period to associate Buddhist saṅghas with the emergence and legitimization of the nation-state. Thus it is customary to talk about the Thai saṅgha, Burmese saṅgha, Tibetan Buddhists, Chinese Buddhists, and so on. While this approach clearly has some descriptive value, it is misleading if it suggests a basic change from earlier *nikāya* structure. For example, in modern Sri Lanka the three *nikāyas* are divided on the basis of caste and do not cross each other's boundaries; in Tibet *nikāyas* are divided on the basis of regions, monastic colleges, or sects that may have strong antipathy to each other. Nevertheless, it is clear that for the majority of Buddhists in those countries such differences do not preclude the various communities from being perceived as equally authentic Buddhist saṅghas; taken together in an undifferentiated manner, each saṅgha is esteemed as highly as the idealized community of the eight noble beings itself.

Among new converts to Buddhism in Western countries there are widely differing views about what a Buddhist saṅgha entails. It is probably best understood as any group that meets together and that is joined by a shared Buddhist faith, or any group linked by its members' devotion to a particular Buddhist teacher. The British founder of the Friends of the Western Buddhist Order is particularly insistent that his group's Aristotelian friendship between members of the same sex is what makes his an authentic Buddhist community. Groups strongly influenced by Western Christian notions define the saṅgha as a group with a shared level of commitment to social action.

See also: Councils, Buddhist

### Bibliography

Conze, Edward, ed. and trans. *The Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom, with the Divisions of the Abhisamayālaṅkāra*. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press, 1975.

Davidson, Ronald. *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2003.

Gellner, David N. *Monk, Householder, and Tantric Priest: Newar Buddhism and Its Hierarchy of Ritual*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1992.

Horner, I. B., trans. *The Book of the Discipline (Vinaya Piṭaka)*, 6 vols. London: Pāli Text Society, 1938–1966.

Prebish, Charles. *Buddhist Monastic Discipline: The Sanskrit Prātimokṣa Sūtras of the Mahāsāṃghikas and Mūlasarvāstivādins*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1975.

GARETH SPARHAM

## SANJIE JIAO (THREE STAGES SCHOOL)

The Sanjie jiao (Three “Levels” or “Stages”) movement begun by the Chinese monk Xinxing (540–594 C.E.) is perhaps best known because its teachings and practices were suppressed as heretical numerous times over the two-hundred-plus years of its history. Banned from the official scriptural canon as apocryphal (*weijing*), Sanjie writings were lost until discoveries of numerous manuscripts at DUNHUANG and elsewhere in the early twentieth century. In spite of opposition, the movement remained popular for several centuries, attracting the aristocracy as well as throngs of commoners.

The movement takes its name from its central teaching, which divides SENTIENT BEINGS into three levels of spiritual capacity: the “wise, the in-between, and the stupid,” as the *Wei-Shu* (eighth century) put it. Xinxing taught that the people of his era were entirely of the third level, blinded by prejudice and hatred and therefore incapable of a correct understanding of the Buddha's teachings. Whereas sentient beings of superior capacity could benefit from the varied teachings of the different schools (*biefu*), the degenerate beings of the third level needed to rely on the universal teachings (*pufa*) of ultimate truth that transcend distinctions of truth and falsity, purity and impurity. Xinxing was also influenced by the doctrine of the DECLINE OF THE DHARMA, according to which people's capacity for practice decreases as the time from the historical Buddha increases.

Equally important for Xinxing was the doctrine of universal buddha-nature or TATHĀGATAGARBHA. This teaching asserts that all sentient beings are fundamentally of the same nature as the fully awakened buddha and will one day realize that nature. From these doctrines came the Sanjie practice of “recognizing the evil”

in oneself while cultivating “universal respect” for the inherent buddhahood of all other sentient beings.

The Sanjie community was headquartered at Huadu and four other monasteries in the capital city of Chang’an, though it had communities throughout China. In their monastic life, members followed a typical regimen that included a wide variety of contemplative practices, penitentiary rituals, veneration of the buddhas, devotional liturgies, chants, the seeking of alms, and the like. Perhaps reflecting their emphasis on recognizing the evil in oneself, Sanjie communities were extremely rigorous in these practices and punished even small infractions. The best-known Sanjie institution was the charitable Inexhaustible Storehouse (*Wujinzang*), which lent goods free of interest to the poor and needy.

In spite of its popularity, Sanjie was suppressed five times between 600 and 725. It is hard to know the exact reasons behind the suppressions, for there was nothing particularly radical or socially dangerous about Sanjie teachings, practices, or institutions—indeed, they were typical of many other groups of the time. There was also no common theme linking the suppressions: Some edicts banned Sanjie texts from the canon, others aimed at its institutional base at Huadu Monastery, and others attacked unspecified practices. The reign (684–705) of Empress Wu saw both imperial support for the Inexhaustible Storehouse and suppression of Sanjie scriptures, though none of the attacks ever actually eliminated the movement. The treatment Sanjie received does show the political nature of religious institutions and the important yet ephemeral nature of orthodoxy.

*See also:* Apocrypha; China; Persecutions

### Bibliography

Buswell, Robert E., Jr., ed. *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

Hubbard, Jamie. *Absolute Delusion, Perfect Buddhahood: The Rise and Fall of a Chinese Heresy*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.

JAMIE HUBBARD

## SANSKRIT, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Buddhist literature in Sanskrit is a large and diverse category. It consists of both canonical and non-canonical materials, the latter ranging from anony-

mous narrative collections and ritual manuals through technical treatises, poetry, and plays written by known individuals. Two distinct languages are used in this category: Sanskrit and so-called Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit. Sanskrit is the ancient prestige language of Indian culture, first known through collections of hymns called Vedas dating from the second millennium B.C.E., and later systematized in a generative grammar by Pāṇini (fourth century B.C.E.). In brahmanical Hindu religion, Sanskrit is seen as the natural language, that which would be spoken by any person if not trained in a vernacular as a child, and as such represents reality more closely than external phenomena perceived through the senses. The ability to compose in Sanskrit—requiring precise control of its complex inflectional system, and in verse the capacity to reproduce artfully a variety of metrical patterns—was seen as the epitome of educated civilization. Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit (hereafter BHS) is the language of a text called the MAHĀVASTU and of most MAHĀYĀNA sūtras, that is, discourses attributed to the Buddha. It has been denoted by this name since the publication of a dictionary and grammar of the language by Franklin Edgerton, but has also been called “Buddhist Sanskrit,” “mixed Sanskrit,” and “the *gāthā* dialect” (reflecting the fact that it is most commonly found in the verses, *gāthā*, of Mahāyāna discourses). The origin and nature of BHS is disputed, Edgerton preferring to view it as the result of an incomplete process of translation into Sanskrit of materials originally composed in a vernacular, *prakrit*. This was not a formal attempt at translation but a gradual process of influence reflecting the prestige of Sanskrit proper in the broader community (Edgerton, sect. 1.34). BHS texts vary in character, particularly in the degree to which they employ vernacular grammatical forms. Later BHS texts are identified as such largely through their vocabulary, their grammar being that of standard, if simple, Sanskrit. In the eyes of traditionally trained paṇḍits and even some Western scholars, BHS has appeared to be a highly incorrect, even barbaric, language requiring correction. The work of defining BHS continues, as texts are edited anew with greater sensitivity.

### Canonical literature

Whereas for the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS, the CANON was defined in terms of an exclusive *tripiṭaka*, both the Mahāyāna and VAJRAYĀNA traditions utilized a more flexible, inclusive concept of canon that allowed, alongside the *tripiṭaka*, the incorporation of a large number of texts claiming to be BUDDHAVACANA,

(WORD OF THE BUDDHA). This is indicated by their opening with the phrase *evaṃ mayā śrutaṃ* (“Thus have I heard”), indicating that each text is understood to have been recited by the Buddha’s disciple ĀNANDA at the First Council. Modern scholarship situates these texts as new if anonymous compositions, the chronology of which tracks the evolution of Mahāyāna and Vajrayāna, respectively. The inclusiveness of later Indian Buddhism regarding canonicity also means that it is difficult to know the precise total extent of the literature. The Pāli canon by tradition has been fixed since the first century B.C.E. and the exact content is well known, as revealed in the fifth-century C.E. commentaries attributed to BUDDHAGHOSA and others. There is no comparable clarity for the Mahāyāna or Vajrayāna, and even now there exists no comprehensive catalogue of works for either tradition. The nearest we have are the ancient CATALOGUES OF SCRIPTURES of the Chinese and Tibetan translated canons, none of which are exhaustive. This situation makes it difficult to write with conclusive authority on many aspects of this literature as a whole.

This situation is further complicated in that the major portion of canonical Buddhist literature in Sanskrit has been lost since the time of Muslim depredations in northern India (eleventh through twelfth centuries C.E.) and is now known only through ancient translations made into Tibetan, Chinese, and other languages. The exceptions to this have come from two sources: archaeological or antiquarian recovery of ancient manuscripts or their active preservation through copying in Nepal. Notable among the former are numerous manuscripts recovered from the oases of Central Asia, the small library of about fifty texts found in Gilgit in the 1930s, Rāhula Sāṅkṛtyāyana’s photographs made in the 1930s in Tibet of very early Sanskrit manuscripts originally transported there in the medieval period to assist translation work, and the recovery in the 1990s of very early manuscripts from Afghanistan, such as those in the collection of Martin Schøyen in Oslo (Braarvig). Typical of the latter category from Nepal are numerous manuscripts of nine canonical texts called the *navadharmā* (the nine teachings), along with a wide range of tantric ritual texts. The bulk of Buddhist Sanskrit literature known today has been preserved in Nepal (Mitra).

**Āgama collections.** The *āgama* collections are the functional equivalents of the *nikāyas* of the Pāli canon—thus there were long (*dīrgha*), middling (*madhyama*), thematic (*saṃyukta*), incremental (*ekottara*), and mis-

cellaneous (*kṣudraka*) collections in Sanskrit. The *āgama* collections contain Sanskrit versions of many of the texts found in the Pāli collections, and are understood to have been the śrāvaka canon as utilized on the Indian subcontinent by śrāvaka lineages other than that of the THERAVĀDA school. Overall the *āgamas* contained a larger number of texts than the *nikāyas* and arranged them in a different sequence. Unlike other Buddhist literature in Sanskrit that has no śrāvaka parallels, this category offers enormous potential for comparative study to differentiate the ideas and concerns of the śrāvaka schools. Regrettably, the *āgamas* do not survive in their entirety and are largely known through translations of them made into Chinese (Lamotte, pp. 153 f.). Until recently the only exceptions to this were individual sūtras—for example, the MAHĀPARINIRVĀNA-SŪTRA (Waldschmidt) and fragments recovered from long abandoned Buddhist sites in Central Asia—but this has changed with the discovery in Afghanistan in the late 1990s of an almost complete manuscript of the *Dīrghāgama*, probably belonging to the Mūlasarvāstivāda school (Hartmann).

**Vinaya and abhidharma.** Although there were seven canonical ABHIDHARMA texts in Sanskrit belonging to the Sarvāstivāda school, these are now lost in their original language. The Sanskrit VINAYA collections have fared better, and two works in particular warrant mention. The first of these is the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA, which has mostly survived in a single manuscript discovered at Gilgit. This massive text is a compilation of narratives and case law offering numerous insights into the preoccupations and realia of monastic life in medieval India (Panglung). With this we can compare the *Mahāvastu*, a wonderful collection of narratives and lore built around a biography of the Buddha that describes itself as belonging to the vinaya of the Lokottaravāda branch of the MAHĀSĀMĀGHKA SCHOOL (Jones). This too contains interesting and important parallels to material found in the Pāli canon.

**Mahāyāna.** Mahāyāna sūtras form a diverse body of literature produced between the first century B.C.E. and the fifth century C.E. The earliest examples are thought to be the perfection of wisdom texts, *Aṣṭasāhasrikā-prajñāpāramitā* and *Ratnagaṇasamcaya-gāthā*, in prose and verse, respectively. These expound a critique of the *abhidharma* and the teaching of the real existence of dharmas and promote the BODHISATTVA as the ideal Buddhist. While many Mahāyāna sūtras are now only known in Tibetan and Chinese translations, we are well

endowed with manuscripts of the *navadharmā*, which includes the following sūtras: *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka* (*Lotus Sūtra*), *Aṣṭasāhasrikā-prajñāpāramitā*, LAṆKĀ-VATĀRA-SŪTRA, *Daśabhūmiśvara*, *Gaṇḍavyūha*, *Samādhirāja*, and SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA; plus the LALITAVISTARA, a *śrāvākayāna* biography of the Buddha that is built around guides to the main pilgrimage sites of the Buddha's life (Foucher), and the *Guhyasamāja-tantra*, a Vajrayāna work. These texts and others express a range of doctrinal views and a number of them were among those considered authoritative and thus expounded by Mahāyāna doctrinal traditions, such as the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL and the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL.

**Vajrayāna.** From the middle of the first millennium C.E. until the demise of institutional Buddhism in India in the twelfth century, there began to appear Buddhist tantric works, written in Sanskrit, employing instrumental magic and ritual to achieve specific goals. Retrospectively these have been assigned to four classes: *kriyā* or “action” TANTRAS; *caryā* or “conduct” tantras, dominated by the *Mahāvairocanābhisaṃbodhi Tantra* (*Tantra on the Perfect Awakening of Mahāvairocana*); *yoga* or “meditation” tantras, dominated by the *Sarvatathāgatatattvasaṃgraha* (*Compendium on the Essence of all the Tathāgatas*); and the *anuttarayoga* or “supreme meditation” tantras, among which is included the *Guhyasamāja Tantra* (*Tantra on the Secret Assembly*). The last tantra composed in India before the final demise of institutional Buddhism there was the eleventh-century *Kālacakra Tantra*, a major work seeking not just soteriological goals but also offering a defense against contemporary Muslim domination. Texts in the higher classes of tantra tend toward asserting feminine representations of the ideal, employing antinomian practices (e.g., consumption of forbidden substances, sexual transgression of monastic rules and caste boundaries), and, although written in relatively normal Sanskrit, employ a secret or allusive vocabulary called *sandhyabhāṣā*, in which actual referents are disguised by euphemisms and elaborate symbolism. A minor example of this appears in the opening phrase of the *Guhyasamāja Tantra*, which forgoes the familiar formula and asserts instead that the Buddha delivered the tantra while residing in the “vagina of the Vajra Lady,” which is understood to mean “while residing in the wisdom of enlightenment.”

**Commentaries.** This entire body of canonical material inspired COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE usually composed by known historical individuals, although this

too has fared badly and relatively little survives in its original language. There is no definitive catalogue of Sanskrit commentaries, but it has been estimated in relation to the Tibetan canon that, of 120 commentaries translated into Tibetan, only ninety remain current; allowing for duplications, these offer comment on only thirty-four, or 10 percent, of the sūtras extant in the same canon (Schoening). Commentaries vary widely in length, from single folios to several volumes, and some sūtras have attracted much more attention than others—the HEART SŪTRA, a short Perfection of Wisdom text, having seven commentaries. There are also subcommentaries on primary commentaries, the *Abhisamayālaṃkāra* apparently inspiring something in excess of twenty.

### Noncanonical literature

Canonical materials alone do not exhaust Buddhist literature in Sanskrit. In fact, the larger part of the field is made up of noncanonical materials, which are even more diverse than their canonical counterparts. In the following survey, the subcategories employed are by no means exclusive, merging in some cases with each other and with canonical materials.

**Narrative.** Narrative is a, if not the, dominant genre of Buddhist literature, and happily many examples have survived into the present day. The canonical literature already reviewed is replete with narrative materials that were redacted to form new compilations of pure narrative, such as the AVADĀNAŚATAKA (*One Hundred Stories of Edifying Deeds*) and the DIVYĀVADĀNA (*Divine Stories of Edifying Deeds*), the latter probably redacted from the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya*. The *Avadānaśataka* subsequently inspired further cycles of verse renderings of sets of its stories, which were composed probably in the second half of the first millennium C.E. These texts, clearly the result of a concerted attempt to revise the entire *Avadānaśataka* by what was probably a tradition of specialists in this kind of narrative literature, were termed *mālā* (garlands), and typically employ a frame story involving a dialogue between the emperor AŚOKA and a monk named UPAGUPTA (Strong).

**Ritual texts.** The Nepalese community has preserved a host of ritual texts of a variety of kinds. Many of these are transmitted from Indian originals and include compendia of meditation texts giving guidance on the visualization and worship of buddhas, bodhisattvas, and various tantric figures, such as the *Sāadhanamālā* and *Niṣpannayogāvalī*. There are also more miscellaneous



collections covering a range of activities, such as building monasteries (e.g., the *Kriyāsaṃgraha*).

**Treatises.** Often attracting attention before the more extensive narrative and ritual materials, there are important treatises, śāstras, compiled by known historical individuals in order to expound specific doctrinal positions, sometimes doctrines voiced in sūtra sources. Among these we should note the encyclopedic ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA (*Treasury of Higher Teaching*) of VASUBANDHU, which sets out a survey of Sarvāstivāda doctrine, which it then critiques from a SAUTRĀNTIKA viewpoint in an autocommentary. Some treatises offer exegeses of the work of earlier scholiasts; thus CANDRAKĪRTI's *Prasannapadā* is effectively a commentary on NĀGĀRJUNA's *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* (*Foundational Verses on the Middle Way*), both being core textual authorities in the exegesis of Madhyamaka doctrine. By contrast, Vasubandhu's *Viṃśatikā* and *Trimśikā* (*Twenty Verses* and *Thirty Verses*) expound doctrine de novo. ŚĀNTIDEVA's BODHICARYĀVATĀRA (*Introduction to the Conduct of a Bodhisattva*) systematically outlines in evocative poetry the nature of a bodhisattva's practice and exemplifies the crossover into material that we might otherwise classify as purely poetic (Crosby and Skilton).

**Poetry and drama.** Sometimes undeservedly attracting less attention are splendid works of self-consciously high literary merit. These include AŚVAGHOṢA's second-century C.E. BUDDHACARITA, a verse biography of the Buddha, and *Saundarananda*, the earliest examples of Sanskrit *kāvya* (high poetry) that have survived. Regrettably we have lost Aśvaghōṣa's dramas, which included an account of the conversions of ŚĀRIPUTRA and MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA, and they are known now only through manuscript fragments from Central Asia. Similar to these are the prose and verse *kāvya* JĀTAKAMĀLĀ of ĀRYAŚŪRA (fourth century C.E.), a retelling of thirty-four *jātaka* stories in elegant court style. His *Pāramitāsamāsa* (*Compendium of the Perfections*) is an important parallel to Śāntideva's *Bodhicaryāvatāra* (Meadows). Another important work is the *Nāgananda* of Harṣa, a seventh-century king, a complete drama that retells the story of the bodhisattva as Jīmutavāhana. This last is notable in that its author was not a Buddhist, a distinction shared with the *Avadānakalpalatā*, a cycle of 108 Buddhist stories retold in verse by the eleventh-century Kashmiri poet Kṣemen-dra. All these examples are characterized by the reworking of existing narratives from canonical sources, but this crossover can also be seen in the elegant *kāvya*

meters sometimes employed in the composition of some canonical literature. Numerous original compositions in verse survive mainly in translation. Often concerned with praise, they are called *stotra* (hymns), chief among which must be the works of Mātṛceta (second century C.E.), two of which were memorized by all monks in India, according to the Chinese pilgrim YIJING (635–713).

**Nepalese Buddhist literature in Sanskrit.** While the composition of Buddhist literature died out in India after the Muslim conquests of the twelfth century C.E., it continued in Nepal, where cultural continuity was retained and in fact heavily augmented by refugees from the Buddhist homelands in northeastern India. Of later composition in Nepal are various *pārājika* texts, describing ritual means whereby one might avoid the negative consequences of various kinds of killing, and demonstrating a Hindu-Buddhist syncretism. Of greater literary merit are seven large verse compositions that retell materials familiar from Indic sources, such as the *Avadānaśataka* and *Mahāvastu*, but which also borrow heavily from śāstra-type material, such as the *Bodhicaryāvatāra*. These include the *Svayambhūpurāṇa*, *Bhadrakalpāvadana*, *Vicitrakarṇikāvadāna*, and the *Guṇakāraṇḍavyūha*. These all reuse the frame story of Upagupta and Aśoka, familiar from the Indian *avadānamālās*, but supplement it with a further framing device involving two monks, Jināśrī and Jayaśrī. These texts also incorporate values of Nepalese Buddhism, while the *Svayambhūpurāṇa* goes so far as to localize the Buddhist sacred landscape and mythology in Nepal.

See also: Āgama/Nikāya; Languages; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Braarvig, Jens; Harrison, Paul; Hartmann, Jens-Uwe; Kazunobu Matsuda; and Sander, Lore; eds. *Buddhist Manuscripts of the Schøyen Collection*, 2 vols. Oslo: Hermes, 2000 and 2002.
- Crosby, Henrietta Kate, and Skilton, Andrew, trans. *The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Edgerton, Franklin. *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1954.
- Foucher, Alfred. *La vie du Bouddha, d'après les textes et les monuments de l'Inde* (1949). Paris: Maisonneuve, 1987.
- Hartmann, Jens-Uwe. "Further Remarks on the New Manuscript of the Dīrghāgama." *Journal of the International College for Advanced Buddhist Studies* 5 (2002): 98–117.

- Hodge, Stephen, trans. *The Mahā-Vairocana-Abhisambodhi Tantra: With Buddhaguhya's Commentary*. London: Routledge Curzon, 2003.
- Jones, J. J., trans. *The Mahāvastu*, 3 vols. London: Luzac, 1949–1956.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism from the Origins to the Śaka Era* (1958), tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium: Peeters Press, 1988.
- Meadows, Carol. *Ārya-Śūra's Compendium of the Perfections: Text, Translation, and Analysis of the Pāramitāsamāsa*. Bonn, Germany: Indica et Tibetica Verlag, 1986.
- Mitra, Rajendralal. *The Sanskrit Buddhist Literature of Nepal* (1882). Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1981.
- Panglung, Jampa L. *Die Erzählstoffe des Mūlasarvāstivāda-Vinaya Analysiert auf grund der Tibetischen Übersetzung*. Tokyo: Reiyukai Library, 1981.
- Schoening, Jeffrey D. "Sūtra Commentaries in Tibetan Translation." In *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*, ed. José I. Cabezón and Roger R. Jackson. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Skorupski, Tadeusz. *Kriyasamgraha: Compendium of Buddhist Rituals*. Tring, UK: Institute of Buddhist Studies, 2002.
- Strong, John. "The Buddhist Avadānists and the Elder Upagupta." *Mélanges chinois et bouddhiques* 22 (1985): 862–881.
- Waldschmidt, Ernst. *Das Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra*, 3 vols. Berlin: Akademie Verlag, 1950–1951.
- Wayman, Alex. *Yoga of the Guhyasamājatantra: The Arcane Lore of Forty Verses, a Buddhist Tantra Commentary*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1977. Reprint, 1991.
- Winternitz, Maurice. *A History of Indian Literature* (1933), Vol. 2: *Buddhist and Jain Literature*, tr. V. Srinivasa Sarma. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983. Reprint, 1999.

ANDREW SKILTON

## ŚĀNTIDEVA

The MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL philosopher and poet Śāntideva is generally thought to have lived some time between 685 and 763 C.E., although this is by no means conclusive. The claim that he was a prince from North India who fled royal consecration repeats a traditional Buddhist theme and has no independent support. Śāntideva adhered to the MAHĀYĀNA tradition. His spiritual poem the BODHICARYĀVATĀRA (*Introduction to the Conduct That Leads to Enlightenment*) indicates that he was particularly devoted to the bodhisattva Mañjuśrī. His other great work is the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* (*Compendium of Doctrines*), which consists in the main of valuable quotations from many Mahāyāna Buddhist

scriptures (sūtras) arranged to illustrate aspects of the Mahāyāna PATH. The *Śikṣāsamuccaya* is an important Sanskrit source for sections of sūtras that no longer survive in their Sanskrit originals.

In the traditional (mainly Tibetan) hagiographies, Śāntideva appears to be quite ordinary although actually a figure of advanced spiritual attainment. One story goes that he seemed to the monks of Nālandā Monastery simply to laze around doing nothing. They asked him to give a recitation before the monastery, then tried to erect the teacher's seat so high that Śāntideva could not reach it. With one hand he magically lowered the seat, sat on it, and asked what they wanted him to recite. At the request for something new (for a change) Śāntideva began to create spontaneously his *Bodhicaryāvatāra*, undoubtedly the single greatest Indian poem about cultivating the Mahāyāna spiritual life. When he had nearly reached the end he ascended into the air and disappeared, although his voice could still be heard.

See also: **Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Bendall, Cecil, and Rouse, W. H. D., trans. *Śikṣā Samuccaya: A Compendium of Buddhist Doctrine*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass. Reprint of 1922 edition.
- Crosby, Kate, and Skilton, Andrew, trans. *Śāntideva: The Bodhicaryāvatāra*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Ruegg, David S. *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1981.
- Tsonawa, Losang Norbu, trans. *Indian Buddhist Pandits from "The Jewel Garland of Buddhist History."* Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1985.
- Wallace, Vesna A., and Wallace, B. Allan, trans. *A Guide to the Bodhisattva Way of Life (Bodhicaryāvatāra)*. New York: Snow Lion, 1997.
- Williams, Paul. *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*. London and New York: Routledge, 1989.
- Williams, Paul, with Tribe, Anthony. *Buddhist Thought: A Complete Introduction to the Indian Tradition*. London and New York: Routledge, 2000.

PAUL WILLIAMS

## ŚĀRIPUTRA

Śāriputra (Pāli, Śāriputta), a disciple of Śākyamuni Buddha, attained the enlightened status of an ARHAT,

or saint. Śāriputra is renowned for his wisdom and his expertise in ABHIDHARMA.

Because of his reputation for wisdom, Śāriputra frequently appears in Mahāyāna sūtras as a prime representative of the HĪNAYĀNA. The Buddha predicts Śāriputra's future buddhahood in the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), a famous Mahāyāna scripture. Originally Śāriputra and his childhood friend MAHĀMAUDGALYĀYANA were students of Sañjayin, a non-Buddhist teacher. Śāriputra and Mahāmaudgalyāyana promised each other that whoever attained knowledge of liberation first would inform the other. One day Śāriputra met a Buddhist monk named Aśvajit (or Upasena in some texts). Attracted by Aśvajit's serene countenance and flawless comportment, Śāriputra converted to Buddhism. Śāriputra attained the dharma-eye when Aśvajit recited a four-line verse summary of Buddhist teachings on ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE). Mahāmaudgalyāyana converted to Buddhism upon seeing a physically transformed Śāriputra, exclaiming: "Venerable One, your senses are serene, your face is at peace, and the complexion of your skin utterly pure. Did you reach the deathless state?" (*Catuṣpariṣatsūtra*, quoted in Strong, 2002, p. 50).

At Śāriputra's and Mahāmaudgalyāyana's ordination, the Buddha proclaimed that they would be his two chief disciples in accordance with a prediction made to that effect many eons ago by a previous buddha. Thus the two are sometimes depicted flanking the Buddha in Buddhist art. Śāriputra predeceased the Buddha. Like other arhats, Śāriputra was already the focus of worship in ancient and medieval India. In Burma (Myanmar) he is one of a set of eight arhats propitiated in protective rituals and he is also believed to grant his worshippers wisdom.

See also: **Disciples of the Buddha**

### **Bibliography**

- Malalasekera, G. P. "Śāriputta Thera." In *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names* (1937–1938), 2 vols. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1995.
- Strong, John S. *The Legend and Cult of Upagupta*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.
- Strong, John S. *The Experience of Buddhism: Sources and Interpretations*, 2nd edition. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2002.

SUSANNE MROZIK

## SARVĀSTIVĀDA AND MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA

The term *Sarvāstivāda* means "those who claim that everything exists"; *Mūlasarvāstivāda* means "root Sarvāstivāda." The Sarvāstivāda school, one of the largest and most important mainstream schools of Indian Buddhism, a subschool of the Sthavira branch, is first attested in inscriptions dating from the first century C.E. and was to become prominent throughout northern India and Central Asia, in particular in the northwestern regions of Kashmir and Gandhāra and the north central region of Mathurā. Traditional sources connect each of these regions with a prominent early Sarvāstivāda teacher: Kashmir with Madhyāntika, and Mathurā with Upagupta. Later, both regions became strongholds of the Sarvāstivāda school, but scholarly disagreement persists as to which region was the original home of the sect.

A substantial portion of the Sarvāstivāda version of the Buddhist canon is preserved in Chinese translation, including the complete monastic disciplinary code (VINAYA), a portion of the dialogues (sūtra), the complete collection of canonical scholastic treatises (ABHIDHARMA), as well as other postcanonical scholastic texts and commentaries that contain detailed examinations of virtually all aspects of early Indian Buddhist doctrine. The most important of these doctrinal discussions is the hallmark position, "everything exists" (*sarvam asti*), from which the name, *Sarvāstivāda*, derives. Here the Sarvāstivādins suggest that "everything," that is all conditioned factors (dharma), "exist" and can exert causal efficacy in the three time periods of the past, present, and future. This position was attacked by rival Buddhist groups as a violation of the fundamental Buddhist position of ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE). In response, the Sarvāstivādins developed an elaborate ontology that specified the manner in which past and future factors exist while attempting to preserve their impermanent character.

Multiple recensions of extant Sarvāstivāda texts, as well as references in their scholastic literature to the variant doctrinal positions of different groups of Sarvāstivādins, indicate that internal divisions existed within the larger Sarvāstivāda school. These divisions reflected regional, chronological, doctrinal, and possibly other differences. Regional variation might also explain the origin of one notable Sarvāstivāda group, the Mūlasarvāstivāda. The Mūlasarvāstivādins possessed their own separate monastic code, extant in Sanskrit, and can also possibly be affiliated with certain sūtra di-

alogues and other miscellaneous texts extant in Chinese translation. While the exact relationship between the Sarvāstivādins and the Mūlasarvāstivādins remains unclear, it is possible that the Mūlasarvāstivādins represented either a later phase in the development of the Sarvāstivāda sectarian stream or perhaps specifically those Sarvāstivādins who were centered in the region of Mathurā. After the decline in prominence of the Sarvāstivādins within the northwestern region of Kashmir and Gandhāra, the Sarvāstivādins of Mathurā may have adopted the name Mūlasarvāstivāda, or “root Sarvāstivāda,” to assert their status as the preeminent or original Sarvāstivādins.

*See also:* **Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya**

### **Bibliography**

Cox, Collett. *Disputed Dharmas: Early Buddhist Theories on Existence*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1995.

Frauwallner, Erich. *Studies in Abhidharma Literature and the Origins of Buddhist Philosophical Systems*, tr. Sophie Francis Kidd. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.

Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium: Peeters Press, 1988.

COLLETT COX

## SA SKYA (SAKYA)

The monastery of Sa skya (Sakya) was founded in southern Tibet in 1073 by the master Dkon mchog rgyal po (Könchog Gyalpo, 1034–1102), a member of the ancient 'Khon (Khön) family from which the leaders of the Sa skya tradition have always come. Beginning with Dkon mchog rgyal po's son, Sa chen Kun dga' snying po (Sachen Kunga Nyingpo, 1092–1158), the next five great patriarchs of the 'Khon lineage are known as the Five Early Patriarchs of Sa skya (*sa skya gong ma lnga*).

Sa chen Kun dga' snying po mastered a huge variety of Buddhist teachings, both in the sūtra-based MAHĀYĀNA (Great Vehicle) tradition and the TANTRA-based VAJRAYĀNA (Adamantine Vehicle). The Sa skya school that developed after his time is distinguished by the teaching and practice of the various transmissions collected by Sa chen. For example, at the age of twelve Sa chen experienced a vision of the bodhisattva

Mañjuśrī, from whom he received a teaching known as “Parting from the Four Attachments” (*Zhen pa bzhi bral*). These instructions became the basis of the practice of “mind training” (*blo sbyong*) in the Sa skya school, and have continued to be used for meditation on the key points of the Mahāyāna tradition.

The most significant tantric systems of the Sa skya tradition are connected to the *Hevajra Tantra* and the *Cakrasaṃvara Tantra*. From among these, the esoteric instructions of the great Indian adept Virūpa's “Path with the Result” (*Lam 'bras*) are a complete system of theory and meditation based on the tantric scriptures associated with the *Hevajra Tantra*. Sa chen received these teachings from the yogin Zhang ston Chos 'bar (Zhangdön Chöbar, 1053–1135), and the “Path with the Result” has continued to be the most important Vajrayāna transmission practiced in the Sa skya school. Sa chen wrote the first texts to explain the “Path with the Result,” which had previously been an oral tradition in both India and Tibet.

Sa chen was succeeded by two of his sons: Bsod nams rtse mo (Sönam Tsemo, 1142–1182) and then Grags pa rgyal mtshan (Trakpa Gyaltzen, 1147–1216). Bsod nams rtse mo wrote a number of important works, especially in the field of tantric study and practice. Grags pa rgyal mtshan wrote many extremely influential treatises concerning the esoteric instructions of the Sa skya tradition, and his works formed the basis for the development of the Sa skya approach to tantric study and meditation. During the lifetime of Sa chen and his sons, the Sa skya school remained concentrated at Sa skya Monastery, but during the following generations a major expansion occurred.

Sa skya Paṇḍita Kun dga' rgyal mtshan (Sakya Paṇḍita Kunga Gyaltzen, 1182–1251) succeeded his uncle, Grags pa rgyal mtshan, as the head of the Sa skya tradition. Several of Sa skya Paṇḍita's literary compositions became very important for the Sa skya school, including his *Sdom gsum rab dbye* (*Clear Differentiation of the Three Codes*). In about 1244 Sa skya Paṇḍita was summoned to the court of the Mongol prince Göden Khan at Liangzhou in China. During the final years of his life, Sa skya Paṇḍita taught Buddhism at the Mongol court, where he also completed an important treatise on Mahāyāna Buddhism entitled *Thub pa'i dgongs gsal* (*Elucidating the Intention of the Sage*).

Sa skya Paṇḍita was succeeded by his nephew, 'Phags pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan (Pakpa Lodro Gyaltzen, 1235–1280), the fifth Early Patriarch of Sa skya. In 1253 'Phags pa met Qubilai Khan (1215–1294), who

later became the first emperor of the Yuan dynasty in China. Qubilai Khan requested from 'Phags pa the complete Hevajra initiation in 1258, marking the beginning of Vajrayāna Buddhism in Mongolia. Three years later Qubilai Khan granted 'Phags pa the title of national preceptor (*guoshi*), thereby appointing him the leading Buddhist master in the empire. This precedent for a patron-priest relationship between Chinese emperors and Tibetan Buddhist masters would have great repercussions in subsequent centuries.

Several important subdivisions later developed within the Sa skya tradition. Two of these are most significant: the Ngor pa (Ngorpa) subsect established by Ngor chen Kun dga' bzang po (Ngorchen Kunga Zangpo, 1382–1456) and the Tshar pa (Tsarpa) subsect following the teachings of Tshar chen Blo gsal rgya mtsho (Tsarchen Losel Gyatso, 1502–1566). It is customary to refer to the Sa skya, Ngor pa, and Tshar pa traditions when discussing the entire range of the Sa skya school.

In 1429 Ngor chen established the monastery of E wam Chos ldan (Ewam Chöden) at Ngor, where he instituted strict monastic rules. Ngor chen specialized in the tantric systems practiced in the Sa skya school and wrote many treatises based on the definitive works of the early 'Khon masters of Sa skya. His compositions formed the basis for the distinctive interpretations of the Ngor pa school, the first lasting subdivision of the Sa skya tradition. The Ngor pa tradition became extremely influential in the eastern regions of Tibet, where it enjoyed the royal patronage of the ruling house of Sde dge (Derge).

The Tshar pa tradition takes its name from the great yogin Tshar chen Blo gsal rgya mtsho. This tradition is distinguished by its emphasis on a special esoteric transmission of the ancient tantric teachings of Sa skya, which came to be known as the “explication for disciples” (*slob bshad*), in contrast to the “explication for the assembly” (*tshogs bshad*). This esoteric transmission had previously been taught only to small groups of students and was seldom written down until the time of Tshar chen and his main disciples, who wrote a number of crucial texts. Some of the specific points of the Tshar pa explication were at first quite controversial, but they were eventually accepted by all Sa skya and Ngor pa teachers and taught more widely than before.

At the beginning of the twenty-first century the Sa skya school is perhaps strongest in the Tibetan communities of India and Nepal, where most of the great teachers of the tradition resettled in the 1960s follow-

ing the Chinese occupation of Tibet. In the modern establishments of India and Nepal, teaching, study, and meditation continue to be freely practiced according to the ancient traditions of Sa skya. The leader of the Sa skya school, His Holiness Sa skya Khri 'dzin (Sakya Trizin), Ngag dbang kun dga' theg chen dpal 'bar (Ngawang Kunga Tegchen Palbar, b. 1945), is the forty-first patriarch of Sa skya. From his residence in India, he frequently travels in Southeast Asia, Europe, and North America, constantly spreading the traditional Sa skya teachings.

*See also:* Sa skya Paṇḍita (Sakya Paṇḍita); Tibet

### Bibliography

- Davidson, Ronald. “Preliminary Studies on Hevajra’s Abhisamaya and the Lam-'bras Tshogs-bshad.” *Tibetan Buddhism: Reason and Revelation*, ed. Steven Goodman and Ronald Davidson. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Deshung Rinpoche. *The Three Levels of Spiritual Perception*, tr. Jared Rhoton. Boston: Wisdom, 1995.
- Jackson, David. *The Entrance Gate for the Wise (Section III)*. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien, 1987.
- Jackson, David. *Enlightenment by a Single Means*. Vienna: Der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1994.
- Ngorchen Konchog Lhundrub. *The Beautiful Ornament of the Three Visions*, tr. Lobsang Dagpa, Ngawang Samten Chopel (Jay Goldberg), and Jared Rhoton. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1991.
- Sakya Paṇḍita Kunga Gyaltshen. *A Clear Differentiation of the Three Codes: Essential Distinctions among the Individual Liberation, Great Vehicle, and Tantric Systems*, tr. Jared Douglas Rhoton. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2002.
- Stearns, Cyrus. “Sachen Kunga Nyingpo’s Quest for The Path and Result.” *Religions of Tibet in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1997.
- Stearns, Cyrus. *Luminous Lives: The Story of the Early Masters of the Lam 'bras Tradition in Tibet*. Boston: Wisdom, 2001.

CYRUS STEARNS

---

## SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA)

Sa skya Paṇḍita Kun dga' rgyal mtshan (Sakya Paṇḍita, 1182–1251) was revered as the greatest early scholar of the SA SKYA (SAKYA) sect of Tibetan Buddhism. He is accorded the distinction of being the fourth of the five great Sa skya teachers, and is noted for his conserva-

tive polemics against what he saw as unwarranted Tibetan innovations.

Precocious as a youth, Sa skya Paṇḍita was identified early to follow in the footsteps of his 'Khon clan predecessors. His great-grandfather, 'Khon Dkonmchog rgyal po (Khön Könchok gyelpo, 1034–1102) had founded Sa skya Monastery in 1073 C.E., and the edifice had increased in fame and fortune under succeeding teachers. Sa skya Paṇḍita's uncle, Grags pa rgyal mtshan (Drakpa Gyeltsen, 1147–1216), directed much of his early education and was concerned mostly with the tantric system. In distinction, his nephew's interest clearly moved toward the scholastic texts that had gained much currency and authority in Tibet throughout the twelfth century. Accordingly, Sa skya Paṇḍita was sent to Central Tibet in 1200 C.E. to study with Tibetan teachers who emphasized the texts of YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL idealism, the philosophical works of the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL, and the works on LOGIC and epistemology of DHARMAKĪRTI (ca. 650 C.E.) and his followers. The greatest influence, though, on Sa skya Paṇḍita was destined to come through his meeting with the Kashmiri master Śākyaśrībhadrā (1140s–1225) and his retinue of Indian and Kashmiri teachers fleeing the Muslim persecution of Buddhism taking place in India at the time.

Together with the other scholars, Śākyaśrībhadrā instructed Sa skya Paṇḍita in the Sanskrit curriculum employed in the great Indian monasteries of the period. The topics emphasized the scholastic syllabus (ABHIDHARMA, VINAYA, PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE, Madhyamaka, logic and epistemology, etc.), as well as a well-rounded education in the literature and, especially, poetics current in India. Scholastic pedagogy emphasized the memorization of texts and the debate of their contents, so that the learned were expected to become expert in the defense of specific propositions.

In the more than one hundred compositions of his received oeuvre, Sa skya Paṇḍita demonstrated his commitment to Indian scholastic Buddhism. David Jackson in his 1987 book *The Entrance Gate for the Wise* (vol. 1, pp. 39–48) identifies five works of special influence:

1. *Mkhas pa rnam 'jug pa'i sgo* (*Entrance Gate for the Wise*) is a pedagogical text that instructs the student in the primary skills—composition, exposition, and debate—of late Indian monasteries.
2. *Legs par bshad pa rin pa che'i gter* (*Treasury of Aphoristic Jewels*) is a delightful collection of homilies and remains Sa skya Paṇḍita's best

known work; it is still memorized by Tibetans and establishes a common discourse for much of Tibetan culture.

3. *Tshad ma rigs gter* (*Treasury of Epistemology*), with its autocommentary, is Sa skya Paṇḍita's major statement on epistemology; it is dedicated to the refutation of the innovations of Tibetan scholars, especially Phywa pa Chos kyi seng ge (Chapa Chökyi Sengé, 1109–1169).
4. *Thub pa'i dgongs gsal* (*Clarifying the Sage's Intention*) is dedicated to the bodhisattva path as understood in late Mahāyāna scholasticism.
5. *Sdom gsum rab dbye* (*Clear Differentiation of the Three Codes*) is a synthetic work on the vows of the monk, the bodhisattva, and the tantric practitioner.

Through these and other works, Sa skya Paṇḍita challenged what he perceived as non-Indian innovations, especially those he identified as coming from Chinese influence or indigenous Tibetan sources.

Sa skya Paṇḍita's reputation for learning and sanctity eventually drew Mongol interest, and he was ordered by Göden Khan to the Mongol camp in 1244 C.E. He spent his last days in Mongol hands, instructing his nephew, 'Phags pa (Pakpa, 1235–1280), who was destined to become the first monk ruler of Tibet and the fifth of the five great Sa skya teachers.

*See also:* Tibet

### Bibliography

- Bosson, James E. *A Treasury of Aphoristic Jewels: The Subhasitaratnanidhi of Sa Skya Pandita in Tibetan and Mongolian*. Bloomington: Indiana University Publications, 1969.
- Jackson, David P. *The Entrance Gate for the Wise (Section III): Sa-skya Pandita on Indian and Tibetan Traditions of Pramāṇa and Philosophical Debate*, 2 vols. Vienna: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien, 1987.
- Jackson, David P. *Enlightenment by a Single Means: Tibetan Controversies on the "Self-Sufficient White Remedy."* Vienna: Der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1994.
- Kuijp, Leonard W. J. van der. *Contributions to the Development of Tibetan Buddhist Epistemology from the Eleventh to the Thirteenth Century*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1983.
- Sakya Paṇḍita Kunga Gyaltshen. *A Clear Differentiation of the Three Codes: Essential Distinctions among the Individual Liberation, Great Vehicle, and Tantric Systems*, tr. Jared Douglas Rhoton. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2001.

Stearns, Cyrus. *Luminous Lives: The Story of the Early Masters of the Lam 'Bras Tradition in Tibet*. Boston: Wisdom Publications, 2001.

RONALD M. DAVIDSON

ŚĀSTRA. See **Commentarial Literature**

## SATIPAṬṬHĀNA-SUTTA

The *Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta* (*Discourse on the Foundations of Mindfulness*) is one of the most important expositions of Buddhist meditation in the Pāli canon and in the THERAVĀDA school. The discourse enumerates twenty-one meditation practices for the cultivation of MINDFULNESS (Pāli, *sati*; Sanskrit, *smṛti*) under a four-fold rubric called the four foundations of mindfulness. The four foundations are extolled as the one path leading to the realization of NIRVĀNA. The first foundation, “contemplation of the body” (*kāyānupassanā*), includes fourteen practices: mindfulness of breathing, mindfulness of postures, full awareness of bodily actions, contemplation of bodily impurities, contemplation of elements, and nine cemetery meditations. The second foundation, “contemplation of feeling” (*vedanānupassanā*), consists of one practice: mindfulness of sensations (pleasant, unpleasant, neutral). The third foundation, “contemplation of mind” (*cittānupassanā*) is also a single practice: mindfulness of states of mind, such as lust, hatred, and liberation. The fourth foundation, “contemplation of mind-objects” (*dhammānupassanā*), includes five meditations on specific categories of dharmas: the five hindrances, the five SKANDHA (AGGREGATES), the six sense bases, the seven enlightenment factors, and the FOUR NOBLE TRUTHS. In every exercise, the practitioner is directed to observe the object of meditation simply as it is with bare attention and without attachment.

The text claims that correct practice of the four foundations of mindfulness will lead to enlightenment in as little as seven days. An expanded version of this text named the *Mahāsatipaṭṭhāna-sutta* is also found in the Pāli canon. Since the beginning of the twentieth century, the *Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta* has become especially influential as the scriptural foundation for the modern revival and popularization of insight meditation practice (*vipassanā*) in the Theravāda countries of South and Southeast Asia.

See also: **Vipassanā (Sanskrit, Vipāśyanā)**

### Bibliography

Bhikkhu Nāṇamoli and Bhikkhu Bodhi, trans. “The Foundations of Mindfulness.” In *The Middle Length Discourses of the Buddha: A Translation of the Majjhima Nikāya*. Boston: Wisdom, 1995.

Nyanaponika Thera. *The Heart of Buddhist Meditation (Satipaṭṭhāna): A Handbook of Mental Training Based on the Buddha's Way of Mindfulness*. London: Rider, 1962.

PATRICK A. PRANKE

## SATORI (AWAKENING)

*Satori* (Chinese, *wu*) is a term used principally in the CHAN SCHOOL to designate momentary episodes of transforming disclosure or insight that prompt further progress on the PATH. A practitioner may experience multiple *satori*, which may be of greater or lesser intensity. One's first *satori*, sometimes defined as “seeing one's [buddha] nature” (Chinese, *jianxing*; Japanese, *kenshō*), is typically regarded as especially important. Popular conceptions of Zen tend to portray *satori* as a sudden breakthrough in which intuition solves an otherwise intractable problem or dilemma. In Japanese Buddhist contexts, *satori* and its verb form *satoru* (to discern, to comprehend) frequently translate the Chinese terms *jue* (to become aware), *wu* (to comprehend), and *zheng* (to authenticate). Although *satori* is commonly translated as “awakening” or “enlightenment,” it is to be distinguished from the related term BODHI (AWAKENING).

See also: **Zen, Popular Conceptions of**

ROBERT M. GIMELLO

## SAUTRĀNTIKA

The term *Sautrāntika* means “those who rely upon the sūtras.” The Sautrāntika mainstream Indian Buddhist school represented a dissenting doctrinal party within the Sarvāstivāda school, which was referred to by their Sarvāstivādin opponents as Dārṣṭāntika. The Sautrāntika school rejected the authority of a separate ABHIDHARMA collection and adopted a doctrinal position of extreme momentariness, whereby only present activity exists.

See also: **Mainstream Buddhist Schools**

COLLETT COX

## SCRIPTURE

The word *scripture* (from the Latin *scribere*, “to write or to compose”) is typically used to refer to written texts, usually the written, foundational texts of a religious tradition. But few religions had written texts in their earliest historical period. Instead, those fundamental texts were committed to writing only after they had been transmitted orally, often for several hundreds of years. Buddhism fits this pattern of development. According to the tradition, immediately after the death of the Buddha, MAHĀKĀŚYAPA, one of the Buddha’s senior disciples, convened a council of five hundred ARHATS. At that time, those monks who had heard the Buddha speak were said to have recited all of the Buddha’s discourses from memory, and specific monks were then charged with the responsibility of transmitting specific discourses verbatim to their students. According to traditional historical accounts, this is the way in which Buddhist scripture was preserved in the earliest period. Whether this narrative represents historical fact or whether it is an attempt on the part of the tradition to legitimize the authenticity of its scriptures by tracing them back to the original source in an unbroken lineage is, of course, uncertain. However, it would appear that in India monks did orally transmit texts attributed to the Buddha from master to disciple in distinct lineages over several hundreds of years. This continued to be the case even after these oral texts were finally committed to writing and compiled into, for example, the Pāli Buddhist CANON sometime in the first century B.C.E. The fourth century C.E. scholar monk VASUBANDHU speaks of such oral lineages of transmission (and of their corruption) in his important text, the *Vyākhyāyukti* (*Science of Exegesis*).

What are the Buddhist scriptures? The simple answer is that scriptures are texts that have the status of being considered BUDDHAVACANA (WORD OF THE BUDDHA). Sūtras are paradigmatic examples of scriptures. A sūtra (literally “thread,” “measuring line,” or “standard,” from the Sanskrit root *sūtr*, “to string together,” “to compose”) in its most general sense is a discourse of a buddha. However, the category of scripture is actually much broader than that of sūtra. Thus, while all sūtras are scripture, not all scriptures are sūtras (see below). Scriptures are often distinguished from śāstras,

which are works, usually of a more synthetic and commentarial nature, that are based on, in the sense of being second-order expositions of, scriptural material. Not all scriptures are considered to be the word of the historical Buddha Śākyamuni, since there are some scriptures that are said to be spoken by other buddhas. Moreover, not everything that is spoken by a buddha is considered to be scripture. For example, the Tibetan tradition generally considers the works attributed to MAITREYA, the future Buddha, to be śāstras, and not sūtras. What is more, it is often the case that a work that is not a scripture may have a more exalted status, playing a more pivotal role in a particular Buddhist tradition than do actual scriptures. Take once again the works of Maitreya, or those of NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), which, despite their status as śāstras, are immensely important for much of the later Indian, Chinese, and Tibetan traditions. All of this is to say that there is a certain arbitrariness concerning what is and what is not a Buddhist scripture, and that in the end a “scripture” may be no more and no less than what a specific Buddhist community considers to fall within the purview of that category.

### Scriptures and canons

By comparison to the Torah, Bible, and Qur’an, the set of texts that comprise the Buddhist scriptural canon is mammoth. The Pāli canon, for example, consists of over forty large volumes, and the scriptural portions of the Chinese and Tibetan canons are over twice that size. Given the heterogeneous nature of Buddhism, moreover, different Buddhist schools have different collections of texts that they consider to be the Buddha’s word. For example, the Theravāda tradition of Southeast Asia generally considers only those works contained in the Pāli canon (*tipiṭaka*) to be the Buddha’s word. The *tipiṭaka*, or “three baskets,” consists of the *sutta* (Sanskrit, *sūtra*), the VINAYA, and the abhidhamma (Sanskrit, ABHIDHARMA). The *sutta* basket, although the most thematically heterogeneous collection in so far as it deals with a wide range of subjects, is nonetheless relatively coherent in terms of style. A *sutta* or *sūtra* is a discourse or sermon usually on a specific topic delivered by the Buddha at a particular time, in a particular location, and to a specific audience. All of these—time, place, and audience—are identified in the preamble of a sūtra. Sūtras also tend to begin characteristically with the opening line, “Thus have I heard,” signaling once again the oral/aural nature of the original transmission of scripture. The vinaya basket is more thematically coherent in so far



as it is a collection of texts dealing with the monastic discipline of monks and nuns. It contains texts that discuss the life of the Buddha and the history of the order, texts that list monastic vows, narrative accounts of how the various vows were set forth by the Buddha, ritual formulas (for example, for ORDINATION), and so forth. The *abhidharma* basket, by contrast, is more philosophical, often elaborating lists of technical terms (for example, the psychophysical constituents of the self and the world), their definitions and their grouping. Since it is a more derivative, manipulated, one might almost say artificial genre, there arose the question even in ancient times of whether or not *abhidharma* texts should be considered the actual word of the Buddha, with different schools taking different positions on the issue.

Although there were questions even from very early times about which texts should and should not be considered the buddha's word (and hence scripture), the issue truly came to the fore with the rise of the MAHĀYĀNA, or Great Vehicle. The Mahāyāna emerged (or, according to the tradition, reemerged) in the first centuries of the common era in India. It maintained that the Buddha had actually taught a much wider set of doctrines and practices than those preserved in the earlier scriptures, but that these texts had been hidden until the world was ripe for their revelation. Mahāyānists thus made a case for an expanded scriptural corpus that included a wider range of texts. Although it is not clear whether this new corpus of texts ever achieved a canonical completeness or finality as a separate and distinct collection that had the same level of authority as the earlier canon, there is evidence that some Mahāyānists did have a notion of the so-called *Vaipulya* (*Extensive Works*) as a kind of Mahāyāna canon, possibly subsumed within the sūtra basket.

Following this same pattern, several centuries later the TANTRA (also known as the Mantrayāna or Vajrayāna) emerged as a movement within Indian Buddhism (more specifically, as a submovement within the Mahāyāna), claiming scriptural status for its own set of texts, this time called not sūtras but tantras. Like the former, the tantras were considered to be the word of the historical Buddha, or else the word of one or another of a variety of deities that, like the buddha, were fully enlightened beings. And here too one sometimes finds use of the "hidden text" trope to explain why these scriptures had not existed in the world heretofore. But tantrics also at times resorted to other strategies to explain why their scriptural texts had never

existed in this world, strategies that were not unknown to the earlier Mahāyāna. For example, in some instances, rather than having been hidden, the texts were claimed to have been revealed anew to accomplished yogis or siddhas in visions or in otherworldly journeys to heavenly realms. In this way one finds in some tantras a theme that is common to other religious traditions, namely, the notion of a heavenly library, access to which is granted only to spiritually advanced individuals.

As mentioned above, the corpus of texts that came to have the status of "scripture" varied from one Buddhist tradition to another. Hence, the Pāli, the Tibetan, and the Chinese canons, to take three examples, are quite different, even if there is some overlap between the three. For example, the Chinese canon has a section called *āgama*, which contains many of the sūtras also found in the Pāli canon (even if the Chinese texts are translations of different—Sanskrit, and not Pāli—versions of these texts). Likewise, the Tibetan canon contains a great deal of vinaya material that is thematically similar to material found in the vinaya sections of both the Chinese and the Pāli canons, even if the texts are not exactly the same. But of course both the Chinese and the Tibetan canons include Mahāyāna sūtras that are absent from the Pāli canon, and the Tibetan canon, in addition, includes many tantras that are not found in any other collection of Buddhist scriptural material. Theravāda Buddhists, who follow the Pāli canon, consider much of what is found in the Chinese and Tibetan scriptural collections to be apocryphal, that is, inauthentic because it is not the Buddha's word. And likewise, Chinese Mahāyāna Buddhists will consider much of the scriptural material found in the tantric portions of the Tibetan Buddhist canon to be apocryphal. And even among Tibetans there were controversies over whether certain texts were authentic, such as certain tantras of the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) school, and the so-called treasure texts (*gter ma*) that were said to have been hidden and later found in a variety of sites in Tibet. This is important to point out, lest it be thought that there is consensus among different Buddhists concerning what constitutes scripture. Despite the fact that there are some contemporary collections of translated texts that bear this name, there is in reality no such thing as a single "Buddhist Bible."

### The uses of scripture

That being said, there is a great deal of similarity in the ways that different Buddhist traditions use scripture.

First, scriptures are memorized. Sometimes they are memorized for no other reason than that memorizing the Buddha's word is considered a virtuous activity that brings much merit. In Thailand, for example, those (albeit few) monks who have managed to memorize the entire Pāli canon have an exalted status in the society, even being recognized with an official title by the government. Sometimes scriptures are committed to memory so as to be used liturgically, as is the case with the HEART SŪTRA in the East Asian Tibetan traditions. In each of these cases it is possible that the person who is memorizing the text will not understand the meaning of the scripture, and this tells us that scriptures cannot be reduced to their content or meaning, since they are put to many uses that have nothing to do with their meaning. For example, scriptures are often displayed on altars, where they serve as a representation of the second of the three jewels, the jewel of the dharma, and where, in that capacity, they serve as an object of worship and devotion. In large monasteries in Tibet, for example, it is common for ambulatories to exist below shelved scriptures, permitting the devout to receive the merit and blessing of the dharma by walking underneath (in a squatting position that indicates subservience to and respect for) the physical texts located above them. In addition, in some Buddhist traditions scriptures are often taken in procession into the fields before sowing or harvesting as a way of blessing the earth and assuring a good crop. Sometimes portions of scripture will be tattooed onto the body, sometimes they are worn in the form of AMULETS AND TALISMANS, and sometimes they are burnt and ingested, all of this as a way of protecting the bearer or consumer of the text from evil or harm. All of these might be called "magical" or "popular" uses of scripture, wherein the physicality of the text (its sound and its material quality) are the principal focus of the various practices. It would be mistaken to consider these practices to belong exclusively to the LAITY, since MONKS and NUNS also engage in them.

In addition to these popular practices, however, there are also what might be called the more elite uses of scripture. Here it is the content or meaning of the text that is the focus, and this is the object of concern of religious virtuosi, usually, though increasingly not exclusively, male monastics. In India the process of appropriating scriptural material in this fashion was systematized in the doctrine of the "three ways of gaining knowledge": through hearing, thinking, and MEDITATION. First, the scripture is heard. Since the earliest form of scripture was oral, the only access that monks

had to scripture was through hearing it spoken or recited. This spoken text was then usually memorized, and thus internalized linguistically. Once this had been accomplished, the monk was expected to begin the process of critically scrutinizing the meaning of the words. This would involve questioning the text, allowing doubts to emerge, and resolving those doubts through reasoning. Finally, once a stable form of certainty had been reached by pondering the meaning of the text, it was expected that that meaning would become the focus of one's meditation, so that the doctrinal content of the scripture would be internalized in such a way that it had a permanent transformative impact on the person of the practitioner. This process that begins with language and proceeds through critical reflective practices culminating in transformative experience is paradigmatic of the Buddhist scholastic approach to the study of scripture. It became the quintessential mode of elite appropriation of scriptural texts in much of later Indian, Tibetan, and East Asian Buddhism, and it is in large part what gave rise to the vast commentarial tradition, that is, to scriptural exegesis.

Although most Buddhist scholastics tended to follow the pattern of scriptural study just mentioned, it must be pointed out that there were also differences. For example, Indian and especially Tibetan Buddhist institutions tended to develop broad curricula that encouraged the study of many different scriptural texts (or their at times quasi-canonical commentaries). By contrast, in East Asia one finds that, rather than seeking diversified scriptural curricula, specific schools tended to focus on a particular scriptural text or on a small group of texts. Hence we find a focus on the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) on the part of the Tiantai School of East Asia. In a similar fashion, the Chinese Huayan School developed an elaborate system of metaphysics and hermeneutics around the HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra*, *Flower Garland Sūtra*). Pure Land Schools likewise had their own canon-within-the-canon in the form of the SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA.

It would be mistaken to think that all Buddhist schools are univocally in favor of scriptural study, however. For example, those forms of Japanese Buddhism that derive from Nichiren (1222–1282) tended to downplay the study of the content of the *Lotus Sūtra*, believing, rather, that the appropriate practice in the present "degenerate age" should be the recitation of the DAIMOKU title of the sūtra (*Myōhō-renge-kyō* in Japanese). An even more ambivalent attitude toward

scriptural study is found among certain (though by no means all) branches of the CHAN SCHOOL, wherein the study of scripture (especially for the beginning practitioner) is seen as having the potential to mire the mind in language and in the dichotomies of thought. In these traditions, then, scriptural study is eschewed in favor of meditation, or else permitted only after the adept has a strong foundation in meditative practice. Interestingly, this inverts scholastic Buddhism's classical order of praxis by advocating a movement from experience to words.

*See also:* Āgama/Nikāya; Apocrypha; Canon; Catalogues of Scriptures; Commentarial Literature; Merit and Merit-Making; Printing Technologies; Relics and Relics Cults

### Bibliography

- Bond, George D. "Two Theravāda Traditions of the Meaning of 'The Word of the Buddha.'" *Mahabodhi* 83 (1975): 402–413.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr., ed. *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Cabezón, José Ignacio. *Buddhism and Language: A Study of Indo-Tibetan Scholasticism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1994.
- Coward, Harold. "Scripture in Buddhism." In *Sacred Word and Sacred Text: Scripture in World Religions*. New York: Maryknoll, 1988.
- Eimer, Helmut, and Germano, David, eds. *The Many Canons of Tibetan Buddhism*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2002.
- Lancaster, Lewis. "Buddhist Literature: Its Canons, Scribes, and Editors." In *The Critical Study of Sacred Texts*, ed. Wendy Doniger O'Flaherty. Berkeley, CA: Berkeley Religious Studies Series, 1979.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *Buddhist Hermeneutics*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Ray, Reginald. "Buddhism: Sacred Text Written and Realized." In *The Holy Book in Comparative Perspective*, ed. Frederick M. Denny and Rodney L. Taylor. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1985.
- Smith, Wilfred Cantwell. "The Buddhist Influence." In *What Is Scripture? A Comparative Approach*. Minneapolis: Fortress, 1993.

JOSÉ IGNACIO CABEZÓN

## SELF-IMMOLATION

Self-immolation refers to ASCETIC PRACTICES that include the voluntary termination of life or the offering of parts of the body. The most commonly encountered types of self-immolation in Buddhism are auto-cremation (the deliberate incineration of one's own body) and the burning off of fingers. Buddhist literature refers to such practices by a variety of terms that may best be rendered as "abandoning the body." In the popular imagination, the best-known examples of self-immolation are the Vietnamese monks who burned themselves to death between 1963 and 1975 to protest the anti-Buddhist policies pursued by the government of South Vietnam. The auto-cremation of Thích Quang Đức on June 11, 1963, was captured by the American reporter Malcolm Browne in a series of photographs that have been frequently reproduced. Auto-cremation by Vietnamese Buddhists continues to be reported in the 1990s and early years of the twenty-first century.

Self-immolation is best attested in Chinese Buddhist sources, which record hundreds of cases dating from the late fourth to the mid-twentieth century. Very few of these acts can be understood as political protest. The offering of fingers is still recognized and carried out as an ascetic practice by monks in China and Korea.

Chinese Buddhist sources contain many accounts of monks, nuns, and laypeople who encouraged insects to feed on their blood, cut their own flesh (particularly the thigh), burned incense on their skin, or burned their fingers, toes, or arms. These practices did not always result in death, but they were still classified as heroic examples of "abandoning the body." There are also accounts of people who starved themselves to death, disemboweled themselves, drowned in rivers or oceans, leapt from cliffs or trees, or fed themselves to wild animals. Although drowning seems to have been more common in Japan, auto-cremation was the most commonly attested form of self-immolation in China. The preparations for auto-cremation usually involved the construction of a funeral pyre, inside which the monk or nun would sit. The body was often wrapped in oil-soaked cloth to expedite the burning process, and frequently the auto-cremator would also consume oil and incense for several days or even months beforehand. Auto-cremation was usually a public event witnessed by a large audience. In the early medieval period (fifth to seventh centuries C.E.) Chinese emperors and senior officials often attended and later eulogized these dramatic acts.

SELF. *See* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self)

Autocremation was primarily a Sinitic Buddhist creation that first appeared in late fourth-century China. As practiced in China, autocremation was not a continuation of an Indian custom. Rather, it developed after a particular interpretation of certain Indian texts was combined with indigenous traditions, such as burning the body to bring rain, a practice that long predated the arrival of Buddhism in China. The most influential textual models were some of the bloodier JĀTAKA tales and the twenty-third chapter of the LOTUS SŪTRA (Chinese, *Miaofa lianhua jing*; Sanskrit, *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*), in which the Bodhisattva Bhaiṣajyagururāja (Medicine-King) burns his body in offering to the buddhas and to the sūtra itself. The literary precedents for the practice of self-immolation found in Indian Buddhist sources are often extremely graphic, even if they were intended only rhetorically. These have been well studied by Hubert Durt and Reiko Ohnuma. The validity of self-immolation was reinforced by the production of Chinese apocryphal sūtras that vindicated the practice, by the composition of biographies of self-immolators, and, in time, their inclusion in the Buddhist canon as exemplars of heroic practice.

Self-immolation was often controversial and attracted opposition from Confucians and sometimes from the state. The Confucian revivalist Han Yu (768–824), in his famous *Lun Fogu biao* (*Memorial on the Buddha Relic*), warned Emperor Xianzong (r. 805–820) in 819 that he should not honor the Buddha's relic because this would trigger a mass outbreak of religious fervor, causing people to burn the tops of their heads and set fire to their fingers. An edict promulgated in 955 by Emperor Shizong (r. 954–959) of the Later Zhou explicitly prohibited self-immolation for both saṅgha and laity. Within Buddhism, the strongest objection came from the eminent monk YIJING (635–713), who wrote a lengthy diatribe against autocremation in his *Nanhai jigui neifa zhuan* (*An Account of the Dharma Sent Back from the Southern Seas*). Much later the Ming dynasty cleric ZHUHONG (1532–1612) included a heartfelt and extremely critical essay on the practice of burning the body in his *Zheng'e ji* (*Rectification of Errors*, 1614). The most coherently and passionately argued defense of self-immolation is that of Yongming YANSHOU (904–975) in his *Wanshan Tonggui ji* (*The Common End of the Myriad Good Practices*). For Yanshou self-immolation is primarily a manifestation of DĀNA (GIVING), and as the ultimate expression of this PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTION) it is grounded in ultimate truth rather than at the level of conventional phenomena.

## Bibliography

- Benn, James A. "Where Text Meets Flesh: Burning the Body as an 'Apocryphal Practice' in Chinese Buddhism." *History of Religions* 37, no. 4 (1998): 295–322.
- Durt, Hubert. "Two Interpretations of Human-Flesh Offering: Misdeed or Supreme Sacrifice." *Journal of the International College for Advanced Buddhist Studies (Kokosai Bukkyōgaku daigakuin daigaku kenkyū kiyo)* 1 (1998): 236–210 (sic).
- Gernet, Jacques. "Les suicides par le feu chez les bouddhistes chinois de Ve au Xe siècle." *Mélanges publiés par l'Institut des Hautes Études Chinoises* 2 (1960): 527–558.
- Jan, Yün-hua. "Buddhist Self-Immolation in Medieval China." *History of Religions* 4 (1965): 243–265.
- Ohnuma, Reiko. "The Gift of the Body and the Gift of the Dharma." *History of Religions* 37, no. 4 (1998): 323–359.
- Orzech, Charles D. "Provoked Suicide and the Victim's Behavior." In *Curing Violence*, ed. Mark I. Wallace and Theophus H. Smith. Sonoma, CA: Polebridge Press, 1994.

JAMES A. BENN

## SENGZHAO

Practically the entire life of the important early Chinese MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL philosopher Shi Sengzhao (374–414 C.E.) was connected to KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413) and Kumārajīva's translation workshop in Chang'an. Coming from a poor family, Sengzhao earned his living as a copyist. This provided him with an excellent education in the Chinese classics, as well as Daoist and Buddhist scriptures. Recognized as a distinguished literatus by age twenty, he was fascinated with Kumārajīva even before Kumārajīva arrived at Chang'an. In fact, according to his biography, Sengzhao traveled to Guzang to meet his world renowned mentor, by whose side he spent the next twenty years serving as disciple and interpreter.

Many of Kumārajīva's translations bear the literary style of Sengzhao, who is said to have had the primary responsibility for editing Kumārajīva's translations, adapting them to the taste of the literary elite in Chang'an. Sengzhao is also responsible for putting together a catalogue of Kumārajīva's translations, including some ninety titles, which circulated in Chang'an as late as the sixth century and which were later absorbed into the comprehensive catalogues *Chu sanzang jiji* (*Collection of Records about the Production of the Tripiṭaka*) and *Kaihuang Sanbao lu* (*Catalogue of the Three Treasures of the Kaihuang [Era]*).

Sengzhao made multiple contributions to the world of early medieval Chinese Buddhism. One is his ten-fascicle commentary to the *Weimojie suo shuo jing* (*Sūtra of Vimalakīrti's Discourses*; Sanskrit, *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa-sūtra*), which elevates lay Buddhism above the monastic path of the clergy. Sengzhao is known to have been converted to Buddhism by this sūtra. His commentary, written to Kumārajīva's translation of this text, reportedly inspired hundreds of Chang'an literati to practice Buddhism. Another contribution is a collection of philosophical treatises in which the Madhyamaka philosophy of NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.) was expounded through the use of devices and language provided by traditional Chinese thinkers, particularly those of the Xuanxue (Dark Learning) school. Several such treatises were collected by later editors of the Tripiṭaka under the name of ZHAO LUN (*The Treatises of [Seng] zhao*). Other works attributed to Sengzhao, such as *Zongben yilun* (*Treatise on the Foundational [Principles of the Doctrine]*) and the apocryphal *Baozanglun* (*Treasure Store Treatise*), circulated as independent treatises. The greatest philosophical importance of Sengzhao's writings is the introduction to China of the Madhyamaka ideas of Nāgārjuna as they were shaped by Kumārajīva's understanding of these issues. Sengzhao's own Daoist mystical inclinations contributed to the great emphasis placed on the idea of the TATHĀGATAGARBHA (buddha-nature) in Kumārajīva's translated texts, thus paving the way for the next phase in the development of Chinese Buddhist thought.

See also: Catalogues of Scriptures

### Bibliography

- Ch'en, Kenneth. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- Liebenthal, Walter, trans. and ed. *Chao lun, The Treatises of Seng-chao: A Translation with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices*, Vols. 1 and 2, second revised edition. Hong Kong: Hong Kong University Press, 1968.
- Sharf, Robert H. *Coming to Terms with Chinese Buddhism: A Reading of the Treasure Store Treatise*. A Kuroda Institute book. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- T'ang Yung-t'ung. *Han Wei Liang-Chin Nan-pei ch'ao fo-chiao-shih*. Shanghai: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1938.

TANYA STORCH

## SENTIENT BEINGS

*Sentient beings* is a term used to designate the totality of living, conscious beings that constitute the object

and audience of the Buddhist teaching. Translating various Sanskrit terms (*jantu*, *bahu jana*, *jagat*, *sattva*), *sentient beings* conventionally refers to the mass of living things subject to illusion, suffering, and rebirth (SAṂSĀRA). Less frequently, *sentient beings* as a class broadly encompasses all beings possessing consciousness, including BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS.

The Pāli *nikāyas* and the Sarvāstivāda Abhidharma differentiate the mass of deluded beings subject to saṃsāra into a hierarchy of five paths or destinations of REBIRTH based upon KARMA (ACTION): DIVINITIES (deva), humans (*manuṣya*), animals (*tiryak*), spirits of the dead (preta), and denizens of hell (*naraka*). An alternative list of six categories, which was attributed to the Vātsīputrīyas and gained popularity in East Asian and Tibetan Buddhism, places a class of demonic beings (asura) between humans and gods.

All of these beings reside in the three realms of existence (*tridhātu*) that comprise the entirety of the Buddhist universe. The realm of desire (*kāmadhātu*) is residence for beings from all the categories, while the realm of form (*rūpadhātu*) and the realm of formlessness (*ārūpyadhātu*) are reserved for gods of higher achievement. Among these paths of rebirth, the denizens of hell, spirits of the dead, and animals are regarded as unhappy destinies, while rebirth as humans and gods (as well as asura in the list of six) are considered desirable, most importantly because it is only through the human and deva destinies that enlightenment can be obtained.

Although the Buddhist message from its inception held as its goal the liberation of sentient beings from the cycle of rebirth, the concern for sentient beings took on even greater urgency with the emergence of the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, since all called to this tradition's bodhisattva vocation were entrusted with the welfare and ultimate liberation of all sentient beings. The compassion, transfer of merit, and cultivation of UPĀYA (skill in means) that are central in the cultivation of the bodhisattva path are all concerned with the salvation of sentient beings. The Mahāyāna tradition furthermore came to maintain that all sentient beings possessed the buddha-nature, which meant that all inherently had the potential to become enlightened. In later developments in East Asian Buddhism the possession of this nature was extended to insentient existents as well.

See also: Cosmology; Ghosts and Spirits; Karuṇā (Compassion); Merit and Merit-Making; Tathāgata-garbha

## Bibliography

Gethin, Rupert. *The Foundations of Buddhism*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Matsunaga, Daigan, and Matsunaga, Alicia. *The Buddhist Concept of Hell*. New York: Philosophical Library, 1972.

Sadakata, Akira, et al. *Buddhist Cosmology: Philosophy and Origins*, tr. Gaynor Sekimori. Boston: Charles E. Tuttle, 1997.

DANIEL A. GETZ

## SEXUALITY

From the earliest beginnings of the religion, Buddhist thinkers have recognized the human drive for sensual gratification as an extremely powerful force. This recognition, however, is difficult to characterize. While sexuality has usually been viewed suspiciously, as a primary obstacle on the PATH to salvation, some Buddhists have claimed that, used properly, desire and pleasure can offer a shortcut to enlightenment for the advanced practitioner. Also, since laypeople have always been an essential part of the Buddhist community, fertility cults embracing a fecund sexuality have played an important part in the repertoire of ritual and iconography.

This entry outlines the tension in Buddhism between antipathy toward sex and the celebration of it. As a religious tradition that has spread widely to diverse geographical regions over the course of some two and a half millennia, Buddhism cannot be said to have one fixed view of sex and sexuality. While it is impossible to delineate a single Buddhist attitude regarding sexuality, one can observe in specific doctrinal and historical moments tendencies typical of the tradition as a whole.

### The celibate ideal: Buddha, arhat, monk, and nun

Hagiographies of the Buddha, in their treatment of his early years as the prince Siddhārtha Gautama, place great emphasis on the sensual nature of his royal amusements. Having received a prophecy that the prince would either become a universal monarch or a great renunciant, Siddhartha's father, King Śuddhodāna, uses every means at his disposal to keep his son's mind firmly focused on the pleasures of this world. Essentially, the young man is held prisoner in a garden of earthly delights. With sumptuous palaces and a large harem, Siddhārtha has every opportunity

to indulge in the pleasures of the flesh. The women of celestial beauty who dote on the young prince, foremost among them his lovely wife, Yaśodhara, are quite prominently featured. Lavish gynecium scenes are depicted in the written, illustrated, and carved biographical representations of the Buddha's life. Every libidinal urge he may have is gratified immediately. And yet, he feels malaise in this paradisiacal setting.

Life in the palace compound is cloying and confining, so Siddhartha asks his charioteer to take him on a tour outside the gates. There he sees various signs of impermanence, which further disturb him, and he decides to leave his life of royal ease and with it the world of sexuality. As the prince escapes the palace by night, he sees his women, usually so poised and bewitching, sleeping in various states of dishevelment. Like so many corpses they lie, their poses wholly unflattering, threads of drool hang from the corners of their lolling mouths. The sight fills him with disgust as he beats a hasty retreat. After years of hard work in mental, spiritual, and physical cultivation, Siddhārtha finds himself on the verge of enlightenment. MĀRA, wishing to entice Siddhārtha from the fulfillment of his aim, sends his daughters to tempt the great man. Although they are beautiful as they dance provocatively and flirt with him, Siddhārtha is unmoved. Even after the women undergo a series of transformations in an attempt to accord with a full range of male tastes in women, Siddhārtha remains steadfast in his pursuit of the goal of enlightenment.

Vulnerability to sexual temptation remains a barometer of spiritual fallibility in the Buddhist tradition far beyond this foundational story. Some accounts suggest that the first schism in the Buddhist monastic community was occasioned in large part by a debate concerning the nature of the enlightened person, the ARHAT. In the course of the debate, a monk named Mahādeva proposed that arhats are limited in their powers of omniscience, clairvoyance, and continence. Among the five assertions this monk made is that although the arhat has put an end to rebirth, escaping the round of SAṂSĀRA, he is still subject to nocturnal emissions or so-called wet dreams. To make such a claim was to suggest that the perfected person was still subject to lustful thoughts, if only in his dreams. For some members of the community, this was heresy. Similarly, the story of the One-Horned Saint, a tale well known in Buddhist Asia from India to Japan, describes a religious virtuoso who has obtained many magical powers (*abhijñā*) as a result of his training and austerities. While flying through the air one day, he is

distracted by the sight of the white thighs of a woman who has hiked up her dress to wash clothes by a river. The sage tumbles from the sky, bereft of his supernatural abilities. In one moment of sexual arousal, all the fruits of years of discipline are lost. He marries the washerwoman and settles down to a life more ordinary. In this story, the control of sexual urges is presented as a kind of litmus test for spiritual attainment.

For the monastic community, the threat of sexual temptation was recognized as a serious obstacle to progress on the Buddhist path. For this reason, the disciplinary codes for MONKS and NUNS, the VINAYA, are quite explicit and exhaustive in the varieties of sexual activity they proscribe. The monk's rule clearly states that genital, oral, manual, or anal sex is absolutely prohibited, be it with humans, divine beings, or animals. These acts will result in expulsion from the Buddhist order (SAṄGHA), as will making a lustful remark to a woman about her pudenda or her anus. Intentionally emitting semen (nocturnal emissions excepted) or causing someone else to do so will result in temporary suspension from the order. The nun's rule is similarly detailed.

Yet, while celibacy and complete sexual abstinence was an ideal for the clergy, for the LAITY, sexuality was an essential and celebrated aspect of life. In the different geographical and cultural areas where it flourished, Buddhism often assimilated itself to autochthonous fertility cults, enlisting local deities into the Buddhist pantheon. Thus, although proscribed for monks and nuns, lay sexuality was not merely tolerated as a necessary evil, but could, in fact, be lauded as a positive good. In some parts of Southeast Asia, where temporary ordination of young men is common, time spent as a monk is understood to increase one's fertility and virility.

### Sexuality and the lay Buddhist

The earliest surviving Buddhist STŪPA, the great stūpa at SĀÑCĪ in central India, was built around the third century B.C.E. In its richly carved decorative railings and gates, which date from a few centuries later, the modern viewer is afforded a glimpse into the sumptuous world of ancient Buddhist sexuality. These stone fences and doors are adorned with frankly seductive statues of female tree sprites (*yakṣī*) and male–female pairs in attitudes of erotic play or union (*maithuna*). The gracefully arched pose of the *yakṣī* as she grasps the branches of a mango tree is echoed in ancient Indian representations of the Buddha's mother, Māyā, as she painlessly delivers the bodhisattva from her side.

The person of Lady Māyā is a telling indicator of Buddhist ambivalence toward sexuality. The bodhisattva, the Buddha-to-be, must choose for his mother a woman who is the epitome of sexual attractiveness and fecundity, and yet she must die ten days after bearing him so that there can be no chance of her being defiled by any subsequent sexual intercourse.

In every Buddhist culture, lay donors and supporters of Buddhism far outnumbered monastics. The institution of the family has been a focus of Buddhist theory and practice in every context—from India, to Thailand, to Korea. Lay worshippers who visited the Sāñcī stūpa and similar sites like Bhārhut, while they no doubt also sought proximity to the relics of the Buddha enshrined within the monument, would have been keenly interested in these visual representations of gods and goddesses who had ensured sexual fulfillment and safe childbirth long before the advent of Śākyamuni.

New stories were created to demonstrate the Buddhist nature of such deities. These deities, whom people were accustomed to worshipping, were given new Buddhist identities and thus existing loyalties and devotions were brought into the Buddhist fold. One popular pairing was Pāñcika (Kubera), King of the Tree Sprites, and Hāritī, a ravenous demoness converted by Śākyamuni. Statues of this couple, often surrounded by small children, gave the laity a positive vision of their own sexually engaged lives with the attendant blessings of progeny that belies the stereotype of Buddhism as a pessimistic and world-denying faith.

Wherever Buddhism spread, a similar kind of conquest through assimilation occurred. For instance, in Japan, popular tales recounting the origins of Buddhist deities often incorporated local gods and goddesses and more often than not involved a story of star-crossed lovers. Medieval Buddhist interpretations of Japan's cosmogonic myth placed particular emphasis on the lesson of the creative power of sexual union. Laypeople saw no contradiction between adherence to the Buddhist teachings and an active sex life; native fertility cults survived in Buddhist guise.

And yet, it was not only the laity who sought sexual fulfillment. In many MAHĀYĀNA countries, members of the saṅgha, specifically monks, saw fit to embrace women as wives or lovers either in secret or publicly. The bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara is said to have visited the thirteenth-century Japanese monk SHINRAN (1173–1263) to assure him that she would remove from him the obstacle of sexual desire by transforming into a woman and becoming his wife. In today's

Japan, most Buddhist monks (often called *priests* in English to distinguish them from celibates) are married. In the VAJRAYĀNA or tantric contexts of Nepal and Tibet, there has long existed a special class of married clergy. While to some, both within and outside the Buddhist community, this may seem like a violation of the rule of the saṅgha, by many it is understood as much more than a mere concession to human nature. For Shinran, the attempt to live a life unsullied by sex marked a kind of striving that smacked of hubris. For others, particularly within the Vajrayāna, sexuality is a powerful force for transformation, an aspect of the path of purification, an aid to enlightenment.

### **Sexuality as obstacle, sexuality as opportunity**

While sexuality was often understood as a negative force associated with desire, some attempted to harness its power as a tool. As a fundamental drive numbered among the *kleśa* (afflictions, passions), sexuality was regarded with much disdain and suspicion, but there were those who felt that sensual desire was a door to liberation. Others used the senses to distance themselves from sexual instincts. One MEDITATION practice that spread, in one form or another, across Buddhist Asia, sought to cut off sexual desire at its root. Here, in typically androcentric fashion, sexual desire figured as the desire of a man for a woman.

In these graveyard meditations, the monk would observe the fresh corpse of a young woman, a potential object of lust, as it proceeded through the stages of decomposition. As the body would begin to bloat, the skin to discolor, as maggots and wild animals hastened the process of the dissolution of the corpse, the monk was invited to reflect upon the true nature of the body. What had been so bewitching became an object of repulsion. A strain of misogyny that locates the origins of male desire in the female body is common to monastic legal codes and didactic literature. Thus, men's lust for sexual gratification is blamed on the women who are the objects of their attraction. Behind this is the insistence in orthodox or mainstream Buddhism that sexual desire must be suppressed in order to attain the goal of awakening. A common description of the body is that it is a bag of skin filled with blood and pus, urine and excrement.

Some Buddhists, primarily those of the Mahāyāna schools, have taken a different tack, at least rhetorically. While actual sexual activity was always the exception within the monastic community, the non-dualist doctrines of the Mahāyāna called the traditional

preoccupation with purity into question. In the tantric conception of the Vajrayāna and the transcendentalist philosophy of immanence advocated by some in the CHAN SCHOOL, the afflictions (*kleśa*) themselves are equivalent to BODHI (AWAKENING), the realm of suffering (saṃsāra) in which one lives is no different than the goal of enlightenment (nirvāṇa). The phenomenal world is, just as it is, ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS). In such a philosophical context, it is impossible to define sex as "dirty," or as somehow able to impede enlightenment, which is understood to be an indwelling and immanent quality of mind. Awakening has nothing to do with stifling urges like sexuality; what is essential is to transform one's outlook on the world. Correct understanding is, therefore, more important than what one does with one's body. To the person who has deeply understood emptiness, no act creates attachment, no act is defiling. In fact, when used properly, sex can teach the practitioner about nondualism and the eradication of the sense of an independent self.

In some traditions sex has been understood as a liberative technique, numbered among the UPĀYA (skillful means) of the bodhisattva. In tantric Tibetan Buddhism in particular, there is an elaborate system of sexual yoga. Whether the sexual encounter between the male practitioner and the DĀKINĪ is properly meant to be understood as taking place in the physical world or in the mind of the devotee or in some other realm is a matter subject to much debate, but the literature outlining these practices is rich in sensual imagery and detailed in its description of the male and female body. Considerable attention is focused on sexual techniques and postures. Also remarkable is the iconography associated with this practice of union. While most often associated with the Tibetan cultural region, ideas of the religious benefits of conscious and controlled sexual union also appear in other contexts, for instance, the TACHIKAWARYŪ school of Japanese tantra, which was persecuted as heretical.

### **Buddhist views of homosexuality**

The question of Buddhist views toward homosexuality is a complex one. One might want to argue that homosexuality is for the Buddhist problematic in precisely the same way that heterosexuality is; desire is, ipso facto, nonconductive to liberation and contributes to a false notion of the independence and permanence of the self. In the monastic codes there are sanctions against almost any imaginable kind of sexual activity, and homosexual acts are by no means exempt. However, male homosexuality is given special attention.



This is evident in the extensive vinaya discussion of the somewhat ambiguous figure of the *paṇḍaka*. While this term has often been translated as “eunuch,” there is good reason to understand it to mean a man who is sexually inclined toward other men.

In Japan there is substantial evidence that some Buddhists understood homosexuality, or more specifically relationships between adult male monks and their boy pages, to be a natural part of the monastic life. There are numerous popular tales from the medieval period describing these affairs. Usually the stories end in tragedy and the monk regrets his excessive attachment to the boy, but nowhere is the propriety of the homosexual relationship per se called into question.

*See also:* Family, Buddhism and the; Gender; Women

### Bibliography

- Bloss, Lowell W. “The Buddha and the Nāga: A Study in Buddhist Folk Religiosity.” *History of Religions* 13, no. 1 (1973): 36–53.
- Cabezón, José Ignacio, ed. *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Faure, Bernard. *The Red Thread: Buddhist Approaches to Sexuality*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Jaffe, Richard. *Neither Monk nor Layman: Clerical Marriage in Modern Japanese Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2002.
- Perera, L. P. N. *Sexuality in Ancient India: A Study Based on the Pāli Vinayaṭṭaka*. Kelaniya, Sri Lanka: Postgraduate Institute of Pāli and Buddhist Studies, 1993.
- Shaw, Miranda. *Passionate Enlightenment: Women in Tantric Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1994.
- Wilson, Liz. *Charming Cadavers: Horrific Figurations of the Feminine in Indian Buddhist Hagiographic Literature*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1996.

HANK GLASSMAN

## SHINGON BUDDHISM, JAPAN

Shingon refers to a major Japanese Buddhist school devoted to esoteric Buddhism. Shingon’s doctrine is built around two essential theories developed by KŪKAI (774–835), based on his interpretation of the *Mahāvairocana-sūtra* (Japanese, *Dainichikyō*) and the *Tattvasaṃgraha* or *Vajraśekhara-sūtra* (or *Tantra*; Japanese, *Kongōchōkyō*): the dharmakāya’s preaching of the dharma (*hosshin seppō*), and the practice of the three mysteries (*sanmitsu gyō*). According to Kūkai, the

cosmic Buddha Mahāvairocana, whose body consists of the six great elements (earth, water, fire, wind, space, and consciousness), is none other than the dharmakāya (law body). The constant, harmonious interaction between the six elements creates all things in the universe; everything in the world, made up of the six elements uniquely combined, is the manifestation of the dharmakāya. Thus, the dharmakāya permeates the universe, and all sorts of movements in the world are understood as the dharmakāya’s manifestation of the dharma.

This secret revelation of the dharma can be captured by the study of the ritual system of the three mysteries: the mysteries of the body (MUDRĀ), speech (MANTRA), and mind (MAṆḌALA). The study of mudrās teaches practitioners to recapture in their bodies the cosmic movement of the six great elements by forming sacred gestures with their hands, arms, and legs. Mantras enable practitioners to manipulate the syllables that symbolically represent the six elements and their combinations, and to create the intertwining of the elements in the phonic actions of the mantras chanted. Meditation on the maṇḍala creates in the minds of practitioners sacred images whose colors and shapes illustrate the six elements in their constant, concerted, engendering acts. The mastery of the discipline of the three mysteries therefore teaches Shingon practitioners not only to decipher dharmakāya Mahāvairocana’s secret language, but also to engage in the dharmakāya’s eternal creation of the universe.

This mode of understanding the relationship between the universe and individuals, the macrocosm and microcosm, led to the development of Shingon as a spiritual and religious “technology.” When applied to the area of physiology, the practice of the three mysteries enables practitioners to ritually simulate the body, speech, and mind of the cosmic Buddha, which, because of the intrinsic identity between the creating force and created objects, effaces the distinction between the practitioner and the dharmakāya (*sokushin jōbutsu*; literally, “to achieve buddhahood in this very body”). The same technology can be employed as medicine in that it can serve as a method to restore the optimal balance between the six elements in the body of a patient. When applied outwardly to the environment, the practice of the three mysteries provides the means to change the course of natural events. Or, in the field of human affairs, it serves as a political technology to be used in diplomacy and warfare. All these elements have influenced the course of the development of the Shingon school in Japanese history.

The incipient Shingon school in the early Heian period of the ninth century grew rapidly due largely to the adoption by the royal court of esoteric Buddhist rituals for performing diverse ceremonies, especially the rites for the emperor's coronation, legitimation, and empowerment. The Shingon school also built an alliance with the schools of NARA BUDDHISM, which found Shingon's orientation toward ritual studies complementary to their doctrinal, text-based study of Buddhism. Tōnain'in subtemple at Tōdaiji was established in 875 as a center for the combined study of the Shingon and Sanron schools by the monk Shōbō (832–909). In the mid-Heian period (tenth and eleventh centuries), new centers of Shingon ritual studies, such as Daikakuji, Kajūji, Ninnaji, and Daigoji, in the vicinity of the Heiankyō (Kyoto), were founded by the emperors and members of the imperial family. Shingon monks at these monasteries vied with one another in developing sophisticated and complex theories and practice of esoteric rituals to better serve the imperial court and the aristocracy. Ningai (951–1045) is celebrated for his rainmaking ritual, which is said to have been used during the great droughts of 1015 and 1018, and on nine other occasions. These developments during the Heian period were important in forming the Shingon school's strong orientation in ritual studies. By the end of the period, thirty-six ritual lineages within Shingon had been established, with each lineage holding its own distinct claim for its dharma transmission.

The study of Shingon doctrine developed only from the latter part of the Heian period. Kakuban (1094–1143) was the first to develop a systematic interpretation of Kūkai's doctrinal works. During the Kamakura period (1185–1333), Kakukai (1142–1223), Dōhan (1178–1252), Raibō (1279–1330), and other scholar-monks of Mount Kōya and Tōji, two institutions founded by Kūkai, took the lead in developing a gamut of doctrinal treatises and exegeses on the essential scriptures of the Shingon school. Raiyu (1226–1304) inherited Kakuban's scholarship and founded Mount Negoro Monastery as another major center for Shingon doctrinal studies. Negoro later developed into the headquarters of the Shingi Shingon school, which was largely responsible for the spread of Shingon into the provinces of eastern Japan in the medieval and early modern periods.

During this period the spread of numerous legends depicting Kūkai as a charismatic, miracle-making savior further raised the prestige of Mount Kōya and Tōji. The alliance of the Shingon school with the Nara Buddhist schools continued to grow. It was often the

scholar-monks of the Nara monasteries whose combined mastery of Shingon gave rise to the most innovative use of the knowledge of esotericism; they include Hōssō master Jōkei (1155–1213), Kegon master Myōe KŌBEN (1173–1232), and Shingon-ritsu nun Shinnyo (1211–?). Master Eizon of Saidaiji (1201–1290) and his disciple Ninjō (1217–1303) are particularly renowned for saving beggars, lepers, and outcasts. This was also the time in which *kami*, the local Japanese gods, became integral within the esoteric Buddhist pantheon, playing the role of the guardians of Buddhism. Eizon's esoteric Buddhist ritual service in 1281 at Iwashimizu, where the god HACHIMAN is enshrined, was praised by the court, the warrior government, and the masses for its claimed power to protect the nation from the Mongol invasion.

Political turmoil during the Muromachi and Sengoku periods (1333–1600) significantly weakened the institutional and economic foundation of the Shingon monasteries. However, the influence of Shingon on late medieval culture and art, especially in Japanese poetry and poetics, remained essential. A significant number of celebrated *waka* and *renga* poets of the period, including Shinkei (1406–1475) and Sōgi (1421–1502), were esoteric Buddhists. In the early modern period, the religious policy of the Tokugawa shogunate prohibited Buddhists from studying more than one discipline. Thus, one significant characteristic of Shingon since inception—its combined study with exoteric schools—ceased, and the Shingon school was reduced to a sectarian institution. The forceful separation of the worship of local gods from Buddhism and the creation of Shintō as the official religion of the nation by the Meiji government deprived Shingon of another important quality. In 1868 the Shingon ritual was eliminated from the emperor's coronation ceremony, and the esoteric ritual lost its relevance to the official business of the state. At the beginning of the twenty-first century, Shingon continues to exist as an affiliation of eighteen independent subschools—the largest among them are the Mount Kōya school, the Chizan school, and the Busan school. However, with its sophisticated symbolism of visual signs and representations that are grounded in unique semiotic and linguistic theories, Shingon continues to exert its influence on modern and contemporary Japanese art, literature, and philosophy.

*See also:* Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Japan; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan

**Bibliography**

- Abé, Ryūichi. *The Weaving of Mantra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Dobbins, James C. "Envisioning Kamakura Buddhism." In *Re-Visioning Kamakura Buddhism*, ed. Richard K. Payne. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1998.
- Hakeda, Yoshito. *Kūkai: Major Works*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1976.
- Orzech, Charles. *Politics and Transcendent Wisdom*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1998.
- Rambach, Pierre. *The Secret Message of Tantric Buddhism*. New York: Rizzoli, 1979.
- Sharf, Robert. *Coming to Terms with Chinese Buddhism: A Reading of the Treasure Store Treatise*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- ten Grotenhuis, Elizabeth. *Japanese Mandalas: Representations of Sacred Geography*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Yamasaki Taiko. *Shingon: Japanese Esoteric Buddhism*, translated and adapted by Richard and Cynthia Peterson; ed. Yasuyoshi Morimoto and David Kidd. Boston: Shambhala, 1988.

RYŪICHI ABÉ

**SHINRAN**

Shinran (Zenshin, Shakkū; 1173–1263) was a Pure Land Buddhist teacher of medieval Japan and founder of the Jōdo Shinshū (Shin Buddhism) tradition. His teachings focused on FAITH (*shinjin*) in conjunction with the practice of the *nenbutsu*, invoking Amida (AMITĀBHA) Buddha's name, as the basis for birth in the Pure Land, where he believed Buddhist enlightenment is immediate. Shinran considered the Buddha's power, rather than human effort, to be the motive force behind all true religious practice and behind enlightenment itself. The Shinshū, in accord with Shinran's own example, broke with the Buddhist tradition of clerical celibacy, and allowed priests to marry and have families. Three centuries later, Shinran's modest following grew into a huge and powerful Buddhist school headed by Honganji in Kyoto, which originated at his gravesite.

Shinran spent the first twenty years of his career as a Tendai monk on Mount Hiei, but in 1201, after a hundred-day religious retreat at the Rokkakudō chapel in Kyoto, he abandoned monastic life and became the disciple of HŌNEN (1133–1212). In 1207 Shinran was

banished to Echigo province (present-day Niigata prefecture) in a general suppression of Hōnen's Pure Land movement that occurred after provocative behavior by certain followers. Shinran never saw his teacher again, and for over twenty-five years he lived away from Kyoto. The last two decades of this period were spent in the Kanto region (around modern-day Tokyo), where Shinran became a peripatetic Pure Land teacher. His marriage occurred shortly before, or soon after, his banishment. Shinran continued to dress in Buddhist clerical robes and shaved his head as priests do, even while living with his wife, Eshinni (1182–ca. 1268), and their children.

The gist of Shinran's teaching is that Amida Buddha has vowed to bring all living beings to enlightenment, and the power of his vow surpasses any religious practice humans can perform. Thus, the consummate religious state is single-hearted reliance on Amida, or faith. This faith is none other than the Buddha operating in a person, rather than a person's own created mental condition. The *nenbutsu*, likewise, is an act initiated by Amida, as well as an extension of him in the world. When people hear Amida's name it awakens them to his grand vow, and when they intone the *nenbutsu* their practice coalesces with Amida's compassionate activity. The upshot of this teaching is that Amida's saving power extends to everyone without differentiation: clerical or lay, male or female, good or evil. In fact, evildoers are a prime object of Amida's vow (*akunin shōki*).

Shinran returned to Kyoto in the early 1230s. By that time he had completed a preliminary draft of his magnum opus, *Kyōgyōshinshō* (*Teaching, Practice, Faith, and Attainment*). He spent the rest of his days in Kyoto, but remained in touch with his Kanto followers through letters and occasional visits on their part. In old age he dedicated himself to study and writing, completing his *Kyōgyōshinshō* and composing a variety of other Buddhist works, including *wasan* hymns. His wife and most of their children moved to Echigo in the 1250s to live on property she inherited. But Shinran remained in Kyoto with their youngest daughter Kakushinni (1224–1283), who looked after him in his last years. He died in Kyoto in 1263, chanting Amida's name and surrounded by followers. Many revered him as an earthly manifestation of Amida Buddha or of Kannon (Avalokiteśvara) Bodhisattva.

*See also:* Japan; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Nenbutsu (Chinese, Nianfo; Korean, Yōmbul); Pure Land Buddhism; Pure Land Schools

### Bibliography

- Bloom, Alfred. *Shinran's Gospel of Pure Grace*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1965.
- Dobbins, James C. *Jōdo Shinshū: Shin Buddhism in Medieval Japan* (1989). Reprint, Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Hirota, Dennis, et al., trans. *The Collected Works of Shinran*, 2 vols. Kyoto: Jōdo Shinshū Hongwanji-ha, 1997.
- Keel, Hee Sung. *Understanding Shinran: A Dialogical Approach*. Fremont, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1995.
- Ueda, Yoshifumi, and Hirota, Dennis. *Shinran: An Introduction to His Thought*. Kyoto: Hongwanji International Center, 1989.

JAMES C. DOBBINS

## SHINTŌ (HONJI SUIJAKU) AND BUDDHISM

Any investigation into the relationships of Shintō and Buddhism in Japan cannot ignore the effects of the anti-Buddhist persecutions and forced separation of Buddhist monasteries and *kami* shrines that occurred during the Meiji era (1868–1912). Such an inquiry can be further strengthened by understanding the premodern contexts. This entry will attempt to do precisely that by discussing how Buddhist concepts and ritual techniques served (or were adapted) to articulate the significance of various kinds of gods and spirits in premodern Japan.

### Received interpretations and their problems

According to received definitions, Shintō is the autochthonous religious tradition of Japan. Its origins can be traced to animistic beliefs dating from the remotest antiquity. Its main features are an animistic belief in the sanctity of nature, shamanic practices, ancestor cults, respect for authority and communal value, and a strong capacity to integrate and homogenize foreign elements. Standard accounts also present the history of Japanese Buddhism as a gradual process of “Japanization,” that is, of Buddhism’s integration within the supposedly dominant Shintō system of beliefs and ritual practices. These kinds of accounts are heavily influenced by a nativist ideology of Japanese religion and do not reflect actual historical processes. In order to disentangle the complex relationships between Buddhism and local cults in the Japanese archipelago from ideological stereotypes, it is necessary to begin with an analysis of the term *Shintō* itself. As Kuroda Toshio has made clear, *Shintō* did not mean

the same things throughout history. In particular, it did not designate an established system of religious institutions and their beliefs and rituals until after the eighteenth century.

*Shintō*, most likely pronounced “jindō” until at least the fifteenth century, was essentially a Buddhist concept indicating the realm of local deities as related to, but distinct from, Indian deities of the Buddhist pantheon, which were usually referred to as *ten* or *tendō*. It was only since the second half of the Edo period (1600–1868) that more or less autonomous Shintō institutions began to develop, mainly centered on the Yoshida house in Kyoto (see below) and several schools of Confucian studies. However, Shintō as an independent religious tradition begins only in 1868 with the so-called separation of *kami* and buddhas (*shinbutsu bunri*). This forceful separation, carried out upon orders emanating from the government, was one of the first acts in the Japanese process of modernization, and amounted to the artificial creation of two separate religious traditions, namely, Shintō and Japanese Buddhism. Subsequently, Shintō’s development was directly related to the policy and imperial ideology of the new Japanese state in what is known as *State Shintō* (*kokka Shintō*)—a formation that was disbanded after the end of World War II.

In practice, *shinbutsu bunri* was not a mere “separation.” It defined what was “Buddhist” and what was “Shintō,” meaning that which was supposedly autochthonous in the religious world of the time. “Buddhist” elements (such as images with Buddhist flavor worshiped as the body of a *kami*, architectural elements, Buddhist scriptures offered to the *kami*, and so forth) were set apart and, in many cases, destroyed. “Shintō” elements, on the other hand, were systematized and “normalized.” Many local shrines were destroyed; the *kami* enshrined in several others were replaced by *kami* listed in the *Kojiki* (*Record of Ancient Matters*), an early eighth-century text that had become the bible of the nativists. Sacerdotal houses that had been in charge of services to the *kami* in certain locales for several generations were replaced by state-appointed officers who were followers of the nativist scholar Hirata Atsutane’s (1776–1843) brand of religious nationalism. Local rituals were replaced by authorized ceremonies that were related to a newly created cult for the emperor. People were forced to attend to new holidays that were related to state-sanctioned events. In this way, a new religion, supposedly autochthonous and with roots in a remote Japanese past before the arrival of Buddhism, was created and propagated among the people. After a few

years of prohibition, Buddhism reorganized itself as a religion that was concerned with funerals and the moral education of the citizens of the new Japanese state.

### **Buddhist appropriation of Japanese local deities**

The Buddhist appropriation of local *kami* is not a typically Japanese phenomenon: Local guardian gods and fertility gods are worshiped at Buddhist monasteries throughout Asia. Monastery gods are perhaps the original forms of adoption of local divinities in a Buddhist context. The interactions between Buddhism and local deities in Japan went through several phases, according to patterns that seem to be common to most Buddhist cultures. Japanese *kami* were first subjugated or converted to Buddhism, then transformed into dharma protectors, and finally organized in a hierarchical structure, a phase that involved a redefinition of the place of the *kami* in the Buddhist cosmology as manifestations of buddhas and bodhisattvas.

At first, local *kami* were envisioned by Buddhists as dangerous entities that needed to be saved from their deluded condition and guided toward enlightenment; this implied acts of subjugation or conversion. Two legends exemplify this stage well. One day in 763 the *kami* of Tado village is said to have manifested itself through an oracle and requested to be converted so as to be liberated from its *kami* condition. A Buddhist monastery (*jingūji*) was built in the area where the *kami* resided, and special services were held for the *kami*'s salvation. Another tale reports how a giant tree, believed to be the abode of a *kami*, fell to the ground and rolled into a river, where it was carried by the current. Every time the tree was stranded, epidemics struck the area. Finally, a Buddhist monk cut the fallen tree into pieces and carved three images of the BO-DHISATTVA Kannon (Avalokiteśvara) out of them (one of these images is said to be the Kannon at Ishiyamadera near Kyoto). Immediately, the epidemics ceased and the images generated good fortune and miracles. In both tales local *kami* are described as dangerous, violent entities, and sources of calamity to the local people. In contrast, Buddhism is presented as a pacifying and ordering force. At a subsequent stage, converted *kami* turned into protectors of the Buddhist dharma and guarantors of the peace and prosperity in their respective locales. *Kami* were also gradually organized into a hierarchical structure, with the deities of twenty-two imperially sponsored shrines at the top, regional shrines at the middle, and village shrines at

the bottom. There were in addition various orders of local deities that granted particular kinds of protection.

These stages (subjugation or conversion of local divinities, their inclusion within the Buddhist system as protectors, and their redefinition as manifestations of sacred, translocal Buddhist entities) are usually presented as moments in a linear process of evolution, but it is important to emphasize that in practice they amounted to different modes of interaction rather than separate historical stages. As such they often overlapped. A local *kami* could be seen as a manifestation of a buddha or a bodhisattva, but at the same time it functioned as the protector of a specific locale, and Buddhist rituals were performed in front of it to secure its salvation.

### **The field of Japanese local deities and its complexity**

*Kami* are usually understood as local, autochthonous Japanese deities. They are often described in animistic terms as supernatural forces abiding in natural entities such as trees, rocks, mountains, and waterfalls. However, the situation in premodern Japan was more complicated. Not all *kami* were animistic entities. In fact, scholars can identify a historical variety of *kami*, including royal deities, divinities of local clans (more or less related to royal deities), village spirits (which often had no name and no clearly defined shape), and imported deities (from India, Korea, and China). Royal deities, in particular those listed in the *Kojiki* and the early eighth-century *Nihon shoki* (*Chronicles of Japan*), were worshipped by the emperor as part of his sacerdotal duties. Interestingly, Buddhism was largely unconcerned with those deities, except for the most important ones among them—the *kami* of the Ise shrines. Japanese Buddhists devoted great efforts instead to domesticate and incorporate within their system local tutelary spirits. Clan divinities were largely treated as tutelary deities, and as such they were included in the Buddhist system in the ways discussed above.

In premodern Japan there were a large number of local tutelary deities (*chinju*), ranging from household gods (such as the deities of the hearth), to village gods (such as paddy deities, *ta no kami*), to provincial and national protectors such as HACHIMAN, Kumano, Kasuga, and Sannō. The sanctuaries of these gods were normally affiliated with major Buddhist institutions (such as the large monasteries in Nara and Kyoto), were sponsored by the royal court and local gentry, and were often centered in sacred mountains where

SHUGENDŌ mountain ascetics resided. In addition there were monastery gods (*garanjin*, such as Idaten, the son of Śiva, but also arhats) and dharma protectors (*gohōjin*), even though this distinction was, in most cases, purely theoretical. These orders of deities were not clearly distinguished and, in practice, they often overlapped. The case of Nichira is particularly interesting. Originally a Korean general who became the tutelary deity of Mount Atago, which was considered a Japanese manifestation of bodhisattva Jizō (Kṣitigarbha), Nichira came to be treated as an ARHAT. The name *Nichira* was interpreted as an abbreviation for the Japanese words *nichi* from *Nippon* (Japan) and *ra* from *rakan* (arhat). Arhats were the protectors of some Zen monasteries in Japan.

As the case of Nichira indicates, not all *kami* were autochthonous, or originally Japanese. Buddhist priests brought to Japan deities from India, Korea, and China. Some of them were quickly “naturalized” and became very popular. Even today, many popular *kami* include foreign deities such as Benten (Sanskrit, Sarasvatī), Daikokuten (Sanskrit, Mahākāka), Shinra (Korean, Silla), Myōjin (probably of Korean origin), and other minor deities of Chinese origin related to yin-yang and polar star cults. In addition, new deities were created under the influence of Buddhism. The two most popular *kami* in modern times, Hachiman and Inari, were produced by Buddhist combinatory doctrines and rituals. Hachiman, in particular, is said to have been the tutelary deity of a clan in southern Japan, but was recognized by the state in the eighth century as a great bodhisattva (*daibosatsu*) who promised to protect the country and ensure the diffusion of Buddhism there. He was also one of the protecting deities of the Tōdaiji, the largest monastery in Nara. Since then, he has always been one of the main protecting deities of Japan.

Finally, premodern *kami* were usually not singular subjectivities, but plural entities that combined historical human beings, deities from various places in Asia, and Buddhist supernatural beings. Hachiman, for example, is both a *kami* and a bodhisattva, a king and a holy being: He is the deified aspect of Emperor Ōjin (who is said to have reigned in the late fourth to early fifth centuries) and at the same time a Japanese manifestation of Amida (Sanskrit, AMITĀBHA), or, according to some sources, of Śākyamuni. Analogously, the *kami* Inari began as an agricultural spirit bringing prosperity, later became the tutelary deity of the Fushimi

area near Kyoto, and finally was envisioned as the Japanese manifestation of the Indian cannibal ogresses known as 𑖀ĀKINĪ. Inari is variously represented as an old man, a white fox, or a beautiful woman.

With the development of increasingly complex hierarchies of protection and classification of divinities, we also see the formation of new interpretations about their functions and their modes of interaction with human beings. In general, buddhas and bodhisattvas were in charge of supramundane benefits (such as better rebirths and ultimate salvation), whereas the *kami* dealt specifically with worldly benefits and material prosperity. Furthermore, buddhas were normally benevolent, whereas the *kami* were in charge of punishing those who did not respect the deities. However, in medieval Japan a more nuanced vision developed, according to which buddhas and *kami* together administer punishments against their enemies. On the other hand, in some cases, such as in certain Shintō esoteric rituals, the *kami* provided a form of soteriology. In addition, refusal to worship the *kami* was considered a subversive act by the establishment and a revolutionary act by reform movements. In this way, the structure of the Buddhist pantheon was directly connected with visions of social order and morality.

### Japanese *kami* as manifestations of Buddhist sacred beings

Buddhism interacted with Japanese deities in a way that finds no equivalent in most other Buddhist cultures (though there are very few comparative studies of Buddhist interactions with local deities). Around the eleventh to twelfth centuries, *kami* began to be envisioned as Japanese manifestations (Japanese, *gongen*; Sanskrit, *avatāra*) of bodhisattvas or other deities of the Indian pantheon brought to Japan by Buddhism. The capacity of manifesting themselves in many forms is a feature of the gods of classical Indian mythology that was later attributed also to buddhas and bodhisattvas; in Japan, this feature was used to explain the status of the *kami*. This logic of manifestation was commonly defined as *honji suijaku* and *wakō dōjin*. The term *honji suijaku* (literally, “the original ground and its traces”) was originally used by the Chinese Tiantai patriarch ZHIYI (538–597) in his exegesis of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). According to Zhiyi, the first fourteen chapters of the scripture contain the provisional “trace-teaching” of the historical Buddha, whereas the final fourteen chapters are the ultimate “original teaching” of the eternal Buddha. In

medieval Japan, *honji suijaku* was employed to mean that Indian and Buddhist entities constitute the “original ground” (*honji*) of their Japanese manifestations as local *kami*, defined as “traces” (*suijaku*).

The expression *wakō dōjin* (literally, “to soften one’s radiance and become the same as dust”) can originally be found in the Chinese classic *Daode jing* (*The Way and Its Power*), where it refers to the way in which the Dao, the supreme principle, manifests itself in the world. The idea here is that the supreme principles (in this case, buddhas and bodhisattvas) cannot show their true forms in this world, but require a “coarsening” that makes them understandable to human beings. The “coarse” forms of buddhas and bodhisattvas were, of course, those of the Japanese *kami*. The underlying implication of both these expressions, as explained by several medieval texts, was that the Japanese people are too difficult to convert and too ignorant to understand buddhas and bodhisattvas in their “normal” forms. Therefore, they require rough manifestations to guide them to salvation. For example, according to *honji suijaku* logic, the sun goddess Amaterasu was envisioned as a manifestation of Mahāvairocana, the universal Buddha of esoteric Buddhism; Hachiman was a manifestation of Amitābha; and so forth.

The idea that Japanese deities were local manifestations of translocal deities proved enormously productive. By the fifteenth century, some Buddhist authors were arguing that the *kami* were in fact the primary, original forms of divine beings, while buddhas and bodhisattvas were Indian local manifestations of these original Japanese models. This reversal of dominant Buddhist ideas was at the basis of a new Shintō movement, of a strong nativist character, that stressed the superiority of all things Japanese against imported cultural elements. The center of this nativist reversal of the *honji suijaku* paradigm was the Yoshida shrine in Kyoto. Its priest, Yoshida Kanetomo (1435–1511), had collected a number of doctrines and rituals about the *kami*, mostly related to the then dominant esoteric Buddhism (*mikkyō*), and tried to establish his own tradition by getting rid of the most visible Buddhist features. Gradually, the Yoshida tradition became the point of reference for nativist thinkers, anti-Buddhists, and *kami* priests disgruntled with the Buddhist establishment still dominating their shrines. These were the people and the groups that contributed to the constitution of a Shintō discourse as distinct from Buddhism during the Edo period in a process whose final stage was the early Meiji separation of Shintō from Buddhism.

However, in medieval Japan not all *kami* were considered manifestations of Indian sacred entities. In the second half of the Kamakura period (1192–1333), the *kami* were divided into three categories that were based on ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) thought: (1) *kami* of original enlightenment, such as Amaterasu of Ise; (2) *kami* of nonenlightenment (*fukaku*), such as the violent *kami* of Izumo shrine; and (3) *kami* of acquired enlightenment (*shikaku*), such as Hachiman. Even though this classification was probably devised to enhance the status of the Ise shrines and their deities, it is interesting to note that the *kami* are here thought to embody modalities of Buddhist soteriology and that some of them represent an obscure realm of ignorance and violence untouched by Buddhism.

This latter point was further developed during the Kamakura period when authors began to define a distinction between “provisional deities” (*gonsha*) and “true deities” (*jissha*). Whereas provisional deities were considered to be benevolent, true deities were described as violent and dangerous entities that threatened the peace and security of local people. This distinction indicates that in medieval Japan divinities still existed that had not been integrated within the Buddhist system and that were described as chaotic forces (much as local deities before the arrival of Buddhism). The attitude of the Buddhists toward true deities was complex. Some warned local people not to worship them, since they were outside of Buddhism and therefore were irrelevant to the process of salvation; others suggested that these deities should be propitiated, while still others argued that human beings could not easily tell the difference between one category of deities and the other, and it was thus best to worship them all.

### Esoteric Buddhism and *kami* cults

*Honji suijaku* and original enlightenment (*hongaku*) were essential parts of premodern Japanese esoteric Buddhism (*mikkyō*), especially in its configuration known as EXOTERIC-ESOTERIC (KENMITSU) BUDDHISM. In fact, esoteric Buddhism played a fundamental role in the transformation of the *kami* and their inclusion within the Buddhist cosmology and salvation process. In particular, esoteric Buddhist MAṆḌALA provided an important model for the systematization of the realm of sacred beings in Japan. The external sector of the Womb Maṇḍala (*taizōkai mandara*) contains a number of non-Buddhist divinities ranging from Brahmā, Śiva, and INDRA, to more animistic entities such as the gods of fire, water, and wind, and violent spirits and

demons (YAKṢA). These divinities constituted the template for the organization of the premodern Japanese pantheon: As part of maṇḍala they were provisional manifestations of the Buddha, and therefore entitled to a place in the Buddhist cosmos. In other words, Buddhism provided in Japan a new and broader cosmological framework in which to insert all (or most) forms of local sacred entities. During the Middle Ages, furthermore, maṇḍalas were also used as conceptual models to represent the sacred space of *kami* shrines. In these images, the *kami* are usually represented both as “traces” (*suijaku*) with their earthly forms (animals, human beings) and as “original grounds” (*honji*), that is, buddhas and bodhisattvas.

Esoteric Buddhism also influenced doctrines and rituals concerning the *kami*. Several schools of esoteric Shintō teachings developed at major cult sites, such as the Ise outer shrine, Hie shrine (affiliated with the Tendai monastery Enryakuji), and the Shingon monastery Ōmiwadera (or Daigorinji). They all discussed issues of the *honji suijaku* paradigm, each from its own sectarian perspective and with its own Buddhist vocabulary. At the same time, these centers also developed a vast body of esoteric rituals dealing with the *kami*. Especially significant among them were initiation rituals on *kami* matters (*jingi kanjō* or *shintō kanjō*), directly modeled on esoteric initiation rituals (*denbō kanjō*), but also rituals for specific professions (e.g., carpenters, merchants, farmers) involving deities of the *honji suijaku* universe. In this respect, the previously discussed Yoshida tradition has a particular position in that it absorbed several elements from esoteric Buddhism (such as the *goma* fire ceremony and the notion of originals and traces), but developed them in an anti-Buddhist direction.

*See also:* Cosmology; Folk Religion, Japan; Ghosts and Spirits; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Local Divinities and Buddhism; Meiji Buddhist Reform; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shugendō; Space, Sacred

### Bibliography

- Breen, John, and Teeuwen, Mark, eds. *Shintō in History: Ways of the Kami*. Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 2000.
- Gellner, David N. “For Syncretism: The Position of Buddhism in Nepal and Japan Compared.” *Social Anthropology* 5, no. 3 (1997): 277–291.
- Grapard, Allan G. “Institution, Ritual, and Ideology: The Twenty-two Shrine-Temple Multiplexes of Heian Japan.” *History of Religions* 27, no. 3 (1988): 246–269.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley, Los Angeles, and London: University of California Press, 1992.
- Hardacre, Helen. *Shintō and the State, 1868–1988*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Iyanaga Nobumi. *Daikokuten hensō* (Bukkyō shinwagaku 1). Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 2002.
- Kageyama Haruki. *The Arts of Shintō*, translated and adapted by Christine Guth. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1973.
- Ketelaar, James E. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Kuroda Toshio. “Shintō in the History of Japanese Religion.” *Journal of Japanese Studies* 7, no. 1, 1981: 1–21.
- Matsunaga, Alicia. *The Buddhist Philosophy of Assimilation: The Historical Development of the Honji-Suijaku Theory*. Rutland, VT, and Tokyo: Sophia University Press, 1969.
- Murayama Shūichi. *Honji suijaku*. Tokyo: Yoshikawa Kōbunkan, 1974.
- Naumann, Nelly. *Die einheimische Religion Japans*, 2 vols. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1988–1994.
- Rambelli, Fabio. “Buddha’s Wrath: Esoteric Buddhism and the Discourse of Divine Punishment.” *Japanese Religions* 27, no. 1 (2002): 41–68.
- Satō Hiroo. *Amaterasu no henbō: Chūsei shinbutsu kōshōshi no shiza*. Kyoto: Hōzōkan, 2000.
- Scheid, Bernhard. *Der Eine und Einzige Weg der Götter: Yoshida Kanetomo und die Erfindung des Shintō*. Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 2001.
- Teeuwen, Mark. *Watarai Shintō: An Intellectual History of the Outer Shrine in Ise*. Leiden, Netherlands: Research School CNWS, 1996.
- Teeuwen, Mark, and Rambelli, Fabio, eds. *Buddhas and Kami in Japan: Honji Suijaku as a Combinatory Paradigm*. London and New York: Routledge Curzon, 2003.
- Teeuwen, Mark, and Scheid, Bernhard, eds. *Tracing Shintō in the History of Kami Worship*. Special issue of *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 29, nos. 3/4 (2002).

FABIO RAMBELLI

---

## SHÖBÖGENZŌ

*Shōbōgenzō* (*Treasury of the Eye of the True Dharma*) is a collection of essays, in several premodern redactions, by the early Japanese Zen monk DŌGEN (1200–1253). The title, which denotes the CHAN SCHOOL (Japanese, Zen) tradition, derives from an expression indicating the awakening traditionally said to



have been transmitted by the Buddha Śākyamuni to his disciple MAHĀKĀŚYAPA.

CARL BIELEFELDT

## SHŌTOKU, PRINCE (TAISHI)

Prince Shōtoku (*taishi*, 574–622) was a semilegendary prince who from the earliest stages of Japanese history has been revered as a cultural hero, as a Buddhist patron, as a civilizing ruler, and as a Japanese incarnation either of the Chinese Tiantai School monk Huisi (Japanese, Eshi; 515–577) or of the Bodhisattva Avalokiteśvara. The earliest written accounts (dating from the eighth century) credit Shōtoku with mastering Buddhism and Confucianism under the tutorage of the Korean teachers Hyeja (Japanese, Eji) and Kakka (Japanese, Kakuka); serving as regent for his aunt, Suiko (r. 593–628); establishing a system of twelve court ranks to replace ranks based on familial status; composing a *Seventeen Article Constitution* that expresses basic governmental ideals along with pious Buddhist and Confucian sentiments; constructing statues of the Four Heavenly Kings (*shi tennō*, gods of the four directions who protect Buddhist kingdoms); as well as lecturing on or authoring commentaries on three MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist scriptures: the Lotus Sūtra (Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra; Japanese, *Hokekyō*), the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* (*Yuimagyō*), and *Queen Śrīmālā Sūtra* (*Shōmangyō*). Significantly, the central figure of the *Vimalakīrti Sūtra* is a wise layman (like Shōtoku), and the central figure of the *Queen Śrīmālā Sūtra* is a female ruler (like Suiko). In addition, many Buddhist temples important in early Japanese history traditionally have claimed Shōtoku as their founding patron. These temples include Shitennōji, Gangōji (also known as Hōkōji or Asukadera), Hōryūji, Chūgūji, and countless others. These claims helped to legitimate the strong relationship between the royal court and institutional Buddhism throughout most of premodern Japanese history. Moreover, reverence for Shōtoku played a significant role in the lives of many subsequent Japanese Buddhist leaders, such as Saichō (767–822) and Shinran (1173–1263).

In modern times Shōtoku has been promoted as a paradigm of ideal Japanese virtues, especially those of harmony (*wa*), nationalism, and a strong imperial rule. The prominence afforded him by many modern textbook accounts of ancient Japan can sometimes foster a one-dimensional view of the complex process by which the early Japanese state emerged.

See also: Hōryūji and Tōdaiji; Japanese Royal Family and Buddhism; Kingship; Nationalism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Deal, William E. "Hagiography and History: The Image of Prince Shōtoku." In *Religions of Japan in Practice*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1999.
- Ito, Kimio. "The Invention of Wa and the Transformation of the Image of Prince Shōtoku in Modern Japan." In *Mirror of Modernity: Invented Traditions of Modern Japan*, ed. Stephen Vlastos. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Kanaji, Isamu. "Three Stages in Shōtoku Taishi's Acceptance of Buddhism." *Acta Asiatica* (Tokyo), no. 47 (1985): 31–47.
- Kusunoki, Masazumi. "The Seventeen Article Constitution of Prince Shōtoku: Its Contemporary Significance," tr. Larry L. Hanson. *Ex Oriente* (Tokyo), no. 6 (1993): 1–34.
- Nishimura, Sey. "The Prince and the Pauper: The Dynamics of a Shōtoku Legend." *Monumenta Nipponica* (Tokyo) 40, no. 3 (1985): 299–310.
- Ōyama, Seiichi. *Shōtoku taishi to Nihonjin* (Prince Shōtoku and Japanese identity). Nagoya, Japan: Fūbaisha, 2001.

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## SHUGENDŌ

Shugendō is a syncretistic Japanese Buddhist tradition of mountain ascetic practices that incorporates elements from shamanism, indigenous Japanese folk beliefs concerning mountains and spirits of the dead, and Daoist magic. The word *Shugendō* literally translates as "the way of cultivating supernatural power." Its practitioners are known as *yamabushi* (those who "lie down" in the mountains) or *shugenja* (ascetics, or "those who cultivate power"). Although their role has evolved and changed over the years, these figures were expected to accumulate religious power by undergoing severe ascetic practices in the mountains, such as fasting, meditating, reciting spells or Buddhist texts, sitting under waterfalls, gathering firewood, abstaining from water, hanging over cliffs to "weigh" one's sins, retiring in solitary confinement to caves, and performing rituals such as fire ceremonies. *Shugenja* then drew on this power to provide services, such as guiding pilgrims, performing religious rites, and demonstrating superhuman feats like walking on fire, as well as divination, exorcism, and prayers.

### Historical development and characteristics

In pre-Buddhist Japan, religious activities included shamanistic trances, communication with spirits, and festivals and rites celebrating the descent of the agricultural deities from the mountains in the spring and their return to the mountains after the autumn harvest. Mountains were also believed to be the residence of the dead. As Buddhism was being assimilated into Japanese society in the sixth century (if not earlier), ascetics entered mountainous areas to undergo religious austerities. These persons were not always Buddhist monks, but included an assortment of solitary hermits, diviners, exorcists, “unordained” Buddhist specialists (*ubasoku*), and wandering religious figures (*hijiri*). The most famous of these was En-no-Gyōja (En the Ascetic, also known as En-no-Ozunu; ca. seventh century), a prototypical ascetic with shamanic powers and the semilegendary founder of Shugendō, stories of whose activities are in evidence at almost every mountainous area with an ascetic tradition.

By the early Heian period (ninth century) many Buddhist ascetics, especially those associated with the tantric schools, entered Mount Hiei and Mount Kōya (the headquarters of the Tendai and Shingon Buddhist schools), as well as other mountains such as Mount Kimbu in the Yoshino region. Various mountainous areas throughout Japan developed their own traditions, among them Hakusan and Mount Fuji in central Japan, the Haguro peaks in the north, Mount Ishizuchi in Shikoku, and Mount Hiko in Kyushu. Each had its own religious history, its own set of deities, its own web of associations with other sacred sites, and its own community of Shugendō practitioners. *Shugenja* from these areas performed religious services and guided pilgrims to popular sacred sites like Mitake and Kumano. These *shugenja* gradually became organized by the middle of the Heian period (tenth century), usually in connection with the pilgrimages of retired emperors and aristocrats. In time its institutional structure formed two major pillars: the Honzan-ha headquartered at Shōgo-in and affiliated with Tendai Buddhism, and the Tōzan-ha headquartered at Kōfukuji and Daigoji and affiliated with Shingon Buddhism. In this way the older shamanistic and mountain ascetic practices were incorporated within the teachings and practices of tantric Buddhism, and Shugendō came to represent a large portion of the dominant syncretistic worldview of medieval Japan. In the early modern period (lasting from the seventeenth century to the nineteenth century) the role of most *shugenja* shifted from that of ascetic wanderer to that of some-

one settled in a local society as *oshi* (teacher) or *kitōshi* (a diviner who offers “prayers”).

Today Shugendō represents only a shadow of its former self, though Shugendō-related activities, such as the *kaihōgyō* Tendai practice of “circumambulating the peaks” on Mount Hiei and Shugendō-influenced rituals and activities in some of the new religious movements of Japan, are still practiced. A syncretistic mix of traditions, Shugendō was outlawed in the late nineteenth century as part of the attempt by the Japanese government to “purify” Shintō of its “foreign” elements. Shugendō specialists were forced to identify themselves either as Buddhist monks or Shintō priests. With the postwar declaration of religious freedom in the second half of the 1940s, Shugendō organizations recovered their independence and many activities, such as the Yoshino-Kumano pilgrimage along the Ōmine range and the seasonal retreats at Haguro, have been revived by their former institutional centers.

### Buddhist aspects of Shugendō

Buddhist aspects of Shugendō are reflected in its doctrinal and ethical teachings, rituals, COSMOLOGY, and ascetic practices. These are based mainly on tantric Buddhism as it evolved in the Tendai and Shingon traditions in Japan. Examples include the reinterpretation of traditional Buddhist categories, such as the ten realms of existence (from hell to Buddha) and the six PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS), in terms of the physical and spiritual progress made by ascetics as they advance through the mountain trails and trials. Fire ceremonies (*goma*) and other Buddhist rituals also underwent transformation. Cosmological and symbolic significance was assigned to Shugendō geographical sites based on the configuration of the womb realm (*taizōkai*) and diamond realm (*kongōkai*) MAṆḌALAS. In this way the mountains came to be identified with the body of the cosmic Buddha Mahāvairocana (Japanese, Dainichi), and entering the mountains took on the added meaning of becoming integrated with the Buddha and attaining enlightenment. The belief that buddhahood can be attained within this life is a central tenet of Shugendō faith and a major goal of its practice. Traditional Buddhist and Buddhist-like figures (buddhas, BODHISATTVAS, and guardian deities) were incorporated into Shugendō worship, along with completely new figures. Especially important is Fudō (*myōō*; the unmovable), a fiery and angry looking representation of the role of the cosmic Buddha in destroying the passionate afflictions of this world. Fundamental Buddhist practices such as MEDITATION

(seated, walking, or otherwise on the move) and the recitation of sūtras belong to the basic activities of Shugendō. Thus, while it is misleading to speak of Shugendō only in terms of Buddhism, its adherents consider themselves Buddhists and it is not inaccurate to consider it part of the Buddhist tradition.

*See also:* Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; Space, Sacred

### Bibliography

- Earhart, H. Byron. *A Religious Study of the Mount Haguro Sect of Shugendō*. Tokyo: Sophia University, 1970.
- Miyake Hitoshi. *Shugendō: Essays on the Structure of Japanese Folk Religion*, ed. H. Byron Earhart. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Center for Japanese Studies, 2001.
- Renondeau, Gaston. *Le Shugendō: Histoire, doctrine, et rites des anachorètes dits Yamabushi*. Paris: Imprimerie Nationale, 1965.
- Rotermund, Hartmut O. *Die Yamabushi: Aspekte ihres Glaubens, Lebens und ihrer sozialen Funktion im japanischen Mittelalter*. Hamburg, Germany: de Gruyter, 1968.
- Swanson, Paul L. "Shugendō and the Yoshino-Kumano Pilgrimage." *Monumenta Nipponica* 36, no. 1 (1981): 55–84.
- Swanson, Paul L., and Tyler, Royall, eds. "Shugendō and Mountain Religion in Japan." Special issue of *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 16, nos. 2–3 (1989).

PAUL L. SWANSON

## SHWEDAGON

According to Burmese accounts the Shwedagon pagoda was constructed in 585 B.C.E. It has since been, and is still being, much embellished. Successive Mon and Burmese kings and queens added their weights in gold to the spire as it rose higher and higher through the centuries. The finial or *hti* is encrusted with enormous rubies and diamonds. The Shwedagon finally reached its present height of 326 feet in the fifteenth century under the patronage of the Pegu queen Shin Sawbu. According to tradition, the Buddha gave eight of his hairs to two Mon merchants who returned to their land and dedicated the pagoda. The Shwedagon is now the most famous shrine in Burma and truly a wonder of the world. Best visited at night, one enters another world of gilded spires and tinkling bells, flickering candles, and reverberating gongs.

The pagoda rises from the 190-foot high Dagon Hill and has four main entrances—one to each cardinal point—with long covered stairs, commanded at their feet by giant *chinthé* lions, and lined with pagoda shops selling flowers and religious paraphernalia. The south and east stairs have been remodeled recently. The main terrace was leveled by the Pegu kings in the fifteenth century; it covers fourteen acres and is paved with marble slabs. The main STŪPA has a circumference of 1,421 feet; the base is octagonal, each side lined with eight subsidiary stūpas for a total of sixty-four. At each corner is a *manothiha* or sphinx. Octagonal terraces rise for eighty feet; only one terrace above the main platform is accessible, and only to monks and male Buddhists. Above these are the circular bands that rise to the *hti* finial.

Opposite the covered *zaung-dan* (stair halls) are the four principal shrines dedicated to each of the four BUDDHAS who have manifested themselves during the present eon. Filling the platform are several hundred shrines and temples, mostly dating from the colonial period and Rangoon's development as a mercantile capital. There are shrines erected by various merchant guilds, including the Chinese Buddhist Community. A fire in 1931 destroyed many of these pavilions and they were subsequently rebuilt. There are many fine examples of traditional wood carving. Surrounding the main stūpa are planetary shrines for the days of the week with their corresponding animals. There are countless other shrines, statues, and symbolic objects on site. Divine beasts are everywhere, as are *nats* (spirits). The Mahā Ghaṇṭā, a great bell cast by King Singu in 1779, is especially notable. It weighs twenty-three tons, has a diameter of over six feet, and stands seven feet high. In 1825 the British attempted to send the bell to London as booty, but while loading it onto a ship it fell into the Rangoon River and was abandoned there. Later an association of pious Burmese salvaged it from the riverbed and were allowed to replace it in the Shwedagon. There is another larger bell, the Mahatisadda Ghaṇṭā, that weighs forty tons; it was donated by King Tharawaddy in 1848 and is the second-largest bell in Burma.

*See also:* Monastic Architecture; Myanmar; Myanmar, Buddhist Art in; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

### Bibliography

- Moore, Elizabeth; Meyer, Hansjorg; and U Win Pe. *Shwedagon: Golden Pagoda of Myanmar*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1999.

Win Pe. *The Shwedagon*. Rangoon: Printing and Publishing Corporation, 1972.

PAUL STRACHAN

## ŚIKṢĀNANDA

Śikṣānanda (652–710), a native of Khotan, was one of the major translators of MAHĀYĀNA sūtras into Chinese. Conversant with both Mahāyāna and mainstream Buddhist scriptures, as well as with non-Buddhist texts, Śikṣānanda came to China with a complete set of the HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra; Flower Garland Sūtra*) in Sanskrit after learning that Empress Wu (r. 690–705) had sent envoys to Khotan to search for the Sanskrit edition of the scripture and its translators. Under Empress Wu's auspices, Śikṣānanda joined the translation team that undertook the translation and re-translation of nineteen Mahāyāna scriptures, including the *Huayan jing* and the LAŅKAVĀTĀRA-SŪTRA (*Discourse of the Descent into Lañka*). The newly translated *Huayan jing*, completed in 699 in a total of eighty fascicles, was said to be a literal translation, closer in both style and language to Buddhahadra's sixty-fascicle translation from the early fifth century than to the more recent translation of XUANZANG (ca. 600–664).

In 704 Empress Wu allowed Śikṣānanda to return to Khotan, but he was summoned back to Chang'an in 708. Zhongzong (r. 705–710), then the reigning emperor, and all the monks in the capital greeted Śikṣānanda at Kaiyuan Gate with banners and parasols. Apparently in poor health at this time, Śikṣānanda was unable to take on any additional translation assignments and died in 710 at the age of fifty-nine. His body was cremated and his remains were escorted back to Khotan. His followers built a seven-story pagoda at the cremation site and named it "Pagoda of the Treṇṇṇaka Huayan" to commemorate him.

See also: Kumārajīva; Paramārtha

### Bibliography

Ch'en, Kenneth. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.

*Song Gaoseng zhuan (Biographies of Eminent Monks Compiled in the Song Dynasty)*. Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1987.

CHI-CHIANG HUANG

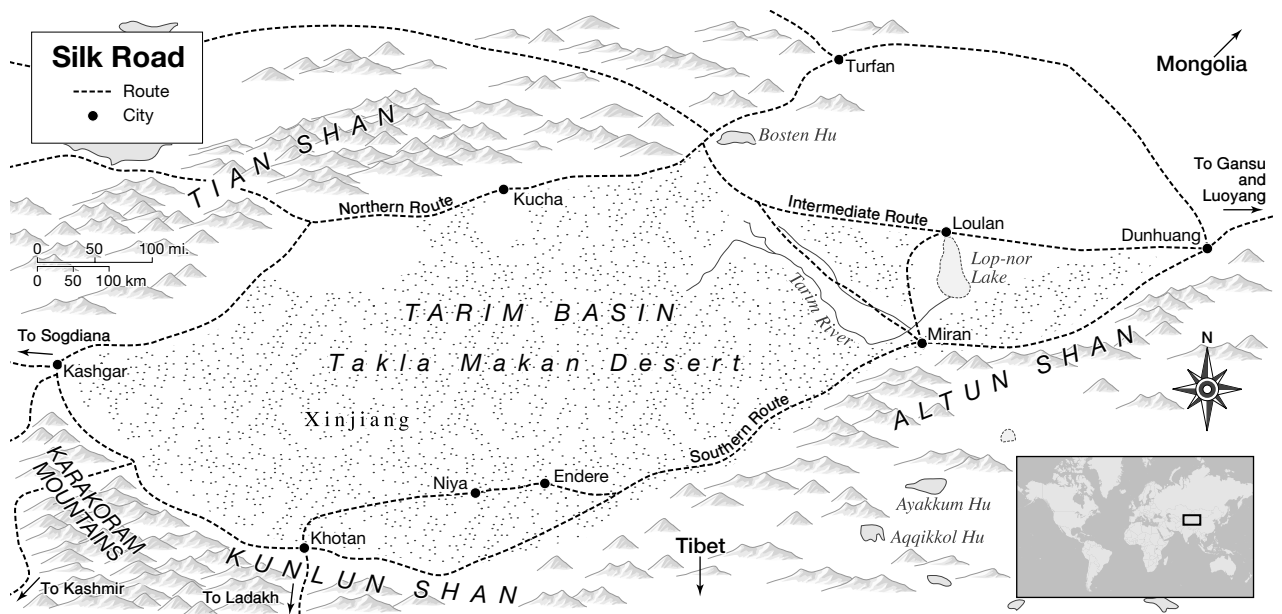
SILENT ILLUMINATION CHAN. See Mozhao Chan (Silent Illumination Chan)

## SILK ROAD

Buddhism spread from India to Central Asia and China via an overland network of major and minor routes popularly called the Silk Road. This network connected Buddhist centers in Northwest India, western Central Asia, the Tarim basin, and China during the first millennium C.E. In the broadest sense, the silk routes extended from China to the Mediterranean, incorporating routes through Syria, Mesopotamia, and Iran. Primary routes in western Central Asia ran through Margiana and the Oxus River (Amu Darya) valley, reached Bactria in northern Afghanistan or branched northward to Sogdiana, and continued to the Tarim basin in eastern Central Asia. Capillary routes through the Karakoram mountains in northern Pakistan directly linked the silk routes of eastern Central Asia with the major arteries for trade and travel in Northwest India. Northern and southern routes around the Tarim basin rejoined at DUNHUANG, the westernmost outpost of the Chinese empire, and proceeded through the Gansu corridor to central China.

The transmission of Buddhism from India to Central Asia and China corresponded with the development of the silk routes as channels for intercultural exchanges. Chinese contacts with the "Western Regions" (*Xi-yu*) of Central and South Asia expanded during the Han dynasty (206 B.C.E.–220 C.E.). By 111 B.C.E., the Han controlled the Gansu corridor to Dunhuang, and garrisons and irrigated agricultural oases around the Tarim basin were established in the first century B.C.E. Although Chinese control of these areas fluctuated, prosperous trade in luxury items (including silk) and dynamic cultural exchanges continued.

Chinese historical chronicles of the Han period refer to the gradual migration of Yuezhi nomads from the area around Dunhuang through the Tarim basin to Bactria in the second century B.C.E. The Kushans, a branch of the Yuezhi, advanced from Bactria across the Hindu Kush into Northwest India in the first century C.E. By the second century C.E. during the reign of Kanishka, the Kushan empire controlled the routes that connected northern India with the silk routes. Kushan control accelerated economic and cultural contacts and stimulated the movement of Buddhism beyond South Asia to Central Asia and China.



The Silk Road: trade routes through eastern Central Asia. XNR Productions, Inc. Reproduced by permission of the Gale Group.

Translators of early Chinese Buddhist texts came to China from western Central Asia and Northwest India via the silk routes. AN SHIGAO, Lokakṣema, and other Parthian, Sogdian, and Indian translators arrived in Luoyang beginning in the middle of the second century C.E. Buddhist monasteries emerged near irrigated oases at Khotan, Kucha, Turfan, and Dunhuang on the northern and southern branches of the silk routes during the third to fifth centuries C.E. Certain scholarly monks, including DHARMARAKṢA (ca. 233–310 C.E.) from Dunhuang and KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413 C.E.) from Kucha, came directly from Buddhist centers in the Tarim basin. Many anonymous monks who traveled between India and China along the silk routes were responsible for the transmission of Buddhism outside the monastic community. Chinese pilgrims to India returned with manuscripts, relics, and stories about sacred places in the Buddhist heartland. FAXIAN (ca. 337–418 C.E.) and XUANZANG (ca. 600–664 C.E.) were the most famous Chinese pilgrims; their accounts contain valuable details about social political, and religious conditions in Central Asia and India.

STŪPAS (reliquaries), cave paintings, and manuscripts discovered by Aurel Stein and other explorers in the early twentieth century illustrate the role of the Silk Road as a path for the expansion of Buddhism. Stūpas at Buddhist sites on the southern route in the Tarim basin adopted architectural features from Northwest India. A Gāndhārī manuscript of the *Dharmapada* (Pāli, DHAMMAPADA) from Khotan and

approximately one thousand Kharoṣṭhī documents from Niya, Endere, and Loulan show that the Gāndhārī language continued to be used along the southern silk route until the fourth century C.E. Numerous Buddhist paintings in caves along the northern silk route display close stylistic affinities with the art of Gandhāra, western Central Asia, and Iran, while others incorporate Chinese and Turkish elements. The distribution of Buddhist Sanskrit manuscripts from the second to sixth centuries C.E. indicates that Buddhist centers along the northern silk route were generally affiliated with MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS (particularly the Sarvāstivāda), but the MAHĀYĀNA tradition was prevalent in southern silk route centers such as Khotan. After the sixth century, Buddhist literature was written in Central Asian vernacular languages, including Khotanese Saka, Tocharian, Sogdian, Uighur, Tibetan, and Mongolian. Buddhist artistic and literary traditions continued to flourish in Central Asia along with Zoroastrian, Manichean, and Nestorian Christian traditions in the middle to late first millennium C.E.

Despite this historical legacy, with the exception of the surviving Buddhist traditions in Tibet and Mongolia, Buddhism disappeared from the Silk Road regions of Central Asia as these areas gradually Islamicized in the second millennium C.E.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Central Asia; Central Asia, Buddhist Art in; China; Gāndhārī, Buddhist Literature in; India, Northwest; Languages; Pilgrimage

## Bibliography

- Härtel, Herbert, and Yaldiz, Marianne. *Along the Ancient Silk Routes: Central Asian Art from the West Berlin State Museums*. New York: Metropolitan Museum of Art, 1982.
- Klimburg-Salter, Deborah. *The Silk Route and the Diamond Path: Esoteric Buddhist Art on the Trans-Himalayan Trade Routes*. Los Angeles: UCLA Arts Council, 1982.
- Liu, Xinru. *Ancient India and Ancient China: Trade and Religious Exchanges, A.D. 1–600*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1988. Reprint, 1997.
- Liu, Xinru. *The Silk Road: Overland Trade and Cultural Interactions in Eurasia*. Washington, DC: American Historical Association, 1998.
- McRae, John, and Nattier, Jan, eds. *Buddhism across Boundaries—Chinese Buddhism and the Western Regions*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2004.
- Nattier, Jan. “Church Language and Vernacular Language in Central Asian Buddhism.” *Numen* 37 (1990): 195–219.
- Rhie, Marylin Martin. *Early Buddhist Art of China and Central Asia*, Vol. 1: *Later Han, Three Kingdoms, and Western China in China and Bactria to Shan-shan in Central Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1999.
- Sander, Lore. “Buddhist Literature in Central Asia.” In *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*, ed. G. P. Malalasekera, Vol. 4, fascicle 1. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Government of Ceylon, 1981.
- Zürcher, Erik. *The Buddhist Conquest of China: The Spread and Adaptation of Buddhism in Early Medieval China*, 2 vols. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.

JASON NEELIS

## SINHALA, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Sinhala is the language of 72 percent of the population of Sri Lanka. Sinhala is considered part of the Indo-European family of languages, but recent scholarship has revealed a strong Dravidian influence as well. No written documents exist of the period before the coming of Buddhism in the third century B.C.E.; with Buddhism, a written literature developed. The earliest extant records are cave and rock inscriptions in a Brāhmī script dating from around 200 B.C.E., which list the names of Buddhist donors who supported cave dwelling monks. This connection between the language and the religion, established very early, gave rise over time to a vigorous Buddhist literature.

As far back as the first century B.C.E., Buddhist monks at Aluvihāre in central Sri Lanka committed Buddhist texts to writing. Monasteries quickly devel-

oped into centers of literary and intellectual activity, and a substantial collection of religious works, commentaries, exegetical writings, and historical records appeared in Pāli, Sanskrit, and the local vernacular. Most of the early works have not survived, but scholars know of their existence from references in later texts and from rock inscriptions. The only extant works from before the eighth century C.E. are the historical chronicles the *Dīpavaṃsa* (fourth century C.E.), the *Mahāvāṃsa* (sixth century C.E.), and its continuation the *Cūlavāṃsa* (twelfth century C.E.), which were all written in Pāli, though based on records from the Sinhala. These chronicles, written by monks, constitute a chronology of Sinhala kings (from the time of the founder Vijaya to the time of the authors), their major victories and defeats, and their peacetime activities, especially their meritorious deeds in support of Buddhism. The chronicles present a blend of historical information, religious exhortation, and political nationalism, all done with remarkable literary skill, thus constituting a record of what the authors perceived as the establishing of a Buddhist nation on the island of Sri Lanka.

The evidence of the chronicles, and references in later works and inscriptions, all suggest the existence of a flourishing literary tradition, even during this early period. Jayabahu Dharmakīrti, writing in the thirteenth century in his *Nikāyasamgraha* (*Collection of Writings on the Books of the Doctrine*), lists the names of twenty-eight monks and nine lay writers well known for composing religious works, commentaries, glossaries, translations, and other works between the fifth and thirteenth centuries. Unfortunately, all that remains from the first to eighth centuries C.E. are graffiti poems on the mirror wall of the rock fortress at Sigiriya. These short casual scribbles of visitors to Sigiriya between the seventh and ninth centuries C.E. (many of whom included their names and identities) do not represent the major literary tradition of the time. However, their skill and verve indicate the widespread nature and vitality of a tradition where soldiers, artisans, monks, and women (in addition to more traditional scholars) could all write poems.

Sinhala literature from the tenth to the thirteenth centuries was strongly influenced by the classical court literature of India. The major Sinhala poetical works of the period are the *Muvadevāvata* (*The Story of the Bodhisattva's Birth as King Mukhadeva*, [twelfth century]), the *Sasadāvata* (*The Story of the Bodhisattva's Birth as a Hare*, [twelfth century]), and the *Kavsiḷumiṇa*

(*The Crown Jewel of Poetry*), attributed to King Parakramabahu II (thirteenth century). These works are classical in style, and present stories of the past births of the Buddha.

The oldest extant prose work in Sinhala is on rhetoric, the *Siyabaslakara* (*The Ornaments of One's Language*), ascribed to King Sena I (r. 832–851). The *Dhampiyātuvā gātapadaya* (*Commentary on the Blessed Doctrine*), a commentary on words and phrases in the Pāli DHAMMAPADA, was composed in the tenth century. The *Sikhāvalaṅḍa* (*The Mark of Sign of the Precepts*) and *Sikhāvalaṅḍa vinisa* (*An Examination of the Signs of the Precepts*), a summary of precepts on priestly discipline, also belong to this period.

Sinhala prose works from the twelfth and thirteenth centuries can be described as “intermediate texts.” Though still classical in form they were closer in idiom to the spoken vernacular. The *Saddhamaratnāvaliya* (*The Jewel Garland of the True Doctrine*) by the monk Dharmasēna, the *Amāvatura* (*The Nectar Flow or The Flowing Nectar [of the Doctrine]*) and *Dharmapradīpikāva* (*The Light of the Doctrine*) by the monk Gurulugōmi, the *Butsaraṇa* (*The Protection [or Refuge] of the Buddha*) by Vidyācakravarti, the Sinhala *Thūpavaṃsa* (*The Chronicle of the Stūpas*), the *Daladāsirita* (*An Account of the Tooth Relic [of the Buddha]*), the *Pūjāvaliya* (*The Garland of Worship*), the *Pansiya Panas Jātaka Pota* (*The Book of Five Hundred and Fifty Birth Stories [of the Buddha]*), the monk Vidāgama Maitrēya's *Buduguṇālaṃkāraya* (*An Elaboration of the Buddha's Virtues*), and the *Lōvāda saṃgrahaya* (*A Collection of Writings for the Betterment of the World*) all belong to this tradition. They are Buddhist works intended for the edification of ordinary people and so had the flavor and style of popular sermons. Works on rhetoric, such as the *Sīdat Saṃgarāva* (*A Collection of Writings on Grammar*), the *Siyabas lakuṇa* (*The Marks or Signs of One's Language*), and the *Dandyālaṃkāra sanna* (*Commentary on Dandin's Theory of Ālaṃkāra*) and works on prosody, such as the *Elusandās lakuṇa* (*The Mark of Signs of the Original Sinhala [elu]*), were also composed during this period.

If the thirteenth century saw a flowering of Sinhala prose literature, the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries saw a flowering of poetry as the process of secularization that had begun with prose continued into poetry. These Sinhala poems were written by monks using Buddhist themes, but they were modeled on classical Sanskrit court literature and thus became more secular in content. The most famous of a spate of *sandēsa*

(message poems) from this period were the *Sālāhīni sandēśaya* (*The Message Poem Carried by the Salalihini Bird*) and the *Parevi sandēśaya* (*The Message Poem Carried by the Pigeon*) by the monk Toṭagamuvē Sri Rāhula, who also wrote the *Kāvyaśekhara* (*The Crown of Poetry*). Two other well-known writers of the age were the monk Vidāgama Maitrēya, who wrote the *Buduguṇālaṃkāraya*, and the monk Vēttēve, who wrote the *Guttīla Kāvya* (*The Poem of Guttīla*). Increasing secularization resulted in a shift away from the earlier heavy Sanskritization of the language.

Unfortunately, Sinhala literary and linguistic creativity was short lived. The arrival of Western European powers and subsequent colonial conquest by the Portuguese, Dutch, and British in succession from the sixteenth to the twentieth centuries resulted in a period of decadence in Sinhala literature. The only poet of significance during the sixteenth century was Alagiya-vanna Mohoṭṭāla, who wrote the *Kusa Jātaka* (*The Story of the Birth of the Bodhisattva as King Kusa*), the *Dahamsoṇḍa kāvya* (*The Poem on the Good Doctrine*), the *Subhāsita* (*Auspicious Thoughts*), and some panegyrics.

In the mid-eighteenth century there was a brief literary and religious revival in the central kingdom of Kandy, which had not yet been conquered by Western powers. It was spearheaded by the monk Welivitiye Saranakara, and produced a considerable body of work in Pāli, Sanskrit, and Sinhala. This literary renaissance was short lived, however; the British conquered the entire island in 1815, colonial rule was established, and Sinhala language and literature became stagnant once again.

When the first stirring of political nationalism occurred in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries it took the form of a literary and religious revival, and the long-standing Sri Lankan connection between religion, literature, and the national identity resurfaced. The phenomenal increase in literary activity was at first entirely religious, but eventually newer genres influenced by Western contact came to prominence, and a modern secular literature was born.

See also: Pāli, Buddhist Literature in; Sri Lanka

### Bibliography

Geiger, Wilhelm. *A Grammar of the Sinhalese Language*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Royal Asiatic Society, 1938.

Godakumbure, C. E. *Sinhalese Literature*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Colombo Apothecaries, 1955.

Obeyesekere, Ranjini. *Sinhala Writing and the New Critics*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Gunasena, 1974.

Obeyesekere, Ranjini. "A Survey of the Sinhala Literary Tradition." In *Modern Sri Lanka: A Society in Transition*, ed. Tissa Fernando and Robert N. Kearney. Syracuse, NY: Maxwell School of Citizenship and Public Affairs, Syracuse University, 1979.

Obeyesekere, Ranjini, trans. *The Jewels of the Doctrine: Stories of the Saddharmaratnāvaliya*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.

Obeyesekere, Ranjini, trans. *Portraits of Buddhist Women: Stories from the Saddharmaratnāvaliya*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2001.

Reynolds, C. H. B., ed. *An Anthology of Sinhalese Literature up to 1815*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1970.

RANJINI OBEYESEKERE

## SKANDHA (AGGREGATE)

According to Buddhist texts, the entire universe, including the individual, is made up of different phenomena (dharma). Although all these phenomena of existence are reduced to transitory entities by the theory of anātman (no-self), Buddhism classifies these phenomena into different categories, including the conventionally accepted concept of "person." The three concepts of bases (*āyatana*), elements (*dhātu*), and aggregates (skandha; Pāli, *khandha*) constitute different schemes for classifying the various phenomena. Although the aggregates are nothing but a "convenient fiction," the Buddha nevertheless made frequent use of the skandha when asked to explain the elements at work in the individual.

According to this scheme, what is conventionally called a "person" can be understood in terms of five aggregates, the sum of which must not be mistaken for a permanent entity since beings are nothing but an amalgam of ever-changing phenomena. The five aggregates are variously translated as matter or form (*rūpa*); sensation, emotion, or feeling (*vedanā*); recognition or perception (*saṃjñā*); karmic activity, formation, force, or impulse (*saṃskāra*); and consciousness (*viññāna*). *Rūpa* is made of four primary elements (*mahābhūta*): air, fire, water, and earth. It is also described as an amalgam of twenty-three secondary elements, which include the five sense organs, as well as their respective objects. *Vedanā*, on the other hand, refers to the actual experience of the senses, always qualified as

being either pleasant, unpleasant, or neutral. The term *saṃjñā* is assigned to the mental faculty that imposes categories upon the sensory stimuli, which interprets what is sensed. The fourth aggregate, *saṃskāra*, is probably the hardest to grasp because of the various meanings associated with the term. It is a force, karmic energy, that generates all the other aggregates; the theory of PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), for example, stipulates that on account of *saṃskāra*, *viññāna* and the other links of the chain emerge. *Saṃskāra* can therefore be seen as the driving force, the fuel, or the energy that keeps the five aggregates bound together within the cycle of life and death (SAṂSĀRA). *Saṃskāra* is not only a causal factor; its signification includes everything that has been caused. Each of the five aggregates is therefore a *saṃskāra* in the sense that it is conditioned. The last aggregate is *viññāna* (consciousness), the faculty responsible for apprehending what manifests itself through each of the six senses.

As with each of the links of the theory of dependent origination, the five aggregates are mutually dependent on one another. They need to be perceived from a cyclical perspective, where the last (*viññāna*) is a key factor in the emergence of the first (*rūpa*). This causal process points to the everlasting cycle of *saṃsāra* as opposed to NIRVĀṆA, which, in the THERAVĀDA tradition, is defined as a state totally devoid of the aggregates, beyond mind and matter.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Consciousness, Theories of; Dharma and Dharmas

### Bibliography

Bodhi, Bhikkhu. "Khandha and Upādānakkhandha." *Pāli Buddhist Review* 1, no. 1 (1976): 91–102.

Boisvert, Mathieu. *The Five Aggregates; Understanding Theravāda Psychology and Soteriology*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press, 1995.

Collins, Steven. *Selfless Persons: Imagery and Thought in Theravāda Buddhism*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1982.

Gethin, R. M. "The Five Khandhas: Their Theatment [sic] in the Nikāyas and Early Abhidhamma." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 52 (1986): 35–53.

Hamilton, Sue. *Identity and Experience: The Constitution of the Human Being According to Early Buddhism*. London: Luzac Oriental, 1996.

MATHIEU BOISVERT



## SLAVERY

The definition of the word *slavery* and the identification of terms such as Sanskrit *dāsa* and corresponding vocabulary in other languages is contentious. If one understands the concept in terms of obligations, or power relations, however, slaves may be seen as those who owed obligations to many, but were owed few or none by others, thus avoiding the complications introduced by seeing slaves, as in classical law, as things (*res*). Of course, since the socioeconomic systems of different places and periods vary radically, it is impossible to generalize; in particular, the ties that many people in the premodern world had to the land meant that donations of property to Buddhist monasteries included the labor of those attached to that land. Whether or not such individuals are called *serfs*, their limited autonomy with respect to the state and to society is clear. In this sense, discussions of slavery can hardly be separated from those of land ownership or practices such as *corvée* labor, and in each case the whole complex must be investigated in light of the large-scale economic systems within which Buddhist institutions existed.

While it is important to distinguish actual practices within Buddhist institutions from attitudes toward these practices as found in Buddhist literature, what can be said clearly is that there is almost no indication in any premodern Buddhist source, scriptural or documentary, of opposition to, or reluctance to participate in, institutions of slavery. It is true that the Buddhist monastic codes (*VINAYA*) of all sects are unanimous in stipulating that it is not permissible to ordain a slave, but the reasons for doing so clearly lie not in any opposition to slavery but rather in the well-recognized reluctance of the Buddhist communities to interfere in previously established relations of social obligation, since it is also forbidden to ordain debtors, those in royal or military service, and so on. Again, when Buddhist texts speak of restrictions on the monastic ownership of slaves, they do so virtually without exception in the context of restrictions on individual rather than corporate ownership of wealth in general, and not with the intention of singling out slave ownership as somehow different from any other type of ownership. Indeed, in Buddhist literature of all varieties, stock descriptions of wealth, even that gifted to the Buddha, regularly include both male and female slaves along with silver, gold, fields, livestock, and so on. Some texts, emphasizing the moral obligation to

receive whatever is given in reverence, declare that it is an offense not to accept such offerings, the lists of which regularly include slaves.

Although there is a lack of sufficient sources to offer detailed proof, references in the accounts of Chinese pilgrims, as well as several inscriptional sources, make it clear that at least some Buddhist monasteries in India owned slaves. The sources are much better for other areas of the Buddhist world, and here too they are virtually unanimous. There is copious inscriptional and documentary evidence for the institutional monastic ownership of slaves from Sri Lanka, Cambodia, Burma, Thailand, Korea, China, and Japan; Central Asian documents frequently refer to slaves privately owned by individual monks. For example, in Koryŏ-period Korea (918–1392), the Buddhist monastic institution was one of the major slaveholders on the Korean peninsula during the late fourteenth century; the founders of the succeeding Chosŏn dynasty (1392–1910) transferred eighty-thousand monastery slaves to public ownership, leaving “only” one slave for every twenty monks. Slaves were also, however, owned by individual monks, and these remained unaffected by this legislation. Although it is worth stating that the general socioeconomic situation in theocratic Tibet was such that direct parallels are difficult to draw, there can be little doubt that comparable institutions existed there, whether or not the individuals in question were always called *bran* (slave).

Although the details of every circumstance are different, we are compelled to conclude that here, as in so many other cases, individual Buddhists and Buddhist institutions were, much more frequently than not, fully integrated into the societies in which they existed, not challenging the structures or customs of those societies, but on the contrary, often working to strengthen them.

*See also:* Economics; Monasticism; Persecutions

### *Bibliography*

- Agrawala, Ratna Chandra. “Position of Slaves and Serfs as Depicted in the Kharosthi Documents from Chinese Turkestan.” *Indian Historical Quarterly* 29/2 (1953): 97–110.
- Law, B. C. “Slavery as Known to Early Buddhists.” *Journal of the Ganganatha Jha Research Institute* 6/1 (1948): 1–9.
- Salem, Ellen. “The Utilization of Slave Labor in the Koryŏ Period: 918–1392.” In *Papers of the First International Conference on Korean Studies 1979*. Songnam: The Academy of Korean Studies, 1980.

Singh, Madan Mohan. "Slavery as Known from the Buddhist Pali Sources." *Indian Historical Quarterly* 39/1–2 (1963): 1–12.

JONATHAN A. SILK

## SŌKA GAKKAI

Sōka Gakkai (Society for Value Creation), Japan's largest lay Buddhist organization, was founded by the educator Makiguchi Tsunesaburō (1871–1944) in 1930 and reestablished after World War II by its second president, Toda Jōsei (1900–1958). In 2002 it claimed 8.21 million member households; its worldwide umbrella organization, Sōka Gakkai International (SGI), headed by the Sōka Gakkai's spiritual leader and former third president Daisaku Ikeda (1928– ), claimed more than twelve million members in 185 countries and territories. Beginning as a lay association of Nichiren Shōshū, a small sect within the NICHIREN SCHOOL, Sōka Gakkai became independent in 1991 after longstanding tensions with the Nichiren Shōshū priesthood. In ethos and organizational style, it bears more similarity to Japan's so-called New Religions than to traditional temple denominations.

Sōka Gakkai stresses faith, practice, and study of the teachings of NICHIREN (1222–1282) as the key to personal happiness and world peace. Members enshrine a copy of Nichiren's MAṆḌALA in their homes and twice daily recite portions of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and also chant the *Lotus Sūtra's* title, or DAIMOKU, *Namu Myōhō-rengyō*. (In Sōka Gakkai, as in some other Nichiren groups, "Namu" is usually pronounced "Nam" in actual recitation.) This practice is said to manifest innate buddhahood, bringing about a positive character transformation known as "human revolution," and to contribute directly to realizing an ideal society. To help implement its social vision, Sōka Gakkai established a political party, the Kōmeitō (Clean Government Party), in 1964, sparking controversy over religion–state relations. Sōka Gakkai officially separated from Kōmeitō in 1970 but remains the party's chief supporter. The organization encourages proselytizing, chiefly through personal contacts and neighborhood discussion meetings. Sōka Gakkai also undertakes a range of cultural, educational, and humanitarian activities and is an NGO (nongovernmental organization) member of the United Nations.

## Bibliography

Machacek, David, and Wilson, Bryan, eds. *Global Citizens: The Sōka Gakkai Buddhist Movement in the World*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.

Métraux, Daniel A. *The Sōka Gakkai Revolution*. Lanham, MD: University Press of America, 1994.

Métraux, Daniel A. "The Soka Gakkai: Buddhism and the Creation of a Harmonious and Peaceful Society." In *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*, ed. Christopher S. Queen and Sallie B. King. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.

Murata, Kiyooki. *Japan's New Buddhism: An Objective Account of the Soka Gakkai*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1969.

JACQUELINE I. STONE

## SÖKKURAM

Sökkuram (Stone Grotto Hermitage) is a Buddhist shrine located in Korea on the slope of Mount T'oham in Kyōngju City in South Kyōngsang province. According to the SAMGUK YUSA (MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS, 1279), Prime Minister Kim Tae-sōng (d. 774) constructed Sökkuram in 751 C.E. during the reign of King Kyōngdōk (r. 742–776) to honor his mother from a previous incarnation.

The manmade, keyhole-shaped, cavelike structure is constructed with granite blocks covered with earth. The inner sanctuary is circular with a hemispherical domed ceiling containing a lotus capstone and twenty-eight clump-stones representing the sun and the stars of the cosmos. The MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist iconographic program is mixed with esoteric elements. The main buddha, perhaps an image of Śākyamuni, seated in the *padmāsana* position with the earth-touching MUDRĀ, is a monumental sculpture in the round. Carved in relief on the sanctuary wall are fifteen standing deities: an eleven-headed Avalokiteśvara, Samantabhadra, Mañjuśrī, INDRA, Brahmā, and ten ARHAT disciples of Śākyamuni. The upper niches of the wall contain ten seated figures: Vimalakīrti, Kṣitigarbha, Avalokiteśvara, and other esoteric BODHISATTVAS, one of whom holds a three-prong *vajra*. Fourteen guardian deities are depicted in the front area: four heavenly kings, two Dvārapāla guardians, and the eight-set guardians, including Asura, Garuḍa, and Nāga.

The Buddha's full fleshy face is softly modeled with a benign spiritual expression. The *tribaṅga* (three-bending)-posed bodhisattvas are elegantly tall figures wearing three-plaque crowns with double-U pattern

scarves. The international Tang style is apparent in the thin clothes and fluid folds. The complex but precise iconometry of the cave and the figures creates a sense of harmony in the monument.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Huayan Art; Korea, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture; Stūpa

### Bibliography

- Harrell, Mark. "Sokkuram—Buddhist Monument and Political Statement in Korea." *World Archaeology* 27, no. 2 (October 1995): 318–335.
- Hwang Su-young. *Sokkuram Cave Temple*. Photos by Ahn Jang-heon. Seoul: Yekyong Publications, 1989.
- Kang Woo-bang. "Bulguksa Temple and Seokbulsu Temple." *Korea Journal* 41, no. 2 (Summer 2001): 320–344.
- Park Hyounggook. "A Discussion on the Sculptured Images in Niches at the Sōkkuram Cave Temple of Kyōngju—with a Focus on the Restoration of Vimalakīrti, Mañjuśrī and Eight Bodhisattvas." *Ars Buddhica* no. 239 (July 1998): 50–72.

JUNGHEE LEE

---

SŌN SCHOOL. *See* Chan School

---

## SOTERIOLOGY

Soteriology (from Greek *sōtēr*, "healer") is the study of salvation. Soteriology is an important area of theology, especially in Christianity. Although it is a problematic term for Buddhists, most of whom (with the notable exception of Pure Land Buddhists) do not see salvation as occurring primarily through the agency of an external power, soteriology is being adopted in contemporary Buddhist scholarship to denote the study of the Buddhist PATH.

DAN COZORT

---

SŌTŌ ZEN. *See* Chan School

---

## SOUTHEAST ASIA, BUDDHIST ART IN

The earliest Buddhist art in Southeast Asia dates to about the sixth century C.E. These sculptures, primar-

ily BUDDHA IMAGES, show close stylistic and iconographical relationships with Indian images. Contact between Southeast Asia and India occurred earlier, by the beginning of the common era as attested by Chinese literary sources and small scattered finds, such as Indian coins and glyptics. The motivation for contact was trade, primarily between India and China, with Southeast Asia being initially less a destination than a stopover between them. Southeast Asia was exposed to both Indian religions—Buddhism and Hinduism—during this process, not in terms of proselytization or colonization but from haphazard meetings of locals with Indian merchants and crew. While this perhaps helps to explain the late appearance of Buddhist art in Southeast Asia, it does not explain how thoroughly Buddhism and its art, from the sixth century on, were adopted and indigenized within the region.

The modern nation-states of Southeast Asia are a poor model for organizing geographically the early Buddhist art. The people who made the earliest Buddhist art were the Pyu, Mon, Khmer, and Cham peoples on the mainland. These categories are not clear-cut, and are linguistically based on vernacular inscriptions. The Indonesian islands and the Malay Peninsula present a number of linguistic groups as well.

### The mainland: Pyu, Mon, Khmer, and Cham

The Pyu lived in central and northern areas of Burma, with Śrī Ksetra (modern Prome) offering the most Buddhist artifacts. These include three enormous tube-shaped brick stūpas (the Bawbawgui STŪPA is 150 feet tall) and several small brick temples that housed Buddha images. In addition, many metal and stone images of the Buddha and thousands of clay votive tablets were found. The discovery of twenty gold leaves (each 6-1/2 by 1-1/4 inches) bound as a manuscript, with sections from the *abhidamma* and *vinayaṭīka* inscribed in Pāli, suggests relationships with THERAVĀDA traditions. Indeed, some scholars feel this is the earliest extant Pāli manuscript, dating on the basis of its epigraphy to around the fifth century C.E.

The Mon lived in southern Burma and in Thailand. They, like the Pyu, were predominantly Buddhists, and they also inscribed in stone Pāli verses that relate closely to texts. The presence of images of bodhisattvas and some JĀTAKA reliefs indicate that the Mon were aware of Sanskrit Buddhist traditions as well. The Mon in Thailand (whose "kingdom" is often referred to as Dvāravatī) had a brilliant sculptural tradition and have left extensive numbers of Buddhist images in stone, bronze, and clay. In addition, they produced several

unique image types, including stone wheels of the law (*dharmacakra*) that were raised on pillars, as well as depictions of the Buddha riding on the back of a winged figure, which are as yet unexplained. Dozens of Mon sites, such as Nakhon Pathom and Ku Bua, have been identified, but no complete architectural remains survive. From archaeological evidence we know it was brick architecture, and it included at Nakhon Pathom the Chula Phatom Chedi (stūpas are referred to in Southeast Asia as *chedi*), which was decorated with stucco and terra-cotta *jātaka* reliefs dating to around the eighth century.

The Khmer lived in Cambodia, as well as in the northeastern parts of Thailand and in the Delta area of Vietnam. They, unlike the Pyu and Mon, were predominantly Hindus until the twelfth century, although Buddhism was present as well. The Khmer founded the famous Angkor dynasty in 802 C.E., which ruled not only Cambodia but much of the mainland for almost five hundred years. The pre-Angkorian period, however, produced some of the most remarkable Hindu and Buddhist sculpture ever made. The Buddhist images were primarily of the Buddha and two bodhisattvas, Avalokiteśvara and MAITREYA. The stone sculptures, dating to the seventh and eighth centuries, tend to be cut out into three dimensions, so that the arms, held by stone supports, extend into space. The three-dimensional quality of Khmer sculpture continued for centuries, in part reflecting the use of these images at the center of small shrines, where they were meant to be seen from all sides. The inscriptions and the art indicate that Buddhism was of much lesser importance than Hinduism during the ninth to twelfth centuries. The Khmer king Jayavarman VII (r. 1181–ca. 1220) made a radical shift from royal support of Hinduism to Buddhism in the twelfth century.

Under Jayavarman VII, the Khmer ruled more of mainland Southeast Asia than ever before, from coastal Vietnam up to the Thai-Burmese border. Jayavarman built monuments with inexhaustible energy. He constructed the BAYON, a temple that was rebuilt perhaps three times during his reign, in his royal city of Angkor Thom. Each of the kings of Angkor constructed a temple mountain in the form of a stepped pyramid, upon which they set an image of a Hindu god, usually Śiva, thus establishing the king's personal relationship with the deity. The Bayon is Jayavarman's temple mountain, and the deity he placed at its center was neither Śiva nor VIṢṆU, but the Buddha seated in meditation on the coils of a seven-headed snake (*nāga*). The king also built two enormous temples dedicated to his parents, one for

his mother in the guise of the goddess Prajñāpāramitā and one to his father as Lokeśvara (a form of Avalokiteśvara). Indeed, these three deities (the Buddha on the snake, Prajñāpāramitā, and Avalokiteśvara) were represented repeatedly in art as a triad, and were central to Buddhism under Jayavarman.

The Bayon has a circle of shrines that surrounds the central 140-foot tower in which the Buddha on the snake was housed. Placed in these shrines were images of local and regional deities brought to the capital from locations throughout the empire. These deities were placed in subordination to Jayavarman's Buddha. The temple has fifty-four towers that are crowned by enormous faces. These faces, numbering some two hundred, are arranged so that they look axially. The city itself, Angkor Thom, is surrounded by a wall about two miles square with five gates, each gate topped by four directional faces. Although scholars have tried to interpret these faces, no theory has been completely convincing. One possibility is that the faces are those of the bodhisattva Lokeśvara, who as Lord of the World sees everywhere with a look of KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION). That Jayavarman felt such compassion for all living things is stated in his inscriptions and seen in his building of 102 hospitals throughout the kingdom. In addition, the Bayon has extensive sculptural reliefs in surrounding galleries. These reliefs, however, do not depict stories from Buddhist texts but are mostly scenes of battles that Jayavarman undertook against the Cham, as well as interesting genre scenes, such as cockfights and markets. The reliefs also show that both Śiva and Viṣṇu were under worship.

Of the hundreds of other monuments Jayavarman built, the Neak Pean (coiled serpents) is notable. It consists of a square pond, 230 feet on each side, faced with stone steps and a circular stone island with a shrine in the center. Two carved snakes entwine the base of the island. There are four smaller directional ponds surrounding the central pond; these are connected with channels so that water could flow out of the central pond into the four side ponds. The water flowed through the stone heads of a human (east), lion (south), horse (west), and elephant (north). This symbolism apparently indicates that the pond was considered a duplicate of the Himalayan lake Anavatapta from which the four celestial rivers of India flow. The central shrine has three false doors carved with images of Avalokiteśvara, to whom the shrine was dedicated. A three-dimensional stone horse to which human figures cling is placed in the water; this is an image of Avalokiteśvara in his form as the horse Balaha, who



The twelfth-century Khmer Bayon Temple at Angkor Thom, Cambodia, has fifty-two (originally fifty-four) “face towers.” Each contains four images, which likely represent the all-around compassion of Avalokiteśvara looking in all directions. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.

attempted to rescue shipwrecked sailors. We know from a thirteenth-century Chinese visitor that the waters of Neak Pean were believed to wash away sin.

The Cham sites are in mid- and southern Vietnam (the kingdom called Champa). The earliest Indian-related inscription, in Sanskrit, in Southeast Asia comes from Vo Canh in south Vietnam, dating to around the third century C.E. The earliest extant Indian-related images are much later, from the seventh century, and are entirely Hindu. A Buddhist monastery, however, was built at Dong Duong in central Vietnam in the ninth and tenth centuries. The Buddhism was MAHĀYĀNA with tantric elements, apparently something of a local school. The stone sculptures include figures performing unique gestures and wearing unique clothing and ornaments. Both Tārā and Avalokiteśvara were of importance, and in 1978 a metal image of Tārā, almost fifty inches tall, was found, indicating that large metal images were also being made at the time. The style of the Dong Duong sculptures is highly unusual within the Southeast Asian artistic tradition, with such

characteristics as a single long eyebrow and the use of wormlike designs for hair and halos.

### **Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula**

The art history of Buddhism becomes even more complex when turning to Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula. As on the mainland, both Hinduism and Buddhism were introduced simultaneously from India as a result of trade. Two of the earliest Indian-related Southeast Asian kingdoms were founded in the fifth century C.E. on the islands, one in Borneo and one in Java. The inscriptions by the “kings” from both mention brahmanical rites and indicate the appeal Hinduism had for the local Southeast Asian chiefs as a means to increase their power through using a shared Indian religious vocabulary.

These two kingdoms apparently disappeared, with Indian religions reappearing in central Java in the eighth century. During about a two-hundred-year period (ca. 730–950), hundreds of monuments in brick and stone were built and thousands of images were made in stone

and metal. It was during this Central Javanese period that the Buddhist monument BOROBUDUR was erected (ca. 800–830). Few Buddhist monuments have been studied as extensively as Borobudur. It is an enormous structure, measuring 370 feet square and 113 feet tall. Built over a small hill, it consists of millions of cut volcanic stone blocks that rise like a pyramid in four square and three round terraces. There are 1,300 relief panels that illustrate a series of Indian texts, including *jātakas* and life stories of Śākyamuni Buddha from the LALITAVISTARA. Placed in niches and in stūpas are 504 life-size Buddha images, each cut in the round. In addition, about 1,472 small stūpas, 72 large perforated stūpas, and an enormous single closed stūpa at the top decorate the structure.

A Mahāyāna monument, with perhaps tantric aspects, Borobudur has defied any single interpretation of its meaning and use. As with the Dong Duong Buddhism and art mentioned above, or the Dvāraṭī buddhas on flying figures, Southeast Asian Buddhists at Borobudur developed a type of Buddhism that was local and unique. Unlike East Asian Buddhists, Southeast Asian Buddhists did not in the ancient period translate Indian texts into local vernaculars, nor, as far as we know, did they produce their own Buddhist texts. They used the Indian texts in the original Sanskrit or Pāli. The result is that we have Indian texts but Southeast Asian art, art that is Indian-related but consistently local in style and iconography. In short, we often have no way to know the extent to which local understanding is hidden under the Indian guise.

There are other important Buddhist monuments in Central Java. Candi Sewu, which probably dates to the end of the eighth century, was dedicated to the bodhisattva Mañjuśrī. It had a central cella with four attached directional subshrines, and was surrounded by 250 smaller shrines. This maṇḍalic organization is seen as well at Borobudur, with the organization of the Buddha images into a seven-Buddha system differentiated by their hand gestures (MUDRĀ) and directional placement. During the Central Javanese period both Hinduism and Buddhism coexisted, with the complex of Loro Jonggrang dedicated to Śiva, Viṣṇu, and Brahmā being constructed at about the same time as Borobudur.

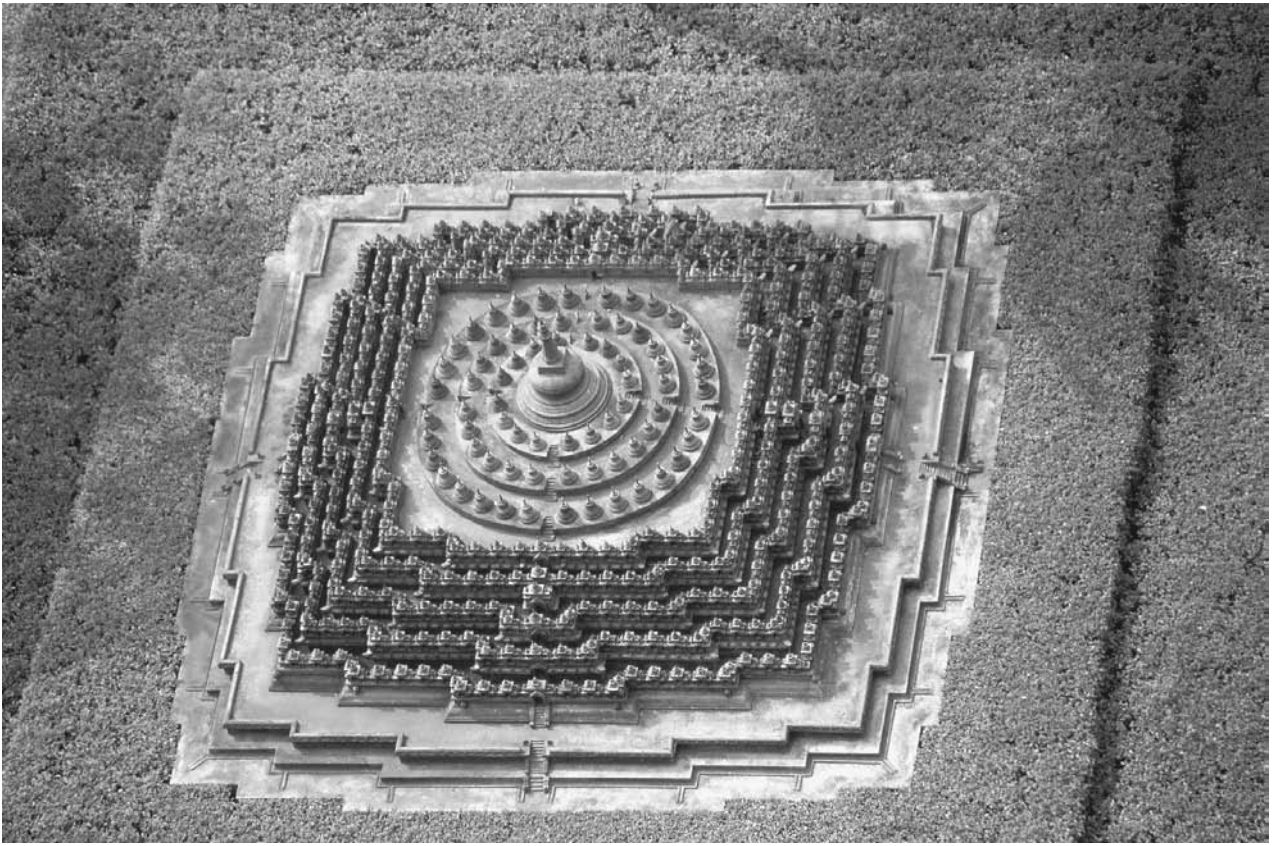
During the Central Javanese period enormous numbers of both Buddhist and Hindu images were cast in bronze, gold, and silver. The closeness in style and iconography that many of these metal images shared with images from the Pāla period (eighth to twelfth centuries) sites in India has long been observed. The Pāla kings were among the last major patrons of

Buddhism in India, and it was under them that the great Eastern Indian monastery complexes such as Nālandā flourished. There is also inscriptional and historical evidence for frequent interchange between these monasteries and those in Indonesia.

Sometime around the middle of the tenth century Central Java appears to have been abandoned, and artistic work ceased. The cause may have been the eruption of the volcano of Mount Merapi. The Central Javanese court moved to eastern Java, with a very different type of art and architecture developing there under several different kingdoms. By the sixteenth century, Islam had become dominant throughout the Indonesian islands, except in Bali.

Buddhism continued throughout the Eastern Javanese period (tenth to fifteenth centuries), but it was not as important as Śaivism. Tantric beliefs and rituals became paramount in both Buddhism and Śaivism, and the two religions blended in many ways. The Buddhist KĀLACAKRA rituals were performed, and the kings were identified as Śiva/Buddha after death. The images in the temples in the forms of Buddhist deities, such as Prajñāpāramitā, were intended to represent the kings and queens after death when they became absorbed into the deity. Indeed, this use of images of deities as “portrait” statues of both the god and the royal person is what took place under Jayavarman VII at Angkor at about the same time, and it can be found in Champa as well. The Khmer, Cham, and Javanese royalty used images of deities in a similar way, a practice probably from the earliest adoption of Indian-related art.

There is a corpus of Buddhist art found on the island of Sumatra, but mainly at sites in what is today the southern area of the Thai peninsula; this art is loosely labeled as “Śrīvijaya” in style, with dates from the seventh to thirteenth centuries. Śrīvijaya enters history in the seventh century with several inscriptions in Sumatra. At the same time the Chinese monk-pilgrim YIJING (635–713) tells us that he spent several years in Śrīvijaya, initially in 671 to learn Sanskrit on his way to India, and then for two extended periods from 685 to 695 (with a brief return to China in 689) to translate texts and write his memoirs. Śrīvijaya continued to exist for almost five hundred years, and inscriptions on the peninsula mention it. The problem has been to find it. The place Yijing lived appears to be Palembang in Sumatra, but it has been only since the late 1970s that any archaeological evidence has been found there. Much of Śrīvijaya would have been



An aerial view of the monument at Borobudur in Java, Indonesia. © Charles and Josette Lenars/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

built in bamboo and thatch, with people living on boats that left no trace.

Most of the Buddhist art associated with Śrīvijaya has been found in peninsular Thailand from such cities as Chaiya and Nakhon Si Thammarat. The art shares such general characteristics as being Mahāyāna in theme, with Avalokiteśvara being very popular. But rather than seeing this material, which is generally varied in style, as belonging to Śrīvijaya, it is more helpful to locate and discuss it by region because the existence of a hegemonic empire based in Śrīvijaya is questioned today.

#### **The Burmese, Thais, Laotians, and Vietnamese**

Besides the Khmer of modern Cambodia, there are other linguistic groups that dominate mainland Southeast Asia today: the Burmese, Thais, Laotians, and Vietnamese. Each of these groups, and the modern nations they have created, was predominantly Buddhist. The Burmese appear in history around the eleventh century. The Pyu kingdoms ended in the ninth, but the Mon continued for a time to share power with the Burmese. The Burmese looked to Sri Lanka for

Theravāda Buddhist monks and texts, and they built one of the greatest Buddhist sites in the world at Pagan on the Irrawaddy River. Fueled by a veritable frenzy of merit-making through giving to the SAṄGHA, some two thousand brick monuments (temples and stūpas) were built over a two-hundred-year period. Although most of these monuments are abandoned today, some, such as the ANANDA TEMPLE, continue to serve worshippers.

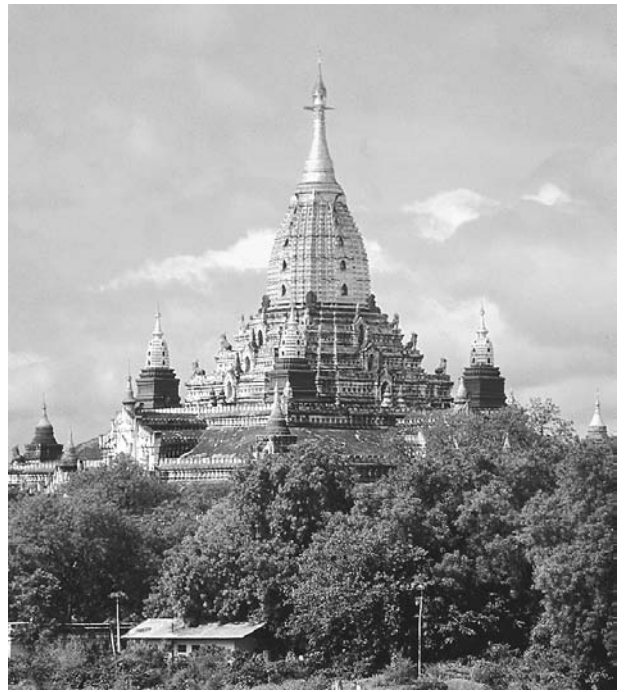
The Ananda was built by King Kyanzittha at the beginning of the twelfth century. As with the Bayon and Borobudur, the Ananda is impressive in its size and complexity. It takes the form of a Greek cross, with four directional entrances, each of which leads to a standing wood buddha image. The buddhas stand against a solid central masonry block that is 175 feet square. The buddhas, each thirty-one feet tall, are identified as four earthly buddhas: Kakusandha (Sanskrit, Krakuccanda; north), Koṇāgamana (Sanskrit, Kaṇakamuni; east), Kassapa (Sanskrit, Kāśyapa; south), and Gotama (Sanskrit, Gautama; west). There are two inner galleries flanked by niches in which stone sculptures are placed, and on the outside of the building are

extensive series of glazed stone tiles, including 912 tiles depicting *jātakas* that are arranged in tiers on the roof, which rises to a height of 172 feet.

Myanmar (Burma), like Thailand, is a Buddhist nation today, and Buddhism is officially sponsored by the government. The famous SHWEDAGON pagoda (stūpa) in Rangoon is constantly thronged with worshipers, as are Buddhist monuments everywhere, and images of the Buddha, mostly in bronze, are being produced in great quantities. Contemporary Thailand shares many Buddhist traditions with Burma, including its Theravāda Buddhism. It is not clear when the Mon in central Thailand (Dvāravatī) ceased making images, perhaps as early as the ninth century, but the Mon had a kingdom in northern Thailand at Haripunchai until the thirteenth century. This is approximately the time that the Thais first appear in history, when they revolt against their Khmer overlords and establish the first Thai kingdom of SUKHOThai. Like the Burmese, they looked to the Mon of lower Burma and the Sri Lankans for their Buddhism.

Sukhothai in north central Thailand has many Buddhist monuments, but they are not on the scale of Pagan or Angkor, and most are in ruins today. But this area developed a new style of Buddha image known for its lithe, melting lines, which remains the favored style of the Thais, who continue to produce thousands of Buddha images in the style. Sukhothai's political power waned quickly, as AYUTTHAYA, another Thai kingdom founded in 1350, soon dominated much of Thailand, and was to control much of Cambodia as well. The Khmer abandoned Angkor as the capital in 1431 because of Thai attacks. By then Theravāda Buddhism, already present during the reign of Jayavarman VII, had spread throughout Cambodia and Laos. The famous Angkor Wat, built in the twelfth century as the temple mountain of Suryavarman II and dedicated to the Hindu god Viṣṇu, was converted in the fourteenth century to a Buddhist monastery.

Finally, the Vietnamese have an extended Buddhist tradition. It is not, however, with India and Sri Lanka that we find relationships, but with China. China held northern Vietnam (Dai Viet) as a province for over a thousand years. The Vietnamese gained independence in the eleventh century. The Cham, in central and southern Vietnam, were in constant warfare with the Vietnamese, who relentlessly pushed them south until they completely collapsed in the nineteenth century. Vietnamese Buddhist art is best discussed in conjunction with that of China.



The Ananda Temple at Pagan, Myanmar (Burma), is white with gilded spires. It rises to a height of 172 feet. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.

*See also:* **Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Esoteric Art, South and Southeast Asia; Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula; Indonesia, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture; Myanmar, Buddhist Art in**

### **Bibliography**

- Boisseler, Jean. *The Heritage of Thai Sculpture*. Bangkok, Thailand: Asia Books, 1975.
- Boisseler, Jean. *Trends in Khmer Art* (1956), tr. Natasha Eilenberg and Melvin Elliott. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University, Southeast Asia Program, 1989.
- Brown, Robert L. *The Dvaravati Wheels of the Law and the Indianization of South East Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1986.
- Chihara, Daigoro. *Hindu-Buddhist Architecture in Southeast Asia*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1996.
- Diskul, M. C. Subhadradis, ed. *The Art of Śrīvijaya*. New York and Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Oxford University Press, 1980.
- Fontein, Jan, et al. *The Sculpture of Indonesia*. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art, 1990.
- Frédéric, Louis. *The Temples and Sculpture of Southeast Asia*, tr. Arnold Rosin. London: Thames and Hudson, 1965.
- Geslan-Girard, Maud, et al. *Art of Southeast Asia*, tr. J. A. Underwood. New York: Harry N. Abrams, 1998.



- Gosling, Betty. *Sukhothai: Its History, Culture, and Art*. Singapore and New York: Oxford University Press, 1991.
- Guillon, Emmanuel. *Cham Art: Treasures from the Đà Nang Museum, Vietnam*, tr. Tom White. London: Thames and Hudson, 2001.
- Jacq-Hergoualc'h, Michel. *The Malay Peninsula: Crossroads of the Maritime Silk Road*, tr. Victoria Hobson. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2002.
- Jacques, Claude. *Angkor*. Cologne, Germany: Konemann, 1999.
- Jacques, Claude, and Freeman, Michael (photographs). *Angkor: Cities and Temples*, tr. Tom White. Bangkok, Thailand: River Books; London: Thames and Hudson, 1997.
- Jessup, Helen Ibbitson, and Zephir, Thierry, eds. *Millennium of Glory: Sculpture of Angkor and Ancient Cambodia*. Washington, DC: National Gallery of Art, 1997.
- Lopetcharat, Somkiart. *Lao Buddha: The Image and Its History*. Bangkok, Thailand: Siam International Book Company, 2000.
- Luce, Gordon H. *Old Burma—Early Pagan*, 3 vols. Locust Valley, NY: J. J. Augustin, 1970.
- Mazzeo, Donatella, and Antonini, Chiara Silvi. *Ancient Cambodia*. New York: Grosset and Dunlap, 1978.
- Moore, Elizabeth; U-win Pe; and Mayer, Hansjörg (photographs). *Shwedagon: Golden Pagoda of Myanmar*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1999.
- Nou, Jean-Louis, and Frédéric, Louis. *Borobudur*. New York: Abbeville Press, 1994.
- Rawson, Philip. *The Art of Southeast Asia*. London: Thames and Hudson, 1995.
- Siribhadra, Smitthi, and Moore, Elizabeth. *Palaces of the Gods: Khmer Art and Architecture in Thailand*. Bangkok, Thailand: River Books, 1997.
- Soekmono, R. *The Javanese Candi: Function and Meaning*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1995.
- Strachan, Paul. *Pagan: Art and Architecture of Old Burma*. Whiting Bay, UK: Kiscadale, 1989.
- Thaw, Aung. *Historical Sites in Burma*. Rangoon, Myanmar: Ministry of Union Culture, 1972.
- Wales, H. G. Quaritch. *Dvāravatī: The Earliest Kingdom of Siam*. London: Quaritch, 1969.
- Woodward, Hiram. *The Sacred Sculpture of Thailand*. Baltimore, MD: Walters Art Gallery, 1997.
- Woodward, Hiram. *The Art and Architecture of Thailand from Prehistoric Times through the Thirteenth Century*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 2003.

ROBERT L. BROWN

## SPACE, SACRED

One way to investigate the historical and geographical spread of Buddhism in Asia is to focus on the creation, uses, and transformations of sites that religion characterized as sacred. Every Asian country where Buddhism became a major cultural force was remarkably affected by the production of its sacred spaces. While referring to continental examples, this entry will focus on JAPAN, where such creations and transformations occurred in a massive and profound manner.

### Indian Buddhism

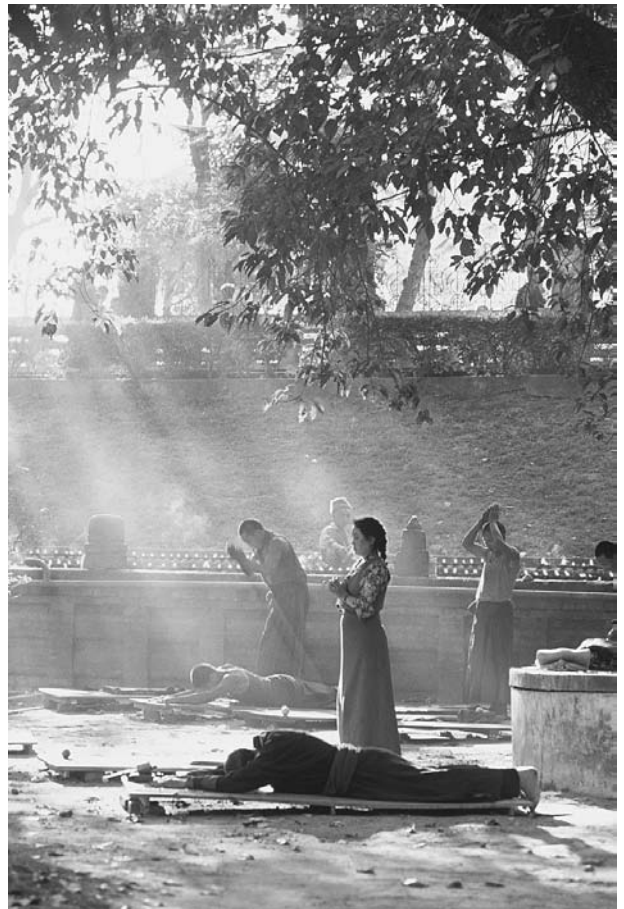
The original sacred space acknowledged by all schools of Buddhism is the actual site where the historical Buddha is said to have achieved BODHI (AWAKENING), BODH GAYĀ in northeastern India, as is attested by the fact that sculpted depictions of the site in question were made before the Buddha himself was ever represented. The symbolism attached to this site formed a kind of anchor that most subsequent notions and practices referred to, consciously or not. A secondary, early form of sacred space involved PILGRIMAGES undertaken by monastic or lay figures who wished to “follow the footsteps” of the historical Buddha; many of these footsteps are described in a vast number of sūtras, most of which begin with a statement identifying sites where the Buddha would have given his teachings. These sites are still visited by Buddhists from around the world, which seems to indicate that sacred space is not to be separated from practices and ideas linked to salvation (SOTERIOLOGY). One can see throughout Asia, for example, stones in which imprints of the soles of the Buddha’s feet have been engraved with a variety of symbols. Borrowed from pre-Buddhist Indian mythology, this feature of footprints left by divine entities stands for the notion that each Buddhist school is a “way” or “PATH” that is said to be a replica of the process whereby the Buddha reached NIRVĀṆA, or, as became fairly common later, that the footprints in question are “traces” that the post-nirvāṇa Buddha would have left on the ground wherever local traditions claimed he would have manifested himself, preached, or performed supernatural deeds.

One of the earliest aspects of the production of Buddhist sacred space in India was, perhaps, the construction of STŪPAS, stone monuments that were used as reliquaries and soon became objects of veneration. As time passed and the legend of the Buddha’s life took shape, some of these stūpas were adorned with

bas-relief representations of important moments presumed to have taken place during the Buddha's life and, later, with events that would have occurred in his former lives. Originally venerated as repositories of relics (physical supports for memories held to be true), stūpas became memorials constructed and adorned in such a way that they would evoke specific recollections of the Buddha's path, elicit intended readings of major experiences in the Buddha's life, and support practices, such as circumambulation (walking clockwise around any Buddhist site of cult). As MONKS and NUNS engaged in austerities and built retreats, cave complexes were dug at the base of cliffs; some were plain cells, others were sanctuaries adorned with paintings or statues. Among the many cave complexes scattered throughout Asia, Ellora and AJAṆṬĀ in India and DUNHUANG in China are, perhaps, the most famous. Monasteries also came to be erected on or near such sites. Their scope, sometimes immense, attests to the patronage Buddhism enjoyed on the part of rulers or wealthy merchants, as can be seen in the stupendous monastery complexes of Pagan and Rangoon in Myanmar (Burma), Angkor Wat and Angkor Thom in Kampuchea (Cambodia), BOROBUDUR in Java, Lhasa in Tibet, the various capital cities of China, and many others.

### Monasteries

The construction of monasteries (*tera*, *ji*, or *ji-in*) in Japan began shortly after Buddhism was recognized by the court in the mid-sixth century C.E. The layout of these structures shows Chinese and Korean influences, while some aspects of the organization of their space reveals their relation to the COSMOLOGY and cosmography described in the ABHIDHARMA literature of early Buddhism. Typically, the four corner pillars of a monastery represent the abodes of the Four Heavenly Kings (Japanese, *shitennō*), who are said to protect the east, south, west, and north corners of Mount Sumeru, the mountain located at the center of the Buddhist cosmos. Toward the back of such a monastery is a platform called *shumidan* (platform of Mount Sumeru), on which statues of buddhas and bodhisattvas are placed. Some monastery architecture, then, was based on cosmographic principles, but these cultic sites became sacred only after *eye-opening* rites (Japanese, *kaigen shiki*, *kaigen kuyō*), in which a ritualist paints in an iris or otherwise sanctifies the sense of vision—both in the sense that BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS bless devotees by establishing visual contact and in the sense that anyone is blessed by looking at a buddha or bo-



Pilgrims prostrating themselves at the site of the Buddha's enlightenment in Bodh Gayā, India. © Alison Wright/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

dhisattva. Furthermore, the transformation of a statue into a living icon required a ritualized exchange of breath between an officiating monk and a statue, and recent discoveries of relics and fashioned replicas of internal organs in statues prove that what was thought to be representations were, by ritual fiat, living entities and sacred spaces par excellence.

Most of Japan's earliest Buddhist monasteries were erected in plains or cities. Starting in the eighth century, however, monasteries were built on the sides of or near the summits of mountains, and concepts of sacred space thereby gained more intricate meanings, as did spatial, ritualized practices. An obvious but perhaps simplistic indication to this effect is the fact that fourteen Japanese mountains bear the name Misen, which refers to Mount Sumeru. Seventeen bear the name Ben[zai]ten, the Buddhist form of the Vedic deity Sarasvatī. Twenty-two bear the name Fudō, the king of sapience Acala, an important deity in esoteric Buddhism. Twenty-seven bear the name Kyōzuka

(sūtra-burial mounds), although many more mountains bearing different names were also sites of sūtra-burial. Twenty-nine bear the name Buddha, either as a title or as the name of the historical Buddha, Śākyamuni. Another twenty-nine bear the name Jizō (Kṣitigarbha bodhisattva). Thirty-one bear the name Dainichi nyorai (Mahāvairocana tathāgata). Thirty-two bear the name Kokuzō (Ākāśagarbha bodhisattva). Forty-three bear the name Yakushi (the buddha of medicine, Bhaiṣajyaguru). Fifty-four bear the name Kannon (the bodhisattva of compassion, Avalokiteśvara). And 101 mountains are simply named *gongen* (avatar), a term used to refer to a local native deity that is considered to be a manifestation of a buddha or bodhisattva. Several hundred other such examples of the occupation of striking features of Japan's topography by the Buddhist pantheon attest to the creation of Buddhist sacred landscapes. This naming of mountains on the basis of buddhas, bodhisattvas, various Buddhist or Indian deities, and local Japanese deities should not be given too much weight, however, for it merely suggests certain aspects of topophilia and does not account for the fact that thousands of mountains were the object of more complex sacralization by means of Buddhist rituals, narratives, and other techniques described below.

### Ritualized geography

As MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism evolved around the beginning of the common era, one finds important statements concerning the actual site where the Buddha achieved awakening. In *Dazhidu lun* (*Treatise on the Great Perfection of Wisdom*) attributed to NĀGĀRJUNA, for example, this site is referred to as *bodhimaṇḍa* (site of awakening; Japanese, *dōjō*), and it is described as consisting of an immense diamond protruding at the base of the tree where the Buddha would have sat in meditation. In later writings the term *bodhimaṇḍa* came to denote not only the physical site where the Buddha reached awakening, but the psychological situation or “mental space” he would have attained or produced through meditation. As a consequence, this term became an important aspect of the properties of sacred space in the context of ritualized practices, in which spiritual or subjective states were always linked to material or objective sites. Indeed, countless manuals detailing how rituals must be conducted contain an important section called “visualization of the site of practice/space of awakening” (*dōjōkan*), which details how a ritual platform (*dan*) must be constructed and consecrated, as well as specific steps in the ritualized

meditations that are supposed to lead to a visualization of the residence of a given buddha or bodhisattva that is thereby made to occupy the space of the ritual platform, as well as the mind of the ritualists.

In a number of cases in Japan, such ritualized practices and exercises in visualization were projected onto mountains, which were then regarded as the *dōjō* of a certain buddha or bodhisattva, that is, its site of residence, manifestation, and practice. The oldest Japanese document detailing this process of identification of a mountain with the abode (Pure Land) of a bodhisattva was written by KŪKAI (Kōbō Daishi, 774–835) in 814. Kūkai describes therein the first ascent of Mount Futara (today called Nantaizan and located in Nikkō) by the monk Shōdō, who, reaching the summit of its volcanic dome, envisioned it as the abode of Kannon (Avalokiteśvara, the bodhisattva of compassion). Shōdō then sculpted a representation of Kannon, which can be seen today in Chūzenji, located at the foot of that mountain. Kūkai's rationale for identifying Mount Futara with Kannon's residence was the toponym, which allowed an association between the Japanese name of the mountain, Futara, and the Japanized version of Kannon's Pure Land, Fudaraku (Sanskrit, Potalaka). The entire area surrounding this mountain subsequently became a major site of SHUGENDŌ (Japan's mountain religion), and ever more intricate practices continued, over the centuries, to elaborate the sacred character of the region. Such identifications of pure lands of buddhas and bodhisattvas with Japanese mountains reached full development with the nationwide spread of Shugendō, and ultimately led to the notion that Japan, in its entirety, was the actual residence of buddhas and bodhisattvas as well as other deities and their retinues. Kūkai also wrote texts concerning the rituals used in the establishment of sacred grounds where monasteries were built; the term for these grounds, *kekkaï* (bounded realm), refers to a ritually purified area that can range from a ten-foot square hut, as in the tea ceremony, for example, to large geographical areas over which the government or individuals relinquished all control, as in the case of sacred mountains.

Several doctrinal propositions undergirded this geohistorical process. First, a central tenet of Shingon esoteric Buddhism (*tōmitsu*) held that this world is the manifestation of its central buddha, Mahāvairocana (Japanese, Dainichi). Second, and very closely related to the former proposition although structurally different, the Shingi-Shingon branch of esoteric Buddhism created by Kakuban (1094–1143) held that this world

is the Pure Land of buddhas and bodhisattvas (*mitsugon jōdo*, Pure Land adorned with mysteries). Third, a doctrine issued from Tendai esoteric circles (*taimitsu*) proposed that this world's flora could achieve buddhahood (*sōmoku jōbutsu*), and this proposition enjoyed a spectacular success in the medieval period and evolved to the point that, in some cases, the flora was regarded as the Buddha itself (*sōmoku zebutsu*). Fourth, various PURE LAND SCHOOLS proposed that certain geographical locations were gates to the transcendental Pure Land of the buddha Amida (Sanskrit, AMITĀBHA) or of various bodhisattvas, with an emphasis on Kannon. As a consequence, quite a few monastery gardens and buildings were built as physical replicas of various scriptural descriptions of the Pure Lands.

Last but not least, the medieval assumption that many local deities, the indigenous *kami* of Shintō who were objects of cult in precise locations, were manifestations of buddhas and bodhisattvas became a major social practice. Known as HONJI SUIJAKU (Buddhist deities leaving their traces in the form of Shintō deities), this assumption and the related set of practices were responsible for a systematic association between Buddhist and non-Buddhist deities and their respective cultic sites, and for the addition of Buddhist notions of sacred space to native sentiments and practices. Nowhere was this system of associations, as well as the former four doctrinal points, more evident than in the development of pilgrimage and the formulation of Shugendō.

### Shugendō

An amalgamation of Buddhist, Daoist, and Japanese native notions and practices, Shugendō slowly arose and became a loose institutional system in the eleventh century, by which time official records indicate the presence of its practitioners (called *shugenja* or *yamabushi*) in many parts of Japan, including the imperial court, where they served as thaumaturges and healers. Shugendō's dominant features include tenets and practices that are central to both Shingon and Tendai forms of esotericism, as well as longstanding, pre-Buddhist notions of sacred space. Mountains that had been regarded as the abode of gods (many of them, incidentally, female entities), or as gods themselves, became objects of worship on the part of these mountain ascetics, but they also came to be treated as off-limits to all but male ascetics. Women were only allowed up to the point of certain boundaries marked by engraved stones or wooden boards that read *nyonin*

*kekkaï* (limit for women). Some peaks became the object of ritualized ascents, while mountain ranges became the object of highly ritualized peregrinations, the goal of which was to realize buddhahood in this body by becoming one with the land, each and every feature of which was conceived of as a repository or natural form of the Buddha's teachings. Eventually, several hundred mountains became sacred to Shugendō practitioners.

The main organizational characteristic of the Shugendō practitioners' ascents and peregrinations was to associate a given trek through mountain ranges with the ritual acts and meditations monks of esoteric Buddhism engaged in when using MAṄḌALAS. Two main maṅḍalas were used in both Tendai and Shingon esoteric branches: the Adamantine maṅḍala (*kongō-kai mandara*), which was drawn as geometric elements containing iconographic representations as well as symbols in order to represent the essential character of the absolute knowledge of the buddha Mahāvairocana (Dainichi nyorai), and the Matrix maṅḍala (*taizō-kai mandara*), which represented the various objects of that knowledge. There were many other maṅḍalas, dedicated to single deities and known as *besson mandara*, many of which were also used in Shugendō. Elaborate rituals led to the achievement of mystic identification with the deities shown in these maṅḍalas: Following a specific course through a given maṅḍala, ritualists engaged in the practice of the triple mystery of the body, speech, and mind. Buddhahood was supposed to be reached when distinctions between the knower and the known (subject and object) were annihilated. In Shugendō, this ritual process was projected over fairly large geographical areas: One mountain range would be considered the natural form of one maṅḍala, and a nearby range was considered the natural form of the other maṅḍala. Each peak rising in these ranges, as well as some of the boulders, springs, waterfalls, and other topographic features, were regarded as the residence of one of the many deities represented in the maṅḍalas, and the practitioners would spend several weeks peregrinating through such "natural maṅḍalas" while dedicating rituals to these deities. Practitioners usually followed one maṅḍala course through a given range in spring, the other maṅḍala course through a nearby range in autumn, and a summer retreat in the central mountain. Sacred space, then, encompassed vast areas that were to be crossed ritually, and stood as guarantor of physical and spiritual salvation. Such "mandalized" areas were established along several ranges, from the northernmost

part of Honshū Island to the southernmost part of Kyushu Island, and they ranged from relatively small areas to the entirety of Japan. Related mandalization processes also occurred in Tibet; further research should indicate whether other countries engaged in similar processes of sacralization.

Another major technique used in Shugendō to produce sacred space was to consider individual mountains or entire mountain ranges as the natural embodiments of Buddhist scriptures. The Katsuragi range in the Kansai area, for example, was crossed by practitioners who stopped at twenty-eight caves adorned with statues or where scriptures had been interred; each cave was supposed to symbolically represent one of the twenty-eight chapters of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). On Kyushu Island, the Kunisaki peninsula was regarded as the lotus pedestal on which the Buddha preached the *Lotus Sūtra*; eventually, twenty-eight monasteries, each corresponding to a chapter of the scripture, were built on the slopes of the peninsula, and there too peregrinations leading to these monasteries were held to enable one to grasp the multiple meanings of the sūtra (this peregrination is still performed once every twelve years). Also in northern Kyushu, Mount Hiko was regarded as the site where MAITREYA (Japanese, Miroku), the next Buddha, would achieve buddhahood. Scriptures describe the palace where Maitreya awaits this moment as being composed of forty-nine chambers, and on and around Mount Hiko forty-nine caves were made to correspond to these chambers. As time passed, two mountain ranges extending north and northwest from Mount Hiko were treated as natural maṇḍalas. Furthermore, Mount Hiko itself was regarded as the natural embodiment of a Tendai doctrine known as the Four Lands (*shido kekkaï*), which were progressive spiritual stages reached in a ritualized meditation on the *Lotus Sūtra*. In this case, the mountain was divided into four superimposed zones, each separated by a sacred gate (*torii*), and life was strictly regulated therein. In the lowest zone, ascetics and laypeople could commingle and reside; in the second zone, only ascetics could reside; in the third zone, which consisted of a variety of caves and sites for austerities, neither residences nor women were allowed.

The fourth zone, which encompassed the triple summit of the mountain, could be visited only by ascetics who had completed fifteen maṇḍala courses through the mountain ranges, but even they could not stay for long, for no bodily fluid, of any kind, was to defile the sacred space in question. The study of

Shugendō has barely begun in Western countries, but it is obvious that this unique system was instrumental in the formation of concepts and practices related to the notion that sacred space is, in fact, the entirety of the natural world. These features illustrate a historical process whereby reverence for discrete “sites of cult” was enhanced by Shugendō rituals and concepts, and evolved into a “cult of sites” that is representative of premodern Japanese culture.

### Pilgrimage routes

Eventually, many of these sites became pilgrimage stops for both priests and laity. Pilgrimages are structurally different from the mandalized peregrinations Shugendō practitioners performed, however, and a single case will serve to illustrate this important difference. In central Japan’s Kii peninsula, Shugendō practitioners went through two mandalized courses, one leading from Yoshino, located in the north, to Kumano, located in the southernmost part of the peninsula, and one leading from Kumano to Yoshino. Only male ascetics could engage in these mandalized peregrinations. But there was also a pilgrimage to Kumano, which emperors, aristocrats, warriors, and commoners alike engaged in. Its course, however, was radically different: It entailed following the western coast of the peninsula in a southerly direction, and then entering the mountainous ranges of the southern part of the peninsula to eventually reach Kumano. This pilgrimage course was marked by ninety-nine sites dedicated to protectors of various deities. In other words, Kumano was considered a sacred space by all, but it could be reached only by different roads, one “professional” (the mandalized peregrination), and the other, “common” (the pilgrimage). Furthermore, since Kumano came to be regarded as the Pure Land on earth of Kannon, the bodhisattva of compassion, it was placed at the head of yet another pilgrimage, dedicated to Kannon’s thirty-three manifestations, each worshiped in different monasteries connected by pilgrimage roads in central Japan. This pilgrimage was so popular that it was duplicated in many areas of Japan: Today there are at least fifty-four different pilgrimage courses dedicated to these thirty-three forms of Kannon.

Starting in the medieval period, religious narratives detailing the origins, supernatural events, and the topography of Japan’s famed sacred sites were elaborated and written down. This fairly large body of literature indicates that sacred space cannot be separated from sacred time, that the history of these cultic sites is an intrinsic feature of their sacredness, and that lo-



Monks in the Sacred Caves at Pak Ou, Laos. © Christophe Loviny/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

cal topography, natural features (in particular, sources of water), Buddhist monasteries, shrines to local gods, and narratives formed a single coherent whole. In other words, sacred spaces were fundamentally associated with postulated recollections of the past and ritualized practices, all tied up in attitudes and acts of devotion or piety that have been collectively referred to as *geopiety* by the human geographer J. K. Wright and *topophilia* by Yi-Fu Tuan.

In contemporary Japan, about one hundred different pilgrimage courses linking more than five hundred monasteries in all parts of the country attest to the complexity of sacred space and exemplify the equally complex nature of the Japanese people's spiritual and emotional attachments to their land. Shikoku Island, for instance, boasts of several mountains that were objects of Shugendō practices, and it is also the site of Japan's most famous pilgrimage. Kūkai, the founder of the Shingon school of esoteric Buddhism, was born there in the late-eighth century and he practiced austerities in some of these mountains. During the medieval period, Kūkai became the object of a nationwide cult, and a pilgrimage dedicated to him was established

around Shikoku Island; it consists of a course linking eighty-eight monasteries, and is still quite popular. Each monastery is sacred, obviously, but so is the entire course, and many pilgrims consider Shikoku Island itself to be sacred.

#### **Historical, social, and economic aspects**

Sacred spaces, however, have a history. To take one example, Japan's highest mountain, Mount Fuji, was originally regarded as the abode of one local god; when Buddhism took charge of the cult around the twelfth century, the mountain came to be viewed as the abode of three buddhas and bodhisattvas and of that god as well, and it became a center of Shugendō. By the seventeenth century, however, Shugendō's influence waned (for political reasons), and Mount Fuji became the object of mass pilgrimages on the part of laypeople, as a consequence of which the understandings of the mountain's sacred character radically changed. Another example of major historical changes is the Ise Shrine, located on the eastern coast of the Kii peninsula. It is composed of an Inner Shrine dedicated to the ancestral god of the imperial house, and of an

Outer Shrine dedicated to a god of food. During the medieval period, these sanctuaries became the object of complex associations with esoteric Buddhism, which viewed them as yet another manifestation of the Adamantine and Matrix maṇḍalas. Ise subsequently became the object of mass pilgrimages, and for several centuries pilgrims were escorted by professional religious guides (*onshi*, or *oshi*), who gave instructions concerning the varied features of these sites of cult's sacred features, ranging from trees, rivers, and waterfalls, to caves, monasteries, and shrines. In the early modern period, however, Buddhism became the object of critiques that led, ultimately, to the separation of theretofore unified Shintō-Buddhist cults throughout Japan. The thirty-seven Buddhist monasteries of Ise were destroyed at the end of the nineteenth century, and today Ise is regarded as a Shintō cultic site, with no trace of Buddhism whatsoever.

It is important, therefore, to stress that the term *sacred space* is sometimes misleading because its oft-found emphasis on spirituality tends to generate an avoidance of the universally present material features of its historical production, as well as an avoidance of the many conflicts it caused or witnessed in the course of history. That is, the sacredness of certain sites or regions was instituted or maintained through various forms of an occupation of land (one of which was control over the people who lived there), and this socio-historical fact suggests that studies of the term *sacred space* need to include historical, social, and economic aspects. Japan's (and other countries') shrines and monasteries were established on pieces of land that used to belong to an individual or the government. Measured on the basis of a technique called, in Japanese, *shiichi* (four corners), the area where they were to be erected was ritually cleansed and propitiated, and the individual or ruling entity that entrusted that area to religious authorities thereby gave up all and any control over it, especially taxes. In order to meet the monasteries' needs for regular maintenance and repair, as well as in order to enhance their visibility and prestige, individuals or rulers commended land estates to them, and cultic sites became powerful economic entities. During the medieval period this estate system eroded and fell apart, and religious authorities had to look for different funding sources and traveled across the land in search of financial assistance while chanting the sacred character of their sites of cult and encouraging people to engage in pilgrimage.

Pilgrimage, then, arose in a specific social and economic climate, and the narratives mentioned earlier

played a great part in this development. Still today, pilgrimages have an important economic dimension that is all too often ignored in the analysis of sacred space, and the long but sometimes violent history of the sacred sites visited by pilgrims should be critically assessed in light (or shadow) of the stable myths that are often attached to the notion of sacred space.

*See also:* Cave Sanctuaries; Consecration; Kailāśa (Kailash); Monasticism; Relics and Relics Cults

### Bibliography

- Grapard, Allan G. "Flying Mountains and Walkers of Emptiness." *History of Religions* 21, no. 3 (1982): 191–221.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Japan's Ignored Cultural Revolution: The Separation of Shintō and Buddhist Divinities in Meiji (*shim-butsu bunri*) and a Case Study: Tōnomine." *History of Religions* 23, no. 3 (1984): 240–265.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Lotus in the Mountain, Mountain in the Lotus: Rokugo Kaizan Nimmon Daibosatsu Hongi." *Monumenta Nipponica* (Tokyo) 41, no. 1 (1986): 21–50.
- Grapard, Allan G. "The Textualized Mountain—Enmountained Text: The Lotus Sūtra in Kunisaki." In *The Lotus Sūtra in Japanese Culture*, ed. George J. Tanabe, Jr., and Willa Jane Tanabe. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1989.
- Grapard, Allan G. *The Protocol of the Gods: A Study of the Kasuga Cult in Japanese History*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1992.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Geosophia, Geognosis, and Geopieté: Orders of Significance in Japanese Representations of Space." In *NowHere: Space, Time and Modernity*, ed. Roger Friedland and Deirdre Boden. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1994.
- Grapard, Allan G. "Geotyping Sacred Space: The Case of Mount Hiko in Japan." In *Sacred Space: Shrine, City, Land*, ed. Benjamin Z. Kedar and R. J. Zwi Werblowsky. New York: New York University Press, 1998.
- Higuchi, Tadahiko. *The Visual and Spatial Structure of Landscapes*, tr. Charles Terry. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1988.
- Huber, Toni. *The Cult of Pure Crystal Mountain: Popular Pilgrimage and Visionary Landscapes in Southeast Tibet*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Miksic, John. *Borobudur: Golden Tale of the Buddhas*. Singapore: Periplus, 1990.
- Statler, Oliver. *Japanese Pilgrimage*. New York: Morrow, 1983.
- Tuan, Yi-Fu. *Topophilia: A Study of Environmental Perception, Attitudes and Values*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1974.

ALLAN G. GRAPARD

## SRI LANKA

Sri Lanka is home to the world's oldest continuing Buddhist civilization. Brāhmī inscriptions etched in stone on drip ledges above natural caves in the country's North-Central province indicate that hermitages have been dedicated by Buddhist LAITY for the meditation needs of monks since the third century B.C.E. Moreover, the fourth- and fifth-century C.E. monastic chronicles, the *Dīpavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Island*) and the *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*), contain a series of myths in which the Lankan king Devanāmpiya Tissa (third century B.C.E.), a contemporary of the Indian emperor Aśoka, is said to have been converted to the Buddha's teachings by Aśoka's own missionary son, Mahinda. Thus, from inscriptions and monastic literary traditions, it is known that by the third century B.C.E. lineages of forest monks supported by Buddhist laity were established on the island in the region that became Lanka's political center for thirteen subsequent centuries. Since Aśoka is also thought to have provided support for Devanāmpiya Tissa's abhiṣeka (coronation), it would seem that Buddhism became formally associated with Lanka's KINGSHIP by this time as well. For more than two millennia, until the British dethroned the last Lankan king in 1815, a symbiotic relationship entailing mutual support and legitimation between the Lankan kings and the Buddhist SAṄGHA (community) was sustained, either as an ideal or in actual practice.

Over the course of this long history, other forms of Buddhism joined the predominant THERAVĀDA bhikkhu (monk) and *bhikkhunī* (nun) saṅghas, which the *Mahāvamsa* asserts were established by Aśoka's children, Mahinda and his sister Saṅghamittā, respectively, and whose lineages were preserved by the Theravāda Mahāvihāra *nikāya*. These included the cults of MAHĀYĀNA BODHISATTVAS such as Avalokiteśvara, and the teachings of several Mahāyāna schools and of tantric Buddhist masters associated with Mahāvihāra's rival in Anurādhapura, the Abhayagiri *nikāya*, which were established and thrived, particularly during the seventh through the tenth centuries C.E.

### The Anurādhapura period

FAXIAN (ca. 337–ca. 418 C.E.), the itinerant Chinese Buddhist pilgrim, has provided a valuable description of fifth-century Anurādhapura, reporting that approximately eight thousand Buddhist monks then resided in the capital city. Faxian also reports that a public rit-

ual procession of the *Daḷadā* (tooth-relic of the Buddha) was celebrated annually, that the cult of Śri MAHĀBŌDHI (a graft of the original bodhi tree at BODH GAYĀ in India) was regularly venerated and lavishly supported by the laity and the king, and that Lankan kings had built massive STŪPAS to commemorate the Buddha and his relics. Well before Faxian's time and long thereafter, the city of Anurādhapura had become a politically powerful and cosmopolitan center whose successful economy had been made possible through the development of sophisticated hydraulic engineering and through the establishment of trade with partners as far flung as China in the east and Rome in the west. Furthermore, the city had become the administrative pivot of the three great monastic *nikāyas* (chapters) of the Lankan Buddhist saṅgha: the Theravāda Mahāvihāra; and the more doctrinally eclectic Abhayagiri and Jetavana chapters, each of which systematically established a vast array of affiliated village monasteries and forest hermitages throughout the domesticated rice-growing countryside. During the first millennium C.E., the three *nikāyas* in Anurādhapura and their affiliated monasteries dominated every facet of social, economic, educational, and cultural life. Some have argued that just as Lankan polity was expected to be the chief patron supporting the saṅgha, so the saṅgha functioned as a "Department of State" for the kingship. Perhaps somewhat exaggerated, that assertion does point to the extent to which Buddhist institutions became the basic social infrastructure in Lanka for many centuries.

Given the congenial relationship between polity and religion, the Anurādhapura period witnessed the fluorescence of an economically advanced and artistically sophisticated culture. Although the only surviving examples of painting are the frescos of heavenly maidens (perhaps *apsaras*) found at Sīgiriya, thousands of free-standing stone sculptures of the Buddha, scores of stone-carved bas-reliefs, and hundreds of bronzes are still extant, including the famous colossal images at Avukana and the meditative Buddhas that remain within the ruins of the Abhayagiri monastic complex at Anurādhapura. Early anthropomorphic images of the Buddha in Lanka bear a stylistic, and sometimes material, affinity with Buddha images created at Amaraṅga in south India, while images from the later Anurādhapura period, such as the eighth-century Avukana image, reflect the development of a distinctive Lankan style that emphasized the significance of the Buddha as a *mahāpuruṣa* (cosmic person).



The *Mahāvamsa* asserts that the Buddhist CANON (*Tripiṭaka*; Pāli, *Tiṭṭaka*) was first committed to writing during the reign of King Vaṭṭagāmiṇī Abhaya in the first century B.C.E. at Aluvihāra just north of Matale, inaugurating, perhaps, the tradition of inscribing Buddhist texts on to *ola* leaves, a tradition of committing the dharma to handwriting that continued into the nineteenth century. In rare instances, texts were also inscribed on gold or copper plates, such as the gold leaves bearing an eighth-century fragment of a Sanskrit *Prajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*), found within the massive STŪPA at Jetavana in Anurādhapura in the early 1980s.

In addition to the Pāli *Tiṭṭaka* and the Pāli monastic chronicles *Dīpavamsa* and *Mahāvamsa*, the fifth and sixth centuries were the backdrop for the commentaries produced by BUDDHAGHOSA. His *Visuddhimagga* (*Path of Purification*), an elaborate and precise exegesis of *sīla* (*śīla*; English, morality), *saṃādhi* (meditation), and *paññā* or PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM)—the three elemental principles of practice that Buddhaghosa regarded as the bases of the Buddha’s “noble eightfold PATH”—eventually became an enduring centerpiece of normative orthodoxy for Theravāda in Sri Lanka and later in Southeast Asia. The *Visuddhimagga* stressed the interrelated and dependent nature of *sīla*, *saṃādhi*, and *paññā*, and the fundamental reality of *paticcasamupāda* or PRATĪTYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION).

### The Polonnaruva era

Beginning with the Polonnaruva era (eleventh through thirteenth century C.E.), and especially during the reign of Parākramabāhu I (1153–1186 C.E.), when the saṅgha was reunified after its demise by south Indian Cōḷa invaders who had demolished Anurādhapura in the late tenth century, Theravāda became the exclusive form of doctrinal orthodoxy patronized by the kingship in Sri Lanka. It was specifically this reconstituted Theravāda that was exported to Burma (Myanmar) in the eleventh century and subsequently into northern Thailand, spreading from those regions to become the dominant religion of mainland Southeast Asia. What was not reconstituted at Polonnaruva, however, was the *bhikkhunīsaṅgha*, a sorority that had thrived during the Anurādhapura centuries and had spread its lineage as far as China. Yet Polonnaruva became a marvelous city for a span of about 150 years before it was sacked by another south Indian invasion. Although its beautiful stūpas could not rival the size of the Abhayagiri, Jetavana, and Ruvanvālisāya

topes in Anurādhapura, and although its sculptures lacked the plastic fluidity of times past, the architecture, literature, and educational institutions of Polonnaruva were unparalleled anywhere in South or Southeast Asia at that time. The massive *Alahena* monastic university, a bastion of Theravāda orthodoxy, at one time housed as many as ten thousand monks.

It was also at Polonnaruva and in the courts of kings who soon followed, such as Parākramabāhu II at thirteenth-century Daṃbadeṇiya, that new literary innovations were cultivated, in part due to the stimulus and presence of Hinduism and Sanskrit literature, and in part due to the maturation of the Sinhala language itself. At Polonnaruva, the Hindu temples built by the Cōḷa invaders had not been destroyed by the reconquering Sinhala kings in the eleventh century because the queens of the Sinhala kings, who were brought from south India, were nominally Hindu, as were their relations and retinues. Thus, the royal court headed by a Sinhala Buddhist king was heavily influenced by a classical Sanskrit or Hindu presence seen not only in the substance and style reflected in contemporary sections of the *Cūlavamsa* (*Minor Chronicles*, the sequel to the *Mahāvamsa*), but also in the cultic life and sculptural creations of Polonnaruva, which included the veneration and depiction of Hindu deities such as VIṢṆU and Śiva. In this context, Guruḷgōmi, a Buddhist *upāsaka* (layman), composed the first Sinhala works of prose, including the *Amāvatura* (*The Flood of Nectar*), a reworking of the life of the Buddha aimed at demonstrating his powers to convert others to the truth of dharma. Since the *Amāvatura* seems to have been written in a conscious effort to avoid using Sanskrit words, some have suggested that his writings reflect an antipathy for an ever-growing Hindu influence on Sinhala Buddhist culture in general. The late Polonnaruva era also marks the creation of many other important Sinhalese Theravāda Buddhist classics, including the *Butsaraṇa* (*Refuge of the Buddha*), the *Pūjāvaliya* (*The Garland of Offerings*), and the *Saddharma Ratnāvaliya* (*The Garland of Jewels of the Good Doctrine*), all didactic and devotional works.

### Hinduization of Buddhist culture in Sri Lanka

While the destruction of institutional Buddhism at Anurādhapura and the reconstruction of the saṅgha at Polonnaruva may have led in general to the eclipse of Mahāyāna and tantric cults in Lanka, invasions from south India beginning in the tenth century and the increasing numbers of military mercenaries who fol-

lowed during the politically volatile thirteenth and fourteenth centuries only increased the presence and influence of Hindu cults in the Sinhala Buddhist religious culture of the era. During the fourteenth century, when a retreating Buddhist kingship established its capital in the Kandyan highlands at Gampola, Hindu deities such as Viṣṇu, Skanda, the goddess Pattinī, and Ganesha, as well as a host of other local deities associated with specific regions and natural phenomena, were incorporated into an evolving pantheon of Sinhala deities. They were recast as gods whose warrants for acting in the world on behalf of Buddhist devotees were subject to the sanctioning of the Buddha's dharma. The highest of these deities, worshipped within the same halls where the Buddha was worshipped or in adjacent shrines (*devālāyas*), came to be styled as BODHISATTVAS, or “buddhas in-the-making,” and a vast literature of ballads, poems, and sagas in Sinhala, some inspired by the Sanskrit purāṇas (mythic stories), was created to edify devotees over the ensuing several centuries.

By the fifteenth century, the island had been again reunified politically by Parākramabāhu VI, whose capital at Kōṭṭe on the southwest coast became the hub of an eclectic renaissance of religious culture epitomized by the *gamavāsi* (village-oriented monk) Śrī Rāhula, whose linguistic dexterity (he was known as “master of six languages”) and concomitant affinities for popular religious and magical practices, refracted the syncretic character of religion at the time. Śrī Rāhula is perhaps best remembered for writing two classical Sinhala *sandēśaya* poems styled after the Sanskrit poet Kālidāsa's *Meghadhūta* (*Cloud Messenger*) that, while glorifying the Buddha as the “god beyond the gods,” appealed directly to the gods for divine assistance in sustaining the well-being of the Buddhist KINGSHIP and its administration. Vīdāgama Maitreya, a WILDERNESS MONK (*araṇāvāsi*) and one of Parākramabāhu's childhood mentors, wrote the *Budugūṇalāṃkāraya* (*In Praise of the Buddha's Qualities*) as a scathing critique of the increasing Hinduization of Buddhist culture. These two great monks, both of whom were deeply involved in competing trajectories of court and monastic cultures, represent an ancient and continuing tension regarding the nature of the monastic vocation: as a matter of caring for the “welfare of the many” (the village monk) or engaging in the “rhinoceros-like solitary life” of a forest meditator.

### Colonial and postcolonial eras

By the sixteenth century, the Portuguese had begun to interfere with the court at Kōṭṭe and eventually con-

verted King Dharmapāla to Christianity, exacerbating an increasingly fractious political context that led in the 1590s to the establishment of a new line of Sinhala Buddhist kings in highland Kandy, a new capital city replete with a supportive cast: a *bhikkhusaṅgha* whose lineage was imported from Burma, a new *Daḷadā Malīgāvā* (Palace of the Tooth-Relic), and *devālāyas* for the gods who had emerged as the four protective guardian deities of the island. The Kandyans colluded with the Dutch in the mid-seventeenth century to oust the Portuguese. Despite one war in the 1760s during the reign of Kīrti Śrī Rājasimha, the Kandyans and the Dutch managed to coexist for a century and a half producing, in effect, distinctive highland and lowland Sinhala cultures. The former styled itself as more purely Sinhala Buddhist, despite the fact that by this time the Kandyan kings were ethnically Tamil, owing to the continuing practice of securing queens from Madurai. But it is remarkable how “Buddhacized” this last line of Lankan kings became. Kīrti Śrī and his brother Rājādi who succeeded him, were responsible for the last great renaissance of Theravāda: first, by reconstituting what had become a decadent saṅgha by introducing a fresh lineage from Thailand that became known as the dominant Siyam Nikāya; second, by appointing a monastic head (*saṅgharāja*) in the person of the learned monk Saraṇamkara, who reemphasized the importance of monastic literary education and moral virtue; third, by providing the means to hold a calendar of Buddhist public rites, including the still annually held *āsaḷa perahāra* procession of the *Daḷadā* and the insignia of the guardian deities in Kandy; and fourth, by refurbishing virtually every Buddhist monastery in the kingdom, a commitment that resulted in the artistic birth of the Kandyan school of Buddhist monastery painting.

After the British established their colonial hegemony in the early nineteenth century, Buddhist culture atrophied for several decades. Its revival toward the end of the century was catalyzed in part by the establishment of two new low-country monastic *nikāyas*, the Amarapura and the Rāmañña. Both, in contrast to the Siyam Nikāya, established new lineages from Burma, claimed to be more doctrinally orthodox, emphasized the practice of meditation, and recruited novices without regard to caste. A series of public religious debates between Buddhist monks and Anglican clergy in the low country also fueled the revitalization. Moreover, the revival gained momentum with the arrival of Henry Steel Olcott (1832–1907), an American theosophist who organized and established many



A young novice monk bathes another after their heads were shaved as part of an ordination ceremony at a monastery in Colombo, Sri Lanka. © Anuruddha Lokuhapuarachchi/Reuters/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

Buddhist schools modeled on the successful missionary schools administered by the Anglicans. Olcott wrote a widely disseminated “Buddhist Catechism,” designed and distributed a Buddhist flag, and helped to organize a liturgical year celebrating full moon days as Buddhist holidays. One of Olcott’s early and enthusiastic followers, the ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933), transformed the religious revival into a religio-nationalist cause by founding in 1891 the Mahābodhi Society, which sought to regain Buddhist control of Buddhist holy sites in India. In addition, Dharmapāla published his influential *Return to Righteousness* (a detailed excursus on lay Buddhist conduct and spiritual realization aimed at purifying Buddhism of its colonial and popular “contaminations”), and he inspired the laity to emulate their colonial masters’ work ethic. Some have argued that Olcott and Dharmapāla successively set into motion a new lay Buddhist religious ethic comparable to the lay-oriented religious culture of Protestant

Christianity, a “Protestant Buddhism,” so called because of its emphasis on unmediated individual lay religious practice and the importance attached to integrating the significance of spiritual teachings into everyday life.

Aside from “Protestant Buddhism,” at least three other features marked the character of Buddhism in twentieth-century Sri Lanka. The first is the re-emphasis given to meditation for both monks and laypersons, especially methods of insight (VIPASSANĀ [SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ]) practice made popular by Burmese masters. The second is the establishment of Buddhist-inspired welfare institutions, such as Sarvodaya, founded in the 1950s by A. T. Ariyaratne (1931–) to reawaken village culture and to stimulate rural economies and social services. The third is the increasing politicization of Buddhism in the post-colonial era, most notably the patterns that can be traced to the pivotal national elections of 1956 when

S. W. R. D. Bandaranaike (1899–1959) and his newly formed Sri Lanka Freedom Party won a landslide election on promises of “Sinhala only” as the national language and Buddhism as the state religion. This posture on language and religion (the basic constituents of ethnic identity in South Asia), as well as other subsequent “Sinhala Buddhist” based education and economic policies, were enacted to redress perceived inequalities resulting from earlier British colonial policies that had favored Tamil interests and disenfranchised the Sinhalese. In turn, these changes became reasons for Tamil alienation, feeding an enduring ethnic conflict dividing Sinhalese and Tamils during the final decades of the twentieth century. In this context, some influential Buddhist monks have colluded with Sinhala politicians to resurrect the ancient rhetoric of the *Mahāvamsa* and proclaim Lanka as the exclusive and predestined domain of the Buddhadharmā. Others have marched for peace and co-existence.

See also: **Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in; Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Bartholomeusz, Tessa. *Women under the Bo Tree: Buddhist Nuns in Sri Lanka*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Bond, George. *The Buddhist Revival in Sri Lanka: Religious Tradition, Reinterpretation, and Response*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1988.
- Carrithers, Michael. *The Forest Monks of Sri Lanka: An Anthropological and Historical Study*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1983.
- Geiger, Wilhelm, ed. and trans. *The Cūlavamsa*, 2 vols. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Government Printer, 1953.
- Geiger, Wilhelm, ed. and trans. *The Mahāvamsa*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1964.
- Gombrich, Richard. *Precept and Practice: Traditional Buddhism in the Rural Highlands of Ceylon*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1971.
- Gombrich, Richard, and Obeyesekere, Gananath. *Buddhism Transformed: Religious Change in Sri Lanka*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1988.
- Gunawardana, R. A. L. H. *Robe and Plough: Monasticism and Economic Interest in Early Medieval Sri Lanka*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1979.
- Holt, John Clifford. *Buddha in the Crown: Avalokitesvara in the Buddhist Traditions of Sri Lanka*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1992.
- Holt, John Clifford. *The Religious World of Kīrti Śrī: Buddhism, Art, and Politics in Late Medieval Sri Lanka*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Kemper, Steven. *The Presence of the Past: Chronicles, Politics, and Culture in Sinhala Life*. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1992.
- King, Winston Lee. *Theravāda Meditation: The Buddhist Transformation of Yoga*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1980.
- Malalasekera, G. P. *The Pāli Literature of Ceylon*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: M. D. Gunasena, 1958.
- Malalgoda, Kitsiri. *Buddhism in Sinhalese Society, 1750–1900: A Study of Religious Revival and Study*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1976.
- Obeyesekere, Gananath. *The Cult of the Goddess Pattini*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984.
- Seneviratne, H. L. *The Work of Kings: The New Buddhism in Sri Lanka*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1999.
- Von Schroeder, Ulrich. *Buddhist Sculptures of Sri Lanka*. Hong Kong: Visual Dharma Publications, 1990.

JOHN CLIFFORD HOLT

---

## SRI LANKA, BUDDHIST ART IN

During the twenty-five hundred years of Sri Lanka's history, its royal capital has been located in a number of places. In chronological order they were Anurādhapura (ca. 500 B.C.E.–1000 C.E., North-Central province); Polonnaruva (1000–1235 C.E., North-Central province); Daṁbadeṇiya (1232–1272 C.E., North-Western province); Yāpahuwa (1272–1284 C.E., North-Western province); Kuruṅḡala (1293–1341 C.E., North-Western province); Gampola (1341–1411 C.E., Central province); Kottē (1411–1597 C.E., Western province); and Kandy (1480–1815 C.E., Central province). Sri Lanka's Buddhist art is often analyzed in terms of these different periods. Of these eras, the Anurādhapura and Polonnaruva periods offer the most important surviving examples of early Buddhist art. The instability of the kingship and the wars that prevailed during the other periods resulted in less art surviving from those eras.

Of these less copious periods, the Yāpahuwa rock fortress is a remarkable monument from the Yāpahuwa period. From the Kandy period, the king's palace and the Tooth-Relic Temple at Kandy, one of the most important Buddhist PILGRIMAGE sites in the country, have survived. Gadalādeniya and Lankātilaka, two

temples from the Kurunṅgala period that still stand near the city of Gampola, are famous for their architectural features and intricate carvings.

Some of the important architectural structures and features from the Anurādhapura and Polonnaruva periods include the STŪPA or *dāgāba* (symbolic burial mounds of the Buddha with relics enshrined), *bodhighara* (bodhi tree shrines), *āsanaghara* (shrines enclosing huge rectangular stone slabs that symbolize the throne of the Buddha), *vataḍāge* (circular relic shrines), and *chētiyaghara* (circular shrines built around stūpas, sheltering the monument).

The sacred bodhi tree shrine from Anurādhapura, one of Sri Lanka's most venerated Buddhist sites, has a long history dating back to the third century B.C.E. According to the Sri Lankan chronicles, the Buddhist nun Saṅghamitta, who was the daughter of Emperor AŚOKA (mid-third century B.C.E.), brought a sapling of the original bodhi tree from BODH GAYĀ and planted it in this location at Anurādhapura. There are both literary and inscriptional references to bodhi tree shrines in Sri Lanka from the early Anurādhapura period onward. A well-preserved structure of a bodhi tree shrine dating from the Anurādhapura period still stands at Nillakgama in the Kurunṅgala district. The structure includes two square stone walls with an entrance on one side, demarcating the shrine, which was inside.

Famous examples of circular relic shrines include those at Thūpārāma (Anurādhapura), Medirigiriya (Polonnaruva), and Tiriyāyi (Trincomalee), all dating to the seventh to tenth centuries. In Pudukunāvi (Batticaloa district) there are remains of an early *āsanaghara*, an architectural feature referred to in ancient literature and inscriptions. The remains of the largest chapter house for Buddhist monks stand in the ancient city of Anurādhapura. Such chapter houses, of which numerous ruins have been found throughout Sri Lanka, were called Uposathaghara in the ancient literature and Pohotaghara in inscriptions.

Before the introduction of BUDDHA IMAGES, worship of the Buddha using aniconic symbols was common in Sri Lanka from about the third century B.C.E. to the second century C.E., as it was in contemporary India. A large number of stone footprints of the Buddha have been found in Buddhist monasteries from the early common era. A considerable number of *bodhigharas* and *āsanaghara*s from the Anurādhapura period are also evidence of a tradition dating back to an aniconic phase of Buddhism.

Early Sri Lankan artists appear to have been influenced by three main Indian artistic traditions: Amarāvati (or Āndhra), Gupta, and Pallava. Of these, the Amarāvati school of art from the Āndhra region of India was the earliest and the most influential. Almost all surviving art in Sri Lanka beginning in about the first century C.E. shows the strong impact of the Amarāvati style. During the fifth to sixth centuries and sixth to seventh centuries, styles deriving from Gupta and Pallava, respectively, begin to appear in Sri Lanka.

The unique early art of Sri Lanka includes numerous seated and standing buddha images, including some monumental buddha statues. There are also gigantic stūpas, some with highly ornate frontispieces called *vāhalkada*, which consist of four rectangular architectural projections at the base of the stūpa facing the four cardinal directions. Further early Sri Lankan art includes *sandakadapahana* (moonstones), *dvārapāla* (guardstones), and the renowned Sigiriya paintings of beautiful damsels from the fifth century C.E.

The earliest Buddhist edifices in Sri Lanka are natural rock shelters prepared and dedicated by lay devotees from the third century B.C.E. to the first century C.E. as residences for Buddhist monks during the earliest phase of Buddhist monastic activity in the region. Most of these CAVE SANCTUARIES include short formulaic dedicatory inscriptions declaring the donation. These rock shelters are devoid of any carvings, sculptures, or paintings; if there once were paintings, rain and weathering washed them away long ago.

The eminent Sri Lankan archaeologist and epigraphist Senarat Paranavitana (1896–1972) published more than one thousand of these early Brāhmī cave inscriptions from almost three hundred early monastic sites scattered throughout Sri Lanka. Using the number of caves with inscriptions as an index, the largest of these early Buddhist rock monasteries are Mihintale, with 75 inscriptions (Anurādhapura district, North-Central province); Situlpavvuwa, with 59 inscriptions (Hambantota district, Southern province); Rajagala, with 46 inscriptions, (Ampāra district, Eastern province); Periya Puliyankulama, with 34 inscriptions (Vavuniya district, Northern province); and Ritigala, with 33 inscriptions (Anurādhapura district, North-Central province).

Stūpas or *dāgāba* begin to appear from about the second century B.C.E. onward, simultaneous with the earliest phase of Buddhist cave construction. Early Sri Lankan stūpas are of gigantic proportions. The three largest are from Anurādhapura, the earliest capital of

Sri Lanka: Ruvanvālisāya, from the second century B.C.E., has a diameter of 294 feet at the base and was originally 300 feet tall; Abhayagiriya, from the first century B.C.E., has a diameter of 325 feet and a height of 325 feet; and Jetavana, from the third century C.E., has a diameter of 367 feet and was originally 400 feet tall. Until Anurādhapura was abandoned in the tenth century, these three stūpas were enlarged a number of times by successive kings.

The earliest Buddhist art in Sri Lanka appears in the relief carvings of the stūpa *vāhalkada* (frontispiece). The earliest of these relief carvings date to the first and second century C.E. and are found on the *vāhalkada* of the Kantaka Cētiya (stūpa) at Mihintale, eight miles east of Anurādhapura. Mihintale is the site where Buddhism was believed to have been first introduced to Sri Lanka by Buddhist missionaries from India, who were led by the arhat Mahinda during the mid-third century B.C.E.

Unfortunately, little art from the earliest period has survived because the stūpas were enlarged in various phases through the centuries. With the exception of the Kantaka Cētiya, surviving relief carvings of all other stūpas are late in date and can probably be assigned to the second to fourth centuries C.E. For example, the carvings at Dīghavāpi stūpa (Ampara district, Eastern province) date to the second century C.E.; those at Dakkhina stūpa (Anurādhapura) and Yaṭāla stūpa (Humbantota district, Southern province) date to the second to third centuries C.E.; those at Ruvanvālisāya (Anurādhapura) to the third century C.E.; those at Abhayagiri stūpa (Anurādhapura) to the third or fourth centuries C.E.; and those at Jetavana stūpa (Anurādhapura) to the late third century.

The main images appearing in Sri Lankan frontispieces include DIVINITIES, such as Sūrya and INDRA; YAKṢAS with attendants, such as Kubera and Vaiśravaṇa; *yakṣinīs* or other females with attendants; Gaja Lakṣmi, the goddess of prosperity; nāgas in complete serpent form, often with five or seven cobra hoods; *nāgarājas* in human form, often with five or seven cobra hoods; *nāginīs*, female serpent figures in human form with cobra hoods; and stone pillars depicting the *kalpavṛkṣa* or the tree of life. Figures of yakṣas, nāgas, elephants, lions, bulls, and birds were shown emanating from this tree of life. Attached to these frontispieces were stone pillars topped by elephants, lions, bulls, and horses (Von Schroeder, pp. 80–95). All these early works are related to the late Amarāvātī tradition of the Āndhra region in India.

The earliest available buddha images in Sri Lanka appear to be no older than the 250 C.E. to 350 C.E. period. A few seated buddha images from this period have been found at Anurādhapura at the sites of Abhayagiri Stūpa and Thūpārāma Stūpa (Von Schroeder, p. 113). Seated buddha statues become increasingly common in many parts of Sri Lanka beginning in the fifth to sixth centuries. The majority of them show the direct impact of the Amarāvātī school. The seated buddha statues at Abhayagiri Vihāra, Pankuliya Vihāra, and Asokārama Vihāra (all at Anurādhapura), datable to between the sixth and ninth centuries, are a few well-known examples. The majority of the seated buddha statues found in Sri Lanka are in the samādhi (meditative) posture.

According to the available evidence, most of the standing buddha images from Sri Lanka also date from the fifth to sixth centuries C.E. and later. There are monumental standing buddha images carved in rock and stone at Avukana (42 feet, ninth century, Anurādhapura district); Sassēruva (38 feet, eighth to ninth centuries, Kuruṇṅgala district); Buduruvāgala (44 feet, ninth to tenth centuries, Monarāgala district); Dōva Rajamahāvihāra (38 feet, ninth to tenth centuries, Badulla district); Maligāvila (30 feet, eighth century, Monaragala district), and Lankātilaka and Tivanka (26 feet, twelfth century) at Polonnaruva. The twelfth-century Gal Vihāra, or “rock temple,” at Polonnaruva is a unique monument carved out of solid rock and famous for its monumental recumbent and standing rock-cut statues in the round.

There are a number of monumental MAHĀYĀNA rock-cut and standing stone statues in the round. They include the eighth-century Daṃbēgoda stone image in the round at Māligāvila; at 45 feet in height, this image, believed to be Avalokiteśvara, is the largest bodhisattva statue in the world. The 13-foot Kushtarājagala rock-cut relief at Vāligama (Southern province), which dates to the ninth or tenth century, is also believed to be an image of Avalokiteśvara. There are also two groups of rock-cut reliefs at Buduruvāgala. One group includes a 12-foot Sudhanakumāra on the left, a 24-foot Avalokiteśvara in the middle, and a 20-foot Tārā at the right; the other group includes a 22-foot Vajrapāni at the left, a 25-foot MAITREYA in the middle, and a 20-foot Avalokiteśvara at the right. These images all date to the ninth or tenth centuries (Von Schroeder, pp. 292–295).

Other early Buddhist art of Sri Lanka from the Anurādhapura period was influenced by the Gupta and



A recumbent Buddha statue at the twelfth-century Gal Vihāra (Rock Temple) at Polonnaruva, Sri Lanka. The temple and statuary are carved out of the living rock. The Art Archive/Musée Guimet Paris/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

Pallava traditions of India. The famous Mithuna or “loving couple” figure, which dates to the fifth to sixth centuries, from the so-called Isurumuniya Monastery of Anurādhapura is a well-known example of Gupta influence. The “man and the horse head” figure (sixth or seventh century) from the same monastery is considered to have been influenced by the Pallava tradition. Beautifully carved *dvārapālas* (guardstones) from the sixth to tenth centuries flank the entrances to Buddhist monasteries from Anurādhapura and many other parts of Sri Lanka; these are unique examples of both Gupta and Pallava artistic influences. The *sandakadapahana* (moonstone), an elaborately carved half-circle stepping stone placed at the entrance to a Buddhist monastery, is unique to Sri Lanka. At the center of these stone ornaments is a lotus flower from which emanate concentric half circles of vegetable, animal, bird, and flame motifs. Although the most refined moon-

stones are from the late Anurādhapura period, the carving of moonstones continued into the Polonnaruva period and later.

Although secular in nature, Sigiriya’s elegant symmetrical gardens (fifth century) and water gardens are the earliest such examples in South Asia. Almost contemporary to the famous AJAṆṬĀ paintings from India, the renowned fifth-century rock paintings at Sigiriya, which was built by King Kāśyapa as a palace city, are masterpieces of early Sri Lankan art. On the western face of the Sigiriya rock, about four hundred feet above the ground, there are twenty-two extant paintings of beautiful women voluptuously depicted, most with their breasts exposed. Two images in particular appear prominently in these paintings: an elite lady standing alone holding a flower or an elite lady accompanied by a handmaiden. The meaning of these images is controversial. Ananda Coomaraswamy

(1877–1947) was of the view that they are celestial nymphs or Apsarās. Senarat Paranavitana, however, proposed that they symbolize the clouds (*megha*) and lightning (*vijju*) surrounding Mount KAILĀŚA (KAILASH). His theory was that the builder of Sigiriya fortress, King Kāśyapa, lived there as Kuvera, the god of wealth in Hindu and Buddhist literature, who is supposed to dwell at Ālakamanda on Mount Kailāśa. But some evidence points in another direction. The ladies holding flowers and accompanied by handmaidens appear to be popular motifs in art throughout west, central, and south Asia prior to Sigiriya times. It is possible that the Sigiriya paintings are an adaptation in a Sri Lankan context of this internationally popular subject. Given Sri Lanka's flourishing role as a trade center connecting the eastern and western trade routes during the fourth through sixth centuries, such a sharing of international art motifs was quite possible.

See also: **India, Buddhist Art in; Sri Lanka**

### Bibliography

- Coomaraswamy, Ananda Kentish. *History of Indian and Indonesian Art*. Leipzig, Germany: Hiersemann; London: Goldston; New York: Weyhe, 1927. Reprint, New York: Dover, 1985.
- Coomaraswamy, Ananda Kentish. *Mediaeval Sinhalese Art*, 2nd edition. New York: Pantheon, 1956.
- Paranavitana, Senarat. *Sigiri Grafitti, Being Sinhalese Verses of the Eighth, Ninth, and Tenth Centuries*, 2 vols. London and New York: Oxford University Press, 1956.
- Paranavitana, Senarat. "Civilization of the Early Period: Religion and Art." In *University of Ceylon History of Ceylon*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Colombo University Press, 1959.
- Paranavitana, Senarat. "The Significance of the Paintings of Sigiri." *Artibus Asiae* 24, nos. 3/4 (1961): 382–387.
- Paranavitana, Senarat. *Inscriptions of Ceylon*, Vol. 1: *Containing Cave Inscriptions from 3rd Century B.C. to 1st Century A.D. and Other Inscriptions in the Early Brāhmī Script*. Colombo, Sri Lanka: Dept of Archaeology, 1970.
- Priyanka, Benille. "New Research in the Early Art History of Sri Lanka: The Sigiriya Paintings Reinterpreted." Paper presented in honor of the opening of the Sri Lankan consulate in Los Angeles, organized by the Southern Asian Art Council of the Los Angeles County Museum of Art, February 17, 2000.
- Von Schroeder, Ulrich. *Buddhist Sculptures of Sri Lanka*. Hong Kong: Visual Dharma, 1990.

BENILLE PRIYANKA

## STŪPA

The Monier-Williams *Sanskrit-English Dictionary* defines the word *stūpa* as "a knot or tuft of hair, the upper part of the head, crest, top, summit"; also "a heap or pile of earth, or bricks etc." Opinions about the etymology of the word *stūpa* differ, and the root  $\sqrt{stūp}$ , "to heap up, pile, erect," seems to have been a late invention in order to explain the term. Although now inextricably linked to Buddhism, originally the *stūpa* was not exclusively a Buddhist structure, but also a Jaina monument.

Generally the terms *stūpa* and *caitya*, said to derive from *cita*, "a funeral pile," are used interchangeably. Both terms indicate a mound of earth surrounded by a wooden railing, marking the place of the funeral pyre of a significant person. While the meaning of *caitya* may also mean observances "relating to a funeral pile or mound," the term *stūpa* designates the actual structure. Originally, *stūpas* contained relics, mainly ash, of a saintly person, and later other objects, such as crystal beads.

Buddhist texts narrate how the Buddha's relics were divided into eight portions; these were distributed to different kingdoms within India and *stūpas* were built over them. These relics were redistributed during the third century B.C.E. by AŚOKA not only as an act of homage to the Buddhist faith, but also to ensure the Buddha's protection over his extensive empire. Thus, thousands of *stūpas* were built as a remembrance of the Buddha and of the crucial episodes of his life; for example, the *stūpa* at Sārnāth commemorated the Buddha's first sermon. In time, *stūpas* were erected as an homage to any past or future buddha, or to any Buddhist saint.

Basically a *stūpa* consisted of a circular platform (*medhī*) on which was erected a solid masonry hemisphere, or *aṇḍa* (egg), made of unburnt bricks. In its center was a small space for a receptacle containing relics. On the summit of the plain *aṇḍa*, and aligned with the reliquary, was raised a shaft surmounted by one or more *chattravali* (parasols), a mark of royalty that later assumed a complex metaphysical meaning. The surface of the dome was finished with a thick layer of plaster. Because it was customary to circumambulate the *stūpa* as a part of worship, a *pradakṣiṇapatha* (processional path) was provided both on the *medhī* and at ground level by enclosing the monument within a *vedika* (wooden railing), leaving enough space for walking. The *vedika*, which, at least in theory, should



be a perfect circle, was interrupted by L-shaped entrances at the four cardinal points, creating a cosmological diagram in the form of an auspicious *svastika* cross. An example of this early type of stūpa is that at Svayambhu Nath near Kathmandu; this stūpa has been worshiped for more than two thousand years.

This basic architectural scheme bears, in its simplicity, an infinite potential for variations dictated by local traditions, materials, and religious trends. Its crucial importance in the development of sacred buildings throughout Buddhist Asia, extending roughly from today's eastern Afghanistan throughout Central, East, and Southeast Asia, cannot be overestimated.

Early Pāli texts do not pay much attention to the actual building of a stūpa because its construction, maintenance, and worship were the concern of the LAITY. Later, however, the building process became the focus of intense metaphysical speculation. Each part of the stūpa, beginning from the terraces at its base, to the number of parasols on the *chattravali*, became imbued with a profound meaning, variously interpreted by different schools.

### Central India: Stūpas at Sāñcī and Bhārhut

The greatest artistic expressions of early Buddhist tradition are the monuments at SĀÑCĪ and Bhārhut, in Madhya Pradesh, seats of two of the most important Buddhist communities from the third century B.C.E. Among the oldest surviving stūpas is Stūpa II at Sāñcī, which dates from the Śuṅga period (second to first centuries B.C.E.). This simple monument housed the relics of several Buddhist teachers; the relics were enclosed in caskets and buried within the stūpa's solid mass. Of great interest are the interior and exterior surfaces of the stone *vedika*, obviously a replica of a wooden prototype, embellished with sets of vigorously carved medallions. Especially elaborate are the reliefs on the pillars flanking the L-shaped entrances at the four cardinal points.

Dating from this early period is the now ruined *mahāstūpa* (great stūpa) discovered by Alexander Cunningham in 1873 at Bhārhut. The conspicuous size of the monument, whose diameter measures more than twenty meters, the care lavished on the decoration of the sandstone *vedika*, some three meters in height, and the monumental *torāṇas* (entryways) bear witness to the affluence of this commercial town, located on one of the major trade routes of ancient India. Although inscriptions on the *vedika* and the eastern *torāṇa* proclaim that they were erected during the Śuṅga period

(possibly between 100 and 80 B.C.E.), the stūpa is probably earlier in date, because it was customary to add *vedikas* and *torāṇas* to earlier buildings. The *torāṇa* consists of two upright pillars supporting three architraves spanning the entry to the stūpa complex. The crossbars of the *vedika* are adorned with medallions displaying floral motifs, human figures, and JĀTAKA scenes. On the *vedika*'s terminal uprights are carved single figures, including standing warriors, equestrian figures, and *yakṣīs* clutching a tree. Animals, plants, creepers, geometrical motifs, and scenes from Buddha's life are among the subjects carved on the *torāṇa*. Most of the remains of this railing are now displayed at the Indian Museum in Calcutta and in the Allahabad Museum.

The celebrated Sāñcī Stūpa I was built between the third century B.C.E. and the first century C.E., with additions of the fifth century C.E. This imposing monument, measuring 36.6 meters in diameter, rises on top of the hill at Sāñcī. The solid hemisphere is truncated at the top by a *harmikā* (pedestal supporting the shaft of the umbrella) crowned by a three-tiered stone umbrella and set within a square railing. A circular terrace accessed by two staircases runs along the base of the *aṇḍa*. At ground level is a stone-paved circumambulation path encircled by a *vedika* that is interrupted at the four cardinal points by imposing *torāṇas*.

The present stūpa, dating from roughly the second century B.C.E., encases an older one that was built probably a century earlier. Its plain surface contrasts with the wealth of images carved on the *vedika*. Medallions display floral, animal, and bird motifs, as well as human figures and mythical beings. The balustrade is divided into four sections defined by the L-shaped *torāṇas*, which were erected in the first century C.E. These are similar in design and construction technique to those at Bhārhut, and they are covered with sculptures, whose liveliness and variety of subject matter are unsurpassed. The most famous scenes illustrate episodes from the *jātakas* and from the life of the Buddha.

As in the case of the previous monuments, Gautama is never represented in human form, but by emblems, such as an empty throne beneath the bodhi tree, footprints, the triratna (three REFUGES), and finally the stūpa. Salient events of his life and career have pride of place, such as his birth, the temptation of MĀRA, the first sermon at Sārnāth, the conversion of the Kāśyapa brothers, and the miracles at Śrāvastī and Kapilavastu. Episodes that followed his death (e.g., the fight over the Buddha's relics) have also been illustrated. The pre-

decessors of Gautama, the buddhas of antiquity, have been incorporated in the iconographic program of the four *torāṇas* and are represented either by stūpas or bodhi trees. Apart from scenes related to Gautama's life, there are others depicting everyday life, music, dance, sports, and the like. These three early stūpas, of seminal importance in the formation of early Indian sculpture, exemplify two opposing facets of early Buddhist art: On the one hand, there is the strict adherence to aniconic representation of the Buddha; on the other hand, there is the unstoppable, exuberant flow of narrative. The last addition to Sāñcī Stūpa I occurred in the fifth century C.E. when four Buddha images in teaching MUDRĀ were placed against its walls, facing the entrances. Each figure is flanked by attendants.

### Western Deccan

An interesting development occurred during the second and first centuries B.C.E., when a number of Buddhist cave complexes were excavated in the Western Ghats (e.g., Bhājā and Bedsā). These consisted of one or more caitya halls, pillared apsidal halls that contained a stūpa, and rock-cut cells, some of which served as accommodation for the monks and nuns. This architectural innovation brought the recluses into closer contact with the stūpa, which had to be included in their daily ritual, and eventually became the focus of worship.

An early example of this type of architecture is the monastic complex at Bhājā (Maharashtra), which consists of a large caitya hall with a monolithic stūpa and a substantial number of smaller cells. On epigraphical and stylistic grounds, it is probable that the main phase of the works took place between 100 and 70 B.C.E. This is possibly the earliest caitya hall of this region. It is divided into three naves by slightly inward-sloping octagonal columns, thus providing a circumambulatory passage around the stūpa. The light penetrates from the door above, which opens a horseshoe window, one of the many elements that derive from wooden architecture (the horseshoe window is part of the door). This basic model was followed in Buddhist rock-cut architecture of Western India until the seventh century C.E.

### Gandhāra region

Buddhism was introduced in the Bactro-Gandhāra regions at the time of Aśoka. By around 130 B.C.E. the Śakas took control of this area in present-day Pakistan and Afghanistan, and at the turn of the common era, the Parthians moved in from Iran. One of the legacies of the Śaka-Parthian domination was the terrace-

stūpa. The circular base disappeared, to be replaced by a square terrace whose basement was adorned with classical elements inherited from the Hellenistic world: columns, pilasters, entablatures, and niches. In the first century C.E. the Kushan dynasty established its power over the territory of the Śaka-Parthians, and in the wake of their political influence Buddhism spread, not only throughout their territory, but also to adjacent countries, including Central Asia and China. By this time the MAHĀYĀNA doctrine had introduced a new conception of the Buddha, in which he was seen as the epitome of wisdom, truth, and compassion, and as such, his person was worthy of worship. This led to a crucial artistic development: the almost contemporaneous creation of the Buddha image in the two main cultural centers of the Kushan empire, the Gandhāra region, and Mathurā (Uttar Pradesh), the southern capital of the empire.

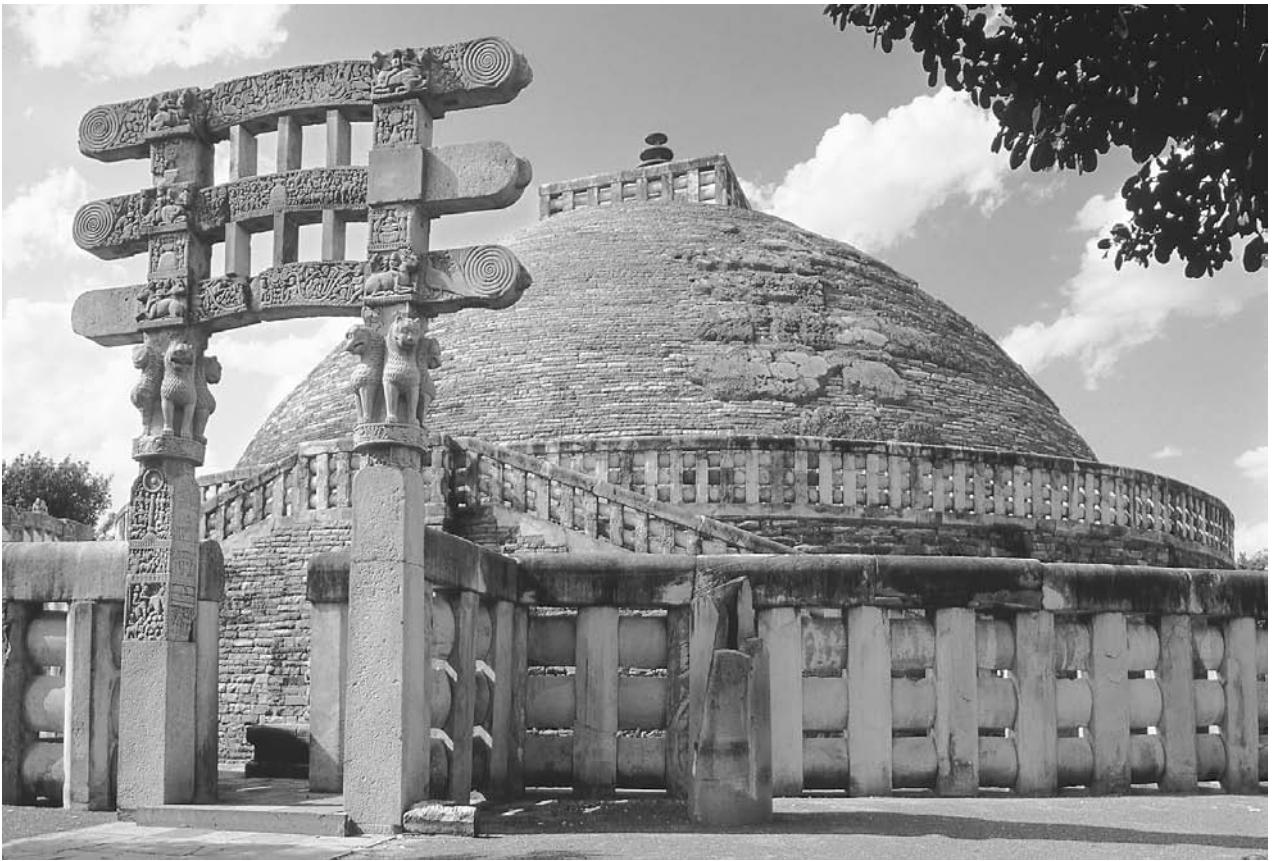
Among the numerous stūpas and monastic establishments built in this period is the second-century terrace-stūpa at Guldara in Afghanistan, a massive construction resting on an imposing square base adorned with pilasters, and a substantial superstructure now ruined. Also from this period is the large monastic establishment at Takht-i-Bahi in Pakistan, whose stūpa is completely destroyed but for its base. Its elongated appearance, however, can be reconstructed by examining smaller stūpas found in the region.

By this time the primordial hemispherical stūpa had developed into a towerlike monument by way of multiplying the layers of the base, elongating the *aṇḍa* into a domelike cylinder, and stretching the *chattravali* to a considerable length, either by multiplying the chattras or compressing them into a compact conical spire.

Another innovation was the tower-stūpa, which plays a determinant role in the evolution of the stūpa into the East Asian pagoda. The massive cross-shaped foundations of the famous Kanishka tower-stūpa at Shahji-ki-Dheri, near Peshawar, are still preserved. According to the reports of Chinese pilgrims, this building was characterized by superimposed wooden "stories" with cornices, windows, and niches, as well as a copper mast carrying thirteen copper umbrellas. It was probably from this model that the Chinese pagoda evolved.

### The Deccan: Amarāvati and Nāgārjunakoṇḍa

In most of peninsular India and Sri Lanka, the stūpa kept its hemispherical shape and continued to be erected on a circular platform. Among the numerous



Reliefs depicting events from the life of the Buddha adorn the gate leading to this first-century B.C.E. stūpa at the great monastic complex of Sāñci at Vidisha near Bhopal, India. © Adam Woolfitt/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

Buddhist sites in the eastern Deccan, two are noteworthy: Amarāvati and Nāgārjunakoṇḍa (Andhra Pradesh). The stūpa at Amarāvati achieved its final form in the second and third centuries C.E. during the Śātavāhana and Ikṣvāku periods. Almost nothing is preserved of this monument, which was the largest in the eastern Deccan, apart from an earthen mound and a surrounding pathway defined by upright slabs. A number of celebrated finely sculpted limestone slabs that have survived depict this lavishly decorated monument with imposing projecting gateways in the four directions. Among the distinctive features of this structure were four votive platforms, each with five pillars, aligned with the four entrances. The surviving uprights, capping pieces, and slabs have been removed from the site and are displayed in various museums; the largest collection is at the Government Museum Chennai (Madras).

During the third century a number of changes were occurring in Buddhist religion and art. These are reflected in the structures at Nāgārjunakoṇḍa, the most important Buddhist settlement of the region, set in a

valley delimited by the Kṛṣṇā river on the west. In the third and fourth centuries, when Nāgārjunakoṇḍa was the capital of the Ikṣvāku rulers, the successors of the Śātavāhanas, a large number of monasteries and stūpas were erected according to the cultic needs of various Buddhist schools, of which at least four were represented there. Here the great innovation is the wheel-shaped plan of the stūpas, demonstrating the transformation of a sacred Buddhist symbol into an architectural design. Each monastic unit consisted of a stūpa, a caitya hall, and a vihāra (monastic quarters). The residential unit would be generally separated from the stūpa by two caitya halls facing each other, one containing a stūpa and the other a buddha image, thus equating the stūpa with the buddha image. The stūpa and the image of the Buddha eventually coalesced in the fifth century in the AṆAṆTĀ caves. Although most of the excavated remains at Nāgārjunakoṇḍa were submerged under the waters of the Nāgārjuna Sagar, a few monuments were recreated on a hilltop, now an island in the middle of the lake. Limestone panels and friezes once decorating various monuments have been discovered, and together with the carvings found at Amarāvati, they are

the most important remains of the flourishing Buddhist art in the Deccan.

### North and eastern India in the fifth to seventh centuries

The aesthetics of the Gandhāra and the Mathurā schools of Kushan art played a major role in the development of Gupta aesthetics. The Kushan power ebbed at the end of the third century C.E., and by the early fourth century the Gupta dynasty ruled over north and central India. Ancient sites connected with the Buddha, such as BODH GAYĀ (Bihar), were refurbished; Sārnāth, near Varāṇasī (the old Benares, in Uttar Pradesh), where the Buddha delivered his first sermon, became a major center of Buddhist learning and artistic development. The remains of two large stūpas, whose cores probably date from the Aśokan period, as well as of a number of monasteries, are still preserved there.

Another famous center of Buddhist learning was Nālandā, near Rājgir (Bihar). Despite its putative links to Gautama Buddha and to Aśoka, both of whom are said to have visited this site, no remains predate the fifth century C.E. The Stūpa/Temple 3 is the most prominent building at Nālandā. This monument underwent various phases of construction. At its core is a small stūpa set on a square base measuring 173 centimeters each side and 137 centimeters in height. It has been suggested that this could be an Aśokan stūpa, built on the caitya of ŚĀRIPUTRA, the Buddha's disciple renowned for his wisdom. It was further enlarged three more times. However, with the fifth enlargement, in the sixth century, the monument changed appearance and plan. It became a large-sized structure with four lavishly decorated towers at the corners. This monument was renovated twice more in the eleventh and twelfth centuries just before the decline of Buddhism in India.

### The stūpa beyond India

The Buddhist doctrine was introduced in Sri Lanka in the third century B.C.E. During the subsequent centuries, a conspicuous number of *dagobas* or *dhātugopas* (relic-preservers) were built. Examples of this local version of the Indian stūpa are found at various sites, such as Anurādhapura, the ancient capital of Sri Lanka from around the second century B.C.E. to the ninth century C.E. Here are the oldest surviving *dagobas*, the largest of which is the Abhayagiri *dagoba*. Its diameter is about 110 meters and its height from the base to the spire about 82 meters. As is the case of

the stūpa in India and Nepal, the *dagobas* of Sri Lanka have richly carved oblong projections at each cardinal point, which were probably thrones for the Dhyāni buddhas. More recent and smaller in size are the Buddhist remains at Polonnaruva, the capital of Sri Lanka from the ninth to the end of the thirteenth century C.E. The remains at this site are extremely important because these monuments were built at a time when Buddhists had greatly reduced, if not altogether ceased, their building activity in India. Furthermore, the architectural developments at Polonnaruva may constitute the link between the architecture on the Indian subcontinent and architecture overseas.

Buddhism arrived in Burma from important centers on the eastern coast of India, such as Amarāvati and Nāgārjunakoṇḍa, in about the fifth century C.E. Both the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS and Mahāyāna were present at this early date as testified by archaeological evidence from the Pyu city of Śrī Kṣetra, near Prome. In time, further links with southern India and Sri Lanka, and subsequently with eastern India, were established, which had a seminal influence in the formation of Burmese architecture. The Burmese stūpa, an elegant, bell-shaped construction topped by a conical finial, is raised on a series of terraces or platforms; the most famous example is the great SHWEDAGON pagoda in Rangoon (ca. fifteenth century).

Mainstream Buddhism was prevalent in Indonesia until the end of the seventh century C.E. By the end of the century, however, the Mahāyāna school had risen in importance and soon became the only form of Buddhism followed there. One of the most significant Buddhist monuments of the world is BOROBUDUR in Java, dated to around 800. Every part of this magnificent building, from its maṇḍala-like layout to the tiniest detail of its decorative program, is imbued with a deep symbolic meaning. Here Buddhist doctrine, the structure of the universe, and the mystery of enlightenment are expressed through plan, architectural design, and sculpture.

See **Monastic Architecture; Relics and Relics Cults**

### Bibliography

- Dallapiccola, Anna Libera, and Zingel-Avé Lallemand, Stephanie, eds. *The Stūpa: Its Religious, Historical, and Architectural Significance*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Steiner, 1980.
- Dehejia, Vidya. *Discourses in Early Buddhist Art: Visual Narratives of India*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1997.
- Dehejia, Vidya. *Indian Art*. London: Phaidon, 1997.

Hallade, Madeleine, *Gandharan Art of North India and the Graeco-Buddhist Tradition in India, Persia, and Central Asia*. New York: Harry N. Abrams, 1968.

Huntington, Susan, and Huntington, John C. *The Art of Ancient India*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1985.

Isaacs, Ralph, and Blurton, T. Richard. *Visions from a Golden Land: Burma and the Art of Lacquer*. London: British Museum, 2000.

Knox, Robert. *Amaravati: Buddhist Sculpture from the Great Stūpa*. London: British Museum, 1992.

Marshall, John. *A Guide to Sāncī*, 3rd edition. New Delhi: Manager of Publications, 1955.

Michell, George. *The Penguin Guide to the Monuments of India*, Vol. 1: *Buddhist, Jain, Hindu*. London: Viking, 1989.

Sarkar, H., and Misra, B. N. *Nāgārjunakoṇḍa*, 3rd edition. New Delhi: Director General, Archaeological Survey of India, 1980.

Volwahren, Andreas. *Indien: Bauten der Hindus, Buddhisten, und Jains*. Munich: Hirmer Verlag, 1968.

Zwalf, Wladimir. *Buddhism: Art and Faith*. London: British Museum, 1985.

A. L. DALLAPICCOLA

**SUFFERING.** See **Duḥkha (Suffering)**

**SUKHĀVATĪ.** See **Pure Lands**

## SUKHĀVATĪVYŪHA-SŪTRA

The title *Sukhāvātīvyūha-sūtra* (*Sūtra Displaying the Land of Bliss*) actually denotes two related but distinct texts, both of which narrate aspects of the mythic story of the buddha called AMITĀBHA or Amitāyus (Chinese, Amito; Japanese, Amida) and the paradise where he resides called Sukhāvātī. Following Chinese precedent, the two texts have commonly been distinguished as the *Larger Sūtra* (Chinese, *Wuliangshou jing*, *Dajing*; Japanese, *Muryōjukyō*, *Daikyō*; *Sūtra on the Buddha of Immeasurable Life*) and the *Smaller Sūtra* (*Amito jing*, *Amidakyō*, *Sūtra on Amitāyus Buddha*). These are early MAHĀYĀNA sūtras, probably composed in northwest India, and translations of the *Larger Sūtra* began in China in the second or third century. The pervasiveness of this belief is known by manuscripts of the *Larger Sūtra* also extant in Sanskrit, Tibetan, Khotanese,

Uighur, and Xixia. Many core doctrines and practices of the Pure Land school in East Asia are based on the *Sukhāvātīvyūha* sūtras, but in fact there are 290 translated scriptures in the Chinese canon that discuss Amitābha Buddha and his realm.

The sūtras describe a cosmic order containing both a sacred realm inhabited by buddhas and bodhisattvas living in a paradise of fantastic proportions and an mundane realm inhabited by ordinary people, animals, ghosts, and so on, transmigrating but trapped. The sūtras also describe the promise by Amitābha Buddha to enable beings to transmigrate into his paradise. This is possible through his vows (Sanskrit, *praṇidhāna*) and the Mahāyāna doctrine of merit-transfer. Orthodox East Asian Pure Land thought views the Buddha's eighteenth vow in the Sanghavarman Chinese translation as the authoritative expression of the Buddha's commitment to help anyone, as it asks only that one sincerely hold in mind (or recite) the Buddha's name a minimum of ten moments in order to be reborn in his Pure Land.

See also: **Pure Land Schools**

### Bibliography

Gómez, Luis, trans. and ed. *The Land of Bliss: The Paradise of the Buddha of Measureless Light, Sanskrit and Chinese Versions of the Sukhāvātīvyūha Sūtra*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1996.

Inagaki, Hisao. *The Three Pure Land Sutras: A Study and Translation from Chinese*. Kyoto: Nagata Bunshodo, 1995.

MARK L. BLUM

## SUKHOTHAI

Sukhothai, the first Thai kingdom, was founded around 1238 in the central part of present-day Thailand. In previous centuries, this area was under the sovereignty of Khmer kings who practiced Hinduism and MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism. The Thai, however, adopted THERAVĀDA Buddhism from Sri Lanka. Upon his return from Sri Lanka in the early 1330s, Si Satha, a high-ranking monk, introduced a new Sinhalese sect along with Buddha relics and artisans. The veneration of relics played a significant role in this sect, which dramatically transformed the architecture and plans of temple compounds. While earlier STŪPAS (Thai, *chedi*) in Sukhothai were in Khmer-tower form (*prang*; e.g., Wat Phraphai Luang), new innovative forms were built

after 1340 as stūpas became the religious and ceremonial centers of monasteries.

The most important temple remains that reflect the development of Sukhothai architecture are at Wat Mahathat (Monastery of the Great Relic), located in the center of the city. Wat Mahathat was built during King Ramkhamhaeng's reign (ca. 1279–1298) and was renovated around 1340 during the reign of the pious King Loëthai (1298–1346/7). Many forms of stūpas can still be seen (Khmer-tower, lotus-bud, and bell-shaped types), as well as the ruins of the congregational hall (*ubosot* or *bot*) and an assembly hall (*wihan*). A unique Sukhothai-type of stūpa was built on a low pyramidal platform of three levels that supported a staggered shaft that housed the relic. Above it was a smoothly rounded ovoid bulb (lotus-bud stūpa), which would later be crowned with a spire. Eight subsidiary stūpas were linked to the center with connecting walls. The four axial towers built in Khmer style were decorated with stucco designs similar to those on the Lankatilaka Temple in Sri Lanka, dating to 1342. Themes from the historical Buddha's past lives, meant to inspire practitioners, decorated the Mahathat tympana.

*Ubosot* and *wihan* were commonly built of brick covered with plaster and decorated with stucco. Their roofs were made of wood covered with ceramic tiles; for the most part, only the columns stand today. *Ubosot* can be distinguished from *wihan* by the (typically eight) boundary stones (*sema*) that were generally placed around it.

See also: **Ayutthaya; Monastic Architecture; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Thailand**

### **Bibliography**

- Gosling, Betty. *Sukhothai: Its History, Culture, and Art*. Singapore and New York: Oxford University Press, 1991.
- Griswold, Alexander B. *Towards a History of Sukhothai Art*. Bangkok: Fine Arts Department of Thailand, 1967.

PATTARATORN CHIRAPRAVATI

---

SUMERU, MOUNT. See *Cosmology*

---

## ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS)

Within the nature of reality in MAHĀYĀNA ontology, emptiness (*śūnyatā*) must be realized en route to en-

lightenment. The term *śūnyatā* has been glossed as “openness,” “inconceivability,” or “unlimitedness,” but is best translated as “emptiness” or “voidness.” It refers to what dharmas (elements of reality) really are through what they are not: not as they appear, not conceptualizable, not distinguishable, and, above all, lacking permanent, independent, intrinsic existence.

Although emptiness is sometimes mentioned in non-Mahāyāna texts, where it describes, for example, the contents of an advanced meditative state, the nonexistence of a self, or the absence of defilements in NIRVĀṆA, the PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE of the Mahāyāna brought emptiness to prominence in Buddhist wisdom discourse. In paradoxical rhetoric, these sūtras describe emptiness as the true nature of all entities and concepts, from form through a buddha's awareness; thus, there really is no form, no buddha. This apparently nihilistic claim has been the subject of commentarial exegesis, philosophical disputation, meditative investigation, and ethical reflection throughout the Mahāyāna world. Still, emptiness is simply a radicalization and universalization of the earlier Buddhist idea of no-self (*anātman*), so that the view that there exists no unchanging subsisting person is extended to all possible objects and ideas, whether pure or impure, Buddhist or non-Buddhist—since grasping at true existence in any of them (including emptiness itself) will preclude the uprooting of defilements, hence the attainment of liberation and buddhahood.

In India, the most important philosophical reflection on emptiness emerged from the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL, beginning with NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.), whose *Madhyamakakārikā* (*Verses on Madhyamaka*) uses reductive reasoning to demonstrate the untenability, hence emptiness, of various key concepts, including causation, time, and nirvāṇa. Nāgārjuna asserts, however, that emptiness is nihilistic only for those who ignore the distinction between two truths: the *ultimate*, in which everything truly lacks intrinsic existence; and the *conventional*, in which, precisely because they are empty (that is, interdependent), things exist and function, and concepts are valid. Subsequent Madhyamaka thinkers extended Nāgārjuna's analysis, reflecting on the implications of emptiness for such issues as the role of rationality on the PATH, the admissibility of syllogistic arguments “proving” emptiness, the “truth” value of conventional truths, the absoluteness of the negation involved in emptiness, the status of morality and compassion, the content of an awareness realizing emptiness, and the rapidity with which realization of emptiness effects enlightenment.

Other Mahāyānists analyzed emptiness, too. YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL writers agreed on its ultimacy, but described it as the absence of concepts in perfected awareness, or as an external object's inseparability from the consciousness perceiving it. Texts on TATHĀGATA-GARBHA (buddha-nature) sometimes implied that emptiness is different on different levels: Saṃsāric phenomena are empty of intrinsic existence, but buddha-awareness is empty of saṃsāric phenomena, itself being pure, permanent gnosis. In Tibet, these ideas were described as the *intrinsic emptiness* and *extrinsic emptiness* views, respectively. The HUAYAN JING (*Avataṃsaka-sūtra*; *Flower Garland Sūtra*) and East Asian schools based upon it, such as the Huayan school, portrayed emptiness as the perfect interpenetration of all phenomena. In tantric traditions, emptiness is the adamant nature of reality, inseparable from a clear, blissful gnostic awareness; worlds and beings, MAṆḌALAS and deities, arise from and return to it, in reality as in meditative practice.

Discourse about emptiness was central to scholastic and meditative traditions in Tibet. It was also central to the philosophical treatises of the Sanlun, Huayan, and Tiantai schools of China, Korea, and Japan, and to the texts and praxis of East Asian Chan. Contemporary Buddhists, both Asian and Western, continue to explore the philosophical and practical implications of emptiness, reexamining traditional explanations of it, while aligning it with modern scientific and philosophical concepts, such as relativity, ecology, and deconstruction.

*See also:* Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Chan School; Huayan School; Philosophy; Prajña (Wisdom); Tantra; Tiantai School

#### **Bibliography**

- Conze, Edward, trans. *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines and Its Verse Summary*. Bolinas, CA: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr. *Elaborations on Emptiness: Uses of the Heart Sūtra*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1996.
- Stearns, Cyrus. *The Buddha from Dolpo: A Study of the Life and Thought of the Tibetan Master Dolpopa Sherab Gyaltsen*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Streng, Frederick. *Emptiness: A Study in Religious Meaning*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon, 1967.

ROGER R. JACKSON

## SŪTRA

The Sanskrit word *sūtra* (Pāli, *sutta*), or “discourse,” is the name generally given to any text said to contain the words or the teaching of the Buddha. Whether or not it actually does is another matter; many sūtras clearly postdate the Buddha's time. Typically, a sūtra begins with the phrase “Thus have I heard,” which is presumed by tradition to be the words of the Buddha's attendant ĀNANDA repeating at the First Council what he heard the Buddha say at a given time and place. The *sūtra-piṭaka* (basket of discourses) represents one of three major divisions of the Buddhist CANON (Tripiṭaka), the others being the VINAYA and the ABHIDHARMA.

*See also:* Āgama/Nikāya; Councils, Buddhist; Scripture

JOHN S. STRONG

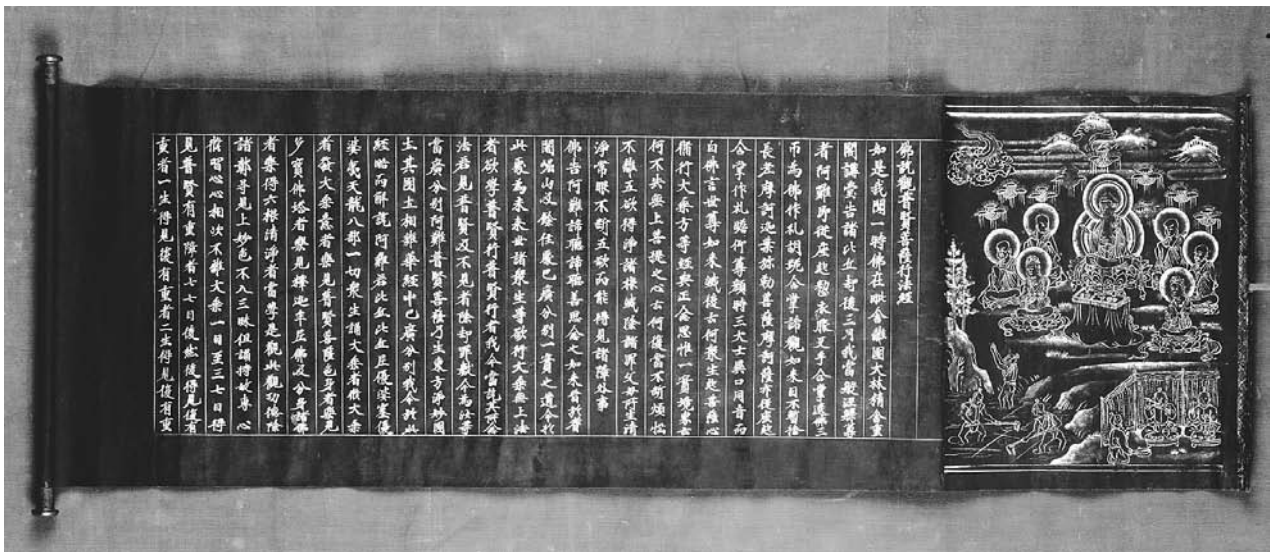
## SŪTRA ILLUSTRATIONS

Sūtras were illustrated in many different formats and media, such as BIANXIANG (TRANSFORMATION TABLEAUX), but this entry is limited to manuscript illuminations and illustrations done primarily on palm leaf or paper.

### **Sūtra illustrations in South and Southeast Asia**

In South and Southeast Asia the oral transmission of sūtras prevailed until the first century B.C.E. when written copies were first produced. By the tenth and eleventh centuries written sūtras were common and monastic complexes such as Nalanda produced illustrated texts. Sūtras were copied onto leaves of the tala or palmyra tree, the oldest extant example being one brought from China to Japan in 608. The palm leaves are approximately three to four inches wide by twelve to eighteen inches long. The text was written on both sides of the palm leaves, which were lacquered or prepared with pigments before the inscription of the texts. Strung together, the palm leaves were bound between covers of narrow boards upon which illustrations and decorative motifs were also drawn. Illustrated sūtras were also executed on paper that was cut, strung, and bound in the shape and style of palm-leaf sūtras.

The illustrations on these manuscripts were placed in single frames between lines of text or on the covers. Common subjects included individual deities and the



This twelfth-century Japanese work illustrates the Buddha preaching in the mountains, from the epilogue to the *Lotus Sūtra*. (Japanese, Heian period, 794–1185.) © Reunion des Musées Nationaux/Art Resource, NY. Reproduced by permission.

eight great events of Śākyamuni's life. In many instances, the figures depicted had no specific connection with the contents of the text and probably functioned as symbols of protection and reverence for the text. In other instances, particularly in later manuscripts, there were deities and narrative scenes based on the contents of the sūtra. The images were painted most often in ink and gouache, but also could have gold and silver accents. The miniaturization necessary to the format and the preeminence of the text hampered the development of continuous or complex narrative illustrations. Illuminated sūtras reached an artistic apogee in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, declined in number for several centuries, and experienced resurgence in number and quality in the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries, especially in Nepal, Tibet, Thailand, and Burma.

### Sūtra illustrations in East Asia

East Asian Buddhists copied sūtras from as early as the fourth century in China, where the development of and the Chinese reverence for the written word led to sūtra copying on a large scale. Sūtra copying reached its peak in the Tang period (618–907) in China, the Heian (794–1185) and Kamakura (1185–1333) periods in Japan, and the Koryō period (918–1392) in Korea. The sūtras were copied chiefly onto hand scrolls, but the folded book (Japanese, *orihon*), in which a scroll was folded in accordion fashion, and the bound book of separate sheets of paper were also used. Although the initial impetus was the need for copies of the text, the

copied sūtras also were revered as evidence of the sponsor's piety and merit. The veneration of sūtras led to increasing adornment involving dyeing, marbling, decorative designs, and illustrations, as well as the use of gold and silver inks.

The most common form of sūtra illustration is the frontispiece painting found at the beginning of hand or folded book scrolls. These paintings were often executed in gold and silver inks and formed a style common to all East Asian cultures. The subject matter frequently centered upon the Buddha preaching to a group of BODHISATTVAS, deva, ARHATS, and practitioners. A printed version of the DIAMOND SŪTRA from DUNHUANG dated 868 is the earliest dated versions of such a frontispiece illustration. The scene of preaching did not always reflect the specific content of the text. However, some frontispiece paintings illustrated the main doctrines or stories of the text either as single illustrations or as additions to the preaching scene.

A second broad category of paintings evoked, rather than directly illustrated, the text's message. Japanese illustrations of the Heian and Kamakura periods sometimes referred to poetry or stories about the ideas and episodes in the sūtra. These illustrations appear to be unrelated to the text, but have hidden script and rebus that, when decoded, related to the specific sūtra. The *Heike Nōkyō* of 1164 is a good example of this evocative style of illustration.

Illustrations were also painted in the upper sections over text that was written in the lower sections, or the



illustrations were interspersed between sections of the text. In both cases the text and picture were more closely interwoven than in frontispiece illustrations, and therefore these paintings were often more literal renditions of the text.

Finally, there were sūtra illustrations that had no relationship to the text. These illustrations were linked to the sponsor or copyist of the sūtra and thereby emphasized the person to whom merit accrued for copying the sūtra. It is believed that the fan-shaped booklets from the twelfth century at Shitennōji are examples of a sūtra written over paper painted with genre, courtier, and landscape scenes that once belonged to the sponsor of the copied sūtra.

Regardless of format or material, sūtra illustrations functioned in many ways: as illustrations and evocations of the sūtra's content, as protective talismans of the text, as emblems of the sponsor, and as pure adornment to an object of reverence.

*See also:* Scripture

### **Bibliography**

- Egami, Yasushi, ed. *Sōshkugyō* (*Nihon no Bijutsu* no. 278). Tokyo: Shibundō, 1989.
- Ōyama, Ninkai, ed. *Shakyō* (*Nihon no Bijutsu* no. 156). Tokyo: Shibundō, 1979.
- Pal, Pratapaditya, and Meech-Pekarik, Julia. *Buddhist Book Illuminations*. New York: Ravi Kumar, 1988.
- Tanabe, Willa Jane. *Paintings of the Lotus Sutra*. New York: Weatherhill, 1988.

WILLA JANE TANABE

## SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA

A MAHĀYĀNA sūtra likely compiled in northern Indic or Central Asian regions between the first and third centuries C.E., the *Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra* (*Sūtra of Golden Light*) is rich and varied in content. The nineteen chapters of the Sanskrit version preserved in the Nepalese tradition include a confession ritual, several chapters that prescribe rituals surrounding the preaching or hearing of the sūtra, two chapters dealing with medicine, and three tales of the Buddha's past lives (JĀTAKA), including a distinctive telling of the well-known "Tigress Story." Most of the sūtra's seemingly disparate parts share an emphasis upon the transformative

power of the sūtra itself, represented as golden light that infuses its preachers and auditors. The role of the sūtra in protecting and sustaining the kingdom of the ruler who accords it appropriate respect is another dominant theme.

The transmission history of the text is particularly complex. The sūtra is partially or wholly extant in seven languages other than Sanskrit (Chinese, Tibetan, Khotanese, Sogdian, Tangut, Mongolian, and Old Uighur), in versions ranging from eighteen to thirty-one chapters in length. Both the Chinese and the Tibetan canons preserve several different versions of the sūtra. Many of the translations are based not on the Sanskrit sūtra but on YIJING's thirty-one chapter Chinese translation of the early eighth century. The Mongolian translations are based on the versions in the Tibetan canon. In both China and Japan the sūtra was a central text in imperial rituals and was the subject of several commentaries. In Tibet, the text was sometimes classified as a TANTRA rather than a sūtra.

*See also:* Sanskrit, Buddhist Literature in

### **Bibliography**

- Emmerick, R. E., trans. *The Sūtra of Golden Light, Being a Translation of the Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra*, 2nd edition. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 1992.

NATALIE D. GUMMER

## SUZUKI, D. T.

Daisetsu Teitarō Suzuki (1870–1966) was one of the most important individuals involved in the twentieth-century spread of Japanese Buddhism, particularly Zen, to the West. A lay popularizer of Japanese spirituality, Suzuki resided in the United States for two extended periods, in the early twentieth century and again in the 1950s. Through his distinctive lectures and voluminous, though idiosyncratic, writings in English, Suzuki sparked an interest in Zen and Japanese culture among many influential Western scholars, intellectuals, artists, and writers.

*See also:* Chan School; Japan; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

RICHARD M. JAFFE

## SYNCRETIC SECTS: THREE TEACHINGS

While popular religious movements have left their marks in the Chinese historical record since the Eastern Han dynasty (25–220 C.E.), a new type of syncretic sectarianism emerged from the Yuan dynasty (1279–1368) onwards. Continuing trends begun under the preceding Song dynasty (960–1279), this age was characterized by expanding commerce, the spread of literacy, a flourishing printing and publishing industry, improved communication and transport systems throughout the empire, and increasing social and geographical mobility of the population. All of these factors facilitated the flow of religious ideas across regions, denominational boundaries, and classes, and thereby stimulated the emergence of new religious movements. The resulting syncretic proclivities of the age are part of a long history of negotiating the relationship of China's two major indigenous traditions (Confucianism and Daoism) with the foreign newcomer, Buddhism. Harmonizing tendencies constituted a strong intellectual undercurrent among the literati elite, while striking even deeper roots in popular religion, where a focus on family and the local community did not require exclusive affiliation with a particular teaching. Instead, each was seen to have its role to play in the life cycles of families and communities, and thus the concepts and religious specialists associated with each could be drawn upon as needed. This general outlook conditioned the efforts of popular religious virtuosi, creative individuals who possessed enough literacy to benefit from the burgeoning supply of printed texts, but lacked the formal education needed to gain access to literati circles. Many founders of popular sects from the Yuan dynasty onwards came from the ranks of these “folk intellectuals,” who received inspiration from many sources and combined their ideas into new religious systems. These systems become visible to the historian of religion primarily in the texts composed by sectarian founders, texts that are treasure troves of information on the religious life of China throughout the Late Imperial period up into modern times.

This entry will focus on the contributions of Buddhism to the colorful world of Chinese popular sectarianism. The impact of Buddhist thought varied from sect to sect, with some movements being so strongly Buddhist in orientation that they have been regarded by outside observers as “lay” or “folk Buddhist” movements, while the teachings of others were

more influenced by Daoism. Lin Zhao'en (1517–1598), for example, founded the Sanyi Jiao (Three-in-One sect), which sought to combine the Three Teachings, but in doing so emphasized Confucianism and the internal alchemy of Quanzhen (Complete Realization) Daoism over Buddhism. On the other hand, Luo Qing (1442–1527), founder of the Wuwei (Non-Action) sect, was a major figure in Buddhist-inspired sectarianism. Originally a soldier by profession, he set out on a quest for salvation, studied with various masters, and drew inspiration from a large number of texts, the majority of which were Buddhist in nature. Among these, the *Jin'gang keyi* (*Ritual Amplification of the Diamond Sūtra*) touched him particularly; he devoted three years of study to this text and frequently referred to it in his writings. His teachings show a strong influence of Chan Buddhism, with an emphasis on the individual's recovery of his or her innate buddha-nature, or TATHĀGATAGARBHA. For Luo Qing, the concept of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) collapsed all distinctions, including those between men and women, and clergy and laity, opening up release from SAṂSĀRA for all living beings. His writings were gathered in a collection called the *Wubu liuce* (*Five Books in Six Volumes*), which still enjoys the status of sacred scripture among present-day sects such as the Longhua Pai (Dragon Flower Sect) of southeastern China.

Alongside the “popular Chan” of Luo Qing, there developed a separate sectarian tradition of a millenarian nature. The first text to formulate this approach is, in fact, the earliest surviving sectarian scripture, dated to 1430: the *Foshuo huangji jieguo baojuan* (*Precious Volume Expounded by the Buddha on the [Karmic] Results of the [Teaching of the] Imperial Ultimate [Period]*). Here we find a Buddhist inspired view of the world as moving through three cycles: First there was the Ultimateless (*wuji*) period reigned over by the Lamplighter (Dīpaṃkara) Buddha (Randeng Fo); the present age is that of the Great Ultimate (*taiji*), governed by Śākyamuni Buddha; and now the world is about to enter the Imperial Ultimate (*huangji*) period of the Buddha MAITREYA. This three-stage COSMOLOGY with its eschatological expectation of a savior ushering in a new and better world became a powerful motif among later popular sects. It was modified somewhat by the introduction of a mother goddess, the Eternal Mother (Wusheng Laomu), who dispatched the various buddhas to the world so that her human children might return to their original home at their Mother's side. This return is becoming urgent as the world

enters its final period and is on an inexorable course toward apocalyptic destruction. Sometimes, sectarian leaders themselves claimed to be Maitreya, sent by the Eternal Mother to gather in her children; occasionally, millenarian fervor initiated political action, as sects rebelled in an attempt to usher in the new age. The best-known modern representative of this millenarian tradition is the Yiguan Dao (Way of Unity), an influential religious movement in Taiwan and Hong Kong and among overseas Chinese, which was founded in the 1920s by a patriarch who claimed to be the Living Buddha Jigong, dispatched by the Eternal Mother to open up a path of salvation in this final age.

Thus, Buddhism historically served as an important source of inspiration for Chinese popular sects. Buddhist concepts and themes were integrated with Confucian and Daoist elements, as well as with elements of popular origin (such as mediumistic practices), to produce a variegated array of religious movements. The creativity of popular sectarianism has not ebbed in the modern age, as new sects keep emerging. Some of these draw on older sectarian traditions, while others make a fresh start by taking a new look at China's Three Teachings. A modern example of a sect that draws strongly on (in this case, tantric) Buddhist material is the Zhenfo Zong (True Buddha movement), founded by Lu Shengyan (1945–) in the 1980s. Headquartered in Seattle, Washington, it is particularly active among overseas Chinese. While usually eyed with some suspicion by the mainline SAṄGHA, the Buddhist borrowings of such syncretic sects are a testimony to the successful integration of Buddhism into Chinese

popular culture and to its power to inspire religious innovation.

*See also:* **Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Folk Religion, China; Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements**

### **Bibliography**

- Berling, Judith A. *The Syncretic Religion of Lin Chao-en*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1980.
- Dean, Kenneth. *Lord of the Three in One: The Spread of a Cult in Southeast China*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1998.
- Haar, Barend J. ter. *The White Lotus Teachings in Chinese Religious History*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1992.
- Jordan, David K., and Overmyer, Daniel L. *The Flying Phoenix: Aspects of Chinese Sectarianism in Taiwan*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1986.
- Ma Xisha, and Han Bingfang. *Zhongguo minjian zongjiaoshi*. Shanghai: Shanghai Renmin Chubanshe, 1992.
- Overmyer, Daniel L. *Folk Buddhist Religion*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1976.
- Overmyer, Daniel L. "Messenger, Savior, and Revolutionary: Maitreya in Chinese Popular Religious Literature of the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries." In *Maitreya, the Future Buddha*, ed. Alan Sponberg and Helen Hardacre. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1988.
- Overmyer, Daniel L. *Precious Volumes: An Introduction to Chinese Sectarian Scriptures from the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 1999.

PHILIP CLART

# T



## TACHIKAWARYŪ

Tachikawaryū is the name of a subschool of Shingon Buddhism, one of the two Japanese schools of tantric Buddhism. Probably founded by Ninkan, who was active in the early twelfth century, Tachikawaryū seems to have continued into the seventeenth century. The epithets often associated with it, “perverse teaching” or “perverse school,” imply that this subschool taught a set of doctrines and rituals that were strongly sexualized. Tachikawaryū was denounced by Yūkai (1345–1416) and other representatives of the Buddhist orthodoxy during the Middle Ages, and most of the texts associated with the school are now lost. However, examination of the few extant texts that can be traced back to Tachikawaryū reveals that its teachings were not very different from those of the other Shingon subschools. In addition, a close reading of Shinjō’s *Juhō-yōjin shū* (*Circumspect Acceptance of the Dharma*, 1268), the earliest text that is commonly believed to be a denunciatory account of Tachikawaryū practices, reveals that the sexual rituals described are not said to pertain to Tachikawaryū. Shinjō speaks simply of “these rituals,” without naming them.

It is possible to distinguish at least two levels of sexual doctrines and rituals in medieval Japanese religion. First, in every lineage of what is usually called *kenmitsu* Buddhism, sexual elements were widely spread and practiced, at least in a metaphorical way. Tachikawaryū may well be counted as one of these lineages, although there were certainly more purist tendencies in each lineage. Second, the rituals described by Shinjō may have been taught and practiced only in a particular segment of this general movement. The rituals imply not only sexual intercourse, but also ritual use of a human skull.

*See also:* Exoteric-Esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Japan; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism

### *Bibliography*

Kock, Stephen. “The Dissemination of the Tachikawa-ryū and the Problem of Orthodox and Heretic Teaching in Shingon Buddhism.” *Studies in Indian Philosophy and Buddhism*, Tokyo University, 7 (2000): 69–83.

Sanford, James. “The Abominable Tachikawa Skull Ritual.” *Monumenta Nipponica* 46, no. 1 (1991): 1–20.

NOBUMI IYANAGA

## TAIWAN

Scholars can document the existence of Buddhism in Taiwan only from the migration of Chinese fleeing to the island after their failure to restore the fallen Ming dynasty in 1662. The “Southern Ming” court ruled Taiwan until the Qing dynasty captured the island in 1683. The subsequent history of Buddhism in Taiwan falls into three periods delimited by the three political regimes that followed: Qing rule (1683–1895); Japanese viceroyalty (1895–1945); and Han Chinese rule (1945–present).

### **The Southern Ming/Qing dynasty period**

Chinese and Japanese scholars agree that knowledge and practice of Buddhism during this time was relatively unsophisticated. Taiwan was a land of pirates, typhoons, plagues, and headhunting natives, and did not attract China’s social elite. Many of the “monks”



A row of golden Buddha statues at Fo Kuang Shan Monastery, Kaohsiung, Taiwan. © Michael S. Yamashita/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

of this period were Ming loyalists who fled to the island in clerical disguise, and legitimate clerics were few in number and largely ignorant of Buddhist teachings. Those whose names appear in the records were noted for non-Buddhist accomplishments such as rainmaking, painting, poetry, and playing *go*. Most clerics functioned as temple caretakers and funeral specialists, and did not engage in teaching, meditation or other Buddhist practices.

The first known monk to migrate from the mainland is Canche (d.u.), who arrived in 1675. Chen Yonghua, a military commander, had built a monastery called the Dragon Lake Grotto (Longhu Yan), and invited Canche to serve as abbot. Canche later founded the Blue Cloud Monastery (Biyun-si) on Fire Mountain (Huoshan) near the present-day town of Chia-yi.

As the island became more settled, many more monasteries were founded, particularly around the capital city of Tainan. Notable among these early monasteries are the Zhuxi (“Bamboo Stream”) Monastery (1664); the Haihui (“Ocean Assembly”) Monastery (1680); the Fahua (“Dharma-Flower”) Monastery

(1683); the Mituo (“Amitābha”) Monastery (d.u.); the Longshan (“Dragon Mountain”) Monastery (1738); the Chaofeng (“Surpassing Peak”) Monastery (registered 1763); and the Daxian (“Great Immortal”) Monastery (d.u.). Despite this vigorous activity, most of the MONKS and NUNS in these monasteries had probably received only the novices’ ordination; there was no ordaining monastery in Taiwan, and only scant records exist of those who journeyed to the mainland to receive the full PRECEPTS.

### **The Japanese colonial period**

In 1895 the Chinese government ceded the island to Japan, and the Japanese troops brought Buddhist chaplains with them. These chaplains were eager to establish mission stations in order to propagate Japanese Buddhism to the native population, but funding from their head temples was insufficient, and only a very small percentage of the Chinese population ever enrolled in Japanese Buddhist lineages.

One of the most notable features of the Japanese period was, in fact, the effort on the part of the local

Buddhists to maintain their Chinese identity and traditions. This period saw the institution of the first facilities for transmitting the full monastic precepts in Taiwan. Four monasteries established “ordination platforms”: The Lingquan (“Spirit Spring”) Chan Monastery in Keelung, the Lingyun (“Soaring Cloud”) Chan Monastery on Guanyin Mountain, the Fayun (“Dharma Cloud”) Chan Monastery near Miaoli, and the Chaofeng (“Surpassing the Peak”) Monastery in Kaohsiung County. The leaders of these monasteries all received ordination at the Yongquan (“Surging Spring”) Monastery in Fuzhou, China, and they transmitted their tonsure-lineages to Taiwan. Monks and nuns ordained from these monasteries went forth and founded other monasteries, giving rise to the “four great ancestral lineages” that defined and organized Buddhism during this period.

At the same time, there were small groups of Chinese Buddhist monks who studied Marxism and advocated the relaxation of monastic discipline as a means to strengthen solidarity with ordinary people, while also resisting Japanese domination.

Even as Chinese Buddhism attempted to maintain its own distinctive identity, it still had to accommodate the government; thus clergy and laity joined together to form Buddhist organizations that functioned as governmental liaisons. The largest of these, founded in 1922 by Marui Keijirō, was called the South Seas Buddhist Association, which operated until 1945. These organizations were significant because they included members of *zhaijiao*, the “vegetarian religion”—a form of popular Buddhism that stood apart from the monastic establishment and rejected its oversight. *Zhaijiao*’s participation in these Buddhist organizations marks the only time in history that they ever cooperated with monastic Buddhism. In 1945 they parted ways once again.

### The Republican period (1945–present)

At the end of the Pacific War (known as World War II in the United States), Taiwan was returned to China, and the Japanese were evacuated. Four years later, in 1949, mainland China fell to the communists, and the nationalists fled to Taiwan. All of these events kept the political and economic situation in turmoil, and Buddhist clerics experienced difficulty keeping their monasteries viable. A few refugee Buddhist monks from the mainland, such as Cihang (1895–1954), were imprisoned on suspicion of spying. A few monks of national eminence also arrived,

such as the Zhangjia Living Buddha (1891–1957), Baisheng (1904–1989), Wuming (1912– ), and YINSHUN (1906– ). They were the leaders of the newly revived Buddhist Association of the Republic of China (BAROC), and came to Taiwan for reasons that paralleled those of the nationalists: to use Taiwan as a base of operations until they could return home to rebuild Buddhism.

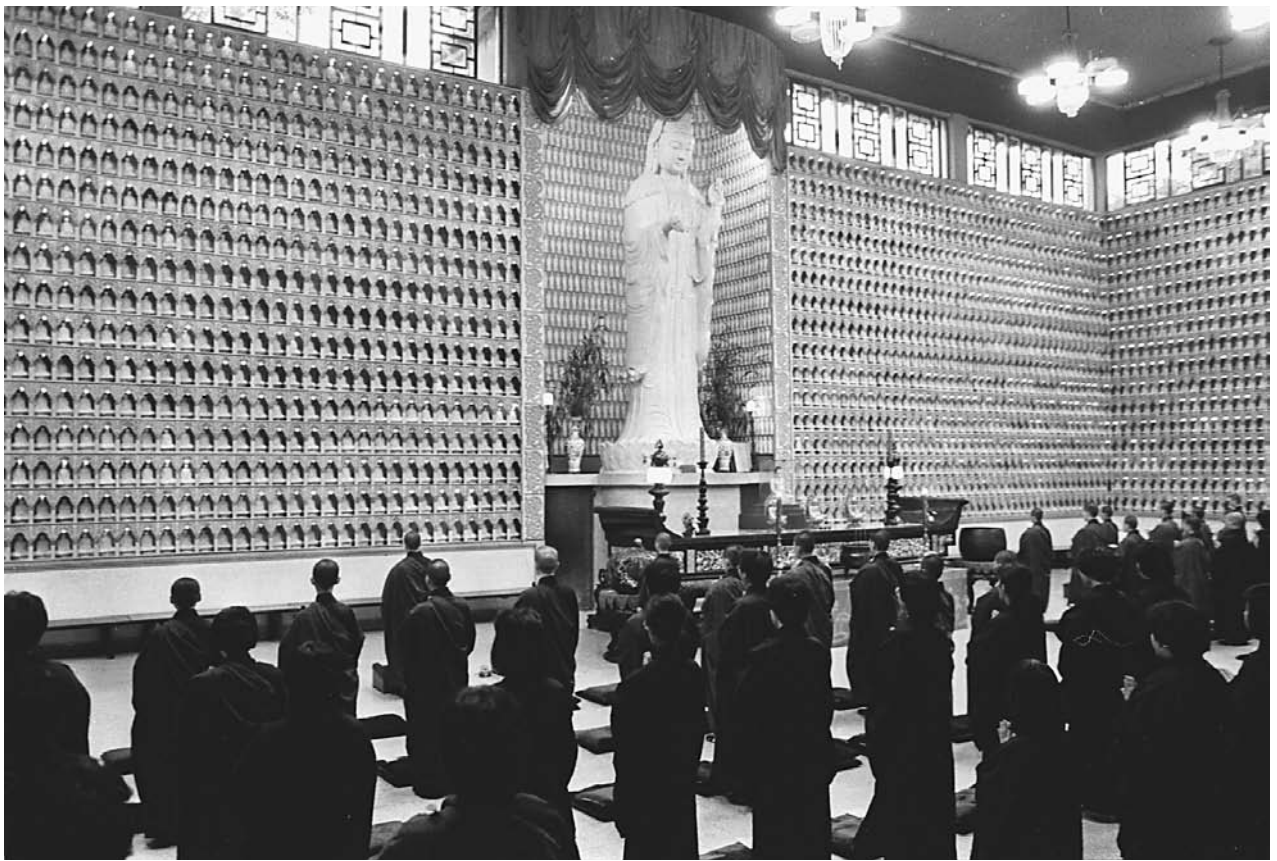
The BAROC mediated between Buddhism and the government in several ways: The government expected it to register all clergy and temples, organize and administer clerical ordinations, certify clergy for exit visas, and help in framing laws dealing with religion. The BAROC also confronted the government when it felt religious interests were threatened. Two notable controversies concerned the failure of the government to return confiscated Japanese-era monasteries to religious use, and the government’s obstruction of efforts to establish a Buddhist university.

Because the laws on civic organizations allowed only one organization to fill any single niche in society, the BAROC enjoyed hegemony until the late 1980s. In 1989 the government stopped dealing with Buddhist monks and nuns separately, and registered them under their lay names as ordinary citizens. Thus, the BAROC was no longer needed to certify their status. That same year, a new law on civic organizations took effect, abolishing the “one niche, one organization” rule and opening the way for competition. In the ensuing period, other Buddhist organizations took root. Some grew out of preexisting groups, most notably Fo Kuang Shan and the Buddhist Compassionate Relief Tz’u-Chi Association. Others were newly founded, such as Dharma Drum Mountain.

### Recent changes

Buddhism in Taiwan has undergone many changes during the last few decades as the island has shifted from an agrarian, village-based to an industrial, urban-based society. Four particularly prominent developments follow.

Historically, monks have predominated numerically over nuns in Chinese Buddhism. Since the 1950s the number of nuns in Taiwan has increased relative to the number of monks: Between 1953 and 1986 the BAROC ordained 2,030 men and 6,006 women. With more women than men seeking ordination, women are much more likely to be eliminated or given longer periods of testing. This has raised the overall quality and status of the nuns’ order relative to the monks.



A ceremony at Fo Kuang Shan Monastery, Kaohsiung, Taiwan, 1987. © Don Farber 2003. All rights reserved. Reproduced by permission.

This first development must be seen against a backdrop of steadily decreasing ordinations overall. Between 1949 and 1989, when the population of Taiwan rose from 7.5 million to over 20 million, the number of new ordinations each year, especially male, did not keep pace. Many observers understand this phenomenon to be part of a trend in the Buddhist world at large, where laity has grown increasingly active and prominent.

Third, the ethical content of Buddhism in Taiwan has undergone change. Some organizations such as Fo Kuang Shan and the Buddhist Compassionate Relief Tz'u-Chi Association have propounded new precepts that followers formally undertake. The founder of Fo Kuang Shan, Xingyun (1927– ), has published his vision of “Fo Kuang Buddhism” in several lectures and books, in which he seeks to turn followers’ attention away from otherworldly concerns, such as rituals for the dead and rebirth in the Pure Land, and toward efforts to benefit living beings in this world. Likewise, the Buddhist Compassionate Relief Tz'u-chi Association under its founder Zhengyan (1937– ) trains its follow-

ers to be of assistance within the present world. As an association composed almost entirely of laypeople, the focus is on social action rather than maintaining monastic roles. Individual monasteries such as the Nongchan Monastery in northern Taipei and the Faguang Monastery in downtown Taipei are two of many that no longer use disposable chopsticks and bowls due to a concern for the environment. In all these contexts, the slogan is “to build a Pure Land on Earth.”

Finally, Buddhist monasteries in Taiwan have changed their fund-raising methods in response to developments in the economic sphere. In place of traditional methods of generating income, such as soliciting donations, providing funeral services, and renting land for agriculture, many monasteries seek to build bases of lay support in a more systematic, less overtly commercial way. They organize their core constituency into lay organizations, such as the Dharmapāla organization that supports Dharma Drum Mountain. They found collegiate Buddhist fellowships and lead students in meditation or Pure Land retreats. Some of the larger urban monasteries have publishing concerns.

However, the most universal means of raising money is still to hold “dharma meetings” (*fahui*), in which laypeople come to hear sūtras recited, see the ceremony of releasing living beings (*fangsheng*), or witness a ritual for the Release of the Burning Mouths (*yuqie yankou*), in which hungry ghosts are freed from their torments, fed, and receive teaching.

See also: **China; Colonialism and Buddhism; Pure Land Schools**

### Bibliography

- Jones, Charles B. *Buddhism in Taiwan: Religion and the State 1660–1990*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Jones, Charles B. “Buddhism and Marxism in Taiwan: Lin Qiuwu’s Religious Socialism and Its Legacy in Modern Times.” *Journal of Global Buddhism* 1 (2000): 82–111.
- Liberté, André. “The Politics of Buddhist Organizations in Taiwan: 1989–1997.” Ph.D. diss. University of British Columbia, 1999.

CHARLES B. JONES

## TAIXU

Taixu (Lü Peilin, 1890–1947) was a Chinese Buddhist monk and reformer in the early Republican era (1912–1949). He was born on January 8, 1890, into a working-class family in Haining County of Zhejiang Province. In 1904 he joined the monastic order and received the Buddhist name *Taixu* (Supreme Emptiness). Several months later, Taixu formally took the Buddhist precepts at Tiantong Monastery in Ningbo, Zhejiang, where he studied Buddhism with a focus on MAHĀYĀNA texts and Chan meditation.

Taixu started his reform activity by founding *Jueshe* (Awakening Society) in Shanghai in 1918. Disregarding opposition from conservative Buddhists, Taixu campaigned for a socially engaged form of Buddhism and for a worldwide Buddhist mission. He aimed to organize the Buddhist clergy, revitalize Mahāyāna teachings, and propagate Buddhist studies. He also called for the government to preserve monastic resources. Under Taixu’s leadership, the monthly periodical *Haichao yin* (*The Sound of the Sea Tide*) began publication in 1920, and the *Wuchang foxue yuan* (Wuchang Buddhist Institute) in Hubei, the first modern Chinese Buddhist seminary, was established in 1922. During the 1930s Taixu’s leadership declined in

the Chinese Buddhist Association, which had been established by the monk Yuanying (1878–1953) in Shanghai in 1929. But Taixu’s involvement with political leaders such as Chiang Kai-shek (1887–1975) of the Nationalist government enabled him to continue his Buddhist reforms and trips abroad.

After the end of World War II in 1945, Taixu regained his influence and served on the *Zhongguo fojiao zhengli weiyuan hui* (Committee for the Reorganization of Chinese Buddhism). Hindered by the civil war (1946–1949) between the Communists and Nationalists, Taixu was unable to complete his reforms. He died on March 17, 1947, in Shanghai. His writings and lectures were posthumously published under the title *Taixu dashi quanshu* (*The Collected Works of Great Master Taixu*).

Taixu is regarded as the most important and controversial reformer in the history of modern Chinese Buddhism. His significance lies not in his reform movements, which in fact yielded limited results, but rather in his vision and ideas to modernize Chinese Buddhism through lay cooperation, intellectual promotion, social engagement, and international involvement.

See also: **China; Yinshun**

### Bibliography

- Pittman, Don A. *Toward a Modern Chinese Buddhism: Taixu’s Reforms*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.
- Taixu dashi quanshu* (*The Collected Works of Great Master Taixu*), 62 vols. Taibei: Haichao yin she, 1950–.

DING-HWA HSIEH

## TAKUAN SŌHŌ

Takuan Sōhō (1573–1645) was a Japanese Zen (Chan) priest affiliated with the Daitokuji temple in Kyoto. In 1629 the Tokugawa government banished Takuan to northern Japan because of his open opposition to the new government regulations that had been imposed on the Zen monasteries of Kyoto. After his pardon in 1632, Takuan moved to Edo (modern Tokyo), where he eventually became adviser to the third Tokugawa shogun, Iemitsu (1604–1651). Today Takuan is best remembered for a letter he wrote to the fencing instructor Yagyū Munenori (1571–1646) in which he used swordsmanship as an example to explain the importance of imperturbability and mental freedom in



the performance of one's duties. Reprinted under the title *Fudōchi shinmyōroku* (*Record of Marvelous Im-movable Wisdom*), Takuan's treatise is frequently cited by people who advocate a connection between Buddhism, especially Zen, and Japanese martial arts.

*See also:* Chan School; Martial Arts; Zen, Popular Conceptions of

WILLIAM M. BODIFORD

## TANTRA

Tantra in Western nomenclature has achieved forms of signification independent from its Sanskritic use and has become a somewhat promiscuous category applied to various RITUALS otherwise not easily classified. In general parlance, tantra indicates the pan-Indic religious system that became emulated in Buddhist, Hindu, and Jain circles, and tantra is often understood as having an erotic component. This entry will discuss the idea of tantra in India and in Central and East Asia.

### India and Nepal

The word *tantra* in India was much more widely applied than might be understood from the modern explanation of its derivation from  $\sqrt{tan}$ —to weave. In medieval Sanskrit, the term signifies many forms of complex arrangement and may denote military deployment, a loom, certain forms of ritual, a political culture, a scriptural text emphasizing selected rituals, the pan-Indic religious aesthetic, and so on. In Buddhism, tantra is usually understood to include the use of MANTRAS authorized by a preceptor on a disciple during a complex initiation rite that confers the disciple with the authority to engage in many different kinds of ritual associated with a specific class of BUDDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, or Buddhist DIVINITIES. Included in the rituals are the construction or visualization of sacred circles (MAṆḌALA), the use of hand gestures (MUDRĀ), and the employment of fire sacrifice (*homa*), all of which may be for the purpose of specific soteriological or nonsoteriological goals. These latter are usually the four ritual actions of the pacification of obstacles, the increase of prosperity, the subjugation of difficulties, and the destruction of enemies; they may be performed for the practitioner's own ends or on behalf of a patron.

However, many of these elements had already enjoyed a lengthy precedent in Buddhist ritual long be-

fore the coalescence of mature esoteric Buddhism—to which tantra may properly be applied—in the late seventh and early eighth centuries. It is historically misleading to understand normative MAHĀYĀNA rituals as tantric in any significant sense, despite the fact that many of them make use of several of the elements eventually included in esoteric Buddhism. Moreover, many of the buddhas, bodhisattvas, and Buddhist divinities that originated in the Mahāyānist ritual environment eventually made the easy transition to the esoteric milieu. The primary difference between normative Mahāyāna and tantric Buddhism is that the latter appropriates an overarching political metaphor of overlordship in this very life, so that the INITIATION is performed in a manner derived from the coronation rituals of medieval Hinduism. Tantric Buddhism may be understood as a sacralization of the early medieval political and military fragmentation of North India, with its contentious rivalries between feudal clans. Consequently, it expresses an emphasis on secrecy, loyalty, allegiance, and unbreakable trust; on the visualization of self as a divine king (*devatārāja*) controlling complex spheres of dominion and power (maṇḍala); on new arrangements of vows; and on the use of any means necessary to achieve stated goals or secret ends. All of these items are generally absent from normative Mahāyānist rites.

Thus, replacing the self-sacrificial bodhisattva is the ideal of all-powerful siddha or MAHĀSIDDHA, the perfected being to whom no standards of behavior can apply. Siddhas also employed the methods of medieval sorcerers (VIDYĀDHARA)—such as the tantric feast (*gaṇacakra*) involving the sacramental employment of ritualized group sex and the ingestion of illicit substances like meat and liquor—in their search for magical powers. In imitation of the behavior of Śaiva and other ascetics, some siddhas wore ornaments of human bone, carried staffs of distinctive shapes, and frequented cremation grounds or forest areas. Their interest in tribal peoples is a theme in much of the later literature, and some siddhas were known to have spent time among the forest tribes of Central or Eastern India. From them, specific divinities appear to have been appropriated, possibly including Śaṃvara, Heruka, and Jāṅguli. Siddhas were also interested in herbs and drugs, and their use of intoxicants like datura is well attested. The tendency to group siddhas into various numbering systems (84 being most common, but 20, 40, 50, 80, and other numbers are also seen) occurred rather late and reflects Indian organizational strategies.

Siddhas may have been a minority, though, since Buddhist monks are quite frequently represented as Buddhist monastic *tāntrikas*. Monastic Buddhism apparently tried to displace overt siddha behavior with visualized or covert forms, and we occasionally read of monks becoming siddhas by being expelled from their cloisters for inappropriate behavior. Monks were responsible for domesticating the esoteric method by formulating it as on a continuum with monastic and Mahāyāna vows. This eighth-century hermeneutic was formalized in the triple discipline: The tantric master is expected to practice the vows of the monk (*prātimokṣasaṃvara*), the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvasaṃvara*), and the sorcerer (*vidyādharaṃvara*). This reading emphasized that the esoteric system was a branch of the Mahāyāna—the mantra-method (*mantranaya*).

The maturation of tantric Buddhism happened surprisingly quickly. There is no concrete evidence for tantra prior to the late seventh century, and yet all the basic principles were in place a century later. It is also primarily a North and Central Indian phenomenon, with modest contributions from South India or Sri Lanka. The emphasis on PILGRIMAGE sites predominantly found in North and Central India, like the legendary Oḍiyāna (Swat Valley), reflect this reality. Because tantra arose in a culture of fragmentation, there is little textual unity, and the works classified by later authors as tantric may call themselves by other titles: discourse (*sūtra*), meditative aid (DHĀRAṆĪ), secret spell (MANTRA), incantation (*vidyā*), ritual (*kalpa*), as well as tantra. The textual sources gain added complexity through the tendency of later authors to read esoteric directions into earlier Buddhist scriptures and to incorporate these scriptures in their exegesis. Accordingly, the HEART SŪTRA is often taken as a tantric text, since it contains a mantra, even though this text predates any tantric Buddhism per se.

Classificatory systems thus had to wrestle with great differences in texts, and consequently there is no unanimity on tantric typology. Perhaps the most basic scheme is that employed by Buddhaguhya and others in the mid-eighth century: Tantras are those that emphasize external ritual activity (*kriyānaya-tantra*) or those that emphasize internal yogic practices (*yoganaya-tantra*). The fourfold classification favored by Tibetans has been often cited: Tantras are those that enjoin ritual action (*kriyā*), behavioral practice (*caryā*), meditation (*yoga*), or the highest yoga (*anuttarayoga-tantra*). Textual examples include the *Susiddhikara* (*kriyā*), the *Vairocanābhisambodhi* (*caryā*), the *Sarvata-*

*thāgatattvasaṃgraha* (*yoga*), and the *Guhyasamāja* (*anuttara-yoga-tantra*). The latter category was often subdivided into two, with the *Guhyasamāja* being a *mahāyoga-tantra* and works like the *Cakrasaṃvara* classified as a *yoginī-tantra*. It must be emphasized, though, that there were many other typologies—some with seven or more categories. Neither was there unanimity on which texts actually belonged to which categories, irrespective of the number of categories. Some important texts, like the *Mañjuśrīnāmasaṃgīti* or the *Hevajra*, might be classified into two or three categories, depending on the interpretation.

Linguistically, the tantras reflect the regionalization of Indian society. They are written in regional or non-standard Sanskrit—often influenced by colloquial expressions or grammar—and some of those composed in Eastern India use vernacular-based literary languages, such as Apabhraṃśa, in liturgical environments. Siddhas would also compose adamantine songs (*vajragīti*) to express their understanding or to critique others, and they often provided a signature line to identify the author. Consequently, tantric Buddhism returned to the autobiographical voice and the use of non-Sanskritic languages, as had been done in the early days of Buddhist literature but had been largely abandoned under the influence of the classical Mahāyāna.

Ritually, the fundamental meditative ritual became the *sādhana*, a rite wherein the meditator visualized the buddha or divinity as before him or identical to himself, prior to performing specific activities: recitation of mantras, yoga, fire sacrifice, initiation, tantric feast, and so on. The visualization sequence most often included imagining a royal palace inside a protective sphere, and visualizing a lotus on which is placed a seed syllable (*bījamantra*), which transforms first into a symbol of the divinity and then into the divinity itself. Thus, the syllable *om* might turn into a wheel and then into the Buddha Vairocana. If the practice contained a full maṇḍala of buddhas or divinities, the meditator would perform the same act (or an abbreviated version) for each figure. Because the maṇḍala is generated or born, this meditative form is sometimes called the birthing or developing process (*utpattikrama*).

Many of the later tantras also discuss an esoteric yogic physiology, sometimes called the *vajra*-body, in which the body contains psychic ganglia that may be represented in the form of wheels (*cakra*) or other arrangement. Generally, they contain the letters of the Sanskrit alphabet, the vowels (*āli*) and consonants (*kāli*), in one or another of many specified combinations.

Connecting the ganglia are channels (*nāḍi*) through which flows karmic winds (*karmavāyu*) that are closely involved with the physiological and psychological processes. The letters and winds may also be posited as being the internal representations of external phenomena, so that the meditator's perceptions are a result of the karmic relationship between the microcosm and macrocosm. The channels include a central channel and a left and right channel, eventually branching out into seventy-two thousand subsidiary channels that reach all areas of the body. In different visualizations, often called the perfecting process (*sampannakrama*), the meditator may imagine a flame below the navel or various lights in the wheels or employ a female sexual partner as a physical aid to harness the psychophysical process. By manipulating the winds that control his psychic processes, the meditator seeks eventually to drive these winds into some area of the central channel, an act that is said to transform the psychophysical winds into the gnostic wind (*jñānavāyu*). As the process is accomplished, a series of visions emerges, ending in an awareness of the illusory nature of interior and exterior phenomena, with all forms finally resolving into the clear light of ultimate reality.

### Central Asia and Tibet

Tantric Buddhism became quickly popular in the areas immediately contiguous to Northern India—Burma, Nepal, Tibet, Nanzhao—and spread into Central Asia and China. Tantric works were eventually translated into the Central Asian languages of Khotanese, Uighur, Tangut, and Mongolian, but TIBET became the most important area of tantric development. Three of the four major Tibetan orders—SA SKYA (SAKYA)-pa, BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU)-pa, and Dga' ldan-pa (Gandenpa)—maintained a more or less conservative approach, following closely the later Indian tantras and other Indian scriptures translated in the astonishing efforts of the eighth through the fifteenth centuries.

The RNYING MA (NYINGMA)-pa order, however, continued the Indian culture of scriptural composition rather than the simply the conservation of received Indian works. As a result, the production of tantras in Buddhist Tibet equaled or exceeded the number and volume produced in Buddhist India, and these Tibetan works were collected together with a few important Indian tantras into the *Rnying ma rgyud 'bum* (*Old Tantric Canon*), beginning in the eleventh century. Most of these texts claim translation from a non-Tibetan source: from Oḍiyāna, Brusha, India, or



Hayagrīva, a Buddhist wrathful deity, shown with his consort. (Tibetan sculpture, bronze, eighteenth century.) The Art Archive/Musée Guimet Paris/Dagli Orti. Reproduced by permission.

the realm of the goddesses. Many are revealed in the process of the treasure (*gterma*) phenomenon in Tibet and are said to have been buried physically or spiritually on Tibetan soil by important saints of the eighth- to ninth-century royal dynastic period of Tibetan history.

While the content of many of the works is only beginning to be explored, our catalogues classify the *Old Tantric Canon* into the standard fourfold division accepted by most Tibetans (*kriyā*, etc.), with the difference that the Highest Yoga tantras are further divided into three: *mahāyoga*, *anuyoga*, and *atiyoga*. Generally, it is considered that the first two correspond in content to the division of Indian tantras into *mahāyoga* and *yoginī-tantras* (while the texts themselves are mostly different) but the *atiyoga* category is understood to be a Rnying ma category, even though the term was used in India to describe a stage of meditative ritual. In Rnying ma parlance, *atiyoga* is generally

equated with the Great Perfection (*rdzogs chen*) and its literature is subdivided into three further varieties: the mental class (*sems sde*), the expanse class (*klong sde*), and the seminal drop class (*snying thig sde*). The first of these (mental class) appears to have evolved from the doctrines concerning the mind of awakening (*bodhicitta*), an important development in seventh- to eighth-century India based on an earlier Mahāyānist idea. The second and third classes, however, are Rnying ma contributions and represent in some sense the flowering of indigenous Tibetan spirituality, although they build on Indian ideas and practices. *Atiyoga* tantras are also qualitatively different from Indian works by their increased emphasis on doctrinal and philosophical expressions rather than performative ritual systems, so that they constitute some of the more interesting expressions of Buddhist ideology.

### East Asia

The question of the existence and role of tantra in East Asia has provoked considerable disagreement. While the dissemination of South Asian texts, rituals, and ideas that may be designated as tantric was a major factor in the cultural milieu of China, Korea, and Japan from the eighth century onward, these developments were usually understood as new discursive and ritual extensions of the Mahāyāna. A survey of the Japanese *Bukkyō daijiten* (*Encyclopedia of Buddhism*) and the *Mikkyō daijiten* (*Encyclopedia of the Esoteric Teachings*) yields almost no references to tantra and the phrase “great teaching king” (*da jiao wang*) that sometimes served as a translation of *mahātantrarāja* is rare and occurs mostly in titles of a few Song dynasty (960–1279) translators. The scarcity of the designation is not merely an effect of an ideological rejection of later tantras, such as the *Hevajra*, by Japanese Shingon orthodoxy. Rather, the absence of a transliterated form of the term *tantra* in the context of assiduous transliteration of mantras and dhāraṇīs into Chinese underscores the irrelevance of the term throughout most of East Asia. While *tantra* is missing, *mantra*, *dhāraṇī*, *siddhi*, *abhiṣeka*, *homa*, *āveśa* (induced trance), and so on are well attested both in transliterated and translated forms.

Rather than either trying to apply a South Asian label that East Asians ignored or trying to measure Chinese and Korean religious history by the yardstick of Japanese sectarian developments, we do better asking a different set of questions, questions guided by the vocabulary that is present: Where do the ideas, discourses, pantheon, practices, and texts of South Asian

tantra appear in East Asia? Who circulates them and what are the conditions of their reproduction, assimilation, and transformation?

A variety of tantras were quickly translated or summarized in Chinese. By the mid-eighth century the *Susiddhikara*, the *Vairocanābhīṣambodhi*, the *Sarvathāgatattvasaṃgraha*, and the *Subāhupariṣcchā* had been translated, and we have evidence that the *Guhya-samāja* was known. So too, by the mid-eighth century, rituals to evoke or propitiate deities as diverse as Mārīcī, the lords of the Great Dipper, Buddhōṣṇīṣa, and the various *vidyārājas* had spread as far as Japan. By the end of the tenth century a version of the *Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa* and a complete version of the *Sarvathāgatattvasaṃgraha* had been translated into Chinese. By the twelfth century the full range of tantra, ritual manuals, and associated paraphernalia were available.

As in South Asia, in East Asia we find certain distinctive metaphors and practices connected with the circulation and assimilation of these texts. These include the pervasive use of the maṇḍala as an organizing principle and with it, its South Asian derived metaphors of sovereignty, unlimited power or *siddhi* (both for mundane and soteriological purposes), the notion of mantra, and rites of immolation (including those for pacification, increase of fortune, subjugation, and destruction), initiation, trance, and notions of secrecy. In the broadest sense, what we are dealing with is the afterlife of South Asian originated or inspired iconic discourses and ritual technologies for producing and manipulating the divine and the demonic in tangible form. In practice this adaptation of South Asian forms can range from the consecration of images to the induction of trance through possession, to the assumption of divine identity by the adept. The often trumpeted transgressiveness of tantra is a direct function of its core metaphors of kingship, its assertion of unlimited sovereignty, and the particular social locations of its practitioners. Thus, in East Asia the court was the natural locus of these systems. When located outside the court, “tantra” manifested in the pseudo KINGSHIP of siddhas and the occult.

### China and Korea

The signature South Asian characteristic of tantra—its extensive application of the kingship metaphor deployed in maṇḍala and enacted in ritual—made it at once a possible threat to the Chinese imperial establishment and then a valued form of legitimation. Thus, the Indian missionary Śubhākarasiṃha (637–735) was

initially treated with suspicion by emperor Xuanzong (r. 712–756). He was placed under house arrest, and his Sanskrit texts were impounded. But it soon became clear that the new teachings came along with considerable advances in mathematics and particularly calendrical astronomy, areas that were central to imperial ideology. The polymath monk Yixing (673–727) was assigned to spy on Śubhākarasiṃha, as much as to help him in his work of translation and dissemination of the *Vairocanābhisambodhi* and other mantra (Chinese, *zhenyan*) teachings, including the *Subāhupariṣcchā*. A few years later in 720 C.E. the monk Vajrabodhi (671–741) arrived in the Chinese capital Chang’an (possibly from Śrīvijaya) and soon he and his chief disciple Amoghavajra (705–774) were, if not embraced by the court, at least given permission to translate texts and to take on disciples in exchange for performing ritual duties for the imperial house. Amoghavajra proved himself a valuable ally to the imperial house during the chaos of the An Lushan rebellion (755–763) and he gave emperor Suzong (r. 756–762) abhiṣeka as a cakravartin or world-ruling king. Under Suzong and then under his successor Daizong (r. 762–779), Amoghavajra and his disciples articulated an ideology of dual rulership with the cakravartin supported by his ācārya (religious preceptor) in a pattern remarkably similar to that found in South Asia. Amoghavajra not only produced translations of tantras and ritual manuals, but he also produced updated versions of some Mahāyāna texts, bringing their language into line with the latest esoteric or mantra discourses by adding dhāraṇī and ritual commentaries. The most prominent of these texts was the Chinese RENWANG JING (HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA), a scripture that melded traditional Chinese and Buddhist notions of rulership. Under Amoghavajra’s tutelage the teachings associated with the *Sarvatathāgatattvasaṃgraha* permeated much of the court, the military, and many imperial institutions. A ritual arena for *homa* and other practices was established in the imperial compound. Mañjuśrī replaced Piṇḍola in monastic refectories, large numbers of “tantric” ritual manuals were translated, and permanent altars for *homa* and abhiṣeka were constructed. Thematically speaking, Amoghavajra’s Buddhism was, to borrow the Korean phrase, “State Protection Buddhism,” and its most developed ritual dimensions concerned propping up the imperial house, ensuring the health of the emperor, giving succor to its ANCESTORS, helping to keep meteorological and cosmic portents favorable, and generally esoterizing monastic establishments that were imperially

funded. Although Daizong’s successor Dezong (r. 779–805) initially severed lavish patronage to the mantra teachings, he later reversed his decision and supported the last of the great South Asian translators of the Tang, the monk Prajña (734–806?).

Imperial patronage henceforth was spotty. During the early Song dynasty the last group of great South Asian translators, Dharmapāla (963–1058), Dānapāla (fl. tenth century), and Fatian (d. 1001) produced more complete versions of the *Sarvatathāgatattvasaṃgraha*, a version of the *Guhyasamāja*, and a translation of the *Śrīvajraṃḍalāṃkāramahātantrārāja*. Patronage was, however, sporadic until the Mongols (Yuan dynasty, 1234–1368) and even later Ming (1368–1644) and Qing dynasty (1644–1911) patronage of Tibetan VAJRAYĀNA. Severed from the court and bereft of its natural metaphoric locale at the actual center of power, various elements of the system merged back into the stream of late Mahāyāna while others were simply rolled into Vajrayāna from Tibet. Indeed, the ritual technology associated with these teachings, especially that promising various forms of *siddhi* and connected with *homa* and *āveśa*, had an impact not only on the Mahāyāna in China, but also on Daoism and on local religious traditions. Perhaps more than all the divinities and complex ritual, Chinese traditions—Buddhist and non-Buddhist alike—found the ideology of hiddenness and the aura of the esoteric power of mantra most appealing. The idea of mantra had already been circulating from the second century onward and served as a model for the Brahmā-language of Daoist scripture. An exclusive focus on the short-lived presence of a sectarian tantric or esoteric “school” misses the point entirely. By the twelfth century there were esoteric CHAN SCHOOL transmissions, rites deriving directly from the tantras in use in PURE LAND SCHOOL circles and more generally for the salvation of the dead (the *shishi* or “distribution” of food to ghosts and the elaborate *shuilu* or Land and Water Masses). Popular accounts of the ācāryas celebrated their wielding of *siddhi* in a manner not unlike tales of siddhas found in South Asia and Tibet.

While a polity inspired by and enacted according to the *Sarvatathāgatattvasaṃgraha* was made an actuality for some twenty-five years in China, we have no solid evidence that the teaching garnered full institutional support in Korea either under the Silla (668–935) or Koryō (918–1392) periods. Although the SAMGUK YUSA (MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS) mentions two esoteric “sects” under the Koryō (Ch’ongji or Dhāraṇī school and the Sinin or Mudra school) the

reliability of this source is questionable and there is no independent evidence of sectarian “schools.” We know of a number of prominent Korean monks who studied with famous Chinese ācāryas—Pulgasūi (d.u.) with Śubhākarasiṃha, Hyech’o (fl. eighth century) with Amoghavajra, Hyeil (d.u.) and Ojin (d.u.) with Amoghavajra’s disciple Huiguo (?–805)—and it appears that they brought full range of mantra teachings and ritual technology to the peninsula. The first edition of the Korean Tripiṭaka (produced 1029–1089 C.E.) contains the works of the Tang ācāryas as well as those of the Song ācāryas, and we have to assume that there was a ready market for these works among the Korean aristocracy. Apparently the mantra teachings were incorporated into Koryō Buddhism much as they had been into Tang and Song Buddhism, as new mantric ritual extensions of the Mahāyāna with new pantheons. While a full sectarian identity for the mantra teachings in the Silla and Koryō periods is suspect, we do have ample evidence of the spread of rituals in court circles. These included rites to Mārīcī, Mahāmāyūrī Vidyārājñī, Buddhōṣṇīṣa, Yamāntaka, and rites originating in the Tang and Song dynasties, including Land and Water Masses and rituals for protection of the state connected with the *Humane Kings Sūtra* and the *SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA*. As was the case in China, the rise of the Mongols and their influence over the Korean peninsula brought Tibetan LAMAS and the performance of Vajrayāna rituals to the court in the late thirteenth century. This presence, however, was fleeting.

### Japan

Although we tend to equate the arrival of the tantras in Japan with KŪKAI (774–835) and Shingon, this is not wholly accurate. Indeed, Kūkai himself read the *Vairocanābhisambodhi* before he traveled to China and there is considerable evidence that teachings, texts, and ritual technology originating in South Asia had spread to Japan by the mid-eighth century and were known and in use in both monastic and *hijiri* (mountain ascetic) circles. The standard story of the foundation of the Shingon school by Kūkai on his return from the Tang court in 805 and the parallel esoterizing of the Tendai sect by SAICHŌ (767–822) that resulted in what later exegetes would dub Tōmitsu and Taimitsu, respectively, have recently come under scrutiny and have been shown to be, especially in the case of Kūkai and Shingon, a pious and anachronistic simplification. As was the case for Amoghavajra, Kūkai saw himself as introducing a distinctive inner teaching and a method of discourse and interpretation that extended

and completed the Mahāyāna, and much of his work was aimed at and eventually embraced by the established Nara schools. It now appears that the synthesis of a system framed by two maṇḍalas drawn respectively from the *Vairocanābhisambodhi* and the *Sarvathāgatātattvasaṃgraha* was in large part Kūkai’s articulation of possibilities present but not expressed in the work of his Chinese teachers. Basing their system on these two texts Shingon apologists distinguish their Esoteric Buddhism (Mikkyō) from the corpus of texts described in the Vajrayāna as *anuttarayoga-tantra*. Accordingly they see their “pure” esoterism as untainted by influences originating in Śaivite Hinduism. One of Kūkai’s most interesting innovations was his insistence that the esoteric teachings were preached directly by the Dharmakāya Buddha (the transcendent body of the Buddha).

But the sectarian history of Shingon and Tendai esoteric Buddhism does not fully capture the effect of the mantra teachings on Japanese culture. Scholars speak of the esoterizing of medieval Japanese culture and some of the most important effects of the tantras in Japan occurred in spite of Shingon’s existence as a religious institution. For instance, Kakuban (1095–1143) explored the relationship between Shingon and Shintō, between Mahāvairocana, the great Sun Buddha, AMITĀBHA, and Amaterasu, the solar goddess progenitor of the imperial clan. Others explicated Pure Land and Zen in terms of the esoteric teachings. Mantras and dhāraṇīs spread through the culture and language, as did deities (Acala *vidyārāja*, for instance), and practices (*homa*). Antinomian tendencies surfaced in the so-called Tachikawa heresy with its promise of various *siddhi* and its employment of sexual techniques and skull rituals reminiscent of the Kāpālikas, and in the Pure Land/esoteric fusion of the “Secret Nenbutsu” (*himitsu nenbutsu*), which equated sexual action to the intake of breath and the chanting of the Buddha’s name. The emergence of Ryōbu Shintō, a tradition that synthesized esoteric and indigenous traditions, is further evidence of the impact of the mantra teachings on medieval Japan. Perhaps the most important influence of the mantra teachings cannot be documented in a cause/effect fashion. It is nonetheless clear that the idea of mantra, of the *bīja* syllables (they adorn cemeteries and can be found on *homa* sticks in modern temples), were likely the inspiration for the *hiragana* syllabary.

See also: Mijiao (Esoteric) School; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Tiantai School

**Bibliography**

- Abé Ryūichi. *The Weaving of Mantra: Kūkai and the Construction of Esoteric Buddhist Discourse*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Achard, Jean-Luc. *L'essence perlée du secret: Recherches philologiques et historiques sur l'origine de la Grande Perfection dans la tradition rNying ma pa*. Turnhout, Belgium: Prepols Publishers, 1999.
- Bailey, H. W. "Vajrayāna Texts from Gostana." In *Studies of Esoteric Buddhism and Tantrism*. Koyasan, Japan: Koyasan University, 1965.
- Chou I-liang. "Tantrism in China." *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 8 (1945): 241–332.
- Davidson, Ronald M. *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.
- Davidson, Ronald M. "Reframing Sahaja: Genre, Representation, Ritual, and Lineage." *Journal of Indian Philosophy* 30 (2002): 45–83.
- Faure, Bernard. "Japanese Tantra, the Tachikawa-ryū, and Ryōbu Shintō." In *Tantra in Practice*, ed. David G. White. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2000.
- Hakeda, Yoshito S., trans. and ed. *Kūkai: Major Works*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1972.
- Jong, J. W. de. "A New History of Tantric Literature in India." *Acta Indologica* (Naratasan Shinshoji) 6 (1984): 91–113.
- Kiyota, Minoru. *Shingon Buddhism*. Tokyo and Los Angeles: Buddhist Books International, 1978.
- Lessing, Ferdinand D., and Wayman, Alex, trans. *Mkhas Grub Rje's Fundamentals of the Buddhist Traditions*. The Hague and Paris: Mouton, 1968.
- Namai, Chishō Mamoru. "On Bodhicittabhāvanā in the Esoteric Buddhist Tradition." In *Tibetan Studies—Proceedings of the 7<sup>th</sup> Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Graz 1995*, ed. Helmut Krasser et al. Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1997.
- Nihom, Max. *Studies in Indian and Indo-Indonesian Tantrism: The Kuñjarakarṇadharmakathana and the Yogatantra*. Vienna: Institute of Indology, University of Vienna, 1994.
- Orzech, Charles D. *Politics and Transcendent Wisdom: The Scripture for Humane Kings in the Creation of Chinese Buddhism*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1998.
- Przyłuski, Jean. "Les Vidyārāja: Contribution à l'histoire de la magie dans les sects mahayanistes." *Bulletin d'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 23 (Hanoi, 1924): 301–318.
- Regamey, Constantin. "Motifs vichnouites et śivaites dans le Kāraṇḍavyūha." In *Études tibétaines dédiées à la mémoire de Marcelle Lalou*. Paris: Librairie d'Amérique et d'Orient, 1971.
- Sanford, James H. "The Abominable Tachikawa Skull Ritual." *Monumenta Nipponica* 46, no. 1 (1991): 1–15.
- Smith, E. Gene. *Among Tibetan Texts: History and Literature of the Himalayan Plateau*. Boston: Wisdom, 2001.
- Snellgrove, David L. "The Notion of Divine Kingship in Tantric Buddhism." *The Sacral Kingship: Contributions to the Central Theme of the Eighth International Congress for the History of Religions*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1959.
- Snellgrove, David L. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhism and Their Tibetan Successors*, 2 vols. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.
- Sørensen, Henrik H. "Esoteric Buddhism in Korea." In *The Esoteric Buddhist Tradition*, ed. Henrik H. Sørensen. Copenhagen and Aarhus, Denmark: Seminar for Buddhist Studies, 1994.
- Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et mandarins: le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Gallimard, 1996.
- Van der Veere, Hendrik. *A Study into the Thought of Kōgyō Daishi Kakuban*. Leiden, Netherlands: Hotei, 2000.
- Wallace, Vesna A. *The Inner Kālacakrantra: A Buddhist Tantric View of the Individual*. Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Wayman, Alex. *Yoga of the Guhyasamājatantra: The Arcane Lore of Forty Verses*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1977.

RONALD M. DAVIDSON  
CHARLES D. ORZECZ

---

TAOISM. See Daoism and Buddhism

**TATHĀGATA**

*Tathāgata* is the epithet used by the Buddha in referring to himself. In Sanskrit and Pāli, it can mean either "Thus-Gone-One" (*tathā-gata*) or "Thus-Come-One" (*tathā-āgata*). In translating the term, Tibetans generally opted for the former meaning, and East Asians for the latter. In either case, the implication is that the Buddha has come (or gone) in the same manner as his predecessors, the buddhas of the past.

See also: **Buddhahood and Buddha Bodies**

JOHN S. STRONG

**TATHĀGATAGARBHA**

The tathāgatagarbha ("matrix," "seed," or "treasure-store of the Tathāgata") is a MAHĀYĀNA Buddhist doctrine expressing the conviction that all beings have

within themselves the virtues and wisdom of the TATHĀGATA (buddha), but that these are hidden by a covering of defilements (*kleśakośa*). The third-century scripture, the *Tathāgatagarbha-sūtra*, introduced the doctrine and illustrated it with nine similes based on the different meanings of the word *garbha*, such as womb, store, calyx, husk, and seed. The tathāgatagarbha is likened to a buddha hidden in the calyx of a flower; to a noble son hidden in the womb of a vile, ugly woman; to a seed hidden in a useless husk; and to a store of treasure hidden beneath a poor man's house. The compound therefore permits a wide range of legitimate translations including matrix, womb, embryo, germ, and treasure-store of the Tathāgata. Originally, the term *tathāgatagarbha* seems to have referred to beings themselves, who are *tathāgatagarbhas*, or “harborers of the Tathāgata.”

The concept was developed further in later writings like the *Śrīmālādevī-sūtra* (*Discourse of Queen Śrīmālā*), where the term refers to an inner potential that enables beings to become buddhas. Were it not for the tathāgatagarbha, this sūtra states, beings would be unable to feel aversion for suffering or to seek NIRVĀṆA. The sūtra identifies the tathāgatagarbha as the dharmakāya of the buddha, which pervades all beings. The dharmakāya is said to have the four perfections (*guṇa-pāramitās*) of eternity, bliss, self, and purity, an assertion that has led some to question whether the tathāgatagarbha teaching might expound a form of Hindu monism, in which case it might contradict such fundamental Buddhist doctrines as ANITYA (IMPERMANENCE), ANĀTMAN/ĀTMAN (NO-SELF/SELF), and DUḤKHA (SUFFERING).

A closely related concept to the tathāgatagarbha is the *buddhadhātu*, usually translated as “buddha-nature,” a term first used in the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA with the famous phrase “all beings possess buddha-nature.” Like the tathāgatagarbha, it expresses the Mahāyāna conviction that all beings have the potential for buddhahood.

The only Indian Buddhist treatise devoted to the tathāgatagarbha is the fifth-century *Ratnagotravibhāga* (Chinese, *Baoxing fenbie dacheng jiuqing yaoyi lun; Analysis of the Source of the [Buddha] Jewel*). The *Ratnagotravibhāga* identified the tathāgatagarbha as “thusness mingled with pollution” (*samālā tathatā*), whereas the dharmakāya is identified as “thusness apart from pollution” (*nirmalā tathatā*). *Thusness* means supreme truth apprehended by nondiscriminating wisdom. The MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL understood *thusness* to mean the emptiness of all dharmas, but the *Ratnagotravi-*

*bhāga* insisted that while the tathāgatagarbha is empty of *kleśas*, it is not empty of the virtues of the buddha, “which are more numerous than the sands of the Ganges.” This assertion that something is ultimately “not empty” is also found in several YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL texts. Additionally, the *Ratnagotravibhāga* uses traditional Yogācāra categories for analysis, which further suggests possible ties to the Yogācāra school.

A central teaching of the *Ratnagotravibhāga*, derived from the *Jñānālokāṅkāra-sūtra* (*Discourse on the Ornamentation of Wisdom*), is that nirvāṇa, the noble truth of the cessation of suffering, ought to be understood as the nonorigination, rather than the extinguishing, of suffering and illusion. The mind is pure by nature, and suffering arises only when irrational thought (*ayoniśomanaskāra*) originates illusions, attachments, and cravings. One who has reached the truth does not give rise to illusions. The expression “cessation of suffering” refers to the dharmakāya of the Tathāgata, which is unborn and unproduced. Because all beings have the dharmakāya within them, they have the capacity not to originate suffering.

The tathāgatagarbha teaching was far more popular in East Asia than in India or Tibet. In India no school was organized around the tathāgatagarbha teaching, and in Tibet, only the Jo nang pa centered itself on the tathāgatagarbha teaching. But the *Ratnagotravibhāga* and the sūtras expounding the tathāgatagarbha were translated into Chinese shortly after their composition, and heavily influenced important Chinese treatises like the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN). An extensive debate over the buddha-nature of the ICCHANTIKA (the worst of beings), provoked further interest in the doctrine. The tathāgatagarbha teaching was accorded the highest place in the doctrinal classification schemes of such notable HUAYAN SCHOOL figures as FAZANG and ZONGMI (780–841), and became a focal point of both Tiantai and Chan school teachings.

*See also:* Ālayavijñāna; Bodhicitta (Thought of Awakening); Chan School; Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō); Tiantai School

### Bibliography

- Brown, Brian Edward. *The Buddha Nature: A Study of the Tathāgatagarbha and Ālayavijñāna*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1991.
- Gregory, Peter N. “Chinese Buddhist Hermeneutics: The Case of Hua-yen.” *Journal of the American Academy of Religion* 51, no. 2 (1983): 231–249.



Grosnick, William H. "Nonorigination and Nirvāṇa in the Early Tathāgatagarbha Literature." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 4, no. 2 (1981): 33–43.

Ruegg, David Seyfort. *La théorie du tathāgatagarbha et du gotra: Études sur la sotériologie et la gnoséologie du bouddhisme*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1969.

Takasaki, Jikido. *A Study on the Ratnagotravibhāga (Uttaratantra), Being a Treatise on the Tathāgatagarbha Theory of Mahāyāna Buddhism*. Rome: Istituto italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1966.

Wayman, Alex, and Wayman, Hideko, eds. *The Lion's Roar of Queen Śrīmālā: A Buddhist Scripture on the Tathāgatagarbha Theory*, tr. Alex Wayman and Hideko Wayman. New York: Columbia University Press, 1974.

WILLIAM H. GROSNICK

TEMPLE. *See* Monastic Architecture; Monasticism

## TEMPLE SYSTEM IN JAPAN

The Japanese Buddhist temple system was established through legal decrees by the Tokugawa government (1603–1868) as a method to maintain secular control over Buddhist institutions. Overseen by the government's Office of Temples and Shrines, this administrative system involved a head-and-branch temple (*honmatsu*) organization. Each Buddhist sect designated a headquarters temple, which was approved by the government. With the headquarters temple at the top, all the sect's temples in Japan were linked through a hierarchical network. With links originally formed between teachers' (head temples) and disciples' temples (branch temples), a head temple often had a number of affiliated lineage branch temples. These linkages between generations of temples formed the basis for the concept that a particular temple was hierarchically superior to another.

Under the Tokugawa regime, informal lineage-based ties became formalized, and even temples that had no lineage ties were sometimes arbitrarily placed in head-and-branch relationships. This system consolidated sectarian hierarchies for all Buddhist temples by the early eighteenth century as the government perfected its control over Buddhist institutions. While the system developed out of a secular need for control, it also served each sect to establish organizational sectarian structures that persist into the modern period.

*See also:* Japan

## Bibliography

Nosco, Peter. "Keeping the Faith: Bakuhan Policy towards Religions in Seventeenth-Century Japan." In *Religion in Japan: Arrows to Heaven and Earth*, ed. Peter Kornicki and Ian McMullen. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1996.

Williams, Duncan. "Representations of Zen: A Social and Institutional History of Sōtō Zen Buddhism in Edo Japan." Ph.D. diss. Harvard University, 2000.

DUNCAN WILLIAMS

TENDAI SCHOOL. *See* Tiantai School

## THAI, BUDDHIST LITERATURE IN

Thai, the national language of Thailand, is closely related to Lao, the national language of neighboring LAOS, as well as the Shan language of northern Burma (MYANMAR) and several other languages and dialects in northern VIETNAM and southern CHINA. Together, they comprise the Tai language family. Approximately half of the more than sixty million residents of Thailand speak Thai as their mother tongue. Thai, and all Tai languages, are tonal languages in which a change of syllable tone results in a change of meaning.

The origin of the Thai script is credited to King Ramkhamhaeng the Great of Sukhothai and an inscription that dates from the latter part of the thirteenth century. While there is some debate about the authenticity of this inscription, it is generally held to be the first written evidence of the strong presence of Buddhism in Siam or Thailand. The Thai definition of literature is far reaching, and this inscription, which reads like a nation's constitution, is also viewed as a seminal piece of Buddhist literature. In it, the king states that he gives alms to the Mahāthera Saṅgharāja, a wise monk who has studied the Buddhist Pāli CANON (Tipiṭaka) from beginning to end (and who also likely came from Sri Lanka). The king also mentions that paying proper tribute to a divine spirit residing at a local mountain helps to ensure the prosperity of the kingdom. This blend of Buddhist practice and animistic elements continues to be characteristic of the Thai worldview.

The Thai imagination is most active in a work attributed to Phya Lithai, *Trai Phum Phra Ruang* (*The*

*Three Worlds of King Ruang*, 1345). Based on Buddhist canonical texts, local legends, and dreams, this detailed, full-blown COSMOLOGY serves as a road map to various HEAVENS and HELLS and the perils of lives lived at all levels of existence. In this work, gaps in Buddhist texts are filled in with speculation about the creation of life, while the spirit of other texts provides a springboard into rich pools of fantastic description that include falls from grace, detailed accounts of karmic consequences, and elaborated notions of a wheel-turning king whose right to rule is based on his righteousness.

One of the most enduring Thai literary works is the *Ramakian*, a uniquely Thai interpretation of the Indian epic, the *Rāmāyana*. While some people believe that the Thai version of the Rāma legend predated the establishment of the Kingdom of Sukhothai, the earliest archeological evidence for it was found in the ruins of the Kingdom of Ayudhaya, which was sacked by the Burmese in 1767. The destruction of Ayudhaya is considered one of the greatest losses of art and literature in Thai history. The longest version of the *Ramakian* was written by a group of poets in 1798 and was sponsored by the first king of the Chakri dynasty, Rāma I. Much has been written about the Indianization or Sanskritization of Southeast Asia, and the *Ramakian*, a blend of Thai legends, state rites, and Buddhist elements, stands as clear evidence of such influence.

The JĀTAKA tales, or birth stories of the Buddha, have held a prominent place in the imagination of the Thai people. Traditionally, the most popular tale describes the Buddha's penultimate life before attaining Buddhahood, that being the story of the generous Prince Vessantara (Sanskrit, VIŚVANTARA). This Job-like tale focuses on the sacrifices and merit made by Prince Vessantara. It includes demonstrations of the prince's nonattachment and giving—even the giving up of family members—in the process of demonstrating his commitment to generosity. The merit-making message of this tale is evidence of the importance of gift giving in Thai culture. Many monks continue the tradition of chanting, day and night, an elaborate version of this jātika tale in an annual event called the Thet Mahachat (Sermon of the Great Life).

A further outgrowth of gift giving takes the form of an unusual genre of literature, the cremation volume. Souvenirs are often presented to attendees at the close of cremation rites. As early as the 1870s, with the advent of printing presses in Thailand, people began to

distribute books at funerals. These volumes usually include a brief biography of the deceased; in addition, the publication of cremation volumes is a way of distributing and preserving literary, cultural, and religious information that families find meaningful. In a status-conscious society, these volumes also help to “place” people in the Thai social order. A collection of cremation volumes at Wat Bovoranives in Bangkok is cataloged according to an adaptation of the Dewey decimal system that reflects the status, ranks, and structure of Thai society.

Buddhist teachings and stories have been preserved through the strength of oral traditions and attention given to (palm leaf) manuscripts. The name of the Buddhist canon, the Tipiṭaka, presumably comes from an early filing system: putting the three parts of the canon—rules (VINAYA), teachings (*sutta*), and philosophical details (*abhidhamma*)—into separate baskets. While ideally monks should be well versed in all three of these dimensions, Buddhist tradition and subsequent curricula for monks focused on certain parts of the canon over others, making the observer often wonder which basket carries the most weight. For example, the meditative interests of forest monasteries tend to focus on texts (and biographies of local monks) dealing with such practices, while the leaders of some urban monasteries may favor other parts of the canon, including a fascination with the *abhidhamma*. The DHAMMAPADA has always been a popular text, and its inclusion in several levels of monks' Pāli exams has helped to maintain its popularity. Thai Buddhist laity are more likely to gain their knowledge of Buddhism from the influence of parents and teachers, and through listening to sermons and reading collections of proverbs, modern commentaries, or interpretations, rather than the canonical texts themselves.

Several modern figures have made major contributions to religious literature in Thailand. At the end of the nineteenth century, Prince-Patriarch Wachirayanwarorot (1860–1921, half-brother to King Chulalongkorn, Rama V) wrote a number of concise textbooks aimed at providing summaries of the important tenets of Buddhism. These texts were especially useful for people who ordained temporarily during the “rainy season retreat” (*vassa*) and they took an important place in the early curriculum for monks. BUDHDHĀSĀ Bhikkhu (1906–1993) fostered his own brave, innovative blend of Thai colloquial terms and interpretations of *dhamma* to spark more interest in Buddhist practice. His commentaries run many volumes, resembling a canon itself. In 1971 Prayudh

Payutto published the first edition of *Buddhadhamma*, a summary of major Buddhist principles, focusing especially on Buddhist notions of causality and interdependence. This major work has been expanded to over one thousand pages. And, not to be overlooked, modern Thai fiction itself is often a blend of romantic love, heroism, the life of the Buddha, and references to *jātaka* tales. While globalization refashions traditional belief, the Thai creative imagination continues to respond to modernity with its own distinctive synthesis of the past and present.

See also: **Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Thailand**

### Bibliography

- Bofman, Theodora Helene. *The Poetics of the Ramakian*. DeKalb, IL: Northern Illinois University Center for Southeast Asian Studies, 1984.
- Chamberlain, James F., ed. *The Ramkhamhaeng Controversy: Selected Papers*. Bangkok, Thailand: Siam Society, 1991.
- Olson, Grant A. "Thai Cremation Volumes: A Brief History of a Unique Genre of Literature." *Asian Folklore Studies* 51 (1992): 279–294.
- Payutto, Prayudh. *Buddhadhamma: Natural Laws and Values for Life*, tr. Grant A. Olson. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.
- Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B., trans. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Cosmology*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1982.
- Rutin, Mattani Moj dara. *Modern Thai Literature: The Process of Modernization and the Transformation of Values*. Bangkok, Thailand: Thammasat University Press, 1988.

GRANT A. OLSON

## THAILAND

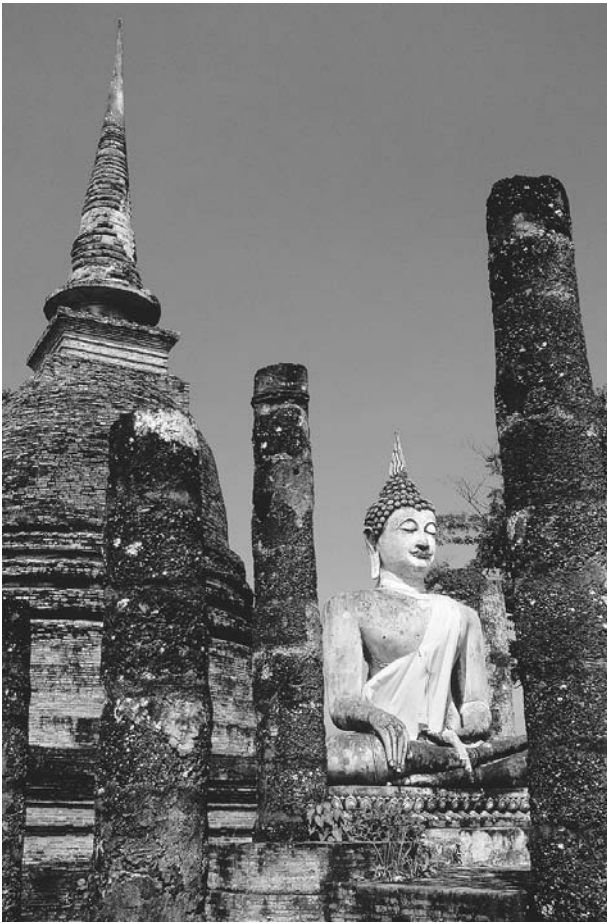
The historical origins of Buddhism in the part of mainland Southeast Asia known today as Thailand are obscure. According to popular Thai tradition, Buddhism was propagated in the region south of present-day Bangkok by the monks Sona and Uttara, who were sent to Suvaṇṇabhūmi (the golden land) by the Mauryan king AŚOKA in the third century B.C.E. According to this view, from these beginnings Buddhism of a THERAVĀDA persuasion has dominated the country. Archaeological evidence confirms a flourishing Buddhist culture among the Mon at Dvāravatī in the region of Nakhon Pathom thirty miles southwest of Bangkok as

early as the fourth century C.E., but historical evidence fails to corroborate the legend of Aśoka's emissaries. Furthermore, while both archaeological and textual evidence suggest a strong Pāli Theravāda presence among the Mon states in Thailand and lower Burma (Myanmar), the Buddhist ubiquity in the region was marked by diversity rather than uniformity. Indeed, prior to the establishment of the major Tai states of SUKHOTHAI and Chiang Mai in the thirteenth century, Buddhism in Thailand can only be characterized as eclectic. As part of the Indian cultural influence into "greater India," elements of MAHĀYĀNA, TANTRA, and MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS entered different regions of Thailand through the Mon, the expansion of the Sumatran-based Śrīvijāya kingdom into the southern peninsula, and the growing dominance of the Khmer empire in the west. These diverse Buddhist expressions, in turn, competed with Brahmanism, Hinduism, and autochthonous animisms. Rather than an organized sectarian lineage, the early religious amalgam in Thailand and other parts of Southeast Asia might be more accurately described as a syncretic collage of miraculous relics and charismatic monks, Hindu *dharmaśāstra*, Brahmanic deities, Mahāyāna buddhas, tantric practices, and Sanskrit Sarvāstivādin and Pāli Theravāda traditions.

### Syncretism and tantric Theravāda

François Bizot describes the eclectic nature of Buddhism in premodern Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia as a congruence of Vedic Brahmanism, tantrism, and a pre-Aryan Austro-Asiatic cult of guardian spirits and protective divinities. Interacting with Mon Theravāda beliefs and practices, and possibly influenced by the Mūlasarvāstivādins, it resulted in what Bizot has characterized as "Tantric Theravāda," identified with a mystical tradition known as Yogāvacara (practitioner of the spiritual discipline). The features of this tantric Theravāda, at odds with the stereotypical view of classical Theravāda, include identifying one's body with the qualities of the Buddha; the use of esoteric syllables and words (DHĀRAṆĪ, MANTRA, yantra) to represent the identity of microcosm and macrocosm; the dharmic potency of sounds and letters; and esoteric initiation for the realization of both soteriological and mundane ends (Crosby).

By the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, Tai migrations from southwest China into Thailand resulted in the establishment of several petty kingdoms, most notably Chiang Mai under King Mangrai (r. 1292–1317) and Sukhothai under King Ramkhamhaeng (r. ca.



A restored statue of the Buddha at Sukhothai, the ancient capital of Thailand, which contains many temples and monasteries, some in ruins. © Lindsay Hebbard/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

1279–1298). Somewhat earlier, the rise to power of the Sinhalese monarch Parakkama Bāhu I (r. 1153–1186) in Sri Lanka and the subsequent dominance of the Mahāvihāra monastic fraternity led to the missionary expansion of Sinhalese Theravāda into Burma and Thailand. A 1287 C.E. inscription at Sukhothai records that Ramkhamhaeng patronized monks of the Lanka order (*lankavaṃsa*), whom he invited from Nakon Sithamarāt, a Thai state located far to the south on the Gulf of Siam. Thai monks ordained in Burma and Sri Lanka brought lineages of Sinhala Theravāda to Thailand in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Under Tilokarāt (r. 1441–1487) monks of the Mahāvihāra reformist tradition at the Red Forest Monastery (Wat Pā Daeng) in Chiang Mai gained a religious and political prominence that led to a council under royal sponsorship to regularize monastic teaching and practice. Nevertheless, although Buddhism in the Thai states from Nakon Sithamarāt in the south to AYUTTHAYA in central Thailand and Chiang Mai to the north

came more under the sway of Sinhala Theravāda, it lacked the uniformity achieved with the formation of the modern nation-state around the turn of the twentieth century. Even today, Thai Buddhism is more complex and hybridized than the Pāli canon, the normative commentaries of BUDDHAGHOSA (fifth century C.E.), the Mahāvihāra *paritta* ritual handbook, and a national SAṄGHA organization created by the great Supreme Patriarch (*saṃgharāt*), Wachirayān (Vajirañāṇavarorasa, 1860–1921), would lead one to believe.

Syncretism continues to define many Thai religious practices. Temple festivals begin by invoking the guardian deities of the four quarters, zenith, and nadir. Monastic ordinations are often preceded by an elaborate spirit calling (*riak khwan*) ceremony. Yantric tattoos and magical amulets are worn by the devout to ward off danger. Offerings are made at the shrines of deities protecting mountain passes, and elaborate altars to the Hindu god Brahmā occupy a prominent place at the entrance to hotels. In Chiang Mai, northern Thais inaugurate the New Year by three sequential events: appealing to the spirit of a palladian buddha image; invoking the god, INDRA, resident in the city pillar; and sacrificing a buffalo to the spirits who guard the mountains overlooking the valley. The veneration of King Rāma V (Chulalongkorn, r. 1868–1910), which originated as a cult of his equestrian statue before the parliament building in Bangkok, has spread nationwide. And, as if to validate Bizot's theory of tantric Theravāda, Thailand's fastest-growing new Buddhist movement, Wat Thammakāi, espouses a Yogāvacara form of meditation claimed by the founder to be an ancient method rediscovered by the late abbot of Wat Paknām, a royal monastery located on Bangkok's Chao Phraya River.

### Saṅgha and state

From the time of the Tai kingdoms in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, royal patronage of monks, monasteries, and monastic lineages has characterized the relationship between Buddhism and the state. Based on inscriptional and chronicle evidence, Ishii Yoneo observes in *Saṅgha, State, and Society* (1986) that state Buddhism in the Sukhothai and Ayutthaya kingdoms included the following elements: Kings conferred ecclesiastical ranks and controlled monastic appointments; kings appointed secular officials in charge of crown-saṅgha relationships; royal patronage included donating lands as well as building royal monasteries in the capital and provinces; kings ordained as monks for a limited time as an expression of piety; and

kings helped settle saṅgha disputes. Accounts from the Thai Pāli chronicles, the *Jinakālamālīpakaraṇa* (*Sheaf of Garlands of the Epochs of the Conquerors*) and the *Cāmadevīvaṃsa* (*Legend of Queen Cāma*), link the spread of Buddhism and the legitimization of royal power with the veneration of magical BUDDHA IMAGES and relics, in particular the pallial Emerald Buddha now enshrined on the grounds of the grand palace in Bangkok.

In the *Trai Phūm Phra Ruang* (*Three Worlds According to King Ruang*), King Lithai of Sukhothai (1346/47–1368/74?) constructed a cosmological legitimization of Buddhist KINGSHIP and the state that in the Ayutthaya period (1569–1767) became a “galactic polity” through which the Ayutthayana monarchs dominated tributary states (Tambiah). It was certainly not a coincidence that when King Rāma I (r. 1782–1809) took over the reins of power at the new Thai capital in Thonburi/Bangkok after the Burmese sacked Ayutthaya in 1767, he sponsored a saṅgha council that included among its activities the production of a new edition of Lithai’s *Trai Phūm Phra Ruang*.

In the early modern period, King Mongkut (r. 1851–1868) fully personified the close relationship between Buddhism and the state. Ordained a monk for twenty-seven years before he became king (Rāma IV), he founded a new monastic order, the Thammayut (“adhering strictly to the *dhamma*”), in 1829. In 1836 Mongkut was appointed abbot of Wat Bowoniwēt monastery in Bangkok, which was to become the headquarters of the Thammayut order and the home of its monastic university, Mahāmakut, founded in 1893. Mahāchulalongkorn was established as the university for the larger Mahānikāi (great congregation) order at its Bangkok headquarters, Wat Mahathāt. Both institutions figured prominently in the development of advanced monastic education during the twentieth century.

Buddhism as a civil religion was promoted by King Wachirawut (Rāma VI, r. 1910–1925) through the promulgation of the slogan, “nation, religion [Buddhism], king,” symbolized by the country’s tricolor national flag. During the regimes of the military strongmen Sarit Thanarat and Thanom Kittikachorn, who served as prime ministers from 1959 to 1973, new government programs, the Thammacarik (Dhamma Travelers) and Thammathūt (Dhamma Emissaries) were created to enlist saṅgha participation in the government’s efforts to promote rural development, integrate

the northern hill tribes into the Thai nation state, and encourage national loyalty in the face of perceived communist threats in sensitive border areas.

The symbiotic relationship between Buddhism and the state has not been without its tensions. Although royal patronage benefited the saṅgha, the power of the state restricted its freedom and authority; hence, on occasion, monks have challenged the state. In the 1930s the northern Thai monk, Khrūbā Sīwičhai, was disciplined by the national saṅgha headquartered in Bangkok for following traditional northern Thai Buddhist practices that contravened the 1902 national saṅgha law. In the late nineteenth century, Āčhān Sao Kantasīlo and Āčhān Man Bhūridatto founded the modern forest WILDERNESS MONKS tradition. Although they remained Thammayut monks, the movement offered monks an avenue to pursue a spiritual practice freed from many of the constraints imposed by the national saṅgha. In the 1970s volatile political events saw an unprecedented left and right politicization of the saṅgha, and in what became the cause célèbre of the 1990s: Phra Bodhirak, who founded the Santi Asoka movement in the early 1970s, was defrocked because he ordained monks in defiance of government regulations.

Despite such tensions, state Buddhism has been an overriding feature of Thai history since the founding of Sukhothai and Chiang Mai. The prosperity of the saṅgha, the national system of monastic study and lay Buddhist education through both monastery and government schools, and the important place Buddhism holds in Thai culture and society has come about through the encouragement and patronage of the state. Thailand has a national saṅgha organization first enacted in 1902 during the reign of Rāma V. Its current form, set into law by the 1962 saṅgha ordinance, places a *saṅgharāja* (saṅgha king) and an appointed council at the head of a hierarchical structure organized into regions, provinces, districts, and subdistricts.

A standardized monastic curriculum was developed by Supreme Patriarch Wachirayān, an accomplished Pāli scholar in his own right and author of numerous books still in use throughout the nearly thirty thousand monasteries nationwide. The curriculum is divided into general Buddhist studies (*naktham*) and training in Pāli language. The three levels of Buddhist study include Buddhist doctrine, Buddhist history, the life of the Buddha and his most famous disciples, monastic discipline (VINAYA), and Buddhist rituals and ceremonies. The formal study of Pāli in Thailand

began in the Ayutthaya period, although the system of nine grades or levels dates from the reign of Rāma II (1809–1824). Over the years its content has changed; today it includes study of Wachirayān's Pāli grammar, the DHAMMAPADA commentary, BUDDHAGHOSA's commentary on the vinaya and *Visuddhimagga* (*Path to Purification*), as well as study of the *abhidhamma* and the commentary on the *Maṅgala-sutta* (*Maṅgalatthadīpanī*) written in 1525 C.E. by Si-rimaṅgala, northern Thailand's greatest Pāli scholar.

### Buddhism and Thai society

In times past it was said that to be Thai was to be Buddhist. Although the place of Buddhism as the linchpin of Thai identity has eroded due to the onslaught of globalization and rapid social change, the great majority of Thais still find Buddhism to be a locus of personal meaning and community identity. The Buddhist worldview continues to inform the lives of both urban and rural Thais: the transformative ideal of NIRVĀṆA; the natural law of cause and effect and its consequentialist ethic based on KARMA (ACTION) and REBIRTH; the values of generosity and hospitality; the ideals of equanimity, compassion, and nonviolence; the merit-making exchange that binds monk and laity together in a relationship of mutual reciprocity; and attitudes toward social hierarchy and gender.

These principles and values continue to be enacted in social relationships, including the ways in which children relate to parents, younger people to older people, and men to women. The rituals that define a life passage from birth to death and the festivals that mark a similar passage of the year, in the past tied more obviously to seasonal change and an agriculture calendar, have not disappeared even though they are attenuated in urban settings. Scores of young men still ordain annually as novice monks for a brief period, perhaps during a summer vacation rather than the traditional three-month rains-retreat from mid-July to mid-October. Temporary ordination has been the norm in Thailand for centuries, a very small percentage deciding to remain in the monkhood for a lifetime.

According to traditional lore, spending a few months as a monk "ripens" a young man and prepares him for responsible family and community life after he disrobes. Furthermore, ORDINATION not only functions as a male rite of passage into adulthood, it accrues special merit for one's parents, especially one's mother. Girls participate only as onlookers, unlike Burmese custom where both boys and girls are in-

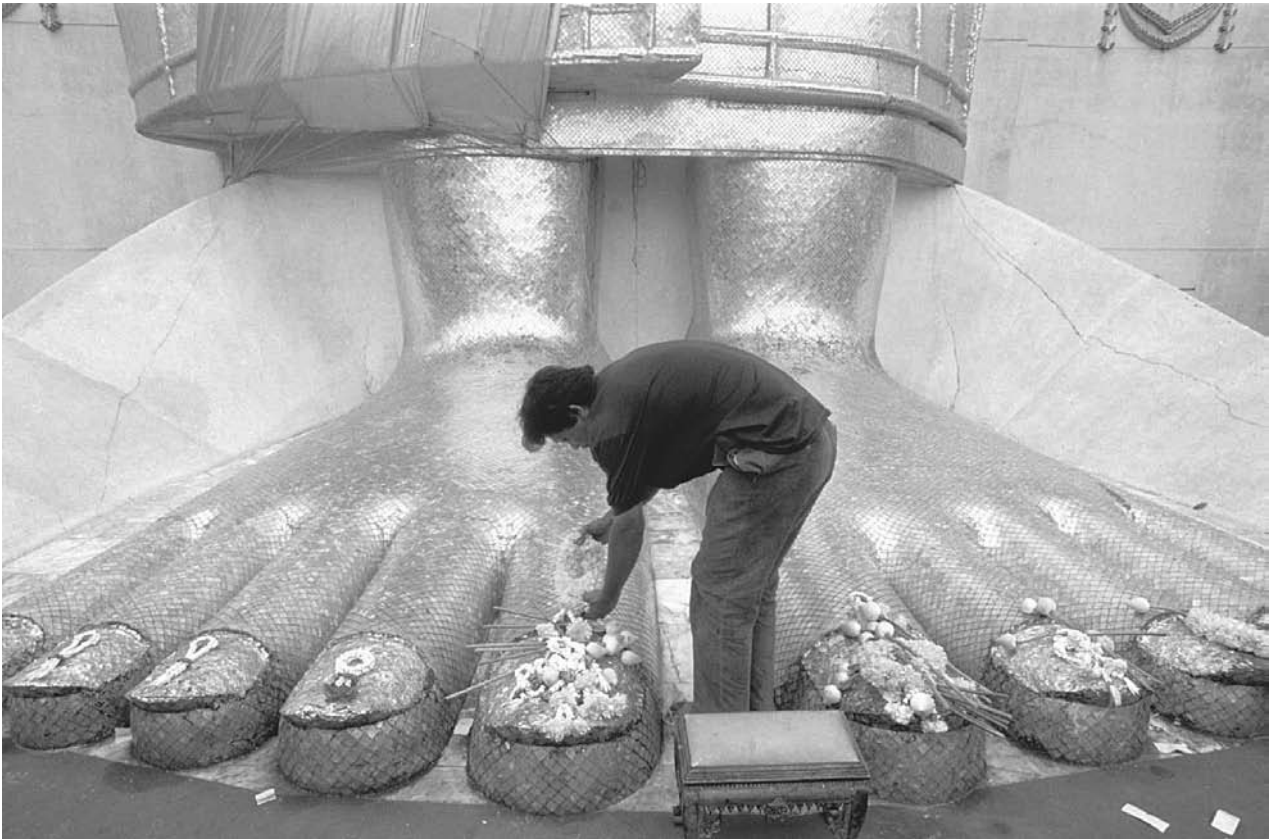
cluded in *shinbyu* ceremonies that end in temporary ordination for males and ear-boring for females. Anthropologists speculate that prostitution may have a perverse tie to the ideology of merit-making in Thailand. Since there is no women's saṅgha, females are denied the male opportunity to make merit for their parents; they can, however, help prevent their parents from falling into penury by supporting them from money earned as prostitutes (Muecke).

Other rites of passage continue to be observed in Thailand, often incorporating beliefs and practices more animistic than Buddhist. Life transitions of all kinds may be marked by spirit-calling rites (*pithī riak khwan*), and illness or other personal and community crises are occasions for life-extension (*sū'p'chātā*) rituals. Monks will be invited to conduct protective rituals (*suat mōn/tham yan*) for a new home, building, or business, and funerals at monasteries and in homes are such important ritual occasions that a unique chant style was developed for these occasions.

Annual festivals continue to serve as events where both men and women, young and old, experience a sense of belonging to a local community and a nation. For some, such as the Thai New Year celebrated at the end of April before the May monsoon rains, commercialism nearly overwhelms traditional practices. However, the old customs of paying respect to elders, building sand "mountains" (*chēdī*) on the monastery grounds, and lustrating Buddha images and relics endure. The annual preaching of the *Vessantara-jātaka* (*thēt mahāchāt*) in November has given way to movies, video, and rock concerts, but the Festival of the Floating Boats (*loi kratong*) held during the same month survives in altered form, with the traditional banana-leaf rafts floated on ponds, lakes, and rivers replaced by Styrofoam boats. Visākhā Pūjā, a celebration of the Buddha's birth, enlightenment, and death, and the beginning and end of the monastic rains-retreat endure not only as opportunities to make merit for the benefit of one's self and extended family both living and dead, but as an affirmation of one's identity as a Thai Buddhist.

### Buddhism and the twenty-first century

To retain a continuing relevance to changing circumstances and conditions, religious traditions themselves must change. The Thailand of today differs vastly from the Tai kingdoms of the fourteenth century and also from the state Buddhism promoted by King Chulalongkorn and Supreme Patriarch Wachirayān in the early twentieth. Buddhism in Thailand today is marked



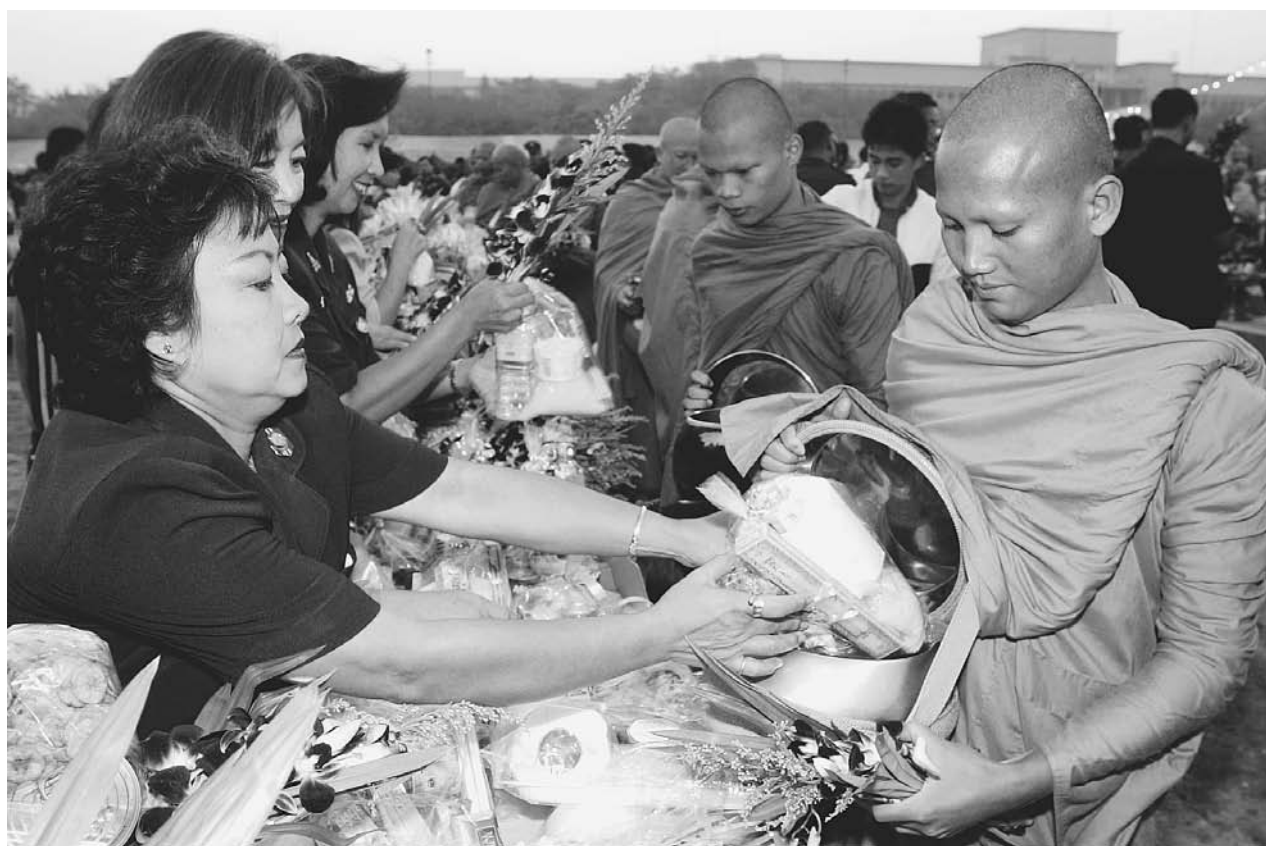
A Thai Buddhist lays an offering of flowers on the feet of a giant Buddha statue at Intaravehan Temple in Bangkok, Thailand, 1997. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

by a cacophony of voices, a pluralism that includes a continuation of traditional forms and practices, a new sectarianism, an efflorescence of magical cults, a multifaceted reform movement, and an internationalism attuned to the emergent global community. Today, Thai Buddhist identity extends beyond the borders of a local community and the nation-state to an increasingly globalized world.

State Buddhism established at the beginning of the twentieth century and revised by the 1962 *saṅgha* law is still intact; however, calls for reforming the conservative, hierarchical *saṅgha* governance structure come from younger liberal monks as well as educated laity. There is increasing concern that mainstream civil Buddhism is out of tune with the times that in the affluent decades of the 1980s and 1990s became more complacent and materialistic. To be sure, in villages and towns throughout the country the monastery continues to serve important community functions, especially educating the rural poor, even though many of the roles once filled by monks are now the purview of civil servants. As a result there has been a general decline in the high regard and social status traditionally

accorded monks. Several high-profile instances of immorality and rancorous division have also challenged the *saṅgha*'s moral authority.

In the 1970s, partly in response to the changes brought about by globalization and challenges to the relevance of the *saṅgha*, two nationwide sectarian movements emerged, *Santi Asok* and *Wat Thammakāi*. Although *Phra Bodhirak*, *Santi Asok*'s founder, was ordained into the *Thammayut* and then the *Mahānikāi* orders, in the mid-1970s *Bodhirak* and his fellow monks cut all ties with the national *saṅgha*. The movement continued to grow rapidly in the 1980s, and it gained special prominence through one of its members, General *Chamlong Simuang*, a former governor of Bangkok, member of parliament, and founder of the *Phalang Dhamma* political party. *Santi Asok* defined itself against the Thai mainstream, establishing centers where monks and laity observed a moderately ascetic regime, living in simple wooden huts, eating one vegetarian meal daily, and avoiding intoxicants, stimulants, and tobacco. In the view of mainstream Thai Buddhists, *Santi Asok* had overstepped acceptable limits both in terms of its independence and its



Thai Buddhists celebrate the new year by making merit. Here women give goods and flowers to Buddhist monks during a morning alms offering in Bangkok, Thailand, 2002. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

outspoken criticisms of Thai society. In 1995 a court decision codified a 1988 recommendation by national saṅgha leaders to expel Bodhirak from the monkhood on the grounds that he had ordained monks and nuns without authorization and had contravened a vinaya prohibition forbidding claims to supernatural powers.

In several respects, Wat Thammakāi stands at the opposite end of the spectrum to Santi Asok. Also a product of the early 1970s, its imposing national headquarters at Prathum Thani near Bangkok represents a new version of state Buddhism with an aggressive, international perspective. Its founders, Phra Thammachayo and Phra Thattachīwo, were educated in marketing before becoming monks under the inspiration of the Venerable Monkhon Thēpmunī of Wat Paknām, who was noted for his unique visualization meditation method. The entrepreneurial skills they brought to the movement led to its considerable success but has also generated attacks on its commercialism and charges of financial irregularity.

A striking feature of the religious ethos in Thailand at the beginning of the twenty-first century is a burgeoning increase in cults. Although the veneration of

relics and images of the Buddha has long played a central role in Buddhist devotional religion, its contemporary efflorescence is due in part to their commodification in the face of the cultural dominance of commercial values. The cult of images and relics, furthermore, is matched by the veneration of charismatic monks to whom are ascribed a wide range of apotropaic powers, including the generation of wealth. New cults, abetted by the financial crisis of 1997, include the veneration of images and other material representations of royalty, especially King Rāma V, and the popularity of the Bodhisattva Guanyin (Avalokiteśvara), which testifies to an increasing Chinese influence in the Thai economy.

One of the most encouraging developments in Thai Buddhism at the beginning of the twenty-first century is the movement toward change and reform generated by a loose agglomeration of monks and laity. This includes monks who have dedicated their lives to addressing a wide range of social, economic, and environmental problems faced by the people they serve in villages and towns throughout the country. One of the chief inspirations for Buddhist reformism has been



Phutathāt (Buddhadāsa Bhikkhu), whose innovative teaching and example continued to inspire the leading Buddhist reformist voices in the country, even after his death in 1993. Although regarded primarily as an outstanding Pāli scholar, Phra Thammapidok (Dhammapīṭaka), along with Phutathāt, have influenced numerous Buddhist social activists including Sulak Sivaraksa, a major figure in the international engaged Buddhist movement. Sulak's NGOs (non-governmental organizations) include the International Network of Engaged Buddhists (INEB). The issues addressed by INEB range from assisting democracy activists persecuted by Myanmar's repressive military dictatorship to supporting the prominent Thai Buddhist academic, Chatsumarn Kabilsingh, who resigned her position in the philosophy department at Thammasat University to ordain in Sri Lanka as Samaneri Dhammānan with the hope of establishing an order of nuns in Thailand.

The international engaged Buddhist movement that includes reformers like Sulak advocates the integration of inner-personal and outer-social transformation. Progressive Thai Buddhists believe that the international problems of global poverty, economic exploitation, and violence require the practice of sustained awareness that lies at the heart of true compassion. Although awareness is an ancient Buddhist practice, its application to a Buddhist social ethic is an innovation that, while running the risk of diminishing its original intent, holds out the promise that the tradition will maintain its relevance to the dramatic dislocations of the postmodern world.

**See also:** Amulets and Talismans; Engaged Buddhism; Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relics Cults; Thai, Buddhist Literature in

### Bibliography

- Bizot, François. *Le Chemin de Lanka*. Paris: École Française d'Extrême-Orient, 1992.
- Bizot, François. *Le Bouddhisme des Thaïs*. Bangkok, Thailand: Editions des Cahiers de France, 1993.
- Buddhadasa Bhikkhu. *Me and Mine: Selected Essays of Bhikkhu Buddhadasa*, ed. Donald K. Swearer. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1989.
- Crosby, Kate. "Tantric Theravāda: A Bibliographic Essay on the Writings of François Bizot and Others on the Yogāvacara Tradition." *Contemporary Buddhism: An Interdisciplinary Journal* 1, no. 2 (November 2000): 141–198.
- Ishii Yoneo. *Saṅgha, State, and Society: Thai Buddhism in History*, tr. Peter Hawkes. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Jackson, Peter. *Buddhism, Legitimation, and Conflict: The Political Functions of Urban Thai Buddhism*. Singapore: Institute of Southeast Asian Studies, 1989.
- Keyes, Charles. "Buddhist Politics and Their Revolutionary Origins in Thailand." *International Political Science Review* 10, no. 2 (1989): 121–142.
- Muecke, Marjorie A. "Mother Sold Food, Daughter Sells Her Body: The Cultural Continuity of Prostitution." *Social Science Medicine* 35, no. 7 (1992): 891–901.
- Ratanapañña Thera. *The Sheaf of Garlands of the Epochs of the Conqueror (Jinakalamalipakaranam)*, tr. N. A. Jayawickrama. London: Luzac, 1968.
- Reynolds, Frank E., and Reynolds, Mani B. *Three Worlds According to King Ruang: A Thai Buddhist Cosmology*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1982.
- Swearer, Donald K. *The Buddhist World of Southeast Asia*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.
- Tambiah, Stanley J. *World Conqueror, World Renouncer: A Study of Buddhism and Polity in Thailand against a Historical Background*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1976.

DONALD K. SWEARER

---

## THERAVĀDA

Theravāda is the dominant form of Buddhism in Cambodia, Laos, Myanmar (Burma), Sri Lanka, and Thailand. It remains a central component of the Buddhism of Vietnam, even after its formal unification with MAHĀYĀNA forms in the 1960s. The tradition is followed by the Baruas, Chakma, and Magh ethnic groups in Bangladesh, and the Shans of southern China. Historically, the Theravāda school was also important in South India, and had a wider presence in South and Southeast Asia more generally, including Indonesia. In the modern period, Theravāda has spread worldwide through diaspora and mission. The school has been instrumental in the Buddhist revival in India and has begun to replace traditional Newari Buddhism in the Kathmandu valley of Nepal. Missionary monks worldwide serve both diasporic and convert Buddhists, often as separate congregations. In the two relatively recent phenomena of Western convert and ENGAGED BUDDHISM, Theravāda is likely to be universalized rather than culturally specific, and to be mixed or at least in dialogue with other forms of Buddhism and

even other religions. There are an estimated 100 million Theravāda Buddhists worldwide.

### Scriptural authority

Among the key features of traditional Theravāda Buddhism are the use of Pāli as a sacred language and the acceptance of the Pāli Buddhist CANON (*tipiṭaka*) as the highest scriptural authority. This remains true nominally even where the *tipiṭaka* is not directly relevant to belief or practice, and in spite of so-called APOCRYPHA and numerous other religious texts that teach noncanonical practices.

Theravāda's doctrinal tradition derives from the distinctive *Abhidhamma Piṭaka* of its aforementioned *tipiṭaka*. Because of the form of analytical doctrine (Pāli, *vibhajjavāda*) represented in this *abhidhamma* (Sanskrit, ABHIDHARMA) section of its canon, some scholars have suggested that Theravāda is better identified as the Vibhajjavāda school.

Theravāda is also characterized by an ORDINATION tradition based on its distinctive VINAYA *Piṭaka*. Although various branches of Theravāda may historically have used other vinayas, modern variations within the school relate principally to differing interpretations of the traditional 227 rules of conduct for monks outlined in the Pāli vinaya. Thus there are different *nikāyas* (ordination lineages) within Theravāda, and numerous sub-*nikāyas*.

### Commentarial tradition and historiography

The scriptural authority of the Pāli *tipiṭaka* continues through strata of commentaries and compendia, dominated by works attributed to the fifth-century Indian scholar-monk BUDDHAGHOSA. Buddhaghosa is often considered to be the authoritative arbiter of Theravāda orthodoxy, although this status has been challenged, for example, by proponents of Burmese-style VIPASSANĀ (SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ) meditation in Sri Lanka in the twentieth century.

One explanation for Buddhaghosa's dominance over Theravāda scholasticism lies in the use made of him by another key figure in the commentarial tradition, the twelfth-century scholar-monk Sāriputta. Sāriputta emerged as the premier scholastic figure in Theravāda following King Parakramabahu I's unification of the central Sri Lankan saṅgha groups under the Mahāvihāra monastic tradition. Sāriputta based much of his interpretation of vinaya and doctrine on Buddhaghosa. Because of the political dominance of Sri Lanka at the time and the Mahāvihāra tradition's

reputation as the representative of Theravāda orthodoxy and orthopraxy, many monks on mainland Southeast Asia sought ordination in the Mahāvihāra lineage. Mahāvihāra-derived lineages subsequently gained political support in mainland Southeast Asia, and Sāriputta's influence shaped literary developments within Theravāda over subsequent centuries.

The legacy of Mahāvihāra dominance has had an enormous impact on our understanding of the history of Theravāda more generally. Theravāda's own historiography is preserved mainly within the VAṂSA (chronicle) tradition of the Mahāvihāra and traditions derived from it. These chronicles emphasize the significance of the Mahāvihāra, Sri Lanka, and Pāli orthodoxy, and appear to have obscured local traditions.

According to the commentarial and *vaṃsa* tradition, Theravāda is original Buddhism. Like the *sutta* (Sanskrit, sūtra) and vinaya texts of its *tipiṭaka*, its *abhidhamma* texts too are attributed directly to the Buddha, who is said to have taught them to his mother in heaven, where they were witnessed for posterity by the Buddha's disciple Sāriputta (Sanskrit, ŚĀRIPUTRA). Theravāda even claims that its commentaries were compiled at the First Council following the Buddha's death. All the texts in its canon were rehearsed again at a second council one hundred years later. While the term *Theravāda*, meaning "doctrine of the elders," could be understood to indicate *Buddhism* in contrast to other religious traditions, the term becomes associated with a specific school in the Theravāda account of the schism between the MAHĀSĀMĀGHĪKA SCHOOL and more orthodox Sthaviras (the Sanskrit equivalent of the Pāli term *Thera*) that is said to have occasioned the Second Council. Theravāda sees itself as the continuation of this orthodox Sthavira branch of the early Buddhist tradition. The ambiguity of the term *theriya*, which can mean either "elder Buddhist monk" or "follower of the Thera school," complicates attempts to trace the school's early history. According to Theravāda tradition, its orthodoxy was again defended under Emperor AŚOKA in the third century B.C.E., this time against the corruption of heretics, which set a precedent for state intervention in the affairs of the saṅgha, which has shaped so much of the subsequent history of Theravāda.

After this purification, Aśoka had his son Mahinda and daughter Saṅghamitta ordained. They are credited with bringing Theravāda and its orthodox canon and commentaries to Sri Lanka, the same commentaries that Buddhaghosa later redacted back into the

original Pāli from Singhalese. The *vamsas* also record that two monks, Soṇa and Uttara, took Theravāda to mainland Southeast Asia around this time. Trade links had certainly already been forged between the Indian mainland, Sri Lanka, and mainland Southeast Asia by the third century B.C.E., although archaeological evidence suggests that the introduction of Buddhism into these new regions occurred in piecemeal and diverse fashions.

Sometimes it is hard to relate inscriptions and other archaeological finds to a specific school and the association of Pāli exclusively with Theravāda may prove anachronistic. Theravāda seems to have flourished in parts of Burma and Thailand from the fourth century onward, becoming particularly strong in the lower Burmese kingdom of Pyu and the Dvāravatī polity of Thailand. While Theravāda on the whole seems to have coexisted in mainland Southeast Asia with other traditions of Buddhism, as it had to a lesser extent in Sri Lanka, it sometimes became almost a quasi-state religion. This happened, for example, under King Aniruddha of the Pagan kingdom of upper Burma in the eleventh century, under King Ramkhamhaeng of central Thailand in the thirteenth century, and under King Tilokarāt of northern Thailand in the fifteenth century.

### Buddhology

The buddhology of Theravāda is dominated by the figure of Gotama (Sanskrit, Gautama) Buddha, the historical Buddha, who lived in the sixth century B.C.E. according to Theravāda chronology. Also important are the other four buddhas of the current world age, in particular the future buddha Metteyya (Sanskrit, MAITREYA). There is formally a tradition of twenty-four previous buddhas recorded in the *Buddhavamsa* (*Chronicle of the Buddhas*) text of the *Sutta Piṭaka*, but they rarely figure in iconography or narrative, except in relation to the career of Gotama Buddha in his former lives. Other important cultic figures include localized Indic and Buddhicized local deities, as well as heroic and mythic figures. Nāgas, mythical serpent beings that can take human form, are frequently represented as protectors of Buddhism. The process of localization, whereby DIVINITIES and spirits local to the host culture of Buddhism are adopted as protectors of Buddhism, has been important in Buddhism's adaptation to new cultures. As Theravāda ousted other forms of Buddhism in mainland Southeast Asia, it has incorporated figures such as UPAGUPTA, GAVĀMPATI, and Piṇḍola Bhāradvāja, who are thought to have been

more important originally in other Buddhist schools, such as the Sarvāstivāda. Consequently, the identity and significance of various deities and protective and other cultic figures varies greatly between different areas, and even between individual villages. They often serve some of the this-worldly functions of Theravāda religion.

### Sacred landscape

The sacred landscape of Theravāda is dominated by monastic complexes. These complexes typically incorporate monastic dwellings, a building or area for sermons, a STŪPA in commemoration of the historical Buddha, a bodhi tree, a BUDDHA IMAGE, often in an enclosed temple, along with other traditional representations of the Buddha, such as his sacred footprint. In many villages the local temple is the dominant feature. Temples are often decorated with carvings outside and, inside, with paintings of episodes in Gotama Buddha's former lives (JĀTAKA) or final life, images of HELLS, and legends relating the coming of Buddhism to the region. Deities may also be featured in a subordinate position in the temple layout or contributory landscape. It is often believed that a guardian deity resides within the stūpa, tree, or image, in addition to the inherent Buddha power. Stūpas are often believed to contain relics of Gotama Buddha. Shrines, images, and stūpas are also found independent of the monastic complex. Other features of the sacred landscape are forest and mountain hermitage sites for meditation monks, and, since the 1950s, meditation and retreat centers for laypeople.

### The three refuges in religious practice and the role of ordination

Much Theravāda practice revolves around the three REFUGES of the Buddha, *dhamma* (Sanskrit, dharma), and SAṄGHA. Appropriate treatment of all three is a key focus of MERIT AND MERIT-MAKING, a principal focus of religious practice in Theravāda.

WORSHIP of the Buddha varies from daily and incidental personal worship to annual festivals involving the entire community. The annual festival of Wesak, named after the lunar month in which it takes place (April/May), celebrates the Buddha's birth, enlightenment and death. Celebrations of other events, such as his former births, in particular the very popular *Vessantara-jātaka*, may also form a significant component of festivals that are not primarily Buddhist in focus, such as annual harvest festivals or ancestor rites. Occasional ceremonies include consecrations of

images and inaugurations of both sacred and secular buildings. Worship involves offerings of flowers, rice, and lamps to the Buddha image and circumambulation of the stūpa. While the Buddha in human form may have died, his powers are thought to remain accessible through his relics and images. A legend known throughout the Theravāda world states that the Buddha himself commissioned his own first image, and imbued it with all his own qualities so that it might remain to protect the *dhamma*. Some relics and statues are associated with the security of the nation, as is the case with the tooth relic enshrined in Kandy, Sri Lanka, or the Emerald Buddha in Thailand. *Vamsas* record visits the Buddha made during his lifetime to the later strongholds of Theravāda Buddhism, in which he predicts the future glory of the religion and the monarchs who protect it in the region, and sometimes leaves behind relics. The predicted continuation of the *dhamma* in a particular region or in association with a particular royal lineage has been used to authorize the saṅgha-state interaction that dominates Theravāda history. Pilgrimages to sites associated with Gotama or previous buddhas—both in different Theravāda countries and the area of north India in which the historical Buddha lived—continue to be a popular form of merit-making.

The monk represents the ideal of enlightenment, even if this is nowadays thought by most to be unattainable, and in some traditions the ordinand ritually reenacts the life of the Buddha at ORDINATION. Ordination of men is mainstream. In Sri Lanka, lifelong ordination remains the dominant intention, although monks often secede from the order, sometimes after becoming established in a career, and there is an increasing tendency toward ordination as a form of retirement. In mainland Southeast Asian traditions that have not been undermined by communism, most Buddhist men will ordain at some point in their lives, even if only for a short period. In these societies, ordination fulfills the function of a coming-of-age ceremony and is also seen as a way of providing one's parents, in particular one's mother, with merit to ensure a heavenly REBIRTH, thus repaying her for the agony of childbirth. The earliest age for novice ordination (the lower of the two levels of ordination) varies from very young boys in Myanmar, to eight-year-olds and above in Sri Lanka, and teenagers and upward in Thailand. The availability of education through non-monastic state and private educational institutions has altered ordination patterns, as has the need to fit temporary ordination into the schedule of compulsory education. While tem-

porary ordinations used to last for the three months of the annual rains-retreat, some are now designed to fit into the long university vacation. In communist countries, the loss of prestige and the lack of continuity in ordination traditions have reduced the dominance of ordination, especially in urban areas.

Full ordination for WOMEN died out in the medieval period and some Theravāda traditions have only recently attempted to revive it through reimportation of a Buddhist ordination lineage from East Asia (in 1996 in Sri Lanka, in 2002 in Thailand). For this reason, manifestations of female renunciation in the Theravāda school are quite diverse. Many women have pursued a life of celibate renunciation by undertaking either individually or in an institutionalized group most or all of the ten PRECEPTS traditionally undertaken by a novice monk. Sometimes nunneries are attached to monasteries, and NUNS may essentially serve the domestic needs of MONKS. Sometimes nuns have separate institutions and are independent of monks, a situation only fully possible in the absence of full ordination, since full ordination for women requires the participation of monks. The prestige and opportunities accorded Theravāda nuns have greatly increased over the past few decades. Nevertheless, it is the exception rather than the rule for nuns to form a significant focal point in the religious life of a Theravāda layperson.

By contrast, monks are the focus of lay religious practice at a whole range of ceremonies, from large annual celebrations to incidental homage paid when a layperson meets a monk. Perhaps the most significant of the annual ceremonies is the *kaṭhina* ceremony, at which robes (*kaṭhina*) and other gifts are offered to monks at the end of the rains-retreat.

In addition to representing and pursuing the ideal of nibbāna (Sanskrit, NIRVĀṆA), monks fulfill a number of other roles. They are the preservers and communicators of the *dhamma*. They are the formalized recipients of the generosity and esteem of laypeople and thereby serve as a source of merit for the laity. They act as spiritual teachers, particularly through providing sermons on holy days and on special occasions. They may act as advisers to rulers and governments. Some monks have even become members of parliament, trade union heads, and directors of charities. They have traditionally been educators, especially before the introduction of state education. Finally, monks fulfill the function of priests and ritual specialists, and sometimes even serve as astrologists. As ritual specialists monks have a role in administering the

refuges and precepts to laypeople, and in performing funerals. They are often engaged to perform apotropaic rituals, which focus on the protective power of the Buddha and the *dhamma*.

### **Paritta**

The most common manifestation of such protective rituals is the recitation of PARITTA AND RAKṢĀ TEXTS, which are considered to offer powerful protection in warding off dangers and appeasing malevolent spirits. *Paritta* recitation can last throughout the night or even for seven days and nights. During the ceremony further objects may be imbued with protective qualities, including string, sacred water, and AMULETS AND TALISMANS. In mainland Southeast Asia it is common for men to wear protective amulets in the form of small Buddha images, images of famous monks or kings, mythical figures, or even phallic shapes. Other forms of visual protection include *yantras*, which may be drawn on cloth or used as the pattern for a tattoo. They portray heroic figures and sacred writing of Buddhist formulae in Pāli, sometimes in the form of geometric designs and outlines of the Buddha.

### **Attempts to classify Theravāda**

Much Theravāda religious activity includes ritualized interaction with the Buddha, *dhamma*, and saṅgha in combination in one or more of the forms described above. As such, Theravāda has much in common with other forms of Buddhism. In scholarship it is often strongly demarcated from other traditions, although the viability of such distinctions is currently under scrutiny.

One such distinction can be summarized on the basis of the relative value in Theravāda of self-transformation through MEDITATION and RITUAL. Paraphrasing the work of Melford Spiro, Theravāda religion may be said to fall into three categories. First, *nibbānic* Theravāda focuses on self-transformation, chiefly through meditations aimed at developing the emotional responses and level of insight of individuals so that they become enlightened and escape from SAṂSĀRA. Second, *kammatic* religion focuses on merit-making and ethical action, to improve one's future life and lives within saṁsāra. Third, apotropaic Buddhism uses magic in the form of amulets and rituals to deal with this-worldly concerns, either in distinction to or outside of the law of karmic cause and effect.

Tibetan Buddhism has been similarly categorized by Geoffrey Samuel. His three categories are: first, bodhi-oriented practices that focus on often ritualized

altruism and higher levels of tantric ritual; second, karma-oriented merit-making to improve future life within saṁsāra; and third, pragmatic religion for this-worldly concerns, using tantric ritual.

If we align these two analyses we see that in terms of the two categories of seeking improved life within saṁsāra and this-worldly concerns, Theravāda and Tibetan Buddhism are directly parallel. It is at the soteriological end that Theravāda putatively eschews ritual and magic, whereas Tibetan Buddhism invokes it. However, there is a tradition of ritualized soteriology in Theravāda too that was found throughout the Theravāda world in the premodern period. This tradition involved ritual identification with the Buddha and the assimilation of the Buddha's qualities, much as are found in Tibetan tantra, yet using only Theravāda categories and nomenclature. Thus, Theravāda also employs ritual practices that might be designated magical at the *nibbānic*/bodhi end of the spectrum, a convergence that minimizes the distinction between Tibetan and Theravāda Buddhist practices. It further suggests that the apparent Theravāda focus on forms of meditation found in the *tipiṭaka* and Buddhaghosa may be the result of a narrowing of the tradition caused in part by the close state-saṅgha relationship that shaped dominant forms of Theravāda.

A more widespread generalization often made regarding Theravāda is that it is the sole surviving form of HĪNAYĀNA Buddhism. The supposed Mahāyāna-Hīnayāna dichotomy is so prevalent in Buddhist literature that it has yet fully to loosen its hold over scholarly representations of the religion. Hīnayāna (literally, "inferior way") is a polemical term, which self-described Mahāyāna (literally, "great way") Buddhist literature uses to denigrate its opponents. As such, Hīnayāna is a designation that has no clearly identifiable external referent. Some of the first attempts to categorize forms of Buddhism as either Hīnayāna or Mahāyāna are found in the accounts of early Chinese pilgrims to South Asia. But there are additional reasons for the modern association of Theravāda with Hīnayāna. The first is that one body of Mahāyāna texts, the PRAJÑĀPĀRAMITĀ LITERATURE, propounds the lack of self of all dharmas, a critique of the analytical categories of the abhidharma. This position is refuted in the *Kathāvatthu* (*Points of Controversy*), a text of the Theravāda *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*, which purports to discuss points of debate with other religious traditions raised at the Third Council. The second is that one supposed characteristic of the Mahāyāna involves the proliferation of multiple buddhas in parallel world systems. The possibility of more

than one buddha living at a time is a view also rejected in the *Kathāvatthu*. The most common reason made to distinguish Mahāyāna and Theravāda is thoroughly flawed. This is the distinction made between Mahāyāna as the path of the BODHISATTVA and Theravāda as the path of the ARHAT or śravaka (disciple). Even Buddhaghosa recognized three levels of practice: that of the Buddha through the path of the *bodhisatta* (Sanskrit, bodhisattva); that of the *paccekabuddha* (Sanskrit, PRATYEKABUDDHA); and that of the arhat. Furthermore the bodhisattva ideal is present throughout Theravāda history, even if it never became ritualized and institutionalized to the same degree as it did in other Buddhist traditions. Although the bodhisattva ideal in Theravāda is more commonly associated with Gotama Buddha himself and with kings, it is also found expressed by those of humbler position. It is, for example, a common vow made by manuscript copyists in the colophons to Theravāda texts.

*See also:* Cambodia; Commentarial Literature; Councils, Buddhist; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Laos; Mainstream Buddhist Schools; Myanmar; Pāli, Buddhist Literature in; Sri Lanka; Thailand; Theravāda Art and Architecture; Vietnam

### Bibliography

- Assavavirulhakarn, Prapod. "The Ascendancy of Theravāda Buddhism in Southeast Asia." Ph.D. diss. University of California, Berkeley, 1990.
- Crosby, Kate. "Tantric Theravāda: A Bibliographic Essay on the Writings of François Bizot and Other Literature on the Yogāvacara Tradition." *Journal of Contemporary Buddhism* 1, no. 2 (2000): 141–198.
- Gombrich, R. F. *Theravāda Buddhism: A Social History from Ancient Benares to Modern Colombo*. London and New York: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1988.
- Gunawardana, R. A. L. H. *Robe and Plough: Monasticism and Economic Interest in Early Medieval Sri Lanka*. Tucson: University of Arizona Press, 1979.
- Samuel, Geoffrey. *Civilized Shamans: Buddhism in Tibetan Societies*. Washington, DC, and London: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1993.
- Samuels, Jeffrey. "The Bodhisattva Ideal in Theravāda Buddhist Theory and Practices: A Re-evaluation of the Bodhisattva-Śrāvaka Opposition." *Philosophy East and West* 47, no. 3 (1997): 399–415.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Religion and Legitimation of Power in Sri Lanka*. Chambersburg, PA: ANIMA, 1978.
- Spiro, Melford. *Buddhism and Society: A Great Tradition and Its Burmese Vicissitudes*. London: Allen and Unwin, 1971.

Swearer, Donald S. *The Buddhist World of Southeast Asia*, revised edition. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1995.

Terwiel, B. J. *Monks and Magic: An Analysis of Religious Ceremonies in Central Thailand* (1975), 3rd revised edition. Bangkok, Thailand: White Lotus Press, 1994.

KATE CROSBY

## THERAVĀDA ART AND ARCHITECTURE

The focus of THERAVĀDA Buddhist art and architecture is Buddha Gautama, as revered teacher, exemplar of virtue and ethical conduct, role model for the SAṄGHA, and source of supernatural power. Thus the Theravāda monastery serves as a center for the dissemination of the Buddha's teachings, a gathering place for the practice and continuity of the religion, a dwelling place for monks, and a repository of sacred objects, including BUDDHA IMAGES and relics. Similarly, the majority of Theravāda art consists of sculptures and paintings depicting narratives about the historical Buddha's life and previous lives as lessons for the faithful.

In premodern times, Theravāda Buddhist monasteries were the focal point in the social and educational life of the community. Every village had at least one monastery and each town and city had several. While sociological, economic, and in some cases political changes—particularly in Cambodia and to a lesser degree in Laos—have disrupted many traditional patterns, the local monastery continues to occupy a significant place in the lives of individuals and communities.

A monastery compound typically includes an image hall for the monastery's principal Buddha image, an ordination hall, an assembly hall where laypeople gather to listen to sermons and recitations of sacred texts by the monks, a solid, dome-shaped reliquary, and residence buildings for the monks. Regional variations on this model exist, however; for example, in certain places the image hall and assembly hall are combined into one building. In other places the assembly hall and ordination hall are combined and the place reserved for ordinations is off-limits to women. Moreover, some monasteries have residences for nuns and lay meditators and some have a separate building for storing sacred scriptures. The latter, often referred to as a *Tripitaka hall* or library is usually raised on stilts to protect the books from water, insects, and rodents.

While the proportions and architectural features of monastery buildings vary from one region to another,

certain features can be found throughout the Theravāda Buddhist world. Most obvious are the roofs, which are multitiered (especially for ordination halls and image halls) with an odd number of tiers, three being the most common. In addition, eaves brackets, gables, pillars, and doors are often decorated with carvings and paintings of mythical beings from Buddhist COSMOLOGY, such as ascetics, heavenly musicians, nāga serpents, lions, geese and other mythical birds, as well as plant motifs, particularly lotuses and vines. These motifs were among the repertoire of elements that both Buddhism and Hinduism inherited from the indigenous mythological landscape of India. Similarly, as Buddhism spread from India to Sri Lanka and Southeast Asia, it adapted to local preexisting spiritual beliefs by incorporating them into its narratives, rituals, and iconography. As examples, many Burmese monasteries contain statues of the thirty-seven *nats* (the indigenous deities representing natural phenomena and the spirits of ancestors who have met a violent death) and throughout the Theravāda world people place offerings at the foot of large banyan trees—both within monastery compounds and outside—to revere the spirits that dwell within.

Similarly, Hindu deities, such as Brahmā and INDRA, are frequently depicted as guardians of the Buddha to indicate the ascendancy of Buddhism over Hinduism, as are demonic figures that represent local spirits tamed by the Buddha's teachings. All of these elements contribute toward creating an elaborate, otherworldly atmosphere that calls to mind both local royal dwellings and higher realms of the Buddhist cosmos.

A generally more austere, but no less important, building in the monastery compound is the STŪPA or *cetiya*, a solid structure roughly resembling an inverted cone. The stūpa also varies greatly in shape, from broad bulbous bowl-shaped monuments in Sri Lanka to obelisk-shaped towers found at some sites in northeast Thailand (such as Phra Thāt Phanom), to elegant, attenuated lotus-bud *chedis* of the SUKHOTHAI kingdom in Thailand. While some stūpas contain relics of monks or monastery patrons, others are believed to hold bone fragments of the Buddha and are highly revered for their sacredness.

### Laypeople's activities

Laypeople visit the monasteries for numerous reasons: to observe the lunar holy days (every full moon, waning moon, new moon, and waxing moon), to make merit for deceased relatives or for family member who

are sick or in need, to consult with the monks about problems or about astrological considerations, to make merit for themselves in the hopes of fulfilling wishes, to seek advice or blessings, to be ordained, and to meditate.

Numerous monasteries are popular PILGRIMAGE sites because they are believed to contain sacred objects, such as an authentic bone fragment of the Buddha, a footprint left by the Buddha as delineated in a local chronicle, or historically significant images of the Buddha or of deceased monks famous for their supernatural powers. Devout Buddhists often make a special effort to pay reverence at these sites—sometimes in the hopes of obtaining a boon—with traditional offerings of flowers, incense, and candles. They usually return home with an amulet resembling the principal Buddha image commemorating the significance of the site.

At many monasteries pilgrims can purchase a small bird in a bamboo cage, circumambulate the monastery holding the birdcage, praying at various Buddha images along the way. Finally, they release the bird, appealing to the three JEWELS (Buddha, dharma, and saṅgha) to witness this act as sufficient merit.

### Jātaka stories

Until modern times, the monastery's functions included the teachings of moral and religious teachings as well as basic literacy skills. With a largely illiterate population, monks relied on oral storytelling and the visual lessons of murals to teach Buddhist principles of ethics and morality through stories about the Buddha Gautama's life and previous lives. While key events from the Buddha's biography are frequently depicted in mural painting as well as in the miniature paintings of paper manuscripts, stories from his previous lives (JĀTAKAS, or birth stories, found in varied collections and totaling 500 to 547 stories) are equally, if not more, prevalent.

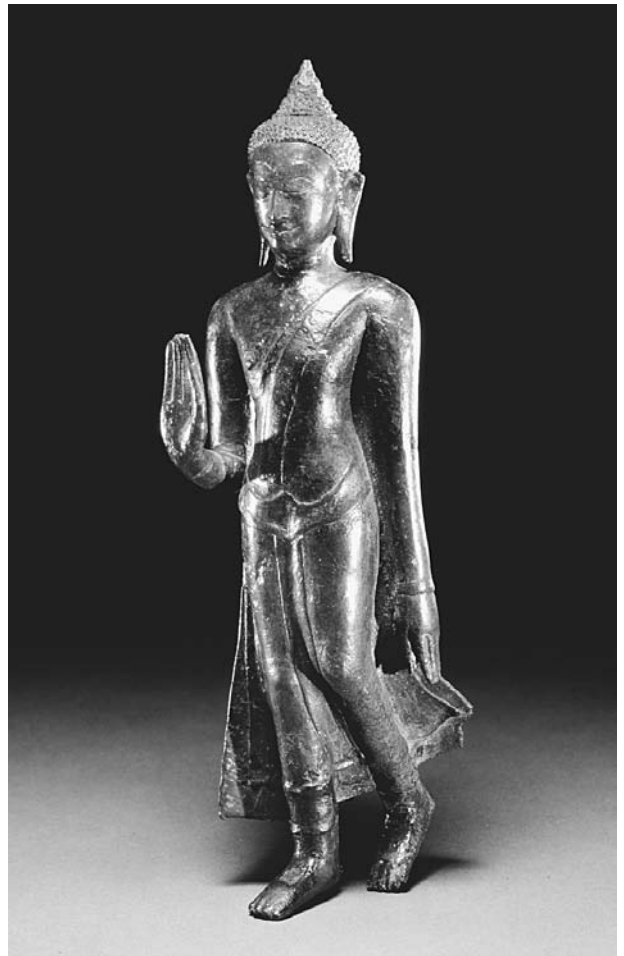
In Myanmar (Burma) terra-cotta plaques representing each of the *jātakas* can be found on the outside walls of some of the great monasteries of the ancient city of Pagan. In the mural painting of Thailand, Cambodia, and Laos, the last ten birth stories are found more frequently than the entire set. Each story represents one of the ten great virtues (renunciation, perseverance, loving kindness, resolution, wisdom, moral practice, forbearance, equanimity, truthfulness, and generosity) that the future Buddha perfected in order to attain enlightenment, and each has a predictable iconographic set of elements to identify it. For example, in the story

demonstrating perseverance, the future Buddha, a prince who is separated from his kingdom at birth, survives a shipwreck to claim his throne. He is usually depicted swimming, surrounded by stylized waves and sea monsters, and rescued by a sea goddess.

The last of the ten, the Great Birth Story or *Vesantara Jātaka*, which exists in countless versions, or “tellings,” is the most frequently depicted and recounted narrative of all, including the biography of the Buddha Gautama. Depending on the region, it is recited at the close of the Buddhist rains-retreat (around the time of the full moon in November) or during the months that follow. In parts of Thailand, Laos, Cambodia, and Burma, the recitation of this story is one of the most significant ceremonies of the year, lasting an entire day and a night. Painted banners depicting events in the story are hung around the inside of the monastery. Laypeople sponsor the reading of sections of the story and bring offerings of food and flowers. The motivation behind these activities is the widespread belief that a person who listens to the Great Birth Story recited in this context will be reborn during the time of the future Buddha MAITREYA. Those who hear Maitreya preach, according to this belief, will accomplish the very difficult goal of attaining NIRVĀṆA. While this doctrine may be technically outside the realm of what some would consider orthodox Theravāda teachings, it is an important aspect of practice and iconography in Theravāda regions.

Apart from these themes, other narratives depicted in murals, reliefs, and carvings are local histories describing the coming of Buddhism to the area, local folktales that are retold as birth stories of the Buddha, and the great *Rāmāyana* epic. While the latter is technically a Hindu story, it has long been popular in the Buddhist world and particularly in royally sponsored monasteries because of its association with kingship. Rāma, the story’s hero, is a model of royal and familial righteousness. Monastery murals frequently depict his battles with the demonic forces to rescue his wife Sītā and restore order in his kingdom. They were commissioned by monarchs as a way of bringing to the earthly realm the power and symbolism of the heaven or macrocosm.

Murals and manuscripts depict the same themes and share similar stylistic features: abstract rather than realistic portrayal of figures, architecture, and landscape; and grouping of similar figures (such as warriors, attendants, dancers) in clusters that form one among several patterns within a space, with one figure echoing the others. Moreover, within these paintings



A bronze Buddha from the Thai “golden age.” The Buddha is usually depicted standing, sitting, or lying down; the walking image is distinctively Thai. (Thai, Sukhothai period, fourteenth century.) © Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.

one can also see a strong reflection of local dress, textile designs, indigenous physical characteristics, architecture, and customs.

### Sculpture

Sculptures representing the historical Buddha made of stone, bronze, terra-cotta, or wood can be found throughout the Theravāda world. They range in size from colossal images especially popular in Sri Lanka and Burma to miniature amulets encased in gold and worn on a necklace. The image serves as a reminder of the Buddha, his teachings, and his spiritual descendants—the monks, known collectively as the saṅgha. Images of the Buddha are always treated with utmost reverence and placed on a dais or altar above the heads of the people. It would be inappropriate to keep a Buddha image in a place other than a monastery, museum, or private home altar.



Images are believed to be repositories of potency and are often draped with orange robes resembling those worn by monks and worshiped with offerings of flowers, incense, and candles. Moreover, certain images are revered for miracles associated with them or legends surrounding their discovery. At many monasteries worshipers can purchase small squares of gold leaf to attach to images as acts of merit, and certain images, such as the Emerald Buddha in Bangkok, regularly receive offerings of special food thought to be their favorite from devotees requesting favors, such as a relative's good health.

Throughout Southeast Asia during the festivities revolving around the solar New Year in mid-April, images are carried in procession on elaborately decorated carts or trucks and bathed with fragrant water. Thus, even in a Theravāda context, Buddha images are treated in ways similar to those of statues of Hindu deities in India.

The most frequently seen postures and hand positions (MUDRĀ) in the Theravāda tradition are those depicting key events in the Buddha's life: meditating—seated cross-legged with hands folded in the lap; the enlightenment—a similar seated posture, but with the right hand at the right knee, fingers pointing downward toward the earth; teaching—standing with hands extended; and in nirvāṇa or death—lying on the right side, head supported by the right hand.

In Southeast Asia, the most popular posture by far is that of enlightenment, the posture known either as “touching the earth” or “victory over MĀRA” (the personification of darkness and delusion). In many monasteries, murals depicting this event cover the wall behind the main Buddha image. A central meditating figure of the Buddha is surrounded by Māra's army—a variety of demonic characters, some human, some animal, some hybrid—flinging arrows and other weapons. Below the Buddha is a standing female figure of the Earth Goddess, whom the Buddha has called to witness his enlightenment. She wrings out her long hair and from it flows the water that has collected from the acts of generosity that Gautama performed in his past lives, each time consecrating his donation by pouring water from an urn onto the ground. Theravāda Buddhists sometimes replicate this practice when they present offerings to the monks.

*See also:* Amulets and Talismans; Buddha, Life of the, in Art; Merit and Merit-Making; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Sri Lanka, Buddhist Art in

## Bibliography

- Boisselier, Jean. *The Heritage of Thai Sculpture*. New York: Weatherhill, 1975.
- Döhning, Karl. *Buddhist Temples of Thailand: An Architectonic Introduction*. Bangkok, Thailand: White Lotus Press, 2000.
- Gosling, Betty. *A Chronology of Religious Architecture at Sukhothai, Late Thirteenth to Early Fifteenth Century*. Ann Arbor, MI: Association for Asian Studies, 1996.
- Gosling, Betty. *Old Luang Prabang*. New York and Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Luce, Gordon H., *Old Burma—Early Pagan*. Locust Valley, NY: J. J. Augustin, 1969.
- Matics, K. I. *Introduction to the Thai Temple*. Bangkok, Thailand: White Lotus Press, 1992.
- Ringis, Rita. *Thai Temples and Temple Murals*. Singapore and New York: Oxford University Press, 1990.
- Strachan, Paul. *Pagan: Art and Architecture of Old Burma*. Whiting Bay, Scotland: Kiscadale, 1989.
- Vogel, Jean Philippe. *Buddhist Art in India, Ceylon, and Java*. New Delhi: Asian Educational Services, 1998.
- Woodward, Hiram W. *The Sacred Sculpture of Thailand: The Alexander B. Griswold Collection, the Walters Art Gallery*. Baltimore, MD: The Walters Art Gallery; Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1997.
- Woodward, Hiram W. *The Art and Architecture of Thailand: From Prehistoric Times through the Thirteenth Century*. Leiden, Netherlands, and Boston: Brill, 2003.
- Wray, Elizabeth; Rosenfield, Clare; and Bailey, Dorothy. *Ten Lives of the Buddha: Siamese Paintings and Jataka Tales*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1972.

BONNIE BRERETON

---

## THICH NHAT HANH

Thich Nhat Hanh (Nguyen Xaun Bao, 1926– ), a Vietnamese Buddhist monk and peace activist, coined the term ENGAGED BUDDHISM in the 1960s to describe the antiwar movement in his country. Nominated for the Nobel Peace Prize in 1967 by Martin Luther King, Jr., Nhat Hanh led the Buddhist delegation to the Paris peace talks and organized rescue missions to save the “boat people” fleeing Vietnam in the 1970s. Exiled from Vietnam since the 1960s, Nhat Hanh has taught MEDITATION and reconciliation to thousands of followers in the West. He founded the Tiep Hien Order (Order of Interbeing), has established retreat centers in Europe and North America, and has published more

than one hundred books of poetry and prose. Stressing the oneness or “interbeing” of all existence, mindfulness in daily life, and service and nonviolent activism on behalf of those suffering tyranny and injustice, Thich Nhat Hanh is a leading preceptor of engaged Buddhism.

See also: **Europe; United States**

### Bibliography

Nhat Hanh, Thich. *Being Peace*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax Press, 1987.

Nhat Hanh, Thich. *Love in Action: Writings on Nonviolent Social Change*. Berkeley, CA: Parallax Press, 1993.

CHRISTOPHER S. QUEEN

## Tiantai School

Often described as the first genuinely Sinitic school of Buddhism, the Tiantai school traces its ancestry back to NĀGĀRJUNA (ca. second century C.E.) in India, not by any direct transmission but through the reading of translated texts by its proto-patriarchs, Huiwen (Beiqi *zunzhe*, mid-sixth century) and Huisi (Nanyue *chan-shi*, 515–577). Very little is known of these two figures. Huiwen in particular is little more than a shadowy presence; traditional biographies report that he was active during China’s Northern Qi dynasty (550–577), stressed strict meditation practice, and initiated the characteristic Tiantai emphasis on triplicity. In particular, Huiwen is reported to have emphasized the “simultaneity of the three contemplations,” namely, the contemplation of each object as emptiness, provisional positing, and the “mean,” as derived from a strong misreading of works attributed to Nāgārjuna. Huisi, on the other hand, authored several extant texts, and is credited with combining Huiwen’s “three contemplations” with the teaching of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), to which Huisi was especially devoted. This combination proved to be explosive.

Huisi interpreted the lotus from the title of this sūtra as a metaphor suggesting a special relationship between cause and effect, or practice and enlightenment. The lotus, he noted, is unusual in that it gives no flower without producing a fruit, that the fruit is concealed and copresent in the flower, and a single flower produces many fruits. This suggests that every

practice leads to many different results, which are copresent in the practice, and yet unrevealed; every practice, even those that show no orientation toward buddhahood, lead to and are copresent with buddhahood. The translation of the *Lotus Sūtra* by KUMĀRĀJĪVA (350–409/413 C.E.) characterizes “the ultimate reality” (literally, “real mark”) “of all dharmas” in terms of “ten suchnesses” (literally, ten *like-this*’s). They are:

1. like-this (suchlike) appearance
2. nature
3. substance
4. power
5. activity
6. cause
7. condition
8. effect
9. response
10. equality of ultimacy from beginning to end.

Huisi developed a special reading of this passage, facilitated by the peculiarity of the Chinese translation, where each phrase referred to every element of experience simultaneously as “empty,” in addition to its literal reference to each as provisionally posited, referring to each specific differentiated aspect (i.e., appearance, nature, etc.). In Zhiyi’s exfoliation of this interpretative move, each was also understood as the “mean.” This bold hermeneutic approach and its threefold implication formed the basis for what would develop into the distinctive Tiantai conception of “the ultimate reality of/as all dharmas.”

The de facto founder of the school, from whose part-time residence—Mount Tiantai in modern Zhejiang—the school gets its name, is ZHIYI (Tiantai *Zhizhe dashi*, 538–597). It was Zhiyi’s numerous and voluminous works, most of which were transcribed by his disciple Guanding (Zhang’an *dashi*, 561–632) from Zhiyi’s lectures, that become authoritative for all later Tiantai tradition.

### Provisional and ultimate truth: The *Lotus Sūtra* and the classification of teachings

Zhiyi constructed a vast syncretic system of MAHĀYĀNA thought and practice that aimed at giving a comprehensive overview of all of Buddhism and that found a place for all known modes of practice and doctrine.

Confronted with the massive influx of Mahāyāna texts translated into Chinese, many of which directly contradicted one another in matters of both doctrine and practice, Zhiyi was faced with the challenge of accommodating the claim that all these texts represented the authoritative teaching of the Buddha. The solution he arrived at can be described as an insight into the interconnection between two central Mahāyāna doctrines: the concept of UPĀYA (skillful means), particularly as presented in the *Lotus Sūtra*, and the concept of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), particularly as developed in the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL. From the synthesis of these ideas, Zhiyi developed a distinctive understanding of the buddha-nature, rooted especially in the universalist exposition given in the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, and the identity between delusion and enlightenment as invoked in the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* and other sūtras, which entailed a reconfiguring of both *upāya* and *śūnyatā* as they had been understood in earlier Mahāyāna Buddhism.

The *Lotus Sūtra* asserts that the *śrāvakas* (HĪNAYĀNA disciples), who had hitherto been regarded as having no aspiration toward bodhisattvahood or buddhahood—indeed, as having explicitly repudiated these goals—are in fact BODHISATTVAS currently working toward buddhahood, although they are unaware of the real efficacy of their current practice. The text develops the idea that it is possible to be a bodhisattva without realizing it into a claim that in fact all Buddhist disciples are really bodhisattvas, and all who hear the *Lotus* teaching will finally attain buddhahood. Indeed, it is said in the text that no sentient being really knows what he or she is practicing, what the ultimate karmic efficacy of his or her deeds and cognitions is, nor what his or her own real identity is. Only buddhas know these things, and the real efficacy of all their deeds as thus known by the buddhas is that these deeds allow these beings eventually to become buddhas themselves. The non-bodhisattva practices and teachings are all skillful means provided by the Buddha, sometimes requiring an ignorance of the final goal in order to have efficacy toward reaching that goal. This is the teaching of the first half of the sūtra, which Zhiyi calls the “trace gate.” Another wrinkle is given in the second half of the sūtra, which Zhiyi calls the “root gate.” Here it is claimed that Śākyamuni Buddha did not attain buddhahood at BODH GAYĀ, but had actually been and would continue to be a buddha for countless eons, in spite of his apparent imminent decease. The implication is that while practicing the bodhisattva path, he was in fact already a buddha (leaving ambiguous his

own degree of awareness of this fact at the time), and that being a buddha does not mean a transcendence of engagement in the intersubjective work of liberating SENTIENT BEINGS, but the mastering of all possible skillful means by which to accomplish this task, and a ceaseless indefatigable endeavor to do so.

Taken together then, the two halves of the sūtra suggest that all beings are bodhisattvas, and all bodhisattvas are buddhas. And yet this is only so if the division between them, the opacity and ignorance that keeps them from collapsing these identities, remains intact, just as the *upāyas* work only as long as they are not known as such. This means that the intersubjective liberative relationship between buddhas and sentient beings is primary and always operative, whichever role one may seem to be playing at any time. To be is to be intersubjective, and each being is always both liberating and being liberated by all others, even while also creating KARMA (ACTION) and DUḤKHA (SUFFERING). Ontology is here made soteriological: All existence is instructive and revelatory, and can be read as a salvational device put forth by a buddha to liberate sentient beings.

The relation between illusion and reality is thus reconfigured as the relation between provisional and ultimate truth in the Buddha’s teaching. Zhiyi characterizes the *Lotus* teaching as the “opening of the provisional to reveal the real” (*kaiquan xianshi*), allowing one to see the provisional truths as both a means to and an expression of the ultimate truth. Provisional and ultimate truth are nondual, even while maintaining their strict opposition. Their relation is similar to that between the set-up and punch line of a joke; the punch line is funny only because the set-up was not, but once the punch line is understood, the set-up too is seen to have always been pervaded with the quality of humorlessness, precisely by being contrastingly nonhumorous. On the basis of this doctrine, Zhiyi established a comprehensive system of “classification of teachings,” which categorizes all Buddhist teachings as expressions of ultimate truth tailored to specific circumstances and listeners.

The Madhyamaka doctrine of “two truths” can be understood as asserting that ultimate truth is somehow more real than conventional truth, and indeed that while conventional truth covers both common language (i.e., the everyday use of terms like *I, you, cause, effect*, and the like) and verbal Buddhist teachings, the metaphysical claims of rival schools (i.e., attempts to make rigorous ultimate truths of causality,

selfhood, a first cause, and so on) are not even conventional truth, but are simply falsehoods and errors. Zhiyi reinterprets the Madhyamaka position as implying the “three truths”: emptiness, provisional positing, and the mean, which includes both and signifies their synonymy. The relation between these three is understood on the model of the *Lotus Sūtra’s* doctrine of “opening the provisional to reveal the real,” which annuls any hierarchy between conventional and ultimate truth, and also expands conventional truth so as to include any provisionally posited assertion or cognition without exception. Zhiyi’s claim is that these three aspects are not only on precisely equal footing and of equal ultimacy, but that each is in fact simply a way of stating the other two; the three are synonymous.

### The three truths and the doctrine of inherent entailment

The reasoning behind the three truths doctrine follows the traditional Buddhist doctrine of PRATĪYASAMUTPĀDA (DEPENDENT ORIGINATION), which holds that every element of experience necessarily appears “together with” other elements, which it depends upon for its existence and determinate character. These other, conditioning, elements, of course, also gain their determinate character only through their dependence on still other elements that simultaneously condition them. But it was this determinate character that was supposed to serve as a determining ground for the first element. If the determiner is not determinate, the determined also fails to be determined. Hence each element is coherent only locally, in relation to a limited set of these conditions; when all of its conditions—including contexts, components, and precedents—are considered, its coherence vanishes. There arises, then, no unambiguous particular element or entity with a univocally decidable nature. Precisely because all are determined in dependence on conditions, they are simultaneously without a fixed, determinate identity. This is the meaning of emptiness.

Elements of experience are normally taken to have definitive identities, to be determinate, to be finite, to have “simple location,” and to have borders or boundaries between themselves and what is outside themselves. Tiantai MEDITATION, however, calls for an inquiry into the borders between being *X* and not being *X*, either in time, space, or conceptual space (i.e., the arising of a given state from its qualitatively different antecedents, conceptual contrasts, or efficient causes). To appear in experience at all, *X* must be “non-all,” must be contrasted to some non-*X*, and must have an

“outside.” But to *necessarily* have an outside means the outside is not really outside; the relation between the internal and the external is itself internal. One can always ask: Is the border (spatial, temporal, or conceptual) part of the inside or the outside, both, or neither? There is no coherent way to answer these questions if to exist is assumed to mean “simply located.” Hence, the interface always proves unintelligible, and the outside proves paradoxically both ineradicable and impossible, since it always proves to be equally internal, and hence not an outside at all. Therefore, the inside (*X*) is equally ineradicable and impossible (*bukede, bukeshe*). Like space, each determinate existent is simultaneously a merely nominal reality, is unobstructed and unobstructing, is beyond being and nonbeing, and is all-pervasive, present equally in the opposite of itself, in contrast to which it was originally defined. Precisely the same analysis applies to the difference between those defining borders that “determine as *X*” and those that “determine as *Y*,” which is why Zhiyi goes on to assert that to be determined as *X* is always at the same time to be determined as *Y*, and all other possible quiddities.

In sum, what is only locally coherent is thereby globally incoherent. It is what it is only because the horizon of relevant contexts has been arbitrarily limited, but the fact that all being is necessarily contextualized (arises with qualitative othernesses) means that any such limit is ultimately arbitrary, and there are more relevant contexts that can be brought to bear in every case. The “mean” signifies that these two are merely alternate statements of the same fact, which necessarily appears in these two contrasted ways. Determinateness, thought through to the end, turns out to be ambiguity, and vice versa. Hence, ambiguity and determinateness are no longer “other” to one another, and each is itself, just as it is, “absolute” (i.e., free of dependence on a relationship to an outside). Therefore, *determinateness* is a synonym for *ambiguity*, and either is a synonym for *absoluteness* (the ultimate reality and value, “eternal, blissful, self, and pure”). Any of these always signifies all three aspects. Moreover, determinateness is never simply “determinateness as such or in general”: It always means precisely *this* determinateness and precisely all other possible determinateness, which Zhiyi formulates for convenience as “the three thousand quiddities.” Any possible experienced content is necessarily dependently co-arisen, which is to be provisionally posited as precisely this (like-this appearance, etc.), which is to be empty, which is to be readable equally as provisional positing and as

emptiness, which is to be readable as precisely every other possible determinacy.

It is from the “mean” that the Zhiyi deduces the claim that all things are everywhere at once. For if to be definitively *X* and not definitively *X* are merely alternate ways of stating the same fact about *X*, the contrast between the absence and presence of *X* is annulled, and *X* is no more present here and now than it is present there and then. It is “simply located” at neither locus, but “virtually located” at both. It pervades all possible times and places to exactly the extent that it is present here at all. It can be read into any experience, and is here and now only because it has been so read into the here and now. *X*, in other words, is eternal and omnipresent, but only as “canceled,” divested of the putative opacity of its simple location.

As an exfoliation of these claims, Zhiyi develops his theory of “the three thousand quiddities in each moment of experience,” which implies the interinclusion of the ten realms of sentient experience: purgatories, hungry ghosts, asuras, animals, humans, devas, śrāvakas, Pratyekabuddhas, bodhisattvas, and buddhas. Each realm is a process of causes and effects that inherently entails all the other realms. Each of these realms can at each moment be characterized by the ten “suchnesses” from the *Lotus Sūtra*. All of these may be understood either in terms of the sentient beings experiencing these realms, the environment conditioning these beings, or these beings considered in terms of their components. Ten realms, each including all the others, makes one hundred; multiplied by the ten suchnesses, one gets one thousand, and multiplied by the three aspects, three thousand. Zhiyi asserts that all of these qualities, which indicate not merely all things as considered from a single perspective, but all processes as simultaneously understood from the perspectives of all the cognitive misperceptions of all sentient beings, are inherently entailed in each moment of experience undergone by any sentient being at any time.

### The three tracks and buddha-nature

The three truths are a name for the ultimate reality of all dharmas, or the ultimate reality as all dharmas, since to be is to be determinate as just these particular things, in their ambiguity and conditioning relationships. From various perspectives, the three truths can be renamed as a number of other triads, all of which maintain the same relation of interpervasive identity as difference. Zhiyi calls these parallel triads the “three tracks,” which he characterizes as:

1. the track of contemplation and awareness (corresponding to emptiness)
2. the track of conditions for actualization or practice (provisional positing)
3. the track of the real nature or the absolute as such (the mean)

The triads belonging to these tracks include the three buddha-natures:

1. buddha-nature as manifesting cause (the awareness that allows the omnipresent buddha-nature to be made manifest)
2. buddha-nature as conditioning cause (practical and physical conditions that make this awareness possible)
3. buddha-nature as proper cause (the omnipresent absolute reality to be realized)

but also the three virtues of NIRVĀṆA:

1. prajñā (wisdom)
2. liberation
3. dharmakāya

and the three paths:

1. *kleśa* (delusion)
2. karma (activity as cause of suffering)
3. *duḥkha* (suffering)

Since all these triads are merely alternate names for the three truths and bear the same internally interinclusive relationship derived from the relation of *upāya* to ultimate truth, one arrives at the identity between delusion and wisdom, karma and liberation, dharmakāya and suffering. Each of these is eternal and omnipresent, always present in every possible quiddity. In addition, there is the identity between each of these as actualized realities and as potentials, between the virtues of nirvāṇa and the buddha-nature as potential, between buddha-nature and delusion-karma-suffering, and so on. These paradoxical identities between oppositely valued realities come to be the distinctive mark of the Tiantai school, culminating in its unique doctrine of “the evil inherent in the buddha-nature,” the perfect interpervasion of delusion and enlightenment.

### Zhanran and the buddha-nature of insentient beings

The Tiantai school fell into decline in the Tang dynasty (618–907), losing its imperial patronage and dominant influence to the newly arisen HUAYAN SCHOOL and CHAN SCHOOL. ZHANRAN (Jingxi *zunzhe*, 711–782) is credited with revitalizing the tradition, meeting the challenges of the new schools and consolidating and reorganizing Tiantai doctrine. The bulk of his writings concentrate on detailed commentaries to Zhiyi's works, but he is also responsible for adopting and adapting Huayan terminology into Tiantai doctrine while reasserting the distinctiveness of the Tiantai school, particularly noting the uniqueness of its doctrine of the evil inherent in the buddha-nature.

In his work *Jin'gangbei* (*Diamond Scalpel*), his only noncommentarial composition, Zhanran makes a frontal attack on the Huayan and early Chan doctrine that views the buddha-nature as an aspect of sentience, reasserting the Tiantai view that the buddha-nature is necessarily threefold from beginning to end, omnipresent in all three aspects, and impossible to restrict to sentient beings only. In fact, the threefold buddha-nature is another name for the three truths, which are the reality of any content of experience whatsoever, mind or matter, sentient or insentient. To be any one among them is to be all of them, so there can be no division of buddha-nature as the unconditioned essence of sentience and awareness as opposed to the passive inertness of insentient beings. Whenever one being attains buddhahood, all beings are buddha; whenever one entity is insentient, all beings are insentient. This is the interpervasion of all realms as understood in a Tiantai perspective; all possible predicates are always applicable to all possible beings.

### The Song dynasty (960–1279) schism

Zhanran had imported certain formulations from Huayan thought into his teaching, most notably an interpretation of mind-only doctrine not found in Zhiyi, including the phrase “unchanging but following conditions, following conditions but unchanging,” as a characterization of the mind and its nature, respectively, as derived from the Huayan patriarch FAZANG (643–712). In the Northern Song dynasty, some Tiantai writers later called the Shanwai (i.e., “off-mountain,” or heterodox) began to adopt the privileging of “awareness” (*zhi*), or mind, that characterizes later Huayan and early Chan thought. Even in Fazang a similar tendency is arguably discernible. Here the mind in its present function is a transcen-

dent category that produces all phenomena, and of which all phenomena are transformations; the mind is in this sense at least conceptually prior to these phenomena, and is their ontological base, although it is not a definite objective entity. Realizing this all-pervasive awareness as all things is equivalent to awakening, and so this mind is also called “ultimate reality.” *Praxis* here means to see “the three thousand quiddities” as this present moment of mind, which is the transformation of mind, with nothing left out. Mind is the all-embracing “whole” that is uniquely capable of producing, determining, containing, and unifying all differentiated existences.

ZHILI (Siming Fazhi *fashi*, 960–1028) led an attack on this interpretation of Tiantai thought, developing a position that was later called the Shanjia (Mountain Masters, or orthodox) position. Zhili holds fast to the traditional Tiantai interpretation of the claim in the HUAYAN JING (Sanskrit, *Avataṃsaka-sūtra*) that “there is no difference between the mind, buddhas, and sentient beings,” holding that this means that each of these three may be considered the creator of the other two, and vice versa. This interpretation rejects the assertion that mind is the real source that is able to create, or manifest itself, as either buddhas or sentient beings (as the Shanwai, Huayan, and Chan putatively claim), depending on whether it is enlightened or deluded. On the latter view, although buddhas and sentient beings could still be said to be “identical” to mind and hence to each other, this identity would be mediated by a one-way dependence relation. Zhili holds that this would not be real “identity,” for mind has at least one quality that the other two lack: It is creator, as opposed to created. In Zhili's view, each is creator, each is created, and none is more ultimate than the others.

Zhili's teaching combats a one-sidedly “idealist” interpretation of Tiantai doctrine. He holds that while it is true to say that mind inherently entails all entities, it is equally true to say that form or matter inherently entails all entities, and not merely because matter is actually nothing but mind. Here Zhili is echoing Zhiyi's teaching that reality can be spoken of equally as mind-only, matter-only, taste-only, smell-only, touch-only, and so on. Zhili also insists that Tiantai meditation is a contemplation of the deluded mind, not directly of the pure or absolute mind that is the source and ground of all existence. The object of contemplation is the deluded process of differentiation itself, which is to be seen as creating the particular determinacies of the experienced world, then as inherently including all these determinacies, then as being identical to them all,

and finally as itself determined, hence conditioned, hence empty, hence provisionally posited, hence the “mean.” Once this is done, all other contents are equally seen as the three truths, but the process of transformation must begin with the deluded mind, the mind that mistakenly sees itself as “inside” as opposed to “outside,” which makes arbitrary distinctions, and which is conditioned in a particular manner by particular causes. Only in this way, Zhili thinks, is practice both possible and necessary.

Zhili also reasserts the centrality of the doctrine of inherent evil, as is particularly evident in his teaching of “the six identities as applicable even to the dung beetle.” The six identities were propounded by Zhiyi originally to maintain a balance to the claims of identity between sentient beings and buddhahood. All beings are identical to the Buddha (1) in principle; (2) in name, once they hear of this teaching and accept it intellectually; (3) in cultivation; (4) in partial attainment; (5) in approximation to final identity; and finally (6) when Buddhist practice is completed and one becomes explicitly a buddha. Zhili asserts that these six levels of difference and identity apply not only to the relations between sentient beings and buddhas, but also to the relations between any two sentient beings, any two determinations of any kind, indeed, even between any entity and itself. This means that prior to Buddhist practice one is identical to, say, a dung beetle in principle only, but as one’s practice continues, one finally attains a more and more fully realized identity with the dung beetle, so that all the marks and names associated with dung beetle-hood become increasingly explicit and fully realized as practice continues. Evil, in other words, is not only what is cut off, but also what is more fully realized with practice; all things become more explicit together, and this full realization of their own determinate marks, by virtue of the three truths, is their liberation and transformation. This is the real goal of practice; indeed this is buddhahood itself.

### Transmission to and development in Japan and Korea

Much of Zhili’s concern in his polemic against the Shanwai and his defense of the doctrine of “inherent evil” was to maintain the seriousness of Tiantai ritual practice, an evil that he saw threatened by the “sudden” doctrines of Chan and the Shanwai. Zhili and his dharma-brother Zunshi (Ciyun *fashi*, 963–1032) were instrumental in combining Tiantai contemplation with the practice of the PURE LAND SCHOOLS, particularly the visualizations of AMITĀBHA, which were to

be done in tandem with Tiantai doctrinal ruminations, “contemplating the image of the Buddha as an inherent aspect of the mind, utilizing the Buddha image to manifest the nature of mind.” This was consistent with Zhili’s general teaching that when any given content is made more explicit, it simultaneously makes all contents more explicit, as well as their interpervasion, the interpervasive three thousand being the realm of enlightenment.

In China, Tiantai and Pure Land practice came to be closely associated. A different development took place in Japan, where Tiantai, or Tendai in the Japanese pronunciation, became closely associated with esoteric Buddhism. Tiantai texts were first brought to Japan by the Chinese vinaya monk Jianzhen (687–763), but did not really take hold until the founding of the Japanese Tendai school by SAICHŌ (Dengyo *daishi*, 767–822). Saichō combined the Tiantai teachings he had studied in Tang China under Zhanran’s disciple Daosui with elements of esoteric and Chan Buddhism. The tradition he founded later split into several rival schools, but Tendai remained for centuries the mainstream of Japanese Buddhism, providing the theoretical foundation of Buddhist practice to a much greater degree than was the case in China, where Huayan and Chan understandings of Buddhist doctrine arguably took a more preeminent position. Later Japanese Tendai contributed distinctive developments to the doctrines of ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU) and the buddhahood of inanimate objects, on which it laid special stress. All of the Buddhist reformers who created the new Japanese sects in the Kamakura period, including HŌNEN (1133–1212), SHINRAN (1173–1263), NICHIREN (1222–1282), and DŌGEN (1200–1253), were trained initially as Tendai monks.

Both Huisi and Zhiyi are said to have had direct disciples hailing from the Korean peninsula, and this tradition of exchange continued for many centuries. But it was not until 1097 that a separate Tiantai (Korean, Ch’ōnt’ae) school was established there. Its founder, ŬICH’ŎN (1055–1101), hoped the new school would help reconcile the long-standing conflict in Korean Buddhism between scholastic studies and meditative practice. Ch’ōnt’ae became one of the two main pillars of Korean Buddhism, together with Chan (Korean, Sŏn). The schools were unified under the auspices of a reconstituted Sŏn school in the early fifteenth century.

*See also:* China; Japan; Korea; Vietnam

## Bibliography

- Chan, Chi-wah. "Chih-li (960–1028) and the Crisis of T'ien-t'ai Buddhism in the Early Sung." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Cleary, Thomas, trans. *Stopping and Seeing: A Comprehensive Guide to Buddhist Meditation* (a partial translation of Zhiyi's *Mohe zhiguan*). Boston: Shambhala, 1997.
- Donner, Neal. "Chih-i's Meditation on Evil." In *Buddhist and Taoist Practice in Medieval Chinese Society*, ed. David W. Chappell. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1987.
- Donner, Neal. "Sudden and Gradual Intimately Conjoined: Chih-i's T'ien-t'ai View." In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Donner, Neal, and Stevenson, Daniel B. *The Great Calming and Contemplation: A Study and Annotated Translation of the First Chapter of Chih-i's Mo-ho chih-kuan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Gregory, Peter, and Getz, Daniel, eds. *Buddhism in the Sung*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.
- Hurvitz, Leon. *Chih-i (538–597): An Introduction to the Life and Ideas of a Chinese Buddhist Monk*. M'elange Chinoises et Boudhiques, vol. 12 (1960–1962). Brussels: Institut Belges Des Hautes Etudes Chinoises, 1980.
- Ng Yu-kwan, *T'ien-t'ai Buddhism and Early Mādhyamika*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Stevenson, Daniel. "The Four Kinds of Samādhi in Early T'ien-t'ai Buddhism." In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.
- Stone, Jacqueline. *Original Enlightenment and the Transformation of Medieval Japanese Buddhism*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Swanson, Paul L. *Foundations of T'ien-t'ai Philosophy: The Flowering of the Two Truths Theory in Chinese Buddhism*. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1989.
- Ziporyn, Brook. "Anti-Chan Polemics in Post-Tang Tiantai." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 17, no. 1 (1994): 26–63.
- Ziporyn, Brook. *Evil and/or/as the Good: Omniscience, Intersubjectivity, and Value Paradox in Tiantai Buddhist Thought*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2000.

BROOK ZIPORYN

## TIBET

Tibet became one of the last major zones in Buddhist Asia to accept Buddhist ideology and rituals into its cul-

ture, which assumed a unique position as the perceived source for true dharma study during the twelfth to the twentieth centuries. Throughout their religious history, Tibetans have emphasized a balance of scholarship, contemplative MEDITATION, and the indivisibility of religious and secular authority; most of these values were formulated under the aegis of Buddhist tantrism. Tibetan Buddhism matured over the course of fourteen centuries and will be assessed in this entry in phases that, if somewhat contested in scholarly literature, still represent important stages in its development.

### The Royal dynasty and the early translation period

Tibetan literature attributes the formal introduction of Buddhism to the reign of its first emperor, Srong btsan sgam po (Songtsen gampo, d. 649/650). Undoubtedly, though, proto-Tibetan peoples had been exposed to Buddhist merchants and missionaries earlier. There is a myth that the fifth king before Srong btsan sgam po, Lha tho tho ri gnyan btsan, was residing in the ancient castle of Yum bu bla mkhar when a casket fell from the sky. Inside were a gold RELIQUARY and Buddhist scriptures. While the myth is not early, it possibly reveals a Tibetan memory of prior missionary activity. We do know that official contact with Sui China was accomplished from Central Tibet in 608 or 609 and that, as Tibet grew more powerful, Buddhist contacts increased.

Nonetheless, two of Srong btsan sgam po's wives—Wencheng from China and Bhṛkuṭī from Nepal—were credited with constructing the temples of Magical Appearance (Sprul snang, or the JO KHANG) and Ra mo che. Other temples were built as well, and twelve were later considered limb-binding temples, where a demoness representing the autochthonous forces of Tibet was subdued by the sanctified buildings. Srong btsan sgam po is also credited with having one of his ministers, Thon mi Sambhota, create the Tibetan alphabet from an Indian script and write the first grammars.

Buddhist progress occurred with the successors to Srong btsan sgam po. Notable was the foundation of the first real monastery in Tibet, BSAM YAS (SAMYE, ca. 780) and the influx of Indian, Chinese, and Central Asian monks around that time. Particularly influential were Śāntarakṣita, an important Indian scholar, and his disciple Kamalaśīla. Śāntarakṣita and his entourage were responsible for the first group of six or seven aristocratic Tibetans to be ordained in Tibet. These authoritative monks did much to cement



the relationship between Indian Buddhism and Tibetan identity. Another teacher, PADMASAMBHAVA, was a relatively obscure tantric guru whose inspiration became important later.

Translation bureaus in DUNHUANG and Central Tibet were opened by the Tibetan emperors, from Khri srong lde'u btsan (Trisong détsen, ca. 742–797) through Ral pa can (r. 815–838), but unofficial translations were recognized sources of concern. While the official bureaus emphasized the MAHĀYĀNA monastic texts, unofficial translations tended to feature more radical tantric works. During the reign of Sad na legs (r. 804–815) a council was convened to regularize Tibetan orthography and to establish both translation methods and a lexicon of equivalents for official translators. The result was the emergence of classical Tibetan, a literary language developed to render both sophisticated Buddhist terminology and foreign political documents into the rapidly evolving Tibetan medium.

Translations were initially made from several languages, but principally from Sanskrit and Chinese, so that a consistent tension between Indian and Chinese Buddhist practice and ideology marked this period. The Northern CHAN SCHOOL was present in Tibet, but from 792 to 794 a series of discussions between Indian and Chinese exegetes at the BSAM YAS DEBATE was ultimately decided in favor of the Indians. Eventually, Buddhist translations from Chinese were abandoned for exclusively Indic sources.

### Fragmentation and the later spread of the dharma

The last of the emperors, Dar ma 'U dum btsan (r. 838–842) began a campaign of suppression of Buddhism contemporary to the Huichang suppression in China. Dar ma was assassinated by a Buddhist monk, and the vast Tibetan empire fragmented over imperial succession. The period from 850 to 950 was a chaotic time marked by popular revolts and warlordism. Surviving Buddhist monks fled, and monastic practice was eclipsed in Central Tibet for approximately a century. Aristocratic clans that had accepted Buddhism, however, continued to develop indigenous rituals and new literature based on the received tradition. This is the time that the classical persona of the nonmonastic religious teacher coalesced: the lay LAMA, sometimes a mystic inspired by visions of imperial preceptors. With the reestablishment of records in the late tenth century, we see active lay Buddhist behavior—PILGRIMAGE, lay

rituals, autochthonous divinities as protectors, and so on—that was to endure to the present.

Yet the monastic religious form was closely allied to the memory of the empire, and Bsam yas stood empty. Eventually several Tibetans under the leadership of Klu mes from Central Tibet traveled to Dan tig Temple, in modern Xining, and received monastic ordination from Tibetan monks who had maintained it. Returning to Central Tibet around 980, Klu mes and others began to refurbish Bsam yas as well as construct networks of new temples. Their position, though, was often threatened by the lay lamas called Ban de, and the new monks were sometimes physically attacked.

One line of the imperial house established itself in Gu ge, in West Tibet, and some two dozen men, pre-eminently Rin chen bzang po (958–1055), were sent to study in Kashmir. Like the Tibetan emperors, the Gu ge kings supported Mahāyāna scholarship and were critical of extreme tantric behavior, whether Tibetan or Indian. While Rin chen bzang po principally translated esoteric works, many other translators, especially Ngog Blo ldan shes rab (1059–1109), specialized in Mahāyāna philosophical treatises, rendering many into Tibetan for the first time. Thus, the *Five Treatises of Maitreya* and much of the work of DHARMAKĪRTI and other scholastic authors were introduced to Tibetans through their activity. A great translator's convocation, where scholars discussed their texts and procedures, was called by the Gu ge king in 1076.

In Central Tibet, the later translation movement began with 'Brog mi (ca. 990–1060), who studied in Vikramaśīla and elsewhere in India. Following him, Dgos lo, Rwa lo, Mar pa, Kyung po rnal 'byor, and other scholars began the new translation or revision of Indian works. Many of these eleventh-century Central Tibetan translators were concerned with the newly evolving TANTRAS, which they presumed had not been revealed to earlier Tibetans. They also believed that the imperially sponsored systems had become mixed with indigenous Tibetan practices and derided them as “old style” (*rnying ma*).

For their part, certain RNYING MA (NYINGMA) teachers—especially Rong zom Chos kyi bzang po (late eleventh century)—were also translators and defended their own texts by decrying perceived inadequacies of the new translators and their Indian informants. Rong zom also composed the first synthetic Tibetan treatment of the Buddhist path in a detailed manual called the *Theg chen tshul 'jug* (*Entering the Method of the Mahāyāna*), which begins with monastic Buddhism and

culminates in the Great Perfection (*rdzogs chen*) teaching. The Zur clan was also involved in Rnying ma defense, and Zur chen and Zur chung put together the earliest *Rnying ma rgyud 'bum* (*Old Tantric Canon*).

Another Rnying ma response became the development of the “treasure” literature (*gter ma*), grounded in indigenous scriptural composition during the tenth century, when Central Tibet was isolated. Scriptural composition was normative Buddhist behavior, liberating the intention of the Buddha from excessive literalness. In India, the practice was inhibited by various conservative strategies, but Tibetans began to stretch the form in creative ways. By the eleventh century, they realized that texts revealed in Tibet could not be justified on standard literary grounds. They therefore formulated the ideology that these works had been hidden, physically or spiritually, as treasures by saints of the Royal dynasty. Many of these early treasures were dedicated to the Great Perfection view and practices.

In 1042 the important Indian missionary, ATISHA Dīpaṃkara Śrījñāna (982–1054), arrived, invited by the Gu ge king. Atisha introduced the popular Bengali cult of the goddess Tārā and reframed tantric Buddhism as an advanced practice on a continuum with monastic and Mahāyāna Buddhism. This systematization, already known in India, became designated the triple discipline (*trisaṃvara*: the monastic, bodhisattva, and tantric vows) and Atisha embedded this ideal in his *Bodhipathapradīpa* (*Lamp for the Path to Awakening*). Atisha also promoted the basic Mahāyāna curriculum of his monastery Vikramaśīla, where works like ŚĀNTIDEVA’S *BODHICARYĀVATĀRA* (*Introduction to the Conduct That Leads to the Enlightenment*) were fundamental to monastic stability. Atisha’s lay lama disciple ’Brom ston Rgyal ba’i byung gnas (1004–1064) founded the monastery of Rwa sgreng in Central Tibet (1057) and organized the Bka’ gdams pa order.

The tantric orders evolved out of the activity of the early Central Tibetan translators. Preeminent were the various traditions of the Dwags po Bka’ brgyud that derived from MAR PA (MARPA, 1002/1012–1097). While some of Mar pa’s disciples were concerned with tantric scholarship, it was Mar pa’s poet disciple MI LA RAS PA (MILAREPA, (1028/40–1111/23), and Milarepa’s disciple Sgam po pa, who effectively grounded the tradition in both tantric and monastic practice. Likewise, ’Brog mi’s center in Mu gu lung did not last, but his later follower ’Khon Dkon mchog rgyal po (1034–1102) founded SA SKYA (SAKYA) Monastery in

1073, and the Sa skya order became widely acknowledged through the influence and learning of ’Khon clan members. Beyond these, many smaller lineages were received from Indian masters but only partially succeeded in the institutionalization process of the twelfth century, eventually becoming subsets of one or another of the major orders.

### **Tanguts, Mongols, and Buddhist efflorescence in the twelfth to fourteenth centuries**

By the twelfth century, small lineages began developing into specific orders that compiled the writings of exemplary figures. The initial cloisters were expanded, becoming “mother” monasteries for a series of satellite temples and monasteries. Orders established dominion in their areas, so that lay practice tended to come under the aegis of important teachers. Buddhist doctrinal and philosophical material became an important part of the curriculum. Translation activity continued, but with an emphasis on the revision of previous translations. A CANON of translated scripture and exegesis was compiled throughout this period, so that by the end of the fourteenth century its major outlines became relatively clear. Finally, the aura of the emerging orders attracted the interest of Central Asian potentates, beginning with the Tanguts and extending to the grandsons of Genghis Khan.

The Rnying ma order had coalesced around the received teachings derived from the Royal dynastic period, whether transmitted in a human succession (*bka’ ma*) or as revealed treasure teachings (*gter ma*). Preeminently, Vimalamitra and Padmasambhava among the Indians, and Bai ro tsa na among the Tibetans, were the mythic sources for treasure scriptures. The important treasure finder Nyang ral Nyi ma ’od zer (1142–1192) and his school in southern Tibet promoted Padmasambhava over other figures. From Nyang ral’s group came the *Maṇi Bka’ ’bum*, the vehicle for the spread of the cult of Avalokiteśvara as the special protector of Tibet, purportedly embodied in Emperor Srong btsan sgam po. Treasure hagiographies of Padmasambhava by U rgyan gling pa (1323–?) have proven classics of the genre. Karma gling pa revealed the *Bar do thos grol*, widely known in the West as the TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD. Although Rnying ma philosophical authors were relatively few, Klong chen rab ’byams pa (1308–1363) set the standard for tantric scholarship. Basing himself on treasures of the *Snying thig* (seminal drop) tradition of the Great Perfection, Klong chen pa authored important discussions of Rnying ma theory and practice.



A statue of Padmasambhava, who played a crucial role in the establishment of Buddhism in Tibet in the eighth century, at the Jokhang Temple, Lhasa, Tibet. © Craig Lovell/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

The 'Khon clan continued to develop Sa skya Monastery, with the help of such individuals as Ba ri lo tsā ba (1040–1112), who assembled many relics at Sa skya. The great literary contributions, though, came from the five Sa skya masters: Sa chen Kun dga' snying po (1092–1158), Bsod nams rtse mo (1142–1182), Grags pa rgyal mtshan (1147–1216), SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA, 1182–1251), and Chos rgyal 'Phags pa (1235–1280). Sa chen specialized in tantric scholarship, writing the first summary of the tantric path in Tibet and compiling eleven commentaries on the central text of the esoteric *Lam 'bras (Path and Fruit)*, attributed to the Indian saint Virūpa. Sa chen's sons, Bsod nams rtse mo and Grags pa rgyal mtshan, contributed to the myth of the Buddha, established tantric exegesis, commented on Śāntideva's *Bodhicaryāvatāra*, and codified the Sa skya understanding of the tantric path. With Sa skya Paṇḍita, the Sa skya took to conservative philosophical scholarship, and the Sa skya order came to be known for its maintenance of the triple discipline and its defense of Dharmakīrti's epistemological system.

However, many original Tibetan contributions to Buddhism also came from this period. Among his innovations, Phya pa Chos kyi seng ge (1109–1169) developed philosophical definitions, doctrines of universals, and methods of argumentation; many challenged Indian assumptions, especially those of Dharmakīrti. In an entirely different direction, seminal BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) representatives, like Sgam po pa bsod nams rin chen (1079–1153), delineated the doctrines of the self-sufficient white remedy (*dkar po gcig thub*). These doctrines posited a soteriology of a single meditative method under the rubric of the Great Seal (*mahāmudrā*). Another Bka' brgyud pa, 'Bri gung 'Jig rten mgon po (1143–1217), additionally proposed that all the Buddha's statements were of definitive meaning (*nītārtha*), so that they all had the same intention (*dgongs gcig*). Also based on esoteric Buddhist ideals, Dol bu pa Shes rab rgyal mtshan (1292–1361) represented the newly formed Jo nang school, a tradition grounded in KĀLACAKRA exegesis. Dol bu pa's reading of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) emphasized an emptying of attributes from a ground of reality and became technically known as the "other emptiness" (*gzhan stong*). This position stood in opposition to the "self emptiness" (*rang stong*) of orthodox MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL philosophy. Like the ideology of the eighth-century Chinese Heshang Moheyan and the more radical Rnying ma doctrines, most of these Tibetan contributions became refuted by the orthodox, who adhered to a narrow definition of acceptable statements based on conformity to Indian texts by specific authors.

The Sa skya were granted control over Tibet during the Yuan dynasty, with the fifth of the great Sa skya teachers, 'Phags pa blo gros rgyal mtshan (1235–1280) proclaimed Kublai Khan's national preceptor in 1261. Sa skya leaders supported Mongol policies, such as the first census of Tibet, and some scholars became influenced by Mongol and Chinese literature, with Chinese imperial records translated into Tibetan. However, about 1350, during the Yuan decline, the Bka' brgyud pa monk Ta'i si tu Byang chub rgyal mtshan (1302–1364) challenged the Sa skya for control of Central Tibet. He was successful in some measure, and his Phag mo gru pa subtradition was the dominant political force for most of the next century.

One result was the formalization of the Tibetan canon under Ta'i si tu's patronage, by BU STON (BU TÖN) Rin chen grub (1290–1364). Bu ston catalogued the tantric canon (*rgyud 'bum*) section of the translated scriptures (*Bka' 'gyur*) and compiled the translated authoritative treatises (*Bstan 'gyur*). In the

canonical compilation process, Bu ston wrote a history of the dharma, where scriptures and treatises were set out in a grand schematism of history, cosmology, and mythology. About the same time, the learned Sa skya hierarch, Bla ma dam pa Bsod nams rgyal mtshan (1312–1375), wrote the *Rgyal rabs gsal ba'i me long* (*Mirror Illuminating Royal Genealogy*), representing the popular mythology of the imperial period and origin of the Tibetan people.

Moreover, the peculiarly Tibetan office of the reincarnate lama became institutionalized. One of Sgam po pa's important disciples, the KARMA PA I Dus gsum mkhyen pa (1110–1193) was said to have prophesied his own rebirth as Karma pa II Karma Pakshi (1204–1283). While earlier teachers were said to be the reembodyment of specific saints or BODHISATTVAS, this was the first formalization of reincarnation, with the previous saint's disciples maintaining continuity and instructing his reembodyment. Following the lead of the Bka' brgyud pa, most traditions eventually appropriated the institution.

#### **Great institutions and the Dga' ldan pa in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries**

If the previous three centuries represented an intense struggle with intellectual and canonical issues, the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries demonstrated the struggle for institutional authenticity. In part because of the political power wielded by the Sa skya and Bka' brgyud orders, many of the cloisters had become more social or political institutions, with religious involvement in the hands of the great clans or landed interests. Indeed, Tibetan monasteries were ripe for reformation, with great wealth and political authority eclipsing aspects of spirituality.

The most important event of this period was the rise and development of the reform order of TSONG KHA PA Blo bzang grags pa (1357–1419). Born in Amdo, Tsong kha pa originally studied in many traditions, but his most important intellectual influence was the Sa skya monk Red mda' ba (1349–1412), who had championed the radical Prāsaṅgika-Madhyamaka system of CANDRAKĪRTI (ca. 600–650). However, Tsong kha pa became dissatisfied with the contemporary understanding of monastic institutions and more general aspects of scholarship. With successive visions of Mañjuśrī, Tsong kha pa understood that he was to emphasize the system that Atisha had brought to Tibet. Eventually, after many years of wandering through Tibet bestowing instruction, he was persuaded to settle down and in 1409 founded the monastery of Dga' ldan,

the Tibetan translation of Tuṣita, the name of MAITREYA's heaven. Tsong kha pa's order was called the Dga' ldan pa, although it was also known as the new Bka' gdams pa or the DGE LUGS (GELUK; Virtuous Order). He changed the color of their hats to yellow as well, giving them the name Yellow Hats in the West.

In a series of important treatises, he articulated a systematization of the exoteric Mahāyāna meditative path (*Lam rim chen mo*) and the esoteric practice according to the VAJRAYĀNA (*Sngags rim chen mo*). In the latter instance, he employed interpretive systems developed by exponents of the *Guhyasamāja tantra* to articulate a systematic HERMENEUTICS that could be applied to all tantras. Tsong kha pa, though, is best noted for his intellectual synthesis of the Madhyamaka and Yogācāra systems of Buddhism, using Indian treatises as a basis for his great commentaries and sub-commentaries, and emphasizing the philosophical position of Candrakīrti.

Three of his disciples were most important in the continuation of his work. Rgyal tshab Dar ma rin chen (1364–1432) was Tsong kha pa's successor at Dga' ldan and was especially noted for his orthodox summaries and commentaries that became the basis for much of Dge lugs pa scholasticism. Mkhas grub Dge legs dpal bzang (1385–1438) succeeded him at Dga' ldan and was known for his acerbic tone toward his contemporaries as well as his epistemological treatises and his *Kālacakra tantra* exegesis. Dge 'dun grub pa (1391–1474, posthumously the first DALAI LAMA) founded the great monastery of Bkra shis lhun po in 1447 and was also noted for his scholarly work on epistemology. The rush to construct new Dga' ldan pa monasteries continued through the fifteenth century, with 'Bras spung (1416) and Se ra (1419) founded in the area of Lhasa, while others spread out east and west. Some of these monasteries eventually enrolled several thousand monks and were virtual religious cities. Part of this process led to the mission of Bsod nams rgya mtsho (1543–1588) to the Mongols, who had lapsed from Buddhist practice after their involvement with the Sa skya. Widely received, he was given the title Dalai Lama by Altan Khan, a title extended to his earlier incarnations beginning with Dge 'dun grub pa. Bsod nams rgya mtsho's reincarnation (Dalai Lama IV, Yon tan rgya mtsho, 1589–1616) was discovered as the great-grandson of Altan Khan, the only Dalai Lama not Tibetan by birth.

The intellectual and institutional vitality of the Dga' ldan pa did not go unopposed, and the Sa skya

in particular found much to criticize. Interestingly, the Sa skya tradition also became involved in its own reform movement. Ngor chen Kun dga' bzang po (1382–1456) founded the monastery of Ngor E wam chos ldan in 1429 and established it as the most important tradition of esoteric Lam 'bras instruction, supplemented by the personality and work of Tshar chen Blo gsal rgya mtsho (1502–1566).

The sixteenth century was a high-water mark for scholarship in other traditions as well. Karma pa VIII, Mi bskyod rdo rje (1504–1557), questioned the basis for Dga' ldan pa confidence and provided a critique of the Rnying ma as well. The Bka' brgyud pa historians Dpa' bo Gtsug lag phreng ba (1504–1566) and 'Brug chen Pad ma dkar po (1527–1592) forcefully established their readings of Tibetan history and the tantric movement. Mnga' ris pan chen Pad ma dbang rgyal (1487–1542) formulated the classic Rnying ma statement of the triple discipline. Sog bzlog pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan (b. 1552) compiled the statements of Rnying ma opponents and established a defense of Rnying ma and treasure legitimacy.

### **The Dalai Lamas and Rnying ma revitalization in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries**

The Tibetan religious landscape changed dramatically again in the seventeenth century. Clans in the provinces of Dbus and Gtsang had been warring for several decades, and each had its associated religious affiliation. In Dbus, the fifth Dalai Lama—affectionately known to Tibetans as the Great Fifth (Za hor ban de Ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho, 1617–1682)—had developed a base of power in 'Bras spung Monastery. The Great Fifth Dalai Lama was extraordinarily learned, with teachers from the Dga' ldan, Sa kya, Zha lu, and Rnying ma traditions. He was also highly ambitious and built on the previous Dalai Lamas' Mongolian connections, finally using the military might of Gushri Khan's Qoshot Mongols to solidify control over Tibet in 1642, inaugurating the reign of the Dalai Lamas.

Some traditions favored by the Great Fifth were greatly benefited. Because of his strong Rnying ma connections (he was one of the very few Dgan' ldan pa treasure finders) the Rnying ma tradition prospered. This was an important time for treasure traditions, with visionaries like Mi 'gyur rdo rje (1647–1667) and U rgyan gter bdag gling pa (1616–1714) revealing new textual cycles. Likewise, Rnying ma scholarship flourished, with scholars like

Lo chen Dharma śrī (1654–1717). Virtually all the greatest Rnying ma monasteries were built during this period—Rdo rje brag (1632), Kaḥ tog (originally 1159 but resurrected in 1656), Dpal yul (1665), O rgyan smin grol gling (1670), Rdzogs chen (1685), and Zhe chen (1735). Despite a short-lived suppression from 1717 to 1720, the Rnying ma tradition in the eighteenth century was graced by exceptional figures as well, especially the historian Kaḥ tog rig 'dzin Tshed dbang nor bu (1698–1755) and the Omniscient 'Jigs med gling pa (1730–98). 'Jigs med gling pa was to dominate Rnying ma meditative traditions for the next two centuries with his Klong chen snying thig revelations.

Conversely, traditions not favored by the Great Fifth experienced significant problems. Most notoriously, he suppressed the Jo nang order, which had been undergoing a revival through the profound influence of Jo nang Tārānātha (1575–1634), an erudite scholar and historian. However, after 1642 the monastery was placed in Dga' ldan pa hands, the literature of the Jo nang pa was suppressed, and the order survived only in a few minor convents in far northeastern Tibet. The works of scholars critical of Tsong kha pa or his disciples were also suppressed, so that copies survived only in rare collections. The unfortunate sectarianism displayed by the Dga' ldan pa at this time was embodied in the literary form of the monastic syllabus (*yig cha*), the obligatory textbook of sectarian principles. Sectarianism was occasionally mitigated by open-minded Dga' ldan scholars like Lcang skya rol pa'i rdo rje (1717–1786).

This period was the great printing period for Tibetan Buddhism. Despite Tibetan forays into woodblock printing as early as the thirteenth century in Mongolia, the entire Tibetan canon (*Bka' 'gyur* and *Bstan 'gyur*) was not completely printed until the eighteenth century. The first *Bka' 'gyur* editions were printed under Chinese patronage, which continued through the eighteenth century (Yongle, 1410; Wanli, 1606; Kangxi, 1684–1692, 1700, 1717–1720; Qianlong, 1737). Editions produced in Tibet included the Li tang (1608–1621), Snar thang (1730–1732), Sde dge (1733), Co ni (1721–1731), and the Lha sa (1930s). The *Bstan 'gyur* editions include the Qianlong (1724), Sde dge (1737–1744), Snar thang (1741–1742), and Cho ni (1753–1773). In this same period, the collected works of the Sa skya masters were printed in Sde dge (ca. 1737), and 'Jigs med gling pa reorganized and expanded the *Old Tantric Canon*; it was eventually printed from 1794 to 1798.



Tibetan Buddhists prostrate themselves before the Jo khang Temple in Lhasa, Tibet. © Paula Bronstein/Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

### The modern nonsectarian movement and monastic intransigence in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries

The nineteenth century saw the rise of a nonsectarian movement in Eastern Tibet (Khams), where the Sa skya and the Rnying ma orders were especially supported. This movement tried to move Tibetans from a narrow view of lineage toward an ecumenical vision of Buddhist study and practice and specialized in the collection and publication of compendia of religious practice and ideas. 'Jam dbyang Mkhayen brtse'i dbang po (1820–1892) received training in both Sa skya and Rnying ma schools, and he promoted the study of their esoteric systems. Kong sprul Blo gros mtha' yas (1813–1899) developed a synthetic vision of treasure, one that integrated Rnying ma, Bon po, and Bka' brgyud systems all together in his great *Rin chen gter mdzod* (*Treasury of Gems*). In the Sa skya order, 'Jam dbyang Blo gter dbang po (1847–ca. 1914) brought together two great compendia of new translation practices, as well as editing and publishing the Sa skya esoteric system of the Lam 'bras in the face of criticism about the loss of secrecy. Two Rnying ma scholars established specifically Rnying ma scholastic syllabi: 'Ju Mi pham (1846–1912) and Mkhan po Gzhan dga' (1871–1927), the former studied by Rnying ma stu-

dents, while Gzhan dga' was also favored by the Ngor pa subset of the Sa skya.

By the turn of the twentieth century, Tibetans were becoming exposed to the wider world, especially through the Younghusband expedition (1904). With a British trade agent forcibly placed in Tibet, the Chinese responded, and the thirteenth Dalai Lama alternatively took refuge with the Chinese and the British, with Tibetans becoming aware that the world was unexpectedly changing. Sometimes this awareness had unforeseen consequences, and the scholar Dge 'dun chos 'phel (1901–1951) was especially provocative, as a monk with an interest in journalism, erotic literature, and intellectual criticism.

### Communism and the Tibetan diaspora

The Communist Chinese military success of 1949 and subsequent invasion of Tibet in 1950 succeeded in subduing Tibet, where centuries of prior Chinese efforts had failed. For Buddhist traditions, the initial destruction of temples and monasteries in Eastern Tibet was still relatively modest, and many believed that Tibet could negotiate with Mao Zedong. The Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution of 1966 to 1976 changed everything, with the resultant massive destruction of

virtually all monastic institutions and much of the religious art and literature. Some had read the signs, and Tibetans carried out or hid an astonishing amount of their portable art and books.

The fourteenth Dalai Lama had already fled Tibet in 1959, and over the next decade a steady stream of refugees began to populate the camps on Indian soil—perhaps 100,000 in all. Ever true to their traditions, Tibetans immediately set about to construct temples, monasteries, monastic schools, and print their sacred books. The latter project was assisted by the Public Law 480 Program of the United States, especially when directed by the brilliant Tibetologist E. Gene Smith, so that Tibetan (and other) books were purchased as part of Indian debt servicing to the United States. The Public Law 480 Program allowed foreign scholars access to Tibet's great literature for the first time, while publishers could provide monasteries with discounted copies of their literature.

### Post-Maoist Tibet

Since the opening of Tibet after the Cultural Revolution, there has been a resurgence of Buddhist practice. The Chinese have resurrected religious buildings—the POTALA, Norbulinka, the Jo khang, and so on—as museums for tourism, and Tibet's cities have become Han Chinese enclaves, but Buddhism is thriving in the countryside. Ever suspicious of religion, the Chinese have sought to control monastic construction and the number of clergy. The participation of monks (and foreign sympathizers) in insurrections has exacerbated Beijing's mistrust. Even then, individual teachers have temporarily managed against great obstacles, although their building efforts are often dismantled. Certain lamas find allies in Han businessmen, who provide capital and political legitimacy to construction projects. China has also played politics with the process of reincarnation, installing its own PANCHEN LAMA and incarcerating the Dalai Lama's choice. More curiously, Tibetan publishing has taken off in the People's Republic of China since Mao's death, making many rare chronicles available for the first time.

The continued tug-of-war between the Dalai Lama's government in Dharamsala and Beijing over human rights and religious freedom is in part incomprehension by Beijing, in part stalling tactics until the Dalai Lama's death. Many young Tibetans in diaspora chafe at the Dalai Lama's pacifism, and there is unhappiness among some Tibetans in India or Nepal about either the Dalai Lama's policies or his ecumenical religious position. Some Dga' ldan pa sectarianism continues

and promotes Rdo rje shugs ldan, a divinity representing the dominance of the Dga' ldan pa. American movie stars and the 1989 Nobel Prize for peace for the Dalai Lama have provided legitimacy to Tibetan aspirations, at the cost of some integrity. Yet, despite tensions inside Tibet and elsewhere, there can be little doubt that Buddhism and national identity are so intertwined in Tibetans' minds that the continuation of some sort of Buddhist practice by Tibetans is assured.

*See also:* **Apocrypha; Communism and Buddhism; Himalayas, Buddhist Art in**

### Bibliography

- Cabezón, José Ignacio, and Jackson, Roger R. *Tibetan Literature: Studies in Genre*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Dreyfus, Georges B. J. *Recognizing Reality: Dharmakīrti's Philosophy and Its Tibetan Interpretations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1997.
- Ekvall, Robert B. *Religious Observances in Tibet: Patterns and Function*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1964.
- Huber, Toni. *The Cult of the Pure Crystal Mountain: Popular Pilgrimage and Visionary Landscape in Southeast Tibet*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Jackson, David. *Enlightenment by a Single Means*. Vienna: Der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1994.
- Kapstein, Matthew T. *The Tibetan Assimilation of Buddhism: Conversion, Contestation, and Memory*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Nebesky-Workowitz, René de. *Oracles and Demons of Tibet: The Cult and Iconography of the Tibetan Protective Deities*. The Hague, Netherlands: Mouton, 1956.
- Powers, John. *Introduction to Tibetan Buddhism*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1995.
- Ruegg, David Seyfort. *Buddha-nature, Mind, and the Problem of Gradualism in a Comparative Perspective*. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1989.
- Shakabpa, Tsepon W. D. *Tibet: A Political History*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1967.
- Smith, E. Gene. *Among Tibetan Texts: History and Literature of the Himalayan Plateau*. Somerville, MA: Wisdom, 2001.
- Snellgrove, David. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.
- Stein, R. A. *Tibetan Civilization*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1972.
- Thondup, Tulku. *Hidden Teachings of Tibet: An Explanation of the Terma Tradition of the Nyingma School of Buddhism*. London: Wisdom, 1986.

Tucci, Giuseppe. *Tibetan Painted Scrolls*. Rome: La Libreria Dello Stato, 1949. Reprint, 3 vols., Bangkok, Thailand: SDI, 1999.

Tucci, Giuseppe. *The Religions of Tibet*, tr. Geoffrey Samuel. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980.

RONALD M. DAVIDSON

## TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD

The *Tibetan Book of the Dead* is the title created by Walter Yeeling Evans-Wentz (1878–1965), its first Western-language editor, for a collection of Tibetan ritual and literary texts concerned with DEATH, INTERMEDIATE STATES (Sanskrit, *antarābhava*; Tibetan, *bar do*), and REBIRTH. In Tibetan the collection is actually titled *Bar do thos grol chen mo* (*Great Liberation upon Hearing in the Intermediate State*) and belongs to a much larger body of ritual and yogic literature called *Zhi khro dgongs pa rang grol* (*Self Liberated Wisdom of the Peaceful and Wrathful Deities*). Tradition attributes authorship of this cycle of funerary literature to the eighth-century Indian yogin PADMASAMBHAVA, who is believed to have concealed it as a religious “treasure” (Tibetan, *gter ma*) so that it could later be revealed at a more appropriate time. The basic texts of this hidden treasure were excavated by an obscure fourteenth-century “treasure-revealer” (Tibetan, *gter ston*) named Karma Gling pa. His “Tibetan Book of the Dead” tradition originated and was initially fostered in the southeastern Tibetan region of Dwags po and attracted followers from both the RNYING MA (NYINGMA) and BKA’ BRGYUD (KAGYU) orders. Its rituals were refined and institutionalized sometime in the late fifteenth century in nearby Kong po, from where it was eventually transmitted throughout other parts of Tibet, Bhutan, Sikkim, Nepal, India, and later Europe and the United States.

The literature of the *Tibetan Book of the Dead* contains esoteric yoga teachings and liturgical directives focused on a MAṄḌALA of one hundred peaceful and wrathful deities (Tibetan, *zhi khro rigs brgya*) and includes detailed religious instructions to be employed at the moment of death and during the perilous intermediate state leading to a new existence. Its combination of ideas and practices are founded upon older conceptions originating in late Indian Buddhist tantra and in Tibetan Buddhist and non-Buddhist indigenous formulations that began to emerge in Tibet around the eleventh century. The literature’s fundamental con-

ceptual premises are derived essentially from the religious doctrines of the Great Perfection (Tibetan, *rdzogs chen*) tradition, an innovative Tibetan system standardized in the late fourteenth century and promoted especially by followers of the Rnying ma and non-Buddhist BON orders. According to this tradition, dying persons and those already deceased are presented during their last moments and in the interim period between lives with a series of diminishing opportunities for recognizing the true nature of reality. It is held that if the dying and deceased are capable of perceiving correctly the confusing and often terrifying death and postmortem visions as mental projections reflective of previous habitual thoughts and KARMA (ACTION), then enlightened liberation can be attained, leading directly to buddhahood. Failure to recognize the nature of these visions, however, leads eventually to rebirth and further suffering in the cycle of existence (SAṂSĀRA). Traditionally, to help the dying and the dead regain clarity of awareness at the moment of death and in the intermediate state, a LAMA (Tibetan, *bla ma*) or lay religious specialist will recite guiding instructions and inspirational prayers from the ritual cycle of the *Tibetan Book of the Dead*.

The Evans-Wentz edition of the *Tibetan Book of the Dead*, first published in 1927, was compiled from original Tibetan translations drawn up by the Sikkimese teacher Kazi Dawa Samdup (1868–1922). The book includes translations of only a small number of texts belonging to the literary tradition of the *Bar do thos grol chen mo*. The formal arrangement of this small group of texts as a unified and coherent “book” is misleading and obscures the fact that in Tibet there exists a variety of arrangements of this large ritual and literary cycle, each reflecting a different lineage of transmission and the localized interpretations of specific religious communities.

Popular enthusiasm for the *Tibetan Book of the Dead* has grown to such proportions that it now stands arguably as the most famous Tibetan book in the West. The Evans-Wentz edition has gone through numerous reprints in America and Europe, and it has inspired since 1927 several new translations from the original Tibetan texts.

*See also:* Tibet

### *Bibliography*

Blezer, Henk. *Kar gliñ Ži khro: A Tantric Buddhist Concept*. Leiden, Netherlands: Research School CNWS, 1997.



Cuevas, Bryan J. *The Hidden History of the Tibetan Book of the Dead*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Evans-Wentz, W. Y., and Kazi Dawa Samdup, ed. and trans. *The Tibetan Book of the Dead* (1927). Reprint, New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.

Fremantle, Francesca, and Chögyam Trungpa, trans. *The Tibetan Book of the Dead: The Great Liberation through Hearing in the Bardo*. Boston: Shambhala, 1975.

Lauf, Detlef Ingo. *Secret Doctrines of the Tibetan Books of the Dead*, tr. Graham Parkes. Boston: Shambhala, 1977.

Thurman, Robert, trans. *The Tibetan Book of the Dead: Liberation through Understanding in the Between*. New York: Bantam, 1994.

BRYAN J. CUEVAS

---

**TIME.** See **Cosmology; Decline of the Dharma; Millenarianism and Millenarian Movements**

---

**TŌDAIJI.** See **Hōryūji and Tōdaiji**

---

## TOMINAGA NAKAMOTO

Tominaga Nakamoto (1715–1746) has often been included among a diverse group of rationalist or enlightenment (*keimō*) thinkers who emerged in eighteenth-century Japan. Counted among their numbers are medical doctors, scientists, economists, and others, all of whom shared a critical stance toward traditional religious authority and who believed that reliable knowledge could come only from the rigorous application of reason.

Born into the merchant class in Osaka, Tominaga was educated in a Confucian school, the Kaitokudō or Pavilion of Virtues, that his father and four other merchants had established. Tominaga was a brilliant student and by the age of fifteen he had completed his first study, *Setsuhei* (*Failings of the Classical Philosophers*), for which he was expelled from the school. The text is no longer extant, but passing references to it in later works suggest that it was a critical treatment of Confucianism. After his expulsion, he studied with other Confucian teachers, but he may also have read Buddhist texts at Manpukuji, a Zen monastery in Kyoto, where some believe he worked as a proofreader. The monastery was publishing a new edition of the Buddhist CANON at the time.

Tominaga died at the early age of thirty-one, but his breadth of knowledge of Confucianism, Buddhism, and Shintō enabled him to write two works that, after his death, had a revolutionary impact on Japanese religious history. In the short essay “Okina no fumi” (“The Writings of an Old Man,” 1738) and in the much longer *Shutsujō gōgo* (*Talks after Emerging from Meditation*, 1745), he advanced the view that Japan’s traditional religions were so historically and culturally conditioned that their claims to teach ultimate truth were untenable. In *Shutsujō gōgo* he focused his analysis on Buddhism in particular, contending that the texts of MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism, the dominant branch in Japan, were so different in language and content from the other sūtras that they could not be the direct teachings of the Buddha. Tominaga was the first person to systematically make this case in Japan. Viewed as a threat to the entire tradition, his position prompted numerous counterarguments from the Buddhist community. By the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, however, most Japanese Buddhist scholars accepted Tominaga’s assertion about the later origins of Mahāyāna sūtras and embraced the critical historical approach to the study of texts that he had advanced.

See also: **Buddhist Studies; Confucianism and Buddhism; Japan**

### *Bibliography*

Kato, Shuichi. “Okina no fumi: The Writings of an Old Man.” *Monumenta Nipponica* 22, nos. 1–2 (1967): 194–210.

Kato, Shuichi. “Tominaga Nakamoto, 1715–1746: A Tokugawa Iconoclast.” *Monumenta Nipponica* 22, nos. 1–2 (1967): 177–193.

Najita, Tetsuo. *Visions of Virtue in Tokugawa Japan: The Kaitokudō, Merchant Academy of Osaka*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987.

Pye, Michael. *Emerging from Meditation: Tominaga Nakamoto*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.

PAUL B. WATT

---

**TONSURE.** See **Hair**

---

**TRIPITAKA.** See **Abhidharma; Canon; Commentarial Literature; Scripture; Vinaya**

TRIRATNA. *See* Refuges

## TSONG KHA PA

Although Tsong kha pa (1357–1419) is considered by many as a seminal figure, the nature of his contribution is not always well understood. He is often presented as a reformer of Tibetan Buddhism or as being hostile to tantric practice. To correct these misapprehensions, he must be placed within his historical context before sketching some of his key ideas.

Tsong kha pa was born during a crucial period in the second development (*phyi dar*) of Tibetan Buddhism, which had started at the end of the tenth century. One of the important questions debated during this period was the relation between monasticism and tantric practice. A solution was initiated by the famous Indian teacher ATISHA (982–1054) and further developed by other Tibetan thinkers such as ‘Brom ston (1055–1064) and SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA) (1182–1251). According to this model, monasticism and tantric practices are included in the PATH of the BODHISATTVA, which provides the ethical framework for the entire range of Buddhist practices. In this perspective, higher tantric practices, ethically subordinated to the bodhisattva ideal, are the most effective way to realize this ideal, while monasticism is the best way of life to embody it.

Tsong kha pa devoted much of his work to the continuation of this moral tradition, as is made clear in his masterful *Lam rim chen mo* (*Extensive Stages of the Path to Enlightenment*). He regarded the promotion of monasticism as one of his central missions, as illustrated by his establishment in 1409 of the Great Prayer (*smon lam chen mo*) festival in Lhasa, which is said to have brought together eight thousand monks. Tsong kha pa’s biographers consider this one of his most important deeds. It laid the ground for the foundation during the same year of the monastery Dga’ ldan, one of the three main monasteries near Lhasa. The other two monasteries, ‘Bras spung (pronounced Drepung) and Se ra, were founded shortly thereafter by two of Tsong kha pa’s direct disciples, thus creating the famous three seats, the institutional basis for the future growth of his tradition.

Tsong kha pa’s fame is also due to the quality of his works and the power of his ideas. He lived during the period in which Tibetans developed their own sys-

tematic presentation of the range of Buddhist materials they had received from India. Tsong kha pa’s synthesis, which brings together the exoteric and esoteric aspects of the tradition, is not only masterful in the quality of its scholarship, it is also highly original and distinctive in its interpretations, particularly in the fields of the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL and TANTRA, which Tsong kha pa considered his specialties.

Tsong kha pa’s interpretation of Indian Madhyama is characterized by his strong preference for the Prāsaṅgika (consequentialist) approach of CANDRAKĪRTI (ca. 600–650 C.E.), which Tsong kha pa sees as the only fully correct view. In asserting the superiority of the Prāsaṅgika, Tsong kha pa adopts the views of earlier thinkers such as Spa tshab (b. 1055) and his followers, as well as Tsong kha pa’s own main teacher Red mda ba (1349–1412). These teachers extolled Candrakīrti’s Prāsaṅgika view of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) as being utterly beyond any description and hence beyond the reach of logical thinking. Tsong kha pa, however, insists on retaining a place for the traditional tools of Buddhist logic within this radical view, arguing that even in the context of the search for the ultimate one needs probative arguments.

This trust in Buddhist logic in a Prāsaṅgika context is unique to Tsong kha pa. Earlier thinkers such as Phya pa (1109–1169) had insisted on the importance of Buddhist LOGIC in Madhyamaka, but they followed the Svātantrika of BHĀVAVIVEKA (ca. 500–570 C.E.). Tsong kha pa adopted Phya pa’s realist interpretation of Buddhist logic but integrated it into Candrakīrti’s interpretation. This led to the creation of an audacious synthesis, which conciliates a radical undermining of essentialism and a realist confidence that thinking can apprehend reality, at least partly, and therefore can lead to insight into the ultimate nature of things.

For Tsong kha pa, this conviction is reflected in the development of the three types of critical acumen (*prajñā*; Tibetan, *shes rab or*) articulated by the Indian Buddhist tradition. First, one should study extensively both sūtras and tantras. Then one should start the process of internalization of the teachings by reflecting inwardly on them. This is the stage at which probative arguments are essential, because without proper inferences understanding remains superficial and fails to reach conviction in the Buddhist teaching in general and in the validity of the Prāsaṅgika view in particular. Finally, one should enter into prolonged meditative retreats to attain the experiential realization of the studied teachings, as Tsong kha pa did at

‘Ol khar chos lung during the winter of 1392 to 1393. There he underwent several tantric retreats and received important visions, particularly that of Manjuśrī, his tutelary deity. This progression was particularly significant for Tsong kha pa, who saw his entire life accordingly.

As his practice makes clear, Tsong kha pa’s work is not limited to the exoteric domains. In fact, the majority of his famous eighteen volumes of collected works are devoted to the study of tantras. For Tsong kha pa, the most important tantra is the *Guhya-samāja* cycle, which provides the key to the interpretation of the entire tantric corpus. Together with the *Yamāntaka* and *Cakrasaṃvara*, this tantra provides a map of the entire tantric practice, thus completing the vast synthesis of the tradition, from the most basic practices of monasticism to the highest yogic practices. For Tsong kha pa, tantric practice is central, but it is essential that it be undertaken gradually, as advocated by Atisha, after extensive preliminaries involving the study and assimilation of the entire exoteric path.

*See also:* Dalai Lama; Dge Lugs (Geluk); Panchen Lama; Tantra; Tibet

### **Bibliography**

- Dreyfus, Georges B. J. *Recognizing Reality: Dharmakīrti’s Philosophy and Its Tibetan Interpreters*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1997.
- Hopkins, Jeffrey. *Meditation on Emptiness*. Boston: Wisdom, 1983.
- Napper, Elizabeth. *Dependent-Arising and Emptiness: A Tibetan Buddhist Interpretation of Madhyamika Philosophy Emphasizing the Compatibility of Emptiness and Conventional Phenomena*. Boston: Wisdom, 1989.
- Snellgrove, David, and Richardson, Hugh. *A Cultural History of Tibet*. Boston: Shambala, 1968.
- Thurman, Robert, ed. *Life and Teachings of Tsong Khapa*, tr. Sherpa Tulku. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1982.
- Tillemans, Tom J. F. *Scripture, Logic, Language: Essays on Dharmakīrti and His Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Wisdom, 1999.
- Tsong kha pa. *The Great Treatise on the Stages of the Path to Enlightenment*, tr. the *Lamrim Chenmo* Translation Committee. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 2000.

GEORGES B. J. DREYFUS

---

TULKU. *See* Lama

# U



## ŬICH'ŎN

Ŭich'ŏn (Taegak *kuksa*, 1055–1101) was the fourth son of King Munjong (r. 1047–1083) of the Korean Koryŏ dynasty. Ŭich'ŏn became the head of Buddhist saṅgha in Koryŏ at the age of thirteen. Well versed in Buddhist scriptures, particularly the teachings of the Hwaŏm (Huayan) school, he nevertheless decided to further his study in China after a long period of correspondence with the Song monk Jinshui Jingyuan (1011–1088). In 1085, after leaving a letter to his mother and his brother, the new King Sŏnjong (r. 1083–1094), Ŭich'ŏn surreptitiously boarded a merchant's ship and sailed to Song dynasty China to embark on his pilgrimage. During his fourteen-month sojourn in China, he met and consulted some fifty leading masters on the Chan, Huayan, and Tiantai schools of Buddhism, while studying with Jingyuan at Hiuyin Monastery in Hangzhou.

Ŭich'ŏn brought a number of important Huayan texts to China, which enabled Jingyuan to redefine the Huayan lineage. As Jingyuan's favorite disciple, Ŭich'ŏn was a prominent figure whose celebrity also helped boost the popularity of the master's monastery, which became known as the Koryŏ Monastery. After returning to Koryŏ and becoming the abbot of Hŭngwangsa, he managed to synthesize the Sŏn (Chinese, Chan; Japanese, Zen) school and the Kyo (scholastic) forms of Buddhism in Korea. He also founded a revitalized Ch'ŏnt'ae (Chinese, Tiantai) Buddhism in Koryŏ. In his monastery, Ŭich'ŏn built a library and a collection of important Buddhist texts, for which he compiled a catalogue called *Sin'pyŏn chejong kyojang ch'ongnok* (*New Catalogue of Buddhist Sectarian Writings*). The catalogue and his writings, the *Taegak kuksa munjip*

and the *Taegak kuksa woejip*, remain important sources for the study of Korean Buddhism.

*See also:* **Huayan School; Tiantai School**

### **Bibliography**

*Huiyinsi zhi* (*Record of Huiyin Monastery*). Taipei, Taiwan: Mingwen shuju, 1981.

*Taegak kuksa munjip and Taegak kuksa woejip* (*Collected Works of the National Preceptor Taegak*). Seoul: Kongguk University, 1974.

CHI-CHIANG HUANG

## ŬISANG

Ŭisang (625–702) was the founder of the Hwaŏm school and an influential thinker in Korea and China. In 644 he was ordained a monk at Hwangboksa in Kyŏngju, the capital of Silla. Together with WŎNHYO (617–686), Ŭisang decided to study under Chinese masters. After a first unsuccessful attempt in 650, Ŭisang finally reached Tang China in 661, where he studied under Zhiyan (602–668), the second patriarch of the HUAYAN SCHOOL. Together with FAZANG (643–712), the future third patriarch of the Huayan school, Ŭisang became one of Zhiyan's chief disciples. In 668 Ŭisang wrote the *Hwaŏm ilsŭng pŏpkye to* (*Diagram of the Dharmadhātu According to the One Vehicle of Hwaŏm*), a poem epitomizing his understanding of Huayan philosophy. During the same year, Zhiyan died and Ŭisang took over teaching the disciples of his deceased master.

In 670 Ŭisang returned to Korea, warning King Munmu about an impending invasion of Silla by Tang army forces. In 676 Pusōksa on Mount T'aebaek was built under royal decree and functioned as Ŭisang's main center for the propagation of the Hwaōm school in Korea. Purportedly, Ŭisang gathered more than three thousand disciples and subsequently founded other monasteries throughout the country, further promoting Hwaōm studies. Ŭisang's erudition was known both inside and outside of Korea. Fazang continued to correspond with Ŭisang, asking him to correct his manuscripts.

During the subsequent Koryō dynasty, CHINUL (1158–1210) copiously cited Ŭisang's works and King Sukjong conferred on him a posthumous title. Ŭisang's *Hwaōm ilsŭng pōpkye* to is often recited in modern Korean Buddhist liturgy.

### Bibliography

- Forte, Antonino. *A Jewel in Indra's Net: The Letter Sent by Fazang in China to Ŭisang in Korea*. Kyoto: Instituto Italiano di Cultura Scuola di Studi Sull'Asia Orientale, 2000.
- Lee, Peter H., ed. *Sourcebook of Korean Civilization*, Vol. 1. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993.
- Odin, Steve. *Process Metaphysics and Hua-yen Buddhism: A Critical Study of Cumulative Penetration vs. Interpretation*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1982.

PATRICK R. UHLMANN

## UNITED STATES

The American encounter with Buddhism dates from the start of systematic trade between China and the United States in 1784, when ships that docked along the eastern seaboard from Charleston, South Carolina, to Salem, Massachusetts, began to unload Asian artifacts. But during this period Americans, and Westerners more generally, had not yet identified Buddhism as a distinct religious tradition, perused translations of Buddhist sacred texts, or witnessed large-scale emigration of Buddhists from Asia. In that sense, the American contact with Buddhism did not begin in earnest until the 1840s and 1850s. In 1844 transcendentalist writer Elizabeth Palmer Peabody (1804–1894) translated an excerpt from a French edition of a Buddhist sacred text, the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), and that excerpt and commentary appeared in the magazine *The Dial* as “The Preaching of the Buddha.” In the same year Edward Elbridge Salisbury

(1814–1901), a professor of Sanskrit at Yale, read a paper on the history of Buddhism at the first annual meeting of the American Oriental Society, a group of scholars dedicated to the study of Asian cultures. These two events—Peabody's translation and Salisbury's paper—initiated systematic U.S. contact with Buddhism, and that encounter took on more significance in the next decade as Chinese immigrants landed on American shores. This initial period in the history of Buddhism in the United States would last until 1924, when Congress passed a restrictive immigration act. And the most recent era in America's encounter with Buddhism opened in 1965, when the immigration laws loosened to allow more Asians of Buddhist heritage to settle in the United States.

### Encounters: 1844–1923

The public conversation, which began in the 1840s and peaked in the 1890s, included a wide range of voices—Christian travelers and missionaries, European and American scholars, as well as Buddhist sympathizers and converts. Much of the discussion—in magazines and books, in parlors and classrooms, in churches and lecture halls—focused on the sources of Buddhism's attraction (advocates claimed it was tolerant, egalitarian, and scientific) and the extent of its discontinuity with mainline Protestant beliefs and Victorian American values (critics found it pessimistic, atheistic, and passive). In books such as Samuel Henry Kellogg's *The Light of Asia and the Light of the World* (1885) Protestant critics of the Asian religion worried aloud about the increasing influence of Buddhism and countered with praise for Christianity. Henry M. King (1838–1919), a prominent Baptist clergyman who was troubled by the claims that it was “a most favorable time for the dissemination of Buddhistic views,” even asked readers of one Christian periodical, “Shall We All Become Buddhists?” King offered a decisive *no*, and he and other Christian critics highlighted the ways that Buddhism seemed to diverge from widely shared beliefs and values—theism, individualism, activism, and optimism. But Buddhist sympathizers defended the tradition, as Paul Carus (1852–1919) did passionately in *Buddhism and Its Christian Critics* (1897).

Carus, one of the most influential participants in the public discussion, never affiliated formally or fully with Buddhism, but several thousand European Americans did during the first Buddhist vogue, from the 1880s to the 1910s. Attracted by Edwin Arnold's sympathetic life of the Buddha in verse, *The Light of Asia* (1879), and fascinated by the lectures and writings of

two Asian Buddhists who spoke at Chicago's World Parliament of Religions in 1893, ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933) and Sōen Shaku (1859–1919), some Americans turned East. Some in that first generation of American converts even traveled to Asia. Henry Steel Olcott (1832–1907), the first American convert in 1880, and Marie De Souza Canavarro (1849–1933), the first female convert in 1897, traveled to Ceylon (Sri Lanka). William Sturgis Bigelow (1850–1926) and Ernest Francisco Fenollosa (1851–1903) went to Japan, where they stayed for years and received the bodhisattva PRECEPTS of Tendai Buddhism at Homoyoin Monastery in 1885.

During this period, most Americans who would have claimed Buddhist identity never had the chance to encounter the tradition in Asia, and there were few Buddhist leaders, translations, and institutions to support their practice, which focused more on reading than meditation or chanting. Those who lived in San Francisco could take advantage of the Dharma Sangha of Buddha, a small Caucasian group founded in 1900 by Japanese Jōdo Shinshū (or True Pure Land Sect) missionaries, who also published a sophisticated English-language magazine, the *Light of Dharma* (1901–1907), which could boast of subscribers in twenty-five states. More than a decade earlier some readers encountered a distinctive blend of Swedenborgianism and Buddhism in another periodical, the *Buddhist Ray* (1888–1894), which was published in Santa Cruz, California, by a self-proclaimed convert, Herman C. Vetterling (1849–1931), who called himself Philangi Dasa. Yet most European Americans who sympathized with the tradition or thought of themselves as Buddhists had little support for their practice during this period.

Asian-American Buddhists, especially the Japanese, were a little less isolated. Immigrants from East Asia (China, Korea, and Japan) brought Buddhism to the United States during this period, starting with the Chinese in the 1850s. They settled along the West Coast to work as railroad laborers, miners, farmers, and domestics. In the 1850s and 1860s emigrants from China also landed in Hawaii to work on sugar plantations. And Buddhism was a part of the religious life of many of these Chinese migrants on the islands and on the mainland. It is difficult to say how many, since the Chinese did not keep clear records, establish vigorous organizations, or enjoy strong religious leadership. Further, as in their homeland, Buddhist beliefs and practices blended with Daoist, Confucian, and folk traditions in Chinese-American homes and temples. The

Chinese established the first temple in the United States in 1853, in San Francisco's Chinatown. By the 1860s, tens of thousands of Chinese immigrants had some allegiance to Buddhism, and by the 1890s there were 107,488 Chinese in the United States. They could visit fifteen San Francisco temples, which enshrined Buddhist as well as Daoist images. Although no one could offer fully reliable figures, officials from the U.S. Bureau of the Census reported in 1906 that there were 62 Chinese temples and 141 shrines in 12 states, many of them in California.

The Japanese were the next Asian Buddhists to arrive. They began to travel to Hawaii in significant numbers during the 1860s, and by 1889 a Jōdo Shinshū priest, Soryu Kagahi, was ministering to Buddhist field workers there. In the next decade, the 1890s, thousands of Japanese migrants arrived in the American West, and almost from the start Japanese Buddhists were more organized than the Chinese. Religious leaders traveled from the homeland and formed religious institutions to support Buddhist practice. On September 2, 1899, the Honganji True Pure Land Buddhist organization in Kyoto sent two missionaries—Shuye Sonoda and Kakuryo Nishijima. By 1906 Japanese Pure Land Buddhists reported 12 organizations, 7 temples, and 14 priests in the United States. They also reported 3,165 members, although many more Japanese would have been loosely affiliated with the religion. Meanwhile, Buddhism continued to flourish among the Japanese in the Hawaiian Islands, which had become a U.S. possession in 1898. Chinese and Koreans on the islands also practiced Buddhism in this early period. For example, one scholar has estimated that at least half of the 7,200 Koreans who moved to Hawaii to labor on sugar plantations between 1903 and 1905 were Buddhists.

But, as they soon would discover, these pioneer Asian immigrants were not welcomed by all other Americans. They were, as some scholars have suggested, the ultimate aliens. Not only were they legally unable to become naturalized citizens, but they also were racially, linguistically, culturally, and religiously distinct from their neighbors. If Buddhism provided a source of identity and comfort, it also set them apart in a predominantly Christian nation. U.S. lawmakers targeted first the Chinese and later the Japanese. The Chinese Exclusion Act of 1882 set the tone, and by the time legislators passed the restrictive and racist 1924 immigration act, which included national quotas that in practical terms excluded Asians, the pattern was clear for the next period in U.S. Buddhist history.

**Exclusions: 1924–1964**

From the 1920s to the 1960s borders were closed to Asian immigrants, and interest contracted among European-American sympathizers and converts. Very few new Asian Buddhists arrived. The Chinese population fell, thriving Chinatowns declined, and some temples closed. Jōdo Shinshū, Sōtoshū, and Nichirenshū temples formed during the several decades after the Japanese arrival in the 1890s, but the immigrant population did not grow. The Japanese also suffered internment during World War II, when President Franklin Roosevelt's Executive Order 9066 incarcerated more than 120,000 Japanese Americans in assembly centers and internment camps in the Western states. Some Japanese stopped practicing Buddhism for fear of being labeled un-American, although most continued their religious practice and the Jōdo Shinshū mission, renamed the Buddhist Churches of America in 1944, survived the camps.

Japanese Buddhism even expanded between the 1920s and the 1960s. Sōto and Rinzai Zen leaders began to build on the foundations constructed earlier. Sōen, the first Zen teacher in America, had made a lecture tour in 1905 and 1906 and then published *Sermons of a Buddhist Abbot* (1906), the first book on Zen in the English language. Between 1925 and 1931 two of Sōen's students—Nyogen Senzaki (1876–1958) and Shigetsu Sasaki (later known as Sokei-an)—went on to establish Zen centers in Los Angeles, San Francisco, and New York. Other East Asian teachers, including Shunryu Suzuki, later founded Zen centers. Suzuki arrived in San Francisco in 1959 to serve the elderly Japanese-American congregation at Sokoji, the Sōto Zen temple that Hosen Isobe had built in 1934. Suzuki later established the San Francisco Zen Center and Tassajara Zen Mountain Center, the first Zen monastery in America. In 1960 SŌKA GAKKAI's president, Daisaku Ikeda, brought the practices of that Japanese religious movement to American shores.

If these and other teachers helped to build the institutions that nurtured Buddhist practice among converts and sympathizers after the 1960s, another Japanese Buddhist, D. T. SUZUKI (1870–1966), generated interest, especially in Zen, among intellectuals and artists. Suzuki, who had penned articles for the *Light of Dharma* and served as Sōen's translator at the Parliament and during his 1905 speaking tour, first stepped into the spotlight in 1927 when he published *Essays in Zen Buddhism*. Through his writings, translations, and lectures over the next four decades he influenced musicians, poets, choreographers, painters,

theologians, and psychologists, including John Cage, Erich Fromm, and Thomas Merton—as well as Beat movement writers Allen Ginsberg, Gary Snyder, and Jack Kerouac, who looked to Buddhism as a spiritual alternative to their inherited traditions.

Another influence on the Beat generation was Dwight Goddard (1861–1939), a Baptist missionary who sailed for China to save the “heathen” and returned as a Buddhist convert committed to spreading the Asian tradition in the United States. It was Goddard's anthology of Buddhist scriptures, *The Buddhist Bible* (1932), that Kerouac's “dharma bums” carried with them on their spiritual journeys in Eisenhower's America. But neither Goddard, who had proposed an American Buddhist monastic community as early as 1933, nor Suzuki, who popularized Zen, could secure an enduring institutional foundation for Buddhist practice among converts. That would happen only after 1965.

**Crossings: After 1965**

Many things changed after 1965, even if cultural shifts in the preceding decades had helped prepare the way. Not only did the number of American converts swell, but more Buddhists arrived from Asia. All Buddhists also enjoyed increased support for their practice as more temples and centers dotted the American landscape. At the same time, Buddhism grew in visibility as it shaped elite and popular culture. There were multiple reasons for the changes. Cultural discontent during the tumultuous 1960s had opened Americans to new spiritual alternatives just as new translations of Buddhist texts made their way to bookstores and revised immigration laws opened the gates for Asian immigrants, including Buddhist teachers and followers. Starting in the 1970s, war-weary Buddhist refugees from Southeast Asia also began to settle in America after escaping political disruptions in their homelands.

So by the opening decade of the twenty-first century the United States was home to every form of Asian Buddhism—THERAVĀDA, MAHĀYĀNA, and VAJRAYĀNA. Cradle Buddhists, those born into the faith, and convert Buddhists, those who embraced it as adults, could practice in more than fifteen hundred temples or centers. No one knows for certain how many Americans think of themselves as Buddhists, since the U.S. census no longer gathers information about religious affiliation. Recent estimates range from 500,000 to over 5 million, with the average estimate about 2.3 million. Surveys in 2000—the General Social Survey (GSS), Monitoring the Future (MF), the

American Freshman (AF), and the American Religious Identification Survey (ARIS)—concluded that 1 million to 2.1 million adults (61% Asian American) and 1.4 million to 2.8 million in the total population affiliated with Buddhism. Scholars who defend the lower figure (1.4 million) argue that only the surveys of high school seniors and college freshmen (MF and AF) point toward the higher end. Those who concur with the larger estimate (2.8 million) note that the other studies (GSS and ARIS) were telephone surveys that excluded those who did not speak English and, therefore, undercounted Asian refugees and immigrants. Other evidence, or lack of evidence, also inclines some toward the high-end estimates: the religion survey (ARIS) failed to contact residents of Hawaii, which had the counties with the highest concentrations of Asian Americans according to the 2000 U.S. census, and the survey of high school seniors (MF) failed to include California, a state with a significant Buddhist presence.

To put these estimates in perspective, if we assume the lowest available figures, Buddhists still outnumbered more than seventeen U.S. Christian denominations, including the Disciples of Christ and the Quakers (ARIS). And even if the highest estimates—more than five million—seem exaggerated, they revealed two important features of the contemporary religious context, as demographer Tom Smith pointed out. First, observers might unwittingly inflate estimates of adherents because the building of Asian-American temples and the media's celebration of celebrity converts have made Buddhism more visible. Second, there are many sympathizers, or nightstand Buddhists, who read Buddhist popular books and practice meditation sporadically but do not affiliate formally or fully.

By almost any measure Buddhism had found its place in the American religious landscape by the start of the twenty-first century, and of those Americans who identified themselves as Buddhist adherents, approximately one-third were converts (ARIS). A small proportion were Asians who discovered or reaffirmed Buddhism in the United States, but most of the 341,000 (ARIS) to 800,000 (Baumann) converts were Americans of European or African descent. There was more diversity among converts who affiliated with Sōka Gakkai, the Japanese sect that venerates the teachings of NICHIREN (1222–1282). They were more ethnically diverse than both the U.S. population and other Buddhist converts: 15 percent African American, 15 percent “other,” 23 percent Asian, and 6 percent Latino. However, most Buddhist converts tended to be white,



Thai-American Buddhists celebrate the Thai New Year festival at a temple in New York City, 2001. AP/Wide World Photos. Reproduced by permission.

as James William Coleman's study revealed. Converts also were middle and upper middle class, with a very high level of education: more than half (51%) held advanced degrees. Their range of religious backgrounds made them typical of the American population, except that convert Buddhists were disproportionately of Jewish heritage (16.5%, as compared with 3% in the U.S. population).

Although converts have embraced almost every form of Buddhism, since 1965 most have affiliated with one of several traditions. Through the efforts of American converts who had studied in Burma and Thailand during the 1960s, Theravāda Buddhism attracted interest, and efforts to transplant Southeast Asian Buddhism, especially VIPASSANĀ (or insight) meditation, took institutional form during the 1970s and 1980s. In 1975 Sharon Salzberg, Jack Kornfield, Joseph Goldstein, and others founded the Insight Meditation Society in Barre, Massachusetts. Soon after, teachers extended the movement to California: In 1977 Ruth Denison, who also had practiced in Asia, purchased



property that would eventually become Dhamma Dena in Joshua Tree, and in 1988 Kornfield helped to establish another teaching, retreat, and training center at Spirit Rock, in Marin County.

Although W. Y. Evans-Wentz translated the TIBETAN BOOK OF THE DEAD in 1927 and Geshe Wangyal incorporated the first Tibetan Buddhist monastery in New Jersey in 1958, larger numbers of converts started turning to Vajrayāna traditions only in the late 1960s and early 1970s, when teachers such as Tarthang Tulku Rinpoche (1935– ) in Berkeley, California, and Chogyam Trungpa Rinpoche (1939–1987) in Boulder, Colorado, established practice centers associated with the four main orders or schools of Tibetan Buddhism: BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU), SA SKYA (SAKYA), RNYING MA (NYINGMA), and DGE LUGS (GELUK). And because the number of Tibetan exiles in the United States remains relatively small, Vajrayāna traditions are represented in America mostly by European-American converts and the Tibetan (or, increasingly, American) teachers who guide their practice.

Since the 1960s American converts also have practiced in centers associated with forms of Mahāyāna Buddhism. Sōka Gakkai International (SGI), a lay organization within Nichiren Shoshū until the bitter split in 1991, grew from its American origins in 1960 to attract approximately thirty-six thousand devotees, who chanted the title of the *Lotus Sūtra* in homes and centers across the United States by the turn of the century. Asian-born Zen teachers—Shunryu Suzuki (1904–1971) and Taizan Maezumi (1931–1995)—built on the foundations established earlier in the century, and their American-born “dharma heirs” went on to lead existing centers and found new ones. Philip Kapleau (1912– ), Robert Aitken (1917– ), Maurine Stuart (1922–1990), John Daido Looi (1931– ), Richard Baker (1936– ), and Bernard Glassman (1939– ) all played important roles, and by 2000 their lineages had been extended, with later generations of American-born Sōto and Rinzai teachers, including many women, assuming positions of leadership.

Finally, Vietnamese Zen teacher THICH NHAT HANH (1926– ) attracted sympathizers and converts, who are guided by the fourteen mindfulness trainings of his “ENGAGED BUDDHISM.” He founded the Order of Interbeing (*Tiep Hien*) in the mid-1960s, when he was an internationally known peace activist, but the “core community” (the ordained) and the “extended community” (the unordained) began to grow in number and influence during the 1980s and 1990s through

the writings and visits of the founder, who consecrated the Maple Forest Monastery in Hartland, Vermont, in 1997.

Nhat Hanh, the DALAI LAMA, and many other Asian- and American-born Buddhist teachers also shaped elite and popular culture. They filled bookstore shelves with accessible introductions to Buddhist practice that were read by tens of thousands of sympathizers who do not sign membership lists or formally take refuge in the Buddha but still find the tradition’s teachings attractive. Buddhism also inspired American painters, architects, and sculptors. It shaped modern dance and contemporary music, from Philip Glass’s new music to the Beastie Boys hip-hop. The pop star Tina Turner reported that chanting, a practice she learned from Nichiren Buddhism, granted her peace and prosperity. Buddhism influenced the sports world too: Phil Jackson, the professional basketball coach, credited Zen with his success in the game. How-to books promised improvement in everything from sex to business, if only readers would apply the principles of Zen or Tantric Buddhism. Inspired by Nhat Hanh’s *Miracle of Mindfulness: A Manual on Meditation* (1975) and other texts and teachers, Duke University Medical Center and many other hospitals offered classes in “meditation-based stress reduction.” Advertisers, fashion designers, scriptwriters, and filmmakers also used Buddhist images to move an audience or sell a brand. After celebrities confessed Buddhist affiliation and four films during the mid-1990s highlighted Buddhist themes (*Heaven and Earth*, *Little Buddha*, *Kundun*, and *Seven Years in Tibet*), a 1997 cover story in *Time* magazine celebrated “America’s Fascination with Buddhism.” A century after the peak of Victorian-American interest, a more intense and widespread Buddhist vogue seemed to have set in.

But cultural vogues come and go, and it is not yet clear whether the baby boomer converts will successfully pass on Buddhism to the next generation. So in many ways, the most culturally significant shift after 1965 has been the increased visibility and numbers of Buddhist immigrants and refugees from Asia. The 1965 revision of immigration laws swelled the foreign-born population. According to the 2000 U.S. census, 28.4 million Americans (10.4% of the population) were born outside the nation. Of those, 7.2 million emigrated from Asia, and approximately 665,000 foreign-born Asian Americans might be Buddhist, if we apply and extend the findings of the ARIS. In any case, if the same proportions hold as in that 2001 survey—61 percent of Buddhists were Asian American and 67 percent

were born into the tradition—then about two-thirds of U.S. Buddhists are of Asian descent.

A small proportion of those Asian-American Buddhists trace their lineage to the Japanese, Koreans, and Chinese who arrived in the first wave of Asian migration, which brought forms of Mahāyāna Buddhism to the nation. Those third- and fourth-generation Japanese-American communities continue to practice their faith, as at the Seattle Buddhist Church (organized 1901), the fourth-oldest Jōdo Shinshū temple in the United States. But more recent immigrants and refugees have transplanted almost every form of Asian Buddhism. First-generation Americans from Sri Lanka, Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia have established Theravāda temples and retreat centers in more than thirty states, including Wat Carolina (dedicated 1988) in rural Bolivia, North Carolina, although temples predominate in cities in California, Texas, New York, and Illinois. In addition, Chinese, Koreans, and Vietnamese practice multiple forms of Mahāyāna Buddhism in hundreds of remodeled homes and new buildings, such as Oklahoma City's Chua Vien Giac, a Vietnamese temple dedicated in 1982, and Southern California's Hsi Lai Temple, a structure built by Chinese Americans in 1988 and still the largest Buddhist temple in America. More temples appear in the American landscape all the time. Asian-American Buddhists continue to organize groups, renovate homes, and build temples in urban, rural, and suburban communities across the nation. And many confront obstacles—from bomb threats to zoning laws.

Contemporary cradle and convert Buddhists also face many other issues. U.S. Buddhists must fashion identity and negotiate power in a culturally Christian nation, although Buddhism often has adapted to new cultures as it crossed cultural boundaries during its twenty-five-hundred-year history. Yet by the twenty-first century, American Buddhists had to confront not only divergent cultural values and the cultural clout of Christianity, but also an unprecedented array of others from the same tradition, for example at regular meetings of inter-Buddhist organizations across the country, including the Buddhist Sangha Council of Southern California (1980), the Buddhist Council of the Midwest (1987), and the Texas Buddhist Council (1992). Like other American immigrants before them, many post-1965 Asian-American Buddhists also face the challenges of intergenerational tensions and ponder how much to accommodate and how much to resist cultural practices in the United States—from meat eating to MTV. Some observers have trumpeted con-

vert Buddhism's "democratic" impulses, which have opened participation and leadership to WOMEN and LAITY more than in most Asian cultures, but it remains to be seen how effectively they will extend that egalitarianism as they try to bridge racial divides among Asian, Caucasian, Latino/a, and African-American Buddhists. And it is not clear that the cultural dissenters who have been attracted to Buddhism will be able to build institutions that nurture children and youth and, thereby, assure the future vitality of the convert centers.

Finally, Buddhists encounter the U.S. legal and political systems. The federal courts have decided that even though they do not venerate a "supreme being," Buddhist conscientious objectors are protected under the Selective Service Training Act (*U.S. v. Seeger*) and that the First Amendment guarantees Buddhist prisoners "a reasonable opportunity" to practice the faith (*Cruz v. Beto*). There are even Buddhist chaplains serving soldiers in the U.S. military. But in a nation that still celebrates a theistic civil religion on its coins—"In God We Trust"—American Buddhists continue to struggle to make a place for those who take refuge in Buddha.

*See also:* **Buddhist Studies; Christianity and Buddhism; Europe; Zen, Popular Conceptions of**

### **Bibliography**

- Baumann, Martin. "The Dharma Has Come West: A Survey of Recent Studies and Sources." *Critical Review of Books in Religion* 10 (1997): 1–14.
- Boucher, Sandy. *Turning the Wheel: American Women Creating the New Buddhism*. Boston: Beacon Press, 1993.
- Coleman, James William. *The New Buddhism: The Western Transformation of an Ancient Tradition*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Eck, Diana. *On Common Ground: World Religions in America*, 2nd ed. CD-ROM. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.
- Hammond, Phillip, and Machacek, David. *Soka Gakkai in America: Accommodation and Conversion*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Kosmin, Barry A.; Mayer, Egon; and Keysar, Ariela. "The American Religious Identification Survey 2001." Graduate Center of the City University of New York, updated December 19, 2001.
- Levinson, David, and Ember, Melvin, eds. *American Immigrant Cultures*, 2 vols. New York: Macmillan, 1997.
- Morreale, Don, ed. *The Complete Guide to Buddhist America*. Boston and London: Shambhala, 1998.

- Numrich, Paul David. *Old Wisdom in the New World: Americanization in Two Immigrant Theravada Buddhist Temples*. Knoxville: University of Tennessee Press, 1996.
- Prebish, Charles S., and Tanaka, Kenneth K., eds. *The Faces of Buddhism in America*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1998.
- Seager, Richard Hughes. *Buddhism in America*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1999.
- Smith, Tom W. "Religious Diversity in America: The Emergence of Muslims, Buddhists, Hindus, and Others." *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion* 41 (2002): 577–585.
- Tweed, Thomas A. "Night-stand Buddhists and Other Creatures: Sympathizers, Adherents, and the Study of Religion." In *American Buddhism: Methods and Findings in Recent Scholarship*, ed. Duncan Ryuken Williams and Christopher S. Queen. Surrey, UK: Curzon, 1999.
- Tweed, Thomas A. *The American Encounter with Buddhism, 1844–1912: Victorian Culture and the Limits of Dissent*. Chapel Hill and London: University of North Carolina Press, 2000.
- Tweed, Thomas A., and Prothero, Stephen, eds. *Asian Religions in America: A Documentary History*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999.

THOMAS A. TWEED

## UPAGUPTA

Upagupta was a Buddhist saint and dharma master from Northwest India. He is unknown in the Pāli canon, but Sanskrit legends portray him as the fifth patriarch of the Buddhist tradition, in a line that stretches back through the disciples ĀNANDA and MAHĀKĀŚYAPA to the Buddha. He is associated with King AŚOKA (ca. 300–232 B.C.E.), whom he is said to have accompanied on a pilgrimage, but he is most famous for having tamed (some say converted) MĀRA. He is also said to have been cremated in Mathurā with the wooden tally-sticks (*śalākā*) of his many disciples.

In Myanmar (Burma), Upagupta is thought not to have died but to live on, in a meditative trance, in a pavilion in the midst of the southern ocean. From there, devotees invite him to come to their village to protect Buddhist festivals and rituals from disruptions caused by Māra, and to give people an opportunity to make merit. When his services are completed, devotees return Upagupta to his watery abode by floating his image downstream on a raft. His association with water and nāgas is also found in northern Thailand and Laos, where he is thought to reside in swamps or river bottoms.

Images of Upagupta commonly depict him as a seated monk looking up at the sun while eating from his alms bowl. He is said to have the power to stop the sun in its course, thus allowing him to eat after noon. In parts of Southeast Asia, it is thought that, on occasion, he may appear in person as a rough-looking monk. At such times, it is particularly beneficial to give him alms.

*See also:* Arhat; Disciples of the Buddha

### Bibliography

- Strong, John S. *The Legend and Cult of Upagupta*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

JOHN S. STRONG

## UPĀLI

Upāli, a disciple of Śākyamuni Buddha, attained the enlightened status of an ARHAT, or saint. Renowned for his knowledge of monastic discipline, he recited the VINAYA at the first Buddhist council in Rājagṛha.

Originally, Upāli had been a low-caste barber in the service of the Śākyan princes. When the princes leave in order to become monks, Upāli also decides to seek ORDINATION. Upāli attains a higher status in the monastic community than the princes because he is ordained before them. There are different accounts of Upāli's ordination in Buddhist literature. According to the Pāli vinaya, the high-caste Śākyan princes request that Upāli be ordained first so that they can learn to abandon their attachment to social status. In some Tibetan accounts, the arhat and disciple ŚĀRIPUTRA encourages Upāli to seek ordination when Upāli hesitates to do so because of his caste status.

Upāli's mother is credited in the Sanskrit MAHĀVASTU (*Great Story*) with arranging her son's first meeting with the Buddha. All accounts emphasize that caste has no bearing on a person's status in the monastic community. Upāli appears in the literature of different Buddhist schools as an expert on monastic and BODHISATTVA discipline. Like other arhats, he was the focus of worship already in ancient and medieval India. He figures in different Buddhist schools as the patron saint of specialists in vinaya. In Burma (Myanmar), Upāli is one of a set of eight arhats propitiated in protective rituals.

*See also:* Councils, Buddhist; Disciples of the Buddha

## Bibliography

Malalasekera, G. P. "Upāli Thera." In *Dictionary of Pāli Proper Names* (1937–1938), 2 vols. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1995.

Strong, John S. *The Legend and Cult of Upagupta*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1992.

SUSANNE MROZIK

## UPĀYA

*Upāya* is a central term in Buddhist HERMENEUTICS, SOTERIOLOGY, and ETHICS, especially in the MAHĀYĀNA tradition, where it refers to methods skillfully employed by BUDDHAS and BODHISATTVAS to assist SENTIENT BEINGS toward enlightenment.

In THERAVĀDA and Śrāvakayāna texts, *upāya* generally denotes a means or stratagem, and only occasionally refers to techniques employed by teachers on behalf of disciples. Still, the Buddha clearly was regarded as a masterful guide for sentient beings, adapting his message to the capacity of his audience, and encouraging promulgation of his doctrine in various languages.

*Upāya* gained prominence in early Mahāyāna sūtras, often as part of the compound *upāya-kausālya*, which translates as skillful means, skill in means, or expedient. In many Prajñāpāramitā sūtras, *skillful means* refers to the multiple techniques used by buddhas or bodhisattvas to help worldly beings, and is explicitly linked with perfect wisdom as a requisite on the path. In the *Upāyakausālya-sūtra*, immoralities attributed to bodhisattvas and weaknesses displayed by the Buddha are explained as the skillful means of beings whose compassion and insight preclude any immorality. In the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*, the layman VIMALAKĪRTI uses "inconceivable skillful means" to convert Vaiśālī's townsfolk. He enters such places as gambling halls and brothels to wean their denizens from vice, and he feigns illness so as to converse with śrāvakas and bodhisattvas, who fear his stinging rebukes, and puzzle at his insistence that passions be utilized rather than avoided. The LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) uses both exposition and parables to describe the Buddha's skillful means for drawing beings to the One Vehicle (the Mahāyāna), including his promulgation of provisional truths that do not represent the "true" situation, but are appropriate to the capacities of certain disciples in certain contexts.

As Mahāyāna was systematized, *upāya* became increasingly central. In hermeneutics, the term explains apparent contradictions among the Buddha's teachings as rooted in his skillfully teaching his listeners what they needed to hear at a particular time, so that they would persevere on the path and eventually see things properly. Thus, Mahāyānists regarded HĪNAYĀNA teachings (and those of other traditions) as mere preludes to the definitive greater vehicle, and the Mahāyāna itself as containing more and less definitive doctrines. One source of this view was the SAṂDHINIR-MOCANA-SŪTRA (*Sūtra Setting Free the [Buddha's] Intent*), which divides the Buddha's teachings into provisional and definitive. The scripture claims that, exercising skillful means, the Buddha turned the dharma-wheel thrice: provisionally in HĪnayaṇa scriptures (which incline to eternalism) and the Prajñāpāramitā sūtras (which incline to nihilism), and definitively in the *Samdhinirmocana* (which balances negation and affirmation). The three-wheel scheme became widespread in India and Tibet, though opinions varied as to the contents of the third turning (e.g., as YOGĀCĀRA, TATHĀGATAGARBHA, or TANTRA). In East Asia, the most influential hermeneutical scheme was that attributed to the Tiantai master ZHIYI (538–597), whose *panjiao* system identified five progressively higher stages of the Buddha's teaching, culminating in the *Lotus Sūtra*.

In mature Mahāyāna soteriology, *upāya* is, with wisdom, one of the two "sides" of the PATH perfected by bodhisattvas en route to buddhahood. Here, *upāya* refers to nearly any religious method not related directly to wisdom, and so includes the perfections of generosity, morality, patience, and effort; the practice of multifarious ritual and meditative techniques; and, above all, the development of the compassionately-motivated aspiration to achieve enlightenment for the sake of all beings (BODHICITTA). As perfecting wisdom or gnosis leads to attainment of a buddha's dharma-kāya, the perfection of method results in the two "form bodies" that manifest for the sake of beings, the *saṃbhogakāya* and *nirmāṇakāya*. In some tantric traditions, where one "takes the result as path," wisdom and method were practiced simultaneously, for example as an cognition of emptiness appearing as a deity, or as a gnosis that sees emptiness while experiencing great bliss.

In Mahāyāna ethics, *skillful means* generally refers to compassionately motivated activity that benefits others, and corresponds well with traditional Buddhist morality. Certain texts suggest, however, that an advanced

bodhisattva or buddha not only may, but must, break conventional precepts (including monastic vows) if doing so will be beneficial. Thus, sex, violence, lying, and stealing are sometimes claimed to be permissible. This “situational” ethic leaves moral decision making less rule-bound and more flexible, and defines virtue in terms of motive rather than conduct, thereby hinting at relativism and complicating judgments regarding one’s own or others’ behavior. Nevertheless, it was widely influential throughout the Mahāyāna world, where it was used to justify a range of actions, including trends toward laicization, particular political and military policies, erotic and terrifying elements in Tantra, and the behavior of spiritual masters. Especially in tantric and Chan traditions, training sometimes contravened standard morality and disciples were advanced using unorthodox techniques that sometimes included violence.

In contemporary Buddhism, *upāya* remains a crucial concept, helping to shape ongoing debates about how the dharma is to be expressed and transmitted, what range of practices is appropriate for Buddhists, how ethical decisions are to be made and judged, where WAR and politics fit into Buddhism, and what constitutes proper behavior by teachers toward their disciples.

See also: **Pāramitā (Perfection); Prajñā (Wisdom)**

### Bibliography

- Keown, Damien. *The Nature of Buddhist Ethics*. New York: Palgrave, 2001.
- Lopez, Donald S., Jr., ed. *Buddhist Hermeneutics*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1992.
- Pye, Michael. *Skillful Means: A Concept in Mahāyāna Buddhism*. London: Duckworth, 1978.
- Tatz, Mark, trans. *The Skill in Means (Upāyakauśalya) Sūtra*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1994.
- Thurman, Robert A. F., trans. *The Holy Teaching of Vimalakīrti: A Mahāyāna Scripture*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1976.
- Watson, Burton, trans. *The Lotus Sūtra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1993.

ROGER R. JACKSON

## USURY

Money lending is one of many business ventures practiced by Buddhist monks. Although commercial activi-

ties are not usually associated with Buddhism, from the inception of Buddhist communities as landowners to restaurants run by American Zen communities, monasteries have long been involved in a wide variety of economic enterprises. Because Buddhism identifies DESIRE, rather than the objects of desire, as a source of suffering, wealth per se is not condemned; on the contrary, the proper use and enjoyment of wealth is encouraged. Commercial operations within the monastery also reflect Buddhism’s origins in the urban, mercantile centers of ancient India and in the systems of exchange, trade, and commerce, as well as the legal status of property and ownership, that developed there. The spread of Buddhism along trade routes meant that Buddhism and commerce traveled hand-in-hand. In China, for example, the innovation of lending banks was introduced by Buddhists traveling from India. The material needs of Buddhist devotional practice also encouraged the development of various crafts and guilds, as well as construction, agriculture, and other technologies.

Capital resources were provided by a model of the pure gift in which the laity contributed material goods to the monastic community (*dāna*) in return for religious merit (*puṇya*) that would enable better circumstances in future rebirths. As the wandering community of Buddhist renunciants quickly came to live the settled life of the vihāra (monastery), monastic regulations began to allow the accumulation of donations beyond the immediate needs of the community. Some communities permitted such surplus to be used to endow funds that would generate interest for the purchase of clothing, food, and other community needs, or even for reinvestment. Because the funds generated interest and the principal investment was not depleted, they were called “inexhaustible” or “permanent” goods (*akṣayanīvī*; Chinese, *wujinzai*). With the lands, serfs, livestock, grains, oil, cloth, gold, and silver thus acquired, renunciant communities were able to undertake a great variety of investment and commercial ventures. Later Chinese pilgrims reported that Indian monks supported themselves primarily by their land holdings and interest-bearing investments, rather than by daily rounds of alms seeking.

Lending at interest was one such practice. The assets lent from the inexhaustible goods could be commodities such as cloth, food, oils, seed, and other goods donated to the monastery. The lendable assets may also have included monies generated from land rents, commercial activities, and investments. The PRECEPTS of the various Indian schools give permission and rudimentary procedures for these lending

practices. The MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA (*Monastic Code of the Mūlasarvāstivāda* [Group that Teaches that All Exists]), for example, gives specific instructions for lending the inexhaustible goods of the monastery, including details on the amount of collateral required (double the value of the loan), the form of the contract, the number of witnesses and guarantors needed, provisions for property seizure in the event of forfeiture, and other contractual details. The interest collected from monetary loans varied from as little as nothing to as high as 100 percent of the principal, but typically 50 percent of the principal was charged.

Although interest rates were frequently usurious, Buddhist monasteries were often the only source of large amounts of capital, so they performed an important and necessary social function that peasants, merchants, the gentry, and even monks took advantage of. At the same time, however, the vast wealth of the monasteries put them into competition for revenue with the state, so Buddhist economic enterprises were often attacked as corrupt and fraudulent. This was particularly true in China, where charges of financial impropriety were frequently raised during periods of imperial suppression of Buddhism.

The commercial activities of monasteries were not conducted solely for the purpose of economic gain—charitable lending and other social welfare institutions also developed. In China, for example, the SANJIE JIAO (THREE STAGES SCHOOL; late sixth–early eighth centuries), which operated several famous “Inexhaustible Storehouses,” combined rules that provided for the endowment of inexhaustible funds with teachings from the *Huayan* (*Flower Garland*) and VIMALAKĪRTI sūtras about the bodhisattva’s inexhaustible storehouse of compassion for living beings. Their Inexhaustible Storehouse at the Huadu Monastery in Chang’an received donations from the faithful that were then lent

out free of interest to the poor and needy of the empire. Because the goods of the storehouse were “inexhaustible,” the donor acquired inexhaustible merit. This type of social welfare program was also seen in the development of pawnshops, another type of lending operation run by Buddhist monasteries.

Although in modern times many of the commercial ventures of Buddhist monasteries have been taken over by secular enterprise, the scope of Buddhist economic activities remains wide, and includes mutual-aid societies and cooperative banks, as well as modern forms of investment like credit cards and nonprofit corporations.

*See also:* China; Economics; India; Monasticism

### **Bibliography**

- Ch'en, Kenneth. *The Chinese Transformation of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1973.
- Gernet, Jacques. *Buddhism in Chinese Society: An Economic History from the Fifth to the Tenth Centuries*, tr. Franciscus Verellen. New York: Columbia University Press, 1995.
- Miller, Robert J. “Buddhist Monastic Economy: The Jisa Mechanism.” *Comparative Studies in Society and History* 3, no. 4 (1961): 427–438.
- Schopen, Gregory. “Doing Business for the Lord: Lending on Interest and Written Loan Contracts in the *Mūlasarvāstivāda-Vinaya*.” *Journal of the American Oriental Society* 114, no. 4 (1994): 527–554.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Sizemore, Russell F., and Swearer, Donald K., eds. *Ethics, Wealth, and Salvation: A Study in Buddhist Social Ethics*. Columbia: University of South Carolina Press, 1990.

JAMIE HUBBARD

*This page intentionally left blank*

# V



## VAJRAYĀNA

Vajrayāna is an umbrella designation that denotes the final form of Buddhism to evolve in India; this term first comes into evidence in the eighth century. The Vajrayāna is often taken to be identical with Mantrayāna or Guhyamantrayāna, the vehicle of secret spells or incantations. In a very general sense, Vajrayāna means the vehicle (*yāna*) of the thunderbolt or of the adamantine scepter (*vajra*), although the designation of the male member as the *vajra* sometimes caused the Vajrayāna to be interpreted as the erotic vehicle, wherein sensuality may be employed for liberation. The modern attempt to proliferate terms with *-yāna* as a final element —(e.g., Kālacakrayāna, Sahajayāna, etc.) —is in error and none of these inauthentic neologisms appears in the literature. The Vajrayāna scriptures are the TANTRAS, and they with their commentaries present several different strategies to discuss the theoretical nature of this latest vehicle: Vajrayāna as a subset of the MAHĀYĀNA, Vajrayāna as the fruitional or advanced vehicle, and Vajrayāna as the third discipline of the sorcerer. Each of these will be considered in order.

### **Mahāyāna subset**

According to this schematism, normative Indian Mahāyāna revealed two distinct ways (*naya*): the method of the perfections (*pāramitānaya*) and the method of MANTRAS (*mantranaya*). The former consists of the standard six or ten PĀRAMITĀ (PERFECTIONS) of the Mahāyāna and requires three incalculable eons to achieve the condition of buddhahood—the highest perfect awakening at the tenth or eleventh stage of the Mahāyānist path. The method of mantras, however, is said

to confer this state in a single lifetime: buddhahood in this very body, as the literature affirms. This accelerated progress is possible because of the very powerful techniques associated with the use of mantras, so that the activity of the yogin's entire body, speech, and mind are employed in the process. Thus, the yogin visualizes BUDDHAS, BODHISATTVAS, or esoteric DIVINITIES either before him or identical to himself, recites mantras associated with such figures, and employs breathing techniques and other forms of physical yoga to accelerate the process of identification. Those following the esoteric path often maintain that the difference between the methods of perfection and the methods of mantras stems from their respective attitudes toward defilement. Whereas the method of perfections requires the elimination of defilement, in the method of mantras none of the physical or psychological functions are abandoned, but they are transformed into forms of the gnosis of awakening. In this light, the method of mantras was considered an easy path, without the difficulties inherent in the method of perfections. Similarly, the Vajrayāna was sometimes said to be preached as a response to the needs of those with inferior ability, who could not renounce the world but had to maintain a householder's position. However, as a subset of the Mahāyāna, a follower of the method of mantras is also expected to adhere to the vows of the bodhisattva, to practice the perfections as well and to operate on a continuum with the decorum expected of the bodhisattva.

### **Fruitional vehicle**

The Vajrayāna may also be called the fruitional vehicle (*phalayāna*), with the Mahāyāna classified as the causal vehicle (*hetuyāna*). In this schematism, the



Mahāyāna is a prelude to the Vajrayāna, for the latter is an advanced practice. Accordingly, one of the more important of the tantric scriptures, the *Guhyasamāja Tantra*, proclaims that the reason it had not been preached before was that there were no beings sufficiently advanced to hear it. It became revealed in the world once bodhisattvas with advanced practice arose to receive it. This means that the Vajrayāna is not just another, albeit faster, method but is inherently superior to normative Mahāyāna and not to be revealed to those of inferior faculties. In this way, the awakening conferred by the Vajrayāna was also different, for while the Mahāyāna led to the tenth or eleventh stage of the bodhisattva path, the citadel of the Eternal Buddha Vajradhara was said to be on the thirteenth stage, far advanced over the Mahāyānist idea of buddhahood.

### The sorcerer's discipline

As the sorcerer's discipline (*vidyādharaśaṃvara*), the Vajrayāna is laid out on a hierarchy of practice. The neophyte begins with the monastic discipline (*prātimokṣaśaṃvara*), which may be formally that of the monk or of the devout layman (*upāsaka*) who has taken refuge and the five vows of the LAITY. Concomitantly, the views of the ABHIDHARMA and SAUTRĀNTIKA school may be studied. Once this practice is correctly established, then the practitioner may take the precepts of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvaśaṃvara*) and study the views of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL and MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL. Finally, the precepts of the sorcerer may be taken through the rite of INITIATION, and they qualify the yogin to become the universal conqueror of the sorcerers (*vidyādharaśakravartin*) so long as the PRECEPTS are scrupulously maintained. There are different lists of the precepts for the sorcerer's discipline, but the two most frequently encountered are vows to guard against the fourteen root transgressions:

1. Contempt for the teacher.
2. Transgressing the message of the Tathāgata.
3. Anger at members of the feast family.
4. Abandoning loving kindness.
5. Rejecting the thought of awakening.
6. Abusing the three vehicles.
7. Revealing secrets to unprepared people.
8. Disparaging the victor's body of instruction.
9. Doubt about the pure-natured dharma.

10. (Improper) love or dispassion toward evil people.
11. Imposition of other than nonduality upon reality.
12. Disparaging those with faith.
13. Not relying on the sacraments and vows.
14. Disparaging insight-filled women.

and the eight gross transgressions:

1. Seeking to take a consort who is without sacramental preparation.
2. Relying on unauthorized sacraments.
3. Arguing in the tantric feast.
4. Showing the secret dharma.
5. Teaching another dharma to those of faith, causing confusion.
6. Staying with śrāvakas for seven days.
7. Claiming the status of a *mantrin* without sufficient realization.
8. Teaching secrets to the unprepared.

The sorcerer's PRECEPTS were considered superior to those of the monk and bodhisattva, so that they took precedence in a hierarchy of value. If a yogin determined that observance of the sorcerer's precepts required the abandonment of one of the others, then some authorities considered this to be without fault, and many of the siddha hagiographies feature instances of exactly this behavior. Like other issues, though, this position was disputed, and much effort was expended by commentators to arrive at resolution of these problems. This question had a social component, for if the householder siddha was superior to the monk, then the latter should bow to him, despite the fact that prostrating before any layman is a clear violation of the monastic precepts.

The above analyses of the Vajrayāna reveal much inconsistency and a variety of opinions, which is not surprising for a complex and multifaceted system continuing to evolve over several centuries. As a result, among the many controversies that stirred discussion and polemical debate was whether the buddhahood of the Mahāyāna and the buddhahood of the Vajrayāna were in fact the same, or whether the latter was superior, with many subtle alternatives expressed. The re-

relationship between practices and vehicles continued to be problematic so that as new practices arose, their precise placement and the shifting theoretical dynamic between the vehicles were extended topics of discussion. Particularly in Tibet, there tended to be a proliferation of vehicles, so that genres of literature came to represent new vehicles in the pages of some authors, although this was decidedly a minority opinion, found especially among the RNYING MA (NYINGMA).

See also: Tantra

### Bibliography

- Davidson, Ronald M. *Indian Esoteric Buddhism: A Social History of the Tantric Movement*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.
- Lessing, Ferdinand D., and Wayman, Alex, trans. *Mkhas Grub Rje's Fundamentals of the Buddhist Traditions*. The Hague and Paris: Mouton, 1968.
- Snellgrove, David L. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*, 2 vols. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.
- Sobisch, Jan-Ulrich. *The Three-Vow Theories in Tibetan Buddhism: A Comparative Study of Major Traditions from the Twelfth through Nineteenth Centuries*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Reichert, 2002.
- Strickmann, Michel. "The Consecration Sūtra: A Buddhist Book of Spells." In *Chinese Buddhist Apocrypha*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1990.
- Strickmann, Michel. *Mantras et mandarins: le bouddhisme tantrique en Chine*. Paris: Gallimard, 1996.

RONALD M. DAVIDSON

## VAMSA

The Pāli word *vaṃsa* literally refers to "lineage" or "bamboo," but it acquired the technical meaning of a "chronicle" early in the first millennium C.E. among THERAVĀDA Buddhists on the island of Sri Lanka. While many historical texts authored by Theravāda Buddhists in the ancient and medieval periods include the word *vaṃsa* in their titles, not all narrative accounts of the past are referred to in this way, nor do all *vaṃsas* share the same style and content. The *Mahāvamsa* (*Great Chronicle*) is arguably the best-known *vaṃsa* in modern times, yet its open-ended narrative, which has been periodically extended since the fifth century C.E., deviates from many other Theravāda *vaṃsas* whose narratives follow a discernible plot and reach a point of closure.

Modern scholars deduce that the *vaṃsa* genre of Buddhist literature grew out of ancient commentaries written on the Pāli CANON. The Theravāda tradition holds that these commentaries were brought to Sri Lanka by a monk named Mahinda in the third century B.C.E. Within a few centuries, excerpts dealing with the history of Buddhism in India and the events surrounding its establishment in Lanka were crafted into independent *vaṃsas* that recount events connected with the life of the Buddha and the historical instantiation of his teaching (*śāsana*; Pāli, *sāsana*). While Pāli *vaṃsas* appear well-suited to legitimate monastic lineages and inspire devotion in Buddhist communities, European scholars in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries valued these texts for their detailed and fairly reliable accounts of South and Southeast Asian history. Still, many scholars point out that these texts mix historical facts with legendary embellishments.

Theravāda *vaṃsas* typically convey information about the life and death of the Buddha, the transmission of the dharma, and the establishment of the SAṄGHA (community of monks) and relics in other lands. Pious and sometimes heroic kings such as Duṭṭhagāmaṇī (161–137 B.C.E.) in Sri Lanka and Tilakapanattu (1495–1525 C.E.) in Thailand are regularly extolled, suggesting that the *vaṃsas* also provided images of virtuous and powerful Buddhist kings for later individuals to emulate. The oldest extant *vaṃsa*, the *Mahāvamsa* and its fourth-century predecessor the *Dīpavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Island*), recount the establishment of Buddhism in Sri Lanka. Other Sri Lankan *vaṃsas* written between the tenth and fourteenth centuries, such as the *Mahābodhivaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Bodhi Tree*) and the *Thūpavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Relic Shrine*), often focus their narratives on particular relics of the Buddha that were purportedly brought from India and enshrined in Sri Lanka. The *Anāgatavaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Future Buddha*) is distinguished by the fact that it narrates future events connected with the coming of the next Buddha MAITREYA (Pāli, Metteyya). Several of these *vaṃsas* were subsequently translated into a literary form of the vernacular Sinhala language, and their narratives were often substantially revised in the process.

The *vaṃsa* genre was passed along from Sri Lanka to the Buddhist lands of Southeast Asia, fulfilling many similar functions in legitimating Theravāda monastic lineages, deepening piety, and extolling kings. The sixteenth-century Pāli chronicle titled *Jinakālamālī* (*Sheaf of Garlands of the Epochs of the Conqueror*) details some of the historical events

associated with the establishment of Theravāda Buddhism in Thailand. In Burma (Myanmar), the nineteenth-century *Sāsanaṅgaṃsa* (*Chronicle of the Dispensation*) performs an analogous role, connecting Burmese Buddhist traditions with those found in India and Sri Lanka from an earlier age.

See also: **History; Sinhala, Buddhist Literature in**

### Bibliography

- Berkwitz, Stephen C. "Emotions and Ethics in Buddhist History: The *Sinhala Thūpavaṃsa* and the Work of Virtue." *Religion* 31, no. 2 (2001): 155–173.
- Geiger, Wilhelm, trans. *The Mahāvamsa: Or the Great Chronicle of Ceylon* (1912), assisted by Mabel Haynes Bode. Reprint, London: Pali Text Society, 1980.
- Jayawickrama, N. A., trans. *The Sheaf of Garlands of the Epochs of the Conqueror: Being a Translation of Jinakālamālipakaraṇaṃ*. London: Pali Text Society, 1968.
- Smith, Bardwell L., ed. *Religion and Legitimation of Power in Sri Lanka*. Chambersburg, PA: Anima Books, 1978.
- Walters, Jonathan S. "Buddhist History: The Sri Lankan Pali Vamsas and Their Commentary." In *Querying the Medieval: Texts and the History of Practices in South Asia*, ed. Ronald Inden, Jonathan Walters, and Daud Ali. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000.

STEPHEN C. BERKWITZ

## VASUBANDHU

While there is much disagreement concerning Vasubandhu's exact dates, most scholars agree that he lived sometime between the mid-fourth and mid-fifth centuries. Born in Puruṣapura (present-day Peshawar, Pakistan) to the same mother as his half-brother ASAṄGA, the putative founder of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL, Vasubandhu left his Brahman upbringing to join the Vaibhāṣika Buddhists in their Kashmiri stronghold. While there he brilliantly and comprehensively summarized Vaibhāṣika doctrines in a roughly seven-hundred-stanza verse text entitled *Abhidharmakośa* (*Treasury of Abhidharma*). The prose autocommentary, ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA, that he wrote for these verses demonstrates his intellectual restlessness and growing dissatisfaction with Vaibhāṣika teachings as it critiques numerous Vaibhāṣika positions while siding with the positions of other Buddhist groups, most notably the SAUTRĀNTIKA. Vasubandhu eventually abandoned the teachings

of the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS for MAHĀYĀNA, and he became a Yogācāra adept under Asaṅga's influence.

Vasubandhu's literary output was prodigious, and his works have had a deep impact on subsequent Buddhist developments. The *Abhidharmakośabhāṣya* continues to receive serious study by East Asian, Tibetan, and modern Western scholars, all of whom treat it as a major sourcebook for medieval Indian Buddhist doctrinal positions and terminology. Texts written during Vasubandhu's transitional period include *Karmasiddhiprakaraṇa* (*Investigation Establishing [the Correct Understanding] of Karma*), *Vādaividhi* (*Debate Methods*), and the *Pañcaskandhaprakaraṇa* (*Investigation of the Five Aggregates*). Vasubandhu's Yogācāra texts include the *Viṃśatikā* (*Twenty Verses*), the *Triṃśikā* (*Thirty Verses*), a crucial commentary on Maitreya-Asaṅga's *Madhyāntavibhāga* (*Madhyāntavibhāgabhāṣya*), and a commentary on Asaṅga's *Mahāyānasamgraha*. In addition, he is credited with commentaries on several Mahāyāna sūtras, including the DIAMOND SŪTRA, the NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, the *Mañjuśrī Sūtra*, *Daśabhūmika-sūtra* (*Ten Stages Sūtra*), and the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). The latter two commentaries were especially influential in East Asian Buddhism.

### Bibliography

- Anacker, Stefan, trans. and ed. *Seven Works of Vasubandhu: The Buddhist Psychological Doctor*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.
- Kochumuttom, Thomas. *A Buddhist Doctrine of Experience: A New Translation and Interpretation of the Works of Vasubandhu the Yogācarin*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982. Reprint, 1999.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de. *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*, 4 vols., tr. Leo M. Pruden. Berkeley, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 1988–1990.

DAN LUSTHAUS

## VIDYĀDHARA

*Vidyādhara* (Pāli, *vijjādhara*; possessor of magical power) is a master of esoteric knowledge, a magician or sorcerer. In Indian Buddhist and Hindu sources the *vidyādhara* is depicted as a human or supernatural being who, by means of various occult sciences, develops the ability to perform marvelous feats like flying through the air, transmuting base metals into gold, be-

coming impervious to weapons, and so on. In the MAHĀYĀNA tantric tradition of Bengal, the term *vidyādhara* became a synonym for the MAHĀSIDDHA or “great accomplished one,” a tantric master who attains liberation as an immortal wonder worker. Classically eighty-four in number, *mahāsiddhas* either ascend alive to the paradise of the ḌĀKINĪS or remain among humans until the advent of the Future Buddha MAITREYA (Pāli, Metteyya). From either abode, *mahāsiddhas* continuously protect the Buddha’s religion and instruct worthy disciples in their liberating mysteries.

A similar tradition from Southeast Asia is the esoteric *weikza* cult of Burma (Myanmar). The Burmese *weikza* or *weikza-do* (from Pāli *vijjādhara*) is a kind of semi-immortal sorcerer committed to the protection of Buddhism and destined to remain alive until the coming of Metteyya. Possessed of an incorruptible body, the *weikza* teaches human disciples how to attain magical power and extraordinarily long life through such means as the recitation of spells, the casting of runes, and alchemy. It is a premise of the system that these techniques depend for the efficacy on a simultaneous mastery of meditative trance (*dhyāna*; Pali, *jhāna*). While almost certainly descended from the tantric tradition of Bengal, the *weikza* cult has long been domesticated to the dominant worldview of Burmese THERAVĀDA Buddhism and no longer retains any overt Mahāyāna elements.

### Bibliography

- Ferguson, John P., and Mendelson, E. Michael. “Masters of the Buddhist Occult: The Burmese *Weikzas*.” *Contributions to Asian Studies* 16 (1981): 62–80.
- Snellgrove, David. *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism: Indian Buddhists and Their Tibetan Successors*. Boston: Shambhala, 1987.

PATRICK A. PRANKE

## VIETNAM

Although both THERAVĀDA and MAHĀYĀNA Buddhism exist in Vietnam, the kind of Buddhism that is most influential and most widely practiced by the majority of Vietnamese Buddhists is Sinitic Mahāyāna Buddhism. Indian and Chinese scholastic traditions have had little if any impact, while Chinese Chan and Pure Land are the only major schools that provide philosophical and religious foundations for the ideas and practices of Buddhism in Vietnam. Incorporation of popular religions and Vietnam’s political involvement

with China and France were also instrumental in shaping certain characteristics of Vietnamese Buddhism.

### History

**From the beginning to independence.** Evidence indicates that Buddhism had come to Jiaozhou (as Vietnam, a Chinese protectorate, was then called) by the second century of the common era. Scattered hints in Chinese history inform us that Buddhism in Jiaozhou was consistent with the cultural and religious influences to which the religion was exposed in the first millennium C.E. The presence and activities of figures such as Mou Bo (second century C.E.) and Kang Senghui (third century C.E.) were indicative of the integration of Jiaozhou into the cosmopolitan Buddhist world of the time.

By the late sixth century C.E., Buddhism was already a part of the cultural and religious life of many people in Jiaozhou. Monks from various parts of Asia were regular visitors to Jiaozhou, and they contributed to Buddhist studies and activities there. They also inspired native monks to go on PILGRIMAGE to India or China to study the dharma. Little record of Buddhism in Vietnam during the Tang period (618–907) remains, but there are hints of a continuing pattern of links between Vietnam and other parts of the Buddhist world: visits to China by monks from Vietnam, or Chinese and Central Asian monks who stopped in Jiaozhou on their way to India. In addition, monks from Jiaozhou who made prolonged stays in China and India were well versed in Sanskrit and they assisted Indian and Central Asian monks in translation work.

**Early Vietnamese dynasties (968–1010).** By the time Vietnam gained independence from Chinese political hegemony in the tenth century, Buddhism had existed in Vietnam for nearly a millennium. The early Vietnamese dynasties found in the Buddhist clergy a cultural force that could assist them with their political agenda. The founder of the Đinh dynasty (968–980) instituted a system of hierarchical ranks for court officials, Buddhist monks, and Daoist priests. This indicates that Buddhist monks already held a recognized place in the social and cultural order of Vietnamese life, requiring the Đinh dynasty to integrate Buddhism into the structure of the state.

**Lý dynasty (1010–1225).** The Lý kings continued to draw support from Buddhism, and in return they patronized Buddhism on a large scale. Eminent monks served at court and exerted great influence in political



Monks dry rice at the Bat Temple at Soc Trang in the Mekong Delta, Vietnam, 1994. © Steve Raymer/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

matters. The Lý kings also sent envoys to China to bring back Buddhist texts so that copies could be made and placed in the major monasteries. Some Chan classics, particularly those of the *chuandeng lu* (transmission of the lamp) and *yulu* (recorded sayings) genres, found their way to Vietnam and attracted the attention of learned monks. In brief, under the Lý, Chan became an integral part of the Vietnamese Buddhist worldview.

**Trần dynasty (1225–1400).** Under the Trần, Chan learning became more established with the arrival of Chinese Chan monks and literature. Starting from around the end of the Lý period, a number of Chinese Chan monks belonging to the Linji and Caodong schools came to Vietnam to spread Buddhism. Among their disciples were members of the Trần aristocracy, including the kings themselves. The Trúc Lâm *Thiền* (Chan) School, the first Vietnamese Chan Buddhist school, was founded by Trần Nhân Tông (1258–1309), the third king of the Trần dynasty. Unfortunately, only fragments of writings by the first three patriarchs of this school are extant. Through these writings we can

see that Trúc Lâm *Thiền* modeled itself on Chinese patriarchal Chan. The most extensive Buddhist writing from the Trần is the *Khóa Hư Lục* (*Instructions on Emptiness*) composed by Trần Thái Tông (1218–1277), the founder of the Trần dynasty. The *Khóa Hư Lục* was the first collection of prose works on Buddhism in Vietnam. It includes essays written in different literary styles on a variety of subjects on Buddhist teachings and practices.

The most important accomplishment for Buddhism under the Trần was the composition of the *Thiền Uyển Tập Anh* (*Outstanding Figures of the Chan Community*) by an unknown author around the mid-fourteenth century. The author of the *Thiền Uyển* portrays Vietnamese Buddhism as the offshoot of Chinese Chan, an approach that left indelible traces on subsequent generations of historians of Vietnamese Buddhism.

**The (later) Lý dynasty and the Northern-Southern dynasties (1428–1802).** The advent of the Lý dynasty (1428–1527) marked a resurgence of Confucianism and the waning of Buddhist fortunes. Under

the Lý and Trần, civil service examinations based on the Chinese classics were given to select men who were chosen to serve at court. This created a Confucian intelligentsia who became extremely influential and rivaled the influences of Buddhist monks. The Lý kings were ardent supporters of Confucianism and they passed restrictive measures on Buddhism, but they continued to support popular Buddhist activities. The period of the Northern/Southern division (1528–1802) was one of political turmoil, but Thiên Buddhism was not idle during this period, and there were efforts to revive Trúc Lâm Thiên. Chinese Linji and Caodong monks also came to Vietnam to teach, and several new Thiên schools were founded. The most influential were the two Linji sects: the Nguyên Thiên and the Liễu Quán in the south.

**Nguyễn dynasty (1802–1945).** The Nguyễn kings considered Confucianism to be a useful force in their efforts to centralize power, and there was an attempt to depoliticize Buddhism because it was considered detrimental to the Confucian hierarchy. Although the majority of court officials were Confucian and were averse to Buddhism, Buddhism was still appealing to aristocratic women and did not lose its grip on the masses. Buddhism also exerted great influence on some of the most eminent literati of the time, and the Nguyễn was a period of ardent Buddhist scholarly activity. However, the contributions of eminent monks of this period consisted mostly in compiling, editing, and publishing texts.

**The French period.** Vietnam was under French rule from 1883 to 1945, and French dominion presented new pressures for the Vietnamese Buddhists. Under foreign rule, Vietnamese Buddhists felt the need to create a more socially and politically engaged Buddhism. Many eminent monks were ardent patriots and leaders of insurgent movements; intellectual Vietnamese Buddhists were inspired by reformed movements in other East Asian countries in the 1920s and, in particular, by the Chinese monk TAIXU (1890–1947). Buddhist magazines and periodicals in colloquial Vietnamese (*quốc ngữ*) began to appear with a view to addressing political and social issues.

During the 1930s three new associations of Buddhist studies were established in the three parts of Vietnam. All were guided and supported by learned clergy and laypeople with exposure to Western culture. There were attempts at consolidating the three associations into a unified SAṄGHA, but the efforts were hindered

by the repressive policy of the French and a lack of communication.

**Postcolonial struggle.** When Emperor Bảo Đại (1913–1997) assumed the role of head of state of South Vietnam he signed Decree No. 10, which followed the French policy of relegating all religions to the status of “public associations,” with the exception of Catholic and Protestant missions. On assuming power in 1955, Ngô Đình Diệm (1901–1963) retained Decree No. 10. In 1957 Diệm also eliminated the Buddha’s birthday (Vesak) from the list of official holidays.

Diệm’s policy toward Buddhism led to many Buddhist resistance movements during the 1960s, which ultimately resulted in the overthrow of his government and inspired a Buddhist revival. The Vietnamese Unified Buddhist Church was founded in South Vietnam, Vạn Hạnh University, the first Buddhist university, was established in Saigon, and eminent monks such as Thích Trí Quang and Thích Tâm Châu became household names. A charismatic young monk with an American education, THICH NHAT HANH (1926– ), the founder of School of Youth for Social Service at Vạn Hạnh University, became an overnight celebrity. However, due to inexperience on the part of the monks, division among the leadership, and a lack of a capable lay elite class, Vietnamese Buddhists failed to seize a rare opportunity to reform and explore the potential of Buddhist culture in their country.

**From 1975 to the beginning of the twenty-first century.** Vietnamese refugees began migrating to Europe and North America in 1975 in the aftermath of the fall of South Vietnam. In a relatively short time many temples were built as part of the emigrants’ efforts to preserve their Vietnamese way of life. Buddhist practices at most such temples continued the patterns the patrons had followed in Vietnam. However, there has been a renewed interest in Thiên in the West, inspired by the popularity of Nhat Hanh. Some eminent Thiên teachers such as Thích Thanh Từ have been invited to the United States to give instructions on Chan meditation.

### Practice

Little change or sectarian development has taken place in the practice of Vietnamese Buddhists since medieval times. This is probably due to the limited repertoire of Buddhist literature to which the tradition has been exposed. In brief, Vietnamese Buddhism is basically non-sectarian, and most Vietnamese Buddhists—cleric and



A monk sounds a bell at a Buddhist temple at My The in the Mekong Delta area of Vietnam. © Tim Page/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

lay—regardless of their intellectual disparities, practice a composite form of Buddhism that runs the gamut of popular Buddhist practices in other East Asian countries. Although most clergy and educated lay Buddhists maintain that Vietnamese Buddhism is predominantly Chan with elements of Pure Land and TANTRA, Chan elements actually figure very little, if at all, in the practice of most Vietnamese Buddhists.

Vietnamese Buddhist practices can be conveniently outlined under two major headings: those that are limited to the clergy and those that involve lay participation. The first group of practices includes ritual ordinations, religious disciplines, monastic rituals, accession ceremonies, and summer retreats. The second group consists of religious observances and rituals that occur on a regular or occasional basis.

Occasional observances include celebrating the *via* day of buddhas and bodhisattvas (i.e., their birthday or awakening day) and commemorative rituals relating to Śākyamuni Buddha (his birthday, his enlight-

enment, and his decease), taking the Bodhisattva precepts, taking the eight precepts (*bát quan trai*), participating in prayer services for peace (*câu an*) and for rebirth in AMITĀBHA's Pure Land (*câu siêu*), engaging in repentance, and freeing captured animals. Among these practices, praying for peace for the country and the world can be an individual or communal act. Repentance is a liturgy that takes place in the evening twice a month at the full moon and new moon. It consists of, among other things, the recitation of the names of 108 buddhas and bowing each time a buddha's name is recited. Freeing captured animals (*phóng sinh*) is one of the ways to accumulate merit (*phước*), an essential element of Vietnamese Buddhist practice. It is fair to say that most Vietnamese Buddhists are more concerned with accumulating merit than with cultivating wisdom. The most common forms of merit-making are contributing to the printing of Buddhist books, to the building and upkeep of temples, and to the support of monks and nuns.

Also included in this category of special practices are ceremonies and festivals that incorporate elements of folk beliefs, such as the New Year festival (Tết) and the Ullambana festival celebrating filial piety and commemorating past ancestors. These festivals and various death rituals involve the widest participation of the populace, including those who are only nominal Buddhists.

The most essential regular practice is daily chanting, which consists of three intervals of service performed at dawn, noon, and dusk. This practice includes chanting sūtras, reciting MANTRAS and DHĀRĀNĪS and buddhas' names, and circumambulation. A number of the principal Mahāyāna sūtras have been translated into Vietnamese, but not every sūtra is chanted. In most cases, only devotional sūtras or chapters from them are chanted. The three most chanted sūtras are the HEART SŪTRA, LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), and *Amitābha Sūtra*.

Meditation is also an integral part of the Buddhist program of practice in Vietnam, and tends to include sitting quietly contemplating the magnificence of Amitābha Buddha's Pure Land or mentally reciting the names of buddhas and bodhisattvas. Most monks, nuns, and a number of laypeople sit in meditation occasionally, only a few regularly, but not every Vietnamese monastic is an adept in meditation.

*See also:* Chan School; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Ghost Festival; Merit and Merit-Making; Pure

## Land Buddhism; Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in; Vietnamese, Buddhist Influences on Literature in

### Bibliography

- Lê Mạnh Thát. *Lịch Sử Phật Giáo Việt Nam* (History of Vietnamese Buddhism), 3 vols. Hue, Vietnam: Thuận Hóa Publishing House, 1999–2000.
- Mật Thế. *Việt Nam Phật Giáo Sử Luận* (A Brief History of Vietnamese Buddhism). Reprint, Saigon, Vietnam: Minh Đức, 1960.
- Nguyen Cuong Tu. *Zen in Medieval Vietnam: A Study and Translation of the Thiên Uyển Tập Anh*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Nguyễn Lang. *Việt Nam Phật Giáo Sử Luận* (Essays on History of Vietnamese Buddhism). Hanoi, Vietnam: Literature Publishing House, 2000.
- Nguyễn Tài Thư. *Lịch Sử Phật Giáo Việt Nam* (History of Vietnamese Buddhism). Hanoi, Vietnam: Social Science Publishing House, 1988.
- Thanh Từ Thích et al., eds. *Thiền Học Đời Trần* (Zen in the Tran Dynasty). Saigon, Vietnam: Saigon Institute of Vietnamese Buddhist Studies, 1992.
- Thien-An Thich. *Buddhism and Zen in Vietnam*. Rutland, VT, and Tokyo: Charles E. Tuttle, 1975.
- Trần Hồng Liên. *Đạo Phật trong Cộng Đồng Người Việt ở Nam Bộ – Việt Nam: Từ Thế Kỷ XVII đến 1975* (Buddhism in the Vietnamese Communities in South Vietnam: From 17th Century to 1975). Hanoi, Vietnam: Social Science Publishing House, 2000.

CUONG TU NGUYEN

---

VIETNAM, BUDDHIST ART IN. See Southeast Asia, Buddhist Art in

---

## VIETNAMESE, BUDDHIST INFLUENCES ON LITERATURE IN

Vietnam was ruled by the Chinese from 111 B.C.E. to the tenth century C.E. As a result, classical Chinese was the official language of Vietnam until around the middle of the nineteenth century. During the Trần dynasty (1225–1400) in medieval Vietnam there were sporadic efforts to create a system of demotic script (Nôm) to be used for transcribing vernacular Vietnamese. However, this script was based on Chinese radicals and phonetics and required fluency in classical Chinese, so it was never able to replace classical Chinese.

Vietnam came into contact with European countries, particularly France, in the seventeenth century. Within three centuries, and after various modifications, Vietnamese was written exclusively in the Roman alphabet, partly as a result of the work of Catholic missionaries. This romanized Vietnamese was referred to as *quốc ngữ* (national language) and it became the official language of the country in the middle of the nineteenth century.

From the thirteenth century C.E., when the first Buddhist writings were composed, to the early twentieth century, most Buddhist literature in Vietnam was in classical Chinese, although a number of texts contain chapters, glosses, or afterwords in Nôm. There were also some writings entirely in Nôm, but these works did not gain as wide a circulation as those written in Chinese.

Magazines and newspapers in *quốc ngữ* were first published in Vietnam as early as 1865, but most of these early *quốc ngữ* periodicals were published by the government and advanced particular political and propagandistic agendas. Buddhist literature in *quốc ngữ* did not appear until the 1920s; it was inspired by motivations to modernize Buddhism and to make it more appealing to the general populace. It was a time when classical Chinese studies was on the wane and educated Vietnamese Buddhists, both clerical and lay, believed that the use of *quốc ngữ* would help people through the transitional period.

### Magazines and periodicals

The *Pháp Âm* (*Sounds of Dharma*) and *Phật Hóa Thanh Niên* (*Buddhist Teachings for the Youth*) were the first two Buddhist magazines published in *quốc ngữ* in the 1920s. In the 1930s, three more magazines, the *Từ Bi Âm* (*Sounds of Compassion*), the *Viên Âm* (*Sounds of Perfection*), and the *Đuốc Tuệ* (*Torch of Wisdom*), were launched by the three associations of BUDDHIST STUDIES in Saigon, Hue, and Hanoi, the major cities in the three parts of Vietnam. The articles in these magazines covered topics beyond the boundary of Buddhist doctrines and practices to address issues such as Buddhism and society, Buddhism and science, and Buddhism and modernization. This pattern continued in subsequent decades and reached a high point between 1954 and 1975. For example, *Tư Tưởng* (*Thought*), a journal published by Vạn Hạnh Buddhist University in Saigon in the late 1960s, was a pioneering effort in the comparative studies of Buddhism and continental philosophy.



## Books

Vernacular Buddhist literature in the form of books can be divided into two categories: books on a variety of topics on Buddhism and translations, mostly from Chinese, of Buddhist texts. Around 1932 in Saigon, the lay Buddhist scholar Đoàn Trung Còn founded a publishing house named Phật Học Tùng Thư (*Buddhist Publications*), which published a number of books covering a wide range of Buddhist topics. In 1940 the Phật Học Tùng Thư began publishing books aimed at a young audience. Some of the most prolific authors in this period, such as the monk Thiện Chiếu, aimed at explaining Buddhism from a modern perspective to a new generation of intellectuals with a Western education. In sum, the majority of Vietnamese books on Buddhism were written with a view to making Buddhism accessible to the general populace. They range from Buddhist catechism to instructions on *niệm Phật* (contemplating the name of Amitābha Buddha, NENBUTSU).

## Translations of Buddhist texts

Most Buddhist literature in *quốc ngữ* consists of translations of Buddhist texts from Chinese. *Quốc ngữ* translations of Buddhist texts began in the 1920s with the translation of the *Guiyuan zhizhi* (*Returning to the Sources*), a Chinese text on the practice of Pure Land Buddhism. During the 1930s the Phật Học Tùng Thư published translations of the major Mahāyāna sūtras and philosophical treatises such as the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA), the *Amitābha Sūtra*, the LIUZU TAN JING (*Platform Sūtra*), the DIAMOND SŪTRA, and the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN). This effort continued in subsequent decades, and eventually other principal Mahāyāna sūtras, such as the *Perfection of Wisdom Sūtras*, the *Ratnakūṭa-sūtra*, and the *Śūraṅgama-sūtra*, were also translated into Vietnamese. In the 1970s the monk Thích Minh Châu, then rector of Vạn Hạnh Buddhist University, translated the Pāli *nikāyas* into *quốc ngữ*. Given the fact that Vietnamese Buddhism is predominantly Mahāyāna, Minh Châu's work was a remarkable contribution to the country's Buddhist literature. Since the fall of South Vietnam in 1975, there have been massive reprints of Buddhist texts, mostly *quốc ngữ* translations by Vietnamese Buddhists living overseas.

The most important vernacular Buddhist works in Vietnamese, however, are manuals for daily chanting and occasional rituals. These manuals vary from one temple to another, but they contain almost the same materials: complete or partial *quốc ngữ* translations or

transliterations of the Buddhist texts that are used in daily and special rituals and observances.

In sum, Buddhist literature in *quốc ngữ* includes an array of writings on a variety of topics covering basic Buddhist teachings and practices, together with translations of the major Buddhist sūtras. Most were published for practical religious use and to address the immediate needs of Vietnamese Buddhists. Occasionally, books on aspects of Buddhist philosophy or translations of philosophical treatises are published. For instance, there are *quốc ngữ* translations of some principal treatises of the MADHYAMAKA and YOGĀCĀRA schools (the two major philosophical schools of Mahāyāna Buddhism), but these are intended more for personal intellectual gratification than as part of a larger systematic program of sectarian learning or practice.

*See also:* Pure Land Buddhism; Ritual; Vietnam

## Bibliography

- Nguyễn Khắc Kham. *Sơ-thảo mục-lục thư-tịch về Phật-Giáo Việt-Nam* (A Bibliography on Vietnamese Buddhism). Saigon, Vietnam: Ministry of National Education, 1963.
- Nguyễn Lang. *Việt Nam Phật Giáo Sử Luận* (Essays on History of Vietnamese Buddhism). Hanoi, Vietnam: Literature Publishing House, 2000.
- Phạm Thế Ngũ. *Việt Nam Văn Học Sử Giản Ước Tân Biên* (A New Concise History of Vietnamese Literature), Vol. 1. Saigon, Vietnam: Quốc Học Tùng Thư, 1961–1965.
- Tran, Van Giap. *Contribution à l'Etude des Livres Annamites conservés à l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient*. Tokyo: La Societe Internationale du Bouddhisme au Japon, 1943.
- Trần Hồng Liên, *Phật Giáo Nam Bộ Từ Thế Kỷ 17 đến 1975* (Buddhism in the South: From 17<sup>th</sup> Century to 1975). Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam: Phố Hồ Chí Minh City Publishing House, 1996.

CUONG TU NGUYEN

---

VIJÑĀNA. *See* Consciousness, Theories of

---

## VIJÑĀNAVĀDA

The label Vijñānavāda (consciousness school) was applied to the epistemological and ontological positions of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL and the Buddhist logic tradition in the polemical debate literature of their medieval

Indian opponents. These Buddhist and non-Buddhist disputants used the term *vijñānavāda* to emphasize the Yogācāra assertion that external objects do not exist, but consciousness does, thus inviting an idealist interpretation that these opponents (especially the realist schools, such as Nyāya, Mīmāṃsīkā, and SAUTRĀNTIKA) refuted at great length. Aspects of Buddhist epistemology associated with the Vijñānavāda position include claims that parts, not wholes, are real; claims that particulars are real, not universals; the notion of momentariness; and the assertion that sense-objects (*viṣaya*), because they appear only within cognitive acts, are not external to the consciousness in which they appear.

The term *Vijñānavāda* was a misnomer because Yogācāra epistemology actually claimed that while cognitive objects (*viṣaya*) appearing in consciousness were real, the thing-itself (*vastu*)—which is singular, momentary, and causally produced—was not apprehended by ordinary perception. Yogācāra denies the realist claim that the perceptible object (*viṣaya*) has a corresponding *vastu* as its referent (*artha*), since a referent, whether perceptual or linguistic, is always a cognitive construction. However, once the consciousness stream is purified of emotional and cognitive obstructions (*kleśāvaraṇa* and *jñeyāvaraṇa*, respectively), a *vastu* can be cognized by direct, immediate cognition (*jñāna*), unmediated by cognitive, conceptual overlays (*prapañca*, *kalpanā*, *parikalpita*). This type of cognition is called *nirvikalpa* (devoid of conceptual construction).

### Bibliography

Shastri, D. N. *The Philosophy of Nyāya-Vaiśeṣika and Its Conflict with the Buddhist Dignāga School (Critique of Indian Realism)*. Reprint, New Delhi: Bharatiya Vidyā Prakashan, 1976.

Stcherbatsky, F. Theodore. *Buddhist Logic* (1930), 2 vols. Reprint, New York: Dover, 1962.

DAN LUSTHAUS

## VIMALAKĪRTI

Vimalakīrti is a nonhistorical human BODHISATTVA known primarily as the main protagonist of an early MAHĀYĀNA sūtra called the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* (*The Teaching of Vimalakīrti*). Although a layman, Vimalakīrti is depicted as possessing the highest wisdom and attainment. Out of sympathy with the suffering of all beings and as a strategy for teaching (UPĀYA), he feigns a serious illness and, knowing this, the Buddha

instructs each of his śrāvaka and bodhisattva disciples to ask after his health. All are reluctant to go, having been humiliated by Vimalakīrti's greater wisdom before, and only Mañjuśrī agrees. All the others follow to watch the encounter, the climax of which is a discussion in which Vimalakīrti asks each bodhisattva in turn how one enters nondualism. Mañjuśrī offers the ultimate insight that all dharmas are beyond discourse, but is trumped by Vimalakīrti, who remains silent when asked for his own answer. Vimalakīrti also displays a dry sense of humor, directed primarily against ŚĀRIPUTRA, as the main representative of the śrāvaka community.

As a spiritually accomplished layman Vimalakīrti offered an influential model for Buddhists in East Asia, where Indian Buddhist monasticism conflicted with Chinese social values. His popularity led to his depiction in painting and a number of lesser known texts in which he was the protagonist. The *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa* is also popular amongst Western Buddhists and has been translated into English several times.

See also: Laity

### Bibliography

Lamotte, Étienne. *The Teaching of Vimalakīrti*, tr. Sara Boin. London: Pāli Text Society, 1976.

Watson, Burton. *The Vimalakīrti Sūtra*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1996.

ANDREW SKILTON

## VINAYA

The word *vinaya* is derived from a Sanskrit verb that can mean to lead or take away, remove; to train, tame, or guide (e.g., a horse); or to educate, instruct, direct. All these meanings or shades of meaning intermingle in the Buddhist use of the term, where it refers both to the specific teachings attributed to the Buddha that bear on behavior, and to the literary sources in which those teachings are found. *Vinaya* is, in short, the body of teachings and texts that tell the ordained follower of the Buddha how he or she should or must behave. An ordained follower of the Buddha is one who has undergone a formal ritual of ORDINATION as a part of which he or she proclaims himself or herself able to follow the established rules. He or she does not—it is important to note—take a vow to do so. In fact, vows

of the type that characterize Western monastic groups are unknown, at least in the Indian Buddhist world. Having undertaken the formal act of ordination, an individual becomes a bhikṣu (male) or *bhikṣuṇī* (female), and the vinaya, strictly speaking, applies only to bhikṣus and *bhikṣuṇīs*, although there are also rules for “novices.”

*Bhikṣu* literally means a beggar or mendicant, but it is clear from their contents that by the time the vinaya texts that we have were compiled, many, perhaps most, bhikṣus did not beg for their food. This and the kind of commitment required by Buddhist ordination is nicely illustrated by the section in an ordination ceremony dealing with food. The officiant says to the individual seeking ordination: “Are you, named so-and-so, able to subsist, for as long as you live, with alms food?” The newly ordained must say: “I am able.” Then the officiant immediately says: “Extra allowable acquisitions are boiled rice or porridge made from flour, water, melted butter, and pomegranate, etc., or made from milk, or soup made from cream, etc., or food provided on the fifth day festival, or the eighth or the fourteenth or the fifteenth day festival, or food regularly provided by donors . . . or again any other allowable alms food that might arise from the religious community itself or an individual—in regard to your acceptance of that, due measure must be practiced. Will you be fully and completely cognizant of such a condition?” The newly ordained must say: “I will be fully and completely cognizant.”

Since all extant vinayas appear to have similar provisions, it must be obvious that Buddhist bhikṣus need not be—by virtue of their own rules—beggars. They had, or were allowed, rich foods, permanent provisions offered by the LAITY, and their religious community could also provide their food. In fact, both Buddhist vinaya texts and non-Buddhist literary sources indicate that Buddhist bhikṣus had a reputation for eating very well indeed. In the former there are stories of more than one Buddhist MONK dying as a result of overindulging in rich foods, and even accounts that suggest that the group’s fine fare could motivate outsiders to seek admission. In the *Pravrajyāvastu* of the MŪLASARVĀSTIVĀDA-VINAYA, for example, a text begins, “A member of another religious group came to the Jetavana monastery. He saw that lovely seats had been arranged there and excellent food and drink had been prepared. He thought to himself: ‘The enjoyment of worldly things by these Buddhist śrāmaṇas is lovely. . . . I am going to enter their order too.’” The text goes on to make a rule against admitting someone

who also belonged to another religious group, but does not deny or criticize the characterization of Buddhist facilities as well appointed and possessed of “excellent food and drink.” (The diet of most Western Christian monks also appears to have been far superior to that of ordinary people.)

But if a Buddhist bhikṣu was not—at least in the period of the vinaya texts—what he was called (e.g., a beggar), the question of what he was still remains. The term *bhikṣu* is usually, and conventionally, translated into English as “monk,” and this rendering should help in understanding what a bhikṣu was, but it does so only with the addition of clear qualifications, in part, at least, because even in the West there has never been agreement on what a monk was—the entire history of Western monasticism can be viewed as a long, sometimes acrimonious, and unresolved debate about just this question. Moreover, most MONKS in the West were also not what they were called. The English word *monk* is derived from a Greek word that meant “(living) singly or alone,” and yet almost all Western monks lived collectively in ordered, formally structured groups. In spite of that—and this is a particularly important obstacle to understanding the Buddhist bhikṣu—the figure of the monk in the modern West has been almost hopelessly romanticized as a simple, solitary figure given up to deep contemplation. The possibilities for misunderstanding here are very great.

Western monks—insofar as one can generalize—not only lived communally in usually well-endowed, permanent, and architecturally sophisticated complexes with an assured and usually abundant diet, they were also almost exclusively occupied with communally chanting or singing religious texts for the religious benefits or “merit” of their living and deceased donors and benefactors. If this is what a monk is understood to be, then a Buddhist bhikṣu might indeed be called a kind of monk. Certainly their vinayas are almost obsessed with avoiding any behavior that might alienate lay followers and donors, and they are saturated with rules designed, it seems, to make bhikṣus acceptable to donors as worthy objects of support and, consequently, as reliable means for donors to make merit. These “monks” too are in the service of the laity. Indeed, all Buddhist vinayas, it seems, contain detailed rules about a bhikṣu’s obligations to the laity, one of which is to recite daily, both communally and individually, religious verses for the merit of their benefactors. Much to the chagrin of those modern scholars who want to maintain that MEDITATION was an important part of Buddhist monastic practice, moreover,

the vinaya texts that we have say very little about meditation and allow very little room for its practice. They are equally chary of radical ASCETIC PRACTICES. This literature—and we have a very great deal of it—is concerned with maintaining and promoting a successful institution.

### The extent of vinaya literature

The vinaya literature that has survived is enormous and still very little studied. It is commonly said that the vinayas of six Buddhist orders or schools have come down to us. Apart, however, from small fragments in Sanskrit from Central Asian manuscript finds, and the shortest section called the PRĀTIMOKṢA, the vinayas of four of these orders—the MAHĀSĀMḠHIKA, Sarvāstivāda, DHARMAGUPTAKA, and MAHĪSĀSAKA—have survived exclusively in Chinese translations. The *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* has fared better: Large parts of it are available in a relatively early Sanskrit manuscript, large parts in a Chinese translation, and what may be the whole of it in a very literal Tibetan translation. The vinaya of the THERAVĀDA order, finally, is preserved entirely in Pāli, an Indian language, but scholars now agree that it too is a “translation” from some more original version.

At least two points, however, need to be noted in regard to all these vinayas. We do not know if any of these vinayas are complete because we do not actually know what a complete vinaya is. Until very recently the Theravāda or *Pāli Vinaya*, even though it was redacted in Sri Lanka, was taken as a model of what a complete vinaya in India would have looked like. Now, however, as the other vinayas are becoming better known, this has become problematic, and it is beginning to appear that the *Pāli Vinaya* is missing some potentially old sections that are found elsewhere under titles such as *Nidāna* (introductions) or *Mātrkā* (matrices). This remains to be worked out, but the other important thing that needs to be noted is that none of the vinayas as we have them is early. The four vinayas preserved only in Chinese were all translated in the fifth century and consequently can represent only what these vinayas had become by that time—they do not necessarily tell us anything about what they looked like before then. The shape of the *Theravāda-vinaya* too cannot be taken back prior to the fifth century—its actual contents can only be dated from BUDDHAGHOSA’S roughly fifth-century commentary on it, and even then both this commentary and the canonical text are known almost exclusively only on the basis of extremely late (eighteenth- and nineteenth-century)

manuscripts. The *Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya* was not translated into Chinese until the eighth century, and into Tibetan only in the ninth, but it is the only vinaya for which we have significant amounts of actual manuscript material from, perhaps, the fifth, sixth, or seventh centuries. Regardless, then, of how one looks at it, the material we now have represents vinaya literature in a uniformly late stage of its development, and it can tell us very richly what it had become, and very poorly what it had earlier been.

### The structure of vinaya literature

Perhaps not surprisingly almost all of these late vinayas look alike in broad outline. Almost all are, or were, structured in the same way and have basically the same component parts or sections. The shortest section, and the one that most scholars consider to be the oldest, is called the *Prātimokṣa*, a term that has been interpreted in a variety of ways. The *Prātimokṣa* is a list of graded offenses that begins with the most serious and continues with groups of offenses that are of lesser and lesser severity. The number of offenses for monks differs somewhat from order to order, the longest list (Sarvāstivāda) contains 263, the shortest (Mahāsāṃghika) has 218, but all use the same system of classification into named groups.

The most serious offenses, in the order given, are unchastity (in a startling variety of ways), theft, intentionally taking human life or instigating the taking of a life, and claiming to have religious attainments or supernatural powers that one does not have. The last of these is, of course, the only one that is unique to Buddhist vinaya, and is one that could have been a source of considerable friction and disruption for the communal life. It involved monks claiming a full understanding and perception of truths that they did not have; claims to stages of meditations and psychic powers that had not been achieved; and, interestingly, claims of regular and close relationships with DIVINITIES and a host of local spirits.

These four offenses are called *pārājikas*, a term commonly translated as “defeats,” and it is still commonly asserted that the commission of any one of these by a bhikṣu or *bhikṣuṇī* resulted in his or her immediate and definitive expulsion from the order. This, however, was almost certainly not the case in India. Every vinaya except the *Pāli Vinaya* contains clear rules and ritual procedures that allowed a bhikṣu (and it seems a *bhikṣuṇī*) who had committed a *pārājika* to remain a member of the community, at a reduced status to be sure, but still with many of the rights and privileges of

an ordained bhikṣu (or *bhikṣuṇī*). This is just one more way in which the *Pāli Vinaya* appears to be unrepresentative.

In addition to the *pārājikas*, the *Prātimokṣa* lists six further categories of offenses (a seventh outlines certain procedures), again in decreasing order of seriousness. These again involve issues of SEXUALITY and property, but overwhelmingly, perhaps, matters of proper decorum. Actual ethical concerns are surprisingly underdeveloped.

A second component part of the vinaya is called the *Vibhaṅga*, or explanation, and is closely related to the first. It is a kind of commentary on each of the rules listed in the *Prātimokṣa*, which typically describes the incident that gave rise to each of the rules, the conditions under which they must be applied, or in light of which an infraction of the rule does not actually constitute an offense. There are an impressive number of loopholes, and the dialectical ingenuity applied to the interpretation of the rules here is easily a match for that found in the higher reaches of Buddhist scholastic philosophy.

Although the bare *Prātimokṣa* was regularly recited at the fortnightly communal assembly of monks, it is unlikely that the rules themselves were ever actually applied without recourse to a *Vibhaṅga*, and this makes all the difference in the world. The Mūlasarvāstivāda *Prātimokṣa*, for example, has—like all the *Prātimokṣas*—a rule that would seem to forbid the engagement of bhikṣus in money transactions, but its *Vibhaṅga* unequivocally states that they must, for religious purposes, accept permanent money endowments and lend that money out to generate interest. This is but one of many possible examples.

A third component of Buddhist vinayas is what is called the *Vinayavastu* or *Khandhaka*, both *vastu* and *khandhaka* meaning here something like “division” or “chapter.” There are generally between seventeen and twenty *vastus*, and they are named according to the main topic that they treat. There is, for example, a chapter on entering the religious life (*Pravrajyāvastu*), a chapter on the rainy season retreat (*Varṣāvastu*), a chapter on medicine (*Bhaiṣajyavastu*), a chapter on bedding and seats (*Sayanāsanavastu*), and so on. Like the *Vibhaṅga*, this part of a vinaya is large and very rich in both details and illustrative stories. The name of a *vastu* is, however, by no means an exhaustive indication of what it contains. The chapter on robes (*Cīvaravastu*), for example, does indeed deal with robes, but it also contains a good deal of material on Buddhist

monastic inheritance law and the proper handling of a deceased monk’s estate, which, in some cases at least, appears to have been very large. One of these *vastus*, the chapter on small matters (*Kṣudrakavastu*), is, ironically, so large that it sometimes is treated as a separate component.

What has so far been described refers strictly speaking to a vinaya for bhikṣus. But another component of a vinaya is both a separate *Prātimokṣa* and a separate *Vibhaṅga* for *bhikṣuṇīs*, a term that is usually translated as “nun.” Although the number of rules for *bhikṣuṇīs*, or NUNS, in their *Prātimokṣas* is significantly larger than the rules for monks, the literature dealing with them is considerably smaller, and, for example, there appears not to have been a separate *Vinayavastu* for nuns, although the Pāli *Khandhaka* does contain a chapter on nuns, and a large part of one of the two volumes of the Mūlasarvāstivāda *Kṣudrakavastu* also is devoted to them.

Not so long ago a description of canonical vinaya literature would have ended here, with perhaps a nod toward the Pāli *Parivāra*, which is usually, but probably wrongly, described simply as an appendix. But very recent work has begun to look more carefully at the group of texts preserved in Chinese that are called *Nidānas* and *Māṭṛkās*, and their counterparts preserved in the Tibetan translation of a large two-volume work called the *Uttaragrantha*. These texts seem to represent an independent ordering and treatment of vinaya rules, and there are some indications that this treatment may be older than that found in the better-known parts of the vinaya. This research, however, has only just begun, and the relative age of even the better-known parts of the vinaya is itself unresolved.

### Theories on the date of vinaya literature

There are two general and opposed theories concerning the development of vinaya literature, both of which at least start from one of its most obvious characteristics: Although belonging to different orders or schools, the vinayas that have come down to us have, as already noted, a great deal in common, both in terms of their structure and their general contents. One theory would see these shared elements as early and argue that they predate the division of the Buddhist community into separate orders or schools. Another theory would see these same elements as late, as the result of mutual borrowing, conflation, and a process of leveling. There are, of course, arguments and evidence to support both theories.

### Ancillary vinaya texts

In addition to canonical vinaya texts, there are, finally, large numbers of commentaries, subcommentaries, and handbooks. The last of these may have been particularly important since it seems likely that most monks did not actually read the enormous canonical vinayas, but relied instead on summaries, manuals, and such handbooks. But this too is a literature that has been very little explored and remains largely accessible only to specialists.

*See also:* Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Precepts; Robes and Clothing; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda

### Bibliography

- Frauwallner, E. *The Earliest Vinaya and the Beginnings of Buddhist Literature*. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1956.
- Hinüber, Oskar von. "Buddhist Law According to the Theravāda-Vinaya. A Survey of Theory and Practice." *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 18, no. 1 (1995): 7–45.
- Hinüber, Oskar von. *A Handbook of Pāli Literature*. Berlin and New York: Walter de Gruyter, 1996.
- Hirakawa, Akira. *Monastic Discipline for the Buddhist Nuns*. Patna, India: Kashi Prasad Jayaswal Research Institute, 1982.
- Horner, I. B., trans. *The Book of the Discipline*. London: Humphrey Milford, 1938–1966.
- Lamotte, Étienne. *History of Indian Buddhism: From the Origins to the Saka Era*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Louvain, Belgium, and Paris: Peeters Press, 1988.
- Pruitt, William, and Norman, K. R., eds. and trans. *The Pāṭimokkha*. Oxford: Pāli Text Society, 2001.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Schopen, Gregory. "Hierarchy and Housing in a Buddhist Monastic Code. A Translation of the Sanskrit Text of the Sayanāsanavastu of the Mūlasarvāstivādinaya. Part One." *Buddhist Literature* 2 (2000): 92–196.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Buddhist Monks and Business Matters: Still More Papers on Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2003.

GREGORY SCHOPEN

## VIPASSANĀ (SANSKRIT, VIPAŚYANĀ)

*Vipassanā* (Sanskrit, *vipaśyanā*; insight) is direct intuition of the three marks that characterize all worldly phenomena: *anitya* (Pāli, *anicca*; impermanence), *duḥkha* (Pāli, *dukkha*; suffering), and *anātman* (Pāli, *anatta*; no-self). Buddhism classifies the cultivation of *vipassanā* as one of two modes of MEDITATION (*bhāvanā*), the other being tranquility (*śamatha*; Pāli, *samatha*). *Vipassanā* meditation entails perfecting the mental faculty of MINDFULNESS (*smṛti*; Pāli, *sati*) for the purpose of analyzing objects of meditation, such as mental states or the physical body, for manifestations of the three marks. When fully developed, *vipassanā* leads to the attainment of liberating *prajñā* (Pāli, *paññā*; wisdom) and the ultimate goal of NIRVĀṆA (Pāli, *nibbāna*) or the cessation of suffering and freedom from REBIRTH. *Samatha* meditation entails the cultivation of mental concentration (*samādhi*) for the purpose of strengthening and calming the mind. When fully developed it leads to the attainment of *dhyāna* (Pāli, *jhāna*), meditative absorption or trance, and the generation of various *abhijñā* (Pāli, *abhiññā*; higher knowledges).

The most common method of meditation described in the Pāli canon relies on *vipassanā* and *samatha* practiced together. In this method, *jhāna* is first induced through *samatha*. The meditator then exits from that state and reflects upon it with mindfulness to see that it is characterized by the three marks. In this way *jhāna* is made the object of *vipassanā* meditation. One who uses this method is called a tranquility worker (*samatha yānika*), and all buddhas and their chief disciples are described as having practiced in this way. A less common method found in the canon relies on *vipassanā* alone. Developing concentration to a lesser degree than *jhāna*, the meditator examines ordinary mental and physical phenomena for the three marks as described above. The meditator who uses this method is called a bare insight worker (*suddhavipassanāyānika*).

By the tenth century C.E., *vipassanā* meditation appears to have fallen out of practice in the THERAVĀDA school. By that time it was commonly believed that the religion of Gautama Buddha had so declined that liberation through insight could no longer be attained until the advent of the future Buddha Metteyya (Sanskrit, MAITREYA) many eons from now. In the early eighteenth century, however, renewed interest in the SATIPAṬṬHĀNA-SUTTA (*Discourse on the Foundations of Mindfulness*) led to a revival of *vipassanā* meditation

in Burma (Myanmar). After encountering initial resistance, the practice of *vipassanā* was endorsed by the Burmese SAṄGHA and embraced by the royal court. By the late nineteenth century, a distinct praxis and organizational pattern had emerged that set the stage for the modern *vipassanā* movement of the twentieth century. Led chiefly by reform minded scholar-monks, a variety of simplified meditation techniques were devised based on readings of the *Satīpaṭṭhāna-sutta*, the *Visuddhimagga* (*Path to Purification*), and related texts. These techniques typically follow the method of bare insight. The teaching of *vipassanā* also prompted the development of new Buddhist institutions called *wipathana yeiktha* or insight hermitages. Initially attached to monasteries, these evolved into independent lay oriented meditation centers. A related development was the rise of personality cults devoted to the veneration of prominent meditation teachers as living arhats. In terms of impact, the popularization of *vipassanā* represents the most significant development in Burmese Buddhism in the twentieth century. Thailand has also witnessed a revival of *vipassanā* practice in the modern period, and both Burmese and Thai meditation teachers have been instrumental in propagating *vipassanā* in Sri Lanka, India, and the West.

*See also:* Abhijñā (Higher Knowledges); Anātman/Ātman (No-Self/Self); Anitya (Impermanence); Dhyaṇa (Trance State); Duḥkha (Suffering); Prajñā (Wisdom)

#### **Bibliography**

- Kornfield, Jack. *Living Buddhist Masters*. Santa Cruz, CA: Unity, 1977.
- Mahasi Sayadaw. *The Progress of Insight through the Stages of Purification: A Modern Pāli Treatise on Buddhist Satīpaṭṭhāna Meditation*, tr. Nyanaponika Thera. Kandy, Sri Lanka: Forest Hermitage, 1965.
- Mendelson, E. Michael. *Sangha and State in Burma: A Study of Monastic Sectarianism and Leadership*, ed. John P. Ferguson. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1975.
- Swearer, Donald K. "The Way to Meditation." In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.

PATRICK A. PRANKE

## VIPAŚYIN

The first of the so-called seven buddhas of the past, Vipāśyin is said to have lived in this world ninety-one

eons (kalpas) ago. His career is discussed at length in the *Mahāpadāna-suttanta* (*Dīghanikāya*, no. 14) and more briefly in the *Buddhavaṃsa*. Despite his prominence in the list of seven, Vipāśyin does not appear to have become a major cultic figure.

*See also:* Buddha(s)

#### **Bibliography**

- Horner, I. B., trans. *The Minor Anthologies of the Pāli Canon, Part 3: Buddhavaṃsa and Cariyapīṭaka*. London: Pāli Text Society, 1975.
- Walshe, Maurice, trans. *Thus Have I Heard: The Long Discourses of the Buddha*. London: Wisdom Press, 1987.

JAN NATTIER

## VIṢṆU

Viṣṇu is the Brahmanical god who preserves the universe, frequently as an *avatāra*, or descent. The Buddha is incorporated into Viṣṇu's mythology, most clearly in the *Gayā-mahātmya* (*Praises of the Greatness of Gayā*) section of the *Vāyu-purāṇa* (*Ancient Book of Vāyu*), in which Viṣṇu assumes the form of the Buddha and preaches false teachings to a group of asuras. Viṣṇu himself is not a particularly important textual presence, but in Sri Lanka he is frequently worshiped by Buddhists, often as one of the protectors of the religion and as a powerful, active force.

*See also:* Divinities; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Hinduism and Buddhism

#### **Bibliography**

- Gonda, Jan. *Aspects of Early Viṣṇuism*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1965.
- The Vāyu Purāṇa*, tr. G. V. Tagare. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1987.

JACOB N. KINNARD

## VIŚVANTARA

The story of Prince Viśvantara (Pāli, Vessantara) is perhaps the most popular and well-known JĀTAKA (past-life story of the Buddha). It exists in many different versions and languages, and is a frequent sub-

ject of Buddhist art, ritual, and performance, particularly in THERAVĀDA countries of Southeast Asia.

In brief, the story involves a prince named Viśvantara who demonstrates the virtue of selfless generosity through a series of extraordinary gifts. First, he gives away his kingdom's most valuable elephant, an act that angers the citizenry and causes his father, King Saṃjaya, to reluctantly banish Viśvantara from the kingdom. After giving away all of his material possessions, Viśvantara embarks on a life of exile in the forest, accompanied by his wife and two children. When a cruel brahmin asks for the children as servants, Viśvantara willingly gives them away while his wife is off gathering food. Shortly thereafter, another brahmin supplicant asks for his wife, and Viśvantara again complies. This last supplicant reveals himself to be the god Śakra in disguise and immediately returns Viśvantara's wife to him. Meanwhile, full of remorse, King Saṃjaya ransoms Viśvantara's children from the cruel brahmin and then invites Viśvantara back from exile. In celebration, Śakra rains a shower of jewels from the sky.

Viśvantara never wavers from the harsh demands of universal generosity—giving children, wife, and material gifts to any and all who ask—yet everything is restored to him in the end. The story thus highlights the bodhisattva's "perfection of generosity," while also offering its listeners the promise of karmic rewards. Since Viśvantara loses his wife and children and becomes an ascetic in the forest (if only temporarily), the story also calls to mind the monk's renunciation of the world, as well as the life-story of the Buddha. Indeed, it has an especially close connection with the

latter, for the birth as Viśvantara is understood to be the culmination of the Buddha's BODHISATTVA career and his last human rebirth before the final life as Siddhārtha Gautama. Moreover, when Siddhārtha battles against MĀRA underneath the Tree of Enlightenment, it is the merit acquired during his life as Prince Viśvantara that he invokes in order to secure Māra's defeat and thus attain buddhahood.

In line with its importance, the story of Viśvantara has been a popular subject of sermons, rituals, folk operas, dramas, and other forms of performance in many Buddhist cultures. In Thailand, for example, the Pāli *Vessantara-jātaka* is recited annually by monks during the Thet Mahachat festival, an act understood to produce abundant spiritual merit.

*See also:* **Buddha, Life of the; Entertainment and Performance; Folk Religion: An Overview; Folk Religion, Southeast Asia; Pāramitā (Perfection)**

#### **Bibliography**

- Collins, Steven. "The *Vessantara Jātaka*." In *Nirvāṇa and Other Buddhist Felicities: Utopias of the Pāli Imaginaire*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Cone, Margaret, and Gombrich, Richard, trans. *The Perfect Generosity of Prince Vessantara: A Buddhist Epic*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1977.

REIKO OHNUMA

---

**VOWS.** *See* **Ordination; Precepts**



*This page intentionally left blank*

# W



## WAR

The list of the laureates of the Nobel Peace Prize in the twentieth century contains the names of two well-known Buddhist activists: Tenzin Gyatso (b. 1935), the fourteenth DALAI LAMA of Tibet, and Myanmar's Aung San Suu Kyi (b. 1945). Both have been deeply influenced by the rich traditions of Buddhist teachings and values. Their individual traditions may differ considerably, yet common to both figures is their rigorous stand against the employment of any kind of physical violence in pursuit of their aims for their people: religious freedom for the people of Tibet on the one hand and democratic structures and dignity for the people of Myanmar on the other. War as a legitimate means of acting in or reacting to a particular situation would not seem to harmonize with their understanding and practice of the Buddhist teaching. Nevertheless, history has known Buddhist kings and monks who engaged in warfare and, what is more telling, the transmitted literature of Buddhism is not devoid of stories and scattered textual passages that display a less vehement opposition to violence. Even warfare can, under certain circumstances, become a necessity.

### **The early times: Political neutrality**

Hints about the political climate during the lifetime of the Buddha and a feel for his convictions may be found in the Pāli canon of the THERAVĀDA tradition of Buddhism. The first of the five major PRECEPTS taught by the Buddha, to refrain from injuring or killing any living being, would imply strict abstention from engaging in warfare, where the immediate practical aim usually involves the injury or annihilation of an enemy force. When asked by a military leader about the belief that a

soldier who dies on the battlefield goes to heaven, the Buddha disappoints him with his response: Such a soldier will go to a specially prepared hell, owing to his evil state of mind, as manifested in his exerting himself to injure or kill his enemies (*Samyuttanikāya*, Woodward, vol. 4, pp. 216–219). This view must be judged as in sharp opposition to the dominant view of the time, according to which it was the particular duty of a kṣatriya, a member of the warrior caste, to fight and, if at all possible, to die on the battlefield. This would guarantee him the best karmic outcome.

This radical denial of the warrior ethic on an individual basis does not imply, however, that the Buddha necessarily tried to persuade rulers (in the main, kṣatriya kings) to refrain from all military activity, be it in defense of their realm or, as was the rule throughout India's history, in a war of aggression aimed at extending their territory. This may simply have been a pragmatic response to the realpolitik of those days. The rulers described in classical Indian literature, Machiavellian as they were, would hardly have welcomed a sermon on current power politics, much less advice on actual military operations, from a wandering ascetic. André Bareau describes this relationship between the spiritual power of the Buddha and the worldly concerns of contemporary sovereigns as an “equilibrium of forces” (p. 39). The Buddha would have realized the futility of interference in royal affairs. Moreover, wandering around the Ganges plain with his followers, he was mindful of the need to foster good relations with the rulers of the various realms in order to be granted entry and right of abode in their territories. Involvement in the political affairs of a neighboring kingdom could raise suspicion and might eventually put the whole community of his followers at risk.

One episode found in the Pāli recension of the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA (*Great Discourse on the Extinction*; Collins, pp. 437–440) is typical of the kind of political neutrality the Buddha seems to have observed. In this passage, the wicked King Ajātasattu sends his chief minister to the Buddha in order to learn about his reaction to a planned attack on a neighboring people, the Vajjis. The chief minister informs the Buddha about the king's aggressive plan, but the text does not depict the Buddha as criticizing this cunning. Instead it has the Buddha listing seven kinds of behavior that, as long as the Vajjis stick to them, would keep them safe from the king's attack. The minister draws his own conclusion: The Vajjis cannot be overcome by warfare; other means have to be applied. And in fact, as the commentary explains, these means are undertaken by the minister, leading to the complete defeat of the Vajjis.

It is impossible to know whether this meeting between the chief minister and the Buddha ever took place. Nevertheless, the tradition has preserved this episode, which demonstrates that the Buddha's reported reaction was thought not to be unsuitable for him. There are, however, other transmitted passages in which the Buddha is confronted with conflicts of war; one of the best known, albeit from a considerably later source (*Kuṇḍalajātaka [Former Birth Story of the Buddha as Prince Kuṇḍala]*), describes the conflict between the Sākya and the Koliyas (Cowell, vol. 5, pp. 219–221). Here the Buddha is portrayed as a mediator between the two parties, who are on the verge of war over water rights. In this case, thanks to the Buddha's intervention, the conflict comes to an end.

### From nonviolence to compassion

With the idea, which started to evolve in the first centuries of the common era, that the spiritual career of a BODHISATTVA is available to all, a clear shift in values becomes perceptible. If, until then, the principle of nonviolence (*ahiṃsā*) had governed the code of Buddhist ethics, KARUṆĀ (COMPASSION) now comes to the fore as the most essential element. The bodhisattva acts with compassion for the benefit of all living beings. The bodhisattva's own final awakening becomes secondary. It is against the background of this fundamental shift of values that violence became a more or less accredited means of action—unwholesome for its performer but benefiting the “victim.” Take the case of a robber who tries to kill a group of spiritually highly developed persons. A bodhisattva aware of the situation and motivated by compassion will, if necessary, kill the potential wrongdoer in order to save him from

the bad karmic consequences the murder would bring upon him. The bodhisattva, for his part, is willing to suffer the bad consequences caused by his violent act as part of this spiritual maturation (see the *Bodhisattvabhūmi [Bodhisattva Stages]*, a text dating from the first centuries C.E.; in Tatz, pp. 70–71). As easily imaginable, this shift in values paved the way for justifying further means of violence, including war.

### A Buddhist war ethic?

Throughout the more than two thousand years of compilation of literature among Buddhists, there is not a single text that could claim absolute authority in the matter of a “just war.” As discussed above, Pāli texts portray the Buddha as reluctant to address the issue of war, thereby affirming the balance of powers. This lack of finality may have contributed to the very different stances on the issue of war that arose from early times on. Although there is no text dealing exclusively with the question of war and its ethical dimensions, relevant passages appear scattered throughout the literature. Their positions can vary between (1) an uncompromising rejection of any kind of participation in military activities; (2) a pragmatic approach shaped by the needs of a realistic royal policy, yet restricted by certain ethical considerations; and (3) a straightforward call for engagement in war in order to achieve a clearly defined goal.

Examples of the last position are extremely rare and not found in the earliest sources. One version of the Mahāyāna NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA, a text composed before the fifth century C.E., demands that lay followers protect the “true Buddhist teaching” with weapons. The killing of persons who oppose Mahāyāna is put on the same level as mowing grass or cutting corpses into pieces (Schmithausen, pp. 57–58). Similarly, the *Bodhisattvabhūmi* sanctions the overthrow of pitiless and otherwise oppressive kings and high officials, though it is quick to state that the bodhisattva is acting out of compassion so as to prevent these officials' accumulation of further demerit (Tatz, p. 71). Here, the shift from nonviolence to compassion is already fully operative.

A typical representative of the second position is a long chapter on royal ethics in the *Bodhisattvagaropāyaviṇayaṅkurvaṇanirdeśa-sūtra (Sūtra That Expounds Supernatural Manifestations That Are Part of the Realm of Stratagems in the Bodhisattva's Field of Action)*. This text, which probably originated in the fifth century C.E., propounds the bodhisattva ideal, although its actual influence on politics in India, Tibet, and China still remains to be investigated. The rele-



Buddha statues in the wreckage of Nagasaki, Japan, after the atomic bombing in 1945. © Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

vant chapter is best read against the background of the traditional Machiavellian principles of rule in India to which it refers, and which it denounces as harmful and as a distortion of Buddhist morals. It is likely that the text aimed at supplying a practicable alternative and a more ethical set of rules for kings. It therefore had to come up with standards relating to war.

Surprisingly, the text includes no explicit prohibition against a war of aggression. The details, however, strongly suggest that what is being described are the rules for a defensive war. The king is advised to confront the hostile army with an attitude of kindness and to grant favors to the enemy. If this does not help, he should try to threaten his adversary by demonstrating (or pretending) military superiority. Such an approach, the text makes clear, is intended to prevent a war. If these actions prove futile, the king must remember his duty to protect his family and subjects,

and so he may try to conquer the enemy by taking the hostile soldiers captive. As the next step, the king is described as addressing his army. The passage on war ends with the statement that even though a king may wound or slay his enemy, he will be without any blame. Immeasurable merit will fall to him who has done all this in a compassionate spirit and without resignation.

This passage allows for different interpretations. It likely expresses no more than the wish that a king fight and win a war by taking the enemy alive. But in the end, the text is ambiguous in that it absolves the king of blame in case he does kill somebody. Compassion is the essential element, and compassion automatically frees the king from the unwholesome consequences such acts would otherwise entail. Fighting a defensive war thus took on the guise of a morally correct endeavor, as long as the above rules were followed. Such an approach would enable a king to survive in hostile

surroundings, while still basing his actions on Buddhist ethical foundations, which for pragmatic reasons had come to accommodate the needs of Indian realpolitik.

The first precept against killing mentioned above emphatically rejects the notion that somebody could become actively involved in a war without violating basic Buddhist tenets. This category tends to orthodoxy, and would not sanction compromises in the form of mechanisms undermining the precept of nonviolence for the sake of success in mundane affairs. Typically, compassion too is considered important, yet its incompatibility with violent actions is taken for granted. Buddhist royal politics that included guidelines for warfare could not evolve from this first position, as it could under the second pragmatic approach outlined above. In the final analysis, to be a Buddhist meant to refrain from any responsibilities or actions involving violence, let alone warfare.

CANDRAKĪRTI, a seventh-century Buddhist philosopher, consequently judges a king's presence on the battlefield as highly untoward, given that he "rushes around with rage and without affection, raising the weapon directed to the enemy's head in order to kill without any affection towards the other men" (Zimmermann, pp. 207–208). And a commentary on the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA, an extremely influential Buddhist treatise of the fifth century C.E., states that even a soldier who has not killed anybody in a war is guilty, since he and his comrades have been inciting each other, and it would not matter who, in the last instance, has killed the enemy (Harvey, p. 254).

An even more orthodox approach is found in the FANWANG JING (BRAHMĀ'S NET SŪTRA), a sūtra most probably composed in Central or East Asia, which expounds the bodhisattva ideal. This text categorically forbids killing, ordering others to kill, and, with great forethought, the possession of weapons, contact with armies, and the instigation to war (Heinemann, pp. 114–123).

### Compassionate killing

Given the plurality of positions described above, it is not surprising that Asia has experienced wars that have been fought on the basis of Buddhist arguments. It must be said, however, that these wars reached a degree of intensity and extent far lower than those witnessed by Christianity or Islam. Similarly, history knows of no ruler who engaged in war on the pretext of spreading Buddhism into non-Buddhist regions. However, one should not ignore the fact that Buddhist

texts can be interpreted so as to serve as a reservoir of arguments for the justification of territorial expansion or economic and nation-building ambitions. Like most religious doctrines, Buddhist teachings can be turned into effective instruments in pursuit of highly mundane interests.

In *Zen at War* (1997), Brian Victoria demonstrates how the leaders and chief ideologists of Japan's Buddhist denominations hoped to gain the military government's sympathy before and during World War II by providing them with interpretations of scriptures that supported the country's war of expansion (pp. 79–94). The notion of a "war of compassion" appears frequently in their arguments. Such a "war which also benefits one's enemy" (pp. 86–91) was supposed to put an end to injustice and lawlessness and promote the advancement of society. One was not to go off and fight out of hatred or anger but—like a father punishing his child—out of compassion. To fight for a good reason would thus be in accord with the "great benevolence and compassion of Buddhism" (p. 87). The war's purpose would determine its rightfulness. In practice, however, this "just war" theory, based on Buddhist arguments, could easily be used to justify any armed conflict.

Other examples from the history of Buddhist countries that engaged in warfare might be added. Yet it must not be forgotten that besides the two Nobel laureates mentioned earlier, there is an incalculable number of individuals and organizations worldwide who, inspired by living Buddhist masters and the whole of the Buddhist tradition, take a clear stand in favor of a peace policy that advocates strict nonviolence as the only noble path.

*See also:* Colonialism and Buddhism; Kingship; Modernity and Buddhism; Monastic Militias; Nationalism and Buddhism; Politics and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Bareau, André. "Le Bouddha et les rois." *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient* 80, no. 1 (1993): 15–39.
- Collins, Steven. *Nirvana and Other Buddhist Felicities: Utopias of the Pali Imaginaire*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Cowell, Edward B., ed. *The Jātaka: Or, Stories of the Buddha's Former Births*, 6 vols., 1895–1907. Vol. 5 tr. Robert Chalmers. London: Pāli Text Society, 1906.
- Demiéville, Paul. "Le Bouddhisme et la guerre." In *Choix d'Études Bouddhiques*. Leiden, Netherlands: Brill, 1973.

- Harvey, Peter. *An Introduction to Buddhist Ethics: Foundations, Values and Issues*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
- Heinemann, Robert K. *Der Weg des Übens im ostasiatischen Mahāyāna*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1979.
- Lang, Karen C. "Āryadeva and Candrakīrti on the Dharma of Kings." *Asiatische Studien* 46, no. 1 (1992): 232–243.
- Schmidt-Leukel, Perry. "Das Problem von Gewalt und Krieg in der Buddhistischen Ethik." *Dialog der Religionen* 6, no. 2 (1996): 122–140.
- Schmithausen, Lambert. "Aspects of the Buddhist Attitude towards War." In *Violence Denied: Violence, Non-Violence and the Rationalization of Violence in South Asian Cultural History*, ed. Jan E. M. Houben and Karel R. Van Kooij. Boston, Leiden, and Cologne: Brill, 1999.
- Tatz, Mark, trans. *Asaṅga's Chapter on Ethics with the Commentary of Tsong-Kha-Pa, the Basic Path to Awakening, the Complete Bodhisattva*. Lewiston, NY: Mellen Press, 1986.
- Victoria, Brian. *Zen at War*. New York and Tokyo: Weatherhill, 1997.
- Woodward, Frank L., trans. *The Book of the Kindred Sayings or Grouped Suttas: Saṃyutta-Nikāya*, 5 vols. London: Pāli Text Society, 1917–1930.
- Zimmermann, Michael. "A Mahāyānist Criticism of Arthaśāstra: The Chapter on Royal Ethics in the *Bodhisattvagocaropāya-viṇaya-vikurvaṇa-nirdeśa-sūtra*." *Annual Report of the International Research Institute for Advanced Buddhology at Soka University for the Academic Year 1999* (2000): 177–211.

MICHAEL ZIMMERMANN

## WILDERNESS MONKS

Wilderness plays three roles in early Buddhist texts: a place, a mode of livelihood, and an attitude toward practice. First, the wilderness is a place whose solitude, dangers, and rugged beauty provide an ideal environment for practice. The Buddha himself is said to have gained *BODHI* (AWAKENING) in the wilderness and to have encouraged his disciples to practice there as well. Monks could wander there during the dry season and settle there any time of the year. Nuns, though forbidden from settling or wandering alone in the wilderness, were required to go on a brief group wilderness tour annually after the Rains Retreat.

In addition to its role as a place, the wilderness functioned as a mode of livelihood. Monks and nuns, wherever they lived, were forbidden from engaging in the activities—farming, herding, and mercantile trade—that historically have set domestic civilization apart

from the wilderness life of hunters and gatherers. Third and most important, monks and nuns were enjoined to cultivate wilderness as an attitude, an inner solitude and non-complacency transcending all external environments. Combined, this attitude and mode of livelihood provided the means by which Buddhist monastics were taught to straddle the line between civilization and the wilds.

Nevertheless, early texts show a division between monks who specialized in living either in the cities or in the wilderness. Although the portrayal of each type mixes criticism with praise, wilderness or forest monks on the whole enjoy the better press. *MAHĀKĀŚYAPA*, one of the Buddha's strictest and most respected disciples, is their model and ideal type, whereas city monks can claim no similar exemplar. Wherever the two types are directly compared—as in the accounts of the controversy at Kauśāmbī and of the Second Council—city monks are portrayed as intent on comfort and political power, contentious, unscrupulous, and undisciplined. The monks in Vaiśālī, whose behavior sparks the Second Council, are lax in their observance of the *VINAYA* (monastic rules). The Kauśāmbī monks, having split over a minor infraction, abuse the *Vinaya* to create an escalating war of accusations. Wilderness monks, in contrast, are portrayed as harmonious and unassuming, earnest meditators, strict and wise in their discipline.

The first praise for city monks appears in early *MAHĀYĀNA* texts. Whereas conservative versions of the bodhisattva path, derived from the early canons, take the wilderness monk living strictly by the *Vinaya* as their exemplar, more radical versions extol the city monk living in luxury as one who is not to be judged by outside appearances.

There are also reports, beginning with the early canons, of wilderness monks gone bad, using the psychic powers developed in their meditation for their individual fame and fortune to the detriment of the *SAṄGHA* (monastic community) as a whole. Although jealous city monks may have concocted these reports, they speak to a fear that has repeatedly been borne out in Buddhist history: that the respect shown for wilderness monks could create an opening for abuse. This possibility, combined with a general mistrust for the wilderness and the misfits who tended to settle there, led to an ambivalent attitude toward wilderness monks, which vacillated between reverence and wariness. During periods of relative stability, the uncertainty as to whether wilderness monks were charlatans, saints, or insane tended to discourage contact with them.

Their main role in shaping Buddhist history thus came in periods of crisis, when people in the centers of power lost faith in the domesticated Buddhism of the cities and, overcoming their fears, turned to wilderness monks to spearhead reforms. This pattern is especially marked in the THERAVĀDA tradition. In the thirteenth century, for instance, after a foreign invasion had threatened the revival of Theravāda in Sri Lanka, King Parakrāmbāhu II placed a contingent of forest/scholar monks, lead by a Sāriputta Bhikkhu, in charge of the saṅgha's unification. The system of governance and standards of scholarship thus formulated for the saṅgha proved influential in Theravāda countries well into the twentieth century. They also ensured that the traditions of the Mahāvihāra—the sect to which Sāriputta belonged—became the Theravāda norm.

Similarly, in the nineteenth century, when King Mindon of Burma (Myanmar), tried to revive classical Burmese culture in response to the British colonial threat, he invited wilderness monks to teach insight mediation (*vipaśyanā*; Pāli, *VIPASSANĀ*) to his court, in hopes that the resulting spiritual superiority of his government would dispel the barbarians at the gate. Despite its failure in this regard, his patronage of *vipassanā* established a precedent for high-ranking Burmese throughout the colonial period and for the Burmese government when it regained independence. This in turn fostered the development of distinct schools of *vipassanā* practice, such as the Mahasi Sayadaw and U Ba Khin methods, that have since spread around the world.

As the twenty-first century dawns, wilderness monk movements thrive in all the major Theravāda countries, examples being the forest/scholar brotherhoods founded in the twentieth century by Kaḍavādduvē Jīnavamsa in Sri Lanka and Buddhādāsa Bhikkhu in Thailand. The most prominent wilderness movement, however, is the Kammaṭṭhāna (Meditation) tradition founded in Thailand in the late nineteenth century by Ācchān Sao Kantasīlo and Ācchān Man Bhūridatto. Building on the Dhammayut sect's reforms earlier in the century, this movement differed in two ways from the tantric wilderness movements extant in Thailand at its inception, both in its strict adherence to the Vinaya and in its championing of meditation techniques drawn from the Pāli canon. Before the close of the twentieth century, the movement spread beyond Thailand into other parts of Asia and the West.

Although some wilderness movements have left long-lasting marks on Buddhist history, they them-

selves have tended to be short-lived. Their very success in gaining support leads directly to their domestication and decline. In the past, the ubiquitous forest has served as the testing ground for new wilderness movements in Asia as older ones pass away. With the rapid deforestation of the continent, this source of regeneration and reform is in danger of disappearing. At the same time, with the spread of Buddhism beyond Asia, there is the question of whether wilderness in its three roles—as place, mode of livelihood, and attitude—will counterbalance the inevitable domestication of Buddhism as it settles into its new homes.

*See also:* Ascetic Practices; Monasticism; Monks

### Bibliography

- Carrithers, Michael. *The Forest Monks of Sri Lanka: An Anthropological and Historical Study*. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1983.
- Ray, Reginald A. *Buddhist Saints in India: A Study in Buddhist Values and Orientations*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994.
- Swearer, Donald K., ed. *Me and Mine: Selected Essays of Bhikkhu Buddhādāsa*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1989.
- Tambiah, Stanley Jeyaraja. *The Buddhist Saints of the Forest and the Cult of Amulets*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1984.
- Taylor, J. L. *Forest Monks and the Nation-state: An Anthropological and Historical Study in Northeastern Thailand*. Singapore: Institute for Southeast Asian Studies, 1993.
- Teich, Anne, ed. *Blooming in the Desert: Favorite Teachings of the Wildflower Monk Taungpulu Sayadaw*. Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 1996.
- Tiyavanich, Kamala. *Forest Recollections: Wandering Monks in Twentieth-Century Thailand*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Thanissaro Bhikkhu. "The Customs of the Noble Ones" (1999). Available from *Access to Insight: Readings in Theravāda Buddhism* [www.accesstoinsight.org](http://www.accesstoinsight.org).

THANISSARO BHIKKHU (GEOFFREY DEGRAFF)

---

WISDOM. *See* Prajñā (Wisdom)

---

## WOMEN

A consideration of the role of women in Buddhism—as distinct from the symbolic role of the female—

proceeds in tension with several challenges. First, in much of Buddhist literature, female characters tend to function symbolically; their relationship to Buddhist women, by no means transparent, is contested within both academic and Buddhist communities. Secondly, the primacy of men in most historical Buddhist communities corresponds to a relative dearth of historical sources regarding the lives of women. Thirdly, women have been defined quite differently and have occupied quite distinct roles in different Buddhist cultures; the blanket term *women* can obscure this diversity. Finally, contemporary perspectives and controversies fundamentally shape our approach to this topic. With these caveats, however, a great deal can still be said.

### **Women and normative constructions of the female: Mothers, wives, objects of desire**

Throughout the history of Buddhist communities, images of the feminine have played a central role in Buddhist thought and practice, and surely such images had a significant impact upon the lives of Buddhist women. It must be kept in mind, however, that these images were, for the most part, constructed by and for men. Still, conceptions of the female shaped and were shaped by the experiences of actual women in Buddhist communities, and thus represent an important, if problematic, resource for understanding the role of women in Buddhism.

Almost universally in premodern Buddhist communities, to be born a woman was considered a sign of unfavorable karmic propensities from past lives, and many texts portray REBIRTH as a man as a laudable soteriological goal, as, for instance, in the “Bhaiṣajyarāja” (Medicine King) chapter of the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA). According to most normative texts, one of the eight conditions for receiving a prediction to buddhahood is a male body, and although women were often portrayed as capable of attaining BODHI (AWAKENING), many Buddhist sources suggest that final release requires rebirth in male form. Arguably, the female body’s connection to birth (and thus to SAṂSĀRA itself) and its often noted capacity to arouse desire in men render it unfit for the highest soteriological attainments.

The death of the Buddha’s own mother one week after his birth might be taken to signify not only the saṁsāric taint of giving birth, but also the great power of the bond between mother and child, one that had to be broken if the Buddha was to be able to renounce all worldly attachments. Pāli and MAHĀYĀNA sources often mention the infinite debt to one’s mother and

father; even if one were to carry one’s parents on one’s back for one hundred years, the *Kattaññu-sutta* of the *Aṅguttaranikāya* asserts, one could never repay the debt. Mothers, too, frequently figure in narrative literature as ultimate embodiments of attachment and the grief it brings (see, for instance, the chapter on “The Tigress” in the SUVARṆAPRABHĀSOTTAMA-SŪTRA). In such tales, the position of the mother remains ambiguous: The mother’s experience of terrible grief because of her attachment to her children is presented very sympathetically, even as the goal of nonattachment is praised; sometimes the pain of motherhood itself becomes the basis for the realization of impermanence. Such sentiments are echoed in the colophons of manuscripts from DUNHUANG that were commissioned by mothers and wives to ensure the good rebirth of their deceased children and husbands.

The depth of a mother’s love for her children is also the basis for the use of the figure of the mother as the paradigm of selfless compassion embodied in (usually male) BODHISATTVAS and BUDDHAS. In the bodhisattva vows of the MAHĀYĀNA, for instance, the bodhisattva is exhorted to be like a mother to all beings, and the Buddha himself is not infrequently described in motherly terms. The notion of the compassionate, loving mother is surely also at work in the characterization of certain prominent female bodhisattvas, such as Prajñāpāramitā (the “mother of all buddhas”) and Tārā (embodiment of compassionate action) in Indo-Tibetan Buddhism, and female representations of Avalokiteśvara bodhisattva (Guanyin) in China. The latter bodhisattva appears in the form of “the giver of sons,” and is propitiated to this day for assistance in obtaining (usually male) children.

Perhaps one of the most powerful normative images is that of the female as the primary object of male desire, and thus as the symbol of desire par excellence. Numerous passages in Buddhist canonical literature of all regions and schools warn monastic men against the dangers of sexual desire (almost always assumed to be heterosexual); a few virulently misogynistic passages attribute male desire to the degeneracy of women (Sponberg, pp. 18–23). Consideration of female sexual desire or its effect upon women, by contrast, is generally limited to the characterization of women as uncontrollable sexual beings that threaten male celibacy. Women are objects, not subjects, in many normative Buddhist constructions of desire; they are the lesser (and dangerous) “other” in relation to the male subject position, as discussed in further detail below.



But these normative constructions of the position of the female are not uncontested; tales of highly accomplished women—even stories of the bodhisattva in female form—are also found among Buddhist literary sources (for instance, the tale of “Rupāvati” in the *DIVYĀVADĀNA*, and the “Padīpadāna-jātaka” in the *Paññāsa-jātaka* collection). Inscriptions and colophons in the broader Buddhist world attest both to the power of normative constructions and to alternative conceptions of women. Among the colophons of manuscripts at DUNHUANG, for instance, are found both women’s prayers to leave behind a woman’s “vile estate,” and the dedications of wealthy and powerful female patrons whose words attest to their central role in lay life. Taking into account not only literary sources but also social-historical and anthropological materials enables a fuller and more complex appreciation of the position of women in Buddhist communities.

### Women as patrons and rulers

Women have played central roles throughout Buddhist history as patrons of Buddhist institutions and practices. Indeed, this is the role of women most clearly attested in historical sources. Laywomen and NUNS (who clearly had access to economic resources in some Buddhist communities) figure prominently among the donors whose inscriptions and colophons survive across the Buddhist world, and they are depicted in murals such as those found at Dunhuang and AJAṆṬĀ. Female patronage was not only motivated by religious goals, but also by the relative freedom from social constraints that, in some Buddhist communities, association with Buddhism could offer. For instance, Jacques Gernet demonstrates how the support of Buddhist figures and institutions by aristocratic women during the Tang dynasty (618–907) in China could give such women access to considerable social and political power. Such instances make clear that, whatever the normative rhetoric about women may have been, individual women could appropriate Buddhist tropes and institutions for their own benefit.

Among the most famous female patrons of Buddhism is Empress Wu Zetian, whose occupation of the Tang dynasty throne in 690 C.E. (she had ruled unofficially since 665) heralded a time of great flourishing for Buddhism in China. For Empress Wu, Buddhism appears to have been both religiously fulfilling and politically expedient. Through the skillful reinterpretation of Buddhist texts that helped to identify her as both bodhisattva and cakravartin (wheel-turning monarch), her reign was legitimized and glorified. At

the same time, her extremely generous patronage of Buddhist institutions, scholars, festivals, and arts greatly enhanced the wealth, power, and influence of Buddhists in the realm. While much maligned by pre-modern Chinese historians as a ruthless dictator, Empress Wu made extremely significant contributions not only to the development of Buddhist culture in China, but also to the betterment of the status of women at the time. Other powerful women, such as Queen Cāmadevī, the quasi-historical first ruler of the kingdom of Haripuñjāna in present-day northern Thailand, are also believed to have had a significant influence on the florescence of Buddhist culture in other times and places.

### Women as renunciants

Due to the paucity of contemporaneous historical sources, the position of women in Buddhist renunciant communities prior to the first millennium of the common era must largely be surmised from literary sources, although inscriptional evidence should also be taken into account. Narratives in Pāli and Sanskrit canonical sources—perhaps most famously, the story of how the Buddha’s stepmother, MAHĀPRAJĀPATĪ GAUTAMĪ, became the first nun—suggest that the position of women in the Buddhist community was viewed from multiple and often contradictory perspectives. Women were considered capable of attaining enlightenment, and were admitted, if somewhat grudgingly, into the community of renunciants. Canonical texts (see especially the *Therīgāthā*) tell of many prominent and accomplished female renunciants.

On the other hand, to be reborn a woman was undeniably viewed as a lower birth, the fruit of negative KARMA (ACTION). According to the VINAYA, the most senior of female renunciants is inferior even to the youngest male novice, and must defer to him; in general, male monastic institutions have controlled monastic women. Moreover, the institution of female renunciation was undermined from the outset by the assertion that male renunciants represented a more fertile field of merit for the lay community than did female renunciants, as a result of which female renunciants appear frequently to have suffered from insufficient material and social support from the laity, as is confirmed by the eventual disappearance of the order of nuns in most of South and Southeast Asia. In Tibet, as well, the full ordination of women died out; only the novice (*śramaṇerikā*) level of ordination has been maintained to the present day. The full ordination of women has been preserved only in East Asia. Still, sev-

eral contemporary movements seek to reestablish strong communities of female renunciants, with or without full ordination. Indeed, as Sid Brown indicates regarding Thai *maechi* (female renunciants), many women feel that renunciation without ordination is preferable, since they can thereby remain independent of male-dominated monastic institutions.

### Women and the valorization of the female

Construed as the symbolic “other” of the male, feminine images have a potent function in Buddhist literature and practice. Since desire is conceived of as the fundamental cause of human suffering, the female, the paradigmatic object of male desire, frequently comes to represent the entrapment of *saṃsāra* itself. At the same time, the paradigmatic quality of the male/female hierarchical dichotomy lends itself to numerous other, quite different, manipulations. In the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*, for instance, a wise female deity transforms the hapless ŚĀRIPUTRA into a woman in order to demonstrate, through the apparent arbitrariness of GENDER, the principle of nonduality. While some scholars would see in this episode both a powerful female figure and the dismantling of gender categories (Schuster), it should also be noted that the female deity might be powerful in this context precisely because she is so unusual, so unconventional, and that gender breakdown might function as such a trenchant symbol of nonduality precisely because the gender hierarchy/dichotomy was so deeply entrenched in Buddhist communities. Herein lies the difficulty of interpreting female symbols in relation to women’s lives: This story could be seen either as empowering women, or as revealing their social disempowerment—or both.

The role of women in tantric Buddhist contexts, where the symbol of the female is most highly valorized, is complex and controversial. While it is tempting to conflate the valorization of the female with the valorization of women, the texts of tantric Buddhism indicate that the glorification of the female most often presumes the perspective of the male practitioner and functions for his benefit. For instance, in the VAJRAYĀNA vows, the practitioner is exhorted not to disparage women; such an injunction indicates not only that women were likely disparaged, but also that the vows assume a male audience. Similarly, it is problematic to interpret the ubiquitous tales of highly realized (and usually very attractive) female figures, both human and divine, as corresponding to a historical reality, since these tales likely functioned primarily for male audiences. As is the case with Śāriputra’s gender

transformation, the valorization of the female may gain much of its potential symbolic power precisely from its transgression of historical realities. The construal of the female as the paradigmatic object of male desire likely underlies the manipulation of powerful female symbols by male practitioners: If the female is other, then the (male) self can be transformed through ritual identification or union with that symbolic other, an other that could be embodied in actual women who acted as sexual consorts.

On the other hand, the existence of such positive and powerful female symbols, whether or not they were intended to function primarily for men, obviously provided (and provides) productive resources for women wishing to subvert societal gender norms. While women within monastic institutions were generally subservient to men, legends of powerful female tantric practitioners open a space for virtuoso Buddhist women outside the monastic system—a space that many women surely occupied. Quasi-historical tales such as that of MA GCIG LAB SGRON (MACHIG LAPDÖN), the extraordinary female tantric practitioner who is said to have founded the practice of *gcod* (offering up one’s body to undermine the notion of self) in Tibet, may attest to the relative freedom of some women. Virtuoso women, however rare, are still known to live itinerant (and highly esteemed) lives in contemporary Tibet; their existence points to a tradition that, for all the difficulty of locating its historical traces in Indo-Tibetan tantric literature, has a long lineage.

### Contemporary appropriations and subversions

As notions of the equality of women in the contemporary world gain more widespread acceptance, female Buddhists not only in Europe and America but across the Buddhist world are grappling with the symbolic and institutional legacies of widely varied Buddhist conceptions of women. Buddhist women are beginning to ask how female symbols that were designed primarily for male practitioners relate to the lived religious experience of contemporary women. Can such images be appropriated to serve the religious goals of women, or are they inextricable from male-dominated thought and practice? Should women seek equality by attempting to gain recognition from institutions controlled by men, or should they establish their own communities and institutions that are not dependent on the still-pervasive authority of male figures? Can contemporary women simply dismiss as historical and cultural artifacts the ubiquitous references in Buddhism to the female body as an inherently lower

form of birth? How do women, so often figured as the objects of male desire, create a subject position for themselves as Buddhist practitioners—or should this lack of a fully articulated “self” be viewed as an advantage on the Buddhist path? Such questions are hotly debated among practitioners and scholars alike; the fruits of these debates, whatever they may be, will surely herald significant shifts in the thought and practice of Buddhism for people of all genders.

### Bibliography

- Barnes, Nancy. “Buddhist Women and the Nuns’ Order in Asia.” In *Engaged Buddhism: Buddhist Liberation Movements in Asia*, ed. Christopher S. Queen and Sallie B. King. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1996.
- Bartholomeusz, Tessa. *Women under the Bo Tree*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1994.
- Brown, Sid. *The Journey of One Buddhist Nun: Even against the Wind*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 2001.
- Edou, Jérôme. *Machig Labdrön and the Foundations of Chöd*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1996.
- Falk, Nancy Auer. “The Case of the Vanishing Nuns.” In *Unspoken Worlds: Women’s Religious Lives in Non-Western Cultures*, ed. Nancy Falk and Rita Gross. San Francisco: Harper, 1980.
- Findly, Ellison Banks, ed. *Women’s Buddhism, Buddhism’s Women: Tradition, Revision, Renewal*. Somerville, MA: Wisdom, 2000.
- Gernet, Jacques. *Buddhism in Chinese Society: An Economic History from the Fifth to the Tenth Centuries*, tr. Franciscus Verellen. New York: Columbia University Press, 1995.
- Klein, Anne Carolyn. *Meeting the Great Bliss Queen: Buddhists, Feminists, and the Art of the Self*. Boston: Beacon, 1995.
- Lefferts, H. Leedom, Jr. “Textiles in the Service of Tai Buddhism.” In *Textiles and the Tai Experience in Southeast Asia*, by Mattiebelle Gittinger and H. Leedom Lefferts, Jr. Washington, DC: Textile Museum, 1992.
- Paul, Diana. “Empress Wu and the Historians.” In *Unspoken Worlds: Women’s Religious Lives in Non-Western Cultures*, ed. Nancy Falk and Rita Gross. San Francisco: Harper, 1980.
- Paul, Diana. *Women in Buddhism: Images of the Feminine in the Mahayana Tradition*, 2nd edition. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1985.
- Schopen, Gregory. *Bones, Stones, and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1997.
- Schuster, Nancy. “Changing the Female Body: Wise Women and the Bodhisattva Career in Some Mahāratnakūṭasūtras.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 4, no. 1 (1981): 24–69.
- Sponberg, Alan. “Attitudes toward Women and the Feminine in Early Buddhism.” In *Buddhism, Sexuality, and Gender*, ed. José Ignacio Cabezón. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992.
- Strong, John S. *The Buddha: A Short Biography*. Oxford: Oneworld, 2001.
- Swearer, Donald K. “Bimbā’s Lament.” In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.
- Swearer, Donald K., and Premchit, Sommai. *The Legend of Queen Cāma: Bodhiraṃsi’s Cāmadevīvaṃsi, a Translation and Commentary*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1998.
- Tsomo, Karma Lekshe, ed. *Buddhist Women across Cultures: Realizations*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1999.
- Van Esterik, Penny, ed. *Women of Southeast Asia*. DeKalb, IL: Southeast Asia Publications, 1996.
- Willis, Janice D., ed. *Feminine Ground: Essays on Women and Tibet*. Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion, 1995.

NATALIE D. GUMMER

---

## WŎN BUDDHISM. See Wŏnbulgyo

---

## WŎNBULGYO

*Wŏnbulgyo*, a compound of the Korean *wŏn* (circle) and *pulgyo* (Buddhism), means literally “Circular Buddhism,” or “Consummate Buddhism.” It is the name of an indigenous religion founded in Korea in the twentieth century.

### History

Pak Chung-bin (1891–1943; “Sot’aesan”) attained great enlightenment in 1916 and had a precognition of the world entering an era of advancing material civilization, to which humans would be enslaved. The only way to save the world was by expanding spiritual power through faith in genuine religion and training in sound morality. With the dual aims to save sentient beings and cure the world of moral ills, Sot’aesan began his religious mission. He opened a new religious order with the *buddhadharma* as the central doctrine, establishing the Society for the Study of the Buddha-dharma at Iksan, North Cholla province, in 1924. He edified his followers with newly drafted doctrine until his death in 1943. The central doctrine was published in the *Pulgyo chŏngjŏn* (*The Correct Canon of Buddhism*) in 1943. In 1947 Song Kyu (1900–1962; “Chŏngsan”),

the second patriarch, renamed the order *Wŏnbulgyo* (Wŏn Buddhism) and published the new canon, *Wŏnbulgyo kyojŏn* (*The Scriptures of Wŏn Buddhism*), in 1962.

### Doctrine

The central doctrine lies in the tenets of *Irwŏnsang* (unitary circular form), Four Beneficences, and Three-fold Practice. Just like a finger pointing at the moon, *Irwŏnsang*, enshrined as the symbol of the dharmakāya of the Buddha, refers to the Buddha-nature of the TATHĀGATHA and the fundamental source of the four beneficences (heaven and earth, parents, fellow beings, laws) to which one owes one's life. *Irwŏn* (unitary circle), the Wŏnbulgyo name for the Dharmakāya Buddha, is the noumenal nature of all beings of the universe, the original nature of all buddhas and patriarchs, and the Buddha-nature of all sentient beings. The worship of *Irwŏn* lies in requiting the four beneficences, as stated in the motto: "Requiting beneficence is making offerings to Buddha." The practice of *Irwŏn* lies in PRAJÑĀ (WISDOM), fostering (samādhi), and using (*śīla*), upon enlightenment to the Buddha-nature in mundane, daily life.

### Practice

The requital of the four beneficences is carried out: (1) for heaven and earth, harboring no thought after rendering beneficence; (2) for parents, protecting the helpless; (3) for fellow beings, benefiting oneself by benefiting others; and (4) for laws, doing justice and forsaking injustice. The threefold practice is perfected by: samādhi, cultivation of spirit; prajñā, inquiry into facts and principles; and *śīla*, the heedful choice in karmic action. The threefold practice is carried out through timeless Zen, which holds as its central principle that when the six sense organs are at rest, one should nourish One Mind by clearing the mind of worldly thoughts; when they are at work, one should forsake injustice and cultivate justice.

### Ceremonies

On Sundays, followers attend the dharma meeting at a Wŏn Buddhist temple, which includes seated meditation, prayers to the Dharmakāya Buddha, chanting, hymnals, and sermons. Two yearly memorial services (June 1 and December 1) for ancestors and four festival ceremonies (New Year's Day, the day of Sot'aesan's enlightenment and foundation of *Wŏnbulgyo*, Śākya-muni Buddha's birthday, and the day of Dharma authentication) are observed.

See also: Chinul; Festivals and Calendrical Rituals; Hyujŏng; Korea; Wŏnhyo

### Bibliography

- Chong, Key-ray. *Wŏn Buddhism: A History and Theology of Korea's New Religion*. Lewiston, NY: Mellen Press, 1997.
- Chung, Bongkil. *The Scriptures of Wŏn Buddhism: A Translation of Wŏnbulgyo kyojŏn with an Introduction*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2002.
- Park, Kwang Soo. *The Wŏn Buddhism (Wŏnbulgyo) of Sot'aesan*. Bethesda, MD: International Scholars Publication, 1997.

BONGKIL CHUNG

## WŎNCH'ŬK

Wŏnch'ŭk (Chinese, Yuance; Tibetan, Wen tshegs, 613–696) was a Korean expatriate scholar monk who lived in seventh-century China. Wŏnch'ŭk traveled to Tang China at the age of fifteen and studied YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL texts based on PARAMĀRTHA's (499–569) translations under Fachang (567–645) and Sengbian (568–642). Later studying under XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), Wŏnch'ŭk joined the comprehensive project to translate Indian Buddhist texts into Chinese, marking the start of the so-called New Yogācāra. This movement was based specifically on these new translations and especially the compilation of the *Cheng weishi lun* (*Demonstration of Consciousness-Only*), in contrast to the so-called Old Yogācāra, which was based on Paramārtha's earlier translations. Wŏnch'ŭk's work appears to be an attempt to reconcile the doctrinal differences between those two distinctive trends of Chinese Yogācāra doctrine. His interpretation of Yogācāra diverges from the interpretations of KUIJI (631–682) and Xuanzang, while sometimes resonating with the work of Paramārtha. This led to severe criticism from the later disciples of Kuiji who started the FAXIANG SCHOOL, which took Kuiji as their first patriarch. Wŏnch'ŭk's extant works include the *Haesimmilgyŏng so*, a commentary on the SAMDHINIRMOCANA-SŪTRA (the tenth and last fascicle is missing, but is available in Tibetan translation); the *Inwanggyŏng so*, a commentary on the RENWANG JING (HUMANE KINGS SŪTRA); and the *Pulsŏl panya paramilta simgyŏng ch'an*, a eulogy to the HEART SŪTRA. Unfortunately, Wŏnch'ŭk's *Sŏngyusingnon so*, a commentary on the *Cheng weishi lun*, which was probably his most representative work, is no longer extant and is known only through quotations.

With his vast scholarship on Yogācāra Buddhist doctrine and other philosophical trends within the Indian tradition, Wŏnch'ŭk significantly contributed to the development of Chinese Buddhism, influencing the doctrines of the Chinese HUAYAN SCHOOL and the especially the thought of FAZANG (643–712). However, Wŏnch'ŭk's influence was not limited to China. Even though he never returned to Korea, Wŏnch'ŭk's theories were inherited by the Korean monks Tojŭng (ca. 640–710) and T'aehyŏn (fl. 753), despite their lack of any direct contact with him. Wŏnch'ŭk also played an important role in the formation of the Japanese branch of Yogācāra, the Hossō (Chinese, Faxiang) school, and his works were admired by Gyōsin (ca. 750), Genjū (723–797), and Gomyō (750–834). The controversies and debates surrounding the issues that Wŏnch'ŭk and other Faxiang scholars explored in China challenged Japanese Yogācāra exegetes at the very moment that the school was founded during the Nara period. This admiration for Wŏnch'ŭk's scholarship changed around the end of Heian and into the Kamakura periods. At that time, the Hossō school instead took as authoritative the three patriarchs of Chinese Faxiang—namely Kuiji, Huizhao (650–714), and Zhizhou (668–723)—and Hossō monks designated some views as “orthodox” and others as “heretical.” In addition, Wŏnch'ŭk's commentary on the *Samdhinirmocana-sūtra* was translated into Tibetan during the ninth century and was cited extensively by TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419) and his DGE LUGS (GELUK) successors. Wŏnch'ŭk's views were therefore influential in the subsequent development of Tibetan Buddhism.

### Bibliography

Cho, Eunsu. “Wŏnch'ŭk's Place in the East Asian Buddhist Tradition.” In *Currents and Countercurrents: Korean Influences on the East Asian Buddhist Traditions*, ed. Robert E. Buswell, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2004.

EUNSU CHO

## WŎNHYO

Wŏnhyo (Break of Dawn, 617–686) is widely considered to be the most influential thinker, writer, and commentator in Korean Buddhist history. Arguably the first major contributor to the development of an indigenous approach to Korean Buddhist doctrine and practice, Wŏnhyo wrote over eighty treatises and commentaries on virtually every influential MAHĀYĀNA scripture then available in Korea, of which over twenty

are extant. Reflecting the dynamic cultural exchanges and flourishing doctrinal scholarship and meditative practice occurring within East Asian Buddhism during his time, Wŏnhyo's scholarship embraced the full spectrum of East Asian Buddhism, from the Mahāyāna PRECEPTS to the emblematic teachings of Madhyamaka, Yogācāra, Tiantai, Pure Land, NIRVĀṆA, TATHĀGATA-GARBHA, and Huayan. Wŏnhyo's writings were disseminated throughout East Asia and made important contributions to the development of Buddhist doctrinal exegesis.

Wŏnhyo's life has fascinated readers even in modern times and his biography has been the subject of novels, film, and television drama in Korea. Spending the early part of his career as a monk in Korea, Wŏnhyo made two attempts to travel to Tang China (618–907) with his lifelong friend ŬISANG (625–702) to study under XUANZANG (ca. 600–664), a Chinese scholar-pilgrim who was the most respected doctrinal teacher of his time. On the second attempt, Wŏnhyo's biographies state that he had an enlightenment experience that was intimately related to the *mind-only* theory of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL. The accounts vary, but they all revolve around Wŏnhyo having a revelation after falling asleep one evening during his travels. In the most drastic version, recorded in a later Chan hagiographical collection, Wŏnhyo takes refuge from a storm in a sanctuary, but awakens thirsty in the middle of the night and looks in the dark for water. Finding a bowl of water, he drinks it and, satisfied, goes back to sleep. The next morning after he awakens, he finds to his disgust that the place where he had slept was in fact a crypt and what he had taken to be a bowl of water was actually offal in a human skull. Realizing that what he thought was thirst-quenching the night before was disgusting now, he revealed, “I heard that the Buddha said the three worlds are mind-only and everything is consciousness-only. Thus beauty and unwholesomeness depend on my mind, not on the water.” The narrative power of this story helped shape East Asian images of enlightenment as a dramatic awakening experience. After this experience Wŏnhyo turned back from his journey, proclaiming that there was no need to search for truth outside one's mind. His friend Ŭisang, however, continued on to China, later returning home to found the Korean branch of the HUAYAN SCHOOL (Korean, Hwaŏm).

Wŏnhyo's later affair with a widowed princess produced a son, Sŏl Ch'ong (d.u.), one of the most famous literati in Korean history, and helped to seal his reputation as someone who transcended such conventional

distinctions as secular and sacred. After an illustrious career as a writer and Buddhist thinker, Wōnhyo lived primarily as a mendicant, wandering the cities and markets as a street proselytizer. As his biography in the SAMGUK YUSA (MEMORABILIA OF THE THREE KINGDOMS) states, “He used to . . . sing and dance his way through thousands of villages and myriad hamlets, touring while proselytizing in song. Thus, everyone in the country came to recognize the name ‘Buddha’ and recite ‘Homage to Buddha.’” This same source relates that Wōnhyo died in a hermitage in March 686, leaving no direct disciples. The *Samguk sagi* (*Historical Records of the Three Kingdoms*) also notes that he died as a householder (*kōsa*), a male lay Buddhist.

Wōnhyo’s thought system is structured around the concept of “one mind,” as illustrated in his commentaries to the AWAKENING OF FAITH (DASHENG QIXIN LUN). *One mind* is another term for the mind of SENTIENT BEINGS, which is intrinsically pure and unchanging, but appears externally to be impure and ephemeral. Even though every deluded thought arises from the mind, at the same time, it is that mind itself that provides the capacity to achieve enlightenment. Wōnhyo outlines a threefold structure for experiencing enlightenment: ORIGINAL ENLIGHTENMENT (HONGAKU), nonenlightenment, and actualizing enlightenment, which are mutually contingent and mutually defining. Original enlightenment provides the theoretical basis for enlightenment; nonenlightenment is the misconception about the nature of original enlightenment; and actualizing enlightenment is the incitement to practice. Practice here is based on the conditional definition of nonenlightenment, that is, the insubstantiality of defilements. Practice, therefore, does not really involve removing something; it instead is correct knowledge that the defilements we experience in daily life are unreal. The distinction Wōnhyo draws between original and nonenlightenments, and the attempts he makes to integrate the two, set the stage for notions of the universality of buddhahood in later East Asian Buddhism. The *Awakening of Faith* itself originally provided the conceptual frame for this notion, but it was Wōnhyo’s elaboration in his commentary to that treatise that provided a more coherent interpretation of this construct and proposed a solution to the tensions inherent in the definition of enlightenment in Buddhist history. This elaboration helped to establish a unique cognitive framework for East Asian Buddhism, and made Wōnhyo’s commentary one of the most influential texts in the East Asian Buddhist tradition.

See also: Faxiang School; Korea; Madhyamaka School; Tiantai School

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch’an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-Sūtra, a Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. “Hagiographies of the Korean Monk Wōnhyo.” In *Buddhism in Practice*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1995.

EUNSU CHO

## WORSHIP

Worship in the Buddhist tradition takes many forms and is directed toward many different beings and objects, from images of the Buddha, to his physical remains (relics), to visualized BODHISATTVAS.

The question of the proper form and purpose of worship is addressed in several places in early Buddhist texts. Some texts stress that the Buddha should not be worshiped at all, but rather that the dharma (Pāli, *dhamma*) should be the focus of Buddhist practice. Thus, in the *Samyuttanikāya* (*Connected Discourses*), a monk named Vakkali expresses his desire to see and worship the Buddha, who sharply rebukes him: “What is the sight of this putrid body to you? He who sees the *dhamma*, Vakkali, he sees me; he who sees me, he sees the *dhamma*” (SN 3.120). Variations of this attitude toward worship of the Buddha can be found in a variety of early texts. In the *Dīghanikāya* (*Group of Long Discourses*), for instance, there is a scene in which the Buddha, having been showered by flowers from a blossoming tree, tells his chief disciple and faithful attendant, Ānanda, that such outward displays of worship are not appropriate; rather, the best form of worship of the Buddha is following the dharma (DN 2.138). Likewise, in the MAHĀPARINIRVĀṆA-SŪTRA (Pāli, *Mahāparinibbana-sutta*; *Great Discourse on the Nirvāṇa*), when Ānanda learns that the Buddha is about to die and is in anguish at the thought of the loss of his beloved teacher, the Buddha tells him that his physical presence is not necessary, for he has left the dharma, and that is the only guiding light that Ānanda and the other disciples will need. Scholars and Buddhists alike have frequently taken this famous episode as indicative of the Buddha’s own attitude toward worship: Focus on learning and following the dharma, not on worshiping the physical form of the Buddha, which leads only to grasping.



Lotus petals strewn on a sculptural representation of the Buddha's footprints at Bodh Gayā, site of the Buddha's enlightenment. © Hulton Archive by Getty Images. Reproduced by permission.

However, in another famous episode in the *Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra*, Ānanda asks the Buddha what should be done with his bones after his cremation, and he tells him that his remains should be gathered up and placed inside a *STŪPA* (Pāli, *thūpa*) built at the intersection of four great roads. There, the Buddha says, his followers can come to “offer a garland, or scent, or paint, or make a salutation, or feel serene joy in their heart, which will be to their benefit and well-being for a long time” (*DN* 2.142). This clearly sets a different precedent for worship, one that encourages worship of the physical objects related to the Buddha as an opportunity to honor the departed teacher and to establish an emotional connection to him. This practice, called *buddhānusmṛti* (Pāli, *buddhānusati*; recollection of the Buddha), involves the worshiper in creating through *MEDITATION* a mental image of the Buddha that can, then, be mentally worshiped. This form of worship is common in both the *THERAVĀDA* and *MAHĀYĀNA* school traditions.

The great Buddhist ruler *AŚOKA* (third century B.C.E.) is credited with having spread the relics and thus

their worship by dividing the original eight portions into eighty-four thousand parts and enshrining them in *stūpas* throughout India. Such relics are often said to embody the Buddha, and thus are worshiped as extensions of his person. From at least the third century B.C.E. relic veneration has been one of the most important forms of worshiping the Buddha, and it continues to be at the core of worship in much of the Buddhist world. In contemporary Sri Lanka, for example, the Temple of the Tooth, which houses what is said to be one of the Buddha's canines, is visited by thousands of Buddhists daily and is perhaps the most important religious structure in the country.

In addition to the worship of the Buddha's physical remains, sculptural images are important objects of worship. Early Buddhism tended to represent the Buddha in iconic forms—via his footprints, an empty throne, the tree under which he attained enlightenment, the wheel of dharma—in order to emphasize his physical absence from the world and to prevent his followers from grasping on to the person of the Buddha. At both *SĀNCĪ* and *Bhārhut*, two of the earliest Indian

sites from which there are sculptural remains, there is evidence that such objects were worshiped in much the same way that the Buddha describes the proper worship of his relics: Offerings are made of flowers and the worshipers bow down in respect, forming the *añjali mudrā*, or gesture of reverence and respect.

Sculptural images of the Buddha himself began to appear sometime around the turn of the first millennium. These images focus on significant moments in the biography of the Buddha, such as his enlightenment or his defeat of MĀRA. In medieval India, a set of eight episodes from the Buddha's life—the *aṣṭama-hāprātihārya*—became a common sculptural motif, and allowed the worshiper to honor and venerate the entire life of the Buddha in a single image.

Perhaps the most common form of worship in the Buddhist world is *buddha pūjā*, literally “honoring the Buddha,” which can be performed both in the formal setting of a monastery or at a home shrine. It typically involves making some sort of offering to a Buddha image or relic or stūpa—a flower, a small lamp, food, or even money. When *buddha pūjā* is performed in a monastery, the worshiper first removes his or her shoes, washes the object to be offered to purify the offering, and then approaches the image or stūpa with hands clasped in the *añjali* gesture of respect. The object is then offered, and the worshiper bows down or prostrates before the image or stūpa. Such worship focuses the mind of the worshiper on the Buddha and his teachings and also generates merit. Although *buddha pūjā* can be performed at any time, it is particularly important to worship the Buddha in this manner on *poṣadha* (Pāli, *uposatha*) days and on special holidays, such as the Buddha's birthday, Vesak.

In the Mahāyāna tradition, in addition to worship that is directed toward the Buddha, bodhisattvas and other DIVINITIES (such as Tārā and Prajñāpāramitā) are objects of great devotion. In the PURE LAND SCHOOLS, AMITĀBHA in particular is worshiped; proper veneration of and faith in Amitābha, in some schools attained through the fervent recitation of his name, leads to rebirth in his Pure Land.

Finally, not only are buddhas and bodhisattvas the object of worship, but also MONKS, since one should honor and worship one's teacher as a living embodiment of the Buddha's teachings. In Thailand, the relics of famous monks are often objects of great devotion and worship. Likewise, in China and Japan, the mummified bodies of important monks are sometimes preserved as living presences, and in many Buddhist schools in Tibet, one worships one's LAMA in the same way that one would honor the Buddha himself.

*See also:* **Buddha Images; Buddhānusmṛti (Recollection of the Buddha); Dharma and Dharmas; Merit and Merit-Making; Relics and Relics Cults**

### **Bibliography**

- Eckel, Malcom David. *To See the Buddha: A Philosopher's Quest for the Meaning of Emptiness*. San Francisco: Harper, 1992.
- Kinnard, Jacob N. *Imaging Wisdom: Seeing and Knowing in the Art of Indian Buddhism*. Richmond, UK: Curzon Press, 1999.
- Trainor, Kevin. *Relics, Ritual, and Representation in Buddhism: Rematerializing the Sri Lankan Theravāda Tradition*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 1997.

JACOB N. KINNARD



*This page intentionally left blank*

# X



## XUANZANG

Xuanzang (Ci'en, ca. 600–664) was a renowned Chinese pilgrim to India and one of the most prolific Chinese translators. Due to his encompassing knowledge of Buddhist traditions, he was honored as *sanzang fashi* (Trepiṭaka Dharma Master).

Xuanzang became engrossed in Yogācāra thought at an early age, but came to realize that the scriptures of that school were only partially available in Chinese. It was particularly the absence of a full translation of the encyclopedic *Yogācārabhūmī-śāstra* (*Treatise on the Stages of the Yoga Masters*) that Xuanzang felt painfully. Therefore, he decided that in order to obtain an authentic interpretation of the teachings of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL he had to travel to India. In 627 Xuanzang set out on his hazardous journey. On the way he relied on the support of many, lay and cleric, humble and noble, as well as on the saving power of the BODHISATTVAS, particularly of MAITREYA. Xuanzang spent fourteen years in India (629–643), venerating virtually all important sacred sites, collecting texts, and studying with teachers. The most important of his instructors was Śīlabhadra, a disciple of Dharmapāla, under whose guidance Xuanzang studied for five years at the monastic university of Nālandā. Besides Yogācāra, he studied Sarvāstivāda, Madhyamaka, and *hetuvidyā* (Buddhist LOGIC), as well as the Vedas and Sanskrit grammar. In Nālandā, Xuanzang figured among the most exalted scholars of his time, and he was enthusiastically entertained by the Indian kings Bhāskaravarman and Harṣa. After his return to Chang'an in 645, he was received by Emperor Tang Taizong, who funded Xuanzang's academy for the translation of sūtras and had him compile the *Da Tang xiyu ji* (*Record*

*of Travels to the Western Regions*). This record, together with his biography, the *Ci'en zhuan* (*Biography of Xuanzang*) by Huili, remains the most important source for the Buddhism of his time.

During the nineteen years after his return, Xuanzang translated seventy-five of the 657 works he brought home. Among these his translations of ABHIDHARMA, Yogācāra, and *hetuvidyā* texts have secured him a foremost place in the annals of dharma transmission. Xuanzang did not work alone. The sources provide names of more than sixty major collaborators, some of them scholars famed for their exegetic work, including KUIJI, Jingmai, Shentai, WŌNCH'ŪK, Wenbei, Puguang, and Xuanying.

According to Xuanzang's biographers, among the questions he sought to answer were whether all beings possess an innate capacity to attain buddhahood, what awakening meant, and how the PATH is to be conceived. Whereas PARAMĀRTHA's translations supported the TATHĀGATAGARBHA (buddha-nature), the Yogācāra (Faxiang) teachings transmitted by Xuanzang included the notion of the Five Lineages (*pañcagotra*), one of which, the so-called ICCHANTIKA, was said not to possess the capacity for awakening. To many of Xuanzang's contemporaries, this sounded awkward. But, in fact, this teaching represented just one aspect of the highly sophisticated Yogācāra exegesis, which at the time constituted the sum of Buddhist learning because it incorporated the Abhidharma learning on a MAHĀYĀNA foundation. Xuanzang considered the faithful transmission and preservation of these teachings to be his duty. For him, it was pointless and an excessive simplification to assume that one should disregard the most refined teachings of the Indian sages. He summarized these teachings in the seminal *Cheng Weishi*

*lun* (*Establishing the Exclusivity of Vijñāna*) a synoptic discussion of the Yogācāra doctrine following Dharmāpala's interpretation.

*See also:* **China; India; Pilgrimage; Silk Road**

### ***Bibliography***

- Beal, Samuel, trans. *Si-yu-ki: Buddhist Records of the Western World*. London: Kegan Paul, 1906.
- Grousset, René. *In the Footsteps of the Buddha*. London: Routledge, 1932.
- La Vallée-Poussin, Louis de, trans. and ed. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi: La Siddhi de Hiuan-tsang*. Paris: Geuthner, 1928–1929.
- Li, Rongxi, trans. *A Biography of the Tripitaka Master of the Great C'ien Monastery of the Great Tang Dynasty*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center for Buddhist Translation and Research, 1995.
- Mayer, Alexander L., trans. *Xuanzang: Übersetzer und Heiliger*. Wiesbaden, Germany: Harrassowitz, 1992.

ALEXANDER L. MAYER

# Y



## YAKṢA

Yakṣa (Pāli, *yakkha*) are indigenous Indian tree spirits that are included in the list of the occupants of the lowest of the HELLS, where they torture beings, sometimes quite graphically. Either male or female, most yakṣas are wild, demonic, sexually prolific beings who live in solitary places and are hostile toward people, particularly monks and nuns, whose meditation they disturb by making loud noises. Yakṣas are associated variously with fertility, the earth, water, and trees, as well as with lust and delusion (*māyā*). Frequently, however, they are converted to Buddhism and “tamed,” becoming active, positive forces in the world. Yakṣas appear in various JĀTAKA tales. In the *Devadhamma-jātaka*, for instance, the Buddha-to-be explains to a vicious *yakkha* that he has attained his lowly state due to his past KARMA (ACTION), and the *yakkha* converts to Buddhism and becomes a protector of the king. Vajrapāṇi, who becomes a particularly prominent divinity in the MAHĀYĀNA, is in early texts a yakṣa who protects Buddhism and serves as the Buddha’s bodyguard. In other texts, though, yakṣas are considerably more fierce. In the *Valāhassana-jātaka*, for instance, there is a yakṣa city on an island (Sri Lanka) inhabited by female *yakṣinīs* who lure sailors with their apparent beauty, only to enslave, torture, and devour the sailors before they are rescued by the bodhisattva. In other early texts, such as the *Ālavaka-sutta* of the *Sutta-nipāta*, the yakṣa frequently plays the role of the skeptic or reluctant convert, and thus serves as both a foil for the Buddha to preach the dharma and a metaphor for the power of the dharma to reform even the most wicked. Yakṣas are represented in Buddhist sculpture as early as the Mathurā period (fourth through second centuries

B.C.E.), frequently as *caurī*-holding attendants and servants of the Buddha. They are especially prominent at SĀÑCĪ and Bhārhut.

*See also:* Divinities; Ghosts and Spirits

### *Bibliography*

Coomaraswamy, Ananda K. *Yakṣas*. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1931.

Sutherland, Gail Hinich. *The Disguises of the Demon: The Development of the Yakṣa in Hinduism and Buddhism*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.

JACOB N. KINNARD

## YANSHOU

Yongming Yanshou (Zhijue, 904–975) was a major figure in the development of Chinese Buddhism after the Tang dynasty (618–907). Yanshou is particularly esteemed in the CHAN SCHOOL and PURE LAND SCHOOLS, where his memory is frequently invoked as an initiator of the Chan–Pure Land synthesis that dominated Chinese Buddhism after the Song dynasty (960–1279).

Yanshou lived during a period of upheaval between the Tang and Song, when China was divided into a number of de facto independent principalities, or kingdoms. In many respects, Yanshou represents a culmination of the scholastic style of Tang Buddhism. In other respects, Yanshou epitomized the syncretic style of Buddhism that became dominant during the Song. While Yanshou identified himself and was regarded as a Chan master, his scholastic style is more reminiscent of the major Tang Buddhist schools, Huayan and

Tiantai. His conception of Chan as the culmination of the Buddhist scriptural tradition, often rendered as “harmony between Chan and Buddhist teaching,” stands in contrast to the independent claims of “a special transmission outside the teaching” identified particularly with the Linji lineage of Chan.

Within the Chan school, Yanshou is regarded as the third patriarch of the Fayan lineage. During the tenth century, Fayan monks played major roles at the courts of many southern kingdoms, especially Wuyue, where Tiantai Deshao (891–972) served as national preceptor or spiritual adviser to the Wuyue court. With the support of the Wuyue ruler, Deshao orchestrated the Buddhist revival in the region, most notably on Mount Tiantai, one of China’s sacred mountains and Wuyue’s spiritual center. Yanshou is regarded as Deshao’s successor in the Fayan lineage; following Deshao’s example, he served as a major prelate in Wuyue.

Little is known of Yanshou’s life. Buddhist biographers suggest that Yanshou was a talented and pious youth who initially entered the civil service as a garrison commander (or an official in charge of military provisions, according to one source) at a sensitive border post in Wuyue. Moved by his Buddhist aspirations, Yanshou renounced his official duties to become a Chan monk. Later sources claim that Yanshou illicitly used government funds to buy captured fish and set them free as an expression of Buddhist altruism. Sentenced to death for his crime, Yanshou was eventually freed by the Wuyue ruler, who judged that Yanshou’s motives were sincere when he faced death serenely. Yanshou’s altruism became a major feature of his mythological image as a Buddhist savior, one who was able to escape death himself and to free others from the fate of purgatorial suffering. In this capacity, Yanshou became a devotional figure among Chinese Buddhists who enlisted Yanshou’s assistance to gain birth in the Pure Land of AMITĀBHA Buddha. Yanshou’s association with the Pure Land schools is largely the result of this.

After being granted official permission to leave government service and enter the Buddhist clergy, Yanshou studied and practiced for many years on Mount Tiantai. He commenced teaching on Mount Xuedou in 952. In 960 he was invited to serve as abbot of Lingyin Monastery, a major Buddhist institution in the Wuyue capital of Qiantang (present-day Hangzhou). The following year he was invited to assume abbot’s duties at the recently constructed Yongming Monastery, also located in the capital and a major symbol of the

Buddhist revival in Wuyue. In addition to his Chan scholasticism, Yanshou is particularly noted for his devotion to the LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and his promotion of Buddhist altruism through the performance of good deeds. He passed away on Mount Tiantai in 975 and was granted the posthumous name Zhijue by the Song emperor. Among his numerous works are the massive one-hundred-fascicle *Zongjing lu* (*Records of the Source-Mirror*), devoted to his vision of Chan as a pan-sectarian ideology espoused throughout Buddhism and not exclusive to the Chan lineage, and the *Wanshan tonggui ji* (*The Common End of Myriad Good Practices*), regarded in the later tradition as a testament to Chan–Pure Land syncretism, but actually espousing a broader syncretism encompassing the aims of the entire Buddhist tradition.

See also: China

### Bibliography

- Shih, Heng-ching, *The Syncretism of Chan and Pure Land Buddhism*. New York: Peter Lang, 1992.
- Welter, Albert. “The Contextual Study of Chinese Buddhist Biographies: The Example of Yung-ming Yen-shou (904–975).” In *Monks and Magicians: Religious Biographies in Asia*, ed. Phyllis Granoff and Koichi Shinohara. Oakville, ON: Mosaic Press, 1988.
- Welter, Albert. *The Meaning of Myriad Good Deeds: A Study of Yung-ming Yen-shou and the Wan-shan t’ung-kuei chi*. New York: Peter Lang, 1993.

ALBERT WELTER

## YIJING

Yijing (635–713), together with FAXIAN and XUANZANG, is one of the most important Chinese pilgrims to travel to India. Yijing, who was honored during his lifetime with the title *sanzang fashi* (Master of the Tripiṭaka), was a prolific translator, particularly of the *Sarvāstivāda Vinaya*. In 671 he sailed to Śrīvijaya (Sumatra) and traveled from there to Tāmraliptī (eastern India), then to the monastic Buddhist university at Nālandā, where for nine years he studied *hetuvidyā* (logic), ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA, VINAYA, and MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL and YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL philosophies. After further studies in Śrīvijaya, he returned to China in 695 and worked with ŚIKṢĀNANDA at his translation bureau in Luoyang. From 700 to 713 Yijing headed his own academy of translation. Altogether he

translated approximately fifty-six works in 230 fascicles, including *Āgama*, AVADĀNA, and MAHĀYĀNA scriptures and treatises, tantras, and vinaya texts, particularly of the SARVĀSTIVĀDA, thus preserving one of the most important monastic traditions. His translations of Yogācāra texts and of Buddhist reasoning are equally important.

Yijing also wrote exegetic works and the earliest extant Sanskrit-Chinese dictionary (*Fanyu qianzi wen*). His two most important writings are *Nanhai jigui neifa zhuan* (*An Account of the Dharma Sent Back from the Southern Seas*, T 2125), which gives an account of Buddhist practices, showing the Chinese perceptions of the monastic regulations prevalent in India, and *Da Tang xiyu qiufa gaoseng zhuan* (*Record of Eminent Monks Who [Traveled to] India in Search of the Dharma during the Tang*, T 2066).

See also: China; India; Pilgrimage; Silk Road

### Bibliography

Chavannes, Edouard, trans. *Mémoire composé à l'époque de la grande dynastie Tang sur les religieux éminents qui allèrent chercher la loi dans les pays d'occident, par I-Tsing*. Paris: E. Leroux, 1894.

Takakusu Junjiro, trans. *A Record of the Buddhist Religion as Practised in India and the Malay Archipelago (A.D. 671–695) by I-Tsing*. Oxford: Clarendon, 1896.

ALEXANDER L. MAYER

## YINSHUN

Widely considered to be the primary successor of the reform legacy of his teacher TAIXU (1890–1947), Yinshun Shengzheng (1906– ) is an influential Buddhist scholar in modern Chinese Buddhist academe and a key architect of the Chinese Buddhist reform movement. He reformulated and added academic sophistication to the content of his late teacher's rallying rhetoric of "Buddhism for Human Life" (*Rensheng fojiao*) and coined the new slogan "Humanistic Buddhism" (*Renjian fojiao*) to promote his refined version of a modern "engaged" form of Buddhism.

In his writings, Yinshun proposed various periodization schemes outlining Buddhist doctrinal evolution, and polemically assessed the relevance of the different periods to modern Buddhist spirituality, as well as to what he considered to be the central, defin-

ing tenets of Buddhism. His positions challenged deeply cherished beliefs of Chinese Buddhists: his unsympathetic treatment of both the "transcendentalized" TATHĀGATAGARBHA or buddha-nature tradition, and the "vulgarized" popular Chinese schools like Pure Land and Chan.

No less impassioned and idealistic than his teacher Taixu in advancing his version of the bodhisattva path, Yinshun's copious works have left an indelible mark on the academic and religious discourse of modern Chinese Buddhist communities. Most of these works are collected in the massive *Miaoyun ji* (*Anthology of the Wondrous Clouds*) and the *Huayu ji* (*Anthology of the Flower Rains*). Other stand-alone volumes contain groundbreaking research on the Sarvāstivāda treatises and the Chinese *Samyuktāgama*.

See also: China; Engaged Buddhism

### Bibliography

Pittman, Don A. *Toward a Modern Chinese Buddhism: Taixu's Reforms*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 2001.

Qiu Minjie. *Yinshun daoshi de foxue sixiang*. Taipei: Fajie, 1990.

WILLIAM CHU

## YIXUAN

Yixuan (Linji Yixuan; Japanese, Rinzai Gigen; ?–866) was a famous Chinese master and an emblematic figure of the putative "golden age" of the CHAN SCHOOL of Buddhism. Early biographical sources agree on only a few details about his life. Linji's family name before becoming a monk was Jing; he was born in southwest Shandong province, studied under master Huangbo Xiyun (died ca. 850), visited various monasteries during his pilgrimage years, and finally taught at a monastery "near the ford" (*linji*, the origin of his name) in Hebei province, where he died. Most sources offer May 27, 866, as the date of his death.

In Chan circles, Linji's reputation as a forceful teacher fond of deafening shouts and unconventional teaching methods grew rapidly after his death. Notes of his sermons and conversations circulated, and such phrases as "Linji's True Man of No Rank" achieved wide renown. Nevertheless, almost three centuries passed before, in 1120, Yuanjue Zongyan (ca. late eleventh–twelfth century) compiled the *Linji lu* (*Record of Linji*), the most important extant source for

Linji's teaching. When this gem of a Chan text was published, Linji's reputation was already established as the founder of one of Chan's Five Houses, and his life story had become thoroughly embellished with colorful details.

### Bibliography

- Demiéville, Paul, trans. and ed. *Entretiens de Lin-tsi*. Paris: Fayard, 1972.
- Miura, Isshū, and Sasaki, Ruth Fuller. *Zen Dust*. Kyoto: First Zen Institute of America in Japan, 1966.
- Sasaki, Ruth Fuller, trans. *The Record of Lin-chi*. Kyoto: Institute for Zen Studies, 1975.
- Watson, Burton, trans. *The Zen Teachings of Master Lin-chi*. Boston: Shambhala, 1993.
- Yanagida, Seizan. "The Life of Lin-chi I-hsüan." *Eastern Buddhist* vol. V, no. 2 (1972): 70–94.

URS APP

YOGA. See Meditation

## YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL

The Yogācāra school, whose name is taken from one of its foundational texts, the *Yogācārabhūmi* (*Stages of Yoga Practice*), provided perhaps the most sophisticated examination and description in all of Buddhism of how the mind works—in psychological, epistemological, logical, emotional, cognitive, meditative, developmental, and soteriological modes. At once a rigorous, rational philosophy and an elaborate system of practice, it provided methods by which one could identify and correct the cognitive errors inherent in the way the mind works, since enlightenment meant direct, immediate, correct cognition.

The founding of Yogācāra, one of the two major Indian MAHĀYĀNA schools, is usually attributed to the half-brothers ASAṄGA and VASUBANDHU (fourth to fifth century C.E.), but most of its unique concepts had been introduced at least a century earlier in scriptures such as the SAṂDHINIRMOCANA-SŪTRA (*Sūtra Elucidating the Hidden Connections* or *Sūtra Setting Free the [Buddha's] Intent*). Yogācāra forged novel concepts and methods that synthesized prior Buddhist teachings into a coherent antidote (*pratīpakṣa*) for eliminating the cognitive problems that prevented liberation from the karmic cycles of birth and death.

### Historical overview

Key Yogācāra notions such as only-cognition (*viññaptimātra*), three self-natures (*trisvabhāva*), the ĀLAYAVIJÑĀNA (warehouse consciousness), overturning the basis (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*), and the theory of eight consciousnesses were introduced in the *Samdhinirmocana-sūtra* and received more detailed, systematic treatment in the writings of Asaṅga and Vasubandhu. Born Brahmans in Puruṣapura (present-day Peshawar, Pakistan) to the same mother but different fathers, Asaṅga and his half-brother Vasubandhu became Buddhists, Asaṅga entering the MAHĪSĀKA school, while Vasubandhu joined the Vaibhāṣikas in their stronghold in Kashmir. The literary core of Mahīśāsaka practice was the ĀGAMA/NIKĀYA corpus of the MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS, while the Vaibhāṣikas excelled at ABHIDHARMA. The brothers' later writings reflect these backgrounds, since even Asaṅga's book on *abhidharma*, the *Abhidharmasamuccaya* (*Abhidharma Compilation*), cites only *āgamas*, not *abhidharma* texts.

According to tradition, after many years of fruitless practice and solitary meditation, in a moment of utter despair, Asaṅga began receiving instruction from the future Buddha, MAITREYA, who resides in the Tuṣita heaven. Maitreya dictated new texts for Asaṅga to disseminate. Asaṅga also composed works under his own name, though the Chinese and Tibetan traditions disagree about the attribution of these texts. For instance, both ascribe the *Mahāyānaśāstra* (*Mahāyāna Compendium*), *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, and *Mahāyānasūtrālaṅkāra* (*Ornament of Mahāyāna Sūtras*) to Asaṅga, and *Madhyāntavibhāga* (*Distinguishing the Middle and Extremes*) to Maitreya, but Chinese tradition attributes the *Yogācārabhūmi* to Maitreya, whereas Tibetans credit Asaṅga with this text. What gave the Maitreya-Asaṅga texts their lasting importance was not their mode of composition—receiving sacred scriptures from nonhuman sources is not uncommon in Asian traditions—but their content, that is, how they rethought Buddhism on a grand scale, as well as in its most minute details.

Vasubandhu grew dissatisfied with Vaibhāṣika doctrine and, after exploring other forms of Buddhism, became a Yogācāra through Asaṅga's influence. Asaṅga's magnum opus, the *Yogācārabhūmi*, is a comprehensive encyclopedia of Buddhist terms and models mapped according to a Yogācāra view of how one progresses along the stages of the path to enlightenment. Vasubandhu's pre-Yogācāra magnum opus, the ABHIDHARMAKOŚABHĀṢYA (*Treasury of Abhidharma*), also provides a comprehensive, detailed overview of the

Buddhist path with meticulous attention to nuances and differences of opinion on a broad range of exacting topics.

Vasubandhu's two main disciples (though they probably encountered his writings through intermediary generations of teachers) were DIGNĀGA (ca. 480–540 C.E.), who revolutionized Indian logic and epistemology, and Sthiramati (ca. 510–570), who wrote important commentaries on the works of Asaṅga and Vasubandhu, notably *Abhidharmasamuccayaabhāṣya*, *Triṃśikāvijñaptiṭīkā*, and a subcommentary on Vasubandhu's commentary on the *Madhyāntavibhāga*. After Vasubandhu, Yogācāra developed into two distinct directions or branches: (1) a logico-epistemic tradition, exemplified by such thinkers as Dignāga, DHARMAKĪRTI, Śāntarakṣita, and Ratnakīrti; and (2) an *abhidharma*-style psychology, exemplified by such thinkers as Sthiramati, Dharmapāla, XUANZANG, and Vinīta-deva. While the first branch focused on questions of epistemology and LOGIC, the other branch refined and elaborated the *abhidharma* analysis developed by Asaṅga and Vasubandhu. These branches were not entirely separate, and many Buddhists wrote works that contributed to both. Dignāga, for instance, besides his works on epistemology and logic, also wrote a commentary on Vasubandhu's *Abhidharmakośa*. What united both branches was a deep concern with the process of cognition, that is, analyses of how people perceive and think. The former branch approached that issue epistemologically, whereas the latter branch approached it psychologically and therapeutically. Both identified the root of all human problems as cognitive errors that needed correction.

The *abhidharma* branch faded in importance by the eighth century in India, while the logico-epistemic branch remained vital until the demise of Buddhism in India around the thirteenth century. Nonetheless, various Hindu and Jain schools have continued up to the present day to study and write about its arguments and contributions to Indian philosophy. Such literature usually labels the Yogācāra positions VIJÑĀNA-VĀDA (consciousness school).

### Yogācāra outside India

In the early sixth century in China, while translating Vasubandhu's commentary on the *Ten Stages Sūtra* (Sanskrit, *Daśabhūmikasūtropadeśa*; Chinese, *Dilun*), the two translators, Bodhiruci and Ratnamati, parted due to irreconcilable differences of interpretation. Bodhiruci favored a more orthodox Yogācāra approach, while Ratnamati was drawn to a Yogācāra-

TATHĀGATAGARBHA hybrid ideology. The former emphasizes removing mental obstructions, whereas the latter stresses an ontological pure nature that shines forth once defilements are removed. Their feud had an immediate and lasting impact on Chinese Buddhism, with followers of Bodhiruci's interpretation developing into the so-called Northern Dilun school and Ratnamati's followers becoming Southern Dilun. That feud dominated contemporary Chinese Buddhism, and it intensified when in the mid-sixth century the Indian translator PARAMĀRTHA (499–569) introduced another version of Yogācāra, amenable to the tathāgatagarbha ideology, that reified a ninth consciousness (*amalavijñāna*, pure consciousness) that would emerge with enlightenment, even though no Indian text attests to this concept. Asaṅga's *Mahāyānasamgraha* (Chinese, *Shelun*) became the key text for Paramārtha's followers, so their school was dubbed Shelun.

In 629, seeking to resolve the disputes between these schools, Xuanzang (ca. 600–664) traveled to India, returning in 645 with over six hundred texts—seventy-four of which he translated—and a better understanding of Indian Yogācāra as taught at Nālandā (the prime seat of Buddhist learning at that time). His successor, KUIJI (632–682), founded the Weishi school (Sanskrit, *Vijñaptimātra*), also called FAXIANG (Dharma Characteristics). Students who had come from Korea and Japan to study with Xuanzang and Kuiji brought the teaching back to their countries, where it thrived for many centuries, and survives today in Japan as Hossō (the Japanese pronunciation of Faxiang). Although the Weishi school came under attack from the newly emerging Sinitic Mahāyāna schools, such as the HUAYAN SCHOOL, for challenging ingrained orthodoxies, ironically those orthodoxies were themselves largely grounded in developments from the earlier Yogācāra-oriented Dilun and Shelun schools. The CHAN SCHOOL, which started to institutionalize around the time of Xuanzang and Kuiji, initially drew on the LAŅKĀVATĀRA-SŪTRA, a Yogācāra-tathāgatagarbha hybrid text, as one of its main scriptures. Thus, much of the later developments in East Asian Buddhism can be seen as arising out of inter-Yogācāra rivalries.

Yogācāra entered Tibet in the eighth century with Śāntarakṣita (ca. 725–790) and his disciple Kamalaśīla (ca. 740–795), who were among the earliest Buddhist missionaries there. While never established in Tibet as an independent school, Yogācāra teachings became part of the curriculum for other Tibetan schools, and exerted an influence on RNYING MA (NYINGMA) and Dzogs chen thought. TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419),



founder of the DGE LUGS (GELUK) school, devoted considerable attention to Yogācāra, especially the works of Asaṅga and the *Samḍhinirmocana-sūtra*, with particular attention to the Korean monk WŎNCH'ŪK's (613–696) commentary on the latter. Wŏnch'ūk was a Korean disciple of Xuanzang; the final chapters of his *Samḍhinirmocana* commentary are no longer extant in the original Chinese, the complete work surviving only in its Tibetan translation. The Tibetan understanding of Yogācāra, therefore, is drawn from East Asian as well as Indian sources. Many of the Tibetan debates on Yogācāra thought, which have continued until today, appear to be replays of the controversies that raged in China and East Asia centuries earlier, sometimes with new wrinkles.

### Classic texts

The Maitreya-Asaṅga texts tend to be vast compendiums of models, technical terminology, and doctrinal lists that come alive only when one pays attention to their minutest details and contemplates their implications. The *Yogācārabhūmi*, which comprises one hundred fascicles in Xuanzang's Chinese translation (the complete Sanskrit is not available), describes seventeen stages (*bhūmis*) of practice, beginning with an exposition of what it means to have a body with the five sensory consciousnesses, and moving on to instructions on developing a vast array of mental and meditative capacities and on engaging the śrāvaka (HĪNAYĀNA), PRATYEKABUDDHA (one who achieves enlightenment independently without relying on Buddhism), and BODHISATTVA vehicles, culminating in NIRVĀṆA without remainder (*nirupādhikabhūmi*).

The first part of the *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, the *lakṣaṇasamuccaya* (compilation of definitions), offers detailed *abhidharma* lists and definitions of the five SKANDHAS (AGGREGATES), twelve sense-realms, and so on. The second part, *vinīścayasamuccaya* (compilation of determinations), teaches how to activate the plethora of *abhidharma* lists and models, so that when applied to each other (rather than taken in isolation), they effect changes in the practitioner by deconstructing one's delusions, greed, and anger. The *Mahāyānasamgraha* details how hearing, thinking, and contemplating the Mahāyāna teachings destroys the *ālayavijñāna* from within, like a germ infecting a host, since the Buddha's word (*buddhavacana*) is ultimately irreducible to mental constructions; eliminating the *ālayavijñāna* therefore results in buddhahood. The *Madhyāntavibhāga*, implicitly deploying the theory of three natures (*trīsvabhāva*) to define and explicate Buddhist practice,

illustrates how ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) and cultivating positive insight (*pariṇiṣpanna*) act as an antidote (*pratīpakṣa*) to the pervasive false mental constructions (*parikalpita*) one projects as lived experience, resulting in reality being experienced just as it is (purified *paratantra*).

Vasubandhu's *Karmasiddhiprakaraṇa* (*Investigation Establishing [the Correct Understanding] of Karma*) discusses various Buddhist theories on how karma works, concluding that all is momentary but held together by causal chains, consequences of actions requiring their doer through mental causal chains embodied in the *ālayavijñāna*. The *Vādaividhi* (*Debate Methods*) is a proto-logic text on reasoning in arguments and debates, and a precursor of Dignāga's innovations in logic. *Pañcaskandhaprakaraṇa* (*Investigation of the Five Aggregates*) breaks down the aggregates into *abhidharma* categories and their constituents (dharmas), constructing a dharma system in transition between the seventy-five dharmas of his Vaibhāṣika *Abhidharmakośa* and his fully mature Yogācāra system of one hundred dharmas, later enumerated in his *Mahāyānaśatadharmāprakāśamukhaśāstra* (*One Hundred Dharma Treatise*). One can trace Vasubandhu's development from Vaibhāṣika to Yogācāra through these texts.

Vasubandhu's most important Yogācāra texts are his *Viṃśatikā* (*Twenty Verses*) with autocommentary and *Triṃśikā* (*Thirty Verses*), together sometimes called the Vijñaptimātra treatises. The *Triṃśikā* densely packs the entire Yogācāra system into thirty short verses. The *Viṃśatikā* refutes realist objections to Yogācāra. The realists contend that the objects in our perception exist outside of consciousness just as we perceive them, which is why they remain stable through (1) time and (2) space; why (3) people with different perceptions of a thing can reach a consensus about it; and why (4) the objective world operates by determinate causal principles, not through unreal, ineffective fantasies. Vasubandhu responds with numerous arguments to these four points, and he offers an analogy to DREAMS. Seemingly external objects appear in dreams, even though such objects are only mental fabrications with nothing external corresponding to them, proving that consciousness is a necessary and sufficient condition for objects to appear, but actual external objects are neither necessary nor sufficient. Ordinary perception is like a dream, a mental projection; that different beings perceive the supposed same thing differently proves this. To update Vasubandhu's example, that humans and flies perceive and react to

excrement in radically different ways demonstrates that what each perceives is a projection based on its own conditioning, or its own mental “seeds” (*bījās*) acquired from past experiences (perhaps in past lives). KARMA (ACTION) is collective, in that we gravitate toward beings or types who perceive as we do, erroneously justifying the seeming universality of our group perspective. Thus the “varying perception” argument supports rather than undermines the Yogācāra position. Vasubandhu uses the example of a wet dream to demonstrate causal efficacy: Though the erotic cognitive object is a mental construction, without external or physical reality, it causes actual seminal emission, a physical effect produced outside the dream and recognized as such upon awakening. This means that even though dreams are only fantasies, they have real karmic consequences. The deluded mind produces real effects that can only be known after awakening, once delusion has ceased. Awakening means enlightenment—BODHI (AWAKENING) can also mean *enlightenment*—the cessation of the deluded mind. Even though we act in a collective deluded world of our own construction, our actions have real causal consequences.

To the objection that dream objects are usually not as stable as objects perceived while awake, Vasubandhu replies that objects and events seem less clear, less consistent in dreams than when awake because during sleep the mind is overcome by sleepiness and, thus, it is not “thinking clearly.” Therefore, in a dream one does not know that the objects therein are only dream-objects until one awakens. Similarly, to the question of whether we can know other minds, Vasubandhu replies that even our own minds are opaque to us, since our mental capacities are dim and sleepy. An awakened one (the literal meaning of *buddha*), however, can know other minds more clearly than we know our own. So, not only can we know other minds (if we awaken), but we constantly influence each other for better and for worse (though we may not notice that within our individual dreams). Thus, karma is intersubjective. Moreover, since the more awake one is, the more causally effective one’s mind becomes, sages and buddhas can exert powerful effects on the world, including devastating destruction, and even life and death.

### Vijñaptimātra

Yogācāra encapsulates its doctrine in the term *vijñaptimātra* (often rendered “consciousness-only” or “representation-only”), which is not meant to suggest that only the mind is real. Consciousness (*vijñāna*) is

not the ultimate reality or solution for Yogācāra, but rather the basic problem, as Vasubandhu’s *Twenty Verses* illustrated. *Vijñapti* is grammatically a causative form, “what makes known,” and thus indicates that what appears in cognition is constructed, projected by consciousness, rather than passively received from outside by consciousness. Since nothing appears to us except within our acts of consciousness, all is *vijñaptimātra*. The inability to distinguish between our interpretations of the world and the world itself is what Yogācāra calls *vijñaptimātra*. This problem pervades ordinary mental operations and can be eliminated only when those operations are brought to an end.

It is not that there is nothing real outside an individual mind. Yogācāra rejects solipsism and theories of a universal mind that subsumes individuals. According to Yogācāra, each individual is a distinct consciousness stream or mental continuum (*cittasantāna*), and individuals can communicate with each other, teach and learn from each other, and influence and affect each other. If this were not the case, learning about Buddhism would be impossible. Even *rūpa* (sensorial materiality) is accepted, if one realizes that physicality is only known as such through sensation and cognition. Everything we know, conceive, imagine, or are aware of, we know through cognition, including the notion that entities might exist independent of our cognition. Although the mind does not create the physical world, it generates the interpretative categories through which we know and classify the physical world, and it does this so seamlessly that we mistake our interpretations for the world itself. Those interpretations, which are projections of our desires and anxieties, become obstructions (*āvaraṇa*) preventing us from seeing what is actually the case. In simple terms, we are blinded by our own self-interests, our own prejudices, our desires. Unenlightened cognition is an appropriative act. Yogācāra does not speak about subjects and objects; instead, it analyzes perception in terms of graspers (*grāhaka*) and what is grasped (*grāhya*).

The Buddhist notion of karma is intimately connected to the notion of appropriation (*upādāna*). As the earliest Buddhist texts explained, suffering and ignorance are produced by karma. Karma, according to Buddhism, consists of any intentional activity of body, speech, or mind. Intention is the crucial factor, and intention is a cognitive condition, so whatever is devoid of cognition must be nonkarmic and nonintentional. Thus, by definition, whatever is noncognitive can have no karmic implications or consequences. Intention

means desiring something. Physically, linguistically, or mentally, we try to “get it.” Stated another way, only cognitive acts can have karmic repercussions. This would include meaningful bodily gestures that communicate intentions (such gestures are also called *vijñapti*). Since Buddhists seek to overcome ignorance and suffering by eliminating karmic conditioning, Buddhists need focus only on what occurs within the domain of cognitive conditions (*cittagocara*). Categories such as external object and materiality (*rūpa*) are cognitive constructions. *Materiality* is a word for the colors, textures, sounds, and so on that we cognize in acts of perception, and it is only to the extent that they are perceived and ideologically grasped, thereby becoming objects of attachment, that they have karmic significance. There is nothing intrinsically good or bad about gold, for example; rather our *ideas* about gold’s value and uses, which we project and then act upon, lead to good or bad consequences. Materialism is not the problem. The incessant propensity (*anuśaya*) to appropriate (*upādāna*) what consciousness projects is the problem. These projections are not just things, but moral qualities, status, ideals, religious and national doctrines and identities, the *holding* of opinions, whatever we can make our own, or make ourselves to be.

A deceptive trick is built into the way consciousness operates at every moment. Consciousness constructs a cognitive object in such a way that it disowns its own creation, pretending the object is “out there,” in order to render that object capable of being appropriated. Even while what we cognize is occurring within our act of cognition, we cognize it *as if* it were external to our consciousness. Realizing *vijñaptimātra* means exposing this trick at play in every act of consciousness, catching it in the act, as it were, and thereby eliminating it. Consciousness engages in this deceptive game of projection, dissociation, and appropriation because there is no “self.” The deepest-seated erroneous view to which SENTIENT BEINGS cling, according to Buddhism, is *ātmadr̥ṣṭi*, the view that a permanent, eternal, immutable, independent self exists. No such self exists, and deep down we know that. This makes us anxious, since it entails that no self or identity endures forever. In order to alleviate that anxiety, we attempt to construct a self, to fill the anxious void, to do or acquire something enduring. The projection of cognitive objects for appropriation is consciousness’s main tool for this construction. If I own things (ideas, theories, identities, material objects), then “I am.” If there are eternal objects that I can possess, then I too must be eternal. To undermine this erroneous appropriative

grasping, Yogācāra texts say: Negate the object, and the self is also negated (e.g., *Madhyāntavibhāga*, 1:4, 8).

Intentional acts also have moral motives and consequences. Since effects are shaped by their causes, an act with a wholesome intent would tend to yield wholesome fruits, while unwholesome intentions produce unwholesome effects.

### Three natures (*trisvabhāva*)

Yogācāra devised a model of three self-natures (*trisvabhāva*) to explain *vijñaptimātra* more concisely. The pervasive mental constructions that obstruct our view of what truly is the case are called *parikalpita* (imaginative construction). The actual webs of causes and conditions at play are called *paratantra* (dependent on other [causes]). Other-dependence is so-called to emphasize that no thing exists as an independent, eternal self; everything arises dependent on causes and conditions other than itself, in the absence of which it ceases to be. Ordinarily *paratantra* is infested with *parikalpita*. *Pariniṣpanna* (consummation) is the removal of *parikalpita* from *paratantra*, leaving only purified *paratantra*.

Since the notion of “self-nature” is itself a parikalpic idea that presumes self-hood, it too must be eliminated. Thus the three self-natures are actually three non-self-natures (*tri-niḥsvabhāva*). *Parikalpita* is devoid of self-nature since it is unreal by definition. *Paratantra* lacks self-nature, since other-dependence precludes “self” nature. *Pariniṣpanna*—the Yogācāra counterpart to the Madhyamaka notion of *śūnyatā* (emptiness), which stands for the lack of self-nature in everything—is the antithesis of self-nature. Thus the three self-natures are ultimately understood as three non-self-natures.

### Eight consciousnesses

Prior to Yogācāra, Buddhists discussed six types of consciousness: the five sensory consciousnesses (visual, auditory, gustatory, olfactory, and tactile) and mental consciousness (*manovijñāna*). The consciousnesses were said to be produced by contact between a sense organ (e.g., the eye) and its corresponding sense field or objects (e.g., colors, shapes). The mind (*manas*) operated like the other senses, mental consciousness arising from the contact between *manas* and mental objects (thoughts, ideas), though it could think about what the other senses perceived, while the five senses could not cognize each other’s objects. Yogācāra found this theory sound but inadequate because it did not ex-

plain the origin of the sense of self-hood with its appropriate propensities, various problems with continuity of experience, or the projective activity of consciousness. If causality requires temporal contiguity, how can consciousness temporarily cease during sleep, unconscious states, certain forms of meditation, or between lives, and then suddenly recommence? Where did it reside in the interim? If karmic consequences occur long after the act they are requiting was committed, and there is no substantial self, what links the act to its eventual karmic effect, and in what does this linkage reside? Most importantly, how can consciousness that are derivative of contact between organs and objects become projective?

Yogācāra's eight consciousnesses theory answered these questions. *Manovijñāna* became the organ of the sixth consciousness, rather than its by-product; *manas* became the seventh consciousness, responsible for appropriating experience as "mine" and thus infesting experience with a sense of self-hood (and thus also called *ādānavijñāna*, "appropriative consciousness," and *kliṣṭamanas*, "defiled mind"). The eighth consciousness, the *ālayavijñāna* (warehouse consciousness), was Yogācāra's most important innovation.

Experiences produce seeds (*bījā*) and perfumings (*vāsanā*) that are deposited in the *ālayavijñāna*. These seeds, embodying wholesome or unwholesome implications, regenerate new seeds each moment. These causal seed chains remain latent until a new conscious experience causes the seed to sprout, infusing a new cognition. Hence the *ālayavijñāna* was also called *vipākavijñāna* (karmic requital consciousness). Like a warehouse, the *ālayavijñāna* serves as a repository for seeds that are stored there, across a lifetime or many lifetimes, until dispatched. So it was also called all-seeds consciousness (*sarvabījakavijñāna*). *Vāsanā*s "perfume" the *ālayavijñāna*, like the smell of incense perfumes a cloth in its proximity. The smell may seem intrinsic to the cloth, but it is adventitious and can be removed, returning the cloth to its original state. Various Yogācāra texts debate whether seeds and perfuming describe the same phenomenon with different metaphors, or whether they are different types of mental events. In either case, the *ālayavijñāna* flows onward like a constant stream, changing each moment with each new experience, thus providing karmic continuity as the seeds reach fruition. The *ālayavijñāna* continues to function even while the other consciousnesses become temporarily inoperative, unconscious. Hence it is also called "foundational consciousness" (*mūlavijñāna*). Although it stores karmic seeds and en-

genders their projection, the *ālayavijñāna* is a karmically neutral mechanical process (*anivṛta*, *avyākṛta*). *Manas* appropriates the activities of the other consciousnesses, thinking they are "my" experience, and it appropriates the *ālayavijñāna* as a "self."

Karmic continuity ceases by overturning the basis (*āśrayaparāvṛtti*), in which the *ālayavijñāna* and the other consciousnesses cease to function. The consciousnesses (*vijñāna*) become direct cognitions (*jñāna*). *Ālayavijñāna* becomes the "great mirror cognition" (*mahādarśanajñāna*), no longer holding on to or engendering new seeds, but reflecting everything impartially in the present moment, like an unobstructed mirror. *Manas* loses its self-prejudicial nature and becomes the immediate cognition of equality (*samatājñāna*), equalizing self and other. *Manovijñāna*, which discriminates cognitive objects, becomes immediate cognitive mastery (*pratyavekṣaṇājñāna*), in which the general and particular characteristics of things are discerned just as they are. The five sense consciousnesses, now devoid of mental constructions, become immediate cognitions that accomplish what needs to be done (*krtyānuṣṭhānajñāna*), thereby engaging the world effectively. Yogācāra texts differ on which overturning occurs at which stage of practice, but they agree that full enlightenment entails accomplishing all of them.

### Purification of the mental stream

Yogācāra practice consists of analyzing cognitive processes in order to purify the mental stream of pollutants (*āśrava*), removing all obstructions to unexcelled complete enlightenment (ANUTTARASAMYAKSAMIBODHI). Bad seeds and perfumings need to be filtered out, while good seeds need to be watered and cultivated, so they will reach fruition. Mental disturbances (*kleśa*), such as greed, hatred, delusion, arrogance, wrong views, envy, shamelessness, and so on, are gradually eliminated, while karmically wholesome mental conditions, such as nonharming, serenity, carefulness, and equanimity, are strengthened. As the obstructions from emotional and mental obstructions (*kleśāvaraṇa*) are eliminated, purification continues until the deepest seated cognitive obstructions (*jñeyāvaraṇa*) are finally extinguished.

Yogācāra provides a vast and detailed literature on the various practices, meditations, and stages the Yogācāra adept undertakes. The details differ greatly across texts, with the *Yogācārabhūmi* enumerating seventeen stages, the *Daśabhūmikasūtropadeśa* ten stages, and other texts, such as the *Mahāyānasamgraha* and *Cheng weishi lun*, five stages. The five stages are:

1. The “provisioning” stage (*sambhārāvasthā*), during which one gathers and stocks up on “provisions” for the journey. These provisions primarily consist of orienting oneself toward the pursuit of the PATH and developing the proper character, attitude, and resolve to accomplish it. This stage commences at the moment the aspiration for enlightenment (BODHICITTA) arises. One relies on the four excellent powers (the causal force of one’s seeds, good friends, focused attention, and provisions of merit and wisdom).
2. Next is the “experimental” stage (*prayogāvasthā*), where one begins to experiment with various Buddhist theories and practices, and doctrines are converted from theory to praxis. *Prayoga* also means “intensifying effort,” or applying oneself with increasing vigilance. One trains in the four-stage *samādhi* (meditation): (1) meditation achieving initial illumination (into an issue), (2) meditation to increase that illumination, (3) meditation producing sudden insights, and (4) maintaining meditative awareness continuously and uninterruptedly. During this stage one begins to suppress the grasper-grasped relation and commences on a careful and detailed study of the relation between things, language, and cognition.
3. Continually honing one’s discipline, eventually one enters the third stage, “deepening understanding” (*prativedhāvasthā*). Some texts refer to this as the path of corrective vision (*darśanamārga*). Here one works on realizing the emptiness of self and dharmas while reducing the obstructions (*kleśāvaraṇa* and *jñeyāvaraṇa*). This stage ends once one has acquired some insight into nonconceptual cognition (*nirvikalpajñāna*), that is, cognition devoid of interpretive or imaginative overlay.
4. In this stage, the “path of cultivation” (*bhāvanāmārga*), nonconceptual cognition deepens. The grasper-grasped relation is utterly eliminated, as are all cognitive obstructions. This path culminates in the full overturning of the basis, or enlightenment.
5. In the “final stage” (*niṣṭhāvasthā*), one abides in unexcelled, complete enlightenment and engages the world through the four immediate cognitions (mirror cognition, etc.). At this stage, all of one’s activities and cognitions are “post-enlightenment” (*prṣṭhalabdha*), and other be-

ings become one’s sole concern because Mahāyāna adepts devote themselves not only to attaining enlightenment for themselves, but to helping all sentient beings to attain enlightenment as well. As Kuiji puts it in his *Heart Sūtra Commentary*: “This is the stage of liberation which comprises the three buddha bodies, the four kinds of perfect nirvāṇa, and the perfect fruition of buddhahood.”

See also: **Consciousness, Theories of; Psychology**

### Bibliography

- Anacker, Stefan, trans. and ed. *Seven Works of Vasubandhu: The Buddhist Psychological Doctor*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984.
- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. *The Formation of Ch’an Ideology in China and Korea: The Vajrasamādhi-Sūtra, a Buddhist Apocryphon*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1989.
- Cook, Francis H., trans. *Three Texts on Consciousness Only*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center, 1999.
- Ganguly, Swati. *Treatise in Thirty Verses on Mere-Consciousness*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1992.
- Griffiths, Paul. *On Being Mindless: Buddhist Meditation and the Mind-Body Problem*. La Salle, IL: Open Court, 1986.
- Griffiths, Paul; Hakamaya Noriaki; Keenan, John; and Swanson, Paul. *The Realm of Awakening: Chapter Ten of Asaṅga’s Mahāyānasamgraha*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.
- Hayes, Richard P. *Dignāga on the Interpretation of Signs*. Dordrecht, Netherlands: Kluwer, 1988.
- Hopkins, Jeffrey. *Reflections on Reality: The Three Natures and Non-Natures in the Mind-Only School*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 2002.
- Kochumuttom, Thomas. *A Buddhist Doctrine of Experience: A New Translation and Interpretation of the Works of Vasubandhu the Yogacarin*. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1982. Reprint, 1999.
- Lamotte, Étienne, trans. *Samādhirimocana-sūtra*. Paris and Louvain, Belgium: Université de Louvain and Adrian Maisonneuve, 1935.
- La Vallée Poussin, Louis de, trans. *Vijñaptimātratāsiddhi*, 2 vols. Paris: Geuthner, 1928.
- Lusthaus, Dan. *Buddhist Phenomenology: A Philosophical Investigation of Yogācāra Buddhism and the Ch’eng wei-shih lun*. London: RoutledgeCurzon, 2002.
- Nagao, Gadjin. *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra*, tr. Leslie Kawamura. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1991.
- Powers, John. *The Yogācāra School of Buddhism: A Bibliography*. Metuchen, NJ: Scarecrow Press, 1991.

Powers, John. *Wisdom of the Buddha: The Saṃdhinirmocana Mahāyāna Sūtra*. Berkeley, CA: Dharma, 1995.

Rahula, Walpola, trans. *Le Compendium de la Super-Doctrine d'Asaṅga (Abhidharmasamuccaya)*. Paris: Publications de l'École Française d'Extrême Orient, 1971. English translation, *Abhidharmasamuccaya: The Compendium of the Higher Teaching*, tr. Sara Webb-Boin. Fremont, CA: Asian Humanities Press, 2001.

Shih, Heng-ching, and Lusthaus, Dan, trans. *A Comprehensive Commentary on the Heart Sutra: Translated from the Chinese of K'uei-chi*. Berkeley, CA: Numata Center, 2001.

Sparham, Gareth, trans. *Ocean of Eloquence: Tsong kha pa's Commentary on the Yogācāra Doctrine of Mind*. Albany: State University of New York Press, 1993.

Tat, Wei, trans. *Ch'eng Wei-Shih Lun: The Doctrine of Mere Consciousness*. Hong Kong: Ch'eng Wei-Shih Lun Publication Committee, 1973.

Tatz, Mark. *Asaṅga's Chapter on Ethics with the Commentary of Tsong-kha-pa: The Basic Path to Awakening, the Complete Bodhisattva*. Lewiston, NY: Edwin Mellen Press, 1986.

DAN LUSTHAUS

## YUJŎNG

The Korean Buddhist monk Yujōng (1544–1610), better known as Samyōng *taesa* (Great Master), lived during the middle of the Chosōn dynasty (1392–1910), a period in which the country was invaded by the Japanese twice, in 1592 and 1597. Together with his teacher, HYUJŎNG (1520–1604), Yujōng became a leader of the Buddhist MONASTIC MILITIA that defended the kingdom, and he remains an exemplar of patriotism.

Yujōng was also known as Songun, and his secular name was Im Ŭnggyu; Yujōng was his dharma name. Like many other Buddhist monks during the Chosōn, when Confucianism was the orthodoxy, Yujōng was educated in Confucian classics in his childhood. He was orphaned at age fifteen and became a Buddhist monk under Monk Shinmuk at Chikchisa. Early in his career as a monk Yujōng studied both Buddhist and Confucian texts and he communicated with Confucian scholars. In 1557, no earlier than age thirty, he declined the king's appointment to become the abbot of Pongun Monastery, the head monastery of the Sōn school, and he joined Hyujōng at Mount Myohyang to practice meditation. Yujōng is said to have attained enlightenment in 1586 at age forty-two.

In 1592 Yujōng organized the monastic militia and helped lead a number of campaigns against the Japan-

ese invasion. During and after the war he was appointed as a royal envoy and participated several times in peace negotiations with Japan. In 1604, after peace was established with Japan, Yujōng returned to Korea with more than thirty-five hundred Korean war prisoners released by the Japanese. He petitioned the throne several times on what should be done for the defense of the country, including "building mountain fortresses" and "developing military weapons." Because of such patriotic activities, he appears in the Korean folk tradition as a heroic figure who uses supernatural powers to save the country. Even today, Yujōng is related to various fascinating patriotic legends about the security of the country and the welfare of the people. One of the most compelling of these holds that whenever Korea is in danger, as it was during the Korean War or the time of the assassination of President Park Chung Hee in 1979, Yujōng's posthumous stele in his hometown of Miryang (South Kyōngsang province) sheds tears.

Yujōng left only a few writings, which are published in his posthumous work, *Samyōngdang taesajip* (*The Collected Works of Venerable Master Samyōng*), in seven rolls.

### Bibliography

An Kyebyōn. "Chosōn chōn'gi ūi sūnggun" (The Monastic Militia in the Early Chosōn Period). In *Han'guk Pulgyo sasangsa yōn'gu* (*Studies on the History of Korean Buddhist Thought*). Seoul: Dongguk University Press, 1983.

U Chōngsang. "Chosōn pulgyo ūi hoguk sasang e taehayo" (On State Protection Buddhism in the Chosōn Period). In *Chosōn chōn'gi Pulgyo sasang yōn'gu* (*Studies on Buddhist Thought in the Early Chosōn Period*), ed. U Chōngsang. Seoul: Dongguk University Press, 1985.

SUNGTAEK CHO

## YUN'GANG

The Yun'gang CAVE SANCTUARIES are located sixteen kilometers west of Datong in Shanxi province in China. Begun around 460 C.E. as an attempt to atone the Buddhist PERSECUTION of 444, Yun'gang was associated with the imperial patronage of Buddhism of the Northern Wei dynasty, a nomadic empire that ruled China from 386 to 534. The colossal buddha images of caves 16 to 20 are said to commemorate the founder rulers of the Northern Wei, while members of the imperial family built many cave chapels until 494, when the capital was moved from Datong to Luoyang in central

China. Thereafter local Buddhists continued to dedicate small chapels until about 520. Carved into the sandstone cliffs are niches that contain statues of buddhas such as Śākyamuni and MAITREYA, as well as carvings of other Buddhist motifs. Passageways behind large statues or the construction of central pillars allow for ritual circumambulation. In sculptural style and iconography, strong Indian and Central Asian influences commingled with local elements to create a unique Yun'gang idiom, characterized by a robust figural form and an archaic smile. This idiom gradually gave way to a more elongated sinicized style that was associated with the sinification policies of the Northern Wei.

*See also:* China, Buddhist Art in; Monastic Architecture

### **Bibliography**

Mizuno Seiichi, and Nagahiro Toshio. *Unkō sekkutsu (Yun'gang Cave-Temples)*, 16 vols. Kyoto: Kyoto daigaku jimbun kagaku kenkyūsho, 1951–1956.

Su Bai. *Zhongguo shikusi yanjiu (A Study of the History of Chinese Cave-Temples)*. Beijing: Wenwu Press, 1996.

Yungang Cave-Temples Cultural Relics Institute. *Yungang shiku (Yun'gang Cave-Temples)*, 2 vols. Beijing: Wenwu Press, 1991.

DOROTHY WONG

# Z



## ZANNING

Zanning (Tonghui dashi, 919–1001) was a Buddhist scholar-official renowned for his knowledge of Buddhist history and institutions in China, although his knowledge extended beyond Buddhism to Confucian matters and details of Chinese history and culture. As an official and scholar, Zanning played a critical role in explaining and defining Buddhism for Song officials. Biographical records indicate that Zanning rose from humble beginnings and embarked on a monastic career at a young age, probably in 929 or 930. He received full ordination on Mount Tiantai while still in his teens and distinguished himself as a master of the VINAYA tradition. He became a leader of literary (*wen*) studies in his native Wuyue region (present-day Zhejiang province), and served in key government positions in Wuyue. Zanning also played a key role as the Wuyue representative in the return of the Wuyue region to Song control in 978.

Zanning reportedly made a great initial impression on the Song emperor Taizong (r. 976–997), who awarded him a high rank, an honorific robe, and a title. Buddhist sources report that Zanning was appointed to the prestigious Hanlin Academy of academicians, an extremely rare honor for a Buddhist, but this cannot be confirmed in non-Buddhist accounts. Zanning was also a member of the Society of Nine Elders, an elite group of literati-officials at the Song court responsible for managing imperially sponsored editorial projects. Among the surviving Buddhist works compiled by Zanning, two are of great interest to contemporary scholars: the *Song gaoseng zhuan* (*Song Biographies of Eminent Monks*) and the *Seng shilue* (*Historical Digest of the Buddhist Order*). As an official at the Song court, Zanning

became the leading Buddhist cleric of the Song empire, first through appointment as chief lecturer on Buddhist sūtras and ultimately as Buddhist registrar of the right and left precincts of the capital, the leading position in the administration of Buddhist affairs.

*See also:* **Biographies of Eminent Monks (Gaoseng Zhuan); China**

### **Bibliography**

- Dahlia, Albert. "The 'Political' Career of the Buddhist Historian Tsan-ning." In *Buddhist and Taoist Practice in Medieval Chinese Society*, ed. David Chappell. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Welter, Albert. "Zanning and Chan: The Changing Nature of Buddhism in Early Song China." *Journal of Chinese Religions* 23 (1995): 105–140.
- Welter, Albert. "A Buddhist Response to the Confucian Revival: Tsan-ning and the Debate Over Wen in the Early Sung." In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.

ALBERT WELTER

---

ZEN. *See* Chan School

---

## ZEN, POPULAR CONCEPTIONS OF

*Zen* is the Japanese pronunciation of the Chinese character *chan*, itself a truncated transliteration of the Sanskrit term DHYĀNA (TRANCE STATE). In contemporary Japan, three monastic traditions, the Rinzaï, Sōtō, and Ōbaku, now use the term to identify themselves as



belonging to the common heritage of the CHAN SCHOOL, which they call *Zen* (*zenshū*). The word *Zen*, however, has also become part of the secular lexicon. Often appearing in the form of “the Zen of *x*” or “Zen and the art of *x*,” the idea of Zen is pervasive in popular culture. In this context, Zen often denotes a sense of liberation, spontaneity, and oneness with the world that can be sought not only in highly technical forms of meditative practice but also in archery, gardening, tea ceremonies, and even the most mundane matters, such as motorcycle maintenance. No longer referring in a more technical sense to any specific Buddhist tradition in Asia, Zen is, as Alan Watts (1915–1973) puts it, “an ultimate standpoint from which ‘anything goes.’”

This highly romanticized vision of Zen owes much to the writings of D. T. SUZUKI (1870–1966) and Beat generation authors, such as Watts, Gary Snyder (1930– ), Jack Kerouac (1922–1969), and Allen Ginsberg (1926–1997). In his now classic novel, *The Dharma Bums*, Kerouac, for instance, sings of a “rucksack revolution” led by young American “Zen lunatics” armed with nothing but poetry and “visions of eternal freedom.” Above all else, those who promoted this ideal of Zen as an alternative lifestyle vehemently opposed the rampant consumerism, materialism, and positivism of mid- to late-twentieth-century America and bemoaned the growing sense of alienation from nature and spirituality. Beatniks, hippies, and countercultural intellectuals celebrated a new “Zen” spirituality that ostensibly relied less on rational thought and more on the immediate, “mystical” experience of being.

Historians generally locate the origins of this particular understanding of Zen in a Buddhist reform movement that took place in Meiji (1868–1912) and post-Meiji Japan. Shortly after the emperor was restored to power in 1868, Buddhism came under heavy attack as a foreign, corrupt, and superstitious creed. As a result, numerous temples were abandoned and thousands of monks were returned to lay status under the slogan of *haibutsu kishaku*, “exterminate Buddhism and destroy Śākyamuni.” In response to this threat, Zen apologists sought to defend their faith by advocating what they called a New Buddhism (*shin bukkyō*) that was thoroughly modern, nonsectarian, and socially engaged. In order to demonstrate their support of the colonial policies and military expansion of the newfound Japanese empire, adherents of New Buddhism went so far as to portray their new faith as con-

sistent with *bushidō* (the way of the warrior), which they defined as the essence of Japanese culture.

A leading figure of this movement was the Rinzai priest Shaku Sōen (1859–1919) who, in 1893, visited Chicago as a representative of Zen at the World Parliament of Religions. In his *Sermons of a Buddhist Abbot*, the first book on Zen to appear in English, Sōen presented Buddhism as a rational and scientific religion well-suited to modern sensibilities. As in the case of all other so-called universal religions, Zen was no longer a strictly clerical concern but rather a spiritual insight accessible to all. Like his teacher Imagita Kōsen (1816–1892) before him, Sōen taught lay disciples at a *zazen* (seated meditation) society known as Ryōmōkyōkai in Tokyo and at the monastery Engakuji in Kamakura, where he served as abbot. Among those who found themselves studying meditation under Sōen at Engakuji was the young D. T. Suzuki.

With the help of Paul Carus (1852–1919), a strong proponent of “religion of science,” Suzuki carried on Sōen’s efforts to bring Zen into the modern world. Drawing upon the notion of “pure experience” (*junsui keiken*) from the writings of the American philosopher William James (1842–1910) and Nishida Kitaro (1870–1945), Suzuki moved beyond Carus’s and Sōen’s interest in the unity of rationality and faith and began to emphasize instead the importance of a mystical experience that underlies all religious truth. As the unmediated, direct experience of being, or what he called “isness” (*kono mama*), Zen experience, according to Suzuki, was beyond dualism and intellectualization, and hence was superior to all other forms of religious experience. Furthermore, by identifying Zen experience with the uniqueness of Japanese culture Suzuki was able to firmly establish a nationalistic discourse couched in seemingly benign and universalistic religious terms.

Hisamatsu Shin’ichi (1889–1980), a fellow Zen nationalist, similarly argued that the Japanese mind, unlike the discursive and logical mind of the West, was predisposed toward an “intuitive” mode of understanding and an innate love for nature and tranquility. Despite the lack of historical evidence to substantiate their claims, Suzuki and Hisamatsu described traditional Japanese art, most notably *haiku* poetry, stone gardens, and Noh drama, as quintessential expressions of Zen awakening (*SATORI*). For both Suzuki and Hisamatsu, Zen, and therefore Japanese culture, are unique in that they express the experience of awakening directly and immediately without having recourse to established conventions or discursive thought.

As cultural relativism and gnosticism displaced rationalism and Judeo-Christian values as the reigning ideology among twentieth-century intellectuals, many Americans and Europeans increasingly sought a viable alternative in Zen, oblivious of its nationalistic and racist overtones. The transcultural, unmediated status of Zen mysticism, for instance, offered dismayed Catholics like Kerouac an alternative to their own stifling tradition, yet paradoxically allowed them to remain loyal to their original faith. Similarly, large communities of lay practitioners who had little or no interest in monasticism flocked to Zen centers established by Yasutani Hakuun (1885–1973) and by his American disciples Philip Kapleau (1912– ) and Robert Aitken (1917– ), where the rapid attainment of *kenshō* (seeing one's true nature) and its certification known as *inka* were the only priority. This, however, stood in stark contrast to the disciplined lifestyle of a traditional Zen monk for whom such a certification bears more of an institutional than a personal significance. Zen, as we know it in the West, is thus significantly different from its more traditional counterpart; this difference, as we have seen, emerged from a cross-cultural dialogue that belongs exclusively neither to Japan nor to the West.

**See also:** Critical Buddhism (Hihan Bukkyō); Engaged Buddhism; Meiji Buddhism Reform; Modernity and Buddhism; Nationalism and Buddhism

### Bibliography

- Faure, Bernard. *Chan Insights and Oversights: An Epistemological Critique of the Chan Tradition*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1993.
- Fields, Rick. *How the Swans Came to the Lake: A Narrative History of Buddhism in America*, 3rd edition. Boston: Shambhala, 1992.
- Hisamatsu, Shin'ichi. *Zen and the Fine Arts*, tr. Gishin Tokiwa. Tokyo: Kodansha, 1971.
- Kerouac, Jack. *The Dharma Bums*. New York: American Library, 1959.
- Ketelaar, James Edward. *Of Heretics and Martyrs in Meiji Japan: Buddhism and Its Persecution*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1990.
- Sharf, Robert H. "Sanbōkyōdan: Zen and the Way of the New Religions." *Japanese Journal of Religious Studies* 22, nos. 3–4 (1995): 417–458.
- Sharf, Robert H. "The Zen of Japanese Nationalism." In *Curators of the Buddha: The Study of Buddhism under Colonialism*, ed. Donald S. Lopez, Jr. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1995.

Soyen, Shaku. *Sermons of a Buddhist Abbot*. Chicago: Open Court, 1906.

Suzuki, Daisetz T. *Zen and Japanese Culture*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1959.

JUHN AHN

---

## ZHANRAN

Zhanran (Jingqi Zhanran and Miaole *dashi*, 711–782) is the ninth patriarch of the Tiantai School of Chinese Buddhism and the sixth patriarch following Zhiyi (538–597), the de facto architect of the tradition. Author of the first authoritative commentaries on the major works of Zhiyi, Zhanran revitalized and reformed Tiantai during the Tang dynasty (618–907).

Zhanran trained for twenty years on Mount Zuoji in Zhejiang under Xuanlang (673–754), who became the eighth patriarch, and he remained active in the southeast both in his native Jiangsu and in the environs of Mount Tiantai in Zhejiang. Avoiding the northern political centers, Zhanran declined several imperial invitations, but made pilgrimage to Mount Wutai in Shanxi and instructed the Huayan adept Chengguan (738–838/840) in Suzhou, returning to Mount Tiantai in 775 for the last time. The veracity of his travels in the north has been challenged in the late-twentieth century. Included among Zhanran's disciples are the literati figures Li Hua (d.u.–ca. 774) and Liang Su (753–793), who wrote his memorial inscription.

Zhanran's most influential works are his *Zhiguan fuxing zhuanhong jue* (*Decisions on Supporting Practice and Broadly Disseminating [the Teachings of the Great] Calming and Contemplation*) and the *Jin'gangbei* (*Diamond Scalpel*). The first is a commentary on Zhiyi's MOHE ZHIGUAN (*Great Treatise on Calming and Contemplation*), which for the first time identifies that practice-oriented text with the LOTUS SŪTRA (SAD-DHARMAPUNḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and connects it to Zhiyi's two doctrinal commentaries on the *Lotus* to become the three quintessential texts of Tiantai. The *Jin'gangbei* is a polemical treatise on insentient TATHĀGATA-GARBHA, an idea not articulated in early Tiantai. Since the last quarter of the twentieth century, scholars have also recognized that the famous Tiantai "five periods and eight teachings" (*wushi bajiao*) taxonomy attributed to Zhiyi, which elevates the *Lotus* as supreme among scriptures and emphasizes a transmission based on the received teaching, is not found in the writings of Zhiyi in the form relied upon by later Tiantai. Rather,

it is a product of the times of Zhanran when issues of self-definition came to the fore. Zhanran's interpretations of Tiantai, which debate with the Buddhism of the mid-eighth century (in particular, the Huayan and Chan schools), further catalyzed much of the Tiantai on-mountain/off-mountain (*shanjia/shanwai*) debates of the Song dynasty (960–1279).

See also: **China**

### Bibliography

- Chen, Jinhua. *Making and Remaking History: A Study of Tiantai Sectarian Historiography*. Tokyo: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1999.
- Penkower, Linda. "Making and Remaking Tradition: Chan-jan's Strategies toward a T'ang T'ien-t'ai Agenda." In *Tendai daishi kenkyū*, ed. *Tendai Daishi Kenkyū Henshū I*-inkai. Kyoto: Tendai Gakkai, 1997.
- Ziporyn, Brook. *Evil and/or/as the Good: Omniscience, Intersubjectivity, and Value Paradox in Tiantai Buddhist Thought*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Asia Center, 2000.

LINDA PENKOWER

## ZHAO LUN

*Zhao lun* (*The Treatises of [Seng]zhao*) is a collection of writings by Shi SENGZHAO (374–414), a primary disciple of KUMĀRAJĪVA (344–409/413). *Zhao lun* contains the following documents, considered to be chapters by some scholars and independent treatises by others: "Wu buqian lun" ("A Treatise on the Immutability of Things"); "Wu buzhen kong lun" ("A Treatise on the Emptiness of the Unreal"); "Bojo wuzhi lun" ("A Treatise on Prajñā as Distinguished from Ordinary Knowledge"); and "Niepan wuming lun" ("A Treatise on Nameless [Nature] of Nirvāṇa").

The first document dwells, for the most part, on the mysteries of time. It exposes NĀGĀRJUNA's (ca. second century C.E.) view that the dharmas are essentially beyond definition and without definite nature. Since all phenomena are dharmas, but dharmas themselves cannot be created or destroyed—they are without beingness or nonbeingness—the category of time is meaningless.

The second document illuminates Nāgārjuna's ideas about ŚŪNYATA (EMPTINESS) from a different perspective. In this treatise Sengzhao uses a renowned simile of a man created through magic. Since the person has been created through magic, he is not a real

man, but within the frame of knowing that the man has been created through magic, such a man does exist. The simile explains how all phenomena are both existent and nonexistent at the same time.

The third treatise seeks to delineate *prajñāpāramitā* (perfection of wisdom) as a different state of mind than knowledge. Knowledge is obtained through the investigation of things that are believed to be real. It is marked by a struggle to reconcile beginnings and ends, past and future, and so on. The equality of all things can only be seen through *prajñāpāramitā*, where the oppositions of existence and nonexistence, future and past, and sorrow and joy are no longer relevant. Similar ideas are presented in the fourth piece in which NIRVĀṆA is approached through the use of core Madhyamaka terminology and epistemological devices. Adapting the principle of the four negations used by Buddha Śākyamuni, Nāgārjuna, and Kumārajīva (nirvāṇa is not a form of existence; nirvāṇa is not a form of nonexistence; nirvāṇa is not both existence and nonexistence; nirvāṇa is not neither existence nor nonexistence), Sengzhao speaks about nirvāṇa as being ultimately undefinable, that is, nameless. Along with this classical treatment of the subject, we find the beginnings of a new understanding of this important concept, in which nirvāṇa is equated with the TATHĀGATAGARBHA (*rulaizang*).

See also: **China; Prajñāpāramitā Literature**

### Bibliography

- Ch'en, Kenneth. *Buddhism in China: A Historical Survey*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1964.
- Liebethal, Walter, trans. and ed. *Chao lun: The Treatises of Seng-chao, a Translation with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices*, 2nd edition, vols. 1–2. Hong Kong: Hong Kong University Press, 1968.

TANYA STORCH

## ZHILI

Zhili (Siming Fazhi *fashi*, 960–1028) reestablished the Tiantai School during China's Northern Song dynasty period by leading the Shanjia (orthodox) attack on the Shanwai (heterodox) interpretations of Tiantai doctrine and practice. Zhili stressed the uniqueness of Tiantai teaching as opposed to those of the Huayan School and Chan School. He emphasized the doctrines of evil inherent in the buddha-nature, the con-

templation of the deluded mind, the inherent entailment of all quiddities in each other, the existence of differentiated characteristics even in the absence of delusion, the simultaneous validity of both mind-only and matter-only doctrines, and “the ultimacy of the dung-beetle.” The last-named doctrine was rooted in his claim that enlightenment was a state that made more explicit all determinate realities, good and evil, and disclosed each sentient being’s identity not only with the Buddha, but with all other possible SENTIENT BEINGS in all their aspects, all of which were the ultimate reality.

Zhili was instrumental in combining Tiantai doctrine with Pure Land practice, and much of his doctrinal work can be understood as an attempt to provide an adequate framework for understanding the necessity and legitimacy of Buddhist ritual practice in the face of certain interpretations of “sudden enlightenment” that might threaten it. In 1017 he made a vow to commit SELF-IMMOLATION after three years of practicing the Lotus Repentance with a group of junior monks. He vowed to be reborn in AMITĀBHA’s Pure Land. After defending his intention to commit this arguably sinful act in a series of letters, in which Zhili makes the notorious claim that “there is no Buddha but the Devil, and no Devil but the Buddha,” he finally abandoned his plan, and was given a purple robe and the honorific name Fazhi (Dharma-wisdom) by the emperor.

See also: **Pure Land Buddhism**

### Bibliography

- Chan, Chi-wah. “Chih-li (960–1028) and the Crisis of T’ien-t’ai Buddhism in the Early Sung.” In *Buddhism in the Sung*, ed. Peter N. Gregory and Daniel A. Getz, Jr. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1999.
- Ziporyn, Brook. “Anti-Chan Polemics in Post-Tang Tiantai.” *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies* 17, no. 1 (1994): 26–63.
- Ziporyn, Brook. *Evil and/or/as the Good: Omnicentrism, Inter-subjectivity, and Value Paradox in Tiantai Buddhist Thought*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2000.

BROOK ZIPORYN

## ZHIYI

Zhiyi (Tiantai Zhizhe *dashi*) (538–597) was the nominal third patriarch of the Chinese Tiantai School,

but he was, in fact, its eponymous founder. Zhiyi was born in Jingzhou (present-day Hubei), and became a monk at the age of eighteen, taking the full precepts two years later. At the age of twenty-three, he went to study with Nanyue Huisi (d. 577), under whom he practiced the Lotus Samādhi, during which he had a breakthrough experience. At thirty, he went to Jinling, capital of the Chen kingdom, and began to lecture extensively.

Zhiyi taught for the rest of his life, his lectures transcribed by his disciples, most notably Guanding (561–632), who recorded the “three great works of Tiantai”: *Fahua wenju* (*Commentary on the Lotus Sūtra*), *Fahua xuanyi* (*Profound Meaning of the Lotus Sūtra*), and MOHE ZHIGUAN (*Great Calming and Contemplation*), the first based on lectures given in 587 and the latter two based on lectures given in 593 and 594. Zhiyi also composed several works by his own hand, most notably a commentary on the *Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*, written at the request of the Jin ruling house.

Zhiyi’s teaching stresses the simultaneous and equal development of both doctrinal understanding and meditative practice. He devised an elaborate system of classification of Buddhist teachings, making a coherent whole of the mass of Buddhist scriptures translated into Chinese, in accordance with his development of the true meaning of UPĀYA (skillful means) as expounded in the LOTUS SŪTRA and NIRVĀṆA SŪTRA. His teaching combined the *Lotus* notion of *upāya* and mutual entailment with Madhyamaka notions of ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS) and conventional truth and the buddha-nature concept from the *Nirvāṇa Sūtra*, by which Zhiyi devised the doctrine of the three truths—emptiness, provisional positing, and the mean—as a comprehensive template for understanding Buddhist teachings and practices. This doctrine holds that every element of experience is necessarily and simultaneously (1) determinate, (2) ambiguous, and (3) absolute, and that these three predicates are ultimately synonymous. This led to a distinctive understanding of the interpervasion of all dharmas as suggested in the HUAYAN JING, which in Zhiyi’s understanding led to the doctrine of “the three thousand quiddities inherently entailed as each moment of experience,” as well as the further doctrines of “the evil inherent in the Buddha-nature,” the non-obstruction of enlightenment between delusion, and the equal ultimacy of all possible doctrinal positions, as mediated by the *Lotus* doctrine of *upāya*. Zhiyi also rewrote the Indian mind-only doctrine so that it could be equally restated as a claim that all reality is matter-only, or alternately scent-only, taste-only, touch-only,

and so on. His ideas were influential in every aspect of later East Asian Buddhism; they were commented on and reinterpreted in every generation within the Tiantai school, and recast and responded to by the HUAYAN SCHOOL, which amended his classification scheme and reinterpreted the interperasion of all dharmas in a new way. Zhiyi's hermeneutical technique, in particular his metaphorical "mind-contemplation gloss" for reading the scriptures, was instrumental in the early development of the CHAN SCHOOL.

### Bibliography

- Donner, Neal. "Chih-i's Meditation on Evil." In *Buddhist and Taoist Practice in Medieval Chinese Society*, ed. David W. Chappell. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1987.
- Donner, Neal. "Sudden and Gradual Intimately Conjoined: Chih-i's T'ien-t'ai View." In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Donner, Neal, and Stevenson, Daniel B. *The Great Calming and Contemplation: A Study and Annotated Translation of the First Chapter of Chih-i's Mo-ho chih-kuan*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1993.
- Hurvitz, Leon. *Chih-i (538–597): An Introduction to the Life and Ideas of a Chinese Buddhist Monk*. Brussels: Institut Belges Des Hautes Etudes Chinoises, 1980.
- Ng Yu-kwan. *T'ien-t'ai Buddhism and Early Mādhyamika*. Honolulu: University of Hawaii, 1993.
- Stevenson, Daniel. "The Four Kinds of Samādhi in Early T'ien-t'ai Buddhism." In *Traditions of Meditation in Chinese Buddhism*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1986.

BROOK ZIPORYN

## ZHUHONG

Zhuhong Fohui (1532–1612) is known as one of the "Four Eminent Monks of the Ming Dynasty," who actively promoted the syncretistic fusion of Chan and Pure Land practices in China. Zhuhong's adolescence was steeped in Confucian learning and he only took refuge in Buddhism during his middle age.

Zhuhong's moral reputation and diligent practice of the "samādhi of Buddha-name recitation" (*nianfo sanmei*) was said to have transformed a dilapidated monastery in Mount Yunqi of Hangzhou, where he temporarily took up residence in 1571 as an itinerant novice, into a famous cultivation center to which people flocked to receive his tutelage.

Zhuhong associated widely with Confucian elites and, through his clout and eloquence, popularized what became prevailing modes of Buddhist pietistic activities in the late Ming. These included the institution of release grounds and protected reservoirs for animals and fish, observance of the Tantric ritual "relieving the sufferings of the hungry ghosts," and the use of a genre of "morality book" called "ledger of merit and demerit" (*gongguo ge*) for recording personal offenses and meritorious deeds by assigning prescribed numerical values of "merits" and "demerits" to each recorded action.

Zhuhong also started the practice of using Buddha statues as replacements for the living preceptors, whose presence was otherwise required by the VINAYA (monastic disciplinary codes) to transmit the full set of monastic precepts to novice monks. He did this to circumvent the political restrictions on the ordination of monks and nuns.

His writings spanned many subject matters including Chan, Pure Land, Huayan, Yogācāra, vinaya, and even non-Buddhist classics. They are preserved in the anthology *Yunqi fahui* (*Collected Dharma [Works by Venerable] Yunqi*).

See also: Chan School; China; Pure Land Schools

### Bibliography

- Greenblatt, Kristin. "Chu-hung and Lay Buddhism in the Late Ming." In *The Unfolding of Neo-Confucianism*, ed. William de Bary and the Conference on Seventeenth-Century Chinese Thought. New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1975.
- Yü, Chun-fang. *Renewal of Buddhism in China: Chu-Hung and the Late Ming Synthesis*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1981.

WILLIAM CHU

## ZONGGAO

Dahui Zonggao (Miaoxi; posthumous name Pujue; 1089–1163), a Chan master in the Yangqi branch of the Linji school in Song China (960–1279), played a pivotal role in the development of Chan *gong'an* (KŌAN) practice. Zonggao was born in Xuancheng in Anhui Province in southeast China. He left home in 1101 to join the monastic order, and in 1105 he received full ordination as a Buddhist monk. After seeking instructions from various Chan teachers, he

became a disciple of the Linji master Yuanwu Keqin (1063–1135), the author of the famous *gong'an* anthology, the *Biyān lu* (*Blue Cliff Record*).

As one of the most influential Chan masters of his time, Zonggao had close associations with many powerful Confucian scholar-officials. His connection with the antipeace party led to his involvement in Song court factional strife, which resulted in his exile from 1143 to 1156 to the remote Hunan and Guangdong provinces. After the exile, however, Zonggao regained his prominence. He was summoned by the emperor to the court, where he was presented with a purple robe and given the cognomen Dahui (Great Wisdom). He spent his last years at Mount Jing in Zhejiang and died in 1163.

Dahui Zonggao is best known for his contribution to the evolution of Chan *gong'an* meditation. He advocated the use of *huatou*, the critical phrase of a *gong'an*, as a meditative object, and he emphasized the peculiar role of DOUBT in his teaching of *huatou* investigation. He believed that the practice of *huatou* was not only the most effective means to enlightenment but also a Chan practice that laypeople could easily adopt in the midst of their mundane activities. It was under Dahui Zonggao that *gong'an* Chan came to be known as *kanhua* Chan (Chan of investigating the [critical] phrase).

The chronology of Dahui Zonggao's life was recorded in detail by one of his disciples and attached to the *Dahui Pujue chanshi yulu* (*Discourse Record of the Chan Master Dahui Pujue*). Other works attributed to Dahui Zonggao include *Zongmen wuku* (*Arsenal of the Chan School*) and *Zhengfayan zang* (*Treasury of the True Dharma Eye*).

See also: Chan School

### Bibliography

- Buswell, Robert E., Jr. "The 'Short-cut' Approach of *K'an-hua* Meditation: The Evolution of a Practical Subitism in Chinese Ch'an Buddhism." In *Sudden and Gradual: Approaches to Enlightenment in Chinese Thought*, ed. Peter N. Gregory. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1987.
- Cleary, Christopher, trans. *Swampland Flowers: Letters and Lectures of Zen Master Ta Hui*. New York: Grove Press, 1977.
- Levering, Miriam L. "Ch'an Enlightenment for Laymen: Ta-hui and the New Religious Culture of the Sung." Ph.D. diss. Harvard University, 1978.

DING-HWA HSIEH

## ZONGMI

Guifeng Zongmi (780–841) is a unique figure in the CHAN SCHOOL, who sought to bridge Chan and the canonical teachings (*jiao*) of Buddhism. His early education at home and at a Confucian academy gave him a background in the classical canon unknown to the typical Tang-dynasty Chan master. He trained under a master in the Shenhui lineage of Chan and practiced intense Chan sitting in remote settings for a decade, yet he also studied canonical exegesis for two years under the exceedingly erudite HUAYAN SCHOOL scholar CHENGGUAN (738–840).

Zongmi collected Chan texts into an enormous Chanzang (*Chan Piṭaka*), which has since been lost. His two most important extant works are his introduction to the *Chan Piṭaka*, titled *Chanyuan zhuquanji duxu* (*Prolegomenon to the Collection of Experience of the Chan Source*), and a short treatise titled *Pei Xiu shiyi wen* (*Imperial Redactor Pei Xiu's Inquiry [on Chan]*). Originality, creativity, and lack of bias are the hallmarks of these two works. The former propounds the identity of the canonical teachings and Chan, and champions all-at-once awakening and step-by-step practice; the latter provides a synopsis of the histories, teachings, and practices of the Chan houses of the day. The *Chan Prolegomenon* postulates three "theses" (*zong*) of Chan: Mind-Only Chan; Voidness Chan; and Dharma Nature Chan, which are expressions, geared to Chinese propensities and preferences, of the corresponding three types of Indian sūtras and treatises.

Zongmi's influence on later Chan was exceptionally strong in Korea, where the Chan tradition is known as Sōn. Korean Sōn's absorption of all the traditions of Buddhism coincides with Zongmi's orientation. CHINUL (1158–1210), one of the greatest figures of the Sōn tradition, was a transmitter of Zongmi's stance; his magnum opus is based on *Pei's Inquiry*.

See also: China

### Bibliography

- Gregory, Peter N. *Tsung-mi and the Sinification of Buddhism*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1991.
- Kamata Shigeo, ed. *Zengen shosenshū tojo*, tr. Kamata Shigeo. Zen no gōroku 9. Tokyo: Chikuma shobō, 1971.

JEFFREY BROUGHTON

*This page intentionally left blank*

# APPENDIX

## TIMELINES OF BUDDHIST HISTORY

India

Southeast Asia

China

Japan and Korea

Tibet and the Himalayas



*This page intentionally left blank*

# INDIA



- ca. 566–486 or 488–368 B.C.E. Possible dates of the Buddha's life. When the Buddha may have lived is a matter of scholarly debate; these time frames represent only two of many suggestions.
- ca. 386 or 268 B.C.E. Traditional dates—one hundred years after the Buddha's death—on which the first Buddhist Council is said to have been held at Vaiśālī, resulting in the first schism of the SAṄGHA or monastic community.
- ca. 268–232 B.C.E. Reign of King AŚOKA of India, who converted to Buddhism and became an important patron of the religion. Aśoka is said to have sent out missionaries to various lands after holding a Buddhist Council at Pāṭaliputra.
- ca. 100 B.C.E. Great stūpa at SĀÑCĪ built.
- ca. 100 C.E. LOTUS SŪTRA (SADDHARMAPUṆḌARĪKA-SŪTRA) and other influential Mahāyāna texts composed.
- ca. 200 Philosopher and scholar NĀGĀRJUNA writes about ŚŪNYATĀ (EMPTINESS), establishing the MADHYAMAKA SCHOOL (the Middle Way).
- ca. 320 Indian scholar and monk ASAṄGA (ca. 320–390) born. He becomes the founder of the YOGĀCĀRA SCHOOL of Buddhism.
- ca. 320–550 Gupta Empire, during which Buddhism flourishes throughout the subcontinent.
- ca. 500 Buddhist monastic university founded at Nālandā.
- ca. 673 Chinese pilgrim YIJING (635–713) arrives in India.
- 1197 Destruction of the great monastic universities of Nālandā and Vikramaśīla, signaling the decline of Buddhism as a religious institution in India.

INDIA

- 1891 ANAGĀRIKA DHARMAPĀLA (1864–1933) founds the Mahā Bodhi Society to restore the famous site of the Buddha's enlightenment.
- 1956 B. R. AMBEDKAR (1891–1956) renounces Hinduism and converts to Buddhism.

# SOUTHEAST ASIA



- 247 B.C.E. King AŚOKA of India (r. 268–232 B.C.E.) putatively sends his son, Mahinda, to SRI LANKA to introduce Buddhism to the island. King Devanāṃpiya Tissa of Sri Lanka converts to Buddhism.
- 240 B.C.E. Mahinda establishes the Mahāvihāra (Great Monastery) in Anurādhapura in Sri Lanka. Mahinda's sister, Saṅghamittā, establishes the order of NUNS.
- 25 B.C.E. Famine and schisms in Sri Lanka emphasize the need for the Buddhist CANON to be committed to writing. King Vaṭṭagāmiṇi oversees the recording of the Pāli canon on palm leaves.
- ca. 100 C.E. Monks from Sri Lanka first transmit THERAVĀDA Buddhism to Burma (MYANMAR) and THAILAND.
- ca. 200 Chinese Buddhist missionaries travel to VIETNAM, establishing MAHĀYĀNA and non-Mahāyāna schools.
- ca. 425 Buddhist scholar BUDDHAGHOSA collects Sinhalese COMMENTARIAL LITERATURE and oversees translation of this work into Pāli. With this translation, Sinhalese scholarship reaches the entire Theravāda world.
- ca. 500 Indian Mahāyāna monks establish Buddhist communities throughout Indonesia on the islands of Java, Sumatra, and Borneo.
- 1057 King Anawartha of Pagan in Burma (Myanmar) conquers neighboring Thaton. Buddhist literature and arts flourish.
- ca. 1153–1186 Reign of Sri Lankan king Parākramabāhu I. His rule reconstitutes the Buddhist SAṄGHA exclusively as a Theravāda order. Buddhist architecture and literature flourishes throughout the Polonnaruva era.
- 1181 King Jayavarman VII begins his reign in CAMBODIA. Under his orders the BAYON at Angkor is built.

- 1236 MONKS from Kañcipuram, INDIA, revive the Theravāda monastic line in Sri Lanka.
- 1279 Last extant inscriptions of any Theravāda nunnery in Burma (Myanmar).
- 1287 Pagan in Burma (Myanmar) looted by Mongol invaders; decline of Pagan monuments begins.
- ca. 1300 A Sri Lankan tradition of WILDERNESS MONKS arrives in Burma (Myanmar) and Thailand. Theravāda Buddhism spreads to Laos. Thai Theravāda monasteries appear in Cambodia shortly before the Thais win their independence from the Khmers of Cambodia.
- ca. 1500 In Cambodia, Viṣṇuīte Temple at Angkor Wat (founded in the twelfth century as a site of Hindu worship) becomes a Buddhist center.
- 1753 King Kīrti Śrī Rājasimha reinstates Buddhism in Sri Lanka by inviting monks from the Thai court.
- 1777 King Rāma I founds the current dynasty in Thailand.
- 1803 Sri Lankans ordained in the Burmese city of Amara-pura found the Amarapura Nikāya in Sri Lanka.
- 1829 Thailand's Prince Mongkut (later King Rāma IV) founds the Thammayut sect.
- ca. 1862 Wilderness monks travel from Sri Lanka to Burma (Myanmar) for reordination, returning to establish the Ramañña Nikāya.
- 1871 Fifth Theravāda Council is held at Rangoon in Burma.
- 1873 Mohottivatte Gunananda defeats Christian missionaries in a public debate, sparking a nationwide revival of pride in Sri Lankan Buddhist traditions.
- 1879 Helena Blavatsky and Henry Steel Olcott, founders of the Theosophical Society, arrive in Sri Lanka from America and assist in a revival of Buddhism.
- ca. 1900 Two wilderness monks, Āchān Sao Kantasīlo and Āchān Man Bhūridatto, revive the forest monk traditions in Thailand.
- 1956 The Sri Lanka Freedom Party wins a pivotal election in a landslide by promising that Sinhalese would become the national language and Buddhism the state religion.
- 1967 THICH NHAT HANH (1926– ) is nominated for the Nobel Peace Prize, an acknowledgement of his anti-war work in Vietnam. Hanh coined the term ENGAGED BUDDHISM to describe practices that emphasize social service and nonviolent activism.
- 1970s Refugees from war in Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos settle in North America, Australia, and Europe, where they establish Buddhist communities.

# CHINA



- 67 C.E. Two Indian Buddhist missionaries are reputed to arrive at the court of Emperor Ming (r. 58–75 C.E.) of the Han dynasty (206 B.C.E.–220 C.E.), where they translate the first Buddhist sūtras into Chinese.
- 148 The Parthian AN SHIGAO arrives in the Chinese capital of Luoyang; he translates forty-one scriptures of MAINSTREAM BUDDHIST SCHOOLS into Chinese.
- 366 Construction of Buddhist cave shrines at DUNHUANG begins.
- 399 Chinese scholar–pilgrim FAXIAN (ca. 337–ca. 418) departs for INDIA in search of Buddhist teachings.
- 401 KUMĀRAJĪVA (350–409/413), a Buddhist master from Kucha, arrives in the Chinese capital of Chang’an. He introduces numerous MAHĀYĀNA texts to CHINA.
- 402 HUIYUAN (334–416) assembles a group of monks and laymen before an image of the Buddha AMITĀBHA on Mount Lu and vows to be born in the Western Paradise of Sukhāvātī, starting the PURE LAND SCHOOLS of Buddhism.
- 460 The Northern Wei (386–534) begins to construct Buddhist cave sanctuaries at YUN’GANG and LONGMEN.
- ca. 520 BODHIDHARMA, putative founder of the CHAN SCHOOL, is reputed to arrive in China from India.
- ca. 585 ZHIYI (538–597) systematizes the Tiantai School of Chinese Buddhism, providing a distinctively Chinese conception of the Buddhist PATH in such texts as the MOHE ZHIGUAN (*Great Calmness and Contemplation*).
- 601 The Sui (581–618) court distributes the Buddha’s relics throughout the country and begins a wave of pagoda construction.

- 645 XUANZANG (ca. 600–664) returns from his journey to India with twenty horse-loads of Buddhist texts, images, and relics and begins epic translation project.
- 699 FAZANG (643–712) lectures at the Wu Zetian court on the newly translated HUAYAN JING, signaling the prominence of the HUAYAN SCHOOL.
- 720 The arrival of Indian masters Vajrabodhi and Amoghavajra in the capital cities of China leads to a surge in popularity of the MUJIAO (ESOTERIC) SCHOOL.
- 745 Shenhui (684–758) arrives in the Eastern Capital and propagates the sudden-enlightenment teachings of HUINENG (638–713), the putative sixth patriarch of the CHAN SCHOOL.
- 845 Emperor Wuzong (r. 841–847) initiates the Huichang suppression of Buddhism, one of the worst PERSECUTIONS in Chinese Buddhist history.
- 972 The Song dynasty initiates a national project to prepare a woodblock printing of the entire Buddhist canon (completed 983).
- ca. 1150 ZONGGAO (1089–1163) formalizes the KŌAN system of Chan MEDITATION.
- 1270 The Mongol Yuan dynasty (1234–1368) supports Tibetan Buddhist traditions in China.
- ca. 1600 ZHUHONG (1532–1612) seeks to unify Chan and Pure Land strands of Chinese Buddhism.
- 1759 A compendium of Buddhist incantations in Chinese, Manchu, Mongolian, and Tibetan is compiled during the Qianlong reign (1736–1795) of the Manchu Qing dynasty (1644–1911).
- 1929 TAIXU (1890–1947) leads the Chinese Buddhist Association as part of his reform of Chinese Buddhist institutions.
- 1949 The communist victory in China forces many Buddhist MONKS, such as YINSHUN (1906– ), to flee to TAIWAN.
- 1965 The Cultural Revolution is initiated by communist leader Mao Zedong (1893–1976), leading to widespread destruction of Buddhist sites in China.

# JAPAN AND KOREA



- 372 C.E. Buddhism is officially introduced to KOREA with the arrival of Chinese envoy and monk Sundo at the Koguryō court.
- ca. 538 or 552 Buddhism is first introduced from the Korean peninsula to the rulers of JAPAN.
- 594 Prince SHŌTOKU (574–622), a major patron of Buddhism and national cultural hero, becomes regent in Japan.
- ca. 670 WŌNHYO (617–686), a prolific and influential Korean commentator, seeks to reconcile doctrinal positions of different Buddhist texts.
- 668 The Silla kingdom (ca. 57 B.C.E.–936 C.E.), defeating Paekche (663) and Koguryō (668), unifies the Korean peninsula; Silla dynasty supports Buddhism as the state religion.
- 710 The Japanese capital of Nara is established with seven major Buddhist monasteries; the court later sponsors six official schools of NARA BUDDHISM.
- 822 SAICHŌ (767–822) establishes the Tendai school (the Japanese TIANTAI SCHOOL).
- ca. 823 The Japanese monk KŪKAI (774–835) establishes SHINGON BUDDHISM.
- 828 The first mountain site in the NINE MOUNTAINS SCHOOL OF SŌN (the Korean CHAN SCHOOL) is founded; eight other sites are established over the next century.
- 918 Buddhism flourishes in Korea under the state patronage of the Koryō dynasty (918–1392).



- 1010 The Korean king Hyōnjong (r. 1009–1031) orders the carving of woodblocks for a complete Buddhist CANON. This monumental undertaking is finished in 1087, but the woodblocks are destroyed by the Mongols in 1232.
- 1090 The Korean monk–prince ŬICH'ŎN (1055–1101) publishes a catalogue of 1,010 indigenous East Asian Buddhist works; woodblocks of these works are carved as a supplement to the first Koryō Buddhist canon, but these are burned by the Mongols in 1232.
- 1175 HŌNEN (1133–1212) founds Jōdōshū, an independent sect of Japanese PURE LAND BUDDHISM.
- 1200 CHINUL (1158–1210) revives Sōn (Korean Chan school) and seeks to reconcile the doctrinal and meditative strands of Korean Buddhism.
- 1202 Eisai (1141–1215), with support of the Kamakura government, establishes the new Rinzaï Zen sect (of the Japanese Chan school).
- 1233 DŌGEN (1200–1253) founds the Sōtō Zen sect.
- 1236 The Korean court orders the preparation of a second set of woodblocks for printing the Buddhist canon; this set of more than 80,000 woodblocks is completed in 1251 and is now stored at Haeinsa.
- 1253 NICHIREN (1222–1282), founder of NICHIREN SCHOOL of Japanese Buddhism, begins teaching.
- 1392 The Korean dynasty of Chosōn (1392–1910) is founded; the new kingdom adopts neo-Confucianism as the state ideology, leading to some five centuries of persecution of Buddhism in Korea.
- ca. 1570 Japanese general Oda Nobunaga (1534–1582) undertakes a military campaign to destroy Buddhism in Japan, eventually defeating Pure Land and Nichiren strongholds and burning Tendai head monasteries on Mount Hiei.
- 1592 Korea is invaded by Japanese general Hideyoshi Toyotomi (1536–1598), leading to widespread destruction of Buddhist sites; Korean monks HYUJŎNG (1520–1604) and YUJŎNG (1544–1610) establish a monk's militia, which played a major role in defeating the Japanese.
- 1868 The new Meiji government in Japan orders separation of Buddhism from Shintō, creating Shintō as an independent "ancient" state cult and suppressing Buddhism; the regime reduces the status of Buddhist clergy to that of ordinary "imperial subjects," and requires clergy to assume Japanese family names, attend compulsory education, eat meat, and marry.

- 1910 Japan colonizes Korea; the Japanese government-general eventually institutes Meiji-style reforms of the Buddhist order in Korea.
- 1955 After the Japanese defeat in World War II and the end of the Korean War, Korean monks launch a purification movement to remove all vestiges of Japanese colonial influence on Korean Buddhism and to restore celibacy and vegetarianism within the SAṄGHA.
- 1964 SŌKA GAKKAI sponsors foundation of the Kōmeitō (Clean Government) political party in Japan.

*This page intentionally left blank*

# TIBET AND THE HIMALAYAS



- 641 C.E. King Srong btsan sgam po unifies TIBET and marries Chinese princess Wencheng, who putatively brings to Tibet an image of Śākyamuni Buddha, later enshrined at the JO KHANG.
- 775 King Khri srong lde btsan (r. 755–797) of Tibet invites yogin PADMASAMBHAVA to Tibet, and construction of BSAM YAS (SAMYE) Monastery begins.
- ca. 797 Supporters of Indian Buddhism putatively prevail in debate with Chinese Buddhists (the BSAM YAS DEBATE), establishing an Indian Buddhist basis for Tibetan Buddhism.
- 840 King Dar ma 'U dum btsan (also known as Glang dar ma; r. 838–842) persecutes Tibetan Buddhists. A period of conflict and decline of Buddhist institutions begins.
- 1039 Tibetan translator MAR PA (MARPA) (1002/1012–1097), founder of the BKA' BRGYUD (KAGYU) school, travels to India and studies under NĀROPA (1016–1100).
- 1042 Indian scholar ATISHA (982–1054) arrives in Tibet.
- 1073 SA SKYA (SAKYA) Monastery established in Tibet.
- ca. 1200 Buddhist MONKS flee INDIA in the wake of the destruction of such Buddhist centers as Nālandā, bringing their traditions to NEPAL and Tibet.
- 1247 SA SKYA PAṆḌITA (SAKYA PAṆḌITA) (1182–1251) submits to Gödan Khan, beginning the first priest/patron relationship between a Tibetan LAMA and a Mongol Khan.
- 1357 TSONG KHA PA (1357–1419) is born. He becomes an important Tibetan reformer and founder of DGE LUGS (GELUK; Yellow Hat) order.

- 1642 Gushri Khan enthrones the fifth DALAI LAMA as temporal ruler of Tibet.
- 1904 British troops enter Tibet and occupy Lhasa.
- 1912 Thub bstan rgya mtsho (Thubten Gyatso; 1876–1933), the thirteenth Dalai Lama, proclaims Tibet a “religious and independent nation.”
- 1940 The five-year-old Bstan ’dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso) is enthroned as the fourteenth Dalai Lama.
- 1950 Chinese Communist troops invade Tibet.
- 1959 The Dalai Lama flees to India; thousands of Tibetans die in anti-Chinese revolt.
- 1989 The Dalai Lama receives the Nobel Peace Prize.
- 1995 The Dalai Lama recognizes six-year-old Dge ’dun chos kyi nyi ma (Gedhun Choekyi Nyima) as the eleventh PANCHEN LAMA. China denounces the choice, in favor of Rgyal mtshan nor bu (Gyaltzen Norbu).
- 2000 The seventeenth KARMA PA, O rgyan ’phrin las rdo rje (Orgyan Trinle Dorje), flees Tibet to join the Dalai Lama in exile at Dharamsala, India.

# INDEX



Page numbers in **boldface** point to the main text entry for each subject;  
page numbers in *italics* refer to illustrations.

- A**  
Abadai Khan, 562–563  
abbots, Chan, 129, 133, 136, 559  
portraits, 662  
Abhayadatta, *Caturaśtisiddhapravṛtti*, 491  
Abhayagiri, 801, 807  
Abhayagirivāsins, 506, 795  
Abhayagirivihāra, 644  
*Abhidhammapiṭaka*, 223, 627  
*Abhidhammatthasaṅgaha* (Anuruddha), 3, 670  
*Abhidhammāvatāra* (Buddhadatta), 3, 223  
*abhidharma*, 1–7, 10, 75, 113, 183–187, 203, 299–300, 495, 505, 523, 649, 681, 746, 756, 914–915  
*Abhidharmadīpa* (*Dīpakāra*), 4  
*Abhidharmahṛdaya* (Gandhāra), 7, 220  
*Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra* (Dharmaśreṣṭhin), 4  
*Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra* (Upaśānta), 4  
*Abhidharmakośabhāṣya* (Vasubandhu), 4, 7–8, 21, 204, 220, 377–378, 416–417, 424, 602–603, 670, 748, 878, 914–915  
*Abhidharmapiṭaka*, 220  
*Abhidharmasamayapradīpikā* (Saṅghabhadra), 4  
*Abhidharmasamuccaya* (Asaṅga), 32, 914, 916  
*abhidharma* texts, 2–4  
*Abhidhammāvatāra* (Skandhila), 220  
*abhijñā* (higher knowledge), 8–9, 29, 51  
*abhiprāya*, 320  
*abhiṣeka*, 178, 375  
abortion, 9–10  
in Japan, 533, 544  
abortion rate, in Buddhist countries, 9  
abstract analysis, in *abhidharma*, 5  
abundance, iconography of, 361–362  
accumulation, 243–245, 872–873  
Āchān Man Bhūridatto, 832, 898  
Āchān Sao Kantasīlo, 832, 898  
acquired enlightenment (*shijue*, *shikaku*), 619–620, 770  
action, concept of. *See* karma (action)  
activism. *See* engaged Buddhism  
actualizing enlightenment, 905  
*ādāna*, 681  
*adhikaraṇa-samatha*, 667  
*adhimukti*, 277–278  
*Ādi-buddha*, 87  
administrators, monks as, 566–567  
Adzhina-tepe, 120  
Afghanistan, 41, 366–368, 454, 640–642  
cave sanctuaries, 117–118  
manuscript caches, 120  
Afghanistan, Buddhist art in, 150  
afterlife, 20  
in apocrypha, 27  
in Chinese folk religion, 290  
in Japanese folk religion, 292  
*āgama* collections, Sanskrit, 746, 756  
*āgama/nikāya*, 10–12, 112, 218, 354–356, 358, 616, 668, 741–742, 744, 914. *See* also mainstream Buddhist schools  
*Āgamaśāstra* (Gauḍapāda), 331  
*Aggamañña-sutta*, 269–271, 302  
Aggavāmsa  
*Saddanṭi*, 628  
Agni, 121  
Agrawala, V. S., 425  
agriculture, 243–244  
*ahiṃsā* (nonviolence), 893–894  
Aihole, 369  
Airtam, 120  
Aitken, Robert, 248, 868, 925  
Ajaṅṭā, 12–13, 117, 118, 360, 361, 365, 402, 550, 789, 806  
Ajātaśatru, King, 84, 86, 233, 238, 424  
Ājīvikism, 415–416  
Ājñātakaunḍinya, 232  
Akamatsu Renjō, 531  
*Akḥbār al-Sīn wa-l-Hind*, 381  
Akṣobhya, 13, 73–74, 497, 698  
images, 260, 326  
*Akṣobhyavyūha*, 73–74, 698  
Alagiyavanna Mohoṭṭāla  
*Dahamsoṇḍa kāvyā*, 778  
*Kusa Jātaka*, 778  
*Subhāsita*, 778  
Alahena, 796  
*Ālavaka-sutta*, 911  
*ālayavijjāna*, 13, 20, 38–39, 176, 224, 683, 919  
Al-Biruni, 642  
Alchi, 13–14, 322, 323, 324, 325  
Alexander the Great, 364, 366  
Altan Khan, 193, 562  
Aluvihāre, 777  
Amarapura, 579, 797  
Amarāvati, 363, 369, 550, 805–806  
Amarāvati style, 800–801  
Amarbayasgalant khiid, 563, 565  
Amaterasu, 274  
*Amāvatura* (Guruēgōmi), 778, 796

- Ambedkar, B. R., 14, 248–249, 359, 448, 661
- American Oriental Society, 864
- Amitābha, 14–15, 59, 73, 79, 808. *See also* nenbutsu; Pure Land art; Pure Land Buddhism
- cult of, 497, 526–528, 766
- images, 74, 124, 260, 394, 437, 438, 493, 650–651, 705
- in Pure Land Buddhism, 412–413, 704
- “Amitābha Crossing the Mountains,” 697
- Amitābha Sūtra*, 707, 882
- “Amitābha with Fifty Bodhisattvas,” 694
- Amituo*, 167
- Amoghasiddhi, 260
- Amoghavajra, 511, 534, 721, 824
- Āmrāpālī, 84
- amulets and talismans, 15–16, 181, 227, 255, 292, 534, 634, 734, 757, 840, 842
- anāgāmins*, 233, 723, 740
- Anagārika Dharmapāla, 16, 50, 165, 266, 359, 448, 585, 798, 865
- Anāgatavaṃsa*, 877
- Ānanda, 16–17, 84, 112, 188, 206, 232, 238, 513
- Ananda Coomaraswamy, 802–803
- Ānandakuṭi, 591
- Ananda Temple, Pagan, 17, 402, 786–787, 787
- Anāthapiṇḍada, 18, 232
- anātman (no-self), 5–6, 18–19, 23, 239, 262, 296, 416, 665. *See also* body, perspectives on the
- and death, 203
- Pudgalavāda and, 504
- and rebirth, 712
- in *Śramaṇa* movement, 329
- and śūnyatā, 809
- and *vipassanā*, 889
- anatomy. *See* body, perspectives on the *Anavataptaḡāthā*, 300
- Anawrahta, King, 460, 575
- ancestors, 20–23, 22, 292
- ancestor veneration, 20, 281, 289, 308, 461–462, 464, 468, 532. *See also* ghosts and spirits
- Andhra Pradesh, India, 369–370
- Ang Duong, King, 108
- Angkor, 785. *See* Cambodia
- Angkor Thom, 260, 783, 784, 789
- Angkor Wat, 106, 107, 109, 787, 789
- Aṅgulimāla Prison Ministry, Britain, 249
- Anguosi, 253, 535
- Āṅguttaranikāya*, 75, 627, 669
- Anige, 153
- animal sacrifice, 641, 724
- animism, 105, 430, 467–468, 767
- Aniruddha, King, 838
- anitya (impermanence), 6, 18, 23, 203, 239, 397–398, 505, 648, 889
- aniyatadharma*, 667
- añjali*, 265
- ankokuji*, 678
- Ankokuji Temple, 351
- Anle ji* (Daochuo), 707
- Aññā-Koṇḍoñña (arhat), 29
- Annen, 273, 475
- An Shigao, 24, 146, 454, 776
- antarābhava*, 204
- anthropology, 261–262, 466
- and Buddhist studies, 99–100
- studies of ethics, 261–263
- anti-art, Chan school and, 129
- antinomianism, 618–620
- Anurādhapura, 188, 795–796, 800–802, 807
- Anuruddha, *Abhidhammatthasaṅgaha*, 3, 670
- anusāya*, 682
- anusmṛti*, 93
- anuttara*, 87
- anuttarasamyaksambodhi* (complete, perfect awakening), 24, 51, 58, 919–920
- Anuttarayoga Tantras*, 305
- Aoki Bunkyō, 98
- Apadāna*, 36
- apocrypha, 24–28, 38–39, 47, 143, 198, 281–282, 538, 720–721, 730, 744, 756. *See also* catalogues of scriptures; titles of texts
- Arabic translations, 380
- Ārāḍa Kālāma, 83
- ārāma*, 84
- archaeology. *See also* names of sites
- and Buddhist studies, 96–97
- and reliquary deposits, 719–720
- architecture. *See also* monastic architecture
- of Borobudur, 68
- of stūpa, 803–804, 809
- Arhaṅ<sup>c</sup> Janakābhivamsa
- Kuiy<sup>c</sup> kyaṅ<sup>c</sup> ’ ’ abhidammā*, 102
- arhat(s), 28–29, 65, 87, 188, 261, 290, 301, 487, 572, 636, 723, 740, 749, 761, 769, 890. *See also* buddha(s); disciples of the Buddha
- female, 303, 489, 607
- arhat images, 30–31, 181
- arhatship, 8, 636
- Ari monks, 575
- “aristocratic Buddhism,” 388
- Ariyaratne, A. T., 798
- Arnold, Edwin, 864
- art, Buddhist. *See* cave sanctuaries; painting; sculpture; names of countries
- arthakriyā*, 225
- art historians, and Buddhist studies, 100
- Āryadeva, 31, 480–481, 581
- Catuḡsataka*, 31, 480–481
- Arya Maitreya Mandala order, 268
- āryas*, 740
- Āryasūra, 32
- Jātakamālā*, 32, 401–402, 748
- Pāramitāsamāsa*, 748
- Asaṅga, 32, 59–60, 227, 456, 496, 649, 683, 738, 878, 914–915
- Abhidharmasamuccaya*, 32, 916
- Mahāyānasamgraha*, 915–916
- Yogācārabhūmi*, 914–916
- ascetic practices, 32–33, 117, 214, 313, 671, 675, 701, 718, 741, 887
- and accumulation, 244–245
- Buddha and, 45, 83, 90
- and diet, 228–229
- Jains and, 383, 416
- and Mahāyāna, 494–495
- monks and, 565–566
- self-immolation, 758–759
- Shugendō and, 772–774
- Ashikaga Tadayoshi, 678
- Ashikaga Takauji, 678
- Asian Americans, 865, 868–869
- Āśoka, King, 34, 71, 80, 82, 97, 120, 188, 366–367, 502–503, 542, 870. *See also* inscriptions
- as ideal of kingship, 262, 424–425, 657
- and relics cult, 49, 83, 205, 355, 641, 651, 717, 803, 906
- Āśokāvādāna*, 717
- āśraya* (basis), 683
- assimilation, of esoteric imagery, 256
- Aṣṭagrantha*, 220
- Aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra*, 492, 717, 746
- Asukadera, 554
- asuras*, 184, 233, 467
- Āśvaghōṣa, 35, 38, 188
- Buddhacarita*, 75, 86, 88, 512, 656, 748
- Śāriputraprakaraṇa*, 251
- Saundarananda*, 656
- Āśvajit, 232
- Atharva Veda*, 204
- Atisha, 35–36, 288, 371, 588, 853, 861
- Bodhipathapradīpa*, 484, 853

- Byang chub sgron me*, 36  
*Atiyoga (Rdzogs chen)*, 730  
 ātman (self), 18–19, 63, 680–681, 692–693.  
   *See also* body, perspectives on the  
*Aṭṭhakathā*, 37, 627  
*Aṭṭhakavagga*, 601  
 attributes, 403  
   of bodhisattvas, 61–62, 570–572  
   of buddhas, 569–570  
 Atu-ma-shi Monastery, 580  
 Aum Shinrikyō, 385, 449  
 Aung San Suu Kyi, 163, 165, 248, 893  
 Auraṅgābād, 117, 365, 511  
 Austria, Buddhism in, 268  
 authenticity, scriptural, 453, 755–756. *See*  
   apocrypha  
 authority, scriptural, 25, 94, 111, 321,  
   451–452, 755–756. *See also* *panjiao*  
 autocremation, 758–759  
 Ava, 579  
*avadāna*, 36–37, 36–37, 38, 299–300, 495,  
   593  
*Avadānakalpalatā* (Kṣemendra), 748  
*Avadānaśataka*, 36–37, 38, 747  
 Avalokiteśvara, 474, 498, 570, 613–614,  
   772, 853. *See also* Guanyin  
   and Amitābha, 15, 74  
   cult of, 234, 420, 593  
   and Dalai Lama, 59, 193, 417  
   as Guanyin, 290–292, 314–315, 571, 899  
   images, 42, 61–62, 62, 106, 149,  
     151–152, 253–254, 322–323, 323,  
     372, 393, 403, 437, 783–784, 784  
*Avatamsaka-sūtra*, 59. *See also* *Huayan jing*  
*avidyā* (ignorance), 219, 665  
*avijñapti* (unmanifest processes), 681–682  
*avijñaptirūpa*, 221  
 Avukana, 801  
 awakening. *See* *bodhi* (awakening);  
   *bodhicitta* (thought of awakening)  
*Awakening of Faith (Dasheng qixin lun)*,  
   26–27, 35, 38–39, 52, 167, 269, 432,  
   619, 631, 827, 904–905  
 awareness (*zhi*), and Tiantai school, 849  
*axis mundi*, 362  
*āyatana* (sense faculties), 19, 175, 177,  
   220–221, 526, 680–681  
 Āyurveda, 518  
 Ayutthaya, 39, 580, 787
- B**  
 Bactria, 120, 366–368  
 Bagaya Kyaung, 580  
 Bagyidaw, 580  
*bāhās*, 591  
 Bahuśrutīya, 504  
 Bai ro tsa na, 853  
 Baisheng, 817  
 Baizhang, 708  
*bala*, 51, 632  
 Bala (monk), 80–81  
 Bali, 372  
 Balligāve, 369  
 Bāmīyān, 41, 117–118, 121, 367–368,  
   380, 641. *See also* Central Asia,  
   Buddhist art in  
     destruction of Buddha statues, 640–641  
 Bandaranaïke, S. W. R. D., 799  
 Bangkok, 108, 533  
 Bankei Yōtaku, 135  
 Baodingshan, 318–319  
 Baoliang, 167  
*Baolin zhuan*, 463  
 Baozhi, 567  
*Bare*, 590  
 Bareau, André, 85, 893  
 “bare insight worker,” 889  
 Ba ri lo tsā ba, 854  
 Barlaam and Josaphat, 160, 380  
 ‘Ba’ rom Dar ma dbang phyug, 48  
 Basham, A. L., 424  
 Bat Temple, Soc Trang, Vietnam, 880  
 Bayon, 42, 106, 783, 784  
 Bdud ‘dul rdo rje, 418  
 Bedsā, 363, 805  
 Beihai Park, Beijing, 553  
 Beijing, 153, 171  
 Beik-than-myo, 577  
 Bell, Sir Charles, 194  
*Benji jing*, 199  
 Benn, James, 65  
 Bentor, Yael, 717  
 Bezeklik, 118, 125, 551  
 Bhaddā, 607  
*Bhaddanta Indācāra ‘Antimakhari’*, 102  
*bhadra kalpa*, 73  
*Bhadra kalpāvadāna*, 593, 748  
 Bhadrāyānīya, 692  
 Bhadrīka, 232  
*Bhagavadgītā*, 18  
*bhagavat*, 87  
 Bhaiṣajyaguru, 292, 393, 437, 497, 695–696  
*Bhaiṣajyaguru vaidūrya prabhārāja-sūtra*,  
   513  
 Bhaiṣajyarā, 65  
 Bhājā, 117, 363, 550, 805  
 Bhaktapur, 591  
 Bharatamuni, *Nātyaśāstra*, 251  
 Bhārhut, 361–362, 364, 402, 651, 804,  
   906–907, 911  
 Bhartṭhari, 331, 451  
*bhāvanā*, 682  
*Bhāvanākrama* (Kamalaśīla), 70, 483, 525  
 Bhāvaviveka, 42, 111, 481–482  
   *Madhyamakahrdayakārikā*, 481–482  
   *Tarkajvālā*, 95, 482  
*bhikṣu/bhikṣuṇī*, 353, 489, 558, 606, 615,  
   741, 885–887. *See also* monks; nuns;  
   ordination  
*Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa*, 667  
*Bhikṣuṇīprātimokṣa-sūtra*, 606, 668  
*Bhikṣuṇī Saṅgha*, 84  
*Bhikṣuprātimokṣa*, 667  
 Bhṛkuṭī, 851  
 Bhutan, 260  
 Bhutan, Buddhist art in, 327  
*bianwen*, 43, 155, 319  
*bianxiang*, 43–44, 319, 693–695  
 Bigandet, Paul Ambrose, 160  
 Bigelow, William Sturgis, 865  
 Bimbisāra, King, 45–46, 84, 233, 657  
*bindu*, 56  
 Binglingsi, 118, 125, 693  
 biography, 45, 45–47, 72, 101–102, 235,  
   395, 450, 491, 662, 702. *See also*  
   Buddha, life of the  
   “Biographies of Eminent Monks,” 44, 47  
 Bird’s Nest, 127  
*Biyan lu* (Keqin), 132, 427  
 Biyun-si, 816  
 Bizot, François, 108, 830  
*Bka’ babs bdun ldan* (Tāranātha), 491  
*Bka’ brgyud* (Kagyū), 47–49, 71, 151,  
   407, 488, 513, 536, 562, 583, 701,  
   822, 854, 859  
   and karma pa, 417–419  
*Bka’ gdams* sect, 36, 324, 853  
*Bka’ ’gyur*, 67, 103–104, 114, 563  
 Bkra shis lhun po, 629, 855  
 Bkra shis rnam rgyal, 488  
 Black Hat Lama, 417  
 Bla ma dam pa Bsod nams rgyal mtshan,  
   *Rgyal rabs gsal ba’i me long*, 855  
 bliss perfection, 632  
 Blo bzang chos kyi rgyal mtshan, 193, 629  
 Blo bzang dpal ldan ye shes, 629  
 Blo bzang ye shes, 629  
 “blowing out,” *nirvāṇa* as, 600–602  
*Blue Annals*, 103  
 blue-robe sect, 644  
 boat people, 844



- Bodhanath Stūpa, 589
- Bodh Gayā, 16, **49–50**, 85, 231, 358, 359, 364, 365, 486–487, 789, 807, 906
- bodhi* (awakening), 24, 33, 38, **50–53**, 58, 76, 83, 131, 305, 684, 754, 763, 904.  
See also Bodh Gayā; *bodhicitta* (thought of awakening); buddha(s); original enlightenment (*hongaku*)
- arhats and, 28–29
- and Bsam yas Debate, 69–71
- and four noble truths, 295–296
- and kōan, 427–428
- and path, 637–638
- sudden vs. gradual, 52–53, 157–158, 201–202, 346, 348, 432, 599, 638–639
- Bodhibhadra, 35
- Bodhicaryāvatāra* (Śāntideva), **53**, 54–55, 420, 482–483, 525, 603, 748–749
- bodhicitta* (thought of awakening), 52–53, **54–56**, 743
- and compassion, 420
- bodhicittotpāda*, 54–55
- Bodhidharma, 57, **57–58**, 62, 126, 126, 128, 130, 334, 463–464, 516–517, 659
- Bodhidharma Anthology*, 57
- bodhimaṇḍa*, 49, 790
- bodhipakṣikadharma*, 51
- bodhipakṣyadharma*, 541
- Bodhipathapradīpa* (Atisha), 484, 853
- Bodhiruci, 707, 724, 915
- bodhisattva(s), 52, **58–60**, 65, 72, 82, 196, 233, 290, 304, 375, 401, 403, 474, 498, 743, 846, 885. See also names of *bodhisattvas*
- and ascetic practices, 32–33
- and *bodhicitta*, 54–56
- and ethics, 262–264
- and hell, 316–317
- as *kami*, 769–770
- and *karuṇā*, 419–420
- lay, 445–446
- and *nirvāṇa*, 603–604
- and *pāramitā*, 631–632
- Bodhisattvabhūmi*, 58–59, 894
- Bodhisattvagocharopāyaviṇayaṅkurvaṇa-nirdeśa-sūtra*, 894–895
- bodhisattva ideal, 894–896
- bodhisattva images, **60–63**, 123–124, 149, 151–152, 153, 316, 361, 437, 486, 782–783. See also *maṇḍala*
- at Ajaṅṭā, 12–13
- in China, 146, 151
- and consecration, 178–181
- in Japan, 392–394
- in Kashmir, 322
- in Korea, 437
- and *mudrās*, 570–572
- in Nepal, 323
- in Tibet, 326
- bodhisattva movement, 356
- bodhisattva path, 58, 77, 282, 341, 351, 356, 420, 479–483, 636, 675, 698
- bodhisattvasaṃvara*, 55
- Bodhisattvāvadana-kalpalatā* (Kṣemendra), 37
- bodhisattvāvadānamālā*, 37
- bodhisattva-vehicle (*bodhisattvayāna*), 356, 473
- bodhisattva vows, 54, 66, 77, 263, 304, 356, 375, 559, 615
- bodhi tree, 49, 83, 364, 486, 642
- Bodhnāth, 322
- bodhyaṅga*, 51
- body, perspectives on the, **63–66**, 176, 266, 331, 520–521, 569–570, 605, 662, 758–759, 821–822. See also buddhahood and buddha bodies; dharma body; relics and relics cults and death, 204–209
- Bogdo Gegen Zanabazar, 327
- Bo Juyi, 143
- Bon, **66–68**, 260, 589, 643, 730, 859
- Bongaku shinryō* (Jiun Onkō), 404
- Book of Zambasta*, 121
- Borobudur, 46–47, **68**, 100, 260, 340, 371–372, 373, 402, 511, 785, 786, 789, 807
- Brahmā, 289, 330
- Brāhmaṇas, 295
- brahmanic practices, in Cambodia, 107
- Brahmanism and Buddhism, 293–295, 309, 316, 323, 329–330, 352–353, 358–359, 451, 545, 589–590, 712, 890. See also Vedic religion
- brahmās*, 184, 186, 315
- brahmavihāra* (boundless states), 524
- ‘Bras spung, 855–856, 861
- ‘Bri gung ‘Jig rten mgon po, 48, 854
- Brilliant Kings, 253
- ‘Brog mi Lotsāva Śākya ye shes, 513, 852
- ‘Brom ston rgyal ba’i byung gnas, 36, 853, 861
- Brown, Peter, 715–716
- Brown, Sid, 901
- Browne, Malcolm, 758
- Brten ‘gyur*, 67
- ‘Brug chen Pad ma dkar po, 856
- ‘Brug pa, 324
- Bsam yas (Samye), **68–69**, 325–326, 334, 484, 623, 851
- Bsam yas Debate, **69–71**, 188, 852
- Bsod nams phyogs kyi glang po, 629
- Bsod nams rgya mtsho, 193, 562, 855
- Bsod nams rtse mo, 751, 854
- Bstan ‘dzin rgya mtsho (Tenzin Gyatso), 194–195, 195, 248
- Bstan ‘gyur, 67, 103–104, 114
- Buddha. See also relics and relics cults and *abhidharma*, 1–2
- body of, 65
- as healer, 519, 679
- language of, 625
- as monk, 79–80
- as primordial Buddha, 473–474
- and sexuality, 761
- as storyteller, 250
- as teacher of gods, 466
- worship of, 905–907
- Buddha, death of the, 82, 84–85, 92, 205–206, 238, 287, 489, 542, 601
- Buddha, epithets of the, 87, 93
- Buddha, life of the, 51, **82–87**, 238, 295–296, 332, 352–353, 419, 422. See also *avadāna*; biography; Buddha, life of the, in art; disciples of the Buddha; *jātaka*
- ascetic practices, 90, 566
- birth, 89, 89–90, 541
- final life, 45–46
- former lives, 59, 65, 85, 88, 400–401
- miracles, 541–542
- replicated in consecration ritual, 179–180
- Buddha, life of the, in art, 46–47, **88–92**, 259–260, 804–805, 806
- buddha(s), 51, 65, **71–74**, 87, 290, 304, 671. See also buddhahood and buddha bodies; names of *buddhas*
- celestial, 13–15, 73–74, 77–78, 234, 403, 743
- compassionate, 721–722
- cosmic, 338, 339
- of the directions, 14, 693
- of the future, 73, 86–87, 538
- as *kami*, 769–770
- multiple, 72–73, 77, 92, 186–187, 497
- of the past, 71–73, 86
- of the present, 73–74, 77
- spiritual powers of, 8–9
- Buddhabhadra, 341–342, 462
- buddha body. See buddhahood and buddha bodies
- Buddhacarita* (Aśvaghoṣa), 35, **75**, 86, 88, 512, 656, 748
- Buddha *darśana*, 707
- Buddhadāsa Bhikkhu, 75, 829, 835, 898
- Buddhadatta, *Abhidhammāvatāra*, 3, 223

- buddhadharmas*, and *bodhicitta*, 55  
*buddhadhātu*, 827  
 Buddha eras, 285  
 buddha families, 193, 234, 259, 375–376, 572  
 buddha-fields (*buddhakṣetra*), 87, 186–187, 698, 703. *See also* Pure Land Buddhism  
 Buddhaghosa, 75, 93, 223, 296–297, 574, 837  
*Kaṅkhāvitaraṇī*, 166  
*Samantapāsādikā*, 166  
*Visuddhimagga*, 3, 29, 204, 315, 523, 537, 627, 649, 796, 890  
*Buddhaghosuppatti*, 75  
 Buddhaguhya, 821  
 buddhahood and buddha bodies, 76–79, 304–305, 378–379, 420, 636, 773. *See also* body, perspectives on the and dharmicization, 180–181  
 innate, 618–620  
 and Tiantai school, 846, 849  
 universal buddhahood, 389–390, 473  
 Buddha images, 15, 46–47, 77, 79–81, 90–91, 93, 178–181, 205–206, 230, 259–260, 313, 317–318, 330, 356, 361, 493, 570, 693, 715, 805, 838, 906–907. *See also* bodhisattva images; Buddha, life of the, in art; image consecration; maṇḍala  
 at Ajaṅṭā, 12  
 at Bāmiyān, 41, 117–118, 641  
 at Borobudur, 785  
 in Cambodia, 108  
 in Central Asia, 122–125  
 in China, 145–153  
 Gupta style, 364–365  
 Huayan, 337–340  
 in India, 362–364, 364, 364–365, 365  
 in Indonesia, 372–373  
 in Japan, 392–394, 895  
 of Kamakura, 412  
 in Kashmir, 322  
 in Korea, 436–437  
 at Longmen, 119  
 at Mahābodhi Temple, 486  
 in Myanmar, 787  
 in Nepal, 323  
 at Polonnaruva, 527  
 at Sökkuram, 81  
 in Southeast Asia, 782–783  
 in Sri Lanka, 795, 800–801, 802  
 at Sukhothai, 831  
 in Taiwan, 816  
 in Thailand, 787, 843  
 in Tibet, 326  
 at Yun'gang, 921–922  
 buddha-nature. *See* *tathāgatagarbha*  
*buddhānusmṛti* (mindful recollection of the Buddha), 93, 587–588, 699, 906  
*buddha pūjā*, 907  
*buddhavacana* (word of the Buddha), 10, 17, 24–28, 93–94, 354, 745, 755  
*Buddhavaṃsa*, 72, 230, 285, 838, 890  
*Buddha Varṣa*, 285  
*buddhavāsa*, 178  
 buddha vows, 74  
 Buddhayaśas, 616  
*Buddh Daṃṇāy*, 422  
 Buddhism, as social institution, 353  
 “Buddhism for Human Life,” 913  
 Buddhist Association of the Republic of China, 817  
 Buddhist Churches of America, 866  
 Buddhist Coalition for Economic Justice, South Korea, 248–249  
 Buddhist Compassionate Relief Tz'u-chi Association, Taiwan, 249, 610, 817–818  
 Buddhist Council of the Midwest, 869  
 Buddhist Institute, Cambodia, 109  
 Buddhist Peace Fellowship, United States, 249  
 Buddhist Pure Karma Society, 447  
 Buddhist Sangha Council of Southern California, 869  
 Buddhist schools. *See* doctrinal differences; *names of schools*  
 Buddhist societies, 266–268. *See also* *names of organizations*  
 lay, 447  
 in Meiji Japan, 531  
 Pure Land societies, 702  
 in Taiwan, 817  
 Buddhist Society for the Defense of the Nation, Japan, 586  
 Buddhist studies, 94–100, 100, 153, 160–161, 189, 455, 460, 485, 592, 594, 628, 745, 782, 864  
 and colonialism, 164–165  
 and *Diamond Sūtra*, 227–228  
 and esoteric art, 252–254  
 and folk religion, 288–289  
 in Japan, 95–97, 99–100, 311, 386, 413–415, 573–574, 860  
 and Kenmitsu Buddhism, 271–274  
 and Mahāyāna school, 492–499  
 major trends, 94–95  
 and monasticism, 556–557  
 problem of divinities, 465–466  
 traditional approaches, 95–98  
 in Vietnam, 881, 883  
 Buddhist theology, 94, 99  
 Buddhist Theosophical Society (Ceylon), 16, 164, 448  
 buddhology, 94, 838  
*Buduguṇālaṃkāraya* (Vīdāgama Maitrēya), 778, 797  
 Buduruvāgala, 801  
 Bühler, Georg, 97  
 Bukhara, 380  
 Bukkyō Seitō Dōshikai, 449  
*bu lugs*, 104  
*Bunkyōhifuron* (Kūkai), 656  
 Burgess, James, 96  
 Burma. *See* Myanmar  
 Burmese, Buddhist literature in, 101–103  
 Burnouf, Eugène, 96–97, 628  
 Buryatiya, 138  
 Busan school, 765  
 Bu ston (Bu tön) rin chen grub, 95, 103–104, 854  
*Chos 'byung*, 70, 103  
*Lung gi nye ma*, 104  
 Buswell, Robert, 428, 638  
 Butkara, 367  
*Butsaraṇa* (Vidyācakravartī), 778, 796  
 Byang chen theg chen chos 'khor gling, 562  
 Byang chub rdo rje, 418  
*Byang chub sgron me* (Atisha), 36  
 Byōdōin, 650–651, 706
- ## C
- caitya, 355, 550  
 Caitya (subsect), 504  
*Cakkavāladīpanī* (Sirimaṅgala), 628  
 cakra, 728  
*Cakrasaṃvara-tantra*, 407, 563, 751  
*cakravāḍa*, 184  
 cakravartin, 34, 424–425, 441, 538–539, 562, 657–658, 660, 717, 824. *See also* kingship; *names of rulers*  
 Cakrin, 410, 410  
 calendar, 284–287  
 Cāmadevī, Queen, 900  
*Cāmadevivāṃsa*, 832  
 Cambodia, 42, 105–110, 160, 245, 260. *See also* communism and Buddhism; Khmer Buddhism; Khmer, Buddhist literature in  
 Angkorian period, 106–107  
 and communism, 169–170  
 consecration ritual, 179–181

- Cambodia (*continued*)  
 modern era, 109–110, 646  
 post-Angkorian “middle” period, 107–108  
 pre-Angkor period, 105–106, 783  
 role of laity, 446–447
- Cambodia, Buddhist art in, 92, 783. *See also* Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in
- Can, Master, 528
- Canavarro, Marie De Souza, 865
- Canche, 816
- Candi Sewu, 785
- Candragupta I, King, 357
- Candrakīrti, 31, **111**, 420, 482, 861, 896  
*Madhyamakāvātāra*, 111, 482, 604  
*Prasannapadā*, 111
- canon, 10–12, 25, 45, 93–94, **111–115**, 116–117, 164, 166, 217, 266, 755–756. *See also* *abhidharma*; *āgama/nikāya*; apocrypha; authority, scriptural; *buddhavacana*; catalogues of scriptures; scripture; sūtra; *tripiṭaka*; vinaya
- Bon, 67
- Chinese, 143, 197, 756
- Daoist, 144, 200  
 in Korea, 432–433  
 in Mongolia, 114  
 in Myanmar, 576  
 outside India, 113–115
- Pāli, 755–756, 837
- printed, 25, 96, 99, 108, 114, *115*, 116–117, 628, 677, 856
- Sanskrit, 745–747
- Theravāda, 625–628
- Tibetan, 96, 103–104, 114, *115*, 756, 853–855
- canonicity, 111–112, 114–117, 536
- Caodong (Sōtō) house of Chan school, 132–133, 135, 235–236, 348, 413, 428, 569, 866, 880–881
- Caoqi, 348
- Caoshan Benji, 131, 344
- Cao Zhongda, 694
- Cariyāpiṭaka*, 401
- Carus, Paul, 864–865, 924
- caste system, 14, 249, 358, 448, 590, 870
- catalogues of scriptures, 98, **116–117**, 746, 759. *See also* printing technologies  
 and apocrypha, 25–26
- catechesis, in *abhidharma*, 2, 4
- “Cathedral of Lhasa,” 404
- Catuṣṣataka* (Āryadeva), 31, 480–481
- Caturaṣṭhisiddhapravṛtti* (Abhayadatta), 491
- causality, 545, 648, 669–670, 713. *See also* *pratītyasamutpāda* (dependent origination)
- causes and conditions, typologies of, 6
- Cave of the Thousand Buddhas (Dunhuang), 552
- cave sanctuaries, **117–119**, 789. *See also* China, Buddhist art in; *names of sites*  
 in Central Asia, 117–118, 122–125  
 in China, *118–119*, 147–151, 240, 338, 471, 921–922  
 in India, 12–13, 363, 402, 550–551  
 in Korea, 554  
 in Ladakh, 324  
 in Laos, 793  
 in Sri Lanka, 800
- celibacy, 134, 140, 303, 305, 313, 376, 617, 761–762. *See also* ascetic practices; family, Buddhism and the; marriage; sexuality;
- Central Asia, 113, 117–118, **120–122**, 251, 454, 481, 519, 538. *See also* Central Asia, Buddhist art in; Gāndhārī, Buddhist literature in; Islam and Buddhism  
 monastic architecture in, 550–551  
 and Silk Road, 775–776
- Central Asia, Buddhist art in, **122–125**, 150, 775–776. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art
- Ceylon. *See* Sri Lanka
- Chajang, 431
- Chakkraphat, King, 425
- Cham, 782, 784
- Chamlong Simuang, General, 834
- Champa, 785
- chan*, 130
- Chan art, 31, 43, **125–129**, 129, 150–152  
 and *bodhi*, 90  
 oxherding pictures, 131, 621–622  
 and portraiture, 661
- Chandi Mendut, 508
- Chandi Pawon, 508
- Chandi Sari, 508
- Chandler, David, 106
- Chāndogya Upaniṣad*, 18
- Chang’an, 146, 149–150, 197, 535
- Chanlin sengbao zhuan*, 406
- Chan Piṭaka*, 929
- Chan (Zen, Sōn, Thiēn) school, 22, **130–136**, 266, 305, 656, 685, 722–723. *See also* Chan art; China; Confucianism and Buddhism; Japan; Kōan; Korea; lineage; mozhao Chan; Nine Mountains school of Sōn; Vietnam; Zen, popular conceptions of  
 and *bodhi*, 51–53, 79, 169  
 and Bsam yas Debate, 69–71  
 in China, 38–39, 57–58, 132, 141, 144, 156, 174, 200, 202–203, 213, 338, 344, 346–348, 405, 813, 849–850, 911–914, 928–929  
 in Japan, 99, 189, 235–238, 274, 313–314, 352, 386, 390, 426–429, 500, 819–820  
 key figures, 17, 487  
 key texts, 27, 227, 314, 655, 915  
 in Korea, 158–159, 349, 423, 432–435, 443  
 and lineage, 334, 347–348, 462–465, 616  
 and martial arts, 516–518  
 and meditation, 205, 278, 287, 428, 521, 528–529, 665, 754, 758, 810, 827  
 and monastic architecture, 552–553, 556–557  
 and Pure Land, 700, 705, 708  
 in United States, 866  
 in Vietnam, 879–880, 882
- chanting and liturgy, **137–139**, 138, 191, 533, 613–614, 714, 774, 882. *See also* entertainment and performance; language, Buddhist philosophy of; meditation; ritual  
 and *buddhānusmṛti*, 93, 587–588, 699, 906
- daimoku*, 93, **191**, 413, 596–597, 781  
 and funerary ritual, 713, 833  
 in Japan, 727
- mantras, 376, 429, 512, 526–527, 613–614, 666, 820–821, 824  
 and meditation practice, 527–529
- nenbutsu, 79, 93, 136, 250, 307, 336, 348, 412–414, 476, 587–588  
 and *paritta/rakṣā* texts, 635, 840  
 prayer, 671–672  
 and Tantric meditation, 525–527  
 Thet Mahachat, 829
- Chanyuan zhuquanji duxu* (Zongmi), 929
- Chanzone*, 130
- Chaofeng, 816–817
- charity. *See* *dāna*; merit and merit-making
- Chatsumarn Kabilsingh, 835
- Chavannes, Edouard, 96
- chedi*, 783
- Chengde, 553
- Chengdu, 147–148, 693–694
- Chengguan, **139**, 167, 341, 343–344, 346, 925, 929
- Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao*, 139

- Cheng Hao, 174  
*Cheng weishi lun* (Xuanzang), 59, 239, 283, 441, 903, 909–910  
 Cheng Yen (Zhengyan), 610  
 Cheng Yi, 174  
 Chengyuan, 700  
 Chen Hui, *Yin chi ru jing*, 166  
 Chenla, 105  
 Chen Yi, Chinese vice premier, 170  
 Chiang Mai, 181  
 Chigong, 599  
 Chikō, 708  
 Childer, Robert Caesar, 96  
 China, 21, 57–58, **139–145**, 212, 245, 254, 405–406, 447, 454, 519, 538–540, 722, 915. *See also* Central Asia; China, Buddhist art in; Chinese Buddhist translation; Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; Taiwan  
 arhat worship in, 30–31  
 and ascetic practices, 65, 759  
 and Buddhist nationalism, 585–586  
 Buddhist schools in, 143–144, 566  
 Buddhist texts and translations, 47, 116–117, 142–143, 166–167, 321, 811  
 and canon, 113–114  
 cave sanctuaries, 118–119  
 Chan school in, 130–133  
 and communism, 169–170  
 festivals, 287–288  
 as focus of Buddhist studies, 94, 98–99  
 folk religion, 290–291  
 Ghost Festival, 307–309, 319  
 historical writing, 334  
 lineages in, 462–465  
 and martial arts, 514–517  
 millenarianism in, 538–540  
 monastic architecture in, 551–553  
 ordination in, 607, 617, 643  
 persecution in, 643, 645  
 and printing technologies, 676–677  
 Pure Land Buddhism, 700, 707–708  
 and relics cult, 717–718  
 and selection of Dalai Lama, 194  
 and Silk Road, 775–776  
 and Taiwan, 815–819  
 Tantra in, 823–825  
 and Tibet, 857–858  
 and Vietnam, 787, 879  
 China, Buddhist art in, **145–153**. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art; Central Asia, Buddhist art in; Chan art; esoteric art, East Asia; Huayan art; Pure Land art  
 Dunhuang, 240  
 Guanyin, 61–62  
 hell images, 318–320  
 Huayan art, 338–339  
 Chinese, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in, 43, **154–157**  
 Chinese Buddhist Association, 819  
 Chinese Buddhist Electronic Text Association, 678  
 Chinese Buddhist translation, 24–28, 38–39, 113–114, 116–117, 142–143, 154, 167, 173–174, 227, 300, 341, 454, 471–472, 505, 534–535, 656, 750, 824. *See also* commentarial literature; translation and translators  
 translators, 24, 44, 197, 225–226, 282–283, 630–631, 759–760, 775–776, 903, 909–910, 912–913  
 Chinese Exclusion Act of 1882 (U.S.), 865  
 Chin'gakchong, 434  
*Chingjing faxing jing*, 27  
 Chinhung, King, 425, 431  
 Chinul, 134, **157–158**, 159, 345, 349, 428, 432, 702, 864, 929  
*Kanhwa kyōrūron*, 158  
*Pōpchip pyōrhaengnok chōryo pyōngip sagi*, 158  
*Wōndon sōngbullon*, 158  
 Chisōn Tohōn, 599  
 Chittadhar Hridaya, *Sugata Saurabha*, 594  
 Chizan school, 765  
 Chogyam Trungpa Rinpoche, 868  
 Chogye school, 134, 157–158, **158–159**, 430, 432–435, 599  
 Chōngt'o Society, South Korea, 249  
 Ch'ōngwōnsa, 157  
 Ch'ōnt'ae. *See* Tiantai (Tendai) school  
*Chos 'byung* (Bu ston rin chen grub), 70, 103  
 Chos grags rgya mtsho, 418  
 Chos kyi dbang phyug, 418  
 Chos kyi rgyal mtshan 'phrin las rnam rgyal, 629–630  
*Chosōn Pulgyo yusin non* (Han Yongun), 314  
 Chos rgyal 'Phags pa, 854  
 Christianity and Buddhism, **159–161**, 537–538, 584, 586, 644, 864–865  
 Buddhist studies, 94–95  
 in Japan, 377, 633  
 in Sri Lanka, 797  
 in United States, 869  
 chronicles, 34, 333, 457, 626, 777, 837–838, 877–878  
 chronology. *See also* calendar of Buddha's death, 82  
 in catalogues of scriptures, 116  
 cycles of time, 185  
 for decline of dharma, 210–211  
*chuanqi*, 156  
 Chua Vien Giac, 869  
 Chūgūji, 772  
 Chulalongkorn, King, 546  
 Chula Phatom Chedi, 783  
 Chunbōm, 599  
*Chunqiu zuozhuan*, 172  
 Chuon Nath, 108–109  
*Chu sanzang jiji* (Sengyou), 116  
*Ci'en zhuan* (Huili), 909  
 Cihang, 817  
 Cimin, *Jingtu cibeji*, 707  
 citation, scriptural, and *abhidharma*, 6–7  
 Citra, 232  
*citta*, use of term, 175–176  
 classification  
 in *abhidharma*, 2, 4–5  
 catalogues of scriptures, 116–117, 321  
 of dreams, 238–239  
 of local divinities in Japan, 768–770  
*panjiao*, 95, 321, 342, 345–346, 474  
 of sūtras, 472  
 cleanliness, and monks' robes, 731  
 Clement XII, Pope, 160  
 Clement of Alexandria, 159  
 clerical marriage in Japan, **161–162**, 386, 413, 616–618, 762–763, 766  
 clerical marriage in Tibet, 763  
 cloth, for monks' robes, 731–734  
 clothing. *See* robes and clothing  
 cognition, 915, 917. *See also* logic; perception, theories of  
 Coleman, James William, 867  
 Collcutt, Martin, 732  
 colonialism and Buddhism, 94, 97, 160–161, **162–165**, 169–171, 584–586, 644, 778, 797. *See also* Christianity and Buddhism; communism and Buddhism; modernity and Buddhism; nationalism and Buddhism  
 color, of monks' robes, 731–732  
 commentarial literature, 12, 102, **166–169**, 248, 427, 627–628, 665, 747, 837–838, 877, 889. *See also* *abhidharma*; canon; China; India; scripture; *names of authors*; *titles of works*  
 commentaries. *See* commentarial literature

- Committee for the Reorganization of Chinese Buddhism, 819
- communism and Buddhism, 169–171, 458, 644–646, 839. *See also* modernity and Buddhism; nationalism and Buddhism
- in Cambodia, 109
- in Mongolia, 564–565
- in Tibet, 630, 857–858
- comparative ethics, 263
- comparative religion, 94–95
- compassion. *See* karuṇā (compassion)
- computer technology, 678
- conception, human, 9. *See also* abortion; rebirth
- confession. *See* repentance and confession
- Confucianism and Buddhism, 136, 140, 142, 144–145, 155–156, 158, 172–174, 263, 265, 423, 643, 813–814, 880–881, 928. *See also* syncretic sects: three teachings
- Confucius, 172
- conscientious objectors, 869
- consciousness, theories of, 13, 18–19, 32, 38, 54–56, 175–177, 220–221, 224, 683, 712, 917–919. *See also* anātman/ātman (no-self/self); philosophy; psychology; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda
- consciousness, types of, 175–177
- consecration, 56, 178–181, 375–376. *See also* image consecration; initiation; space, sacred
- contemplation, 549, 647. *See also* meditation
- conversion, 182. *See also* colonialism and Buddhism; ordination
- of Aśoka, 34
- Aśvaghōṣa and, 35
- and discipleship, 231
- of local deities, 466–467, 768
- of residential space to Buddhist space, 550–551
- of Śāriputra and Mahāmaudgalyāyana, 84
- of Westerners, 160–161, 182, 266, 268, 865, 867
- Conze, Edward, 97, 743
- correlation principle, 545
- cosmogram, Bsam yas as, 69
- cosmology, 183–187, 220, 341, 390–391, 465, 468, 711–712, 764, 813. *See also* divinities; realms of existence
- dhyāna, 226–227
- nirvāṇa*, 602–603
- and path, 636–638
- and psychology, 185–186
- and pure lands, 693, 703–706
- councils, Buddhist, 17, 34, 46, 84, 94, 112, 187–188, 232, 301, 353–354, 487, 490, 502–503, 657, 741, 837, 870, 897. *See also* Bsam yas Debate; mainstream Buddhist schools
- Cousins, Lance, 628
- cpāp*, 422
- cremation volumes, Thai, 829
- critical Buddhism, 135, 189, 619, 860
- Csoma de Kőrös, Alexander, 95
- Cui Hao, 173
- Cūla-Rāhulavādasutta*, 711
- Cūlavamsa*, 777
- cultural focus, in Buddhist studies, 95
- Cultural Revolution, Chinese, 142, 170, 325–326, 405, 645, 857–858
- Cunningham, Alexander, 96, 804
- curriculum, in Buddhist schools, 248, 428, 832–833
- ## D
- Da aluohan Nandimiduoluo suo shuo fazhuji*, 30
- dagoba* (*dhātugopas*), 553, 807
- Dahamsoṇḍa kāvya* (Alagiyavanna Mohoṭṭāla), 778
- Dahlke, Paul, 266
- Dahui Pujue chanshi yulu*, 929
- Dahui shuzhuang*, 158
- Daidō Chōan, 531
- Daigoji, 395, 765
- Daijō bussetsu ron hihan* (Murakami Senshō), 573
- Daikakuji, 765
- daimoku*, 93, 191, 413, 596–597, 781
- Dainichi Nōnin, 135
- Dainihon Bukkyōshi* (Murakami Senshō), 573
- Daisaku Ikeda, 781, 866
- Daitokuji, 191, 352, 395
- Daitokuji lineage, 135
- Daizong, 824
- ḍākinī, 192, 306, 486, 583, 743, 763
- Dakkhina, 801
- Da Kürij-e, 327
- Daladāsirita*, 778
- Dalai Lama, 94, 98, 192–195, 216, 326–327, 562–563, 629–630, 663–664, 730, 855–856. *See also* communism and Buddhism
- as Avalokiteśvara, 59, 62, 420, 465
- Fourteenth, 59, 162–163, 170, 170, 171, 359, 410, 420, 645, 669, 688, 858, 893
- Thirteenth, 857
- Dali Kingdom, 152
- Dalits (untouchables), 14
- Dalverzin-tepe, 120
- Damoduoluo chanjing*, 462
- Dam pa Bde gshegs, 701
- dāna* (giving), 196, 229, 245–246, 262, 315, 448, 632, 759, 872
- Dānapāla, 824
- Dansai, 457
- Dantabhūmi-sutta*, 205
- Dao'an, 26, 60, 116, 143, 166, 168, 197, 348, 616. *See also* catalogues of scriptures; commentarial literature
- Ren ben yu sheng jing zhu*, 166
- Zongli zhongjing mulu*, 197
- Daochuo, 212
- Anle ji, 707
- Daode jing*, 198
- Daoism and Buddhism, 140–141, 144–145, 172–173, 197–201, 309, 534, 553, 813–814, 824. *See also* Confucianism and Buddhism; syncretic sects: three teachings
- in Japan, 291–292
- Daoist immortals, and arhats, 30
- Daojiao yishu*, 199
- Daosheng, 166, 201–202, 351, 442
- Daosui, 850
- Daoxin, 599, 708
- Daoxuan, 202, 616, 674, 722
- and “Biographies of Eminent Monks,” 44, 202
- Guang hongming ji*, 202
- Jiaojie xinxue biqiu xinghu luyi*, 265
- Sifenlü shanfan buque xingshichao*, 202
- Xu gaoseng zhuan*, 57, 514–515
- Daoyi (Mazu), 131–132, 134, 202–203, 348, 599
- Mazu yulu*, 202
- Daoyuan, *Jingde chuandeng lu*, 132
- Darani jikkyō*, 727
- Dar ma 'U dum btsan, King, 852
- darśana*, 65, 682
- Dārṣṭāntika school, 6, 177, 505, 754
- Daruma school, 236
- Daśabhūmika-sūtra*, 59, 341
- Daśabhūmikavibhāṣā*, 707
- Dasajātaka*, 422
- Dasheng dayizhang*, 348
- Dasheng qixin lun*. *See* *Awakening of Faith* (*Dasheng qixin lun*)
- Da Tang xiyu ji*, 909
- Da Tang xiyu qiufa gaoseng zhuan* (Yijing), 913
- Datsan Temple, 728

- Davidson, Ronald, 744  
 Daxian Monastery, 816  
 Da Xingshansi, 535  
 Dazangjing, 113–114  
*Dazhidu lun* (Nāgārjuna), 317, 462, 790  
*Da-Zhou kanding zhongjing mulu*, 26, 116  
 Dazu, 119, 338  
 Dbang phyug rdo rje, 418, 488  
 death, 19, 203–204, **203–209**, 307, 468, 601, 662. *See also* abortion; ancestors; funerary culture; intermediate states; self-immolation; suicide  
 of Buddha, 82, 84–85, 92, 287, 489, 542, 601  
 Devadatta and, 214–215  
 as object of meditation, 204–205, 521, 525, 687, 763  
 and rebirth, 712–714  
 De bzhin gshegs pa, 418  
 decline of the dharma, 79, **210–213**, 333–334, 389, 395, 474, 538, 744. *See also* dharma and dharmas and apocrypha, 27–28 and politics, 658–659  
 degenerates, monks as, 568  
 deities. *See* divinities  
 delusion, 685  
 Demiéville, Paul, 70, 96, 98  
 Denison, Ruth, 867–868  
 dependent origination. *See* *pratītyasamutpāda* (dependent origination)  
 Deqing (Hanshan Deqing, Deqing Chengyin), 133, **213**  
*Hanshan dashi mengyou ji*, 213  
 deSilva, Lynn, 21  
 desire, **213–214**, 271, 600, 684–685. *See also* psychology; sexuality  
 as origin of suffering, 296, 416  
 detachment, and asceticism, 33  
*Detailed Biography of the Buddha Śākyamuni*, 439  
 Devadatta, 84, **214–215**, 233, 354, 568  
 in *Lotus Sūtra*, 473  
*Devadhamma-jātaka*, 911  
 Devānampiyatissa, 425, 795  
*devarāja* cult, 106  
*devatā*, 293, 309–310  
*devatārāja*, 820  
 devotional literature, Burmese, 103  
 devotional objects. *See* ritual objects  
 devotional practices, 447, 474, 496–497, 525–527, 620, 653, 882. *See also* ritual  
 Dezong, 824  
 Dga' ldan, 326, 822, 855, 861  
 Dge 'dun chos kyi nyi ma, 629–630  
 Dge 'dun chos 'phel, 857  
 Dge 'dun grub, 193, 629, 855  
 Dge 'dun rgya mtsho, 193, 216  
 Dge lugs (Geluk), 36, 193, **215–216**, 225, 250–251, 324, 371, 418, 562–564, 629, 855–856, 904  
 Dgos lo, 852  
 Dhamma Dena, 868  
*dhammadesanā*, 247  
 Dhammadinnā, 232, 607  
*Dhammapada*, 11, 203, **216–217**, 269, 300, 532, 627  
*Dhammapada-aṭṭhakathā*, 301, 634  
 Dhammapāla, 628  
*dhammasākacchā*, 247  
*Dhammasaṅgaṇī*, 681  
*dhammasat*<sup>5</sup>, 101  
*dhammasavana*, 247  
 Dhamma-yan-gyi, 579  
*dhammayātrā*, 110  
 Dhamma-yazika stūpa, Pagan, 579  
 Dhammayietra peace walk movement, Cambodia, 248  
 Dhammazedī, King, 575  
*dhammiko dhammarāja*, 424  
*Dhampiyātuvā gātapadaya*, 778  
 Dharamsala, 419  
*dhāraṇī*, **217**, 253, 512, 534, 635, 666, 675–676, 717, 722, 821  
 dharma and dharmas, 18–19, 34, 86–87, 111–112, 217–218, **217–224**, 218–220, 424, 637, 647. *See also* *abhidharma*; consciousness, theories of; cosmology; decline of the dharma; psychology; Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda  
 dharma-body, 22, 74, 76–77  
*dharmacakra*, 92  
*Dharmacakrapravartana-sūtra*, 84, 218, 295–296, 353  
 dharma centers, 590  
*dharmaadhātu*, 139, **224–225**, 338, 344, 346  
 Dharma Drum Mountain, 817  
 Dharmagupta, 471  
 Dharmaguptaka, 11, 113, 120, **225**, 300, 368, 503, 506, 616, 674  
*Dharmaguptaka-vinaya*, 668, 742, 887  
*dharmakathā*, 2  
 dharmakāya, 22, 76–78, 764, 827  
 Dharmakīrti, 177, **225**, 230, 371, 420, 452, 470, 852  
*Pramāṇavārttika*, 225  
 Dharmakīrtiśrī, 35  
 Dharmakṣema, 605  
 “dharma meetings,” 819  
 Dharmapāla, King, 797  
 Dharmapāla, 224, 683, 824  
 Dharmapāla Center, Switzerland, 267  
*Dharmapradīpikāva* (Gurulugōmi), 778  
 dharma protectors, 743  
*dharmarāja*, Aśoka as, 34  
 Dharmarakṣa (Zhu Fahu), 146, **225–226**, 471, 776  
 dharmas (factors), 220–221  
 Dharmasēna, *Saddhamaratnāvaliya I*, 778  
 Dharma Sangha of Buddha, 865  
 dharma-scroll, 464  
*Dharmaskandha*, 221  
 Dharmasreṣṭhin,  
*Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra*, 4  
 Dharmasvāmin, 359  
*dharmatā*, 78  
 Dharmatrāta, 221  
*Miśrakābhidharmahṛdayaśāstra*, 4  
*Dharmavinaya*, 218  
 dharmicization, consecration as, 180–181  
 Dharmottarīya, 692  
*dhātu*, 19, 680–681, 715  
*Dhātukāya*, 681  
 dhyāna (trance state), 8, 83, 130, **226–227**, 237, 520, 523, 540–541, 632, 879. *See also* cosmology; psychology; vipassanā  
 dialectic cognitive-behavioral therapy (DBT), 687  
 dialogue  
 and exegesis, 168  
 in *prajñāpāramitā* literature, 667  
*Diamond Sūtra*, 167, **227–228**, 228, 497, 666, 676–677, 811  
 Dibyabajra Bajrācārya, 594  
 diet, 33, 65, **228–229**, 229, 886  
*Dīghanikāya*, 29, 76, 243, 245, 299, 374, 383, 520, 626, 905  
 Dīghavāpi, 801  
 Dignāga, **230**, 451, 470, 915  
*Pramāṇasamuccaya*, 177, 230  
*Dīha*, 75  
 Dilun school, 144, 283, 343, 915  
 Dīpakāra, *Abhidharmadīpa*, 4  
 Dīpaṅkara, 72–73, 85, **230**  
 Dīpaṅkaraśrījñāna. *See* Atisha  
*Dīpavaṃsa*, 95, 607, 626, 777, 795, 877  
*Dīrghāgama*, 11  
 discipleship, categories of, 231  
 disciples of the Buddha, 16–18, 84, **230–233**, 461, 542. *See also* arhat(s); names of disciples

- discourse records, 132  
 discursive structuring, and local  
 divinities, 468  
 Dissanayake, C. S., 448  
 diversity, in early saṅgha, 742  
 divinities, 80, 231, **233–235**, 277, 672,  
 770, 907. *See also* cosmology; folk  
 religion; ghosts and spirits; local  
 divinities and Buddhism; *names of  
 divinities*  
 creation of, 467, 469  
 esoteric, 254–255, 259–260  
 female, 234, 571–572  
 in Kenmitsu Buddhism, 274  
 personal deities, 743  
 as providers of worldly benefits,  
 292–293, 769  
*Divyāvādāna*, 36–37, **235**, 251, 747  
 Dizang, 318–319, 319  
 Dkar brgyud, 48  
 Dkon mchog rgyal po, 751  
 Doàn Trung Cộn, 884  
 doctrinal differences  
 and *abhidharma*, 5–7  
 and first schism, 502–503  
 doctrine. *See abhidharma*; dharma and  
 dharmas  
 Dōgen (Kigen), 22, 135, **235–236**, 387,  
 413, 428, 500, 569, 850  
*Shōbōgenzō*, 135, 236, 734, 771–772  
 Dōhan, 765  
 Dōjōji, 395  
 Dōkyō, **236–237**, 582–583  
 Dol bu pa Shes rab rgyal mtshan, 854  
 Dol po pa, 484  
 Dong Duong, 784  
 Dongshan Liangjie, 131, 344  
 donor portraits, 662–663  
 Dorville, Albert, 663  
 doubt, **237–238**, 428. *See also* meditation;  
 psychology  
 Dōva Rajamahāvihāra, 801  
 doxography, 95  
 Dpa’ bo Gtsug lag phreng ba, 856  
 Dpal khor chos sde, Gyantse, 326  
 Dpal yul, 856  
 Dragon Flower Sect (Longhua Pai), 291  
 drama, 156, 251, 748  
 dreams, 238–239, **238–239**, 376, 394,  
 429, 917. *See also bodhi*  
 (awakening); psychology  
 Du Fu, 173  
 duḥkha (suffering), 18, 23, 203, **239–240**,  
 249, 262, 269, 296, 520, 679–680,  
 889. *See also* death; psychology  
 Duluosi, 151  
 Dunhuang, 118, 123, 125, 147, 149, 149,  
 150–151, 153, **240**, 252, 254–255,  
 318, 319, 338, 551, 552, 662, 677,  
 694, 705, 705, 775, 789  
 manuscript cache, 26, 28, 43, 97, 99, 155,  
 228, 240, 454, 744, 811, 899–900  
 Dunhuang Research Institute, 148  
*Dunwu dasheng zhengli jue*, 70  
 Durt, Hubert, 759  
 Dus gsum mkhyen pa, 48, 417, 465, 855  
 Dushun (Fashun), *Fajie guanmen*, 342  
*duṣkaracaryā*, 83  
 Dutt, Nalinaksha, 97  
 Duṭṭhagāmaṇī, 425  
*dvārapālas*, 572  
 Dvāravatī, 782, 830  
 Dwags po Bka’ brgyud, 853  
 Dwags po Sgom tshul, 48
- ## E
- “early Buddhism,” 492–493  
 East Asia, 93, 252–257, 287–288, 454,  
 461, 481, 823. *See also names of  
 countries*  
 East Asia, Buddhist art in, 30–31  
 Eastern Europe, Buddhism in, 267  
 Eastern Thousand Buddha Caves, 118  
 eccentrics, monks as, 567–568  
 economics, **243–246**, 357, 547–548,  
 872–873  
 Edgerton, Franklin, 97, 745  
 education, 164, 247, **247–248**, 248,  
 427–428, 609, 832–833, 839. *See also*  
 monasticism  
 egalitarianism, 154  
 Egyal mtshan nor bu, 630  
 eight consciousnesses, 918–919  
 eightfold path. *See* path  
 Eight Great Events, 570  
 eight schools (*hasshū*), 412  
 Eiheiji, 236, 413  
 Eikū, 336  
 Eisai, 22, 413, 500  
 Eison, 414, 500  
 Eizon, 765  
*Ekottarāgama*, 11, 466, 711  
 elephant, symbolism of, 89  
 elitism, Chan school and, 136  
 Ellorā, 117, 365, 508, 789  
 Emei, 553  
 empowerment, consecration as, 181  
 emptiness. *See* sūnyatā (emptiness)  
 emptiness image (*sūnyatābimbam*), 409  
 Enchin, 131, 273, 475  
 Endere, 125  
 engaged Buddhism, 14, 75, 110, 165,  
**248–249**, 263–264, 314, 598,  
 818–819, 835, 844–845, 868, 881, 913  
 Engakuji, 924  
 England, as colonial power, 163  
 enlightenment. *See bodhi* (awakening)  
 Ennin (Jikaku Daishi), **249–250**, 273,  
 475, 708  
 En-no-Gyōja (En-no-Ozunu), 773  
 En no Ubasoku, 447  
 Enryakuji, 250, 272–274, 336, 388, 737  
 entertainment and performance, 43, 100,  
 154, 156, 250, **250–252**, 251, 309.  
*See also jātaka*  
 “entrance by practice,” 57  
 “entrance by principle,” 57  
 epistemology, Buddhist, 177  
 Erdeni Zuu, 327, 563, 564, 565  
 Eshinryū, 307  
 esoteric architecture, 256  
 esoteric art, East Asia, **252–257**  
 esoteric art, South and Southeast Asia,  
**257–261**, 258  
 esoteric Buddhism, 236–237, 339,  
 389–390, 429, 441–442, 555, 577,  
 620, 632, 727–729, 764–765,  
 770–771, 790–791, 850. *See also*  
 exoteric-esoteric (Kenmitsu)  
 Buddhism in Japan; Mijiao  
 (esoteric) school; Tantra; Vajrayāna  
 eternalism, 479, 648  
 ethics, 54–56, **261–264**, 263–264, 637,  
 648–649. *See also* engaged  
 Buddhism  
 etiquette, **265–266**, 286, 523, 653–654  
 Europe, **266–268**. *See also* Buddhist  
 studies  
 European Buddhist Union, 268  
 Evans-Wentz, Walter Yeeling, 859, 868  
 evil, **269–271**, 850  
 E waṃ Chos ldan, 752  
 examination system  
 in China, 173–174  
 in Korea, 432  
 in Vietnam, 881  
 exegesis, 4–7, 167–169, 320–321, 757. *See  
 also abhidharma*  
 existence, 183–184, 220–221. *See also*  
 cosmology; realms of existence;  
 rebirth; sentient beings  
 exoteric-esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism  
 in Japan, **271–275**, 388, 400,  
 414–415, 770, 815  
 experience, 5–6, 51–52, 529–530, 847. *See  
 also* enlightenment

expression, and Chan art, 127–129  
 expulsion, of monks or nuns. *See*  
 monastic discipline; precepts; vinaya  
 extrasensory perception, 684

## F

*fa*, 218  
 Fachang, 903  
 Faguang, 818  
 Faguo, 425  
 Fahaisi, 153  
 Fahua, 816  
*Fahua lun* (Vasubandhu), 471  
*Fahua sanmei chanyi* (Zhiyi), 722–723  
*Fahua wenju* (Zhiyi), 927  
*Fahua xuanyi* (Zhiyi), 927  
 faith, 277–279, 766. *See also* Pure Land  
 Buddhism; Pure Lands  
*Fajie guanmen* (Dushun), 342  
 Famensi, 253–254, 256, 279–280, 719  
 family, Buddhism and the, 161–162,  
 280–281, 287, 356, 582, 589, 633,  
 678, 762. *See also* buddha families;  
 laity; monasticism  
 family religion, 289  
*Fanwang jing* (*Brahmā's Net Sūtra*), 27,  
 59, 167, 229, 281–282, 500, 609,  
 675, 896  
*Fanwang jing pusa jie shu* (Faxian), 166  
 fashion. *See* robes and clothing  
 fasting. *See* ascetic practices  
 Fatian, 824  
 Faure, Bernard, 179  
 Fausbøll, Viggo, 96, 217  
 Faxian, 49, 72, 121, 215, 233, 282–283,  
 358, 360, 462, 642, 652–653, 717,  
 723, 776, 795  
*Fanwang jing pusa jie shu*, 166  
*Faxian zhuan*, 283  
 Faxiang (Hossō) school, 224, 283,  
 283–284, 337, 411, 441, 582, 915  
*Faxian zhuan* (Faxian), 283  
 Fayan (monk), 344  
 Fayan house of Chan school, 132, 134  
 Fayan Wenyi, 132  
 Fayao, *Nirvāṇa Sūtra*, 166  
 Fayaz-tepe, 120  
*Fayuan yilin zhang* (Kuiji), 283  
 Fayun, 167–168  
 Fayun Chan Monastery, 213, 817  
 Fazang, 139, 150, 167, 282, 284, 321, 338,  
 341, 343–344, 346, 441, 827, 849,  
 863–864, 904  
*Huayen wujiao zhang*, 284  
*Jin shizi zhang*, 343

Fazhao, 700  
 Feer, Léon, 96  
 Fei Changfang, *Lidai sanbao ji*, 116–117  
 Feilaifeng, 153  
 Fengguosi, 151, 552  
 Fengxian, 338, 471  
 Fenollosa, Ernest, 377, 865  
 Fergusson, James, 96  
 fertility cults, 761  
 festivals and calendrical rituals, 284–288,  
 286, 374, 559, 596, 623, 654, 833.  
*See also* Ghost Festival; pilgrimage  
 Buddha's birthday, 286–287, 434  
 Great Prayer festival (Lhasa), 861  
*mukaekō*, 701  
 New Year, 441, 533, 835, 867, 882  
 Thet Mahachat, 891  
 Thin-gyan, 576  
 Ullambana, 310, 882  
*Vessantara-jātaka*, 838–839, 843  
*via* day, 882  
 Visākha Pūjā, 833  
 Wesak, 838–839  
 Wōnbulgyo, 903  
 fiction, 156, 397, 439–440. *See also*  
 drama; storytelling  
 “field of merit” (*puṇyakṣetra*; *futian*;  
*fukuden*), 532, 715  
*Fihrist* (Ibn al-Nadīm), 381  
 filial piety (*xiao*), 27, 140, 282, 289, 308,  
 439, 446  
*First Bhāvanākrama* (Kamalaśīla), 521  
 Fitzgerald, Timothy, 547  
 five, eight, and ten precepts, 673  
 “Five Mountain and Ten Monasteries”  
 network, 133  
 Five Mountain (Gozan) Zen network,  
 678  
 five paths paradigm, 639  
 Fleet, J. F., 97  
*Fodi jing lun*, 168  
 Fogong, 552  
 Foguangsi, 150  
 Foguo, 338  
 Fo Kuang Shan, 816, 817–818, 818  
 Foladi, 118  
 folk art, in China, 146  
 “folk Buddhism,” 291, 813  
 “folk intellectuals,” 813  
 folklore. *See* folk religion; *jātaka*;  
 storytelling  
 folk religion, 288–289, 468. *See also*  
 ghosts and spirits; local divinities  
 and Buddhism

folk religion, China, 145–146, 290–291.  
*See also* Confucianism and  
 Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism  
 folk religion, Japan, 291–293, 540. *See  
 also* local divinities and Buddhism;  
 Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Shintō  
 (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism  
 folk religion, Southeast Asia, 293–295,  
 301–302. *See also* ghosts and spirits;  
 local divinities and Buddhism  
 folktales, 593, 761–762, 812, 843. *See also  
 jātaka*  
 footprint, of Buddha, 231, 788, 800, 906  
 forest monks. *See* wilderness monks  
 Forte, Antonino, 98  
*Foshuo huangji jieguo baojuan*, 813  
 Fotudeng, 251  
 Foucher, Alfred, 96, 100, 366  
 Foulk, T. Griffith, 129  
 founders, of lineages, 22, 461, 662  
 Four Beneficences, 903  
 fourfold assembly, 355  
 four great authorities, 111  
 Four Great Kings, 309–310  
 Four Heavenly Kings, 772  
 four immeasurables, 649  
 four noble persons, 28–29, 638  
 four noble truths, 51, 76, 84, 92, 186,  
 203, 239–240, 295–298, 518, 520,  
 636–638, 648, 669  
 four pāramitās, 632  
*Four Part Vinaya*, 616–617  
 four paths, 28–29  
 four refuges, 111  
 four sights, 85  
 Four Transmissions, 583  
*Fozu tongji*, 464  
 France  
 Asian refugees in, 267  
 as colonial power, 109, 163, 881  
 Franke, R. O., 87  
 Frauwallner, Erich, 98  
 Freer Gallery, Washington, D.C., 694  
 Free Tibet movement, United States, 249  
 Friends of the Western Buddhist Order,  
 268, 744  
 fruitional vehicle (*phalayāna*), Vajrayāna  
 as, 875–876  
 Frykenberg, Robert, 333  
 Fudō Myōō, 253, 773  
*Fu fazang yinyuan zhuan*, 462  
 Fugai Ekun, 126  
 Fujian, King, 430  
 Fujiwara Yorimichi, 650  
*fuju fuse* movement, 598



- Fukuda Gyōkai, 531  
*Fumu enzhong jing*, 27  
 Funan, 105  
 funeral, of Buddha, 86, 205–206  
 funerary culture, 20, 206–209, 468, 633, 662, 701, 713–714, 859  
 funerary ritual. *See* memorial rites  
 Furong Daokai, 569  
 Furukaka Rōsen, 531
- G**
- Gadalādeniya, 799  
 Gadamer, Hans-Georg, 321  
 Gadjin Nagao, 97  
*gahapati*, 245, 547–548  
*Gaki zoshi*, 319  
 Gal Vihāra, 802  
 Gama, Vasco da, 160, 163  
*gaṇacakra*, 820  
 Gandantegchinling, 565  
*Gaṇḍavyūha-sūtra*, 338, 341, 403  
*gandhakuṭṭis*, 12  
 Gandhāra, 61, 72, 80, 90, 100, 120–121, 230, 363–368, 380, 493, 805. *See also* India, Northwest  
 Gandhāra recensions of  
*Abhidharmahṛdaya*, 7  
 Gāndhārī, Buddhist literature in, 299–300, 776  
*Gāndhārī Dharmapada*, 299  
*gandharvas*, 204, 234, 310, 378, 712  
 Gangōji, 772  
 Ganjin (Jianzhen), 301, 499–500, 617, 662, 674, 850  
 Gansu, 147  
*ganying*, 543  
 Gaochang, 124–125, 147  
 Gaofeng Yuanmiao, 133, 278  
*Gaoseng zhuan*, 44, 47  
 Gaozong, Emperor, 471, 658  
 Gaozu, Emperor, 173  
*Garbhāvākṛāntinirdeśa-sūtra*, 378  
*garuḍa*, 467  
*Gasshō*, 265  
*gati*, 711  
 Gauḍapāda, *Āgamaśāstra*, 331  
 Gautama Buddha. *See* Buddha  
 Gavāṃpati, 301–302  
*Gayā-mahātmya*, 890  
 Gellner, David, 744  
 Geluk. *See* Dge lugs (Geluk)  
 gender, 56, 62, 64, 112, 302–304, 302–306, 473, 547. *See also* body, perspectives on the; men; sexuality; women  
*Genji monogatari* (Lady Murasaki), 397  
 Genjū, 904  
 Genkai, *Tō daiwajō tōsei den*, 301  
 Genshin (Eshin *Sōzu*), 307, 697, 702  
*Ōjōyōshū*, 307  
 gentry Buddhism, 141, 174, 447  
*genze riyaku*, 292  
 geography, sacred, 407–408, 790–792. *See also* space, sacred  
   pure lands, 14–15, 77, 187, 315–316, 693, 696, 697, 703–706, 739, 790  
 geopiety, 793  
 Germany, Buddhism in, 267–268  
 Gernet, Jacques, 900  
 Geshe Wangyal, 868  
 gesture, 265–266. *See also* mudrā  
 Ghaṇṭasālā, 363  
 Ghost Festival, 20–21, 287, 307–309, 308, 319, 447, 487–488. *See also* ghosts and spirits; hells  
   in China, 209, 723  
   in Japan, 307, 308, 309, 633  
 ghosts and spirits, 208–209, 309–310  
   in China, 290–291  
   hungry ghosts, 206, 309–310, 319, 468, 487, 819  
   in Japan, 292, 544  
   in Southeast Asia, 294  
   in Taiwan, 819  
 Gilgit, 367–368  
 Gimello, Robert, 638  
 Ginkakuji, 556  
 Ginsberg, Allen, 924  
 Giovanni de Montecorino, 160  
 Giovanni de Piano Carpini, 160  
 Giovanni Marignolli, 160  
 Glassman, Bernard, 248, 868  
 Gling rje ras pa Padma rdo rje, 49  
 God. *See* divinities  
 Goddard, Dwight, 866  
 Goenka, 591  
 Gogerly, D. J., 164  
 Gokhale, B. G., 424  
 Goldstein, Joseph, 867  
 Goldstein, Melvyn, 194, 629  
 Gomyō, 904  
*gong'an*. *See* kōan  
*gongde*, 532  
 Gongxian, 119, 148, 551  
 Gopadatta, 402  
 Go ram pa, 484  
 Goryū Shintō, 400  
*Gotamī-apadma*, 489  
 Goṭhābhaya, 644  
 Government Museum Chennai (Madras, India), 806  
 Govinda, 268  
 Gozan network, 135  
 grace, and *bodhicitta*, 56  
 Grags pa rgyal mtshan, 751, 753, 854  
 Gra thang monastery, 508  
 Great Perfection tradition, 379  
 “great renunciation,” 90  
 Green, Paula, 248  
 Gregory, Peter, 269  
 Grimm, Georg, 266  
 Grousset, René, 122  
*grub mtha'*, 95  
 Grueber, Johannes, 663  
 Gshen chen klu dga', 67  
 Gshen rab mi bo, 67  
 Gter bdag gling pa, 730  
 Gtsang pa rgya ras Ye shes rdo rje, 49  
 Guanding, 167, 462  
*Guang hongming ji* (Daoxuan), 202  
 Guan Gong, 291  
*Guan Wuliangshou jing*, 694, 699–701, 707  
 Guanxiu, 30–31, 151  
 Guanyin, 59, 61–63, 147, 151–153, 234, 290–291, 420. *See also* Avalokiteśvara  
 guardian images, 572  
 Gueth, Anton W. F. (Nyanatiloka), 266  
 Guhyamantrayāna, 875  
*Guhyasamāja-tantra*, 56, 747, 821, 823, 862, 876  
 Guiyang house of Chan school, 132  
*Guiyuan zhizhi*, 884  
*Gukanshō* (Jien), 335  
 Gul dara, 805  
*Guṇakaraṇḍavyūha*, 593, 748  
*guoyu*, 156  
 Gupta rulers, 364–365, 550, 807  
 Gupta style, 802, 807  
 guru, 36, 450  
 guru devotion, 672  
*gurudharma*, 607  
 Gurulugōmi  
   *Amāvatura*, 778, 796  
   *Dharmapradīpikāva*, 778  
 Gurunanda, *Samavati e\* tac' bhava saṃsarā*, 103  
 Gushri Khan, 563  
 Gyer sgom Tshul khriims seng ge, 49  
 Gyōgi, 708  
 Gyōki, 411, 499  
 Gyōnen, 310–311, 414  
   *Hashhū kōyō*, 311, 345  
   *Sangoku buppō denzū engi*, 335  
 Gyōsin, 904

- H**
- Hachiman, 237, **313**, 393, 394, 769
- Haeinsa, 434, 554, 676
- Haesimilgyōng so* (Wōnch'ūk), 903
- Haihui, 816
- hair, 79–80, 303, **313**
- Hajime Nakamura, 33
- Hakamaya Noriaki, 189
- Hakuin Ekaku, 79, 135, 205, **313–314**, 428, 683
- Zazen wasan*, 705
- Halifax, Joan, 248
- Hana matsuri, 287
- hanging scrolls, 323–324, 395, 438, 509–510. *See also* manuscripts; *thang ka*
- Hanoi, 585
- Hanseikai, 531
- Hanshan, 127
- Hanshan dashi mengyou ji* (Deqing), 213
- Han Yongun (Manhae), 134, **314**
- Chosōn Pulgyo yusin non*, 314
- Nim ūi chimmuk*, 314, 440
- Pulgyo taejōn*, 314
- Han Yu, 173–174, 718
- Lun Fogu biao*, 759
- Haribhadra, 78, 384
- Haribhaṭṭa, 402
- Harihara, 106
- Hārītī, 289, 762
- Harsha, King, 658
- Hasshū kōyō* (Gyōnen), 311, 345
- Hayes, Richard, 485
- Heart Sūtra* (*Prajñāpāramitāhṛdaya-sūtra*), 137, 167, **314–315**, 666, 757, 821, 882
- heavens, 184, **315–316**. *See also* cosmology; hells
- Heian Buddhism, 271, 386–388, 411–415, 555–556, 764–765
- Heike Nōkyō, 811
- hells, 62, 176, 184, 290, **316–317**, 317, 351. *See also* cosmology; heavens
- hells, images of, 316–317, 317, **318–320**
- Hem Rāj Shākya, 594
- hermeneutics, 6–7, 93–94, 167, **320–321**, 329, 345–346, 451–452, 638, 855, 871
- Hermitage Museum, Saint Petersburg, Russia, 151, 254
- Heruka, 820
- Heshang Moheyan, 484
- Hevajra Tantra*, 562, 751
- Heze Shenhui, 347
- “hidden texts.” *See* treasure texts
- Hie shrine, 771
- Himalayas, Buddhist art in, 13–14, **322–327**. *See also* Central Asia, Buddhist art in; India, Buddhist art in; monastic architecture; Mongolia; Nepal; Tibet
- Hīnayāna, 300, **328**, 492–496, 750, 840. *See also* mainstream Buddhist schools
- Hinduism and Buddhism, 189, **328–332**, 410, 415–416, 518–519, 842
- in Cambodia, 42, 106–107, 783
- in India, 356, 358–359, 364, 369, 380–381, 550, 641–642
- in Indonesia, 371–372, 784
- in Java, 785
- in Nepal, 593
- in Sri Lanka, 287, 796–797
- Hinduization, 381
- Hirakawa Akira, 100, 497
- Hirata Atsutane, 767
- Hisamatsu Shin'ichi, 924
- historical sources, for life of Buddha, 82–83
- historicity*, use of term, 332
- historiography*, use of term, 332
- history, **332–335**. *See also* chronicles
- Hizōki* (Kūkai), 255
- hō*, 218
- Hoa Hao movement (Vietnam), 245
- Hodgson, Brian Houghton, 96–97, 592
- hoguk pulgyo*, 432
- holistic Buddhism, 430
- “holy fool,” 567
- homiletics, 167, 427, 474
- homosexuality, 763–764
- Hōnen (Genku), 22, **336**, 387, 395, 412–413, 643, 766, 850. *See also* nenbutsu; Pure Land schools
- Senchaku hongan nenbutsu shū*, 336, 708
- hongaku*, use of term, 619
- Honganji, 720, 766
- Hongbian, 662
- Hongch'ōk, 599
- Hongren, 130, 348, 543
- Hongzhi Chengjue, 133, 569
- Hongzhou, 202
- honji suijaku*, 274, **337**, 769–770. *See also* Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism
- honmatsu* system, 386
- Honmon Hokkeshū, 598
- Honzan-ha, 773
- honzon*, 597
- Hōryūji and Tōdaiji, 236, 273, 301, 310–311, **337**, 340, 345, 388, 393, 393, 395, 554, 554–555, 582, 658, 676, 678, 765, 769, 772
- Hossō school. *See* Faxiang (Hossō) school
- houses, Chan (*ja*), 132
- Hpo-win-daung, 579
- hṛdaya-mantra*, 512
- Hsi Lai Temple, 869
- Huadu, 745, 873
- Huahu jing*, 198, 200
- Huaihai, 131
- Huairang, 202
- Huangbo Xiyun, 132
- Huang Tingjian, 405
- Huang Xiufu, 31
- Huayan art, **337–340**
- Huayan jing* (*Avatamsaka-sūtra*), 150, 167, 187, 284, 321, 337–340, **340–341**, 341–343, 346–347, 374, 650, 775, 810, 849
- Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao* (Chengguan), 139
- Huayan lun* (Li Tongxuan), 157–158
- Huayan (Kegon, Hwaōm) school, 99, 321, 337, **341–347**, 619, 700, 810, 827, 904, 928. *See also* Huayan art and Chan school, 132, 134 and *Dasheng qixin lun*, 38–39 and *dharmadhātu*, 224–225 in Japan, 310–311, 411, 582 key texts, 341, 374 in Korea, 431, 650, 863–864 and lineage, 342–344 origins, 141, 144, 150 patriarchs, 139, 284 and Tiantai school, 849
- Huayansi, Upper and Lower, 152
- Huayen wujiao zhang* (Fazang), 284
- Huayu ji, 913
- Huber, Toni, 407
- Huiguo, 825
- Huihong, 132
- Huijiao, and “Biographies of Eminent Monks,” 44
- Huikou, 441
- Huili, *Ci'en zhuan*, 909
- Huineng, 53, 127, 130–131, 227, 334, **347–348**, 463, 655, 662, 665
- Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch* (*Liuzu tan jing*), 130–131, 134, 157
- Huirui, 442
- Huisi, 462, 772, 845, 850
- Huiwen, 462, 845
- Hūiyangsan, 599
- Huiyuan, 197, 201, 346, **348**, 693, 700, 702
- Kanding ji*, 343
- Huizhao, 167, 283

- Hülegü, 380  
 human being, Buddha as, 80. *See also* sentient beings  
 humanistic Buddhism, 263–264, 913  
 “human revolution,” 781  
 human sacrifice, 294  
 Humphreys, Christmas, 267  
 Höngdök Monastery, 677  
 Huot Tath, 108–109  
 Hu Shih, 99  
 Huviṣkapura, 322  
 Hwangnyongsa, 431, 436  
*Hwaõm ilsüing pöpkye to* (Üisang), 344, 863–864  
 Hwaõm school. *See* Huayan school  
*Hyakumantõ darani*, 676  
 Hyech’öl, 599, 825  
 Hyegwan, 481  
 Hyeja, 772  
 Hyesim (Chin’gak *kuksa*), 158, **349**, 428  
 Hyeün, 599  
 Hyönjong, King, 432  
*Hyönjõng non* (Kihwa), 423  
 Hyönuk, 599  
 Hyujõng (Ch’õnghõ taesa, Sõsan taesa, Ch’oe Hyõnõng), 134, **349–350**, 433  
*Sõn’ga kwigam*, 349
- I
- Ibn al-Faqīh, 380  
 Ibn al-Nadīm  
*Fihrist*, 381  
 Ibn Baṭṭūṭa, 381  
*icchantika*, 284, **351**, 606, 827  
 iconoclasm  
 and Chan art, 127, 129  
 in Islam, 640  
 in Zoroastrianism, 642  
 iconography and icons. *See* bodhisattva images; Buddha images  
 idealism, 176  
 identity, and lineage, 461  
 Ikeda Daisaku, 661  
 Ikkyū Sōjun, 351  
 image consecration, 392–393, 716, 789  
 Imagit Kōsen, 924  
 immigration, of Asian Buddhists to Europe, 267–268. *See also* refugees  
 Imperial Household Agency, Tokyo, Japan, 31  
 impermanence. *See* anitya (impermanence)  
 Inari, 769  
 India, 33–34, 95–98, 117–118, 166, **352–359**, 549–550, 642–643, 775–776. *See also* India, Buddhist art in; India, Northwest; India, South  
 India, Buddhist art in, 13–14, 61, **360–366**. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art; India; India, Northwest; India, South  
 India, Northwest, **366–368**, 367. *See also* India; India, Buddhist art in; India, South  
 India, South, **369–370**, 574. *See also* India; India, Buddhist art in; India, Northwest  
 Indianization, 105, 421, 829  
 Indian Museum, Calcutta, 362  
 Indo-Āryans, 352  
 Indonesia, Buddhist art in, 68, 260, **372–374**, 784–786. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art; Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula; Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in  
 Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula, **370–372**, 644–645, 782. *See also* Indonesia, Buddhist art in; Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in  
 Indra, 184, 289, 330, **374–375**  
 Indra’s net, 347, 374  
*indriya*, 51  
 “inexhaustible storehouses,” 745, 872–873  
 inference, theory of, 225, 230, 451–452, 470  
 Ingen Ryūki (Yinyuan Longqi), **375**  
 initiation, **375–376**, 388, 409, 771, 820, 876. *See also* Tantra  
 inner alchemy, 200  
 Inner Asia. *See* Mongolia; Tibet  
 Inoue Enryō, **377**, 531  
 inscriptions, 12, 72, 83, 101, 106, 113, 120–122, 299, 302, 368, 371, 421, 457, 493–494, 588, 614, 740, 777, 782, 784, 795, 800, 828  
 of Aśoka, 97, 182, 355, 362, 366–367, 625, 651  
 placed in hollow images, 394, 662, 716–717  
 Insight Meditation Society, 867  
 insignias, robes as, 732–734  
 Intaravehan Temple, Bangkok, 834  
 intentionality, 9–10, 320–321, 546, 681–683, 872, 917–918  
 in Jainism, 383  
 interdependence, and impermanence, 23  
 intermediate states, 18–19, 21–22, 204, **377–379**, 504, 712. *See also* cosmology; death; rebirth  
 international Buddhism, 50, 248–249, 266–268, 448, 608–610. *See also* names of organizations  
 internationalization, of Chan school, 133–136  
 International Network of Engaged Buddhists, Thailand, 248, 835  
 internment, of Japanese Americans during World War II, 866  
 Inter-Religio network, 161  
 intersubjectivity, and Tiantai school, 846  
 interview  
 of ordinand, 615  
 Zen use of, 529  
*Inwanggyõng so* (Wõnch’ük), 903  
 Iõm, 599  
 Ippen Chishin, **380**, 395, 412–413, 709  
 Iran, 642  
 Iriya Yoshitaka, 99  
*I-ro-ha uta*, 397  
*Irwõnsang*, 903  
 Iryõn (Kim Kyõnmyõng), 738  
 Ise shrine, 771, 793–794  
 Ishihara Kanji, 162  
 Ishii Yoneo, 831  
 Islam and Buddhism, 121–122, 358, 372, **380–381**, 410, 640–643, 785  
 Islamization, 381, 776  
 Isurumuniya Monastery, 802  
 Itum Bāhā, 590  
 Ivolginski Datsan Temple, 138  
 Izikowitz, Karl, 458
- J
- Jackson, David, 753  
 Jaggayyapeṭa, 363  
 Jago, 374  
 Jainism and Buddhism, 33, 80, 329, **383–384**, 415–416  
 Jakarta, Indonesia, 371  
 Jambhala, 373  
 ’Jam dbyang Blo gter dbang po, 857  
 ’Jam dbyang Mkyhen brtse’i dbang po, 857  
 ’Jam dpal (Jampel) rgya mtsho, 194  
 James, William, 924  
 Jamsarano, 564  
 Jamyang Choling Institute, Dharamsala, 608  
 Jāṅguli, 820  
 Japan, 43, 191, 252–253, 319, 321, 335, 337, 340, **384–391**, 460, 643–644, 828, 896. *See also* Chan art; esoteric art, East Asia; exoteric-esoteric

- (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Heian Buddhism; Japan, Buddhist art in; Kamakura Buddhism, Japan; Mahāyāna precepts in Japan; Meiji Buddhist reform; Nara Buddhism; Pure Land art; Pure Land schools; Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism; temple system in Japan
- and abortion, 9–10, 533, 544
- and Buddhist studies, 95–97, 99–100, 311, 386, 413–415, 573–574, 860
- Buddhist texts, 26, 116, 676–677, 811
- Chan (Zen) school in, 134–136
- and Confucianism, 172
- decline of the dharma, 212–213
- Faxiang (Hossō) school in, 283–284
- folk religion, 291–293, 540
- Ghost Festival, 287–288, 307, 309
- Huayan (Kegon) school in, 345
- laity, 385–386, 388–389, 447–448, 531
- martial arts, 516–518
- monastic architecture, 554–556
- monks, 161, 236–237, 380, 404
- ordination, 499–500, 616–618, 674, 714
- and Pure Land Buddhism, 699–700, 708–709
- religious practices, 21–22, 90, 534, 561, 718, 726–727
- sacred space, 208, 788–794
- and Shingon Buddhism, 764–765
- and Taiwan, 816–817
- Tantra in, 825
- Tiantai (Tendai) school, 850
- Japan, Buddhist art in, **391–396**
- Japanese, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in, **396–398**. *See also* Chinese, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in; poetry and Buddhism
- Japanese royal family and Buddhism, **398–400**. *See also* Meiji Buddhist reform
- Japanization, 767
- jātaka*, 25, 32, 46, 59, 86, 102, 230, 251, 264, **400–401**, 422, 430–431, 495, 532, 593, 627–628, 734, 829, 842–843, 890–891. *See also* *avadāna*
- jātaka*, illustrations of, 46–47, 80–81, 88, 118, **401–402**, 842–843. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art; *jātaka* in Central Asia, 123–124
- in China, 146–147
- in India, 362, 365
- in Myanmar, 579
- Jātakamālā* (Āryaśūra), 32, 401–402, **402**, 748
- Jātakamidāna*, 86
- Jāṭṭakatthavaṇṇanā*, 627
- Java, 68, 371–372, 785
- Jayabahu Dharmakīrti, *Nikāyasamgrahaya*, 777
- Jayavarman II, King, 106, 425
- Jayavarman V, King, 106
- Jayavarman VI, King, 106
- Jayavarman VII, King, 106–107, 783
- Jayhāni, *Kitāb al-masālik*, 380
- Jetāri, 35
- Jetavana Monastery, 18, 644, 796, 801
- Jetavana school, 795
- Jetavanīyas, 506
- Jet Tammān*, 634
- “Jewel in the Lotus,” 613
- jewels, **403**, 424, 450, 715, 717. *See also* Indra’s net
- jhāna*, 226–227. *See also* dhyāna (trance state)
- jiangjing wen*, 155
- Jianzhen. *See* Ganjin
- Jiaojie xinxue biqiu xinghu luyi* (Daoxuan), 265
- jielü*, 263
- Jien, *Gukanshō*, 335
- Jigoku zoshi*, 319
- ’jigs med gling pa, 730, 856
- Jimingsi, 551
- Jinakālamālī*, 877–878
- Jinakālamālinī* (Ratanapañña), 628
- Jinakālamālpakaraṇa*, 832
- Jin’gangbei* (Zhanran), 849, 925
- Jin’gang keyi*, 813
- Jin’gang sanmei jing*, 27
- Jingde chuandeng lu* (Daoyuan), 132, 427
- jinglu*, 116–117
- Jingmai, 909
- Jingtu cibeiji* (Cimin), 707
- Jingtu lun*, 707
- Jingwan, 677
- Jingying Huiyuan, 167
- Jin shizi zhang* (Fazang), 343
- Jinshui Jingyuan, 863
- Jintasi, 147
- Ji school, 709
- Jishū school, 380, 412
- Jiuhua mountain, 553
- Jiun Onkō (Jiun Sonja), **404**
- Bongaku shinryō*, 404
- Jūzen hōgo*, 404
- Jīvaka Komārabhacca, 519
- jīvitendriya*, 203–204
- Jizang, 144, 167, 481
- jizoku*, use of term, 161
- jhāna*, 523, 632, 683
- Jñānagupta, 471
- Jñānaprasthāna* (Katyāyanīputra), 166, 220
- Jōdo Shinshū, 10, 22, 79, 279, 414, 531–532, 544, 573–574, 617, 699, 708–709, 720, 766
- in West, 267, 865–866
- Jōdo Shinshū school, 412
- Jōdoshū, 336, 412, 699
- Jog Muni Vajrācārya, 594
- Jōjitsu (Chengshi) school, 411, 582
- Jōkei, 414
- Jo khang, 326, **404–405**, 851, 854, 857
- Jo nang pa, 827, 854, 856
- Jo nang Tārānātha, 95, 575, 856
- Jōruriji, 706
- Jotipāla, 628
- Juefan (Huihong), **405–406**
- Jueshe, 819
- Jūhukka-in, 696
- Juhōyōjin shū* (Shinjō), 815
- ’Ju Mi pham, 857
- Jung, Carl G., 686
- Junnin, Emperor, 237
- Juqu Mengxun, 147
- “just war,” 894–896
- Jūzen hōgo* (Jiun Onkō), 404

## K

- Kabūl Shāh, 380
- Kachai (Mahakachai, Sangkachai), 302
- Kaḍavādduvē Jinavaṃsa, 898
- Kagyū. *See* Bka’ brgyud (Kagyū)
- Kaḥ tog rig ’dzin Tshe dbang nor bu, 856
- kaidan*, 598
- Kailāśa (Kailash), **407–408**, 408, 654, 654
- Kaiyuan shijiao lu* (Zhisheng), 26, 116
- Kajisan, 599
- Kakka, 772
- Kakrak, 118
- Kakuban, 765, 790, 825
- Kakūju, 765
- Kakukai, 765
- Kakuryo Nishijima, 865
- Kakuzen, 414
- Kālacakra*, 204, 373–374, 381, **408–410**
- kālacakra* system, 87
- Kālacakra Tantra*, 511, 747
- Kalasan, 372
- Kalīla wa-Dimna*, 380
- Kalpanāmaṇḍitikā Dṛṣṭāntapaṅkti* (Kumārālāta), 37

- kalpas*, 538
- Kamakura Buddhism, Japan, 271–274, 386–388, **411–415**, 412, 556, 594–597, 765, 770, 850. *See also* Chan (Zen, Sōn) school; exoteric-esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan; Nichiren school; Shingon Buddhism, Japan; Tiantai (Tendai) school
- Kamalaśīla, 69–71, 483–484, 851, 915  
*Bhāvanākrama*, 70, 483, 525  
*First Bhāvanākrama*, 521  
*Madhyamakāloka*, 483  
*Second Bhāvanākrama*, 55
- Kamata Shigeo, 723
- kami*, 393, 620, 765, 767–771, 791
- kammatic Buddhism, 263
- kammaṭṭhāna*, 523, 525
- Kammaṭṭhāna tradition, 898
- Kamo no Chōmei, 398
- Kampuchea. *See* Cambodia
- Kamūnsa, 436
- Kanakamuni, 72
- Kandīng ji* (Huiyuan), 343
- Kandy, 797
- Kandy Perahera, 287
- Kaneko Satoru, 293
- Kang Senghui, 166, 199, 879
- Kānheri, 363
- kanhua* Chan, 428. *See also* kōan
- Kanhwa kyōrūiron* (Chinul), 158
- Kanishka, King, 120–121, 188, 367
- Kanjin Kakumushō* (Ryōhen), 284
- Kankhāvitaraṇī* (Buddhaghosa), 166
- Kannon, 59, 61–62, 234, 292, 393. *See also* Avalokiteśvara
- Kantaka Cētiya, 801
- Kapilavastu, 83
- Kapleau, Philip, 868, 925
- Kara Khitais, 380
- Kāraṇḍavyūha-sūtra*, 613
- Karashahr, 125
- Kara-tepe, 120
- Kārli, 117, 363, 550
- karma (action), 19–20, 22, 27, 176, 183, 186, 262, 269, 303, 329, **415–417**, 532, 648, 682–684, 713, 721–722. *See also* death
- Karma Dgon, 417
- Karma gling pa, 853, 859
- Karma pa, **417–419**
- Karma Pakshi, 417–418, 562
- Karmaśataka*, 36–37
- Karmasiddhiprakaraṇa* (Vasubandhu), 916
- Karnataka, India, 369–370
- Karpeles, Susanne, 109
- karuṇā* (compassion), 58, 61–62, 65, **419–420**, 894–896, 899. *See also* *bodhicitta* (thought of awakening); engaged Buddhism
- kāśāya*, 731
- Kashgar, 120
- Kashmir, 366–368
- Kashmir, Buddhist art in, 150, 322, 365
- kasiṇa*, 523
- Kasō Sōdon, 351
- Kasuga Shrine, 274, 388, 511
- Kāśyapa, 72, 694, 802–803
- Kāśyapaparivarta*, 496
- Kāśyapīya school, 368, 506
- Kataragama, 234
- Kathāsaritsāgara*, 250–251
- Kathāvatthu* (Moggaliputta Tissa), 377, 502, 504, 627, 840–841
- Kathmandu, 591
- Katyāyanīputra, *Jñānaprasthāna*, 166
- Kaukuṭṭika, 504
- Kauṇḍinya, 296
- Kavsiḷumīṇa*, 777
- kāvya*, 656, 748
- Kawaguchi Ekai, 98
- Kawaharadera, 554
- kāya*, 76–79
- Kazi Dawa Samdup, 859
- Kegon school. *See* Huayan (Kegon, Hwaōm) school
- Kellogg, Samuel Henry, 864
- Keng Vansak, 422
- Kenmitsu Buddhism. *See* exoteric-esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism
- Kenninji, 413
- Ken’ō Sōi, 351
- Keown, Damien, 263
- kepan* (segmental analysis), 168–169
- Keqin, *Biyān lu*, 132
- Kerala, India, 369–370
- Kern, Hendrik, 96
- Kerouac, Jack, 924
- Kevaddhasutta*, 8
- Khaggavisāṇa-sutta*, 299
- Khalchayan, 146
- Khandhaka*, 626
- Khemā, 607
- Khmer, Buddhist literature in, **421–423**
- Khmer Buddhism. *See* Cambodia
- Khmer people, 782–783, 787
- Khmer Rouge, 109, 423, 646
- Khóa Hu Lục*, 880
- ’Khon Dkon mchog rgyal po, 853
- Khotan, 121–122
- Khri srong lde btsan, King, 66–67, 69–71, 188, 334, 623, 852
- Khro phu lotsāva Byams pa dpal, 49
- Khrübā Sīwičhai, 832
- Khuddakanikāya*, 627
- Kihwa (Hamhō Tukt’ong), **423**  
*Hyōnjōng non*, 423
- Kim Manjung, *Ku unmong*, 439–440
- Kim Taesōng, 781
- Kimura Shigeyuki, 162
- King, Henry M., 864
- kingship, 34, 106, 178, 182, 262, 338, **424–425**, 717–718, 720–721, 877, 893–896  
 ideal ruler, 657–658  
 kingship metaphor, in Tantra, 820, 823
- Kinkakuji, 387, 556
- Kīrti Śrī, 797
- Kisā Gautamī, 607
- Kitāb al-masālik* (Jayhānī), 380
- Kitāb al-milal wa-n niḥal* (Shahrastānī), 381
- Kitabatake Dōryū, 531
- Kitāb Bilawhar wa-Yūdāsaf*, 380
- Kitsiri Malalgoda, 586
- Kiyozawa Manshi, 531
- Kizil, 118, 123, 123, 124–125, 551
- Kizilgara, 118
- kleśa*, 52, 214, 682, 763, 919–920
- kliṣṭamanas*, 176
- Klong chen pa (Longchenpa, Tshul khriṃs blos gros), **425–426**, 484, 730  
*Mdzod bdun*, 426
- Klong chen rab ’byams pa, 853
- Klong chen snying thig*, 730
- Klu mes, 852
- kōan, 132, 135–136, 143, 205, **426–429**, 528–529. *See also* Chan (Zen, Sōn) school; meditation
- kōan* commentary, 426
- kōan meditation, 157, 237–238, 314, 349, 528–529, 569, 928–929
- Kōben (Myōe), 340, 345, 414, **429**, 765
- Kōdaiji, 395
- Kōen, 500
- Kōfukuji, 274, 336, 388, 393, 582
- Koguryō kingdom, 430
- Kojiki*, 397, 767–768
- Kojong, King, 432
- Kōken, Empress, 236–237
- Kokuchūkai (National Pillar Society), 162, 449, 531, 598

- Komazawa, 531  
 Kōmeitō, 661, 781  
 Konākamana, 72  
 Konbaung art, in Myanmar, 579–580  
*kongan*. See *kōan*  
 Kong sprul Blo gros mtha' yas, 488  
*Rin chen gter mdzod*, 857  
 Kongwangshan, 146  
*Konjaku monogatari*, 252, **429–430**  
 Konow, Sten, 97  
 Korea, 99, 116, 119, 157–158, 172, 182, 314, 349–350, 423, **430–435**, 443, 447, 464, 586, 609, 617, 643, 738, 811, 863–864, 902–905, 929. See also Chogye school; Korea, Buddhist art in; Korean, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in  
 Chan (Sōn) school, 133–134, 428–429  
 Chogye school, 158–159  
 and communism, 169–170  
 Faxiang (Pōpsang) school in, 283–284  
 Ghost Festival, 21, 307  
 Huayan (Kegon, Hwaōm) school, 344–345  
 Japanese annexation of, 134, 433, 586–587, 643  
 monastic architecture in, 553–554  
 Mongol invasions, 643  
 and printing technologies, 676–677  
 Tantra in, 823–825  
 Tiantai (Ch'ōnt'ae, Tendai) school, 850  
 Korea, Buddhist art in, 253–254, 339–340, **435–438**, 781–782. See also Chan art; esoteric art, East Asia  
 Korean, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in, **439–440**  
 Korean Buddhist translation, 439  
 Korean Tripiṭaka, 825  
 Kornfield, Jack, 867–868  
 Koryō monastery, 863  
*Kosalabimbavaṇṇanā*, 178–179  
 Kōshōji, 236  
 Kou Qianzhi, 173  
 Kōya, 708  
 Kōzanji, 345, 395, 429  
 Krakucchanda, 72  
*kṣānti*, 632  
 kṣatriya caste, 83, 893  
 Kṣemā, 232  
 Kṣemendra  
*Avadānakalpalatā*, 748  
*Bodhisattvāvadāna-kalpalatā*, 37  
 Kṣitigarbha (Dizang, Jizō, Chijang posal), 62, 290, 403, 544, 570–571  
 Kṣudrakāgama, 11  
 Kubjotārā, 232  
 Ku Bua, 783  
 Kucha, 118, 121, 124–125  
*kudoku*, 532  
 Kuiji (Dasheng Ji, Ci'en *Dashi*), 167, 283, **441**, 909, 915, 920  
*Fayuan yilin zhang*, 283  
*Kuiy' kyañ' ' ' abhidammā* (Arhan' Janakābhivaṃsa), 102  
 Kūkai (Kōbō Daishi), 22, 255–256, 273, 293, 345, 397, 399, 411–412, **441–442**, 511, 535, 540, 543, 662, 717, 764–765, 790, 793, 825  
*BunKyōhifuron*, 656  
*Hizōki*, 255  
 Kukkutārāma Monastery, 694  
 Kumano, 792  
 Kumārājīva, 121, 143–144, 167, 197, 201, 226, 281, 348, **442**, 454, 471, 481, 658, 707, 759–760, 776, 926  
 Kumāralāta, *Kalpanāmañḍitikā*  
*Dṛṣṭāntapañkti*, 37  
 Kumārārāja, 426  
*kumbhaṇḍas*, 310  
 Kumbum, 326  
 Kūmgangsa, 436  
 Kumtura, 118, 551  
*Kuṇalajātaka*, 894  
 Kūn Ch'ogo, King, 430  
 Kun grol grags pa, 67  
 Kun ldan ras pa, 49  
 Kuo'an, 621  
 Kuonji, 595  
 Kuroda Toshio, 271, 414, 767  
 Kuruma Takudō, 531  
*Kusa Jātaka* (Alagiyavanna Mohoṭṭāla), 778  
 Kushans, 120–121  
 Kusha school, 411, 582  
 Kuśinagara, 92  
*Ku unmong* (Kim Manjung), 439–440  
 Kūya, 702  
 Kvaerne, Per, 67  
 Kwangjong, King, 134, 432  
 Kwansēum, 59, 61–62. See also Avalokiteśvara  
 Kwanūm, 234. See also Avalokiteśvara  
 Kyaiktiyo Pagoda, 580  
*Kyōgyōshinshō* (Shinran), 766  
*kyok' cā*, 102  
 Kyōngdōk, King, 339  
 Kyōnghō Sōngu, **443**  
*Sōnmun ch'waryo*, 443  
*Kyon' to' rā Rvhe kyañ' Cha rā to' bhu rā' krī' theruppatti* (Phui" Kyā"), 102  
 Kyo school, 157  
 Kyoto school, 650  
 Kyung po rnal 'byor, 852
- L**  
 Labrang Tashi Khyil, 326  
 Ladakh, Buddhist art in, 324–325  
 LaFleur, William R., 10  
 laity, 168, **445–449**, 589, 741, 762, 885  
 and Chan (Zen) school, 133  
 and *dāna*, 196, 229  
 in Japan, 385–386, 388–389, 531  
 and Mahāyāna, 494–495, 501  
 and modernization, 448–449  
 and monasticism, 560, 886  
 and Nichiren school, 595–596  
 and precepts, 27, 182, 246, 262, 282, 431, 446, 668, 673, 675, 714  
 and relics cults, 717–718  
 religious aspirations, 315, 356, 662–663, 699  
 religious practices, 286, 723, 734, 804, 842  
*lakṣaṇa*, 80  
 Lakṣmīnkarā, Princess, 306  
*Lalitavistara*, 86, 88, **450**, 512, 747  
 lama, 193, **450**, 535. See also Dalai Lama; Panchen Lama  
 householder, 589  
 lay, 852  
*Lamaism*, use of term, 450  
 Lamaseries, 553  
 Lamayuru, 324  
*Lam 'bras*, 854  
 Lamotte, Etienne, 86, 96–97, 461, 496  
 lamp histories, 334, 464  
*lam rim*, 56  
*Lam rim chen mo* (Tsong kha pa), 36, 855, 861  
 land ownership, 780  
 language, Buddhist philosophy of, 154–155, 217, 230, **451–452**, 512, 526–529, 545, 683  
 language, Hindu philosophy of, 331  
 language learning, 248  
 languages, **452–455**. See also canon; Gāndhārī, Buddhist literature in; inscriptions; Newari, Buddhist literature in; Pāli, Buddhist literature in; Sanskrit, Buddhist literature in; Sinhala, Buddhist literature in; translation and translators  
 Apabhraṃśa, 821  
 of the Buddha, 452

- languages (*continued*)  
 Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit, 625, 745  
 Buddhist Middle Indic, 625  
 and Buddhist studies, 94–100  
 of canon, 112–113  
 in Central Asia, 120, 454  
 Chinese, 154  
 of East Asia, 454  
 Gāndhārī, 218, 299–300, 453, 776  
 Khmer, 108, 421  
 Khotanese, 454  
 Khotanese Saka, 776  
 Korean, 439–440  
 Lao, 828  
 Māgadhī, 625  
 Mongolian, 455, 776  
 Nepāl Bhāṣā, 592  
 Newari, 592–593  
 nonstandard Sanskrit, 821  
 Pāli, 452–453, 455, 625, 837  
 Prakrit, 453  
 Sanskrit, 421, 451, 592–593, 745  
 Shan, 828  
 Sinhala, 777–778, 877  
 Sogdian, 454, 776  
 Thai, 828–830  
 Tibetan, 776, 851–852  
 Tocharian, 251, 454, 776  
 Tumshuq, 454  
 Uighur, 454, 776  
 vernacular, 452–453, 455  
 Vietnamese (*quó'c ngữ*), 883  
 Lankātilaka, 799, 801  
*Lañkāvatāra-sūtra*, 57, 167, 177, 351, **456**,  
 603–604, 915  
 on diet, 229  
 Lao Issara, 645  
 Laos, 446–447, **456–458**, 645–646. *See also* folk religion, Southeast Asia;  
 Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in  
 and communism, 169  
 Laozi, 197–198, 538  
*Large Sūtra on Perfect Wisdom*, 743  
 Lassen, Christian, 628  
 La Vallée Poussin, Louis de, 96–97, 99  
 law and Buddhism, **459–460**  
 law codes, Buddhist, 101, 460  
 Burmese, 102–103  
 Ganden Phodrang, 460  
 Lcang skya Khutukhtus, 563–564  
 Lcang skya rol pa'i rdo rje, 856  
 Ldan dkar ma catalogue, 613  
 Ldan ma brag, 508  
 “learning of culture,” 174  
 Ledi Sayadaw, 524  
 “legal person,” relics as, 715  
 legend, and life of Buddha, 85–86  
 legitimacy, and lineage, 461  
*Legs bshad snying po* (Tsong kha pa), 321,  
 738  
*Legs par bshad pa rin pa che'i gter* (Sa  
 skya Pañḍita), 753  
 Leifengta, 719  
*Lengzhai yehua*, 405  
 Leria, Giovanni Maria, 160  
 Lévi, Sylvain, 96–97, 495  
 Lhasa, 404–405, 789  
 Lha tho tho ri, King, 613  
 Liangkai, 127, 152  
 Liang Qichao, 585  
 Liang Sicheng, 150  
 Liang Wudi, 425  
 Lianyun'gang, 551  
 Li Bai, 173  
 Licchavi rulers, 588  
*Lidai sanbaoji* (Fei Changfang), 25–26,  
 116–117  
 Liǐu Quán, 881  
 life span, 74, 185, 473  
 Ligdan Khan, 563  
 Li Hua, 925  
*Liji*, 172  
 Likir, 324  
 liminality, of pilgrimage, 654  
 lineage, 22, 281, 334, **461–465**, 607,  
 661–662. *See also* Bka' brgyud  
 (Kagyū)  
 Chan school, 130–134, 334, 347–348  
 in China, 462–465  
 Chogye school, 159  
 disciple lineage, 617  
 in esoteric Buddhism, 620  
 Huayan school, 342–344  
 initiation lineage, 617  
 in Korea, 599  
 Mongolian, 564  
 Nichiren school, 595  
 Shingon school and, 765  
 in Taiwan, 816–817  
 lineage portraits, 260, 661–662  
 Linehan, Marsha, 687  
 Lingbao scriptures, 199  
 Lingquan Chan Monastery, 817  
 Lingyanshan Monastery, Taiwan, 515  
 Lingyin Monastery, 912  
 Lingyun Chan Monastery, 817  
*Linjian lu*, 405–406  
 Linji (Rinzai) house of Chan school,  
 132–133, 135–136, 313–314, 334,  
 375, 413, 428, 528–529, 569, 866,  
 880–881, 912  
*Linji lu* (Yuanjue Zongyan), 913  
 Lin Tinggui, 31  
 Lin Zhao'en, 200, 813  
 liquid life theory, 10  
*liru* and *xingru*, 57  
 lists of patriarchs, 82  
 literacy, 156, 247, 295, 448, 813  
 Lithai, King, *Trai Phūm Phra Ruang*,  
 828–829, 832  
 lithography, 677  
 Li Tongxuan, 134, 167, 344, 432  
*Huayan lun*, 157–158  
 liturgy. *See* chanting and liturgy  
 Liu Yimin, 693, 707  
 Living Buddha Jigong (Jigong Huofo),  
 290  
 Lmas Ṛṣi, 550  
 local divinities and Buddhism, 200, 234,  
 259–260, 274, 288–289, 310,  
**465–469**, 466–467, 623, 625, 653,  
 762, 820, 838, 842. *See also* ghosts  
 and spirits; Shintō (Honji Suijaku)  
 and Buddhism; *names of divinities*  
 in Cambodia, 783  
 in China, 290–291  
 in Japan, 393, 620, 765, 767–771, 791  
 in Laos, 457  
 in Mongolia, 562  
 in Myanmar, 575–576, 579  
 in Sri Lanka, 801  
 Lochen Dharmaśrī, 730, 856  
 logic, 225, 459, **469–470**, 482, 647, 861,  
 884–885, 915. *See also* language,  
 Buddhist philosophy of  
 Lohan, 290  
 Lokakṣema, 146, 492, 671, 776  
*lokavid*, 87  
 Lokottaravāda (Ekavyavahārika), 490,  
 504  
 Lomas Rishi, 117  
 Lombok, 372  
 Longhu Yan, 816  
 Longmen, 100, 118–119, 119, 147–148,  
 338, **471**, 551, 661  
*Long Roll of Buddhist Images* (Zhang  
 Shengwen), 661  
 Longshan, 816  
 Longxing, 338, 552  
 Looi, John Daido, 248, 868  
 Loro Jonggrang, Prambanam, 68, 785  
*Lotus Sūtra* (*Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*),  
 61–62, 65, 77, 93, 138, 180, 191,

- 215, 226, 292, 332, 395, 412–413, **471–477**, 500, 532, 619, 693–694, 759, 772, 781, 871, 882. *See also* Nichiren school
- and commentarial literature, 167
- cult of, 594–598, 672
- as protective text, 634
- and sacred geography, 792
- and Tiantai school, 845–847
- Loulan, 125
- Lōvāda saṃgrahaya*, 778
- Luce, Gordon H., 302
- Lumbinī, 83
- lunar cycle, and time reckoning, 285
- Lun Fogu biao* (Han Yu), 759
- Lung gi nye ma* (Bu ston), 104
- Lunyu*, 172
- Luohans, 151–152. *See also* arhat(s)
- Luo Qing, 813
- Luoyang, 146, 148, 535, 551
- Luoyang qiellan ji*, 57, 516
- Lushan, 348
- Lu Shengyan, 814
- Lüders, Heinrich, 97
- M**
- Macy, Joanna, 248
- Madhyamāgama, 11
- Madhyamakahrdayakārikā* (Bhāvaviveka), 42, 481–482
- Madhyamakakārikā* (Nāgārjuna), 111, 581, 809
- Madhyamakāloka* (Kamalaśīla), 483
- Madhyamaka school, 31–32, 42, 53, 77–78, 111, 144, 223–224, 470, **479–485**, 481–483, 581–582, 649, 680, 683, 749, 809, 827, 846–847, 855, 861–862
- Madhyamakāvātāra* (Candrakīrti), 111, 482, 604
- Madhyāntavibhāga*, 914, 916
- Madhyāntika, 368, 750
- maechi*, 901
- Maezumi, Taizan, 868
- magazines and periodicals
- Buddhist Ray* (U.S.), 865
- Light of Dharma* (U.S.), 865
- Vietnamese, 883
- Ma gciḡ lab sgron (Machig Labdrön), **485–486**, 901
- Mahābhārata*, 331
- Mahābodhi Temple, 50, 364, **486–487**
- Mahābodhi Society, 16, 359, 448, 798
- Mahābodhivaṃsa*, 877
- Mahāchulalongkorn, 832
- Mahādeva, 504, 568
- Mahādhamma Saṅkram
- Sāsanālaṅkāra cā tam<sup>er</sup>*, 102
- Mahā Ghaṇṭā, 774
- Mahā Ghosananda, 110
- Mahākāla, 563
- mahākālpa*, 185
- Mahākarma-vibhaṅga*, 302
- Mahākassapa (arhat). *See* Mahākāśyapa
- Mahākāśyapa, 29, 84, 133, 188, 232, 354, **487**, 507, 542, 566, 576, 897
- Mahāmakut, 832
- Mahāmantrānūdhārīṇī, 634
- Mahāmaudgalyāyana, 232, 287, 290, 308–309, 317, 354, **487–488**, 542, 741, 750
- Mahāmāyā, 238
- Mahāmāyūrī, 634
- mahāmudrā*, **488–489**, 513
- Mahānāman, 232
- Mahānikāi order, 108
- Mahāpadāna-suttanta*, 72, 890
- mahāpadesa*, 111
- Mahāpadesa-sutta*, 94
- Mahāparinibbāna-sutta*, 205–207, 626.
- See also* *Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra*
- Mahāparinirvāṇa-sūtra*, 8, 84–85, 179, 300, **489**, 715, 894, 905–906
- Mahāprajāpatī Gautamī, 83–84, 232, 238, 353, **489–490**, 607, 741
- Mahāprajñāpāramitā-sāstra* (Nāgārjuna), 214
- Mahāprātisārā, 634
- mahāpuruṣa*, 80, 361
- Mahārājakaṇiṣkalekha* (Mātṛceṭa), 518
- Mahārājavanī’krīṭ* (Ü” Kalā”), 102
- Mahāsaccaka-sutta*, 83
- Mahāsāṃghika school, 11, 77, 86, 113, 121, 188, 223–224, 354, 368, **490**, 491, 502–504, 538, 588, 674, 742
- Mahāsāṃghika-vinaya*, 887
- mahāsammatta*, 424–425
- Mahāsāsrāpramardīṇī, 634
- Mahāsatiṭṭhāna-sutta*, 754
- mahāsattva*, 58, 61, 85
- Mahāsena, 644
- mahāsiddha*, 488, **490–491**, 572, 583, 820–821, 878–879
- Mahasi Sayadaw, 898
- Mahāsthāmaprāpta, 15
- mahāstūpa*, 804
- Mahathat Monastery, 39
- Mahatisadda Ghaṇṭā, 774
- Mahāvādāna-sūtra*, 85–86
- Mahāvagga*, 231, 285
- Mahāvagge Maṇḍapeyyakathā*, 445
- Mahāvairocana, 274, 373, 412, 473, 476, 764. *See also* Vairocana
- Mahāvairocana-sūtra*, 56, 254, 511, 534, 764
- Mahāvāṃsa*, 75, 95, 162, 333, 626, 644, 742, 777, 795–796, 877
- Mahāvastu*, 86, 230, **491**, 512, 538, 746
- Mahāvessantara-jātaka*, 422
- Mahāvibhāṣā*, 20, 166, 188, 377, 505
- Mahāvihāra, 188, 644, 795, 837
- Mahāvihāravāsins, 506
- Mahāvīra, 383
- Mahāvīyūtpatti*, 87
- Mahāyāna art, 372
- Mahāyāna precepts in Japan, **499–501**
- Mahāyānasamgraha* (Asaṅga), 32, 59, 914–916
- Mahāyāna school, 29, 33, 52, 211, 214, 239, 269, 309, 342, 419–420, 490, **492–499**, 525, 534, 616, 809–810, 871, 878
- and apocrypha, 26–27
- and *bodhicitta*, 54–56
- and buddhahood, 77–78, 186–187, 219, 230, 378, 760
- and Buddha images, 81, 88, 550
- and buddhas, 13–14, 47, 71–74, 87, 234, 497, 743
- in Cambodia, 106–107
- in Central Asia, 120–121
- in China, 143
- “cult of the book,” 474, 591, 717
- and ethics, 262–263
- and gender, 304–305
- and initiation, 375–376
- institutionalization of, 357–358
- key texts, 113, 183, 227–228, 320, 456, 756
- in Korea, 430–432, 904–905
- and laity, 445, 447–448
- and merit, 208, 532
- in Nepal, 588, 593
- and *nirvāṇa*, 603–604
- and original enlightenment, 619–620
- and path, 93, 636
- and *prajñāpāramitā* literature, 665–667
- precepts, 281–282, 675
- and Pure Land Buddhism, 695–696, 698–699, 701, 707
- rise of, 356–357, 369, 479, 507, 776
- and spread of Buddhism in China, 140–141
- and Tantra, 820, 852



- Mahāyāna school (*continued*)  
 and *tathāgatagarbha*, 826–827  
 and Theravāda, 839–840  
 and Tiantai school, 845–847  
 in United States, 868–869  
 and Vajrayāna, 875–876  
 in Vietnam, 879–882
- Mahāyāna-sūtrālamkāra*, 58
- Mahāyāna sūtras, Sanskrit, 746–747
- Mahinda, 627, 877
- Mahīśāsaka school, 223, 368, **501**, 506, 914  
 and vinaya, 503, 674
- Mahīśāsaka-vinaya*, 887
- Maidari, 327
- Maijishan caves, 118, 149, 151, 551
- mainstream Buddhist schools, 24, 113, 120–122, 131, 183–187, 225, 269, 328, 492, **501–507**, 603, 776
- Mair, Victor, 98
- Maitreya, 63, 233, 290, **507–508**, 755. *See also* millenarianism and millenarian movements  
 in Central Asia, 121  
 in China, 538–540  
 in East Asia, 197  
 as future Buddha, 28–30, 59–60, 73–74, 87, 211, 375, 537, 658–659, 704, 813–814, 838, 914  
 images, 61, 125, 147–148, 393, 437, 437, 695–696  
 in South Asia, 538
- Maitreyasamitināṭaka*, 251
- maitrī*, 419
- Maitrīpa, 488, 491, 513
- Majjhimanikāya*, 63, 75, 299, 451, 541, 545, 601, 627
- Makiguchi Tsunesaburō, 781
- Malaya, 260, 370–372
- Malay Peninsula, 370–372
- Maligāvila, 801
- Māmallapuram, 369
- manas*, 175–176, 224
- maṇḍala, 43, 68–69, 81, 150, 234, 372, 409, **508–512**, 511, 686, 697, 764, 770–771, 823  
 Adamantine, 791, 794  
*besson*, 791  
 Diamond World Maṇḍala, 508–511, 510, 773  
 in esoteric art, 255, 259–260  
 and initiation ritual, 375–376  
 Japanese tradition, 511–512  
 Kālacakra Maṇḍala, 511  
 and *kāyas*, 78–79  
 of *Lotus Sūtra*, 476, 595, 597  
 Maṇḍala of Eight Great Bodhisattvas, 508  
 Matrix, 791, 794  
 pure lands, 705–706  
 and Shugendō, 791–792  
*Taima Mandara*, 706  
 Tantra and, 820  
 of Tibetan Book of the Dead, 859  
 Womb World Maṇḍala, 508–511, 509, 770–771, 773
- Mandalay, 113, 579
- mandalization, 791–792
- mandorla*, 147
- Maṅgalaṭṭhadīpanī*, 422
- manghon il*, 307
- Mangrai, King, 830
- Mani, 159
- Maṇi bka' 'bum*, 404, 853
- Maṇimēkalai*, 369–370
- Maṇipadma, 613
- maṇi* stones, 614
- Mañjuśrī, 60–61, 63, 68, 372–373, 498, 562–563, 570–571, 666, 785
- Mañjuśrīmūlakalpa*, 823
- Mañjuśrīnāmasaṃgīti*, 821
- mantra, 217, 315, 376, 452, **512**, 526–527, 613–614, 635, 666, 764, 820–821, 824, 875  
 Mantra of Radiance (*komyo shingon*), 429  
*Oṃ maṇi padme hūṃ*, 138, 512, **613–614**
- mantra dhāraṇī* collections, Newari, 593
- mantranaya*, 821, 875
- Mantrayāna, 512, 875
- manuscripts, 228, 746  
 from Afghanistan, 120  
 Bāmiyān, 368  
 in Cambodia, 422–423  
 Dunhuang cache, 26, 28, 43, 97, 99, 155, 240, 744, 811, 899–900  
 Gāndhārī, 299–300  
 Gilgit cache, 97, 368  
 illuminated, 438, 592, 810–812, 811  
 in Japan, 394–395  
 in Korea, 436–438  
 of *Lotus Sūtra*, 472, 474  
 in Myanmar, 628, 782  
 Newari, 592–593  
 Pāli, 782  
 in Sri Lanka, 628, 796
- Man'yōshū*, 397
- Manzei, 397
- Mao Ziyuan, 702
- mappō. *See* decline of the dharma
- Māra, 45, 86, 90, 184, 204, 233–234, 270, 271, 289, 373, **512–513**, 870. *See also* evil
- Māravijaya, 90, 513
- March First Movement, Korea, 314
- Marco Polo, 160
- mārga*. *See* path
- Mar pa (Marpa, Mar pa Chos kyi blo gros), 48, 488, **513–514**, 536, 583, 589, 852–853
- marriage  
 of bodhisattvas, 356  
 of clergy, 134, 136, 161–162, 386, 413, 433–434, 589, 762–763, 766
- Marston, John, 109
- martial arts, **514–518**, 515. *See also* monastic militias
- Marui Keijirō, 817
- Ma-so-shin, 580
- master-disciple relation, 464
- material perfection, 632
- Mathurā, 61, 80, 125, 363–366, 805
- Mātrceta, **518**, 748. *See also* Sanskrit, Buddhist literature in  
*Mahārājakanīṣkalekha*, 518  
*Prasādapratibhodbhava*, 518  
*Varṇārharvaṇastotra*, 518
- Mātykā*, 1–2, 888
- Matsumoto Shirō, 189
- Māyā, 83, 85, 89–90
- Mazu Daoyi, 131–132, 134, **202–203**, 348, 599
- Mazu yulu* (Mazu Daoyi), 202
- McGregor, Bennett (Ananda Metteyya), 266
- mchod rtens*, 260
- Mdzod bdun* (Klong chen pa), 426
- Mean (Son Ngoc Minh), 109
- medicine, 64–65, **518–519**, 686–687
- Medirigiriya, 800
- meditation, 93, 278, 298, 315, 384, **520–530**, 522, 523–524, 540–541, 547, 603, 647, 649, 665, 671, 684–686, 724, 840, 882. *See also* *bodhi* (awakening); *buddhānusmṛti*; *dhyāna* (trance state); psychology  
 Chan school and, 133, 135  
 on death, 204–205, 687, 763  
 deity yoga, 93, 234, 526  
 and ethics, 648–649  
 focus on body, 63–64  
 Four Lands, 792  
*gcod* (*chöd*), 521

- hwadu*, 158  
insight meditation, 8, 226, 520, 524, 526, 577, 647, 666, 754, 798, 889–890  
*jingzuo* (quiet sitting), 174  
kōan, 157, 237–238, 314, 349, 528–529, 569, 928–929  
mindfulness meditation, 521  
and mozhao Chan, 428, 568–569  
research on, 685–686  
*śamatha*, 889  
and Sa skya school, 751  
and scriptural study, 757–758  
severance meditation, 485–486  
Shugendō and, 773–774  
“sleep exercise,” 701  
and Tiantai school, 847, 849–850  
and vinaya, 886–887  
visual support for, 185, 258, 259, 327, 523  
Yogācāra and, 919–920  
*zazen*, 390, 528–529  
meditation centers, 890  
Meghavarman, King, 50  
Meiji Buddhist reform, 517, **530–531**, 585–586, 643–644, 659, 765, 767–771, 773, 924  
memorial portraits, 662–663  
memorial rites, 21–22, 129, 206–209, 207, 209, 291–292, 308–309, 379, 544, 633, 701, 859  
memorization, of scripture, 757  
men, 294–295, 303, 306, 446. *See also* gender; monks  
Menander, King (Milinda), 356, 367, 537  
Mencius, 172, 174  
mental culture, and meditation, 523–524  
mental health, 684–685  
merchants, 244–245, 547  
merit and merit-making, 229, 392–395, 446–447, **532–534**, 533, 533, 533–534, 560, 672, 833, 842, 882, 928  
amulets and, 15–16  
and *dāna*, 196, 245–246  
local divinities and, 467–468  
in Myanmar, 576–579  
sūtra-copying, 394–395, 474  
in Theravāda, 838–840  
transfer of merit, 21–23, 139, 208, 217, 246, 310, 447, 532  
Merv oasis, 120  
messianism, 28. *See also* Maitreya  
Metteyya, 73  
Miaoying, 553  
*Miaoyun ji*, 913  
Mi bskyod rdo rje, 418, 484, 856  
middle way. *See* path  
Mi ’gyur rdo rje, 856  
Mihintale, 800–801  
Mihirakula, 642  
Mijiao (esoteric) school, 150, 338, 511, **534–535**. *See also* esoteric art, East Asia; Tantra  
Mi la ras pa (Milarepa), 48, 407–408, 488, **536**, 853  
*Milindapañha*, 19, 532, **536–537**, 602, 634  
millenarianism and millenarian movements, 449, **537–540**, 538–540, 658–659, 813. *See also* nationalism and Buddhism; Pure Land Buddhism  
Minamoto Tamenori, *Sanbōe*, 447  
mindfulness (*smṛti*), 138, 523–524, **540–541**, 601–602, 686–687, 754, 889. *See also* consciousness, theories of; meditation  
“mindfulness of the body,” 64  
Mindon, King, 898  
mind-only theory, 904. *See also* consciousness, theories of  
Ming, Emperor, 140  
Mingkin, 579  
Mingun Pagoda, 580  
*minkan shinkō*, 291  
Minnantheu, 575  
Min Yide, 200–201  
miracles, 29–30, 85, **541–544**, 543  
miracle tales, 227, 292, 395, 543  
Miran, 125  
Mirūksa, 436  
misogyny, 763  
*Miśrakābhīdharmahṛdayaśāstra* (Dharmatrāta), 4, 220  
missionaries  
Buddhist, 105, 121, 140, 248, 466–467, 816, 836, 865  
Christian, 160, 163–165, 531, 584, 643  
Mission Pavie, 458  
Mithra, 538  
Mitsui Koshi, 162  
Mituo, 816  
Miyake Hitoshi, 291  
Mizuko Kuyō, 10, **544**. *See also* abortion  
*Mkha’ ’gro snying thig*, 426  
Mkha’ khyab rdo rje, 418  
Mkhan po Gzhan dga’, 857  
Mkhas grub, 215–216, 484, 629, 855  
*Mkhas pa rnams ’jug pa’i sgo* (Sa skya Pañḍita), 753  
Mnga’ ris pan chen Pad ma dbang rgyal, 856  
Mochizuki Shinkō, 99  
modernity and Buddhism, 163, **544–548**, 545, 547–548, 646. *See also* colonialism and Buddhism; economics; engaged Buddhism  
modernization, 194–195, 448–449, 545–546, 546, 584–586, 767  
*mofa*, 212  
Mogao, 118  
Moggaliputta Tissa, 188  
*Kathāvatthu*, 377, 502, 504, 627, 840–841  
Mohan Wijayaratna, 556  
Moheyan (Mahāyāna), 69–71  
*Mohe zhiguan* (Zhiyi), 475, **548–549**, 927  
Mon, 782–783, 787  
monasteries, 199, 245, 433, 575, 591, 617, 678, 780, 841–842. *See* monastic architecture; monasticism; *names of monasteries*  
administration of, 566–567  
economics of, 245–246, 433, 780, 818–819, 872–873  
growth of, 357–358  
and monastic militias, 560–561  
private, 582, 589–590  
as sacred space, 789–790  
monastery gods, 768–769  
monastic architecture, 12, 17, 39, 122–123, 178, 191, 259, 323–327, 325, 363, 404–405, 436, **549–556**, 578, 590–591, 700, 774, 781–782, 789–790, 803–807, 838, 841–842. *See also* cave sanctuaries; space, sacred; temple system in Japan; *names of monasteries*  
monastic Buddhism, 492  
monastic code. *See* vinaya  
monastic discipline, 9, 131, 133, 229, 229, 404, 459, 499–503, 523, 547, 557–558, 615–616, 626, 667–668, 673–675, 762. *See also* precepts; vinaya  
monastic family, 280–281, 464  
monasticism, 33–34, 129, 140, 280–281, 355, 388–389, 431, 434, 446, 458, 493–496, 514–516, 532, 547, **556–560**, 557, 588–590, 673–675, 861, 897. *See also* ordination  
monastic militias, 516, **560–561**, 659. *See also* war  
monastic routine, 133, 135, 559  
monastics, categories of, 557–559  
monastic training, and perspectives on body, 63–66  
monastic vocation, 568

- money  
and abstraction, 244, 547  
“spirit money,” 713
- money lending, 872–873
- Mongkut, King, 245, 546, 657, 832
- Mongolia, 169–170, 454–455, 460, 553, 561–565, 609, 752
- Mongolia, Buddhist art in, 327. *See* Himalayas, Buddhist art in
- monk-painters, Chan, 128
- monks, 155, 206, 303, 313, 431, 543, 565–568, 572, 582, 741, 762, 821, 839–840, 907. *See also* *bhikṣu/bhikṣuṇī*; diet; disciples of the Buddha; nuns; ordination; robes and clothing; vinaya; wilderness monks; *names of monks*
- arhats as, 30–31  
Buddha as, 79–80  
eminent, 15–16, 35–36, 178, 290  
householder, 590, 592–593  
as misfits, 897–898  
and money economy, 244–246  
as outsiders, 659–660  
and perspectives on body, 63–66  
royal, 657, 662  
and rulers, 658–660  
and rules of etiquette, 265–266  
and state law codes, 660–661  
as storytellers, 251–252  
warrior monks, 514–516, 561
- Monk’s Militia, Korea, 350
- Moon’s Reflection on the Buddha’s Lineage*, 439
- moonstone, 802
- morality. *See* ethics
- motive, and karma, 262
- Motoori Norinaga, 397, 400
- Mou Bo, 879
- Mountain Buddhism, 349–350
- mountains, sacred, 407–408, 540, 593, 654, 706, 768–769, 789–791. *See also* Shugendō
- Mount Emei, 339
- Mount Fuji, 793
- Mount Hiei, 272–274, 307, 336, 388, 412–413, 476, 561, 720, 737, 766, 773
- Mount Kōya, 412, 511, 540, 765, 773
- Mount Meru, 407
- Mount Negoro, 765
- Mount Wutai, 339, 535, 700
- movable type, 677
- mozhao Chan (silent illumination Chan), 133, 428, 568–569
- Mtho ling Monastery, 484
- Mthong ba don ldan, 418
- Muara Jambi, 374
- Muara Takus, 373
- mudrā and visual imagery, 15, 79–81, 90, 91, 92, 521, 569–572, 571, 764, 820, 844. *See also* bodhisattva images; Buddha images; posture; robes and clothing
- Mugu chōnggwang taedarani kyōng*, 676
- Mujaku Dōchū, 135
- Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* (Nāgārjuna), 480, 496
- Mūlasarvāstivāda school, 83, 86, 166, 378, 503, 505, 668, 674, 750–751, 750–751. *See also* Sarvāstivāda and Mūlasarvāstivāda
- Mūlasarvāstivāda-vinaya*, 235, 495, 572–573, 615, 742, 746, 873, 887
- Mulian, 309, 319–320
- Müller, F. Max, 95, 97
- Muqi (Fachang), 152  
*Six Persimmons*, 128
- Murakami Senshō, 531, 573–574  
*Daijō bussetsu ron hihan*, 573  
*Dainihon Bukkyōshi*, 573
- Murasaki, Lady, *Genji monogatari*, 397
- murder, Devadatta and, 214–215
- Mus, Paul, 717
- Musang, 133–134
- music, sacred, and chanting, 138–139
- musical instruments, as ritual objects, 729, 729
- Musō Sōseki, 135, 678
- Muvadevāvata*, 777
- Muyōm, 599
- Myanmar, 17, 47, 160, 163, 165, 234, 245, 260–262, 381, 446–447, 457, 467, 488, 566, 574–577, 608, 870, 879, 890, 898. *See also* Burmese, Buddhist literature in
- Myanmar, Buddhist art in, 17, 577–580, 774, 782–783, 786–787, 807, 811
- Myanma saṅgha, 575
- Myin-wun-taik, 580
- Myōan Eisai, 135
- Myōe. *See* Kōben
- myōkōnin* movement, 705
- Myōryū, 500
- Myōshinji lineage, 135–136
- Myōzen, 235
- My The, Vietnam, 882
- N**
- nāga, 234, 310, 466–467, 838
- Nāgārjuna, 31, 60, 223–224, 479–480, 581–582, 649, 707, 755, 760, 845
- Dazhidu lun*, 317, 462, 790
- Mahāprajñāpāramitā-śāstra*, 214
- Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*, 111, 480, 496, 581, 809
- Ratnāvalī*, 479–480
- Suḥṛllekha*, 480
- Śūnyatāsaptati*, 480
- Vigrahavyāvartanī*, 480, 581
- Yuktiṣaṣṭikā*, 480
- Nāgārjunakoṇḍa, 363, 365, 369, 550, 805–806
- Nāgasena, 105, 537
- Nag mtsho tshul khriims rgyal ba, 36
- Nagoya, Japan, 26
- Nakamura Hajime, 99
- Nakapaṭṭinam, 369
- Nakazato Nisshō, 531
- Nakhon Pathom, 783
- Nakulapitā-sutta*, 445
- Nālandā, 111, 357–359, 365, 372, 380, 583, 807, 909, 915
- nāma*, 18
- nāmarūpa*, 175
- namaskāra*, 265
- namas te*, 265
- Namsan, 554
- Ñāṇakitti, 628
- Nanatsu-dera, 26
- Nanchansi, 150
- Nandā, 607
- Nanghai jigui neifa zhuan* (Yijing), 759, 913
- Nanjō Bun’yū, 531
- Nanking, 148
- Nanquan Puyuan, 427
- Nanyue Huairang, 348, 463
- Nanyue Huisi, 927
- Naong Hyegūn, 134
- Nara Buddhism, 271–274, 345, 386–388, 411–415, 554–555, 582–583, 737, 765
- Nāropa, 48, 379, 488, 491, 513, 536, 583
- Nāropāda, 410
- Nāsik, 363
- Nātha, 420
- nationalism and Buddhism, 163, 169–171, 189, 448–449, 584–587, 585. *See also* kingship
- in Japan, 162, 377, 517–518, 531, 598
- in Korea, 314
- in Sri Lanka, 778, 799
- in Vietnam, 881
- nativism, Shintō and, 770
- nats*, 576, 774
- Nattier, Jan, 314, 333, 454

- nature origination, Huayan school and, 346–347
- Nāṭyaśāstra* (Bharatamuni), 251
- navadharmā*, 746
- Navayāna* Buddhism, 249
- Neak Pean, 783–784
- need, transcending, 246
- Negapatam, 372
- Nelson-Atkins Museum, Kansas City, Missouri, 508
- nenbutsu (Chinese, nianfo; Korean, yōmbul), 79, 93, 136, 250, 307, 336, 348, 412–414, 476, **587–588**, 672, 699–700, 707–709, 720, 766. *See also* *buddhānusmṛti*
- neo-Confucianism, 134–136, 142, 145, 172–174, 200, 423, 433
- Nepal, **588–591**, 590, 594, 608, 746, 748
- Nepal, Buddhist art in, 91, 322–324, 811. *See* Himalayas, Buddhist art in
- Netherlands, as colonial power, 163–164
- Newar Buddhism, 590–591, 642, 744
- Newari, Buddhist literature in, **592–594**. *See also* Nepal
- New Buddhism, 413–414, 584, 596–597, 924
- “new new religions,” 385
- “new religions,” 385–386, 449, 596, 781
- New Tantra, 514
- “New Vehicle” (*Navayāna*) Buddhism, 14
- New Year, 286, 287–288
- Ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho, 193, 418
- Ngag dbang kun dga theg chen dpal ’bar, 752
- Nganjuk, 511
- Ngeaum Panich, 75
- Ngog Blo ldan shes rab, 852
- Ngor chen kun dga’ bzang po, 511, 752, 856
- Ngor E wam chos ldan, 856
- Ngor pa subsect, 752
- Nguyễn Thiển, 881
- Nhân-Tông, 136
- nianfo*. *See* nenbutsu
- nibbānic Buddhism, 263
- Nichira, 769
- Nichiren, 22, 321, 387, 413, 474, 476–477, 500, **594–595**, 596–598, 643, 781, 850
- Rishhō ankoku ron*, 597
- Nichiren school, 93, 138, 180, 191, 263, 274, 386, 413, 449, 594–596, **595–598**, 596, 757, 781, 866
- Nidānakathā*, 72, 230
- nidāna*, 713
- Nidānas*, 888
- Niddesa*, 2
- Nie Chengyuan, 226
- “nightstand Buddhists,” 867–868
- Niguma, 583
- nihilism, 479, 648
- Nihon shoki*, 397, 768
- niḥsargika-pātayantika*, 667
- Nijūgo zammaie, 307
- nikāya*. *See* *āgama/nikāya*
- Nikāyasamgrahaya* (Jayabahu Dharmakīrti), 777
- Nikāyasaṅgraha*, 644
- Nīlakaṇṭha-sūtra*, 254
- Nillakgama, 800
- Nim ū chimmuk* (Han Yongun), 314, 440
- Nine Mountains school of Sōn, 134, 158, 432, **599**
- Ningai, 765
- Ningpo, 152
- Ninjō, 765
- Ninkan, 815
- Ninko Teiki, 404
- Ninkū, 500
- Ninnaji (monastery), 399, 765
- Nipponzan Myōhōji, 249, 477, 598
- nirṃaṇakāya*, 78, 871
- nirodha*, 296
- nirodhasamāpatti*, 603
- nirvāṇa, 22–23, 50–53, 76–78, 183–184, 186, 199, 220, 226, **600–605**. *See also* buddha(s); death
- Nirvāṇa Sūtra*, 131, 135, 166–167, 201, 229, 351, **605–606**, 694, 723, 827, 846, 894
- Nishiari Bokusan, 531
- Nishida Kitarō, 650, 924
- Nishitani Keiji, 335, 650
- Niṣpannayogāvalī*, 747
- nissayas*, 102
- Nithān Khun Borom*, 457
- Niya, 125
- Nogor Vatt, 108
- nonattachment, depiction of, 127
- nonenlightenment (*bujue, fukaku*), 619, 770, 905
- Nongchan, 818
- noninterference, and local divinities, 468
- nonsectarian (*ris med*) movement, 67, 418, 730–731, 857
- Norodom, King, 108
- northern route (*uttarāpatha*), 366, 367
- no-self. *See* anātman (no-self)
- Nowbahar, 380
- Nulchi, King, 430
- Nūngsan-ri, 436
- nuns, 17, 63–66, 84, 210–212, 252, 303, 313, **606–610**, 607, 608, 610, 668, 741, 762, 817, 835, 839, 888. *See also* *bhikṣu/bhikṣuṇī*; diet; ordination; robes and clothing; vinaya
- end of the order, 446, 557, 591, 614, 741–742, 839, 900–901
- founding of the order, 232, 353, 489
- Nyang ral nyi ma’i ’od zer, 623, 853
- Nyar ma, 324
- Nyāyānusārasāstra* (Saṅghabhadra), 4
- Nyingma. *See* Rnying ma (Nyingma)
- Nyogen Senzaki, 621, 866

## O

- Öbaku, 135–136, 375
- Öbaku-san Mampukuji, 375
- Öbaku shingi*, 375
- obedience, 282
- Obermiller, Eugène, 98, 103
- Obeyesekere, Gananath, 269
- Obon. *See* Ghost Festival
- Oc-Eo, 105
- Oda Nobunaga, 561, 643, 659
- Oda Tokunō, 99
- Odorico da Pordenone, 160
- offerings, 20–21, 727–729, 834, 907
- Ohnuma, Reiko, 759
- Ojin, 825
- ōjōden*, 448
- Ōjōyōshū* (Genshin), 307
- Olcott, Col. Henry Steel, 164, 182, 797–798, 865
- Old Buddhism, 413–414
- Oldenberg, Hermann, 266
- Old Snar thang, 114
- Ōmiwadera, 771
- Oṃ maṇi padme hūṃ, 138, 512, **613–614**
- Öndü Gegen, 563
- “one mind,” 905
- “one vehicle,” 472–473
- Ono Genmyō, 99
- ontology, and *abhidharma*, 5–6
- oral lineage. *See* Bka’ brgyud (Kagyū)
- oral transmission, 45, 83, 85–86, 112, 155, 619–620, 626, 755, 757, 810
- ordination, 281–282, 303, 375, 551, 558–559, 614, **614–618**, 657, 674, 726, 741, 839–840, 885–887. *See also* initiation

- ordination (*continued*)  
 in China, 617, 643  
 of dead, 501, 614, 714  
 in Japan, 301, 388, 499–500, 598, 616–618, 674, 714  
 in Korea, 617  
 of nonhumans, 310, 614  
 of nuns, 446, 606, 608, 900–901  
 self-ordination, 499–500, 582  
 in Sri Lanka, 798  
 in Taiwan, 816–818  
 temporary, 615, 668, 762, 833  
 in Tibet, 590, 851–852
- ordination ceremony, 614–616
- ordination platform, 616–617, 817
- O rgyan 'phrin las rdo rje, 418, 419
- O rgyan smin grol gling, 856
- orientalism, 164–165
- original enlightenment (*hongaku*), 52, 135, 273, 389–390, 473, 476, **618–620**, 770, 850, 905
- ornamentation, 61, 149, 726
- orthodoxy, and lineage, 461
- Ötani, 531
- Otantapūri Monastery, 69, 358
- other power*, 707
- other worlds, buddhas of, 73–74
- Ōuchi Seiran, 531
- Ouyang Jingwu, 283
- oxherding pictures, 131, **621–622**
- P**
- pacifism, 264
- Padang Lawas, 373
- Padang Reco, 374
- Padma dkar po, 484
- Padmasambhava (Guru Rinpoche), 69, 334, 588, **623–625**, 624, 730, 852–853, 854, 859
- Paekche kingdom, 430
- Pagan, 101, 402, 578–579, 787, 789, 842
- pagodas, 146, 149–150, 152–153, 256, 279, 436, 551, 576, 678, 774, 805
- painting, 117–119, 123, 126–129, 145–153, 259, 322–327, 338, 340, 360, 365, 392, 394, 437–438, 579, 701, 800, 802–803. *See also* manuscripts; portraiture
- Pak Chung-bin (Soŋ'aesan), 902
- Pakistan, 366–368
- Pak Ou, 793
- Pāla rulers, 785
- Pāla style, 365, 365–366
- Palembang, 371
- Pāli, Buddhist literature in, 96–98, 108, 216–217, 536–537, **625–628**
- Pāli Text Society, London, 96, 628
- Pāli Vinaya*, 887–888
- Pallava style, 800, 802
- Pañcarakṣā*, 593, 634
- Pañcaskandhaprakaraṇa* (Vasubandhu), 916
- Pañcatantra*, 250, 380
- Pañcavastuka*, 220
- pañcāyatana*, 324, 326
- Panchen Erdini, 629
- Panchen Lama, 15, 170, 193–194, **629–630**, 858
- Pāñcika, 762
- pañḍaka*, 764
- Pāñḍrēṅṅhan, 322
- Pang jushi yulu*, 447
- Pang Yun, 447
- Pāṇini, 745
- panjiao*, 95, 321, 342, 345–346, 474, 871
- Paññāsajātaka*, 628
- Pansiya Panas Jātaka Pota*, 778
- pāpa*, 269, 297
- paradises, Buddhist, 703–704, 726
- pārājikas*, 607, 667–668, 887–888
- Parākramabāhu I, King, 575, 644, 796, 831
- Parākramabāhu II, King, 778, 796, 898
- Parākramabāhu VI, King, 797
- Paramārtha (Zhendi), 38, 143, 177, 283, **630–631**, 915
- Paramasukha Cakrasaṃvara, 153
- pāramitā* (perfection), 53, 58, 196, **631–632**
- pāramitānaya*, 875
- Pāramitāsamāsa* (Āryaśūra), 748
- paratantra*, 918
- Parihāsapura, 322
- parikalpita*, 918
- parinirvāṇa*, 82, 92, 602
- pariṇiṣpanna*, 918
- parish (*danka*, *terauke*) system in Japan, 386, **632–633**
- paritta* and *rakṣā* texts, **634–635**, 840
- Parivāra*, 626, 888
- Paro, 327
- Pārśva, 383
- passions, extinction of, 8
- paṭa*, 324
- Paṭācārā, 607
- Pāṭaliputra, 188, 502
- Pāṭan, 322, 591
- Patañjali
- Yoga Bhāṣya*, 331
- Yoga Sūtra*, 331
- pāṭayantika*, 667
- path, 23, 27, 33, 84, 93, 182, 218, 261–262, 277, 285, 296, 303, 416, 540–541, 602, **635–639**, 782, 871. *See also* bodhisattva path; psychology
- and arhatship, 28–29
- and *bodhi*, 50–53
- and *bodhicitta*, 54–56
- developmental model of, 77–79
- and four noble truths, 296, 636–638
- Paṭhamsambodhi*, 422
- Pathet Lao, 645–646
- Paṭisambhidāmagga*, 2, 627
- Patriarch of the Clear Stream (Qingshui Zushi), 290
- patriarchs. *See* lineage
- patronage, 281, 740. *See also* *dāna* (*giving*); politics and Buddhism; state and Buddhism
- families and, 281, 287
- merchants and, 244–245, 353, 789
- royal, 353, 357, 658, 789, 831–833
- women and, 900
- Pa tshab Nyi ma grags, 484
- Paṭṭhāna*, 627
- Pāyāsi-sūtra*, 301
- Peabody, Elizabeth Palmer, 864
- Pei Xiu shiyi wen* (Zongmi), 929
- Pelliot, Paul, 96
- perception, theory of, 225, 230, 470, 682–683, 916–918
- Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines*, 495–496
- perfection of wisdom literature. *See* prajñāpāramitā literature
- periodization, for decline of dharma, 211–212
- Periya Puliyankulama, 800
- permanent perfection, 632
- persecutions, **640–646**, 658. *See also* Christianity and Buddhism; colonialism and Buddhism; communism and Buddhism; Islam and Buddhism; modernity and Buddhism; politics and Buddhism
- in Afghanistan, 41
- in Cambodia, 109, 646
- in China, 141, 160, 173, 535, 643, 645
- by communist parties, 169–171
- Huichang, 132
- in India, 641–643
- in Japan, 386, 585–586, 643–644
- in Korea, 134, 433, 643

- in Laos, 645–646  
 in Sri Lanka, 644  
 in Tibet, 66–67, 643  
 in Vietnam, 644  
 White Huns, 642  
 Zoroastrian, 642
- personhood, concept of, 18–19, 680–681.  
*See also* anātman (no-self); ātman (self); body, perspectives on the; consciousness, theories of  
*skandha* and, 779
- Peruntēvanār, 370
- petas*, 309–310
- Petavatthu*, 208–209, 309
- Pha Dam pa sangs rgyas, 485
- Phagawam, 302
- Phag mo gru pa Rdo rje rgyal po, 48
- Phag mo gru pa subtradition, 854
- ’Phags pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan, 561–562, 751–752, 854
- Pháp Âm*, 883
- Phật Hóa Thanh Niên*, 883
- philology, and Buddhist studies, 96
- philosophy, 97–98, 330–331, 347, 377, 545, 581–582, 647–648, **647–650**, 648, 680–681. *See also* anātman (no-self); consciousness, theories of; dharma and dharmas; logic; psychology
- Phnom Penh, 286
- Phoenix Hall (at the Byōdōin), 555, 555, **650–651**, 697, 697
- Phōthisālarāt, King, 457
- Phra Bodhirak, 832, 834
- Phra Dhammakāya Monastery, 448
- Phra Thammachayo, 835
- Phra Thammapidok (Dhammapīṭaka), 835
- Phra That Luang stūpa, 458
- Phra Thattachīwo, 835
- ’Phrin las (Trinlay) rgya mtsho, 194
- Phui” Kyā”, *Kyōn” to” rā Rvhe kyan” Cha rā to” bhu rā” krī” theruppatti*, 102
- Phyag na rdo rje, 561
- Phya pa Chos kyi seng ge, 854, 861
- pilgrimage, 83–84, 105, 205, 286, 293, 338, 355, 358, 407–408, 536, **651–654**, 652, 773, 788, 789, 792–794, 821, 839, 879, 909–910, 912–913. *See also* relics and relic cults; space, sacred  
 and relics sites, 34, 47, 49–50, 72, 208, 716, 842
- pilgrimage routes, 652–653, 792–793  
*Piluo sanmei jing*, 26–27
- Piṇḍo, 410
- Piprāhwā, 715
- Pirit Pota*, 634
- Pirivenas, 248
- piśācas*, 234
- Pitalkhorā, 363
- Plaosan Lor, 373
- Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch (Liuzu tan jing)* (Huineng), 130–131, 134, 157, 347–348, 617, **655**, 722
- poetry and Buddhism, 102, 121, 397–398, 422, 439, 518, 594, 620, 656, **656**, 735, 748, 765, 777–778, 797. *See also* Chinese, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in; Japanese, Buddhist influences on vernacular literature in; Sanskrit, Buddhist literature in
- political neutrality, 893–894
- political parties, Buddhist, 661, 799
- politics and Buddhism, 564–567, 586–587, 595, 597, 630, 657, **657–661**, 744–745, 798–799, 816. *See also* millenarianism and millenarian movements
- Pollock, Sheldon, 421
- Polonnaruva, 527, 796, 802, 807
- Pōmil, 599
- Pōmmang, 599
- Pongnimsan, 599
- pōp*, 218
- Pōpchip pyōrhaengnok chōryo pyōngip sagi* (Chinul), 158
- Pōphūng, King, 431
- Pōpsang school, 283. *See also* Faxiang school
- portraiture, **661–663**, 785. *See also* Chan art; China, Buddhist art in; Japan, Buddhist art in
- Portugal, as colonial power, 163
- Postel, Guillaume, 160
- posture, 80, 90, 92, 265–266, 520–521, 671–672, 699. *See also* mudrā and visual imagery  
*yab-yum*, 260, 305, 324, 572
- Potala, 326–327, 662, **663–664**, 664, 706
- practice, bodhisattvas and, 59
- Prajña (monk), 341, 824
- prajñā* (wisdom), 53, 56, 58, 218, 226, 237, 524, 632, 637, **664–666**, 861–862. *See also* bodhicitta (thought of awakening)
- Prajñāpāramitā (divinity), 305, 374, 572, 666, 899
- prajñāpāramitā, 130–131, 234
- prajñāpāramitā literature, 36, 77–78, 97, 314–315, 665, **666–667**, 720–721, 809, 840, 871, 926
- Prajñāpradīpa* (Bhāvaviveka), 42
- prajñāpti* (mentation), 681–683
- Prajñāptivāda, 504
- Prakaraṇa*, 221
- Pramāṇasamuccaya* (Dignāga), 177, 230
- Pramāṇavārttika* (Dharmakīrti), 225
- prañidhāna*, 632
- prañidhicitta*, 55
- prasāda*, 56, 278
- Prasādapratibhodbhava* (Mātṛceṭa), 518
- Prāsaṅgika Madhyamaka, 111, 481–482, 484, 861
- prasannacitta*, 278
- Prasannapādā* (Candrakīrti), 111
- Prasenjit, King, 233, 424
- prasthānacitta*, 55
- pratideśanīya*, 667
- prātimokṣa*, 218, 266, 282, 285, 459, 615, 626, **667–668**, 673–675, 721, 741–742, 887–888
- pratiśaraṇa*, 111
- pratītyasamutpāda* (dependent origination), 22–23, 175–176, 183, 203, 218, 346–347, 416, 479, 648, 669, **669–670**, 712, 779, 847–848. *See also* duḥkha (suffering)
- pratyekabuddha, 71, 87, **670–671**. *See also* buddhahood and buddha bodies
- pratyutpannasamādhi*, 93
- Pratyutpannasamādhi-sūtra*, 671, 693, 699–700, 707
- pravrajika*, 741
- pravrajyā*, 85, 280
- Pravrajyāvastu*, 886
- prayer, **671–672**, 672, 882
- prayer wheel, 613, 672, 728
- Prayudh Payutto, 830
- Preah Kan temple, 106
- precepts, 9–10, 27, 29, 261–262, 281, 414, 446, 558, 667–668, **673–675**, 714, 872–873, 876, 893. *See also* bodhisattva precepts; ethics; laity; monks; nuns
- Chan school and, 131, 135  
 “*Fanwang* precepts,” 282  
 Mahāyāna, 281–282, 499–501  
 nuns and, 606–607  
 violation of, 535, 567, 872, 876, 887–888  
 “precious scrolls” (*baojuan*), 156, 539
- Prinsep, James, 97

- printing technologies, 114, 115, 164, 168, 422–423, 457, 594, **675–678**, 856
- Prip-Møller, Johannes, 100
- proselytizing, 781
- protectors
- guardian images, 572
  - local divinities, 468, 768
  - mantras, 613
  - paritta/rakṣā* texts, 634–635
  - scripture, 757
  - spirits, 294
- Protestant Buddhism, 163–165, 245, 591, 798
- Protestant Reformation, and Kamakura Buddhism, 414
- provincial temple system (kokubunji, rishōtō), 582, **678**
- Przyluski, Jean, 301–302
- psychology, 185–186, 420, 516, 649, **678–688**. *See also* *abhidharma*; *anātman* (no-self); *ātman* (self); *consciousness*, theories of
- Western, 679, 683–684, 686–688
- Public Law 480 Program (U.S.), 858
- Pudgalavāda, 504, **692–693**, 712
- Puguang, 909
- Pūjāvāliya*, 778, 796
- Pulcho chikchi simch'e yojöl*, 677
- Pulgasaüi, 825
- Pulguksa, 553–554, 676
- Pulgyo chöngjön*, 902
- Pulgyo taejön* (Han Yongun), 314
- Pullahari, 513
- Pulsöl panya paramilta simgyöng ch'an* (Wönch'ük), 903
- Puming, 621
- Punhwangsa, 436
- punya*, 532. *See also* merit and merit-making
- Pure Land art, 43–44, 148, 438, 555, 555, 650–651, **693–697**, 701
- Pure Land Buddhism, 79, 150, 250, 274, 290, 307, 336, 380, 386, 390, 412–413, 447, 476, 493, 587–588, 594, 671, **698–702**, 766, 782, 865, 879–880, 882, 927
- Pure Lands, 14–15, 77, 187, 315–316, 693–695, 695–696, 697, **703–706**, 739, 790
- Pure Land schools, 59, 144, 159, 208, 213, 234, 263, 278–279, 348, 500, 532, **706–709**, 791, 808, 850, 911–912
- Pure Land tableaux, 696, 696
- pure perfection, 632
- purification of mental stream, 919–920
- purity, bodily, 64
- puruṣadamyasārathi*, 87
- Pusa yingluo benye jing*, 59
- Pusöksa, 864
- Puṣyamitra, King, 356, 641–642
- Puttamittiran, *Vīracōliyam*, 370
- Putuo, 553
- Puyong Yönggwan, 349
- Pyökkye Chöngsim, 134
- Pyu, 782
- pyui'*, 102
- ## Q
- Qianlong emperor, 63, 254, 563
- Qian Qianyi, 133
- Qinglongsi, 256, 535
- Qingwei school, 200
- Qingyuan Xingsi, 348, 463
- Qingzhou, 148
- Quanzhen school, 200, 813
- Qubilai Khan, 751–752
- Queen Śrīmālā Sūtra*, 772, 827
- ## R
- Rāhula, 45, 83–85, 90, **711**
- Rāhulabhadra, 481
- Rāhulamātā, 83
- Raibō, 765
- raigō*, 696–697, 706
- rains-retreat (*varṣa*), 285–286, 307
- Raiyu, 765
- Rajagala, 800
- Rājagrha, 188
- rājasat'*, 101
- rājavan'*, 101–102
- Rājendravarman II, King, 106
- rākṣasa*, 467
- rakṣā* texts, 634
- Ral pa can, King, 852
- Rāma I, King, 829, 832
- Rāma V, King, 831
- Rāmakerti*, 421–422
- Ramakian*, 829
- Rāmañña, 797
- Rāmāyana*, 421–422, 843
- Ramkhamhaeng the Great, King, 828, 830–831, 838
- Ran 'byung rdo rje, 418
- Rang 'byung rig pa'i rdo rje, 418
- Rangoon, 188, 789
- Ras chung pa Rdo rje grags, 536
- Rashīd al-Dīn, *Ta'rikh al-Hind*, 381
- Ratanapañña, *Jinakālamālinī*, 628
- Ratchaburana Monastery, 39
- Ratnagotravibhāga*, 827
- Ratnaguṇasaṃcaya-gāthā*, 746
- Ratnamati, 915
- Ratnasambhava, 260, 403
- Ratnāvālī* (Nāgārjuna), 479–480
- Rawak, 123
- Ray, Reginald, 33, 214
- ṛddhipāda*, 8, 51
- Rdo rje brag, 856
- Rdo rje shugs ldan, 858
- rdzogs chen*, 425–426, 856, 859
- reading, and chanting, 137–138
- “reading with the body,” 476
- realms of existence, **711–712**, 713, 739, 760, 773, 848
- rebirth, 19, 22, 27, 64, 73–74, 175–176, 183–184, 199, 214, 281, 310, 315–316, 329, 379, 711–712, **712–714**, 760. *See also* cosmology; death; intermediate states; karma (action)
- and gender, 303, 899–900
  - in Pure Lands, 701–702, 739
- reception of Buddhism, 24–28, 38–39, 159, 182, 231, 288–289, 466–467, 542–543
- and Bsam yas Debate, 69–71
  - in Cambodia, 105–107
  - in Central Asia, 120–122, 140
  - in China, 140–141, 144, 172–174, 282, 542
  - in Japan, 542–543
  - and Silk Road, 775–776
  - in Sri Lanka, 542
- recollection (*anusmṛti*), 523–524
- reconsecration, 181
- “recorded sayings” texts, 132, 143, 427
- Red mda' ba, 484, 855, 861
- reform movements, 448–449, 497–498, 545–546, 566–567, 819, 834–836, 913
- Meiji, 517, 530–531, 585–586, 643–644, 659, 765, 767–771
- refugees. *See also* Tibet
- Asian, 868
  - Chinese monks, 135
  - Lao, 646
  - Southeast Asian, 267, 866
  - Tibetan, 94, 195, 359, 418–419, 590, 858, 868
  - Vietnamese, 881
- refuges, **714**, 740, 838–840

- regionalism, in monastic architecture, 553  
 Reikū, 500  
 reincarnation, 19, 712  
   and Dalai Lama, 193–195  
 Reiyūkai 385, 449, 595  
 relics and relics cults, 15–16, 34, 46, 77, 86, 129, 178–181, 205–208, 256, 279–280, 313, 355, 436, 497–498, 575–576, 678, **715–718**, 716, 718, 734, 803, 808–809, 838–839, 877, 906  
 religious education, and *jātaka*, 46  
 reliquary, 256, 279, 368, 436, 716, 718, **719–720**  
 relocalization, 469  
*Ren ben yu sheng jing zhu* (Dao'an), 166  
 Rennyō, **720**  
 renunciation, 280, 657. *See also* ordination  
*Renwang jing* (*Humane Kings Sūtra*), 27–28, 59, 631, **720–721**, 824  
 repentance and confession, **721–723**, 882  
 repentance ritual, 254, 667, 674, 687, 714  
 representation, 127, 569, 661–663, 683  
 Repts, Paul, 621  
 Research Institute of the Tripiṭaka Koreana, 678  
 Revata, 188  
 revivals of Buddhism, 359, 448, 654, 912  
*Ṛg Veda*, 204, 328–330  
*Rgya gar chos 'byung* (Tāranātha), 380  
 Rgyal mtshan nor bu, 630  
*Rgyal rabs gsal ba'i me long* (Bla ma dam pa Bsod nams rgyal mtshan), 855  
 Rgyal tshab, 215–216, 484, 855  
 Rgya tsha, 49  
 Rhys Davids, T. W., 96, 266, 628  
 Ricci, Matteo, 160  
 Right Faith Society, 447  
 Rin chen bzang po, 35–36, 324–325, 852  
*Rin chen gter mdzod* (Kong sprul Blo gros mtha' yas), 857  
 Rinzai Zen. *See* Linji (Rinzai) house of Chan school  
*risshō ankoku*, 598  
*Risshō ankoku ron* (Nichiren), 597  
 Risshō Kōseikai, 249, 385, 449, 477, 595, 598  
 Risshū (Vinaya school), 301  
 Ritigala, 800  
 Ritsu (Vinaya) school, 411, 582  
 ritual, 47, 54–56, 100, 182, 252, 274, 390, 532, 545–546, 559, 570, 590–591, 607, 653, 700, 717–718, **723–725**, 742, 833, 840, 882. *See also* chanting and liturgy; consecration; devotional practices; memorial rites; *mizuko kuyō*; nenbutsu; Tantra  
 of accession, 399–400, 765  
 circumambulation, 653–654, 654, 664, 773, 789, 803, 882  
 of consecration, 179–180  
*constant walking samādhi*, 708  
 Daoist, 199–200  
 and etiquette, 265–266  
 eye-opening, 179–180, 392, 789  
 fire ceremony (*goma*, *homa*), 725, 725, 773, 820  
 of initiation, 375–376  
*kālacakra*, 785  
*kaṭhina* ceremony, 839  
 Latter Seven-Day Rite, 399, 441  
 life-extension, 833  
 and maṇḍala creation, 508  
 and meditation, 521–523  
*nyungne* (*bsnyung gnas*), 526  
 ordination ceremony, 614–616  
*pavāraṇa*, 721  
*poṣadha*, 559, 674, 721, 742  
 rainmaking, 765  
 recitation of *paritta/rakṣā* texts, 840  
 recitation of Pātimokkha, 285–286  
 rejection of, 245, 723–724  
 of repentance, 254  
 sādhana, 821  
 saṅgha *poṣadha*, 667  
 of severance, 485–486  
*shinpyu*, 576  
 spirit rites, 294, 831, 833  
 Taimitsu, 476  
 tantric, 525–527, 821  
 ritual guides, 593, 790, 884  
 ritual interaction, and local divinities, 468  
*ritualization*, use of term, 724  
 ritual language, 441  
 ritual objects, 255, 260, 280, 361, 395–396, 436–437, 543, **726–729**, 727, 729, 757. *See also* robes and clothing  
 ritual texts, Sanskrit, 747–748  
 Rje btsun dam pa Khutukhtus, 564  
 Rje btsun Rig 'dzin chos nyid zang mo, 486  
 Rnam gyal, Dharamsala, 247  
 Rnying ma (Nyingma), 104, 192, 379, 418, 425–426, 589, 623, 701, **729–731**, 822–823, 852–853, 856–857, 859, 915  
*Rnying ma rgyud 'bum*, 822–823, 853  
 Rōben, 345  
 robes and clothing, 32–33, 79, 265–266, 286, 303, 437, 536, **731–734**, 733  
 Rockhill, W. W., 86  
 Rol pa'i rdo rje, 418, 563  
 Rong ston, 216, 484  
 Rong zom Chos kyi bzang po, *Theg chen tshul 'jug*, 852  
 royal imagery, 357  
 Ruegg, D. S., 98, 104  
 Ruggeri, Michele, 160  
 rules of conduct. *See* etiquette; monastic discipline; vinaya  
 Rumtek Monastery, 418, 727  
*rūpa*, 779  
*rūpakāya*, 76–77  
 Ruqing, 135  
 Ruvanvālisāya, 801  
 Ruxing, and “Biographies of Eminent Monks,” 44  
 Rva sgrenḡ Monastery, 36  
 Rva streng (Retiḡ) rin po che, 195  
 Rwa lo, 852  
 Rwa sgrenḡ, 853  
 Ryōanji, 390  
 Ryōbu Shintō, 825  
 Ryōhen, 283–284  
*Kanjin Kakumushō*, 284  
 Ryōkan (Taigu), 735  
 Ryōmōkyōkai, 924  
 Ryōnen, 395  
 Ryūkoku, 531
- ## S
- Sa chen Kun dga' snying po, 751, 854  
 Sadarhadvāna, 322  
*Saddanīti* (Aggavāmsa), 628  
*saddhā*, 277  
*Saddhamaratnāvaliya I* (Dharmasēna), 778  
*saddharma* and *saddharmapratirūpaka*, 211–212  
*Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*. *See* *Lotus Sūtra*  
 Saddharmarāja Vajrācārya, 594  
*Saddharma Ratnāvaliya*, 796  
*sādhana*, 525–527  
*Sādhanaṃālā*, 747  
 Sad na legs, King, 852  
 Saeki Kyokuga, 99  
 Sagaing, 580  
*Sagāthavagga*, 627  
 Sagulsan, 599  
*sagyo ipsōn*, 349  
*sagyōng*, 437–438



- Sahā World, 703  
 Saichō (Dengyō Daishi), 249–250, 272–273, 282, 411–412, 476, 500, 535, 617, 675, 708, 737, 772, 825, 850  
*śaikṣā*, 667  
 Śaivism, 785  
 Sajasan, 599  
 Sakaino Kōyō, 573  
 Sakas, 120  
*Śakasaṃvat*, 285  
 Sakka, 374  
 Śakra, 374  
*sakṛdāgāmin* (once-returner), 723, 740  
 Sakya. *See* Sa skya (Sakya)  
*śākyabhikṣu*, 590, 592  
 Śākyamuni. *See* Buddha, life of the  
 Śākyas, 742  
 Śākyāśrībhadrā, 753  
*śālabhañjikā*, 89  
 Salisbury, Edward Elbridge, 864  
 salvation, in Chinese folk religion, 290  
 Salzberg, Sharon, 867  
*samādhi* (concentration), 8, 29, 520, 524, 665. *See also* meditation; mindfulness  
*Samādhirāja-sūtra*, 498  
 Samantabhadra, 60–61, 68, 570–571, 722  
*Samantapāsādikā* (Buddhaghosa), 166  
*śamatha*, 647  
*Samavati e\* tac' bhava saṃ sarā* (Gurunanda), 103  
*samaya*, 255–256  
 sambhogakāya, 77–78, 871  
*Samdhinirmocana-sūtra*, 320–321, 737–738, 871, 914  
*Samguk sagi*, 905  
*Samguk yusa* (*Memorabilia of the Three Kingdoms*), 447, 738, 781, 824, 905  
*saṃjñā*, 779  
 Sāṃkhya, 331  
*sammā*, 297  
 Saṃmatīya sect, 3, 358, 692  
*samrāy*, 422  
*saṃsāra*, 56, 183, 199, 329, 603, 712, 738–739, 760. *See also* cosmology; death  
*saṃskāra*, 779  
*saṃskāra-duḥkhata*, 682  
 Samtec Sangharāj Dien, 108  
 Samtec Sugandhādhipatī Pān, 108  
*samudaya*, 296  
 Samuel, Geoffrey, 840  
*saṃvara*, 523, 820  
*samyakprahāṇa*, 51  
*samyaksambuddha*, 83, 86–87  
 Samye debate. *See* Bsam yas Debate  
*saṃyojana*, and arhatship, 29  
*Samyōngdang taesajip* (Yujōng), 921  
 Saṃyuktāgama, 11  
*Samyuttanikāya*, 65, 75, 175, 299, 627, 669, 905  
*Sanbōe*, 395  
*Sanbōe* (Minamoto Tamenori), 447  
 Sāñcī, 72, 361–364, 550, 651, 739–740, 762, 804–805, 806, 906–907, 911  
 San Francisco Zen Center, 866  
 saṅgha, 33–34, 45, 64, 84, 187–188, 303, 353, 740–744, 744, 832. *See also* disciples of the Buddha  
 first schism in, 502–503, 742  
 Saṅghabhadra  
*Abhidharmasamayapradīpikā*, 4  
*Nyāyānusārasāstra*, 4  
*saṅghabheda*, 215  
 Saṅghadeva, 201  
 Saṅghamitta, 800  
 Sangharakshita, 268  
*saṅghāvāsa*, 178  
*saṅghāvāseṣa*, 607, 667–668  
*Saṅgīti-sūtra*, 299  
 Sangmuju Hermitage, 158  
*Sangoku buppō denzū engi* (Gyōnen), 335  
*Sangoku denki*, 252  
 Sangs rgyas rgya mtsho, 663  
 Sanjie jiao (Three Stages school), 212, 744–745, 873  
 Śāṅkara, 331  
 Sāṅkrtyāyana, Rāhula, 746  
 Sanlun school, 144, 810  
 Ṣaṅnagarika, 692  
 Sanron school, 411, 582  
 Sanskrit, Buddhist literature in, 35–37, 96–98, 573, 656, 745–748. *See also* titles of works  
 Sanskritization, 113, 453, 829  
*santāna*, 681  
 Śāntarākṣita, 69–70, 483–484, 851  
*Tattvasaṃgraha*, 483  
 Santi Asoka, 832, 834–835  
 Śāntideva, 263, 482–483, 604, 749  
*Bodhicaryāvatāra*, 53–55, 420, 482–483, 525, 603, 748–749  
*Śikṣāsamuccaya*, 482, 749  
 Sanyi Jiao, 813  
 Saośyant, 538  
*saptavidhā-anuttarapūjā*, 54  
 Saraha, 491, 665  
 Saraṇamkara, 797  
 Śāriputra, 232, 315, 354, 487, 542, 566, 741, 749–750, 837  
*Śāriputrābhīdharma*, 221  
*Śāriputrapariprcchā*, 503  
*Śāriputraprakaraṇa* (Aśvaghōṣa), 35, 251  
*śārīra*, 715. *See also* relics and relic cults  
 Sārṇāth, 84, 364, 364, 365, 807  
 Sarvagāmin, 188  
*sarvajña*, 87  
 Sarvāstivāda school, 3–4, 6–7, 11, 76, 82, 120–121, 166, 176–177, 183, 188, 211, 330, 368, 503–505, 674, 712, 750–751  
 and dharma theory, 219–223  
 and life of Buddha, 82–83, 86  
 Sarvāstivāda-Vaibhāṣika, 505  
*Sarvāstivāda-vinaya*, 197, 616, 887  
*Sarvathāgatatattvasaṃgraha*, 14, 747, 821, 823–825  
 Sarvodaya Shramadana rural development movement, Sri Lanka, 248, 798  
*Sasadāvata*, 777  
*Sāsanālaṅkāracātam*<sup>ev</sup> (Mahādhamma Saṅkram), 102  
*Sāsanavaṃsa*, 302, 878  
 Sa skya (Sakya), 151, 561–562, 701, 751–752, 752–753, 822, 853–857  
 Sa skya Paṅḍita Kun dga' rgyal mtshan, 71, 407, 489, 561, 752–753, 854, 861  
*Legs par bshad pa rin pa che'i gter*, 753  
*Mkhas pa rnam's jug pa'i sgo*, 753  
*Sdom gsum rab dbye*, 753  
*Thub pa'i dgongs gsal*, 751, 753  
*Tshad ma rigs gter*, 753  
 Sassēruva, 801  
*Sassi namjōng ki*, 440  
*śāstā devamanuṣyānām*, 87  
 śāstras, 755. *See also* commentarial literature  
 Sanskrit, 748  
*Satipaṭṭhāna-sutta*, 11, 297, 524, 754, 889–890  
 satori (awakening), 754  
*sātra lpaen*, 422  
*Saundarananda* (Aśvaghōṣa), 35, 656  
 Sautrāntika school, 177, 220, 505, 683, 754, 878  
 Sayadaw U Ottama, 165  
 Sayagi U Ba Khin, 524  
*Sba bzhed*, 70  
 Schiefner, Anton von, 98  
 schism edict, 503  
 Schlingloff, Dieter, 100  
 Schlütter, Morten, 428

- Schmidt, Isaak Jakob, 98  
 Schmidthausen, Lambert, 98  
 scholars, monks as, 566  
 scholasticism, of Mahāyāna, 495–496. *See also abhidharma*  
 school names, problem of, 328, 501–503  
 Schopen, Gregory, 97, 100, 289, 497, 615, 715  
 Schopenhauer, Arthur, 266  
 Schwartz, Jeffrey, 687  
 scriptural study, 757–758  
 scripture, 94–95, 166–169, 320, 755–756, 755–758, 756–758, 792. *See also buddhavacana*; canon; catalogues of scriptures; Chinese Buddhist translation; texts, Buddhist; *titles of works*  
 sculpture, 91, 117–119, 804–805, 843, 843–844  
   in Central Asia, 122–124  
   in China, 145–153, 338, 339  
   in India, 360, 362–365  
   in Japan, 392–394  
   in Kashmir, 322  
   in Korea, 339, 437  
   in Mongolia, 327  
   in Myanmar, 579  
   in Nepal, 323  
   in Southeast Asia, 782–785  
   in Sri Lanka, 795, 801, 802  
   in Tibet, 219, 326–327  
 Sde dge, 327  
*Sdom gsum rab dbye* (Sa skya Paṇḍita), 753  
 seasonality, of monastic routine, 559  
 Seattle Buddhist Church, 869  
*Second Bhāvanākrama* (Kamalaśīla), 55  
 second spread of Buddhism, Atisha and, 36  
 Second Vatican Council, Rome, 161  
*Sedamocanakagāthā*, 626  
 seed-families, 284  
 seed syllable, 512  
 Segal, Zindel, 687  
 Seidenstücker, Karl, 266  
 Seiichi Mizuno, 148  
 Sejong, King, 134, 439  
 “selective Buddhism” (*senchaku bukkyō*), 389  
 self, in *Śramaṇa* movement, 329  
 self-deception, 685  
 self-immolation, 65–66, 170, 264, 474, 644, 701, 758–759, 927  
 self-ordination, 499–500, 582  
 Sena I, King, 778  
 Senarat Paranavitana, 800, 803  
 Senart, Emile, 96  
*Senchaku hongan nenbutsu shū* (Hōnen), 336, 708  
 Sengbian, 903  
 Sengcan, 136  
   *Xinxinming*, 278  
 Sengrui, 442  
*Seng shilue* (Zanning), 923  
 Sengyou, *Chu sanzang jiji*, 116  
 Sengzhao, 167, 442, 481, 659, 759–760  
   *Zhao lun*, 926  
   *Zhu Weimo jing*, 166  
 seniority, 616  
 Senkan, *Gokurakukoku Mida wasan*, 708  
 Senoo Girō, 598  
 sense faculties. *See āyatana* (sense faculties)  
 Senshin Buddhist Temple, Los Angeles, 308  
 sentient beings, 52, 176, 185, 233–235, 269, 744, 760, 760, 850, 905. *See also cosmology*  
 “Separation of Gods and Buddhas” edicts (Japan), 393  
 Se ra, 855, 861  
 serfs, 780  
 sermons. *See homiletics*; teaching  
*Setsuhei* (Tominaga Nakamoto), 860  
*setsuwa bungaku*, 252  
 seven buddhas, 462  
 seven jewels, 403  
*Seventeen Article Constitution*, 772  
 Seventeen Point Agreement, 195, 645  
 severance, 485–486  
 Sewu, 372  
 sexuality, 313, 761–764, 815, 899. *See also* body, perspectives on the; family, Buddhism and the; gender; Tantra; women  
   homosexuality, 763–764  
 sexual temptation, 761–762  
 Sgam po pa Bsod nams rin chen, 48, 536, 853–854  
   *Thar pa rin po che'i rgyan*, 54, 488  
 Shahji-ki-Dheri, 805  
 Shahrastānī, *Kitāb al-mīlal wa-n niḥal*, 381  
 Shakakō, 307  
*shakubuku*, 476, 595, 597  
 Shaku Sōen, 924  
 Shaku Unshō, 531  
 shamanism, in Mongolia, 562  
 Shandao, 212, 336, 694, 697, 705, 707  
 Shanhua, 552  
 Shanjia, 849, 926  
 Shanshan kingdom, 121  
 Shanwai, 849, 926  
 Shaolin Monastery, 515–516  
 Sharf, Robert H., 129, 584  
 Shar rdza bkra shis rgyal mtshan, 67  
 Shelun school, 144, 343  
 Shengyan, 264  
 Shenhui, 70, 130, 132, 463  
 Shentai, 909  
 Shentongsi, 149  
 Shenxiu, 53, 348, 463, 655  
 Shes rab rgyal mtshan, 67  
*Shi*, use of name, 462  
 Shibayama Zenkei, 205  
 Shide, 127  
 Shidō Bunan, 205  
 Shigetsu Sasaki, 866  
 Shih Cheng-yen, 248  
*shihua*, 656  
*shūichi*, 794  
*Shiji jing*, 318  
*Shijing*, 172  
 Shimaji Mokurai, 531  
*Shimen zhengtong*, 464  
*shinbutsu bunri*, 767  
 Shingi school, 765  
 Shingon Buddhism, Japan, 252–257, 272–273, 293, 345, 386, 388, 400, 411–412, 662, 717–718, 764–765, 790–791, 815, 825. *See also* esoteric art, East Asia; exoteric-esoteric (Kenmitsu) Buddhism in Japan  
*shingyō*, 279  
*shinjin*, 279  
 Shinjō, *Juhōyōjin shū*, 815  
 Shinnyo, 765  
 Shinran (Zenshin, Shakkū), 22, 387, 412–414, 617, 697, 708–709, 762–763, 766, 772, 850  
   *Kyōgyōshinshō*, 766  
 Shin Sawbu, Queen, 774  
 Shintō (Honji Suijaku) and Buddhism, 271, 274, 288, 313, 384–385, 398–400, 511–512, 517, 530–531, 585–586, 620, 644, 765, 767–771, 773, 791, 794. *See also* folk religion, Japan; ghosts and spirits; Japanese royal family and Buddhism; local divinities and Buddhism; Meiji Buddhist reform  
 Shioiri Ryōdō, 723  
*Shiqi di lun*, 631  
 Shitennōji, 554, 772, 812  
 Shitou Xiqian, 131, 135, 348, 464  
*Shiwang jing*, 27, 318

- Shizong, Emperor, 759  
 Shōbō, 765  
 Shōbōgenzō (Dōgen), 135, 236, 734, 771–772  
 Shōmu, Emperor, 236, 337, 340, 399, 678  
 Shōtoku, Empress, 237  
 Shōtoku, Prince (Taishi), 337, 395, 398, 399, 425, 662, 772  
 Shouluo *biqiu jing*, 28  
*shu*, 168  
*shūgaku*, 99, 386  
 Shugendō, 236, 772–774, 790–792  
*shugenja*, 772  
 Shug gseb Nunnery, 486  
 Shūhō Myōchō, 135, 191  
*Shujing*, 172  
 Shunzei, 398  
*Shutsujō kōgo* (Tominaga Nakamoto), 335, 860  
 Shuye Sonoda, 865  
 Shwedagon, 576, 774, 787, 807  
 Shwe Kyaung, 580  
*siddha*, 376, 490–491, 820–821  
 Siddhārtha. *See* Buddha  
*Sifenlü shanfan buque xingshichao* (Daoxuan), 202  
*Sigālovāda-sutta*, 262, 445  
 Sigiriya, 777, 802  
 Sihala saṅgha, 575  
*Sikhāvalaṅga*, 778  
*Sikhāvalaṅga vinisa*, 778  
 Śikhin, 72  
*śikṣā*, 523  
*śikṣamāṇā*, 606  
 Śikṣānanda, 284, 341, 343, 775, 912  
*śikṣāpada*, 673  
*Śikṣāsamuccaya* (Śāntideva), 54, 482, 749  
*śīla* (perfection of moral conduct), 29, 261, 315, 632, 665, 673  
 Śīlabhadra, 909  
 silent illumination, 568–569  
 Silk Road, 254, 380–381, 775–776, 776. *See also* Central Asia; Central Asia, Buddhist art in  
 Silla kingdom, 430–432  
 Silsangsaṅ, 599  
 Simsang (Shinjō), 345  
 Sind, 380  
 Singapore, 372  
 Singasari, 374  
 Sinhaeng, 599  
 Sinhala, Buddhist literature in, 777–778, 796  
 Sinhalatva, 162  
 Sinmun, King, 436  
*Sin'pyōn chejong kyojang ch'ongnok*, 863  
 Sirimaṅgala, *Cakkavāladīpanī*, 628  
 Si Satha, 808  
*Sishier zhang jing*, 199  
 Sithu I, King, 579  
 Situlpavvuwa, 800  
 Śiva, 105–106, 783  
 Six Doctrines of Nāropa, 513, 583  
 six pāramitās, 632, 649, 665, 773  
 Sixteen Kingdoms, 147  
 Sixteen Visualization Halls, 700  
*Siyabaslakara*, 778  
 Siyam Nikāya, 797  
 Skal bzang (Kelsang) rgya mtsho, 193–194  
 skandha (aggregate), 18, 23, 175, 203, 214, 220–221, 239–240, 296, 648, 669–670, 680–681, 692, 712, 779  
 Skandhila, *Abhidharmāvatāra*, 220  
 skepticism. *See* doubt  
 Skilling, Peter, 634  
 Sku 'dun, 195  
 slavery, 780  
 Smar pa grub thob Shes rab seng ge, 49  
 Smin grol gling Monastery, 730  
 Smith, E. Gene, 98, 858  
*smṛtyupasthāna*, 51, 540  
 Sna nam Ye shes sde, 472  
 Snar thang monastery, 103  
*Sngags rim chen mo* (Tsong kha pa), 855  
 Snyder, Gary, 924  
*snying thig*, 425–426, 853  
 socialism, Buddhist, 163  
 social service, 248–249  
 Society for Buddhist-Christian Studies, 161  
 Society for the Buddhist Mission in Germany, 266  
 Society for the Study of the Buddha-dharma, 902  
 Sōen Shaku, 162, 865–866  
 Soga Ryōjin, 335  
 Sog bzlog pa Blo gros rgyal mtshan, 856  
 Sogdiana, 120  
 Sok (Tou Samouth), 109  
 Sōka Gakkai, 182, 249, 267, 385, 449, 477, 595, 598, 661, 781, 866  
 Sōka Gakkai International, 868  
 Sōkkuram, 81, 119, 339, 437, 553–554, 781–782  
 Sokoji, 866  
 Sōl Ch'ong, 904  
 soldiers, rebirth in hells, 893  
 Sōn. *See* Chan (Zen, Sōn) school  
 Sōn Academy, Korea, 134  
*Sōn'ga kwigam* (Hyujōng), 349  
 Songgwangsa, 158, 434  
 Sōnggyun'gwan, 349  
 Sōngjusan, 599  
 Song Kyu (Chōngsan), 902–903  
 Songshan, 149  
*Songs of the Moon's Reflection on a Thousand Rivers*, 439  
 Songyun, 121  
 Sōnjong, 134  
*Sōnmun ch'waryo* (Kyōnghō), 443  
 Sonnō Hōbutsu Daidōdan, 531  
 Sōnsan, 437  
*sopadhīśeṣanirvāṇa*, 602  
 “sorcerer’s discipline,” Vajrayāna as, 876  
 Soryu Kagahi, 865  
 Sosurim, King, 430  
 soteriology, 5, 316, 465, 537–540, 576–577, 698–699, 760, 782, 846. *See also* merit and merit-making; path  
 Sōtō. *See* Caodong (Sōtō) house of Chan school  
 South Asia, 455, 538, 549–550  
 Southeast Asia, 99–100, 105, 113, 245, 302, 455, 628, 634–635  
 Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in, 340, 782–787, 807. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art  
 Southern Lineage (Chan), 130  
 South Seas Buddhist Association, 817  
 South Xiangtangshan, 694  
 space, sacred, 788–794. *See also* pilgrimage; relics and relic cults  
   Pure Lands, 697  
 space, wild vs. civilized, 294  
 Spa tshab, 861  
 spirit cults, 105, 107, 293–294  
 spirit-mediums, 289, 292, 317  
 Spiro, Melford, 263, 269, 468, 840  
 Spitung, 324  
 Sponberg, Alan, 304  
*śraddhā*, 277  
*śramaṇa* movement, 328, 415, 712  
*śramaṇas*, 741  
*śramaṇera/śramaṇerikā*, 558, 614–615, 673  
*śrāvakas*, 603–604  
 Śrāvakayāna sect, 368, 871  
 Śrī Harṣa, 644  
 Śrī Kālacakra, 409, 409  
 Śrī Kṣetra, 302, 574, 577–578, 807

- Sri Lanka, 16, 99, 113, 182, 212, 234, 247–248, 506, 519, 566, 642, 644, 654, 777–778, 795, **795–799**, **799–803**, 807. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art; India, Buddhist art in; Sinhala, Buddhist literature in; Sri Lanka, Buddhist art in
- Anurādhapura period, 795–796, 800 and Buddhist nationalism, 163–164, 584–586
- Christian missionaries in, 160–161, 584 festivals, 21, 286–287
- historical writing, 333–334, 877–878 and Myanmar, 574–575
- nuns in, 607–609
- Polonnaruva era, 796, 800
- Sri Lanka, Buddhist art in
- Buddha images, 81
- Sri Lanka Freedom Party, 799
- Śrī-mahādevī, 403
- Śrīmālādevī-sūtra, 772, 827
- Śrī Rāhula, 797
- Śrīvijaya, 371–373, 785–786
- Srong btsan sgam po, King, 404, 460, 662–663, 851, 853
- srotā-āpanna* (stream-enterer), 723, 740–741
- Stag lung thang pa Bkra shis dpal, 49
- Stag tshang, 216
- state and Buddhism, 424–425, 459–460, 837–839
- in China, 141–142, 149, 172–174, 539, 585, 617, 643, 645, 824
- in Japan, 236–237, 273–274, 386–389, 391–393, 398–400, 411–412, 441, 501, 530–531, 582–583, 585–586, 633, 678, 718, 772, 828
- in Korea, 431–432
- in Mongolia, 561–565
- in Myanmar, 460, 575–576, 787
- in Sri Lanka, 460, 795–796
- in Thailand, 831–834
- in Tibet, 460, 854–855
- in Vietnam, 879–881
- State Shintō, 767
- Stcherbatsky, Theodore, 98
- Stein, Aurel, 123, 150, 776
- Steinkellner, Ernst, 98
- stele, 147–149
- Sthavīra school, 188, 504, 742, 837
- Sthavīrāvādāna*, 36
- Sthiramati, 915
- Stod lun Mtshur phu, 417
- Stone, Jacqueline I., 619
- storytelling, 155, 250–252, 316–317, 395, 495–496, 593, 842–843. *See also jātaḥ; kōan*
- Strickmann, Michel, 98
- Stuart, Maurine, 868
- stūpa, 12–13, 15, 22, 34, 68, 76–77, 92, 117, 118, 205–208, 259–260, 279, 402, 497–498, 550, 717–718, 739, 774, 776, 803, **803–807**, 842. *See also* monastic architecture; relics and relics cults; *names of sites*
- in Central Asia, 123
- in China, 146–147, 149, 551 and consecration, 178–181
- dagoba* (*dhātugopa*), 807
- as focus of worship, 80–81, 86, 290, 355, 672
- in India, 362–363, 368–369
- in Kashmir, 322
- in Korea, 436
- lotus-bud, 809
- in Mongolia, 327
- in Myanmar, 578–579, 807
- in Nepal, 322, 362
- and reliquary deposits, 719–720
- as sacred space, 788–789
- in Sri Lanka, 362, 800–801
- terrace-stūpa, 805
- in Thailand, 808–809
- tower-stūpa, 805
- Suan Mōkh Monastery, 75
- Subāhupariṣcchā*, 823–824
- Su Bai, 124
- subconsciousness*, use of term, 175
- Subhā (arhat), 29
- Subhadra, 238
- Śubhakarasiṃha, 511, 534, 823–825
- Subhāsita* (Alagiavanna Mohoṭṭāla), 778
- Subhūti, 233
- subjectivity, 546–547
- Sudama, 117
- Śuddhodana, 83–85, 238
- Sudhana, 341
- Sudōksa, 434
- suffering. *See* duḥkha (suffering)
- sugata*, 87
- Sugata Saurabha* (Chittadhar Hridaya), 594
- Suḥḷlekha* (Nāgārjuna), 480
- suicide, 205, 264
- Sui Wendi, 425
- Sujātā, 90, 288
- Sukhāvātī, 704, 808. *See also* pure lands
- Sukhāvātīvyūha-sūtra*, 14, 59, 73–74, 493, 694, 698–699, 707, **808**
- Sukhothai, 39, 787, **808–809**, 831
- Sukumar Dutt, 556
- Sulak Sivaraksa, 248, 835
- Sullivan, Michael, 128
- Sumatra, 372, 785
- Sumedha, 85
- Sumeru. *See* cosmology; Mount Meru
- Sumisan, 599
- Sūngjang, 282
- śūnyatā (emptiness), 52, 262, 303–305, 314–315, 479–480, 484, 525, 581, 649, 659, 763, **809–810**, 846. *See also* philosophy
- Śūnyatāsaptati (Nāgārjuna), 480
- supernatural powers, 8–9, 86, 226, 301–302, 490–491, 566–567, 772–774, 878–879. *See also* *abhijñā*; miracles
- Śūrangama-sūtra, 59
- Surendrabodhi, 472
- Surucolo, 511
- Sūryavarman I, King, 106
- Sūryavarman II, King, 106
- Su Shi, 174
- Susiddhikara*, 821, 823
- Susōna Society, 349
- Susumu Yamaguchi, 97
- sūtra, 1, 3–5, 7, 10, 755, **810**, 821. *See also* Āgama/Nikāya
- sūtra-copying, 394–395, 474, 811
- sūtra illustrations, **810–812**, 811
- sūtra mahāmudrā*, 488–489
- Sūtra of Meditation on Bodhisattva Samantabhadra*, 722
- Sūtrapīṭaka*, 10–12, 188, 810
- Suttanipāta*, 2, 203, 512, 601, 627, 740
- Suttapīṭaka*, 445, 626–627
- Suttavibhaṅga*, 626
- Suvarṇaprabhāsottama-sūtra*, 425, 631, 722, **812**, 825
- Suzong, Emperor, 824
- Suzuki, D. T., 99, 517–518, **812**, 866, 924. *See also* Zen, popular conceptions of
- Suzuki Shōsan, 205
- Suzuki, Shunryū, 866, 868
- svabhāvikakāya*, 78
- Svātantrika Madhyamaka, 111, 481–482, 484
- Svayambhu Nath, 804
- Svayambhū Purāna*, 593, 748
- syncretic sects: three teachings, **813–814**. *See also* Confucianism and Buddhism; Daoism and Buddhism; folk religion, China; millenarianism and millenarian movements
- syncretism, 468–469, 830–831

- T**
- Tabo, 324–325
- Tachikawaryū school, 763, **815**, 825
- Tada Tōkan, 98
- Tadjikistan, 120
- Taegak kuksa munjip* (Üich'ön), 863
- Taegak kuksa woejip* (Üich'ön), 863
- T'aego order, 134, 434
- T'aego Pou, 134, 159
- T'aehak, 430
- T'aehyön, 282, 904
- Ta'er, 553
- Taimitsu, 475–476
- Taishō shinshū daizōkyō*, 114, 116
- Ta'i si tu Byang chub rgyal mtshan, 854
- Taiwan, 142, 608–610, **815–819**. *See also* colonialism and Buddhism
- Taixu, 263, 283, **819**, 881, 913
- Taixu dashi quanshu*, 819
- Taizong, Emperor, 173
- Takakusu Junjirō, 97, 531
- Takamurui, 725
- Takht-i-Bahi, 805
- Takuan Sōhō, 135, **819–820**. *See also* Zen, popular conceptions of
- Taliban regime, 640–641
- Tambiah, Stanley, 21, 246, 716
- Tamil, Buddhist literature in, 369–370
- Tamilnadu, India, 369–370
- Tamura Yoshirō, 619
- Tanabe Hajime, 650
- Tanabe Zenchi, 531
- Tanaka Chigaku, 162, 449, 531, 598
- Tang Taizong, Emperor, 909
- Tanguts, 535
- Tang Yongtong, 98
- Tanlin, 57
- Tanluan, 707
- Tantra, 98, 192, 263, 305–306, 331, 378–379, 408–410, 512, 604, 619, 665, 685, 743, **820–825**, 901. *See also* esoteric art, East Asia; esoteric art, South and Southeast Asia and *bodhicitta*, 55–56 and buddhahood, 78–79 in East Asia, 250, 700–701, 773, 823 and initiation, 375–376, 450, 616 key texts, 36, 104, 113, 475–476, 751–752 *mahāsiddhas*, 490–491 and meditation, 521, 525–527 practices, 420, 756, 763, 878–879 in Southeast Asia, 108, 575, 882 in Tibet, 48, 729–731, 861–862 tantras, 812, 852, 862, 875
- anuttarayoga*, 305, 511, 535, 747, 821
- anuyoga*, 822
- atiyoga*, 822
- caryā* (conduct) tantras, 747, 821
- deity yoga, 93, 724
- kriyā* (action) tantras, 747, 821
- mahāyoga*, 623, 822
- severance, 485–486
- sexual yoga, 763
- Tantra *mahāmudrā*, 488–489
- yoga tantras, 747, 821
- “Tantric Theravāda,” 830
- Taoism. *See* Daoism and Buddhism
- Ta Prohm temple, 106
- Tārā, 234, 254, 304, 372, 498, 571–572, 784, 853, 899
- Tārānātha, 95, 575, 856
- Bka' babs bdun ldan*, 491
- Rgya gar chos 'byung*, 380
- Ta'rikh al-Hind* (Rashīd al-Dīn), 381
- Tarim basin, 121
- Tarkajvālā* (Bhāvaviveka), 95, 482
- Tarhang Tulku Rinpoche, 868
- Tashi chōdzong, 327
- Tashi Lamas, 629
- Tassajara Zen Mountain Center, 866
- tathāgata, 87, **826**
- tathāgatararbha, 38–39, 52, 78, 130–131, 144, 177, 201, 269, 278, 284, 341, 344, 351, 603, 605–606, 744, 760, 810, **826–827**, 846–848, 849
- Tathāgatararbha-sūtra*, 827
- Tattvasaṃgraha* (Śāntaraṅgita), 483, 764
- Taxila, 366–367, 550
- taxonomic lists, in *abhidharma*, 2, 4–5
- teachers, 130, 132, 231–232, 250, 268, 295, 451–452. *See also* Buddha, life of the; *names of individuals*
- women as, 304, 306, 485–486
- teaching, 71, 83–84, 86, 92–94, 111, 154, 247–248, 261
- Teiser, Stephen, 659
- temple families, 161–162
- temples. *See names of temples*
- temple system in Japan, 292–293, 385, 388, 392–393, 395–396, 399, 448, 582–583, 632–633, 643, 678, **828**
- Tendai school. *See* Tiantai (Tendai, Ch'ōnt'aejong) school
- Ten Kings of Hell, 318–319, 468
- ten pāramitās, 632
- Tenzin Gyatso (Fourteenth Dalai Lama), 59, 162–163, 170, 170, 171, 194–195, 195, 248, 359, 410, 420, 645, 669, 688, 858, 893
- Teramoto Enga, 98
- Texas Buddhist Council, 869
- textbooks, monastic, 8
- texts, Buddhist, 11, 95–98, 120–122, 132, 180, 456–457. *See also āgama/nikāya*; apocrypha; canon; Chinese Buddhist translation; manuscripts; *titles of works*
- Thagya Min, 374
- Thai, Buddhist literature in, **828–830**
- Thailand, 9–10, 21, 33, 39, 75, 160, 179–180, 234, 246–247, 372, 446–447, 457, 644–645, 808–809, **830–836**, 890. *See also* Thai, Buddhist literature in
- Thailand, Buddhist art in, 782–783, 786–787, 811, 843
- Thammacarik, 832
- Thammakai movement (Thailand), 245
- Thammathūt, 832
- Thammayut order, 108, 832
- thang ka*, 185, 258, 259, 327, 624, 661–662
- Thapar, Romila, 425
- Thar pa rin po che'i rgyan* (Sgam po pa Bsod nams rin chen), 54, 488
- That-byin-nyu, 579
- Thaton, 578
- Theg chen tshul 'jug* (Rong zom Chos kyi bzang po), 852
- Theg mchog rdo rje, 418
- Theosophists, 161, 164
- Theragāthā*, 232, 301, 303, 627
- Theravāda art and architecture, **841–844**. *See also* Buddha, life of the, in art and Buddha images, 81, 90
- Theravāda school, 6, 11, 23, 46, 72, 76, 82, 188, 208, 211, 261, 263, 354, 557, 625, 665, 670, 712, **836–841**, 871, 877–878, 898. *See also* mainstream Buddhist schools; Theravāda art and architecture and *abhidharma*, 2–3, 183, 837 and arhatship, 28–29 in Cambodia, 105–110 and commentarial literature, 75, 166, 203 and education, 247–248 key texts, 113, 216–217, 223, 632, 756 and laity, 445–447 and life of Buddha, 82–83, 86 in Myanmar, 17, 574–578 in Nepal, 591, 594 practices, 15, 33, 521, 889 rise of, 492, 503, 506, 837 in Sri Lanka, 796 and Tibetan Buddhism, 840

- in United States, 867–869  
and vinaya, 503, 668, 674, 887  
in the West, 266–267  
and women, 304, 608–609  
*Therīgāthā*, 232, 303, 489, 607, 627  
Thích Minh Châu, 884  
Thích Nhất Hạnh, 248, 263, 420,  
844–845, 868, 881  
Thích Quang Du'c, 758  
Thích Tâm Châu, 881  
Thích Thanh Từ, 881  
Thích Trí Quang, 881  
Thicksay Monastery, 558  
Thiền Chiếu, 884  
Thiền school. *See* Chan school  
*Thiền Uyển Tập Anh*, 880  
Thi-loka-guru, 579  
thirst, and desire, 214  
Thirty-Seven Lords, 576  
Tholing, 325  
Thompson, Ashley, 107  
Thông Biện, 136  
thought, in dharma theory, 221–223  
“three fields of blessings,” 532  
Threefold Practice, 903  
“three jewels,” 219, 403  
three *kāyas*, 78  
“three knowledges,” 8, 45  
three mysteries, 764  
three self-natures, 918  
“three teachings,” 144–145  
“three thousand quiddities,” 848–849,  
927  
three tracks, 848  
three trainings, 638  
“three treasures,” 261  
“three truths,” 847–848, 927  
“three ways of gaining knowledge,” 757  
three wheels of doctrine, 320–321, 871  
*Three Worlds According to King Ruang*,  
184  
Thub bstan chos kyi nyi ma, 629  
Thub bstan (Tubten) rgya mtsho, 194,  
629  
*Thub pa'i dgongs gsal* (Sa skya Paṇḍita),  
751, 753  
Thubten Samphel, 195  
Thūpārāma, 800  
*Thūpavaṃsa*, 778, 877  
Tiandong Rujing, 236  
Tianlongshan, 119, 149–150, 551  
Tiantai Deshao, 912  
Tiantai (Tendai, Ch'ōnt'ae) school, 55,  
134–135, 141, 144, 149, 282,  
344–345, 500, 700, 810, 827,  
845–850, 925–928  
in Japan, 52, 99, 134, 272–273, 301,  
386, 388, 400, 411–412, 597,  
618–620, 825  
key figures, 26, 249–250, 307, 707–709  
key texts, 314, 321, 475–476, 548–549  
in Korea, 432, 434, 863  
lineage, 462–465  
Tiantishan, 147  
Tibet, 35–36, 180, 212, 252, 254, 288,  
484, 516, 519, 536, 609, 643, 654,  
660, 851–858, 915–916. *See also* Bu  
ston (Bu tön) rin chen grub;  
Himalayas, Buddhist art in; Tibetan  
Buddhism  
Bon, 66–68  
Bsam yas Debate, 69–71, 188, 852  
Chinese invasion of, 162–163, 195, 216  
and communism, 169–170, 170, 171,  
171, 645  
historical writing, 334–335  
languages, 454–455  
monasteries, 68–69, 245  
Mongol conquest of, 561–562, 730  
ordination in, 851–852  
Tibet, Buddhist art in, 151, 153, 324–327,  
404–405, 811  
Tibetan Book of the Dead, 208–209, 379,  
714, 853, 859  
Tibetan Buddhism, 188, 211, 267, 321,  
378–379, 465, 535, 553, 572, 642,  
810, 868, 901. *See also* Dalai Lama;  
esoteric Buddhism; Karma pa;  
Tantra  
and Bka' brgyud, 47–49  
and Bon, 66–68, 260  
and Buddhist studies, 94, 98  
Dge lugs (Gelug), 215–216  
key figures, 103–104, 111, 425–426,  
536, 583, 623–625, 861–862  
and lamas, 450, 629–630  
in Mongolia, 561–565  
in Nepal, 588–590  
practices, 521–523, 613–614, 634, 714  
and Pure Land Buddhism, 700–701,  
705  
and Rnying ma, 729–731, 822–823  
and Sa skya, 751–753  
Tibetan Buddhist translation, 36,  
103–104, 113–114, 341, 454–455,  
484, 513–514, 852  
Tiep Hien Order, 844, 868  
Tiktse, 324  
Tilokarāt, King, 831, 838  
Tilopa, 48, 488, 491, 583  
time. *See* chronology  
Tịnh Giời, 543  
Tiriyāyi, 800  
Tivanka, 801  
*Tiwei jing*, 27  
Tōdaiji. *See* Hōryūji and Tōdaiji  
*Tō daiwajō tōsei den* (Genkai), 301  
Toda Jōsei, 781  
Tōfukuji, 389, 556  
Tōji, 273, 388, 395, 412, 765  
Tojūng, 904  
Tokkyōkai, 531  
Tomikichiro Tokuriki, 621  
Tominaga Nakamoto, 860  
*Settsuhei*, 860  
*Shutsujō kōgo*, 335, 860  
T'ongdosa, 431, 434, 554  
Tongnisan, 599  
Tooth-Relic Temple, Kandy, 799, 906  
topophilia, 793  
*torāṇa*, 550  
Toshio Nagahiro, 148  
Tōshōdaiji, 301, 582, 662  
Toṭagamuvē Sri Rāhula, 778  
Toūi, 134, 599  
Toyok (Toyuq), 118, 124–125  
Toyotomi Hideyoshi, 561  
Toyun, 599  
Tōzan-ha, 773  
trade, 776, 782, 795, 872  
traditional denominations, in Japan,  
385–386  
*Trai Bhūm*, 108, 422  
Trainor, Kevin, 65  
*Trai Phūm Phra Ruang* (King Lithai),  
828–829, 832  
*traividya*, 45  
Trần Nhân Tông, 880  
“tranquility worker,” 889  
transformation, 179–180, 654  
sexual, 303–305  
transformation tableaux (*bianxiang*),  
43–44, 319, 693–695  
transformation texts (*bianwen*), 43  
translation and translators, 24, 48, 154,  
167, 442, 453–454, 484, 759–760,  
775, 909–910, 912–913. *See also*  
*names of translators; titles of works*  
transmigration, 9, 712. *See also* rebirth  
Trần Thái Tông, 880  
treasure texts, Tibetan, 24, 192, 334–335,  
426, 623, 625, 730, 756, 822, 853,  
856, 859  
treasuries, monastic, 400  
tribal-republicanism, 424  
trikāya, 81

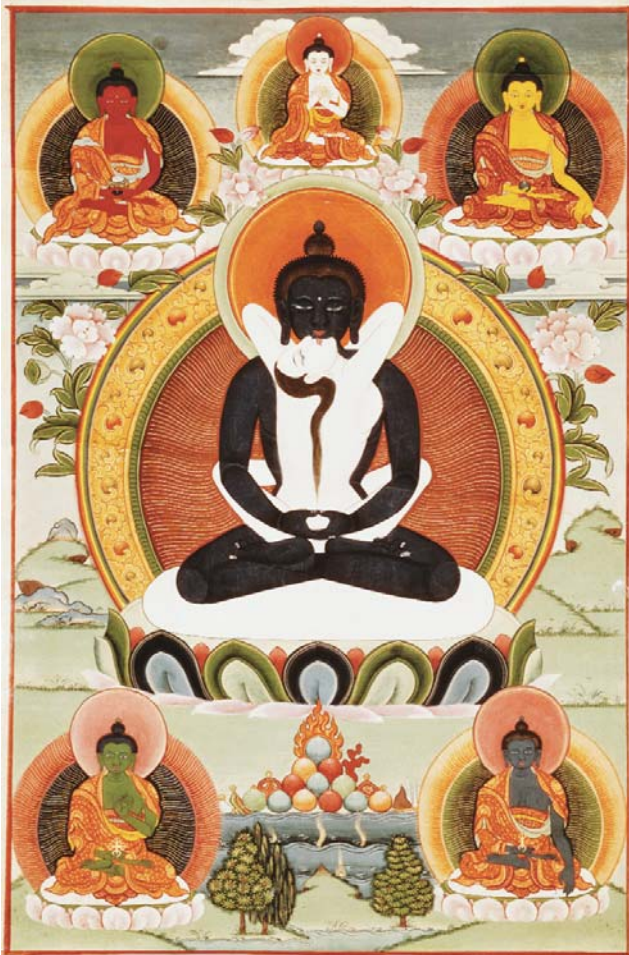
- Trilokya Bauddha Mahāsaṅgha Sahāyaka Gana, India, 248
- Triṃśikā* (Vasubandhu), 748, 916
- Trinkler, Emil, 123
- Tripitāka, 10, 93–94, 112, 114, 219–220, 626, 742, 755–756. *See also* *abhidharma*; canon; commentarial literature; scripture; vinaya
- Tripitāka hall, 841
- triratna*. *See* refugees
- trisaṃvara*, 853
- ṭṣṇā, 175, 513
- Trúc Lâm lineage, 136, 880–881
- Tshad ma rigs gter* (Sa skya Paṅḍita), 753
- Tshar chen Blo gsal rgya mtsho, 752, 856
- Tshar pa subsect, 752
- Tshe dbyangs (Tseyang) rgya mtsho, 193
- Tshul khriṃs rdo rje, 426
- Tsong kha pa Blo bzang grags pa, 111, 193, 215–216, 629, 665, 855, **861–862**, 904, 915–916
- Lam rim chen mo*, 36, 855, 861
- Legs bshad snying po*, 321, 738
- Sngags rim chen mo*, 855
- Tsukamoto Zenryū, 98
- Tsurezuregusa* (Yoshida Kenkō), 397
- Tucci, Giuseppe, 98
- Tuck, Andrew, 484
- Tumshuk, 123
- Tuoshan, 149
- Turner, Victor, 654
- Tz'u-chi, 249, 610, 817–818
- U**
- U Ba Khin, 898
- Uchimura Kanzō, 598
- Uda, ruler, 399
- Udraka Rāmaputra, 83
- Ūich'ōn, 134, 432, 850, **863**
- Ūijōk, 282
- Ūisang, 339, 344, 431, **863–864**, 904
- Hwaōm ilsūng pōpkye to*, 344, 863
- Ū" Kalā", *Mahārājavanī krī*", 102
- Ukñā Suttantaprijā Ind, 422
- Uden Shintō, 404
- Union of Lao Buddhists, 458
- United Nations, 781
- United States, **864–869**
- universal histories, 334
- U Nu, 188
- upadhi*, *upādāna*, 175
- Upagupta, 232, 513, 542, 576, 750, **870**
- Upaka, 83
- Upāli, 84, 112, 188, 232, **870**
- Upali Thein, 580
- Upaniṣads, 328–330
- upāsaka/upāsikā*, 182, 445, 741
- Upāśānta, *Abhidharmahṛdayaśāstra*, 4
- upavāsatha*, 668
- upāya, 10, 56, 250, 305, 420, 632, 763, 846, 871, **871–872**
- Upāyakaṣālyā-sūtra*, 871
- Uposathaghara (Pohotaghara), 800
- Uppalavaṇṇā, 607
- U rgyan gling pa, 853
- U rgyan gter bdag gling pa, 856
- Usa Hachimangū, 399
- Uṣṇīṣavijaya, 572
- usury, **872–873**, 888
- Utpalavaṇṇā, 232
- Uttarā, 232
- Uttaragrantha*, 888
- Uygurs, 122
- V**
- Vādavidhi* (Vasubandhu), 916
- Vaibhāṣika school, 7, 220, 878, 914
- Vairocana, 60, 118, 150, 260, 324, 338, 339, 340–342, 345, 372, 393, 437, 471, 473, 476, 509–511, 632, 730. *See also* Mahāvairocana
- Vairocanābhisambodhi*, 821, 823, 825
- Vaiśālī, 502, 715. *See also* councils, Buddhist
- Vaiśeṣika, 331
- vajra*, 253, 255, 259, 373, 403, 728, 729, 875
- Vajrabodhi, 534, 824
- vajrācārya*, 590, 592, 594, 744
- Vajracchedikā-prajñāpāramitā*, 227–228
- Vajradhara, 48, 326
- Vajrapāṇi, 61, 911
- Vajrasēkara*, 511, 535
- Vajravalī*, 511
- Vajrayāna school, 47, 66, 81, 88, 93, 204, 257, 305–306, 375, 512, 590, 747, 752, 763, **875–877**. *See also* Tantra
- Vajrayoginī, 305, 666
- Valāhassana-jātaka*, 911
- Vāligama, 801
- Valignano, Alessandro, 160
- vaṃsas*, 34, 333, 457, 626, 777, 837–838, **877–878**. *See also* history; Sinhala, Buddhist literature in
- Vanavāsi, 369
- vandalism and destruction of Buddhist sites, 50, 640–641
- Vaḥ Hanh University, 881
- Varṇārharvaṇastotra* (Mātṛceṭa), 518
- Varṣākāra, 84
- vāsana* (traces), 681–682
- Vāṣpa, 232
- Vasubandhu, 32, 60, 227, 239, 456, 649, 683, 707, 738, **878**, 914–915
- Abhidharmakośabhāṣya*, 4, **7–8**, 220, 377–378, 416–417, 424, 602–603, 670, 748, 878, 914–915
- Fahua lun*, 471
- Karmasiddhiprakaraṇa*, 916
- Pañcaskandhaprakaraṇa*, 916
- Triṃśikā*, 748, 916
- Vādavidhi*, 916
- Viṃśatikā*, 748, 916
- Viṃśikā*, 417
- Vyākhyāyukti*, 168, 755
- Vasudhārā, 323–324
- Vasumitra, 188
- Vātsīputrīya, 692, 712
- Vaṭṭagāmaṇī, King, 188, 796
- Vatt Bodum Vaddey temple, 108
- Vatt Uṇṇalom, 108
- vedanā*, 779
- Vedic religion, 328–330, 352–353, 374, 451, 712, 724
- vegetarianism, 229, 456, 606
- Veṇuvana, 84
- vernacularization, in Southeast Asia, 421
- Vesākha, 286
- Vessantara-jātaka*, 46, 833, 891. *See also* Viśvantara
- Vetterling, Herman C. (Philangi Dasa), 865
- Vēttēve, 778
- Vibhajjavāda school, 837
- Vibhajjavāda school, 3, 505–506
- Vibhaṅga*, 888
- vibhāṣā*, 3–4, 7, 238–239
- Vicitrakarṇika Avadāna*, 593, 748
- Vickery, Michael, 106
- Victoria, Brian, 896
- Vīdāgama Maitrēya, 778
- Buduguṇālaṃkāraya*, 778, 797
- vidyā*, 821
- Vidyācakravartī, *Butsaraṇa*, 778
- vidyācaraṇasaṃpanna*, 87
- vidyādhara*, 743, 820, **878–879**
- vidyādharacakravartin*, 876
- vidyādharasaṃvara*, 876
- vidyārāja*, 572
- Vientiane, 458

- Vietnam, 136, 169–170, 460, 644, **879–882**
- Vietnam, Buddhist art in, 783–784, 787. *See also* Southeast Asia, Buddhist art in
- Vietnamese, Buddhist influences on literature in, **883–884**
- Vietnamese Buddhist translation, 884
- Vietnamese Unified Buddhist Church, 881
- Vietnam War, 65–66
- Vigrahavyāvartanī* (Nāgārjuna), 480, 581
- vihāras, 12–13, 550
- Vijayabāhu I, King, 575
- vijñāna*, 175–176, 681, 779. *See also* consciousness, theories of
- Vijñānakāya*, 504
- Vijñānavāda school, 13, 224, **884–885**, 915
- vijñaptimātra*, 917–918
- Vikramaśīla, 358–359, 380, 853
- Vimalakīrti, 147, 167, 263, **885**
- Vimalakīrtinirdeśa*, 445–446, 496, 772, 846, 871, 885, 901
- Vimalamitra, 730, 853
- vimānapetas*, 309
- Vima snying thig*, 426
- Vimśatikā* (Vasubandhu), 748, 916
- Vimśikā* (Vasubandhu), 417
- vinaya, 1, 8, 10, 197, 218, 262–263, 265, 282–283, 459, 519, 557, 572–573, 606–607, 667–668, 673–675, 731, 741, 746, 755–756, 762, 780, 870, **885–889**, 886–888. *See also* monastic discipline; precepts; Risshū
- “Vinaya of the True Dharma” movement, 404
- Vinayapīṭaka*, 75, 188, 295, 626, 714, 741–742
- Vinayavastu* (*Khandhaka*), 888
- vinicchaya*, 102–103
- Vinītaruci, 136
- vipassanā (Sanskrit, *vipaśyanā*), 8, 226, 520, 524, 526, 577, 647, 666, 867–868, 889, **889–890**
- vipassanā* movement, 890
- Vipaśyin, 72, **890**
- Vīracōliyam* (Puttamittiran), 370
- virtues, Confucian, 27
- Virūpa, 491, 854
- vīrya*, 632
- Viśiṣṭacāritra*, 476
- Viṣṇu, 106, 369, 410, 783, **890**
- visualization, 526, 699, 722, 790, 821, 850, 875
- Visuddhimagga* (Buddhaghosa), 3, 29, 75, 204, 315, 523, 537, 627, 649, 796, 890
- Viśvabhū, 72
- Viśvamātā, 409
- Viśvantara, 46, 196, 627, **890–891**. *See also* *Vessantara-jātaka*
- vocabulary, of Buddhism, 24, 99, 273, 346–347, 454–455, 747
- Vo Canh, 784
- Vogel, J. Ph., 72
- Von Le Coq, Albert, 124
- vows, 821, 885–886. *See also* bodhisattva vows; ordination; precepts
- Vyākhyāyukti* (Vasubandhu), 168, 755
- ## W
- Wachirawut, King, 832
- Wachirayanwarorot, Prince-Patriarch, 829
- wai*, 265
- Waldschmidt, Ernst, 85, 124
- Waley, Arthur, 125–126, 128
- “wall examining” (*biguan*), 57
- Wanfu Monastery, 375
- Wang Changyue, 200
- Wang Kōn, 432
- Wang Wei, 143, 173
- Wangxi, 70
- Wang Zhe, 200
- Wanshan Tonggui ji* (Yanshou), 759, 912
- war, **893–896**
- Warder, A. K., 333
- war ethic, Buddhism and, 894–896
- warrior ethic, Buddha and, 893–894
- Washio Junkyō, 573
- Wassiljew, W. P., 98
- Wat Bowoniwēt, 832
- Wat Carolina, 869
- Wat Mahathāt, 809, 832
- Wat Pā Daeng, 831
- Wat Thammakāi, 831, 834–835
- Watts, Alan, 924
- weikza* cult (Myanmar), 879
- weikza-lam*, 577
- Weishi* school, 283–284
- Wei-Shu*, 744
- Wei Wenlang, 147
- Welch, Holmes, 100, 464
- Welivitiye Saranakara, 778
- Wells, Kenneth, 584
- Wen, Emperor, 717
- Wenbei, 909
- Wenchang, 200
- Wenshushan, 147
- Western Thousand Buddha Caves, 118
- wheel of dharma  
(*dharma-cakrapravartana*), 84, 92, 219, 295–296, 362, 783
- wheel of existence, 712
- wheel of life (*bhavacakra*), 185, 235, 739
- White Lotus, 200, 348, 539–540, 643, 659, 702, 707
- White Lotus Rebellion, 659
- “White Path to Paradise,” 694, 707
- Wiangjan, 457
- wilderness monks, 33, 356, 575, 832, **897–898**. *See also* Shugendō
- William of Ruysbroeck, 160, 613
- wipathana yeiktha* (insight hermitages), 890
- wisdom. *See* *prajñā* (wisdom)
- “wish-fulfilling jewel,” 403
- women, 56, 155, 192, 235, 247, 280, 304, 306, 413, 473, 491, 627, 663, 791, 833, 839, **898–902**. *See also* gender; nuns
- as disciples of Buddha, 231–232
- in early Buddhism, 303–304
- female body, 64, 303, 763, 899
- female divinities, 234, 571–572
- inferiority of, 303–304
- laywomen, 445–447
- as teachers, 304, 306, 485–486
- as temple wives, 161–162
- Wōn Buddhism. *See* Wōnbulgyo
- Wōnbulgyo, **902–903**
- Wōnbulgyo kyojōn*, 903
- Wōnch’ūk, 167, 283, **903–904**, 909, 916
- Haesimmilgyōng so*, 903
- Inwanggyōng so*, 903
- Pulsōl panya paramilta simgyōng ch’an*, 903
- Wōndon sōngbullon* (Chinul), 158
- Wōn’gwang, 431
- Wōnhyo, 167, 282, 339, 345, 431–432, 543, 863, **904–905**
- woodblock printing, 675–677, 676
- woodcarving, in Myanmar, 580, 774
- work, Buddhist concept of, 243–244, 547, 780
- World Council of Churches, 161
- world missionary conference, Edinburgh, 1910, 161
- World Parliament of Religions (Chicago, 1893), 16, 160–161, 865, 924
- world systems, 184, 187
- worship, 905–907, **905–907**. *See also* devotional practices
- Wright, J. K., 793
- written transmission, of canon, 112–113



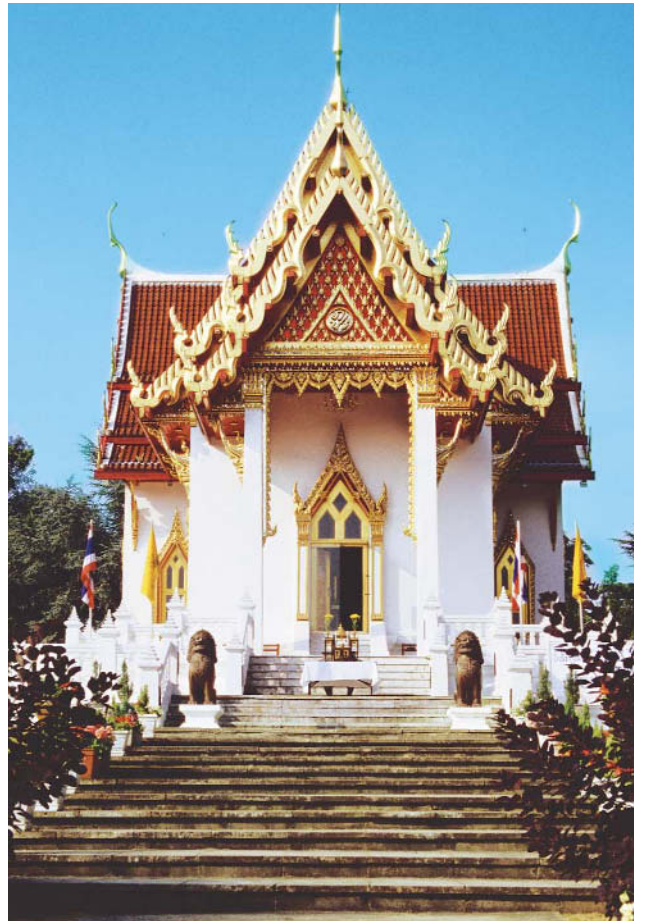
- Wu, Emperor, 132  
 Wu, Empress, 471, 775  
 Wu (Taizi), Emperor, 643  
*wu*, 52–53, 132–133  
*Wubu liuce*, 813  
 Wuchan Buddhist Institute, 819  
 Wudang-zhao, 327, 553  
 Wudi, Emperor, 173  
 Wuming, 817  
 Wusheng Laomu (Eternal Mother), 813–814  
 Wutaishan, 153, 553  
 Wuwei sect, 813  
 Wuyan Tong, 136  
 Wuyue Kingdom, 151  
 Wu Zetian, Empress, 63, 141, 338, 343, 900  
 Wu Zhao, Empress, 173, 539  
 Wuzong, Emperor, 141  
 Wuzu Fayan, 132, 134
- X**
- Xavier, Francis, 160  
 Xēththāthirāt, 457  
 Xiangtangshan, 119, 148, 551  
 Xiangyang, 197  
 Xianshou school, 343  
*Xianyang shengjiao lun* (Asaṅga), 32  
*Xianyu jing*, 251  
 Xie Lingyun, 656  
 Xihuang Monastery, 630  
 Xilituzhao, 553  
*xin*, 278  
 Xingyun, 818  
*xinxin*, 278  
 Xinxing, 212, 744  
*Xinxinming* (Sengcan), 278  
 Xiong Shili, 283  
 Xishuangbanna, 553  
 Xixia Kingdom, 151  
 Xuanlang, 925  
 Xuanshi, 708  
 Xuanwudi, Emperor, 471  
 Xuanying, 909  
 Xuanzang, 49, 78, 96, 117, 121, 143, 149, 166, 173, 202, 215, 224, 283, 314, 343, 357–358, 360, 441, 486, 588, 616, 642, 652–653, 658, 692, 719–720, 723, 776, 903–904, **909–910**, 915  
*Cheng Weishi lun*, 909–910  
 Xuanzong, Emperor, 173
- Xu gaoseng zhuan* (Daoxuan), 57, 514–515  
 Xunzi, 172  
 Xuyun, 133  
*Xu zang jing*, 621  
 xylography, 675–677
- Y**
- Yabuki Keiki, 99  
 Yakhine Maha-myat-muni Hpaya-gyi, 580  
*yakṣas*, 80, 234, 310, 572, **911**  
*yakṣinī*, 467  
 Yama, 204, 233, 289–290, 317–319  
*yamabushi*, 540, 772  
 Yamantaka-Vajrabhairava, 572  
 Yanagida Kunio, 21  
 Yanagida Seizan, 99  
 Yang Wenhui, 283  
 Yang Xi, 198–199  
 Yanshou, Yongming, 132, 134, 205, 700, 708, **911–912**  
*Wanshan Tonggui ji*, 759, 912  
*Zongjing lu*, 912  
*yantras*, 457, 840  
 Yanxiadong, 151  
 Yaoxian, 147  
 Yāpahuwa, 799  
 Yāqūt, 380  
 Yaśa, 232, 301  
 Yaśodharā, 45, 83, 85, 238  
 Yaśovarman, King, 106  
 Yasutani Hakuun, 925  
 Yaṭāla, 801  
*yazuo wen*, 155  
*Yebao yinyuan jing*, 199  
 Yellow Hat sect. *See* Dge lugs (Geluk)  
 Yemar, 326  
 Ye shes brtsegs pa, 49  
 Ye shes mtsho rgyal, 306  
 Ye shes 'od, King, 35–36, 325  
 Ye shes rdo rje, 418  
 Ye shes tsho rgyal, 625  
*yi dam*, 259, 259–260, 526  
 Yiengpruksawan, Mimi, 650  
 Yi-Fu Tuan, 793  
 Yiguan Dao, 814  
 Yijing, 215, 283, 371–372, 723, 748, 785, 812, **912–913**  
*Da Tang xiyu qiufa gaoseng zhuan*, 913  
*Nanhai jigui neifa zhuan*, 759, 913  
*Yijing*, 172  
*Yin chi ru jing* (Chen Hui), 166  
 Yingxian, 152
- Yinshun Shengzheng, 262–263, 817, **913**  
 Yintuoluo, 127  
 Yinyan Longqi, 708  
*yinyuan*, 155  
 Yi Sajūng, 349  
 Yishan Yining, 135  
 Yixing, 167, 824  
 Yixuan, Linji, 131, **913–914**  
 yoga, 305–306, 331, 376, 409, 535, 875.  
*See also* meditation; Tantra  
*Yoga Bhāṣya* (Patañjali), 331  
*Yogācārabhūmi* (Asaṅga), 32, 914–916  
 Yogācāra-Madhyamaka synthesis, 483  
*yogācāra* (*yogāvacāra*) manuals, 525  
 Yogācāra school, 32, 38, 52, 60, 176, 183, 224, 230, 236–237, 496, 604, 649, 683, 738, 810, 827, 878, 884–885, 903–904, 909–910, **914–920**. *See also* Faxiang (Hossō) school; philosophy; psychology  
 and buddhahood, 77–78  
 in China, 143–144, 283–284, 631  
 and consciousness, 176–177  
 and karma, 416–417  
*Yogaratnamālā*, 192  
*Yoga Sūtra* (Patañjali), 331  
*yōmbul*. *See nianfo* (*nenbutsu*)  
*Yongbi ōch'ōn'ga*, 439  
 Yōnggwan, 433  
 Yonghegong, 553  
 Yongjusa, 89  
 Yongming Monastery, 912  
 Yongningsi, 551  
 Yongquan, 817  
 Yon tan rgya mtsho, 563  
 Yoshida Kanetomo, 770  
 Yoshida Kenkō, *Tsurezuregusa*, 397  
 Yoshida shrine, 770  
 Yoshishige Yasutane, 702  
 Young Men's Buddhist Association, 448  
*Yuanjue*, 167  
 Yuanjue Zongyan, *Linji lu*, 913  
*yuanqi*, 155  
 Yuanwu Keqin, 929  
*Biyān lu*, 427  
 Yuanying, 819  
 Yujōng, 433, **921**  
*Samyōngdang taesajip*, 921  
 Yūkai, 815  
*Yuktiṣaṭikā* (Nāgārjuna), 480  
*yulanpen*, 20  
 Yulanpen Festival, 307  
*Yulanpen jing*, 209, 308, 309, 319  
 Yulin, 118, 151, 319, 508

- Yun'gang, 100, 118, 148, 338, 551, **921–922**  
 Yunju Monastery, 677  
 Yunmen house of Chan school, 132  
 Yunmenshan, 149  
 Yunmen Wenyan, 132  
*Yunqi fahui*, 928
- Z**
- Za hor ban de Ngag dbang blo bzang rgya mtsho, 856  
*Zang gling ma*, 623  
 Zanning (Tonghui dashi), **923**  
 and “Biographies of Eminent Monks,” 44, 166, 923  
*Seng shilue*, 923  
*Zazen wasan* (Hakuin Ekaku), 705  
 Zen, popular conceptions of, 267, 866, 868, **923–925**. *See also* Chan art  
 “Zen nationalism,” 584  
 Zen Peacemaker Community, United States, 249  
 Zen school. *See* Chan (Zen, Sōn) school  
*zhaijiao* (vegetarian religion), 817  
 Zhang Daoling, 198  
 Zhangjia Living Buddha, 817  
 Zhang Shangying, 405  
 Zhang Shengwen, *Long Roll of Buddhist Images*, 661  
 Zhang ston Chos 'bar, 751  
 Zhang tshal pa Brtson grags pa, 48  
 Zhang Xuan, 30  
 Zhanran, 167, 344, 475, 849, **925–926**  
*Jin'gangbei*, 849, 925  
*Zhiguan fuxing zhuanhong jue*, 925  
*Zhao lun* (Sengzhao), 760, **926**  
 Zhaozhou Congshen, 132, 427  
 Zhe chen, 856  
 Zhenfo Zong, 814  
*Zheng'e ji* (Zhuhong), 759  
 Zhengyan, 264, 818  
 Zhenhui, 697  
 Zhenjing Kewen, 405  
 Zhenyan (True Word) school, 534–535  
*zhiguai*, 156  
*Zhiguan fuxing zhuanhong jue* (Zhanran), 925  
 Zhiji, 529  
 Zhili (Siming Fazhi *fashi*), 344, 849–850, **926–927**  
 Zhi Qian, 166, 199  
 Zhisheng  
*Kaiyuan shijiao lu*, 116  
 Zhiyan, 150, 167, 284, 342–344, 346, 863  
 Zhiyi, 26, 167, 282, 462, 472, 700, 707–708, 769, 845–847, 850, 871  
*Fahua sanmei chanyi*, 722–723  
*Fahua wenju*, 927  
*Fahua xuanyi*, 927  
*Mohe zhiguan*, 475, 548–549, 927  
 Zhiyi (Tiantai Zhizhe *dashi*), **927–928**  
 Zhizhou, 167, 283  
 Zhongfeng Mingben, 133  
 Zhongyuan, 309  
 Zhou Dunyi, 174  
 Zhou Jichang, 31  
*zhu*, 167–168  
 Zhu Daosheng, 167  
 Zhu Fachong, 166–167  
 Zhu Fatai, 197  
 Zhu Fonian, 616  
 Zhuhong Fohui, 133, **928**  
*Zheng'e ji*, 759  
*Zhu Weimo jing* (Sengzhao), 166  
 Zhuxi, 142, 174, 816  
 Zhu Yuanzhang, 539, 562  
 Zhwa lu Monastery, 103–104  
 Zixi, Empress Dowager, 63  
*zong*, 143–144  
 use of term, 461–462  
 Zonggao, Dahui (Miaoxi, Pujue), 132–135, 158, 344, 428, 569, **928–929**  
*Zongjing lu* (Yanshou), 912  
*Zongli zhongjing mulu* (Dao'an), 197  
 Zongmi, Guifeng, 132, 284, 344, 665, 700, 827, **929**  
*Chanyuan zhuquanji duxu*, 929  
*Pei Xiu shiyi wen*, 929  
 Zoroastrianism, 538, 642  
 Zung chung, 853  
 Zunshi, 700, 850  
 Zur chen, 853  
 Zürcher, Erik, 98, 492  
*Zutang ji*, 427  
 Zwa ra ba Skal ldan ye shes seng ge, 49  
 Zysk, Kenneth, 64



LEFT: The bodhisattva Samantabhadra and his śakti (female partner/creative power), from a nineteenth-century Tibetan *thang ka*. © Archivio Iconografico, S.A./Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

BELOW: A Buddhist temple in the Thai style, the Wat Buddhapadīpa, at Wimbledon, London. © Tim Page/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.





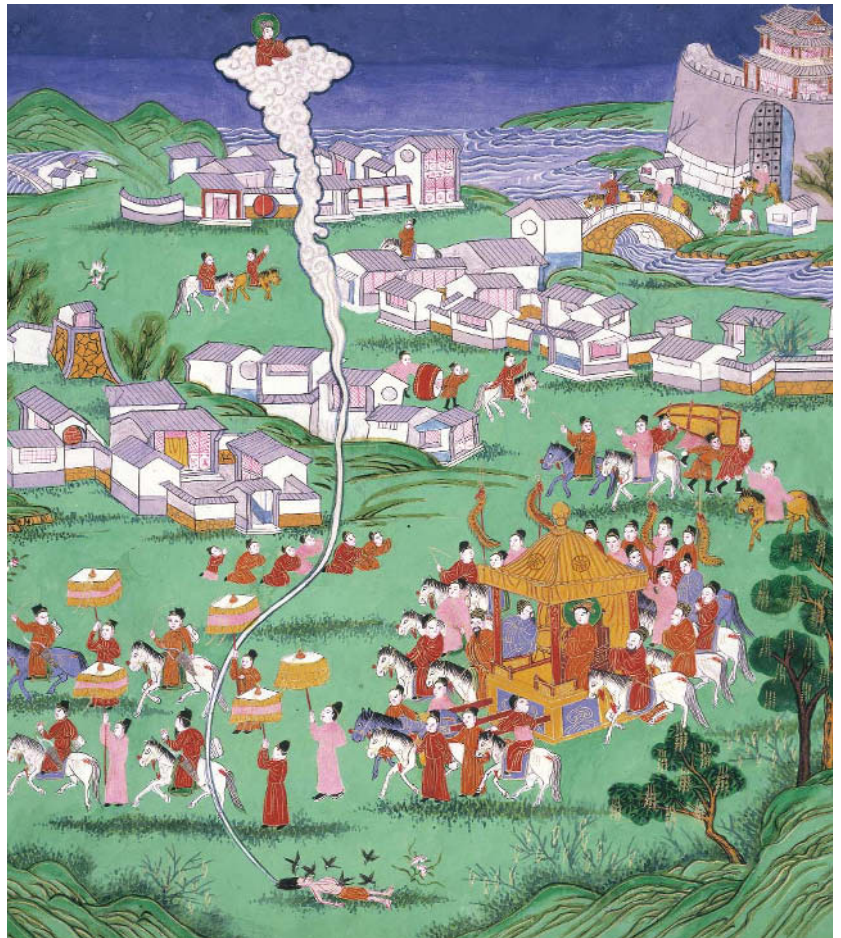
TOP: Pusading Monastery in the Wutai Mountains of Shanxi province, China. © Dean Conger/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.

BOTTOM: Entrances to cave sanctuaries excavated from the early sixth through the eighth century C.E. in the cliffs on the riverbank at Longmen. This site contains over two thousand such caves. © Robert D. Fiala, Concordia University, Seward, Nebraska. Reproduced by permission.



TOP: The recumbent Buddha entering parinirvāṇa, from an eighteenth-century Tibetan *thang ka*. *The Art Archive/Musée Guimet Paris/Dagli Orti (A)*. Reproduced by permission.

BOTTOM: Prince Siddhārtha encounters a corpse on an outing beyond the palace walls, a decisive episode in the life of the Buddha. Chinese, 1818, hand-colored woodblock print. *The British Library*. Reproduced by permission.



Hell, as represented by the Pure Land school. This scene was copied from a thirteenth-century original in the Seishū Raigō temple. Japanese, eighteenth century, ink and color on paper scroll. Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.





A carved panel depicting an unidentified bodhisattva, from a portable shrine. Kashmir, eighth century C.E., painted wood and ivory. Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.



TOP: King Mindon of Burma (r. 1853–1878) making donations to the Buddhist monks. This image is from an illustrated book the king had made to record his donations in detail, including their cost, and to testify to his merit. Burmese, mid-nineteenth century, painting on paper. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*



BOTTOM: Jātaka tales of the Buddha's last ten births, adapted from traditional Thai manuscript illustrations by a Thai artist for a British patron, Captain Low. Thai, ca. 1820, painting on paper. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*





TOP: Illustration from the *Amitābha Sūtra*. The image depicts Śākyamuni preaching to bodhisattvas, monks, divinities, and other buddhas. The calligraphy, of Kumārajīva's Chinese translation of the text, was done by a Korean monk for the sake of his deceased mother. Korean, Koryō dynasty (918–1392), 1341, gold and silver paint on blue paper. Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.

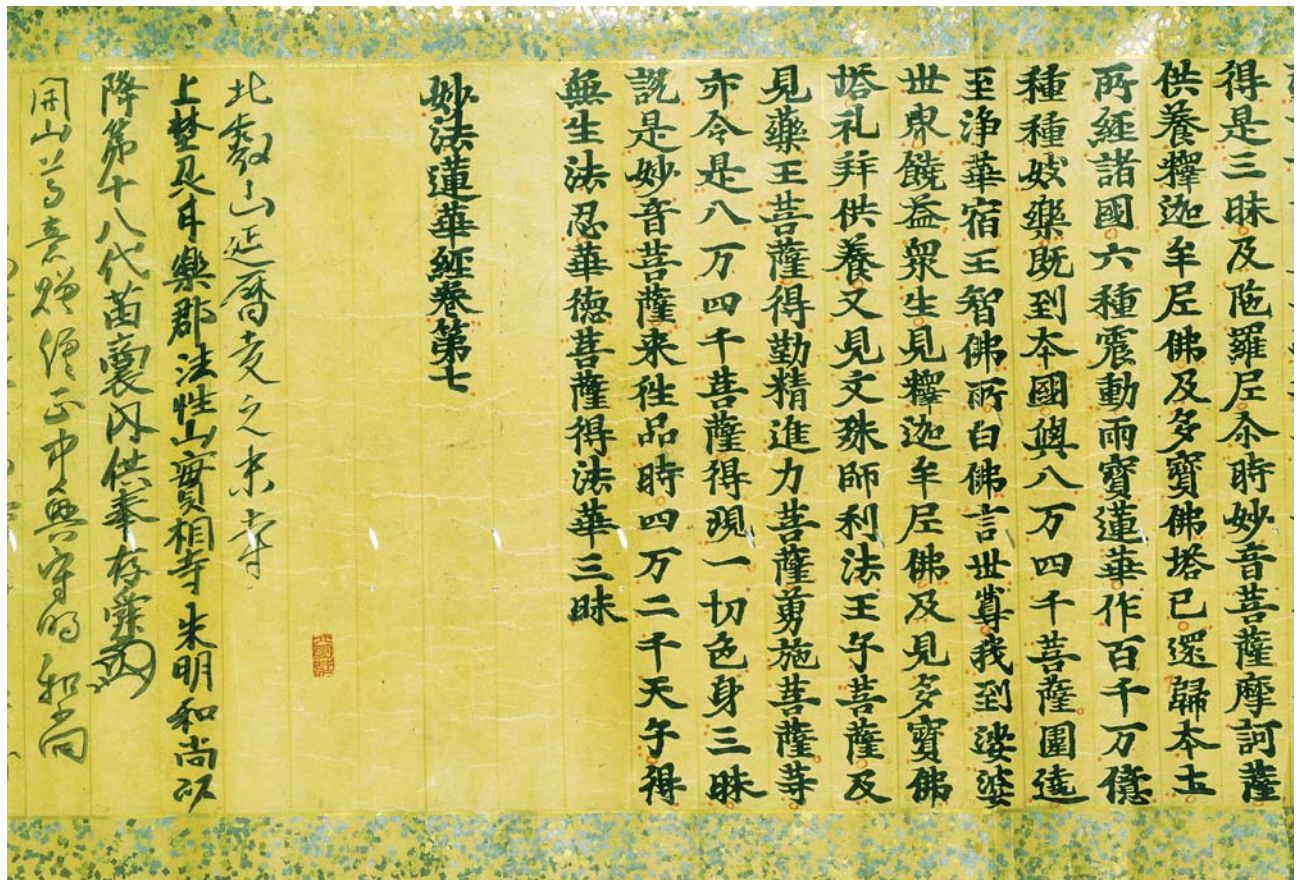
BOTTOM: A realistic sculpture of a lay Buddhist, probably a prosperous merchant. Japanese, ca. 1700, lacquered and painted wood. Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.





LEFT: Netsuke, the devices used to attach pouches or other objects to the belt of a Japanese robe, were often elaborately carved. This one represents Bodhidharma, semilegendary first patriarch of the Chan school of Buddhism, during his nine-year-long seated meditation. He is shown sitting—his legs having fallen off—on a flyswatter. Japanese, nineteenth century, carved ivory. Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.

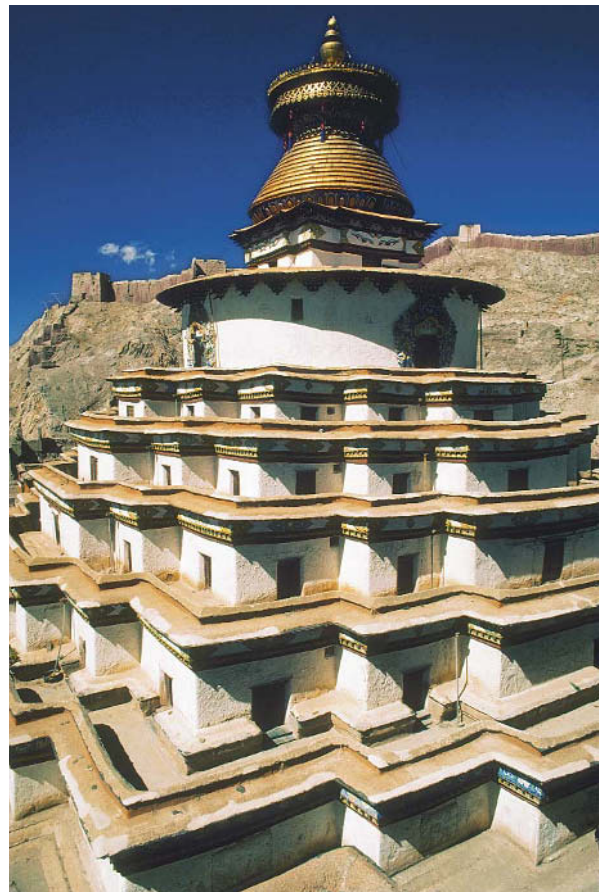
BELOW: The Chinese recension of the *Lotus Sūtra* (*Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*). The borders are ornamented with gold and silver foil, and the entire scroll is sprinkled with gold dust. Japanese, Kamakura period (1185–1333), ca. 1240–1280, block printing on paper scroll. The British Library. Reproduced by permission.





TOP: A Buddhist monastery in the mountains above Tetang, Nepal.  
© Macduff Everton/Corbis. *Reproduced by permission.*

RIGHT: The Sku 'bum (Kumbum) ("place of one hundred thousand images") stūpa at the Dpal 'khor chos sde (Palkhor Chode) Monastery in Rgyal rtse (Gyantse), Tibet. © Craig Lovell/Corbis. *Reproduced by permission.*





TOP: The wooden cover or “title page” of the *Prajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom Sūtra*). The manuscript is in Tibetan, translated from Sanskrit; the text on the cover is in Mongolian. Tibetan, eighteenth century, gold on blue paper with carved and gilt wooden covers. *Victoria & Albert Museum. Reproduced by permission.*

BOTTOM: Illuminated title page from the Tibetan translation of the *Vinayavibhaṅga* (*Explanation of the Monastic Discipline*). The figure on the left is Kāśyapa, senior disciple of the Buddha; on the right is Tsong kha pa (1357–1419), founder of the Dge lugs (Geluk) school of Tibetan Buddhism. Tibetan, gold ink on paper. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*





衆四萬二千菩薩八萬四千佛各後十方諸  
 佛世界而來集會皆已通達一生補處得无  
 所者无所罣礙從勇猛伏三昧出生謙上蓮  
 華三昧金剛道場三昧善堅住三昧薄淵於  
 三昧幢莫王三昧金剛三昧淨德事三昧分  
 別權行皆得親述諸佛之法在佛樹下多可  
 降伏度諸魔界而得達五諸佛之主速成无  
 盡不說捨持得知衆生一切根源以妙辯才  
 可悅諸心為師子與猛无所畏若入衆會應  
 順時宜宣文字句或說諸行則以威相而自  
 嚴勝捨世財棄諸外道切勤顯布着微十  
 方諸佛咨嗟德不可量慈從布施持戒忍辱



TOP: The *Ratnakūḍāparipṛcchā* (*Ratnakūḍā's Questions*), in Chinese translation. This work is the forty-seventh scripture in the collection known as the *Mahāratnakūṭa-sūtra* or *Great Heap of Gems Sūtra*, a collection of early Mahāyāna sūtras. Chinese, Western Jin dynasty (265–316 C.E.), ink on paper scroll, with wooden roller. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*

BOTTOM: Illuminated manuscript of the *Aṣṭasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (*Perfection of Wisdom in 8,000 Lines*), in Sanskrit, from the Vikramaśīla Monastery in Bihar. The figures depicted are the bodhisattvas Avalokiteśvara (top), seated on a lion's back, and Maitreya. Indian, ca. 1145 C.E., ink and gouache on palm leaves with wooden covers. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*

Vaiśravaṇa, Dharma-protector of the north, with Śrīdevī (the goddess Splendor) and attendants. Chinese, Tang dynasty (618–907), painting on silk from Dunhuang. *Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.*





The horrific celestial buddha Śaṃvara with his female partner. Above Śaṃvara are depicted the buddhas Dīpaṅkara, Śākyamuni, and Maitreya; below is Amitābha Buddha flanked by green and white Tārās, protective female deities. Tibetan, eighteenth century, painting on cloth with silk border. *Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.*



12. In front, the elephant of Maligawa bearing the dāra or small of Ganesha the Karandevya made with gold & followed by two elephants and by the people of Maligawa with umbrellas talpa fans made to the wheel of ornament with gold & silver

TOP: The Procession of the Buddha's Tooth Relic. This image is one of six in a scroll depicting an annual event in Kandy. Here the temple elephant carries the reliquary casket, surrounded by the faithful. Sri Lankan, ca. 1796–1815, watercolor on paper. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*



RIGHT: Illustrated manuscript of the *upasampadā* (ordination ceremony), in Pāli. The image depicts Siddhārtha being carried away from household life on his horse by the gods. Thai, late nineteenth century, painting and gold script on stiffened cloth. *The British Library. Reproduced by permission.*

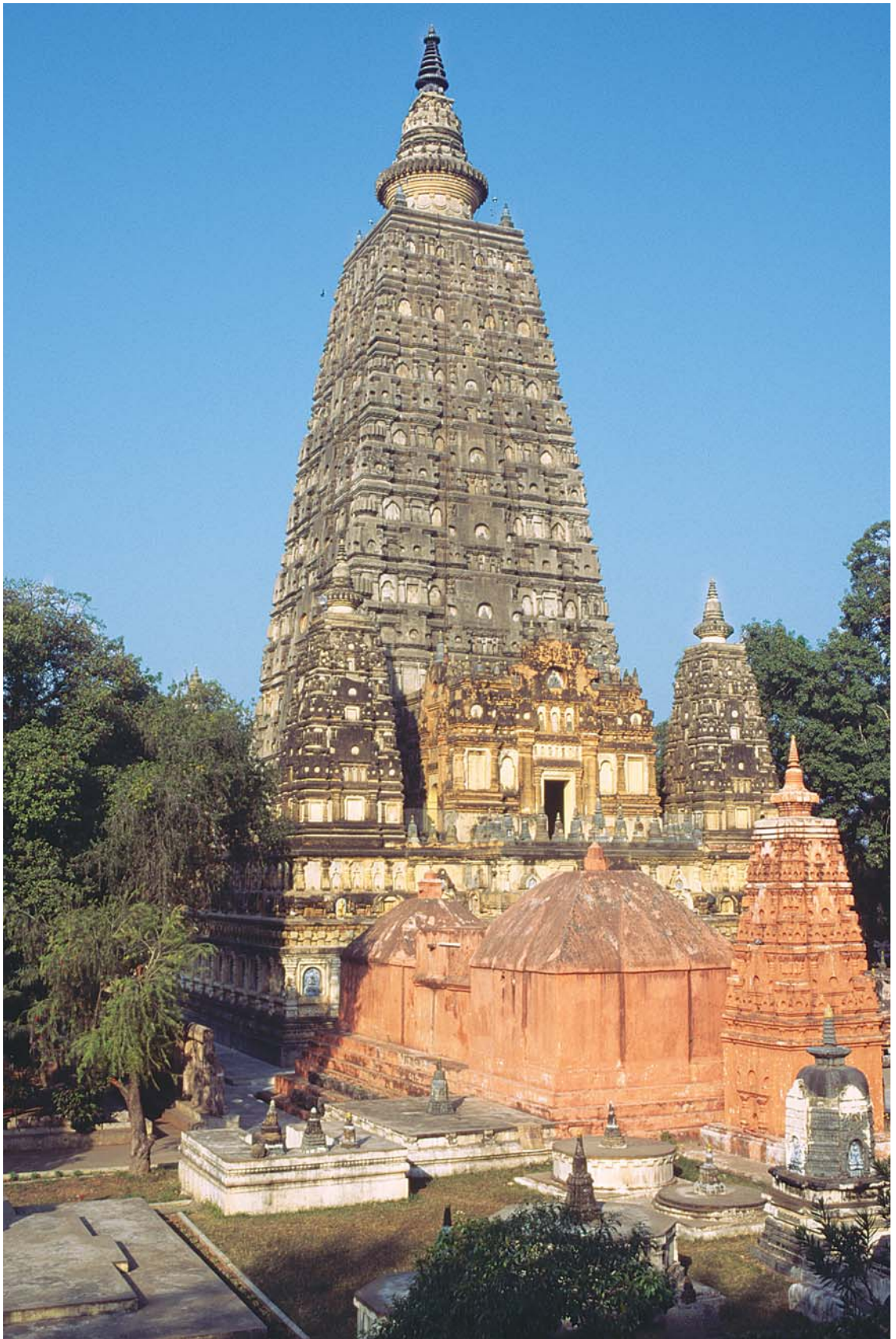




TOP: Nichiren (1222–1282), founder of the Nichiren school, was an opponent of the established Japanese Buddhist schools of his day. Here he is shown calming the sea on his way into exile on Sado Island following a failed insurrection in 1271. Japanese, ca. 1830. Woodblock color print by Utagawa Kuniyoshi (1797–1861). Copyright The British Museum. Reproduced by permission.



LEFT: The *Pañcarakṣā* (Five Protective Hymns). This decorated manuscript was donated to the Tarumūla Monastery in Kathmandu by a wealthy merchant named Jayarāma and his family, who are depicted making offerings to the Buddha in the bottom panel. Nepalese, 1676, gold and gouache on blue paper, gouache on wood. The British Library. Reproduced by permission.



The seventh–eighth-century stūpa at the Mahābodhi Temple at Bodhi Gayā. © David Cumming; Eye Ubiquitous/Corbis. Reproduced by permission.